989

General Industry Standards and Interpretations

CHANGE 51, MAY 8, 1989
U.S. Department of Labor
Ann McLaughlin, Secretary
Occupational Safety and Health Administration
John A. Pendergrass, Assistant Secretary
Volume 1 OSHA 2077

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402

L 35.6/3-1:

READEX FICHE best copy available

TOTAL NUMBER OF PAGES IS 1420 AS FOLLOWS:

Page No.	*Issue*	*Page No.*	*Issue*
*Title	Change 51	77	Change 36
*A thru G	Change 51	78	Change 38
i thru ii	Original	79 thru 81	Original
iii	Change 47	82	Change 36
iv	Original	83 thru 84	Original
v thru viii	Change 21	85 thru 86	Change 49
1	Change 49	87	Change 22
2	Change 45	88 thru 90	Original
3	Change 37	91 thru 92	Change 14
4	Change 49	92.1 thru 92.2	Change 14
5	Change 50	93	Change 44
6	Change 50	94	Change 35
7	Change 49	95 thru 98	Original
8 thru 9	Original	99	Change 36
10	Change 36	100	Change 7
11	Change 49	101 thru 106	Original
12	Change 49	107	Change 22
12.1 thru 12.4	Change 49	108	Original
13	Change 49	109	Change 7
14	Original	110 thru 111	Original
15 thru 17	Change 32	112	Change 7
18	Change 48	113	Change 44
18.1 thru 18.2	Change 49	114 thru 131	Original
19 thru 20.8	Change 50	132	Change 7
21	Change 49	133 thru 139	Original
22 thru 28	Original	140	Change 36
29	Change 22	141 thru 142	Original
30	Change 36	143	Change 19
31	Change 40	144	Change 37
32 thru 33	Change 22	144.1 thru 144.14	Change 30
34	Change 35	144.15 thru 144.16	Change 31
35	Change 36	145	Original
36 thru 37	Change 7	146	Change 7
38	Change 38	147	Change 38
39 thru 40	Change 7	148 thru 151	Original
41 thru 54	Deleted	152 thru 154	Change 7
55	Change 36	155 thru 156	Original
56	Change 22	157	Change 33
57 thru 60	Original	158	Original
61	Change 22	*159	Change 51
62	Original	160	Original
63	Change 37	161	Change 49
64 thru 70	Original	162	Original
71 thru 74	Change 49	163	Change 7
75 thru 76	Original	164 thru 168	Original

***Indicate pages changed, added, or deleted by the current change.**

NOTICE TO SUBSCRIBERS

This issue of Volume I of the OSHA Subscription Service is a consolidated reissue of the basic manual with changes 1 through 51 incorporated as indicated on the title page. The next change to be issued to this manual will be change 52. Change 52 and subsequent changes must be incorporated in order.

Page No.	*Issue*
169	Change 7
170	Original
171	Change 22
172	Change 7
173 thru 174	Original
175	Change 22
176	Original
177	Change 49
178 thru 180	Change 7
181 thru 182	Deleted
183	Change 41
184	Original
185	Change 22
186	Change 7
187 thru 189	Original
190	Change 7
191 thru 193	Original
194	Change 22
195	Original
196 thru 197	Change 7
198	Original
199	Change 7
200	Change 22
201	Change 7
202 thru 204	Original
205	Change 28
206 thru 207	Original
208	Change 22
209	Change 44
210	Original
211	Change 27
212 thru 213	Original
214	Change 7
215 thru 216	Original
217	Change 22
218	Change 7
219	Change 49
220 thru 221	Change 36
222	Original
223	Change 14
224	Change 36
225	Original
226	Change 38
227 thru 228	Original
229	Change 49
230	Change 36
231	Change 22
232	Change 36
233	Original
234	Change 36
235 thru 238	Change 7
239	Original
240 thru 241	Change 7
242	Change 49
243 thru 246	Change 7
247 thru 248	Original
249 thru 250	Change 7
251	Original
252	Change 7
253 thru 254	Original
255 thru 256	Change 7
257	Original
258	Change 14
259	Original
260	Change 49
261	Original
262	Change 7
263 thru 268	Original
269	Change 36
270	Original
271 thru 272	Change 7
273	Original
274	Change 22
275	Original
276	Change 7
277	Change 36
278 thru 281	Original
282	Change 49
283 thru 284	Change 7
285 thru 289	Original
290 thru 291	Change 38
292	Change 7
293 thru 294	Original
295	Change 36
296	Original
297	Change 36
298	Change 49
299	Change 7
300 thru 305	Original
306	Change 36
307 thru 310	Original
311	Change 49
312	Original
313	Change 7
314 thru 316	Original
317	Change 36
318	Change 7
319	Change 36
320	Original
321	Change 7

*Indicate pages changed, added, or deleted by the current change.

Page No.	*Issue*
322 thru 323	Original
324	Change 7
325 thru 329	Original
*330 thru 330.34	Change 51
331	Original
332	Change 22
333	Change 36
334	Original
335 thru 336	Change 36
337	Change 7
338	Change 22
339 thru 340	Original
341	Change 44
342	Original
343 thru 344	Change 7
345	Change 22
346 thru 349	Original
350 thru 351	Change 36
352 thru 354	Change 44
355 thru 362	Deleted
363 thru 365	Original
366	Change 35
367 thru 368	Change 49
368.1 thru 368.4	Change 14
368.5	Change 35
368.6	Change 14
369	Change 14
370 thru 371	Change 22
372 thru 373	Change 44
374 thru 382	Change 14
382.1 thru 382.18	Change 14
383 thru 384	Change 37
385 thru 394	Deleted
395 thru 396	Change 37
397 thru 398	Original
399	Change 49
400	Change 37
400.1 thru 400.6	Change 37
401	Change 49
402 thru 403	Original
404	Change 22
405 thru 408	Change 36
409	Change 7
410 thru 411	Original
412 thru 413	Change 36
414 thru 418	Original
419	Change 44
420	Change 36
421	Change 44
422 thru 426	Original
427 thru 428	Change 44
429	Change 44
430	Original
431	Original
432 thru 434	Change 36
435 thru 436	Change 36
437 thru 438	Change 44
439	Change 49
440 thru 476	Original
477	Change 44
478 thru 480	Original
*481	Change 51
*482.2	Change 51
483	Original
*484.2	Change 51
485	Change 25
486	Change 35
487	Change 25
488	Change 36
489	Change 40
490 thru 492	Change 36
493	Original
494	Change 7
495 thru 496	Deleted
497	Change 25
498 thru 500	Original
501	Change 7
502 thru 503	Change 36
504	Original
505 thru 509	Original
510 thru 511	Change 36
512	Change 25
513	Original
514	Change 11
515	Original
*516	Change 51
517	Change 7
518	Original
519	Change 11
520	Change 44
521	Original
*522 thru 522.	Change 51
522.4	Change 44
523 thru 524	Change 36
525	Change 25
526	Change 7
527	Change 36
528	Change 25
529	Original
530	Change 36
531	Change 7
532	Change 36
533 thru 534	Deleted
535	Change 36
536 thru 539	Original
540	Change 22
541	Original

***Indicate pages changed, added, or deleted by the current change.**

Page No.	*Issue*
542	Change 35
543	Original
544 thru 545	Change 7
546	Change 36
547 thru 549	Change 38
550 thru 552	Original
553	Change 49
554	Change 49
555	Change 36
556 thru 559	Original
560 thru 561	Change 36
562 thru 563	Original
564 thru 565	Change 7
566 thru 567	Original
568	Change 7
569	Change 36
570 thru 571	Change 7
572 thru 574	Change 36
575	Change 7
576	Change 44
577 thru 578	Change 36
579	Change 37
580	Change 36
581	Change 7
582	Change 37
583	Change 12
584	Original
585	Change 36
586	Original
587	Change 49
588 thru 592	Original
593 thru 598	Change 36
599	Change 37
600	Change 36
601	Original
602	Change 38
603	Change 36
604 thru 612	Original
613	Change 36
614	Original
615 thru 621	Change 7
622 thru 623	Change 28
624 thru 625	Change 25
626	Change 7
627 thru 640	Deleted
641 thru 645	Original
646	Change 7
647 thru 650	Original
651	Change 25
652	Original
653	Change 49
654 thru 659	Original
660	Change 49
661	Original
662	Change 7
663	Change 25
664	Original
665	Change 7
666	Original
667	Change 25
668 thru 669	Original
670 thru 671	Change 7
672	Original
673	Change 25
674 thru 686	Original
686.1 thru 686.10	Change 49
687 thru 688	Original
689	Change 49
690 thru 692	Change 27
693	Change 16
694	Change 27
694.0.1 thru 694.0.2	Change 16
694.0.3 thru 694.0.4	Change 27
694.0.5	Change 16
694.0.6 thru 694.0.11	Change 27
694.0.12	Change 16
694.0.13	Change 27
694.0.14	Change 16
694.0.15 thru 964.0.20	Change 27
694.0.21	Change 35
694.0.22 thru 694.0.24	Change 27
694.0.25	Change 16
694.0.26	Change 49
694.0.26.1 thru 694.0.26.2	Change 49
694.0.27	Change 16
694.0.28 thru 694.0.29	Change 27
694.0.30 thru 694.0.31	Change 16
649.0.32	Change 27
694.0.33	Change 16
694.0.34 thru 694.0.36	Change 27
694.0.37	Change 16
694.0.38	Original
694.1	Change 37
694.2	Change 29
694.2.1 thru 694.2.2	Change 29
694.3	Change 1
694.4	Change 29
694.5 thru 694.6	Change 37
694.7 thru 694.9	Change 1
694.10	Change 12
694.11 thru 694.14	Change 1

***Indicate pages changed, added, or deleted by the current change.**

Page No.	*Issue*
694.15	Change 44
694.16	Change 1
694.17	Change 44
694.18	Change 38
695	Change 50
696	Change 50
697	Change 8
698	Change 42
699	Change 8
700	Change 49
701	Change 13
702	Change 43
702.1	Change 43
702.2	Original
703	Change 46
704 thru 705	Change 43
706	Change 46
707 thru 708	Change 43
708.0.1	Change 46
708.0.2 thru 708.0.4	Change 43
708.0.5 thru 708.0.8	Change 46
708.0.9	Change 43
708.0.10	Change 46
708.0.11	Change 43
708.0.12 thru 708.0.17	Change 46
708.0.18 thru 708.0.24	Change 43
708.0.25 thru 708.0.27	Change 46
708.0.30	Change 43
708.1	Change 43
708.2	Change 33
709	Original
710	Original
711 thru 712	Original
713	Change 12
714 thru 715	Original
716	Change 7
717 thru 718	Original
719	Change 12
720 thru 721	Original
722	Change 7
723 thru 724	Original
725	Change 12
726 thru 727	Original
728	Change 7
729 thru 730	Original
731	Change 12
732	Original
733	Change 7
734 thru 736	Original
737	Change 12
738	Original
739	Change 7
740 thru 742	Original
743	Change 12
744	Original
745	Change 7
746 thru 748	Original
749	Change 12
750	Original
751	Change 7
752 thru 753	Original
754	Change 12
755 thru 756	Original
757	Change 7
758 thru 759	Original
760	Change 12
761	Original
762	Change 7
763 thru 765	Original
766	Change 12
767	Original
768	Change 7
769 thru 770	Original
771	Change 12
772 thru 773	Original
774	Change 7
775 thru 776	Original
777	Change 12
778 thru 779	Original
780	Change 7
781 thru 782	Original
783	Change 12
784	Original
785	Change 7
786 thru 788	Original
789 thru 790	Change 12
790.0.1 thru 790.0.2	Change 6
790.0.3	Change 4
790.0.4 thru 790.0.6	Change 6
790.0.7	Change 4
790.0.8 thru 790.0.10	Change 6
790.0.11	Change 15
790.0.12	Change 6
790.0.13	Change 12
790.0.14 thru 790.0.15	Change 6
790.0.16	Change 12
790.0.17	Change 8
790.0.18	Change 30
790.0.18.1 thru 790.0.18.2	Change 30
790.0.19	Change 8
790.0.20	Change 29
790.0.21 thru 790.0.23	Change 12
790.0.24	Change 8
790.0.25 thru 790.0.26	Change 12

*Indicate pages changed, added, or deleted by the current change.

Page No.	*Issue*
790.0.27 thru 790.0.29	Change 8
790.0.30	Change 15
790.0.31	Change 12
790.0.32 thru 790.0.35	Change 9
790.0.36	Change 29
790.0.37 thru 790.0.41	Change 9
790.0.42	Change 29
790.0.43 thru 790.0.53	Change 9
790.0.54 thru 790.0.55	Change 29
790.0.56 thru 790.0.57	Change 32
790.0.58	Change 29
790.1 thru 790.2	Change 48
790.2.1 thru 790.2.2	Deleted
790.3 thru 790.26	Change 49
791	Change 22
792	Original
793 thru 794	Change 41
795 thru 797	Original
798 thru 799	Change 41
800 thru 802	Original
803 thru 804	Change 12
805 thru 806	Original
806.0.1 thru 806.0.7	Change 5
806.0.8	Change 42
806.0.8.1 thru 806.0.8.2	Change 42
806.0.9 thru 806.0.12	Change 42
806.0.13 thru 806.0.30	Change 5
806.0.31	Change 42
806.0.32	Change 5
806.1 thru 806.7	Change 3
806.8	Change 12
806.9 thru 806.14	Change 3
806.14.1 thru 806.14.9	Change 6
806.14.10	Change 15
806.14.11 thru 806.14.12	Change 6
806.14.13	Change 12
806.14.14 thru 806.14.21	Change 6
806.14.22 thru 806.14.24	Change 49
806.14.24.1 thru 806.14.24.2	Change 49
806.14.25 thru 806.14.26	Change 37
806.14.27	Change 49
806.14.28	Change 41
806.14.29	Change 50
806.14.30	Change 44
806.14.30.1 thru 806.14.30.2	Change 49
806.14.31 thru 806.14.32	Change 37
806.14.33 thru 806.14.34	Change 44
806.14.35	Change 37
806.14.36	Change 44
806.14.37 thru 806.14.42	Change 37
806.14.42.0.1 thru 806.14.42.0.30	Change 50

Page No.	*Issue*
806.14.43	Change 46
806.14.44 thru 806.14.48	Change 44
806.15 thru 806.16.2	Change 49
806.17 thru 806.29	Change 28
806.30 thru 806.32	Change 49
807	Change 28
808	Original
809	Change 48
810	Change 48
811 thru 821	Original
822 thru 828.2	Change 48
829 thru 834	Originals
834.1 thru 834.2	Change 48
834.3 thru 834.26	Deleted
834.27 thru 834.30	Change 10
834.31	Change 13
834.32	Change 18
834.33 thru 834.35	Change 10
834.36	Change 18
834.37	Change 13
834.38	Change 18
834.39 thru 834.40	Change 10
834.41	Change 18
834.42	Change 13
834.43	Change 18
834.44 thru 834.51	Change 13
834.52	Change 18
834.53 thru 834.58	Change 13
835 thru 861	Change 47
862	Change 47
863	Change 39
864 thru 873	Change 39
874 thru 875	Change 40
876	Change 39
877 thru 882	Deleted
883 thru 886	Change 20
887	Change 35
888	Change 40
888.1 thru 888.4	Change 40
889 thru 899	Change 20
900	Change 40
901	Change 20
902 thru 904	Change 35
904.1 thru 904.4	Change 35
905 thru 906	Change 40
906.1 thru 906.2	Change 40
907 thru 908	Change 20
908.1 thru 908.2	Change 35
909 thru 910	Change 40
911 thru 914	Change 23
915 thru 916	Change 40

*Indicate pages changed, added, or deleted by the current change.

STANDARDS AND INTERPRETATIONS

Page No.	*Issue*
917 thru 922	Change 23
923 thru 930	Change 35
930.1 thru 930.2	Change 35
931 to 943	Change 24
944 thru 945	Change 28
946	Change 40
947 thru 948	Deleted

***Indicate pages changed, added, or deleted by the current change.**

VOLUME I—STANDARDS AND INTERPRETATIONS—GENERAL INDUSTRY

Record of Changes/Additions

Change Number	Date Of Change/Addition	Date Entered	Signature Of Person Entering Change

VOLUME I—STANDARDS AND INTERPRETATIONS—GENERAL INDUSTRY

Record of Changes/Additions

Change Number	Date Of Change/Addition	Date Entered	Signature Of Person Entering Change

CONTENTS

Page
Introduction v
Instruction vi

Subpart:

A General 7
B Adoption and Extension of Established Federal Standards 13
C General Safety and Health Provisions 19
D Walking-Working Surfaces 21
E Means of Egress 85
F Powered Platform, Manlifts, and Vehicle-Mounted Work Platforms 93
G Occupational Health and Environmental Control 115
H Hazardous Materials 159
I Personal Protective Equipment 331
J General Environmental Controls 341
K Medical and First Aid 365
L Fire Protection 367
M Compressed Gas and Compressed Air Equipment 383
N Materials Handling and Storage 399
O Machinery and Machine Guarding 477
P Hand and Portable Powered Tools and Other Hand-Held Equipment 537
Q Welding, Cutting, and Brazing 533
R Special Industries 587
S Electrical 689
T Commercial Diving Operations 694.1
Z Toxic and Hazardous Substances 695
Part 1928 Agriculture 809
Part 1990 Identification, Classification, and Regulation of Potential Occupational Carcinogens 834.27

Appendices

A Subject Index 835
B Contents of All Volumes 875
C Interpretations 881

INTRODUCTION

The Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 became a law on December 29, 1970. Its purpose is:

> "To assure safe and healthful working conditions for working men and women; by authorizing enforcement of the standards developed under the Act; by assisting and encouraging the States in their efforts to assure safe and healthful working conditions; by providing for research, information, education, and training in the field of occupational safety and health; and for other purposes."

This volume of Occupational Safety and Health Standards and Interpretations is comprised of national consensus standards and established Federal standards. These standards are applicable to industry in general and are known as Part 1910–Occupational Safety and Health Standards. This Part 1910 is new as a result of amending Chapter XVII of Title 29 of the Code of Federal Regulations established in April 13, 1971 (36 F.R. 7006). This amendment was made pursuant to authority in Sections 6(a) and 8(g) of the Williams-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (84 Stat. 1593, 1600; 29 U.S.C. 655, 657).

These Part 1910 Standards were originally published in the Federal Register. They were subsequently codified and republished in the Code of Federal Regulations.

Only the Federal Register can be used as the official source or reference for such material. Every effort has been made to repeat verbatim the information published in the Federal Register—however, in the event of conflict or inconsistency, the Federal Register takes precedence as the official publication.

The purposes of publishing this set of standards and interpretations are (1) to facilitate their use through a different and easier format of the material (finding and reading specific sections and paragraphs have been greatly enhanced); and (2) to create a publication system for occupational safety and health standards, interpretations, regulations, and procedures which can be more easily maintained and revised. These standards and interpretations are available through the subscription services of the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office.

Numbering System

The format of this volume is changed from that of the Federal Register to enhance usability and to provide for easier location of referenced section, paragraph, and subparagraph numbering.

Parts, such as Part 1910—General Industry Standards, are divided into subparts, such as Subpart H—Hazardous Materials. Subparts are composed of sections which are numbered consecutively within the Part, such as Section 1910.103—Hydrogen, and 1910.104—Oxygen. In this volume, Subparts are headed by a lead sheet which lists the Sections within that Subpart. Each section is started with a bold-face, centered head.

Paragraph identification levels are set in bold-face types. The first paragraph identification is set flush left; each succeeding breakdown level is indented one space to the right. Breakdown setup and types used for each are as follows:

(a) General

(1) Definition

(i) Where oxygen ------------------------

(a) Designed, constructed ---------------------

(1) Boiling point shall ----------------------

(i) Hotel shall mean ----------------------

All pages are numbered consecutively throughout.

Basic Manual

The basic manual consists of front matter, the text of the standards, and appendices.

1. Front Matter

The front matter includes the title page, List of Effective Pages, Record of Changes/Additions page, contents, and introduction.

a. Title page identifies the text of the book, date issued, date of the current change and the volume number.

b. List of Effective Pages or "A" page indicates total number of pages in this volume and lists all pages with change status and page order.

c. Record of Changes/Additions page specifies the number of change, date of change/addition, date entered and signature of person entering change.

d. Table of Contents lists the text of the manual by part and subpart numbers. It also indicates page number for quick reference.

e. Introduction describes the format and contents of this manual.

2. TEXT.

The text of the manual includes all of the standards associated with the General Industry. The standards are divided by part and subpart; each subpart is preceded by a list of sections contained therein. Parts and subparts covered in this manual are as follows: 29CFR 1910, Safety and Health Regulations for General Industry, subparts A thru Z.

The format of the text is changed from that of the Federal Register to enhance reader usability. The following are some of the features employed as reader aids:

Features

- Two column, large type;
- Section numbers, part numbers and titles are large, boldface, across page;
- paragraphs (number and side heads) are bold face;
- subordinate paragraphs are indented;
- paragraphs are separated by space;
- page content indexes—first and last paragraph contained on page are indicated top and bottom corner of outer edge.

3. APPENDICES

Appendices included in this manual are as follows: Appendix A, Subject Index; Appendix B, Contents of all Volumes; Appendix C, Interpretations.

a. Appendix A, Subject Index

1. Lists key words alphabetically
2. References section and paragraph number

b. Appendix B, Contents of all Volumes

Lists the contents for the other five volumes of the subscription service by major parts, subparts, and subject matter for easy reference to related information.

c. Appendix C, Interpretations

Interpretations are issued to clarify the intent of ambiguous statements made in the standards. Appendix C contains all such active interpretations. Interpretations are assigned sequential numbers (OSHA Instruction Numbers). They appear in this order in the appendix. The heading of each interpretation identifies the instruction number and date. The subject section and paragraph number being interpreted are in boldface type following the heading. The standard being interpreted is identified by an INTERP symbol in the text of the standard. The INTERP symbol indicates a reference to this appendix.

To locate a specific interpretation quickly, a table of intepretations preceeds the body of Appendix C. The first column of the table lists, in numerical order, the section and paragraph number of the standard being interpreted. The second column identifies the OSHA Instruction number of the interpretation. The third column indicates the page number of the index where the interpretation is located.

Changes and Additions

This Manual is updated, as required, to incorporate current, complete, and accurate information for the General Industry Standards. It, therefore, provides the subscribers with the current status of these Standards. Changes and/or additions to the standards appearing in the Federal Register are published as change pages to this volume. Although the format of this manual differs, the text of the change is identical to that of the Federal Register.

All changes and additions should be recorded on the "Record of Changes/Additions" sheet located in the front of this volume. The Change Number and Date of Change/Addition will be taken from the Change Transmittal Sheet which will accompany all such changes and additions. The person inserting the change or addition will record the date he makes the change and his signature.

Changes on each page will be identified by a vertical bar along the outer margin of the text, tabulation, or illustration affected, The change number of the revision will be shown at the bottom of that page.

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART A—GENERAL

1910.1 Purpose and scope.
1910.2 Definitions.
1910.3 Petitions for the issuance, amendment, or repeal of a standard.
1910.4 Amendments to this part.
1910.5 Applicability of standards.
1910.6 Incorporation by reference.
1910.7 Definition and requirements for a nationally recognized testing laboratory.

SUBPART B—ADOPTION AND EXTENSION OF ESTABLISHED FEDERAL STANDARDS

1910.11 Scope and purpose.
1910.12 Construction work.
1910.13 Ship repairing.
1910.14 Shipbuilding.
1910.15 Shipbreaking.
1910.16 Longshoring.
1910.17 Effective dates.
1910.18 Changes in established Federal standards.
1910.19 Special provisions for air contaminants.

SUBPART C—GENERAL SAFETY AND HEALTH PROVISIONS

1910.20 Access to employee exposure and medical records.

SUBPART D—WALKING—WORKING SURFACES

1910.21 Definitions.
1910.22 General requirements.
1910.23 Guarding floor and wall openings and holes.
1910.24 Fixed industrial stairs.
1910.25 Portable wood ladders.
1910.26 Portable metal ladders.
1910.27 Fixed ladders.
1910.28 Safety requirements for scaffolding.
1910.29 Manually propelled mobile ladder stands and scaffolds (towers).
1910.30 Other working surfaces.
1910.31 Sources of standards.
1910.32 Standards organizations.

SUBPART E—MEANS OF EGRESS

1910.35 Definitions.
1910.36 General requirements.
1910.37 Means of egress, general.
1910.38 Specific means of egress requirements by occupancy. [Reserved]

1910.39 Sources of standards.
1910.40 Standards organizations.

SUBPART F—POWERED PLATFORMS, MANLIFTS AND VEHICLE-MOUNTED WORK PLATFORMS

1910.66 Power platforms for exterior building maintenance.
1910.67 Vehicle-mounted elevating and rotating work platforms.
1910.68 Manlifts.
1910.69 Sources of standards.
1910.70 Standards organizations.

SUBPART G—OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL

1910.94 Ventilation.
1910.95 Occupational noise exposure.
1910.96 Ionizing radiation.
1910.97 Nonionizing radiation.
1910.98 Additional delay in effective date.
1910.99 Sources of standards.
1910.100 Standards organizations.

SUBPART H—HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

1910.101 Compressed gases (general requirements).
1910.102 Acetylene.
1910.103 Hydrogen.
1910.104 Oxygen.
1910.105 Nitrous oxide.
1910.106 Flammable and combustible liquids.
1910.107 Spray finishing using flammable and combustible materials.
1910.108 Dip tanks containing flammable or combustible liquids.
1910.109 Explosives and blasting agents.
1910.110 Storage and handling of liquified petroleum gases.
1910.111 Storage and handling of anhydrous ammonia.
1910.112 [Reserved]
1910.113 [Reserved]
1910.114 Effective dates.
1910.115 Sources of standards.
1910.116 Standards organizations.
1910.120 Hazardous Waste Operations and Emergency Response

SUBPART I—PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT

1910.132 General requirements.
1910.133 Eye and face protection.
1910.134 Respiratory protection.
1910.135 Occupational head protection.
1910.136 Occupational foot protection.
1910.137 Electrical protective devices.
1910.138 Effective dates.
1910.139 Sources of standards.
1910.140 Standards organizations.

SUBPART J—GENERAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

1910.141 Sanitation.
1910.142 Temporary labor camps.
1910.143 Nonwater carriage disposal systems.
1910.144 Safety color code for marking physical hazards.
1910.145 Specificatons for accident prevention signs and tags.
1910.146 [Reserved]
1910.147 Sources of standards.
1910.148 Standards organizations.
1910.149 Effective dates.

SUBPART K—MEDICAL AND FIRST AID

1910.151 Medical services and first aid.
1910.152 [Reserved]
1910.153 Sources of standards.

SUBPART L—FIRE PROTECTION

1910.155 Scope, application and definitions applicable to this part.
1910.156 Fire brigades.

PORTABLE FIRE SUPPRESSION EQUIPMENT

1910.157 Portable fire extinguishers.
1910.158 Standpipe and hose systems.

FIXED FIRE SUPPRESSION EQUIPMENT

1910.159 Automatic sprinkler systems
1910.160 Fixed extinguishing systems, general.
1910.161 Fixed extinguishing systems, dry chemical.
1910.162 Fixed extinguishing systems, gaseous agent.
1910.163 Fixed extinguishing systems, water, spray and foam.

OTHER FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

1910.164 Fire detection systems
1910.165 Employee alarm systems
Appendices A–E

SUBPART M—COMPRESSED GAS AND COMPRESSED AIR EQUIPMENT

1910.166 Reserved
1910.167 Reserved
1910.168 Reserved

1910.169 Air receivers.
1910.170 Sources of standards.
1910.171 Standards organizations.

SUBPART N—MATERIALS HANDLING AND STORAGE

1910.176 Handling materials—general.
1910.177 Servicing multi-piece and single piece rim wheels.
1910.178 Powered industrial trucks.

1910.179 Overhead and gantry cranes.
1910.180 Crawler, locomotive, and truck cranes.
1910.181 Derricks.
1910.182 Effective dates.
1910.183 Helicopters.
1910.184 Slings.
1910.189 Sources of standards.
1910.190 Standards organizations.

SUBPART O—MACHINERY AND MACHINE GUARDING

1910.211 Definitions.
1910.212 General requirements for all machines.
1910.213 Woodworking machinery requirements.
1910.214 Cooperage machinery.
1910.215 Abrasive wheel machinery.
1910.216 Mills and calenders in the rubber and plastics industries.
1910.217 Mechanical power presses.
1910.218 Forging machines.
1910.219 Mechanical power-transmission apparatus.
1910.220 Effective dates.
1910.221 Sources of standards.
1910.222 Standards organizations.

SUBPART P—HAND AND PORTABLE POWERED TOOLS AND OTHER HAND-HELD EQUIPMENT

1910.241 Definitions.
1910.242 Hand and portable powered tools and equipment, general.
1910.243 Guarding of portable powered tools.
1910.244 Other portable tools and equipment.
1910.245 Effective dates.
1910.246 Sources of standards.
1910.247 Standards organizations.

SUBPART Q—WELDING, CUTTING AND BRAZING

1910.251 Definitions.
1910.252 Welding, cutting and brazing.
1910.253 Sources of standards.
1910.254 Standards organizations.

SUBPART R—SPECIAL INDUSTRIES

1910.261 Pulp, paper, and paperboard mills.
1910.262 Textiles.
1910.263 Bakery equipment.
1910.264 Laundry machinery and operations.
1910.265 Sawmills.
1910.266 Pulpwood logging.
1910.267 Agricultural operations.
1910.268 Telecommunications.
1910.272 Grain handling facilities.
1910.274 Sources of standards.
1910.275 Standards organizations.

SUBPART S—ELECTRICAL

1910.301 Introduction
1910.302 Electric utilization systems

1910.303 General requirements
1910.304 Wiring design and protection
1910.305 Wiring methods, components, and equipment for general use
1910.306 Specific purpose equipment and installations
1910.307 Hazardous (classified) locations
1910.308 Special systems
1910.309
1910.330 [Reserved] Safety-Related Work practices
1910.331
360 [Reserved] Safety-Related Maintenance Requirements
1910.361
380 [Reserved] Safety Requirements for Special Equipment
1910.381
398 [Reserved] Definitions
1910.399 Definitions applicable to this subpart
Appendices A–C

Subpart T—Commercial Diving Operations

1910.401 Scope and application.
1910.401 Definitions.
1910.410 Qualifications of dive team.
1910.411 Medical requirements.
1910.420 Safe practice manual.
1910.421 Pre-dive procedures.
1910.422 Procedures during dive.
1910.423 Post-dive procedures.
1910.424 SCUBA diving
1910.425 Surface-supplied air diving.
1910.426 Mixed-gas diving.
1910.427 Liveboating.
1910.430 Equipment.
1910.440 Recordkeeping requirements.
1910.441 Effective date.
Appendix A
Subpart U–Y [Reserved]

SUBPART Z—TOXIC AND HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES

1910.1000 Air Contaminants.
1910.1001 Asbestos tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite
1910.1002 Coal tar pitch volatiles; interpretation of term.
1910.1003 4-Nitrobiphenyl.
1910.1004 alpha-Naphthylamine.
1910.1005 4, 4'-Methylene bis(2-chloroaniline).
1910.1006 Methyl chloromethyl ether
1910.1007 3, 3'-Dichlorobenzine (and its salts)
1910.1008 bis-Chloromethyl ether.
1910.1009 beta-Naphthylamine.
1910.1010 Benzidine.
1910.1011 4-Aminodiphenyl.
1910.1012 Ethyleneimine.
1910.1013 beta-Propiolactone.
1910.1014 2-Acetylaminofluorene.
1910.1015 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzine.

1910.1016	N-Nitrosodimethylamine.
1910.1017	Vinyl Chloride.
1910.1018	Inorganic arsenic.
1910.1025	Lead.
1910.1028	Benzene.
1910.1029	Coke Oven Emissions
1910.1043	Cotton dust.
1910.1044	1,2 - dibromo - 3 - chloropropane.
1910.1045	Acrylonitrile.
1910.1047	Ethylene Oxide
1910.1048	Formaldehyde
1910.1011	Asbestos
1910.1200	Hazard communication.

AUTHORITY: The provisions of this Part 1910 issued under secs. 6(a), 8(g), 84 Stat. 1593, 1598; 29 U.S.C. 655, 657.

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART A—GENERAL

1910.1 Purpose and scope.
1910.2 Definitions.
1910.3 Petitions for the issuance, amendment, or repeal of a standard.
1910.4 Amendments to this part.
1910.5 Applicability of standards.
1910.6 Incorporation by reference.
1910.7 Definition and requirements for a nationally recognized testing laboratory.

Authority: Secs. 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Sec. 107, Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (Construction Safety Act) (40 U.S.C. 333); Sec. 41, Longshoremen's and Harbor Workers' Compensation Act (33 U.S.C. 941); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12–71 (36 FR 8754), 8–76 (41 FR 25059), or 9–83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable.

Sections 1910.6(a) and 1910.7 also issued under 29 CFR Part 1911.

[53 F.R. 12120, April 12, 1988]

SUBPART A—GENERAL

1910.1—PURPOSE AND SCOPE

(a) Section 6(a) of the Williams-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (84 Stat. 1593) provides that "without regard to chapter 5 of title 5, United States Code, or to the other subsections of this section, the Secretary shall, as soon as practicable during the period beginning with the effective date of this Act and ending 2 years after such date, by rule promulgate as an occupational safety or health standard any national consensus standard, and any established Federal standard, unless he determines that the promulgation of such a standard would not result in improved safety or health for specifically designated employees." The legislative purpose of this provision is to establish, as rapidly as possible and without regard to the rule-making provisions of the Administrative Procedure Act, standards with which industries are generally familiar, and on whose adoption interested and affected persons have already had an opportunity to express their views. Such standards are either (1) national concensus standards on whose adoption affected persons have reached substantial agreement, or (2) Federal standards already established by Federal statutes or regulations.

(b) This part carries out the directive to the Secretary of Labor under section 6(a) of the Act. It contains occupational safety and health standards which have been found to be national consensus standards or established Federal standards.

1910.2—DEFINITIONS

As used in this part, unless the context clearly requires otherwise:

(a) "Act" means the Williams-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (84 Stat. 1590).

(b) "Assistant Secretary of Labor" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health;

(c) "Employer" means a person engaged in a business affecting commerce who has employees, but does not include the United States or any State or political subdivision of a State;

(d) "Employee" means an employee of an employer who is employed in a business of his employer which affects commerce;

(e) "Commerce" means trade, traffic, commerce, transportation, or communication among the several States, or between a State and any place outside thereof, or within the District of Columbia, or a possession of the United States (other than the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands), or between points in the same State but through a point outside thereof;

(f) "Standard" means a standard which requires conditions, or the adoption or use of one or more practices, means, methods, operations, or processes, reasonably necessary or appropriate to provide safe or healthful employment and places of employment;

(g) "National consensus standard" means any standard or modification thereof which (1) has been adopted and promulgated by a nationally recognized standards-producing organization under procedures whereby it can be determined by the Secretary of Labor or by the Assistant Secretary of Labor that persons interested and affected by the scope or provisions of the standard have reached substantial agreement on its adoption, (2) was formulated in a manner which afforded an opportunity for diverse views to be considered, and (3) has been designated as such a standard by the Secretary or the Assistant Secretary, after consultation with other appropriate Federal agencies; and

(h) "Established Federal standard" means any operative standard established by any agency of the United States and in effect on April 28, 1971, or contained in any Act of Congress in force on the date of enactment of the Williams-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act.

1910.3—PETITIONS FOR THE ISSUANCE, AMENDMENT, OR REPEAL OF A STANDARD

(a) Any interested person may petition in writing the Assistant Secretary of Labor to promulgate, modify, or revoke a standard. The petition should set forth the terms or the substance of the rule desired, the effects thereof if promulgated, and the reasons therefor.

(b)

(1) The relevant legislative history of the Act indicates congressional recognition of the American National Standards Institute and the National Fire Protection Association as the major sources of national consensus standards. National consensus standards adopted on May 29, 1971, pursuant to section 6(a) of the Act are from those two sources. However, any organization which deems itself a producer of national consensus standards, within the meaning of section 3(9) of the Act, is invited to submit in writing to the Assistant Secretary of Labor at any time prior to February 1, 1973, all relevant information which may enable the Assistant Secretary to determine whether any of its standards satisfy the requirements of the definition of "national consensus standard" in section 3(9) of the Act.

(2) Within a reasonable time after the receipt of a submission pursuant to subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, the Assistant Secretary of Labor shall publish or cause to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice of such submission, and shall afford interested persons a reasonable opportunity to present written data, views, or arguments with regard to the question whether any standards of the organization making the submission are national consensus standards.

1910.4—AMENDMENTS TO THIS PART

(a) The Assistant Secretary of Labor shall have all of the authority of the Secretary of Labor under §§ 3(9) and 6(a) of the Act.

(b) The Assistant Secretary of Labor may at any time before April 28, 1973, on his own motion or upon the written petition of any person, by rule promulgate as a standard any national consensus standard and any established Federal standard, pursuant to and in accordance with section 6(a) of the Act, and, in addition, may modify or revoke any standard in this Part 1910. In the event of conflict among any such standards, the Assistant Secretary of Labor shall take the action necessary to eliminate the conflict, including the revocation or modification of a standard in this part, so as to assure the greatest protection of the safety or health of the affected employees.

1910.5—APPLICABILITY OF STANDARDS

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, the standards contained in this part shall apply with respect to employments performed in a workplace in a State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, Wake Island, Outer Continental Shelf Lands defined in the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act, Johnston Island, and the Canal Zone.

(b) None of the standards in this part shall apply to working conditions of employees with respect to which Federal agencies other than the Department of Labor, or State agencies acting under section 274 of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended (42 U.S.C. 2021), exercise statutory authority to prescribe or enforce standards or regulations affecting occupational safety or health.

(c)

(1) If a particular standard is specifically applicable to a condition, practice, means, method, operation, or process, it shall prevail over any different general standard which might otherwise be applicable to the same condition, practice, means, method, operation, or process. For example, § 1501.23(c)(3) of this title prescribes personal protective equipment for certain ship repairmen working in specified areas. Such a standard shall apply, and shall not be deemed modified nor superseded by any different general standard whose provisions might otherwise be applicable, to the ship repairmen working in the areas specified in § 1915.23(c)(3).

(2) On the other hand, any standard shall apply according to its terms to any employment and place of employment in any industry, even though particular standards are also prescribed for the industry, as in Subpart B or Subpart R of this part, to the extent that none of such particular standards applies. To illustrate, the general standard regarding noise exposure in § 1910.95 applies to employments and places of employment in pulp, paper, and paperboard mills covered in § 1910.261.

(d) In the event a standard protects on its face a class of persons larger than employees, the standard shall be applicable under this part only to employees and their employment and places of employment.

(e) [Reserved]

(f) An employer who is in compliance with any standard in this part shall be deemed to be in compliance with the requirement of section 5(a)(1) of the Act, but only to the extent of the condition, practice, means, method, operation, or process covered by the standard.

1910.6—INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

(a) The standards of agencies of the U.S. Government, and organizations which are not agencies of the U.S. Government which are incorporated by reference in this Part, have the same force and effect as other standards in this Part. Only the mandatory provisions (i.e., provisions containing the word "shall" or other mandatory language) of standards incorporated by reference are adopted as standards under the Occupational Safety and Health Act.

(b) Copies of the standards which are incorporated by reference may be examined at the national office of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, D.C. 20210, or at any of its regional offices. Copies of such private standards may be obtained from the issuing organizations. Their names and addresses are listed in the pertinent subparts of this part.

(c) Any changes in the standards incorporated by reference in this part and an official historic file of such changes are available for inspection at the national office of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, D.C. 20210.

§ 1910.7—DEFINITION AND REQUIREMENTS FOR A NATIONALLY RECOGNIZED TESTING LABORATORY

(a) Application. This section shall apply only when the term "nationally recognized testing laboratory" is used in other sections of this Part.

(b) Laboratory requirements. The term "nationally recognized testing laboratory" (NRTL) means an organization which is recognized by OSHA in accordance with Appendix A of this section and which tests for safety, and lists or labels or accepts, equipment or materials and which meets all of the following criteria:

(1) For each specified item of equipment or material to be listed, labeled or accepted, the NRTL has the capability (including proper testing equipment and facilities, trained staff, written testing procedures, and calibration and quality control programs) to perform:

(i) Testing and examining equipment and materials for workplace safety purposes to determine conformance with appropraite test standards; or

(ii) Experimental testing and examining of equipment and materials for workplace safety purposes to determine conformance with appropriate test standards or performance in a specified manner.

(2) The NRTL shall provide, to the extent needed for the particular equipment or materials listed, labeled, or accepted, the following controls or services:

(i) Implements control procedures for identifying the listed and labeled equipment or materials;

(ii) Inspects the run of production of such items at factories for product evaluation purposes to assure conformance with the test standards; and

(iii) Conducts field inspections to monitor and to assure the proper use of its identifying mark or labels on products;

(3) The NRTL is completely independent of employers subject to the tested equipment requirements, and of any manufacturers or vendors of equipment or materials being tested for these purposes; and,

(4) The NRTL maintains effective procedures for:

(i) Producing creditable findings or reports that are objective and without bias; and

(ii) Handling complaints and disputes under a fair and reasonable system.

(c) Test standards. An "appropriate test standard" referred to in § 1910.7(b)(1)(i) and (ii) is a document which specifies the safety requirements for specific equipment or class of equipment and is:

(1) Recognized in the United States as a safety standard providing an adequate level of safety, and

(2) Compatible with and maintained current with periodic revisions of applicable national codes and installation standards, and

(3) Developed by a standards developing organization under a method providing for input and consideration of views of industry groups, experts, users, consumers, governmental authorities, and others having broad experience in the safety field involved, or

(4) In lieu of paragraphs (c)(1), (2), and (3), the standard is currently designated as an American National Standards Institute (ANSI) safety-designated product standard or an American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) test standard used for evaluation of products or materials.

(d) Alternative test standard. If a testing laboratory desires to use a test standard other than one allowed under paragraph (c) of this section, then the Assistant Secretary of Labor shall evaluate the proposed standard to determine that it provides an adequate level of safety before it is used.

(e) Implementation. A testing organization desiring recognition by OSHA as an NRTL shall request that OSHA evaluate its testing and control programs against the requirements in this section for any equipment or material it may specify. The recognition procedure shall be conducted in accordance with Appendix A to this section.

APPENDIX A

1910.7—OSHA RECOGNITION PROCESS FOR NATIONALLY RECOGNIZED TESTING LABORATORIES

Introduction

This Appendix provides requirements and criteria which OSHA will use to evaluate and recognize a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL). This process will include the evaluation of the product evaluation and control programs being operated by the NRTL, as well as the NRTL's testing facilities being used in its program. In the evaluation of the NRTLs, OSHA will use either consensus-based standards currently in use nationally, or other standards or criteria which may be considered appropriate. This Appendix implements the definition of NRTL in 29 CFR 1910.7 which sets out the criteria that a laboratory must meet to be recognized by OSHA (initially and on a continuing basis). The Appendix is broader in scope, providing procedures for renewal, expansion and revocation of OSHA recognition. Except as otherwise provided, the burden is on the applicant to establish by a preponderance of the evidence that it is entitled to recognition as an NRTL. If further detailing of these requirements and criteria will assist the NRTLs or OSHA in this activity, this detailing will be done through appropriate OSHA Program Directives.

I. Procedures for Initial OSHA Recognition.

A. Applications.

1. *Eligibility.* a. Any testing agency or organization considering itself to meet the definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory as specified in § 1910.7 may apply for OSHA recognition as an NRTL.

b. However, in determining eligibility for a foreign-based testing agency or organization, OSHA shall take into consideration the policy of the foreign government regarding both the acceptance in that country of testing data, equipment acceptances, and listings, and labeling, which are provided through nationally recognized testing laboratories recognized by the Assistant Secretary, and the accessibility to government recognition or a similar system in that country by U.S.-based safety-related testing agencies, whether recognized by the Assistant Secretary or not, if such recognition or a similar system is required by that country.

2. *Content of application.* a. The applicant shall provide sufficient information and detail demonstrating that it meets the requirements set forth in § 1910.7, in order for an informed decision concerning recognition to be made by the Assistant Secretary.

b. The applicant also shall identify the scope of the NRTL-related activity for which the applicant wishes to be recognized. This will include identifying the testing methods it will use to test or judge the specific equipment and materials for which recognition is being requested, unless such test methods are already specified in the test standard. If requested to do so by OSHA, the applicant shall provide documentation of the efficacy of these testing methods.

c. The applicant may include whatever enclosures, attachments, or exhibits the applicant deems appropriate. The application need not be submitted on a Federal form.

3. *Filing office location.* The application shall be filed with: NRTL Recognition Program, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, 200 Constitution Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20210.

4. *Amendments and withdrawals.* a. An application may be revised by an applicant at any time prior to the completion of activity under paragraph I.B.4. of this Appendix.

b. An application may be withdrawn by an applicant, without prejudice, at any time prior to the final decision by the Assistant Secretary in paragraph I.B.7.c. of this Appendix.

B. Review and Decision Process; Issuance or Renewal.

1. *Acceptance and on-site review.* a. Applications submitted by eligible testing agencies will be accepted by OSHA, and their receipt acknowledged in writing. After receipt of an application, OSHA may request additional information if it believes information relevant to the requirements for recognition has been omitted.

b. OSHA shall, as necessary, conduct an on-site review of the testing facilities of the applicant, as well as the applicant's administrative and technical practices, and, if necessary, review any additional documentation underlying the application.

c. These on-site reviews will be conducted by qualified individuals technically expert in these matters, including, as appropriate, non-Federal consultants/contractors acceptable to OSHA. The protocol for each review will be based on appropriate national consensus standards or international guides, with such additions, changes, or deletions as may be considered necessary and appropriate in each case by OSHA. A written report shall be made for each on-site review and a copy shall be provided to the applicant.

2. *Positive finding by staff.* If, after review of the application, and additional information, and the on-site review report, the applicant appears to have met the requirements for recognition, a written recommendation shall be submitted by the responsible OSHA personnel to the Assistant Secretary that the application be approved, accompanied by a supporting explanation.

3. *Negative finding by staff.*—a. *Notification to applicant.* If, after review of the application, any additional information and the on-site review report, the applicant does not appear to have met the requirements for recognition, the responsible OSHA personnel shall notify the applicant in writing, listing the specific requirements of § 1910.7 and this Appendix which

the applicant has not met, and allow a reasonable period for response.

b. *Revision of application.* (i) After receipt of a notification of negative finding (i.e., for intended disapproval of the application), and within the response period provided, the applicant may:

(a) Submit a revised application for further review, which could result in a positive finding by the responsible OSHA personnel pursuant to subsection I.B.2. of this Appendix; or

(b) Request that the original application be submitted to the Assistant Secretary with an attached statement of reasons, supplied by the applicant of why the application should be aproved.

(ii) This procedure for applicant notification and potential revision shall be used only once during each recognition process.

4. *Preliminary finding by Assistant Secretary.* a. The Assistant Secretary, or a special designee for this purpose, will make a preliminary finding as to whether the applicant has or has not met the requirements for recognition, based on the completed application file, the written staff recommendation, and the statement of reasons supplied by the applicant if there remains a staff recommendation of disapproval.

b. Notification of this preliminary finding will be sent to the applicant and subsequently published in the **Federal Register**.

c. This preliminary finding shall not be considered an official decision by the Assistant Secretary or OSHA, and does not confer any change in status or any interim or temporary recognition for the applicant.

5. *Public review and comment period.*—a. The **Federal Register** notice of preliminary finding will provide a period of not less than 60 calendar days for written comments on the applicant's fulfillment of the requirements for recognition. The application, supporting documents, staff recommendation, statement of applicant's reasons, and any comments received, will be available for public inspection in the OSHA Docket Office.

b. Any member of the public, including the applicant, may supply detailed reasons and evidence supporting or challenging the sufficiency of the applicant's having met the requirements of the definition of 29 CFR § 1910.7 and this Appendix. Submission of pertinent documents and exhibits shall be made in writing by the close of the comment period.

6. *Action after public comment.*—a. *Final decision by Assistant Secretary.* Where the public review and comment record supports the Assistant Secretary's preliminary finding concerning the application, i.e., absent any serious objections or substantive claims contrary to the preliminary finding having been received in writing from the public during the comment period, the Assistant Secretary will proceed to final written decision on the application. The reasons supporting this decision shall be derived from the evidence available as a result of the full application, the supporting documentation, the staff finding, and the written comments and evidence presented during the public review and comment period.

b. *Public announcement.* A copy of the Assistant Secretary's final decision will be provided to the applicant. Subsequently, a notification of the final decision shall be published in the **Federal Register.** The publication date will be the effective date of the recognition.

c. *Review of final decision.* There will be no further review activity available within the Department of Labor from the final decision of the Assistant Secretary.

7. *Action after public objection*—a. *Review of negative information.* At the discretion of the Assistant Secretary or his designee, OSHA may authorize Federal or contract personnel to initiate a special review of any information provided in the public comment record which appears to require resolution, before a final decision can be made.

b. *Supplementation of record.* The contents and results of special reviews will be made part of this record by the Assistant Secretary by either:

(i) Reopening the written comment period for public comments on these reviews; or

(ii) Convening an informal hearing to accept public comments on these reviews, conducted under applicable OSHA procedures for similar hearings.

c. *Final decision by the Assistant Secretary.* The Assistant Secretary shall issue a decision as to whether it has been demonstrated, based on a preponderance of the evidence, that the applicant meets the requirements for recognition. The reasons supporting this decision shall be derived from the evidence available as a result of the full application, the supporting documentation, the staff finding, the comments and evidence presented during the public review and comment period, and written to transcribed evidence received during any subsequent reopening of the written comment period or informal public hearing held.

d. *Public announcement.* A copy of the Assistant Secretary's final decision will be provided to the applicant, and a notification will be published in the **Federal Register** subsequently announcing the decision.

e. *Review of final decision.* There will be no further review activity available within the Department of Labor from the final decision of the Assistant Secretary.

c. *Terms and conditions of recognition.* The following terms and conditions shall be part of every recognition:

1. *Letter of recognition.* The recognition by OSHA of any NRTL will be evidenced by a letter of recognition from OSHA. The letter will provide the specific details of the scope of the OSHA recognition, including the specific equipment or materials for which OSHA recognition has been granted, as well as any specific conditions imposed by OSHA.

2. *Period of recognition.* The recognition by OSHA of each NRTL will be valid for five years, unless terminated before the expiration of the period. The dates of the period of recognition will be stated in the recognition letter.

3. *Constancy in operations.* The recognized NRTL shall continue to satisfy all the requirements or limitations in the letter of recognition during the period of recognition.

4. *Accurate publicity.* The OSHA-recognized NRTL shall not engage in or permit others to engage in misrepresentation of the scope or conditions of its recognition.

5. *Temporary Recognition of Certain NRTLs.* a. Notwithstanding all other requirements and provisions of § 1910.7 and this Appendix, the following two organizations are recognized temporarily as nationally recognized testing laboratories by the Assistant Secretary for a period of five years beginning June 13, 1988 and ending on July 13, 1993:

(i) Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, Illinois 60062.

(ii) Factory Mutual Research Corporation, 1151 Boston-Providence Turnpike, Norwood, Massachusetts 02062.

b. At the end of the five-year period, the two temporarily recognized laboratories shall apply for renewal of OSHA recognition utilizing the following procedures established for renewal of OSHA recognition.

II. Supplementary Procedures.
A. Test standard changes.

A recognized NRTL may change a testing standard or elements incorporated in the standard such as testing methods or pass-fail criteria by notifying the Assistant Secretary of the change, certifying that the revised standard will be at least as effective as the prior standard, and providing the supporting data upon which its conclusions are based. The NRTL need not inform the Assistant Secretary of minor deviations from a test standard such as the use of new instrumentation that is more accurate or sensitive than originally called for in the standard. The NRTL also need not inform the Assistant Secretary of its adoption of revisions to third-party testing standards meeting the requirements of § 1910.7(c)(4), if such revisions have been developed by the standards developing organization, or of its adoption of revisions to other third-party test standards which the developing organization has submitted to OSHA. If, upon review, the Assistant Secretary or his designee determines that the proposed revised standard is not "substantially equivalent" to the previous version with regard to the level of safety obtained, OSHA will not accept the proposed testing standard by the recognized NRTL, and will initiate discontinuance of that aspect of OSHA-recognized activity by the NRTL by modification of the official letter of recognition. OSHA will publicly announce this action and the NRTL will be required to communicate this OSHA decision directly to affected manufacturers.

B. Expansion of current recognition

1. *Eligibility.* A recognized NRTL may apply to OSHA for an expansion of its current recognition to cover other categories of NRTL testing in addition to those included in the current recognition.

2. *Procedure.* a. The application for expansion will be acted upon and processed by OSHA in accordance with subsection I.B. of this Appendix.

b. In that process, OSHA may decide not to conduct an onsite review, where the substantive scope of the request to expand recognition is closely related to the current area of recognition.

c. The expiration date for each expansion of recognition shall coincide with the expiration date of the current basic recognition period.

C. Renewal of OSHA recognition

1. *Eligibility.* A recognized NRTL may renew its recognition by filing a renewal request at the address in paragraph I.A.3. of this Appendix not less than nine months, nor more than one year, before the expiration date of its current recognition.

2. *Procedure.* a. The renewal request will be processed in accordance with subsection I.B. of this Appendix.

b. In that process, OSHA may determine not to conduct the on-site reviews in I.B.1a. where appropriate.

c. When a recognized NRTL has filed a timely and sufficient renewal request, its current recognition will not expire until a final decision has been made by OSHA on the request.

d. After the first renewal has been granted to the NRTL, the NRTL shall apply for a continuation of its recognition status every five years by submitting a renewal request. In lieu of submitting a renewal request after the initial renewal, the NRTL may certify its continuing compliance with the terms of its letter of recognition and 29 CFR 1910.7.

3. *Alternative procedure.* After the initial recognition and before the expiration thereof, OSHA may (for good cause) determine that there is a sufficient basis to dispense with the renewal requirement for a given laboratory and will so notify the laboratory of such a determination in writing. In lieu of submitting a renewal request, any laboratory so notified shall certify its continuing compliance with the terms of its letter of recognition and 29 CFR 1910.7

D. Voluntary termination of recognition.

At any time, a recognized NRTL may voluntarily terminate its recognition, either in its entirety or with respect to any area covered in its recognition, by giving written notice to OSHA. The written notice shall state the date as of which the termination is to take effect. The Assistant Secretary shall inform the public of any voluntary termination by **Federal Register** notice.

E. Revocation of recognition by OSHA.

1. *Potential causes.* If an NRTL either has failed to continue to substantially satisfy the requirements of § 1910.7 or this Appendix, or has not been reasonably performing the NRTL testing requirements encompassed within its letter of recognition, or has materially misrepresented itself in its applications or misrepresented the scope or conditions of its recognition, the Assistant Secretary may revoke the recognition of a recognized NRTL, in whole or in part. OSHA may initiate revocation procedures on the basis of information provided by any interested person.

2. *Procedure.* a. Before proposing to revoke recognition, the Agency will notify the recognized NRTL in writing, giving it the opportunity to rebut or correct the alleged deficiencies which would form the basis of the proposed revocation, within a reasonable period.

b. If the alleged deficiencies are not corrected or reconciled within a reasonable period, OSHA will propose, in writing to the recognized NRTL, to revoke recognition. If deemed appropriate, no other announcement need be made by OSHA.

c. The revocation shall be effective in 60 days unless within that period the recognized NRTL corrects the deficiencies or requests a hearing in writing.

d. If a hearing is requested, it shall be held before an administrative law judge of the Department of Labor pursuant to the rules specified in 29 CFR Part 1905, Subpart C.

e. The parties shall be OSHA and the recognized NRTL. The Assistant Secretary may allow other interested persons to participate in these hearings if such participation would contribute to the resolution of issues germane to the proceeding and not cause undue delay.

f. The burden of proof shall be on OSHA to demonstrate by a preponderance of the evidence that the recognition should be revoked because the NRTL is not meeting the requirements for recognition, has not been reasonably performing the product testing functions as required by § 1910.7, this Appendix A, or the letter of recognition, or has materially misrepresented itself in its applications or publicity.

3. *Final decision*. a. After the hearing, the Administrative Law Judge shall issue a decision stating the reasons based on the record as to whether it has been demonstrated, based on a preponderance of evidence, that the applicant does not continue to meet the requirements for its current recognition.

b. Upon issuance of the decision, any party to the hearing may file exceptions within 20 days pursuant to 29 CFR 1905.28. If no exceptions are filed, this decision is the final decision of the Assistant Secretary. If objections are filed, the Administrative Law Judge shall forward the decision, exceptions and record to the Assistant Secretary for the final decision on the proposed revocation.

c. The Assistant Secretary will review the record, the decision by the Administrative Law Judge, and the exceptions filed. Based on this, the Assistant Secretary shall issue the final decision as to whether it has been demonstrated, by a preponderance of evidence, that the recognized NRTL has not continued to meet the requirements for OSHA recognition. If the Assistant Secretary finds that the NRTL does not meet the NRTL recognition requirements, the recognition will be revoked.

4. *Public announcement*. A copy of the Assistant Secretary's final decision will be provided to the applicant, and a notification will be published in the **Federal Register** announcing the decision, and the availability of the complete record of this proceeding at OSHA. The effective date of any revocation will be the date the final decision copy is sent to the NRTL.

5. *Review of final decision*. There will be no further review activity available within the Department of Labor from the final decision of the Assistant Secretary.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under Control Number 1218–0147)

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART B—ADOPTION AND EXTENSION OF ESTABLISHED FEDERAL STANDARDS

1910.11 Scope and purpose.
1910.12 Construction work.
1910.13 Ship repairing.
1910.14 Shipbuilding.
1910.15 Shipbreaking.
1910.16 Longshoring.
1910.17 Effective dates
1910.18 Changes in established Federal standards.
1910.19 Special provisions for air contaminants.

Authority: Secs. 4, 6 and 8 of the Occupational Safety and Health Act, 29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657: Walsh-Healey Act, 29 U.S.C. 35 *et seq:* Service Contract Act of 1965. 41 U.S.C. 351 *et seq:* Pub. L. 91-54, 40 U.S.C. 333; Pub. L. 85-742, 33 U.S.C. 941; National

[52 F.R. 46291, December 4, 1987]

SUBPART B—ADOPTION AND EXTENSION OF ESTABLISHED FEDERAL STANDARDS

1910.11—SCOPE AND PURPOSE

(a) The provisions of this Subpart B adopt and extend the applicability of, established Federal standards in effect on April 28, 1971, with respect to every employer, employee, and employment covered by the Act.

(b) It bears emphasis that only standards (i.e., substantive rules) relating to safety or health are adopted by any incorporations by reference of standards prescribed elsewhere in this chapter or this title. Other materials contained in the referenced parties are not adopted. Illustrations of the types of materials which are not adopted are these. The incorporations by reference of Parts 1915, 1916, 1917, 1918 in §§ 1910.13, 1910.14, 1910.15, and 1910.16 are not intended to include the discussion in those parts of the coverage of the Longshoremen's and Harbor Workers' Compensation Act or the penalty provisions of the Act. Similarly, the incorporation by reference of Part 1926 in § 1910.12 is not intended to include references to interpretative rules having relevance to the application of the Construction Safety Act, but having no relevance to the application to the Occupational Safety and Health Act.

[37 F.R. 26008, December 7, 1972.]

1910.12—CONSTRUCTION WORK

(a) Standards.

The standards prescribed in Part 1926 of this chapter are adopted as occupational safety and health standards under section 6 of the Act and shall apply, according to the provisions thereof, to every employment and place of employment of every employee engaged in construction work. Each employer shall protect the employment and places of employment of each of his employees engaged in construction work by complying with the appropriate standards prescribed in this paragraph.

(b) Definition.

For purposes of this section, "construction work" means work for construction, alteration, and/or repair, including painting and decorating. See discussion of these terms in § 1926.13 of this title.

(c) Construction Safety Act distinguished.

This section adopts as occupational safety and health standards under section 6 of the Act the standards which are prescribed in Part 1926 of this chapter. Thus, the standards (substantive rules) published in Subpart C and the following subparts of Part 1926 of this chapter are applied. This section does not incorporate Subparts A and B of Part 1926 of this chapter. Subparts A and B have pertinence only to the application of section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (the Construction Safety Act). For example, the interpretation of the term "subcontractor" in paragraph (c) of § 1926.13 of this chapter is significant in discerning the coverage of the Construction Safety Act and duties thereunder. However, the term "subcontractor" has no significance in the application of the Act, which was enacted under the Commerce Clause and which establishes duties for "employers" which are not dependent for their application upon any contractual relationship with the Federal Government or upon any form of Federal financial assistance.

(d) For the purposes of this part, to the extent that it may not already be included in paragraph (b) of this section, "construction work" includes the erection of new electric transmission and distribution lines and equipment, and the alteration, conversion, and improvement of the existing transmission and distribution lines and equipment.

[37 F.R. 24880, November 23, 1972.]

1910.13—SHIP REPAIRING

(a) Adoption and extension of established safety and health standards for ship repairing.

The standards prescribed by Part 1501 of this title and in effect on April 28, 1971, are adopted as occupational safety or health standards under section 6(a) of the Act and shall apply, according to the provisions thereof, to every employment and place of employment of every employee engaged in ship repair or a related employment. Each employer shall protect the employment and places of employment of each of his employees engaged in ship repair or a related employment, by complying with the appropriate standards prescribed by this paragraph.

(b) Definitions.

For purposes of this section:

(1) "Ship repair" means any repair of a vessel, including, but not restricted to, alterations, conversions, installations, cleaning, painting, and maintenance work;

(2) "Related employment" means any employment performed as an incident to, or in conjunction with, ship repair work, including, but not restricted to, inspection, testing, and employment as a watchman; and

(3) "Vessel" includes every description of watercraft or other artificial contrivance used, or capable of being used, as a means of transportation on water, including special purpose floating structures not primarily designed for, or used as a means of, transportation on water.

1910.14—SHIPBUILDING

(a) Adoption and extension of established safety and health standards for shipbuilding.

The standards prescribed by Part 1502 of this title and in effect on April 28, 1971, are adopted as occupational safety or health standards under section 6(a) of the Act and shall apply, according to the provisions thereof, to every employment and place of employment of every employee engaged in shipbuilding or a related employment. Each employer shall protect the employment and places of employment of each of his employees engaged in shipbuilding or a related employment, by complying with the appropriate standards prescribed by this paragraph.

(b) Definitions.

For purposes of this section:

(1) "Shipbuilding" means the construction of a vessel, including the installation of machinery and equipment;

(2) "Related employment" means any employment performed as an incident to, or in conjunction with, shipbuilding work, including, but not restricted to, inspection, testing trials, and employment as a watchman; and

(3) "Vessel" includes every description of watercraft or other artificial contrivance used, or capable of being used, as a means of transportation on water, including special purpose floating structures not primarily designed for, or used as a means of, transportation on water.

1910.15—SHIPBREAKING

(a) Adoption and extension of established safety and health standards for shipbreaking.

The standards prescribed by Part 1503 of this title and in effect on April 28, 1971, are adopted as occupational safety or health standards under section 6(a) of the Act and shall apply, according to the provisions thereof, to every employment and place of employment of every employee engaged in shipbreaking or a related employment. Each employer shall protect the employment and places of employment of each of his employees engaged in shipbreaking or a related employment, by complying with the appropriate standards prescribed by this paragraph.

(b) Definitions.

For purposes of this section:

(1) "Shipbreaking" means any breaking down of a vessel's structure for the purpose of scrapping the vessel, including the removal of gear, equipment, or any component part of a vessel;

(2) "Related employment" means any employment performed as an incident to, or in conjunction with, shipbreaking work, including, but not restricted to, inspection, survey, and employment as a watchman; and

(3) "Vessel" includes every description of watercraft or other artificial contrivance used, or capable of being used, as a means of transportation on water, including special purpose floating structures not primarily designed for, or used as a means of, transportation on water.

1910.16 Longshoring and marine terminals

(a) Adoption and extension of safety and health standards for longshoring. The standards prescribed by Part 1918, Subparts A through J of this title and in effect on April 28, 1971 are adopted as occupational safety and health standards to any employment and place of employment of every employee engaged in longshoring operations or a related employment aboard a vessel on the navigable waters of the United States.

(b) Safety and health standards for marine terminals. Part 1917 of this title shall apply exclusively, according to the provisions thereof, to employment within a marine terminal, except as follows:

(1) The provisions of Part 1917 do not apply to the following:

(i) Facilities used solely for the bulk storage, handling and transfer of flammable and combustible liquids and gases.

(ii) Facilities subject to the regulations of the Office of Pipeline Safety Regulation of the Materials Transportation Bureau, Department of Transportation, to the extent such regulations apply to specific working conditions.

(iii) Fully automated bulk coal handling facilities contiguous to electrical power generating plants.

(2) Part 1910 does not apply to marine terminals except for the following:

(i) Electrical. Subpart S;

(ii) Toxic and hazardous substances. Subpart Z applies where specifically referenced in Part 1917 except that the requirements of Subpart Z do not apply when a substance or cargo is contained within a sealed, intact means of packaging or containment complying with Department of Transportation or International Maritime Organization requirements:

(iii) Noise. Subpart G, §1910.95;

(iv) Commercial diving operations. Subpart T;

(v) Safety requirements for scaffolding. Subpart D, §1910.28;

(vi) Abrasive blasting. Subpart G, §1910.94(a);

(vii) Access to employee exposure and medical records. Subpart C, §1910.20; and

(viii) Respiratory protection. Subpart I, §1910.134.

[48 F.R. 30908, July 5, 1983.]

(c) Definitions.

For purposes of this section:

(1) "Longshoring operation" means the loading, unloading, moving, or handling of, cargo, ship's stores, gear, etc., into, in, on, or out of any vessel;

(2) "Related employment" means any employment performed as an incident to or in conjunction with, longshoring operations including, but not restricted to, securing cargo, rigging, and employment as a porter, checker, or watchman; and

(3) "Vessel" includes every description of watercraft or other artificial contrivance used, or capable of being used, as a means of transportation on water, including special purpose floating structures not primarily designed for, or used as a means of, transportation on water.

(4) "Marine Terminal" means wharves, bulkheads, quays, piers, docks and other berthing locations and adjacent storage or contiguous areas and structures associated with the primary movements of cargo or materials from vessel to shore or shore to vessel including structures which are devoted to receiving, handling, holding, consolidation and loading or delivery of waterborne shipments and passengers, including areas devoted to the maintenance of the terminal or equipment. The term does not include production or manufacturing areas having their own docking facilities and located at a marine terminal nor does the term include storage facilities directly associated with those production or manufacturing areas.

1910.17—EFFECTIVE DATES

(a) Except as provided in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, the standards prescribed in this Subpart B shall be effective on August 27, 1971.

(1) To the extent that the standards prescribed in §1910.12 apply to light residential construction or to other construction work, as defined in §1910.12(b), which is not subject to the construction safety standards published in Part 1926 of this title, their application is delayed until September 27, 1971.

(2) For the purpose of subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, "light, residential construction" is limited to the construction of homes and apartments which do not exceed three stories in height, and which have no elevator.

(c) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, whenever any employment or place of employment is, or becomes, subject to any safety and health standard prescribed in Part 1915, 1916, 1917, 1918, or 1926 of this title on a date before August 27, 1971, by virtue of the Construction Safety Act or the Longshoremen's and Harbor Workers' Compensation Act, that occupational safety and health standard as incorporated by reference in this subpart shall also become effective under the Williams-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 on that date.

1910.18—CHANGES IN ESTABLISHED FEDERAL STANDARDS

Whenever an occupational safety and health standard adopted and incorporated by reference in this Subpart B is changed pursuant to section 6(b) of the Act and the statute under which the standard was originally promulgated, and in accordance with Part 1911 of this chapter, the standard shall be deemed changed for purposes of that statute and this Subpart B, and shall apply under this Subpart B. For the purposes of this section, a change in a standard includes any amendment, addition, or repeal, in whole or in part, of any standard.

1910.19 SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR AIR CONTAMINANTS

(a) Asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite dust. Section 1910.1001 or 1910.1101 shall apply to the exposure of every employee to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite dust in every employment and place of employment covered by §§ 1919.13, 1910.14, 1910.15 or 1910.16, in lieu of any different standard on exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite dust which would otherwise be applicable by virtue of any of those sections.

[51 F.R. 37004, October 17, 1986]

(b) Vinyl chloride. Section 1910.1017 shall apply to the exposure of every employee to vinyl chloride in every employment and place of employment covered by §§ 1910.12, 1910.13, 1910.14, 1910.15, or 1910.16, in lieu of any different standard on exposure to vinyl chloride which would otherwise be applicable by virtue of any of these sections.

(c) Acrylonitrile. Section 1910.1045 shall apply to the exposure of every employee to acrylonitrile in every employment and place of employment covered by §§ 1910.12, 1910.13, 1910.14, 1910.15, or 1910.16, in lieu of any different standard on exposure to acrylonitrile which would otherwise be applicable by virtue of any of these sections.

(d) Removed.

[46 F.R. 32022, June 19, 1981.]

(e) Inorganic arsenic. Section 1910.1018 shall apply to the exposure of every employee to inorganic arsenic in every employment covered by §§ 1910.12, 1910.13, 1910.14, 1910.15, or 1910.16, in lieu of any different standard on exposure to inorganic arsenic which would otherwise be applicable by virtue of any of those sections.

(f) Removed.

[50 F.R. 51173, Dec. 13, 1985]

(g) Lead. Section 1910.1025 shall apply to the exposure of every employee to lead in every employment and place of employment covered by §§ 1910.13, 1910.14, 1910.15, 1910.16, in lieu of any different standard on exposure to lead which would otherwise be applicable by virtue of those sections.

[43 F.R. 58097, November 14, 1978.]

(h) Ethylene oxide. Section 1910.1047 shall apply to the exposure of every employee to ethylene oxide in every employment and place of employment covered by section 1910.12, 1910.13, 1910.14, 1910.15, or 1910.16, in lieu of any different standard on exposure to ethylene oxide which would otherwise be applicable by virtue of those sections.

[49 F.R. 25796, June 22, 1984]

(i) Benzene. Section 1910.1028 shall apply to the exposure of every employee to benzene in every employment and place of employment covered by §§ 1910.12, 1910.13, 1910.14, 1910.15 or 1910.16 in lieu of any different standard on exposures to benzene which would otherwise be applicable by virtue of those sections.

[52 F.R. 34563, September 11, 1987]

(j) Formaldehyde. Section 1910.1048 shall apply to the exposure of every employee to formaldehyde in every employment and place of employment covered by § 1910.12, 1910.13, 1910.14, 1910.15 or 1910.16 in lieu of any different standard on exposure to formaldehyde which would otherwise be applicable by virtue of those sections.

[52 F.R. 46291, December 4, 1987]

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART C—GENERAL SAFETY AND HEALTH PROVISIONS

1910.20	Access to employee exposure and medical records

Authority: Section 8 of the Occupational Safety and Health Act, 29 U.S.C. 657; Secretary of Labor's Order No. 9–83 (48 FR 35736) and 29 CFR Part 1911.

[53 F.R. 38162, September 29, 1988]

1910.20—ACCESS TO EMPLOYEE EXPOSURE AND MEDICAL RECORDS

(a) Purpose. The purpose of this section is to provide employees and their designated representatives a right of access to relevant exposure and medical records; and to provide representatives of the Assistant Secretary a right of access to these records in order to fulfill responsibilities under the Occupational Safety and Health Act. Access by employees, their representatives, and the Assistant Secretary is necessary to yield both direct and indirect improvements in the detection, treatment, and prevention of occupational disease. Each employer is responsible for assuring compliance with this section, but the activities involved in complying with the access to medical records provisions can be carried out, on behalf of the employer, by the physician or other health care personnel in charge of employee medical records. Except as expressly provided, nothing in this section is intended to affect existing legal and ethical obligations concerning the maintenance and confidentiality of employee medical information, the duty to disclose information to a patient/employee or any other aspect of the medical-care relationship, or affect existing legal obligations concerning the protection of trade secret information.

(b) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to each general industry, maritime and construction employer who makes, maintains, contracts for, or has access to employee exposure or medical records, or analyses thereof, pertaining to employees exposed to toxic substances or harmful physical agents.

(2) This section applies to all employee exposure and medical records, and analyses thereof, of such employees, whether or not the records are mandated by specific occupational safety and health standards.

(3) This section applies to all employee exposure and medical records, and analyses thereof, made or maintained in any manner, including on an in-house of contractual (e.g., fee-for-service) basis. Each employer shall assure that the preservation and access requirements of this section are complied with regardless of the manner in which the records are made or maintained.

(c) Definitions.

(1) "Access" means the right and opportunity to examine and copy.

(2) "Analysis using exposure or medical records" means any compilation of data or any statistical study based at least in part on information collected from individual employee exposure or medical records or information collected from health insurance claims records, provided that either the analysis has been reported to the employer or no further work is currently being done by the person responsible for preparing the analysis.

(3) "Designated representative" means any individual or organization to whom an employee gives written authorization to exercise a right of access. For the purposes of access to employee exposure records and analyses using exposure or medical records, a recognized or certified collective bargaining agent shall be treated automatically as a designated representative without regard to written employee authorization.

(4) "Employee" means a current employee, a former employee, or an employee being assigned or transferred to work where there will be exposure to toxic substances or harmful physical agents. In the case of a deceased or legally incapacitated employee, the employee's legal representative may directly exercise all the employee's rights under this section.

(5) "Employee exposure record" means a record containing any of the following kinds of information:

(i) Environmental (workplace) monitoring or measuring of a toxic substance or harmful physical agent, including personal, area, grab, wipe, or other form of sampling, as well as related collection and analytical methodologies, calculations, and other background data relevant to interpretation of the results obtained;

(ii) Biological monitoring results which directly assess the absorption of a toxic substance or harmful physical agent by body systems (e.g., the level of a chemical in the blood, urine, breath, hair, fingernails, etc) but not including results which assess the biological effect of a substance or agent or which assess an employee's use of alcohol or drugs;

(iii) Material safety data sheets indicating that the material may pose a hazard to human health; or

(iv) In the absence of the above, a chemical inventory or any other record which reveals where and when used and the identity (e.g., chemical, common, or trade name) of a toxic substance or harmful physical agent.

(6)

(i) "Employee medical record" means a record concerning the health status of an employee which is made or maintained by a physician, nurse, or other health care personnel or technician, including:

(a) Medical and employment questionnaires or histories (including job description and occupational exposures),

(b) The results of medical examinations (pre-employment, preassignment, periodic, or episodic) and laboratory tests (including chest and other X-ray examinations taken for the purposes of establishing a base-line or detecting occupational illness, and all biological monitoring not defined as an "employee exposure record"),

(c) Medical opinions, diagnoses, progress notes, and recommendations,

(d) First aid records,

(e) Descriptions of treatments and prescriptions, and

(f) Employee medical complaints.

(ii) "Employee medical record" does not include medical information in the form of:

(a) Physical specimens (e.g., blood or urine samples) which are routinely discarded as a part of normal medical practice; or

(b) Records concerning health insurance claims if maintained separately from the employer's medical program and its records, and not accessible to the employer by employee name or other direct personal identifier (e.g., social security number, payroll number, etc.); or

(c) Records created solely in preparation for litigation which are privileged from discovery under the applicable rules of procedure or evidence; or

(d) Records concerning voluntary employee assistance programs (alcohol, drug abuse, or personal counseling programs) if maintained separately from the employer's medical program and its records.

(7) "Employer" means a current employer, a former employer, or a successor employer.

(8) "Exposure" or "exposed" means that an employee is subjected to a toxic substance or harmful physical agent in the course of employment through any route of entry (inhalation, ingestion, skin contact or absorption, etc.), and includes past exposure and potential (e.g., accidental or possible) exposure, but does not include situations where the employer can demonstrate that the toxic substance or harmful physical agent is not used, handled, stored, generated, or present in the workplace in any manner different from typical non-occupational situations.

(9) "Health professional" means a physician, occupational health nurse, industrial hygienist, toxicologist, or epidemiologist, providing medical or other occupational health services to exposed employees.

(10) "Record" means any item, collection, or grouping of information regardless of the form or process by which it is maintained (e.g., paper document, microfiche, microfilm, X-ray film, or automated data processing),

(11) "Specific chemical identity" means the chemical name, Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) Registry Number, or any other information that reveals the precise chemical designation of the substance.

(12)

(i) "Specific written consent" means a written authorization containing the following:

(a) The name and signature of the employee authorizing the release of medical information.

(b) The date of the written authorization,

(c) The name of the individual or organization that is authorized to release the medical information,

(d) The name of the designated representative (individual or organization) that is authorized to receive the released information,

(e) A general description of the medical information that is authorized to be released,

(f) A general description of the purpose for the release of the medical information, and

(g) A date or condition upon which the written authorization will expire (if less than one year).

(ii) A written authorization does not operate to authorize the release of medical information not in existence on the date of written authorization, unless the release of future information is expressly authorized, and does not operate for more than one year from the date of written authorization.

(iii) A written authorization may be revoked in writing prospectively at any time.

(13) "Toxic substance or harmful physical agent" means any chemical substance, biological agent (bacteria, virus, fungus, etc.), or physical stress (noise, heat, cold, vibration, repetitive motion, ionizing and non-ionizing radiation, hypo—or hyperbaric pressure, etc.) which:

(i) Is listed in the least printed edition of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) Registry of Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances (RTECS); or

(ii) Has yielded positive evidence of an acute or chronic health hazard in testing conducted by, or known to, the employer; or

(iii) Is the subject of a material safety data sheet kept by or known to the employer indicating that the material may pose a hazard to human health.

(14) "Trade secret" means any confidential formula, pattern, process, device, or information or compilation of information that is used in an employer's business and that gives the employer an opportunity to obtain an advantage over competitors who do not know or use it.

(d) Preservation of records.

(1) Unless a specific occupational safety and health standard provides a different period of time, each employer shall assure the preservation and retention of records as follows:

(i) Employee medical records. The medical record for each employee shall be preserved and maintained for at least the duration of employment plus thirty (30) years, except that the following types of records need not be retained for any specified period:

(a) Health insurance claims records maintained separately from the employer's medical program and its records,

(b) First aid records (not including medical histories) of one-time treatment and subsequent observation of minor scratches, cuts, burns, splinters, and the like which do not involve medical treatment, loss of consciousness, restriction of work or motion, or transfer to another job, if made on-site by a non-physician and if maintained separately from the employer's medical program and its records, and

(c) The medical records of employees who have worked for less than (1) year for the employer need not be retained beyond the term of employment if they are provided to the employee upon the termination of employment.

(ii) Employee exposure records. Each employee exposure record shall be preserved and maintained for at least thirty (30) years, except that:

(a) Background data to environmental (workplace) monitoring or measuring, such as laboratory reports and worksheets, need only be retained for one (1) year as long as the sampling results, the collection methodology (sampling plan), a description of the analytical and mathematical methods used, and a summary of other background data relevant to interpretation of the results obtained, are retained for at least thirty (30) years; and

(b) Material safety data sheets and paragraph (c)(5)(iv) records concerning the identity of a substance or agent need not be retained for any specified period as long as some record of the identity (chemical name if known) of the substance or agent, where it was used, and when it was used is retained for at least thirty (30) years;[1] and

(c) Biological monitoring results designated as exposure records by specific occupational safety and health standards shall be preserved and maintained as required by the specific standard.

(iii) Analyses using exposure or medical records. Each analysis using exposure or medical records shall be preserved and maintained for at least thirty (30) years.

(2) Nothing in this section is intended to mandate the form, manner, or process by which an employer preserves a record as long as the information contained in the record is preserved and retrievable, except that chest X-ray films shall be preserved in their original state.

(e) Access to records.

(1) General.

(i) Whenever an employee or designated representative requests access to a record, the employer shall assure that access is provided in a reasonable time, place, and manner. If the employer cannot reasonably provide access to the record within fifteen (15) working days, the employer shall within the fifteen (15) working days apprise the employee or designated representative requesting the record of the reason for the delay and the earliest date when the record can be made available.

(ii) The employer may require of the requester only such information as should be readily known to the requester and which may be necessary to locate or identify the records being requested (e.g. dates and locations where the employee worked during the time period in question).

(iii) Whenever an employee or designated representative requests a copy of a record, the employer shall assure that either:

(a) A copy of the record is provided without cost to the employee or representative,

(b) The necessary mechanical copying facilities (e.g., photocopying) are made available without cost to the employee or representative for copying the record, or

(c) The record is loaned to the employee or representative for a reasonable time to enable a copy to be made.

(iv) In the case of an original X-ray, the employer may restrict access to on-site examination or make other suitable arrangements for the temporary loan of the X-ray.

(v) Whenever a record has been previously provided without cost to an employee or designated representative, the employer may charge reasonable, non-discriminatory administrative costs (i.e., search and copying expenses but not including overhead expenses) for a request by the employee or designated representative for additional copies of the record, except that

(a) An employer shall not charge for an initial request for a copy of new information that has been added to a record which was previously provided; and

---

[1] Material safety data sheets must be kept for those chemicals currently in use that are effected by the Hazard Communication Standard in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.1200(g).

(b) An employer shall not charge for an initial request by a recognized or certified collective bargaining agent for a copy of an employee exposure record or an analysis using exposure or medical records.

(vi) Nothing in this section is intended to preclude employees and collective bargaining agents from collectively bargaining to obtain access to information in addition to that available under this section.

(2) Employee and designated representative access.

(i) Employee exposure records.

(a) Except as limited by paragraph (f) of this section, each employer shall, upon request, assure the access to each employee and designated representative to employee exposure records relevant to the employee. For the purpose of this section, an exposure record relevant to the employee consists of:

(1) A record which measures or monitors the amount of a toxic substance or harmful physical agent to which the employee is or has been exposed;

(2) In the absence of such directly relevant records, such records of other employees with past or present job duties or working conditions related to or similar to those of the employee to the extent necessary to reasonably indicate the amount and nature of the toxic substances or harmful physical agents to which the employee is or has been subjected, and

(3) Exposure records to the extent necessary to reasonably indicate the amount and nature of the toxic substances or harmful physical agents at workplaces or under working conditions to which the employee is being assigned or transferred.

(b) Requests by designated representatives for unconsented access to employee exposure records shall be in writing and shall specify with reasonable particularity:

(1) The records requested to be disclosed; and

(2) The occupational health need for gaining access to these records.

(ii) Employee medical records.

(a) Each employer shall, upon request, assure the access of each employee to employee medical records of which the employee is the subject, except as provided in paragraph (e)(2)(ii)(D) of this section.

(b) Each employer shall, upon request, assure the access of each designated representative to the employee medical records of any employee who has given the designated representative specific written consent. Appendix A to this section contains a sample form which may be used to establish specific written consent for access to employee medical records.

(c) Whenever access to employee medical records is requested, a physician representing the employer may recommend that the employee or designated representative:

(1) Consult with the physician for the purposes of reviewing and discussing the records requested,

(2) Accept a summary of material facts and opinions in lieu of the records requested, or

(3) Accept release of the requested records only to a physician or other designated representative.

(d) Whenever an employee requests access to his or her employee medical records, and a physician representing the employer believes that direct employee access to information contained in the records regarding a specific diagnosis of a terminal illness or a psychiatric condition could be detrimental to the employee's health, the employer may inform the employee that access will only be provided to a designated representative of the employee having specific written consent, and deny the employee's request for direct access to this information only. Where a designated representative with specific written consent requests access to information so withheld, the employer shall assure the access of the designated representative to this information, even when it is known that the designated representative will give the information to the employee.

(e) A physician, nurse, or other responsible health care personnel maintaining medical records may delete from requested medical records the identity of a family member, personal friend, or fellow employee who has provided confidential information concerning an employee's health status.

(iii) Analyses using exposure or medical records.

(a) Each employee shall, upon request, assure the access of each employee and designated representative to each analysis using exposure or medical records concerning the employee's working conditions or workplace.

(b) Whenever access is requested to an analysis which reports the contents of employee medical records by either direct identifier (name, address, social security number, payroll number, etc.) or by information which could reasonably be used under the circumstances indirectly to identify specific employees (exact age, height, weight, race, sex, date of initial employment, job title, etc.), the employer shall assure that personal identifiers are removed before access is provided. If the employer can demonstrate that removal of personal identifiers from an analysis is not feasible, access to the personally identifiable portions of the analysis need not be provided.

(3) OSHA access.

(i) Each employer shall, upon request, and without derogation of any rights under the Constitution or the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, 29 U.S.C. 651 *et seq.*, that the employer chooses to exercise, assure the prompt access of representatives of the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health to employee exposure and medical records and to analyses using exposure or medical records. Rules of agency practice and procedure governing OSHA access to employee medical records are contained in 29 CFR 1913.10.

(ii) Whenever OSHA seeks access to personally identifiable employee medical information by presenting to the employer a written access order pursuant to 29 CFR 1913.10(d), the employer shall prominently post a copy of the written access order and its accompanying cover letter for at least fifteen (15) working days.

(f) Trade secrets.

(1) Except as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section, nothing in this section precludes an employer from deleting from records requested by a health professional, employee, or designated representative any trade secret data which discloses manufacturing processes, or discloses the percentage of a chemical substance in mixture, as long as the health professional, employee, or designated representative is notified that information has been deleted. Whenever deletion of trade secret information substantially impairs evaluation of the place where or the time when exposure to a toxic substance or harmful physical agent occurred, the employer shall provide alternative information which is sufficient to permit the requesting party to identify where and when exposure occurred.

(2) The employer may withhold the specific chemical identity, including the chemical name and other specific identification of a toxic substance from a disclosable record provided that:

(i) The claim that the information withheld is a trade secret can be supported;

(ii) All other available information on the properties and effects of the toxic substance is disclosed;

(iii) The employer informs the requesting party that the specific chemical identity is being withheld as a trade secret; and

(iv) The specific chemical identity is made available to health professionals, employees and designated representatives in accordance with the specific applicable provisions of this paragraph.

(3) Where a treating physician or nurse determines that a medical emergency exists and the specific chemical identity of a toxic substance is necessary for emergency or first-aid treatment, the employer shall immediately disclose the specific chemical identity of a trade secret chemical to the treating physician or nurse, regardless of the existence of a written statement of need or a confidentiality agreement. The employer may require a written statement of need and confidentiality agreement, in accordance with the provisions of paragraphs (f)(4) and (f)(5), as soon as circumstances permit.

(4) In non-emergency situations, an employer shall, upon request, disclose a specific chemical identity, otherwise permitted to be withheld under paragraph (f)(2) of this section, to a health professional, employee, or designated representative if:

(i) The request is in writing;

(ii) The request describes with reasonable detail one or more of the following occupational health needs for the information:

(a) To assess the hazards of the chemicals to which employees will be exposed;

(b) To conduct or assess sampling of the workplace atmosphere to determine employee exposure levels;

(c) To conduct pre-assignment or periodic medical surveillance of exposed employees;

(d) To provide medical treatment to exposed employees;

(e) To select or assess appropriate personal protective equipment for exposed employees;

(f) To design or assess engineering controls or other protective measures for exposed employees; and

(g) To conduct studies to determine the health effects of exposure.

(iii) The request explains in detail why the disclosure of the specific chemical identity is essential and that, in lieu thereof, the disclosure of the following information would not enable the health professional, employee or designated representative to provide the occupational health services described in paragraph (f)(4)(ii) of this section:

(a) The properties and effects of the chemical;

(b) Measures for controlling workers' exposure to the chemical;

(c) Methods of monitoring and analyzing worker exposure to the chemical; and,

(d) Methods of diagnosing and treating harmful exposures to the chemical;

(iv) The request includes a description of the procedures to be used to maintain the confidentiality of the disclosed information; and,

(v) The health professional, employee, or designated representative and the employer or contractor of the services of the health professional or designated representative agree in a written confidentiality agreement that the health professional, employee or designated representative will not use the trade secret information for any purpose other than the health need(s) asserted and agree not to release the information under any circumstances other than to OSHA, as provided in paragraph (f)(9) of this section, except as authorized by the terms of the agreement or by the employer.

(5) The confidentiality agreement authorized by paragraph (f)(4)(iv) of this section:

(i) May restrict the use of the information to the health purposes indicated in the written statement of need;

(ii) May provide for appropriate legal remedies in the event of a breach of the agreement, including stipulation of a reasonable pre-estimate of likely damages; and,

(iii) May not include requirements for the posting of a penalty bond.

(6) Nothing in this section is meant to preclude the parties from pursuing noncontractual remedies to the extent permitted by law.

(7) If the health professional, employee or designated representative receiving the trade secret information decides that there is a need to disclose it to OSHA, the employer who provided the information shall be informed by the health professional prior to, or at the same time as, such disclosure.

(8) If the employer denies a written request for disclosure of a specific chemical identity, the denial must:

(i) Be provided to the health professional, employee or designated representative within thirty days of the request;

(ii) Be in writing;

(iii) Include evidence to support the claim that the specific chemical identity is a trade secret;

(iv) State the specific reasons why the request is being denied; and,

(v) Explain in detail how alternative information may satisfy the specific medical or occupational health need without revealing the specific chemical identity.

(9) The health professional, employee, or designated representative whose request for information is denied under paragraph (f)(4) of this section may refer the request and the written denial of the request to OSHA for consideration.

(10) When a health professional employee, or designated representative refers a denial to OSHA under paragraph (f)(9) of this section, OSHA shall consider the evidence to determine if:

(i) The employer has supported the claim that the specific chemical identity is a trade secret;

(ii) The health professional employee, or designated representative has supported the claim that there is a medical or occupational health need for the information; and

(iii) The health professional, employee or designated representative has demonstrated adequate means to protect the confidentiality.

(11)

(i) If OSHA determines that the specific chemical identity requested under paragraph (f)(4) of this section is not a *bona fide* trade secret, or that it is a trade secret but the requesting health professional, employee or designated representatives has a legitimate medical or occupational health need for the information, has executed a written confidentiality agreement, and has shown adequate means for complying with the terms of such agreement, the employer will be subject to citation by OSHA.

(ii) If an employer demonstrates to OSHA that the execution of a confidentiality agreement would not provide sufficient protection against the potential harm from the unauthorized disclosure of a trade secret specific chemical identity, the Assistant Secretary may issue such orders or impose such additional limitations or conditions upon the disclosure of the requested chemical information as may be appropriate to assure that the occupational health needs are met without an undue risk of harm to the employer.

(12) Notwithstanding the existence of a trade secret claim, an employer shall, upon request, disclose to the Assistant Secretary any information which this section requires the employer to make available. Where there is a trade secret claim, such claim shall be made no later than at the time the information is provided to the Assistant Secretary so that suitable determinations of trade secret status can be made and the necessary protections can be implemented.

(13) Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed as requiring the disclosure under any circumstances of process or percentage of mixture information which is trade secret.

(g) Employee information.

(1) Upon an employee's first entering into employment, and at least annually thereafter, each employer shall inform current employees covered by this section of the following:

(i) The existence, location, and availability of any records covered by this section;

(ii) The person responsible for maintaining and providing access to records; and

(iii) Each employee's rights of access to these records.

(2) Each employer shall keep a copy of this section and its appendices, and make copies readily available, upon request, to employees. The employer shall also distribute to current employees any information materials concerning this section which are made available to the employer by the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health.

(h) Transfer of records.

(1) Whenever an employer is ceasing to do business, the employer shall transfer all records subject to this section to the successor employer. The successor employer shall receive and maintain these records.

(2) Whenever an employer is ceasing to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and maintain the records subject to this standard, the employer shall notify affected current employees of their rights of access to records at least three (3) months prior to the cessation of the employer's business.

(3) Whenever an employer either is ceasing to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and maintain the records, or intends to dispose of any records required to be preserved for at least thirty (30) years, the employer shall:

(i) Transfer the records to the Director of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) if so required by a specific occupational safety and health standard; or

(ii) Notify the Director of NIOSH in writing of the impending disposal of records at least three (3) months prior to the disposal of the records.

(4) Where an employer regularly disposes of records required to be preserved for at least thirty (30) years, the employer may, with at least (3) months notice, notify the Director of NIOSH on an annual basis of the records intended to be disposed of in the coming year.

(i) Appendices. The information contained in appendices A and B to this section is not intended, by itself, to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed by this section nor detract from any existing obligation.

Appendix A to 1910.20—Sample Authorization Letter for the Release of Employee Medical Record Information to a Designated Representative (Non-Mandatory)

I, ________ (full name of worker/patient), hereby authorize ________ (individual or organization holding the medical records) to release to ________ (individual or organization authorized to receive the medical information), the following medical information from my personal medical records:

(Describe generally the information desired to be released)

I give my permission for this medical information to be used for the following purpose:

---

but I do not give permission for any other use or re-disclosure of this information.

(Note: Several extra lines are provided below so that you can place additional restrictions on this authorization letter if you want to. You may, however, leave these lines blank. On the other hand, you may want to (1) specify a particular expiration date for this letter (if less than one year); (2) describe medical information to be created in the future that you intend to be covered by this authorization letter; or (3) describe portions of the medical information in your records which you do not intend to be released as a result of this letter.)

Full name of Employee or Legal Representative

Signature of Employee or Legal Representative

Date of Signature

Appendix B to 1910.20—Availability of NIOSH Registry of Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances (RTECS) (Non-Mandatory)

The final regulation, 29 CFR 1910.20, applies to all employee exposure and medical records, and analyses thereof, of employees exposed to toxic substances or harmful physical agents (paragraph (b)(2)). The term "toxic substance or harmful physical agent" is defined by paragraph (c)(13) to encompass chemical substances, biological agents, and physical stresses for which there is evidence of harmful health effects. The regulation uses the latest printed edition of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) Registry of Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances (RTECS) as one of the chief sources of information as to whether evidence of harmful health effects exists. If a substance is listed in the latest printed RTECS, the regulation applies to exposure and medical records (and analyses of these records) relevant to employees exposed to the substance.

It is appropriate to note that the final regulation does not require that employers purchase a copy of RTECS, and many employers need not consult RTECS to ascertain whether their employee exposure or medical records are subject to the rule. Employers who do not currently have the latest printed edition of the NIOSH RTECS, however, may desire to obtain a copy. The RTECS is issued in an annual printed edition as mandated by section 20(a)(6) of the Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 U.S.C. 669(a)(6)).

The Introduction to the 1980 printed edition describes the RTECS as follows:

"The 1980 edition of the Registry of Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances, formerly known as the Toxic Substances list, is the ninth revision prepared in compliance with the requirements of Section 20(a)(6) of the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (Public Law 91-596). The original list was completed on June 28, 1971, and has been updated annually in book format. Beginning in October 1977, quarterly revisions have been provided in microfiche. This edition of the Registry contains 168,096 listings of chemical substances: 45,156 are names of different chemicals with their associated toxicity data and 122,940 are synonyms. This edition includes approximately 5,900 new chemical compounds that did not appear in the 1979 Registry. (p. xi)

"The Registry's purposes are many, and it serves a variety of users. It is a single source document for basic toxicity information and for other data, such as chemical identifiers ad information necessary for the preparation of safety directives and hazard evaluations for chemical substances. The various types of toxic effects linked to literature citations provide researchers and occupational health scientists with an introduction to the toxicological literature, making their own review of the toxic hazards of a given substance easier. By presenting data on the lowest reported doses that produce effects by several routes of entry in various species, the Registry furnishes valuable information to those responsible for preparing safety data sheets for chemical substances in the workplace. Chemical and production engineers can use the Registry to identify the hazards which may be associated with chemical intermediates in the development of final products, and thus can more readily select substitutes or alternative processes which may be less hazardous. Some organizations, including health agencies and chemical companies, have included the NIOSH Registry accession numbers with the listing of chemicals in their files to reference toxicity information associated with those chemicals. By including foreign language chemical names, a start has been made toward providing rapid identification of substances produced in other countries. (p. xi)

"In this edition of the Registry, the editors intend to identify "all known toxic substances" which may exist in the environment and to provide pertinent data on the toxic effects from known doses entering an organism by any route described. (p xi)

"It must be reemphasized that the entry of a substance in the Registry does not automatically mean that it must be avoided. A listing does mean, however, that the substance has the documented potential of being harmful if misused, and care must be exercised to prevent tragic consequences. Thus, the Registry lists many substances that are common in everyday life and are in nearly every household in the United States. One can name a variety of such dangerous substances: prescription and non-prescription drugs; food additives; pesticide concentrates, sprays, and dusts; fungicides; herbicides; paints, glazes, dyes; bleaches and other household cleaning agents; alkalies; and various solvents and diluents. The list is extensive because chemicals have become an integral part of our existence."

The RTECS printed edition may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office (GPO), Washington, DC 20402 (202-783-3238).

Some employers may desire to subscribe to the quarterly update to the RTECS which is published in a microfiche edition. An annual subscription to the quarterly microfiche may be purchased from the GPO (Order the "Microfiche Edition, Registry of Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances"). Both the printed edition and the microfiche edition of RTECS are available for review at many university and public libraries throughout the country. The latest RTECS editions may also be examined at the OSHA Technical Data Center, Room N2439—Rear, United States Department of Labor, 200 Constitution Avenue, NW., Washington, DC 20210 (202-523-9700), or at any OSHA Regional or Area Office (*See*, major city telephone directories under United States Government-Labor Department).

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART D—WALKING–WORKING SURFACES

1910.21 Definitions.
1910.22 General requirements.
1910.23 Guarding floor and wall openings and holes.
1910.24 Fixed industrial stairs.
1910.25 Portable wood ladders.
1910.26 Portable metal ladders.
1910.27 Fixed ladders.
1910.28 Safety requirements for scaffolding.
1910.29 Manually propelled mobile ladder stands and scaffolds (towers).
1910.30 Other working surfaces.
1910.31 Sources of standards.
1910.32 Standards organizations.

Authority: Secs. 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12–71 (36 FR 8754), 8–76 (41 FR 25059), or 9–83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable.

[53 F.R. 12121, April 12, 1988]

SUBPART D—WALKING-WORKING SURFACES

1910.21—DEFINITIONS

(a) As used in § 1910.23, unless the context requires otherwise, floor and wall opening, railing and toe board terms shall have the meanings ascribed in this paragraph.

(1) Floor hole. An opening measuring less than 12 inches but more than 1 inch in its least dimension, in any floor, platform, pavement, or yard, through which materials but not persons may fall; such as a belt hole, pipe opening, or slot opening.

(2) Floor opening. An opening measuring 12 inches or more in its least dimension, in any floor, platform, pavement, or yard, through which persons may fall; such as a hatchway, stair or ladder opening, pit, or large manhole. Floor openings occupied by elevators, dumb waiters, conveyors, machinery, or containers are excluded from this subpart.

(3) Handrail. A single bar or pipe supported on brackets from a wall or partition, as on a stairway or ramp, to furnish persons with a handhold in case of tripping.

(4) Platform. A working space for persons, elevated above the surrounding floor or ground; such as a balcony or platform for the operation of machinery and equipment.

(5) Runway. A passageway for persons, elevated above the surrounding floor or ground level, such as a footwalk along shafting or a walkway between buildings.

(6) Standard railing. A vertical barrier erected along exposed edges of a floor opening, wall opening, ramp, platform, or runway to prevent falls of persons.

(7) Standard strength and construction. Any construction of railings, covers, or other guards that meets the requirements of § 1910.23.

(8) Stair railing. A vertical barrier erected along exposed sides of a stairway to prevent falls of persons.

(9) Toeboard. A vertical barrier at floor level erected along exposed edges of a floor opening, wall opening, platform, runway, or ramp to prevent falls of materials.

(10) Wall hole. An opening less than 30 inches but more than 1 inch high, of unrestricted width, in any wall or partition; such as a ventilation hole or drainage scupper.

(11) Wall opening. An opening at least 30 inches high and 18 inches wide, in any wall or partition, through which persons may fall; such as a yard-arm doorway or chute opening.

(b) As used in § 1910.24, unless the context requires otherwise, fixed industrial stair terms shall have the meaning ascribed in this paragraph.

(1) Handrail. A single bar or pipe supported on brackets from a wall or partition to provide a continuous handhold for persons using a stair.

(2) Nose, nosing. That portion of a tread projecting beyond the face of the riser immediately below.

(3) Open riser. The air space between the treads of stairways without upright members (risers).

(4) Platform. An extended step or landing breaking a continuous run of stairs.

(5) Railing. A vertical barrier erected along exposed sides of stairways and platforms to prevent falls of persons. The top member of railing usually serves as a handrail.

(6) Rise. The vertical distance from the top of a tread to the top of the next higher tread.

(7) Riser. The upright member of a step situated at the back of a lower tread and near the leading edge of the next higher tread.

(8) Stairs, stairway. A series of steps leading from one level or floor to another, or leading to platforms, pits, boiler rooms, crossovers, or around machinery, tanks, and other equipment that are used more or less continuously or routinely by employees, or only occasionally by specific individuals. A series of steps and landings having three or more risers constitutes stairs or stairway.

(9) Tread. The horizontal member of a step.

(10) Tread run. The horizontal distance from the leading edge of a tread to the leading edge of an adjacent tread.

(11) Tread width. The horizontal distance from front to back of tread including nosing when used.

(c) As used in § 1910.25, unless the context requires otherwise, portable wood ladders terms shall have the meanings ascribed in this paragraph.

(1) Ladders. A ladder is an appliance usually consisting of two side rails joined at regular intervals by crosspieces called steps, rungs, or cleats, on which a person may step in ascending or descending.

(2) Stepladder. A stepladder is a self-supporting portable ladder, nonadjustable in length, having flat steps and a hinged back. Its size is designated by the overall length of the ladder measured along the front edge of the side rails.

(3) Single ladder. A single ladder is a non-self-supporting portable ladder, nonadjustable in length, consisting of but one section. Its size is designated by the overall length of the side rail.

(4) Extension ladder. An extension ladder is a non-self-supporting portable ladder adjustable in length. It consists of two or more sections traveling in guides or brackets so arranged as to permit length adjustment. Its size is designated by the sum of the lengths of the sections measured along the side rails.

(5) Sectional ladder. A sectional ladder is a non-self-supporting portable ladder, nonadjustable in length, consisting of two or more sections of ladder so constructed that the sections may be combined to function as a single ladder. Its size is designated by the overall length of the assembled sections.

(6) Trestle ladder. A trestle ladder is a self-supporting portable ladder, nonadjustable in length, consisting of two sections hinged at the top to form equal angles with the base. The size is designated by the length of the side rails measured along the front edge.

(7) Extension trestle ladder. An extension trestle ladder is a self-supporting portable ladder, adjustable in length, consisting of a trestle ladder base and a vertically adjustable single ladder, with suitable means for locking the ladders together. The size is designated by the length of the trestle ladder base.

(8) Special-purpose ladder. A special-purpose ladder is a portable ladder which represents either a modification or a combination of design or construction features in one of the general-purpose types of ladders previously defined, in order to adapt the ladder to special or specific uses.

(9) Trolley ladder. A trolley ladder is a semifixed ladder, nonadjustable in length, supported by attachments to an overhead track, the plane of the ladder being at right angles to the plane of motion.

(10) Side-rolling ladder. A side-rolling ladder is a semifixed ladder, nonadjustable in length, supported by attachments to a guide rail, which is generally fastened to shelving, the plane of the ladder being also its plane of motion.

(11) Wood characteristics. Wood characteristics are distinguishing features which by their extent and number determine the quality of a piece of wood.

(12) Wood irregularities. Wood irregularities are natural characteristics in or on wood that may lower its durability, strength, or utility.

(13) Cross grain. Cross grain (slope of grain) is a deviation of the fiber direction from a line parallel to the sides of the piece.

(14) Knot. A knot is a branch or limb, imbedded in the tree and cut through in the process of lumber manufacture, classified according to size, quality, and occurrence. The size of the knot is determined as the average diameter on the surface of the piece.

(15) Pitch and bark pockets. A pitch pocket is an opening extending parallel to the annual growth rings containing, or that has contained, pitch, either solid or liquid. A bark pocket is an opening between annual growth rings that contains bark.

(16) Shake. A shake is a separation along the grain, most of which occurs between the rings of annual growth.

(17) Check. A check is a lengthwise separation of the wood, most of which occurs across the rings of annual growth.

(18) Wane. Wane is bark, or the lack of wood from any cause, on the corner of a piece.

(19) Decay. Decay is disintegration of wood substance due to action of wood-destroying fungi. It is also known as dote and rot.

(20) Compression failure. A compression failure is a deformation (buckling) of the fibers due to excessive compression along the grain.

(21) Compression wood. Compression wood is an aberrant (abnormal) and highly variable type of wood structure occurring in softwood species. The wood commonly has density somewhat higher than does normal wood, but somewhat lower stiffness and tensile strength for its weight in addition to high longitudinal shrinkage.

(22) Low density. Low-density wood is that which is exceptionally light in weight and usually deficient in strength properties for the species.

(d) As used in § 1910.26, unless the context requires otherwise, portable metal ladder terms shall have the meanings ascribed in this paragraph.

(1) Ladder. A ladder is an appliance usually consisting of two side rails joined at regular intervals by crosspieces called steps, rungs, or cleats, on which a person may step in ascending or descending.

(2) Step ladder. A step ladder is a self-supporting portable ladder, nonadjustable in length, having flat steps and a hinged back. Its size is designated by the overall length of the ladder measured along the front edge of the side rails.

(3) Single ladder. A single ladder is a non-self-supporting portable ladder, nonadjustable in length, consisting of but one section. Its size is designated by the overall length of the side rail.

(4) Extension ladder. An extension ladder is a non-self-supporting portable ladder adjustable in length. It consists of two or more sections traveling in guides or brackets so arranged as to permit length adjustment. Its size is designated by the sum of the lengths of the sections measured along the side rails.

(5) Platform ladder. A self-supporting ladder of fixed size with a platform provided at the working level. The size is determined by the distance along the front rail from the platform to the base of the ladder.

(6) Sectional ladder. A sectional ladder is a non-self-supporting portable ladder, nonadjustable in length, consisting of two or more sections so constructed that the sections may be combined to function as a single ladder. Its size is designated by the overall length of the assembled sections.

(7) Trestle ladder. A trestle ladder is a self-supporting portable ladder, nonadjustable in length, consisting of two sections, hinged at the top to form equal angles with the base. The size is designated by the length of the side rails measured along the front edge.

(8) Extension trestle ladder. An extension trestle ladder is a self-supporting portable ladder, adjustable in length, consisting of a trestle ladder base and a vertically adjustable single ladder, with suitable means for locking the ladders together. The size is designated by the length of the trestle ladder base.

(9) Special-purpose ladder. A special-purpose ladder is a portable ladder which represents either a modification or a combination of design or construction features in one of the general-purpose types of ladders previously defined, in order to adapt the ladder to special or specific uses.

(e) As used in § 1910.27, unless the context requires otherwise, fixed ladder terms shall have the meanings ascribed in this paragraph.

(1) Ladder. A ladder is an appliance usually consisting of two side rails joined at regular intervals by crosspieces called steps, rungs, or cleats, on which a person may step in ascending or descending.

(2) Fixed ladder. A fixed ladder is a ladder permanently attached to a structure, building, or equipment.

(3) Individual-rung ladder. An individual-rung ladder is a fixed ladder each rung of which is individually attached to a structure, building, or equipment.

(4) Rail ladder. A rail ladder is a fixed ladder consisting of side rails joined at regular intervals by rungs or cleats and fastened in full length or in sections to a building, structure, or equipment.

(5) Railings. A railing is any one or a combination of those railings constructed in accordance with § 1910.23. A standard railing is a vertical barrier erected along exposed edges of floor openings, wall openings, ramps, platforms, and runways to prevent falls of persons.

(6) Pitch. Pitch is the included angle between the horizontal and the ladder, measured on the opposite side of the ladder from the climbing side.

(7) Fastenings. A fastening is a device to attach a ladder to a structure, building, or equipment.

(8) Rungs. Rungs are ladder crosspieces of circular or oval cross-section on which a person may step in ascending or descending.

(9) Cleats. Cleats are ladder crosspieces of rectangular cross-section placed on edge on which a person may step in ascending or descending.

(10) Steps. Steps are the flat crosspieces of a ladder on which a person may step in ascending or descending.

(11) Cage. A cage is a guard that may be referred to as a cage or basket guard which is an enclosure that is fastened to the side rails of the fixed ladder or to the structure to encircle the climbing space of the ladder for the safety of the person who must climb the ladder.

(12) Well. A well is a permanent complete enclosure around a fixed ladder, which is attached to the walls of the well. Proper clearances for a well will give the person who must climb the ladder the same protection as a cage.

(13) Ladder safety device. A ladder safety device is any device, other than a cage or well, designed to eliminate or reduce the possibility of accidental falls and which may incorporate such features as life belts, friction brakes, and sliding attachments.

(14) Grab bars. Grab bars are individual handholds placed adjacent to or as an extension above ladders for the purpose of providing access beyond the limits of the ladder.

(15) **Through ladder**. A through ladder is one from which a man getting off at the top must step through the ladder in order to reach the landing.

(16) **Side-step ladder**. A side-step ladder is one from which a man getting off at the top must step sideways from the ladder in order to reach the landing.

(f) As used in § 1910.28, unless the context requires otherwise, scaffolding terms shall have the meaning ascribed in this paragraph.

(1) **Bearer**. A horizontal member of a scaffold upon which the platform rests and which may be supported by ledgers.

(2) **Boatswain's chair**. A seat supported by slings attached to a suspended rope, designed to accommodate one workman in a sitting position.

(3) **Brace**. A tie that holds one scaffold member in a fixed position with respect to another member.

(4) **Bricklayers' square scaffold**. A scaffold composed of framed wood squares which support a platform limited to light and medium duty.

(5) **Carpenters' bracket scaffold**. A scaffold consisting of wood or metal brackets supporting a platform.

(6) **Coupler**. A device for locking together the component parts of a tubular metal scaffold. The material used for the couplers shall be of a structural type, such as a drop-forged steel, malleable iron, or structural grade aluminum. The use of gray cast iron is prohibited.

(7) **Crawling board or chicken ladder**. A plank with cleats spaced and secured at equal intervals, for use by a worker on roofs, not designed to carry any material.

(8) **Double pole or independent pole scaffold**. A scaffold supported from the base by a double row of uprights, independent of support from the walls and constructed of uprights, ledgers, horizontal platform bearers, and diagonal bracing.

(9) **Float or ship scaffold**. A scaffold hung from overhead supports by means of ropes and consisting of a substantial platform having diagonal bracing underneath, resting upon and securely fastened to two parallel plank bearers at right angles to the span.

(10) **Guardrail**. A rail secured to uprights and erected along the exposed sides and ends of platforms.

(11) **Heavy duty scaffold**. A scaffold designed and constructed to carry a working load not to exceed 75 pounds per square foot.

(12) **Horse scaffold**. A scaffold for light or medium duty, composed of horses supporting a work platform.

(13) **Interior hung scaffold**. A scaffold suspended from the ceiling or roof structure.

(14) **Ladder jack scaffold**. A light duty scaffold supported by brackets attached to ladders.

(15) **Ledger (stringer)**. A horizontal scaffold member which extends from post to post and which supports the putlogs or bearer forming a tie between the posts.

(16) **Light duty scaffold**. A scaffold designed and constructed to carry a working load not to exceed 25 pounds per square foot.

(17) **Manually propelled mobile scaffold**. A portable rolling scaffold supported by casters.

(18) **Masons' adjustable multiple-point suspension scaffold**. A scaffold having a continuous platform supported by bearers suspended by wire rope from overhead supports, so arranged and operated as to permit the raising or lowering of the platform to desired working positions.

(19) **Maximum intended load**. The total of all loads including the working load, the weight of the scaffold, and such other loads as may be reasonably anticipated.

(20) Medium duty scaffold. A scaffold designed and constructed to carry a working load not to exceed 50 pounds per square foot.

(21) Mid-rail. A rail approximately midway between the guardrail and platform, used when required, and secured to the uprights erected along the exposed sides and ends of platforms.

(22) Needle beam scaffold. A light duty scaffold consisting of needle beams supporting a platform.

(23) Outrigger scaffold. A scaffold supported by outriggers or thrustouts projecting beyond the wall or face of the building or structure, the inboard ends of which are secured inside of such a building or structure.

(24) Putlog. A scaffold member upon which the platform rests.

(25) Roofing bracket. A bracket used in sloped roof construction, having provisions for fastening to the roof or supported by ropes fastened over the ridge and secured to some suitable object.

(26) Runner. The lengthwise horizontal bracing or bearing members or both.

(27) Scaffold. Any temporary elevated platform and its supporting structure used for supporting workmen or materials or both.

(28) Single-point adjustable suspension scaffold. A manually or power-operated unit designed for light duty use, supported by a single wire rope from an overhead support so arranged and operated as to permit the raising or lowering of the platform to desired working positions.

(29) Single pole scaffold. Platforms resting on putlogs or crossbeams, the outside ends of which are supported on ledgers secured to a single row of posts or uprights and the inner ends of which are supported on or in a wall.

(30) Stone setters' adjustable multiple-point suspension scaffold. A swinging-type scaffold having a platform supported by hangers suspended at four points so as to permit the raising or lowering of the platform to the desired working position by the use of hoisting machines.

(31) Toeboard. A barrier secured along the sides and ends of a platform, to guard against the falling of material.

(32) Tube and coupler scaffold. An assembly consisting of tubing which serves as posts, bearers, braces, ties, and runners, a base supporting the posts, and special couplers which serve to connect the uprights and to join the various members.

(33) Tubular welded frame scaffold. A sectional, panel, or frame metal scaffold substantially built up of prefabricated welded sections which consist of posts and horizontal bearer with intermediate members. Panels or frames shall be braced with diagonal or cross braces.

(34) Two-point suspension scaffold (swinging scaffold). A scaffold, the platform of which is supported by hangers (stirrups) at two points, suspended from overhead supports so as to permit the raising or lowering of the platform to the desired working position by tackle or hoisting machines.

(35) Window jack scaffold. A scaffold, the platform of which is supported by a bracket or jack which projects through a window opening.

(36) Working load. Load imposed by men, materials, and equipment.

(g) As used in § 1910.29, unless the context requires otherwise, manually propelled mobile ladder stand and scaffold (tower) terms shall have the meaning ascribed in this paragraph.

(1) Bearer. A horizontal member of a scaffold upon which the platform rests and which may be supported by ledgers.

(2) Brace. A tie that holds one scaffold member in a fixed position with respect to another member.

(3) Climbing ladder. A separate ladder with equally spaced rungs usually attached to the scaffold structure for climbing and descending.

(4) Coupler. A device for locking together the components of a tubular metal scaffold which shall be designed and used to safely support the maximum intended loads.

(5) Design working load. The maximum intended load, being the total of all loads including the weight of the men, materials, equipment, and platform.

(6) Equivalent. Alternative design or features, which will provide an equal degree or factor of safety.

(7) Guardrail. A barrier secured to uprights and erected along the exposed sides and ends of platforms to prevent falls of persons.

(8) Handrail. A rail connected to a ladder stand running parallel to the slope and/or top step.

(9) Ladder stand. A mobile fixed size self-supporting ladder consisting of a wide flat tread ladder in the form of stairs. The assembly may include handrails.

(10) Ledger (stringer). A horizontal scaffold member which extends from post to post and which supports the bearer forming a tie between the posts.

(11) Mobile scaffold (tower). A light, medium, or heavy duty scaffold mounted on casters or wheels.

(12) Mobile. "Manually propelled."

(13) Mobile work platform. Generally a fixed work level one frame high on casters or wheels, with bracing diagonally from platform to vertical frame.

(14) Runner. The lengthwise horizontal bracing and/or bearing members.

(15) Scaffold. Any temporary elevated platform and its necessary vertical, diagonal, and horizontal members used for supporting workmen and materials. (Also known as a scaffold tower.)

(16) Toeboard. A barrier at platform level erected along the exposed sides and ends of a scaffold platform to prevent falls of materials.

(17) Tube and coupler scaffold. An assembly consisting of tubing which serves as posts, bearers, braces, ties, and runners, a base supporting the posts, and uprights, and serves to join the various members, usually used in fixed locations.

(18) Tubular welded frame scaffold. A sectional, panel, or frame metal scaffold substantially built up of prefabricated welded sections, which consist of posts and bearers with intermediate connecting members and braced with diagonal or cross braces.

(19) Tubular welded sectional folding scaffold. A sectional, folding metal scaffold either of ladder frame or inside stairway design, substantially built of prefabricated welded sections, which consist of end frames, platform frame, inside inclined stairway frame and braces, or hinged connected diagonal and horizontal braces, capable of being folded into a flat package when the scaffold is not in use.

(20) Work level. The elevated platform, used for supporting workmen and their materials, comprising the necessary vertical, horizontal, and diagonal braces, guardrails, and ladder for access to the work platform.

1910.22—GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

This section applies to all permanent places of employment, except where domestic, mining, or agricultural work only is performed. Measures for the control of toxic materials are considered to be outside the scope of this section.

(a) Housekeeping.

(1) All places of employment, passageways, storerooms, and service rooms shall be kept clean and orderly and in a sanitary condition.

(2) The floor of every workroom shall be maintained in a clean and, so far as possible, a dry condition. Where wet processes are used, drainage shall be maintained, and false floors, platforms, mats, or other dry standing places should be provided where practicable.

(3) To facilitate cleaning, every floor, working place, and passageway shall be kept free from protruding nails, splinters, holes, or loose boards.

(b) Aisles and passageways.

(1) Where mechanical handling equipment is used, sufficient safe clearances shall be allowed for aisles, at loading docks, through doorways and wherever turns or passage must be made. Aisles and passageways shall be kept clear and in good repairs, with no obstruction across or in aisles that could create a hazard.

(2) Permanent aisles and passageways shall be appropriately marked.

(c) Covers and guardrails.

Covers and/or guardrails shall be provided to protect personnel from the hazards of open pits, tanks, vats, ditches, etc.

(d) Floor loading protection.

(1) In every building or other structure, or part thereof, used for mercantile, business, industrial, or storage purposes, the loads approved by the building official shall be marked on plates of approved design which shall be supplied and securely affixed by the owner of the building, or his duly authorized agent, in a conspicuous place in each space to which they relate. Such plates shall not be removed or defaced but, if lost, removed, or defaced, shall be replaced by the owner or his agent.

(2) It shall be unlawful to place, or cause, or permit to be placed, on any floor or roof of a building or other structure a load greater than that for which such floor or roof is approved by the building official.

1910.23—GUARDING FLOOR AND WALL OPENINGS AND HOLES

(a) Protection for floor openings.

(1) Every stairway floor opening shall be guarded by a standard railing constructed in accordance with paragraph (e) of this section. The railing shall be provided on all exposed sides (except at entrance to stairway). For infrequently used stairways where traffic across the opening prevents the use of fixed standard railing (as when located in aisle spaces, etc.), the guard shall consist of a hinged floor opening cover of standard strength and construction and removable standard railings on all exposed sides (except at entrance to stairway).

(2) Every ladderway floor opening or platform shall be guarded by a standard railing with standard toeboard on all exposed sides (except at entrance to opening), with the passage through the railing either provided with a swinging gate or so offset that a person cannot walk directly into the opening.

(3) Every hatchway and chute floor opening shall be guarded by one of the following:

(i) Hinged floor opening cover of standard strength and construction equipped with standard railings or permanently attached thereto so as to leave only one exposed side. When the opening is not in use, the cover shall be closed or the exposed side shall be guarded at both top and intermediate positions by removable standard railings.

(ii) A removable railing with toeboard on not more than two sides of the opening and fixed standard railings with toeboards on all other exposed sides. The removable railings shall be kept in place when the opening is not in use.

Where operating conditions necessitate the feeding of material into any hatchway or chute opening, protection shall be provided to prevent a person from falling through the opening.

(4) Every skylight floor opening and hole shall be guarded by a standard skylight screen or a fixed standard railing on all exposed sides.

(5) Every pit and trapdoor floor opening, infrequently used, shall be guarded by a **floor opening cover of standard strength and construction. While the cover is not in place, the pit or trap opening shall be constantly attended by someone or shall be protected on all exposed sides by removable standard railings.**

(6) Every manhole floor opening shall be guarded by a standard manhole cover which need not be hinged in place. While the cover is not in place, the manhole opening shall be constantly attended by someone or shall be protected by removable standard railings.

(7) Every temporary floor opening shall have standard railings, or shall be constantly attended by someone.

(8) Every floor hole into which persons can accidentally walk shall be guarded by either:

(i) A standard railing with standard toeboard on all exposed sides, or

(ii) A floor hole cover of standard strength **and construction. While the cover is not in place, the floor hole shall be constantly attended by someone or shall be protected by a removable standard railing.**

(9) Every floor hole into which persons cannot accidentally walk (on account of fixed machinery, equipment, or walls) shall be protected by a cover that leaves no openings more than 1 inch wide. The cover shall be securely held in place to prevent tools or materials from falling through.

(10) Where doors or gates open directly on a stairway, a platform shall be provided, and the swing of the door shall not reduce the effective width to less than 20 inches.

(b) Protection for wall openings and holes.

(1) Every wall opening from which there is a drop of more than 4 feet shall be guarded by one of the following:

(i) Rail, roller, picket fence, half door, or equivalent barrier.

Where there is exposure below to falling materials, a removable toeboard or the equivalent shall also be provided. When the opening is not in use for handling materials, the guard shall be kept in position regardless of a door on the opening. In addition, a grab handle shall be provided on each side of the opening with its center approximately 4 feet above floor level and of standard strength and mounting.

(ii) Extension platform onto which materials can be hoisted for handling, and which shall have side rails or equivalent guards of standard specifications.

(2) Every chute wall opening from which there is a drop of more than 4 feet shall be guarded by one or more of the barriers specified in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, or as required by the conditions.

(3) Every window wall opening at a stairway landing, floor, platform, or balcony, from which there is a drop of more than 4 feet, and where the bottom of the opening is less than 3 feet above the platform or landing, shall be guarded by standard slats, standard grill work (as specified in paragraph (e)(11) of this section), or standard railing.

Where the window opening is below the landing, or platform, a standard toeboard shall be provided.

(4) Every temporary wall opening shall have adequate guards but these need not be of standard construction.

(5) Where there is a hazard of materials falling through a wall hole, and the lower edge of the near side of the hole is less than 4 inches above the floor, and the far side of the hole more than 5 feet above the next lower level, the hole shall be protected by a standard toeboard, or an enclosing screen either of solid construction, or as specified in paragraph (e)(11) of this section.

INTERP

(c) Protection of open-sided floors, platforms, and runways.

INTERP

(1) Every open-sided floor or platform 4 feet or more above adjacent floor or ground level shall be guarded by a standard railing (or the equivalent as specified in paragraph (e)(3) of this section) on all open sides, except where there is entrance to a ramp, stairway, or fixed ladder. The railing shall be provided with a toeboard wherever, beneath the open sides.

(i) Persons can pass,

(ii) There is moving machinery, or

(iii) There is equipment with which falling materials could create a hazard.

(2) Every runway shall be guarded by a standard railing (or the equivalent as specified in paragraph (e)(3) of this section) on all open sides 4 feet or more above floor or ground level. Wherever tools, machine parts, or materials are likely to be used on the runway, a toeboard shall also be provided on each exposed side.

Runways used exclusively for special purposes (such as oiling, shafting, or filling tank cars) may have the railing on one side omitted where operating conditions necessitate such omission, providing the falling hazard is minimized by using a runway of not less than 18 inches wide. Where persons entering upon runways become thereby exposed to machinery, electrical equipment, or other danger not a falling hazard, additional guarding than is here specified may be essential for protection.

(3) Regardless of height, open-sided floors, walkways, platforms, or runways above or adjacent to dangerous equipment, pickling or galvanizing tanks, degreasing units, and similar hazards shall be guarded with a standard railing and toe board.

INTERP

(d) Stairway railings and guards.

(1) Every flight of stairs having four or more risers shall be equipped with standard stair railings or standard handrails as specified in subdivisions (i) through (v) of this subparagraph, the width of the stair to be measured clear of all obstructions except handrails:

(i) On stairways less than 44 inches wide having both sides enclosed, at least one handrail, preferably on the right side descending.

(ii) On stairways less than 44 inches wide having one side open, at least one stair railing on open side.

(iii) On stairways less than 44 inches wide having both sides open, one stair railing on each side.

(iv) On stairways more than 44 inches wide but less than 88 inches wide, one handrail on each enclosed side and one stair railing on each open side.

(v) On stairways 88 or more inches wide, one handrail on each enclosed side, one stair railing on each open side, and one intermediate stair railing located approximately midway of the width.

(2) Winding stairs shall be equipped with a handrail offset to prevent walking on all portions of the treads having width less than 6 inches.

(e) Railing, toeboards, and cover specifications.

INTERP **(1)** A standard railing shall consist of top rail, intermediate rail, and posts, and shall have a vertical height of 42 inches nominal from upper surface of top rail to floor, platform, runway, or ramp level. The top rail shall be smooth-surfaced throughout the length of the railing. The intermediate rail shall be approximately halfway between the top rail and the floor, platform, runway, or ramp. The ends of the rails shall not overhang the terminal posts except where such overhang does not constitute a projection hazard.

INTERP **(2)** A stair railing shall be of construction similar to a standard railing but the vertical height shall be not more than 34 inches nor less than 30 inches from upper surface of top rail to surface of tread in line with face of riser at forward edge of tread.

(3) Revoked

(i) For wood railings, the posts shall be of at least 2-inch by 4-inch stock spaced not to exceed 6 feet; the top and intermediate rails shall be of at least 2-inch by 4-inch stock. If top rail is made of two right-angle pieces of 1-inch by 4-inch stock, posts may be spaced on 8-foot centers, with 2-inch by 4-inch intermediate rail.

(ii) For pipe railings, posts and top and intermediate railings shall be at least 1½ inches nominal diameter with posts spaced not more than 8 feet on centers. INTERP

(iii) For structural steel railings, posts and top and intermediate rails shall be of 2-inch by 2-inch by ⅜-inch angles or other metal shapes of equivalent bending strength with posts spaced not more than 8 feet on centers.

(iv) The anchoring of posts and framing of members for railings of all types shall be of such construction that the completed structure shall be capable of withstanding a load of at least 200 pounds applied in any direction at any point on the top rail.

(v) Other types, sizes, and arrangements of railing construction are acceptable provided they meet the following conditions:

(a) A smooth-surfaced top rail at a height above floor, platform, runway, or ramp level of 42 inches nominal;

(b) A strength to withstand at least the minimum requirement of 200 pounds top rail pressure;

(c) Protection between top rail and floor, platform, runway, ramp, or stair treads, equivalent at least to that afforded by a standard intermediate rail;

(d) Revoked

(4) A standard toeboard shall be 4 inches nominal in vertical height from its top edge to the level of the floor, platform, runway, or ramp. It shall be securely fastened in place and with not more than ¼-inch clearance above floor level. It may be made of any substantial material either solid or with openings not over 1 inch in greatest dimension.

Where material is piled to such height that a standard toeboard does not provide protection, paneling from floor to intermediate rail, or to top rail shall be provided.

(5)

(i) A handrail shall consist of a lengthwise member mounted directly on a wall or partition by means of brackets attached to the lower side of the handrail so as to offer no obstruction to a smooth surface along the top and both sides of the handrail. The handrail shall be of rounded or other section that will furnish an adequate handhold for anyone grasping it to avoid falling. The ends of the handrail should be turned in to the supporting wall or otherwise arranged so as not to constitute a projection hazard.

(ii) The height of handrails shall be not more than 34 inches nor less than 30 inches from upper surface of handrail to surface of tread in line with face of riser or to surface of ramp.

INTERP

(iii) The size of handrails shall be: When of hardwood, at least 2 inches in diameter; when of metal pipe, at least 1½ inches in diameter. The length of brackets shall be such as will give a clearance between handrail and wall or any projection thereon of at least 3 inches. The spacing of brackets shall not exceed 8 feet.

(iv) The mounting of handrails shall be such that the completed structure is capable of withstanding a load of at least 200 pounds applied in any direction at any point on the rail.

(6) All handrails and railings shall be provided with a clearance of not less than 3 inches between the handrail or railing and any other object.

(7) Floor opening covers may be of any material that meets the following strength requirements:

(i) Trench or conduit covers and their supports, when located in plant roadways, shall be designed to carry a truck rear-axle load of at least 20,000 pounds.

(ii) Manhole covers and their supports, when located in plant roadways, shall comply with local standard highway requirements if any; otherwise, they shall be designed to carry a truck rear-axle load of at least 20,000 pounds.

(iii) The construction of floor opening covers may be of any material that meets the strength requirements. Covers projecting not more than 1 inch above the floor level may be used providing all edges are chamfered to an angle with the horizontal of not over 30 degrees. All hinges, handles, bolts, or other parts shall set flush with the floor or cover surface.

(8) Skylight screens shall be of such construction and mounting that they are capable of withstanding a load of at least 200 pounds applied perpendicularly at any one area on the screen. They shall also be of such construction and mounting that under ordinary loads or impacts, they will not deflect downward sufficiently to break the glass below them. The construction shall be of grillwork with openings not more than 4 inches long or of slatwork with openings not more than 2 inches wide with length unrestricted.

(9) Wall opening barriers (rails, rollers, picket fences, and half doors) shall be of such construction and mounting that, when in place at the opening, the barrier is capable of withstanding a load of at least 200 pounds applied in any direction (except upward) at any point on the top rail or corresponding member.

(10) Wall opening grab handles shall be not less than 12 inches in length and shall be so mounted as to give 3 inches clearance from the side framing of the wall opening. The size, material, and anchoring of the grab handle shall be such that the completed structure is capable of withstanding a load of at least 200 pounds applied in any direction at any point of the handle.

(11) Wall opening screens shall be of such construction and mounting that they are capable of withstanding a load of at least 200 pounds applied horizontally at any point on the near side of the screen. They may be of solid construction, of grillwork with openings not more than 8 inches long, or of slatwork with openings not more than 4 inches wide with length unrestricted.

1910.24—FIXED INDUSTRIAL STAIRS

(a) Application of requirements.

This section contains specifications for the safe design and construction of fixed general industrial stairs. This classification includes interior and exterior stairs around machinery, tanks, and other equipment, and stairs leading to or from floors, platforms, or pits. This section does not apply to stairs used for fire exit purposes, to construction operations to private residences, or to articulated stairs, such as may be installed on floating roof tanks or on dock facilities, the angle of which changes with the rise and fall of the base support.

(b) Where fixed stairs are required.

Fixed stairs shall be provided for access from one structure level to another where operations necessitate regular travel between levels, and for access to operating platforms at any equipment which requires attention routinely during operations. Fixed stairs shall also be provided where access to elevations is daily or at each shift for such purposes as gauging, inspection, regular maintenance, etc., where such work may expose employees to acids, caustics, gases, or other harmful substances, or for which purposes the carrying of tools or equipment by hand is normally required. (It is not the intent of this section to preclude the use of fixed ladders for access to elevated tanks, towers, and similar structures, overhead traveling cranes, etc., where the use of fixed ladders is common practice.) Spiral stairways shall not be permitted except for special limited usage and secondary access situations where it is not practical to provide a conventional stairway. Winding stairways may be installed on tanks and similar round structures where the diameter of the structure is not less than five (5) feet.

(c) Stair strength.

Fixed stairways shall be designed and constructed to carry a load of five times the normal live load anticipated but never of less strength than to carry safely a moving concentrated load of 1,000 pounds.

(d) Stair width.

Fixed stairways shall have a minimum width of 22 inches.

(e) Angle of stairway rise.

Fixed stairs shall be installed at angles to the horizontal of between 30° and 50°. Any uniform combination of rise/tread dimensions may be used that will result in a stairway at an angle to the horizontal within the permissible range. Table D-1 gives rise/tread dimensions which will produce a stairway within the permissible range, stating the angle to the horizontal produced by each combination. However, the rise/tread combinations are not limited to those given in Table D-1.

TABLE D-1

Angle to horizontal	Rise (in inches)	Tread run (in inches)
30°35′	6½	11
32°08′	6¾	10¾
33°41′	7	10½
35°16′	7¼	10¼
36°52′	7½	10
38°29′	7¾	9¾
40°08′	8	9½
41°44′	8¼	9¼
43°22′	8½	9
45°00′	8¾	8¾
46°38′	9	8½
48°16′	9¼	8¼
49°54′	9½	8

(f) Stair treads.

All treads shall be reasonably slip-resistant and the nosings shall be of nonslip finish. Welded bar grating treads without nosings are acceptable providing the leading edge can be readily identified by personnel descending the stairway and provided the tread is serrated or is of definite nonslip design. Rise height and tread width shall be uniform throughout any flight of stairs including any foundation structure used as one or more treads of the stairs.

(g) Stairway platforms

Stairway platforms shall be no less than the width of a stairway and a minimum of 30 inches in length measured in the direction of travel.

(h) Railings and handrails.

Standard railings shall be provided on the open sides of all exposed stairways and stair platforms. Handrails shall be provided on at least one side of closed stairways, preferably on the right side descending. Stair railings and handrails shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of § 1910.23.

(i) Vertical clearance.

Vertical clearance above any stair tread to an overhead obstruction shall be at least 7 feet measured from the leading edge of the tread.

(j) Open risers.

Removed

(k) General.

Revoked

1910.25—PORTABLE WOOD LADDERS

(a) Application of requirements.

This section is intended to prescribe rules and establish minimum requirements for the construction, care, and use of the common types of portable wood ladders, in order to insure safety under normal conditions of usage. Other types of special ladders, fruitpicker's ladders, combination step and extension ladders, stockroom step ladders, aisle-way step ladders, shelf ladders, and library ladders are not specifically covered by this section.

(b) Materials.

(1) Requirements applicable to all wood parts.

(i) All wood parts shall be free from sharp edges and splinters; sound and free by accepted visual inspection from shake, wane, compression failures, decay, or other irregularities. Low-density wood shall not be used.

(2) Permissible irregularities in side rails and back rails. Revoked

(3) Permissible irregularities in flat steps, rungs, and cleats. Revoked

(4) Classification of species of wood. Revoked

(5) Metal parts. Revoked

(c) Construction requirements.

(1) Basis of requirements. Revoked

(2) Portable stepladders. Stepladders longer than 20 feet shall not be supplied. Stepladders as hereinafter specified shall be of three types.

Type I—Industrial stepladder, 3 to 20 feet for heavy duty, such as utilities, contractors, and industrial use.

Type II—Commercial stepladder, 3 to 12 feet for medium duty, such as painters, offices, and light industrial use.

Type III—Household stepladder, 3 to 6 feet for light duty, such as light household use.

(i) General requirements.

(a) Revoked

(b) A uniform step spacing shall be employed which shall be not more than 12 inches. Steps shall be parallel and level when the ladder is in position for use.

(c) The minimum width between side rails at the top, inside to inside, shall be not less than 11½ inches. From top to bottom, the side rails shall spread at least 1 inch for each foot of length of stepladder.

(d) Revoked

(e) Revoked

(f) A metal spreader or locking device of sufficient size and strength to securely hold the front and back sections in open positions shall be a component of each stepladder. The spreader shall have all sharp points covered or removed to protect the user. For Type III ladder, the pail shelf and spreader may be combined in one unit (the so-called shelf-lock ladder).

(ii) Type I industrial stepladder. Revoked

(iii) Type II commercial stepladder. Revoked

(iv) Type III household stepladder. Revoked

(3) Portable rung ladders.

(i) General requirements. Revoked

(ii) Single ladder.

(a) Single ladders longer than 30 feet shall not be supplied.

(iii) Two-section ladder.

(a) Two-section extension ladders longer than 60 feet shall not be supplied. All ladders of this type shall consist of two sections, one to fit within the side rails of the other, and arranged in such a manner that the upper section can be raised and lowered.

(iv) Sectional ladder.

(a) Assembled combinations of sectional ladders longer than lengths specified in this subdivision shall not be used.

(v) Trestle and extension trestle ladder.

(a) Trestle ladders, or extension sections or base sections of extension trestle ladders longer than 20 feet shall not be supplied.

(4) Special-purpose ladders.

(i) Platform stepladder. Revoked

(ii) Painter's stepladder.

(a) Painter's stepladders longer than 12 feet shall not be supplied.

(iii) Mason's ladder. A mason's ladder is a special type of single ladder intended for use in heavy construction work.

(a) Mason's ladders longer than 40 feet shall not be supplied.

(5) Trolley and side-rolling ladders.

(i) Length. Trolley ladders and side-rolling ladders longer than 20 feet should not be supplied.

(d) Care and use of ladders.

(1) Care. To insure safety and serviceability the following precautions on the care of ladders shall be observed:

(i) Ladders shall be maintained in good condition at all times, the joint between the steps and side rails shall be tight, all hardware and fittings securely attached, and the movable parts shall operate freely without binding or undue play.

(ii) Metal bearings of locks, wheels, pulleys, etc., shall be frequently lubricated.

(iii) Frayed or badly worn rope shall be replaced.

(iv) Safety feet and other auxiliary equipment shall be kept in good condition to insure proper performance.

(v) thru (ix) Revoked

(x) Ladders shall be inspected frequently and those which have developed defects shall be withdrawn from service for repair or destruction and tagged or marked as "Dangerous, Do Not Use."

(xi) Rungs should be kept free of grease and oil.

(2) Use. The following safety precautions shall be observed in connection with the use of ladders:

(i) Portable rung and cleat ladders shall, where possible, be used at such a pitch that the horizontal distance from the top support to the foot of the ladder is one-quarter of the working length of the ladder (the length along the ladder between the foot and the top support). The ladder shall be so placed as to prevent slipping, or it shall be lashed, or held in position. Ladders shall not be used in a horizontal position as platforms, runways, or scaffolds;

(ii) Ladders for which dimensions are specified should not be used by more than one man at a time nor with ladder jacks and scaffold planks where use by more than one man is anticipated. In such cases, specially designed ladders with larger dimensions of the parts should be procured;

(iii) Portable ladders shall be so placed that the side rails have a secure footing. The top rest for portable rung and cleat ladders shall be reasonably rigid and shall have ample strength to support the applied load;

(iv) Ladders shall not be placed in front of doors opening toward the ladder unless the door is blocked upon, locked, or guarded.

(v) Ladders shall not be placed on boxes, barrels, or other unstable bases to obtain additional height;

(vi) Removed

(vii) Removed

(viii) Ladders with broken or missing steps, rungs, or cleats, broken side rails, or other faulty equipment shall not be used; improvised repairs shall not be made;

(ix) Short ladders shall not be spliced together to provide long sections;

(x) Ladders made by fastening cleats across a single rail shall not be used;

(xi) Ladders shall not be used as guys, braces, or skids, or for other than their intended purposes;

(xii) Tops of the ordinary types of stepladders shall not be used as steps;

(xiii) On two-section extension ladders the minimum overlap for the two sections in use shall be as follows:

Size of ladder (feet):	*Overlap (feet)*
Up to and including 36	3
Over 36 up to and including 48	4
Over 48 up to and including 60	5

(xiv) Portable rung ladders with reinforced rails (see paragraphs (c)(3)(ii)(*c*) and (iii)(*d*) this section) shall be used only with the metal reinforcement on the under side.

(xv) No ladder should be used to gain access to a roof unless the top of the ladder shall extend at least 3 feet above the point of support, at eave, gutter, or roof line;

(xvi) Removed

(xvii) Middle and top sections of sectional or window cleaner's ladders should not be used for bottom section unless the user equips them with safety shoes.

(xviii) Removed

(xix) The user should equip all portable rung ladders with nonslip bases when there is a hazard of slipping. Nonslip bases are not intended as a substitute for care in safely placing, lashing, or holding a ladder that is being used upon oily, metal, concrete, or slippery surfaces.

(xx) The bracing on the back legs of step ladders is designed solely for increasing stability and not for climbing.

(xxi) Revoked

1910.26—PORTABLE METAL LADDERS

(a) Requirements.

(1) General. Specific design and construction requirements are not part of this section because of the wide variety of metals and design possibilities. However, the design shall be such as to produce a ladder without structural defects or accident hazards such as sharp edges, burrs, etc. The metal selected shall be of sufficient strength to meet the test requirements, and shall be protected against corrosion unless inherently corrosion-resistant.

(i) thru (ii) Revoked

(iii) The spacing of rungs or steps shall be on 12-inch centers.

(iv) Revoked

(v) Rungs and steps shall be corrugated, knurled, dimpled, coated with skid-resistant material, or otherwise treated to minimize the possibility of slipping.

(2) General specifications—straight and extension ladders.

(i) The minimum width between side rails of a straight ladder or any section of an extension ladder shall be 12 inches.

(ii) The length of single ladders or individual sections of ladders shall not exceed 30 feet. Two-section ladders shall not exceed 48 feet in length and over two-section ladders shall not exceed 60 feet in length.

(iii) Based on the nominal length of the ladder, each section of a multisection ladder shall overlap the adjacent section by at least the number of feet stated in the following:

Nominal length of ladder (feet):	*Overlap (feet)*
Up to and including 36	3
Over 36, up to and including 48	4
Over 48, up to 60	5

(iv) Extension ladders shall be equipped with positive stops which will insure the overlap specified in the table above.

(3) General specifications—step ladders.

(i) thru (ii) Revoked

(iii) The length of a stepladder is measured by the length of the front rail. To be classified as a standard length ladder, the measured length shall be within plus or minus one-half inch of the specified length. Stepladders shall not exceed 20 feet in length.

(iv thru (vi) Revoked

(vii) The bottoms of the four rails are to be supplied with insulating nonslip material for the safety of the user.

(viii) A metal spreader or locking device of sufficient size and strength to securely hold the front and back sections in the open position shall be a component of each stepladder. The spreader shall have all sharp points or edges covered or removed to protect the user.

(4) General specifications—trestles and extension trestle ladders.

(i) Trestle ladders or extension sections or base sections of extension trestle ladders shall be not more than 20 feet in length.

(5) General specifications—platform ladders.

(i) The length of a platform ladder shall not exceed 20 feet. The length of a platform ladder shall be measured along the front rail from the floor to the platform.

Pages 41 thru 54 deleted

(b) Testing. Revoked

(c) Care and maintenance of ladders.

(1) General. To get maximum serviceability, safety, and to eliminate unnecessary damage of equipment, good safe practices in the use and care of ladder equipment must be employed by the users.

The following rules and regulations are essential to the life of the equipment and the safety of the user.

(2) Care of ladders.

(i) thru (iii) Revoked

(iv) Ladders must be maintained in good usable condition at all times.

(v) Removed

(vi) If a ladder is involved in any of the following, immediate inspection is necessary:

(a) If ladders tip over, inspect ladder for side rails dents or bends, or excessively dented rungs; check all rung-to-side-rail connections; check hardware connections; check rivets for shear.

(b) Removed

(c) Removed

(d) If ladders are exposed to oil and grease, equipment should be cleaned of oil, grease, or slippery materials. This can easily be done with a solvent or steam cleaning.

(vii) Ladders having defects are to be marked and taken out of service until repaired by either maintenance department or the manufacturer.

(3) Use of ladders.

(i) A simple rule for setting up a ladder at the proper angle is to place the base a distance from the vertical wall equal to one-fourth the working length of the ladder.

(ii) Portable ladders are designed as a one-man working ladder based on a 200-pound load.

(iii) The ladder base section must be placed with a secure footing.

(iv) The top of the ladder must be placed with the two rails supported, unless equipped with a single support attachment.

(v) When ascending or descending, the climber must face the ladder.

(vi) Ladders must not be tied or fastened together to provide longer sections. They must be equipped with the hardware fittings necessary if the manufacturer endorses extended uses.

(vii) Ladders should not be used as a brace, skid, guy or gin pole, gangway, or for other uses than that for which they were intended, unless specifically recommended for use by the manufacturer.

(viii) Users are cautioned to take proper safety measures when metal ladders are used in areas containing electric circuits to prevent short circuits or electrical shock.

1910.27—FIXED LADDERS INTERP

(a) Design requirements.

(1) Design considerations. All ladders, appurtenances, and fastenings shall be designed to meet the following load requirements:

(i) The minimum design live load shall be a single concentrated load of 200 pounds.

(ii) The number and position of additional concentrated live-load units of 200 pounds each as determined from anticipated usage of the ladder shall be considered in the design.

(iii) The live loads imposed by persons occupying the ladder shall be considered to be concentrated at such points as will cause the maximum stress in the structural member being considered.

(iv) The weight of the ladder and attached appurtenances together with the live load shall be considered in the design of rails and fastenings.

(2) Design stresses. Design stresses for wood components of ladders shall not exceed those specified in § 1910.25. All wood parts of fixed ladders shall meet the requirements of § 1910.25(b).

For fixed ladders consisting of wood side rails and wood rungs or cleats, used at a pitch in the range 75 degrees to 90 degrees, and intended for use by no more than one person per section, single ladders as described in § 1910.25(c)(3)(ii) are acceptable.

(b) Specific features.

(1) Rungs and cleats.

(i) All rungs shall have a minimum diameter of three-fourths inch for metal ladders, except as covered in subparagraph (7)(i) of this paragraph, and a minimum diameter of 1⅛ inches for wood ladders.

(ii) The distance between rungs, cleats, and steps shall not exceed 12 inches and shall be uniform throughout the length of the ladder.

(iii) The minimum clear length of rungs or cleats shall be 16 inches.

(iv) Rungs, cleats, and steps shall be free of splinters, sharp edges, burrs, or projections which may be a haza

(v) The rungs of an individual-rung ladder shall be so designed that the foot cannot slide off the end. A suggested design is shown in figure D–1.

(2) Side rails. Side rails which might be used as a climbing aid shall be of such cross sections as to afford adequate gripping surface without sharp edges, splinters, or burrs.

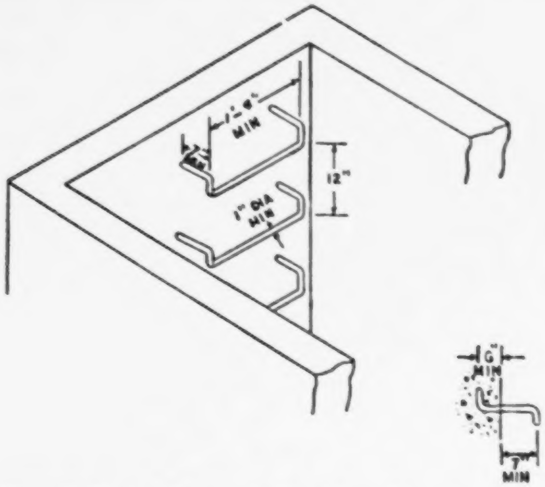


FIGURE D-1.—Suggested design for rungs on individual-rung ladders.

(3) Fastenings. Fastenings shall be an integral part of fixed ladder design.

(4) Splices. All splices made by whatever means shall meet design requirements as noted in paragraph (a) of this section. All splices and connections shall have smooth transition with original members and with no sharp or extensive projections.

(5) Electrolytic action. Adequate means shall be employed to protect dissimilar metals from electrolytic action when such metals are joined.

(6) Welding. All welding shall be in accordance with the "Code for Welding in Building Construction" (AWSD1.0-1966).

(7) Protection from deterioration.

(i) Metal ladders and appurtenances shall be painted or otherwise treated to resist corrosion and rusting when location demands. Ladders formed by individual metal rungs imbedded in concrete, which serve as access to pits and to other areas under floors, are frequently located in an atmosphere that causes corrosion and rusting. To increase rung life in such atmosphere, individual metal rungs shall have a minimum diameter of 1 inch or shall be painted or otherwise treated to resist corrosion and rusting.

(ii) Wood ladders, when used under conditions where decay may occur, shall be treated with a nonirritating preservative, and the details shall be such as to prevent or minimize the accumulation of water on wood parts.

(iii) When different types of materials are used in the construction of a ladder, the materials used shall be so treated as to have no deleterious effect one upon the other.

(c) Clearance.

(1) Climbing side. On fixed ladders, the perpendicular distance from the centerline of the rungs to the nearest permanent object on the climbing side of the ladder shall be 36 inches for a pitch of 76 degrees, and 30 inches for a pitch of 90 degrees (fig. D-2 of this section), with minimum clearances for intermediate pitches varying between these two limits in proportion to the slope, except as provided in subparagraphs (3) and (5) of this paragraph.

(2) Ladders without cages or wells. A clear width of at least 15 inches shall be provided each way from the centerline of the ladder in the climbing space, except when cages or wells are necessary.

(3) Ladders with cages or baskets. Ladders equipped with cage or basket are excepted from the provisions of subparagraphs (1) and (2) of this paragraph, but shall conform to the provisions of paragraph (d)(1)(v) of this section. Fixed ladders in smooth-walled wells are excepted from the provisions of subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, but shall conform to the provisions of paragraph (d)(1)(vi) of this section.

(4) Clearance in back of ladder. The distance from the centerline of rungs, cleats, or steps to the nearest permanent object in back of the ladder shall be not less than 7 inches, except that when unavoidable obstructions are encountered, minimum clearances as shown in figure D–3 shall be provided.

(5) Clearance in back of grab bar. The distance from the centerline of the grab bar to the nearest permanent object in back of the grab bars shall be not less than 4 inches. Grab bars shall not protrude on the climbing side beyond the rungs of the ladder which they serve.

(6) Step-across distance. The step-across distance from the nearest edge of ladder to the nearest edge of equipment or structure shall be not more than 12 inches, or less than 2½ inches (fig. D–4).

Minimum Ladder Clearances

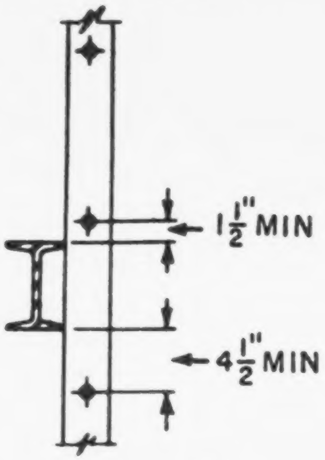
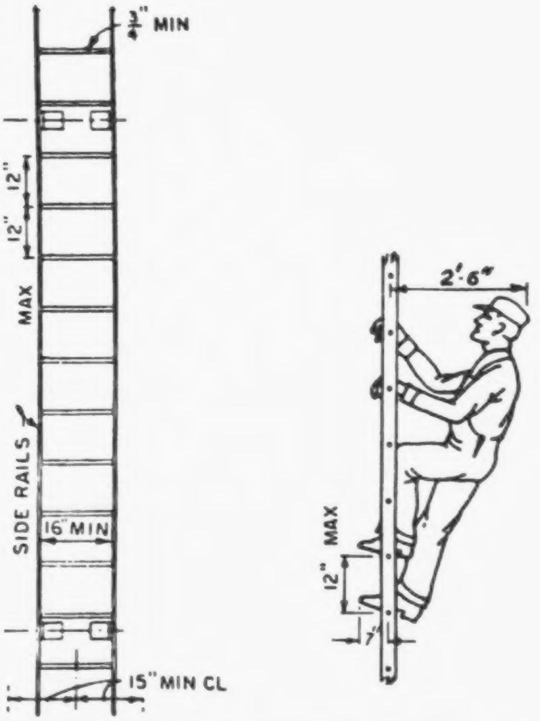

1½" MIN
4½" MIN

FIG. D-3

Clearance for Unavoidable Obstruction at Rear of Fixed Ladder


¾" MIN
12"
12"
MAX
SIDE RAILS
16" MIN
15" MIN CL
2'-6"
12" MAX
7"

RAIL LADDER WITH BAR STEEL RAILS AND ROUND STEEL RUNGS

FIG. D-2

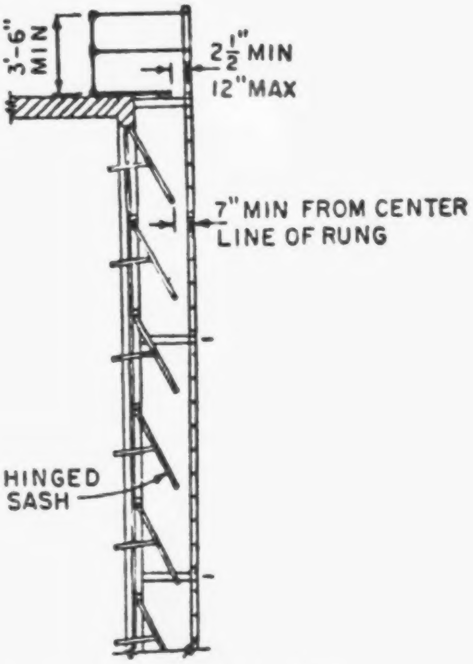
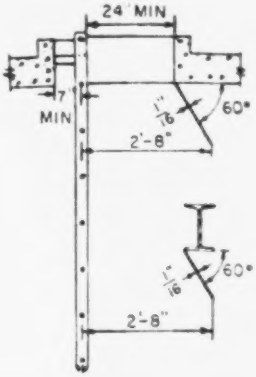

3'-6" MIN
2½" MIN
12" MAX
7" MIN FROM CENTER LINE OF RUNG
HINGED SASH

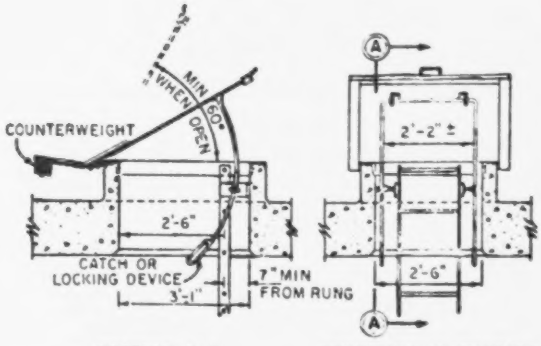
Fig. D-4
Ladder Far from Wall

(7) Hatch cover. Counterweighted hatch covers shall open a minimum of 60 degrees from the horizontal. The distance from the centerline of rungs or cleats to the edge of the hatch opening on the climbing side shall be not less than 24 inches for offset wells or 30 inches for straight wells. There shall be no protruding potential hazards within 24 inches of the centerline of rungs or cleats; any such hazards within 30 inches of the centerline of the rungs or cleats shall be fitted with deflector plates placed at an angle of 60 degrees from the horizontal as indicated in figure D-5. The relationship of a fixed ladder to an acceptable counterweighted hatch cover is illustrated in figure D-6.



Deflector Plates for Head Hazards

Fig. D-5



SECTION A-A SECTIONAL ELEVATION

Relationship of Fixed Ladder to a Safe Access Hatch

Fig. D-6

(d) Special requirements.

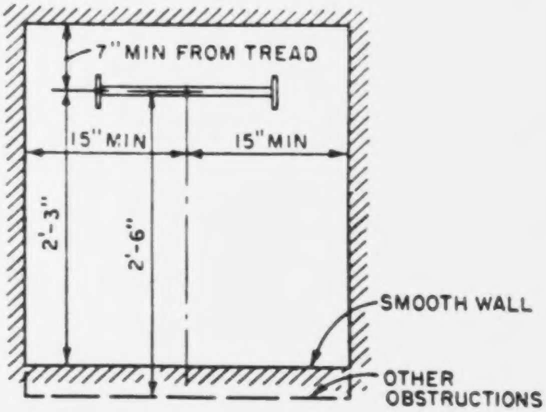
(1) Cages or wells.

(i) Cages or wells (except on chimney ladders) shall be built, as shown on the applicable drawings, covered in detail in figures D-7, D-8, and D-9, or of equivalent construction.

(ii) Cages or wells (except as provided in subparagraph (5) of this paragraph) conforming to the dimensions shown in figures D-7, D-8, and D-9 shall be provided on ladders of more than 20 feet to a maximum unbroken length of 30 feet.

(iii) Cages shall extend a minimum of 42 inches above the top of landing, unless other acceptable protection is provided.

(iv) Cages shall extend down the ladder to a point not less than 7 feet nor more than 8 feet above the base of the ladder, with bottom flared not less than 4 inches, or portion of cage opposite ladder shall be carried to the base.



Clearance Diagram for Fixed Ladder in Well

Figure D-7

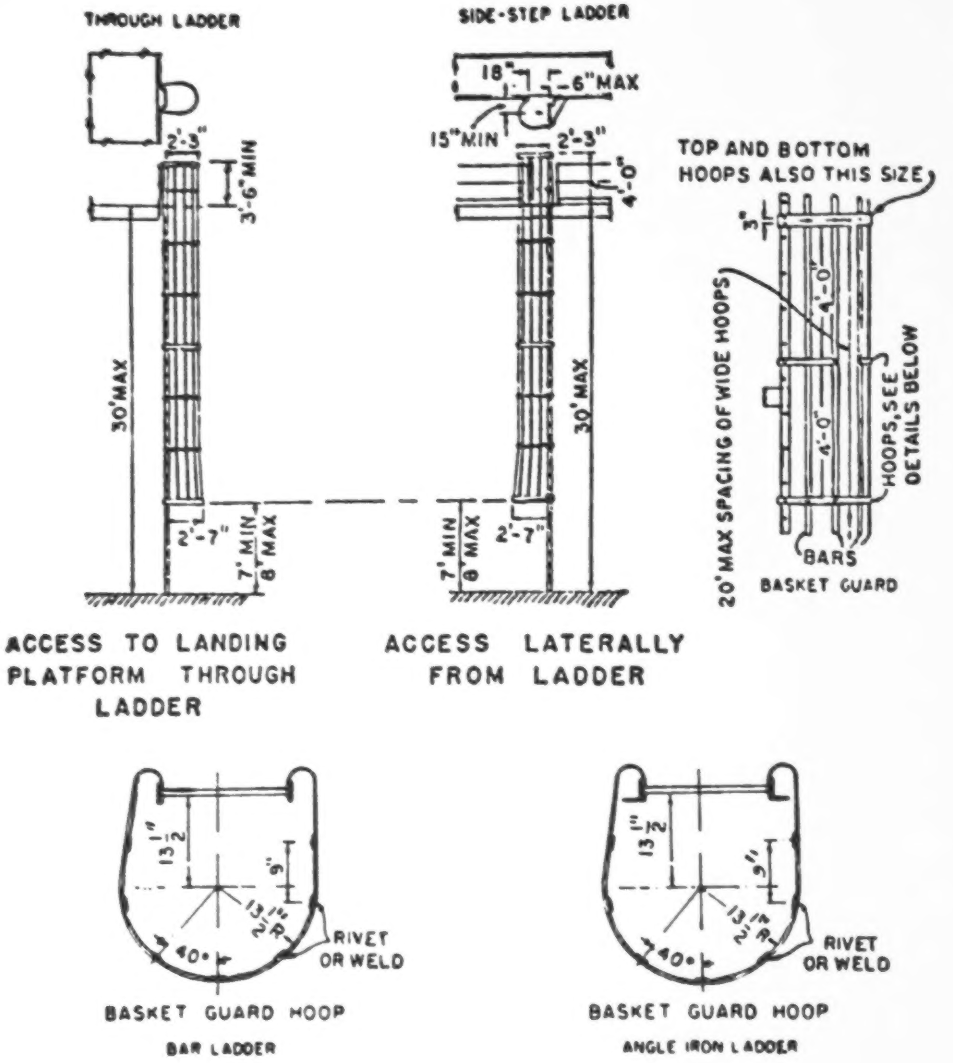

THROUGH LADDER
SIDE-STEP LADDER
18"
6" MAX
15" MIN
2'-3"
2'-3"
3'-6" MIN
4'-0"
30' MAX
30' MAX
2'-7"
2'-7"
7' MIN
8' MAX
7' MIN
8' MAX
TOP AND BOTTOM HOOPS ALSO THIS SIZE
3"
4'-0"
4'-0"
20' MAX SPACING OF WIDE HOOPS
HOOPS, SEE DETAILS BELOW
BARS
BASKET GUARD
ACCESS TO LANDING PLATFORM THROUGH LADDER
ACCESS LATERALLY FROM LADDER
13 1/2"
9"
13 1/2" R
40°
RIVET OR WELD
BASKET GUARD HOOP
BAR LADDER
13 1/2"
9"
13 1/2" R
40°
RIVET OR WELD
BASKET GUARD HOOP
ANGLE IRON LADDER

Fig. D-8

Cages for Ladders More Than 20 Feet High

(v) Cages shall not extend less than 27 nor more than 28 inches from the centerline of the rungs of the ladder. Cage shall not be less than 27 inches in width. The inside shall be clear of projections. Vertical bars shall be located at a maximum spacing of 40 degrees around the circumference of the cage; this will give a maximum spacing of approximately 9½ inches, center to center.

(vi) Ladder wells shall have a clear width of at least 15 inches measured each way from the centerline of the ladder. Smooth-walled wells shall be a minimum of 27

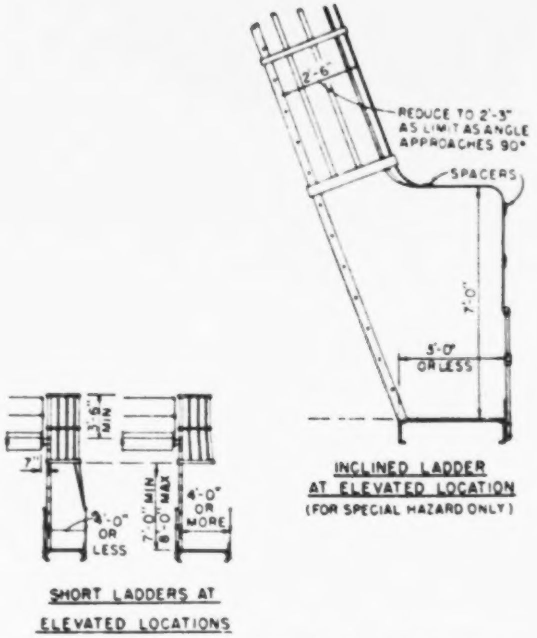

2'-6"
REDUCE TO 2'-3" AS LIMIT AS ANGLE APPROACHES 90°
SPACERS
7'-0"
5'-0" OR LESS
INCLINED LADDER AT ELEVATED LOCATION
(FOR SPECIAL HAZARD ONLY)
3'-6" MIN
7"
4'-0" OR LESS
7'-0" MIN
8'-0" MAX
4'-0" OR MORE
SHORT LADDERS AT ELEVATED LOCATIONS

FIGURE D-9.—Cages—Special applications.

inches from the centerline of rungs to the well wall on the climbing side of the ladder. Where other obstructions on the climbing side of the ladder exist, there shall be a minimum of 30 inches from the centerline of the rungs.

(2) Landing platforms. When ladders are used to ascend to heights exceeding 20 feet (except on chimneys), landing platforms shall be provided for each 30 feet of height or fraction thereof, except that, where no cage, well, or ladder safety device is provided, landing platforms shall be provided for each 20 feet of height or fraction thereof. Each ladder section shall be offset from adjacent sections. Where installation conditions (even for a short, unbroken length) require that adjacent sections be offset, landing platforms shall be provided at each offset.

(i) Where a man has to step a distance greater than 12 inches from the centerline of the rung of a ladder to the nearest edge of structure or equipment, a landing platform shall be provided. The minimum step-across distance shall be 2½ inches.

(ii) All landing platforms shall be equipped with standard railings and toeboards, so arranged as to give safe access to the ladder. Platforms shall be not less than 24 inches in width and 30 inches in length.

(iii) One rung of any section of ladder shall be located at the level of the landing laterally served by the ladder. Where access to the landing is through the ladder, the same rung spacing as used on the ladder shall be used from the landing platform to the first rung below the landing.

(3) Ladder extensions. The side rails of through or side-step ladder extensions shall extend 3½ feet above parapets and landings. For through ladder extensions, the rungs shall be omitted from the extension and shall have not less than 18 nor more than 24 inches clearance between rails. For side-step or offset fixed ladder sections, at landings, the side rails and rungs shall be carried to the next regular rung beyond or above the 3½ feet minimum (fig. D-10).

(4) Grab bars. Grab bars shall be spaced by a continuation of the rung spacing when they are located in the horizontal position. Vertical grab bars shall have the same spacing as the ladder side rails. Grab-bar diameters shall be the equivalent of the round-rung diameters.

(5) Ladder safety devices. Ladder safety devices may be used on tower, water tank, and chimney ladders over 20 feet in unbroken length in lieu of cage protection. No landing platform is required in these cases. All ladder safety devices such as those that incorporate lifebelts, friction brakes, and sliding attachments shall meet the design requirements of the ladders which they serve.

(e) Pitch.

(1) Preferred pitch. The preferred pitch of fixed ladders shall be considered to come in the range of 75 degrees and 90 degrees with the horizontal (fig. D-11).

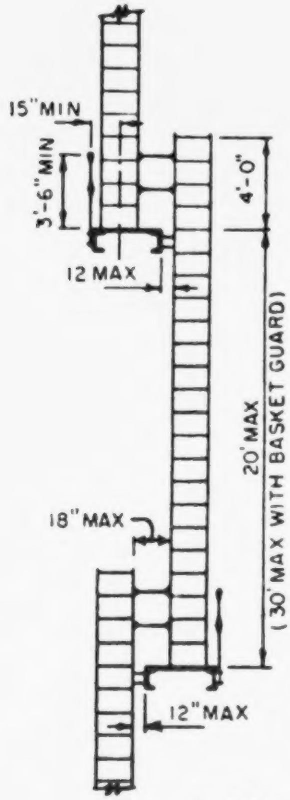

15"MIN
3'-6"MIN
4'-0"
12 MAX
20' MAX
(30' MAX WITH BASKET GUARD)
18"MAX
12"MAX

Fig. D-10

Offset Fixed Ladder Sections

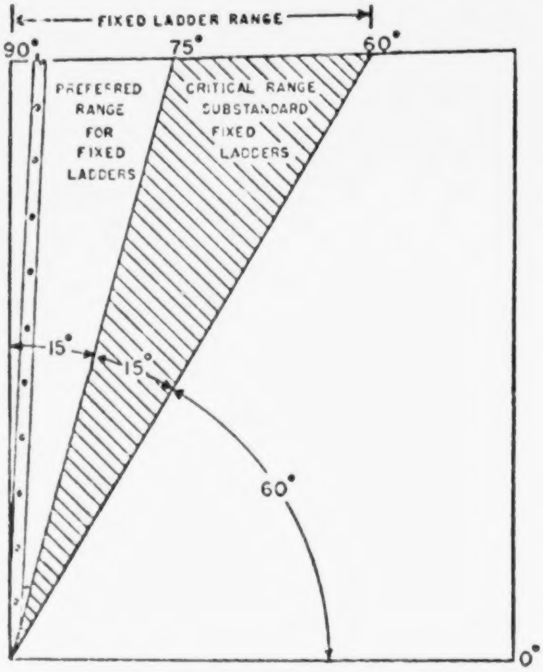

FIXED LADDER RANGE
90°
75°
60°
PREFERRED RANGE FOR FIXED LADDERS
CRITICAL RANGE SUBSTANDARD FIXED LADDERS
15°
15°
60°
0°

Fig. D-11

Pitch of Fixed Ladders

(2) Substandard pitch. Fixed ladders shall be considered as substandard if they are installed within the substandard pitch range of 60 and 75 degrees with the horizontal. Substandard fixed ladders are permitted only where it is found necessary to meet conditions of installation. This substandard pitch range shall be considered as a critical range to be avoided, if possible.

(3) Scope of coverage in this section. This section covers only fixed ladders within the pitch range of 60 degrees and 90 degrees with the horizontal.

(4) Pitch greater than 90 degrees. Ladders having a pitch in excess of 90 degrees with the horizontal are prohibited.

(f) Maintenance.

All ladders shall be maintained in a safe condition. All ladders shall be inspected regularly, with the intervals between inspections being determined by use and exposure.

1910.28—SAFETY REQUIREMENTS FOR SCAFFOLDING

(a) General requirements for all scaffolds.

(1) Scaffolds shall be furnished and erected in accordance with this standard for persons engaged in work that cannot be done safely from the ground or from solid construction, except that ladders used for such work shall conform to § 1910.25 and § 1910.26.

(2) The footing or anchorage for scaffolds shall be sound, rigid, and capable of carrying the maximum intended load without settling or displacement. Unstable objects such as barrels, boxes, loose brick, or concrete blocks shall not be used to support scaffolds or planks.

(3) Removed

[49 F.R. 5318, February 10, 1984.]

(4) Scaffolds and their components shall be capable of supporting without failure at least four times the maximum intended load.

(5) Scaffolds and other devices mentioned or described in this section shall be maintained in safe condition. Scaffolds shall not be altered or moved horizontally while they are in use or occupied.

(6) Any scaffold damaged or weakened from any cause shall be immediately repaired and shall not be used until repairs have been completed.

(7) Scaffolds shall not be loaded in excess of the working load for which they are intended.

(8) All load-carrying timber members of scaffold framing shall be a minimum of 1,500 *f.* (Stress Grade) construction grade lumber. All dimensions are nominal sizes as provided in the American Lumber Standards, except that where rough sizes are noted, only rough or undressed lumber of the size specified will satisfy minimum requirements. (NOTE: Where nominal sizes of lumber are used in place of rough sizes, the nominal size lumber shall be such as to provide equivalent strength to that specified in tables D-7 through D-12 and D-16.)

(9) All planking shall be Scaffold Grade as recognized by grading rules for the species of wood used. The maximum permissible spans for 2- x 9-inch or wider planks are shown in the following table:

	Material				
	Full thickness undressed lumber			Nominal thickness lumber	
Working load (p.s.f.)	25	50	75	25	50
Permissible span (ft.)	10	8	6	8	6

The maximum permissible span for 1¼- x 9-inch or wider plank of full thickness is 4 feet with medium loading of 50 p.s.f.

(10) Nails or bolts used in the construction of scaffolds shall be of adequate size and in sufficient numbers at each connection to develop the designed strength of the scaffold. Nails shall not be subjected to a straight pull and shall be driven full length.

(11) All planking or platforms shall be overlapped (minimum 12 inches) or secured from movement.

TABLE D-7—MINIMUM NOMINAL SIZE AND MAXIMUM SPACING OF MEMBERS OF SINGLE POLE SCAFFOLDS LIGHT DUTY

	Maximum height of scaffold	
	20 feet	60 feet
Uniformly distributed load	Not to exceed 25 pounds per square foot.	
Poles or uprights	2 by 4 in.	4 by 4 in.
Pole spacing (longitudinal)	6 ft. 0 in.	10 ft. 0 in.
Maximum width of scaffold	5 ft. 0 in.	5 ft. 0 in
Bearers or putlogs to 3 ft. 0 in. width	2 by 4 in.	2 by 4 in.
Bearers or putlogs to 5 ft. 0 in. width	2 by 6 in. or 3 by 4 in.	2 by 6 in. or 3 by 4 in. (rough).
Ledgers	1 by 4 in.	1¼ by 9 in.
Planking	1¼ by 9 in. (rough)	2 by 9 in.
Vertical spacing of horizontal members	7 ft. 0 in.	7 ft. 0 in.
Bracing, horizontal and diagonal	1 by 4 in.	1 by 4 in.
Tie-ins	1 by 4 in.	1 by 4 in
Toeboards	4 in. high (minimum)	4 in. high (minimum).
Guardrail	2 by 4 in.	2 by 4 in

All members except planking are used on edge.

TABLE D-8—MINIMUM NOMINAL SIZE AND MAXIMUM SPACING OF MEMBERS OF SINGLE POLE SCAFFOLDS

MEDIUM DUTY

Uniformly distributed load.	Not to exceed 50 pounds per square foot.
Maximum height of scaffold.	60 ft.
Poles or uprights	4 by 4 in.
Pole spacing (longitudinal).	8 ft. 0 in.
Maximum width of scaffold.	5 ft. 0 in.
Bearers or putlogs	2 by 9 in. or 3 by 4 in.
Spacing of bearers or putlogs.	8 ft. 0 in.
Ledgers	2 by 9 in.
Vertical spacing of horizontal members.	9 ft. 0 in.
Bracing, horizontal	1 by 6 in. or 1¼ by 4 in.
Bracing, diagonal	1 by 4 in.
Tie-ins	1 by 4 in.
Planking	2 by 9 in.
Toeboards	4 in. high (minimum).
Guardrail	2 by 4 in.

All members except planking are used on edge.

TABLE D-9—MIMIMUM NOMINAL SIZE AND MAXIMUM SPACING OF MEMBERS OF SINGLE POLE SCAFFOLDS

HEAVY DUTY

Uniformly distributed load.	Not to exceed 75 pounds per square foot.
Maximum height of scaffold.	60 ft.
Poles or uprights	4 by 4 in.
Pole spacing (longitudinal).	6 ft. 0 in.
Maximum width of scaffold.	5 ft. 0 in.
Bearers or putlogs	2 by 9 in. or 3 by 5 in. (rough).
Spacing of bearers or putlogs.	6 ft. 0 in.
Ledgers	2 by 9 in.
Vertical spacing of horizontal members.	6 ft. 6 in.
Bracing, horizontal and diagonal.	2 by 4 in.
Tie-ins	1 by 4 in.
Planking	2 by 9 in.
Toeboards	4 in. high (minimum).
Guardrail	2 by 4 in.

All members except planking are used on edge.

Table D-10—Minimum Nominal Size and Maximum Spacing of Members of Independent Pole Scaffolds Light Duty

	Maximum height of scaffold	
	20 feet	60 feet
Uniformly distributed load	Not to exceed 25 pounds per square foot.	
Poles or uprights	2 by 4 in	4 by 4 in.
Pole spacing (longitudinal)	6 ft. 0 in	10 ft. 0 in.
Pole spacing (transverse)	6 ft. 0 in	10 ft. 0 in.
Ledgers	1¼ by 4 in	1¼ by 9 in
Bearers to 3 ft. 0 in. span	2 by 4 in	2 by 4 in.
Bearers to 10 ft. 0 in. span	2 by 6 in. or 3 by 4 in	2 by 9 (rough) or 3 by 8 in
Planking	1¼ by 9 in	2 by 9 in.
Vertical spacing of horizontal members	7 ft. 0 in	7 ft. 0 in.
Bracing, horizontal and diagonal	1 by 4 in	1 by 4 in.
Tie-ins	1 by 4 in	1 by 4 in.
Toeboards	4 in. high	4 in. high (minimum).
Guardrail	2 by 4 in	2 by 4 in.

All members except planking are used on edge.

Table D-11—Minimum Nominal Size and Maximum Spacing of Members of Independent Pole Scaffolds

MEDIUM DUTY

Uniformly distributed load.	Not to exceed 50 pounds per square foot.
Maximum height of scaffold.	60 ft.
Poles or uprights	4 by 4 in.
Pole spacing (longitudinal).	8 ft. 0 in.
Pole spacing (transverse).	8 ft. 0 in.
Ledgers	2 by 9 in.
Vertical spacing of horizontal members.	6 ft. 0 in.
Spacing of bearers	8 ft. 0 in.
Bearers	2 by 9 in. (rough) or 2 by 10 in.
Bracing, horizontal	1 by 6 in. or 1¼ by 4 in.
Bracing, diagonal	1 by 4 in.
Tie-ins	1 by 4 in.
Planking	2 by 9 in.
Toeboards	4 in. high (minimum).
Guardrail	2 by 4 in.

All members except planking are used on edge.

Table D-12—Minimum Nominal Size and Maximum Spacing of Members of Independent Pole Scaffolds

HEAVY DUTY

Uniformly distributed load.	Not to exceed 75 pounds per square foot.
Maximum height of scaffold.	60 ft.
Poles or uprights	4 by 4 in.
Pole spacing (longitudinal).	6 ft. 0 in.
Pole spacing (transverse).	8 ft. 0 in.
Ledgers	2 by 9 in.
Vertical spacing of horizontal members.	4 ft. 6 in.
Bearers	2 by 9 in. (rough).
Bracing, horizontal and diagonal.	2 by 4 in.
Tie-ins	1 by 4 in.
Planking	2 by 9 in.
Toeboards	4 in. high (minimum).
Guardrail	2 by 4 in.

All members except planking are used on edge.

(12) An access ladder or equivalent safe access shall be provided.

(13) Scaffold planks shall extend over their end supports not less than 6 inches nor more than 18 inches.

(14) The poles, legs, or uprights of scaffolds shall be plumb, and securely and rigidly braced to prevent swaying and displacement.

(15) Materials being hoisted onto a scaffold shall have a tag line.

(16) Overhead protection shall be provided for men on a scaffold exposed to overhead hazards.

(17) Scaffolds shall be provided with a screen between the toeboard and the guardrail, extending along the entire opening, consisting of No. 18 gauge U.S. Standard Wire one-half-inch mesh or the equivalent, where persons are required to work or pass under the scaffolds.

(18) Employees shall not work on scaffolds during storms or high winds.

(19) Employees shall not work on scaffolds which are covered with ice or snow, unless all ice or snow is removed and planking sanded to prevent slipping.

(20) Tools, materials, and debris shall not be allowed to accumulate in quantities to cause a hazard.

(21) Only treated or protected fiber rope shall be used for or near any work involving the use of corrosive substances or chemicals.

(22) Wire or fiber rope used for scaffold suspension shall be capable of supporting at least six times the intended load.

(23) When acid solutions are used for cleaning buildings over 50 feet in height, wire rope supported scaffolds shall be used.

(24) The use of shore scaffolds or lean-to scaffolds is prohibited.

(25) Lumber sizes, when used in this section, refer to nominal sizes except where otherwise stated.

(26) Scaffolds shall be secured to permanent structures, through use of anchor bolts, reveal bolts, or other equivalent means. Window cleaners' anchor bolts shall not be used.

(27) Special precautions shall be taken to protect scaffold members, including any wire or fiber ropes, when using a heat-producing process.

(b) General requirements for wood pole scaffolds.

(1) Scaffold poles shall bear on a foundation of sufficient size and strength to spread the load from the poles over a sufficient area to prevent settlement. All poles shall be set plumb.

(2) Where wood poles are spliced, the ends shall be squared and the upper section shall rest squarely on the lower section. Wood splice plates shall be provided on at least two adjacent sides and shall not be less than 4 feet 0 inches in length, overlapping the abutted ends equally, and have the same width and not less than the cross-sectional area of the pole. Splice plates of other materials of equivalent strength may be used.

(3) Independent pole scaffolds shall be set as near to the wall of the building as practicable.

(4) All pole scaffolds shall be securely guyed or tied to the building or structure. Where the height or length exceeds 25 feet, the scaffold shall be secured at intervals not greater than 25 feet vertically and horizontally.

(5) Putlogs or bearers shall be set with their greater dimensions vertical, long enough to project over the ledgers of the inner and outer rows of poles at least 3 inches for proper support.

(6) Every wooden putlog on single pole scaffolds shall be reinforced with a $^{3}/_{16}$- x 2-inch steel strip or equivalent secured to its lower edge throughout its entire length.

(7) Ledgers shall be long enough to extend over two pole spaces. Ledgers shall not be spliced between the poles. Ledgers shall be reinforced by bearing blocks securely nailed to the side of the pole to form a support for the ledger.

(8) Diagonal bracing shall be provided to prevent the poles from moving in a direction parallel with the wall of the building, or from buckling.

(9) Cross bracing shall be provided between the inner and outer sets of poles in independent pole scaffolds. The free ends of pole scaffolds shall be cross braced.

(10) Full diagonal face bracing shall be erected across the entire face of pole scaffolds in both directions. The braces shall be spliced at the poles.

(11) Platform planks shall be laid with their edges close together so the platform will be tight with no spaces through which tools or fragments of material can fall.

(12) Where planking is lapped, each plank shall lap its end supports at least 12 inches. Where the ends of planks abut each other to form a flush floor, the butt joint shall be at the centerline of a pole. The abutted ends shall rest on separate bearers. Intermediate beams shall be provided where necessary to prevent dislodgment of planks due to deflection, and the ends shall be nailed or cleated to prevent their dislodgment.

(13) When a scaffold turns a corner, the platform planks shall be laid to prevent tipping. The planks that meet the corner putlog at an angle shall be laid first, extending over the diagonally placed putlog far enough to have a good safe bearing, but not far enough to involve any danger from tipping. The planking running in the opposite direction at right angles shall be laid so as to extend over and rest on the first layer of planking.

(14) When moving platforms to the next level, the old platform shall be left undisturbed until the new putlogs or bearers have been set in place, ready to receive the platform planks.

(15) Guardrails not less than 2 x 4 inches or the equivalent and not less than 36 inches or more than 42 inches high, with a mid-rail, when required, of 1- x 4-inch lumber or equivalent, and toeboards, shall be installed at all open sides on all scaffolds more than 10 feet above the ground or floor. Toeboards shall be a minimum of 4 inches in height. Wire mesh shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (a)(17) of this section.

(16) All wood pole scaffolds 60 feet or less in height shall be constructed and erected in accordance with tables D-7 through D-12 of this section. If they are over 60 feet in height they shall be designed by a registered professional engineer and constructed and erected in accordance with such design. A copy of the typical drawings and specifications shall be made available to the employer and for inspection purposes.

(17) Wood-pole scaffolds shall not be erected beyond the reach of effective firefighting apparatus.

(c) Tube and coupler scaffolds.

(1) A light-duty tube and coupler scaffold shall have all posts, bearers, runners, and bracing of nominal 2-inch O.D. steel tubing. The posts shall be spaced no more than 6 feet apart by 10 feet along the length of the scaffold. Other structural metals when used must be designed to carry an equivalent load.

(2) A medium-duty tube and coupler scaffold shall have all posts, runners, and bracing of nominal 2-inch O.D. steel tubing. Posts spaced not more than 6 feet apart by 8 feet along the length of the scaffold shall have bearers of nominal 2½-inch O.D. steel tubing. Posts spaced not more than 5 feet apart by 8 feet along the length of the scaffold shall have bearers of nominal 2-inch O.D. steel tubing. Other structural metals when used must be designed to carry an equivalent load.

(3) A heavy-duty tube and coupler scaffold shall have all posts, runners, and bracing of nominal 2-inch O.D. steel tubing, with the posts spaced not more than 6 feet apart by 6 feet 6 inches along the length of the scaffold. Other structural metals when used must be designed to carry an equivalent load.

(4) Tube and coupler scaffolds shall be limited in heights and working levels to those permitted in tables D-13, 14, and 15, of this section. Drawings and specifications of all tube and coupler scaffolds above the limitations in tables D-13, 14, and 15 of this section shall be designed by a registered professional engineer and copies made available to the employer and for inspection purposes.

(5) All tube and coupler scaffolds shall be constructed and erected to support four times the maximum intended loads as set forth in tables D-13, 14, and 15 of this section, or as set forth in the specifications by a registered professional engineer, copies which shall be made available to the employer and for inspection purposes.

TABLE D-13—TUBE AND COUPLER SCAFFOLDS LIGHT DUTY

Uniformly distributed load.....	Not to exceed 25 p.s.f.
Post spacing (longitudinal).....	10 ft. 0 in.
Post spacing (transverse).......	6 ft. 0 in.

Working levels	Additional planked levels	Maximum height
1	8	125 ft.
2	4	125 ft.
3	0	91 ft. 0 in.

TABLE D-14—TUBE AND COUPLER SCAFFOLDS MEDIUM DUTY

Uniformly distributed load.....	Not to exceed 50 p.s.f.
Post spacing (longitudinal).....	8 ft. 0 in.
Post spacing (transverse).......	6 ft. 0 in.

Working levels	Additional planked levels	Maximum height
1	6	125 ft.
2	0	78 ft. 0 in.

TABLE D-15—TUBE AND COUPLER SCAFFOLDS HEAVY DUTY

Uniformly distributed load ...	Not to exceed 75 p.s.f.
Post spacing (longitudinal) ...	6 ft. 6 in.
Post spacing (traverse)..........	6 ft. 0 in.

Working levels	Additional planked levels	Maximum height
1	6	125 ft.

(6) All tube and coupler scaffolds shall be erected by competent and experienced personnel.

(7) Posts shall be accurately spaced erected on suitable bases, and maintained plumb.

(8) Runners shall be erected along the length of the scaffold located on both the inside and the outside posts at even height. Runners shall be interlocked to form continuous lengths and coupled to each post. The bottom runners shall be located as close to the base as possible. Runners shall be placed not more than 6 feet 6 inches on centers.

(9) Bearers shall be installed transversely between posts and shall be securely coupled to the posts bearing on the runner coupler. When coupled directly to the runners, the coupler must be kept as close to the posts as possible.

(10) Bearers shall be at least 4 inches but not more than 12 inches longer than the post spacing or runner spacing. Bearers may be cantilevered for use as brackets to carry not more than two planks.

(11) Cross bracing shall be installed across the width of the scaffold at least every third set of posts horizontally and every fourth runner vertically. Such bracing shall extend diagonally from the inner and outer runners upward to the next outer and inner runners.

(12) Longitudinal diagonal bracing shall be installed at approximately a 45-degree angle from near the base of the first outer post upward to the extreme top of the scaffold. Where the longitudinal length of the scaffold permits, such bracing shall be duplicated beginning at every fifth post. In a similar manner, longitudinal diagonal bracing shall also be installed from the last post extending back and upward toward the first post. Where conditions preclude the attachment of this bracing to the posts, it may be attached to the runners.

(13) The entire scaffold shall be tied to and securely braced against the building at intervals not to exceed 30 feet horizontally and 26 feet vertically.

(14) Guardrails not less than 2 x 4 inches or the equivalent and not less than 36 inches or more than 42 inches high, with a mid-rail, when required, of 1- x 4-inch lumber or equivalent, and toeboards, shall be installed at all open sides on all scaffolds more than 10 feet above the ground or floor. Toeboards shall be a minimum of 4 inches in height. Wire mesh shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (a)(17) of this section.

(d) Tubular welded frame scaffolds.

(1) Metal tubular frame scaffolds, including accessories such as braces, brackets, trusses, screw legs, ladders, etc., shall be designed and proved to safely support four times the maximum intended load.

(2) Spacing of panels or frames shall be consistent with the loads imposed.

(3) Scaffolds shall be properly braced by cross bracing or diagonal braces, or both, for securing vertical members together laterally, and the cross braces shall be of such length as will automatically square and align vertical members so that the erected scaffold is always plumb, square, and rigid. All brace connections shall be made secure.

(4) Scaffold legs shall be set on adjustable bases or plain bases placed on mud sills or other foundations adequate to support the maximum intended load.

(5) The frames shall be placed one on top of the other with coupling or stacking pins to provide proper vertical alinement of the legs.

(6) Where uplift may occur, panels shall be locked together vertically by pins or other equivalent suitable means.

(7) Guardrails not less than 2 x 4 inches or the equivalent and not less than 36 inches or more than 42 inches high, with a mid rail, when required, of 1- x 4-inch lumber or equivalent, and toeboards, shall be installed at all open sides on all scaffolds more than 10 feet above the ground or floor. Toeboards shall be a minimum of 4 inches in height. Wire mesh shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (a)(17) of this section.

(8) All tubular metal scaffolds shall be constructed and erected to support four times the maximum intended loads.

(9) To prevent movement, the scaffold shall be secured to the building or structure at intervals not to exceed 30 feet horizontally and 26 feet vertically.

(10) Maximum permissible spans of planking shall be in conformity with paragraph (a)(9) of this section.

(11) Drawings and specifications for all frame scaffolds over 125 feet in height above the base plates shall be designed by a registered professional engineer and copies made available to the employer and for inspection purposes.

(12) All tubular welded frame scaffolds shall be erected by competent and experienced personnel.

(13) Frames and accessories for scaffolds shall be maintained in good repair and every defect, unsafe condition, or noncompliance with this section shall be immediately corrected before further use of the scaffold. Any broken, bent, excessively rusted, altered, or otherwise structurally damaged frames or accessories shall not be used.

(14) Periodic inspections shall be made of all welded frames and accessories, and any maintenance, including painting, or minor corrections authorized by the manufacturer, shall be made before further use.

(e) Outrigger scaffolds.

(1) Outrigger beams shall extend not more than 6 feet beyond the face of the building. The inboard end of outrigger beams, measured from the fulcrum point to the extreme point of support, shall be not less than one and one-half times the outboard end in length. The beams shall rest on edge, the sides shall be plumb, and the edges shall be horizontal. The fulcrum point of the beam shall rest on a secure bearing at least 6 inches in each horizontal dimension. The beam shall be secured in place against movement and shall be securely braced at the fulcrum point against tipping.

(2) The inboard ends of outrigger beams shall be securely supported either by means of struts bearing against sills in contact with the overhead beams or ceiling, or by means of tension members secured to the floor joists underfoot, or by both if necessary. The inboard ends of outrigger beams shall be secured against tipping and the entire supporting structure shall be securely braced in both directions to prevent any horizontal movement.

(3) Unless outrigger scaffolds are designed by a licensed professional engineer, they shall be constructed and erected in accordance with table D–16. Outrigger scaffolds designed by a registered professional engineer shall be constructed and erected in accordance with such design. A copy of the detailed drawings and specifications showing the sizes and spacing of members shall be kept on the job.

TABLE D-16—MINIMUM NOMINAL SIZE AND MAXIMUM SPACING OF MEMBERS OF OUTRIGGER SCAFFOLDS

	Light duty	Medium duty
Maximum scaffold load	25 p.s.f.	50 p.s.f.
Outrigger size	2 x 10 in.	3 x 10 in.
Maximum outrigger spacing.	10 ft 0 in.	6 ft 0 in.
Planking	2 x 9 in.	2 x 9 in.
Guardrail	2 x 4 in.	2 x 4 in.
Guardrail uprights	2 x 4 in.	2 x 4 in.
Toeboards	4 in. (minimum).	4 in. (minimum).

(4) Planking shall be laid tight and shall extend to within 3 inches of the building wall. Planking shall be nailed or bolted to outriggers.

(5) Where there is danger of material falling from the scaffold, a wire mesh or other enclosure shall be provided between the guardrail and the toeboard.

(6) Where additional working levels are required to be supported by the outrigger method, the plans and specifications of the outrigger and scaffolding structure shall be designed by a registered professional engineer.

(f) Masons' adjustable multiple-point suspension scaffolds.

(1) The scaffold shall be capable of sustaining a working load of 50 pounds per square foot and shall not be loaded in excess of that figure.

(2) The scaffold shall be provided with hoisting machines that meet the requirements of a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12121, April 12, 1988]

(3) The platform shall be supported by wire ropes in conformity with paragraph (a)(22) of this section, suspended from overhead outrigger beams.

(4) The scaffold outrigger beams shall consist of structural metal securely fastened or anchored to the frame or floor system of the building or structure.

(5) Each outrigger beam shall be equivalent in strength to at least a standard 7-inch, 15.3-pound steel I-beam, be at least 15 feet long, and shall not project more than 6 feet 6 inches beyond the bearing point.

(6) Where the overhang exceeds 6 feet 6 inches, outrigger beams shall be composed of stronger beams or multiple beams and be installed in accordance with approved designs and instructions.

(7) If channel iron outrigger beams are used in place of I-beams, they shall be securely fastened together with the flanges turned out.

(8) All outrigger beams shall be set and maintained with their webs in a vertical position.

(9) A stop bolt shall be placed at eacn end of every outrigger beam.

(10) The outrigger beam shall rest on suitable wood-bearing blocks.

(11) All parts of the scaffold such as bolts, nuts, fittings, clamps, wire ropes, and outrigger beams and their fastenings, shall be maintained in sound and good working condition and shall be inspected before each installation and periodically thereafter.

(12) The free end of the suspension wire ropes shall be equipped with proper size thimbles and be secured by splicing or other equivalent means. The running ends shall be securely attached to the hoisting drum and at least four turns of rope shall at all times remain on the drum.

(13) Where a single outrigger beam is used, the steel shackles or clevises with which the wire ropes are attached to the outrigger beams shall be placed directly over the hoisting drums.

(14) The scaffold platform shall be equivalent in strength to at least 2-inch planking. (For maximum planking spans see paragraph (a)(9) of this section.)

(15) Guardrails not less than 2 x 4 inches or the equivalent and not less than 36 inches or more than 42 inches high, with a mid-rail, when required, of 1- x 4-inch lumber or equivalent, and toeboards, shall be installed at all open sides on all scaffolds more than 10 feet above the ground or floor. Toeboards shall be a minimum of 4 inches in height. Wire mesh shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (a)(17) of this section.

(16) Overhead protection shall be provided on the scaffold, not more than 9 feet above the platform, consisting of 2-inch planking or material of equivalent strength laid tight, when men are at work on the scaffold and an overhead hazard exists.

(17) Each scaffold shall be installed or relocated in accordance with designs and instructions, of a registered professional engineer, and supervised by a competent, designated person.

(g) Two-point suspension scaffolds (swinging scaffolds).

(1) Two-point suspension scaffold platforms shall be not less than 20 inches nor more than 36 inches wide overall. The platform shall be securely fastened to the hangers by U-bolts or by other equivalent means.

(2) The hangers of two-point suspension scaffolds shall be made of wrought iron, mild steel, or other equivalent material having a cross-sectional area capable of sustaining four times the maximum intended load, and shall be designed with a support for guardrail, intermediate rail, and toeboard.

(3) When hoisting machines are used on two-point suspension scaffolds, such machines shall be of a design tested and approved by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12121, April 12, 1988]

(4) The roof irons or hooks shall be of wrought iron, mild steel, or other equivalent material of proper size and design, securely installed and anchored. Tiebacks of three-fourth inch manila rope or the equivalent shall serve as a secondary means of anchorage, installed at right angles to the face of the building whenever possible and secured to a structurally sound portion of the building.

(5) Guardrails not less than 2 x 4 inches or the equivalent and not less than 36 inches or more than 42 inches high, with a mid-rail, when required, of 1- x 4-inch lumber or equivalent, and toeboards, shall be installed at all open sides on all scaffolds more than 10 feet above the ground or floor. Toeboards shall be a minimum of 4 inches in height. Wire mesh shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (a)(17) of this section.

(6) Two-point suspension scaffolds shall be suspended by wire or fiber ropes. Wire and fiber ropes shall conform to paragraph (a)(22) of this section.

(7) The blocks for fiber ropes shall be of standard 6-inch size, consisting of at least one double and one single block. The sheaves of all blocks shall fit the size of rope used.

(8) All wire ropes, fiber ropes, slings, hangers, platforms, and other supporting parts shall be inspected before every installation. Periodic inspections shall be made while the scaffold is in use.

(9) On suspension scaffolds designed for a working load of 500 pounds no more than two men shall be permitted to work at one time. On suspension scaffolds with a working load of 750 pounds, no more than three men shall be permitted to work at one time. Each workman shall be protected by a safety lifebelt attached to a lifeline. The lifeline shall be securely attached to substantial members of the structure (not scaffold), or to securely rigged lines, which will safely suspend the workman in case of a fall.

(10) Where acid solutions are used fiber ropes are not permitted unless acidproof.

(11) Two-point suspension scaffolds shall be securely lashed to the building or structure to prevent them from swaying. Window cleaners' anchors shall not be used for this purpose.

(12) The platform of every two-point suspension scaffold shall be one of the following types:

(i) The side stringer of ladder-type platforms shall be clear straight-grained spruce or materials of equivalent strength and durability. The rungs shall be of straight-grained oak, ash, or hickory, at least 1⅛-inch in diameter, with seven-eighth inch tenons mortised into the side stringers at least seven-eighth inch. The stringers shall be tied together with the tie rods not less than one-quarter inch in diameter, passing through the stringers and riveted up tight against washers on both ends. The flooring strips shall be spaced not more than five-eighth inch apart except at the side rails where the space may be 1 inch. Ladder-type platforms shall be constructed in accordance with table D-17.

(ii) Plank-type platforms shall be composed of not less than nominal 2-x 8-inch unspliced planks, properly cleated together on the underside starting 6 inches from each end; intervals in between shall not exceed 4 feet. The plank-type platform shall not extend beyond the hangers more than 18 inches. A bar or other effective means shall be securely fastened to the platform at each end to prevent its slipping off the hanger.

TABLE D-17—SCHEDULE FOR LADDER-TYPE PLATFORMS

	Length of platform (feet)				
	12	14 & 16	18 & 20	22 & 24	28 & 30
Side stringers, minimum cross section (finished sizes):					
At ends (in.)	1¾ x 2¾	1¾ x 2¾	1¾ x 3	1¾ x 3	1¾ x 3½
At middle (in.)	1¾ x 3¾	1¾ x 3¾	1¾ x 4	1¾ x 4¼	1¾ x 5
Reinforcing strip (minimum)	A ⅛x⅞-in. steel reinforcing strip or its equivalent shall be attached to the side or underside full length.				
Rungs	Rungs shall be 1⅛-in. minimum, diameter with at least ⅞-in. diameter tenons, and the maximum spacing shall be 12 in. center to center.				
Tie rods:					
Number (minimum)	3	4	4	5	6
Diameter (minimum)	¼ in.	¼ in.	¼ in.	¼ in.	¼ in.
Flooring, minimum finished size (in.)	½ x 2¾	½ x 2¾	½ x 2¾	½ x 2¾	½ x 2¾

The span between hangers for plank-type platforms shall not exceed 10 feet.

(iii) Beam platforms shall have side stringers of lumber not less than 2 x 6 inches set on edge. The span between hangers shall not exceed 12 feet when beam platforms are used. The flooring shall be supported on 2- and 6-inch crossbeams, laid flat and set into the upper edge of the stringers with a snug fit, at intervals of not more than 4 feet, securely nailed in place. The flooring shall be of 1- x 6-inch material properly nailed. Floorboards shall not be spaced more than one-half inch apart.

(h) Stone setters' adjustable multiple-point suspension scaffolds.

(1) The scaffold shall be capable of sustaining a working load of 25 pounds per square foot and shall not be overloaded. Scaffolds shall not be used for storage of stone or other heavy materials.

(2) The hoisting machine and its supports shall be of a type tested and listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.399(a)(77) for definition of listed, and § 1910.7 for nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12121, April 12, 1988]

(3) The platform shall be securely fastened to the hangers by U-bolts or other equivalent means.

(4) The scaffold unit shall be suspended from metal outriggers, iron brackets, wire rope slings, or iron hooks which will safely support the maximum intended load.

(5) Outriggers when used shall be set with their webs in a vertical position, securely anchored to the building or structure and provided with stop bolts at each end.

(6) The scaffold shall be supported by wire rope conforming with paragraph (a)(22) of this section, suspended from overhead supports.

(7) The free ends of the suspension wire ropes shall be equipped with proper size thimbles, secured by splicing or other equivalent means. The running ends shall be securely attached to the hoisting drum and at least four turns of rope shall remain on the drum at all times.

(8) Guardrails not less than 2 by 4 inches or the equivalent and not less than 36 inches or more than 42 inches high, with a mid-rail, when required, of 1- by 4-inch lumber or equivalent, and toeboards, shall be installed at all open sides on all scaffolds more than 10 feet above the ground or floor. Toeboards shall be a minimum of 4 inches in height. Wire mesh shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (a)(17) of this section.

(9) When two or more scaffolds are used on a building or structure they shall not be bridged one to the other but shall be maintained at even height with platforms butting closely.

(10) Each scaffold shall be installed or relocated in accordance with designs and instructions of a registered professional engineer, and such installation or relocation shall be supervised by a competent designated person.

(i) Single-point adjustable suspension scaffolds.

(1) The scaffolding, including power units or manually operated winches, shall be a type tested and listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.399(a)(77) for definition of listed, and § 1910.7 for nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12121, April 12, 1988]

(2) The power units may be either electrically or air motor driven.

(3) All power-operated gears and brakes shall be enclosed.

(4) In addition to the normal operating brake, all-power driven units must have an emergency brake which engages automatically when the normal speed of descent is exceeded.

(5) Guards, mid-rails, and toeboards shall completely enclose the cage or basket. Guardrails shall be no less than 2 by 4 inches or the equivalent installed no less than 36 inches nor more than 42 inches above the platform. Mid-rails shall be 1 by 6 inches or the equivalent, installed equidistant between the guardrail and the platform. Toeboards shall be a minimum of 4 inches in height.

(6) The hoisting machines, cables, and equipment shall be regularly serviced and inspected after each installation and every 30 days thereafter.

(7) The units may be combined to form a two-point suspension scaffold. Such scaffold shall comply with paragraph (g) of this section.

(8) The supporting cable shall be straight for its entire length, and the operator shall not sway the basket and fix the cable to any intermediate points to change his original path of travel.

(9) Equipment shall be maintained and used in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

(10) Suspension methods shall conform to applicable provisions of paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section.

(j) Boatswain's chairs.

(1) The chair seat shall be not less than 12 by 24 inches, and of 1-inch thickness. The seat shall be reinforced on the underside to prevent the board from splitting.

(2) The two fiber rope seat slings shall be of ⅝-inch diameter, reeved through the four seat holes so as to cross each other on the underside of the seat.

(3) Seat slings shall be of at least ⅜-inch wire rope when a workman is conducting a heat producing process such as gas or arc welding.

(4) The workman shall be protected by a safety life belt attached to a lifeline. The lifeline shall be securely attached to substantial members of the structure (not scaffold), or to securely rigged lines, which will safely suspend the worker in case of a fall.

(5) The tackle shall consist of correct size ball bearing or bushed blocks and properly spliced ⅝-inch diameter first-grade manila rope.

(6) The roof irons, hooks, or the object to which the tackle is anchored shall be securely installed. Tiebacks when used shall be installed at right angles to the face of the building and securely fastened to a chimney.

(k) Carpenters' bracket scaffolds.

(1) The brackets shall consist of a triangular wood frame not less than 2 by 3 inches in cross section, or of metal of equivalent strength. Each member shall be properly fitted and securely joined.

(2) Each bracket shall be attached to the structure by means of one of the following:

(i) A bolt no less than five-eighths inch in diameter which shall extend through the inside of the building wall.

(ii) A metal stud attachment device.

(iii) Welding to steel tanks.

(iv) Hooking over a well-secured and adequately strong supporting member. The brackets shall be spaced no more than 10 feet apart.

(3) No more than two persons shall occupy any given 10 feet of a bracket scaffold at any one time. Tools and materials shall not exceed 75 pounds in addition to the occupancy.

(4) The platform shall consist of not less than two 2- by 9-inch nominal size planks extending not more than 18 inches or less than 6 inches beyond each end support.

(5) Guardrails not less than 2 by 4 inches or the equivalent and not less than 36 inches or more than 42 inches high, with a mid-rail, when required, of 1- by 4-inch lumber or equivalent, and toeboards, shall be installed at all open sides on all scaffolds more than 10 feet above the ground or floor. Toeboards shall be a minimum of 4 inches in height. Wire mesh shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (a)(17) of this section.

(l) Bricklayers' square scaffolds.

(1) The squares shall not exceed 5 feet in width and 5 feet in height.

(2) Members shall be not less than those specified in Table D-18.

TABLE D-18—MINIMUM DIMENSIONS FOR BRICKLAYERS' SQUARE SCAFFOLD MEMBERS

Members:	*Dimensions (inches)*
Bearers or horizontal members	2 by 6.
Legs	2 by 6.
Braces at corners	1 by 6.
Braces diagonally from center frame	1 by 8.

(3) The squares shall be reinforced on both sides of each corner with 1- by 6-inch gusset pieces. They shall also have braces 1 by 8 inches on both sides running from center to center of each member, or other means to secure equivalent strength and rigidity.

(4) The squares shall be set not more than 5 feet apart for medium duty scaffolds, and not more than 8 feet apart for light duty scaffolds. Bracing 1 x 8 inches, extending from the bottom of each square to the top of the next square, shall be provided on both front and rear sides of the scaffold.

(5) Platform planks shall be at least 2- by 9-inch nominal size. The ends of the planks shall overlap the bearers of the squares and each plank shall be supported by not less than three squares.

(6) Bricklayers' square scaffolds shall not exceed three tiers in height and shall be so constructed and arranged that one square shall rest directly above the other. The upper tiers shall stand on a continuous row of planks laid across the next lower tier and be nailed down or otherwise secured to prevent displacement.

(7) Scaffolds shall be level and set upon a firm foundation.

(m) Horse scaffolds.

(1) Horse scaffolds shall not be constructed or arranged more than two tiers or 10 feet in height.

(2) The members of the horses shall be not less than those specified in Table D-19.

TABLE D-19—MINIMUM DIMENSIONS FOR HORSE SCAFFOLD MEMBERS

Members:	*Dimensions (inches)*
Horizontal members or bearers	3 by 4.
Legs	1¼ by 4½.
Longitudinal brace between legs	1 by 6.
Gusset brace at top of legs	1 by 8.
Half diagonal braces	1¼ by 4½.

(3) Horses shall be spaced not more than 5 feet for medium duty and not more than 8 feet for light duty.

(4) When arranged in tiers, each horse shall be placed directly over the horse in the tier below.

(5) On all scaffolds arranged in tiers, the legs shall be nailed down to the planks to prevent displacement or thrust and each tier shall be substantially cross braced.

(6) Horses or parts which have become weak or defective shall not be used.

(7) Guardrails not less than 2 by 4 inches or the equivalent and not less than 36 inches or more than 42 inches high with a mid-rail, when required, of 1- by 4-inch lumber or equivalent and toeboards, shall be installed at all open sides on all scaffolds more than 10 feet above the ground or floor. Toeboards shall be a minimum of 4 inches in height. Wire mesh shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (a)(17) of this section.

(n) Needle beam scaffold.

(1) Wood needle beams shall be in accordance with paragraph (a)(5) and (9) of this section, and shall be not less than 4 by 6 inches in size, with the greater dimension placed in a vertical direction. Metal beams or the equivalent conforming to paragraph (a)(4) and (8) of this section may be used.

(2) Ropes or hangers shall be provided for supports. The span between supports on the needle beam shall not exceed 10 feet for 4- by 6-inch timbers. Rope supports shall be equivalent in strength to 1-inch diameter first-grade manila rope.

(3) The ropes shall be attached to the needle beams by a scaffold hitch or a properly made eye splice. The loose end of the rope shall be tied by a bowline knot or by a round turn and one-half hitch.

(4) The platform span between the needle beams shall not exceed 8 feet when using 2-inch scaffold plank. For spans greater than 8 feet, platforms shall be designed based on design requirements for the special span. The overhang of each end of the platform planks shall be not less than 1 foot and not more than 18 inches.

(5) When one needle beam is higher than the other or when the platform is not level the platform shall be secured against slipping.

(6) All unattached tools, bolts, and nuts used on needle beam scaffolds shall be kept in suitable containers.

(7) One end of a needle beam scaffold may be supported by a permanent structural member conforming to paragraph (a)(4) and (8) of this section.

(8) Each man working on a needle beam scaffold 20 feet or more above the ground or floor and working with both hands, shall be protected by a safety life belt attached to a lifeline. The lifeline shall be securely attached to substantial members of the structure (not scaffold), or to securely rigged lines, which will safely suspend the workman in case of a fall.

(o) Plasterers', decorators', and large area scaffolds.

(1) Plasterers', decorators', lathers', and ceiling workers' inside scaffolds shall be constructed in accordance with the general requirements set forth for independent wood pole scaffolds.

(2) Guardrails not less than 2 by 4 inches or the equivalent and not less than 36 inches or more than 42 inches high, with a mid-rail, when required, of 1- by 4-inch lumber or equivalent, and toeboards, shall be installed at all open sides on all scaffolds more than 10 feet above the ground or floor. Toeboards shall be a minimum of 4 inches in height. Wire mesh shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (a)(17) of this section.

(3) All platform planks shall be laid with the edges close together.

(4) When independent pole scaffold platforms are erected in sections, such sections shall be provided with connecting runways equipped with substantial guardrails.

(p) Interior hung scaffolds.

(1) Removed

(2) The suspended steel wire rope shall conform to paragraph (a)(22) of this section. Wire may be used providing the strength requirements of paragraph (a)(22) of this section are met.

(3) For hanging wood scaffolds, the following minimum nominal size material is recommended:

(i) Supporting bearers 2 by 9 inches on edge.

(ii) Planking 2 by 9 inches or 2 by 10 inches, with maximum span 7 feet for heavy duty and 10 feet for light duty or medium duty.

(4) Steel tube and coupler members may be used for hanging scaffolds with both types of scaffold designed to sustain a uniform distributed working load up to heavy duty scaffold loads with a safety factor of four.

(5) When a hanging scaffold is supported by means of wire rope, such wire rope shall be wrapped at least twice around the supporting members and twice around the bearers of the scaffold, with each end of the wire rope secured by at least three standard wire-rope clips.

(6) All overhead supporting members shall be inspected and checked for strength before the scaffold is erected.

(7) Guardrails not less than 2 by 4 inches or the equivalent and not less than 36 inches or more than 42 inches high, with a mid-rail, when required, of 1- by 4-inch lumber or equivalent, and toeboards, shall be installed at all open sides on all scaffolds more than 10 feet above the ground or floor. Toeboards shall be a minimum of 4 inches in height. Wire mesh shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (a)(17) of this section.

(q) Ladder-jack scaffolds.

(1) All ladder-jack scaffolds shall be limited to light duty and shall not exceed a height of 20 feet above the floor or ground.

(2) All ladders used in connection with ladder-jack scaffolds shall be heavy-duty ladders and shall be designed and constructed in accordance with § 1910.25 and § 1910.26.

(3) The ladder jack shall be so designed and constructed that it will bear on the side rails in addition to the ladder rungs, or if bearing on rungs only, the bearing area shall be at least 10 inches on each rung.

(4) Ladders used in conjunction with ladder jacks shall be so placed, fastened, held, or equipped with devices so as to prevent slipping.

(5) The wood platform planks shall be not less than 2 inches nominal in thickness. Both metal and wood platform planks shall overlap the bearing surface not less than 12 inches. The span between supports for wood shall not exceed 8 feet. Platform width shall be not less than 18 inches.

(6) Not more than two persons shall occupy any given 8 feet of any ladder-jack scaffold at any one time.

(r) Window-jack scaffolds.

(1) Window-jack scaffolds shall be used only for the purpose of working at the window opening through which the jack is placed.

(2) Window jacks shall not be used to support planks placed between one window jack and another or for other elements of scaffolding.

(3) Window-jack scaffolds shall be provided with suitable guardrails unless safety belts with lifelines are attached and provided for the workman. Window-jack scaffolds shall be used by one man only.

(s) Roofing brackets.

(1) Roofing brackets shall be constructed to fit the pitch of the roof.

best copy available

(2) Brackets shall be secured in place by nailing in addition to the pointed metal projections. The nails shall be driven full length into the roof. When rope supports are used, they shall consist of first-grade manila of at least three-quarter-inch diameter, or equivalent.

(3) A substantial catch platform shall be installed below the working area of roofs more than 20 feet from the ground to eaves with a slope greater than 3 inches in 12 inches without a parapet. In width the platform shall extend 2 feet beyond the projection of the eaves and shall be provided with a safety rail, mid-rail, and toeboard. This provision shall not apply where employees engaged in work upon such roofs are protected by a safety belt attached to a lifeline.

(t) Crawling boards or chicken ladders.

(1) Crawling boards shall be not less than 10 inches wide and 1 inch thick, having cleats 1 x 1½ inches. The cleats shall be equal in length to the width of the board and spaced at equal intervals not to exceed 24 inches. Nails shall be driven through and clinched on the underside. The crawling board shall extend from the ridge pole to the eaves when used in connection with roof construction, repair, or maintenance.

(2) A firmly fastened lifeline of at least three-quarter-inch rope shall be strung beside each crawling board for a handhold.

(3) Crawling boards shall be secured to the roof by means of adequate ridge hooks or equivalent effective means.

(u) Float or ship scaffolds.

(1) Float or ship scaffolds shall support not more than three men and a few light tools, such as those needed for riveting, bolting, and welding. They shall be constructed in accordance with subparagraphs (2) through (6) of this paragraph, unless substitute designs and materials provide equivalent strength, stability, and safety.

(2) The platform shall be not less than 3 feet wide and 6 feet long, made of three-quarter-inch plywood, equivalent to American Plywood Association Grade B–B, Group I, Exterior.

(3) Under the platform, there shall be two supporting bearers made from 2- x 4-inch, or 1- x 10-inch rough, selected lumber, or better. They shall be free of knots or other flaws and project 6 inches beyond the platform on both sides. The ends of the platform shall extend about 6 inches beyond the outer edges of the bearers. Each bearer shall be securely fastened to the platform.

(4) An edging of wood not less than ¾ x 1½ inches, or equivalent, shall be placed around all sides of the platform to prevent tools from rolling off.

(5) Supporting ropes shall be 1-inch diameter manila rope or equivalent, free from deterioration, chemical damage, flaws, or other imperfections. Rope connections shall be such that the platform cannot shift or slip. **If two ropes are used with each float, each of the two supporting ropes shall be hitched around one end of a bearer and pass under the platforms to the other end of the bearer where it is hitched again, leaving sufficient rope at each end for the supporting ties.**

(6) Each workman shall be protected by a safety lifebelt attached to a lifeline. The lifeline shall be securely attached to substantial members of the structure (not scaffold), or to securely rigged lines, which will safely suspend the workman in case of a fall.

(v) Scope.

This section established safety requirements for the construction, operation, maintenance, and use of scaffolds used in the maintenance of buildings and structures.

[43 F.R. 49746, October 24, 1978]

1910.29—MANUALLY PROPELLED MOBILE LADDER STANDS AND SCAFFOLDS (TOWERS)

(a) General requirements.

(1) Application. This section is intended to prescribe rules and requirements for the design, construction, and use of mobile work platforms (including ladder stands but not including aerial ladders) and rolling (mobile) scaffolds (towers). This standard is promulgated to aid in providing for the safety of life, limb, and property, by establishing minimum standards for structural design requirements and for the use of mobile work platforms and towers.

(2) Working loads.

(i) Work platforms and scaffolds shall be capable of carrying the design load under varying circumstances depending upon the conditions of use. Therefore, all parts and appurtenances necessary for their safe and efficient utilization must be integral parts of the design.

(ii) Specific design and construction requirements are not a part of this section because of the wide variety of materials and design possibilities. However, the design shall be such as to produce a mobile ladder stand or scaffold that will safely sustain the specified loads. The material selected shall be of sufficient strength to meet the test requirements and shall be protected against corrosion or deterioration.

(a) The design working load of ladder stands shall be calculated on the basis of one or more 200-pound persons together with 50 pounds of equipment each.

(b) The design load of all scaffolds shall be calculated on the basis of:

Light—Designed and constructed to carry a working load of 25 pounds per square foot.
Medium—Designed and constructed to carry a working load of 50 pounds per square foot.
Heavy—Designed and constructed to carry a working load of 75 pounds per square foot.

All ladder stands and scaffolds shall be capable of supporting at least four times the design working load.

(iii) The materials used in mobile ladder stands and scaffolds shall be of standard manufacture and conform to standard specifications of strength, dimensions, and weights, and shall be selected to safely support the design working load.

(iv) Nails, bolts, or other fasteners used in the construction of ladders, scaffolds, and towers shall be of adequate size and in sufficient numbers at each connection to develop the designed strength of the unit. Nails shall be driven full length. (All nails should be immediately withdrawn from dismantled lumber.)

(v) All exposed surfaces shall be free from sharp edges, burrs or other safety hazards.

(3) Work levels.

(i) The maximum work level height shall not exceed four (4) times the minimum or least base dimension of any mobile ladder stand or scaffold. Where the basic mobile unit does not meet this requirement, suitable outrigger frames shall be employed to achieve this least base dimension, or provisions shall be made to guy or brace the unit against tipping.

(ii) The minimum platform width for any work level shall not be less than 20 inches for mobile scaffolds (towers). Ladder stands shall have a minimum step width of 16 inches.

(iii) The supporting structure for the work level shall be rigidly braced, using adequate cross bracing or diagonal bracing with rigid platforms at each work level.

(iv) The steps of ladder stands shall be fabricated from slip resistant treads.

(v) The work level platform of scaffolds (towers) shall be of wood, aluminum, or plywood planking, steel or expanded metal, for the full width of the scaffold, except for necessary openings. Work platforms shall be secured in place. All planking shall be 2-inch (nominal) scaffold grade minimum 1,500*f.* (stress grade) construction grade lumber or equivalent.

(vi) All scaffold work levels 10 feet or higher above the ground or floor shall have a standard (4-inch nominal) toeboard.

(vii) All work levels 10 feet or higher above the ground or floor shall have a guardrail of 2- by 4-inch nominal or the equivalent installed no less than 36 inches or more than 42 inches high, with a mid-rail, when required, of 1- by 4-inch nominal lumber or equivalent.

(viii) A climbing ladder or stairway shall be provided for proper access and egress, and shall be affixed or built into the scaffold and so located that its use will not have a tendency to tip the scaffold. A landing platform shall be provided at intervals not to exceed 30 feet.

(4) Wheels or casters.

(i) Wheels or casters shall be properly designed for strength and dimensions to support four (4) times the design working load.

(ii) All scaffold casters shall be provided with a positive wheel and/or swivel lock to prevent movement. Ladder stands shall have at least two (2) of the four (4) casters and shall be of the swivel type.

(iii) Where leveling of the elevated work platform is required, screw jacks or other suitable means for adjusting the height shall be provided in the base section of each mobile unit.

(b) Mobile tubular welded frame scaffolds.

(1) General. Units shall be designed to comply with the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) Bracing. Scaffolds shall be properly braced by cross braces and/or diagonal braces for securing vertical members together laterally. The cross braces shall be of a length that will automatically square and align vertical members so the erected scaffold is always plumb, square, and rigid.

(3) Spacing. Spacing of panels or frames shall be consistent with the loads imposed. The frames shall be placed one on top of the other with coupling or stacking pins to provide proper vertical alignment of the legs.

(4) Locking. Where uplift may occur, panels shall be locked together vertically by pins or other equivalent means.

(5) Erection. Only the manufacturer of a scaffold or his qualified designated agent shall be permitted to erect or supervise the erection of scaffolds exceeding 50 feet in height above the base, unless such structure is approved in writing by a registered professional engineer, or erected in accordance with instructions furnished by the manufacturer.

(c) Mobile tubular welded sectional folding scaffolds.

(1) General. Units including sectional stairway and sectional ladder scaffolds shall be designed to comply with the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) Stairway. An integral stairway and work platform shall be incorporated into the structure of each sectional folding stairway scaffold.

(3) Bracing. An integral set of pivoting and hinged folding diagonal and horizontal braces and a detachable work platform shall be incorporated into the structure of each sectional folding ladder scaffold.

(4) Sectional folding stairway scaffolds. Sectional folding stairway scaffolds shall be designed as medium duty scaffolds except for high clearance. These special base sections shall be designed as light duty scaffolds. When upper sectional folding stairway scaffolds are used with a special high clearance base, the load capacity of the entire scaffold shall be reduced accordingly. The width of a sectional folding stairway scaffold shall not exceed 4½ feet. The maximum length of a sectional folding stairway scaffold shall not exceed 6 feet.

(5) Sectional folding ladder scaffolds. Sectional folding ladder scaffolds shall be designed as light duty scaffolds including special base (open end) sections which are designed for high clearance. For certain special applications the six-foot (6') folding ladder scaffolds, except for special high clearance base sections, shall be designed for use as medium duty scaffolds. The width of a sectional folding ladder scaffold shall not exceed 4½ feet. The maximum length of a sectional folding ladder scaffold shall not exceed 6 feet 6 inches for a six-foot (6') long unit, 8 feet 6 inches for an eight-foot (8') unit or 10 feet 6 inches for a ten-foot (10') long unit.

(6) End frames. The end frames of sectional ladder and stairway scaffolds shall be designed so that the horizontal bearers provide supports for multiple planking levels.

(7) Erection. Only the manufacturer of the scaffold or his qualified designated agent shall be permitted to erect or supervise the erection of scaffolds exceeding 50 feet in height above the base, unless such structure is approved in writing by a licensed professional engineer, or erected in accordance with instructions furnished by the manufacturer.

(d) Mobile tube and coupler scaffolds.

(1) Design. Units shall be designed to comply with the applicable requirements of paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) Material. The material used for the couplers shall be of a structural type, such as a drop-forged steel, malleable iron or structural grade aluminum. The use of gray cast iron is prohibited.

(3) Erection. Only the manufacturer of the scaffold or his qualified designated agent shall be permitted to erect or supervise the erection of scaffolds exceeding 50 feet in height above the base, unless such structure is approved in writing by a licensed professional engineer, or erected in accordance with instructions furnished by the manufacturer.

(e) Mobile work platforms.

(1) Design. Units shall be designed for the use intended and shall comply with the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) Base width. The minimum width of the base of mobile work platforms shall not be less than 20 inches.

(3) Bracing. Adequate rigid diagonal bracing to vertical members shall be provided.

(f) Mobile ladder stands.

(1) Design. Units shall comply with applicable requirements of paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) Base width. The minimum base width shall conform to paragraph (a)(3)(i) of this section. The maximum length of the base section shall be the total length of combined steps and top assembly, measured horizontally, plus five-eighths inch per step of rise.

(3) Steps. Steps shall be uniformly spaced, and sloped, with a rise of not less than nine (9) inches, nor more than ten (10) inches, and a depth of not less than seven (7) inches. The slope of the steps section shall be a minimum of fifty-five (55) degrees and a maximum of sixty (60) degrees measured from the horizontal.

(4) Handrails.

(i) Units having more than five (5) steps or 60 inches vertical height to the top step shall be equipped with handrails.

(ii) Handrails shall be a minimum of 29 inches high. Measurements shall be taken vertically from the center of the step.

(5) Loading. The load (see paragraph (a)(2)(ii) of this section) shall be applied uniformly to a 3½ inches wide area front to back at the center of the width span with a safety factor of four (4).

1910.30—OTHER WORKING SURFACES

(a) Dockboards (bridge plates).

(1) Portable and powered dockboards shall be strong enough to carry the load imposed on them.

(2) Portable dockboards shall be secured in position, either by being anchored or equipped with devices which will prevent their slipping.

(3) Powered dockboards shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Commercial Standard CS202-56 (1961) "Industrial Lifts and Hinged Loading Ramps published by the U.S. Department of Commerce.

(4) Handholds, or other effective means, shall be provided on portable dockboards to permit safe handling.

(5) Positive protection shall be provided to prevent railroad cars from being moved while dockboards or bridge plates are in position.

(b) Forging machine area.

(1) Machines shall be so located as to give (i) enough clearance between machines so that the movement of one operator will not interfere with the work of another, (ii) ample room for cleaning machines and handling the work, including material and scrap. The arrangement of machines shall be such that operators will not stand in aisles.

(2) Aisles shall be provided of sufficient width to permit the free movement of employees bringing and removing material. This aisle space is to be independent of working and storage space.

(3) Wood platforms used on the floor in front of machines shall be substantially constructed.

(c) Veneer machinery.

(1) Sides of steam vats shall extend to a height of not less than 36 inches above the floor, working platform, or ground.

(2) Large steam vats divided into sections shall be provided with substantial walkways between sections. Each walkway shall be provided with a standard handrail on each exposed side. These handrails may be removable, if necessary.

(3) Covers shall be removed only from that portion of steaming vats on which men are working and a portable railing shall be placed at this point to protect the operators.

(4) Workmen shall not ride or step on logs in steam vats.

1910.31—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

The standards in this Subpart D are devised from the following sources:

Standard	*Source*
§ 1910.22(a)	ANSI Z4.1-1968. Requirements for Sanitation in Places of Employment.
§ 1910.22(b) and (c).	41 CFR 50-204.3.
§ 1910.22(d)	ANSI A58.1-1955, Minimum De-

Standard	*Source*
	sign Loads in Building and Other Structures.
§ 1910.23	ANSI A12.1-1967, Safety Requirements for Floor and Wall Openings, Railings, and Toeboards.
§ 1910.24	ANSI A64.1-1968, Requirements for Fixed Industrial Stairs.
§ 1910.25	ANSI A14.1-1968, Safety Code for Portable Wood Ladders.
§ 1910.26	ANSI A14.2-1956, Portable Metal Ladders.
§ 1910.27	ANSI A14.3-1956, Safety Code for Fixed Ladders.
§ 1910.28	ANSI A10.8-1969, Safety Requirements for Scaffolding.
§ 1910.29	ANSI A92.1-1971, Standard for Manually Propelled Mobile Ladder Stands and Scaffolds.
§ 1910.30(a)	ANSI B56.1-1969, Safety Standard for Powered Industrial Trucks.
§ 1910.30(b)	ANSI B24.1 1963, Safety Standard for Forging.
§ 1910.30(c)	ANSI 01.1-1954 (R-1961), Safety Code for Woodworking Machinery.

1910.32—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

The following organizations have been referenced in this Subpart D:

American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., 207 East Ohio Street, Chicago, IL 60611.

Factory Mutual Engineering Corp., Post Office Box 688, Norwood, MA 02062.

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART E—MEANS OF EGRESS

1910.35 Definitions.
1910.36 General Requirements.
1910.37 Means of egrees, general.
1910.38 Employee emergency plans and fire prevention plans.
1910.39 Sources of standards.
1910.40 Standards organizations.

Authority: Secs. 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12–71 (36 FR 8754), 8–76 [41 FR 25059) or 9–83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable.

[53 F.R. 12121, April 12, 1988]

SUBPART E—MEANS OF EGRESS

1910.35—DEFINITIONS

As used in this subpart.

(a) Means of egress.

A means of egress is a continuous and unobstructed way of exit travel from any point in a building or structure to a public way and consists of three separate and distinct parts: the way of exit access, the exit, and the way of exit discharge. A means of egress comprises the vertical and horizontal ways of travel and shall include intervening room spaces, doorways, hallways, corridors, passageways, balconies, ramps, stairs, enclosures, lobbies, escalators, horizontal exits, courts, and yards.

(b) Exit access.

Exit access is that portion of a means of egress which leads to an entrance to an exit.

(c) Exit.

Exit is that portion of a means of egress which is separated from all other spaces of the building or structure by construction or equipment as required in this subpart to provide a protected way of travel to the exit discharge.

(d) Exit discharge.

Exit discharge is that portion of a means of egress between the termination of an exit and a public way.

(e) Low hazard contents.

Low hazard contents shall be classified as those of such low combustibility that no self-propagating fire therein can occur and that consequently the only probable danger requiring the use of emergency exits will be from panic, fumes, or smoke, or fire from some external source.

(f) High-hazard contents.

High-hazard contents shall be classified as those which are liable to burn with extreme rapidity or from which poisonous fumes or explosions are to be feared in the event of fire.

(g) Ordinary hazard contents.

Ordinary hazard contents shall be classified as those which are liable to burn with moderate rapidity and to give off a considerable volume of smoke but from which neither poisonous fumes nor explosions are to be feared in case of fire.

(h) Approved. For the purpose of this subpart approved shall mean listed or approved equipment by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.155(c)(3)(iv)(A) for definition of listed, and § 1910.7 for nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12121, April 12, 1988]

(i) "Emergency action plan" means a plan for a workplace, or parts thereof, describing what procedures the employer and employees must take to ensure employee safety from fire or other emergencies.

(j) "Emergency escape route" means the route that employees are directed to follow in the event they are required to evacuate the workplace or seek a designated refuge area.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

1910.36—GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

(a) Application.

This subpart contains general fundamental requirements essential to providing a safe means of egress from fire and like emergencies. Nothing in this subpart shall be construed to prohibit a better type of building construction, more exits, or otherwise safer conditions than the minimum requirements specified in this subpart. Exits from vehicles, vessels, or other mobile structures are not covered by this subpart.

(b) Fundamental requirements.

(1) Every building or structure, new or old, designed for human occupancy shall be provided with exits sufficient to permit the prompt escape of occupants in case of fire or other emergency. The design of exits and other safeguards shall be such that reliance for safety to life in case of fire or other emergency will not depend solely on any single safeguard; additional safeguards shall be provided for life safety in case any single safeguard is ineffective due to some human or mechanical failure.

(2) Every building or structure shall be so constructed, arranged, equipped, maintained, and operated as to avoid undue danger to the lives and safety of its occupants from fire, smoke, fumes, or resulting panic during the period of time reasonably necessary for escape from the building or structure in case of fire or other emergency.

(3) Every building or structure shall be provided with exits of kinds, numbers, location, and capacity appropriate to the individual building or structure, with due regard to the character of the occupancy, the number of persons exposed, the fire protection available, and the height and type of construction of the building or structure, to afford all occupants convenient facilities for escape.

(4) In every building or structure exits shall be so arranged and maintained as to provide free and unobstructed egress from all parts of the building or structure at all times when it is occupied. No lock or fastening to prevent free escape from the inside of any building shall be installed except in mental, penal, or corrective institutions where supervisory personnel is continually on duty and effective provisions are made to remove occupants in case of fire or other emergency.

(5) Every exit shall be clearly visible or the route to reach it shall be conspicuously indicated in such a manner that every occupant of every building or structure who is physically and mentally capable will readily know the direction of escape from any point, and each path of escape, in its entirety, shall be so arranged or marked that the way to a place of safety outside is unmistakable. Any doorway or passageway not constituting an exit or way to reach an exit, but of such a character as to be subject to being mistaken for an exit, shall be so arranged or marked as to minimize its possible confusion with an exit and the resultant danger of persons endeavoring to escape from fire finding themselves trapped in a dead-end space, such as a cellar or storeroom, from which there is no other way out.

(6) In every building or structure equipped for artificial illumination, adequate and reliable illumination shall be provided for all exit facilities.

(7) In every building or structure of such size, arrangement, or occupancy that a fire may not itself provide adequate warning to occupants, fire alarm facilities shall be provided where necessary to warn occupants of the existence of fire so that they may escape, or to facilitate the orderly conduct of fire exit drills.

(8) Every building or structure, section, or area thereof of such size, occupancy, and arrangement that the reasonable safety of numbers of occupants may be endangered by the blocking of any single means of egress due to fire or smoke, shall have at least two means of egress remote from each other, so arranged as to minimize any possibility that both may be blocked by any one fire or other emergency conditions.

(9) Compliance with this subpart shall not be construed as eliminating or reducing the necessity for other provisions for safety of persons using a structure under normal occupancy conditions, nor shall any provision of the subpart be construed as requiring or permitting any condition that may be hazardous under normal occupancy conditions.

(c) Protection of employees exposed by construction and repair operations.

(1) No building or structure under construction shall be occupied in whole or in part until all exit facilities required for the part occupied are completed and ready for use.

(2) No existing building shall be occupied during repairs or alterations unless all existing exits and any existing fire protection are continuously maintained, or in lieu thereof other measures are taken which provide equivalent safety.

(3) No flammable or explosive substances or equipment for repairs or alterations shall be introduced in a building of normally low or ordinary hazard classification while the building is occupied, unless the condition of use and safeguards provided are such as not to create any additional danger or handicap to egress beyond the normally permissible conditions in the building.

(d) Maintenance.

(1) Every required exit, way of approach thereto, and way of travel from the exit into the street or open space, shall be continuously maintained free of all obstructions or impediments to full instant use in the case of fire or other emergency.

(2) Every automatic sprinkler system, fire detection and alarm system, exit lighting, fire door, and other item of equipment, where provided, shall be continuously in proper operating condition.

1910.37—MEANS OF EGRESS, GENERAL

(a) Permissible exit components.

An exit shall consist only of the approved components. Exit components shall be constructed as an integral part of the building or shall be permanently affixed thereto.

(b) Protective enclosure of exits.

When an exit is protected by separation from other parts of the building the separating construction shall meet the following requirements.

(1) The separation shall have at least a 1-hour fire resistance rating when the exit connects three stories or less. This applies whether the stories connected are above or below the story at which exit discharge begins.

(2) The separation shall have at least a 2-hour fire resistance rating when the exit connects four or more stories, whether above or below the floor of discharge. It shall be constructed of noncombustible materials, and shall be supported by construction having at least a 2-hour fire resistance rating.

(3) Any opening therein shall be protected by an approved self-closing fire door.

(4) Openings in exit enclosures shall be confined to those necessary for access to the enclosure from normally occupied spaces and for egress from the enclosure.

(c) Width and capacity of means of egress.

(1) The capacity in number of persons per unit of exit width for approved components of means of egress shall be as follows:

(i) Level Egress Components (including Class A Ramps) 100 persons.

(ii) Inclined Egress Components (including Class B Ramps) 60 persons.

(iii) A ramp shall be designated as Class A or Class B in accordance with the following Table E-1:

TABLE E-1

	Class A	Class B
Width	44 inches and greater.	30 to 44 inches.
Slope	1 to 1-3/16 inches in 12 inches.	1-3/16 to 2 inches in 12 inches.
Maximum height between landings.	No limit	12 feet.

(2) Means of egress shall be measured in units of exit width of 22 inches. Fractions of a unit shall not be counted, except that 12 inches added to one or more full units shall be counted as one-half a unit of exit width.

(3) Units of exit width shall be measured in the clear at the narrowest point of the means of egress except that a handrail may project inside the measured width on each side not more than 5 inches and a stringer may project inside the measured width not more than 1½ inches. An exit or exit access door swinging into an aisle or passageway shall not restrict the effective width thereof at any point during its swing to less than the minimum widths hereafter specified.

(d) Egress capacity and occupant load.

(1) The capacity of means of egress for any floor, balcony, tier, or other occupied space shall be sufficient for the occupant load thereof. The occupant load shall be the maximum number of persons that may be in the space at any time.

(2) Where exits serve more than one floor, only the occupant load of each floor considered individually need be used in computing the capacity of the exits at that floor, provided that exit capacity shall not be decreased in the direction of exit travel.

(e) Arrangement of exits.

When more than one exit is required from a story, at least two of the exits shall be remote from each other and so arranged as to minimize any possibility that both may be blocked by any one fire or other emergency condition.

(f) Access to exits.

(1) Exits shall be so located and exit accesses shall be so arranged that exits are readily accessible at all times. Where exits are not immediately accessible from an open floor area, safe and continuous passageways, aisles, or corridors leading directly to every exit and so arranged as to provide convenient access for each occupant to at least two exits by separate ways of travel, except as a single exit or limited dead ends are permitted by other provisions of this subpart, shall be maintained.

(2) A door from a room to an exit or to a way of exit access shall be of the side-hinged, swinging type. It shall swing with exit travel when the room is occupied by more than 50 persons or used for a high hazard occupancy.

(3) In no case shall access to an exit be through a bathroom, or other room subject to locking, except where the exit is required to serve only the room subject to locking.

(4) Ways of exit access and the doors to exits to which they lead shall be so designed and arranged as to be clearly recognizable as such. Hangings or draperies shall not be placed over exit doors or otherwise so located as to conceal or obscure any exit. Mirrors shall not be placed on exit doors. Mirrors shall not be placed in or adjacent to any exit in such a manner as to confuse the direction of exit.

(5) Exit access shall be so arranged that it will not be necessary to travel toward any area of high hazard occupancy in order to reach the nearest exit, unless the path of travel is effectively shielded from the high hazard location by suitable partitions or other physical barriers.

(6) The minimum width of any way of exit access shall in no case be less than 28 inches. Where a single way of exit access leads to an exit, its capacity in terms of width shall be at least equal to the required capacity of the exit to which it leads. Where more than one way of exit access leads to an exit, each shall have a width adequate for the number of persons it must accommodate.

(g) Exterior ways of exit access.

(1) Access to an exit may be by means of any exterior balcony, porch, gallery, or roof that conforms to the requirements of this section.

(2) Exterior ways of exit access shall have smooth, solid floors, substantially level, and shall have guards on the unenclosed sides.

(3) Where accumulation of snow or ice is likely because of the climate, the exterior way of exit access shall be protected by a roof, unless it serves as the sole normal means of access to the rooms or spaces served, in which case it may be assumed that snow and ice will be regularly removed in the course of normal occupancy.

(4) A permanent, reasonably straight path of travel shall be maintained over the required exterior way of exit access. There shall be no obstruction by railings, barriers, or gates that divide the open space into sections appurtenant to individual rooms, apartments, or other uses. Where the Assistant Secretary of Labor or his duly authorized representative finds the required path of travel to be obstructed by furniture or other movable objects, he may require that they be fastened out of the way or he may require that railings or other permanent barriers be installed to protect the path of travel against encroachment.

(5) An exterior way of exit access shall be so arranged that there are no dead ends in excess of 20 feet. Any unenclosed exit served by an exterior way of exit access shall be so located that no part of the exit extends past a vertical plane 20 feet and one-half the required width of the exit from the end of, and at right angles to, the way of exit access.

(6) Any gallery, balcony, bridge, porch or other exterior exit access that projects beyond the outside wall of the building shall comply with the requirements of this section as to width and arrangement.

(h) Discharge from exits.

(1) All exits shall discharge directly to the street, or to a yard, court, or other open space that gives safe access to a public way. The streets to which the exits discharge shall be of width adequate to accommodate all persons leaving the building. Yards, courts, or other open spaces to which exits discharge shall also be of adequate width and size to provide all persons leaving the building with ready access to the street.

(2) Stairs and other exits shall be so arranged as to make clear the direction of egress to the street. Exit stairs that continue beyond the floor of discharge shall be interrupted at the floor of discharge by partitions, doors, or other effective means.

(i) Headroom.

Means of egress shall be so designed and maintained as to provide adequate headroom, but in no case shall the ceiling height be less than 7 feet 6 inches nor any projection from the ceiling be less than 6 feet 8 inches from the floor.

(j) Changes in elevation.

Where a means of egress is not substantially level, such differences in elevation shall be negotiated by stairs or ramps.

(k) Maintenance and workmanship.

(1) Doors, stairs, ramps, passages, signs, and all other components of means of egress shall be of substantial, reliable construction and shall be built or installed in a workmanlike manner.

(2) Means of egress shall be continuously maintained free of all obstructions or impediments to full instant use in the case of fire or other emergency.

(3) Any device or alarm installed to restrict the improper use of an exit shall be so designed and installed that it cannot, even in cases of failure, impede or prevent emergency use of such exit.

(l) Furnishings and decorations.

(1) No furnishings, decorations, or other objects shall be so placed as to obstruct exits, access thereto, egress therefrom, or visibility thereof.

(2) No furnishings or decorations of an explosive or highly flammable character shall be used in any occupancy.

(m) Automatic sprinkler systems.

All automatic sprinkler systems shall be continuously maintained in reliable operating condition at all times, and such periodic inspections and tests shall be made as are necessary to assure proper maintenance.

(n) Fire alarm signaling systems. The employer shall assure that fire alarm signaling systems are maintained and tested in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.165(d).

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980]

(o) Fire retardant paints.

Fire retardant paints or solutions shall be renewed at such intervals as necessary to maintain the necessary flame retardant properties.

(p) [Reserved]

(q) Exit marking.

(1) Exits shall be marked by a readily visible sign. Access to exits shall be marked by readily visible signs in all cases where the exit or way to reach it is not immediately visible to the occupants.

(2) Any door, passage, or stairway which is neither an exit nor a way of exit access, and which is so located or arranged as to be likely to be mistaken for an exit, shall be identified by a sign reading "Not an Exit" or similar designation, or shall be identified by a sign indicating its actual character, such as "To Basement," "Storeroom," "Linen Closet," or the like.

(3) Every required sign designating an exit or way of exit access shall be so located and of such size, color, and design as to be readily visible. No decorations, furnishings, or equipment which impair visibility of an exit sign shall be permitted, nor shall there be any brightly illuminated sign (for other than exit purposes), display, or object in or near the line of vision to the required exit sign of such a character as to so detract attention from the exit sign that it may not be noticed.

(4) Every exit sign shall be distinctive in color and shall provide contrast with decorations, interior finish, or other signs.

(5) A sign reading "Exit", or similar designation, with an arrow indicating the direction, shall be placed in every location where the direction of travel to reach the nearest exit is not immediately apparent.

(6) Every exit sign shall be suitably illuminated by a reliable light source giving a value of not less than 5 foot-candles on the illuminated surface. Artificial lights giving illumination to exit signs other than the internally illuminated types shall have screens, discs, or lenses of not less than 25 square inches area made of translucent material to show red or other specified designating color on the side of the approach.

(7) Each internally illuminated exit sign shall be provided in all occupancies where reduction of normal illumination is permitted.

(8) Every exit sign shall have the word "Exit" in plainly legible letters not less than 6 inches high, with the principal strokes of letters not less than three-fourths-inch wide.

1910.38—EMPLOYEE EMERGENCY PLANS AND FIRE PREVENTION PLANS

(a) Emergency action plan.

(1) Scope and application. This paragraph (a) applies to all emergency action plans required by a particular OSHA standard. The emergency action plan shall be in writing (except as provided in the last sentence of paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section) and shall cover those designated actions employers and employees must take to ensure employee safety from fire and other emergencies.

(2) **Elements.** The following elements, at a minimum, shall be included in the plan:

(i) Emergency escape procedures and emergency escape route assignments;

(ii) Procedures to be followed by employees who remain to operate critical plant operations before they evacuate;

(iii) Procedures to account for all employees after emergency evacuation has been completed;

(iv) Rescue and medical duties for those employees who are to perform them;

(v) The preferred means of reporting fires and other emergencies; and

(vi) Names or regular job titles of persons or departments who can be contacted for further information or explanation of duties under the plan.

(3) **Alarm system.**

(i) The employer shall establish an employee alarm system which complies with § 1910.165.

(ii) If the employee alarm system is used for alerting fire brigade members, or for other purposes, a distinctive signal for each purpose shall be used.

(4) **Evacuation.** The employer shall establish in the emergency action plan the types of evacuation to be used in emergency circumstances.

(5) **Training.**

(i) Before implementing the emergency action plan, the employer shall designate and train a sufficient number of persons to assist in the safe and orderly emergency evacuation of employees.

(ii) The employer shall review the plan with each employee covered by the plan at the following times:

(a) Initially when the plan is developed,

(b) Whenever the employee's responsibilities or designated actions under the plan change, and

(c) Whenever the plan is changed.

(iii) The employer shall review with each employee upon initial assignment those parts of the plan which the employee must know to protect the employee in the event of an emergency. The written plan shall be kept at the workplace and made available for employee review. For those employers with 10 or fewer employees the plan may be communicated orally to employees and the employer need not maintain a written plan.

(b) Fire prevention plan.

(1) **Scope and application.** This paragraph (b) applies to all fire prevention plans required by a particular OSHA standard. The fire prevention plan shall be in writing, except as provided in the last sentence of paragraph (b)(4)(ii) of this section.

(2) **Elements.** The following elements, at a minimum, shall be included in the fire prevention plan:

(i) A list of the major workplace fire hazards and their proper handling and storage procedures, potential ignition sources (such as welding, smoking and others) and their control procedures, and the type of fire protection equipment or systems which can control a fire involving them;

(ii) Names or regular job titles of those personnel responsibile for maintenance of equipment and systems installed to prevent or control ignitions or fires; and

(iii) Names or regular job titles of those personnel responsible for control of fuel source hazards.

(3) **Housekeeping.** The employer shall control

accumulations of flammable and combustible waste materials and residues so that they do not contribute to a fire emergency. The housekeeping procedures shall be included in the written fire prevention plan.

(4) Training.

(i) The employer shall apprise employees of the fire hazards of the materials and processes to which they are exposed.

(ii) The employer shall review with each employee upon initial assignment those parts of the fire prevention plan which the employee must know to protect the employee in the event of an emergency. The written plan shall be kept in the workplace and made available for employee review. For those employers with 10 or fewer employees, the plan may be communicated orally to employees and the employer need not maintain a written plan.

(5) Maintenance. The employer shall regularly and properly maintain, according to established procedures, equipment and systems installed on heat producing equipment to prevent accidental ignition of combustible materials. The maintenance procedures shall be included in the written fire prevention plan.

1910.39—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

The entire subpart is promulgated from NFPA 101-1970, Life Safety Code.

1910.40—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

Specific standards of the following organization have been referenced in this subpart. Copies of the standards may be obtained from the issuing organization:

National Fire Protection Association, 60 Batterymarch Street, Boston, MA 02110.

APPENDIX TO SUBPART E

Means of Egress

This appendix serves as a nonmandatory guideline to assist employers in complying with the appropriate requirements of Subpart E.

1910.38 Employee emergency plans.

1. **Emergency action plan elements.** The emergency action plan should address emergencies that the employer may reasonably expect in the workplace. Examples are: fire; toxic chemical releases; hurricanes; tornadoes; blizzards; floods; and others. The elements of the emergency action plan presented in paragraph 1910.38(a)(2) can be supplemented by the following to more effectively achieve employee safety and health in an emergency. The employer should list in detail the procedures to be taken by those employees who have been selected to remain behind to care for essential plant operations until their evacuations becomes absolutely necessary. Essential plant operations may include the monitoring of plant power supplies, water supplies, and other essential services which cannot be shut down for every emergency alarm. Essential plant operations may also include chemical or manufacturing processes which must be shut down in stages or steps where certain employees must be present to assure that safe shut down procedures are completed.

The use of floor plans or workplace maps which clearly show the emergency escape routes should be included in the emergency action plan. Color coding will aid employees in determining their route assignments.

The employer should also develop and explain in detail what rescue and medical first aid duties are to be performed and by whom. All employees are to be told what actions they are to take in these emergency situations that the employer anticipates may occur in the workplace.

STANDARDS AND INTERPRETATIONS

2. Emergency evacuation. At the time of an emergency employees should know what type of evacuation is necessary and what their role is in carrying out the plan. In some cases where the emergency is very grave, total and immediate evacuation of all employees is necessary. In other emergencies, a partial evacuation of nonessential employees with a delayed evacuation of others may be necessary for continued plant operation. In some cases, only those employees in the immediate area of the fire may be expected to evacuate or move to a safe area such as when a local application fire suppression system discharge employee alarm is sounded. Employees must be sure that they know what is expected of them in all such emergency possibilities which have been planned in order to provide assurance of their safety from fire or other emergency.

The designation of refuge or safe areas for evacuation should be determined and identified in the plan. In a building divided into fire zones by fire walls, the refuge area may still be within the same building but in a different zone from where the emergency occurs.

Exterior refuge or safe areas may include parking lots, open fields or streets which are located away from the site of the emergency and which provide sufficient space to accommodate the employees. Employees should be instructed to move away from the exit discharge doors of the building, and to avoid congregating close to the building where they may hamper emergency operations.

3. Emergency action plan training. The employer should assure that an adequate number of employees are available at all times during working hours to act as evacuation wardens so that employees can be swiftly moved from the danger location to the safe areas. Generally, one warden for each twenty employees in the workplace should be able to provide adequate guidance and instruction at the time of a fire emergency. The employees selected or who volunteer to serve as wardens should be trained in the complete workplace layout and the various alternative escape routes from the workplace. All wardens and fellow employees should be made aware of handicapped employees who may need extra assistance, such as using the buddy system, and of hazardous areas to be avoided during emergencies. Before leaving, wardens should check rooms and other enclosed spaces in the workplace for employees who may be trapped or otherwise unable to evacuate the area.

After the desired degree of evacuation is completed, the wardens should be able to account for or otherwise verify that all employees are in the safe areas.

In buildings with several places of employment, employers are encouraged to coordinate their plans with the other employers in the building. A building-wide or standardized plan for the whole building is acceptable provided that the employers inform their respective employees of their duties and responsibilities under the plan. The standardized plan need not be kept by each employer in the multi-employer building provided there is an accessible location within the building where the plan can be reviewed by affected employees. When multi-employer building-wide plans are not feasible, employers should coordinate their plans with the other employers within the building to assure that conflicts and confusion are avoided during time of emergencies. In multi-story buildings where more than one employer is on a single floor, it is essential that these employers coordinate their plans with each other to avoid conflicts and confusion.

4. Fire prevention housekeeping. The standard calls for the control of accumulations of flammable and combustible waste materials.

It is the intent of this standard to assure that hazardous accumulations of combustible waste materials are controlled so that a fast developing fire, rapid spread of toxic smoke, or an explosion will not occur. This does not necessarily mean that each room has to be swept each day. Employers and employees should be aware of the hazardous properties of materials in their workplaces, and the degree of hazard each poses. Certainly oil soaked rags have to be treated differently than general paper trash in office areas. However, large accumulations of waste paper or corrugated boxes, etc., can pose a significant fire hazard. Accumulations of materials which can cause large fires or generate dense smoke that are easily ignited or may start from spontaneous combustion, are the types of materials with which this standard is concerned. Such combustible materials may be easily ignited by matches, welder's sparks, cigarettes and similar low level energy ignition sources.

5. Maintenance of equipment under the fire prevention plan. Certain equipment is often installed in workplaces to control heat sources or to detect fuel leaks. An example is a temperature limit switch often found on deep-fat food fryers found in restaurants. There may be similar switches for high temperature dip tanks, or flame failure and flashback arrester devices on furnaces and similar heat producing equipment. If these devices are not properly maintained or if they become inoperative, a definite fire hazard exists. Again employees and supervisors should be aware of the specific type of control devices on equipment involved with combustible materials in the workplace and should make sure, through periodic inspection or testing, that these controls are operable. Manufacturers' recommendations should be followed to assure proper maintenance procedures.

The following appendices to Subpart L, except Appendix E, serve as nonmandatory guidelines to assist employers in complying with the appropriate requirements of Subpart L.

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART F—POWERED PLATFORMS, MANLIFTS, AND VEHICLE-MOUNTED WORK PLATFORMS

1910.66 Power platforms for exterior building maintenance.
1910.67 Vehicle-mounted elevating and rotating work platforms.
1910.68 Manlifts.
1910.69 Sources of standards.
1910.70 Standards organizations.

Authority: Secs. 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12-71 (36 FR 8754), 8-76 (41 FR 25059) or 9-83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable.

Sections 1910.66, 1910.67, 1910.68 and 1910.70 also issued under 29 CFR Part 1911.

[51 F.R. 34560, September 29, 1986]

SUBPART F—POWERED PLATFORMS, MANLIFTS, AND VEHICLE-MOUNTED WORK PLATFORMS

1910.66—POWERED PLATFORMS FOR EXTERIOR BUILDING MAINTENANCE

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

(1) Angulated roping. A system of platform suspension in which the upper wire rope sheaves or suspension points are closer to the plane of the building face than the corresponding attachment points on the platform, thus causing the platform to press against the face of the building during its vertical travel.

(2) ANSI. American National Standards Institute.

(3) Babbitted fastenings. The method of providing wire rope attachments in which the ends of the wire strands are bent back and are held in a tapered socket by means of poured molten babbitt metal.

(4) Brake—disc type. A brake in which the holding effect is obtained by frictional resistance between one or more faces of discs keyed to the rotating member to be held and fixed discs keyed to the stationary or housing member (pressure between the discs being applied axially).

(5) Brake—self-energizing band type. An essentially unidirectional brake in which the holding effect is obtained by the snubbing action of a flexible band wrapped about a cylindrical wheel or drum affixed to the rotating member to be held, the connections and linkages being so arranged that the motion of the brake wheel or drum will act to increase the tension or holding force of the band.

(6) Brake—shoe type. A brake in which the holding effect is obtained by applying the direct pressure of two or more segmental friction elements held to a stationary member against a cylindrical wheel or drum affixed to the rotating member to be held.

(7) Building face rollers. A specialized form of guide roller designed to contact a portion of the outer face or wall structure of the building, and to assist in stabilizing the operators' platform during vertical travel.

(8) Continuous pressure. Operation by means of buttons or switches, any one of which may be used to control the movement of the working platform or roof car, only as long as the button or switch is manually maintained in the actuating position.

(9) Control. A system governing starting, stopping, direction, acceleration, speed, and retardation of moving members.

(10) Controller. A device or group of devices, usually contained in a single enclosure, which serves to control in some predetermined manner the apparatus to which it is connected.

(11) Electrical ground. A conducting connection between an electrical circuit or equipment and the earth, or some conducting body which serves in place of the earth.

(12) Guide roller. A rotating, bearing-mounted, generally cylindrical member, operating separately or as part of a guide shoe assembly, attached to the platform, and providing rolling contact with building guideways, or other building contact members.

(13) Guide shoe. An assembly of rollers, slide members, or the equivalent, attached as a unit to the operators' platform, and designed to engage with the building members provided for the vertical guidance of the operators' platform.

(14) Interlock. A device actuated by the operation of some other device with which it is directly associated, to govern succeeding operations of the same or allied devices.

(15) Operating device. A pushbutton, lever, or other manual device used to actuate a control.

(16) Powered platform. Equipment to provide access to the exterior of a building for maintenance, consisting of a suspended power-operated working platform, a roof car, or other suspension means, and the requisite operating and control devices.

(17) Rated load. The combined weight of employees, tools, equipment, and other material which the working platform is designed and installed to lift.

(18) Relay, direction. An electrically energized contactor responsive to an initiating control circuit, which in turn causes a moving member to travel in a particular direction.

(19) Relay, potential for vertical travel. An electrically energized contactor responsive to initiating control circuit, which in turn controls the operation of a moving member in both directions. This relay usually operates in conjunction with direction relays, as covered under the definition, "relay, direction."

(20) Roof car. A structure for the suspension of a working platform, providing for its horizontal movement to working positions.

(21) Roof-powered platform. A powered platform having the raising and lowering mechanism located on a roof car.

(22) Self-powered platform. A powered platform having the raising and lowering mechanism located on the working platform.

(23) Traveling cable. A cable made up of electrical or communication conductors or both, and providing electrical connection between the working platform and the roof car or other fixed point.

(24) Weatherproof. Equipment so constructed or protected that exposure to the weather will not interfere with its proper operation.

(25) Working platform. The suspended structure arranged for vertical travel which provides access to the exterior of the building or structure.

(26) Yield point. The stress at which the material exhibits a permanent set of 0.2 percent.

(27) Zinced fastenings. The method of providing wire rope attachments in which the splayed or fanned wire ends are held in a tapered socket by means of poured molten zinc.

(b) General requirements.

(1) Application.

(i) This section establishes safety requirements for the design, construction, installation, operation, maintenance, inspection, and use of power-operated platforms for exterior building maintenance. The requirements of this section do not apply to temporary equipment used for construction work; or to devices which are raised and lowered manually.

(ii) The purpose of this standard is to provide for the safety of life and limb of users of exterior powered platforms, as well as of others who may be exposed. The equipment described in this section is intended for use by one or more workmen who are engaged in exterior work, such as window cleaning, caulking, metal-polishing, and general exterior building maintenance or repairs.

(2) Existing and new equipment. This section applies to all powered platforms installed subsequent to the effective date of these regulations with the exception of powered platforms installed for emergency purposes.

(3) Design requirements. All new powered platforms for exterior building maintenance purchased and used after the effective date of these regulations shall meet all of the design, construction, installation, and maintenance requirements of Part II and

III of the "American National Standard Safety Requirements for Powered Platforms for Exterior Building Maintenance ANSI A120.1-1970" and of this section. Reference shall be made to appropriate parts of ANSI A120.1-1970 for detail specifications for equipment and special installations.

(4) Limitation. The requirements of this section apply only to electric powered platforms. It is not the intent of this section to prohibit the use of other types of power. Installation of powered platforms using other types of power is permitted, provided such platforms have adequate protective devices for the type of power used, and otherwise provide for reasonable safety of life and limb to users of equipment and to others who may be exposed.

(5) Types of powered platforms.

(i) For the purpose of applying this standard, powered platforms are divided into two basic types, Type F and Type T.

(ii) Powered platforms designated as Type F shall meet all of the requirements in Part II of ANSI A120.1-1970, American National Standards Safety Requirements for Powered Platforms for Exterior Building Maintenance. A basic requirement of Type F equipment is that the working platform is suspended by at least four wire ropes and designed so that failure of any one wire rope will not substantially alter the normal position of the working platform. Another basic requirement of Type F equipment is that only one layer of hoisting rope is permitted on winding drums. Type F powered platforms may be either roof-powered or self-powered.

(iii) Powered platforms designated as Type T shall meet all the requirements in Part III of ANSI A120.1-1970, American National Standard Safety Requirements for Powered Platforms for Exterior Maintenance. A basic requirement of Type T equipment is that the working platform is suspended by at least two wire ropes. Failure of one wire rope would not permit the working platform to fall to the ground, but would upset its normal position. The employer shall require employees working on Type T equipment to wear safety belts, which are attached by lifelines to either the working [illegible] or the building structure. Type T powered platforms may be either roof-powered or self-powered.

(iv) The requirements of this section apply to powered platforms with winding drum type hoisting machines. It is not the intent of this section to prohibit powered platforms using other types of hoisting machines such as, but not limited to, traction drum hoisting machines, air powered machines, hydraulic powered machines, and internal combustion machines. Installation of powered platforms with other types of hoisting machines is permitted, provided adequate protective devices are [illegible] and provided reasonable safety of life and limb to users of the equipment and to others who may be exposed is assured.

(c) Type F powered platforms.

(1) Roof car, general.

(i) A roof car shall be provided whenever it is necessary to move the working platform horizontally to working or storage positions.

(ii) The maximum rated speed at which a power traversed roof car may be moved in a horizontal direction shall be 50 feet per minute.

(2) Movement and positioning of roof car.

(i) Provision shall be made to protect against having the roof car leave the roof or enter roof areas not designed for travel.

(ii) The horizontal motion of the roof cars shall be positively controlled so as to insure proper movement and positioning of the roof car.

(iii) Roof car positioning devices shall be provided to insure that the working platform is placed and retained in proper position for vertical travel and during storage.

(iv) Mechanical stops shall be provided to prevent the traversing of the roof car beyond its normal limits of travel. Such stops shall be capable of withstanding a force equal to 100 percent of the inertial effect of the roof car in motion with traversing power applied.

(v)

(a) The operating device of a power-operated roof car for traversing shall be located on the roof car, the working platform, or both, and shall be of the continuous pressure weather-proof electric type. If more than one operating device is provided, they shall be so arranged that traversing is possible only from one operating device at a time.

(b) The operating device shall be so connected that it is not operable until:

(1) The working platform is located at its uppermost position of travel and is not in contact with the building face or fixed vertical guides in the face of the building; and

(2) All protective devices and interlocks are in a position for traversing.

(3) Roof car stability. Roof car stability shall be determined by either subdivision (i) or (ii) of this subparagraph, whichever is greater.

(i) The roof car shall be continuously stable, considering overturning moment as determined by 125 percent rated load, plus maximum dead load and the prescribed wind loading.

(ii) The roof car and its anchorages shall be capable of resisting accidental over-tensioning of the wire ropes suspending the working platform and this calculated value shall include the effect of one and one-half times the value. For this calculation, the simultaneous effect of one-half wind load shall be included, and the design stresses shall not exceed those referred to in paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(iii) If the load on the motors is at any time in excess of three times that required for lifting the working platform with its rated load, the motor shall stall.

(4) Access to the roof car. Safe access to the roof car and from the roof car to the working platform shall be provided. If the access to the roof car at any point of its travel is not over the roof area or where otherwise necessary for safety, self-closing, self-locking gates shall be provided. Applicable provisions of the American National Standard Safety Requirements for Floor and Wall Openings, Railings and Toeboard, A12.1-1967, shall apply.

(5) Means for maintenance, repair, and storage. Means shall be provided to run the roof car away from the roof perimeter, where necessary, and to provide a safe area for maintenance, repairs, and storage. Provisions shall be made to secure the machine in the stored position. For stored machines subject to wind forces, see special design and anchorage requirements for "wind forces" in Part II, section 10.5.1.1 of ANSI A120.1-1970, American National Standards Safety Requirements for Powered Platforms for Exterior Building Maintenance.

(6) General requirements for working platforms. The working platform shall be of girder or truss construction and shall be adequate to support its rated load under any position of loading, and comply with the provisions set forth in section 10 of ANSI A120.1-1970, American National Standard Safety Requirements for Powered Platforms for Exterior Building Maintenance.

(7) Load rating plate. Each working platform shall bear a manufacturer's load rating plate, conspicuously posted; stating the maximum permissible rated load. Load rating plates shall be made of noncorrosive material and shall have letters and figures stamped, etched, or cast on the surface. The minimum height of the letters and figures shall be one-fourth inch.

(8) Minimum size. The working platform shall have a minimum net width of 24 inches.

(9) Guard rails. Working platforms shall be furnished with permanent guard rails not less than 36 inches high, and not more than 42 inches high at the front (building side). At the rear, and on the sides, the rail shall not be less than 42 inches high. An intermediate guardrail shall be provided around the entire platform between the top guardrail and the toeboard.

(10) Toeboards. A 4-inch toeboard shall be provided along all sides of the working platform.

(11) Open spaces between guardrails and toeboards. The spaces between the intermediate guardrail and platform toeboard on the building side of the working platform, and between the top guardrail and the toeboard on other sides of the platform, shall be filled with metallic mesh or similar material that will reject a ball 1 inch in diameter. The installed mesh shall be capable of withstanding a load of 100 pounds applied horizontally over any area of 144 square inches. If the space between the platform and the building face does not exceed 8 inches, and the platform is restrained by guides, the mesh may be omitted on the front side.

(12) Flooring. The platform flooring shall be of the nonskid type, and if of open construction, shall reject a 9/16-inch diameter ball, or be provided with a screen below the floor to reject a 9/16-inch diameter ball.

(13) Access gates. Where access gates are provided, they shall be self-closing and self-locking.

(14) Operating device for vertical movement of the working platform.

(i) The normal operating device for the working platform shall be located on the working platform and shall be of the continuous pressure weatherproof electric type.

(ii) The operating device shall be operable only when all electrical protective devices and interlocks on the working platform are in position for normal service, and the roof car, if provided, is at an established operating point.

(15) Emergency electric operative device.

(i) In addition, on roof-powered platforms, an emergency electric operating device shall be provided near the hoisting machine for use in the event of failure of the normal operating device for the working platform, or failure of the traveling cable system. The emergency operating device shall be mounted in a locked compartment and shall have a legend mounted thereon reading: "For Emergency Operation Only. Establish Communication With Personnel on Working Platform Before Use."

(ii) A key for unlocking the compartment housing the emergency operating device shall be mounted in a break-glass receptacle located near the emergency operating device.

(16) Manual cranking for emergency operation. Emergency operation of the main drive machine may be provided to allow manual cranking. This provision for manual operation shall be designed so that not more than two persons will be required to perform this operation. The access to this provision shall include a means to automatically make the machine inoperative electrically while under the emergency manual operation. The design shall be such that the emergency brake is operative at or below governor tripping speed during manual operation.

(17) Arrangement and guarding of hoisting equipment.

(i) Hoisting equipment shall consist of a power-driven drum or drum contained in the roof car (roof-powered platforms) or contained on the working platform (self-powered platform).

(ii) The hoisting equipment shall be power-operated in both up and down directions.

(iii) Guard or other protective devices shall be installed wherever rotating shafts or other mechanisms or gears may expose personnel to a hazard.

(iv) Friction devices or clutches shall not be used for connecting the main driving mechanism to the drum or drums. Belt- or chain-driven machines are prohibited.

(18) Hoisting motors.

(i) Hoisting motors shall be electric and of weather-proof construction.

(ii) Hoisting motors shall be in conformance with applicable provisions of paragraph (c)(22) of this section, Electrical wiring and equipment.

(iii) Hoisting motors shall be directly connected to the hoisting machinery. Motor couplings, if used, shall be of steel construction.

(19) Brakes. The hoisting machine(s) shall have two independent braking means, each designed to stop and hold the working platform with 125 percent of rated load.

(20) Hoisting ropes and rope connections.

(i) Working platforms shall be suspended by wire ropes of either 6 x 19 or 6 x 37 classification, preformed or nonpreformed.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) The minimum factor of safety shall be ten, and shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$F = \frac{S \times N}{W}$$

where

S = Manufacturer's rated breaking strength of one rope.

N = Number of ropes under load.

W = Maximum static load on all ropes with the platform and its rated load at any point of its travel.

(iv) Hoisting ropes shall be sized to conform with the required factor of safety, but in no case shall the size be less than five-sixteenths-inch diameter.

(v) Winding drums shall have at least three turns of rope remaining when the platform has landed at the lowest possible point of its travel.

(vi) The lengthening or repairing of wire rope by the joining of two or more lengths is prohibited.

(vii) The nondrum ends of the hoisting ropes shall be provided with individual shackle rods which will permit individual adjustment of rope lengths, if required.

(viii) More than two reverse bends in each rope is prohibited.

(21) Rope tag data.

(i) A metal data tag shall be securely attached to one of the wire rope fastenings. This data tag shall bear the following wire rope data:

(a) The diameter in inches.

(b) Construction classification.

(c) Whether nonpreformed or preformed.

(d) The grade of material used.

(e) The manufacturer's rated breaking strength.

(f) Name of the manufacturer of the rope.

(g) The month and year the ropes were installed.

(22) **Electrical wiring and equipment.**

(i) All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to the requirements of the National Electrical Code, NFPA No. 70–1971; ANSI C1–1971 (Rev. of C1–1968), except as modified by ANSI A120.1–1970 "American National Standard Safety Requirements for Powered Platforms for Exterior Building Maintenance." For detail design specifications for electrical equipment, see Part 2, ANSI A120.1–1970.

(ii) All motors and operation and control equipment shall be supplied from a single power source.

(iii) The power supply for the powered platform shall be an independent circuit supplied through a fused disconnect switch.

(iv) Electrical conductor parts of the power supply system shall be protected against accidental contact.

(v) Electrical grounding shall be provided.

(a) Provision for electrical grounding shall be included with the power-supply system.

(b) Controller cabinets, motor frames, hoisting machines, the working platform, roof car and roof car track system, and noncurrent carrying parts of electrical equipment, where provided, shall be grounded.

(c) The controller, where used, shall be so designed and installed that a single ground or short circuit will not prevent both the normal and final stopping device from stopping the working platform.

(d) Means shall be provided on the roof car and working platform for grounding portable electric tools.

(e) The working platform shall be grounded through a grounding connection in a traveling cable. Electrically powered tools utilized on the working platform shall be grounded.

(vi) Electrical receptacles located on the roof or other exterior location shall be of a weatherproof type and shall be located so as not to be subject to contact with water or accumulated snow. The receptacles shall be grounded and the electric cable shall include a grounding conductor. The receptacle and plug shall be a type designed to avoid hazard to persons inserting or withdrawing the plug. Provision shall be made to prevent application of cable strain directly to the plug and receptacle.

(vii) Electric runway conductor systems shall be of the type designed for use in exterior locations and shall be located so as not to be subject to contact with water or accumulated snow. The conductors, collectors, and disconnecting means shall conform to the same requirements as those for cranes and hoists in Article 610 of the National Electrical Code, NFPA 70–1971; ANSI C1–1971 (Rev. of C1–1968). A grounded conductor shall parallel the power conductors and be so connected that it cannot be opened by the disconnecting means. The system shall be designed to avoid hazard to persons in the area.

(viii) Electrical protective devices and interlocks of the weatherproof type shall be provided.

(ix) Where the installation includes a roof car, electric contact(s) shall be provided and so connected that the operating devices for the working platform shall be operative only when the roof car is located and mechanically retained at an established operating point.

(x) Where the powered platform includes a power-operated roof car, the operating device for the roof car shall be inoperative when the roof car is mechanically retained at an established operating point.

(xi) An electric contact shall be provided and so connected that it will cause the down direction relay for vertical travel to open if the tension in the traveling cable exceeds safe limits.

(xii) An automatic overload device shall be provided to cut off the electrical power to the circuit in all hoisting motors for travel in the up direction, should the load applied to the hoisting ropes at either end of the working platform exceed 125 percent of its normal tension with rated load, as shown on the manufacturer's data plate on the working platform.

(xiii) An automatic device shall be provided for each hoisting rope which will cut off the electrical power to the hoisting motor or motors in the down direction and apply the brakes if any hoisting rope becomes slack.

(xiv) Upper and lower directional limit devices shall be provided to prevent the travel of the working platform beyond the normal upper and lower limits of travel.

(xv) Operation of a directional limit device shall prevent further motion in the appropriate direction, if the normal limit of travel has been reached.

(xvi) Directional limit devices, if driven from the hoisting machine by chains, tapes, or cables, shall incorporate a device to disconnect the electric power from the hoisting machine and apply both the primary and secondary brakes in the event of failure of the driving means.

(xvii) Final terminal stopping devices of the working platform:

(a) Final terminal stopping devices for the working platform shall be provided as a secondary means of preventing the working platform from over-traveling at the terminals.

(b) The device shall be set to function as close to each terminal landing as practical, but in such a way that under normal operating conditions it will not function when the working platform is stopped by the normal terminal stopping device.

(c) Operation of the final terminal stopping device shall open the potential relay for vertical travel, thereby disconnecting the electric power from the hoisting machine, and applying both the primary and secondary brakes.

(d) The final terminal stopping device for the upper limit of travel shall be mounted so that it is operated directly by the motion of the working platform itself.

(xviii) Emergency stop switches shall be provided in or adjacent to each operating device.

(xix) Emergency stop switches shall:

(a) Have red operating buttons or handles.

(b) Be conspicuously and permanently marked "Stop."

(c) Be the manually opened and manually closed type.

(d) Be positively opened with the opening not solely dependent on springs.

(xx) The manual operation of an emergency stop switch associated with an operating device for the working platform shall open the potential relay for vertical travel, thereby disconnecting the electric power from the hoisting machine and applying both the primary and secondary brakes.

(xxi) The manual operation of the emergency stop switch associated with the operating device for a power-driven roof car shall cause the electrical power to the traverse machine to be interrupted, and the traverse machine brake to apply.

(23) Requirements for emergency communications.

(i) Communication equipment shall be provided for each powered platform for use in an emergency.

(ii) Two-way communication shall be established between personnel on the roof and personnel on the stalled working platform before any emergency operation of the working platform is undertaken by personnel on the roof.

(iii) The equipment shall permit two-way voice communication between the working platform and

(a) Designated personnel continuously available while the powered platform is in use; and

(b) Designated personnel on roof-powered platforms, undertaking emergency operation of the working platform by means of the emergency operating device located near the hoisting machine.

(iv) The emergency communication equipment shall be one of the following types:

(a) Telephone connected to the central telephone exchange system; or

(b) Telephones on a limited system or an approved two-way radio system, provided designated personnel are available to receive a message during the time the powered platform is in use.

(d) Type T powered platforms.

(1) Roof car. The requirements of paragraphs (c)(1) through (c)(5) of this section shall apply to Type T powered platforms.

(2) Working platform. The requirements of paragraphs (c)(6) through (c)(16) of this section apply to Type T powered platforms.

(i) The working platform shall be suspended by at least two wire ropes.

(ii) The maximum rated speed at which the working platform of self-powered platforms may be moved in a vertical direction shall not exceed 35 feet per minute.

(3) Hoisting equipment. The requirements of paragraphs (c)(17) and (18) of this section shall apply to Type T powered platforms.

(4) Brakes. Brakes requirements of paragraph (c)(19) of this section shall apply.

(5) Hoisting ropes and rope connections.

(i) Paragraph (c)(20)(i) through (vi) and (viii) of this section shall apply to Type T powered platforms.

(ii) Adjustable shackle rods in subparagraph (c)(20)(vii) of this section shall apply to Type T powered platforms if the working platform is suspended by more than two wire ropes.

(6) Electrical wiring and equipment.

(i) The requirements of paragraph (c)(22)(i) through (vi) of this section shall apply to Type T powered platforms. "Circuit protection limitation," "powered platform electrical service system," all operating services and control equipment shall comply with the specifications contained in Part 2, section 26, of ANSI A120.1-1970.

(ii) For electrical protective devices the requirements of paragraph (c)(22) (i) through (viii) of this section shall apply to Type T powered platforms. Requirements for the "circuit potential limitation" shall be in accordance with the specifications contained in Part 2, section 26, of ANSI A120.1-1970.

(7) Emergency communications. All the requirements of paragraph (c)(23) of this section shall apply to Type T powered platforms.

(8) Safety belts and lifelines.

(i) Each employee on the working platform of Type T powered platforms shall be provided with a safety belt with means for attachment to a lifeline on the roof or to the working platform. It is recommended that safety belts, lines and other components, including fastening means and anchorages to the working platform, building, or structure, be capable of withstanding a static load of 4,000 pounds without damage or permanent deformation of any part.

(ii) Fastening devices should be of the self-closing type, equipped with a locking device to prevent accidental opening of the fastening device.

(iii) Harness-type belts are recommended. If body-type belts are used, it is recommended that the portion of the belt bearing on the front of the wearer's body have a minimum width of 3 inches.

(iv) It is recommended that the line used to connect the belt to the platform, or to a lifeline attached to the building, have a maximum length of 5 feet.

(e) Inspections and tests.

(1) Inspections and tests of new installations and alterations. All powered platform installations shall, on their completion, and before being placed in service, be subjected to an acceptance test in the field to determine that all parts of the installation conform to applicable requirements of this standard, and that all safety and operating equipment functions as required. A similar inspection and test shall be made following a major alteration to an existing installation.

(2) Periodic inspections and tests. Each installation shall undergo a periodic inspection and test at least every 12 months. All parts of the equipment shall be inspected, and where necessary, tested to determine that they are in safe operating condition.

(3) Maintenance inspections and tests. Each installation shall undergo a maintenance inspection and test every 30 days, except where the cleaning cycle is less than 30 days such inspection and test shall be made prior to each cleaning cycle. The results of these inspections and tests shall be recorded in a log which is available for review by the Assistant Secretary of Labor or his designated representative. Each log entry shall include the date of the inspection or test and shall be signed by the person making the inspection or test.

(4) Special inspection of governors and secondary brakes.

(i) Special inspections and tests of the governor and secondary braking system shall be made at intervals not exceeding 1 year.

(ii) The inspection and test shall include a verification that the initiating device for the secondary breaking operates at the proper overspeed.

(iii) If adequate tests cannot be performed in the field, the initiating device may be removed from the powered platform and sent to a shop equipped to make such a test.

(iv) The inspection shall include a verification of the proper functioning of the secondary brake. If an adequate test cannot be performed in the field, the hoisting machine may be removed from the building and sent to a shop equipped to make such a test.

(v) If any hoisting machine or initiating device for the secondary brake system is removed from the building for testing, all reinstalled and directly related components shall be reinspected prior to returning the powered platform installation to service.

(5) Adverse weather. The operation of powered platforms during severe adverse weather conditions is prohibited.

(6) Maintenance.

(i) Required maintenance. All parts of equipment on which safe operation depends shall be maintained in proper working order so that they perform the function for which they are intended.

(ii) Broken or worn parts, worn switch contacts, brushes, and short flexible conductors of electrical devices, which may interfere with safe operation, shall be replaced promptly. Electrical receptacles and plugs shall be replaced promptly when worn or damaged. All electrical connections shall be kept tight.

(iii) Components of the electrical service system and traveling cables shall be replaced when damaged or substantially abraded.

(iv) Gears, shafts, bearings, brakes, and hoisting drums shall be maintained in proper alinement. Gears shall be replaced promptly when there is evidence of appreciable wear.

(7) Cleaning.

(i) Controller contactors and relays shall be kept clean and free from dirt.

(ii) All other parts shall be kept clean, if their proper functioning would be affected by the presence of dirt or other contaminants.

(8) Periodic reshackling of hoisting ropes. The hoisting ropes shall be reshackled at the non-drum ends at intervals not exceeding 24 months. In reshackling the ropes, a sufficient length shall be cut from the end of the rope to remove damaged or fatigued portions.

(9) Making safety devices inoperative. No person shall at any time make any required safety device or electrical protective device inoperative, except when necessary during tests, inspections, and maintenance. Immediately upon completion of such test, inspections, and maintenance, the devices shall be restored to their normal operating condition.

(10) Damaged rope. Wire ropes shall be replaced whenever there are six or more broken wires in any one lay of the wire rope, or whenever the ropes are damaged or in a deteriorated condition.

(11) Roof track system. Roof track systems, tiedowns, or similar equipment, if provided, shall be maintained in proper working order so that they perform the function for which they are intended.

(12) Building face guiding members. T-rails, indented mullions, or equivalent guides located in the face of the building, if provided, shall be maintained in proper working order so that they perform the function for which they are intended. Brackets for cable stabilizers, if provided, shall similarly be maintained in proper working order.

1910.67—VEHICLE-MOUNTED ELEVATING AND ROTATING WORK PLATFORMS

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

(1) Aerial device. Any vehicle-mounted device, telescoping or articulating, or both, which is used to position personnel.

(2) Aerial ladder. An aerial device consisting of a single- or multiple-section extensible ladder.

(3) Articulating boom platform. An aerial device with two or more hinged boom sections.

(4) Extensible boom platform. An aerial device (except ladders) with a telescopic or extensible boom. Telescopic derricks with personnel platform attachments shall be considered to be extensible boom platforms when used with a personnel platform.

(5) Insulated aerial device. An aerial device designed for work on energized lines and apparatus.

(6) Mobile unit. A combination of an aerial device, its vehicle, and related equipment.

(7) Platform. Any personnel-carrying device (basket or bucket) which is a component of an aerial device.

(8) Vehicle. Any carrier that is not manually propelled.

(9) Vertical tower. An aerial device designed to elevate a platform in a substantially vertical axis.

(b) General Requirements.

(1) Unless otherwise provided in this section, aerial devices (aerial lifts) acquired on or after July 1, 1975, shall be designed and constructed in conformance with the applicable requirements of the American National Standard for "Vehicle Mounted Elevating and Rotating Work Platforms," ANSI A92.2-1969, including appendix. Aerial lifts acquired for use before July 1, 1975 which do not meet the requirements of ANSI A92.2-1969, may not be used after July 1, 1976, unless they shall have been modified so as to conform with the applicable design and construction requirements of ANSI A92.2-1969. Aerial devices include the following types of vehicle-mounted aerial devices used to elevate personnel to jobsites above ground: (i) Extensible boom platforms, (ii) aerial ladders, (iii) articulating boom platforms, (iv) vertical towers, and (v) a combination of any of the above. Aerial equipment may be made of metal, wood, fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP), or other material; may be powered or manually operated; and are deemed to be aerial lifts whether or not they are capable of rotating about a substantially vertical axis.

(2) Aerial lifts may be "field modified" for uses other than those intended by the manufacturer, provided the modification has been certified in writing by the manufacturer or by any other equivalent entity, such as a nationally recognized testing laboratory, to be in conformity with all applicable provisions of ANSI A92.2-1969 and this section, and to be at least as safe as the equipment was before modification.

(3) The requirements of this section do not apply to firefighting equipment or to the vehicles upon which aerial devices are mounted, except with respect to the requirement that a vehicle be a stable support for the aerial device.

(4) When operating aerial lifts proximate to, under, over, by or near electric power lines, the requirements of this paragraph (b)(4) shall apply.

(i) The following clearances shall be maintained:

(a) For lines rated at 50kV or less, the minimum clearance between the lines and any part of the aerial lift shall be at least 10 feet;

(b) When the lines are rated in excess of 50kV, the minimum clearance between the lines and any part of the aerial lift shall be at least 10 feet plus 0.4 inch for each kilovolt in excess of 50kV, or twice the length of the line insulator, but never less than 10 feet;

(c) the requirements set forth in paragraph (b)(4)(i) of this section do not apply

(1) where the work is performed from an aerial device insulated for the work and the work is performed by either telecommunications employees, line-clearance tree-trimming employees, or electric utility employees; or

(2) where the electric power transmission or distribution lines have been de-energized and visibly grounded at the point of work, or where insulating barriers, not a part of or an attachment to the aerial lift, have been erected to prevent physical contact with the lines.

(ii) Proximity warning devices may be used, but not in lieu of meeting the requirements contained in paragraph (b) (4) (i) of this section.

(iii) The owner of the lines or his authorized representative shall be notified and provided with all pertinent information before the commencement of operations near electrical lines.

(iv) Any overhead wire shall be considered to be an energized line until the owner of the line or his authorized representative states that it is deenergized.

(c) Specific Requirements

(1) Ladder trucks and tower trucks. Before the truck is moved for highway travel, aerial ladders shall be secured in the lower traveling position by the locking device above the truck cab, and the manually operated device at the base of the ladder, or by other equally effective means (e.g., cradles which prevent rotation of the ladder in combination with positive acting linear actuators).

(2) Extensible and articulating boom platforms.

(i) Lift controls shall be tested each day prior to use to determine that such controls are in safe working condition.

(ii) Only trained persons shall operate an aerial lift.

(iii) Belting off to an adjacent pole, structure, or equipment while working from an aerial lift shall not be permitted.

(iv) Employees shall always stand firmly on the floor of the basket, and shall not sit or climb on the edge of the basket or use planks, ladders, or other devices for a work position.

(v) A body belt shall be worn and a lanyard attached to the boom or basket when working from an aerial lift.

(vi) Boom and basket load limits specified by the manufacturer shall not be exceeded.

(vii) The brakes shall be set and outriggers, when used, shall be positioned on pads or a solid surface. Wheel chocks shall be installed before using an aerial lift on an incline.

(viii) An aerial lift truck may not be moved when the boom is elevated in a working position with men in the basket, except for equipment which is specifically designed for this type of operation in accordance with the provisions of paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section.

(ix) Articulating boom and extensible boom platforms, primarily designed as personnel carriers, shall have both platform (upper) and lower controls. Upper controls shall be in or beside the platform within easy reach of the operator. Lower controls shall provide for overriding the upper controls. Controls shall be plainly marked as to their function. Lower level controls shall not be operated unless permission has been obtained from the employee in the lift, except in case of emergency.

(x) Climbers shall not be worn while performing work from an aerial lift.

(xi) The insulated portion of an aerial lift shall not be altered in any manner that might reduce its insulating value.

(xii) Before moving an aerial lift for travel, the boom(s) shall be inspected to see that it is properly cradled and outriggers are in stowed position, except as provided in paragraph (c)(2)(viii) of this section.

(3) Electrical Tests. Electrical tests shall be made in conformance with the requirements of ANSI A92.2-1969, Section 5. However, equivalent DC voltage tests may be used in lieu of the AC voltage test specified in A92.2-1969. DC voltage tests which are approved by the equipment manufacturer or equivalent entity shall be considered an equivalent test for the purpose of this paragraph (c)(3).

(4) Bursting safety factor. All critical hydraulic and pneumatic components shall comply with the provisions of the American National Standards Institute standard, ANSI A92.2-1969, Section 4.9 Bursting Safety Factor. Critical components are those in which a failure would result in a free fall or free rotation of the boom. All noncritical components shall have a bursting safety factor of at least two to one.

(5) Welding standards. All welding shall conform to the following Automotive Welding Society (AWS) Standards, as applicable:

(i) Standard Qualification Procedure, AWS B3.0-41.

(ii) Recommended Practices for Automotive Welding Design, AWS D8.4-61.

(iii) Standard Qualification of Welding Procedures and Welders for Piping and Tubing, AWS D10.9-69.

(iv) Specifications for Welding Highway and Railway Bridges, AWS D2.0-69.

[40 F.R. 13435, March 26, 1975.]

1910.68—MANLIFTS INTERP

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

(1) Handhold (handgrip). A handhold is a device attached to the belt which can be grasped by the passenger to provide a means of maintaining balance.

(2) Open type. One which has a handgrip surface fully exposed and capable of being encircled by the passenger's fingers.

(3) Closed type. A cup-shaped device, open at the top in the direction of travel of the step for which it is to be used, and closed at the bottom, into which the passenger may place his fingers.

(4) Limit switch. A device, the purpose of which is to cut off the power to the motor and apply the brake to stop the carrier in the event that a loaded step passes the terminal landing.

(5) Manlift. A device consisting of a power-driven endless belt moving in one direction only, and provided with steps or platforms and handholds attached to it for the transportation of personnel from floor to floor.

(6) Rated speed. Rated speed is the speed for which the device is designed and installed.

(7) Split-rail switch. An electric limit switch operated mechanically by the rollers on the manlift steps. It consists of an additional hinged or "split" rail, mounted on the regular guiderail, over which the step rollers pass. It is spring-loaded in the "split" position. If the step supports no load, the rollers will "bump" over the switch; if a loaded step should pass over the section, the split rail will be forced straight, tripping the switch and opening the electrical circuit.

(8) Step (platform). A step is a passenger carrying unit.

(9) Travel. The travel is the distance between the centers of the top and bottom pulleys.

(b) General requirements.

(1) Application. This section applies to the construction, maintenance, inspection, and operation of manlifts in relation to accident hazards. Manlifts covered by this section consist of platforms or brackets and accompanying handholds mounted on, or attached to an endless belt, operating vertically in one direction only and being supported by, and driven through pulleys, at the top and bottom. These manlifts are intended for conveyance of persons only. It is not intended that this section cover moving stairways, elevators with enclosed platforms ("Paternoster" elevators), gravity lifts, nor conveyors used only for conveying material. This section applies to manlifts used to carry only personnel trained and authorized by the employer in their use.

(2) Purpose. The purpose of this section is to provide reasonable safety for life and limb.

(3) Design requirements. All new manlift installations and equipment installed after the effective date of these regulations shall meet the design requirements of the "American National Safety Standard for Manlifts ANSI A90.1-1969," and the requirements of this section.

(4) Reference to other codes and subparts. The following codes, and subparts of this part, are applicable to this section. Safety Code for Mechanical Power Transmission Apparatus ANSI B15.1-1953 (R 1958) and Subpart O; National Electrical Code, NFPA No. 70–1971; **ANSI C1-1971 (Rev. of C1-1968) and Subpart S; Safety Code for Fixed Ladders, ANSI A14.3–1956 and Safety Requirements for Floor and Wall Openings, Railings and Toeboards, ANSI A12.1-1967 and Subpart D.**

(5) Floor openings.

(i) Allowable size. Floor openings for both the "up" and "down" runs shall be not less than 28 inches nor more than 36 inches in width for a 12-inch belt; not less than 34 inches nor more than 38 inches for a 14-inch belt; and not less than 36 inches nor more than 40 inches for a 16-inch belt and shall extend not less than 24 inches, nor more than 28 inches from the face of the belt.

(ii) Uniformity. All floor openings for a given manlift shall be uniform in size and shall be approximately circular, and each shall be located vertically above the opening below it.

(6) Landing.

(i) Vertical clearance. The clearance between the floor or mounting platform and the lower edge for the conical guard above it required by subparagraph (7) of this paragraph shall not be less than 7 feet 6 inches. Where this clearance cannot be obtained no access to the manlift shall be provided and the manlift runway shall be enclosed where it passes through such floor.

(ii) Clear landing space. The landing space adjacent to the floor openings shall be free from obstruction and kept clear at all times. This landing space shall be at least 2 feet in width from the edge of the floor opening used for mounting and dismounting.

(iii) Lighting and landing. Adequate lighting, not less than 5-foot candles, shall be provided at each floor landing at all times when the lift is in operation.

(iv) Landing surface. The landing surfaces at the entrances and exits to the manlift shall be constructed and maintained as to provide safe footing at all times.

(v) Emergency landings. Where there is a travel of 50 feet or more between floor landings, one or more emergency landings shall be provided so that there will be a landing (either floor or emergency) for every 25 feet or less of manlift travel.

(a) Emergency landings shall be accessible from both the "up" and "down" rungs of the manlift and shall give access to the ladder required in subparagraph (12) of this paragraph.

(b) Emergency landings shall be completely enclosed with a standard railing and toeboard.

(c) Platforms constructed to give access to bucket elevators or other equipment for the purpose of inspection, lubrication, and repair may also serve as emergency landings under this rule. All such platforms will then be considered part of the emergency landing and shall be provided with standard railings and toeboards.

(7) Guards on underside of floor openings.

(i) Fixed type. On the ascending side of the manlift floor openings shall be provided with a bevel guard or cone meeting the following requirements:

(a) The cone shall make an angle of not less than 45° with the horizontal. An angle of 60° or greater shall be used where ceiling heights permit.

(b) The lower edge of this guard shall extend at least 42 inches outward from any handhold on the belt. It shall not extend beyond the upper surface of the floor above.

(c) The cone shall be made of not less than No. 18 U.S. gauge sheet steel or material of equivalent strength or stiffness. The lower edge shall be rolled to a minimum diameter of one-half inch and the interior shall be smooth with no rivets, bolts or screws protruding.

(ii) Floating type. In lieu of the fixed guards specified in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph, a floating type safety cone may be used, such floating cones to be mounted on hinges at least 6 inches below the underside of the floor and so constructed as to actuate a limit switch should a force of 2 pounds be applied on the edge of the cone closest to the hinge. The depth of this floating cone need not exceed 12 inches.

(8) Protection of entrances and exits.

(i) Guardrail requirement. The entrances and exits at all floor landings affording access to the manlift shall be guarded by a maze (staggered railing) or a handrail equipped with self-closing gates.

(ii) Construction. The rails shall be standard guardrails with toeboards meeting the provisions of the Safety Requirements for Floor and Wall Openings, Railings and Toeboards, ANSI A12.1-1967 and section 1910.23.

(iii) Gates. Gates, if used, shall open outward and shall be self-closing. Corners of gates shall be rounded.

(iv) Maze. Maze or staggered openings shall offer no direct passage between enclosure and outer floor space.

(v) Except where building layout prevents, entrances at all landings shall be in the same relative position.

(9) Guards for openings.

(i) Construction. The floor opening at each landing shall be guarded on sides not used for entrance or exit by a wall, a railing and toeboard or by panels of wire mesh of suitable strength.

(ii) Height and location. Such rails or guards shall be at least 42 inches in height on the up-running side and 66 inches on the down-running side.

(10) Bottom arrangement.

(i) Bottom landing. At the bottom landing the clear area shall be not smaller than the area enclosed by the guardrails on the floors above, and any wall in front of the down-running side of the belt shall be not less than 48 inches from the face of the belt. This space shall not be encroached upon by stairs or ladders.

(ii) Location of lower pulley. The lower (boot) pulley shall be installed so that it is supported by the lowest landing served. The sides of the pulley support shall be guarded to prevent contact with the pulley or the steps.

(iii) Mounting platform. A mounting platform shall be provided in front or to one side of the uprun at the lowest landing, unless the floor level is such that the following requirement can be met: The floor or platform shall be at or above the point at which the upper surface of the ascending step completes its turn and assumes a horizontal position.

(iv) Guardrails. To guard against persons walking under a descending step, the area on the downside of the manlift shall be guarded in accordance with subparagraph (8) of this paragraph. To guard against a person getting between the mounting platform and an ascending step, the area between the belt and the platform shall be protected by a guardrail.

(11) Top arrangements.

(i) Clearance from floor. A top clearance shall be provided of at least 11 feet above the top terminal landing. This clearance shall be maintained from a plane through each face of the belt to a vertical cylindrical plane having a diameter 2 feet greater than the diameter of the floor opening, extending upward from the top floor to the ceiling on the up-running side of the belt. No encroachment of structural or machine supporting members within this space will be permitted.

(ii) Pulley clearance.

(a) There shall be a clearance of at least 5 feet between the center of the head pulley shaft and any ceiling obstruction.

(b) The center of the head pulley shaft shall be not less than 6 feet above the top terminal landing.

(iii) Emergency grab rail. An emergency grab bar or rail and platform shall be provided at the head pulley when the distance to the head pulley is over 6 feet above the top landing, otherwise only a grab bar or rail is to be provided to permit the rider to swing free should the emergency stops become inoperative.

(12) Emergency exit ladder. A fixed metal ladder accessible from both the "up" and "down" run of the manlift shall be provided for the entire travel of the manlift. Such ladder shall be in accordance with the existing ANSI A14.3–1956. Safety Code for Fixed Ladders and section 1910.27.

(13) Superstructure bracing. Manlift rails shall be secured in such a manner as to avoid spreading, vibration, and misalinement.

(14) Illumination.

(i) General. Both runs of the manlift shall be illuminated at all times when the lift is in operation. An intensity of not less than 1-foot candle shall be maintained at all points. (However, see subparagraph (6)(iii) of this paragraph for illumination requirements at landings.)

(ii) Control of illumination. Lighting of manlift runways shall be by means of circuits permanently tied in to the building circuits (no switches), or shall be controlled by switches at each landing. Where separate switches are provided at each landing, any switch shall turn on all lights necessary to illuminate the entire runway.

(15) Weather protection. The entire manlift and its driving mechanism shall be protected from the weather at all times.

(c) Mechanical requirements.

(1) Machines, general.

(i) Brakes. Brakes provided for stopping and holding a manlift shall be inherently self-engaging, by requiring power or force from an external source to cause disengagement. The brake shall be electrically released, and shall be applied to the motor shaft for direct-connected units or to the input shaft for belt-driven units. The brake shall be capable of stopping and holding the manlift when the descending side is loaded with 250 pounds on each step.

[38 F.R. 16223, June 21, 1973.]

(ii) Belt.

(a) The belts shall be of hard-woven canvas, rubber-coated canvas, leather, or other material meeting the strength requirements of paragraph (b)(3) of this section and having a co-efficient of friction such that when used in conjunction with an adequate tension device it will meet the brake test specified in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph.

(b) The width of the belt shall be not less than 12 inches for a travel not exceeding 100 feet, not less than 14 inches for a travel greater than 100 feet but not exceeding 150 feet and 16 inches for a travel exceeding 150 feet.

(c) A belt that has become torn while in use on a manlift shall not be spliced and put back in service.

(2) Speed.

(i) Maximum speed. No manlift designed for a speed in excess of 80 feet per minute shall be installed.

(3) Platforms or steps.

(i) Minimum depth. Steps or platforms shall be not less than 12 inches nor more than 14 inches deep, measured from the belt to the edge of the step or platform.

(ii) Width. The width of the step or platform shall be not less than the width of the belt to which it is attached.

(iii) Distance between steps. The distance between steps shall be equally spaced and not less than 16 feet measured from the upper surface of one step to the upper surface of the next step above it.

(iv) Angle of step. The surface of the step shall make approximately a right angle with the "up" and "down" run of the belt, and shall travel in the approximate horizontal position with the "up" and "down" run of the belt.

(v) Surfaces. The upper or working surfaces of the step shall be of a material having inherent nonslip characteristics (coefficient of friction not less than 0.5) or shall be covered completely by a nonslip tread securely fastened to it.

(vi) Strength of step supports. When subjected to a load of 400 pounds applied at the approximate center of the step, step frames, or supports and their guides shall be of adequate strength to:

(a) Prevent the disengagement of any step roller.

(b) Prevent any appreciable misalinement.

(c) Prevent any visible deformation of the steps or its support.

(vii) Prohibition of steps without handholds. No steps shall be provided unless there is a corresponding handhold above or below it meeting the requirements of subparagraph (4) of this paragraph. If a step is removed for repairs or permanently, the handholds immediately above and below it shall be removed before the lift is again placed in service.

(4) Handholds.

(i) Location. Handholds attached to the belt shall be provided and installed so that they are not less than 4 feet nor more than 4 feet 8 inches above the step tread. These shall be so located as to be available on the both "up" and "down" run of the belt.

(ii) Size. The grab surface of the handhold shall be not less than 4½ inches in width, not less than 3 inches in depth, and shall provide 2 inches of clearance from the belt. Fastenings for handholds shall be located not less than 1 inch from the edge of the belt.

(iii) Strength. The handhold shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, a load of 300 pounds applied parallel to the run of the belt.

(iv) Prohibition of handhold without steps. No handhold shall be provided without a corresponding step. If a handhold is removed permanently or temporarily, the corresponding step and handhold for the opposite direction of travel shall also be removed before the lift is again placed in service.

(v) Type. All handholds shall be of the closed type.

(5) Up limit stops.

(i) Requirements. Two separate automatic stop devices shall be provided to cut off the power and apply the brake when a loaded step passes the upper terminal landing. One of these shall consist of a split-rail switch mechanically operated by the step roller and located not more than 6 inches above the top terminal landing. The second automatic stop device may consist of any of the following:

(a) Any split-rail switch placed 6 inches above and on the side opposite the first limit switch.

(b) An electronic device.

(c) A switch actuated by a lever, rod, or plate, the latter to be placed on the "up" side of the head pulley so as to just clear a passing step.

(ii) Manual reset location. After the manlift has been stopped by a stop device it shall be necessary to reset the automatic stop manually. The device shall be so located that a person resetting it shall have a clear view of both the "up" and "down" runs of the manlift. It shall not be possible to reset the device from any step or platform.

(iii) Cut-off point. The initial limit stop device shall function so that the manlift will be stopped before the loaded step has reached a point 24 inches above the top terminal landing.

(iv) Electrical requirements.

(a) Where such switches open the main motor circuit directly they shall be of the multipole type.

(b) Where electronic devices are used they shall be so designed and installed that failure will result in shutting off the power to the driving motor.

(c) Where flammable vapors or dusts may be present all electrical installations shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code, NFPA No. 70–1971; ANSI C1–1971 (Rev. of C1–1968), requirements for such locations.

(d) Unless of the oil-immersed type controller contacts carrying the main motor current shall be copper to carbon or equal, except where the circuit is broken at two or more points simultaneously.

(6) Emergency stop.

(i) General. An emergency stop means shall be provided.

(ii) Location. This stop means shall be within easy reach of the ascending and descending runs of the belt.

(iii) Operation. This stop means shall be so connected with the control lever or operating mechanism that it will cut off the power and apply the brake when pulled in the direction of travel.

(iv) Rope. If rope is used, it shall be not less than three-eighths inch in diameter. Wire rope, unless marlin-covered, shall not be used.

(7) Instruction and warning signs.

(i) Instruction signs at landings or belts. Signs of conspicuous and easily read style giving instructions for the use of the manlift shall be posted at each landing or stenciled on the belt.

(a) Revoked

(b) The instructions shall read approximately as follows:

Face the Belt.
Use the Handholds.
To Stop—Pull Rope.

(ii) Top floor warning sign and light.

(a) At the top floor an illuminated sign shall be displayed bearing the following wording:

"TOP FLOOR—GET OFF"

Signs shall be in block letters not less than 2 inches in height. This sign shall be located within easy view of an ascending passenger and not more than 2 feet above the top terminal landing.

(b) In addition to the sign required by subdivision (a) of this subdivision, a red warning light of not less than 40-watt rating shall be provided immediately below the upper landing terminal and so located as to shine in the passenger's face.

(iii) Visitor warning. A conspicuous sign having the following legend—AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY—shall be displayed at each landing.

(d) Operating rules.

(1) Proper use of manlifts. No freight, packaged goods, pipe, lumber, or construction materials of any kind shall be handled on any manlift.

(e) Periodic inspection.

(1) Frequency. All manlifts shall be inspected by a competent designated person at intervals of not more than 30 days. Limit switches shall be checked weekly. Manlifts found to be unsafe shall not be operated until properly repaired.

(2) Items covered. This periodic inspection shall cover but is not limited to the following items:

Steps.
Step Fastenings.
Rails.
Rail Supports and Fastenings.
Rollers and Slides.
Belt and Belt Tension.
Handholds and Fastenings.
Floor Landings.
Guardrails.
Lubrication.
Limit Switches.
Warning Signs and Lights.
Illumination
Drive Pulley.
Bottom (boot) Pulley and Clearance.
Pulley Supports.
Motor.
Driving Mechanism.
Brake.
Electrical Switches.
Vibration and Misalignment.
"Skip" on up or down run when mounting step (indicating worn gears).

(3) Inspection record. A certification record shall be kept of each inspection which includes the date of the inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection and the serial number, or other identifier, of the manlift which was inspected. This record of inspection shall be made available to the Assistant Secretary of Labor or a duly authorized representative.

[51 F.R. 34560, September 29, 1986]

1910.69—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

Sec.	*Source*
1910.66	ANSI A120.1-1970 Safety Code for Powered Platforms for Exterior Building Maintenance.
1910.67	ANSI A92.2-1969 American National Standard for Vehicle-Mounted Elevating and Rotating Work Platforms.
1910.68	ANSI A90.1-1969 Safety Code for Manlifts

1910.70—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

Specific standards of the following organizations have been referenced in this subpart. Copies of the standards may be obtained from the issuing organization.

American National Standards Institute
1430 Broadway
New York, New York 10018

American Welding Society
2501 NW. 7th Street
Miami, Florida 33125

[40 F.R. 13435, March 26, 1975.]

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART G—OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL

1910.94 Ventilation.
1910.95 Occupational noise exposure.
1910.96 Ionizing radiation.
1910.97 Nonionizing radiation.
1910.98 Additional delay in effective date.
1910.99 Sources of standards.
1910.100 Standards organizations.

39 F.R. 3756, January 29, 1974.

STANDARDS AND INTERPRETATIONS

Sections 1910.93 thru 1910.93q (these sections have been recodified in Subpart Z of this part, beginning at section 1910.1000).

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975.]

SUBPART G—OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL

1910.94—VENTILATION

(a) Abrasive blasting.

(1) Definitions applicable to this paragraph.

(i) Abrasive. A solid substance used in an abrasive blasting operation.

(ii) Abrasive-blasting respirator. A continuous flow air-line respirator constructed so that it will cover the wearer's head, neck, and shoulders to protect him from rebounding abrasive.

(iii) Blast cleaning barrel. A complete enclosure which rotates on an axis, or which has an internal moving tread to tumble the parts, in order to expose various surfaces of the parts to the action of an automatic blast spray.

(iv) Blast cleaning room. A complete enclosure in which blasting operations are performed and where the operator works inside of the room to operate the blasting nozzle and direct the flow of the abrasive material.

(v) Blasting cabinet. An enclosure where the operator stands outside and operates the blasting nozzle through an opening or openings in the enclosure.

(vi) Clean air. Air of such purity that it will not cause harm or discomfort to an individual if it is inhaled for extended periods of time.

(vii) Dust collector. A device or combination of devices for separating dust from the air handled by an exhaust ventilation system.

(viii) Exhaust ventilation system. A system for removing contaminated air from a space, comprising two or more of the following elements (*a*) enclosure or hood, (*b*) duct work, (*c*) dust collecting equipment, (*d*) exhauster, and (*e*) discharge stack.

(ix) Particulate-filter respirator. An air purifying respirator, commonly referred to as a dust or a fume respirator, which removes most of the dust or fume from the air passing through the device.

(x) Respirable dust. Airborne dust in sizes capable of passing through the upper respiratory system to reach the lower lung passages.

(xi) Rotary blast cleaning table. An enclosure where the pieces to be cleaned are positioned on a rotating table and are passed automatically through a series of blast sprays.

(xii) Abrasive blasting. The forcible application of an abrasive to a surface by pneumatic pressure, hydraulic pressure, or centrifugal force.

(2) Dust hazards from abrasive blasting.

(i) Abrasives and the surface coatings on the materials blasted are shattered and pulverized during blasting operations and the dust formed will contain particles of respirable size. The composition and toxicity of the dust from these sources shall be considered in making an evaluation of the potential health hazards.

(ii) The concentration of respirable dust or fume in the breathing zone of the abrasive-blasting operator or any other worker shall be kept below the levels specified in § 1910.1000.

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975]

(iii) Organic abrasives which are combustible shall be used only in automatic systems. Where flammable or explosive dust mixtures may be present, the construction of the equipment, including the exhaust system and all electric wiring, shall conform to the requirements of American National Standard Installation of Blower and Exhaust Systems for Dust, Stock, and Vapor Removal or Conveying, Z33.1-1961 (NFPA 91-1961), and the National Electrical Code, NFPA No. 70-1971; ANSI C1-1971 (Rev. of C1-1968). The blast nozzle shall be bonded and grounded to prevent the build-up of static charges. Where flammable of explosive dust mixtures may be present, the abrasive blasting enclosure, the ducts, and the dust collector shall be constructed with loose panels or explosion venting areas, located on sides away from any occupied area, to provide for pressure relief in case of explosion, following the principles set forth in the National Fire Protection Association Explosion Venting Guide, NFPA 68-1954.

(3) Blast-cleaning enclosures.

(i) Blast-cleaning enclosures shall be exhaust ventilated in such a way that a continuous inward flow of air will be maintained at all openings in the enclosure during the blasting operation.

(a) All air inlets and access openings shall be baffled or so arranged that by the combination of inward air flow and baffling the escape of abrasive or dust particules into an adjacent work area will be minimized and visible spurts of dust will not be observed.

(b) The rate of exhaust shall be sufficient to provide prompt clearance of the dust-laden air within the enclosure after the cessation of blasting.

(c) Before the enclosure is opened, the blast shall be turned off and the exhaust system shall be run for a sufficient period of time to remove the dusty air within the enclosure.

(d) Safety glass protected by screening shall be used in observation windows, where hard deep-cutting abrasives are used.

(e) Slit abrasive-resistant baffles shall be installed in multiple sets at all small access openings where dust might escape, and shall be inspected regularly and replaced when needed.

(1) Doors shall be flanged and tight when closed.

(2) Doors on blast-cleaning rooms shall be operable from both inside and outside, except that where there is a small operator access door, the large work access door may be closed or opened from the outside only.

(4) Exhaust ventilation systems.

(i) The construction, installation, inspection, and maintenance of exhaust systems shall conform to the principles and requirements set forth in American National Standard Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems, Z9.2-1960, and ANSI Z33.1-1961.

(a) When dust leaks are noted, repairs shall be made as soon as possible.

(b) The static pressure drop at the exhaust ducts leading from the equipment shall be checked when the installation is completed and periodically thereafter to assure continued satisfactory operation. Whenever an appreciable change in the pressure drop indicates a partial blockage, the system shall be cleaned and returned to normal operating condition.

(ii) In installations where the abrasive is recirculated, the exhaust ventilation system for the blasting enclosure shall not be relied upon for the removal of fines from the spent abrasive instead of an abrasive separator. An abrasive separator shall be provided for the purpose.

(iii) The air exhausted from blast-cleaning equipment shall be discharged through dust collecting equipment. Dust collectors shall be set up so that the accumulated dust can be emptied and removed without contaminating other working areas.

(5) Personal protective equipment.

(i) Only respiratory protective equipment approved by the Bureau of Mines, U.S. Department of the Interior (see 30 CFR Part 11) shall be used for protection of personnel against dusts produced during abrasive-blasting operations.

(ii) Abrasive-blasting respirators shall be worn by all abrasive-blasting operators:

(a) When working inside of blast-cleaning rooms, or

(b) When using silica sand in manual blasting operations where the nozzle and blast are not physically separated from the operator in an exhaust ventilated enclosure, or

(c) Where concentrations of toxic dust dispersed by the abrasive blasting may exceed the limits set in § 1910.1000 and the nozzle and blast are not physically separated from the operator in an exhaust-ventilated enclosure.

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975]

(iii) Particulate filter respirators, commonly referred to as dust-filter respirators, properly fitted, may be used for short, intermittent, or occasional dust exposures such as cleanup, dumping of dust collectors, or unloading shipments of sand at a receiving point, when it is not feasible to control the dust by enclosure, exhaust ventilation, or other means. Respirators used shall be approved (see 30 CFR Part 11) for protection against the specific type of dust encountered.

(a) Dust-filter respirators may be used to protect the operator of outside abrasive-blasting operations where nonsilica abrasives are used on materials having low toxicities.

(b) Dust-filter respirators shall not be used for continuous protection where silica sand is used as the blasting abrasive, or toxic materials are blasted.

(iv) A respiratory protection program as defined and described in § 1910.134(a) and (b), shall be established wherever it is necessary to use respiratory protective equipment.

(v) Operators shall be equipped with heavy canvas or leather gloves and aprons or equivalent protection to protect them from the impact of abrasives. Safety shoes shall be worn to protect against foot injury where heavy pieces of work are handled.

(a) Safety shoes shall conform to the requirements of American National Standard for Men's Safety-Toe Footwear, Z41.1–1967.

(b) Equipment for protection of the eyes and face shall be supplied to the operator when the respirator design does not provide such protection and to any other personnel working in the vicinity of abrasive blasting operations. This equipment shall conform to the requirements of § 1910.133.

(6) Air supply and air compressors. The air for abrasive-blasting respirators shall be free of harmful quantities of dusts, mists, or noxious gases, and shall meet the requirements for air purity set forth in ANSI Z9.2–1960. The air from the regular compressed air line of the plant may be used for the abrasive-blasting respirator if

(i) A trap and carbon filter are installed and regularly maintained, to remove oil, water, scale, and odor,

(ii) A pressure reducing diaphragm or valve is installed to reduce the pressure down to requirements of the particular type of abrasive-blasting respirator, and

(iii) An automatic control is provided to either sound an alarm or shut down the compressor in case of overheating.

(7) Operational procedures and general safety. Dust shall not be permitted to accumulate on the floor or on ledges outside of an abrasive-blasting enclosure, and dust spills shall be cleaned up promptly. Aisles and walkways shall be kept clear of steel shot or similar abrasive which may create a slipping hazard.

(8) Scope. This paragraph (a) applies to all operations where an abrasive is forcibly applied to a surface by pneumatic or hydraulic pressure, or by centrifugal force. It does not apply to steam blasting or steam cleaning, or hydraulic cleaning methods where work is done without the aid of abrasives.

(b) Grinding, polishing, and buffing operations.

(1) Definitions applicable to this paragraph.

(i) Abrasive cutting-off wheels. Organic-bonded wheels, the thickness of which is not more than one forty-eighth of their diameter for those up to, and including, 20 inches in diameter, and not more than one-sixtieth of their diameter for those larger than 20 inches in diameter, used for a multitude of operations variously known as cutting, cutting off, grooving, slotting, coping, and jointing, and the like. The wheels may be "solid" consisting of organic-bonded abrasive material throughout, "steel centered" consisting of a steel disc with a rim of organic-bonded material moulded around the periphery, or of the "inserted tooth" type consisting of a steel disc with organic-bonded abrasive teeth or inserts mechanically secured around the periphery.

(ii) Belts. All power-driven, flexible, coated bands used for grinding, polishing, or buffing purposes.

(iii) Branch pipe. The part of an exhaust system piping that is connected directly to the hood or enclosure.

(iv) Cradle. A movable fixture, upon which the part to be ground or polished is placed.

(v) Disc wheels. All power-driven rotatable discs faced with abrasive materials, artificial or natural, and used for grinding or polishing on the side of the assembled disc.

(vi) Entry loss. The loss in static pressure caused by air flowing into a duct or hood. It is usually expressed in inches of water gauge.

(vii) Exhaust system. A system consisting of branch pipes connected to hoods or enclosures, one or more header pipes, an exhaust fan, means for separating solid contaminants from the air flowing in the system, and a discharge stack to outside.

(viii) Grinding wheels. All power-driven rotatable grinding or abrasive wheels, except disc wheels as defined in this standard, consisting of abrasive particles held together by artificial or natural bonds and used for peripheral grinding.

(ix) Header pipe (main pipe). A pipe into which one or more branch pipes enter and which connects such branch pipes to the remainder of the exhaust system.

(x) Hoods and enclosures. The partial or complete enclosure around the wheel or disc through which air enters an exhaust system during operation.

(xi) Horizontal double-spindle disc grinder. A grinding machine carrying two power-driven, rotatable, coaxial, horizontal spindles upon the inside ends of which are mounted abrasive disc wheels used for grinding two surfaces simultaneously.

(xii) Horizontal single-spindle disc grinder. A grinding machine carrying an abrasive disc wheel upon one or both ends of a power-driven, rotatable single horizontal spindle.

(xiii) Polishing and buffing wheels. All power-driven rotatable wheels composed all or in part of textile fabrics, wood, felt, leather, paper, and may be coated with abrasives on the periphery of the wheel for purposes of polishing, buffing, and light grinding.

(xiv) Portable grinder. Any power-driven rotatable grinding, polishing, or buffing wheel mounted in such manner that it may be manually manipulated.

(xv) Scratch brush wheels. All power-driven rotatable wheels made from wire or bristles, and used for scratch cleaning and brushing purposes.

(xvi) Swing-frame grinder. Any power-driven rotatable grinding, polishing, or buffing wheel mounted in such a manner that the wheel with its supporting framework can be manipulated over stationary objects.

(xvii) Velocity pressure (vp). The kinetic pressure in the direction of flow necessary to cause a fluid at rest to flow at a given velocity. It is usually expressed in inches of water gage.

(xviii) Vertical spindle disc grinder. A grinding machine having a vertical, rotatable power-driven spindle carrying a horizontal abrasive disc wheel.

(2) Application. Wherever dry grinding, dry polishing or buffing is performed, and employee exposure, without regard to the use of respirators, exceeds the permissible exposure limits prescribed in § 1910.1000 or other sections of this part, a local exhaust ventilation system shall be provided and used to maintain employee exposures within the presecribed limits.

[40 F.R. 24521, June 9, 1975.]

(3) Hood and branch pipe requirements.

(i) Hoods connected to exhaust systems shall be used, and such hoods shall be designed, located, and placed so that the dust or dirt particles shall fall or be projected into the hoods in the direction of the air flow. No wheels, discs, straps, or belts shall be operated in such manner and in such direction as to cause the dust and dirt particles to be thrown into the operator's breathing zone.

(ii) Grinding wheels on floor stands, pedestals, benches, and special-purpose grinding machines and abrasive cutting-off wheels shall have not less than the minimum exhaust volumes shown in Table G–4 with a recommended minimum duct velocity of 4,500 feet per minute in the branch and 3,500 feet per minute in the main. The entry losses from all hoods except the vertical-spindle disc grinder hood, shall equal 0.65 velocity pressure for a straight takeoff and 0.45 velocity pressure for a tapered takeoff. The entry loss for the vertical-spindle disc grinder hood is shown in figure G–1 (following § 1910.94(b)). For any wheel wider than wheel diameters shown in Table G–4, increase the exhaust volume by the ratio of the new width to the width shown.

TABLE G–4—GRINDING AND ABRASIVE CUTTING-OFF WHEELS

Wheel diameter (inches)	Wheel width (inches)	Minimum exhaust volume (feet³/min.)
To 9	1½	220
Over 9 to 16	2	390
Over 16 to 19	3	500
Over 19 to 24	4	610
Over 24 to 30	5	880
Over 30 to 36	6	1, 200

Example:

If wheel width = 4½ inches, then

$$\frac{4.5}{4} \times 610 = 686 \text{ (rounded to 690).}$$

(iii) Scratch-brush wheels and all buffing and polishing wheels mounted on floor stands, pedestals, benches, or special-purpose machines shall have not less than the minimum exhaust volume shown in Table G–5.

TABLE G–5—BUFFING AND POLISHING WHEELS

Wheel diameter (inches)	Wheel width (inches)	Minimum exhaust volume (feet³/min.)
To 9	2	300
Over 9 to 16	3	500
Over 16 to 19	4	610
Over 19 to 24	5	740
Over 24 to 30	6	1,040
Over 30 to 36	6	1,200

(iv) Grinding wheels or discs for horizontal single-spindle disc grinders shall be hooded to collect the dust or dirt generated by the grinding operation and the hoods shall be connected to branch pipes having exhaust volumes as shown in Table G–6.

TABLE G-6—HORIZONTAL SINGLE-SPINDLE DISC GRINDER

Disc diameter (inches):	Exhaust volume ($ft.^3/min.$)
Up to 12	220
Over 12 to 19	390
Over 19 to 30	610
Over 30 to 36	880

(v) Grinding wheels or discs for horizontal double-spindle disc grinders shall have a hood enclosing the grinding chamber and the hood shall be connected to one or more branch pipes having exhaust volumes as shown in Table G—7.

TABLE G-7—HORIZONTAL DOUBLE-SPINDLE DISC GRINDER

Disc diameter (inches):	Exhaust volume ($ft.^3/min.$)
Up to 19	610
Over 19 to 25	880
Over 25 to 30	1,200
Over 30 to 53	1,770
Over 53 to 72	6,280

(vi) Grinding wheels or discs for vertical single-spindle disc grinders shall be encircled with hoods to remove the dust generated in the operation. The hoods shall be connected to one or more branch pipes having exhaust volumes as shown in Table G—8.

TABLE G-8—VERTICAL SPINDLE DISC GRINDER

Disc diameter (inches)	One-half or more of disc covered		Disc not covered	
	Number[1]	Exhaust $foot^3/min.$	Number[1]	Exnaust $foot^3/min.$
Up to 20	1	500	2	780
Over 20 to 30	2	780	2	1,480
Over 30 to 53	2	1,770	4	3,530
Over 53 to 72	2	3,140	5	6,010

[1] Number of exhaust outlets around periphery of hood, or equal distribution provided by other means.

(vii) Grinding and polishing belts shall be provided with hoods to remove dust and dirt generated in the operations and the hoods shall be connected to branch pipes having exhaust volumes as shown in Table G-9.

TABLE G-9—GRINDING AND POLISHING BELTS

Belts width (inches):	Exhaust volume ($ft.^3/min.$)
Up to 3	220
Over 3 to 5	300
Over 5 to 7	390
Over 7 to 9	500
Over 9 to 11	610
Over 11 to 13	740

(viii) Cradles and swing-frame grinders. Where cradles are used for handling the parts to be ground, polished, or buffed, requiring large partial enclosures to house the complete operation, a minimum average air velocity of 150 feet per minute shall be maintained over the entire opening of the enclosure. Swing-frame grinders shall also be exhausted in the same manner as provided for cradles. (See fig. G-3.)

(ix) Where the work is outside the hood, air volumes must be increased as shown in American Standard Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems, Z9.2-1960 (section 4, exhaust hoods).

(4) Exhaust systems.

(i) Exhaust systems for grinding, polishing, and buffing operations should be designed in accordance with American Standard Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems, Z9.2-1960.

(ii) Exhaust systems for grinding, polishing, and buffing operations shall be tested in the manner described in American Standard Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems, Z9.2-1960.

(iii) All exhaust systems shall be provided with suitable dust collectors.

(5) Hood and enclosure design.

(i)

(a) It is the dual function of grinding and abrasive cutting-off wheel hoods to protect the operator from the hazards of bursting wheels as well as to provide a means for the removal of dust and dirt generated. All hoods shall be not less in structural strength than specified in the American National Standard Safety Code for the Use, Care, and Protection of Abrasive Wheels, B7.1-1970.

(b) Due to the variety of work and types of grinding machines employed, it is necessary to develop hoods adaptable to the particular machine in question, and such hoods shall be located as close as possible to the operation.

(ii) Exhaust hoods for floor stands, pedestals, and bench grinders shall be designed in accordance with figure G-2. The adjustable tongue shown in the figure shall be kept in working order and shall be adjusted within one-fourth inch of the wheel periphery at all times.

(iii) Swing-frame grinders shall be provided with exhaust booths as indicated in figure G-3.

(iv) Portable grinding operations, whenever the nature of the work permits, shall be conducted within a partial enclosure. The opening in the enclosure shall be no larger than is actually required in the operation and an average face air velocity of not less than 200 feet per minute shall be maintained.

(v) Hoods for polishing and buffing and scratch-brush wheels shall be constructed to conform as closely to figure G-4 as the nature of the work will permit.

(vi) Cradle grinding and polishing operations shall be performed within a partial enclosure similar to figure G-5. The operator shall be positioned outside the working face of the opening of the enclosure. The face opening of the enclosure should not be any greater in area than that actually required for the performance of the operation and the average air velocity into the working face of the enclosure shall not be less than 150 feet per minute.

(vii) Hoods for horizontal single-spindle disc grinders shall be constructed to conform as closely as possible to the hood shown in figure G-6. It is essential that there be a space between the back of the wheel and the hood, and a space around the periphery of the wheel of at least 1 inch in order to permit the suction to act around the wheel periphery. The opening on the side of the disc shall be no larger than is required for the grinding operation, but must never be less than twice the area of the branch outlet.

(viii) Horizontal double-spindle disc grinders shall have a hood encircling the wheels and grinding chamber similar to that illustrated in figure G-7. The openings for passing the work into the grinding chamber should be kept as small as possible, but must never be less than twice the area of the branch outlets.

(ix) Vertical-spindle disc grinders shall be encircled with a hood so constructed that the heavy dust is drawn off a surface of the disc and the lighter dust exhausted through a continuous slot at the top of the hood as shown in figure G-1.

(x) Grinding and polishing belt hoods shall be constructed as close to the operation as possible. The hood should extend almost to the belt, and 1-inch wide openings should be provided on either side. Figure G-8 shows a typical hood for a belt operation.

(6) Scope. This paragraph (b), prescribes the use of exhaust hood enclosures and systems in removing dust, dirt, fumes, and gases generated through the grinding, polishing, or buffing of ferrous and nonferrous metals.

(c) Spray-finishing operations.

(1) Definitions applicable to this paragraph.

(i) Spray-finishing operations. Spray-finishing operations are employment of methods wherein organic or inorganic materials are utilized in dispersed form for deposit on surfaces to be coated, treated, or cleaned. Such methods of deposit may involve either automatic, manual, or electrostatic deposition but do not include metal spraying or metallizing, dipping, flow coating, roller coating, tumbling, centrifuging, or spray washing and degreasing as conducted in self-contained washing and degreasing machines or systems.

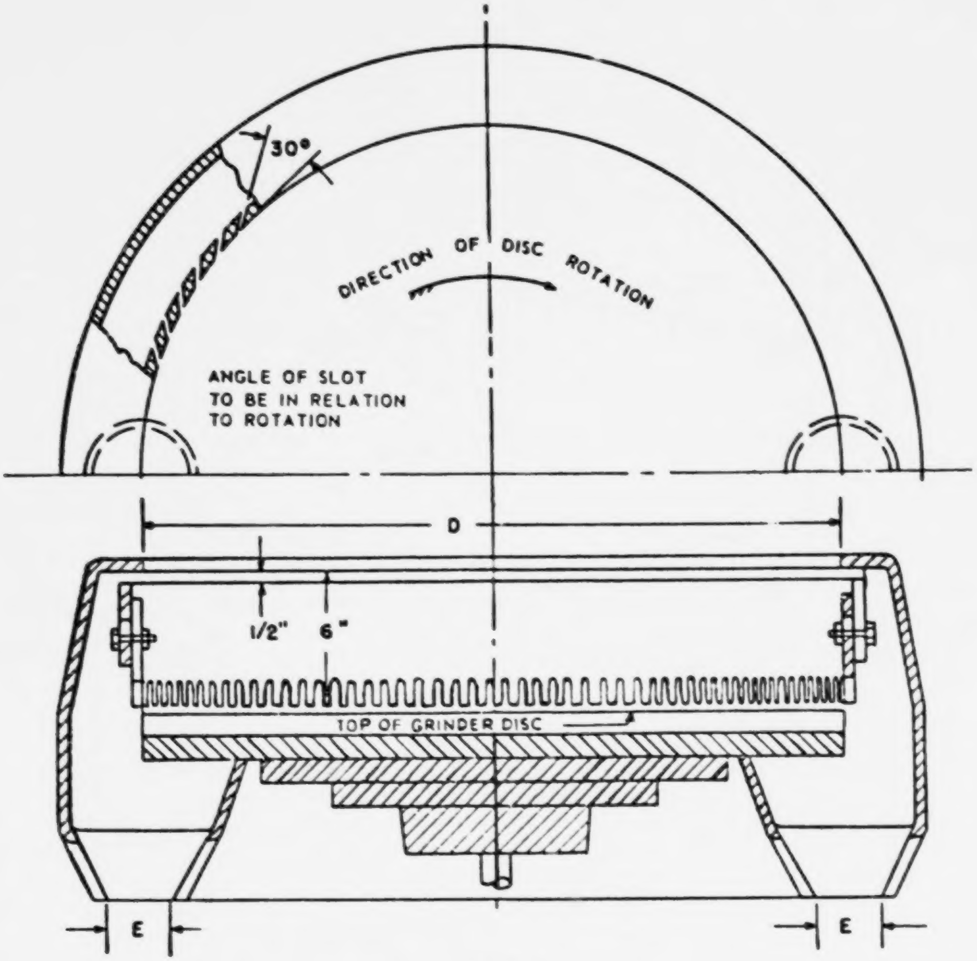

30°
DIRECTION OF DISC ROTATION
ANGLE OF SLOT TO BE IN RELATION TO ROTATION
D
1/2"
6"
TOP OF GRINDER DISC
E
E

Fig. G-1

Vertical Spindle Disc Grinder Exhaust Hood and Branch Pipe Connections

Dia *D*, Inches		Exhaust *E*		Volume Exhausted at 4.500 ft/min ft^3/min	Note
Min	Max	No. Pipes	Dia		
	20	1	4½	500	When one-half or more of the disc can be hooded, use exhaust ducts as shown at the left.
Over 20	30	2	4	780	
Over 30	72	2	6	1.770	
Over 53	72	2	8	3.140	
	20	2	4	780	When no hood can be used over disc, use exhaust ducts as shown at left.
Over 20	30	2	5½	1.480	
Over 30	53	4	6	3.530	
Over 53	72	5	7	6,010	

Entry loss = 1.0 slot velocity pressure + 0.5 branch velocity pressure
Minimum slot velocity = 2,000 ft/min – ½-inch slot width

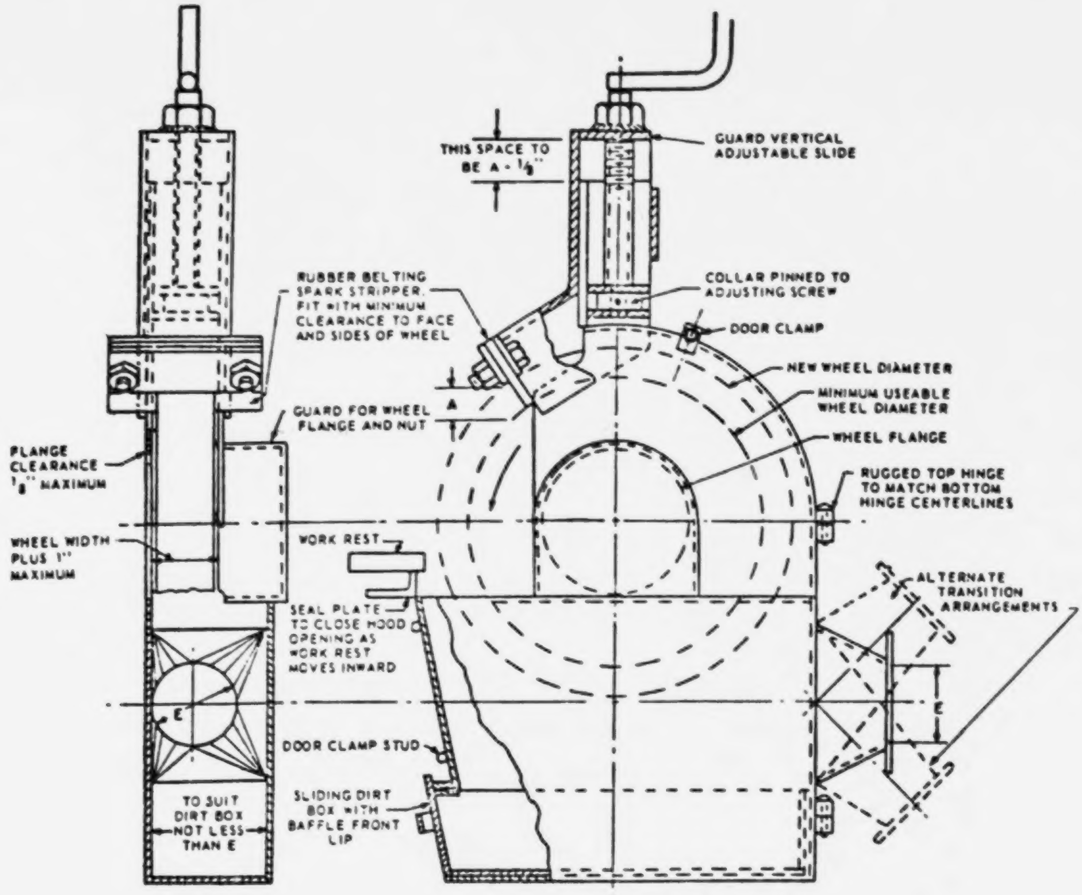

THIS SPACE TO BE A - 1/8''
GUARD VERTICAL ADJUSTABLE SLIDE
RUBBER BELTING SPARK STRIPPER. FIT WITH MINIMUM CLEARANCE TO FACE AND SIDES OF WHEEL
COLLAR PINNED TO ADJUSTING SCREW
DOOR CLAMP
NEW WHEEL DIAMETER
MINIMUM USEABLE WHEEL DIAMETER
WHEEL FLANGE
GUARD FOR WHEEL FLANGE AND NUT
A
FLANGE CLEARANCE 1/8'' MAXIMUM
RUGGED TOP HINGE TO MATCH BOTTOM HINGE CENTERLINES
WHEEL WIDTH PLUS 1'' MAXIMUM
WORK REST
ALTERNATE TRANSITION ARRANGEMENTS
SEAL PLATE TO CLOSE HOOD OPENING AS WORK REST MOVES INWARD
E
DOOR CLAMP STUD
SLIDING DIRT BOX WITH BAFFLE FRONT LIP
TO SUIT DIRT BOX NOT LESS THAN E

Fig. G-2
Standard Grinder Hood

Wheel Dimension			Exhaust Outlet, Inches	Volume of Air at 4,500 ft/min
Diameter, Inches		Width, Inches		
Min = *d*	Max = *D*	Max	*E*	
	9	1½	3	220
Over 9	16	2	4	390
Over 16	19	3	4½	500
Over 19	24	4	5	610
Over 24	30	5	6	880
Over 30	36	6	7	1,200

Entry loss = 0.45 velocity pressure for tapered takeoff
0.65 velocity pressure for straight takeoff

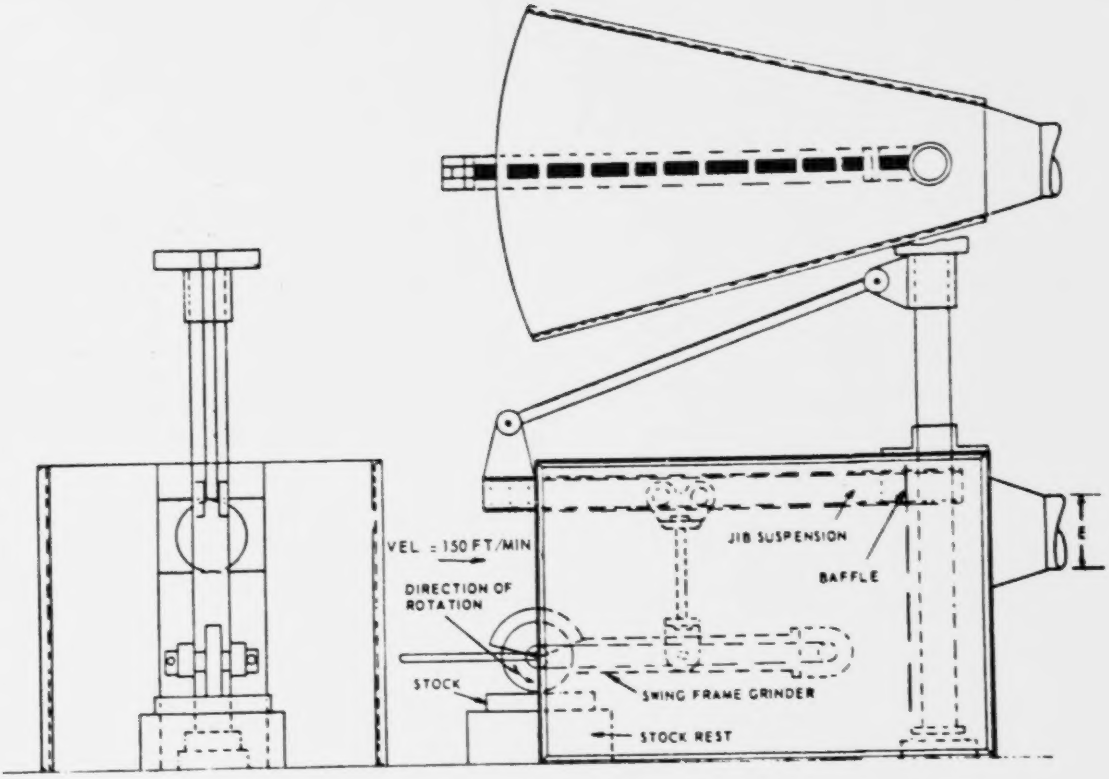

VEL. = 150 FT/MIN
DIRECTION OF ROTATION
STOCK
JIB SUSPENSION
BAFFLE
SWING FRAME GRINDER
STOCK REST
E

Fig. G-3

A Method of Applying an Exhaust Enclosure to Swing-Frame Grinders

NOTE: Baffle to reduce front opening as much as possible

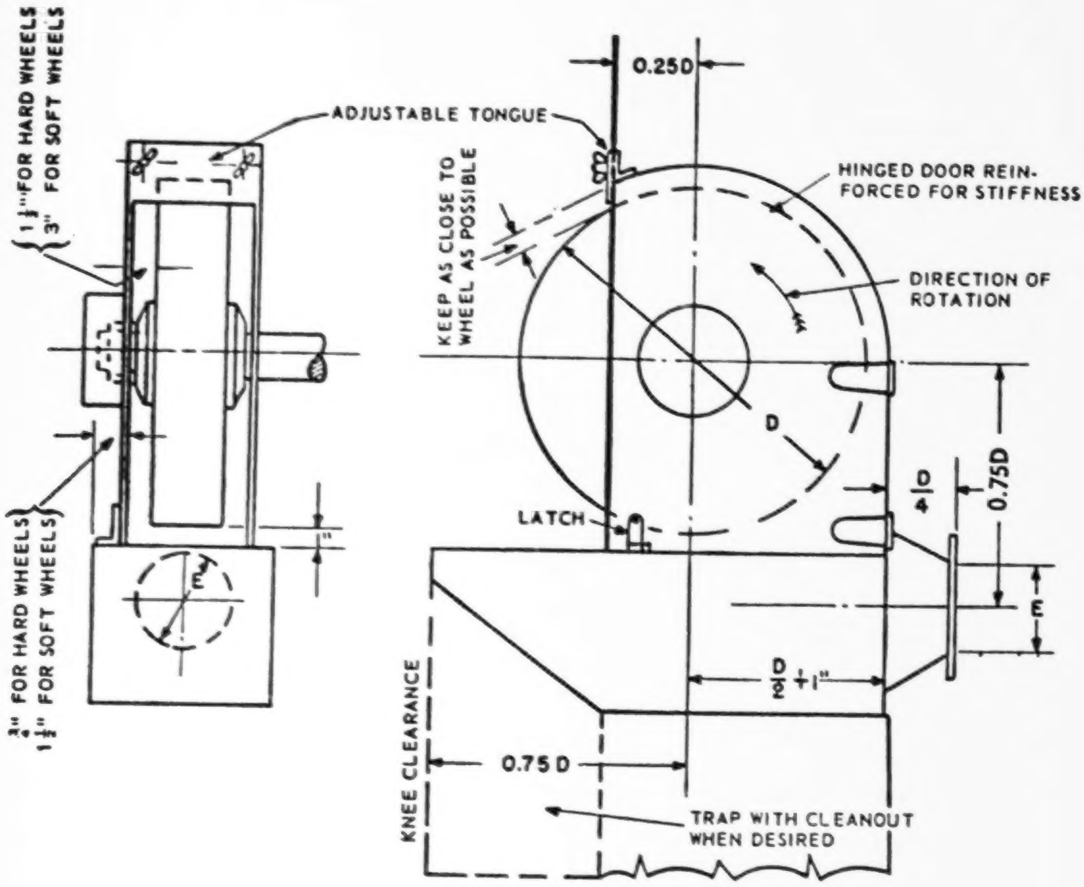

1 1/2" FOR HARD WHEELS
3" FOR SOFT WHEELS
ADJUSTABLE TONGUE
0.25D
KEEP AS CLOSE TO WHEEL AS POSSIBLE
HINGED DOOR REINFORCED FOR STIFFNESS
DIRECTION OF ROTATION
D
0.75D
D/4
LATCH
E
D/2 + 1"
3/4" FOR HARD WHEELS
1 1/2" FOR SOFT WHEELS
KNEE CLEARANCE
0.75 D
TRAP WITH CLEANOUT WHEN DESIRED

Fig. G-4
Standard Buffing and Polishing Hood

Wheel Dimension, Inches			Exhaust Outlet, Inches	Volume of Air at 4,500 ft/min
Diameter		Width		
Min = *d*	Max = *D*	Max	*E*	
	9	2	3½	300
Over 9	16	3	4	500
Over 16	19	4	5	610
Over 19	24	5	5½	740
Over 24	30	6	6½	1,040
Over 30	36	6	7	1,200

Entry loss = 0.15 velocity pressure for tapered takeoff
0.65 velocity pressure for straight takeoff

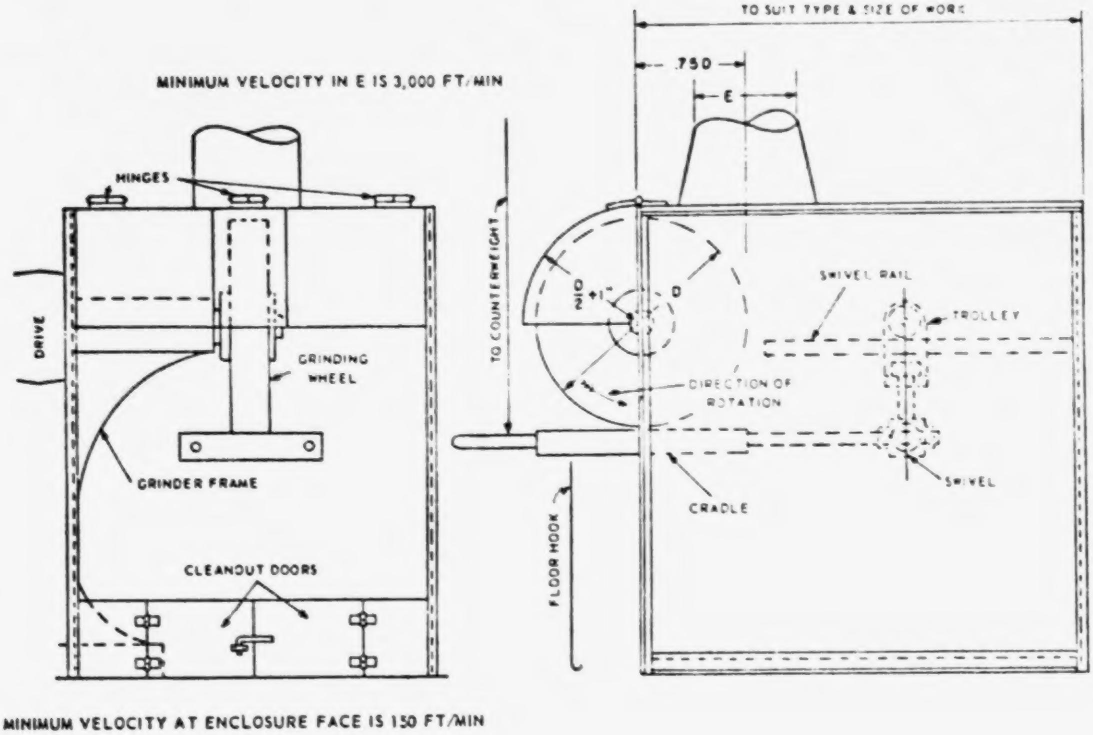

MINIMUM VELOCITY IN E IS 3,000 FT/MIN
HINGES
DRIVE
GRINDING WHEEL
GRINDER FRAME
CLEANOUT DOORS
MINIMUM VELOCITY AT ENCLOSURE FACE IS 150 FT/MIN
TO SUIT TYPE & SIZE OF WORK
.75D
E
TO COUNTERWEIGHT
$\frac{D}{2}+1"$
D
SWIVEL RAIL
TROLLEY
DIRECTION OF ROTATION
CRADLE
SWIVEL
FLOOR HOOK

Fig. G-5

Cradle Polishing or Grinding Enclosure

Entry loss = 0.45 velocity pressure for tapered takeoff

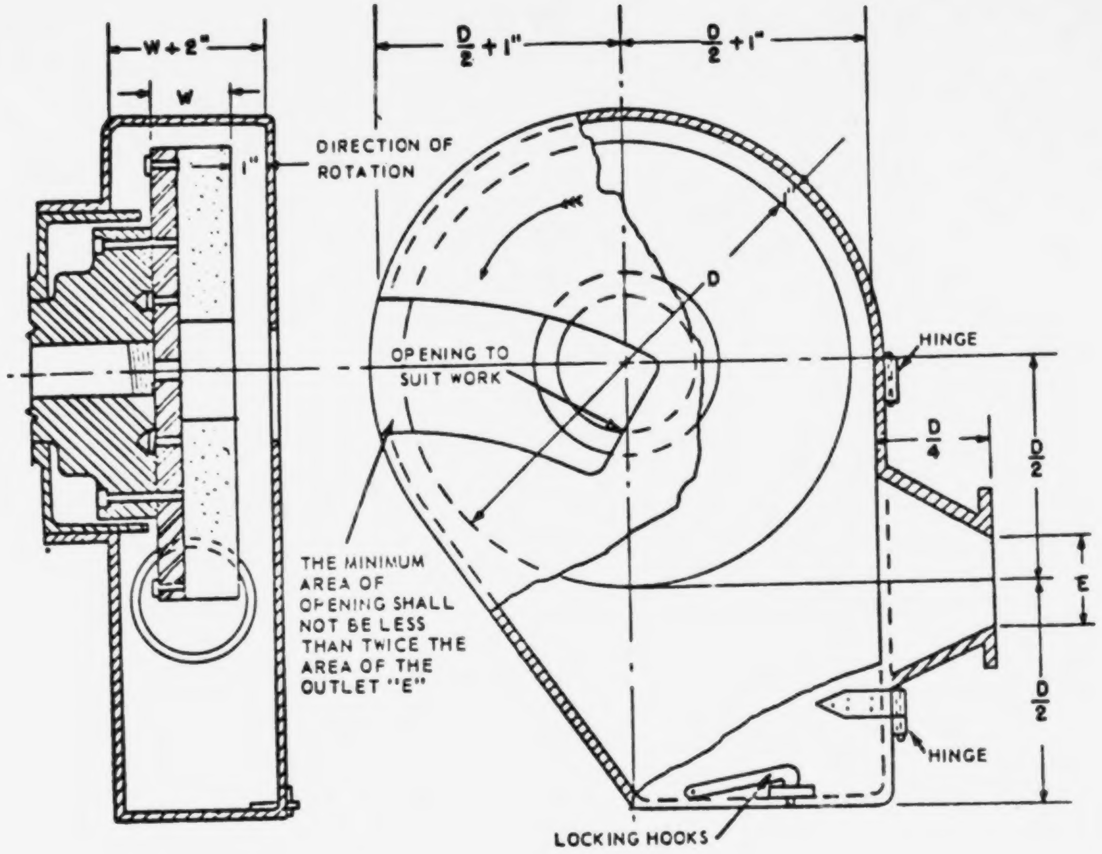

W + 2"
W
1"
DIRECTION OF ROTATION
D/2 + 1"
D/2 + 1"
1"
D
OPENING TO SUIT WORK
HINGE
D/4
D/2
E
D/2
THE MINIMUM AREA OF OPENING SHALL NOT BE LESS THAN TWICE THE AREA OF THE OUTLET "E"
HINGE
LOCKING HOOKS

Fig. G–6

Horizontal Single-Spindle Disc Grinder Exhaust Hood and Branch Pipe Connections

Dia *D*. Inches		Exhaust *E*	Volume Exhausted at 4.500 ft/min ft³/min
Min	Max	Dia. Inches	
	12	3	220
Over 12	19	4	390
Over 19	30	5	610
Over 30	36	6	880

NOTE: If grinding wheels are used for disc grinding purposes, hoods must conform to structural strength and materials as described in 9.1.

Entry loss = 0.45 velocity pressure for tapered takeoff

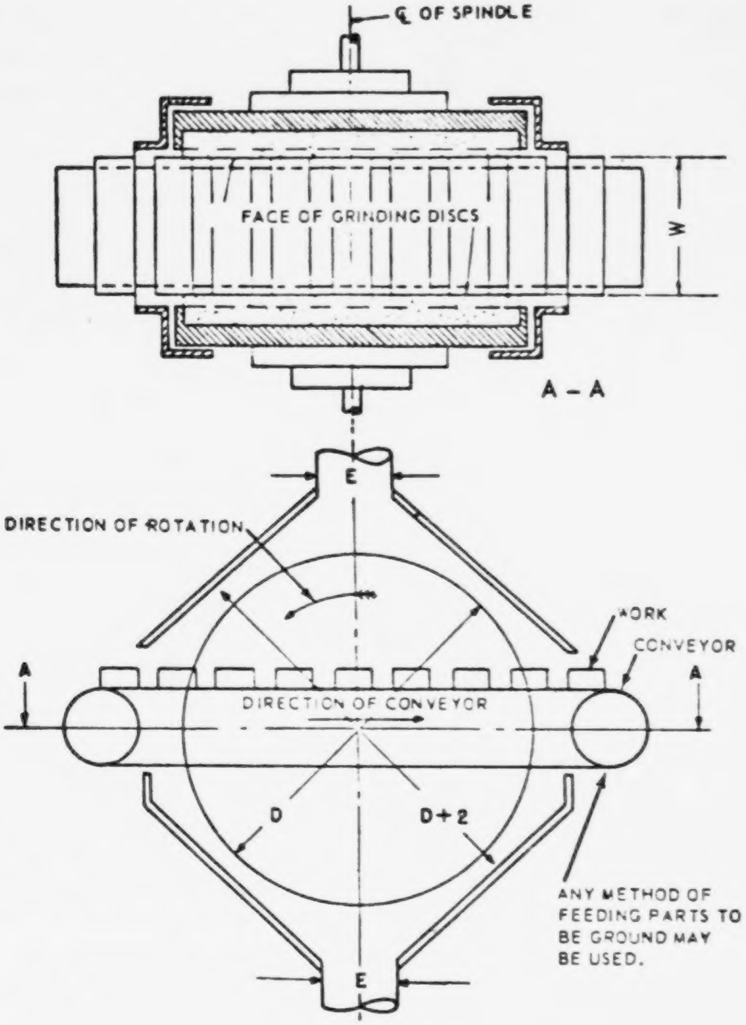

℄ OF SPINDLE
FACE OF GRINDING DISCS
W
A – A
E
DIRECTION OF ROTATION
WORK
CONVEYOR
A
A
DIRECTION OF CONVEYOR
D
D+2
ANY METHOD OF FEEDING PARTS TO BE GROUND MAY BE USED.
E

Fig. G-7

Horizontal Double-Spindle Disc Grinder Exhaust Hood and Branch Pipe Connections

Disc Dia. Inches		Exhaust E		Volume Exhausted at 4,500 ft/min ft³/min	Note
Min	Max	No. Pipes	Dia		
	19	1	5	610	When width "W" permits, exhaust ducts should be as near heaviest grinding as possible.
Over 19	25	1	6	880	
Over 25	30	1	7	1,200	
Over 30	53	2	6	1,770	
Over 53	72	4	8	6,280	

Entry loss = 0.45 velocity pressure for tapered takeoff

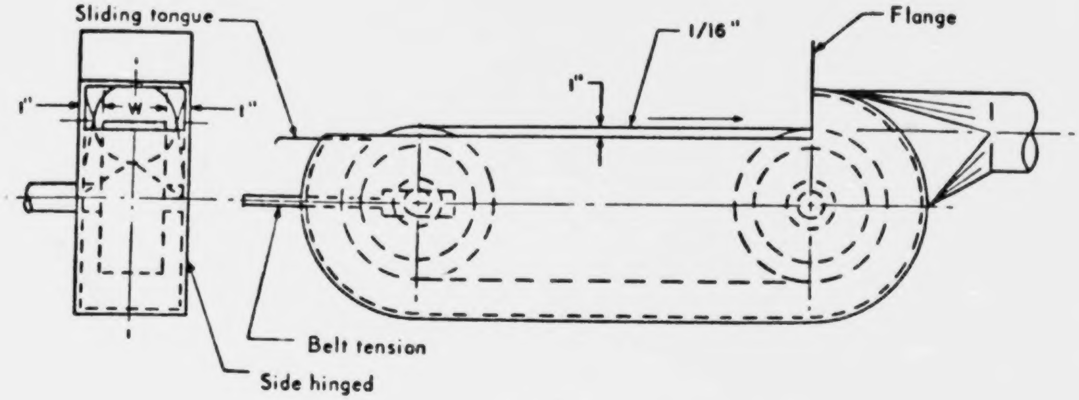


Fig. G-8

A Typical Hood for a Belt Operation

Belt Width W. Inches	Exhaust Volume, ft³/min
up to 3	220
3 to 5	300
5 to 7	390
7 to 9	500
9 to 11	610
11 to 13	740

Minimum duct velocity = 4.500 ft/min branch. 3.500 ft/min main
Entry loss = 0.45 velocity pressure for tapered takeoff
0.65 velocity pressure for straight takeoff

(ii) Spray booth. Spray booths are defined and described in § 1910.107(a). (See sections 103, 104, and 105 of the Standard for Spray Finishing Using Flammable and Combustible Materials, NFPA No. 33–1969.)

(iii) Spray room. A spray room is a room in which spray-finishing operations not conducted in a spray booth are performed separately from other areas.

(iv) Minimum maintained velocity. Minimum maintained velocity is the velocity of air movement which must be maintained in order to meet minimum specified requirements for health and safety.

(2) Location and application. Spray booths or spray rooms are to be used to enclose or confine all operations. Spray-finishing operations shall be located as provided in sections 201 through 206 of the Standard for Spray Finishing Using Flammable and Combustible Materials, NFPA No. 33–1969.

(3) Design and construction of spray booths.

(i) Spray booths shall be designed and constructed in accordance with § 1910.107(b)(1)–(4) and (6)–(10) (see sections 301–304 and 306–310 of the Standard for Spray Finishing Using Flammable and Combustible Materials, NFPA No. 33–1969), for general construction specifications. For a more detailed discussion of fundamentals relating to this subject, see ANSI Z9.2–1960.

(a) Lights, motors, electrical equipment, and other sources of ignition shall conform to the requirements of § 1910.107(b)(10) and (c). (See section 310 and chapter 4 of the Standard for Spray Finishing Using Flammable and Combustible Materials, NFPA No. 33–1969.)

(b) In no case shall combustible material be used in the construction of a spray booth and supply or exhaust duct connected to it.

(ii) Unobstructed walkways shall not be less than 6½ feet high and shall be maintained clear of obstruction from any work location in the booth to a booth exit or open booth front. In booths where the open front is the only exit, such exits shall be not less than 3 feet wide. In booths having multiple exits, such exits shall not be less than 2 feet wide, provided that the maximum distance from the work location to the exit is 25 feet or less. Where booth exits are provided with doors, such doors shall open outward from the booth.

(iii) Baffles, distribution plates, and dry-type overspray collectors shall conform to the requirements of § 1910.107(b)(4) and (5). (See sections 304 and 305 of the Standard for Spray Finishing Using Flammable and Combustible Materials, NFPA No. 33-1969.)

(a) Overspray filters shall be installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.107(b)(5), (see section 305 of the Standard for Spray Finishing Using Flammable and Combustible Materials, NFPA No. 33-1969), and shall only be in a location easily accessible for inspection, cleaning, or replacement.

(b) Where effective means, independent of the overspray filters, are installed which will result in design air distribution across the booth cross section, it is permissible to operate the booth without the filters in place.

(iv)

(a) For wet or water-wash spray booths, the water-chamber enclosure, within which intimate contact of contaminated air and cleaning water or other cleaning medium is maintained, if made of steel, shall be 18 gage or heavier and adequately protected against corrosion.

(b) Chambers may include scrubber spray nozzles, headers, troughs, or other devices. Chambers shall be provided with adequate means for creating and maintaining scrubbing action for removal of particulate matter from the exhaust air stream.

(v) Collecting tanks shall be of welded steel construction or other suitable noncombustible material. If pits are used as collecting tanks, they shall be concrete, masonry, or other material having similar properties.

(a) Tanks shall be provided with weirs, skimmer plates, or screens to prevent sludge and floating paint from entering the pump suction box. Means for automatically maintaining the proper water level shall also be provided. Fresh water inlets shall not be submerged. They shall terminate at least one pipe diameter above the safety overflow level of the tank.

(b) Tanks shall be so constructed as to discourage accumulation of hazardous deposits.

(vi) Pump manifolds, risers, and headers shall be adequately sized to insure sufficient water flow to provide efficient operation of the water chamber.

(4) Design and construction of spray rooms.

(i) Spray rooms, including floors, shall be constructed of masonry, concrete, or other noncombustible material.

(ii) Spray rooms shall have noncombustible fire doors and shutters.

(iii) Spray rooms shall be adequately ventilated so that the atmosphere in the breathing zone of the operator shall be maintained in accordance with the requirements of subparagraph (6)(ii) of this paragraph.

(iv) Spray rooms used for production spray-finishing operations shall conform to the requirements for spray booths.

(5) Ventilation.

(i) Ventilation shall be provided in accordance with provisions of § 1910.107(d) (see chapter 5 of the Standard for Spray Finishing Using Flammable or Combustible Materials, NFPA No. 33-1969), and in accordance with the following:

(a) Where a fan plenum is used to equalize or control the distribution of exhaust air movement through the booth, it shall be of sufficient strength or rigidity to withstand the differential air pressure or other superficially imposed loads for which the equipment is designed and also to facilitate cleaning. Construction specifications shall be at least equivalent to those of subdivision (iii) of this subparagraph.

(ii) Inlet or supply ductwork used to transport makeup air to spray booths or surrounding areas shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

(a) If negative pressure exists within inlet ductwork, all seams and joints shall be sealed if there is a possibility of infiltration of harmful quantities of noxious gases, fumes, or mists from areas through which ductwork passes.

(b) Inlet ductwork shall be sized in accordance with volume flow requirements and provide design air requirements at the spray booth.

(c) Inlet ductwork shall be adequately supported throughout its length to sustain at least its own weight plus any negative pressure which is exerted upon it under normal operating conditions.

(iii) Revoked

(a) Exhaust ductwork shall be adequately supported throughout its length to sustain its weight plus any normal accumulation in interior during normal operating conditions and any negative pressure exerted upon it.

(b) Exhaust ductwork shall be sized in accordance with good design practice which shall include consideration of fan capacity, length of duct, number of turns and elbows, variation in size, volume, and character of materials being exhausted. See American National Standard Z9.2-1960 for further details and explanation concerning elements of design.

(c) Longitudinal joints in sheet steel ductwork shall be either lock-seamed, riveted, or welded. For other than steel construction, equivalent securing of joints shall be provided.

(d) Circumferential joints in ductwork shall be substantially fastened together and lapped in the direction of airflow. At least every fourth joint shall be provided with connecting flanges, bolted together, or of equivalent fastening security.

(e) Inspection or clean-out doors shall be provided for every 9 to 12 feet of running length for ducts up to 12 inches in diameter, but the distance between clean-out doors may be greater for larger pipes. (See 8.3.21 of American National Standard Z9.1-1951.) A clean-out door or doors shall be provided for servicing the fan, and where necessary, a drain shall be provided.

(f) Where ductwork passes through a combustible roof or wall, the roof or wall shall be protected at the point of penetration by open space or fire-resistive material between the duct and the roof or wall. When ducts pass through firewalls, they shall be provided with automatic fire dampers on both sides of the wall, except that three-eighth-inch steel plates may be used in lieu of automatic fire dampers for ducts not exceeding 18 inches in diameter.

(g) Ductwork used for ventilating any process covered in this standard shall not be connected to ducts ventilating any other process or any chimney or flue used for conveying any products of combustion.

(6) Velocity and air flow requirements.

(i) Except where a spray booth has an adequate air replacement system, the velocity of air into all openings of a spray booth shall be not less than that specified in Table G-10 for the operating conditions specified. An adequate air replacement system is one which introduces replacement air upstream or above the object being sprayed and is so designed that the velocity of air in the booth cross section is not less than that specified in Table G-10 when measured upstream or above the object being sprayed.

(ii) In addition to the requirements in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph the total air volume exhausted through a spray booth shall be such as to dilute solvent vapor to at least 25 percent of the lower explosive limit of the solvent being sprayed. An example of the method of calculating this volume is given below.

Example: To determine the lower explosive limits of the most common solvents used in spray finishing, see Table G-11. Column 1 gives the number of cubic feet of vapor per gallon of solvent and column 2 gives the lower explosive limit (LEL) in percentage by volume of air. Note that the quantity of solvent will be diminished by the quantity of solids and nonflammables contained in the finish.

To determine the volume of air in cubic feet necessary to dilute the vapor from 1 gallon of solvent to 25 percent of the lower explosive limit, apply the following formula:

Dilution volume required per gallon of solvent =

$$\frac{4\ (100-\text{LEL})\ (\text{cubic feet of vapor per gallon})}{\text{LEL}}$$

Using toluene as the solvent.

(1) LEL of toluene from Table G-11, column 2, is 1.4 percent.

(2) Cubic feet of vapor per gallon from Table G-11, column 1, is 30.4 cubic feet per gallon.

(3) Dilution volume required =

$$\frac{4\ (100-1.4)\ 30.4}{1.4} = 8{,}564 \text{ cubic feet.}$$

(4) To convert to cubic feet per minute of required ventilation, multiply the dilution volume required per gallon of solvent by the number of gallons of solvent evaporated per minute.

TABLE G-10—MINIMUM MAINTAINED VELOCITIES INTO SPRAY BOOTHS

Operating conditions for objects completely inside booth	Crossdraft, f.p.m.	Airflow velocities, f.p.m.	
		Design	Range
Electrostatic and automatic airless operation contained in booth without operator.	Negligible	50 large booth	50- 75
		100 small booth	75-125
Air-operated guns, manual or automatic	Up to 50	100 large booth	75-125
		150 small booth	125-175
Air-operated guns, manual or automatic	Up to 100	150 large booth	125-175
		200 small booth	150-250

NOTES:

(1) Attention is invited to the fact that the effectiveness of the spray booth is dependent upon the relationship of the depth of the booth to its height and width.

(2) Crossdrafts can be eliminated through proper design and such design should be sought. Crossdrafts in excess of 100 fpm (feet per minute) should not be permitted.

(3) Excessive air pressures result in loss of both efficiency and material waste in addition to creating a backlash that may carry overspray and fumes into adjacent work areas.

(4) Booths should be designed with velocities shown in the column headed "Design." However, booths operating with velocities shown in the column headed "Range" are in compliance with this standard.

TABLE G-11—LOWER EXPLOSIVE LIMIT OF SOME COMMONLY USED SOLVENTS

Solvent	Cubic feet of vapor per gallon of liquid at 70° F	Lower explosive limit in percent by volume of air at 70° F
	Column 1	*Column 2*
Acetone	44.0	2.6
Amyl Acetate (iso)	21.6	[1] 1.0
Amyl Alcohol (n)	29.6	1.2
Amyl Alcohol (iso)	29.6	1.2
Benzene	36.8	[1] 1.4
Butyl Acetate (n)	24.8	1.7
Butyl Alcohol (n)	35.2	1.4
Butyl Cellosolve	24.8	1.1
Cellosolve	33.6	1.8
Cellosolve Acetate	23.2	1.7
Cyclohexanone	31.2	[1] 1.1
1,1 Dichloroethylene	42.4	5.6
1,2 Dichloroethylene	42.4	9.7
Ethyl Acetate	32.8	2.5
Ethyl Alcohol	55.2	4.3
Ethyl Lactate	28.0	[1] 1.5
Methyl Acetate	40.0	3.1
Methyl Alcohol	80.8	7.3
Methyl Cellosolve	40.8	2.5
Methyl Ethyl Ketone	36.0	1.8
Methyl n-Propyl Ketone	30.4	1.5
Naphtha (VM&P) (76° Naphtha)	22.4	0.9
Naphtha (100° Flash) Safety Solvent—Stoddard Solvent	23.2	1.1
Propyl Acetate (n)	27.2	2.0
Propyl Acetate (iso)	28.0	1.8
Propyl Alcohol (n)	44.8	2.1
Propyl Alcohol (iso)	44.0	2.0
Toluene	30.4	1.4
Turpentine	20.8	0.8
Xylene (o)	26.4	1.0

[1] At 212° F.

(iii)

(a) When an operator must position himself in a booth downstream of the object being sprayed, an air supplied respirator or other type of respirator approved by the Bureau of Mines, U.S. Department of the Interior or specified in ANSI Z88.2–1969 for the material being sprayed should be used by the operator.

(b) Where downdraft booths are provided with doors, such doors shall be closed when spray painting.

(7) Make-up air.

(i) Clean fresh air, free of contamination from adjacent industrial exhaust systems, chimneys, stacks, or vents, shall be supplied to a spray booth or room in quantities equal to the volume of air exhausted through the spray booth.

(ii) Where a spray booth or room receives make-up air through self-closing doors, dampers, or louvers, they shall be fully open at all times when the booth or room is in use for spraying. The velocity of air through such doors, dampers, or louvers shall not exceed 200 feet per minute. If the fan characteristics are such that the required air flow through the booth will be provided, higher velocities through the doors, dampers, or louvers may be used.

(iii)

(a) Where the air supply to a spray booth or room is filtered, the fan static pressure shall be calculated on the assumption that the filters are dirty to the extent that they require cleaning or replacement.

(b) The rating of filters shall be governed by test data supplied by the manufacturer of the filter. A pressure gage shall be installed to show the pressure drop across the filters. This gage shall be marked to show the pressure drop at which the filters require cleaning or replacement. Filters shall be replaced or cleaned whenever the pressure drop across them becomes excessive or whenever the air flow through the face of the booth falls below that specified in Table G–10.

(iv)

(a) Means for heating make-up air to any spray booth or room, before or at the time spraying is normally performed, shall be provided in all places where the outdoor temperature may be expected to remain below 55° F. for appreciable periods of time during the operation of the booth except where adequate and safe means of radiant heating for all operating personnel affected is provided. The replacement air during the heating seasons shall be maintained at not less than 65° F. at the point of entry into the spray booth or spray room. When otherwise unheated make-up air would be at a temperature of more than 10° F. below room temperature, its temperature shall be regulated as provided in section 3.6.3 of ANSI Z9.2-1960.

(b) As an alternative to an air replacement system complying with the preceding section, general heating of the building in which the spray room or booth is located may be employed provided that all occupied parts of the building are maintained at not less than 65° F. when the exhaust system is in operation or the general heating system supplemented by other sources of heat may be employed to meet this requirement.

(c) No means of heating make-up air shall be located in a spray booth.

(d) Where make-up air is heated by coal or oil, the products of combustion shall not be allowed to mix with the make-up air, and the products of combustion shall be conducted outside the building through a flue terminating at a point remote from all points where make-up air enters the building.

(e) Where make-up air is heated by gas, and the products of combustion are not mixed with the make-up air but are conducted through an independent flue to a point outside the building remote from all points where make-up air enters the building, it is not necessary to comply with (*f*) of this subdivision.

(f) Where make-up air to any manually operated spray booth or room is heated by gas and the products of combustion are allowed to mix with the supply air, the following precautions must be taken:

(1) The gas must have a distinctive and strong enough odor to warn workmen in a spray booth or room of its presence if in an unburned state in the make-up air.

(2) The maximum rate of gas supply to the make-up air heater burners must not exceed that which would yield in excess of 200 p.p.m. (parts per million) of carbon monoxide or 2,000 p.p.m. of total combustible gases in the mixture if the unburned gas upon the occurrence of flame failure were mixed with all of the make-up air supplied.

(3) A fan must be provided to deliver the mixture of heated air and products of combustion from the plenum chamber housing the gas burners to the spray booth or room.

(8) Scope. Spray booths or spray rooms are to be used to enclose or confine all spray finishing operations covered by this paragraph (c). This paragraph does not apply to the spraying of the exteriors of buildings, fixed tanks, or similar structures, nor to small portable spraying apparatus not used repeatedly in the same location.

(d) Open surface tanks.

(1) General.

(i) This paragraph applies to all operations involving the immersion of materials in liquids, or in the vapors of such liquids, for the purpose of cleaning or altering the surface or adding to or imparting a finish thereto or changing the character of the materials, and their subsequent removal from the liquid or vapor, draining, and drying. These operations include washing, electroplating, anodizing, pickling, quenching, dying, dipping, tanning, dressing, bleaching, degreasing, alkaline cleaning, stripping, rinsing, digesting, and other similar operations.

(ii) Except where specific construction specifications are prescribed in this section, hoods, ducts, elbows, fans, blowers, and all other exhaust system parts, components, and supports thereof shall be so constructed as to meet conditions of service and to facilitate maintenance and shall conform in construction to the specifications contained in American National Standard Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems, Z9.2-1960.

(2) Classification of open-surface tank operations.

(i) Open-surface tank operations shall be classified into 16 classes, numbered A-1 to D-4, inclusive.

(ii) Determination of class. Class is determined by two factors, hazard potential designated by a letter from A to D, inclusive, and rate of gas, vapor, or mist evolution designated by a number from 1 to 4, inclusive (for example, B.3).

(iii) Hazard potential is an index, on a scale of from A to D, inclusive, of the severity of the hazard associated with the substance contained in the tank because of the toxic, flammable, or explosive nature of the vapor, gas, or mist produced therefrom. The toxic hazard is determined from the concentration, measured in parts by volume of a gas or vapor, per million parts by volume of contaminated air (p.p.m.), or in milligrams of mist per cubic meter of air (mg./m.^{3}), below which ill effects are unlikely to occur to the exposed worker. The concentrations shall be those in § 1910.1000.

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975.]

(iv) The relative fire or explosion hazard is measured in degrees Fahrenheit in terms of the closed-cup flash point of the substance in the tank. Detailed information on the prevention of fire hazards in dip tanks may be found in Dip Tanks Containing Flammable or Combustible Liquids, NFPA No. 34-1966, National Fire Protection Association. Where the tank contains a mixture of liquids, other than organic solvents, whose effects are additive, the hygienic standard of the most toxic component (for example, the one having the lowest p.p.m. or mg./m.^{3}) shall be used, except where such substance constitutes an insignificantly small fraction of the mixture. For mixtures of organic solvents, their combined effect, rather than that of either individually, shall determine the hazard potential. In the absence of information to the contrary, the effects shall be considered as additive. If the sum of the ratios of the airborne concentration of each contaminant to the toxic concentration of that contaminant exceeds unity, the toxic concentration shall be considered to have been exceeded. (See Note A to subdivision (v) of this subparagraph.)

(v) Hazard potential shall be determined from Table G-12, with the value indicating greater hazard being used. When the hazardous material may be either a vapor with a threshold limit value (TLV) in p.p.m. or a mist with a TLV in mg./m.^{3}, the TLV indicating the greater hazard shall be used (for example, A takes precedence over B or C; B over C; C over D).

NOTE A:

$$\frac{c_1}{TLV_1}+\frac{c_2}{TLV_2}+\frac{c_3}{TLV_3}+\dots\frac{c_n}{TLV_n}>1$$

where:

c = Concentration measured at the operation in p.p.m.

TABLE G-12—DETERMINATION OF HAZARD POTENTIAL

Hazard potential	Toxicity Group		
	Gas or vapor (p.p.m.)	Mist (mg./m^3)	Flash point (in degrees F.)
A	0-10	0-0.1	....
B	11-100	0.11-1.0	Under 100
C	101-500	1.1-10	100-200
D	Over 500	Over 10	Over 200

(vi) Rate of gas, vapor, or mist evolution is a numerical index, on a scale of from 1 to 4, inclusive, both of the relative capacity of the tank to produce gas, vapor, or mist and of the relative energy with which it is projected or carried upwards from the tank. Rate is evaluated in terms of

(a) The temperature of the liquid in the tank in degrees Fahrenheit;

(b) The number of degrees Fahrenheit that this temperature is below the boiling point of the liquid in degrees Fahrenheit;

(c) The relative evaporation of the liquid in still air at room temperature in an arbitrary scale—fast, medium, slow, or nil; and

(d) The extent that the tank gases or produces mist in an arbitrary scale—high, medium, low, and nil. (See Table G-13, Note 2.) Gassing depends upon electrochemical or mechanical processes, the effects of which have to be individually evaluated for each installation (see Table G-13, Note 3).

(vii) Rate of evolution shall be determined from Table G-13. When evaporation and gassing yield different rates, the lowest numerical value shall be used.

TABLE G-13—DETERMINATION OF RATE OF GAS, VAPOR, OR MIST EVOLUTION[1]

Rate	Liquid temperature,° F.	Degrees below boiling point	Relative evaporation [2]	Gassing [3]
1..........	Over 200	0-20	Fast......	High.
2..........	150-200	21-50	Medium..	Medium.
3..........	94-149	51-100	Slow......	Low.
4..........	Under 94	Over 100	Nil.......	Nil.

NOTE 1. In certain classes of equipment, specifically vapor degreasers, an internal condenser or vapor level thermostat is used to prevent the vapor from leaving the tank during normal operation. In such cases, rate of vapor evolution from the tank into the workroom is not dependent upon the factors listed in the table, but rather upon abnormalities of operating procedure, such as carryout of vapors from excessively fast action, dragout of liquid by entrainment in parts, contamination of solvent by water and other materials, or improper heat balance. When operating procedure is excellent, effective rate of evolution may be taken as 4. When operating procedure is average, the effective rate of evolution may be taken as 3. When operation is poor, a rate of 2 or 1 is indicated, depending upon observed conditions.

NOTE 2. Relative evaporation rate is determined according to the methods described by A. K. Doolittle in Industrial and Engineering Chemistry, vol. 27, p. 1169, (3) where time for 100-percent evaporation is as follows: Fast: 0-3 hours; Medium: 3-12 hours; Slow: 12-50 hours; Nil: more than 50 hours.

NOTE 3. Gassing means the formation by chemical or electrochemical action of minute bubbles of gas under the surface of the liquid in the tank and is generally limited to aqueous solutions.

(3) Ventilation. Where ventilation is used to control potential exposures to workers as defined in subparagraph (2)(iii) of this paragraph, it shall be adequate to reduce the concentration of the air contaminant to the degree that a hazard to the worker does not exist. Methods of ventilation are discussed in American National Standard Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems, Z9.2-1960.

(4) Control requirements.

(i) Control velocities shall conform to Table G-14 in all cases where the flow of air past the breathing or working zone of the operator and into the hoods is undisturbed by local environmental conditions, such as open windows, wall fans, unit heaters, or moving machinery.

(ii) All tanks exhausted by means of hoods which

(a) Project over the entire tank;

(b) Are fixed in position in such a location that the head of the workman, in all his normal operating positions while working at the tank, is in front of all hood openings; and

(c) Are completely enclosed on at least two sides, shall be considered to be exhausted through an enclosing hood.

(d) The quantity of air in cubic feet per minute necessary to be exhausted through an enclosing hood shall be not less than the product of the control velocity times the net area of all openings in the enclosure through which air can flow into the hood.

(iii) All tanks exhausted by means of hoods which do not project over the entire tank, and in which the direction of air movement into the hood or hoods is substantially horizontal, shall be considered to be laterally exhausted. The quantity of air in cubic feet per minute necessary to be laterally exhausted per square foot of tank area in order to maintain the required control velocity shall be determined from Table G-15 for all variations in ratio of tank width (W) to tank length (L). The total quantity of air in cubic feet per minute required to be exhausted per tank shall be not less than the product

TABLE G-14—CONTROL VELOCITIES IN FEET PER MINUTE (F.P.M.) FOR UNDISTURBED LOCATIONS

Class	Enclosing hood		Lateral exhaust[1]	Canopy hood [2]	
	One open side	Two open sides		Three open sides	Four open sides
A-1 and A-2	100	150	150	Do not use	Do not use
A-3 (Note 2), B-1, B-2, and C-1	75	100	100	125	175
B-3, C-2, and D-1 (Note 3)	65	90	75	100	150
A-4 (Note 2), C-3, and D-2 (Note 3)	50	75	50	75	125
B-4, C-4, D-3 (Note 3), and D-4	General room ventilation required.				

NOTES:
1. See Table G-15 for computation of ventilation rate.
2. Do not use canopy hood for Hazard Potential A processes.
3. Where complete control of hot water is desired, design as next highest class.

of the area of tank surface times the cubic feet per minute per square foot of tank area, determined from Table G-15.

(a) For lateral exhaust hoods over 42 inches wide, or where it is desirable to reduce the amount of air removed from the workroom, air supply slots or orifices shall be provided along the side or the center of the tank opposite from the exhaust slots. The design of such systems shall meet the following criteria:

(1) The supply air volume plus the entrained air shall not exceed 50 percent of the exhaust volume.

TABLE G-15—MINIMUM VENTILATION RATE IN CUBIC FEET OF AIR PER MINUTE PER SQUARE FOOT OF TANK AREA FOR LATERAL EXHAUST

Required minimum control velocity, f.p.m. (from Table G-14)	C.f.m per sq. ft. to maintain required minimum velocities at following ratios (tank width (W) /tank length (L)).[1],[2]				
	0.0-0.09	0.1-0.24	0.25-0.49	0.5-0.99	1.0-2.0
Hood along one side or two parallel sides of tank when one hood is against a wall or baffle.[2] Also for a manifold along tank centerline.[3]					
50	50	60	75	90	100
75	75	90	110	130	150
100	100	125	150	175	200
150	150	190	225	260	300
Hood along one side or two parallel sides of free standing tank not against wall or baffle.					
50	75	90	100	110	125
75	110	130	150	170	190
100	150	175	200	225	250
150	225	260	300	340	375

[1] It is not practicable to ventilate across the long dimension of a tank whose ratio $\frac{W}{L}$ exceeds 2.0.

It is undesirable to do so when $\frac{W}{L}$ exceeds 1.0. For circular tanks with lateral exhaust along up to ½ the circumference, use $W/L=1.0$; for over one-half the circumference use $W/L=0.5$.

[2] Baffle is a vertical plate the same length as the tank, and with the top of the plate as high as the tank is wide. If the exhaust hood is on the side of a tank against a building wall or close to it, it is perfectly baffled.

[3] Use $\frac{W}{2}$ as tank width in computing when manifold is along centerline, or when hoods are used on two parallel sides of a tank.

Tank Width (W) means the effective width over which the hood must pull air to operate (for example, where the hood face is set back from the edge of the tank, this set back must be added in measuring tank width). The surface area of tanks can frequently be reduced and better control obtained (particularly on conveyorized systems) by using covers extending from the upper edges of the slots toward the center of the tank.

(2) The velocity of the supply airstream as it reaches the effective control area of the exhaust slot shall be less than the effective velocity over the exhaust slot area.

(3) The vertical height of the receiving exhaust hood, including any baffle, shall not be less than one-quarter the width of the tank.

(4) The supply airstream shall not be allowed to impinge on obstructions between it and the exhaust slot in such a manner as to significantly interfere with the performance of the exhaust hood.

(5) Since most failure of push-pull systems result from excessive supply air volumes and pressures, methods of measuring and adjusting the supply air shall be provided. When satisfactory control has been achieved, the adjustable features of the hood shall be fixed so that they will not be altered.

(iv) All tanks exhausted by means of hoods which project over the entire tank, and which do not conform to the definition of enclosing hoods, shall be considered to be overhead canopy hoods. The quantity of air in cubic feet per minute necessary to be exhausted through a canopy hood shall be not less than the product of the control velocity times the net area of all openings between the bottom edges of the hood and the top edges of the tank.

(v) The rate of vapor evolution (including steam or products of combustion) from the process shall be estimated. If the rate of vapor evolution is equal to or greater than 10 percent of the calculated exhaust volume required, the exhaust volume shall be increased in equal amount.

(5) Spray cleaning and degreasing. Wherever spraying or other mechanical means are used to disperse a liquid above an open-surface tank, control must be provided for the airborne spray. Such operations shall be enclosed as completely as possible. The inward air velocity into the enclosure shall be sufficient to prevent the discharge of spray into the workroom. Mechanical baffles may be used to help prevent the discharge of spray. Spray painting operations are covered by paragraph (c) of this section.

(6) Control means other than ventilation. Tank covers, foams, beads, chips, or other materials floating on the tank surface so as to confine gases, mists, or vapors to the area under the cover or to the foam, bead, or chip layer; or surface tension depressive agents added to the liquid in the tank to minimize mist formation, or any combination thereof, may all be used as gas, mist, or vapor control means for open-surface tank operations, provided that they effectively reduce the concentrations of hazardous materials in the vicinity of the worker below the limits set in accordance with subparagraph (2) of this paragraph.

(7) System design.

(i) The equipment for exhausting air shall have sufficient capacity to produce the flow of air required in each of the hoods and openings of the system.

(ii) The capacity required in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph shall be obtained when the airflow producing equipment is operating against the following pressure losses, the sum of which is the static pressure:

(a) Entrance losses into the hood.

(b) Resistance to airflow in branch pipe including bends and transformations.

(c) Entrance loss into the main pipe.

(d) Resistance to airflow in main pipe including bends and transformations.

(e) Resistance of mechanical equipment; that is, filters, washers, condensers, absorbers, etc., plus their entrance and exit losses.

(f) Resistance in outlet duct and discharge stack.

(iii) Two or more operations shall not be connected to the same exhaust system where either one or the combination of the substances removed may constitute a fire, explosion, or chemical reaction hazard in the duct system. Traps or other devices shall be provided to insure that condensate in ducts does not drain back into any tank.

(iv) The exhaust system, consisting of hoods, ducts, air mover, and discharge outlet, shall be designed in accordance with American National Standard Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems, Z9.2-1960, or the manual, Industrial Ventilation, published by the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists 1970. Airflow and pressure loss data provided by the manufacturer of any air cleaning device shall be included in the design calculations.

(8) Operation.

(i) The required airflow shall be maintained at all times during which gas, mist, or vapor is emitted from the tank, and at all times the tank, the draining, or the drying area is in operation or use. When the system is first installed, the airflow from each hood shall be measured by means of a pitot traverse in the exhaust duct and corrective action taken if the flow is less than that required. When the proper flow is obtained, the hood static pressure shall be measured and recorded. At intervals of not more than 3 months operation, or after a prolonged shutdown period, the hoods and duct system shall be inspected for evidence of corrosion or damage. In any case where the airflow is found to be less than required, it shall be increased to the required value. (Information on airflow and static pressure measurement and calculations may be found in American National Standard Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems, Z9.2-1960, or in the manual, Industrial Ventilation, published by the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists.)

(ii) The exhaust system shall discharge to the outer air in such a manner that the possibility of its effluent entering any building is at a minimum. Recirculation shall only be through a device for contaminant removal which will prevent the creation of a health hazard in the room or area to which the air is recirculated.

(iii) A volume of outside air in the range of 90 percent to 110 percent of the exhaust volume shall be provided to each room having exhaust hoods. The outside air supply shall enter the workroom in such a manner as not to be detrimental to any exhaust hood. The airflow of the makeup air system shall be measured on installation. **Corrective action shall be taken when the airflow is below that required. The makeup air shall be uncontaminated.**

(9) Personal protection.

(i) All employees working in and around open-surface tank operations must be instructed as to the hazards of their respective jobs, and in the personal protection and first aid procedures applicable to these hazards.

(ii) All persons required to work in such a manner that their feet may become wet shall be provided with rubber or other impervious boots or shoes, rubbers, or wooden-soled shoes sufficient to keep feet dry.

(iii) All persons required to handle work wet with a liquid other than water shall be provided with gloves impervious to such a liquid and of a length sufficient to prevent entrance of liquid into the tops of the gloves. The interior of gloves shall be kept free from corrosive or irritating contaminants.

(iv) All persons required to work in such a manner that their clothing may become wet shall be provided with such aprons, coats, jackets, sleeves, or other garments made of rubber, or of other materials impervious to liquids other than water, as are required to keep their clothing dry.

Aprons shall extend well below the top of boots to prevent liquid splashing into the boots. Provision of dry, clean, cotton clothing along with rubber shoes or short boots and an apron impervious to liquids other than water shall be considered a satisfactory substitute where small parts are cleaned, plated, or acid dipped in open tanks and rapid work is required.

(v) Whenever there is a danger of splashing, for example, when additions are made manually to the tanks, or when acids and chemicals are removed from the tanks, the employees so engaged shall be required to wear either tight-fitting chemical goggles or an effective face shield. See § 1910.133.

(vi) When, during emergencies as described in subparagraph (11)(v) of this paragraph, workers must be in areas where concentrations of air contaminants are greater than the limit set by subparagraph (2)(iii) of this paragraph, or oxygen concentrations are less than 19.5 percent, they shall be required to wear respirators adequate to reduce their exposure to a level below these limits, or to provide adequate oxygen. Such respirators shall also be provided in marked, quickly accessible storage compartments built for the purpose, when there exists the possibility of accidental release of hazardous concentrations of air contaminants. Respirators shall be approved by the U.S. Bureau of Mines, U.S. Department of the Interior and shall be selected by a competent industrial hygienist or other technically qualified source. Respirators shall be used in accordance with § 1910.134, and persons who may require them shall be trained in their use.

(vii) Near each tank containing a liquid which may burn, irritate, or otherwise be harmful to the skin if splashed upon the worker's body, there shall be a supply of clean cold water. The water pipe (carrying a pressure not exceeding 25 pounds) shall be provided with a quick opening valve and at least 48 inches of hose not smaller than three-fourths inch, so that no time may be lost in washing off liquids from the skin or clothing. Alternatively, deluge showers and eye flushes shall be provided in cases where harmful chemicals may be splashed on parts of the body.

(viii) Operators with sores, burns, or other skin lesions requiring medical treatment shall not be allowed to work at their regular operations until so authorized by a physician. Any small skin abrasions, cuts, rash, or open sores which are found or reported shall be treated by a properly designated person so that chances of exposures to the chemicals are removed. Workers exposed to chromic acids shall have a periodic examination made of the nostrils and other parts of the body, to detect incipient ulceration.

(ix) Sufficient washing facilities, including soap, individual towels, and hot water, shall be provided for all persons required to use or handle any liquids which may burn, irritate, or otherwise be harmful to the skin, on the basis of at least one basin (or its equivalent) with a hot water faucet for every 10 employees. See § 1910.141(d).

(x) Locker space or equivalent clothing storage facilities shall be provided to prevent contamination of street clothing.

(xi) First aid facilities specific to the hazards of the operations conducted shall be readily available.

(10) Special precautions for cyanide. Dikes or other arrangements shall be provided to prevent the possibility of intermixing of cyanide and acid in the event of tank rupture.

(11) Inspection, maintenance, and installation.

(i) Floors and platforms around tanks shall be prevented from becoming slippery both by original type of construction and by frequent flushing. They shall be firm, sound, and of the design and construction to minimize the possibility of tripping.

(ii) Before cleaning the interior of any tank, the contents shall be drained off, and the cleanout doors shall be opened where provided. All pockets in tanks or pits, where it is possible for hazardous vapors to collect, shall be ventilated and cleared of such vapors.

(iii) Tanks which have been drained to permit employees to enter for the purposes of cleaning, inspection, or maintenance may contain atmospheres which are hazardous to life or health, through the presence of flammable or toxic air contaminants, or through the absence of sufficient oxygen. Before employees shall be permitted to enter any such tank, appropriate tests of the atmosphere shall be made to determine if the limits set by subparagraph (2)(iii) of this paragraph are exceeded, or if the oxygen concentration is less than 19.5 percent.

(iv) If the tests made in accordance with subdivision (iii) of this subparagraph indicate that the atmosphere in the tank is unsafe, before any employee is permitted to enter the tank, the tank shall be ventilated until the hazardous atmosphere is removed, and ventilation shall be continued so as to prevent the occurrence of a hazardous atmosphere as long as an employee is in the tank.

(v) If, in emergencies, such as rescue work, it is necessary to enter a tank which may contain a hazardous atmosphere, suitable respirators, such as self-contained breathing apparatus; hose mask with blower, if there is a possibility of oxygen deficiency; or a gas mask, selected and operated in accordance with subparagraph (9)(vi) of this paragraph, shall be used. If a contaminant in the tank can cause dermatitis, or be absorbed through the skin, the employee entering the tank shall also wear protective clothing. At least one trained standby employee, with suitable respirator, shall be present in the nearest uncontaminated area. The standby employee must be able to communicate with the employee in the tank and be able to haul him out of the tank with a lifeline if necessary.

(vi) Maintenance work requiring welding or open flame, where toxic metal fumes such as cadmium, chromium, or lead may be evolved, shall be done only with sufficient local exhaust ventilation to prevent the creation of a health hazard, or be done with respirators selected and used in accordance with subparagraph (9)(vi) of this paragraph. Welding, or the use of open flames near any solvent cleaning equipment shall be permitted only after such equipment has first been thoroughly cleared of solvents and vapors.

(12) Vapor degreasing tanks.

(i) In any vapor degreasing tank equipped with a condenser or vapor level thermostat, the condenser or thermostat shall keep the level of vapors below the top edge of the tank by a distance at least equal to one-half the tank width, or at least 36 inches, whichever is shorter.

(ii) Where gas is used as a fuel for heating vapor degreasing tanks, the combustion chamber shall be of tight construction, except for such openings as the exhaust flue, and those that are necessary for supplying air for combustion. Flues shall be of corrosion-resistant construction and shall extend to the outer air. If mechanical exhaust is used on this flue, a draft diverter shall be used. Special precautions must be taken to prevent solvent fumes from entering the combustion air of this or any other heater when chlorinated or fluorinated hydrocarbon solvents (for example, trichloroethylene, Freon) are used.

(iii) Heating elements shall be so designed and maintained that their surface temperature will not cause the solvent or mixture to decompose, break down, or be converted into an excessive quantity of vapor.

(iv) Tanks or machines of more than 4 square feet of vapor area, used for solvent cleaning or vapor degreasing, shall be equipped with suitable cleanout or sludge doors located near the bottom of each tank or still. These doors shall be so designed and gasketed that there will be no leakage of solvent when they are closed.

(13) Scope.

(i) This paragraph (d) applies to all operations involving the immersion of materials in liquids, or in the vapors of such liquids, for the purpose of cleaning or altering their surfaces, or adding or imparting a finish thereto, or changing the character of the materials, and their subsequent removal from the liquids or vapors, draining, and drying. Such operations include washing, electroplating, anodizing, pickling, quenching, dyeing, dipping, tanning, dressing, bleaching, degreasing, alkaline cleaning, stripping, rinsing, digesting, and other similar operations, but do not include molten materials handling operations, or surface coating operations.

(ii) "Molten materials handling operations" means all operations, other than welding, burning, and soldering operations, involving the use, melting, smelting, or pouring of metals, alloys, salts, or other similar substances in the molten state. Such operations also include heat treating baths, descaling baths, die casting stereotyping, galvanizing, tinning, and similar operations.

(iii) "Surface coating operations" means all operations involving the application of protective, decorative, adhesive, or strengthening coating or impregnation to one or more surfaces, or into the interstices of any object or material, by means of spraying, spreading, flowing, brushing, roll coating, pouring, cementing, or similar means; and any subsequent draining or drying operations, excluding open-tank operations.

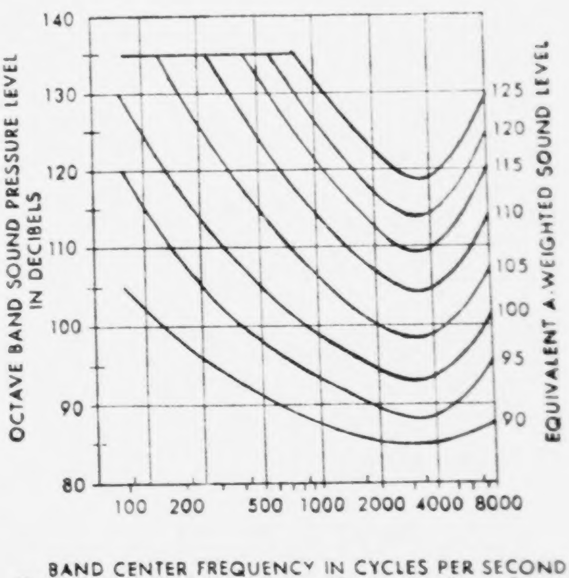
1910.95—OCCUPATIONAL NOISE EXPOSURE

(a) Protection against the effects of noise exposure shall be provided when the sound levels exceed those shown in Table G-16 when measured on the A scale of a standard sound level meter at slow response. When noise levels are determined by octave band analysis, the equivalent A-weighted sound level may be determined as follows:

TABLE G-16—PERMISSIBLE NOISE EXPOSURES [1]

Duration per day, hours	*Sound level dBA slow response*
8	90
6	92
4	95
3	97
2	100
1½	102
1	105
½	110
¼ or less	115

Figure G-9



Equivalent sound level contours. Octave band sound pressure levels may be converted to the equivalent A-weighted sound level by plotting them on this graph and noting the A-weighted sound level corresponding to the point of highest penetration into the sound level contours. This equivalent A-weighted sound level, which may differ from the actual A-weighted sound level of the noise, is used to determine exposure limits from Table G-16.

---

[1] When the daily noise exposure is composed of two or more periods of noise exposure of different levels, their combined effect should be considered, rather than the individual effect of each. If the sum of the following fractions: $C_1/T_1 + C_2/T_2 \ldots C_n/T_n$ exceeds unity, then, the mixed exposure should be considered to exceed the limit value. C_n indicates the total time of exposure at a specified noise level, and T_n indicates the total time of exposure permitted at that level.

(b)

(1) When employees are subjected to sound exceeding those listed in Table G-16, feasible administrative or engineering controls shall be utilized. If such controls fail to reduce sound levels within the levels of Table G-16, personal protective equipment shall be provided and used to reduce sound levels within the levels of the table.

Exposure to impulsive or impact noise should not exceed 140 dB peak sound pressure level.

(2) If the variations in noise level involve maxima at intervals of 1 second or less, it is to be considered continuous.

(c) Hearing conservation program.

(1) The employer shall administer a continuing, effective hearing conservation program, as described in paragraphs (c) through (o) of this section, whenever employee noise exposures equal or exceed an 8-hour time-weighted average sound level (TWA) of 85 decibels measured on the A scale (slow response) or, equivalently, a dose of fifty percent. For purposes of the hearing conservation program, employee noise exposures shall be computed in accordance with Appendix A and Table G-16a, and without regard to any attenuation provided by the use of personal protective equipment.

(2) For purposes of paragraphs (c) through (n) of this section, an 8-hour time-weighted average of 85 decibels or a dose of fifty percent shall also be referred to as the action level.

(d) Monitoring.

(1) When information indicates that any employee's exposure may equal or exceed an 8-hour time-weighted average of 85 decibels, the employer shall develop and implement a monitoring program.

(i) The sampling strategy shall be designed to identify employees for inclusion in the hearing conservation program and to enable the proper selection of hearing protectors.

(ii) Where circumstances such as high worker mobility, significant variations in sound level, or a significant component of impulse noise make area monitoring generally inappropriate, the employer shall use representative personal sampling to comply with the monitoring requirements of this paragraph unless the employer can show that area sampling produces equivalent results.

(2)

(i) All continuous, intermittent and impulsive sound levels from 80 decibels to 130 decibels shall be integrated into the noise measurements.

(ii) Instruments used to measure employee noise exposure shall be calibrated to ensure measurement accuracy.

(3) Monitoring shall be repeated whenever a change in production, process, equipment or controls increases noise exposures to the extent that:

(i) Additional employees may be exposed at or above the action level; or

(ii) The attenuation provided by hearing protectors being used by employees may be rendered inadequate to meet the requirements of paragraph (j) of this section.

(e) Employee notification. The employer shall notify each employee exposed at or above an 8-hour time-weighted average of 85 decibels of the results of the monitoring.

(f) Observation of monitoring. The employer shall provide affected employees or their representatives with an opportunity to observe any noise measurements conducted pursuant to this section.

(g) Audiometric testing program.

(1) The employer shall establish and maintain an audiometric testing program as provided in this paragraph by making audiometric testing available to all employees whose exposures equal or exceed an 8-hour time-weighted average of 85 decibels.

(2) The program shall be provided at no cost to employees.

(3) Audiometric tests shall be performed by a licensed or certified audiologist, otolaryngologist, or other physician, or by a technician who is certified by the Council of Accreditation in Occupational Hearing Conservation, or who has satisfactorily demonstrated competence in administering audiometric examinations, obtaining valid audiograms, and properly using, maintaining and checking calibration and proper functioning of the audiometers being used. A technician who operates microprocessor audiometers does not need to be certified. A technician who performs audiometric tests must be responsible to an audiologist, otolaryngologist or physician.

(4) All audiograms obtained pursuant to this section shall meet the requirements of Appendix C: *Audiometric Measuring Instruments.*

(5) Baseline audiogram.

(i) Within 6 months of an employee's first exposure at or above the action level, the employer shall establish a valid baseline audiogram against which subsequent audiograms can be compared.

(ii) Mobile test van exception. Where mobile test vans are used to meet the audiometric testing obligations, the employer shall obtain a valid baseline audiogram within 1 year of an employee's first exposure at or above the action level. Where baseline audiograms are obtained more than 6 months after the employee's first exposure at or above the action level, employees shall wear hearing protectors for any period exceeding six months after first exposure until the baseline audiogram is obtained.

(iii) Testing to establish a baseline audiogram shall be preceded by at least 14 hours without exposure to workplace noise. Hearing protectors may be used as a substitute for the requirement that baseline audiograms be preceded by 14 hours without exposure to workplace noise.

(iv) The employer shall notify employees of the need to avoid high levels of non-occupational noise exposure during the 14-hour period immediately preceding the audiometric examination.

(6) Annual audiogram. At least annually after obtaining the baseline audiogram, the employer shall obtain a new audiogram for each employee exposed at or above an 8-hour time-weighted average of 85 decibels.

(7) Evaluation of audiogram.

(i) Each employee's annual audiogram shall be compared to that employee's baseline audiogram to determine if the audiogram is valid and if a standard threshold shift as defined in paragraph (g)(10) of this section has occurred. This comparison may be done by a technician.

(ii) If the annual audiogram shows that an employee has suffered a standard threshold shift, the employer may obtain a retest within 30 days and consider the results of the retest as the annual audiogram.

(iii) The audiologist, otolaryngologist, or physician shall review problem audiograms and shall determine whether there is a need for further evaluation. The employer shall provide to the person performing this evaluation the following information:

(a) A copy of the requirements for hearing conservation as set forth in paragraphs (c) through (n) of this section;

(b) The baseline audiogram and most recent audiogram of the employee to be evaluated;

(c) Measurements of background sound pressure levels in the audiometric test room as required in Appendix D: Audiometric Test Rooms.

(d) Records of audiometer calibrations required by paragraph (h)(5) of this section.

(8) Follow-up procedures.

(i) If a comparison of the annual audiogram to the baseline audiogram indicates a standard threshold shift as defined in paragraph (g)(10) of this section has occurred, the employee shall be informed of this fact in writing, within 21 days of the determination.

(ii) Unless a physician determines that the standard threshold shift is not work related or aggravated by occupational noise exposure, the employer shall ensure that the following steps are taken when a standard threshold shift occurs:

(a) Employees not using hearing protectors shall be fitted with hearing protectors, trained in their use and care, and required to use them.

(b) Employees already using hearing protectors shall be refitted and retained in the use of hearing protectors and provided with hearing protectors offering greater attenuation if necessary.

(c) The employee shall be referred for a clinical audiological evaluation or an otological examination, as appropriate, if additional testing is necessary or if the employer suspects that a medical pathology of the ear is caused or aggravated by the wearing of hearing protectors.

(d) The employee is informed of the need for an otological examination if a medical pathology of the ear that is unrelated to the use of hearing protectors is suspected.

(iii) If subsequent audiometric testing of an employee whose exposure to noise is less than an 8-hour TWA of 90 decibels indicates that a standard threshold shift is not persistent, the employer:

(a) Shall inform the employee of the new audiometric interpretation; and

(b) May discontinue the required use of hearing protectors for that employee.

(9) Revised baseline. An annual audiogram may be substituted for the baseline audiogram when, in the judgment of the audiologist, otolaryngologist or physician who is evaluating the audiogram:

(i) The standard threshold shift revealed by the audiogram is persistent; or

(ii) The hearing threshold shown in the annual audiogram indicates significant improvement over the baseline audiogram.

(10) Standard threshold shift.

(i) As used in this section, a standard threshold shift is a change in hearing threshold relative to the baseline audiogram of an average of 10 dB or more at 2000, 3000, and 4000 Hz in either ear.

(ii) In determining whether a standard threshold shift has occurred, allowance may be made for the contribution of aging (presbycusis) to the change in hearing level by correcting the annual audiogram according to the procedure described in Appendix F: *Calculation and Application of Age Correction to Audiograms.*

(h) Audiometric test requirements.

(1) Audiometric tests shall be pure tone, air conduction, hearing threshold examinations, with test frequencies including as a minimum 500, 1000, 2000, 3000, 4000, and 6000 Hz. Tests at each frequency shall be taken separately for each ear.

(2) Audiometric tests shall be conducted with audiometers (including microprocessor audiometers) that meet the specifications of, and are maintained and used in accordance with, American National Standard Specification for Audiometers, S3.6-1969.

(3) Pulsed-tone and self-recording audiometers, if used, shall meet the requirements specified in Appendix C: *Audiometric Measuring Instruments.*

(4) Audiometric examinations shall be administered in a room meeting the requirements listed in Appendix D: *Audiometric Test Rooms.*

(5) Audiometer calibration.

(i) The functional operation of the audiometer shall be checked before each day's use by testing a person with known, stable hearing thresholds, and by listening to the audiometer's output to make sure that the output is free from distorted or unwanted sounds. Deviations of 10 decibels or greater require an acoustic calibration.

(ii) Audiometer calibration shall be checked acoustically at least annually in accordance with Appendix E: *Acoustic Calibration of Audiometers.* Test frequencies below 500 Hz and above 6000 Hz may be omitted from this check. Deviations of 15 decibels or greater require an exhaustive calibration.

(iii) An exhaustive calibration shall be performed at least every two years in accordance with sections 4.1.2; 4.1.3.; 4.1.4.3; 4.2; 4.4.1; 4.4.2; 4.4.3; and 4.5 of the American National Standard Specification for Audiometers, S3.6-1969. Test frequencies below 500 Hz and above 6000 Hz may be omitted from this calibration.

(i) Hearing protectors.

(1) Employers shall make hearing protectors available to all employees exposed to an 8-hour time-weighted average of 85 decibels or greater at no cost to the employees. Hearing protectors shall be replaced as necessary.

(2) Employers shall ensure that hearing protectors are worn:

(i) By an employee who is required by paragraph (b)(1) of this section to wear personal protective equipment; and

(ii) By any employee who is exposed to an 8-hour time-weighted average of 85 decibels or greater, and who:

(a) Has not yet had a baseline audiogram established pursuant to paragraph (g)(5)(ii); or

(b) Has experienced a standard threshold shift.

(3) Employees shall be given the opportunity to select their hearing protectors from a variety of suitable hearing protectors provided by the employer.

(4) The employer shall provide training in the use and care of all hearing protectors provided to employees.

(5) The employer shall ensure proper initial fitting and supervise the correct use of all hearing protectors.

(j) Hearing protector attenuation.

(1) The employer shall evaluate hearing protector attenuation for the specific noise environments in which the protector will be used. The employer shall use one of the evaluation methods described in Appendix B: *Methods for Estimating the Adequacy of Hearing Protection Attenuation.*

(2) Hearing protectors must attenuate employee exposure at least to an 8-hour time-weighted average of 90 decibels as required by paragraph (b) of this section.

(3) For employees who have experienced a standard threshold shift, hearing protectors must attenuate employee exposure to an 8-hour time-weighted average of 85 decibels or below.

(4) The adequacy of hearing protector attenuation shall be re-evaluated whenever employee noise exposures increase to the extent that the hearing protectors provided may no longer provide adequate attenuation. The employee shall provide more effective hearing protectors where necessary.

(k) Training program.

(1) The employer shall institute a training program for all employees who are exposed to noise at or above an 8-hour time-weighted average of 85 decibels, and shall ensure employee participation in such program.

(2) The training program shall be repeated annually for each employee included in the hearing conservation program. Information provided in the training program shall be updated to be consistent with changes in protective equipment and work processes.

(3) The employer shall ensure that each employee is informed of the following:

(i) The effects of noise on hearing;

(ii) The purpose of hearing protectors, the advantages, disadvantages, and attenuation of various types, and instructions on selection, fitting, use, and care; and

(iii) The purpose of audiometric testing, and an explanation of the test procedures.

(l) Access to information and training materials.

(1) The employer shall make available to affected employees or their representatives copies of this standard and shall also post a copy in the workplace.

(2) The employer shall provide to affected employees any informational materials pertaining to the standard that are supplied to the employer by the Assistant Secretary.

(3) The employer shall provide, upon request, all materials related to the employer's training and education program pertaining to this standard to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(m) Recordkeeping.

(1) Exposure measurements. The employer shall maintain an accurate record of all employee exposure measurements required by paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Audiometric tests.

(i) The employer shall retain all employee audiometric test records obtained pursuant to paragraph (g) of this section:

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) Name and job classification of the employee;

(b) Date of the audiogram;

(c) The examiner's name;

(d) Date of the last acoustic or exhaustive calibration of the audiometer; and

(e) Employee's most recent noise exposure assessment.

(f) The employer shall maintain accurate records of the measurements of the background sound pressure levels in audiometric test rooms.

(3) Record retention. The employer shall retain records required in this paragraph (m) for at least the following periods.

(i) Noise exposure measurement records shall be retained for two years.

(ii) Audiometric test records shall be retained for the duration of the affected employee's employment.

(4) Access to records. All records required by this section shall be provided upon request to employees, former employees, representatives designated by the individual employee, and the Assistant Secretary. The provisions of 29 CFR 1910.20(a)-(e) and (g)-(i) apply to access to records under this section.

(5) Transfer of records. If the employer ceases to do business, the employer shall transfer to the successor employer all records required to be maintained by this section, and the successor employer shall retain them for the remainder of the period prescribed in paragraph (m)(3) of this section.

(n) Appendices.

(1) Appendices A, B, C, D, and E to this section are incorporated as part of this section and the contents of these Appendices are mandatory.

(2) Appendices F and G to this section are informational and are not intended to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed or to detract from any existing obligations.

(o) Exemptions. Paragraphs (c) through (n) of this section shall not apply to employers engaged in oil and gas well drilling and servicing operations.

(p) Startup date. Baseline audiograms required by paragraph (g) of this section shall be completed by March 1, 1984.

APPENDIX A: NOISE EXPOSURE COMPUTATION

This Appendix is Mandatory

I. Computation of Employee Noise Exposure

(1) Noise dose is computed using Table G-16a as follows:

(i) When the sound level, L, is constant over the entire work shift, the noise dose, D, in percent, is given by: $D=100\ C/T$ where C is the total length of the work day, in hours, and T is the reference duration corresponding to the measured sound level, L, as given in Table G-16a or by the formula shown as a footnote to that table.

(ii) When the workshift noise exposure is composed of two or more periods of noise at different levels, the total noise dose over the work day is given by:

$D=100\ (C_1/T_1+C_2/T_2+\ldots+C_n/T_n)$,

where C_n indicates the total time of exposure at a specific noise level, and T_n indicates the reference duration for that level as given by Table G-16a.

(2) The eight-hour time-weighted average sound level (TWA), in decibels, may be computed from the dose, in percent, by means of the formula: $TWA=16.61\ \log_{10}\ (D/100)+90$. For an eight-hour workshift with the noise level constant over the entire shift, the TWA is equal to the measured sound level.

(3) A table relating dose and TWA is given in Section II.

TABLE G-16A

A-weighted sound level, L (decibel)	Reference duration, T (hour)
80	32
81	27.9
82	24.3
83	21.1
84	16.4
85	16
86	13.9
87	12.1
88	10.6
89	9.2
90	8
91	7.0
92	6.1
93	5.3
94	4.6
95	4
96	3.5
97	3.0
98	2.6
99	2.3
100	2
101	1.7
102	1.5
103	1.3
104	1.1
105	1
106	0.87
107	0.76
108	0.66
109	0.57
110	0.5
111	0.44
112	0.38
113	0.33
114	0.29
115	0.25
116	*0.22*
117	*0.19*
118	*0.16*
119	*0.14*
120	*0.125*
121	*0.11*
122	*0.095*
123	*0.082*
124	*0.072*
125	*0.063*
126	*0.054*
127	*0.047*
128	*0.041*
129	*0.036*
130	*0.031*

In the above table the reference duration, T, is computed by

$$T=\frac{8}{2^{(L-90)/5}}$$

where L is the measured A-weighted sound level.

II. Conversion Between "Dose" and "8-Hour Time-Weighted Average" Sound Level

Compliance with paragraphs (c)-(r) of this regulation is determined by the amount of exposure to noise in the workplace. The amount of such exposure is usually measured with an audiodosimeter which gives a readout in terms of "dose." In order to better understand the requirements of the amendment, dosimeter readings can be converted to an "8-hour time-weighted average sound level." (TWA).

In order to convert the reading of a dosimeter into TWA, see Table A-1, below. This table applies to dosimeters that are set by the manufacturer to calculate dose or percent exposure according to the relationships in Table G-16a. So, for example, a dose of 91 percent over an eight hour day results in a TWA of 89.3 dB, and, a dose of 50 percent corresponds to a TWA of 85 dB.

If the dose as read on the dosimeter is less than or greater than the values found in Table A-1, the TWA may be calculated by using the formula: $TWA=16.61 \log_{10} (D/100)+90$ where TWA=8-hour time-weighted average sound level and D=accumulated dose in percent exposure.

Table A-1.—Conversion From "Percent Noise Exposure" or "Dose" to "8-Hour Time-Weighted Average Sound Level" (TWA)

Dose or percent noise exposure	TWA
10	73.4
15	76.3
20	78.4
25	80.0
30	81.3
35	82.4
40	83.4
45	84.2
50	85.0
55	85.7
60	86.3
65	86.9
70	87.4
75	87.9
80	88.4
81	88.5
82	88.6
83	88.7
84	88.7
85	88.8
86	88.9
87	89.0
88	89.1
89	89.2
90	89.2
91	89.3
92	89.4
93	89.5
94	89.6
95	89.6
96	89.7
97	89.8
98	89.9
99	89.9
100	90.0
101	90.1
102	90.1
103	90.2
104	90.3
105	90.4
106	90.4
107	90.5
108	90.6
109	90.6
110	90.7
111	90.8
112	90.8
113	90.9
114	90.9
115	91.1
116	91.1
117	91.1
118	91.2
119	91.3
120	91.3
125	91.6
130	91.9
135	92.2
140	92.4
145	92.7
150	92.9
155	93.2
160	93.4
165	93.6
170	93.8
175	94.0
180	94.2
185	94.4
190	94.6
195	94.8
200	95.0
210	95.4
220	95.7
230	96.0
240	96.3
250	96.6
260	96.9
270	97.2
280	97.4
290	97.7
300	97.9
310	98.2
320	98.4
330	98.6
340	98.8
350	99.0
360	99.2
370	99.4
380	99.6
390	99.8
400	100.0
410	100.2
420	100.4
430	100.5
440	100.7
450	100.8
460	101.0
470	101.2
480	101.3
490	101.5
500	101.6
510	101.8
520	101.9
530	102.0
540	102.2
550	102.3
560	102.4
570	102.6
580	102.7

Table A-1.—Conversions From "Percent Noise Exposure" or "Dose" to "8-Hour Time-Weighted Average Sound level" (TWA)—Continued

Dose or percent noise exposure	TWA
590	102.8
600	102.9
610	103.0
620	103.2
630	103.3
640	103.4
650	103.5
660	103.6
670	103.7
680	103.8
690	103.9
700	104.0
710	104.1
720	104.2
730	104.3
740	104.4
750	104.5
760	104.6
770	104.7
780	104.8
790	104.9
800	105.0
810	105.1
820	105.2
830	105.3
840	105.4
850	105.4
860	105.5
870	105.6
880	105.7
890	105.8
900	105.8
910	105.9
920	106.0
930	106.1
940	106.2
950	106.2
960	106.3
970	106.4
980	106.5
990	106.5
999	106.6

APPENDIX B: METHODS FOR ESTIMATING THE ADEQUACY OF HEARING PROTECTOR ATTENUATION

This Appendix is Mandatory

For employees who have experienced a significant threshold shift, hearing protector attenuation must be sufficient to reduce employee exposure to a TWA of 85 dB. Employers must select one of the following methods by which to estimate the adequacy of hearing protector attenuation.

The most convenient method is the Noise Reduction Rating (NRR) developed by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). According to EPA regulation, the NRR must be shown on the hearing protector package. The NRR is then related to an individual worker's noise environment in order to assess the adequacy of the attenuation of a given hearing protector. This Appendix describes four methods of using the NRR to determine whether a particular hearing protector provides adequate protection within a given exposure environment. Selection among the four procedures is dependent upon the employer's noise measuring instruments.

Instead of using the NRR, employers may evaluate the adequacy of hearing protector attenuation by using one of the three methods developed by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), which are described in the "List of Personal Hearing Protectors and Attenuation Data," HEW Publication No. 76-120, 1975, pages 21-37. These methods are known as NIOSH methods #1, #2 and #3. The NRR described below is a simplification of NIOSH method #2. The most complex method is NIOSH method #1, which is probably the most accurate method since it uses the largest amount of spectral information from the individual employee's noise environment. As in the case of the NRR method described below, if one of the NIOSH methods is used, the selected method must be applied to an individual's noise environment to assess the adequacy of the attenuation. Employers should be careful to take a sufficient number of measurements in order to achieve a representative sample for each time segment.

Note.—The employer must remember that calculated attenuation values reflect realistic values only to the extent that the protectors are properly fitted and worn.

When using the NRR to assess hearing protector adequacy, one of the following methods must be used:

(I) When using a dosimeter that is capable of C-weighted measurements:

(A) Obtain the employee's C-weighted dose for the entire workshift, and convert to TWA (see Appendix A, II).

(B) Subtract the NRR from the C-weighted TWA to obtain the estimated A-weighted TWA under the ear protector.

(II) When using a dosimeter that is not capable of C-weighted measurements, the following method may be used:

(A) Convert the A-weighted dose to TWA (see Appendix A).

(B) Subtract 7 dB from the NRR.

(C) Subtract the remainder from the A-weighted TWA to obtain the estimated A-weighted TWA under the ear protector.

(III) When using a sound level meter set to the A-weighting network:

(A) Obtain the employee's A-weighted TWA.

(B) Subtract 7 dB from the NRR, and subtract the remainder from the A-weighted TWA to obtain the estimated A-weighted TWA under the ear protector.

(IV) When using a sound level meter set on the C-weighting network:

(A) Obtain a representative sample of the C-weighted sound levels in the employee's environment.

(B) Subtract the NRR from the C-weighted average sound level to obtain the estimated A-weighted TWA under the ear protector.

(v) When using area monitoring procedures and a sound level meter set to the A-weighing network.

(A) Obtain a representative sound level for the area in question.

(B) Subtract 7 dB from the NRR and subtract the remainder from the A-weighted sound level for that area.

(vi) When using area monitoring procedures and a sound level meter set to the C-weighting network:

(A) Obtain a representative sound level for the area in question.

(B) Subtract the NRR from the C-weighted sound level for that area.

APPENDIX C: AUDIOMETRIC MEASURING INSTRUMENTS

This Appendix Is Mandatory

1. In the event that pulsed-tone audiometers are used, they shall have a tone on-time of at least 200 milliseconds.

2. Self-recording audiometers shall comply with the following requirements:

(A) The chart upon which the audiogram is traced shall have lines at positions corresponding to all multiples of 10 dB hearing level within the intensity range spanned by the audiometer. The lines shall be equally spaced and shall be separated by at least ¼ inch. Additional increments are optional. The audiogram pen tracings shall not exceed 2 dB in width.

(B) It shall be possible to set the stylus manually at the 10-dB increment lines for calibration purposes.

(C) The slewing rate for the audiometer attenuator shall not be more than 6 dB/sec except that an initial slewing rate greater than 6 dB/sec is permitted at the beginning of each new test frequency, but only until the second subject response.

(D) The audiometer shall remain at each required test frequency for 30 seconds (±3 seconds). The audiogram shall be clearly marked at each change of frequency and the actual frequency change of the audiometer shall not deviate from the frequency boundaries marked on the audiogram by more than ±3 seconds.

(E) It must be possible at each test frequency to place a horizontal line segment parallel to the time axis on the audiogram, such that the audiometric tracing crosses the line segment at least six times at that test frequency. At each test frequency the threshold shall be the average of the midpoints of the tracing excursions.

APPENDIX D: AUDIOMETRIC TEST ROOMS

This Appendix Is Mandatory

Rooms used for audiometric testing shall not have background sound pressure levels exceeding those in Table D-1 when measured by equipment conforming at least to the Type 2 requirements of American National Standard Specification for Sound Level Meters, S1.4-1971 (R1976), and to the Class II requirements of American National Standard Specification for Octave, Half-Octave, and Third-Octave Band Filter Sets, S1.11-1971 (R1976).

Table D-1.—Maximum Allowable Octave-Band Sound Pressure Levels for Audiometric Test Rooms

Octave-band center frequency (Hz)	500	1000	2000	4000	8000
Sound pressure level (dB)	40	40	47	57	62

APPENDIX E: ACOUSTIC CALIBRATION OF AUDIOMETERS

This Appendix Is Mandatory

Audiometer calibration shall be checked acoustically, at least annually, according to the procedures described in this Appendix. The equipment necessary to perform these measurments is a sound level meter, octave-band filter set, and a National Bureau of Standards 9A coupler. In making these measurements, the accuracy of the calibrating equipment shall be sufficient to determine that the audiometer is within the tolerances permitted by American Standard Specification for Audiometers, S3.6-1969.

(1) Sound Pressure Output Check

A. Place the earphone coupler over the microphone of the sound level meter and place the earphone on the coupler.

B. Set the audiometer's hearing threshold level (HTL) dial to 70 dB.

C. Measure the sound pressure level of the tones that each test frequency from 500 Hz through 6000 Hz for each earphone.

D. At each frequency the readout on the sound level meter should correspond to the levels in Table E-1 or Table E-2, as appropriate, for the type of earphone, in the column entitled "sound level meter reading."

(2) Linearity Check

A. With the earphone in place, set the frequency to 1000 Hz and the HTL dial on the audiometer to 70 dB.

B. Measure the sound levels in the coupler at each 10-dB decrement from 70 dB to 10 dB, noting the sound level meter reading at each setting.

C. For each 10-dB decrement on the audiometer the sound level meter should indicate a corresponding 10 dB decrease.

D. This measurement may be made electrically with a voltmeter connected to the earphone terminals.

(3) Tolerances

When any of the measured sound levels deviate from the levels in Table E-1 or Table E-2 by ±3 dB at any test frequency between 500 and 3000 Hz, 4 dB at 4000 Hz, or 5 dB at 6000 Hz, an exhaustive calibration is advised. An exhaustive calibration is required if the deviations are greater than 10 dB at any test frequency.

Table E-1.—Reference Threshold Levels for Telephonics—TDH-39 Earphones

Frequency, Hz	Reference threshold level for TDH-39 earphones, dB	Sound level meter reading, dB
500	11.5	81.5
1000	7	77
2000	9	79
3000	10	80
4000	9.5	79.5
6000	15.5	85.5

Table E-2.—Reference Threshold Levels for Telephonics—TDH-49 Earphones

Frequency, Hz	Reference threshold level for TDH-49 earphones, dB	Sound level meter reading, dB
500	13.5	83.5
1000	7.5	77.5
2000	11	81.0
3000	9.5	79.5
4000	10.5	80.5
6000	13.5	83.5

APPENDIX F: CALCULATIONS AND APPLICATION OF AGE CORRECTIONS TO AUDIOGRAMS

This Appendix is Non-Mandatory

In determining whether a standard threshold shift has occurred, allowance may be made for the contribution of aging to the change in hearing level by adjusting the most recent audiogram. If the employer chooses to adjust the audiogram, the employer shall follow the procedure described below. This procedure and the age correction tables were developed by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health in the criteria document entitled "Criteria for a Recommended Standard ... Occpational Exposure to Noise," ((HSM)-11001).

For each audiometric test frequency:

(i) Determine from Tables F-1 or F-2 the age correction values for the employee by:

(A) Finding the age at which the most recent audiogram was taken and recording the corresponding values of age corrections at 1000 Hz through 6000 Hz;

(B) Finding the age at which the baseline audiogram was taken and recording the corresponding values of age corrections at 1000 Hz through 6000 Hz.

(ii) Subtract the values found in step (i)(A) from the value found in step (i)(B).

(iii) The differences calculated in step (ii) represented that portion of the change in hearing that may be due to aging.

Example: Employee is a 32-year-old male. The audiometric history for his right ear is shown in decibels below.

Employee's age	Audiometric test frequency (Hz)				
	1000	2000	3000	4000	6000
26	10	5	5	10	5
*27	0	0	0	5	5
28	0	0	0	10	5
29	5	0	5	15	5
30	0	5	10	20	10
31	5	10	20	15	15
*32	5	10	10	25	20

The audiogram at age 27 is considered the baseline since it shows the best hearing threshold levels. Asterisks have been used to identify the baseline and most recent audiogram. A threshold shift of 20 dB exists at 4000 Hz between the audiograms taken at ages 27 and 32.

(The threshold shift is computed by subtracting the hearing threshold at age 27, which was 5, from the hearing threshold at age 32, which is 25). A retest audiogram has confirmed this shift. The contribution of aging to this change in hearing may be estimated in the following manner:

STANDARDS AND INTERPRETATIONS

Go to Table F-1 and find the age correction values (in dB) for 4000 Hz at age 27 and age 32.

	Frequency (Hz)				
	1000	2000	3000	4000	6000
Age 32	6	5	7	10	14
Age 27	5	4	6	7	11
Difference	1	1	1	3	3

The difference represents the amount of hearing loss that may be attributed to aging in the time period between the baseline audiogram and the most recent audiogram. In this example, the difference at 4000 Hz is 3 dB. This value is subtracted from the hearing level at 4000 Hz, which in the most recent audiogram is 25, yielding 22 after adjustment. Then the hearing threshold in the baseline audiogram at 4000 Hz (5) is subtracted from the adjusted annual audiogram hearing threshold at 4000 Hz (22). Thus the age-corrected threshold shift would be 17 dB (as opposed to a threshold shift of 20 dB without age correction).

Table F-1.—Age Correction Values in Decibels For Males

Years	Audiometric Test Frequencies (Hz)				
	1000	2000	3000	4000	6000
20 or younger	5	3	4	5	8
21	5	3	4	5	8
22	5	3	4	5	8
23	5	3	4	6	9
24	5	3	5	6	9
25	5	3	5	7	10
26	5	4	5	7	10
27	5	4	6	7	11
28	6	4	6	8	11
29	6	4	6	8	12
30	6	4	6	9	12
31	6	4	7	9	13
32	6	5	7	10	14
33	6	5	7	10	14
34	6	5	8	11	15
35	7	5	8	11	15
36	7	5	9	12	16
37	7	6	9	12	17
38	7	6	9	13	17
39	7	6	10	14	18
40	7	6	10	14	19
41	7	6	10	14	20
42	8	7	11	16	20
43	8	7	12	16	21
44	8	7	12	17	22
45	8	7	13	18	23
46	8	8	13	19	24
47	8	8	14	19	24
48	9	8	14	20	25
49	9	9	15	21	26
50	9	9	16	22	27
51	9	9	16	23	28
52	9	10	17	24	29
53	9	10	18	25	30
54	10	10	18	26	31
55	10	11	19	27	32
56	10	11	20	28	34
57	10	11	21	29	35
58	10	12	22	31	36
59	11	12	22	32	37
60 or older	11	13	23	33	38

Table F-2.—Age Correction Values in Decibels For Females

Years	Audiometric Test Frequencies (Hz)				
	1000	2000	3000	4000	6000
20 or younger	7	4	3	3	6
21	7	4	4	3	6
22	7	4	4	4	6
23	7	5	4	4	7
24	7	5	4	4	7
25	8	5	4	4	7
26	8	5	5	4	8
27	8	5	5	5	8
28	8	5	5	5	8
29	8	5	5	5	9
30	8	6	5	5	9
31	8	6	6	5	9
32	9	6	6	6	10
33	9	6	6	6	10
34	9	6	6	6	10
35	9	6	7	7	11
36	9	7	7	7	11
37	9	7	7	7	12
38	10	7	7	7	12
39	10	7	8	8	12
40	10	7	8	8	13
41	10	8	8	8	13
42	10	8	9	9	13
43	11	8	9	9	14
44	11	8	9	9	14
45	11	8	10	10	15
46	11	9	10	10	15
47	11	9	10	11	16
48	12	9	11	11	16
49	12	9	11	11	16
50	12	10	11	12	17
51	12	10	12	12	17
52	12	10	12	13	18
53	13	10	13	13	18
54	13	11	13	14	19
55	13	11	14	14	19
56	13	11	14	15	20
57	13	11	15	15	20
58	14	12	15	16	21
59	14	12	16	16	21
60 or older	14	12	16	17	22

APPENDIX G: MONITORING NOISE LEVELS NON-MANDATORY INFORMATIONAL APPENDIX

This appendix provides information to help employers comply with the noise monitoring obligations that are part of the hearing conservation amendment.

What is the purpose of noise monitoring?

This revised amendment requires that employees be placed in a hearing conservation program if they are exposed to average noise levels of 85 dB or greater during an 8 hour workday. In order to determine if exposures are at or above this level, it may be necessary to measure or monitor the actual noise levels in the workplace and to estimate the noise exposure or "dose" received by employees during the workday.

When is it necessary to implement a noise monitoring program?

It is not necessary for every employer to measure workplace noise. Noise monitoring or measuring must be conducted only when exposures are at or above 85 dB. Factors which suggest that noise exposures in the workplace may be at this level include employee complaints about the loudness of noise, indications that employees are losing their hearing, or noisy conditions which make normal conversation difficult. The employer should also consider any information available regarding noise emitted from specific machines. In addition, actual workplace noise measurements can suggest whether or not a monitoring program should be initiated.

How is noise measured?

Basically, there are two different instruments to measure noise exposures: the sound level meter and the dosimeter. A sound level meter is a device that measures the intensity of sound at a given moment. Since sound level meters provide a measure of sound intensity at only one point in time, it is generally necessary to take a number of measurements at different times during the day to estimate noise exposure over a workday. If noise levels fluctuate, the amount of time noise remains at each of the various measured levels must be determined.

To estimate employee noise exposures with a sound level meter it is also generally necessary to take several measurements at different locations within the workplace. After appropriate sound level meter readings are obtained, people sometimes draw "maps" of the sound levels within different areas of the workplace. By using a sound level "map" and information on employee locations throughout the day, estimates of individual exposure levels can be developed. This measurement method is generally referred to as *area* noise monitoring.

A dosimeter is like a sound level meter except that it stores sound level measurements and integrates these measurements over time, providing an average noise exposure reading for a given period of time, such as an 8-hour workday. With a dosimeter, a microphone is attached to the employee's clothing and the exposure measurement is simply read at the end of the desired time period. A reader may be used to read-out the dosimeter's measurements. Since the dosimeter is worn by the employee, it measures noise levels in those locations in which the employee travels. A sound level meter can also be positioned within the immediate vicinity of the exposed worker to obtain an individual exposure estimate. Such procedures are generally referred to as *personal* noise monitoring.

Area monitoring can be used to estimate noise exposure when the noise levels are relatively constant and employees are not mobile. In workplaces where employees move about in different areas or where the noise intensity tends to fluctuate over time, noise exposure is generally more accurately estimated by the personal monitoring approach.

In situations where personal monitoring is appropriate, proper positioning of the microphone is necessary to obtain accurate measurements. With a dosimeter, the microphone is generally located on the shoulder and remains in that position for the entire workday. With a sound level meter, the microphone is stationed near the employee's head, and the instrument is usually held by an individual who follows the employee as he or she moves about.

Manufacturer's instructions, contained in dosimeter and sound level meter operating manuals, should be followed for calibration and maintenance. To ensure accurate results, it is considered good professional practice to calibrate instruments before and after each use.

How often is it necessary to monitor noise levels?

The amendment requires that when there are significant changes in machinery or production processes that may result in increased noise levels, remonitoring must be conducted to determine whether additional employees need to be included in the hearing conservation program. Many companies choose to remonitor periodically (once every year or two) to ensure that all exposed employees are included in their hearing conservation programs.

Where can equipment and technical advice be obtained?

Noise monitoring equipment may be either purchased or rented. Sound level meters cost about $500 to $1,000, while dosimeters range in price from about $750 to $1,500. Smaller companies may find it more economical to rent equipment rather than to purchase it. Names of equipment suppliers may be found in the telephone book (Yellow Pages) under headings such as: "Safety Equipment," "Industrial Hygiene," or "Engineers-Acoustical." In addition to providing information on obtaining noise monitoring equipment, many companies and individuals included under such listings can provide professional advice on how to conduct a valid noise monitoring program. Some audiological testing firms and industrial hygiene firms also provide noise monitoring services. Universities with audiology, industrial hygiene, or acoustical engineering departments may also provide information or may be able to help employers meet their obligations under this amendment.

Free, on-site assistance may be obtained from OSHA-supported state and private consultation organizations. These safety and health consultative entities generally give priority to the needs of small businesses. See the attached directory for a listing of organizations to contact for aid.

OSHA ONSITE CONSULTATION PROJECT DIRECTORY

State	Office and address	Contact
Alabama	Alabama Consultation Program, P.O. Box 6005, University, Alabama 35486	(205) 348-7136, Mr. William Weems, Director.
Alaska	State of Alaska, Department of Labor, Occupational Safety & Health, 3301 Eagle St., Pouch 7-022, Anchorage, Alaska 99540	(907) 276-5013, Mr. Stan Godsoe, Project Manager (Air Mail)
American Samoa	Service not yet available.	
Arizona	Consultation and Training, Arizona Division of Occupational Safety and Health, P.O. Box 19070, 1624 W. Adams, Phoenix, Ariz. 85005	(602) 255-5795, Mr. Thomas Ramsley, Manager
Arkansas	OSHA Consultation, Arkansas Department of Labor, 1022 High St., Little Rock, Ark. 72202	(501) 371-2992, Mr. George Smith, Project Director
California	CAL/OSHA Consultation Service, 2nd Floor, 525 Golden Gate Avenue, San Francisco, Calif. 94102	(415) 557-2870, Mr. Emmett Jones, Chief
Colorado	Occupational Safety & Health Section, Colorado State University, Institute of Rural Environmental Health, 110 Veterinary Science Building, Fort Collins, Colo. 80523.	(303) 491-6151, Dr. Roy M. Buchan, Project Director
Connecticut	Division of Occupational Safety & Health, Connecticut Department of Labor, 200 Folly Brook Boulevard, Wethersfield, Conn. 06109.	(203) 566-4550, Mr. Leo Alix, Director
Delaware	Delaware Department of Labor, Division of Industrial Affairs, 820 North French Street, 6th Floor, Wilmington, Del. 19801.	(302) 571-3908, Mr. Bruno Salvadori, Director
District of Columbia	Occupational Safety & Health Division, District of Columbia, Department Employment Services, Office of Labor Standards, 2900 Newton Street NE., Washington, D.C. 20018.	(202) 832-1230, Mr. Lorenzo M. White, Acting Associate Director.
Florida	Department of Labor & Employment Security, Bureau of Industrial Safety and Health, LaFayette Building, Room 204, 2551 Executive Center Circle West, Tallahassee, Fla. 32301.	(904) 488-3044, Mr. John C. Glenn, Administrator
Georgia	Economic Development Division, Technology and Development Laboratory, Engineering Experiment Station, Georgia Institute of Technology, Atlanta, Ga. 30332.	(404) 894-3806, Mr. William C. Howard, Assistant to Director. Mr. James Burson, Project Manager.
Guam	Department of Labor, Government of Guam, 23548 Guam Main Facility, Agana, Guam 96921	(671) 772-6291, Joe R. San Agustin, Director.
Hawaii	Education and Information Branch, Division of Occupational Safety and Health, Suite 910, 677 Ala Moana, Honolulu, Hawaii 96813.	(808) 548-2511, Mr. Don Alper, Manager (Air Mail).
Idaho	OSHA Onsite Consultation Program, Boise State University, Community and Environmental Health, 1910 University Drive, Boise, Idaho 83725.	(208) 385-3929, Dr. Eldon Edmundson, Director
Illinois	Division of Industrial Services, Dept. of Commerce and Community Affairs, 310 S. Michigan Avenue, 10 Floor, Chicago, Ill. 60601	(800) 972-4140/4216 (Toll-free in State), (312) 793-3270, Mr. Stan Czwinski, Assistant Director.
Iowa	Bureau of Labor, 307 E. Seventh Street, Des Moines, Iowa 50319	(515) 281-3606, Mr. Allen J. Meier, Commissioner
Indiana	Bureau of Safety, Education and Training, Indiana Division of Labor, 1013 State Office Building, Indianapolis, Indiana 46204.	(317) 633-5845, Mr. Harold Mills, Director.
Kansas	Kansas Dept. of Human Resources, 401 Topeka Ave., Topeka, Kans. 66603	(913) 296-4086, Ms. Jerry Abbott, Secretary.
Kentucky	Education and Training, Occupational Safety and Health, Kentucky Department of Labor, 127 Building, 127 South, Frankfort, Ky. 40601.	(502) 564-6895, Mr. Larry Potter, Director.
Louisiana	No services available as yet (Pending FY 83).	
Maine	Division of Industrial Safety, Maine Dept. of Labor, Labor Station 45, State Office Building, Augusta, Maine 04333.	(207) 289-3331, Mr. Lester Wood, Director
Maryland	Consultation Services, Division of Labor & Industry, 501 St. Paul Place, Baltimore, Maryland 21202	(301) 659-4210, Ms. Ileana O'Brien, Project Manager, 7(c)(1) Agreement.
Massachusetts	Division of Industrial Safety, Massachusetts Department of Labor and Industries, 100 Cambridge Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02202.	(617) 727-3567, Mr. Edward Nosseworthy, Project Director
Michigan (Health)	Special Programs Section, Division of Occupational Health, Michigan Dept. of Public Health, 3500 N. Logan, Lansing, Mich. 48909.	(517) 373-1410, Mr. Irving Davis, Chief
Michigan (Safety)	Safety Education & Training Division Bureau of Safety and Regulation, Michigan Department of Labor, 7150 Harris Drive, Box 30015, Lansing, Michigan 48909.	(517) 322-1809, Mr. Alan Harvie, Chief.
Minnesota	Training and Education Unit, Department of Labor and Industry, 5th Floor, 444 Lafayette Road, St. Paul, Minn. 55101.	(612) 296-2973, Mr. Timothy Tierney, Project Manager
Mississippi	Division of Occupational Safety and Health, Mississippi State Board of Health, P.O. Box 1700, Jackson, Mississippi 39205.	(601) 982-6315, Mr. Henry L. Laird, Director.
Missouri	Missouri Department of Labor and Industrial Relations, 722 Jefferson Street, Jefferson City, Missouri 65101	1-(800) 392-0208, (314) 751-3403, Ms. Paula Smith, Mr. Jim Braha.
Montana	Montana Bureau of Safety & Health, Division of Workers Compensation, 815 Front Street, Helena, Montana 59601.	(406) 449-3402, Mr. Ed Gatzemeier, Chief.
Nebraska	Nebraska Department of Labor, State House Station, State Capitol, P.O. Box 94600, Lincoln, Nebraska 68509	475-8451 Ext. 258, Mr. Joseph Carroll, Commissioner
Nevada	Department of Occupational Safety and Health, Nevada Industrial Commission, 515 E. Muller Street, Carson City, Nev. 89714.	(702) 885-5240, Mr. Allen Traenkner, Director.
New Hampshire	For information contact	Office of Consultation Programs, Room N3472 200 Constitution Avenue, N.W. Washington, D.C. 20210, Phone: (202) 523-8985.
New Jersey	New Jersey Department of Labor and Industry Division of Work Place Standards, CN-054, Trenton, New Jersey 08625.	(609) 292-2313, FTS-8-477-2313, Mr. William Clark, Assistant Commissioner.
New Mexico	OSHA Consultation, Health and Environment Department, Environmental Improvement Division, Occupational Health & Safety Section, 4215 Montgomery Boulevard, NE., Albuquerque, New Mexico 87109.	(505) 842-3387, Mr. Albert M. Stevens, Project Manager.
New York	Division of Safety and Health, New York State Department of Labor, 2 World Trade Center, Room 6995, New York, New York 10047.	(212) 488-7746/7, Mr. Joseph Alleva, Project Manager, DOSH.
North Carolina	Consultation Services, North Carolina Department of Labor, 4 West Edenton Street, Raleigh, N.C. 27601.	(919) 733-4885, Mr. David Pierce, Director.
North Dakota	Division of Environmental Research, Department of Health, Missouri Office Building, 1200 Missouri Avenue, Bismarck, N. Dak. 58505.	(701) 224-2348, Mr. Jay Crawford, Director.
Ohio	Department of Industrial Relations, Division of Onsite Consultation, P.O. Box 825, 2323 5th Avenue, Columbus, Ohio 43216.	(800) 282-1425 (Toll-free in State), (614) 466-7485, Mr. Andrew Doehrel, Project Manager.
Oklahoma	OSHA Division, Oklahoma Department of Labor, State Capitol, Suite 118, Oklahoma City, Okla. 73105.	(405) 521-2461, Mr. Charles W. McGlon, Director.
Oregon	Consultative Section, Department of Workers' Compensation, Accident Prevention Division, Room 102, Building 1, 2110 Front Street NE., Salem, Oregon 97310.	(503) 378-2890, Mr. Jack Buckland, Supervisor.
Pennsylvania	For information contact	Office of Consultation Programs, Room N3472, 200 Constitution Avenue NW., Washington, D.C. 20210, Phone: (202) 523-8985.
Puerto Rico	Occupational Safety & Health, Puerto Rico Department of Labor and Human Resources, 505 Munoz Rivera Ave., 21st Floor, Hato Rey, Puerto Rico 00919.	(809) 754-2134, Mr. John Cinque, Assistant Secretary, (Air Mail).
Rhode Island	Division of Occupational Health, Rhode Island Department of Health, The Cannon Building, 206 Health Department Building, Providence, R.I. 02903.	(401) 277-2438, Mr. James E. Hickey, Chief.
South Carolina	Consultation and Monitoring, South Carolina Department of Labor, P.O. Box 11329, Columbia, S.C. 29211.	(803) 758-8921, Mr. Robert Peck, Director, 7(c)(1), Project.

OSHA ONSITE CONSULTATION PROJECT DIRECTORY—Continued

State	Office and address	Contact
South Dakota	South Dakota Consultation Program, South Dakota State University, S.T.A.T.E.-Engineering Extension, 201 Pugsley Center-SDSO, Brookings, S. Dak. 57007.	(605) 688-4101, Mr. James Ceglian, Director.
Tennessee	OSHA Consultative Services, Tennessee Department of Labor, 2nd Floor, 501 Union Building, Nashville, Tennessee 37219.	(615) 741-2793, Mr. L. H. Craig Director.
Texas	Division of Occupational Safety and State Safety Engineer, Texas Department of Health and Resources, 1100 West 49th Street, Austin, Texas 78756.	(512) 458-7287, Mr. Walter G. Martin, P.E. Director
Trust Territories	Service not yet available.	
Utah	Utah Job Safety and Health Consultation Service, Suite 4004, Crane Building, 307 West 200 South, Salt Lake City, Utah 84101.	(801) 533-7927/8/9, Mr. H. M. Bergeson, Project Director
Vermont	Division of Occupational Safety and Health, Vermont Department of Labor and Industry, 118 State Street, Montpelier, Vt. 05602.	(802) 828-2765, Mr. Robert Mcleod, Project Director
Virginia	Department of Labor and Industry, P.O. Box 12064, 205 N. 4th Street, Richmond, Va. 23241	(804) 786-5875, Mr. Robert Beard, Commissioner.
Virgin Islands	Division of Occupational Safety and Health, Virgin Islands Department of Labor, Lagoon Street, Room 207, Frederiksted, Virgin Islands 00840.	(809) 772-1315, Mr. Louis Llanos, Deputy Director-DOSH
Washington	Department of Labor and Industry, P.O. Box 207, Olympia, Wash. 98504	(206) 753-6500, Mr. James Sullivan, Assistant Director
West Virginia	West Virginia Department of Labor, Room 451B, State Capitol, 1900 Washington Street, Charleston, W. Va. 25305.	FTS 8-885-7890, Mr. Lawrence Barker, Commissioner
Wisconsin (Health)	Section of Occupational Health, Department of Health and Social Services, P.O. Box 309, Madison, Wisconsin 53701.	(608) 266-0417, Ms. Patricia Natzke, Acting Chief
Wisconsin (Safety)	Division of Safety and Buildings, Department of Industry, Labor and Human Relations, 1570 E. Moreland Blvd., Waukesha, Wis. 53186.	(414) 544-8686, Mr. Richard Michalski, Supervisor
Wyoming	Wyoming Occupational Health and Safety Department, 200 East 8th Avenue, Cheyenne, Wyo. 82002.	(307) 777-7786, Mr. Donald Owsley, Health and Safety Administrator.

APPENDIX H: AVAILABILITY OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

Paragraphs (c) through (o) of 29 CFR 1910.95 and the accompanying appendices contain provisions which incorporate publications by reference. Generally, the publications provide criteria for instruments to be used in monitoring and audiometric testing. These criteria are intended to be mandatory when so indicated in the applicable paragraphs of Section 1910.95 and appendices.

It should be noted that OSHA does not require that employers purchase a copy of the referenced publications. Employers, however, may desire to obtain a copy of the referenced publications for their own information.

The designation of the paragraph of the standard in which the referenced publications appear, the titles of the publications, and the availability of the publication are as follows:

Paragraph designation	Referenced publication	Available from—
Appendix B	"List of Personal Hearing Protectors and Attenuation Data," HEW Pub. No. 76-120, 1975, NTIS-PB267461.	National Technical Information Service, Port Royal Road, Springfield, VA 22161.
Appendix D	"Specification for Sound Level Meters," S1.4-1971 (R1976).	American National Standards Institute, Inc., 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.
§1910.95(k)(2), appendix E	"Specifications for Audiometers," S3.6-1969.	American National Standards Institute, Inc., 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.
Appendix D	"Specification for Octave, Half-Octave and Third-Octave Band Filter Sets," S1.11-1971 (R1976).	Back Numbers Department, Dept. STD, American Institute of Physics, 333 E. 45 St., New York, NY 10017; American National Standards Institute, Inc., 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

The referenced publications (or a microfiche of the publications) are available for review at many universities and public libraries throughout the country. These publications may also be examined at the OSHA Technical Data Center, Room N2439, United States Department of Labor, 200 Constitution Avenue, NW., Washington, D.C. 20210, (202) 523-9700 or at any OSHA Regional Office (see telephone directories under United States Government—Labor Department).

APPENDIX I: DEFINITIONS

These definitions apply to the following terms as used in paragraphs (c) through (n) of 29 CFR 1910.95.

Action level—An 8-hour time-weighted average of 85 decibels

STANDARDS AND INTERPRETATIONS

measured on the A-scale, slow response, or equivalently, a dose of fifty percent.

Audiogram—A chart, graph, or table resulting from an audiometric test showing an individual's hearing threshold levels as a function of frequency.

Audiologist—A professional, specializing in the study and rehabilitation of hearing, who is certified by the American Speech-Language-Hearing Association or licensed by a state board of examiners.

Baseline audiogram—The audiogram against which future audiograms are compared.

Criterion sound level—A sound level of 90 decibels.

Decibel (dB)—Unit of measurement of sound level.

Hertz (Hz)—Unit of measurement of frequency, numerically equal to cycles per second.

Medical pathology—A disorder or disease. For purposes of this regulation, a condition or disease affecting the ear, which should be treated by a physician specialist.

Noise dose—The ratio, expressed as a percentage, of (1) the time integral, over a stated time or event, of the 0.6 power of the measured SLOW exponential time-averaged, squared A-weighted sound pressure and (2) the product of the criterion duration (8 hours) and the 0.6 power of the squared sound pressure corresponding to the criterion sound level (90 dB).

Noise dosimeter—An instrument that integrates a function of sound pressure over a period of time in such a manner that it directly indicates a noise dose.

Otolaryngologist—A physician specializing in diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the ear, nose and throat.

Representative exposure—Measurements of an employee's noise dose or 8-hour time-weighted average sound level that the employers deem to be representative of the exposures of other employees in the workplace.

Sound level—Ten times the common logarithm of the ratio of the square of the measured A-weighted sound pressure to the square of the standard reference pressure of 20 micropascals. Unit: decibels (dB). For use with this regulation, SLOW time response, in accordance with ANSI S1.4-1971 (R1976), is required.

South level meter—An instrument for the measurement of sound level.

Time-weighted average sound level—That sound level, which if constant over an 8-hour exposure, would result in the same noise dose as is measured.

1910.96—IONIZING RADIATION INTERP

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

(1) "Radiation" includes alpha rays, beta rays, gamma rays, X-rays, neutrons, high-speed electrons, high-speed protons, and other atomic particles; but such term does not include sound or radio waves, or visible light, or infrared or ultraviolet light.

(2) "Radioactive material" means any material which emits, by spontaneous nuclear disintegration, corpuscular or electromagnetic emanations.

(3) "Restricted area" means any area access to which is controlled by the employer for purposes of protection of individuals from exposure to radiation or radioactive materials.

(4) "Unrestricted area" means any area access to which is not controlled by the employer for purposes of protection of individuals from exposure to radiation or radioactive materials.

(5) "Dose" means the quantity of ionizing radiation absorbed, per unit of mass, by the body or by any portion of the body. When the provisions in this section specify a dose during a period of time, the dose is the total quantity of radiation absorbed, per unit of mass, by the body or by any portion of the body during such period of time. Several different units of dose are in current use. Definitions of units used in this section are set forth in subparagraphs (6) and (7) of this paragraph.

(6) "Rad" means a measure of the dose of any ionizing radiation to body tissues in terms of the energy absorbed per unit of mass of the tissue. One rad is the dose corresponding to the absorption of 100 ergs per gram of tissue (1 millirad (mrad) = 0.001 rad).

(7) "Rem" means a measure of the dose of any ionizing radiation to body tissue in terms of its estimated biological effect relative to a dose of 1 roentgen (r) of X-rays (1 millirem (mrem) = 0.001 rem). The relation of the rem to other dose units depends upon the biological effect under consideration and upon the conditions for irradiation. Each of the following is considered to be equivalent to a dose of 1 rem:

(i) A dose of 1 (r) due to X- or gamma radiation;

(ii) A dose of 1 rad due to X-, gamma, or beta radiation;

(iii) A dose of 0.1 rad due to neutrons or high energy protons;

(iv) A dose of 0.05 rad due to particles heavier than protons and with sufficient energy to reach the lens of the eye;

(v) If it is more convenient to measure the neutron flux, or equivalent, than to determine the neutron dose in rads, as provided in subdivision (iii) of this subparagraph, 1 rem of neutron radiation may, for purposes of the provisions in this section be assumed to be equivalent to 14 million neutrons per square centimeter incident upon the body; or, if there is sufficient information to estimate with reasonable accuracy the approximate distribution in energy of the neutrons, the incident number of neutrons per square centimeter equivalent to 1 rem may be estimated from Table G-17:

TABLE G-17—NEUTRON FLUX DOSE EQUIVALENTS

Neutron energy (million electron volts (Mev))	Number of neutrons per square centimeter equivalent to a dose of 1 rem (neutrons/cm²)	Average flux to deliver 100 millirem in 40 hours (neutrons/cm² per sec.)
Thermal	970×10^6	670
0.0001	720×10^6	500
0.005	820×10^6	570
0.02	400×10^6	280
0.1	120×10^6	80
0.5	43×10^6	30
1.0	26×10^6	18
2.5	29×10^6	20
5.0	26×10^6	18
7.5	24×10^6	17
10	24×10^6	17
10 to 30	14×10^6	10

(8) For determining exposures to X- or gamma rays up to 3 Mev., the dose limits specified in this section may be assumed to be equivalent to the "air dose." For the purpose of this section "air dose" means that the dose is measured by a properly calibrated appropriate instrument in air at or near the body surface in the region of the highest dosage rate.

(b) Exposure of individuals to radiation in restricted areas.

(1) Except as provided in subparagraph (2) of this paragraph, no employer shall possess, use, or transfer sources of ionizing radiation in such a manner as to cause any individual in a restricted area to receive in any period of one calendar quarter from sources in the employer's possession or control a dose in excess of the limits specified in Table G-18:

TABLE G-18

	Rems per calendar quarter
Whole body: Head and trunk; active blood-forming organs; lens of eyes; or gonads	**1¼**
Hands and forearms; feet and ankles	**18¾**
Skin of whole body	**7½**

(2) An employer may permit an individual in a restricted area to receive doses to the whole body greater than those permitted under subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, so long as:

(i) During any calendar quarter the dose to the whole body shall not exceed 3 rems; and

(ii) The dose to the whole body, when added to the accumulated occupational dose to the whole body, shall not exceed 5 (N–18) rems, where "N" equals the individual's age in years at his last birthday; and

(iii) The employer maintains adequate past and current exposure records which show that the addition of such a dose will not cause the individual to exceed the amount authorized in this subparagraph. As used in this subparagraph, "dose to the whole body" shall be deemed to include any dose to the whole body, gonad, active bloodforming organs, head and trunk, or lens of the eye.

(3) No employer shall permit any employee who is under 18 years of age to receive in any period of one calendar quarter a dose in excess of 10 percent of the limits specified in Table G-18.

(4) "Calendar quarter" means any 3-month period determined as follows:

(i) The first period of any year may begin on any date in January: *Provided*, That the second, third, and fourth periods accordingly begin on the same date in

April, July, and October, respectively, and that the fourth period extends into January of the succeeding year, if necessary to complete a 3-month quarter. During the first year of use of this method of determination, the first period for that year shall also include any additional days in January preceding the starting date for the first period; or

(ii) The first period in a calendar year of 13 complete, consecutive calendar weeks; the second period in a calendar year of 13 complete consecutive weeks; the third period in a calendar year of 13 complete, consecutive calendar weeks; the fourth period in a calendar year of 13 complete, consecutive calendar weeks. If at the end of a calendar year there are any days not falling within a complete calendar week of that year, such days shall be included within the last complete calendar week of that year. If at the beginning of any calendar year there are days not falling within a complete calendar week of that year, such days shall be included within the last complete calendar week of the previous year; or

(iii) The four periods in a calendar year may consist of the first 14 complete, consecutive calendar weeks; the next 12 complete, consecutive calendar weeks, the next 14 complete, consecutive calendar weeks, and the last 12 complete, consecutive calendar weeks. If at the end of a calendar year there are any days not falling within a complete calendar week of that year, such days shall be included (for purposes of this section) within the last complete calendar week of the year. If at the beginning of any calendar year there are days not falling within a complete calendar week of that year, such days shall be included (for purposes of this section) within the last complete week of the previous year.

(c) Exposure to airborne radioactive material.

(1) No employer shall possess, use or transport radioactive material in such a manner as to cause any employee, within a restricted area, to be exposed to airborne radioactive material in an average concentration in excess of the limits specified in Table 1 of Appendix B to 10 CFR Part 20. The limits given in Table 1 are for exposure to the concentrations specified for 40 hours in any workweek of 7 consecutive days. In any such period where the number of hours of exposure is less than 40, the limits specified in the table may be increased proportionately. In any such period where the number of hours of exposure is greater than 40, the limits specified in the table shall be decreased proportionately.

(2) No employer shall possess, use, or transfer radioactive material in such a manner as to cause any individual within a restricted area, who is under 18 years of age, to be exposed to airborne radioactive material in an average concentration in excess of the limits specified in Table II of Appendix B to 10 CFR Part 20. For purposes of this subparagraph, concentrations may be averaged over periods not greater than 1 week.

(3) "Exposed" as used in this paragraph means that the individual is present in an airborne concentration. No allowance shall be made for the use of protective clothing or equipment, or particle size.

(d) Precautionary procedures and personal monitoring.

(1) Every employer shall make such surveys as may be necessary for him to comply with the provisions in this section. "Survey" means an evaluation of the radiation hazards incident to the production, use, release, disposal, or presence of radioactive materials or other sources of radiation under a specific set of conditions. When appropriate, such evaluation includes a physical survey of the location of materials and equipment, and measurements of levels of radiation or concentrations of radioactive material present.

(2) Every employer shall supply appropriate personnel monitoring equipment, such as film badges, pocket chambers, pocket dosimeters, or film rings, to, and shall require the use of such equipment by:

(i) Each employee who enters a restricted area under such circumstances that he receives, or is likely to receive, a dose in any calendar quarter in excess of 25 percent of the applicable value specified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section; and

(ii) Each employee under 18 years of age who enters a restricted area under such circumstances that he receives, or is likely to receive, a dose in any calendar quarter in excess of 5 percent of the applicable value specified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section; and

(iii) Each employee who enters a high radiation area.

(3) As used in this section:

(i) "Personnel monitoring equipment" means devices designed to be worn or carried by an individual for the purpose of measuring the dose received (e.g., film badges, pocket chambers, pocket dosimeters, film rings, etc.);

(ii) "Radiation area" means any area, accessible to personnel, in which there exists radiation at such levels that a major portion of the body could receive in any 1 hour a dose in excess of 5 millirem, or in any 5 consecutive days a dose in excess of 100 millirem; and

(iii) "High radiation area" means any area, accessible to personnel, in which there exists radiation at such levels that a major portion of the body could receive in any one hour a dose in excess of 100 millirem.

(e) Caution signs, labels, and signals.

(1) General.

(i) Symbols prescribed by this paragraph shall use the conventional radiation caution colors (magenta or purple on yellow background). The symbol prescribed by this paragraph is the conventional three-bladed design:

RADIATION SYMBOL

1. Cross-hatched area is to be magenta or purple.

2. Background is to be yellow.

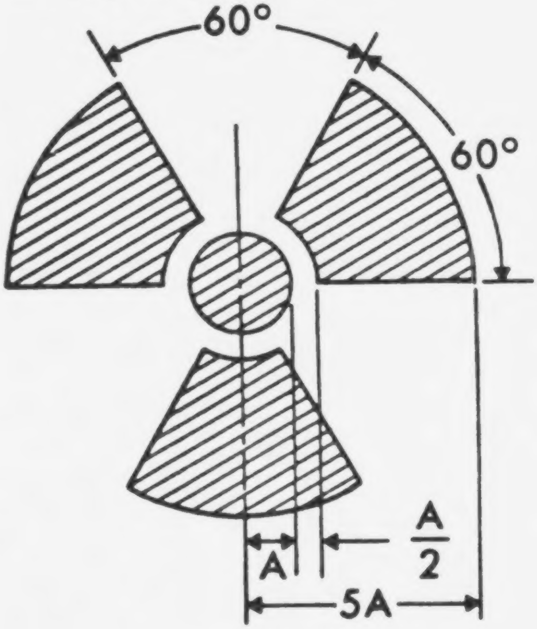


FIGURE G–10

(ii) Deleted

[43 F.R. 49746, October 24, 1978]

(2) Radiation area. Each radiation area shall be conspicuously posted with a sign or signs bearing the radiation caution symbol described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph and the words:

CAUTION
RADIATION AREA

(3) High radiation area.

(i) Each high radiation area shall be conspicuously posted with a sign or signs bearing the radiation caution symbol and the words:

CAUTION
HIGH RADIATION AREA

(ii) Each high radiation area shall be equipped with a control device which shall either cause the level of radiation to be reduced below that at which an individual might receive a dose of 100 millirems in 1 hour upon entry into the area or shall energize a conspicuous visible or audible alarm signal in such a manner that the individual entering and the employer or a supervisor of the activity are made aware of the entry. In the case of a high radiation area established for a period of 30 days or less, such control device is not required.

(4) Airborne radioactivity area.

(i) As used in the provisions of this section, "airborne radioactivity area" means:

(a) Any room, enclosure, or operating area in which airborne radioactive materials, composed wholly or partly of radioactive material, exist in concentrations in excess of the amounts specified in column 1 of Table 1 of Appendix B to 10 CFR Part 20 or

(b) Any room, enclosure, or operating area in which airborne radioactive materials exist in concentrations which, averaged over the number of hours in any week during which individuals are in the area, exceed 25 percent of the amounts specified in column 1 of Table 1 of Appendix B to 10 CFR Part 20.

(ii) Each airborne radioactivity area shall be conspicuously posted with a sign or signs bearing the radiation caution symbol described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph and the words:

CAUTION
AIRBORNE RADIOACTIVITY AREA

(5) Additional requirements.

(i) Each area or room in which radioactive material is used or stored and which contains any radioactive material (other than natural uranium or thorium) in any amount exceeding 10 times the quantity of such material specified in Appendix C to 10 CFR Part 20 shall be conspicuously posted with a sign or signs bearing the radiation caution symbol described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph and the words:

CAUTION
RADIOACTIVE MATERIALS

(ii) Each area or room in which natural uranium or thorium is used or stored in an amount exceeding 100 times the quantity of such material specified in 10 CFR Part 20 shall be conspicuously posted with a sign or signs bearing the radiation caution symbol described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph and the words:

CAUTION
RADIOACTIVE MATERIALS

(6) Containers.

(i) Each container in which is transported, stored, or used a quantity of any radioactive material (other than natural uranium or thorium) greater than the quantity of such material specified in Appendix C to 10 CFR Part 20 shall bear a durable, clearly visible label bearing the radiation caution symbol described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph and the words:

CAUTION
RADIOACTIVE MATERIALS

(ii) Each container in which natural uranium or thorium is transported, stored, or used in a quantity greater than 10 times the quantity specified in Appendix C to 10 CFR Part 20 shall bear a durable, clearly visible label bearing the radiation caution symbol described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph and the words:

CAUTION
RADIOACTIVE MATERIALS

(iii) Notwithstanding the provisions of subdivisions (i) and (ii) of this subparagraph a label shall not be required:

(a) If the concentration of the material in the container does not exceed that specified in column 2 of Table 1 of Appendix B to 10 CFR Part 20, or

(b) For laboratory containers, such as beakers, flasks, and test tubes, used transiently in laboratory procedures, when the user is present.

(iv) Where containers are used for storage, the labels required in this subparagraph shall state also the quantities and kinds of radioactive materials in the containers and the date of measurement of the quantities.

(f) Immediate evacuation warning signal.

(1) Signal characteristics.

(i) The signal shall be a midfrequency complex sound wave amplitude modulated at a subsonic frequency. The complex sound wave in free space shall have a fundamental frequency (f_1) between 450 and 500 hertz (Hz) modulated at a subsonic rate between 4 and 5 hertz.

(ii) The signal generator shall not be less than 75 decibels at every location where an individual may be present whose immediate, rapid, and complete evacuation is essential.

(iii) A sufficient number of signal units shall be installed such that the requirements of subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph are met at every location where an individual may be present whose immediate, rapid, and complete evacuation is essential.

(iv) The signal shall be unique in the plant or facility in which it is installed.

(v) The minimum duration of the signal shall be sufficient to insure that all affected persons hear the signal.

(vi) The signal-generating system shall respond automatically to an initiating event without requiring any human action to sound the signal.

(2) Design objectives.

(i) The signal-generating system shall be designed to incorporate components which enable the system to produce the desired signal each time it is activated within one-half second of activation.

(ii) The signal-generating system shall be provided with an automatically activated secondary power supply which is adequate to simultaneously power all emergency equipment to which it is connected, if operation during power failure is necessary, except in those systems using batteries as the primary source of power.

(iii) All components of the signal-generating system shall be located to provide maximum practicable protection against damage in case of fire, explosion, corrosive atmosphere, or other environmental extremes consistent with adequate system performance.

(iv) The signal-generating system shall be designed with the minimum number of components necessary to make it function as intended, and should utilize components which do not require frequent servicing such as lubrication or cleaning.

(v) Where several activating devices feed activating information to a central signal generator, failure of any activating device shall not render the signal-generator system inoperable to activating information from the remaining devices.

(vi) The signal-generating system shall be designed to enhance the probability that alarm occurs only when immediate evacuation is warranted. The number of false alarms shall not be so great that the signal will come to be disregarded and shall be low enough to minimize personal injuries or excessive property damage that might result from such evacuation.

(3) Testing.

(i) Initial tests, inspections, and checks of the signal-generating system shall be made to verify that the fabrication and installation were made in accordance with design plans and specifications and to develop a thorough knowledge of the performance of the system and all components under normal and hostile conditions.

(ii) Once the system has been placed in service, periodic tests, inspections, and checks shall be made to minimize the possibility of malfunction.

(iii) Following significant alterations or revisions to the system, tests and checks similar to the initial installation tests shall be made.

(iv) Tests shall be designed to minimize hazards while conducting the tests.

(v) Prior to normal operation the signal-generating system shall be checked physically and functionally to assure reliability and to demonstrate accuracy and performance. Specific tests shall include:

(a) All power sources.

(b) Calibration and calibration stability.

(c) Trip levels and stability.

(d) Continuity of function with loss and return of required services such as AC or DC power, air pressure, etc.

(e) All indicators.

(f) Trouble indicator circuits and signals, where used.

(g) Air pressure (if used).

(h) Determine that sound level of the signal is within the limit of subparagraph (1)(ii) of this paragraph at all points that require immediate evacuation.

(vi) In addition to the initial startup and operating tests, periodic scheduled performance tests and status checks must be made to insure that the system is at all times operating within design limits and capable of the required response. Specific periodic tests or checks or both shall include:

(a) Adequacy of signal activation device.

(b) All power sources.

(c) Function of all alarm circuits and trouble indicator circuits including trip levels.

(d) Air pressure (if used).

(e) Function of entire system including operation without power where required.

(f) Complete operational tests including sounding of the signal and determination that sound levels are adequate.

(vii) Periodic tests shall be scheduled on the basis of need, experience, difficulty, and disruption of operations. The entire system should be operationally tested at least quarterly.

(viii) All employees whose work may necessitate their presence in an area covered by the signal shall be made familiar with the actual sound of the signal—preferably as it sounds at their work location. Before placing the system into operation, all employees normally working in the area shall be made acquainted with the signal by actual demonstration at their work locations.

(g) Exceptions from posting requirements.

Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (e) of this section:

(1) A room or area is not required to be posted with a caution sign because of the presence of a sealed source, provided the radiation level 12 inches from the surface of the source container or housing does not exceed 5 millirem per hour.

(2) Rooms or other areas in onsite medical facilities are not required to be posted with caution signs because of the presence of patients containing radioactive material, provided that there are personnel in attendance who shall take the precautions necessary to prevent the exposure of any individual to radiation or radioactive material in excess of the limits established in the provisions of this section.

(3) Caution signs are not required to be posted at areas or rooms containing radioactive materials for periods of less than 8 hours: *Provided*, That

(i) The materials are constantly attended during such periods by an individual who shall take the precautions necessary to prevent the exposure of any individual to radiation or radioactive materials in excess of the limits established in the provisions of this section; and

(ii) Such area or room is subject to the employer's control.

(h) Exemptions for radioactive materials packaged for shipment.

Radioactive materials packaged and labeled in accordance with regulations of the Department of Transportation published in 49 CFR Chapter I, are exempt from the labeling and posting requirements of this subpart during shipment, provided that the inside containers are labeled in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (e) of this section.

(i) Instruction of personnel, posting.

(1) Employers regulated by the Atomic Energy Commission shall be governed by 10 CFR Part 20 standards. Employers in a State named in paragraph (p)(3) of this section shall be governed by the requirements of the laws and regulations of that State. All other employers shall be regulated by the following:

(2) All individuals working in or frequenting any portion of a radiation area shall be informed of the occurrence of radioactive materials or of radiation in such portions of the radiation area; shall be instructed in the safety problems associated with exposure to such materials or radiation and in precautions or devices to minimize exposure; shall be instructed in the applicable provisions of this section for the protection of employees from exposure to radiation or radioactive materials; and shall be advised of reports of radiation exposure which employees may request pursuant to the regulations in this section.

(3) Each employer to whom this section applies shall post a current copy of its provisions and a copy of the operating procedures applicable to the work conspicuously in such locations as to insure that employees working in or frequenting radiation areas will observe these documents on the way to and from their place of employment, or shall keep such documents available for examination of employees upon request.

(j) Storage of radioactive materials.

Radioactive materials stored in a nonradiation area shall be secured against unauthorized removal from the place of storage.

(k) Waste disposal.

No employer shall dispose of radioactive material except by transfer to an authorized recipient, or in a manner approved by the Atomic Energy Commission or a State named in paragraph (p)(3) of this section.

(l) Notification of incidents.

(1) Immediate notification. Each employer shall immediately notify the Assistant Secretary of Labor or his duly authorized representative, for employees not protected by the Atomic Energy Commission by means of 10 CFR Part 20; paragraph (p)(2) of this section, or the requirements of the laws and regulations of States named in paragraph (p)(3) of this section, by telephone or telegraph of any incident involving radiation which may have caused or threatens to cause:

(i) Exposure of the whole body of any individual to 25 rems or more of radiation; exposure of the skin of the whole body of any individual to 150 rems or more of radiation; or exposure of the feet, ankles, hands, or forearms of any individual to 375 rems or more of radiation; or

(ii) The release of radioactive material in concentrations which, if averaged over a period of 24 hours, would exceed 5,000 times the limit specified for such materials in Table II of Appendix B to 10 CFR Part 20.

(2) Twenty-four hour notification. Each employer shall within 24 hours following its occurrence notify the Assistant Secretary of Labor or his duly authorized representative for employees not protected by the Atomic Energy Commission by means of 10 CFR Part 20; paragraph (p)(2) of this section, or the requirements of the laws and applicable regulations of States named in paragraph (p)(3) of this section, by telephone or telegraph of any incident involving radiation which may have caused or threatens to cause:

(i) Exposure of the whole body of any individual to 5 rems or more of radiation; exposure of the skin of the whole body of any individual to 30 rems or more of radiation; or exposure of the feet, ankles, hands, or forearms to 75 rems or more of radiation; or

(m) Reports of overexposure and excessive levels and concentrations.

(1) In addition to any notification required by paragraph (l) of this section each employer shall make a report in writing within 30 days to the Assistant Secretary of Labor or his duly authorized representative, for employees not protected by the Atomic Energy Commission by means of 10 CFR Part 20; or under paragraph (p)(2) of this section, or the requirements of the laws and regulations of States named in paragraph (p)(3) of this section, of each exposure of an individual to radiation or concentrations of radioactive material in excess of any applicable limit in this section. Each report required under this subparagraph shall describe the extent of exposure of persons to radiation or to radioactive material; levels of radiation and concentration of radioactive material involved, the cause of the exposure, levels of concentrations; and corrective steps taken or planned to assure against a recurrence.

(2) In any case where an employer is required pursuant to the provisions of this paragraph to report to the U.S. Department of Labor any exposure of an individual to radiation or to concentrations of radioactive material, the employer shall also notify such individual of the nature and extent of exposure. Such notice shall be in writing and shall contain the following statement: "You should preserve this report for future reference."

(n) Records.

(1) Every employer shall maintain records of the radiation exposure of all employees for whom personnel monitoring is required under paragraph (d) of this section and advise each of his employees of his individual exposure on at least an annual basis.

(2) Every employer shall maintain records in the same units used in tables in paragraph (b) of this section and Appendix B to 10 CFR Part 20.

(o) Disclosure to former employee of individual employee's record.

(1) At the request of a former employee an employer shall furnish to the employee a report of the employee's exposure to radiation as shown in records maintained by the employer pursuant to paragraph (n)(1) of this section. Such report shall be furnished within 30 days from the time the request is made, and shall cover each calendar quarter of the individual's employment involving exposure to radiation or such lesser period as may be requested by the employee. The report shall also include the results of any calculations and analysis of radioactive material deposited in the body of the employee. The report shall be in writing and contain the following statement: "You should preserve this report for future reference."

(p) Atomic Energy Commission licensees—AEC contractors operating AEC plants and facilities—AEC agreement State licensees or registrants.

(1) Any employer who possesses or uses source material, byproduct material, or special nuclear material, as defined in the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, under a license issued by the Atomic Energy Commission and in accordance with the requirements of 10 CFR Part 20 shall be deemed to be in compliance with the requirements of this section with respect to such possession and use.

(2) AEC contractors operating AEC plants and facilities: Any employer who possesses or uses source material, byproduct material, special nuclear material, or other radiation sources under a contract with the Atomic Energy Commission for the operation of AEC plants and facilities and in accordance with the standards, procedures, and other requirements for radiation protection established by the Commission for such contract pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act of 1954 as amended (42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.), shall be deemed to be in compliance with the requirements of this section with respect to such possession and use.

(3) AEC-agreement State licensees or registrants:

(i) Atomic Energy Act sources. Any employer who possesses or uses source material, byproduct material, or special nuclear material, as defined in the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended (42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.), and has either registered such sources with, or is operating under a license issued by, a State which has an agreement in effect with the Atomic Energy Commission pursuant to section 274(b) (42 U.S.C. 2021(b)) of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, and in accordance with the requirements of that State's laws and regulations shall be deemed to be in compliance with the radiation requirements of this section, insofar as his possession and use of such material is concerned, unless the Secretary of Labor, after conference with the Atomic Energy Commission, shall determine that the State's program for control of these radiation sources is incompatible with the requirements of this section. Such agreements currently are in effect only in the States of Alabama, Arkansas, California, Kansas, Kentucky, Florida, Mississippi, New Hampshire, New York, North Carolina, Texas, Tennessee, Oregon, Idaho, Arizona, Colorado, Louisiana, Nebraska, Washington, Maryland, North Dakota, South Carolina, and Georgia.

(ii) Other sources. Any employer who possesses or uses radiation sources other than source material, byproduct material, or special nuclear material, as defined in the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended (42 U.S.C. 2011 et seq.), and has either registered such sources with, or is operating under a license issued by a State which has an agreement in effect with the Atomic Energy Commission pursuant to section 274(b) (42 U.S.C. 2021(b)) of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, and in accordance with the requirements of that State's laws and regulations shall be deemed to be in compliance with the radiation requirements of this section, insofar as his possession and use of such material is concerned, provided the State's program for control of these radiation sources is the subject of a currently effective determination by the Assistant Secretary of Labor that such program is compatible with the requirements of this section. Such determinations currently are in effect only in the States of Alabama, Arkansas, California, Kansas, Kentucky, Florida, Mississippi, New Hampshire, New York, North Carolina, Texas, Tennessee, Oregon, Idaho, Arizona, Colorado, Louisiana, Nebraska, Washington, Maryland, North Dakota, South Carolina, and Georgia.

(q) [Reserved]

(r) Radiation standards for mining. Revoked

1910.97—NONIONIZING RADIATION

(a) Electromagnetic radiation.

(1) Definitions applicable to this paragraph.

(i) The term "electromagnetic radiation" is restricted to that portion of the spectrum commonly defined as the radio frequency region, which for the purpose of this specification shall include the microwave frequency region.

(ii) Partial body irradiation. Pertains to the case in which part of the body is exposed to the incident electromagnetic energy.

(iii) Radiation protection guide. Radiation level which should not be exceeded without careful consideration of the reasons for doing so.

(iv) The word "symbol" as used in this specification refers to the overall design, shape, and coloring of the rf radiation sign shown in figure G-11.

(v) Whole body irradiation. Pertains to the case in which the entire body is exposed to the incident electromagnetic energy or in which the cross section of the body is smaller than the cross section of the incident radiation beam.

(2) Radiation protection guide.

(i) For normal environmental conditions and for incident electromagnetic energy of frequencies from 10 MHz to 100 GHz, the radiation protection guide is 10 mW/cm.^{2} (milliwatt per square centimeter) as averaged over any possible 0.1-hour period. This means the following:

Power density: 10 mW./cm.^{2} for periods of 0.1-hour or more.
Energy density: 1 mW.-hr./cm.^{2} (milliwatt hour per square centimeter) during any 0.1-hour period.

This guide applies whether the radiation is continuous or intermittent.

(ii) These formulated recommendations pertain to both whole body irradiation and partial body irradiation. Partial body irradiation must be included since it has been shown that some parts of the human body (e.g., eyes, testicles) may be harmed if exposed to incident radiation levels significantly in excess of the recommended levels.

(3) Warning symbol.

(i) The warning symbol for radio frequency radiation hazards shall consist of a red isosceles triangle above an inverted black isosceles triangle, separated and outlined by an aluminum color border. The words "Warning—Radio-Frequency Radiation Hazard" shall appear in the upper triangle. See figure G-11.

(ii) American National Standard Safety Color Code for Marking Physical Hazards and the Identification of Certain Equipment, Z53.1-1953, shall be used for color specification. All lettering and the border shall be of aluminum color.

(iii) The inclusion and choice of warning information or precautionary instructions is at the discretion of the user. If such information is included it shall appear in the lower triangle of the warning symbol.

(4) Scope. This section applies to all radiations originating from radio stations, radar equipment, and other possible sources of electromagnetic radiation such as used for communication, radio navigation, and industrial and scientific purposes. This section does not apply to the deliberate exposure of patients by, or under the direction of, practitioners of the healing arts.

1910.98—EFFECTIVE DATES

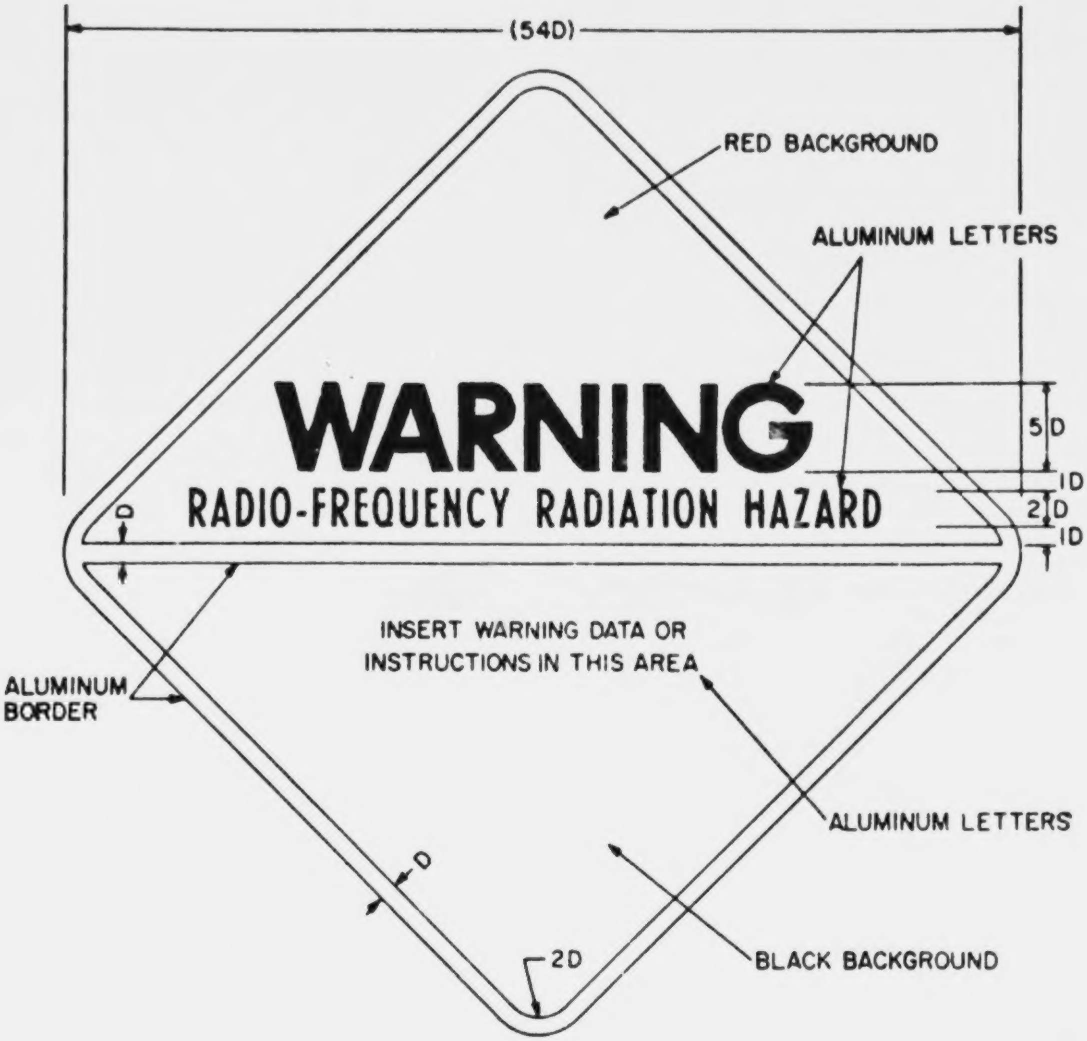
(a) The provisions of this Subpart G shall become effective on August 27, 1971, except as provided in the remaining paragraphs of this section.

(b) The following provisions shall become effective on February 15, 1972:

§ 1910.94 (a)(2)(iii), (a)(3), (a)(4), (b), (c)(2), (c)(3), (c)(4), (c)(5), (c)(6)(i), (c)(6)(ii), (d)(1)(ii), (d)(3), (d)(4), (d)(5), and (d)(7).

(c) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a), (b), or (d) of this section, any provision in any other section of this subpart which contains in itself a specific effective date or time limitation shall become effective on such date

best copy available


(54D)
RED BACKGROUND
ALUMINUM LETTERS
WARNING
RADIO-FREQUENCY RADIATION HAZARD
5 D
1D
2 D
1D
D
INSERT WARNING DATA OR INSTRUCTIONS IN THIS AREA
ALUMINUM BORDER
ALUMINUM LETTERS
D
2D
BLACK BACKGROUND

1. Place handling and mounting instructions on reverse side
2. D = Scaling unit
3. Lettering: Ratio of letter height to thickness of letter lines.

Upper triangle :	5 to 1	Large
	6 to 1	Medium
Lower triangle	4 to 1	Small
	6 to 1	Medium

4. Symbol is square, triangles are right-angle isosceles

Fig. G-11
Radio-Frequency Radiation Hazard Warning Symbol

or shall apply in accordance with such limitation.

(d) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a) of this section, if any standard in 41 CFR Part 50–204, other than a national consensus standard incorporated by reference in § 50–204.2(a)(1), is or becomes applicable at any time to any employment and place of employment, by virtue of the Walsh-Healey Public Contracts Act, or the Service Contract Act of 1965, or the National Foundation on Arts and Humanities Act of 1965, any corresponding established Federal standard in this Subpart G which is derived from 41 CFR Part 50–204 shall also become effective, and shall be applicable to such employment and place of employment, on the same date.

1910.99—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

Section	*Source*
1910.94(a)	ANSI Z9.4-1968, Ventilation and Safe Practices of Abrasive Blasting Operations.
[47 F.R. 25323, June 11, 1982]	
1910.94(b)	ANSI Z43.1-1966, Ventilation Control of Grinding, Polishing, and Buffing Operations.
1910.94(c)	ANSI Z9.3-1970, Safety Code for the Design, Construction and Ventilation of Spray Finishing Operations.
1910.94(d)	ANSI Z9.1-1969, Safety Code for Ventilation and Operation of Open-Surface Tanks.
1910.95	41 CFR 50–204.10.
1910.96(a) through (e) and (g) through (r).	41 CFR 50–204.20.
1910.96(f)	ANSI N2.3–1967, Immediate Evacuation Signal for Use in Industrial Installations Where Radiation Exposure May Occur.
1910.97	ANSI C95.1-1966, Safety Level of Electromagnetic Radiation with Respect to Personnel and American National Standards Institute C95.2-1966, Radio Frequency Radiation Hazard and Warning Signal.

1910.100—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

Specific standards of the following organizations have been referenced in this subpart. Copies of the standards may be obtained from the issuing organization.

American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists, 1014 Broadway, Cincinnati, OH 45202.
American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.
National Fire Protection Association, 60 Batterymarch Street, Boston, MA 02110.

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART H—HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

1910.101 Compressed gases (general requirements).
1910.102 Acetylene.
1910.103 Hydrogen.
1910.104 Oxygen.
1910.105 Nitrous oxide.
1910.106 Flammable and combustible liquids.
1910.107 Spray finishing using flammable and combustible materials.
1910.108 Dip tanks containing flammable or combustible liquids.
1910.109 Explosives and blasting agents.
1910.110 Storage and handling of liquefied petroleum gases.
1910.111 Storage and handling of anhydrous ammonia.
1910.112 [Reserved]
1910.113 [Reserved]
1910.114 Additional delay in effective date.
1910.115 Sources of standards.
1910.116 Standards organizations.
1910.120 Hazardous waste operations and emergency response.

SUBPART H—HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

1910.101—COMPRESSED GASES (GENERAL REQUIREMENTS)

(a) Inspection of compressed gas cylinders.

Each employer shall determine that compressed gas cylinders under his control are in a safe condition to the extent that this can be determined by visual inspection. Visual and other inspections shall be conducted as prescribed in the Hazardous Materials Regulations of the Department of Transportation (49 CFR Parts 171-179 and 14 CFR Part 103). Where those regulations are not applicable, visual and other inspections shall be conducted in accordance with Compressed Gas Association Pamphlets C-6-1968 and C-8-1962.

(b) Compressed gases.

The in-plant handling, storage, and utilization of all compressed gases in cylinders, portable tanks, rail tankcars, or motor vehicle cargo tanks shall be in accordance with Compressed Gas Association Pamphlet P-1-1965.

(c) Safety relief devices for compressed gas containers.

Compressed gas cylinders, portable tanks, and cargo tanks shall have pressure relief devices installed and maintained in accordance with Compressed Gas Association Pamphlets S-1.1-1963 and 1965 addenda and S-1.2-1963.

1910.102—ACETYLENE

(a) Cylinders.

The in-plant transfer, handling, storage, and utilization of acetylene in cylinders shall be in accordance with Compressed Gas Association Pamphlet G-1-1966.

(b) Piped systems.

The piped systems for the inplant transfer and distribution of acetylene shall be designed, installed, maintained, and operated in accordance with Compressed Gas Association Pamphlet G-1.3-1959.

(c) Generators and filling cylinders.

Plants for the generation of acetylene and the charging (filling) of acetylene cylinders shall be designed, constructed, and tested in accordance with the standards prescribed in Compressed Gas Association Pamphlet G-1.4-1966.

1910.103—HYDROGEN

(a) General.

(1) Definitions. As used in this section.

(i) Gaseous hydrogen system is one in which the hydrogen is delivered, stored and discharged in the gaseous form to consumer's piping. The system includes stationary or movable containers, pressure regulators, safety relief devices, manifolds, interconnecting piping and controls. The system terminates at the point where hydrogen at service pressure first enters the consumer's distribution piping.

(ii) Approved—Means, unless otherwise indicated, listed or approved by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12121, April 12, 1988]

(iii) Listed—See "approved."

(iv) ASME—American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

(v) DOT Specifications—Regulations of the Department of Transportation published in 49 CFR Chapter I.

(vi) DOT regulations—See § 1910.103 (a)(1)(v).

(2) Scope.

(i) Gaseous hydrogen systems.

(a) Paragraph (b) of this section applies to the installation of gaseous hydrogen systems on consumer premises where the hydrogen supply to the consumer premises originates outside the consumer premises and is delivered by mobile equipment.

(b) Paragraph (b) of this section does not apply to gaseous hydrogen systems having a total hydrogen content of less than 400 cubic feet, nor to hydrogen manufacturing plants or other establishments operated by the hydrogen supplier or his agent for the purpose of storing hydrogen and refilling portable containers, trailers, mobile supply trucks, or tank cars.

(ii) Liquefied hydrogen systems.

(a) Paragraph (c) of this section applies to the installation of liquefied hydrogen systems on consumer premises.

(b) Paragraph (c) of this section does not apply to liquefied hydrogen portable containers of less than 150 liters (39.63 gallons) capacity; nor to liquefied hydrogen manufacturing plants or other establishments operated by the hydrogen supplier or his agent for the sole purpose of storing liquefied hydrogen and refilling portable containers, trailers, mobile supply trucks, or tank cars.

(b) Gaseous hydrogen systems.

(1) Design.

(i) Containers.

(a) Hydrogen containers shall comply with one of the following:

(1) Designed, constructed, and tested in accordance with appropriate requirements of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII—Unfired Pressure Vessels—1968.

(2) Designed, constructed, tested and maintained in accordance with U.S. Department of Transportation Specifications and Regulations.

(b) Permanently installed containers shall be provided with substantial noncombustible supports on firm noncombustible foundations.

(c) Each portable container shall be legibly marked with the name "Hydrogen" in accordance with "Marking Portable Compressed Gas Containers to Identify the Material Contained" ANSI Z48.1—1954. Each manifolded hydrogen supply unit shall be legibly marked with the name Hydrogen or a legend such as "This unit contains hydrogen."

(ii) Safety relief devices.

(a) Hydrogen containers shall be equipped with safety relief devices as required by the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII Unfired Pressure Vessels, 1968 or the DOT Specifications and Regulations under which the container is fabricated.

(b) Safety relief devices shall be arranged to discharge upward and unobstructed to the open air in such a manner as to prevent any impingement of escaping gas upon the container, adjacent structure or personnel. This requirement does not apply to DOT Specification containers having an internal volume of 2 cubic feet or less.

(c) Safety relief devices or vent piping shall be designed or located so that moisture cannot collect and freeze in a manner which would interfere with proper operation of the device.

(iii) Piping, tubing, and fittings.

(a) Piping, tubing, and fittings shall be suitable for hydrogen service and for the pressures and temperatures involved. Cast iron pipe and fittings shall not be used.

(b) Piping and tubing shall conform to Section 2—"Industrial Gas and Air Piping"—Code for Pressure Piping, ANSI B31.1-1967 with addenda B31.1-1969.

(c) Joints in piping and tubing may be made by welding or brazing or by use of flanged, threaded, socket, or compression fittings. Gaskets and thread sealants shall be suitable for hydrogen service.

(iv) Equipment assembly.

(a) Valves, gauges, regulators, and other accessories shall be suitable for hydrogen service.

(b) Installation of hydrogen systems shall be supervised by personnel familiar with proper practices with reference to their construction and use.

(c) Storage containers, piping, valves, regulating equipment, and other accessories shall be readily accessible, and shall be protected against physical damage and against tampering.

(d) Cabinets or housings containing hydrogen control or operating equipment shall be adequately ventilated.

(e) Each mobile hydrogen supply unit used as part of a hydrogen system shall be adequately secured to prevent movement.

(f) Mobile hydrogen supply units shall be electrically bonded to the system before discharging hydrogen.

(v) Marking. The hydrogen storage location shall be permanently placarded as follows: "HYDROGEN—FLAMMABLE GAS—NO SMOKING—NO OPEN FLAMES," or equivalent.

(vi) Testing. After installations, all piping, tubing, and fittings shall be tested and proved hydrogen gas tight at maximum operating pressure.

(2) Location.

(i) General.

(a) The system shall be located so that it is readily accessible to delivery equipment and to authorized personnel.

(b) Systems shall be located above ground.

(c) Systems shall not be located beneath electric power lines.

(d) Systems shall not be located close to flammable liquid piping or piping of other flammable gases.

(e) Systems near aboveground flammable liquid storage shall be located on ground higher than the flammable liquid storage except when dikes, diversion curbs, grading, or separating solid walls are used to prevent accumulation of flammable liquids under the system.

(ii) Specific requirements.

(a) The location of a system, as determined by the maximum total contained volume of hydrogen, shall be in the order of preference as indicated by Roman numerals in Table H-1.

(b) The minimum distance in feet from a hydrogen system of indicated capacity located outdoors, in separate buildings or in special rooms to any specified outdoor exposure shall be in accordance with Table H-2.

TABLE H-1

Nature of location	Size of hydrogen system		
	Less than 3,000 CF	3,000 CF to 15,000 CF	In excess of 15,000 CF
Outdoors	I	I	I.
In a separate building	II	II	II.
In a special room	III	III	Not permitted.
Inside buildings not in a special room and exposed to other occupancies.	IV	Not permitted.	Not permitted.

TABLE H-2

Type of outdoor exposure		Size of hydrogen system		
		Less than 3,000 CF	3,000 CF to 15,000 CF	In excess of 15,000 CF
1. Building or structure	Wood frame construction*	10	25	50
	Heavy timber, noncombustible or ordinary construction*	0	10	**25
	Fire-resistive construction*	0	0	0
2. Wall openings	Not above any part of a system	10	10	10
	Above any part of a system	25	25	25
3. Flammable liquids above ground.	0 to 1,000 gallons	10	25	25
	In excess of 1,000 gallons	25	50	50
4. Flammable liquids below ground – 0 to 1,000 gallons.	Tank	10	10	10
	Vent or fill opening of tank	25	25	25
5. Flammable liquids below ground – in excess of 1,000 gallons.	Tank	20	20	20
	Vent or fill opening of tank	25	25	25
6. Flammable gas storage, either high pressure or low pressure.	0 to 15,000 CF capacity	10	25	25
	In excess of 15,000 CF capacity	25	50	50
7. Oxygen storage	12,000 CF or less	Refer to NFPA No. 51, gas systems for welding and cutting (1969).		
	More than 12,000 CF	Refer to NFPA No. 566, bulk oxygen systems at consumer sites (1969).		
8. Fast burning solids such as ordinary lumber, excelsior or paper		50	50	50
9. Slow burning solids such as heavy timber or coal		25	25	25
10. Open flames and other sources of ignition		25	25	25
11. Air compressor intakes or inlets to ventilating or air-conditioning equipment		50	50	50
12. Concentration of people***		25	50	50

---

*Refer to NFPA No. 220 Standard Types of Building Construction for definitions of various types of construction. (1969 Ed.)

**But not less than one-half the height of adjacent side wall of the structure.

***In congested areas such as offices, lunchrooms, locker rooms, time-clock areas, and places of public assembly

(c) The distances in Table H-2 Items 1, 14, and 3 to 10 inclusive do not apply where protective structures such as adequate fire walls are located between the system and the exposure.

(d) Hydrogen systems of less than 3,000 CF when located inside buildings and exposed to other occupancies shall be situated in the building so that the system will be as follows:

(1) In an adequately ventilated area as in subparagraph (3)(ii)(*b*) of this paragraph.

(2) Twenty feet from stored flammable materials or oxidizing gases.

(3) Twenty-five feet from open flames, ordinary electrical equipment or other sources of ignition.

(4) Twenty-five feet from concentrations of people.

(5) Fifty feet from intakes of ventilation or air-conditioning equipment and air compressors.

(6) Fifty feet from other flammable gas storage.

(7) Protected against damage or injury due to falling objects or working activity in the area.

(8) More than one system of 3,000 CF or less may be installed in the same room, provided the systems are separated by at least 50 feet. Each such system shall meet all of the requirements of this paragraph.

(3) Design consideration at specific locations.

(i) Outdoor locations.

(a) Where protective walls or roofs are provided, they shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

(b) Where the enclosing sides adjoin each other, the area shall be properly ventilated.

(c) Electrical equipment within 15 feet shall be in accordance with subpart S of this part.

(ii) Separate buildings.

(a) Separate buildings shall be built of at least noncombustible construction. Windows and doors shall be located so as to be readily accessible in case of emergency. Windows shall be of glass or plastic in metal frames.

(b) Adequate ventilation to the outdoors shall be provided. Inlet openings shall be located near the floor in exterior walls only. Outlet openings shall be located at the high point of the room in exterior walls or roof. Inlet and outlet openings shall each have minimum total area of one (1) square foot per 1,000 cubic feet of room volume. Discharge from outlet openings shall be directed or conducted to a safe location.

(c) Explosion venting shall be provided in exterior walls or roof only. The venting area shall be equal to not less than 1 square foot per 30 cubic feet of room volume and may consist of any one or any combination of the following: walls of light, noncombustible material, preferably single thickness, single strength glass; lightly fastened hatch covers; lightly fastened swinging doors in exterior walls opening outward; lightly fastened walls or roof designed to relieve at a maximum pressure of 25 pounds per square foot.

(d) There shall be no sources of ignition from open flames, electrical equipment, or heating equipment.

(e) Electrical equipment shall be in accordance with subpart S of this part for Class I, Division 2 locations.

(f) Heating, if provided, shall be by steam, hot water, or other indirect means.

(iii) Special rooms.

(*a*) Floor, walls, and ceiling shall have a fire-resistance rating of at least 2 hours. Walls or partitions shall be continuous from floor to ceiling and shall be securely anchored. At least one wall shall be an exterior wall. Openings to other parts of the building shall not be permitted. Windows and doors shall be in exterior walls and shall be located so as to be readily accessible in case of emergency. Windows shall be of glass or plastic in metal frames.

(*b*) Ventilation shall be as provided in subdivision (ii)(*b*) of this subparagraph.

(*c*) Explosion venting shall be as provided in subdivision (ii)(*c*) of this subparagraph.

(*d*) There shall be no sources of ignition from open flames, electrical equipment, or heating equipment.

(*e*) Electrical equipment shall be in accordance with Article 501 of the National Electrical Code, NFPA No. 70–1971; ANSI C1-1971 (Rev. of C1-1968), for Class I, Division 2 locations.

(*f*) Heating, if provided, shall be by steam, hot water, or indirect means.

(4) Operating instructions. For installations which require any operation of equipment by the user, legible instructions shall be maintained at operating locations.

(5) Maintenance. The equipment and functioning of each charged gaseous hydrogen system shall be maintained in a safe operating condition in accordance with the requirements of this section. The area within 15 feet of any hydrogen container shall be kept free of dry vegetation and combustible material.

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

(c) Liquefied hydrogen systems.

(1) Design.

(i) Containers.

(*a*) Hydrogen containers shall comply with the following: Storage containers shall be designed, constructed, and tested in accordance with appropriate requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII—Unfired Pressure Vessels (1968) or applicable provisions of API Standard 620, Recommended Rules for Design and Construction of Large, Welded, Low-Pressure Storage Tanks, Second Edition (June 1963) and Appendix R (April 1965).

(*b*) Portable containers shall be designed, constructed and tested in accordance with DOT Specifications and Regulations.

(ii) Supports. Permanently installed containers shall be provided with substantial noncombustible supports securely anchored on firm noncombustible foundations. Steel supports in excess of 18 inches in height shall be protected with a protective coating having a 2-hour fire-resistance ratin

(iii) Marking. Each container shall be legibly marked to indicate "LIQUEFIED HYDROGEN—FLAMMABLE GAS."

(iv) Safety relief devices.

(*a*)

(*1*) Stationary liquefied hydrogen containers shall be equipped with safety relief devices sized in accordance with CGA Pamphlet S-1, Part 3, Safety Relief Device Standards for Compressed Gas Storage Containers.

(*2*) Portable liquefied hydrogen containers complying with the U.S. Department of Transportation Regulations shall be equipped with safety relief devices as required in the U.S. Department of Transportation Specifications and Regulations. Safety relief devices shall be sized in accordance with the requirements of CGA Pamphlet S-1, Safety Relief Device Standards, Part 1, Compressed Gas Cylinders and Part 2, Cargo and Portable Tank Containers.

(b) Safety relief devices shall be arranged to discharge unobstructed to the outdoors and in such a manner as to prevent impingement of escaping liquid or gas upon the container, adjacent structures or personnel. See subparagraph (2)(i)(*f*) of this paragraph for venting of safety relief devices in special locations.

(c) Safety relief devices or vent piping shall be designed or located so that moisture cannot collect and freeze in a manner which would interfere with proper operation of the device.

(d) Safety relief devices shall be provided in piping wherever liquefied hydrogen could be trapped between closures.

(v) Piping, tubing, and fittings.

(a) Piping, tubing, and fittings and gasket and thread sealants shall be suitable for hydrogen service at the pressures and temperatures involved. Consideration shall be given to the thermal expansion and contraction of piping systems when exposed to temperature fluctuations of ambient to liquefied hydrogen temperatures.

(b) Gaseous hydrogen piping and tubing (above −20° F.) shall conform to the applicable sections of Pressure Piping Section 2—Industrial Gas and Air Piping, ANSI B31.1-1967 with addenda B31.1-1969. Design of liquefied hydrogen or cold (−20° F. or below) gas piping shall use Petroleum Refinery Piping ANSI B31.3-1966 or Refrigeration Piping ANSI B31.5-1966 with addenda B31.5a-1968 as a guide.

(c) Joints in piping and tubing shall preferably be made by welding or brazing; flanged, threaded, socket, or suitable compression fittings may be used.

(d) Means shall be provided to minimize exposure of personnel to piping operating at low temperatures and to prevent air condensate from contacting piping, structural members, and surfaces not suitable for cryogenic temperatures. Only those insulating materials which are rated nonburning in accordance with ASTM Procedures D1692-68 may be used. Other protective means may be used to protect personnel. The insulation shall be designed to have a vapor-tight seal in the outer covering to prevent the condensation of air and subsequent oxygen enrichment within the insulation. The insulation material and outside shield shall also be of adequate design to prevent attrition of the insulation due to normal operating conditions.

(e) Uninsulated piping and equipment which operate at liquefied-hydrogen temperature shall not be installed above asphalt surfaces or other combustible materials in order to prevent contact of liquid air with such materials. Drip pans may be installed under uninsulated piping and equipment to retain and vaporize condensed liquid air.

(vi) Equipment assembly.

(a) Valves, gauges, regulators, and other accessories shall be suitable for liquefied hydrogen service and for the pressures and temperatures involved.

(b) Installation of liquefied hydrogen systems shall be supervised by personnel familiar with proper practices and with reference to their construction and use.

(c) Storage containers, piping, valves, regulating equipment, and other accessories shall be readily accessible and shall be protected against physical damage and against tampering. A shutoff valve shall be located in liquid product withdrawal lines as close to the container as practical. On containers of over 2,000 gallons capacity, this shutoff valve shall be of the remote control type with no connections, flanges, or other appurtenances (other than a welded manual shutoff valve) allowed in the piping between the shutoff valve and its connection to the inner container.

(d) Cabinets or housings containing hydrogen control equipment shall be ventilated to prevent any accumulation of hydrogen gas.

(vii) Testing.

(a) After installation, all field-erected piping shall be tested and proved hydrogen gas-tight at operating pressure and temperature.

(b) Containers, if out of service in excess of 1 year, shall be inspected and tested as outlined in *(a)* of this subdivision. The safety relief devices shall be checked to determine if they are operable and properly set.

(viii) Liquefied hydrogen vaporizers.

(a) The vaporizer shall be anchored and its connecting piping shall be sufficiently flexible to provide for the effect of expansion and contraction due to temperature changes.

(b) The vaporizer and its piping shall be adequately protected on the hydrogen and heating media sections with safety relief devices.

(c) Heat used in a liquefied hydrogen vaporizer shall be indirectly supplied utilizing media such as air, steam, water, or water solutions.

(d) A low temperature shutoff switch shall be provided in the vaporizer discharge piping to prevent flow of liquefied hydrogen in the event of the loss of the heat source.

(ix) Electrical systems.

(a) Electrical wiring and equipment located within 3 feet of a point where connections are regularly made and disconnected, shall be in accordance with subpart S of this part, for Class I, Group B, Division 1 locations.

(b) Except as provided in *(a)* of this subdivision, electrical wiring, and equipment located within 25 feet of a point where connections are regularly made and disconnected or within 25 feet of a liquid hydrogen storage container, shall be in accordance with subpart S of this part, for Class I, Group B, Division 2 locations. When equipment approved for Class I, Group B atmospheres is not commercially available, the equipment may be—

(1) Purged or ventilated in accordance with NFPA No. 496–1967, Standard for Purged Enclosures for Electrical Equipment in Hazardous Locations,

(2) Intrinsically safe, or

(3) Approved for Class I, Group C atmospheres. This requirement does not apply to electrical equipment which is installed on mobile supply trucks or tank cars from which the storage container is filled.

(x) Bonding and grounding. The liquefied hydrogen container and associated piping shall be electrically bonded and grounded.

(2) Location of liquefied hydrogen storage.

(i) General requirements.

(a) The storage containers shall be located so that they are readily accessible to mobile supply equipment at ground level and to authorized personnel.

(b) The containers shall not be exposed by electric power lines, flammable liquid lines, flammable gas lines, or lines carrying oxidizing materials.

(c) When locating liquefied hydrogen storage containers near above-ground flammable liquid storage or liquid oxygen storage, it is advisable to locate the liquefied hydrogen container on ground higher than flammable liquid storage or liquid oxygen storage.

(d) Where it is necessary to locate the liquefied hydrogen container on ground that is level with or lower than adjacent flammable liquid storage or liquid oxygen storage, suitable protective means shall be taken (such as by diking, diversion curbs, grading), with respect to the adjacent flammable liquid storage or liquid oxygen storage, to prevent accumulation of liquids within 50 feet of the liquefied hydrogen container.

(e) Storage sites shall be fenced and posted to prevent entrance by unauthorized personnel. Sites shall also be placarded as follows: "Liquefied Hydrogen—Flammable Gas—No Smoking—No Open Flames."

(f) If liquefied hydrogen is located in (as specified in Table H-3) a separate building, in a special room, or inside buildings when not in a special room and exposed to other occupancies, containers shall have the safety relief devices vented unobstructed to the outdoors at a minimum elevation of 25 feet above grade to a safe location as required in subparagraph (1)(iv)(*b*) of this paragraph.

TABLE H-3—MAXIMUM TOTAL QUANTITY OF LIQUEFIED HYDROGEN STORAGE PERMITTED

Nature of location	Size of hydrogen storage (capacity in gallons)			
	39.63 (150 liters) to 50	51 to 300	301 to 600	In excess of 600
Outdoors	I	I	I	I.
In a separate building	II	II	II	Not permitted.
In a special room	III	III	Not permitted	Not permitted.
Inside buildings not in a special room and exposed to other occupancies.	IV	Not permitted	Not permitted	Not permitted.

NOTE: This table does not apply to the storage in dewars of the type generally used in laboratories for experimental purposes.

(ii) Specific requirements.

(a) The location of liquefied hydrogen storage, as determined by the maximum total quantity of liquefied hydrogen, shall be in the order of preference as indicated by Roman numerals in the following Table H-3.

(b) The minimum distance in feet from liquefied hydrogen systems of indicated storage capacity located outdoors, in a separate building, or in a special room to any specified exposure shall be in accordance with Table H-4.

(iii) Handling of liquefied hydrogen inside buildings other than separate buildings and special rooms. Portable liquefied hydrogen containers of 50 gallons or less capacity as permitted in Table H-3 and in compliance with subdivision (i)(f) of this subparagraph when housed inside buildings not located in a special room and exposed to other occupancies shall comply with the following minimum requirements:

(a) Be located 20 feet from flammable liquids and readily combustible materials such as excelsior or paper.

(b) Be located 25 feet from ordinary

TABLE H-4—MINIMUM DISTANCE (FEET) FROM LIQUEFIED HYDROGEN SYSTEMS TO EXPOSURE

Type of exposure	Liquefied hydrogen storage (capacity in gallons)		
	39.63 (150 liters) to 3,500	3,501 to 15,000	15,001 to 30,000
1. Fire-resistive building and fire walls*	5	5	5
2. Noncombustible building*	25	50	75
3. Other buildings*	50	75	100
4. Wall openings, air-compressor intakes, inlets for air-conditioning or ventilating equipment	75	75	75
5. Flammable liquids (above ground and vent or fill openings if below ground) (see 513 and 514)	50	75	100
6. Between stationary liquefied hydrogen containers	5	5	5
7. Flammable gas storage	50	75	100
Liquid oxygen storage and other oxidizers (see 513 and 514)	100	100	100
9. Combustible solids	50	75	100
10. Open flames, smoking, and welding	50	50	50
11. Concentrations of people†	75	75	75

*Refer to Standard Types of Building Construction, NFPA No. 220-1969 for definitions of various types of construction.

†In congested areas such as offices, lunchrooms, locker rooms, time-clock areas.

electrical equipment and other sources of ignition including process or analytical equipment.

(c) Be located 25 feet from concentrations of people.

(d) Be located 50 feet from intakes of ventilation and air-conditioning equipment or intakes of compressors.

(e) Be located 50 feet from storage of other flammable-gases or storage of oxidizing gases.

(f) Containers shall be protected against damage or injury due to falling objects or work activity in the area.

(g) Containers shall be firmly secured and stored in an upright position.

(h) Welding or cutting operations, and smoking shall be prohibited while hydrogen is in the room.

(i) The area shall be adequately ventilated. Safety relief devices on the containers shall be vented directly outdoors or to a suitable hood. See subparagraph (1)(iv)(*b*) of this paragraph and subdivision (i)(f) of this subparagraph.

(3) Design considerations at specific locations.

(i) Outdoor locations.

(a) Outdoor location shall mean outside of any building or structure, and includes locations under a weather shelter or canopy provided such locations are not enclosed by more than two walls set at right angles and are provided with vent space between the walls and vented roof or canopy.

(b) Roadways and yard surfaces located below liquefied hydrogen piping, from which liquid air may drip, shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

(c) If protective walls are provided, they shall be constructed of noncombustible materials and in accordance with the provisions of subdivision (*a*) of this subdivision as applicable.

(d) Electrical wiring and equipment shall comply with subparagraph (1)(ix)(*a*) and (*b*) of this paragraph.

(e) Adequate lighting shall be provided for nighttime transfer operation.

(ii) Separate buildings.

(a) Separate buildings shall be of light noncombustible construction on a substantial frame. Walls and roofs shall be lightly fastened and designed to relieve at a maximum internal pressure of 25 pounds per square foot. Windows shall be of shatterproof glass or plastic in metal frames. Doors shall be located in such a manner that they will be readily accessible to personnel in an emergency.

(b) Adequate ventilation to the outdoors shall be provided. Inlet openings shall be located near the floor level in exterior walls only. Outlet openings shall be located at the high point of the room in exterior walls or roof. Both the inlet and outlet vent openings shall have a minimum total area of 1 square foot per 1,000 cubic feet of room volume. Discharge from outlet openings shall be directed or conducted to a safe location.

(c) There shall be no sources of ignition.

(d) Electrical wiring and equipment shall comply with subparagraph (1)(ix)(*a*) and (*b*) of this paragraph except that the provisions of subparagraph (1)(ix)(*b*) of this paragraph shall apply to all electrical wiring and equipment in the separate building.

(e) Heating, if provided, shall be by steam, hot water, or other indirect means.

(iii) Special rooms.

(a) Floors, walls, and ceilings shall have a fire resistance rating of at least 2 hours. Walls or partitions shall be continuous from floor to ceiling and shall be securely anchored. At least one wall shall be an exterior wall. Openings to other parts of the building shall not be permitted. Windows and doors shall be in exterior walls and doors shall be located in such a manner that they will be accessible in an emergency. Windows shall be of shatterproof glass or plastic in metal frames.

(b) Ventilation shall be as provided in subdivision (ii)(*b*) of this subparagraph.

(c) Explosion venting shall be provided in exterior walls or roof only. The venting area shall be equal to not less than 1 square foot per 30 cubic feet of room volume and may consist of any one or any combination of the following: walls of light noncombustible material; lightly fastened hatch covers; lightly fastened swinging doors opening outward in exterior walls; lightly fastened walls or roofs designed to relieve at a maximum pressure of 25 pounds per square foot.

(d) There shall be no sources of ignition.

(e) Electrical wiring and equipment shall comply with subparagraph (1)(ix)(*a*) and (*b*) of this paragraph except that the provision of subparagraph (1)(ix)(*b*) of this paragraph shall apply to all electrical wiring and equipment in the special room.

(f) Heating, if provided, shall be steam, hot water, or by other indirect means.

(4) Operating instructions.

(i) Written instructions. For installation which require any operation of equipment by the user, legible instructions shall be maintained at operating locations.

(ii) Attendant. A qualified person shall be in attendance at all times while the mobile hydrogen supply unit is being unloaded.

(iii) Security. Each mobile liquefied hydrogen supply unit used as part of a hydrogen system shall be adequately secured to prevent movement.

(iv) Grounding. The mobile liquefied hydrogen supply unit shall be grounded for static electricity.

(5) Maintenance. The equipment and functioning of each charged liquified hydrogen system shall be maintained in a safe operating condition in accordance with the requirements of this section. Weeds or similar combustibles shall not be permitted within 25 feet of any liquified hydrogen equipment.

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

1910.104—Oxygen

(a) Scope.

This section applies to the installation of bulk oxygen systems on industrial and institutional consumer premises. This section does not apply to oxygen manufacturing plants or other establishments operated by the oxygen supplier or his agent for the purpose of storing oxygen and refilling portable containers, trailers, mobile supply trucks, or tank cars, nor to systems having capacities less than those stated in paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(b) Bulk oxygen systems.

(1) Definition. As used in this section: A bulk oxygen system is an assembly of equipment, such as oxygen storage containers, pressure regulators, safety devices, vaporizers, manifolds, and interconnecting piping, which has storage capacity of more than 13,000 cubic feet of oxygen, Normal Temperature and Pressure (NTP), connected in service or ready for service, or more than 25,000 cubic feet of oxygen (NTP) including unconnected reserves on hand at the site. The bulk oxygen system terminates at the point where oxygen at service pressure first enters the supply line. The oxygen containers may be stationary or movable, and the oxygen may be stored as gas or liquid.

(2) Location.

(i) General. Bulk oxygen storage systems shall be located above ground out of doors, or shall be installed in a building of noncombustible construction, adequately vented, and used for that purpose exclusively. The location selected shall be such that containers and associated equipment shall not be exposed by electric power lines, flammable or combustible liquid lines, or flammable gas lines.

(ii) Accessibility. The system shall be located so that it is readily accessible to mobile supply equipment at ground level and to authorized personnel.

(iii) Leakage. Where oxygen is stored as a liquid, noncombustible surfacing shall be provided in an area in which any leakage of liquid oxygen might fall during operation of the system and filling of a storage container. For purposes of this paragraph, asphaltic or bituminous paving is considered to be combustible.

(iv) Elevation. When locating bulk oxygen systems near above-ground flammable or combustible liquid storage which may be either indoors or outdoors, it is advisable to locate the system on ground higher than the flammable or combustible liquid storage.

(v) Dikes. Where it is necessary to locate a bulk oxygen system on ground lower than adjacent flammable or combustible liquid storage suitable means shall be taken (such as by diking, diversion curbs, or grading) with respect to the adjacent flammable or combustible liquid storage to prevent accumulation of liquids under the bulk oxygen system.

(3) Distance between systems and exposures.

(i) General. The minimum distance from any bulk oxygen storage container to exposures, measured in the most direct line except as indicated in subdivisions (vi) and (viii) of this subparagraph, shall be as indicated in subdivisions (ii) to (xviii) of this subparagraph inclusive.

(ii) Combustible structures. Fifty feet from any combustible structures.

(iii) Fire resistive structures. Twenty-five feet from any structures with fire-resistive exterior walls or sprinklered buildings of other construction, but not less than one-half the height of adjacent side wall of the structure.

(iv) Openings. At least 10 feet from any opening in adjacent walls of fire resistive structures. Spacing from such structures shall be adequate to permit maintenance, but shall not be less than 1 foot.

(v) Flammable liquid storage aboveground.

Distance (feet)	*Capacity (gallons)*
50	0–1000
90	1001 or more

(vi) Flammable liquid storage belowground.

Distance measured horizontally from oxygen storage container to flammable liquid tank (feet)	Distance from oxygen storage container to filling and vent connections or openings to flammable liquid tank (feet)	Capacity (gallons)
15	50	0–1000
30	50	1001 or more

(vii) Combustible liquid storage aboveground.

Distance (feet)	*Capacity (gallons)*
25	0–1000
50	1001 or more

(viii) Combustible liquid storage belowground.

Distance measured horizontally from oxygen storage container to combustible liquid tank (feet)	Distance from oxygen storage container to filling and vent connections or openings to combustible liquid tank (feet)
15	40

(ix) Flammable gas storage. (Such as compressed flammable gases, liquefied flammable gases and flammable gases in low pressure gas holders):

Distance (feet)	*Capacity (cu. ft. NTP)*
50	Less than 5000
90	5000 or more

(x) Highly combustible materials. Fifty feet from solid materials which burn rapidly, such as excelsior or paper.

(xi) Slow-burning materials. Twenty-five feet from solid materials which burn slowly, such as coal and heavy timber.

(xii) Ventilation. Seventy-five feet in one direction and 35 feet in approximately 90° direction from confining walls (not including firewalls less than 20 feet high) to provide adequate ventilation in courtyards and similar confining areas.

(xiii) Congested areas. Twenty-five feet from congested areas such as offices, lunchrooms, locker rooms, time clock areas, and similar locations where people may congregate.

(xiv) thru (xvii) Revoked

(xviii) Exceptions. The distances in subdivisions (ii), (iii), (v) to (xi) inclusive, of this subparagraph do not apply where protective structures such as firewalls of adequate height to safeguard the oxygen storage systems are located between the bulk oxygen storage installation and the exposure. In such cases, the bulk oxygen storage installation may be a minimum distance of 1 foot from the firewall.

(4) Storage containers.

(i) Foundations and supports. Permanently installed containers shall be provided with substantial noncombustible supports on firm noncombustible foundations.

(ii) Construction—liquid. Liquid oxygen storage containers shall be fabricated from materials meeting the impact test requirements of paragraph UG–84 of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII—Unfired Pressure Vessels—1968. Containers operating at pressures above 15 pounds per square inch gage (p.s.i.g.) shall be designed, constructed, and tested in accordance with appropriate requirements of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII—Unfired Pressure Vessels—1968. Insulation surrounding the liquid oxygen container shall be noncombustible.

(iii) Construction—gaseous. High-pressure gaseous oxygen containers shall comply with one of the following:

(a) Designed, constructed, and tested in accordance with appropriate requirements of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII—Unfired Pressure Vessels—1968.

(b) Designed, constructed, tested, and maintained in accordance with DOT Specifications and Regulations.

(5) Piping, tubing, and fittings.

(i) Selection. Piping, tubing, and fittings shall be suitable for oxygen service and for the pressures and temperatures involved.

(ii) Specification. Piping and tubing shall conform to Section 2—Gas and Air Piping Systems of Code for Pressure Piping ANSI, B31.1-1967 with addenda B31.10a-1969.

(iii) Fabrication. Piping or tubing for operating temperatures below -20° F. shall be fabricated from materials meeting the impact test requirements of paragraph UG-84 of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII—Unfired Pressure Vessels—1968, when tested at the minimum operating temperature to which the piping may be subjected in service.

(6) Safety relief devices.

(i) General. Bulk oxygen storage containers, regardless of design pressure shall be equipped with safety relief devices as required by the ASME code or the DOT specifications and regulations.

(ii) DOT containers. Bulk oxygen storage containers designed and constructed in accordance with DOT specification shall be equipped with safety relief devices as required thereby.

(iii) ASME containers. Bulk oxygen storage containers designed and constructed in accordance with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII—Unfired Pressure Vessel—1968 shall be equipped with safety relief devices meeting the provisions of the Compressed Gas Association Pamphlet "Safety Relief Device Standards for Compressed Gas Storage Containers," S-1, Part 3.

(iv) Insulation. Insulation casings on liquid oxygen containers shall be equipped with suitable safety relief devices.

(v) Reliability. All safety relief devices shall be so designed or located that moisture cannot collect and freeze in a manner which would interfere with proper operation of the device.

(7) Liquid oxygen vaporizers.

(i) Mounts and couplings. The vaporizer shall be anchored and its connecting piping be sufficiently flexible to provide for the effect of expansion and contraction due to temperature changes.

(ii) Relief devices. The vaporizer and its piping shall be adequately protected on the oxygen and heating medium sections with safety relief devices.

(iii) Heating. Heat used in an oxygen vaporizer shall be indirectly supplied only through media such as steam, air, water, or water solutions which do not react with oxygen.

(iv) Grounding. If electric heaters are used to provide the primary source of heat, the vaporizing system shall be electrically grounded.

(8) Equipment assembly and installation.

(i) Cleaning. Equipment making up a bulk oxygen system shall be cleaned in order to remove oil, grease or other readily oxidizable materials before placing the system in service.

(ii) Joints. Joints in piping and tubing may be made by welding or by use of flanged, threaded, slip, or compression fittings. Gaskets or thread sealants shall be suitable for oxygen service.

(iii) Accessories. Valves, gages, regulators, and other accessories shall be suitable for oxygen service.

(iv) Installation. Installation of bulk oxygen systems shall be supervised by personnel familiar with proper practices with reference to their construction and use.

(v) Testing. After installation all field erected piping shall be tested and proved gas tight at maximum operating pressure. Any medium used for testing shall be oil free and nonflammable.

(vi) Security. Storage containers, piping, valves, regulating equipment, and other accessories shall be protected against physical damage and against tampering.

(vii) Venting. Any enclosure containing oxygen control or operating equipment shall be adequately vented.

(viii) Placarding. The bulk oxygen storage location shall be permanently placarded to indicate: "OXYGEN — NO SMOKING—NO OPEN FLAMES," or an equivalent warning.

(ix) Electrical wiring. Bulk oxygen installations are not hazardous locations as defined and covered in subpart S of this part. Therefore, general purpose or weatherproof types of electrical wiring and equipment are acceptable depending upon whether the installation is indoors or outdoors. Such equipment shall be installed in accordance with the applicable provisions of subpart S of this part.

(9) Operating instructions. For installations which require any operation of equipment by the user, legible instructions shall be maintained at operating locations.

(10) Maintenance. The equipment and functioning of each charged bulk oxygen system shall be maintained in a safe operating condition in accordance with the requirements of this section. Wood and long dry grass shall be cut back within 15 feet of any bulk oxygen storage container.

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

1910.105—NITROUS OXIDE

The piped systems for the in-plant transfer and distribution of nitrous oxide shall be designed, installed, maintained, and operated in accordance with Compressed Gas Association Pamphlet G-8.1-1964.

1910.106—FLAMMABLE AND COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS

(a) Definitions.

As used in this section:

(1) Aerosol shall mean a material which is dispensed from its container as a mist, spray, or foam by a propellant under pressure.

(2) Atmospheric tank shall mean a storage tank which has been designed to operate at pressures from atmospheric through 0.5 p.s.i.g.

(3) Automotive service station shall mean that portion of property where flammable or combustible liquids used as motor fuels are stored and dispensed from fixed equipment into the fuel tanks of motor vehicles and shall include any facilities available for the sale and service of tires, batteries, and accessories, and for minor automotive maintenance work. Major automotive repairs, painting, body and fender work are excluded.

(4) Basement shall mean a story of a building or structure having one-half or more of its height below ground level and to which access for fire fighting purposes is unduly restricted.

(5) Boiling point shall mean the boiling point of a liquid at a pressure of 14.7 pounds per square inch absolute (p.s.i.a.) (760 mm.). Where an accurate boiling point is unavailable for the material in question, or for mixtures which do not have a constant boiling point, for purposes of this section the 10 percent point of a distillation performed in accordance with the Standard Method of Test for Distillation of Petroleum Products, ASTM D-86-62, may be used as the boiling point of the liquid.

(6) Boilover shall mean the expulsion of crude oil (or certain other liquids) from a burning tank. The light fractions of the crude oil burnoff producing a heat wave in the residue, which on reaching a water strata may result in the expulsion of a portion of the contents of the tank in the form of froth.

(7) Bulk plant shall mean that portion of a property where flammable or combustible liquids are received by tank vessel, pipelines, tank car, or tank vehicle, and are stored or blended in bulk for the purpose of distributing such liquids by tank vessel, pipeline, tank car, tank vehicle, or container.

(8) Chemical plant shall mean a large integrated plant or that portion of such a plant other than a refinery or distillery where flammable or combustible liquids are produced by chemical reactions or used in chemical reactions.

(9) Closed container shall mean a container as herein defined, so sealed by means of a lid or other device that neither liquid nor vapor will escape from it at ordinary temperatures.

(10) Crude petroleum shall mean hydrocarbon mixtures that have a flash point below 150° F. and which have not been processed in a refinery.

(11) Distillery shall mean a plant or that portion of a plant where flammable or combustible liquids produced by fermentation are concentrated, and where the concentrated products may also be mixed, stored, or packaged.

(12) Fire area shall mean an area of a building separated from the remainder of the building by construction having a fire resistance of at least 1 hour and having all communicating openings properly protected by an assembly having a fire resistance rating of at least 1 hour.

(13) Flammable aerosol shall mean an aerosol which is required to be labeled "Flammable" under the Federal Hazardous Substances Labeling Act (15 U.S.C. 1261). For the purposes of paragraph (d) of this section, such aerosols are considered Class IA liquids.

(14) "Flashpoint" means the minimum temperature at which a liquid gives off vapor within a test vessel in sufficient concentration to form an ignitable mixture with air near the surface of the liquid, and shall be determined as follows:

(i) For a liquid which has a viscosity of less than 45 SUS at 100°F. (37.8°C.), does not contain suspended solids, and does not have a tendency to form a surface film while under test, the procedure specified in the Standard Method of Test for Flashpoint by Tag Closed Tester (ASTM D-56-70) shall be used.

(ii) For a liquid which has a viscosity of 45 SUS or more at 100°F. (37.8°C.), or contains suspended solids, or has a tendency to form a surface film while under test, the Standard Method of Test for Flashpoint by Pensky-Martens Closed

Tester (ASTM D-93-71) shall be used, except that the methods specified in Note 1 to section 1.1. of ASTM D-93-71 may be used for the respective materials specified in the Note.

(iii) For a liquid that is a mixture of compounds that have different volatilities and flashpoints, its flashpoint shall be determined by using the procedure specified in paragraph (a) (14) (i) or (ii) of this section on the liquid in the form it is shipped. If the flashpoint, as determined by this test, is 100°F. (37.8°C.) or higher, an additional flashpoint determination shall be run on a sample of the liquid evaporated to 90 percent of its original volume, and the lower value of the two tests shall be considered the flashpoint of the material.

[38 F.R. 28035, October 11, 1973.]

(iv) Organic peroxides, which undergo autoaccelerating thermal decomposition, are excluded from any of the flashpoint determination methods specified in this subparagraph.

[38 F.R. 27047, Sept. 28, 1973.]

(15) Hotel shall mean buildings or groups of buildings under the same management in which there are sleeping accommodations for hire, primarily used by transients who are lodged with or without meals including but not limited to inns, clubs, motels, and apartment hotels.

(16) Institutional occupancy shall mean the occupancy or use of a building or structure or any portion thereof by persons harbored or detained to receive medical, charitable or other care or treatment, or by persons involuntarily detained.

(17) Liquid shall mean, for the purpose of this section, any material which has a fluidity greater than that of 300 penetration asphalt when tested in accordance with ASTM Test for Penetration for Bituminous Materials, D-5-65. When not otherwise identified, the term liquid shall include both flammable and combustible liquids.

(18) "Combustible liquid" means any liquid having a flashpoint at or above 100°F. (37.8°C.). Combustible liquids shall be divided into two classes as follows:

(i) "Class II liquids" shall include those with flashpoints at or above 100°F. (37.8°C.) and below 140°F. (60°C.), except any mixture having components with flashpoints of 200°F. (93.3°C.) or higher, the volume of which make up 99 percent or more of the total volume of the mixture.

(ii) "Class III liquids" shall include those with flashpoints at or above 140°F. (60°C.). Class III liquids are subdivided into two subclasses:

(a) "Class IIIA liquids" shall include those with flashpoints at or above 140°F. (60°C.) and below 200°F. (93.3°C.), except any mixture having components with flashpoints of 200°F. (93.3°C.), or higher, the total volume of which make up 99 percent or more of the total volume of the mixture.

(b) "Class IIIB liquids" shall include those with flashpoints at or above 200°F. (93.3°C.). This section does not cover Class IIIB liquids. Where the term "Class III liquids" is used in this section, it shall mean only Class IIIA liquids.

(iii) When a combustible liquid is heated for use to within 30°F. (16.7°C.) of its flashpoint, it shall be handled in accordance with the requirements for the next lower class of liquids.

(19) "Flammable liquid" means any liquid having a flashpoint below 100°F. (37.8°C.), except any mixture having components with flashpoints of 100°F. (37.8°C.) or higher, the total of which make up 99 percent or more of the total volume of the mixture. Flammable liquids shall be known as Class I liquids. Class I liquids are divided into three classes as follows:

(i) Class IA shall include liquids having flashpoints below 73°F. (22.8°C.) and having a boiling point below 100°F. (37.8°C.).

(ii) Class IB shall include liquids having flashpoints below 73°F. (22.8°C.) and having a boiling point at or above 100°F. (37.8°C.).

(iii) Class IC shall include liquids having flashpoints at or above 73°F. (22.8°C.) and below 100°F. (37.8°C.).

[38 F.R. 27047, Sept. 28, 1973.]

(20) Unstable (reactive) liquid shall mean a liquid which in the pure state or as commercially produced or transported will vigorously polymerize, decompose, condense, or will become self-reactive under conditions of shocks, pressure, or temperature.

(21) Low-pressure tank shall mean a storage tank which has been designed to operate at pressures above 0.5 p.s.i.g. but not more than 15 p.s.i.g.

(22) Marine service station shall mean that portion of a property where flammable or combustible liquids used as fuels are stored and dispensed from fixed equipment on shore, piers, wharves, or floating docks into the fuel tanks of self-propelled craft, and shall include all facilities used in connection therewith.

(23) Mercantile occupancy shall mean the occupancy or use of a building or structure or any portion thereof for the displaying, selling, or buying of goods, wares, or merchandise.

(24) Office occupancy shall mean the occupancy or use of a building or structure or any portion thereof for the transaction of business, or the rendering or receiving of professional services.

(25) Portable tank shall mean a closed container having a liquid capacity over 60 U.S. gallons and not intended for fixed installation.

(26) Pressure vessel shall mean a storage tank or vessel which has been designed to operate at pressures above 15 p.s.i.g.

(27) Protection for exposure shall mean adequate fire protection for structures on property adjacent to tanks, where there are employees of the establishment.

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

(28) Refinery shall mean a plant in which flammable or combustible liquids are produced on a commercial scale from crude petroleum, natural gasoline, or other hydrocarbon sources.

(29) Safety can shall mean an approved container, of not more than 5 gallons capacity, having a spring-closing lid and spout cover and so designed that it will safely relieve internal pressure when subjected to fire exposure.

(30) Vapor pressure shall mean the pressure, measured in pounds per square inch (absolute) exerted by a volatile liquid as determined by the "Standard Method of Test for Vapor Pressure of Petroleum Products (Reid Method)," American Society for Testing and Materials ASTM D323-68.

(31) Ventilation as specified in this section is for the prevention of fire and explosion. It is considered adequate if it is sufficient to prevent accumulation of significant quantities of vapor-air mixtures in concentration over one-fourth of the lower flammable limit.

(32) Storage: Flammable or combustible liquids shall be stored in a tank or in a container that complies with paragraph (d)(2) of this section.

(33) Barrel shall mean a volume of 42 U.S. gallons.

(34) Container shall mean any can, barrel, or drum.

(35) Approved unless otherwise indicated, approved, or listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12121 April 12, 1988]

(36) Listed see "approved" in § 1910.106(a) (35).

(37) "SUS" means Saybolt Universal Seconds as determined by the Standard Method of Test for Saybolt Viscosity (ASTM D-88-56), and may be determined by use of the SUS conversion tables specified in ASTM Method D2161-66 following determination of viscosity in accordance with the procedures specified in the Standard Method of Test for Viscosity of Transparent and Opaque Liquids (ASTM D445-65).

(38) "Viscous" means a viscosity of 45 SUS or more.

[38 F.R. 27047, Sept. 28, 1973.]

(b) Tank storage.

(1) Design and construction of tanks

(i) Materials.

(a) Tanks shall be built of steel except as provided in *(b)* through *(e)* of this subdivision.

(b) Tanks may be built of materials other than steel for installation underground or if required by the properties of the liquid stored. Tanks located aboveground or inside buildings shall be of noncombustible construction.

(c) Tanks built of materials other than steel shall be designed to specifications embodying principles recognized as good engineering design for the material used.

(d) Unlined concrete tanks may be used for storing flammable or combustible liquids having a gravity of 40° API or heavier. Concrete tanks with special lining may be used for other services provided the design is in accordance with sound engineering practice.

(e) Revoked

(f) Special engineering consideration shall be required if the specific gravity of the liquid to be stored exceeds that of water or if the tanks are designed to contain flammable or combustible liquids at a liquid temperature below 0° F.

(ii) Fabrication.

(a) Revoked

(b) Metal tanks shall be welded, riveted, and caulked, brazed, or bolted, or constructed by use of a combination of these methods. Filler metal used in brazing shall be nonferrous metal or an alloy having a melting point above 1000° F. and below that of the metal joined.

(iii) Atmospheric tanks

(a) Atmospheric tanks shall be built in accordance with acceptable good standards of design. Atmospheric tanks may be built in accordance with:

(1) Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., Subjects No. 142, Standard for Steel Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids, 1968; No. 58, Standard for Steel Underground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids, Fifth Edition, December 1961; or No. 80, Standard for Steel Inside Tanks for Oil-Burner Fuel, September 1963.

(2) American Petroleum Institute Standards No. 12A, Specification for Oil Storage Tanks with Riveted Shells, Seventh Edition, September 1951, or No. 650, Welded Steel Tanks for Oil Storage, Third Edition, 1966.

(3) American Petroleum Institute Standards No. 12B, Specification for Bolted Production Tanks, Eleventh Edition, May 1958, and Supplement 1, March 1962; No. 12D, Specification for Large Welded Production Tanks, Seventh Edition, August 1957; or No. 12F, Specification for Small Welded Production Tanks, Fifth Edition, March 1961. Tanks built in accordance

with these standards shall be used only as production tanks for storage of crude petroleum in oil-producing areas.

(b) Tanks designed for underground service not exceeding 2,500 gallons capacity may be used aboveground.

(c) Low-pressure tanks and pressure vessels may be used as atmospheric tanks.

(d) Atmospheric tanks shall not be used for the storage of a flammable or combustible liquid at a temperature at or above its boiling point.

(iv) Low pressure tanks.

(a) The normal operating pressure of the tank shall not exceed the design pressure of the tank.

(b) Low-pressure tanks shall be built in accordance with acceptable standards of design. Low-pressure tanks may be built in accordance with:

(1) American Petroleum Institute Standard No. 620, Recommended Rules for the Design and Construction of Large, Welded, Low-Pressure Storage Tanks, Third Edition, 1966.

(2) The principles of the Code for Unfired Pressure Vessels, Section VIII of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessels Code, 1968.

(c) Atmospheric tanks built according to Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., requirements in subdivision (iii)(*a*) of this subparagraph may be used for operating pressures not exceeding 1 p.s.i.g. and shall be limited to 2.5 p.s.i.g. under emergency venting conditions.

(d) Pressure vessels may be used as low-pressure tanks.

(v) Pressure vessels.

(a) The normal operating pressure of the vessel shall not exceed the design pressure of the vessel.

(b) Pressure vessels shall be built in accordance with the Code for Unfired Pressure Vessels, Section VIII of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, 1968.

(vi) Provisions for internal corrosion. When tanks are not designed in accordance with the American Petroleum Institute, American Society of Mechanical Engineers, or the Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.'s, standards, or if corrosion is anticipated beyond that provided for in the design formulas used, additional metal thickness or suitable protective coatings or linings shall be provided to compensate for the corrosion loss expected during the design life of the tank.

(2) Installation of outside aboveground tanks.

(i) Location with respect to property lines and public ways. Revoked

(ii) Spacing (shell-to-shell) between aboveground tanks.

(a) The distance between any two flammable or combustible liquid storage tanks shall not be less than 3 feet.

(b) Except as provided in subdivision (*c*) of this subdivision, the distance between any two adjacent tanks shall not be less than one-sixth the sum of their diameters. When the diameter of one tank is less than one-half the diameter of the adjacent tank, the distance between the two tanks shall not be less than one-half the diameter of the smaller tank.

(c) Where crude petroleum in conjunction with production facilities are located in noncongested areas and have capacities not exceeding 126,000 gallons (3,000 barrels), the distance between such tanks shall not be less than 3 feet.

(d) Where unstable flammable or combustible liquids are stored, the distance between such tanks shall not be less than one-half the sum of their diameters.

(*e*) When tanks are compacted in three or more rows or in an irregular pattern, greater spacing or other means shall be provided so that inside tanks are accessible for firefighting purposes.

(*f*) The minimum separation between a liquefied petroleum gas container and a flammable or combustible liquid storage tank shall be 20 feet, except in the case of flammable or combustible liquid tanks operating at pressures exceeding 2.5 p.s.i.g. or equipped with emergency venting which will permit pressures to exceed 2.5 p.s.i.g. in which case the provisions of subdivisions (*a*) and (*b*) of this subdivision shall apply. Suitable means shall be taken to prevent the accumulation of flammable or combustible liquids under adjacent liquefied petroleum gas containers such as by diversion curbs or grading. When flammable or combustible liquid storage tanks are within a diked area, the liquefied petroleum gas containers shall be outside the diked area and at least 10 feet away from the centerline of the wall of the diked area. The foregoing provisions shall not apply when liquefied petroleum gas containers of 125 gallons or less capacity are installed adjacent to fuel oil supply tanks of 550 gallons or less capacity.

(iii) Location of outside aboveground tanks with respect to important buildings on same property.

Revoked

(iv) Normal venting for aboveground tanks.

(*a*) Atmospheric storage tanks shall be adequately vented to prevent the development of vacuum or pressure sufficient to distort the roof of a cone roof tank or exceeding the design pressure in the case of other atmospheric tanks, as a result of filling or emptying, and atmospheric temperature changes.

(*b*) Normal vents shall be sized either in accordance with:

(*1*) The American Petroleum Institute Standard 2000 (1968), Venting Atmospheric and Low-Pressure Storage Tanks; or

(*2*) Other accepted standard; or

(*3*) Shall be at least as large as the filling or withdrawal connection, whichever is larger but in no case less than 1¼ inch nominal inside diameter.

(*c*) Low-pressure tanks and pressure vessels shall be adequately vented to prevent development of pressure or vacuum, as a result of filling or emptying and atmospheric temperature changes, from exceeding the design pressure of the tank or vessel. Protection shall also be provided to prevent overpressure from any pump discharging into the tank or vessel when the pump discharge pressure can exceed the design pressure of the tank or vessel.

(*d*) If any tank or pressure vessel has more than one fill or withdrawal connec

Pages 181 thru 182 deleted

tion and simultaneous filling or withdrawal can be made, the vent size shall be based on the maximum anticipated simultaneous flow.

(e) Unless the vent designed to limit the internal pressure 2.5 p.s.i. or less, the outlet of vents and vent drains shall be arranged to discharge in such a manner as to prevent localized overheating of any part of the tank in the event vapors from such vents are ignited.

(f) Tanks and pressure vessels storing Class IA liquids shall be equipped with venting devices which shall be normally closed except when venting to pressure or vacuum conditions. Tanks and pressure vessels storing class IB and IC liquids shall be equipped with venting devices which shall be normally closed except when venting under pressure or vacuum conditions, or with approved flame arresters.

Exemption: Tanks of 3,000 bbls. capacity or less containing crude petroleum in crude-producing areas; and, outside aboveground atmospheric tanks under 1,000 gallons capacity containing other than Class IA flammable liquids may have open vents. (See subdivision (vi)(*b*) of this subparagraph.)

(g) Flame arresters or venting devices required in subdivision (*f*) of this subdivision may be omitted for Class IB and IC liquids where conditions are such that their use may, in case of obstruction, result in tank damage.

(v) Emergency relief venting for fire exposure for aboveground tanks.

(a) Every aboveground storage tank shall have some form of construction or device that will relieve excessive internal pressure caused by exposure fires.

(b) In a vertical tank the construction referred to in subdivision (*a*) of this subdivision may take the form of a floating roof, lifter roof, a weak roof-to-shell seam, or other approved pressure relieving construction. The weak roof-to-shell seam shall be constructed to fail preferential to any other seam.

(c) Where entire dependence for emergency relief is placed upon pressure relieving devices, the total venting capacity of both normal and emergency vents shall be enough to prevent rupture of the shell or bottom of the tank if vertical, or of the shell or heads if horizontal. If unstable liquids are stored, the effects of heat or gas resulting from polymerization, decomposition, condensation, or self-reactivity shall be taken into account. The total capacity of both normal and emergency venting devices shall be not less than that derived from Table H-10 except as provided in subdivision (*e*) or (*f*) of this subdivision. Such device may be a self-closing manhole cover, or one using long bolts that permit the cover to lift under internal pressure, or an additional or larger relief valve or valves. The wetted area of the tank shall be calculated on the basis of 55 percent of the total exposed area of a sphere or spheroid, 75 percent of the total exposed area of a horizontal tank and the first 30 feet above grade of the exposed shell area of a vertical tank.

TABLE H-10—WETTED AREA VERSUS CUBIC FEET FREE AIR PER HOUR

(14.7 psia and 60° F.)

Square feet	CFH	Square feet	CFH	Square feet	CFH
20	21,100	200	211,000	1,000	524,000
30	31,600	250	239,000	1,200	557,000
40	42,100	300	265,000	1,400	587,000
50	52,700	350	288,000	1,600	614,000
60	63,200	400	312,000	1,800	639,000
70	73,700	500	354,000	2,000	662,000
80	84,200	600	392,000	2,400	704,000
90	94,800	700	428,000	2,800 and over	742,000
100	105,000	800	462,000		
120	126,000	900	493,000		
140	147,000	1,000	524,000		
160	168,000				
180	190,000				
200	211,000				

(d) For tanks and storage vessels designed for pressure over 1 p.s.i.g., the total rate of venting shall be determined in accordance with Table H-10, except that when the exposed wetted area of the surface is greater than 2,800 square feet, the total rate of venting shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$CFH = 1{,}107A^{0.82}$$

Where:
CFH = Venting requirement, in cubic feet of free air per hour.
A = Exposed wetted surface, in square feet.
NOTE: The foregoing formula is based on $Q = 21{,}000A^{0.82}$.

(e) The total emergency relief venting capacity for any specific stable liquid may be determined by the following formula:

$$V = \frac{1337}{L\sqrt{M}}$$

V = Cubic feet of free air per hour from Table H-10.
L = Latent heat of vaporization of specific liquid in B.t.u. per pound.
M = Molecular weight of specific liquids.

(f) The required airflow rate of subdivision *(c)* or *(e)* of this subdivision may be multiplied by the appropriate factor listed in the following schedule when protection is provided as indicated. Only one factor may be used for any one tank.

0.5 for drainage in accordance with subdivision (vii)(*b*) of this subparagraph for tanks over 200 square feet of wetted area.
0.3 for approved water spray.
0.3 for approved insulation.
0.15 for approved water spray with approved insulation.

(g) The outlet of all vents and vent drains on tanks equipped with emergency venting to permit pressures exceeding 2.5 p.s.i.g. shall be arranged to discharge in such a way as to prevent localized overheating of any part of the tank, in the event vapors from such vents are ignited.

(h) Each commercial tank venting device shall have stamped on it the opening pressure, the pressure at which the valve reaches the full open position, and the flow capacity at the latter pressure, expressed in cubic feet per hour of air at 60° F. and at a pressure of 14.7 p.s.i.a.

(i) The flow capacity of tank venting devices 12 inches and smaller in nominal pipe size shall be determined by actual test of each type and size of vent. These flow tests may be conducted by the manufacturer if certified by a qualified impartial observer, or may be conducted by an outside agency. The flow capacity of tank venting devices larger than 12 inches nominal pipe size, including manhole covers with long bolts or equivalent, may be calculated provided that the opening pressure is actually measured, the rating pressure and corresponding free orifice area are stated, the word "calculated" appears on the nameplate, and the computation is based on a flow coefficient of 0.5 applied to the rated orifice area.

(vi) Vent piping for aboveground tanks.

(a) Vent piping shall be constructed in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) Where vent pipe outlets for tanks storing Class I liquids are adjacent to buildings or public ways, they shall be located so that the vapors are released at a safe point outside of buildings and not less than 12 feet above the adjacent ground level. In order to aid their dispersion, vapors shall be discharged upward or horizontally away from closely adjacent walls. Vent outlets shall be located so that flammable vapors will not be trapped by eaves or other obstructions and shall be at least five feet from building openings.

(c) When tank vent piping is manifolded, pipe sizes shall be such as to discharge, within the pressure limitations of the system, the vapors they may be required to handle when manifolded tanks are subject to the same fire exposure.

INTERP

(vii) Drainage, dikes, and walls for aboveground tanks.

(a) **Drainage and diked areas.** The area surrounding a tank or a group of tanks shall be provided with drainage as in subdivision (*b*) of this subdivision, or shall be diked as provided in subdivision (*c*) of this subdivision, to prevent accidental discharge of liquid from endangering adjoining property or reaching waterways.

(b) **Drainage.** Where protection of adjoining property or waterways is by means of a natural or manmade drainage system, such systems shall comply with the following:

(1) Revoked

(2) The drainage system shall terminate in vacant land or other area or in an impounding basin having a capacity not smaller than that of the largest tank served. This termination area and the route of the drainage system shall be so located that, if the flammable or combustible liquids in the drainage system are ignited, the fire will not seriously expose tanks or adjoining property.

(3) Revoked

(c) **Diked areas.** Where protection of adjoining property or waterways is accomplished by retaining the liquid around the tank by means of a dike, the volume of the diked area shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Except as provided in subdivision (2) of this subdivision, the volumetric capacity of the diked area shall not be less than the greatest amount of liquid that can be released from the largest tank within the diked area, assuming a full tank. The capacity of the diked area enclosing more than one tank shall be calculated by deducting the volume of the tanks other than the largest tank below the height of the dike.

(2) For a tank or group of tanks with fixed roofs containing crude petroleum with boilover characteristics, the volumetric capacity of the diked area shall be not less than the capacity of the largest tank served by the enclosure, assuming a full tank. The capacity of the diked enclosure shall be calculated by deducting the volume below the height of the dike of all tanks within the enclosure.

(3) Walls of the diked area shall be of earth, steel, concrete or solid masonry designed to be liquidtight and to withstand a full hydrostatic head. Earthen walls 3 feet or more in height shall have a flat section at the top not less than 2 feet wide. The slope of an earthen wall shall be consistent with the angle of repose of the material of which the wall is constructed.

(4) The walls of the diked area shall be restricted to an average height of 6 feet above interior grade.

INTERP

(5) Revoked

(6) No loose combustible material, empty or full drum or barrel, shall be permitted within the diked area.

(viii) Tank openings other than vents for aboveground tanks.

(a) thru (c) Revoked

(d) Openings for gaging shall be provided with a vaportight cap or cover.

(e) For Class IB and Class IC liquids other than crude oils, gasolines, and asphalts, the fill pipe shall be so designed and installed as to minimize the possibility of generating static electricity. A fill pipe entering the top of a tank shall terminate within 6 inches of the bottom of the tank and shall be installed to avoid excessive vibration.

(f) Filling and emptying connections which are made and broken shall be located outside of buildings at a location free from any source of ignition and not less than 5 feet away from any building opening. Such connection shall be closed and liquidtight when not in use. The connection shall be properly identified.

(3) Installation of underground tanks.

(i) Location. Excavation for underground storage tanks shall be made with due care to avoid undermining of foundations of existing structures. Underground tanks or tanks under buildings shall be so located with respect to existing building foundations and supports that the loads carried by the latter cannot be transmitted to the tank. The distance from any part of a tank storing Class I liquids to the nearest wall of any basement or pit shall be not less than 1 foot, and to any property line that may be built upon, not less than 3 feet. The distance from any part of a tank storing Class II or Class III liquids to the nearest wall of any basement, pit or property line shall be not less than 1 foot.

(ii) Depth and cover. Underground tanks shall be set on firm foundations and surrounded with at least 6 inches of noncorrosive, inert materials such as clean sand, earth, or gravel well tamped in place. The tank shall be placed in the hole with care since dropping or rolling the tank into the hole can break a weld, puncture or damage the tank, or scrape off the protective coating of coated tanks. Tanks shall be covered with a minimum of 2 feet of earth, or shall be covered with not less than 1 foot of earth, on top of which shall be placed a slab of reinforced concrete not less than 4 inches thick. When underground tanks are, or are likely to be, subject to traffic, they shall be protected against damage from vehicles passing over them by at least 3 feet of earth cover, or 18 inches of well-tamped earth, plus 6 inches of reinforced concrete or 8 inches of asphaltic concrete. When asphaltic or reinforced concrete paving is used as part of the protection, it shall extend at least 1 foot horizontally beyond the outline of the tank in all directions.

(iii) Corrosion protection. Corrosion protection for the tank and its piping shall be provided by one or more of the following methods:

(a) Use of protective coatings or wrappings;

(b) Cathodic protection; or,

(c) Corrosion resistant materials of construction.

(iv) Vents.

(a) Location and arrangement of vents for Class I liquids. Vent pipes from tanks storing Class I liquids shall be so located that the discharge point is outside of buildings, higher than the fill pipe opening, and not less than 12 feet above the adjacent ground level. Vent pipes shall discharge only upward in order to disperse vapors. Vent pipes 2 inches or less in nominal inside diameter shall not be obstructed by devices that will cause excessive back pressure. Vent pipe outlets shall be so located that flammable vapors will not enter building openings, or be trapped under eaves or other obstructions. If the vent pipe is less than 10 feet in length, or greater than 2 inches in nominal inside diameter, the outlet shall be provided with a vacuum and pressure relief device or there shall be an approved flame arrester located in the vent line at the outlet or within the approved distance from the outlet.

(b) Size of vents. Each tank shall be vented through piping adequate in size to prevent blow-back of vapor or liquid at the fill opening while the tank is being filled. Vent pipes shall be not less than 1¼ inch nominal inside diameter.

TABLE II-11 – VENT LINE DIAMETERS

Maximum flow GPM	Pipe length*		
	50 feet	100 feet	200 feet
	Inches	*Inches*	*Inches*
100	1¼	1¼	1¼
200	1¼	1¼	1¼
300	1¼	1¼	1½
400	1¼	1½	2
500	1½	1½	2
600	1½	2	2
700	2	2	2
800	2	2	3
900	2	2	3
1,000	2	2	3

*Vent lines of 50 ft., 100 ft., and 200 ft. of pipe plus 7 ells.

(c) Location and arrangement of vents for Class II or Class III liquids. Vent pipes from tanks storing Class II or Class III flammable liquids shall terminate outside of the building and higher than the fill pipe opening. Vent outlets shall be above normal snow level. They may be fitted with return bends, coarse screens or other devices to minimize ingress of foreign material.

(d) Vent piping shall be constructed in accordance with paragraph (*c*) of this section. Vent pipes shall be so laid as to drain toward the tank without sags or traps in which liquid can collect. They shall be located so that they will not be subjected to physical damage. The tank end of the vent pipe shall enter the tank through the top.

(e) When tank vent piping is manifolded, pipe sizes shall be such as to discharge, within the pressure limitations of the system, the vapors they may be required to handle when manifolded tanks are filled simultaneously.

(v) Tank openings other than vents.

(a) Connections for all tank openings shall be vapor or liquid tight.

(b) Openings for manual gaging, if independent of the fill pipe, shall be provided with a liquid-tight cap or cover. If inside a building, each such opening shall be protected against liquid overflow and possible vapor release by means of a spring loaded check valve or other approved device.

(c) Fill and discharge lines shall enter tanks only through the top. Fill lines shall be sloped toward the tank.

(d) For Class IB and Class IC liquids other than crude oils, gasolines, and asphalts, the fill pipe shall be so designed and installed as to minimize the possibility of generating static electricity by terminating within 6 inches of the bottom of the tank.

(e) Filling and emptying connections which are made and broken shall be located outside of buildings at a location free from any source of ignition and not less than 5 feet away from any building opening. Such connection shall be closed and liquidtight when not in use. The connection shall be properly identified.

(4) Installation of tanks inside of buildings.

(i) Location. Tanks shall not be permitted inside of buildings except as provided in paragraphs (e), (g), (h), or (i) of this section.

(ii) Vents. Vents for tanks inside of buildings shall be as provided in subparagraphs (2)(iv), (v), (vi)(*b*), and (3)(iv) of this paragraph, except that emergency venting by the use of weak roof seams on tanks shall not be permitted. Vents shall discharge vapors outside the buildings.

(iii) Vent piping. Vent piping shall be constructed in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(iv) Tank openings other than vents.

(a) Connections for all tank openings shall be vapor or liquidtight. Vents are covered in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph.

(b) Each connection to a tank inside of buildings through which liquid can normally flow shall be provided with an internal or an external valve located as close as practical to the shell of the tank. Such valves, when external, and their connections to the tank shall be of steel except when the chemical characteristics of the liquid stored are incompatible with steel. When materials other than steel are necessary, they shall be suitable for the pressures, structural stresses, and temperatures involved, including fire exposures.

(c) Flammable or combustible liquid tanks located inside of buildings, except in one-story buildings designed and protected for flammable or combustible liquid storage, shall be provided with an automatic-closing heat-actuated valve on each withdrawal connection below the liquid level, except for connections used for emergency disposal, to prevent continued flow in the event of fire in the vicinity of the tank. This function may be incorporated in the valve required in (*b*) of this subdivision, and if a separate valve, shall be located adjacent to the valve required in (*b*) of this subdivision.

(d) Openings for manual gaging, if independent of the fill pipe (see (*f*) of this subdivision), shall be provided with a vaportight cap or cover. Each such opening shall be protected against liquid overflow and possible vapor release by means of a spring loaded check valve or other approved device.

(e) For Class IB and Class IC liquids other than crude oils, gasolines, and asphalts, the fill pipe shall be so designed and installed as to minimize the possibility of generating static electricity by terminating within 6 inches of the bottom of the tank.

(f) The fill pipe inside of the tank shall be installed to avoid excessive vibration of the pipe.

(g) The inlet of the fill pipe shall be located outside of buildings at a location free from any source of ignition and not less than 5 feet away from any building opening. The inlet of the fill pipe shall be closed and liquidtight when not in use. The fill connection shall be properly identified.

(h) Tanks inside buildings shall be equipped with a device, or other means shall be provided, to prevent overflow into the building.

(5) Supports, foundations, and anchorage for all tank locations.

(i) General. Tank supports shall be installed on firm foundations. Tank supports shall be of concrete, masonry, or protected steel. Single wood timber supports (not cribbing) laid horizontally may be used for outside aboveground tanks if not more than 12 inches high at their lowest point.

(ii) Fire resistance. Steel supports or exposed piling shall be protected by materials having a fire resistance rating of not less than 2 hours, except that steel saddles need not be protected if less than 12 inches high at their lowest point. Water spray protection or its equivalent may be used in lieu of fire-resistive materials to protect supports.

(iii) Spheres. The design of the supporting structure for tanks such as spheres shall receive special engineering consideration.

(iv) Load distribution. Every tank shall be so supported as to prevent the excessive concentration of loads on the supporting portion of the shell.

(v) Foundations. Tanks shall rest on the ground or on foundations made of concrete, masonry, piling, or steel. Tank foundations shall be designed to minimize the possibility of uneven settling of the tank and to minimize corrosion in any part of the tank resting on the foundation.

(vi) Flood areas. Where a tank is located in an area that may be subjected to flooding, the applicable precautions outlined in this subdivision shall be observed.

(a) No aboveground vertical storage tank containing a flammable or combustible liquid shall be located so that the allowable liquid level within the tank is below the established maximum flood stage, unless the tank is provided with a guiding structure such as described in (*m*), (*n*), and (*o*) of this subdivision.

(b) Independent water supply facilities shall be provided at locations where there is no ample and dependable public water supply available for loading partially empty tanks with water.

(c) In addition to the preceding requirements, each tank so located that more than 70 percent, but less than 100 percent, of its allowable liquid storage capacity will be submerged at the established maximum flood stage, shall be safeguarded by one of the following methods: Tank shall be raised, or its height shall be increased, until its top extends above the maximum flood stage a distance equivalent to 30 percent or more of its allowable liquid storage capacity: *Provided, however*, That the submerged part of the tank shall not exceed two and one-half times the diameter. Or, as an alternative to the foregoing, adequate noncombustible structural guides, designed to permit the tank to float vertically without loss of product, shall be provided.

(d) Each horizontal tank so located that more than 70 percent of its storage capacity will be submerged at the established flood stage, shall be anchored, attached to a foundation of concrete or of steel and concrete, of sufficient weight to provide adequate load for the tank when filled with flammable or combustible liquid and submerged by flood waters to the established flood stage, or adequately secured by other means.

(e) Revoked

(f) At locations where there is no ample and dependable water supply, or where filling of underground tanks with liquids is impracticable because of the character of their contents, their use, or for other reasons, each tank shall be safeguarded against movement when empty and submerged by high ground water or flood waters by anchoring, weighting with concrete or other approved solid loading material, or securing by other means. Each such tank shall be so constructed and installed that it will safely resist external pressures due to high ground water or flood waters.

(g) At locations where there is an ample and dependable water supply available, underground tanks containing flammable or combustible liquids, so installed that more than 70 percent of their storage capacity will be submerged at the maximum flood stage, shall be so anchored, weighted, or secured by other means, as to prevent movement of such tanks when filled with flammable or combustible liquids, and submerged by flood waters to the established flood stage.

(h) Pipe connections below the allowable liquid level in a tank shall be provided with valves or cocks located as closely as practicable to the tank shell. Such valves and their connections to tanks shall be of steel or other material suitable for use with the liquid being stored. Cast iron shall not be permitted.

(i) At locations where an independent water supply is required, it shall be entirely independent of public power and water supply. Independent source of water shall be available when flood waters reach a level not less than 10 feet below the bottom of the lowest tank on a property.

(j) The self-contained power and pumping unit shall be so located or so designed that pumping into tanks may be carried on continuously throughout the rise in flood waters from a level 10 feet below the lowest tank to the level of the potential flood stage.

(k) Capacity of the pumping unit shall be such that the rate of rise of water in all tanks shall be equivalent to the established potential average rate of rise of flood waters at any stage.

(l) Each independent pumping unit shall be tested periodically to insure that it is in satisfactory operating condition.

(m) Structural guides for holding floating tanks above their foundations shall be so designed that there will be no resistance to the free rise of a tank, and shall be constructed of noncombustible material.

(n) The strength of the structure shall be adequate to resist lateral movement of a tank subject to a horizontal force in any direction equivalent to not less than 25 pounds per square foot acting on the projected vertical cross-sectional area of the tank.

(o) Where tanks are situated on exposed points or bends in a shoreline where swift currents in flood waters will be present, the structures shall be designed to withstand a unit force of not less than 50 pounds per square foot.

(p) The filling of a tank to be protected by water loading shall be started as soon as floodwaters reach a dangerous flood stage. The rate of filling shall be at least equal to the rate of rise of the floodwaters (or the established average potential rate of rise).

(q) Sufficient fuel to operate the water pumps shall be available at all times to insure adequate power to fill all tankage with water.

(r) All valves on connecting pipelines shall be closed and locked in closed position when water loading has been completed.

(s) Where structural guides are provided for the protection of floating tanks, all rigid connections between tanks and pipelines shall be disconnected and blanked off or blinded before the floodwaters reach the bottom of the tank, unless control valves and their connections to the tank are of a type designed to prevent breakage between the valve and the tank shell.

(t) All valves attached to tanks other than those used in connection with water loading operations shall be closed and locked.

(u) If a tank is equipped with a swing line, the swing pipe shall be raised to and secured at its highest position.

(v) Inspections. The Assistant Secretary or his designated representative shall make periodic inspections of all plants where the storage of flammable or combustible liquids is such as to require compliance with the foregoing requirements, in order to assure the following:

(1) That all flammable or combustible liquid storage tanks are in compliance with these requirements and so maintained.

(2) That detailed printed instructions of what to do in flood emergencies are properly posted.

(3) That station operators and other employees depended upon to carry out such instructions are thoroughly informed as to the location and operation of such valves and other equipment necessary to effect these requirements.

(vii) Earthquake areas. In areas subject to earthquakes, the tank supports and connections shall be designed to resist damage as a result of such shocks.

(6) Sources of ignition. In locations where flammable vapors may be present, precautions shall be taken to prevent ignition by eliminating or controlling sources of ignition. Sources of ignition may include open flames, lightning, smoking, cutting and welding, hot surfaces, frictional heat, sparks (static, electrical, and mechanical), spontaneous ignition, chemical and physical-chemical reactions, and radiant heat.

(7) Testing.

(i) General. All tanks, whether shop built or field erected, shall be strength tested before they are placed in service in accordance with the applicable paragraphs of the code under which they were built. The American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) code stamp, American Petroleum Institute (API) monogram, or the label of the Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., on a tank shall be evidence of compliance with this strength test. Tanks not marked in accordance with the above codes shall be strength tested before they are placed in service in accordance with good engineering principles and reference shall be made to the sections on testing in the codes listed in subparagraphs (1)(iii)(*a*), (iv)(*b*), or (v)(*b*) of this paragraph.

(ii) Strength. When the vertical length of the fill and vent pipes is such that when filled with liquid the static head imposed upon the bottom of the tank exceeds 10 pounds per square inch, the tank and related piping shall be tested hydrostatically to a pressure equal to the static head thus imposed.

(iii) Tightness. In addition to the strength test called for in subdivisions (i) and (ii) of this subparagraph, all tanks and connections shall be tested for tightness. Except for underground tanks, this tightness test shall be made at operating pressure with air, inert gas, or water prior to placing the tank in service. In the case of field-erected tanks the strength test may be considered to be the test for tank tightness. Underground tanks and piping, before being covered, enclosed, or placed in use, shall be tested for tightness hydrostatically, or with air pressure at not less than 3 pounds per square inch and not more than 5 pounds per square inch.

(iv) Repairs. All leaks or deformations shall be corrected in an acceptable manner before the tank is placed in service. Mechanical caulking is not permitted for correcting leaks in welded tanks except pinhole leaks in the roof.

(v) Derated operations. Tanks to be operated at pressures below their design pressure may be tested by the applicable provisions of subdivisions (i) or (ii) of this subparagraph, based upon the pressure developed under full emergency venting of the tank.

(c) Piping, valves, and fittings.

(1) General.

(i) Design. The design (including selection of materials) fabrication, assembly, test, and inspection of piping systems containing flammable or combustible liquids shall be suitable for the expected working pressures and structural stresses. Conformity with the applicable provisions of Pressure Piping, ANSI B31 series and the provisions of this paragraph, shall be considered prima facie evidence of compliance with the foregoing provisions.

(ii) Exceptions. This paragraph does not apply to any of the following:

(a) Tubing or casing on any oil or gas wells and any piping connected directly thereto.

(b) Motor vehicle, aircraft, boat, or portable or stationary engines.

(c) Piping within the scope of any applicable boiler and pressures vessel code.

(iii) Definitions. As used in this paragraph, piping systems consist of pipe, tubing, flanges, bolting, gaskets, valves, fittings, the pressure containing parts of other components such as expansion joints and strainers, and devices which serve such purposes as mixing, separating, snubbing, distributing, metering, or controlling flow.

(2) Materials for piping, valves, and fittings.

(i) Required materials. Materials for piping, valves, or fittings shall be steel, nodular iron, or malleable iron, except as provided in paragraph (c) (2) (ii), (iii) and (iv) of this section.

(ii) Exceptions. Materials other than steel, nodular iron, or malleable iron may be used underground, or if required by the properties of the flammable or combustible liquid handled. Material other than steel, nodular iron, or malleable iron shall be designed to specifications embodying principles recognized as good engineering practices for the material used.

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

(iii) Linings. Piping, valves, and fittings may have combustible or noncombustible linings.

(iv) Low-melting materials. When low-melting point materials such as aluminum and brass or materials that soften on fire exposure such as plastics, or nonductile materials such as cast iron, are necessary, special consideration shall be given to their behavior on fire exposure. If such materials are used in aboveground piping systems or inside buildings, they shall be suitably protected against fire exposure or so located that any spill resulting from the failure of these materials could not unduly expose persons, important buildings or structures or can be readily controlled by remote valves.

(3) Pipe joints. Joints shall be made liquid tight. Welded or screwed joints or approved connectors shall be used. Threaded joints and connections shall be made up tight with a suitable lubricant or piping compound. Pipe joints dependent upon the friction characteristics of combustible materials for mechanical continuity of piping shall not be used inside buildings. They may be used outside of buildings above or below ground. If used aboveground, the piping shall either be secured to prevent disengagement at the fitting or the piping system shall be so designed that any spill resulting from such disengagement could not unduly expose persons, important buildings or structures, and could be readily controlled by remote valves.

(4) Supports. Piping systems shall be substantially supported and protected against physical damage and excessive stresses arising from settlement, vibration, expansion, or contraction.

(5) Protection against corrosion. All piping for flammable or combustible liquids, both aboveground and underground, where subject to external corrosion, shall be painted or otherwise protected.

(6) Valves. Piping systems shall contain a sufficient number of valves to operate the system properly and to protect the plant. Piping systems in connection with pumps shall contain a sufficient number of valves to control properly the flow of liquid in normal operation and in the event of physical damage. Each connection to pipelines, by which equipments such as tankcars or tank vehicles discharge liquids by means of pumps into storage tanks, shall be provided with a check valve for automatic protection against backflow if the piping arrangement is such that backflow from the system is possible.

(7) Testing. All piping before being covered, enclosed, or placed in use shall be hydrostatically tested to 150 percent of the maximum anticipated pressure of the system, or pneumatically tested to 110 percent of the maximum anticipated pressure of the system, but not less than 5 pounds per square inch gage at the highest point of the system. This test shall be maintained for a sufficient time to complete visual inspection of all joints and connections, but for at least 10 minutes.

(d) Container and portable tank storage.

(1) Scope.

(i) General. This paragraph shall apply only to the storage of flammable or combustible liquids in drums or other containers (including flammable aerosols) not exceeding 60 gallons individual capacity and those portable tanks not exceeding 660 gallons individual capacity.

(ii) Exceptions. This paragraph shall not apply to the following:

(a) Storage of containers in bulk plants, service stations, refineries, chemical plants, and distilleries;

(b) Class I or Class II liquids in the fuel tanks of a motor vehicle, aircraft, boat, or portable or stationary engine;

(c) Flammable or combustible paints, oils, varnishes, and similar mixtures used for painting or maintenance when not kept for a period in excess of 30 days;

(d) Beverages when packaged in individual containers not exceeding 1 gallon in size.

[38 F.R. 27047, Sept. 28, 1973.]

(2) Design, construction, and capacity of containers.

INTERP

(i) General. Only approved containers and portable tanks shall be used. Metal containers and portable tanks meeting the requirements of and containing products authorized by Chapter I, Title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations (regulations issued by the Hazardous Materials Regulations Board, Department of Transportation), shall be deemed to be acceptable.

(ii) Emergency venting. Each portable tank shall be provided with one or more devices installed in the top with sufficient emergency venting capacity to limit internal pressure under fire exposure conditions to 10 p.s.i.g., or 30 percent of the bursting pressure of the tank, whichever is greater. The total venting capacity shall be not less than that specified in paragraphs (b)(2)(v)(*c*) or (*e*) of this section. At least one pressure-actuated vent having a minimum capacity of 6,000 cubic feet of free air (14.7 p.s.i.a. and 60° F.) shall be used. It shall be set to open at not less than 5 p.s.i.g. If fusible vents are used, they shall be actuated by elements that operate at a temperature not exceeding 300° F.

(iii) Size. Flammable and combustible liquid containers shall be in accordance with Table H-12, except that glass or plastic containers of no more than 1-gallon capacity may be used for a Class IA or IB flammable liquid if:

(a)

(1) Such liquid either would be rendered unfit for its intended use by contact with metal or would excessively corrode a metal container so as to create a leakage hazard; and

(2) The user's process either would require more than 1 pint of a Class IA liquid or more than 1 quart of a Class IB liquid of a single assay lot to be used at one time, or would require the maintenance of an analytical standard liquid of a quality which is not met by the specified standards of liquids available, and the quantity of the analytical standard liquid required to be used in any one control process exceeds one-sixteenth the capacity of the container allowed under Table H-12 for the class of liquid; or

(b) The containers are intended for direct export outside the United States.

(3) Design, construction, and capacity of storage cabinets.

(i) Maximum capacity. Not more than 60 gallons of Class I or Class II liquids, nor more than 120 gallons of Class III liquids may be stored in a storage cabinet.

[38 F.R. 27047, Sept. 28, 1973.]

TABLE H-12—MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SIZE OF CONTAINERS AND PORTABLE TANKS

Container type	Flammable liquids			Combustible liquids	
	Class IA	Class IB	Class IC	Class II	Class III
Glass or approved plastic	1 pt	1 qt	1 gal	1 gal	1 gal.
Metal (other than DOT drums)	1 gal	5 gal	5 gal	5 gal	5 gal.
Safety cans	2 gal	5 gal	5 gal	5 gal	5 gal.
Metal drums (DOT spec.)	60 gal	60 gal	60 gal	60 gal	60 gal.
Approved portable tanks	660 gal	660 gal	660 gal	660 gal	660 gal.

Container exemptions: (a) Medicines, beverages, foodstuffs, cosmetics, and other common consumer items, when packaged according to commonly accepted practices, shall be exempt from the requirements of § 1910.106 (d) (2).

[38 F.R. 27047, Sept. 28, 1973.]

(ii) Fire resistance. Storage cabinets shall be designed and constructed to limit the internal temperature to not more than 325° F. when subjected to a 10-minute fire test using the standard time-temperature curve as set forth in Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials, NFPA 251-1969. All joints and seams shall remain tight and the door shall remain securely closed during the fire test. Cabinets shall be labeled in conspicuous lettering, "Flammable—Keep Fire Away."

(a) Metal cabinets constructed in the following manner shall be deemed to be in compliance. The bottom, top, door, and sides of cabinet shall be at least No. 18 gage sheet iron and double walled with 1½-inch air space. Joints shall be riveted, welded or made tight by some equally effective means. The door shall be provided with a three-point lock, and the door sill shall be raised at least 2 inches above the bottom of the cabinet.

(b) Wooden cabinets constructed in the following manner shall be deemed in compliance. The bottom, sides, and top shall be constructed of an approved grade of plywood at least 1 inch in thickness, which shall not break down or delaminate under fire conditions. All joints shall be rabbetted and shall be fastened in two directions with flathead woodscrews. When more than one door is used, there shall be a rabbetted overlap of not less than 1 inch. Hinges shall be mounted in such a manner as not to lose their holding capacity due to loosening or burning out of the screws when subjected to the fire test.

(4) Design and construction of inside storage rooms.

(i) Construction. Inside storage rooms shall be constructed to meet the required fire-resistive rating for their use. Such construction shall comply with the test specifications set forth in Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials, NFPA 251-1969. Where an automatic sprinkler system is provided, the system shall be designed and installed in an acceptable manner. Openings to other rooms or buildings shall be provided with noncombustible liquid-tight raised sills or ramps at least 4 inches in height, or the floor in the storage area shall be at least 4 inches below the surrounding floor. Openings shall be provided with approved self-closing fire doors. The room shall be liquid-tight where the walls join the floor. A permissible alternate to the sill or ramp is an open-grated trench inside of the room which drains to a safe location. Where other portions of the building or other properties are exposed, windows shall be protected as set forth in the Standard for Fire Doors and Windows, NFPA No. 80-1968, for Class E or F openings. Wood at least 1 inch nominal thickness may be used for shelving, racks, dunnage, scuffboards, floor overlay, and similar installations.

(ii) Rating and capacity. Storage in inside storage rooms shall comply with Table H-13.

TABLE H-13 STORAGE IN INSIDE ROOMS

Fire protection* provided	Fire resistance	Maximum size	Total allowable quantities (gals./sq. ft./floor area)
Yes	2 hours	500 sq. ft.	10
No	2 hours	500 sq. ft.	4
Yes	1 hour	150 sq. ft.	5
No	1 hour	150 sq. ft.	2

*Fire protection system shall be sprinkler, water spray, carbon dioxide, or other system.

(iii) Wiring. Electrical wiring and equipment located in inside storage rooms used for Class I liquids shall be approved under subpart S of this part for Class I, Division 2 Hazardous Locations; for Class II and Class III liquids, shall be approved for general use.

(iv) Ventilation. Every inside storage room shall be provided with either a gravity or a mechanical exhaust ventilation system. Such system shall be designed to provide for a complete change of air within the room at least six times per hour. If a mechanical exhaust system is used, it shall be controlled by a switch located outside of the door. The ventilating equipment and any lighting fixtures shall be operated by the same switch. A pilot light shall be installed adjacent to the switch if Class I flammable liquids are dispensed within the room. Where gravity ventilation is provided, the fresh air intake, as well as the exhaust outlet from the room, shall be on the exterior of the building in which the room is located.

(v) Storage in inside storage rooms. In every inside storage room there shall be maintained one clear aisle at least 3 feet wide. Containers over 30 gallons capacity shall not be stacked one upon the other. Dispensing shall be by approved pump or self-closing faucet only.

(5) Storage inside building.

(i) Egress. Flammable or combustible liquids, including stock for sale, shall not be stored so as to limit use of exits, stairways, or areas normally used for the safe egress of people.

(ii) Containers. The storage of flammable or combustible liquids in containers or portable tanks shall comply with subdivisions (iii) through (v) of this subparagraph.

(iii) Office occupancies. Storage shall be prohibited except that which is required for maintenance and operation of building and operation of equipment. Such storage shall be kept in closed metal containers stored in a storage cabinet or in safety cans or in an inside storage room not having a door that opens into that portion of the building used by the public.

(iv) Mercantile occupancies and other retail stores.

(a) thru (d) Revoked

(e) Leaking containers shall be removed to a storage room or taken to a safe location outside the building and the contents transferred to an undamaged container.

(v) General purpose public warehouses. Storage shall be in accordance with Table H-14 or H-15 and in buildings or in portions of such buildings cut off by standard firewalls. Material creating no fire exposure hazard to the flammable or combustible liquids may be stored in the same area.

TABLE II-14—INDOOR CONTAINER STORAGE

Class liquid	Storage level	Protected storage maximum per pile	Unprotected storage maximum per pile
		Gallons	Gallons
IA	Ground and upper floors	2, 750 (50)	660 (12)
	Basement	Not permitted	Not permitted
IB	Ground and upper floors	5, 500 (100)	1, 375 (25)
	Basement	Not permitted	Not permitted
IC	Ground and upper floors	16, 500 (300)	4, 125 (75)
	Basement	Not permitted	Not permitted
II	Ground and upper floors	16, 500 (300)	4, 125 (75)
	Basement	5, 500 (100)	Not permitted
III	Ground and upper floors	55, 000 (1, 000)	13, 750 (250)
	Basement	8, 250 (450)	Not permitted

NOTE 1: When 2 or more classes of materials are stored in a single pile, the maximum gallonage permitted in that pile shall be the smallest of the 2 or more separate maximum gallonages.

NOTE 2: Aisles shall be provided so that no container is more than 12 ft. from an aisle. Main aisles shall be at least 8 ft. wide and side aisles at least 4 ft. wide.

(Numbers in parentheses indicate corresponding number of 55-gal. drums.)

NOTE 3: Each pile shall be separated from each other by at least 4 ft.

TABLE II-15—INDOOR PORTABLE TANK STORAGE

Class liquid	Storage level	Protected storage maximum per pile	Unprotected storage maximum per pile
		Gallons	Gallons
IA	Ground and upper floors	Not permitted	Not permitted
	Basement	Not permitted	Not permitted
IB	Ground and upper floors	20, 000	2, 000
	Basement	Not permitted	Not permitted
IC	Ground and upper floors	40, 000	5, 500
	Basement	Not permitted	Not permitted
II	Ground and upper floors	40, 000	5, 500
	Basement	20, 000	Not permitted
III	Ground and upper floors	60, 000	22, 000
	Basement	20, 000	Not permitted

NOTE 1: When 2 or more classes of materials are stored in a single pile, the maximum gallonage permitted in that pile shall be the smallest of the 2 or more separate maximum gallonages.

NOTE 2: Aisles shall be provided so that no portable tank is more than 12 ft. from an aisle. Main aisles shall be at least 8 ft. wide and side aisles at least 4 ft. wide.

NOTE 3: Each pile shall be separated from each other by at least 4 ft.

(vi) Flammable and combustible liquid warehouses or storage buildings.

(a) If the storage building is located 50 feet or less from a building or line of adjoining property that may be built upon, the exposing wall shall be a blank wall having a fire-resistance rating of at least 2 hours.

(b) The total quantity of liquids within a building shall not be restricted, but the arrangement of storage shall comply with Table H-14 or H-15.

(c) Containers in piles shall be separated by pallets or dunnage where necessary to provide stability and to prevent excessive stress on container walls.

(d) Portable tanks stored over one tier high shall be designed to nest securely, without dunnage, and adequate materials handling equipment shall be available to handle tanks safely at the upper tier level.

(e) No pile shall be closer than 3 feet to the nearest beam, chord, girder, or other obstruction, and shall be 3 feet below sprinkler deflectors or discharge orifices of water spray, or other overhead fire protection systems.

(f) Aisles of at least 3 feet wide shall be provided where necessary for reasons of access to doors, windows or standpipe connections.

(6) Storage outside buildings.

(i) General. Storage outside buildings shall be in accordance with Table H-16 or H-17, and subdivisions (ii) and (iv) of this subparagraph.

TABLE H-16—OUTDOOR CONTAINER STORAGE

1 Class	2 Maximum per pile (see note 1)	3 Distance between piles (see note 2)	4 Distance to property line that can be built upon (see notes 3 and 4)	5 Distance to street, alley, public way (see note 4)
	gal.	*ft.*	*ft.*	*ft.*
IA	1,100	5	20	10
IB	2,200	5	20	10
IC	4,400	5	20	10
II	8,800	5	10	5
III	22,000	5	10	5

NOTE 1: When 2 or more classes of materials are stored in a single pile, the maximum gallonage in that pile shall be the smallest of the 2 or more separate gallonages.
NOTE 2: Within 200 ft. of each container, there shall be a 12-ft. wide access way to permit approach of fire control apparatus.
NOTE 3: The distances listed apply to properties that have protection for exposures as defined. If there are exposures, and such protection for exposures does not exist, the distances in column 4 shall be doubled.
NOTE 4: When total quantity stored does not exceed 50 percent of maximum per pile, the distances in columns 4 and 5 may be reduced 50 percent, but not less than 3 ft.

TABLE H-17—OUTDOOR PORTABLE TANK STORAGE

1 Class	2 Maximum per pile	3 Distance between piles	4 Distance to property line that can be built upon	5 Distance to street, alley, public way
	gal.	*ft.*	*ft.*	*ft.*
IA	2,200	5	20	10
IB	4,400	5	20	10
IC	8,800	5	20	10
II	17,600	5	10	5
III	44,000	5	10	5

NOTE 1: When 2 or more classes of materials are stored in a single pile, the maximum gallonage in that pile shall be the the smallest of the 2 or more separate gallonages.
NOTE 2: Within 200 ft. of each portable tank, there shall be a 12-ft. wide access way to permit approach of fire control apparatus.
NOTE 3: The distances listed apply to properties that have protection for exposures as defined. If there are exposures, and such protection for exposures does not exist, the distances in column 4 shall be doubled.
NOTE 4: When total quantity stored does not exceed 50 percent of maximum per pile, the distances in columns 4 and 5 may be reduced 50 percent, but not less than 3 ft.

(ii) Maximum storage. A maximum of 1,100 gallons of flammable or combustible liquids may be located adjacent to buildings located on the same premises and under the same management provided the provisions of subdivisions (*a*) and (*b*) of this subdivision are complied with.

(a) Revoked

(b) Where quantity stored exceeds 1,100 gallons, or provisions of subdivision (*a*) of this subdivision cannot be met, a minimum distance of 10 feet between buildings and nearest container of flammable or combustible liquid shall be maintained.

(iii) Spill containment. The storage area shall be graded in a manner to divert possible spills away from buildings or other exposures or shall be surrounded by a curb at least 6 inches high. When curbs are used, provisions shall be made for draining of accumulations of ground or rain water or spills of flammable or combustible liquids. Drains shall terminate at a safe location and shall be accessible to operation under fire conditions.

(iv) Security. The storage area shall be protected against tampering or trespassers where necessary and shall be kept free of weeds, debris and other combustible material not necessary to the storage.

(7) Fire control

(i) Extinguishers. Suitable fire control devices, such as small hose or portable fire extinguishers, shall be available at locations where flammable or combustible liquids are stored.

(a) At least one portable fire extinguisher having a rating of not less than 12-B units shall be located outside of, but not more than 10 feet from, the door opening into any room used for storage.

(b) At least one portable fire extinguisher having a rating of not less than 12-B units must be located not less than 10 feet, nor more than 25 feet, from any Class I or Class II liquid storage area located outside of a storage room but inside a building.

(ii) Sprinklers. When sprinklers are provided, they shall be installed in accordance with § 1910.159.

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

(iii) Open flames and smoking. Open flames and smoking shall not be permitted in flammable or combustible liquid storage areas.

(iv) Water reactive materials. Materials which will react with water shall not be stored in the same room with flammable or combustible liquids.

[38 F.R. 27047, Sept. 28, 1973.]

(e) Industrial plants.

(1) Scope.

(i) Application. This paragraph shall apply to those industrial plants where:

(a) The use of flammable or combustible liquids is incidental to the principal business, or

(b) Where flammable or combustible liquids are handled or used only in unit physical operations such as mixing, drying, evaporating, filtering, distillation, and similar operations which do not involve chemical reaction. This paragraph shall not apply to chemical plants, refineries or distilleries.

(ii) Exceptions. Where portions of such plants involve chemical reactions such as oxidation, reduction, halogenation, hydrogenation, alkylation, polymerization, and other chemical processes, those portions of the plant shall be in accordance with paragraph (h) of this section.

INTERP

(2) Incidental storage or use of flammable and combustible liquids.

(i) Application. This subparagraph shall be applicable to those portions of an industrial plant where the use and handling of flammable or combustible liquids is only incidental to the principal business, such as automobile assembly, construction of electronic equipment, furniture manufacturing, or other similar activities.

(ii) Containers. Flammable or combustible liquids shall be stored in tanks or closed containers.

(a) Except as provided in subdivisions (*b*) and (*c*) of this subdivision, all storage shall comply with paragraph (d)(3) or (4) of this section.

INTERP

(b) The quantity of liquid that may be located outside of an inside storage room or storage cabinet in a building or in any one fire area of a building shall not exceed:

(1) 25 gallons of Class IA liquids in containers.

(2) 120 gallons of Class IB, IC, II, or III liquids in containers.

(3) 660 gallons of Class IB, IC, II, or III liquids in a single portable tank.

(c) Where large quantities of flammable or combustible liquids are necessary, storage may be in tanks which shall comply with the applicable requirements of paragraph (b) of this section.

(iii) Separation and protection. Areas in which flammable or combustible liquids are transferred from one tank or container to another container shall be separated from other operations in the building by adequate distance or by construction having adequate fire resistance. Drainage or other means shall be provided to control spills. Adequate natural or mechanical ventilation shall be provided.

(iv) Handling liquids at point of final use.

(a) Flammable liquids shall be kept in covered containers when not actually in use.

(b) Where flammable or combustible liquids are used or handled, except in closed containers, means shall be provided to dispose promptly and safely of leakage or spills.

(c) Class I liquids may be used only where there are no open flames or other sources of ignition within the possible path of vapor travel.

(d) Flammable or combustible liquids shall be drawn from or transferred into vessels, containers, or portable tanks within a building only through a closed piping system, from safety cans, by means of a device drawing through the top, or from a container or portable tanks by gravity through an approved self-closing valve. Transferring by means of air pressure on the container or portable tanks shall be prohibited.

(3) Unit physical operations.

(i) Application. This subparagraph shall be applicable in those portions of industrial plants where flammable or combustible liquids are handled or used in unit physical operations such as mixing, drying, evaporating, filtering, distillation, and similar operations which do not involve chemical change. Examples are plants compounding cosmetics, pharmaceuticals, solvents, cleaning fluids, insecticides, and similar types of activities.

(ii) Location. Industrial plants shall be located so that each building or unit of equipment is accessible from at least one side for firefighting and fire control purposes. Buildings shall be located with respect to lines of adjoining property which may be built upon as set forth in paragraph (h)(2)(i) and (ii) of this section except that the blank wall referred to in paragraph (h)(2)(ii) of this section shall have a fire resistance rating of at least 2 hours.

(iii) Chemical processes. Areas where unstable liquids are handled or small scale unit chemical processes are carried on shall be separated from the remainder of the plant by a fire wall of 2-hour minimum fire resistance rating.

(iv) Drainage.

(a) Emergency drainage systems shall be provided to direct flammable or combustible liquid leakage and fire protection water to a safe location. This may require curbs, scuppers, or special drainage systems to control the spread of fire; see paragraph (b)(2)(vii)(*b*) of this section.

(b) Emergency drainage systems, if connected to public sewers or discharged into public waterways, shall be equipped with traps or separators.

(c) Revoked

(v) Ventilation.

(a) Areas as defined in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph using Class I liquids shall be ventilated at a rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot of solid floor area. This shall be accomplished by natural or mechanical ventilation with discharge or exhaust to a safe location outside of the building. Provision shall be made for introduction of makeup air in such a manner as not to short circuit the ventilation. Ventilation shall be arranged to include all floor areas or pits where flammable vapors may collect.

(b) Equipment used in a building and the ventilation of the building shall be designed so as to limit flammable vapor-air mixtures under normal operating conditions to the interior of equipment, and to not more than 5 feet from equipment which exposes Class I liquids to the air. Examples of such equipment are dispensing stations, open centrifuges, plate and frame filters, open vacuum filters, and surfaces of open equipment.

(vi) Storage and handling. The storage, transfer, and handling of liquid shall comply with paragraph (h)(4) of this section.

(4) Tank vehicle and tank car loading and unloading.

(i) Tank vehicle and tank car loading or unloading facilities shall be separated from aboveground tanks, warehouses, other plant buildings or nearest line of adjoining property which may be built upon by a distance of 25 feet for Class I liquids and 15 feet for Class II and Class III liquids measured from the nearest position of any fill stem. Buildings for pumps or shelters for personnel may be a part of the facility. Operations of the facility shall comply with the appropriate portions of paragraph (f)(3) of this section.

(5) Fire control.

(i) Portable and special equipment. Portable fire extinguishment and control equipment shall be provided in such quantities and types as are needed for the special hazards of operation and storage.

(ii) Water supply. Water shall be available in volume and at adequate pressure to supply water hose streams, foam-producing equipment, automatic sprinklers, or water spray systems as the need is indicated by the special hazards of operation, dispensing and storage.

(iii) Special extinguishers. Special extinguishing equipment such as that utilizing foam, inert gas, or dry chemical shall be provided as the need is indicated by the special hazards of operation dispensing and storage.

(iv) Special hazards. Where the need is indicated by special hazards of operation, flammable or combustible liquid processing equipment, major piping, and supporting steel shall be protected by approved water spray systems, deluge systems, approved fire-resistant coatings, insulation, or any combination of these.

(v) Maintenance. All plant fire protection facilities shall be adequately maintained and periodically inspected and tested to make sure they are always in satisfactory operating condition, and they will serve their purpose in time of emergency.

(6) Sources of ignition.

(i) General. Adequate precautions shall be taken to prevent the ignition of flammable vapors. Sources of ignition include but are not limited to open flames; lightning; smoking; cutting and welding; hot surfaces; frictional heat; static, electrical, and mechanical sparks; spontaneous ignition, including heat-producing chemical reactions; and radiant heat.

(ii) Grounding. Class I liquids shall not be dispensed into containers unless the nozzle and container are electrically interconnected. Where the metallic floorplate on which the container stands while filling is electrically connected to the fill stem or where the fill stem is bonded to the container during filling operations by means of a bond wire, the provisions of this section shall be deemed to have been complied with.

(7) Electrical.

(i) Equipment.

(a) All electrical wiring and equipment shall be installed according to the requirements of Subpart S of this part.

(b) Locations where flammable vapor-air mixtures may exist under normal operations shall be classified Class I, Division 1 according to the requirements of Subpart S of this part. For those pieces of equipment installed in accordance with subparagraph (3)(v)(*b*) of this paragraph, the Division 1 area shall extend 5 feet in all directions from all points of vapor liberation. All areas within pits shall be classified Division 1 if any part of the pit is within a Division 1 or 2 classified area, unless the pit is provided with mechanical ventilation.

(c) Locations where flammable vapor-air mixtures may exist under abnormal conditions and for a distance beyond Division 1 locations shall be classified Division 2 according to the requirements of Subpart S of this part. These locations include an area within 20 feet horizontally, 3 feet vertically beyond a Division 1 area, and up to 3 feet above floor or grade level within 25 feet, if indoors, or 10 feet if outdoors, from any pump, bleeder, withdrawal fitting, meter, or similar device handling Class I liquids. Pits provided with adequate mechanical ventilation within a Division 1 or 2 area shall be classified Division 2. If Class II or Class III liquids only are handled, then ordinary electrical equipment is satisfactory though care shall be used in locating electrical apparatus to prevent hot metal from falling into open equipment.

(d) Where the provisions of subdivisions (*a*), (*b*), and (*c*), of this subdivision require the installation of electrical equipment suitable for Class I, Division 1 or Division 2 locations, ordinary electrical equipment including switchgear may be used if installed in a room or enclosure which is maintained under positive pressure with respect to the hazardous area. Ventilation makeup air shall be uncontaminated by flammable vapors.

(8) Repairs to equipment. Hot work, such as welding or cutting operations, use of spark-producing power tools, and chipping operations shall be permitted only under supervision of an individual in responsible charge. The individual in responsible charge shall make an inspection of the area to be sure that it is safe for the work to be done and that safe procedures will be followed for the work specified.

(9) Housekeeping.

(i) General. Maintenance and operating practices shall be in accordance with established procedures which will tend to control leakage and prevent the accidental escape of flammable or combustible liquids. Spills shall be cleaned up promptly.

(ii) Access. Adequate aisles shall be maintained for unobstructed movement of personnel and so that fire protection equipment can be brought to bear on any part of flammable or combustible liquid storage, use, or any unit physical operation.

(iii) Waste and residue. Combustible waste material and residues in a building or unit operating area shall be kept to a minimum, stored in covered metal receptacles and disposed of daily.

(iv) Clear zone. Ground area around buildings and unit operating areas shall be kept free of weeds, trash, or other unnecessary combustible materials.

(f) Bulk plants.

(1) Storage.

(i) Class I liquids. Class I liquids shall be stored in closed containers, or in storage tanks above ground outside of buildings, or underground in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section.

(ii) Class II and III liquids. Class II and Class III liquids shall be stored in containers, or in tanks within buildings or above ground outside of buildings, or underground in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section.

(iii) Piling containers. Containers of flammable or combustible liquids when piled one upon the other shall be separated by dunnage sufficient to provide stability and to prevent excessive stress on container walls. The height of the pile shall be consistent with the stability and strength of containers.

(2) Buildings.

(i) Exits. Rooms in which flammable or combustible liquids are stored or handled by pumps shall have exit facilities arranged to prevent occupants from being trapped in the event of fire.

(ii) Heating. Rooms in which Class I liquids are stored or handled shall be heated only by means not constituting a source of ignition, such as steam or hot water. Rooms containing heating appliances involving sources of ignition shall be located and arranged to prevent entry of flammable vapors.

(iii) Ventilation.

(a) Ventilation shall be provided for all rooms, buildings, or enclosures in which Class I liquids are pumped or dispensed. Design of ventilation systems shall take into account the relatively high specific gravity of the vapors. Ventilation may be provided by adequate openings in outside walls at floor level unobstructed except by louvers or coarse screens. Where natural ventilation is inadequate, mechanical ventilation shall be provided.

(b) Class I liquids shall not be stored or handled within a building having a basement or pit into which flammable vapors may travel, unless such area is provided with ventilation designed to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors therein.

(c) Containers of Class I liquids shall not be drawn from or filled within buildings unless provision is made to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors in hazardous concentrations. Where mechanical ventilation is required, it shall be kept in operation while flammable liquids are being handled.

(3) Loading and unloading facilities.

(i) Separation. Tank vehicle and tank car loading or unloading facilities shall be separated from aboveground tanks, warehouses, other plant buildings or nearest line of adjoining property that may be built upon by a distance of 25 feet for Class I liquids and 15 feet for Class II and Class III liquids measured from the nearest position of any fill spout. Buildings for pumps or shelters for personnel may be a part of the facility.

(ii) Class restriction. Equipment such as piping, pumps, and meters used for the transfer of Class I liquids between storage tanks and the fill stem of the loading rack shall not be used for the transfer of Class II or Class III liquids.

(iii) Valves. Valves used for the final control for filling tank vehicles shall be of the self-closing type and manually held open except where automatic means are provided for shutting off the flow when the vehicle is full or after filling of a preset amount.

(iv) Static protection.

(a) Bonding facilities for protection against static sparks during the loading of tank vehicles through open domes shall be provided:

(1) Where Class I liquids are loaded, or

(2) Where Class II or Class III liquids are loaded into vehicles which may contain vapors from previous cargoes of Class I liquids.

(b) Protection as required in (*a*) of this subdivision (iv) shall consist of a metallic bond wire permanently electrically connected to the fill stem or to some part of the rack structure in electrical contact with the fill stem. The free end of such wire shall be provided with a clamp or equivalent device for convenient attachment to some metallic part in electrical contact with the cargo tank of the tank vehicle.

(c) Such bonding connection shall be made fast to the vehicle or tank before dome covers are raised and shall remain in place until filling is completed and all dome covers have been closed and secured.

(d) Bonding as specified in (*a*), (*b*), and (*c*) of this subdivision is not required:

(1) Where vehicles are loaded exclusively with products not having a static accumulating tendency, such as asphalt, most crude oils, residual oils, and water soluble liquids;

(2) Where no Class I liquids are handled at the loading facility and the tank vehicles loaded are used exclusively for Class II and Class III liquids; and

(3) Where vehicles are loaded or unloaded through closed bottom or top connections.

(e) Filling through open domes into the tanks of tank vehicles or tank cars, that contain vapor-air mixtures within the flammable range or where the liquid being filled can form such a mixture, shall be by means of a downspout which extends near the bottom of the tank. This precaution is not required when loading liquids which are nonaccumulators of static charges.

(v) Stray currents. Tank car loading facilities where Class I liquids are loaded through open domes shall be protected against stray currents by bonding the pipe to at least one rail and to the rack structure if of metal. Multiple lines entering the rack area shall be electrically bonded together. In addition, in areas where excessive stray currents are known to exist, all pipe entering the rack area shall be provided with insulating sections to electrically isolate the rack piping from the pipelines. No bonding between the tank car and the rack or piping is required during either loading or unloading of Class II or III liquids.

(vi) Container filling facilities. Class I liquids shall not be dispensed into containers unless the nozzle and container are electrically interconnected. Where the metallic floorplate on which the container stands while filling is electrically connected to the fill stem or where the fill stem is bonded to the container during filling operations by means of a bond wire, the provisions of this section shall be deemed to have been complied with.

(4) Wharves.

(i) Definition, application. The term wharf shall mean any wharf, pier, bulkhead, or other structure over or contiguous to navigable water used in conjunction with a bulk plant, the primary function of which is the transfer of flammable or combustible liquid cargo in bulk between the bulk plant and any tank vessel, ship, barge, lighter boat, or other mobile floating craft; and this subparagraph shall apply to all such installations except Marine Service Stations as covered in paragraph (g) of this section.

(ii) Package cargo. Revoked

(iii) Location. Revoked

(iv) Design and construction. Substructure and deck shall be substantially designed for the use intended. Deck may employ any material which will afford the desired combination of flexibility, resistance to shock, durability, strength, and fire resistance. Heavy timber construction is acceptable.

(v) Tanks. Revoked

(vi) Pumps. Loading pumps capable of building up pressures in excess of the safe working pressure of cargo hose or loading arms shall be provided with bypasses, relief valves, or other arrangement to protect the loading facilities against excessive pressure. Relief devices shall be tested at not more than yearly intervals to determine that they function satisfactorily at the pressure at which they are set.

(vii) Hoses and couplings. All pressure hoses and couplings shall be inspected at intervals appropriate to the service. The hose and couplings shall be tested with the hose extended and using the "inservice maximum operating pressures." Any hose showing material deteriorations, signs of leakage, or weakness in its carcass or at the couplings shall be withdrawn from service and repaired or discarded.

(viii) Piping and fittings. Piping, valves, and fittings shall be in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, with the following exceptions and additions:

(a) Flexibility of piping shall be assured by appropriate layout and arrangement of piping supports so that motion of the wharf structure resulting from wave action, currents, tides, or the mooring of vessels will not subject the pipe to repeated strain beyond the elastic limit.

(b) Pipe joints depending upon the friction characteristics of combustible materials or grooving of pipe ends for mechanical continuity of piping shall not be used.

(c) Swivel joints may be used in piping to which hoses are connected, and for articulated swivel-joint transfer systems, provided that the design is such that the mechanical strength of the joint will not be impaired if the packing material should fail, as by exposure to fire.

(**d**) Piping systems shall contain a sufficient number of valves to operate the system properly and to control the flow of liquid in normal operation and in the event of physical damage.

(**e**) In addition to the requirements of subdivision (*d*) of this subdivision, each line conveying flammable liquids leading to a wharf shall be provided with a readily accessible block valve located on shore near the approach to the wharf and outside of any diked area. Where more than one line is involved, the valves shall be grouped in one location.

(**f**) Means of easy access shall be provided for cargo line valves located below the wharf deck.

(**g**) Pipelines on flammable or combustible liquids wharves shall be adequately bonded and grounded. If excessive stray currents are encountered, insulating joints shall be installed. Bonding and grounding connections on all pipelines shall be located on wharf-side of hose-riser insulating flanges, if used, and shall be accessible for inspection.

(**h**) Hose or articulated swivel-joint pipe connections used for cargo transfer shall be capable of accommodating the combined effects of change in draft and maximum tidal range, and mooring lines shall be kept adjusted to prevent the surge of the vessel from placing stress on the cargo transfer system.

(**i**) Hose shall be supported so as to avoid kinking and damage from chafing.

(ix) Fire protection. Suitable portable fire extinguishers with a rating of not less than 12–BC shall be located within 75 feet of those portions of the facility where fires are likely to occur, such as hose connections, pumps, and separator tanks.

(**a**) Where piped water is available, ready-connected fire hose in size appropriate for the water supply shall be provided so that manifolds where connections are made and broken can be reached by at least one hose stream.

(**b**) Material shall not be placed on wharves in such a manner as to obstruct access to firefighting equipment, or important pipeline control valves.

(**c**) Where the wharf is accessible to vehicle traffic, an unobstructed roadway to the shore end of the wharf shall be maintained for access of firefighting apparatus.

(x) Operations control. Loading or discharging shall not commence until the wharf superintendent and officer in charge of the tank vessel agree that the tank vessel is properly moored and all connections are properly made. Mechanical work shall not be performed on the wharf during cargo transfer, except under special authorization based on a review of the area involved, methods to be employed, and precautions necessary.

(5) Electrical equipment.

(i) Application. This subparagraph shall apply to areas where Class I liquids are stored or handled. For areas where Class II or Class III liquids only are stored or handled, the electrical equipment may be installed in accordance with the provisions of subpart S of this part, for ordinary locations.

(ii) Conformance. All electrical equipment and wiring shall be of a type specified by and shall be installed in accordance with subpart S of this part.

(iii) Classification. So far as it applies Table H–18 shall be used to delineate and classify hazardous areas for the purpose of installation of electrical equipment under normal circumstances. In Table H–18 a classified area shall not extend beyond an unpierced wall, roof, or other solid partition. The area classifications listed shall be based on the premise that the installation meets the applicable requirements of this section in all respects.

TABLE H-18—ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT HAZARDOUS AREAS—BULK PLANTS

Location	NEC Class I Group D division	Extent of classified area
Tank vehicle and tank car:[1]		
Loading through open dome	1	Within 3 feet of edge of dome, extending in all directions.
	2	Area between 3 feet and 5 feet from edge of dome, extending in all directions.
Loading through bottom connections with atmospheric venting.	1	Within 3 feet of point of venting to atmosphere extending in all directions.
	2	Area between 3 feet and 5 feet from point of venting to atmosphere, extending in all directions. Also up to 18 inches above grade within a horizontal radius of 10 feet from point of loading connection.
Loading through closed dome with atmospheric venting.	1	Within 3 feet of open end of vent, extending in all directions.
	2	Area between 3 feet and 5 feet from open end of vent, extending in all directions. Also within 3 feet of edge of dome, extending in all directions.
Loading through closed dome with vapor recovery.	2	Within 3 feet of point of connection of both fill and vapor lines, extending in all directions.
Bottom loading with vapor recovery or any bottom unloading.	2	Within 3 feet of point of connections extending in all directions. Also up to 18 inches above grade within a horizontal radius of 10 feet from point of connection.
Drum and container filling:		
Outdoors, or indoors with adequate ventilation.	1	Within 3 feet of vent and fill opening, extending in all directions.
	2	Area between 3 feet and 5 feet from vent or fill opening, extending in all directions. Also up to 18 inches above floor or grade level within a horizontal radius of 10 feet from vent or fill opening.
Outdoors, or indoors with adequate ventilation.	1	Within 3 feet of vent and fill opening, extending in all directions.
	2	Area between 3 feet and 5 feet from vent or fill opening, extending in all directions. Also up to 18 inches above floor or grade level within a horizontal radius of 10 feet from vent or fill opening.
Tank—Aboveground:		
Shell, ends, or roof and dike area	2	Within 10 feet from shell, ends, or roof of tank. Area inside dikes to level of top of dike.
Vent	1	Within 5 feet of open end of vent, extending in all directions.
	2	Area between 5 feet and 10 feet from open end of vent, extending in all directions.
Floating roof	1	Area above the roof and within the shell.
Pits:		
Without mechanical ventilation	1	Entire area within pit if any part is within a Division 1 or 2 classified area.
With mechanical ventilation	2	Entire area within pit if any part is within a Division 1 or 2 classified area.
Containing valves, fittings or piping, and not within a division 1 or 2 classified area.	2	Entire pit.
Pumps, bleeders, withdrawal fittings, meters and similar devices:		
Indoors	2	Within 5 feet of any edge of such devices, extending in all directions. Also up to 3 feet above floor or grade level within 25 feet horizontally from any edge of such devices.
Outdoors	2	Within 3 feet of any edge of such devices, extending in all directions. Also up to 18 inches above grade level within 10 feet horizontally from any edge of such devices.
Storage and repair garage for tank vehicles	1	All pits or spaces below floor level.
	2	Area up to 18 inches above floor or grade level for entire storage or repair garage.
Drainage ditches, separators, impounding basins.	2	Area up to 18 inches above ditch, separator or basin. Also up to 18 inches above grade within 15 feet horizontally from any edge.
Garages for other than tank vehicles	Ordinary	If there is any opening to these rooms within the extent of an outdoor classified area, the entire room shall be classified the same as the area classification at the point of the opening.
Outdoor drum storage	Ordinary	

See footnote at end of table.

TABLE H-18—ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT HAZARDOUS AREAS—BULK PLANTS—Continued

Location	NEC Class I Group D division	Extent of classified area
Indoor warehousing where there is no flammable liquid transfer.	Ordinary	If there is any opening to these rooms within the extent of an indoor classified area, the room shall be classified the same as if the wall, curb or partition did not exist.
Office and rest rooms	Ordinary	

---

[1] When classifying the extent of the area, consideration shall be given to the fact that tank cars or tank vehicles may be spotted at varying points. Therefore, the extremities of the loading or unloading positions shall be used.

(6) Sources of ignition. Class I liquids shall not be handled, drawn, or dispensed where flammable vapors may reach a source of ignition. Smoking shall be prohibited except in designated localities. "No Smoking" signs shall be conspicuously posted where hazard from flammable liquid vapors is normally present.

(7) Drainage and waste disposal. Provision shall be made to prevent flammable or combustible liquids which may be spilled at loading or unloading points from entering public sewers and drainage systems, or natural waterways. Connection to such sewers, drains, or waterways by which flammable or combustible liquids might enter shall be provided with separator boxes or other approved means whereby such entry is precluded. Crankcase drainings and flammable or combustible liquids shall not be dumped into sewers, but shall be stored in tanks or tight drums outside of any building until removed from the premises.

(8) Fire control. Suitable fire-control devices, such as small hose or portable fire extinguishers, shall be available to locations where fires are likely to occur. Additional fire-control equipment may be required where a tank of more than 50,000 gallons individual capacity contains Class I liquids and where an unusual exposure hazard exists from surrounding property. Such additional fire-control equipment shall be sufficient to extinguish a fire in the largest tank. The design and amount of such equipment shall be in accordance with approved engineering standards.

(g) Service stations.

(1) Storage and handling.

(i) General provisions.

(a) Liquids shall be stored in approved closed containers not exceeding 60 gallons capacity, in tanks located underground, in tanks in special enclosures as described in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph, or in aboveground tanks as provided for in subparagraphs (4)(ii), (*b*), (*c*) and (*d*) of this paragraph.

(b) Aboveground tanks, located in an adjoining bulk plant, may be connected by piping to service station underground tanks if, in addition to valves at aboveground tanks, a valve is also installed within control of service station personnel.

(c) Apparatus dispensing Class I liquids into the fuel tanks of motor vehicles of the public shall not be located at a bulk plant unless separated by a fence or similar barrier from the area in which bulk operations are conducted.

(d) [Revoked]

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

(e) The provisions of (*a*) of this subdivision shall not prohibit the dispensing of flammable liquids in the open from a tank vehicle to a motor vehicle. Such dispensing shall be permitted provided:

(1) The tank vehicle complies with the requirements covered in the Standard on Tank Vehicles for Flammable Liquids, NFPA 385-1966.

(2) The dispensing is done on premises not open to the public.

(3) [Revoked]

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

(4) The dispensing hose does not exceed 50 feet in length.

INTERP (5) The dispensing nozzle is a listed automatic-closing type without a latch-open device.

(f) Class I liquids shall not be stored or handled within a building having a basement or pit into which flammable vapors may travel, unless such area is provided with ventilation designed to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors therein.

(g) Reserved

[51 F.R. 34560, September 29, 1986]

(ii) Special enclosures.

(a) When installation of tanks in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this section is impractical because of property or building limitations, tanks for flammable or combustible liquids may be installed in buildings if properly enclosed.

(b) The enclosure shall be substantially liquid and vaportight without backfill. Sides, top, and bottom of the enclosure shall be of reinforced concrete at least 6 inches thick, with openings for inspection through the top only. Tank connections shall be so piped or closed that neither vapors nor liquid can escape into the enclosed space. Means shall be provided whereby portable equipment may be employed to discharge to the outside any liquid or vapors which might accumulate should leakage occur.

(c) Revoked

(iii) Inside buildings.

(a) Except where stored in tanks as provided in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph, no Class I liquids shall be stored within any service station building except in closed containers of aggregate capacity not exceeding 60 gallons. One container not exceeding 60 gallons capacity equipped with an approved pump is permitted.

(b) Class I liquids may be transferred from one container to another in lubrication or service rooms of a service station building provided the electrical installation complies with Table H-19 and provided that any heating equipment complies with subparagraph (6) of this paragraph.

(c) Class II and Class III liquids may be stored and dispensed inside service station buildings from tanks of not more than 120 gallons capacity each.

(iv) Labeling. Revoked

(v) Dispensing into portable containers. No delivery of any Class I liquids shall be made into portable containers unless the container is constructed of metal, has a tight closure with screwed or spring cover, and is fitted with a spout or so designed that the contents can be poured without spilling.

(2) Private stations. Removed.

[47 F.R. 39164, September 7, 1982.]

(3) Dispensing systems.

(i) Location. Dispensing devices at automotive service stations shall be so located that all parts of the vehicle being serviced will be on the premises of the service station.

(ii) Inside location. Approved dispensing units may be located inside of buildings. The dispensing area shall be separated from other areas in an approved manner. The dispensing unit and its piping shall be mounted either on a concrete island or protected against collision damage by suitable means and shall be located in a position where it cannot be struck by a vehicle descending a ramp or other slope out of control. The dispensing area shall be provided with an approved mechanical or gravity ventilation system. When dispensing units are located below grade, only approved mechanical ventilation shall be used and the entire dispensing area shall be protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system. Ventilating systems shall be electrically interlocked with gasoline dispensing units so that the dispensing units cannot be operated unless the ventilating fan motors are energized.

(iii) Emergency power cutoff. A clearly identified and easily accessible switch(es) or a circuit breaker(s) shall be provided at a location remote from dispensing devices, including remote pumping systems, to shut off the power to all dispensing devices in the event of an emergency.

(iv) Dispensing units.

(a) Class I liquids shall be transferred from tanks by means of fixed pumps so designed and equipped as to allow control of the flow and to prevent leakage or accidental discharge.

(b)

(1) Only listed devices may be used for dispensing Class I liquids. No such device may be used if it shows evidence of having been dismantled.

(2) Every dispensing device for Class I liquids installed after December 31, 1978, shall contain evidence of listing so placed that any attempt to dismantle the device will result in damage to such evidence, visible without disassembly or dismounting of the nozzle.

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

(c) Class I liquids shall not be dispensed by pressure from drums, barrels, and similar containers. Approved pumps taking suction through the top of the container or approved self-closing faucets shall be used.

(d) The dispensing units, except those attached to containers, shall be mounted either on a concrete island or protected against collision damage by suitable means.

(v) Remote pumping systems.

(a) This subdivision shall apply to systems for dispensing Class I liquids where such liquids are transferred from storage to individual or multiple dispensing units by pumps located elsewhere than at the dispensing units.

(b) Pumps shall be designed or equipped so that no part of the system will be subjected to pressures above its allowable working pressure. Pumps installed above grade, outside of buildings, shall be located not less than 10 feet from lines of adjoining property which may be built upon, and not less than 5 feet from any building opening. When an outside pump location is impractical, pumps may be installed inside of buildings, as provided for dispensers in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph, or in pits as provided in subdivision (c) of this subdivision. Pumps shall be substantially anchored and protected against physical damage by vehicles.

(c) Pits for subsurface pumps or piping manifolds of submersible pumps shall withstand the external forces to which they may be subjected without damage to the pump, tank, or piping. The pit shall be no larger than necessary for inspection and maintenance and shall be provided with a fitted cover.

(d) A control shall be provided that will permit the pump to operate only when a dispensing nozzle is removed from its bracket on the dispensing unit and the switch on this dispensing unit is manually actuated. This control shall also stop the pump when all nozzles have been returned to their brackets.

(e) An approved impact valve, incorporating a fusible link, designed to close automatically in the event of severe impact or fire exposure shall be properly installed in the dispensing supply line at the base of each individual dispensing device.

(f) Testing. After the completion of the installation, including any paving, that section of the pressure piping system between the pump discharge and the connection for the dispensing facility shall be tested for at least 30 minutes at the maximum operating pressure of the system. Such tests shall be repeated at 5-year intervals thereafter.

(vi) Delivery nozzles.

(a) A listed manual or automatic-closing type hose nozzle valve shall be provided on dispensers used for the dispensing of Class I liquids.

(b) Manual-closing type valves shall be held open manually during dispensing. Automatic-closing type valves may be used in conjunction with an approved latch-open device.

[47 F.R. 39164, September 7, 1982]

(vii) Special type dispensers. [Revoked]

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

(4) Marine service stations.

(i) Dispensing.

(a) The dispensing area shall be located away from other structures so as to provide room for safe ingress and egress of craft to be fueled. Dispensing units shall in all cases be at least 20 feet from any activity involving fixed sources of ignition.

(b) Dispensing shall be by approved dispensing units with or without integral pumps and may be located on open piers, wharves, or floating docks or on shore or on piers of the solid fill type.

(c) Dispensing nozzles shall be automatic-closing without a hold-open latch.

(ii) Tanks and pumps.

(a) Tanks, and pumps not integral with the dispensing unit, shall be on shore or on a pier of the solid fill type, except as provided in subdivisions *(b)* and *(c)* of this subdivision.

(b) Where shore location would require excessively long supply lines to dispensers, tanks may be installed on a pier provided that applicable portions of paragraph (b) of this section relative to spacing, diking, and piping are complied with and the quantity so stored does not exceed 1,100 gallons aggregate capacity.

(c) Shore tanks supplying marine service stations may be located above ground, where rock ledges or high water table make underground tanks impractical.

(d) Where tanks are at an elevation which would produce gravity head on the dispensing unit, the tank outlet shall be equipped with a pressure control valve positioned adjacent to and outside the tank block valve specified in paragraph (b)(2)(ix)(*b*) of this section, so adjusted that liquid cannot flow by gravity from the tank in case of piping or hose failure.

(iii) Piping.

(a) Piping between shore tanks and dispensing units shall be as described in paragraph (c) of this section, except that, where dispensing is from a floating structure, suitable lengths of oil-resistant flexible hose may be employed between the shore piping and the piping on the floating structure as made necessary by change in water level or shoreline.

(b) A readily accessible valve to shut off the supply from shore shall be provided in each pipeline at or near the approach to the pier and at the shore end of each pipeline adjacent to the point where flexible hose is attached.

(c) Piping shall be located so as to be protected from physical damage.

(d) Piping handling Class I liquids shall be grounded to control stray currents.

(5) Electrical equipment.

(i) Application. This subparagraph shall apply to areas where Class I liquids are stored or handled. For areas where Class II or Class III liquids are stored or handled the electrical equipment may be installed in accordance with the provisions of Subpart S of this part, for ordinary locations.

(ii) All electrical equipment and wiring shall be of a type specified by and shall be installed in accordance with Subpart S of this part.

(iii) So far as it applies, Table H-19 shall be used to delineate and classify hazardous areas for the purpose of installation of electrical equipment under normal circumstances. A classified area shall not extend beyond an unpierced wall, roof, or other solid partition.

(iv) The area classifications listed shall be based on the assumption that the installation meets the applicable requirements of this section in all respects.

TABLE H-19—ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT HAZARDOUS AREAS—SERVICE STATIONS

Location	NEC Class I Group D division	Extent of classified area
Underground tank:		
Fill opening	1	Any pit, box or space below grade level, any part of which is within the Division 1 or 2 classified area.
	2	Up to 18 inches above grade level within a horizontal radius of 10 feet from a loose fill connection and within a horizontal radius of 5 feet from a tight fill connection.
Vent—Discharging upward	1	Within 3 feet of open end of vent, extending in all directions.
	2	Area between 3 feet and 5 feet of open end of vent, extending in all directions.
Dispenser:		
Pits	1	Any pit, box or space below grade level, any part of which is within the Division 1 or 2 classified area.
Dispenser enclosure	1	The area 4 feet vertically above base within the enclosure and 18 inches horizontally in all directions.
Outdoor	2	Up to 18 inches above grade level within 20 feet horizontally of any edge of enclosure.
Indoor:		
With mechanical ventilation	2	Up to 18 inches above grade or floor level within 20 feet horizontally of any edge of enclosure.
With gravity ventilation	2	Up to 18 inches above grade or floor level within 25 feet horizontally of any edge of enclosure.
Remote pump—Outdoor	1	Any pit, box or space below grade level if any part is within a horizontal distance of 10 feet from any edge of pump.
	2	Within 3 feet of any edge of pump, extending in all directions. Also up to 18 inches above grade level within 10 feet horizontally from any edge of pump.

TABLE H-19—ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT HAZARDOUS AREAS—SERVICE STATIONS—Continued

Location	NEC Class I Group D division	Extent of classified area
Remote pump—Indoor	1	Entire area within any pit.
	2	Within 5 feet of any edge of pump, extending in all directions. Also up to 3 feet above floor or grade level within 25 feet horizontally from any edge of pump.
Lubrication or service room	1	Entire area within any pit.
	2	Area up to 18 inches above floor or grade level within entire lubrication room.
Dispenser for Class I Liquids	2	Within 3 feet of any fill or dispensing point, extending in all directions.
Special enclosure inside building per § 1910.106 (f) (1) (ii).	1	Entire enclosure.
Sales, storage and rest rooms	Ordinary	If there is any opening to these rooms within the extent of a Division 1 area, the entire room shall be classified as Division 1.

(6) Heating equipment.

(i) Conformance. Heating equipment shall be installed as provided in subdivisions (ii) through (v) of this subparagraph.

(ii) Application. Heating equipment may be installed in the conventional manner in an area except as provided in subdivisions (iii), (iv), or (v) of this subparagraph.

(iii) Special room. Heating equipment may be installed in a special room separated from an area classified by Table H-19 by walls having a fire resistance rating of at least 1 hour and without any openings in the walls within 8 feet of the floor into an area classified in Table H-19. This room shall not be used for combustible storage and all air for combustion purposes shall come from outside the building.

(iv) Work areas. Heating equipment using gas or oil fuel may be installed in the lubrication, sales, or service room where there is no dispensing or transferring of Class I liquids provided the bottom of the combustion chamber is at least 18 inches above the floor and the heating equipment is protected from physical damage by vehicles. Heating equipment using gas or oil fuel listed for use in garages may be installed in the lubrication or service room where Class I liquids are dispensed provided the equipment is installed at least 8 feet above the floor.

(v) Electric heat. Electrical heating equipment shall conform to subparagraph (5) of this paragraph.

(7) Drainage and waste disposal. Provision shall be made in the area where Class I liquids are dispensed to prevent spilled liquids from flowing into the interior of service station buildings. Such provision may be by grading driveways, raising door sills, or other equally effective means. Crankcase drainings and flammable or combustible liquids shall not be dumped into sewers but shall be stored in tanks or drums outside of any building until removed from the premises.

(8) Sources of ignition. In addition to the previous restrictions of this paragraph, the following shall apply: There shall be no smoking or open flames in the areas used for fueling, servicing fuel systems for internal combustion engines, receiving or dispensing of flammable or combustible liquids. Conspicuous and legible signs prohibiting smoking shall be posted within sight of the customer being served. The motors of all equipment being fueled shall be shut off during the fueling operation.

(9) Fire control. Each service station shall be provided with at least one fire extinguisher having a minimum approved classification of 6 B, C located so that an extinguisher will be within 75 feet of each pump, dispenser, underground fill pipe opening, and lubrication or service room.

(h) Processing plants.

(1) Scope. This paragraph shall apply to those plants or buildings which contain chemical operations such as oxidation, reduction, halogenation, hydrogenation, alkylation, polymerization, and other chemical processes but shall not apply to chemical plants, refineries or distilleries.

(2) Location.

(i) Classification. The location of each processing vessel shall be based upon its flammable or combustible liquid capacity.

(3) Processing building.

(i) Construction.

(a) Processing buildings shall be of fire-resistance or noncombustible construction, except heavy timber construction with load-bearing walls may be permitted for plants utilizing only stable Class II or Class III liquids. Except as provided in subparagraph (2)(ii) of this paragraph or in the case of explosion resistant walls used in conjunction with explosion relieving facilities, see subparagraph (3)(iv) of this paragraph, load-bearing walls are prohibited. Buildings shall be without basements or covered pits.

(b) Areas shall have adequate exit facilities arranged to prevent occupants from being trapped in the event of fire. Exits shall not be exposed by the drainage facilities described in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph.

(ii) Drainage.

(a) Emergency drainage systems shall be provided to direct flammable or combustible liquid leakage and fire protection water to a safe location. This may require curbs, scuppers, or special drainage systems to control the spread of fire, see paragraph (b)(2)(vii)(*b*) of this section.

(b) Emergency drainage systems, if connected to public sewers or discharged into public waterways, shall be equipped with traps or separators.

(c) Revoked

(iii) Ventilation.

(a) Enclosed processing buildings shall be ventilated at a rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot of solid floor area. This shall be accomplished by natural or mechanical ventilation with discharge or exhaust to a safe location outside of the building. Provision shall be made for introduction of makeup air in such a manner as not to short circuit the ventilation. Ventilation shall be arranged to include all floor areas or pits where flammable vapors may collect.

(b) Equipment used in a building and the ventilation of the building shall be designed so as to limit flammable vapor-air mixtures under normal operating conditions to the interior of equipment, and to not more than 5 feet from equipment which exposes Class I liquids to the air. Examples of such equipment are dispensing stations, open centrifuges, plate and frame filters, open vacuum filters, and surfaces of open equipment.

(iv) Explosion relief. Areas where Class IA or unstable liquids are processed shall have explosion venting through one or more of the following methods:

(a) Open air construction.

(b) Lightweight walls and roof.

(c) Lightweight wall panels and roof hatches.

(d) Windows of explosion venting type.

(4) Liquid handling.

(i) Storage.

(a) The storage of flammable or combustible liquids in tanks shall be in accordance with the applicable provisions of paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) If the storage of flammable or combustible liquids in outside aboveground or underground tanks is not practical because of temperature or production considerations, tanks may be permitted inside of buildings or structures in accordance with the applicable provisions of paragraph (b) of this section.

(c) Storage tanks inside of buildings shall be permitted only in areas at or above grade which have adequate drainage and are separated from the processing area by construction having a fire resistance rating of at least 2 hours.

(d) The storage of flammable or combustible liquids in containers shall be in accordance with the applicable provisions of paragraph (d) of this section.

(ii) Piping, valves, and fittings.

(a) Piping, valves, and fittings shall be in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) Approved flexible connectors may be used where vibration exists or where frequent movement is necessary. Approved hose may be used at transfer stations.

(c) Piping containing flammable or combustible liquids shall be identified.

(iii) Transfer.

(a) The transfer of large quantities of flammable or combustible liquids shall be through piping by means of pumps or water displacement. Except as required in process equipment, gravity flow shall not be used. The use of compressed air as a transferring medium is prohibited.

(b) Positive displacement pumps shall be provided with pressure relief discharging back to the tank or to pump suction.

(iv) Equipment.

(a) Equipment shall be designed and arranged to prevent the unintentional escape of liquids and vapors and to minimize the quantity escaping in the event of accidental release.

(b) Where the vapor space of equipment is usually within the flammable range, the probability of explosion damage to the equipment can be limited by inerting, by providing an explosion suppression system, or by designing the equipment to contain the peak explosion pressure which may be modified by explosion relief. Where the special hazards of operation, sources of ignition, or exposures indicate a need, consideration shall be given to providing protection by one or more of the above means.

(5) Tank vehicle and tank car loading and unloading. Tank vehicle and tank car loading or unloading facilities shall be separated from aboveground tanks, warehouses, other plant buildings, or nearest line of adjoining property which may be built upon by a distance of 25 feet for Class I liquids and 15 feet for Class II and Class III liquids measured from the nearest position of any fill stem. Buildings for pumps or shelters for personnel may be a part of the facility. Operations of the facility shall comply with the appropriate portions of paragraph (f)(3) of this section.

(6) Fire control.

(i) Portable extinguishers. Approved portable fire extinguishers of appropriate size, type, and number shall be provided.

(ii) Other controls. Where the special hazards of operation or exposure indicate a need, the following fire control provision shall be provided.

(a) A reliable water supply shall be available in pressure and quantity adequate to meet the probable fire demands.

(b) Hydrants shall be provided in accordance with accepted good practice.

(c) Hose connected to a source of water shall be installed so that all vessels, pumps, and other equipment containing flammable or combustible liquids can be reached with at least one hose stream. Nozzles that are capable of discharging a water spray shall be provided.

(d) Processing plants shall be protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system or equivalent extinguishing system. If special extinguishing systems including but not limited to those employing foam, carbon dioxide, or dry chemical are provided, approved equipment shall be used and installed in an approved manner.

(iii) Alarm systems. An approved means for prompt notification of fire to those within the plant and any public fire department available shall be provided. It may be advisable to connect the plant system with the public system where public fire alarm system is available.

(iv) Maintenance. All plant fire protection facilities shall be adequately maintained and periodically inspected and tested to make sure they are always in satisfactory operating condition and that they will serve their purpose in time of emergency.

(7) Sources of ignition.

(i) General.

(a) Precautions shall be taken to prevent the ignition of flammable vapors. Sources of ignition include but are not limited to open flames; lightning; smoking; cutting and welding; hot surfaces; frictional heat; static, electrical, and mechanical sparks; spontaneous ignition, including heat-producing chemical reactions; and radiant heat.

(b) Class I liquids shall not be dispensed into containers unless the nozzle and container are electrically interconnected. Where the metallic floorplate on which the container stands while filling is electrically connected to the fill stem or where the fill stem is bonded to the container during filling operations by means of a bond wire, the provisions of this section shall be deemed to have been complied with.

(ii) Maintenance and repair.

(a) When necessary to do maintenance work in a flammable or combustible liquid processing area, the work shall be authorized by a responsible representative of the employer.

(b) Hot work, such as welding or cutting operations, use of spark-producing power tools, and chipping operations shall be permitted only under supervision of an individual in responsible charge who shall make an inspection of the area to be sure that it is safe for the work to be done and that safe procedures will be followed for the work specified.

(iii) Electrical.

(a) All electrical wiring and equipment within storage or processing areas shall be installed in accordance with nationally recognized good practice.

(b) Locations where flammable vapor-air mixtures may exist under normal operations shall be classified Class I, Division 1 according to the requirements of Subpart S of this part. For those pieces of equipment installed in accordance with subparagraph (3)(iii)(b) of this paragraph, the Division 1 area shall extend 5 feet in all directions from all points of vapor liberation. All areas within pits shall be classified Division 1 if any part of the pit is within a Division 1 or 2 classified area, unless the pit is provided with mechanical ventilation.

(c) Locations where flammable vapor-air mixtures may exist under abnormal conditions and for a distance beyond Division 1 locations shall be classified Division 2 according to the requirements of Subpart S of this Part. These locations include an area within 20 feet horizontally, 3 feet vertically beyond a Division 1 area, and up to 3 feet above floor or grade level within 25 feet, if indoors, or 10 feet if outdoors, from any pump, bleeder, withdrawal fitting, meter, or similar device handling Class I liquids. Pits provided with adequate mechanical ventilation within a Division 1 or 2 area shall be classified Division 2. If Class II or Class III liquids only are handled, then ordinary electrical equipment is satisfactory though care shall be used in locating electrical apparatus to prevent hot metal from falling into open equipment.

(d) Where the provisions of (a),(b), and (c), of this subdivision (iii) require the installation of explosion-proof equipment, ordinary electrical equipment including switchgear may be used if installed in a room or enclosure which is maintained under positive pressure with respect to the hazardous area. Ventilation makeup air shall be uncontaminated by flammable vapors.

(8) Housekeeping.

(i) General. Maintenance and operating practices shall be in accordance with established procedures which will tend to control leakage and prevent the accidental escape of flammable or combustible liquids. Spills shall be cleaned up promptly.

(ii) Access. Adequate aisles shall be maintained for unobstructed movement of personnel and so that fire protection equipment can be brought to bear on any part of the processing equipment.

(iii) Waste and residues. Combustible waste material and residues in a building or operating area shall be kept to a minimum, stored in closed metal waste cans, and disposed of daily.

(iv) Clear zone. Ground area around buildings and operating areas shall be kept free of tall grass, weeds, trash, or other combustible materials.

(i) Refineries, chemical plants, and distilleries.

(1) Storage tanks. Flammable or combustible liquids shall be stored in tanks, containers, or in portable tanks. Tanks shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section. Tanks for the storage of flammable or combustible liquids in tank farms and in locations other than process areas shall be located in accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(i) and (ii) of this section.

(2) Wharves. Wharves handling flammable or combustible liquids shall be in accordance with paragraph (f)(4) of this section.

(3) Fired and unfired pressure vessels.

(i) Fired vessels. Fired pressure vessels shall be constructed in accordance with the

Code for Fired Pressure Vessels, Section I of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code—1968.

(ii) Unfired pressure vessels shall be constructed in accordance with the Code for Unfired Pressure Vessels, Section VIII of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code—1968.

(4) **Location of process units.** Process units shall be located so that they are accessible from at least one side for the purpose of fire control.

suitable means.

(5) **Fire control.**

(i) **Portable equipment.** Portable fire extinguishment and control equipment shall be provided in such quantities and types as are needed for the special hazards of operation and storage.

(ii) **Water supply.** Water shall be available in volume and at adequate pressure to supply water hose streams, foam producing equipment, automatic sprinklers, or water spray systems as the need is indicated by the special hazards of operation and storage.

(iii) **Special equipment.** Special extinguishing equipment such as that utilizing foam, inert gas, or dry chemical shall be provided as the need is indicated by the special hazards of operation and storage.

(j) Scope.

This section applies to the handling, storage, and use of flammable and combustible liquids with a flash point below 200° F. This section does not apply to:

(1) Bulk transportation of flammable and combustible liquids;

(2) Storage, handling, and use of fuel oil tanks and containers connected with oil burning equipment;

(3) Storage of flammable and combustible liquids on farms;

(4) Liquids without flashpoints that may be flammable under some conditions, such as certain halogenated hydrocarbons and mixtures containing halogenated hydrocarbons;

(5) Mists, sprays, or foams, except flammable aerosols covered in paragraph (d) of this section; or

(6) Installations made in accordance with requirements of the following standards:

(i) National Fire Protection Association Standard for Drycleaning Plants, NFPA No. 32-1970;

(ii) National Fire Protection Association Standard for the Manufacture of Organic Coatings, NFPA No. 35-1970;

(iii) National Fire Protection Association Standard for Solvent Extraction Plants, NFPA No. 36-1967; or

(iv) National Fire Protection Association Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines, NFPA No. 37-1970.

1910.107—SPRAY FINISHING USING FLAMMABLE AND COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

(1) **Aerated solid powders.** Aerated powders shall mean any powdered material used as a coating material which shall be fluidized within a container by passing air uniformly from below. It is common practice to fluidize such materials to form a fluidized powder

bed and then dip the part to be coated into the bed in a manner similar to that used in liquid dipping. Such beds are also used as sources for powder spray operations.

(2) Spraying area. Any area in which dangerous quantities of flammable vapors or mists, or combustible residues, dusts, or deposits are present due to the operation of spraying processes.

(3) Spray booth. A power-ventilated structure provided to enclose or accommodate a spraying operation to confine and limit the escape of spray, vapor, and residue, and to safely conduct or direct them to an exhaust system.

(4) Waterwash spray booth. A spray booth equipped with a water washing system designed to minimize dusts or residues entering exhaust ducts and to permit the recovery of overspray finishing material.

(5) Dry spray booth. A spray booth not equipped with a water washing system as described in subparagraph (4) of this paragraph. A dry spray booth may be equipped with

(i) Distribution or baffle plates to promote an even flow of air through the booth or cause the deposit of overspray before it enters the exhaust duct; or

(ii) Overspray dry filters to minimize dusts; or

(iii) Overspray dry filters to minimize dusts or residues entering exhaust ducts; or

(iv) Overspray dry filter rolls designed to minimize dusts or residues entering exhaust ducts; or

(v) Where dry powders are being sprayed, with powder collection systems so arranged in the exhaust to capture oversprayed material.

(6) Fluidized bed. A container holding powder coating material which is aerated from below so as to form an air-supported expanded cloud of such material through which the preheated object to be coated is immersed and transported.

(7) Electrostatic fluidized bed. A container holding powder coating material which is aerated from below so as to form an air-supported expanded cloud of such material which is electrically charged with a charge opposite to the charge of the object to be coated; such object is transported through the container immediately above the charged and aerated materials in order to be coated.

(8) Approved. Shall mean approved and listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12121, April 12, 1988]

(9) Listed. See "approved" in § 1910.107(a)(8).

(b) Spray booths.

(1) Construction. Spray booths shall be substantially constructed of steel, securely and rigidly supported, or of concrete or masonry except that aluminum or other substantial noncombustible material may be used for intermittent or low volume spraying. Spray booths shall be designed to sweep air currents toward the exhaust outlet.

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974]

(2) Interiors. The interior surfaces of spray booths shall be smooth and continuous without edges and otherwise designed to prevent pocketing of residues and facilitate cleaning and washing without injury.

(3) Floors. The floor surface of a spray booth and operator's working area, if combustible, shall be covered with noncombustible material of such character as to facilitate the safe cleaning and removal of residues.

(4) Distribution or baffle plates. Distribution or baffle plates, if installed to promote an even flow of air through the booth or cause the deposit of overspray before it enters the exhaust duct, shall be of noncombustible material and readily removable or accessible on both sides for cleaning. Such plates shall not be located in exhaust ducts.

(5) Dry type overspray collectors—(exhaust air filters). In conventional dry type spray booths, overspray dry filters or filter rolls, if installed, shall conform to the following

INTERP

(i) The spraying operations except electrostatic spraying operations shall be so designed, installed and maintained that the average air velocity over the open face of the booth (or booth cross section during spraying operations) shall be not less than 100 linear feet per minute. Electrostatic spraying operations may be conducted with an air velocity over the open face of the booth of not less than 60 linear feet per minute, or more, depending on the volume of the finishing material being applied and its flammability and explosion characteristics. Visible gauges or audible alarm or pressure activated devices shall be installed to indicate or insure that the required air velocity is maintained. Filter rolls shall be inspected to insure proper replacement of filter media.

(ii) All discarded filter pads and filter rolls shall be immediately removed to a safe, well-detached location or placed in a water-filled metal container and disposed of at the close of the day's operation unless maintained completely in water.

(iii) The location of filters in a spray booth shall be so as to not reduce the effective booth enclosure of the articles being sprayed.

INTERP

(iv) Space within the spray booth on the downstream and upstream sides of filters shall be protected with approved automatic sprinklers.

(v) Filters or filter rolls shall not be used when applying a spray material known to be highly susceptible to spontaneous heating and ignition.

(vi) Clean filters or filter rolls shall be noncombustible or of a type having a combustibility not in excess of class 2 filters as listed by Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. Filters and filter rolls shall not be alternately used for different types of coating materials, where the combination of materials may be conducive to spontaneous ignition. See also paragraph (g)(6) of this section.

(6) Frontal area. Each spray booth having a frontal area larger than 9 square feet shall have a metal deflector or curtain not less than 2½ inches deep installed at the upper outer edge of the booth over the opening.

(7) Conveyors. Where conveyors are arranged to carry work into or out of spray booths, the openings therefor shall be as small as practical.

(8) Separation of operations. Each spray booth shall be separated from other operations by not less than 3 feet, or by a greater distance, or by such partition or wall as to reduce the danger from juxtaposition of hazardous operations. See also paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

(9) Cleaning. Spray booths shall be so installed that all portions are readily accessible for cleaning. A clear space of not less than 3 feet on all sides shall be kept free from storage or combustible construction.

(10) Illumination. When spraying areas are illuminated through glass panels or other transparent materials, only fixed lighting units shall be used as a source of illumination. Panels shall effectively isolate the spraying area from the area in which the lighting unit is located, and shall be of a noncombustible material of such a nature or so protected that breakage will be unlikely. Panels shall be so arranged that normal accumulations of residue on the exposed surface of the panel will not be raised to a dangerous temperature by radiation or conduction from the source of illumination.

(c) Electrical and other sources of ignition.

(1) Conformance. All electrical equipment, open flames and other sources of ignition shall conform to the requirements of this paragraph, except as follows:

(i) Electrostatic apparatus shall conform to the requirements of paragraphs (h) and (i) of this section;

(ii) Drying, curing, and fusion apparatus shall conform to the requirements of paragraph (j) of this section;

(iii) Automobile undercoating spray operations in garages shall conform to the requirements of paragraph (k) of this section.

(iv) Powder coating equipment shall conform to the requirements of paragraph (l) of this section.

(2) Minimum separation. There shall be no open flame or spark producing equipment in any spraying area nor within 20 feet thereof, unless separated by a partition.

(3) Hot surfaces. Space-heating appliances, steampipes, or hot surfaces shall not be located in a spraying area where deposits of combustible residues may readily accumulate.

(4) Wiring conformance. Electrical wiring and equipment shall conform to the provisions of this paragraph and shall otherwise be in accordance with subpart S of this part.

(5) Combustible residues, areas. Unless specifically approved for locations containing both deposits of readily ignitable residue and explosive vapors, there shall be no electrical equipment in any spraying area, whereon deposits of combustible residues may readily accumulate, except wiring in rigid conduit or in boxes or fittings containing no taps, splices, or terminal connections.

(6) Wiring type approved. Electrical wiring and equipment not subject to deposits of combustible residues but located in a spraying area as herein defined shall be of explosion-proof type approved for Class I, group D locations and shall otherwise conform to the provisions of subpart S of this part, for Class I, Division 1, Hazardous Locations. Electrical wiring, motors, and other equipment outside of but within twenty (20) feet of any spraying area, and not separated therefrom by partitions, shall not produce sparks under normal operating conditions and shall otherwise conform to the provisions of subpart S of this part for Class I, Division 2 Hazardous Locations.

(7) Lamps. Electric lamps outside of, but within twenty (20) feet of any spraying area, and not separated therefrom by a partition, shall be totally enclosed to prevent the falling of hot particles and shall be protected from mechanical injury by suitable guards or by location.

(8) Portable lamps. Portable electric lamps shall not be used in any spraying area during spraying operations. Portable electric lamps, if used during cleaning or repairing operations, shall be of the type approved for hazardous Class I locations.

(9) Grounding.

(i) All metal parts of spray booths, exhaust ducts, and piping systems conveying flammable or combustible liquids or aerated solids shall be properly electrically grounded in an effective and permanent manner.

(ii) Removed

(d) Ventilation.

(1) Conformance. Ventilating and exhaust systems shall be in accordance with the Standard for Blower and Exhaust Systems for Vapor Removal, NFPA No. 91-1961, where applicable and shall also conform to the provisions of this section.

(2) General. All spraying areas shall be provided with mechanical ventilation adequate to remove flammable vapors, mists, or powders to a safe location and to confine and control combustible residues so that life is not endangered. Mechanical ventilation shall be kept in operation at all times while spraying operations are being conducted and for a sufficient time thereafter to allow vapors from drying coated articles and drying finishing material residue to be exhausted.

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

(3) **Independent exhaust.** Each spray booth shall have an independent exhaust duct system discharging to the exterior of the building, except that multiple cabinet spray booths in which identical spray finishing material is used with a combined frontal area of not more than 18 square feet may have a common exhaust. If more than one fan serves one booth, all fans shall be so interconnected that one fan cannot operate without all fans being operated.

(4) **Fan-rotating element.** The fan-rotating element shall be nonferrous or nonsparking or the casing shall consist of or be lined with such material. There shall be ample clearance between the fan-rotating element and the fan casing to avoid a fire by friction, necessary allowance being made for ordinary expansion and loading to prevent contact between moving parts and the duct or fan housing. Fan blades shall be mounted on a shaft sufficiently heavy to maintain perfect alignment even when the blades of the fan are heavily loaded, the shaft preferably to have bearings outside the duct and booth. All bearings shall be of the self-lubricating type, or lubricated from the outside duct.

(5) **Electric motors.** Electric motors driving exhaust fans shall not be placed inside booths or ducts. See also paragraph (c) of this section.

(6) **Belts.** Belts shall not enter the duct or booth unless the belt and pulley within the duct or booth are thoroughly enclosed.

(7) **Exhaust ducts.** Exhaust ducts shall be constructed of steel and shall be substantially supported. Exhaust ducts without dampers are preferred; however, if dampers are installed, they shall be maintained so that they will be in a full open position at all times the ventilating system is in operation.

(i) Exhaust ducts shall be protected against mechanical damage and have a clearance from unprotected combustible construction or other combustible material of not less than 18 inches.

(ii) If combustible construction is provided with the following protection applied to all surfaces within 18 inches, clearances may be reduced to the distances indicated:

(a) 28-gage sheet metal on ¼-inch 12 inches, asbestos mill board.

(b) 28-gage sheet metal on ⅛-inch 9 inches, abestos mill board spaced out 1 inch on noncombustible spacers.

(c) 22-gage sheet metal on 1-inch 3 inches, rockwool batts reinforced with wire mesh or the equivalent.

(d) Where ducts are protected with an approved automatic sprinkler system, properly maintained, the clearance required in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph may be reduced to 6 inches.

(8) **Discharge clearance.** Unless the spray booth exhaust duct terminal is from a water-wash spray booth, the terminal discharge point shall be not less than 6 feet from any combustible exterior wall or roof nor discharge in the direction of any combustible construction or unprotected opening in any noncombustible exterior wall within 25 feet.

(9) **Air exhaust.** Air exhaust from spray operations shall not be directed so that it will contaminate makeup air being introduced into the spraying area or other ventilating intakes, nor directed so as to create a nuisance. Air exhausted from spray operations shall not be recirculated.

(10) **Access doors.** When necessary to facilitate cleaning, exhaust ducts shall be provided with an ample number of access doors.

(11) **Room intakes.** Air intake openings to rooms containing spray finishing opera-

tions shall be adequate for the efficient operation of exhaust fans and shall be so located as to minimize the creation of dead air pockets.

(12) Drying spaces. Freshly sprayed articles shall be dried only in spaces provided with adequate ventilation to prevent the formation of explosive vapors. In the event adequate and reliable ventilation is not provided such drying spaces shall be considered a spraying area. See also paragraph (j) of this section.

(e) Flammable and combustible liquids—storage and handling.

(1) Conformance. The storage of flammable or combustible liquids in connection with spraying operations shall conform to the requirements of § 1910.106, where applicable.

(2) Quantity. The quantity of flammable or combustible liquids kept in the vicinity of spraying operations shall be the minimum required for operations and should ordinarily not exceed a supply for 1 day or one shift. Bulk storage of portable containers of flammable or combustible liquids shall be in a separate, constructed building detached from other important buildings or cut off in a standard manner.

(3) Containers. Original closed containers, approved portable tanks, approved safety cans or a properly arranged system of piping shall be used for bringing flammable or combustible liquids into spray finishing room. Open or glass containers shall not be used.

(4) Transferring liquids. Except as provided in subparagraph (5) of this paragraph the withdrawal of flammable and combustible liquids from containers having a capacity of greater than 60 gallons shall be by approved pumps. The withdrawal of flammable or combustible liquids from containers and the filling of containers, including portable mixing tanks, shall be done only in a suitable mixing room or in a spraying area when the ventilating system is in operation. Adequate precautions shall be taken to protect against liquid spillage and sources of ignition.

(5) Spraying containers. Containers supplying spray nozzles shall be of closed type or provided with metal covers kept closed. Containers not resting on floors shall be on metal supports or suspended by wire cables. Containers supplying spray nozzles by gravity flow shall not exceed 10 gallons capacity. Original shipping containers shall not be subject to air pressure for supplying spray nozzles. Containers under air pressure supplying spray nozzles shall be of limited capacity, not exceeding that necessary for 1 day's operation; shall be designed and approved for such use; shall be provided with a visible pressure gage; and shall be provided with a relief valve set to operate in conformance with the requirements of the Code for Unfired Pressure Vessels, Section VIII of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code—1968. Containers under air pressure supplying spray nozzles, air-storage tanks and coolers shall conform to the standards of the Code for Unfired Pressure Vessels, Section VIII of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code—1968 for construction, tests, and maintenance.

(6) Pipes and hoses.

(i) All containers or piping to which is attached a hose or flexible connection shall be provided with a shutoff valve at the connection. Such valves shall be kept shut when spraying operations are not being conducted.

(ii) When a pump is used to deliver products, automatic means shall be provided to prevent pressure in excess of the design working pressure of accessories, piping, and hose.

(iii) All pressure hose and couplings shall be inspected at regular intervals appropriate to this service. The hose and couplings shall be tested with the hose extended, and using the "inservice maximum operating pressures." Any hose showing material deteriorations, signs of leakage, or weakness in its carcass or at the couplings, shall be withdrawn from service and repaired or discarded.

(iv) Piping systems conveying flammable or combustible liquids shall be of steel or other material having comparable properties of resistance to heat and physical damage. Piping systems shall be properly bonded and grounded.

(7) Spray liquid heaters. Electrically powered spray liquid heaters shall be approved and listed for the specific location in which used (see paragraph (c) of this section). Heaters shall not be located in spray booths nor other locations subject to the accumulation of deposits or combustible residue. If an electric motor is used, see paragraph (c) of this section.

(8) Pump relief. If flammable or combustible liquids are supplied to spray nozzles by positive displacement pumps, the pump discharge line shall be provided with an approved relief valve discharging to a pump suction or a safe detached location, or a device provided to stop the prime mover if the discharge pressure exceeds the safe operating pressure of the system.

(9) Grounding. Whenever flammable or combustible liquids are transferred from one container to another, both containers shall be effectively bonded and grounded to prevent discharge sparks of static electricity.

(f) Protection.

INTERP

(1) Conformance. In sprinklered buildings, the automatic sprinkler system in rooms containing spray finishing operations shall conform to the requirements of § 1910.159. In unsprinklered buildings where sprinklers are installed only to protect spraying areas, the installations shall conform to such standards insofar as they are applicable. Sprinkler heads shall be located so as to provide water distribution throughout the entire booth.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

(2) Valve access. Automatic sprinklers protecting each spray booth (together with its connecting exhaust) shall be under an accessibly located separate outside stem and yoke (OS&Y) subcontrol valve.

(3) Cleaning of heads. Sprinklers protecting spraying areas shall be kept as free from deposits as practical by cleaning daily if necessary. (See also paragraph (g) of this section.)

(4) Portable extinguishers. An adequate supply of suitable portable fire extinguishers shall be installed near all spraying areas.

(g) Operations and maintenance.

(1) Spraying. Spraying shall not be conducted outside of predetermined spraying areas.

(2) Cleaning. All spraying areas shall be kept as free from the accumulation of deposits of combustible residues as practical, with cleaning conducted daily if necessary. Scrapers, spuds, or other such tools used for cleaning purposes shall be of nonsparking material.

(3) Residue disposal. Residue scrapings and debris contaminated with residue shall be immediately removed from the premises and properly disposed of. Approved metal waste cans shall be provided wherever rags or waste are impregnated with finishing material and all such rags or waste deposited therein immediately after use. The contents of waste cans shall be properly disposed of at least once daily or at the end of each shift. INTERP

(4) Clothing storage. Spray finishing employees' clothing shall not be left on the premises overnight unless kept in metal lockers.

(5) Cleaning solvents. The use of solvents for cleaning operations shall be restricted to those having flashpoints not less than 100° F.; however, for cleaning spray nozzles and auxiliary equipment, solvents having flashpoints not less than those normally used in spray operations may be used. Such cleaning shall be conducted inside spray booths and ventilating equipment operated during cleaning.

(6) Hazardous materials combinations. Spray booths shall not be alternately used for different types of coating materials, where the combination of the materials may be conducive to spontaneous ignition, unless all deposits of the first used material are removed from the booth and exhaust ducts prior to spraying with the second used material.

(7) "No Smoking" signs. "No smoking" signs in large letters on contrasting color background shall be conspicuously posted at all spraying areas and paint storage rooms.

(h) Fixed electrostatic apparatus.

(1) Conformance. Where installation and use of electrostatic spraying equipment is used, such installation and use shall conform to all other paragraphs of this section, and shall also conform to the requirements of this paragraph.

(2) Type approval. Electrostatic apparatus and devices used in connection with coating operations shall be of approved types.

(3) Location. Transformers, power packs, control apparatus, and all other electrical portions of the equipment, with the exception of high-voltage grids, electrodes, and electrostatic atomizing heads and their connections, shall be located outside of the spraying area, or shall otherwise conform to the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section.

(4) Support. Electrodes and electrostatic atomizing heads shall be adequately supported in permanent locations and shall be effectively insulated from the ground. Electrodes and electrostatic atomizing heads which are permanently attached to their bases, supports, or reciprocators, shall be deemed to comply with this section. Insulators shall be nonporous and noncombustible.

(5) Insulators, grounding. High-voltage leads to electrodes shall be properly insulated and protected from mechanical injury or exposure to destructive chemicals. Electrostatic atomizing heads shall be effectively and permanently supported on suitable insulators and shall be effectively guarded against accidental contact or grounding. An automatic means shall be provided for grounding the electrode system when it is electrically deenergized for any reason. All insulators shall be kept clean and dry.

(6) Safe distance. A safe distance shall be maintained between goods being painted and electrodes or electrostatic atomizing heads or conductors of at least twice the sparking distance. A suitable sign indicating this safe distance shall be conspicuously posted near the assembly.

(7) Conveyors required. Goods being painted using this process are to be supported on conveyors. The conveyors shall be so arranged as to maintain safe distances between the goods and the electrodes or electrostatic atomizing heads at all times. Any irregularly shaped or other goods subject to possible swinging or movement shall be rigidly supported to prevent such swinging or movement which would reduce the clearance to less than that specified in subparagraph (6) of this paragraph.

(8) Prohibition. This process is not acceptable where goods being coated are manipulated by hand. When finishing materials are applied by electrostatic equipment which is manipulated by hand, see paragraph (i) of this section for applicable requirements.

(9) Fail-safe controls. Electrostatic apparatus shall be equipped with automatic controls which will operate without time delay to disconnect the power supply to the high voltage transformer and to signal the operator under any of the following conditions:

(i) Stoppage of ventilating fans or failure of ventilating equipment from any cause.

(ii) Stoppage of the conveyor carrying goods through the high voltage field.

(iii) Occurrence of a ground or of an imminent ground at any point on the high voltage system.

(iv) Reduction of clearance below that specified in subparagraph (6) of this paragraph.

(10) Guarding. Adequate booths, fencing, railings, or guards shall be so placed about the equipment that they, either by their location or character or both, assure that a safe isolation of the process is maintained from plant storage or personnel. Such railings, fencing, and guards shall be of conducting material, adequately grounded.

(11) Ventilation. Where electrostatic atomization is used the spraying area shall be so ventilated as to insure safe conditions from a fire and health standpoint.

INTERP **(12) Fire protection.** All areas used for spraying, including the interior of the booth, shall be protected by automatic sprinklers where this protection is available. Where this protection is not available, other approved automatic extinguishing equipment shall be provided.

(i) Electrostatic hand spraying equipment.

(1) Application. This paragraph shall apply to any equipment using electrostatically charged elements for the atomization and/or, precipitation of materials for coatings on articles, or for other similar purposes in which the atomizing device is hand held and manipulated during the spraying operation.

(2) Conformance. Electrostatic hand spraying equipment shall conform with the other provisions of this section.

(3) Equipment approval and specifications. Electrostatic hand spray apparatus and devices used in connection with coating operations shall be of approved types. The high voltage circuits shall be designed so as to not produce a spark of sufficient intensity to ignite any vapor-air mixtures nor result in appreciable shock hazard upon coming in contact with a grounded object under all normal operating conditions. The electrostatically charged exposed elements of the handgun shall be capable of being energized only by a switch which also controls the coating material supply.

(4) Electrical support equipment. Transformers, powerpacks, control apparatus, and all other electrical portions of the equipment, with the exceptions of the handgun itself and its connections to the power supply shall be located outside of the spraying area or shall otherwise conform to the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section.

(5) Spray gun ground. The handle of the spraying gun shall be electrically connected to ground by a metallic connection and to be so constructed that the operator in normal operating position is in intimate electrical contact with the grounded handle.

(6) Grounding—general. All electrically conductive objects in the spraying area shall be adequately grounded. This requirement shall apply to paint containers, wash cans, and any other objects or devices in the area. The equipment shall carry a prominent permanently installed warning regarding the necessity for this grounding feature.

(7) Maintenance of grounds. Objects being painted or coated shall be maintained in metallic contact with the conveyor or other grounded support. Hooks shall be regularly cleaned to insure this contact and areas of contact shall be sharp points or knife edges where possible. Points of support of the object shall be concealed from random spray where feasible and where the objects being sprayed are supported from a conveyor, the point of attachment to the conveyor shall be so located as to not collect spray material during normal operation.

(8) Interlocks. The electrical equipment shall be so interlocked with the ventilation of the spraying area that the equipment cannot be operated unless the ventilation fans are in operation.

(9) Ventilation. The spraying operation shall take place within a spray area which is adequately ventilated to remove solvent vapors released from the operation.

(j) Drying, curing, or fusion apparatus.

(1) Conformance. Drying, curing, or fusion apparatus in connection with spray application of flammable and combustible finishes shall conform to the Standard for Ovens and Furnaces, NFPA 86A-1969, where applicable and shall also conform with the following requirements of this subparagraph.

(2) Alternate use prohibited. Spray booths, rooms, or other enclosures used for spraying operations shall not alternately be used for the purpose of drying by any arrangement which will cause a material increase in the surface temperature of the spray booth, room, or enclosure.

(3) Adjacent system interlocked. Except as specifically provided in subparagraph (4) of this paragraph, drying, curing, or fusion units utilizing a heating system having open flames or which may produce sparks shall not be installed in a spraying area, but may be installed adjacent thereto when equipped with an interlocked ventilating system arranged to:

(i) Thoroughly ventilate the drying space before the heating system can be started;

(ii) Maintain a safe atmosphere at any source of ignition;

(iii) Automatically shut down the heating system in the event of failure of the ventilating system.

(4) Alternate use permitted. Automobile refinishing spray booths or enclosures, otherwise installed and maintained in full conformity with this section, may alternately be used for drying with portable electrical infrared drying apparatus when conforming with the following:

(i) Interior (especially floors) of spray enclosures shall be kept free of overspray deposits.

(ii) During spray operations, the drying apparatus and electrical connections and wiring thereto shall not be located within spray enclosure nor in any other location where spray residues may be deposited thereon.

(iii) The spraying apparatus, the drying apparatus, and the ventilating system of the spray enclosure shall be equipped with suitable interlocks so arranged that:

(a) The spraying apparatus cannot be operated while the drying apparatus is inside the spray enclosure.

(b) The spray enclosure will be purged of spray vapors for a period of not less than 3 minutes before the drying apparatus can be energized.

(c) The ventilating system will maintain a safe atmosphere within the enclosure during the drying process and the drying apparatus will automatically shut off in the event of failure of the ventilating system.

(iv) All electrical wiring and equipment of the drying apparatus shall conform with the applicable sections of Subpart S of this Part. Only equipment of a type approved for Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations shall be located within 18 inches of floor level. All metallic parts of the drying apparatus shall be properly electrically bonded and grounded.

(v) The drying apparatus shall contain a prominently located, permanently attached warning sign indicating that ventilation should be maintained during the drying period and that spraying should not be conducted in the vicinity that spray will deposit on apparatus.

(k) Automobile undercoating in garages.

Automobile undercoating spray operations in garages, conducted in areas having adequate natural or mechanical ventilation, are exempt from the requirements pertaining to spray finishing operations, when using undercoating materials not more hazardous than kerosene (as listed by Underwriters' Laboratories in respect to fire hazard rating 30–40) or undercoating materials using only solvents listed as having a flash point in excess of 100° F. Undercoating spray operations not conforming to these provisions are subject to all requirements of this section pertaining to spray finishing operations.

(l) Powder coating.

(1) Electrical and other sources of ignition. Electrical equipment and other sources of ignition shall conform to the requirements of paragraph (c)(1)(i)–(iv), (8) and (9)(i) of this section and Subpart S of this Part.

(2) Ventilation.

(i) In addition to the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section, where applicable, exhaust ventilation shall be sufficient to maintain the atmosphere below the lowest explosive limits for the materials being applied. All nondeposited air-suspended powders shall be safely removed via exhaust ducts to the powder recovery cyclone or receptacle. Each installation shall be designed and operated to meet the foregoing performance specification.

(ii) Powders shall not be released to the outside atmosphere.

(3) Drying, curing, or fusion equipment. The provisions of the Standard for Ovens and Furnaces, NFPA No. 86A–1969 shall apply where applicable.

(4) Operation and maintenance.

(i) All areas shall be kept free of the accumulation of powder coating dusts, particularly such horizontal surfaces as ledges, beams, pipes, hoods, booths, and floors.

(ii) Surfaces shall be cleaned in such manner as to avoid scattering dust to other places or creating dust clouds.

(iii) "No Smoking" signs in large letters on contrasting color background shall be conspicuously posted at all powder coating areas and powder storage rooms.

(5) Fixed electrostatic spraying equipment. The provisions of paragraph (h) of this section and other subparagraphs of this paragraph shall apply to fixed electrostatic equipment, except that electrical equipment not covered therein shall conform to subparagraph (1) of this paragraph.

(6) Electrostatic hand spraying equipment. The provisions of paragraph (i) of this section and other subparagraphs of this paragraph, shall apply to electrostatic handguns when used in powder coating, except that electrical equipment not covered therein shall conform to subparagraph (1) of this paragraph.

(7) Electrostatic fluidized beds.

(i) Electrostatic fluidized beds and associated equipment shall be of approved types. The maximum surface temperature of this equipment in the coating area shall not exceed 150° F. The high voltage circuits shall be so designed as to not produce a spark of sufficient intensity to ignite any powder-air mixtures nor result in appreciable shock hazard upon coming in contact with a grounded object under normal operating conditions.

(ii) Transformers, powerpacks, control apparatus, and all other electrical portions of the equipment, with the exception of the charging electrodes and their connections to the power supply shall be located outside of the powder coating area or shall otherwise conform to the requirements of subparagraph (1) of this paragraph.

(iii) All electrically conductive objects within the charging influence of the electrodes shall be adequately grounded. The powder coating equipment shall carry a prominent, permanently installed warning regarding the necessity for grounding these objects.

(iv) Objects being coated shall be maintained in contact with the conveyor or other support in order to insure proper grounding. Hangers shall be regularly cleaned to insure effective contact and areas of contact shall be sharp points or knife edges where possible.

(v) The electrical equipment shall be so interlocked with the ventilation system that the equipment cannot be operated unless the ventilation fans are in operation.

(m) Organic peroxides and dual component coatings.

(1) Conformance. All spraying operations involving the use of organic peroxides and other dual component coatings shall be conducted in approved sprinklered spray booths meeting the requirements of this section.

(2) Smoking. Smoking shall be prohibited and "No Smoking" signs shall be prominently displayed and only nonsparking tools shall be used in any area where organic peroxides are stored, mixed or applied.

(n) Scope.

This section applies to flammable and combustible finishing materials when applied as a spray by compressed air, "airless" or "hydraulic atomization," steam, electrostatic methods, or by any other means in continuous or intermittent processes. The section also covers the application of combustible powders by powder spray guns, electrostatic powder spray guns, fluidized beds, or electrostatic fluidized beds. The section does not apply to outdoor spray application of buildings, tanks, or other similar structures, nor to small portable spraying apparatus not used repeatedly in the same location.

1910.108—DIP TANKS CONTAINING FLAMMABLE OR COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

INTERP **(1) Dip tank.** Shall mean a tank, vat, or container of flammable or combustible liquid in which articles or materials are immersed for the purpose of coating, finishing, treating, or similar processes.

(2) Vapor area. Shall mean any area containing dangerous quantities of flammable vapors in the vicinity of dip tanks, their drainboards or associated drying, conveying, or other equipment, during operation or shutdown periods.

(3) Approved. Unless otherwise indicated, approval or listing by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12121, April 12, 1988]

(4) Listed. See "approved" in paragraph (a)(3) of this section.

(b) Ventilation.

(1) Vapor area ventilation. Vapor areas as defined in paragraph (a)(2) of this section shall be limited to the smallest practical space by maintaining a properly designed system of mechanical ventilation arranged to move air from all directions towards the vapor area origin and thence to a safe outside location. Ventilating systems shall conform to the Standards for Blower and Exhaust Systems (NFPA Pamphlet No. 91–1969). Required ventilating systems shall be so arranged that the failure of any ventilating fan shall automatically stop any dipping conveyor system. See also paragraph (c)(6) of this section.

(2) Ventilation combined with drying. When a required ventilating system serves associated drying operations utilizing a heating system which may be a source of ignition, means shall be provided for preventilation before the heating system can be started; the failure of any ventilating fan shall automatically shut down the heating system; and the installation shall otherwise conform to the Standard for Ovens and Furnaces (NFPA No. 86A-1969).

(c) Construction of dip tanks.

(1) General. Dip tanks, including drainboards if provided, shall be constructed of substantial noncombustible material, and their supports shall be of heavy metal, reinforced concrete, or masonry.

(2) Overflow pipes.

(i) Dip tanks of over 150 gallons in capacity or 10 square feet in liquid surface area shall be equipped with a properly trapped overflow pipe leading to a safe location outside buildings.

(ii) Overflow pipes shall be of sufficient capacity to overflow the maximum delivery of dip tank liquid fill pipes but shall not be less than 3 inches in diameter and shall be increased in size depending upon the area of the liquid surface and the length and pitch of pipe.

(iii) Piping connections on drains and overflow lines shall be designed so as to permit ready access for inspection and cleaning of the interior.

(iv) The bottom of the overflow connection shall be not less than 6 inches below the top of the tank. See also subparagraph (6) of this paragraph and paragraph (g)(3)(ii) of this section.

(3) Bottom drains.

(i) Dip tanks over 500 gallons in liquid capacity shall be equipped with bottom drains automatically and manually arranged to quickly drain the tank in the event of fire, unless the viscosity of the liquid at normal atmospheric temperature makes this impractical. Manual operation shall be from a safely accessible location. Where gravity flow is not practicable, automatic pumps shall be required.

(ii) Such drain shall be trapped and discharge to a closed properly vented salvage tank or to a safe location outside which will not endanger property.

(iii) According to tank capacity the diameter of bottom drainpipe shall be not less than the following:

Gallons:	*Inches*
500 to 750	3
750 to 1,000	4
1,000 to 2,500	5
2,500 to 4,000	6
Over 4,000	8

(4) Salvage tanks. The capacity of the salvage tank shall be greater than the capacity of the dip tank or tanks to which they are connected.

(5) Automatic extinguishing facilities. Except as noted in paragraph (h)(1)(v) of this section (applying to hardening and tempering tanks), all dip tanks exceeding 150 gallons liquid capacity or having a liquid surface area exceeding 4 square feet shall be protected with at least one of the automatic extinguishing facilities conforming to paragraph (g)(2), (3), (4), (5), or (6) of this section.

(6) Conveyor systems. Dip tanks utilizing a conveyor system shall be so arranged that in the event of fire, the conveyor system shall automatically cease motion and required bottom drains shall open. Conveyor systems shall automatically cease motion unless required ventilation is in full operation. See also paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(7) Heating dip tank liquids. When dip tank liquids are artificially heated, either by the dipping of heated articles, or by other application of heat to the liquid, provision shall be made to prevent a temperature rise greater than 50° F. below the flashpoint of the liquid. See also paragraph (h)(1) of this section.

(d) Liquids used in dip tanks, storage and handling.

The storage of flammable and combustible liquids in connection with dipping operation shall conform to the requirements of section 1910.106, where applicable. Where portable containers are used for the replenishment of flammable and combustible liquids, provision shall be made so that both the container and tank shall be positively grounded and electrically bonded to prevent static electric sparks.

(e) Electrical and other sources of ignition.

(1) Vapor areas.

(i) There shall be no open flames, spark producing devices, or heated surfaces having a temperature sufficient to ignite vapors in any vapor area. Except as specifically permitted in paragraph (h)(3) of this section, relating to electrostatic apparatus, electrical wiring and equipment in any vapor area (as defined in paragraph (a)(2) of this section) shall be explosion proof type according to the requirements of Subpart S of this part for Class I, Group D locations and shall otherwise conform to Subpart S of this part.

(ii) Unless specifically approved for locations containing both deposits of readily ignitable residues and explosive vapors, there shall be no electrical equipment in the vicinity of dip tanks or associated drainboards or drying operations which are subject to splashing or dripping of dip tank liquids, except wiring in rigid conduit or in threaded boxes or fittings containing no taps, splices, or terminal connections, and except as specifically permitted in paragraph (h)(3) of this section.

(2) Adjacent areas. In any floorspace outside a vapor area but within 20 feet therefrom, and not separated by tight partitions, there shall be no open flames or spark producing devices except as specifically permitted in NFPA Standard No. 86A-1969, Ovens and Furnaces, paragraph 200-7, and electrical wiring and equipment shall conform to the provisions of Subpart S of this part.

(f) Operations and maintenance.

(1) General. Areas in the vicinity of dip tanks shall be kept as clear of combustible stock as practical and shall be kept entirely free of combustible debris.

(2) Waste cans. When waste or rags are used in connection with dipping operations, approved metal waste cans shall be provided and all impregnated rags or waste deposited therein immediately after use. The contents of waste cans shall be properly disposed of at least once daily at the end of each shift.

(3) Inspection. Periodic inspection or tests of all dip tank facilities shall be made, including covers, overflow pipe inlets and discharge, bottom drains and valves, electrical wiring and equipment and grounding connections, ventilating facilities, and all extinguishing equipment. Any defects found shall be promptly corrected.

(4) Warning signs. "No Smoking" signs in large letters on contrasting color background shall be conspicuously posted in the vicinity of dip tanks.

(g) Extinguishment.

(1) Extinguishers. Areas in the vicinity of dip tanks shall be provided with manual fire extinguishers suitable for flammable and combustible liquid fires, conforming to § 1910.157.

(2) Automatic water spray extinguishing systems. Automatic water spray extinguishing

systems shall conform to § 1910.163 and shall be arranged to protect tanks, drainboards, and stock over drainboards.

(3) Automatic foam extinguishing systems. Automatic foam extinguishing systems shall conform to § 1910.163 and;

(i) Foam producing material selected shall be suitable for intended use, taking into account characteristics of the dip tank liquid;

(ii) Overflow pipe shall be arranged to prevent the floating away of foam and clogging overflow pipe. This may be accomplished by either of the following:

(a) Overflow pipe may be extended through tank wall and terminated in an ell pointing downward.

(b) Overflow pipe inlet may be provided with a removable screen of ¼-inch mesh having an area at least twice the cross-sectional area of overflow pipe. Screens which may be clogged by dip tank ingredients shall be inspected and cleaned periodically.

(4) Automatic carbon dioxide systems. Automatic carbon dioxide systems shall conform to § 1910.162 and shall be arranged to protect both dip tanks and drainboards, and unless stock over drainboards is otherwise protected with automatic extinguishing facilities shall also be arranged to protect such stock.

(5) Dry chemical extinguishing systems. Dry chemical extinguishing systems shall conform to § 1910.161 and shall be arranged to protect both dip tanks and drainboards, and unless stock over drainboards is otherwise protected with automatic extinguishing facilities, they shall also be arranged to protect such stock.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

(6) Dip tank covers.

(i) Covers arranged to close automatically in the event of fire shall be actuated by approved automatic devices and shall also be arranged for manual operation.

(ii) Covers shall be of substantial noncombustible material or of tin-clad type with enclosing metal applied with locked joints.

(iii) Chains or wire rope shall be used for cover support or operating mechanism where the burning of a cord would interfere with the action of a device.

(iv) Covers shall be kept closed when tanks are not in use.

(h) Special dip tank applications.

(1) Hardening and tempering tanks.

(i) Tanks shall be located as far as practicable from furnaces and shall not be located on or near combustible floors.

(ii) Tanks shall be provided with a noncombustible hood and vent or other equally effective means of venting to the outside of the building to serve as a vent in case of fire. All such vent ducts shall be treated as flues and be kept well away from combustible roofs or materials.

(iii) Tanks shall be so designed that the maximum workload is incapable of raising the temperature of the cooling medium to within 50° below its flashpoint, or such tanks shall be equipped with circulating cooling systems which will accomplish the same result.

(iv) Tanks shall be equipped with a high temperature limit switch arranged to sound an alarm when the temperature of the quenching medium reaches within 50° F. below the flashpoint. If practical from an operating standpoint, such limit switches shall also shut down conveying equipment supplying work to the tank.

(v) The provisions of paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall apply to tanks having a liquid surface area of 25 square feet or more or a capacity of 500 gallons or more.

(vi) Air under pressure shall not be used to fill or to agitate oil tanks.

(vii) Drain facilities from the bottom of the tank may be combined with the oil circulating system or arranged independently to drain the oil to a safe location. The drain valve shall be operated automatically with approved heat actuated devices or manually, and if the latter, the valve shall be operated from a safe distance.

(2) Flow coat; general.

(i) Except as modified in this paragraph, all of the preceding standards for dip tanks apply.

(ii) All piping shall be strongly erected and rigidly supported.

(iii) Paint shall be supplied by direct low-pressure pumping arranged to automatically shut down by means of approved heat actuated devices, in the case of fire, or paint may be supplied by a gravity tank not exceeding 10 gallons in capacity.

(iv) The area of the sump and any areas on which paint flows should be considered the area of dip tank.

(3) Electrostatic apparatus; general

(i) Installation and use of electrostatic detearing equipment shall conform to paragraphs (a) through (g) of this section.

(ii) Electrostatic apparatus and devices used in connection with paint detearing operations shall be of approved types.

(iii) Transformers, powerpacks, control apparatus, and all other electrical portions of the equipment, with the exception of high voltage grids and their connections, shall be located outside the vapor area or shall conform to the requirements of paragraph (e) of this section.

(iv) Electrodes shall be of substantial construction, shall be rigidly supported in permanent locations and shall be effectively insulated from ground. Insulators shall be nonporous and noncombustible.

(v) High voltage leads to electrodes shall be effectively and permanently supported on suitable insulators, and shall be effectively guarded against accidental contact or grounding. An automatic means shall be provided for grounding and discharging any accumulated residual charge on the electrode assembly or the secondary circuit of the high voltage transformer when the transformer primary is disconnected from the source of supply.

(vi) A space shall be maintained between goods being deteared and electrodes or conductors of at least twice the sparking distance. A suitable sign stating the sparking distance shall be conspicuously posted near the assembly.

(vii) Goods being deteared using this electrostatic process are to be supported on conveyors. The conveyors shall be so arranged as to maintain safe distances between the goods and the electrodes at all times. All goods shall be so supported as to prevent any swinging or movement which would reduce the clearance to less than specified in subdivision (vi) of this subparagraph.

(viii) This electrostatic process is not approved where goods being deteared are manipulated by hand.

(ix) Electrostatic apparatus shall be equipped with automatic controls which will operate without time delay to disconnect the power supply to the high voltage transformer and to signal the operator under any of the following conditions:

(a) Stoppage of ventilating fans or failure of ventilating equipment from any cause.

(b) Stoppage of the conveyor carrying goods past the high voltage grid.

(c) Occurrence of a ground or of an imminent ground at any point on the high voltage system.

(d) Reduction of clearance below that specified in subdivision (vi) of this subparagraph.

(x) Adequate fencing, railings, or guards shall be so placed about the equipment that they, either by their location or character or both, assure that a safe isolation of the process is maintained from plant storage or personnel. Such railings, fencing and guards shall be of conducting material, adequately grounded.

(xi) Electrode insulators shall be kept clean and dry.

(xii) The detearing area shall be ventilated by exhausting adequate air from the area as specified in paragraph (b) of this section.

(xiii) All areas for detearing shall be protected by automatic sprinklers where this protection is available. Where this protection is not available, other approved automatic extinguishing equipment shall be provided.

(xiv) Drip plates and screens subject to paint deposits shall be removable and shall be taken to a safe place for cleaning.

(4) Roll coating.

(i) The processes of roll coating, spreading, and impregnating, in which fabrics, paper, or other materials are passed directly through a tank or through containing flammable or combustible liquids, or over the surface of a roller that revolves partially submerged in a Class I or Class II liquid, as these terms are defined in § 1910.106 (A), shall conform to the applicable requirements of paragraphs (a) through (g) of this section, and in addition shall conform to subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph.

[38 F.R. 27047, Sept. 28, 1973.]

(ii) Adequate arrangements shall be made to prevent sparks from static electricity by electrically bonding and grounding all metallic rotating and other parts of machinery and equipment and by the installation of static collectors or maintaining a conductive atmosphere such as a high relative humidity.

1910.109—EXPLOSIVES AND BLASTING AGENTS

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

(1) Blasting agent. Blasting agent—any material or mixture, consisting of a fuel and oxidizer, intended for blasting, not otherwise classified as an explosive and in which none of the ingredients are classified as an explosive, provided that the finished product, as mixed and packaged for use or shipment, cannot be detonated by means of a No. 8 test blasting cap when unconfined.

(2) Explosive-actuated power devices. Explosive-actuated power device—any tool or special mechanized device which is actuated by explosives, but not including propellant-actuated power devices. Examples of explosive-actuated power devices are jet tappers and jet perforators.

(3) Explosive. Explosive—any chemical compound, mixture, or device, the primary or common purpose of which is to function by explosion, i.e., with substantially instantaneous release of gas and heat, unless such compound, mixture, or device is otherwise specifically classified by the U.S. Department of Transportation; see 49 CFR Chapter I. The term "explosives" shall include all material which is classified as Class A, Class B, and Class C explosives by the U.S. Department of Transportation, and includes, but is not limited to dynamite, black powder, pellet powders, initiating explosives, blasting caps, electric blasting caps, safety fuse, fuse lighters, fuse igniters, squibs, cordeau detonant fuse, instantaneous fuse, igniter cord, igniters, small arms ammunition, small arms ammunition primers, smokeless propellant, cartridges for propellant-actuated power devices, and cartridges for industrial guns. Commercial explosives are those explosives which are intended to be used in commercial or industrial operations.

(i) Class A explosives. Possessing, detonating, or otherwise maximum hazard; such as dynamite, nitroglycerin, picric acid, lead azide, fulminate of mercury, black powder, blasting caps, and detonating primers.

(ii) Class B explosives. Possessing flammable hazard, such as propellant explosives (including some smokeless propellants), photographic flash powders, and some special fireworks.

(iii) Class C explosives. Includes certain types of manufactured articles which contain Class A or Class B explosives, or both, as components but in restricted quantities.

(iv) Forbidden or not acceptable explosives. Explosives which are forbidden or not acceptable for transportation by common carriers by rail freight, rail express, highway, or water in accordance with the regulations of the U.S. Department of Transportation, 49 CFR Chapter I.

(4) Highway. Highway—any public street, public alley, or public road.

(5) Inhabited building. Revoked

NOTE 1: Classification of explosives is described by the U.S. Department of Transportation as follows (see 49 CFR Chapter I):

(6) Magazine. Magazine—any building or structure, other than an explosives manufacturing building, used for the storage of explosives.

(7) Motor vehicle. Motor vehicle—any self-propelled vehicle, truck, tractor, semitrailer, or truck-full trailers used for the transportation of freight over public highways.

(8) Propellant-actuated power devices. Propellant-actuated power devices—any tool or special mechanized device or gas generator system which is actuated by a smokeless propellant or which releases and directs work through a smokeless propellant charge.

(9) Public conveyance. Revoked

(10) Pyrotechnics. Pyrotechnics—any combustible or explosive compositions or manufactured articles designed and prepared for the purpose of producing audible or visible effects which are commonly referred to as fireworks.

(11) Railway. Revoked

(12) Semiconductive hose. Semiconductive hose—a hose with an electrical resistance high enough to limit flow of stray electric currents to safe levels, yet not so high as to prevent drainage of static electric charges to ground; hose of not more than

2 megohms resistance over its entire length and of not less than 5,000 ohms per foot meets the requirement.

(13) Small arms ammunition. Small arms ammunition—any shotgun, rifle, pistol, or revolver cartridge, and cartridges for propellant-actuated power devices and industrial guns. Military-type ammunition containing explosive-bursting charges, incendiary, tracer, spotting, or pyrotechnic projectiles is excluded from this definition.

(14) Small arms ammunition primers. Small arms ammunition primers—small percussion-sensitive explosive charges, encased in a cup, used to ignite propellant powder.

(15) Smokeless propellants. Smokeless propellants—solid propellants, commonly called smokeless powders in the trade, used in small arms ammunition, cannon, rockets, propellant-actuated power devices, etc.

(16) Special industrial explosives devices. Special industrial explosives devices—explosive-actuated power devices and propellant-actuated power devices.

(17) Special industrial explosives materials. Special industrial explosives materials—shaped materials and sheet forms and various other extrusions, pellets, and packages of high explosives, which include dynamite, trinitrotoluene (TNT), pentaerythritol tetranitrate (PETN), hexahydro-1,3,5-trinitro-s-triazine (RDX), and other similar compounds used for high-energy-rate forming, expanding, and shaping in metal fabrication, and for dismemberment and quick reduction of scrap metal.

(18) Water gels or slurry explosives. These comprise a wide variety of materials used for blasting. They all contain substantial proportions of water and high proportions of ammonium nitrate, some of which is in solution in the water. Two broad classes of water gels are (i) those which are sensitized by a material classed as an explosive, such as TNT or smokeless powder, (ii) those which contain no ingredient classified as an explosive; these are sensitized with metals such as aluminum or with other fuels. Water gels may be premixed at an explosives plant or mixed at the site immediately before delivery into the borehole.

(19) DOT specifications. Regulations of the Department of Transportation published in 49 CFR Chapter I.

(b) Miscellaneous provisions.

(1) General hazard. No person shall store, handle, or transport explosives or blasting agents when such storage, handling, and transportation of explosives or blasting agents constitutes an undue hazard to life

(c) Storage of explosives.

(1) General provisions.

(i) All Class A, Class B, Class C explosives, and special industrial explosives, and any newly developed and unclassified explosives, shall be kept in magazines which meet the requirements of this paragraph.

(ii) Blasting caps, electric blasting caps, detonating primers, and primed cartridges shall not be stored in the same magazine with other explosives.

(iii) Ground around magazines shall slope away for drainage. The land surrounding magazines shall be kept clear of brush, dried grass, leaves, and other materials for a distance of at least 25 feet.

(iv) Magazines as required by this paragraph shall be of two classes; namely, Class I magazines, and Class II magazines.

(v) Class I magazines shall be required where the quantity of explosives stored is more than 50 pounds. Class II magazines may be used where the quantity of explosives stored is 50 pounds or less.

(vi) Class I magazines shall be located away from inhabited buildings, passenger railways, and public highways and from other magazines in conformity with Table H-21.

TABLE H-21—AMERICAN TABLE OF DISTANCES FOR STORAGE OF EXPLOSIVES

As revised and approved by the Institute of Makers of Explosives, June 5, 1964

Explosives		Distances in feet when storage is barricaded
Pounds over	Pounds not over	Separation of magazines
2	5	6
5	10	8
10	20	10
20	30	11
30	40	12
40	50	14
50	75	15
75	100	16
100	125	18
125	150	19
150	200	21
200	250	23
250	300	24
300	400	27
400	500	29
500	600	31
600	700	32
700	800	33
800	900	35
900	1,000	36
1,000	1,200	39
1,200	1,400	41
1,400	1,600	43
1,600	1,800	44
1,800	2,000	45
2,000	2,500	49
2,500	3,000	52
3,000	4,000	58
4,000	5,000	61
5,000	6,000	65
6,000	7,000	68
7,000	8,000	72
8,000	9,000	75
9,000	10,000	78
10,000	12,000	82
12,000	14,000	87
14,000	16,000	90
16,000	18,000	94
18,000	20,000	98
20,000	25,000	105
25,000	30,000	112
30,000	35,000	119
35,000	40,000	124
40,000	45,000	129
45,000	50,000	135
50,000	55,000	140
55,000	60,000	145
60,000	65,000	150
65,000	70,000	155
70,000	75,000	160
75,000	80,000	165
80,000	85,000	170
85,000	90,000	175
90,000	95,000	180
95,000	100,000	185
100,000	110,000	195
110,000	120,000	205
120,000	130,000	215
130,000	140,000	225
140,000	150,000	235
150,000	160,000	245
160,000	170,000	255
170,000	180,000	265
180,000	190,000	275
190,000	200,000	285
200,000	210,000	295
210,000	230,000	315
230,000	250,000	335
250,000	275,000	360
275,000	300,000	385

TABLE H-21—AMERICAN TABLE OF DISTANCES FOR STORAGE OF EXPLOSIVES

As revised and approved by the Institute of Makers of Explosives, June 5, 1964

NOTE 1. "Natural barricade" means natural features of the ground, such as hills, or timber of sufficient density that the surrounding exposures which require protection cannot be seen from the magazine when the trees are bare of leaves.

NOTE 2. "Artificial barricade" means an artificial mound or revetted wall of earth of a minimum thickness of three feet.

NOTE 3. "Barricaded" means that a building containing explosives is effectually screened from a magazine, building, railway, or highway, either by a natural barricade, or by an artificial barricade of such height that a straight line from the top of any sidewall of the building containing explosives to the eave line of any magazine, or building, or to a point 12 feet above the center of a railway or highway, will pass through such intervening natural or artificial barricade.

NOTE 4. When two or more storage magazines are located on the same property, each magazine must comply with the minimum distances specified from inhabited buildings, railways, and highways, and in addition, they should be separated from each other by not less than the distances shown for "Separation of Magazines," except that the quantity of explosives contained in cap magazines shall govern in regard to the spacing of said cap magazines from magazines containing other explosives. If any two or more magazines are separated from each other by less than the specified "Separation of Magazines" distances, then such two or more magazines, as a group, must be considered as one magazine, and the total quantity of explosives stored in such group must be treated as if stored in a single magazine located on the site of any magazine of the group, and must comply with the minimum of distances specified from other magazines, inhabited buildings, railways, and highways.

NOTE 5. This table applies only to the manufacture and permanent storage of commercial explosives. It is not applicable to transportation of explosives, or any handling or temporary storage necessary or incident thereto. It is not intended to apply to bombs, projectiles, or other heavily encased explosives.

(vii) Except as provided in subdivision (viii) of this subparagraph, class II magazines shall be located in conformity with Table H-21, but may be permitted in warehouses and in wholesale and retail establishments when located on a floor which has an entrance at outside grade level and the magazine is located not more than 10 feet from such an entrance. Two class II magazines may be located in the same building when one is used only for blasting caps in quantities not in excess of 5,000 caps and a distance of 10 feet is maintained between magazines.

(viii) When used for temporary storage at a site for blasting operations, class II magazines shall be located away from other magazines. A distance of at least one hundred and fifty (150) feet shall be maintained between class II magazines and the work in progress when the quantity of explosives kept therein is in excess of 25 pounds, and at least 50 feet when the quantity of explosives is 25 pounds, or less.

(ix) This paragraph (c) does not apply to:

(a) Stocks of small arms ammunition, propellant-actuated power cartridges, small arms ammunition primers in quantities of less than 750,000, or of smokeless propellants in quantities less than 750 pounds;

(b) Explosive-actuated power devices when in quantities less than 50 pounds net weight of explosives;

(c) Fuse lighters and fuse igniters;

(d) Safety fuses other than cordeau detonant fuses.

(2) Construction of magazines—general.

(i) Magazines shall be constructed in conformity with the provisions of this paragraph.

(ii) Magazines for the storage of explosives, other than black powder, class B and class C explosives shall be bullet resistant, weather resistant, fire resistant, and ventilated sufficiently to protect the explosive in the specific locality. Magazines used only for storage of black powder, class B and class C explosives shall be weather resistant, fire-resistant, and have ventilation. Magazines for storage of blasting and electric blasting caps shall be weather resistant, fire-resistant, and ventilated.

(iii) Property upon which Class I magazines are located and property where Class II magazines are located outside of buildings shall be posted with signs reading "Explosives—Keep Off."

(iv) Magazines requiring heat shall be heated by either hot-water radiant heating with the magazine building; or air directed into the magazine building over either hot water or low pressure steam (15 p.s.i.g.) coils located outside the magazine building.

(v) The magazine heating systems shall meet the following requirements:

(a) The radiant heating coils within the building shall be installed in such a manner that the explosives or explosives containers cannot contact the coils and air is free to circulate between the coils and the explosives or explosives containers.

(b) The heating ducts shall be installed in such a manner that the hot-air discharge from the duct is not directed against the explosives or explosives containers.

(c) The heating device used in connection with a magazine shall have controls which prevent the ambient building temperature from exceeding 130° F.

(d) The electric fan or pump used in the heating system for a magazine shall be mounted outside and separate from the wall of the magazine and shall be grounded.

(e) The electric fan motor and the controls for electrical heating devices used in heating water or steam shall have overloads and disconnects, which comply with subpart S of this part. All electrical switch gear shall be located a minimum distance of 25 feet from the magazine.

(f) The heating source for water or steam shall be separated from the magazine by a distance of not less than 25 feet when electrical and 50 feet when fuel fired. The area between the heating unit and the magazine shall be cleared of all combustible materials.

(g) The storage of explosives and explosives containers in the magazine shall allow uniform air circulation so product temperature uniformity can be maintained.

(vi) When lights are necessary inside the magazine, electric safety flashlight, or electric safety lanterns shall be used.

(3) Construction of Class I magazines.

(i) Class I magazines shall be of masonry construction or of wood or of metal construction, or a combination of these types. Thickness of masonry units shall not be less than 8 inches. Hollow masonry units used in construction required to be bullet resistant shall have all hollow spaces filled with weak cement or well-tamped sand. Wood constructed walls, required to be bullet resistant, shall have at least a 6-inch space between interior and exterior sheathing and the space between sheathing shall be filled with well-tamped sand. Metal wall construction, when required to be bullet resistant, shall be lined with brick at least 4 inches in thickness or shall have at least a 6-inch sandfill between interior and exterior walls.

(ii) Floors and roofs of masonry magazines may be of wood construction. Wood floors shall be tongue and grooved lumber having a nominal thickness of 1 inch.

(iii) Roofs required to be bullet resistant shall be protected by a sand tray located at the line of eaves and covering the entire area except that necessary for ventilation. Sand in the sand tray shall be maintained at a depth of not less than 4 inches.

(iv) All wood at the exterior of magazines, including eaves, shall be protected by being covered with black or galvanized steel or aluminum metal of thickness of not less than No. 26 gage. All nails exposed to the interior of magazines shall be well countersunk.

(v) Foundations for magazines shall be of substantial construction and arranged to provide good cross ventilation.

(vi) Magazines shall be ventilated sufficiently to prevent dampness and heating of stored explosives. Ventilating openings shall be screened to prevent the entrance of sparks.

(vii) Openings to magazines shall be restricted to that necessary for the placement and removal of stocks of explosives. Doors for openings in magazines for Class A explosives shall be bullet resistant. Doors for magazines not required to be bullet resistant shall be designed to prevent unauthorized entrance to the magazine.

(viii) Revoked

(ix) Provisions shall be made to prevent the piling of stocks of explosives directly against masonry walls, brick-lined or sand-filled metal walls and single-thickness metal walls; such protection, however, shall not interfere with proper ventilation at the interior of side and end walls.

(4) Construction of Class II magazines.

(i) Class II magazines shall be of wood or metal construction, or a combination thereof.

(ii) Wood magazines of this class shall have sides, bottom, and cover constructed of 2-inch hardwood boards well braced at corners and protected by being entirely covered with sheet metal of not less than No. 20 gage. All nails exposed to the interior of the magazine shall be well countersunk. All metal magazines of this class shall have sides, bottom, and cover constructed of sheet metal, and shall be lined with three-eighths-inch plywood or equivalent. Edges of metal covers shall overlap sides at least 1 inch.

(iii) Covers for both wood- and metal-constructed magazines of this class shall be provided with substantial strap hinges and shall be provided with substantial means for locking.

(iv) Magazines of this class shall be painted red and shall bear lettering in white, on all sides and top, at least 3 inches high, "Explosives—Keep Fire Away." Class II magazines when located in warehouses, and in wholesale and retail establishments shall be provided with substantial wheels or casters to facilitate easy removal in the case of fire. Where necessary due to climatic conditions, Class II magazines shall be ventilated.

(5) Storage within magazines.

(i) Packages of explosives shall be laid flat with top side up. Black powder when stored in magazines with other explosives shall be stored separately. Black powder stored in kegs shall be stored on ends, bungs down, or on side, seams down. Corresponding grades and brands shall be stored together in such a manner that brands and grade marks show. All stocks shall be stored so as to be easily counted and checked. Packages of explosives shall be piled in a stable manner. When any kind of explosive is removed from a magazine for use, the oldest explosive of that particular kind shall always be taken first.

(ii) Packages of explosives shall not be unpacked or repacked in a magazine nor within 50 feet of a magazine or in close proximity to other explosives. Tools used for opening packages of explosives shall be constructed of nonsparking materials, except that metal slitters may be used for opening fiberboard boxes. A wood wedge and a fiber, rubber, or wood mallet shall be used for opening or closing wood packages of explosives. Opened packages of explosives shall be securely closed before being returned to a magazine.

(iii) Magazines shall not be used for the storage of any metal tools nor any commodity except explosives, but this restriction shall not apply to the storage of blasting agents and blasting supplies.

(iv) Magazine floors shall be regularly swept, kept clean, dry, free of grit, paper, empty used packages, and rubbish. Brooms and other cleaning utensils shall not have any spark-producing metal parts. Sweepings from floors of magazines shall be properly disposed of. Magazine floors stained with nitroglycerin shall be cleaned according to instructions by the manufacturer.

(v) When any explosive has deteriorated to an extent that it is in an unstable or dangerous condition, or if nitroglycerin leaks from any explosives, then the person in possession of such explosive shall immediately proceed to destroy such explosive in accordance with the instructions of the manufacturer. Only experienced persons shall be allowed to do the work of destroying explosives.

(vi) When magazines need inside repairs, all explosives shall be removed therefrom and the floors cleaned. In making outside repairs, if there is a possibility of causing sparks or fire the explosives shall be removed from the magazine. Explosives removed from a magazine under repair shall either be placed in another magazine or placed a safe distance from the magazine where they shall be properly guarded and protected until repairs have been completed, when they shall be returned to the magazine.

(vii) Smoking, matches, open flames, spark-producing devices, and firearms (except firearms carried by guards) shall not be permitted inside of or within 50 feet of magazines. The land surrounding a magazine shall be kept clear of all combustible materials for a distance of at least 25 feet. Combustible materials shall not be stored within 50 feet of magazines.

(viii) Magazines shall be in the charge of a competent person at all times who shall be held responsible for the enforcement of all safety precautions.

(ix) Explosives recovered from blasting misfires shall be placed in a separate magazine until competent personnel has determined from the manufacturer the method of disposal. Caps recovered from blasting misfires shall not be reused. Such explosives and caps shall then be disposed of in the manner recommended by the manufacturer.

(d) Transportation of explosives.

(1) General provisions.

(i) No employee shall be allowed to smoke, carry matches or any other flame-producing device, or carry any firearms or loaded cartridges while in or near a motor vehicle transporting explosives; or drive, load, or unload such vehicle in a careless or reckless manner.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Explosives shall not be transferred from one vehicle to another within the confines of any jurisdiction (city, county, State, or other area) without informing the fire and police departments thereof. In the event of breakdown or collision the local fire and police departments shall be promptly notified to help safeguard such emergencies. Explosives shall be transferred from the disabled vehicle to another only when proper and qualified supervision is provided.

(iv) Blasting caps or electric blasting caps shall not be transported over the highways on the same vehicles with other explosives.

(2) Transportation vehicles.

(i) Vehicles used for transporting explosives shall be strong enough to carry the load without difficulty and be in good mechanical condition. If vehicles do not have a closed body, the body shall be covered with a flameproof and moisture-proof tarpaulin or other effective protection against moisture and sparks. All vehicles used for the transportation of explosives shall have tight floors and any exposed spark-producing metal on the inside of the body shall be covered with wood or other nonsparking materials to prevent contact with packages of explosives. Packages of explosives shall not be loaded above the sides of an open-body vehicle.

(ii) Every vehicle used for transporting explosives and oxidizing materials listed in (*a*) of this subdivision shall be marked as follows:

(a) Exterior markings or placards required on applicable vehicles shall be as follows for the various classes of commodities:

Commodity	*Type of marking or placard*
Explosives, Class A, any quantity or a combination of Class A and Class B explosives.	Explosives A (Red letters on white background).
Explosives, Class B, any quantity.	Explosives B (Red letters on white background).
Oxidizing material (oxidizing agents, ammonium nitrate, etc.), 1,000 pounds or more gross weight.	Oxidizers (Yellow letters on black background).

(b) Revoked

(c) Such markings or placards shall be displayed at the front, rear, and on each side of the motor vehicle or trailer, or other cargo carrying body while it contains explosives or other dangerous articles of such type and in such quantity as specified in (*a*) of this subdivision. The front marking or placard may be displayed on the front of either the truck, truck body, truck tractor or the trailer.

(d) Any motor vehicle, trailer, or other cargo-carrying body containing more than one kind of explosive as well as an oxidizing material requiring a placard under the provisions of subdivision (*a*), the aggregate gross weight of which totals 1,000 pounds or more, shall be marked or placarded "Dangerous" as well as "Explosive A" or "Explosive B" as appropriate. If explosives Class A and explosives Class B are loaded on the same vehicle, the "Explosives B" marking need not be displayed.

(e) In any combination of two or more vehicles containing explosives or other dangerous articles each vehicle shall be marked or placarded as to its content and in accordance with (*a*) and (*c*) of this subdivision.

(iii) Each motor vehicle used for transporting explosives shall be equipped with a minimum of two extinguishers, each having a rating of at least 10 BC.

(a) Only extinguishers listed or approved by a nationally recognized testing laboratory shall be deemed suitable for use on explosives-carrying vehicles. Refer to § 1910.155(c)(3)(iv)(A) for definition of listed, and § 1910.7 for nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(b) Extinguishers shall be filled and ready for immediate use and located near the driver's seat. Extinguishers shall be examined periodically by a competent person.

(iv) A motor vehicle used for transporting explosives shall be given the following inspection to determine that it is in proper condition for safe transportation of explosives:

(a) Fire extinguishers shall be filled and in working order.

(b) All electrical wiring shall be completely protected and securely fastened to prevent short circuiting.

(c) Chassis, motor, pan, and underside of body shall be reasonably clean and free of excess oil and grease.

(d) Fuel tank and feedline shall be secure and have no leaks.

(e) Brakes, lights, horn, windshield wipers, and steering apparatus shall function properly.

(f) Tires shall be checked for proper inflation and defects.

(g) The vehicle shall be in proper condition in every other respect and acceptable for handling explosives.

(3) Operation of transportation vehicles.

(i) Vehicles transporting explosives shall only be driven by and be in the charge of a driver who is familiar with the traffic regulations, State laws, and the provisions of this section.

(ii) Except under emergency conditions, no vehicle transporting explosives shall be parked before reaching its destination, even though attended, on any public street adjacent to or in proximity to any place where people work.

(iii) Every motor vehicle transporting any quantity of Class A or Class B explosives shall, at all times, be attended by a driver or other attendant of the motor carrier. This attendant shall have been made aware of the class of the explosive material in the vehicle and of its inherent dangers, and shall have been instructed in the measures and procedures to be followed in order to protect the public from those dangers. He shall have been made familiar with the vehicle he is assigned, and shall be trained, supplied with the necessary means, and authorized to move the vehicle when required.

(a) For the purpose of this subdivision, a motor vehicle shall be deemed "attended" only when the driver or other attendant is physically on or in the vehicle, or has the vehicle within his field of vision and can reach it quickly and without any kind of interference; "attended" also means that the driver or attendant is awake, alert, and not engaged in other duties or activities which may divert his attention from the vehicle, except for necessary communication with public officers, or representatives of the carrier, shipper, or consignee, or except for necessary absence from the vehicle to obtain food or to provide for his physical comfort.

(b) However, an explosive-laden vehicle may be left unattended if parked within a securely fenced or walled area with all gates or entrances locked where parking of such vehicle is otherwise permissible, or at a magazine site established solely for the purpose of storing explosives.

(iv) No spark-producing metal, spark-producing metal tools, oils, matches, firearms, electric storage batteries, flammable substances, acids, oxidizing materials, or corrosive compounds shall be carried in the body of any motor truck and/or vehicle transporting explosives, unless the loading of such dangerous articles and the explosives comply with U.S. Department of Transportation regulations.

(v) Vehicles transporting explosives shall avoid congested areas and heavy traffic. Where routes through congested areas have been designated by local authorities such routes shall be followed.

(vi) Delivery shall only be made to authorized persons and into authorized magazines or authorized temporary storage or handling areas.

(e) Use of explosives and blasting agents.

(1) General provisions.

(i) While explosives are being handled or used, smoking shall not be permitted and no one near the explosives shall possess matches, open light or other fire or flame. No person shall be allowed to handle explosives while under the influence of intoxicating liquors, narcotics, or other dangerous drugs.

(ii) Original containers or Class II magazines shall be used for taking detonators and other explosives from storage magazines to the blasting area.

(iii) When blasting is done in congested areas or in close proximity to a structure, or any other installation that may be damaged, the blast shall be covered before firing with a mat constructed so that it is capable of preventing fragments from being thrown.

(iv) Persons authorized to prepare explosive charges or conduct blasting operations shall use every reasonable precaution, including but not limited to warning signals, flags, barricades, or woven wire mats to insure the safety of the general public and workmen.

(v) Blasting operations shall be conducted during daylight hours.

(vi) Whenever blasting is being conducted in the vicinity of gas, electric, water, fire alarm, telephone, telegraph, and steam utilities, the blaster shall notify the appropriate representatives of such utilities at least 24 hours in advance of blasting, specifying the location and intended time of such blasting. Verbal notice shall be confirmed with written notice.

(vii) Due precautions shall be taken to prevent accidental discharge of electric blasting caps from current induced by radar, radio transmitters, lightning, adjacent powerlines dust storms, or other sources of extraneous electricity. These precautions shall include:

(a) The suspension of all blasting operations and removal of persons from the blasting area during the approach and progress of an electric storm.

(b) The posting of signs warning against the use of mobile radio transmitters on all roads within 350 feet of the blasting operations.

(2) Storage at use sites.

(i) Empty boxes and paper and fiber packing materials which have previously contained high explosives shall not be used again for any purpose, but shall be destroyed by burning at an approved isolated location out of doors, and no person shall be nearer than 100 feet after the burning has started.

(ii) Containers of explosives shall not be opened in any magazine or within 50 feet of any magazine. In opening kegs or wooden cases, no sparking metal tools shall be used; wooden wedges and either wood, fiber or rubber mallets shall be used. Nonsparking metallic slitters may be used for opening fiberboard cases.

(iii) Explosives or blasting equipment that are obviously deteriorated or damaged shall not be used.

(iv) No explosives shall be abandoned.

(3) Loading of explosives in blast holes.

(i) All drill holes shall be sufficiently large to admit freely the insertion of the cartridges of explosives.

(ii) Tamping shall be done only with wood rods without exposed metal parts, but nonsparking metal connectors may be used for jointed poles. Violent tamping shall be avoided. Primed cartridges shall not be tamped.

(iii) When loading blasting agents pneumatically over electric blasting caps, semiconductive delivery hose shall be used and the equipment shall be bonded and grounded.

(iv) No holes shall be loaded except those to be fired in the next round of blasting. After loading, all remaining explosives shall be immediately returned to an authorized magazine.

(v) Drilling shall not be started until all remaining butts of old holes are examined with a wooden stick for unexploded charges, and if any are found, they shall be refired before work proceeds.

(vi) No person shall be allowed to deepen drill holes which have contained explosives.

(vii) After loading for a blast is completed, all excess blasting caps or electric blasting caps and other explosives shall immediately be returned to their separate storage magazines.

(4) Initiation of explosive charges.

(i) Revoked

(ii) When fuse is used, the blasting cap shall be securely attached to the safety fuse with a standard-ring type cap crimper. All primers shall be assembled at least 50 feet from any magazine.

(iii) Primers shall be made up only as required for each round of blasting.

(iv) No blasting cap shall be inserted in the explosives without first making a hole in the cartridge for the cap with a wooden punch of proper size or standard cap crimper.

(v) Explosives shall not be extracted from a hole that has once been charged or has misfired unless it is impossible to detonate the unexploded charge by insertion of a fresh additional primer.

(vi) If there are any misfires while using cap and fuse, all persons shall be required to remain away from the charge for at least 1 hour. If electric blasting caps are used and a misfire occurs, this waiting period may be reduced to 30 minutes. Misfires shall be handled under the direction of the person in charge of the blasting and all wires shall be carefully traced and search made for unexploded charges.

(vii) Blasters when testing circuits to charged holes shall use only blasting galvanometers designed for this purpose.

(viii) Only the employee making leading wire connections in electrical firing shall be allowed to fire the shot. Leading wires shall remain shorted and not be connected to the blasting machine or other source of current until the charge is to be fired.

(5) Warning required. Before a blast is fired, the employer shall require that a loud warning signal be given by the person in charge, who has made certain that all surplus explosives are in a safe place, all persons and vehicles are at a safe distance or under sufficient cover, and that an adequate warning has been given.

(f) Explosives at piers, railway stations, and cars or vessels not otherwise specified in this standard.

(1) Railway cars. Except in an emergency and with permission of the local authority, no person shall have or keep explosives in a railway car unless said car and contents and methods of loading are in accordance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Regulations for the Transportation of Explosives, 49 CFR Chapter I.

(2) Packing and marking. No person shall deliver any explosive to any carrier unless such explosive conforms in all respects, including marking and packing, to the U.S. Department of Transportation Regulations for the Transportation of Explosives

(3) Marking cars. Every railway car containing explosives which has reached its designation, or is stopped in transit so as no longer to be in interstate commerce, shall have attached to both sides and ends of the car, cards with the words "Explosives—Handle Carefully—Keep Fire Away" in red letters at least 1½ inches high on a white background.

(4) Storage. Any explosives at a railway facility, truck terminal, pier, wharf, harbor facility, or airport terminal, whether for delivery to a consignee, or forwarded to some other destination, shall be kept in a safe place, isolated as far as practicable and in such manner that they can be easily and quickly removed.

(5) Hours of transfer. Explosives shall not be delivered to or received from any railway station, truck terminal, pier, wharf, harbor facility, or airport terminal between the hours of sunset and sunrise.

(g) Blasting agents.

(1) General. Unless otherwise set forth in this paragraph, blasting agents, excluding water gels, shall be transported, stored, and used in the same manner as explosives. Water gels are covered in paragraph (h) of this section.

(2) Fixed location mixing.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Buildings used for the mixing of blasting agents shall conform to the requirements of this section.

(a) Buildings shall be of noncombustible construction or sheet metal on wood studs.

(b) Floors in a mixing plant shall be of concrete or of other nonabsorbent materials.

(c) All fuel oil storage facilities shall be separated from the mixing plant and located in such a manner that in case of tank rupture, the oil will drain away from the mixing plant building.

(d) The building shall be well ventilated.

(e) Heating units which do not depend on combustion processes, when properly designed and located, may be used in the building. All direct sources of heat shall be provided exclusively from units located outside the mixing building.

(f) All internal-combustion engines used for electric power generation shall be located outside the mixing plant building, or shall be properly ventilated and isolated by a firewall. The exhaust systems on all such engines shall be located so any spark emission cannot be a hazard to any materials in or adjacent to the plant.

(iii) Equipment used for mixing blasting agents shall conform to the requirements of this subdivision.

(a) The design of the mixer shall minimize the possibility of frictional heating, compaction, and especially confinement. All bearings and drive assemblies shall be mounted outside the mixer and protected against the accumulation of dust. All surfaces shall be accessible for cleaning.

(b) Mixing and packaging equipment shall be constructed of materials compatible with the fuel-ammonium nitrate composition.

(c) Suitable means shall be provided to prevent the flow of fuel oil to the mixer in case of fire. In gravity flow systems an automatic spring-loaded shutoff valve with fusible link shall be installed.

(iv) The provisions of this subdivision shall be considered when determining blasting agent compositions.

(a) The sensitivity of the blasting agent shall be determined by means of a No. 8 test blasting cap at regular intervals and after every change in formulation.

(b) Oxidizers of small particle size, such as crushed ammonium nitrate prills or fines, may be more sensitive than coarser products and shall, therefore, be handled with greater care.

(c) No hydrocarbon liquid fuel with flashpoint lower than that of No. 2 diesel fuel oil 125° F. minimum shall be used.

(d) Crude oil and crankcase oil shall not be used.

(e) Metal powders such as aluminum shall be kept dry and shall be stored in containers or bins which are moisture-resistant or weathertight. Solid fuels shall be used in such manner as to minimize dust explosion hazards.

(f) Peroxides and chlorates shall not be used.

(v) All electrical switches, controls, motors, and lights located in the mixing room shall conform to the requirements in subpart S of this part for Class II, Division 2 locations; otherwise they shall be located outside the mixing room. The frame of the mixer and all other equipment that may be used shall be electrically bonded and be provided with a continuous path to the ground.

(vi) Safety precautions at mixing plants shall include the requirements of this subdivision.

(a) Floors shall be constructed so as to eliminate floor drains and piping into which molten materials could flow and be confined in case of fire.

(b) The floors and equipment of the mixing and packaging room shall be cleaned regularly and thoroughly to prevent accumulation of oxidizers or fuels and other sensitizers.

(c) The entire mixing and packaging plant shall be cleaned regularly and thoroughly to prevent excessive accumulation of dust.

(d) Smoking, matches, open flames, spark-producing devices, and firearms (except firearms carried by guards) shall not be permitted inside of or within 50 feet of any building or facility used for the mixing of blasting agents.

(e) The land surrounding the mixing plant shall be kept clear of brush, dried grass, leaves, and other materials for a distance of at least 25 feet.

(f) Empty ammonium nitrate bags shall be disposed of daily in a safe manner.

(g) No welding shall be permitted or open flames used in or around the mixing or storage area of the plant unless the equipment or area has been completely washed down and all oxidizer material removed.

(h) Before welding or repairs to hollow shafts, all oxidizer material shall be removed from the outside and inside of the shaft and the shaft vented with a minimum one-half inch diameter opening.

(i) Explosives shall not be permitted inside of or within 50 feet of any building or facility used for the mixing of blasting agents.

(3) Bulk delivery and mixing vehicles.

(i) The provisions of this subparagraph shall apply to off-highway private operations as well as to all public highway movements.

(ii) A bulk vehicle body for delivering and mixing blasting agents shall conform with the requirements of this subdivision (ii).

(a) The body shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

(b) Vehicles used to transport bulk premixed blasting agents on public highways shall have closed bodies.

(c) All moving parts of the mixing system shall be designed as to prevent a heat buildup. Shafts or axles which contact the product shall have outboard bearings with 1-inch minimum clearance between the bearings and the outside of the product container. Particular attention shall be given to the clearances on all moving parts.

(d) A bulk delivery vehicle shall be strong enough to carry the load without difficulty and be in good mechanical condition.

(iii) Operation of bulk delivery vehicles shall conform to the requirements of this subdivision. These include the placarding requirements as specified by Department of Transportation.

(a) The operator shall be trained in the safe operation of the vehicle together with its mixing, conveying, and related equipment. The employer shall assure that the operator is familiar with the commodities being delivered and the general procedure for handling emergency situations.

(b) The hauling of either blasting caps or other explosives but not both, shall be permitted on bulk trucks provided that a special wood or nonferrous-lined container is installed for the explosives. Such blasting caps or other explosives shall be in DOT-specified shipping containers: see 49 CFR Chapter I.

(c) No person shall smoke, carry matches or any flame-producing device, or carry any firearms while in or about bulk vehicles effecting the mixing transfer or down-the-hole loading of blasting agents at or near the blasting site.

(d) Caution shall be exercised in the movement of the vehicle in the blasting area to avoid driving the vehicle over or dragging hoses over firing lines, cap wires, or explosive materials. The employer shall assure that the driver, in moving the vehicle, has assistance of a second person to guide his movements.

(e) No intransit mixing of materials shall be performed.

(iv) Pneumatic loading from bulk delivery vehicles into blastholes primed with electric blasting caps or other static-sensitive systems shall conform to the requirements of this subdivision.

(a) A positive grounding device shall be used to prevent the accumulation of static electricity.

(b) A discharge hose shall be used that has a resistance range that will prevent conducting stray currents, but that is conductive enough to bleed off static buildup.

(c) A qualified person shall evaluate all systems to determine if they will adequately dissipate static under potential field conditions.

(v) Repairs to bulk delivery vehicles shall conform to the requirements of this section.

(a) No welding or open flames shall be used on or around any part of the delivery equipment unless it has been completely washed down and all oxidizer material removed.

(b) Before welding or making repairs to hollow shafts, the shaft shall be thoroughly cleaned inside and out and vented with a minimum one-half-inch diameter opening.

(4) Bulk storage bins.

(i) The bin, including supports, shall be constructed of compatible materials, waterproof, and adequately supported and braced to withstand the combination of all loads including impact forces arising from product movement within the bin and accidental vehicle contact with the support legs.

(ii) The bin discharge gate shall be designed to provide a closure tight enough to prevent leakage of the stored product. Provision shall also be made so that the gate can be locked.

(iii) Bin loading manways or access hatches shall be hinged or otherwise attached to the bin and be designed to permit locking.

(iv) Any electrically driven conveyors for loading or unloading bins shall conform to the requirements of Subpart S of this Part. They shall be designed to minimize damage from corrosion.

(v) Bins containing blasting agent shall be located, with respect to inhabited buildings, passenger railroads, and public highways, in accordance with Table H-21 and separation from other blasting agent storage and explosives storage shall be in conformity with Table H-22.

(vi) Bins containing ammonium nitrate shall be separated from blasting agent storage and explosives storage in conformity with Table H-22.

(5) Storage of blasting agents and supplies.

(i) Blasting agents and oxidizers used for mixing of blasting agents shall be stored in the manner set forth in this subdivision.

(a) Blasting agents or ammonium nitrate, when stored in conjunction with explosives, shall be stored in the manner set forth in paragraph (c) of this section for explosives. The mass of blasting agents and one-half the mass of ammonium nitrate shall be included when computing the total quantity of explosives for determining distance requirements.

(b) Blasting agents, when stored entirely separate from explosives, may be stored in the manner set forth in paragraph (c) of this section or in one-story warehouses (without basements) which shall be:

(1) Noncombustible or fire resistive;

(2) Constructed so as to eliminate open floor drains and piping into which molten materials could flow and be confined in case of fire;

(3) Weather resistant;

(4) Well ventilated; and

(5) Equipped with a strong door kept securely locked except when open for business.

(c) Semitrailer or full-trailer vans used for highway or onsite transportation of the blasting agents are satisfactory for temporarily storing these materials, provided they are located in accordance with Table H-22 with respect to one another. Trailers shall be provided with substantial means for locking, and the trailer doors shall be kept locked, except during the time of placement and removal of stocks and blasting agents.

(ii) Warehouses used for the storage of blasting agents separate from explosives shall be located as set forth in this subdivision.

(a) Warehouses used for the storage of blasting agents shall be located in accordance with Table H-22 with respect to one another.

(b) If both blasting agents and ammonium nitrate are handled or stored within the distance limitations prescribed through subparagraph (2) of this paragraph, one-half the mass of the ammonium nitrate shall be added to the mass of the blasting agent when computing the total quantity of explosives for determining the proper distance for compliance with Table H-21.

(iii) Smoking, matches, open flames, spark producing devices, and firearms are prohibited inside of or within 50 feet of any warehouse used for the storage of blasting agents. Combustible materials shall not be stored within 50 feet of warehouses used for the storage of blasting agents.

(iv) The interior of warehouses used for the storage of blasting agents shall be kept clean and free from debris and empty containers. Spilled materials shall be cleaned up promptly and safely removed. Combustible materials, flammable liquids, corrosive acids, chlorates, or nitrates shall not be stored in any warehouse used for blasting agents unless separated therefrom by a fire resistive separation of not less than 1 hour resistance. The provisions of this subdivision shall not prohibit the storage of blasting agents together with nonexplosive blasting supplies.

(v) Piles of ammonium nitrate and warehouses containing ammonium nitrate shall be adequately separated from readily combustible fuels.

(vi) Caked oxidizers, either in bags or in bulk, shall not be loosened by blasting.

(vii) Every warehouse used for the storage of blasting agents shall be under the supervision of a competent person .

(6) Transportation of packaged blasting agents.

(i) When blasting agents are transported in the same vehicle with explosives, all of the requirements of paragraph (d) of this section shall be complied with.

(ii) Vehicles transporting blasting agents shall only be driven by and be in charge of a driver in possession of a valid motor vehicle operator's license. Such a person shall also be familiar with the States vehicle and traffic laws.

(iii) No matches, firearms, acids, or other corrosive liquids shall be carried in the bed or body of any vehicle containing blasting agents.

(iv) No person shall be permitted to ride upon, drive, load, or unload a vehicle containing blasting agents while smoking or under the influence of intoxicants, narcotics, or other dangerous drugs.

(v) Revoked

(vi) Vehicles transporting blasting agents shall be in safe operating condition at all times.

(7) Use of blasting agents. Persons using blasting agents shall comply with all of the applicable provisions of paragraph (e) of this section.

(h) Water gel (Slurry) explosives and blasting agents.

(1) General provisions. Unless otherwise set forth in this paragraph, water gels shall be transported, stored and used in the same manner as explosives or blasting agents in accordance with the classification of the product.

(2) Types and classifications.

(i) Water gels containing a substance in itself classified as an explosive shall be classified as an explosive and manufactured, transported, stored, and used as specified for "explosives" in this section, except as noted in subdivision (iv) of this subparagraph.

TABLE H-22—TABLE OF RECOMMENDED SEPARATION DISTANCES OF AMMONIUM NITRATE AND BLASTING AGENTS FROM EXPLOSIVES OR BLASTING AGENTS [1, 6]

Donor weight		Minimum separation distance of receptor when barricaded [2] (ft.)		Minimum thickness of artificial barricades [5] (in.)
Pounds over	Pounds not over	Ammonium nitrate [3]	Blasting agent [4]	
	100	3	11	12
100	300	4	14	12
300	600	5	18	12
600	1,000	6	22	12
1,000	1,600	7	25	12
1,600	2,000	8	29	12
2,000	3,000	9	32	15
3,000	4,000	10	36	15
4,000	6,000	11	40	15
6,000	8,000	12	43	20
8,000	10,000	13	47	20
10,000	12,000	14	50	20
12,000	16,000	15	54	25
16,000	20,000	16	58	25
20,000	25,000	18	65	25
25,000	30,000	19	68	30
30,000	35,000	20	72	30
35,000	40,000	21	76	30
40,000	45,000	22	79	35
45,000	50,000	23	83	35
50,000	55,000	24	86	35
55,000	60,000	25	90	35
60,000	70,000	26	94	40
70,000	80,000	28	101	40
80,000	90,000	30	108	40
90,000	100,000	32	115	40
100,000	120,000	34	122	50
120,000	140,000	37	133	50
140,000	160,000	40	144	50
160,000	180,000	44	158	50
180,000	200,000	48	173	50
200,000	220,000	52	187	60
220,000	250,000	56	202	60
250,000	275,000	60	216	60
275,000	300,000	64	230	60

Notes to Table of Recommended Separation Distances of Ammonium Nitrate and Blasting Agents from Explosives or Blasting Agents:

NOTE 1. These distances apply to the separation of stores only. Table H-21 shall be used in determining separation distances from inhabited buildings, passenger railways, and public highways.

NOTE 2. When the ammonium nitrate and/or blasting agent is not barricaded, the distances shown in the table shall be multiplied by six. These distances allow for the possibility of high velocity metal fragments from mixers, hoppers, truck bodies, sheet metal structures, metal containers, and the like which may enclose the "donor". Where storage is in bullet-resistant magazines recommended for explosives or where the storage is protected by a bullet-resistant wall, distances, and barricade thicknesses in excess of those prescribed in Table H-21 are not required.

NOTE 3. The distances in the table apply to ammonium nitrate that passes the insensitivity test prescribed in the definition of ammonium nitrate fertilizer promulgated by the National Plant Food Institute*; and ammonium nitrate failing to pass said test shall be stored at separation distances determined by competent persons. (*Definition and Test Procedures for Ammonium Nitrate Fertilizer, National Plant Food Institute, November 1964.)

NOTE 4. These distances apply to nitro-carbo-nitrates and blasting agents which pass the insensitivity test prescribed in the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) regulations.

NOTE 5. Earth, or sand dikes, or enclosures filled with the prescribed minimum thickness of earth or sand are acceptable artificial barricades. Natural barricades, such as hills or timber of sufficient density that the surrounding exposures which require protection cannot be seen from the "donor" when the trees are bare of leaves, are also acceptable.

NOTE 6. When the ammonium nitrate must be counted in determining the distances to be maintained from inhabited buildings, passenger railways and public highways, it may be counted at one-half its actual weight because its blast effect is lower.

NOTE 7. Guide to use of table of recommended separation distances of ammonium nitrate and blasting agents from explosives or blasting agents.

(a) Sketch location of all potential donor and acceptor materials together with the maximum mass of material to be allowed in that vicinity. (Potential donors are high explosives, blasting agents, and combination of masses of detonating materials. Potential acceptors are high explosives, blasting agents, and ammonium nitrate.)

(b) Consider separately each donor mass in combination with each acceptor mass. If the masses are closer than table allowance (distances measured between nearest edges), the combination of masses becomes a new potential donor of weight equal to the total mass. When individual masses are considered as donors, distances to potential acceptors shall be measured between edges. When combined masses within propagating distance of each other are considered as a donor, the appropriate distance to the edge of potential acceptors shall be computed as a weighted distance from the combined masses.

Calculation of weighted distance from combined masses:

Let M_2, M_3 . . . M_n be donor masses to be combined.

M_1 is a potential acceptor mass.

D_{12} is distance from M_1 to M_2 (edge to edge).

D_{13} is distance from M_1 to M_3 (edge to edge), etc.

To find weighted distance $[D_1(_{2,3} \ldots {}_n)]$ from combined masses to M_1, add the products of the individual masses and distances and divide the total by the sum of the masses thus:

$$D_1(_{2,3}, \ldots n) = \frac{M_2 \times D_{12} + M_3 \times D_{13} \ldots + M_n \times D_{1n}}{M_2 + M_3 \ldots + M_n}$$

Propagation is possible if either an individual donor mass is less than the tabulated distance from an acceptor or a combined mass is less than the weighted distance from an acceptor.

(c) In determining the distances separating highways, railroads, and inhabited buildings from potential explosions (as prescribed in Table H–21), the sum of all masses which may propagate (i.e., lie at distances less than prescribed in the Table) from *either* individual *or* combined donor masses are included. However, when the ammonium nitrate must be included, only 50 percent of its weight shall be used because of its reduced blast effects. In applying Table H–21 to distances from highways, railroads, and inhabited buildings, distances are measured from the nearest edge of potentially explodable material as prescribed in Table H–21, Note 5.

(d) When all or part of a potential acceptor comprises Explosives Class A as defined in DOT regulations, storage in bullet-resistant magazines is required. Safe distances to stores in bullet-resistant magazines may be obtained from the intermagazine distances prescribed in Table H–21.

(e) Barricades must not have line-of-sight openings between potential donors and acceptors which permit blast or missiles to move directly between masses.

(f) Good housekeeping practices shall be maintained around any bin containing ammonium nitrate or blasting agent. This includes keeping weeds and other combustible materials cleared within 25 feet of such bin. Accumulation of spilled product on the ground shall be prevented.

(ii) Water gels containing no substance in itself classified as an explosive and which are cap-sensitive as defined in paragraph (a) of this section under Blasting Agent shall be classified as an explosive and manufactured, transported, stored and used as specified for "explosives" in this section.

(iii) Water gels containing no substance in itself classified as an explosive and which are not cap-sensitive as defined in paragraph (a) of this section under Blasting Agent shall be classified as blasting agents and manufactured, transported, stored, and used as specified for "blasting agents" in this section.

(iv) When tests on specific formulations of water gels result in Department of Transportation classification as a Class B explosive, bullet-resistant magazines are not required, see paragraph (c)(2)(ii) of this section.

(3) Fixed location mixing.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Buildings used for the mixing of water gels shall conform to the requirements of this subdivision.

(a) Buildings shall be of noncombustible construction or sheet metal on wood studs.

(b) Floors in a mixing plant shall be of concrete or of other nonabsorbent materials.

(c) Where fuel oil is used all fuel oil storage facilities shall be separated from the mixing plant and located in such a manner that in case of tank rupture, the oil will drain away from the mixing plant building.

(d) The building shall be well ventilated.

(e) Heating units that do not depend on combustion processes, when properly designed and located, may be used in the building. All direct sources of heat shall be provided exclusively from units located outside of the mixing building.

(f) All internal-combustion engines used for electric power generation shall be located outside the mixing plant building, or shall be properly ventilated and isolated by a firewall. The exhaust system on all such engines shall be located so any spark emission cannot be a hazard to any materials in or adjacent to the plant.

(iii) Ingredients of water gels shall conform to the requirements of this subdivision.

(a) Ingredients in themselves classified as Class A or Class B explosives shall be stored in conformity with paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) Nitrate-water solutions may be stored in tank cars, tank trucks, or fixed tanks without quantity or distance limitations. Spills or leaks which may contaminate combustible materials shall be cleaned up immediately.

(c) Metal powders such as aluminum shall be kept dry and shall be stored in containers or bins which are moisture-resistant or weathertight. Solid fuels shall be used in such manner as to minimize dust explosion hazards.

(d) Ingredients shall not be stored with imcompatible materials.

(e) Peroxides and chlorates shall not be used.

(iv) Mixing equipment shall comply with the requirements of this subdivision.

(a) The design of the processing equipment, including mixing and conveying equipment, shall be compatible with the relative sensitivity of the materials being handled. Equipment shall be designed to minimize the possibility of frictional heating, compaction, overloading, and confinement.

(b) Both equipment and handling procedures shall be designed to prevent the introduction of foreign objects or materials.

(c) Mixers, pumps, valves, and related equipment shall be designed to permit regular and periodic flushing, cleaning, dismantling, and inspection.

(d) All electrical equipment including wiring, switches, controls, motors, and lights, shall conform to the requirements of Subpart S of this part.

(e) All electric motors and generators shall be provided with suitable overload protection devices. Electrical generators, motors, proportioning devices, and all other electrical enclosures shall be electrically bonded. The grounding conductor to all such electrical equipment shall be effectively bonded to the service-entrance ground connection and to all equipment ground connections in a manner so as to provide a continuous path to ground.

best copy available

(v) Mixing facilities shall comply with the fire prevention requirements of this subdivision.

(a) The mixing, loading, and ingredient transfer areas where residues or spilled materials may accumulate shall be cleaned periodically. A cleaning and collection system for dangerous residues shall be provided.

(b) A daily visual inspection shall be made of mixing, conveying, and electrical equipment to establish that such equipment is in good operating condition. A program of systematic maintenance shall be conducted on regular schedule.

(c) Heaters which are not dependent on the combustion process within the heating unit may be used within the confines of processing buildings, or compartments, if provided with temperature and safety controls and located away from combustible materials and the finished product.

(4) Bulk delivery and mixing vehicles.

(i) The design of vehicles shall comply with the requirements of this subdivision.

(a) Vehicles used over public highways for the bulk transportation of water gels or of ingredients classified as dangerous commodities, shall meet the requirements of the Department of Transportation and shall meet the requirements of paragraphs (d) and (g)(6) of this section.

(b) When electric power is supplied by a self-contained motor generator located on the vehicle the generator shall be at a point separate from where the water gel is discharged.

(c) The design of processing equipment and general requirements shall conform to subparagraphs (3)(iii) and (iv) of this paragraph.

(d) A positive action parking brake which will set the wheel brakes on at least one axle shall be provided on vehicles when equipped with air brakes and shall be used during bulk delivery operations. Wheel chocks shall supplement parking brakes whenever conditions may require.

(ii) Operation of bulk delivery and mixing vehicles shall comply with the requirements of this subdivision.

(a) The placarding requirements contained in DOT regulations apply to vehicles carrying water gel explosives or blasting agents.

(b) The operator shall be trained in the safe operation of the vehicle together with its mixing, conveying, and related equipment. He shall be familiar with the commodities being delivered and the general procedure for handling emergency situations.

(c) The hauling of either blasting caps or other explosives, but not both, shall be permitted on bulk trucks provided that a special wood or nonferrous-lined container is installed for the explosives. Such blasting caps or other explosives shall be in DOT-specified shipping containers; see 49 CFR Chapter I.

(d) No person shall be allowed to smoke, carry matches or any flame-producing device, or carry any firearms while in or about bulk vehicles effecting the mixing, transfer, or down-the-hole loading of water gels at or near the blasting site.

(e) Caution shall be exercised in the movement of the vehicle in the blasting area to avoid driving the vehicle over or dragging hoses over firing lines, cap wires, or explosive materials. The employer shall furnish the driver the assistance of a second person to guide the driver's movements.

(f) No intransit mixing of materials shall be performed.

(g) The location chosen for water gel or ingredient transfer from a support vehicle into the borehole loading vehicle shall be away from the blasthole site when the boreholes are loaded or in the process of being loaded.

(i) Storage of ammonium nitrate.

(1) Scope and definitions.

(i)

(a) Except as provided in subdivision (*d*) of this subdivision this paragraph applies to the storage of ammonium nitrate in the form of crystals, flakes, grains, or prills including fertilizer grade, dynamite grade, nitrous oxide grade, technical grade, and other mixtures containing 60 percent or more ammonium nitrate by weight but does not apply to blasting agents.

(b) This paragraph does not apply to the transportation of ammonium nitrate.

(c) This paragraph does not apply to storage under the jurisdiction of and in compliance with the regulations of the U.S. Coast Guard (see 46 CFR Parts 146–149).

(d) The storage of ammonium nitrate and ammonium nitrate mixtures that are more sensitive than allowed by the "Definition of Test Procedures for Ammonium Nitrate Fertilizer" is prohibited.

(e) Nothing in this paragraph shall apply to the production of ammonium nitrate or to the storage of ammonium nitrate on the premises of the producing plant.

(ii)

(a) Revoked

(b) The standards for ammonium nitrate (nitrous oxide grade) are those found in the "Specifications, Properties, and Recommendations for Packaging, Transportation, Storage, and Use of Ammonium Nitrate," available from the Compressed Gas Association, Inc., 500 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10036.

(2) General provisions.

(i) This paragraph applies to all persons storing, having, or keeping ammonium nitrate, and to the owner or lessee of any building, premises, or structure in which ammonium nitrate is stored in quantities of 1,000 pounds or more.

(ii) Approval of large quantity storage shall be subject to due consideration of the fire and explosion hazards, including exposure to toxic vapors from burning or decomposing ammonium nitrate.

(iii)

(a) Storage buildings shall not have basements unless the basements are open on at least one side. Storage buildings shall not be over one story in height.

(b) Storage buildings shall have adequate ventilation or be of a construction that will be self-ventilating in the event of fire.

(c) The wall on the exposed side of a storage building within 50 feet of a combustible building, forest, piles of combustible materials and similar exposure hazards shall be of fire-resistive construction. In lieu of the fire-resistive wall, other suitable means of exposure protection such as a free standing wall may be used. The roof coverings shall be Class C or better, as defined in the

Manual on Roof Coverings, NFPA 203M-1970.

(d) All flooring in storage and handling areas, shall be of noncombustible material or protected against impregnation by ammonium nitrate and shall be without open drains, traps, tunnels, pits, or pockets into which any molten ammonium nitrate could flow and be confined in the event of fire.

(e) The continued use of an existing storage building or structure not in strict conformity with this paragraph may be approved in cases where such continued use will not constitute a hazard to life

(f) Buildings and structures shall be dry and free from water seepage through the roof, walls, and floors.

(3) Storage of ammonium nitrate in bags, drums, or other containers.

(i)

(a) Bags and containers used for ammonium nitrate must comply with specifications and standards required for use in interstate commerce (see 49 CFR Chapter I).

(b) Containers used on the premises in the actual manufacturing or processing need not comply with provisions of subdivison (*a*) of this subdivision.

(ii)

(a) Containers of ammonium nitrate shall not be accepted for storage when the temperature of the ammonium nitrate exceeds 130° F.

(b) Bags of ammonium nitrate shall not be stored within 30 inches of the storage building walls and partitions.

(c) The height of piles shall not exceed 20 feet. The width of piles shall not exceed 20 feet and the length 50 feet except that where the building is of noncombustible construction or is protected by automatic sprinklers the length of piles shall not be limited. In no case shall the ammonium nitrate be stacked closer than 36 inches below the roof or supporting and spreader beams overhead.

(d) Aisles shall be provided to separate piles by a clear space of not less than 3 feet in width. At least one service or main aisle in the storage area shall be not less than 4 feet in width.

(4) Storage of bulk ammonium nitrate.

(i)

(a) Warehouses shall have adequate ventilation or be capable of adequate ventilation in case of fire.

(b) Unless constructed of noncombustible material or unless adequate facilities for fighting a roof fire are available, bulk storage structures shall not exceed a height of 40 feet.

(ii)

(a) Bins shall be clean and free of materials which may contaminate ammonium nitrate.

(b) Due to the corrosive and reactive properties of ammonium nitrate, and to avoid contamination, galvanized iron, copper, lead, and zinc shall not be used in a bin construction unless suitably protected. Aluminum bins and wooden bins protected against impregnation by ammonium nitrate are permissible. The partitions dividing the ammonium nitrate storage from other products which would contaminate the ammonium nitrate shall be of tight construction.

(c) The ammonium nitrate storage bins or piles shall be clearly identified by signs reading "Ammonium Nitrate" with letters at least 2 inches high.

(iii)

(a) Piles or bins shall be so sized and arranged that all material in the pile is moved out periodically in order to minimize possible caking of the stored ammonium nitrate.

(b) Height or depth of piles shall be limited by the pressure-setting tendency of the product. However, in no case shall the ammonium nitrate be piled higher at any point than 36 inches below the roof or supporting and spreader beams overhead.

(c) Ammonium nitrate shall not be accepted for storage when the temperature of the product exceeds 130° F.

(d) Dynamite, other explosives, and blasting agents shall not be used to break up or loosen caked ammonium nitrate.

(5) Contaminants.

(i)

(a) Ammonium nitrate shall be in a separate building or shall be separated by approved type firewalls of not less than 1 hour fire-resistance rating from storage of organic chemicals, acids, or other corrosive materials, materials that may require blasting during processing or handling, compressed flammable gases, flammable and combustible materials or other contaminating substances, including but not limited to animal fats, baled cotton, baled rags, baled scrap paper, bleaching powder, burlap or cotton bags, caustic soda, coal, coke, charcoal, cork, camphor, excelsior, fibers of any kind, fish oils, fish meal, foam rubber, hay, lubricating oil, linseed oil, or other oxidizable or drying oils, naphthalene, oakum, oiled clothing, oiled paper, oiled textiles, paint, straw, sawdust, wood shavings, or vegetable oils. Walls referred to in this subdivision need extend only to the underside of the roof.

(b) In lieu of separation walls, ammonium nitrate may be separated from the materials referred to in subdivision (*a*) of this subdivision by a space of at least 30 feet.

(c) Flammable liquids such as gasoline, kerosene, solvents, and light fuel oils shall not be stored on the premises except when such storage conforms to § 1910.106, and when walls and sills or curbs are provided in accordance with subdivisions (*a*) or (*b*) of this subdivision.

(d) LP-Gas shall not be stored on the premises except when such storage conforms to § 1910.110.

(ii)

(a) Sulfur and finely divided metals shall not be stored in the same building with ammonium nitrate except when such storage conforms to paragraphs (a) through (h) of this section.

(b) Explosives and blasting agents shall not be stored in the same building with ammonium nitrate except on the premises of makers, distributors, and user-compounders of explosives or blasting agents.

(c) Where explosives or blasting agents are stored in separate buildings, other than on the premises of makers, distributors, and user-compounders of explosives or blasting agents, they shall be separated from the ammonium nitrate by the distances and/or barricades specified in Table H–22 of this subpart, but by not less than 50 feet.

(d) Storage and/or operations on the premises of makers, distributors, and user-compounders of explosives or blasting agents shall be in conformity with paragraphs (a) through (h) of this section.

(6) General precautions.

(i) Electrical installations shall conform to the requirements of subpart S of this part, for ordinary locations. They shall be designed to minimize damage from corrosion.

(ii) In areas where lightning storms are prevalent, lightning protection shall be provided. (See the Lightning Protection Code, NFPA 78–1968.)

(iii) Provisions shall be made to prevent unauthorized personnel from entering the ammonium nitrate storage area.

(7) Fire protection.

(i) Not more than 2,500 tons (2270 tonnes) of bagged ammonium nitrate shall be stored in a building or structure not equipped with an automatic sprinkler system. Sprinkler systems shall be of the approved type and installed in accordance with § 1910.159.

(ii)

(a) Suitable fire control devices such as small hose or portable fire extinguishers shall be provided throughout the warehouse and in the loading and unloading areas. Suitable fire control devices shall comply with the requirements of § § 1910.157 and 1910.158.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

(b) Water supplies and fire hydrants shall be available in accordance with recognized good practices.

j) Small arms ammunition, small arms rimers, and small arms propellants.

(1) Scope. This paragraph does not apply to in-process storage and intraplant transportation during manufacture of small arms ammunition, small arms primers, and smokeless propellants.

(2) Small arms ammunition.

(i) No quantity limitations are imposed on the storage of small arms ammunition in warehouses, retail stores, and other general occupancy facilities, except those imposed by limitations of storage facilities.

(ii) Small arms ammunition shall be separated from flammable liquids, flammable solids as classified in 49 CFR Part 172, and from oxidizing materials, by a fire-resistive wall of 1-hour rating or by a distance of 25 feet.

(iii) Small arms ammunition shall not be stored together with Class A or Class B explosives unless the storage facility is adequate for this latter storage.

(3) Smokeless propellants.

(i) All smokeless propellants shall be stored in shipping containers specified in 49 CFR 173.93 for smokeless propellants.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Commercial stocks of smokeless propellants over 20 pounds and not more than 100 pounds shall be stored in portable wooden boxes having walls of at least 1 inch nominal thickness.

(iv) Commercial stocks in quantities not to exceed 750 pounds shall be stored in nonportable storage cabinets having wooden walls of at least 1 inch nominal thickness. Not more than 400 pounds shall be permitted in any one cabinet.

(v) Quantities in excess of 750 pounds shall be stored in magazines in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(4) Small arms ammunition primers.

(i) Small arms ammunition primers shall not be stored except in the original shipping container in accordance with the requirements of 49 CFR 173.107 for small arms ammunition primers.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Small arms ammunition primers shall be separated from flammable liquids, flammable solids as classified in 49 CFR

Part 172, and oxidizing materials by a fire-resistive wall of 1-hour rating or by a distance of 25 feet.

(iv) Not more than 750,000 small arms ammunition primers shall be stored in any one building, except as provided in subdivision (v) of this subparagraph. Not more than 100,000 shall be stored in any one pile. Piles shall be at least 15 feet apart.

(v) Quantities of small arms ammunition primers in excess of 750,000 shall be stored in magazines in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(k) Scope.

This section applies to the manufacture, keeping, having, storage, sale, transportation, and use of explosives, blasting agents, and pyrotechnics. This section does not apply to the sale and use (public display) of pyrotechnics, commonly known as fireworks, nor to the use of explosives in the form prescribed by the official U.S. Pharmacopeia.

1910.110—STORAGE AND HANDLING OF LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GASES

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

As used in this section:

(1) API-ASME container—A container constructed in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (b)(3)(iii) of this section.

(2) ASME container—A container constructed in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this section.

(3) Container assembly—An assembly consisting essentially of the container and fittings for all container openings, including shutoff valves, excess flow valves, liquid-level gaging devices, safety relief devices, and protective housing.

(4) Containers—All vessels, such as tanks, cylinders, or drums, used for transportation or storing liquefied petroleum gases.

(5) DOT—Department of Transportation.

(6) DOT container—A container constructed in accordance with the applicable requirements of 49 CFR Chapter I.

(7) "Liquefied petroleum gases"—"LPG" and "LP-Gas"—Any material which is composed predominantly of any of the following hydrocarbons, or mixtures of them: propane, propylene, butanes (normal butane or iso-butane), and butylenes.

(8) Movable fuel storage tenders or farm carts—Containers not in excess of 1,200 gallons water capacity, equipped with wheels to be towed from one location of usage to another. They are basically nonhighway vehicles, but may occasionally be moved over public roads or highways. They are used as a fuel supply for farm tractors, construction machinery and similar equipment.

(9) P.S.I.G.—pounds per square inch gauge.

(10) P.S.I.A.—pounds per square inch absolute.

(11) Systems—an assembly of equipment consisting essentially of the container or containers, major devices such as vaporizers, safety relief valves, excess flow valves, regulators, and piping connecting

(12) Vaporizer-burner—an integral vaporizer-burner unit, dependent upon the heat generated by the burner as the source of heat to vaporize the liquid used for dehydrators or dryers.

(13) Ventilation, adequate—when specified for the prevention of fire during normal operation, ventilation shall be considered adequate when the concentration of the gas in a gas-air mixture does not exceed 25 percent of the lower flammable limit.

(14) Approved—unless otherwise indicated, listing or approval by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(15) Listed—see "approved" in § 1910.110(14).

(16) DOT Specifications—regulations of the Department of Transportation published in 49 CFR Chapter I.

(17) Revoked

(18) Revoked

(19) DOT cylinders—cylinders meeting the requirements of 49 CFR Chapter I.

(b) Basic rules.

(1) Odorizing gases.

(i) All liquefied petroleum gases shall be effectively odorized by an approved agent of such character as to indicate positively, by distinct odor, the presence of gas down to concentration in air of not over one-fifth the lower limit of flammability. Odorization, however, is not required if harmful in the use of further processing of the liquefied petroleum gas, or if odorization will serve no useful purpose as a warning agent in such use or further processing.

(ii) The odorization requirement of subdivision (i) of this subparagraph shall be considered to be met by the use of 1.0 pounds of ethyl mercaptan, 1.0 pounds of thiophane or 1.4 pounds of amyl mercaptan per 10,000 gallons of LP-Gas. However, this listing of odorants and quantities shall not exclude the use of other odorants that meet the odorization requirements of subdivision (i) of this subparagraph.

(2) Approval of equipment and systems.

(i) Each system utilizing DOT containers in accordance with 49 CFR Part 178 shall have its container valves, connectors, manifold valve assemblies, and regulators approved.

(ii) Each system for domestic or commercial use utilizing containers of 2,000 gallons or less water capacity, other than those constructed in accordance with 49 CFR Part 178, shall consist of a container assembly and one or more regulators, and may include other parts. The system as a unit or the container assembly as a unit, and the regulator or regulators, shall be individually listed.

(iii) In systems utilizing containers of over 2,000 gallons water capacity, each regulator, container valve, excess flow valve, gaging device, and relief valve installed on or at the container, shall have its correctness as to design, construction, and performance determined by listing by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(3) Requirements for construction and original test of containers.

(i) Containers used with systems embodied in paragraphs (d), (e), (g), and (h) of this section, except as provided in paragraphs (e)(3)(iii) and (g)(2)(i) of this section, shall be designed, constructed, and tested in accordance with the Rules for Construction of Unfired Pressure Vessels, section VIII, Division 1, American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, 1968 edition.

(ii) Containers constructed according to the 1949 and earlier editions of the ASME

Code do not have to comply with paragraphs U-2 through U-10 and U-19 thereof. Containers constructed according to paragraph U-70 in the 1949 and earlier editions are not authorized.

(iii) Containers designed, constructed, and tested prior to July 1, 1961, according to the Code for Unfired Pressure Vessels for Petroleum Liquids and Gases, 1951 edition with 1954 Addenda, of the American Petroleum Institute and the American Society of Mechanical Engineers shall be considered in conformance. Containers constructed according to API-ASME Code do not have to comply with section I or with appendix to section I. Paragraphs W-601 to W-606 inclusive in the 1943 and earlier editions do not apply.

(iv) The provisions of subdivision (i) of this subparagraph shall not be construed as prohibiting the continued use or reinstallation of containers constructed and maintained in accordance with the standard for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases NFPA No. 58 in effect at the time of fabrication.

(v) Containers used with systems embodied in paragraph (b), (d)(3)(iii), and (f) of this section, shall be constructed, tested, and stamped in accordance with DOT specifications effective at the date of their manufacture.

(4) Welding of containers.

(i) Welding to the shell, head, or any other part of the container subject to internal pressure, shall be done in compliance with the code under which the tank was fabricated. Other welding is permitted only on saddle plates, lugs, or brackets attached to the container by the tank manufacturer.

(ii) Where repair or modification involving welding of DOT containers is required, the container shall be returned to a qualified manufacturer making containers of the same type, and the repair or modification made in compliance with DOT regulations.

(5) Markings on containers.

(i) Each container covered in subparagraph (3)(i) of this paragraph, except as provided in subparagraph (3)(iv) of this paragraph shall be marked as specified in the following:

(a) With a marking identifying compliance with, and other markings required by, the rules of the reference under which the container is constructed: or with the stamp and other markings required by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors.

(b) With notation as to whether the container is designed for underground or aboveground installation or both. If intended for both and different style hoods are provided, the marking shall indicate the proper hood for each type of installation.

(c) With the name and address of the supplier of the container, or with the trade name of the container.

(d) With the water capacity of the container in pounds or gallons, U.S. Standard.

(e) With the pressure in p.s.i.g., for which the container is designed.

(f) With the wording "This container shall not contain a product having a vapor pressure in excess of—p.s.i.g. at 100° F.," see subparagraph (14)(viii) of this paragraph.

(g) With the tare weight in pounds or other identified unit of weight for containers with a water capacity of 300 pounds or less.

(h) With marking indicating the maximum level to which the container may be filled with liquid at temperatures between 20° F. and 130° F., except on containers provided with fixed maximum level indicators or which are filled by weighing. Markings shall be increments of not more than 20° F. This marking may be located on the liquid level gaging device.

(i) With the outside surface area in square feet.

(ii) Markings specified shall be on a metal nameplate attached to the container and located in such a manner as to remain visible after the container is installed.

(iii) When LP-Gas and one or more other gases are stored or used in the same area, the containers shall be marked to identify their content. Marking shall be in compliance with American National Standard Z48.1-1954, "Method of Marking Portable Compressed Gas Containers To Identify the Material Contained."

(6) Location of containers and regulating equipment.

(i) Containers, and first stage regulating equipment if used, shall be located outside of buildings, except under one or more of the following:

(a) In buildings used exclusively for container charging, vaporization pressure reduction, gas mixing, gas manufacturing, or distribution.

(b) When portable use is necessary and in accordance with paragraph (c)(5) of this section.

(c) LP-Gas fueled stationary or portable engines in accordance with paragraph (e)(11) or (12) of this section.

(d) LP-Gas fueled industrial trucks used in accordance with paragraph (e)(13) of this section.

(e) LP-Gas fueled vehicles garaged in accordance with paragraph (e)(14) of this section.

(f) Containers awaiting use or resale when stored in accordance with paragraph (f) of this section.

(ii) Each individual container shall be located with respect to the nearest important building or group of buildings in accordance with Table H-23.

TABLE H-23

Water capacity per container	Minimum distances		
	Containers		Between above-ground containers
	Under-ground	Above-ground	
Less than 125 gals [1]	10 feet	None	None.
125 to 250 gallons	10 feet	10 feet	None.
251 to 500 gallons	10 feet	10 feet	3 feet.
501 to 2,000 gallons	25 feet [2]	25 feet [2]	3 feet.
2,001 to 30,000 gallons	50 feet	50 feet	5 feet.
30,001 to 70,000 gallons	50 feet	75 feet	¼ of sum of diameters of adjacent containers.
70,001 to 90,000 gallons	50 feet	100 feet	

[1] If the aggregate water capacity of a multi-container installation at a consumer site is 501 gallons or greater, the minimum distance shall comply with the appropriate portion of this table, applying the aggregate capacity rather than the capacity per container. If more than one installation is made, each installation shall be separated from another installation by at least 25 feet. Do not apply the MINIMUM DISTANCES BETWEEN ABOVE-GROUND CONTAINERS to such installations.

[2] NOTE: The above distance requirements may be reduced to not less than 10 feet for a single container of 1,200 gallons water capacity or less, providing such a container is at least 25 feet from any other LP-Gas container of more than 125 gallons water capacity.

(iii) Containers installed for use shall not be stacked one above the other.

(iv) Revoked

(v) In the case of buildings devoted exclusively to gas manufacturing and distributing operations, the distances required by Table H-23 may be reduced provided that in no case shall containers of water capacity exceeding 500 gallons be located closer than 10 feet to such gas manufacturing and distributing buildings.

(vi) Readily ignitible material such as weeds and long dry grass shall be removed within 10 feet of any container.

(vii) The minimum separation between liquefied petroleum gas containers and flammable liquid tanks shall be 20 feet, and the minimum separation between a container and the centerline of the dike shall be 10 feet. The foregoing provision shall not apply when LP-Gas containers of 125 gallons or less capacity are installed adjacent to Class III flammable liquid tanks of 275 gallons or less capacity.

(viii) Suitable means shall be taken to prevent the accumulation of flammable liquids under adjacent liquefied petroleum gas containers, such as by diking, diversion curbs, or grading.

(ix) When dikes are used with flammable liquid tanks, no liquefied petroleum gas containers shall be located within the diked area.

(7) Container valves and container accessories.

(i) Valves, fittings, and accessories connected directly to the container including primary shutoff valves, shall have a rated working pressure of at least 250 p.s.i.g. and shall be of material and design suitable for LP-Gas service. Cast iron shall not be used for container valves, fittings, and accessories. This does not prohibit the use of container valves made of malleable or nodular iron.

(ii) Connections to containers, except safety relief connections, liquid level gaging devices, and plugged openings, shall have shutoff valves located as close to the container as practicable.

(iii) Excess flow valves, where required shall close automatically at the rated flows of vapor or liquid as specified by the manufacturer. The connections or line including valves, fittings, etc., being protected by an excess flow valve shall have a greater capacity than the rated flow of the excess flow valve.

(iv) Liquid level gaging devices which are so constructed that outward flow of container contents shall not exceed that passed by a No. 54 drill size opening, need not be equipped with excess flow valves.

(v) Openings from container or through fittings attached directly on container to which pressure gage connection is made, need not be equipped with shutoff or excess flow valves if such openings are restricted to not larger than No. 54 drill size opening.

(vi) Except as provided in paragraph (c)(5)(i)(*b*) of this section, excess flow and back pressure check valves where required by this section shall be located inside of the container or at a point outside where the line enters the container; in the latter case, installation shall be made in such manner that any undue strain beyond the excess flow or back pressure check valve will not cause breakage between the container and such valve.

(vii) Excess flow valves shall be designed with a bypass, not to exceed a No. 60 drill size opening to allow equalization of pressures.

(viii) Containers of mo[illegible]n 30 gallons water capacity and le[illegible]000 gallons water capacity, fille[illegible]olumetric basis, and manufactu[illegible]er December 1, 1963, shall be equipped for filling into the vapor space.

(8) Piping—including pipe, tubing, and fitting.

(i) Pipe, except as provided in paragraphs (e)(6)(i) and (g)(10)(iii), of this section shall be wrought iron or steel (black or galvanized), brass, copper, or aluminum alloy. Aluminum alloy pipe shall be at least Schedule 40 in accordance with the specifications for Aluminum Alloy Pipe, American National Standards Institute (ANSI) H38.-7-1969 (ASTM, B241-69), except that the use of alloy 5456 is prohibited and shall be suitably marked at each end of each length indicating compliance with American National Standards Institute Specifications. Aluminum Alloy pipe shall be protected against external corrosion when it is in contact with dissimilar metals other than galvanized steel, or its location is subject to repeated wetting by such liquids as water (except rain water), detergents, sewage, or leaking from other piping, or it passes through flooring, plaster, masonry, or insulation. Galvanized sheet steel or pipe, galvanized inside and out, may be considered suitable protection. The maximum nominal pipe size for aluminum pipe shall be three-fourths inch and shall not be used for pressures exceeding 20 p.s.i.g. Aluminum alloy pipe shall not be installed within 6 inches of the ground.

(a) Vapor piping with operating pressures not exceeding 125 p.s.i.g. shall be suitable for a working pressure of at least 125 p.s.i.g. Pipe shall be at least Schedule 40 (ASTM A-53-69, Grade B Electric Resistance Welded and Electric Flash Welded Pipe or equal).

(b) Vapor piping with operating pressures over 125 p.s.i.g. and all liquid piping shall be suitable for a working pressure of at least 250 p.s.i.g. Pipe shall be at least Schedule 80 if joints are threaded or threaded and back welded. At least Schedule 40 (ASTM A-53-69 Grade B Electric Resistance Welded and Electric Flash Welded Pipe or equal) shall be used if joints are welded, or welded and flanged.

(ii) Tubing shall be seamless and of copper, brass, steel, or aluminum alloy. Copper tubing shall be of type K or L or equivalent as covered in the Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube, ANSI H23.1-1970 (ASTM B88-69). Aluminum alloy tubing shall be of Type A or B or equivalent as covered in Specification ASTM B210-68 and shall be suitably marked every 18 inches indicating compliance with ASTM Specifications. The minimum nominal wall thickness of copper tubing and aluminum alloy tubing shall be as specified in Table H-24 and Table H-25.

TABLE H-24—WALL THICKNESS OF COPPER TUBING [1]

NOTE: The standard size by which tube is designated is 1/8-inch smaller than its nominal outside diameter.

Standard size (inches)	Nominal O.D. (inches)	Nominal wall thickness (inches)	
		Type K	Type L
1/4	0.375	0.035	0.030
3/8	0.500	0.049	0.035
1/2	0.625	0.049	0.040
5/8	0.750	0.049	0.042
3/4	0.875	0.065	0.045
1	1.125	0.065	0.050
1 1/4	1.375	0.065	0.055
1 1/2	1.625	0.072	0.060
2	2.125	0.083	0.070

[1] Based on data in Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube, ANSI H23.1-1970 (ASTM B-88-69).

TABLE H-25—WALL THICKNESS OF ALUMINUM ALLOY TUBING [1]

Outside diameter (inches)	Nominal wall thickness (inches)	
	Type A	Type B
3/8	0.035	0.049
1/2	0.035	0.049
5/8	0.042	0.049
3/4	0.049	0.058

[1] Based on data in Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Coiled Tubes for Special Purpose Applications, ASTM B210-68.

Aluminum alloy tubing shall be protected against external corrosion when it is in contact with dissimilar metals other than galvanized steel, or its location is subject to repeated wetting by liquids such as water (except rainwater), detergents, sewage, or leakage from other piping, or it passes through flooring, plaster, masonry, or insulation. Galvanized sheet steel or pipe, galvanized inside and out, may be considered suitable protection. The maximum outside diameter for aluminum alloy tubing shall be three-fourths inch and shall not be used for pressures exceeding 20 p.s.i.g. Aluminum alloy tubing shall not be installed within 6 inches of the ground.

(iii) In systems where the gas in liquid form without pressure reduction enters the building, only heavy walled seamless brass or copper tubing with an internal diameter not greater than three thirty-seconds inch, and a wall thickness of not less than three sixty-fourths inch shall be used. This requirement shall not apply to research and experimental laboratories, buildings, or separate fire divisions of buildings used exclusively for housing internal combustion engines, and to commercial gas plants or bulk stations where containers are charged, nor to industrial vaporizer buildings, nor to buildings, structures, or equipment under construction or undergoing major renovation.

(iv) Pipe joints may be screwed, flanged, welded, soldered, or brazed with a material having a melting point exceeding 1,000° F. Joints on seamless copper, brass, steel, or aluminum alloy gas tubing shall be made by means of approved gas tubing fittings, or soldered or brazed with a material having a melting point exceeding 1,000° F.

(v) For operating pressures of 125 p.s.i.g. or less, fittings shall be designed for a pressure of at least 125 p.s.i.g. For operating pressures above 125 p.s.i.g., fittings shall be designed for a minimum of 250 p.s.i.g.

(vi) The use of threaded cast iron pipe fittings such as ells, tees, crosses, couplings, and unions is prohibited. Aluminum alloy fittings shall be used with aluminum alloy pipe and tubing. Insulated fittings shall be used where aluminum alloy pipe or tubing connects with a dissimilar metal.

(vii) Strainers, regulators, meters, compressors, pumps, etc., are not to be considered as pipe fittings. This does not prohibit the use of malleable, nodular, or higher strength gray iron for such equipment.

(viii) All materials such as valve seats, packing, gaskets, diaphragms, etc., shall be of such quality as to be resistant to the action of liquefied petroleum gas under the service conditions to which they are subjected.

(ix) All piping, tubing, or hose shall be tested after assembly and proved free from leaks at not less than normal operating pressures. After installation, piping and tubing of all domestic and commercial systems shall be tested and proved free of leaks using a manometer or equivalent device that will indicate a drop in pressure. Test shall not be made with a flame.

(x) Provision shall be made to compensate for expansion, contraction, jarring, and vibration, and for settling. This may be accomplished by flexible connections.

(xi) Piping outside buildings may be buried, above ground, or both, but shall be well supported and protected against physical damage. Where soil conditions warrant, all piping shall be protected against corrosion. Where condensation may occur, the piping shall be pitched back to the container, or suitable means shall be provided for revaporization of the condensate.

(9) Hose specifications.

(i) Hose shall be fabricated of materials that are resistant to the action of LP-Gas in the liquid and vapor phases. If wire braid is used for reinforcing the hose, it shall be of corrosion-resistant material such as stainless steel.

(ii) Hose subject to container pressure shall be marked "LP-Gas" or "LPG" at not greater than 10-foot intervals.

(iii) Hose subject to container pressure shall be designed for a bursting pressure of not less than 1,250 p.s.i.g.

(iv) Hose subject to container pressure shall have its correctness as to design construction and performance determined by being listed (see § 1910.110(a)(15)).

(v) Hose connections subject to container pressure shall be capable of withstanding, without leakage, a test pressure of not less than 500 p.s.i.g.

(vi) Hose and hose connections on the low-pressure side of the regulator or reducing valve shall be designed for a bursting pressure of not less than 125 p.s.i.g. or five times the set pressure of the relief devices protecting that portion of the system, whichever is higher.

(vii) Hose may be used on the low-pressure side of regulators to connect to other than domestic and commercial gas appliances under the following conditions:

(a) The appliances connected with hose shall be portable and need a flexible connection.

(b) For use inside buildings the hose shall be of minimum practical length, but shall not exceed 6 feet except as provided in paragraph (c)(5)(i)(*g*) of this section and shall not extend from one room to another, nor pass through any walls, partitions, ceilings, or floors. Such hose shall not be concealed from view or used in a concealed location. For use outside of buildings, the hose may exceed this length but shall be kept as short as practical.

(c) The hose shall be approved and shall not be used where it is likely to be subjected to temperatures above 125° F. The hose shall be securely connected to the appliance and the use of rubber slip ends shall not be permitted.

(d) The shutoff valve for an appliance connected by hose shall be in the metal pipe or tubing and not at the appliance end of the hose. When shutoff valves are installed close to each other, precautions shall be taken to prevent operation of the wrong valve.

(e) Hose used for connecting to wall outlets shall be protected from physical damage.

(10) Safety devices.

(i) Every container except those constructed in accordance with DOT specifications and every vaporizer (except motor fuel vaporizers and except vaporizers described in subparagraph (11)(ii)(*c*) of this paragraph and paragraph (d)(4)(v)(*a*) of this section) whether heated by artificial means or not, shall be provided with one or more safety relief valves of spring-loaded or equivalent type. These valves shall be arranged to afford free vent to the outer air with discharge not less than 5 feet horizontally away from any opening into the building which is below such discharge. The rate of discharge shall be in accordance with the requirements of subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph or subdivision (iii) of this subparagraph in the case of vaporizers.

(ii) Minimum required rate of discharge in cubic feet per minute of air at 120 percent of the maximum permitted start to discharge pressure for safety relief valves to be used on containers other than those constructed in accordance with DOT Specification shall be as follows:

Surface area (sq. ft.)	*Flow rate CFM air*
20 or less	626
25	751
30	872
35	990
40	1,100
45	1,220
50	1,330
55	1,430
60	1,540
65	1,640
70	1,750
75	1,850
80	1,950
85	2,050
90	2,150
95	2,240
100	2,340
105	2,440
110	2,530
115	2,630
120	2,720
125	2,810
130	2,900

Surface area (sq. ft.)	*Flow rate CFM air*
135	2,990
140	3,080
145	3,170
150	3,260
155	3,350
160	3,440
165	3,530
170	3,620
175	3,700
180	3,790
185	3,880
190	3,960
195	4,050
200	4,130
210	4,300
220	4,470
230	4,630
240	4,800
250	4,960
260	5,130
270	5,290
280	5,450
290	5,610
300	5,760
310	5,920
320	6,080
330	6,230
340	6,390
350	6,540
360	6,690
370	6,840
380	7,000
390	7,150
400	7,300
450	8,040
500	8,760
550	9,470
600	10,170
650	10,860
700	11,550
750	12,220
800	12,880
850	13,540
900	14,190
950	14,830
1,000	15,470
1,050	16,100
1,100	16,720
1,150	17,350
1,200	17,960
1,250	18,570
1,300	19,180
1,350	19,780
1,400	20,380
1,450	20,980
1,500	21,570
1,550	22,160
1,600	22,740
1,650	23,320
1,700	23,900
1,750	24,470
1,800	25,050
1,850	25,620
1,900	26,180
1,950	26,750
2,000	27,310

Surface area = total outside surface area of container in square feet.

When the surface area is not stamped on the name-plate or when the marking is not legible, the area can be calculated by using one of the following formulas:

(1) Cylindrical container with hemispherical heads: Area = Overall length × outside diameter × 3.1416.

(2) Cylindrical container with other than hemispherical heads:

Area = (Overall length + 0.3 outside diameter) × outside diameter × 3.1416.

NOTE: This formula is not exact, but will give results within the limits of practical accuracy for the sole purpose of sizing relief valves.

(3) Spherical container:

Area = Outside diameter squared × 3.1416.

Flow Rate-CFM Air = Required flow capacity in cubic feet per minute of air at standard conditions, 60 F. and atmospheric pressure (14.7 p.s.i.a.).

The rate of discharge may be interpolated for intermediate values of surface area. For containers with total outside surface area greater than 2,000 square feet, the required flow rate can be calculated using the formula, Flow Rate-CFM Air = 53.632 $A^{0.82}$.

A = total outside surface area of the container in square feet.

Valves not marked "Air" have flow rate marking in cubic feet per minute of liquefied petroleum gas. These can be converted to ratings in cubic feet per minute of air by multiplying the liquefied petroleum gas ratings by factors listed below. Air flow ratings can be converted to ratings in cubic feet per minute of liquefied petroleum gas by dividing the air ratings by the factors listed below.

AIR CONVERSION FACTORS

Container type	100	125	150	175	200
Air conversion factor	1.162	1.142	1.113	1.078	1.010

(iii) Minimum Required Rate of Discharge for Safety Relief Valves for Liquefied Petroleum Gas Vaporizers (Steam Heated, Water Heated, and Direct Fired).

The minimum required rate of discharge for safety relief valves shall be determined as follows:

(a) Obtain the total surface area by adding the surface area of vaporizer shell in square feet directly in contact with LP-Gas and the heat exchanged surface area in square feet directly in contact with LP-Gas.

(b) Obtain the minimum required rate of discharge in cubic feet of air per minute, at 60° F. and 14.7 p.s.i.a. from subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph, for this total surface area.

(iv) Container and vaporizer safety relief valves shall be set to start-to-discharge, with relation to the design pressure of the container, in accordance with Table H-26.

TABLE H-26

Containers	Minimum (percent)	Maximum (percent)
ASME Code; Par. U-68, U-69—1949 and earlier editions	110	[1] 125
ASME Code; Par. U-200, U-201—1949 edition	88	[1] 100
ASME Code—1950, 1952, 1956, 1959, 1962, 1965 and 1968 (Division I) editions	88	[1] 100
API—ASME Code—all editions	88	[1] 100
DOT—As prescribed in 49 CFR Chapter I		

[1] Manufacturers of safety relief valves are allowed a plus tolerance not exceeding 10 percent of the set pressure marked on the valve.

(v) Safety relief devices used with systems employing containers other than those constructed according to DOT specifications shall be so constructed as to discharge at not less than the rates shown in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph, before the pressure is in excess of 120 percent of the maximum (not including the 10 percent referred to in subdivision (iv) of this subparagraph) permitted start to discharge pressure setting of the device.

(vi) In certain locations sufficiently sustained high temperatures prevail which require the use of a lower vapor pressure product to be stored or the use of a higher designed pressure vessel in order to prevent the safety valves opening as the result of these temperatures. As an alternative the tanks may be protected by cooling devices such as by spraying, by shading, or other effective means.

(vii) Safety relief valves shall be arranged so that the possibility of tampering will be minimized. If pressure setting or adjustment is external, the relief valves shall be provided with approved means for sealing adjustment.

(viii) Shutoff valves shall not be installed between the safety relief devices and the container, or the equipment or piping to which the safety relief device is connected except that a shutoff valve may be used where the arrangement of this valve is such that full required capacity flow through the safety relief device is always afforded.

(ix) Safety relief valves shall have direct communication with the vapor space of the container at all times.

(x) Each container safety relief valve used with systems covered by paragraphs (d), (e), (g), and (h) of this section, except as provided in paragraph (e)(3)(iii) of this section shall be plainly and permanently marked with the following: "Container Type" of the pressure vessel on which the valve is designed to be installed; the pressure in p.s.i.g. at which the valve is set to discharge; the actual rate of discharge of the valve in cubic feet per minute of air at 60° F. and 14.7 p.s.i.a.; and the manufacturer's name and catalog number, for example: T200-250-4050 AIR—indicating that the valve is suitable for use on a Type 200 container, that it is set to start to discharge at 250 p.s.i.g.; and that its rate of discharge is 4,050 cubic feet per minute of air as determined in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph.

(xi) Safety relief valve assemblies, including their connections, shall be of sufficient size so as to provide the rate of flow required for the container on which they are installed.

(xii) A hydrostatic relief valve shall be installed between each pair of shut-off valves on liquefied petroleum gas liquid piping so as to relieve into a safe atmosphere. The start-to-discharge pressure setting of such relief valves shall not be in excess of 500 p.s.i.g. The minimum setting on relief valves installed in piping connected to other than DOT containers shall not be lower than 140 percent of the container relief valve setting and in piping **connected to DOT containers not lower than 400 p.s.i.g. The start-to-discharge pressure setting of such a relief valve, if installed on the discharge side of a pump, shall be greater than the maximum pressure permitted by the recirculation device in the system.**

(xiii) The discharge from any safety relief device shall not terminate in or beneath any building, except relief devices covered by subparagraphs (6)(i)(*a*)-(*e*) of this paragraph, or paragraphs, (c)(4)(i) or (5) of this section.

(xiv) Container safety relief devices and regulator relief vents shall be located not less than five (5) feet in any direction from air openings into sealed combustion system appliances or mechanical ventilation air intakes.

(11) Vaporizer and housing.

(i) Indirect fired vaporizers utilizing steam, water, or other heating medium shall be constructed and installed as follows:

(a) Vaporizers shall be constructed in accordance with the requirements of subparagraph (3)(i)-(iii) of this paragraph and shall be permanently marked as follows:

(1) With the code marking signifying the specifications to which the vaporizer is constructed.

(2) With the allowable working pressure and temperature for which the vaporizer is designed.

(3) With the sum of the outside surface area and the inside heat exchange surface area expressed in square feet.

(4) With the name or symbol of the manufacturer.

(b) Vaporizers having an inside diameter of 6 inches or less exempted by the ASME Unfired Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code—1968 shall have a design pressure not less than 250 p.s.i.g. and need not be permanently marked.

(c) Heating or cooling coils shall not be installed inside a storage container.

(d) Vaporizers may be installed in buildings, rooms, sheds, or lean-tos used exclusively for gas manufacturing or distribution, or in other structures of light, noncombustible construction or equivalent, well ventilated near the floor line and roof.

When vaporizing and/or mixing equipment is located in a structure or building not used exclusively for gas manufacturing or distribution, either attached to or within such a building, such structure or room shall be separated from the remainder of the building by a wall designed to withstand a static pressure of at least 100 pounds per square foot. This wall shall have no openings or pipe or conduit passing through it. Such structure or room shall be provided with adequate ventilation and shall have a roof or at least one exterior wall of lightweight construction.

(e) Vaporizers shall have, at or near the discharge, a safety relief valve providing an effective rate of discharge in accordance with subparagraph (10)(iii) of this paragraph, except as provided in paragraph (d)(4)(v)(*a*), of this section.

(f) The heating medium lines into and leaving the vaporizer shall be provided with suitable means for preventing the flow of gas into the heat systems in the event of tube rupture in the vaporizer. Vaporizers shall be provided with suitable automatic means to prevent liquid passing through the vaporizers to the gas discharge piping.

(g) The device that supplies the necessary heat for producing steam, hot water, or other heating medium may be installed in a building, compartment, room, or lean-to which shall be ventilated near the floorline and roof to the outside. The device location shall be separated from all compartments or rooms containing liquefied petroleum gas vaporizers, pumps, and central gas mixing devices by a wall designed to withstand a static pressure of at least 100 pounds per square foot. This wall shall have no openings or pipes or conduit passing through it. This requirement does not apply to the domestic water heaters which may supply heat for a vaporizer in a domestic system.

(h) Gas-fired heating systems supplying heat exclusively for vaporization purposes shall be equipped with automatic safety devices to shut off the flow of gas to main burners, if the pilot light should fail.

(i) Vaporizers may be an integral part of a fuel storage container directly connected to the liquid section or gas section or both.

(j) Vaporizers shall not be equipped with fusible plugs.

(k) Vaporizer houses shall not have unprotected drains to sewers or sump pits.

(ii) Atmospheric vaporizers employing heat from the ground or surrounding air shall be installed as follows:

(a) Buried underground, or

(b) Located inside the building close to a point at which pipe enters the building provided the capacity of the unit does not exceed 1 quart.

(c) Vaporizers of less than 1 quart capacity heated by the ground or surrounding air, need not be equipped with safety relief valves provided that adequate tests demonstrate that the assembly is safe without safety relief valves.

(iii) Direct gas-fired vaporizers shall be constructed, marked, and installed as follows:

(a)

(1) In accordance with the requirements of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code—1968 that are applicable to the maximum working conditions for which the vaporizer is designed.

(2) With the name of the manufacturer; rated BTU input to the burner; the area of the heat exchange surface in square feet; the outside surface of the vaporizer in square feet; and the maximum vaporizing capacity in gallons per hour.

(b)

(1) Vaporizers may be connected to the liquid section or the gas section of the storage container, or both; but in any case there shall be at the container a manually operated valve in each connection to permit completely shutting off when desired, of all flow of gas or liquid from container to vaporizer.

(2) Vaporizers with capacity not exceeding 35 gallons per hour shall be located at least 5 feet from container shutoff valves. Vaporizers having capacity of more than 35 gallons but not exceeding 100 gallons per hour shall be located at least 10 feet from the container shutoff valves. Vaporizers having a capacity greater than 100 gallons per hour shall be located at least 15 feet from container shutoff valves.

(c) Vaporizers may be installed in buildings, rooms, housings, sheds, or lean-tos used exclusively for vaporizing or mixing of liquefied petroleum gas. Vaporizing housing structures shall be of noncombustible construction, well ventilated near the floorline and the highest point of the roof. When vaporizer and/or mixing equipment is located in a structure or room attached to or within a building, such structure or room shall be separated from the remainder of the building by a wall designed to withstand a static pressure of at least 100 pounds per square foot. This wall shall have no openings or pipes or conduit passing through it. Such structure or room shall be provided with adequate ventilation, and shall have a roof or at least one exterior wall of lightweight construction.

(d) Vaporizers shall have at or near the discharge, a safety relief valve providing an effective rate of discharge in accordance with subparagraph (10)(iii) of this paragraph. The relief valve shall be so located as not to be subjected to temperatures in excess of 140° F.

(e) Vaporizers shall be provided with suitable automatic means to prevent liquid passing from the vaporizer to the gas discharge piping of the vaporizer.

(f) Vaporizers shall be provided with means for manually turning off the gas to the main burner and pilot.

(g) Vaporizers shall be equipped with automatic safety devices to shut off the flow of gas to main burners if the pilot light should fail. When the flow through the pilot exceeds 2,000 B.t.u. per hour, the pilot also shall be equipped with an automatic safety device to shut off the flow of gas to the pilot should the pilot flame be extinguished.

(h) Pressure regulating and pressure reducing equipment if located within 10 feet of a direct fired vaporizer shall be separated from the open flame by a substantially airtight noncombustible partition or partitions.

(i) Except as provided in (c) of this subdivision, the following minimum distances shall be maintained between direct fired vaporizers and the nearest important building or group of buildings.

Ten feet for vaporizers having a capacity of 15 gallons per hour or less vaporizing capacity.

Twenty-five feet for vaporizers having a vaporizing capacity of 16 to 100 gallons per hour.

Fifty feet for vaporizers having a vaporizing capacity exceeding 100 gallons per hour.

(j) Direct fired vaporizers shall not raise the product pressure above the design pressure of the vaporizer equipment nor shall they raise the product pressure within the storage container above the pressure shown in the second column of Table H-31.

(k) Vaporizers shall not be provided with fusible plugs.

(l) Vaporizers shall not have unprotected drains to sewers or sump pits.

(iv) Direct gas-fired tank heaters shall be constructed and installed as follows:

(a) Direct gas-fired tank heaters, and tanks to which they are applied, shall only be installed above ground.

(b) Tank heaters shall be permanently marked with the name of the manufacturer, the rated B.t.u. input to the burner, and the maximum vaporizing capacity in gallons per hour.

(c) Tank heaters may be an integral part of a fuel storage container directly connected to the container liquid section, or vapor section, or both.

(d) Tank heaters shall be provided with a means for manually turning off the gas to the main burner and pilot.

(e) Tank heaters shall be equipped with an automatic safety device to shut off the flow of gas to main burners, if the pilot light should fail. When flow through pilot exceeds 2,000 B.t.u. per hour, the pilot also shall be equipped with an automatic safety device to shut off the flow of gas to the pilot should the pilot flame be extinguished.

(f) Pressure regulating and pressure reducing equipment if located within 10 feet of a direct fired tank heater shall be separated from the open flame by a substantially airtight noncombustible partition.

(g) The following minimum distances shall be maintained between a storage tank heated by a direct fired tank heater and the nearest important building or group of buildings,

Ten feet for storage containes of less than 500 gallons water capacity.

Twenty-five feet for storage containers of 500 to 1,200 gallons water capacity.

Fifty feet for storage containers of over 1,200 gallons water capacity.

(h) No direct fired tank heater shall raise the product pressure within the storage container over 75 percent of the pressure set out in the second column of Table H-31.

(v) The vaporizer section of vaporizer-burners used for dehydrators or dryers shall be located outside of buildings; they shall be constructed and installed as follows:

(a) Vaporizer-burners shall have a minimum design pressure of 250 p.s.i.g. with a factor of safety of five.

(b) Manually operated positive shutoff valves shall be located at the containers to shut off all flow to the vaporizer-burners.

(c) Minimum distances between storage containers and vaporizer-burners shall be as follows:

Water capacity per container (gallons)	***Minimum distances (feet)***
Less than 501	10
501 to 2,000	25
Over 2,000	50

(d) The vaporizer section of vaporizer-burners shall be protected by a hydrostatic relief valve. The relief valve shall be located so as not to be subjected to temperatures in excess of 140° F. The start-to-discharge pressure setting shall be such as to protect the components involved, but not less than 250 p.s.i.g. The discharge shall be directed upward and away from component parts of the equipment and away from operating personnel.

(e) Vaporizer-burners shall be provided with means for manually turning off the gas to the main burner and pilot.

(f) Vaporizer-burners shall be equipped with automatic safety devices to shut off the flow of gas to the main burner and pilot in the event the pilot is extinguished.

(g) Pressure regulating and control equipment shall be located or protected so that the temperatures surrounding this equipment shall not exceed 140° F. except that equipment components may be used at higher temperatures if designed to withstand such temperatures.

(h) Pressure regulating and control equipment when located downstream of the vaporizer shall be designed to withstand the maximum discharge temperature of the vapor.

(i) The vaporizer section of vaporizer-burners shall not be provided with fusible plugs.

(j) Vaporizer coils or jackets shall be made of ferrous metal or high temperature alloys.

(k) Equipment utilizing vaporizer-burners shall be equipped with automatic shutoff devices upstream and downstream of the vaporizer section connected so as to operate in the event of excessive temperature, flame failure, and, if applicable, insufficient airflow.

(12) Filling densities.

(i) The "filling density" is defined as the percent ratio of the weight of the gas in a container to the weight of water the container will hold at 60° F. All containers shall be filled according to the filling densities shown in Table H-27.

TABLE H-27—MAXIMUM PERMITTED FILLING DENSITY

Specific gravity at 60° F. (15.6° C.)	Aboveground containers		Underground containers, all capacities
	0 to 1,200 U.S. gals. (1,000 imp. gal., 4,550 liters) total water cap.	Over 1,200 U.S. gals. (1,000 imp. gal., 4,550 liters) total water cap.	
	Percent	*Percent*	*Percent*
0.496-0.503	41	44	45
.504-.510	42	45	46
.511-.519	43	46	47
.520-.527	44	47	48
.528-.536	45	48	49
.537-.544	46	49	50
.545-.552	47	50	51
.553-.560	48	51	52
.561-.568	49	52	53
.569-.576	50	53	54
.577-.584	51	54	55
.585-.592	52	55	56
.593-.600	53	56	57

(ii) Except as provided in subdivision (iii) of this subparagraph, any container including mobile cargo tanks and portable tank containers regardless of size or construction, shipped under DOT jurisdiction or constructed in accordance with 49 CFR Chapter I Specifications shall be charged according to 49 CFR Chapter I requirements.

(iii) Portable containers not subject to DOT jurisdiction (such as, but not limited to, motor fuel containers on industrial and lift trucks, and farm tractors covered in paragraph (e) of this section, or containers recharged at the installation) may be filled either by weight, or by volume using a fixed length dip tube gaging device.

(13) LP-Gas in buildings.

(i) Vapor shall be piped into buildings at pressures in excess of 20 p.s.i.g. only if the buildings or separate areas thereof,

(a) Are constructed in accordance with this section;

(b) Are used exclusively to house equipment for vaporization, pressure reduction, gas mixing, gas manufacturing, or distribution, or to house internal combustion engines, industrial processes, research and experimental laboratories, or equipment and processes using such gas and having similar hazard;

(c) Buildings, structures, or equipment under construction or undergoing major renovation.

(ii) Liquid may be permitted in buildings as follows:

(a) Buildings, or separate areas of buildings, used exclusively to house equipment for vaporization, pressure reduction, gas mixing, gas manufacturing, or distribution, or to house internal combustion engines, industrial processes, research and experimental laboratories, or equipment and processes using such gas and having similar hazard; and when such buildings, or separate areas thereof are constructed in accordance with this section.

(b) Buildings, structures, or equipment under construction or undergoing major renovation provided the temporary piping meets the following conditions:

(1) Liquid piping inside the building shall conform to the requirements of subparagraph (8) of this paragraph, and shall not exceed three-fourths iron pipe size. Copper tubing with an outside diameter of three-fourths inch or less may be used provided it conforms to Type K of Specifications for Seamless Water Tube, ANSI H23.1-1970 (ASTM B88-69) (see Table H-24). All such piping shall be protected against construction hazards. Liquid piping inside buildings shall be kept to a minimum. Such piping shall be securely fastened to walls or other surfaces so as to provide adequate protection from breakage and so located as to subject the liquid line to lowest ambient temperatures.

(2) A shutoff valve shall be installed in each intermediate branch line where it takes off the main line and shall be readily accessible. A shutoff valve shall also be placed at the appliance end of the intermediate branch line. Such shutoff valve shall be upstream of any flexible connector used with the appliance.

(3) Suitable excess flow valves shall be installed in the container outlet line supplying liquid LP-Gas to the building. A suitable excess flow valve shall be installed immediately downstream of each shutoff valve. Suitable excess flow valves shall be installed where piping size is reduced and shall be sized for the reduced size piping.

(4) Hydrostatic relief valves shall be installed in accordance with subparagraph (10) (xii) of this paragraph.

(5) The use of hose to carry liquid between the container and the building or at any point in the liquid line, except at the appliance connector, shall be prohibited.

(6) Where flexible connectors are necessary for appliance installation, such connectors shall be as short as practicable and shall comply with subparagraph (8)(ii) or (9) of this paragraph.

(7) Release of fuel when any section of piping or appliances is disconnected shall be minimized by either of the following methods:

(i) Using an approved automatic quick-closing coupling (a type closing in both directions when coupled in the fuel line), or

(ii) Closing the valve nearest to the appliance and allowing the appliance to operate until the fuel in the line is consumed.

(iii) Portable containers shall not be taken into buildings except as provided in subparagraph (6)(i) of this paragraph.

(14) Transfer of liquids. The employer shall assure that

(i) At least one attendant shall remain close to the transfer connection from the time the connections are first made until they are finally disconnected, during the transfer of the product.

(ii) Containers shall be filled or used only upon authorization of the owner.

(iii) Containers manufactured in accordance with specifications of 49 CFR Part 178 and authorized by 49 CFR Chapter 1 as a "single trip" or "nonrefillable container" shall not be refilled or reused in LP-Gas service.

(iv) Gas or liquid shall not be vented to the atmosphere to assist in transferring contents of one container to another, except as provided in paragraph (e)(5)(iv) of this section and except that this shall not preclude the use of listed pump utilizing LP-Gas in the vapor phase as a source of energy and venting such gas to the atmosphere at a rate not to exceed that from a No. 31 drill size opening and provided that such venting and liquid transfer shall be located not less than 50 feet from the nearest important building.

(v) Filling of fuel containers for industrial trucks or motor vehicles from industrial bulk storage containers shall be performed not less than 10 feet from the nearest important masonry-walled building or not less than 25 feet from the nearest important building or other construction and, in any event, not less than 25 feet from any building opening.

(vi) Filling of portable containers, containers mounted on skids, fuel containers on farm tractors, or similar applications, from storage containers used in domestic or commercial service, shall be performed not less than 50 feet from the nearest important building.

(vii) The filling connection and the vent from the liquid level gages in containers, filled at point of installation, shall not be less than 10 feet in any direction from air openings into sealed combustion system appliances or mechanical ventilation air intakes.

(viii) Fuel supply containers shall be gaged and charged only in the open air or in buildings especially provided for that purpose.

(ix) The maximum vapor pressure of the product at 100° F. which may be transferred into a container shall be in accordance with paragraphs (d)(2) and (e)(3) of this section. (For DOT containers use DOT requirements.)

(x) Marketers and users shall exercise precaution to assure that only those gases for which the system is designed, examined, and listed, are employed in its operation, particularly with regard to pressures.

(xi) Pumps or compressors shall be designed for use with LP-Gas. When compressors are used they shall normally take suction from the vapor space of the container being filled and discharge to the vapor space of the container being emptied.

(xii) Pumping systems, when equipped with a positive displacement pump, shall include a recirculating device which shall limit the differential pressure on the pump under normal operating conditions to the maximum differential pressure rating of the pump. The discharge of the pumping system shall be protected so that pressure does not exceed 350 p.s.i.g. If a recirculation system discharges into the supply tank and contains a manual shutoff valve, an adequate secondary safety recirculation system shall be incorporated which shall have no means of rendering it inoperative. Manual shutoff valves in recirculation systems shall be kept open except during an emergency or when repairs are being made to the system.

(xiii) When necessary, unloading piping or hoses shall be provided with suitable bleeder valves for relieving pressure before disconnection.

(xiv) Agricultural air moving equipment, including crop dryers, shall be shut down when supply containers are being filled unless the air intakes and sources of ignition on the equipment are located 50 feet or more from the container.

(xv) Agricultural equipment employing open flames or equipment with integral containers, such as flame cultivators, weed burners, and, in addition, tractors, shall be shut down during refueling.

(15) Tank car or transport truck loading or unloading points and operations.

(i) The track of tank car siding shall be relatively level.

(ii) A "Tank Car Connected" sign, as covered by DOT rules, shall be installed at the active end or ends of the siding while the tank car is connected.

(iii) While cars are on sidetrack for loading or unloading, the wheels at both ends shall be blocked on the rails.

(iv) The employer shall insure that an employee is in attendance at all times while the tank car, cars, or trucks are being loaded or unloaded.

(v) A backflow check valve, excess-flow valve, or a shutoff valve with means of remote closing, to protect against uncontrolled discharge of LP-Gas from storage tank piping shall be installed close to the point where the liquid piping and hose or swing joint pipe is connected.

(vi) Except as provided in subdivision (vii) of this subparagraph, when the size (diameter) of the loading or unloading hoses and/or piping is reduced below the size of the tank car or transport truck loading or unloading connections, the adaptors to which lines are attached shall be equipped with either a backflow check valve, a properly sized excess flow valve, or shutoff valve with means of remote closing, to protect against uncontrolled discharge from the tank car or transport truck.

(vii) The requirement of subdivision (vi) of this subparagraph shall not apply if the tank car or transport is equipped with a quick-closing internal valve that can be remotely closed.

(viii) The tank car or transport truck loading or unloading point shall be located with due consideration to the following:

(a) Proximity to railroads and highway traffic.

(b) Revoked

(c) With respect to buildings on installer's property.

(d) Nature of occupancy.

(e) Topography.

(f) Type of construction of buildings.

(g) Number of tank cars or transport trucks that may be safely loaded or unloaded at one time.

(h) Frequency of loading or unloading.

(ix) Where practical, the distance of the unloading or loading point shall conform to the distances in subparagraph (6)(ii) of this paragraph.

(16) Instructions. Personnel performing installation, removal, operation, and maintenance work shall be properly trained in such function.

(17) Electrical equipment and other sources of ignition.

(i) Electrical equipment and wiring shall be of a type specified by and shall be installed in accordance with Subpart S of this part, for ordinary locations except that fixed electrical equipment in classified areas shall comply with subparagraph (18) of this paragraph.

(ii) Open flames or other sources of ignition shall not be permitted in vaporizer rooms (except those housing direct-fired vaporizers), pumphouses, container charging rooms or other similar locations. Direct-fired vaporizers shall not be permitted in pumphouses or container charging rooms.

(iii) Liquefied petroleum gas storage containers do not require lightning protection.

(iv) Since liquefied petroleum gas is contained in a closed system of piping and equipment, the system need not be electrically conductive or electrically bonded for protection against static electricity.

(v) Open flames (except as provided for in subparagraph (11) of this paragraph), cutting or welding, portable electric tools, and extension lights capable of igniting LP-Gas, shall not be permitted within classified areas specified in Table H-28 unless the LP-Gas facilities have been freed of all liquid and vapor, or special precautions observed under carefully controlled conditions.

(18) Fixed electrical equipment in classified areas. Fixed electrical equipment and wiring installed within classified areas specified in Table H-28 shall comply with Table H-28 and shall be installed in accordance with Subpart S of this part. This provision does not apply to fixed electrical equipment at residential or commercial installations of LP-Gas systems or to systems covered by paragraph (e) or (g) of this section.

TABLE H-28

Part	Location	Extent of classified area [1]	Equipment shall be suitable for National Electrical Code, Class 1, Group D [2]
A	Storage containers other than DOT cylinders.	Within 15 feet in all directions from connections, except connections otherwise covered in Table H-28.	Division 2.
B	Tank vehicle and tank car loading and unloading.[3]	Within 5 feet in all directions from connections regularly made or disconnected for product transfer.	Division 1.
		Beyond 5 feet but within 15 feet in all directions from a point where connections are regularly made or disconnected and within the cylindrical volume between the horizontal equator of the sphere and grade. (See Figure H-1).	Division 2.
C	Gage vent openings other than those on DOT cylinders.	Within 5 feet in all directions from point of discharge.	Division 1.
		Beyond 5 feet but within 15 feet in all directions from point of discharge.	Division 2.
D	Relief valve discharge other than those on DOT cylinders.	Within direct path of discharge.	Divison 1.
		Within 5 feet in all directions from point of discharge.	Division 1.
		Beyond 5 feet but within 15 feet in all directions from point of discharge except within the direct path of discharge.	Division 2.
E	Pumps, compressors, gas-air mixers and vaporizers other than direct fired.	--	
	Indoors without ventilation...	Entire room and any adjacent room not separated by a gastight partition.	Division 1.
		Within 15 feet of the exterior side of any exterior wall or roof that is not vaportight or within 15 feet of any exterior opening.	Division 2.
	Indoors with adequate ventilation.[4]	Entire room and any adjacent room not separated by a gastight partition.	Division 2.
	Outdoors in open air at or abovegrade.	Within 15 feet in all directions from this equipment and within the cylindrical volume between the horizontal equator of the sphere and grade. See Figure H-1.	Division 2.
F	Service Station Dispensing Units.	Entire space within dispenser enclosure, and 18 inches horizontally from enclosure exterior up to an elevation 4 ft. above dispenser base. Entire pit or open space beneath dispenser.	Division 1.
		Up to 18 inches abovegrade within 20 ft. horizontally from any edge of enclosure. Note: For pits within this area, see Part F of this table.	Division 2.
G	Pits or trenches containing or located beneath LP-Gas valves, pumps, compressors, regulators, and similar equipment.	--	
	Without mechanical ventilation.	Entire pit or trench ------------------------------------	Division 1.

See footnotes at end of table.

TABLE H-28—Continued

Part	Location	Extent of classified area [1]	Equipment shall be suitable for National Electrical Code, Class 1, Group D [2]
		Entire room and any adjacent room not separated by a gastight partition.	Division 2.
		Within 15 feet in all directions from pit or trench when located outdoors.	Division 2.
	With adequate mechanical ventilation.	Entire pit or trench	Division 2.
		Entire room and any adjacent room not separated by a gastight partition.	Division 2.
		Within 15 feet in all directions from pit or trench when located outdoors.	Division 2.
H	Special buildings or rooms for storage of portable containers.	Entire room	Division 2.
I	Pipelines and connections containing operational bleeds, drips, vents or drains.	Within 5 ft. in all directions from point of discharge	Division 1.
		Beyond 5 ft. from point of discharge, same as Part E of this table.	
J	Container filling:		
	Indoors without ventilation.	Entire room	Division 1.
	Indoors with adequate ventilation.[4]	Within 5 feet in all directions from connections regularly made or disconnected for product transfer.	Division 1.
		Beyond 5 feet and entire room	Division 2.
	Outdoors in open air	Within 5 feet in all directions from connections regularly made or disconnected for product transfer.	Division 1.
		Beyond 5 feet but within 15 feet in all directions from a point where connections are regularly made or disconnected and within the cylindrical volume between the horizontal equator of the sphere and grade. (See Figure H-1)	Division 2.

---

[1] The classified area shall not extend beyond an unpierced wall, roof, or solid vaportight partition.

[2] See Subpart S of this part.

[3] When classifying extent of hazardous area, consideration shall be given to possible variations in the spotting of tank cars and tank vehicles at the unloading points and the effect these variations of actual spotting point may have on the point of connection.

[4] Ventilation, either natural or mechanical, is considered adequate when the concentration of the gas in a gas-air mixture does not exceed 25 percent of the lower flammable limit under normal operating conditions.

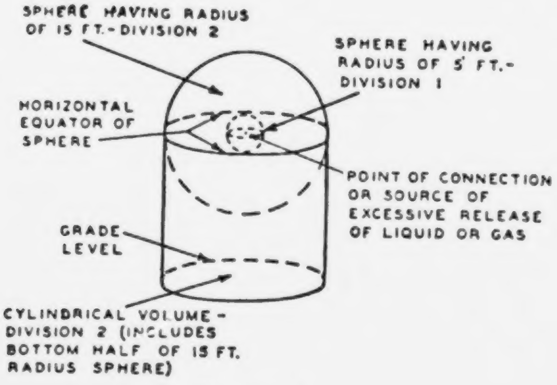

SPHERE HAVING RADIUS OF 15 FT.-DIVISION 2
SPHERE HAVING RADIUS OF 5' FT.-DIVISION 1
HORIZONTAL EQUATOR OF SPHERE
POINT OF CONNECTION OR SOURCE OF EXCESSIVE RELEASE OF LIQUID OR GAS
GRADE LEVEL
CYLINDRICAL VOLUME - DIVISION 2 (INCLUDES BOTTOM HALF OF 15 FT. RADIUS SPHERE)

Figure H-1

(19) Liquid-level gaging device.

(i) Each container manufactured after December 31, 1965, and filled on a volumetric basis shall be equipped with a fixed liquid-level gage to indicate the maximum permitted filling level as provided in subdivision (v) of this subparagraph. Each container manufactured after December 31, 1969, shall have permanently attached to the container adjacent to the fixed level gage a marking showing the percentage full that will be shown by that gage. When a variable liquid-level gage is also provided, the fixed liquid-level gage will also serve as a means for checking the variable gage. These gages shall be used in charging containers as required in subparagraph (12) of this paragraph.

(ii) All variable gaging devices shall be arranged so that the maximum liquid level for butane, for a 50-50 mixture of butane and propane, and for propane, to which the container may be charged is readily determinable. The markings indicating the various liquid levels from empty to full shall be on the system nameplate or gaging device or part may be on the system nameplate and part on the gaging device. Dials of magnetic or rotary gages shall show whether they are for cylindrical or spherical containers and whether for aboveground or underground service. The dials of gages intended for use only on aboveground containers of over 1,200 gallons water capacity shall be so marked.

(iii) Gaging devices that require bleeding of the product to the atmosphere, such as the rotary tube, fixed tube, and slip tube, shall be designed so that the bleed valve maximum opening is not larger than a No. 54 drill size, unless provided with excess flow valve.

(iv) Gaging devices shall have a design working pressure of at least 250 p.s.i.g.

(v) Length of tube or position of fixed liquid-level gage shall be designed to indicate the maximum level to which the container may be filled for the product contained. This level shall be based on the volume of the product at 40° F. at its maximum permitted filling density for aboveground containers and at 50° F. for underground containers. The employer shall calculate the filling point for which the fixed liquid level gage shall be designed according to the method in this subdivision.

(a) It is impossible to set out in a table the length of a fixed dip tube for various capacity tanks because of the varying tank diameters and lengths and because the tank may be installed either in a vertical or horizontal position. Knowing the maximum permitted filling volume in gallons, however, the length of the fixed tube can be determined by the use of a strapping table obtained from the container manufacturer. The length of the fixed tube should be such that when its lower end touches the surface of the liquid in the container, the contents of the container will be the maximum permitted volume as determined by the following formula:

$$\frac{\text{Water capacity (gals.) of container}^{*} \times \text{filling density}^{**}}{\text{Specific gravity of LP-Gas}^{*} \times \text{volume correction factor}^{\dagger} \times 100} = \text{Maximum volume of LP-Gas}$$

* Measured at 60° F.

** From subparagraph (12) of this paragraph "Filling Densities."

† For aboveground containers the liquid temperature is assumed to be 40° F. and for underground containers the liquid temperature is assumed to be 50° F. To correct the liquid volumes at these temperatures to 60° F. the following factors shall be used.

(b) Formula for determining maximum volume of liquefied petroleum gas for which a fixed length of dip tube shall be set:

TABLE H-29—VOLUME CORRECTION FACTORS

Specific gravity	Aboveground	Underground
0. 500	1. 033	1. 017
. 510	1. 031	1. 016
. 520	1. 029	1. 015
. 530	1. 028	1. 014
. 540	1. 026	1. 013
. 550	1. 025	1. 013
. 560	1. 024	1. 012
. 570	1. 023	1. 011
. 580	1. 021	1. 011
. 590	1. 020	1. 010

(c) The maximum volume of LP-Gas which can be placed in a container when determining the length of the dip tube expressed as a percentage of total water content of the container is calculated by the following formula.

(d) The maximum weight of LP-Gas which may be placed in a container *for determining the length of a fixed dip tube* is determined by multiplying the maximum volume of liquefied petroleum gas obtained by the formula in (*b*) of this subdivision by the pounds of liquefied petroleum gas in a gallon at 40° F. for aboveground and at 50° F. for underground containers. For example, typical pounds per gallon are specified below:

Example: Assume a 100-gallon total water capacity tank for aboveground storage of propane having a specific gravity of 0.510 of 60° F.

$$\frac{100\text{ (gals.)} \times 42\text{ (filling density from subparagraph (12) of this paragraph)}}{0.510 \times 1.031\text{ (correction factor from Table H-29)} \times 100} = \frac{4200}{52.6}$$

$\frac{4200}{52.6}$ = 79.8 gallons propane, the maximum amount permitted to be placed in a 100-gallon total water capacity aboveground container equipped with a fixed dip tube.

$$\frac{\text{Maximum volume of LP-Gas (from formula in subdivision (}b\text{) of this subdivision} \times 100}{\text{Total water content of container in gallons}} = \text{Maximum percent of LP-Gas}$$

	Aboveground, pounds per gallon	Underground, pounds per gallon
Propane	4.37	4.31
N Butane	4.97	4.92

(vi) Fixed liquid-level gages used on containers other than DOT containers shall be stamped on the exterior of the gage with the letters "DT" followed by the vertical distance (expressed in inches and carried out to one decimal place) from the top of container to the end of the dip tube or to the centerline of the gage when it is located at the maximum permitted filling level. For portable containers that may be filled in the horizontal and/or vertical position the letters "DT" shall be followed by "V" with the vertical distance from the top of the container to the end of the dip tube for vertical filling and with "H" followed by the proper distance for horizontal filling. For DOT containers the stamping shall be placed both on the exterior of the gage and on the container. On aboveground or cargo containers where the gages are positioned at specific levels, the marking may be specified in percent of total tank contents and the marking shall be stamped on the container.

(vii) Gage glasses of the columnar type shall be restricted to charging plants where the fuel is withdrawn in the liquid phase only. They shall be equipped with valves having metallic handwheels, with excess flow valves, and with extra-heavy glass adequately protected with a metal housing applied by the gage manufacturer. They shall be shielded against the direct rays of the sun. Gage glasses of the columnar type are prohibited on tank trucks, and on motor fuel tanks, and on containers used in domestic, commercial, and industrial installations.

(viii) Gaging devices of the float, or equivalent type which do not require flow for their operation and having connections extending to a point outside the container do not have to be equipped with excess flow valves provided the piping and fittings are adequately designed to withstand the container pressure and are properly protected against physical damage and breakage.

(20) Requirements for appliances.

(i) Except as provided in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph, new commercial and industrial gas consuming appliances shall be approved.

(ii) Any appliance that was originally manufactured for operation with a gaseous fuel other than LP-Gas and is in good condition may be used with LP-Gas only after it is properly converted, adapted, and tested for performance with LP-Gas before the appliance is placed in use.

(iii) Unattended heaters used inside buildings for the purpose of animal or poultry production or care shall be equipped with an approved automatic device designed to shut off the flow of gas to the main burners, and pilot if used, in the event of flame extinguishment.

(iv) All commercial, industrial, and agricultural appliances or equipment shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this section and in accordance with the following:

(a) Domestic and commercial appliances—NFPA 54-1969, Standard for the Installation of Gas Appliances and Gas Piping.

(b) Industrial appliances—NFPA 54A-1969, Standard for the Installation of Gas Piping and Gas Equipment on Industrial Premises and Certain Other Premises.

(c) Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines—NFPA 37-1970.

(d) Standard for the Installation of Equipment for the Removal of Smoke and Grease-Laden Vapors from Commercial Cooking Equipment, NFPA 96-1970.

(c) Cylinder systems.

(1) Application. This paragraph applies specifically to systems utilizing containers constructed in accordance with DOT Specifications. All requirements of paragraph (b) of this section apply to this paragraph unless otherwise noted in paragraph (b) of this section.

(2) Marking of containers.

(i) Containers shall be marked in accordance with DOT regulations. Additional markings not in conflict with DOT regulations may be used.

(ii) Except as provided in subdivision (iii) of this subparagraph each container shall be marked with its water capacity in pounds or other identified unit of weight.

(iii) If a container is filled and maintained only by the owner or his representative and if the water capacity of each container is identified by a code, compliance with subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph is not required.

(iv) Each container shall be marked with its tare weight in pounds or other identified unit of weight including all permanently attached fittings but not the cap.

(3) Description of a system. A system shall include the container base or bracket, containers, container valves, connectors, manifold valve assembly, regulators, and relief valves.

(4) Containers and regulating equipment installed outside of buildings or structures.

(i) Containers shall not be buried below ground. However, this shall not prohibit the installation in a compartment or recess below grade level, such as a niche in a slope or terrace wall which is used for no other purpose, providing that the container and regulating equipment are not in contact with the ground and the compartment or recess is drained and ventilated horizontally to the outside air from its lowest level, with the outlet at least 3 feet away from any building opening which is below the level of such outlet.

Except as provided in paragraph (b)(10)(xiii) of this section, the discharge from safety relief devices shall be located not less than 3 feet horizontally away from any building opening which is below the level of such discharge and shall not terminate beneath any building unless such space is well ventilated to the outside and is not enclosed on more than two sides.

(ii) Containers shall be set upon firm foundation or otherwise firmly secured; the possible effect on the outlet piping of setting shall be guarded against by a flexible connection or special fitting.

(5) Containers and equipment used inside of buildings or structures.

(i) When operational requirements make portable use of containers necessary and their location outside of buildings or structure is impracticable, containers and equipment are permitted to be used inside of buildings or structures in accordance with *(a)* through *(l)* of this subdivision, and, in addition, such other provisions of this subparagraph as are applicable to the particular use or occupancy.

(a) Containers in use shall mean connected for use.

(b) Systems utilizing containers having a water capacity greater than 2½ pounds (nominal 1 pound LP-Gas capacity) shall be equipped with excess flow valves. Such excess flow valves shall be either integral with the container valves or in the connections to the container valve outlets. In either case, an excess flow valve shall be installed in such a manner that any undue strain beyond the excess flow valve will not cause breakage between the container and the excess flow valve. The installation of excess flow valves shall take into account the type of valve protection provided.

(c) Regulators, if used, shall be either directly connected to the container valves or to manifolds connected to the container valves. The regulator shall be suitable for use with LP-Gas. Manifolds and fittings connecting containers to pressure regulator inlets shall be designed for at least 250 p.s.i.g. service pressure.

(d) Valves on containers having a water capacity greater than 50 pounds (nominal 20 pounds LP-Gas capacity) shall be protected while in use.

(e) Containers shall be marked in accordance with paragraph (b)(5)(iii) of this section and subparagraph (2) of this paragraph.

(f) Pipe or tubing shall conform to paragraph (b)(8) of this section except that aluminum pipe or tubing shall not be used.

(g)

(1) Hose shall be designed for a working pressure of at least 250 p.s.i.g. Hose and hose connections shall have their correctness as to design, construction and performance determined by listing by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. The hose length may exceed the length specified in paragraph (b)(9)(vii)*(b)* of this section, but shall be as short as practicable. Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(2) Hose shall be long enough to permit compliance with spacing provisions of this subparagraph without kinking or straining or causing hose to be so close to a burner as to be damaged by heat.

(h) Portable heaters, including salamanders, shall be equipped with an approved automatic device to shut off the flow of gas to the main burner, and pilot if used, in the event of flame extinguishment. Such heaters having inputs above 50,000 B.t.u. manufactured on or after May 17, 1967, and such heaters having inputs above 100,000 B.t.u. manufactured before May 17, 1967, shall be equipped with either.

(1) A pilot which must be lighted and proved before the main burner can be turned on; or

(2) An electric ignition system. The provisions of subdivision (h) of this do not apply to tar kettle burners, torches, melting pots, nor do they apply to portable heaters under 7,500 B.t.u.h. input when used with containers having a maximum water capacity of 2½ pounds. Container valves, connectors, regulators, manifolds, piping, and tubing shall not be used as structural supports for heaters.

(i) Containers, regulating equipment, manifolds, pipe, tubing, and hose shall be located so as to minimize exposure to abnormally high temperatures (such as may result from exposure to convection or radiation from heating equipment or installation in confined spaces), physical damage, or tampering by unauthorized persons.

(j) Heat producing equipment shall be located and used so as to minimize the possibility of ignition of combustibles.

(k) Containers having a water capacity greater than 2½ pounds (nominal 1 pound LP-Gas capacity) connected for use, shall stand on a firm and substantially level surface and, when necessary, shall be secured in an upright position.

(l) Containers, including the valve protective devices, shall be installed so as to minimize the probability of impingement of discharge of safety relief devices upon containers.

(ii) Containers having a maximum water capacity of 2½ pounds (nominal 1 pound LP-Gas capacity) are permitted to be used inside of buildings as part of approved self-contained hand torch assemblies or similar appliances.

(iii) Containers having a maximum water capacity of 12 pounds (nominal 5 pounds LP-Gas capacity) are permitted to be used temporarily inside of buildings for public exhibition or demonstration purposes, including use for classroom demonstrations.

(iv) Revoked

(v) Containers are permitted to be used in buildings or structures under construction or undergoing major renovation when such buildings or structures are not occupied by the public, as follows:

(a) The maximum water capacity of individual containers shall be 245 pounds (nominal 100 pounds LP-Gas capacity).

(b) For temporary heating such as curing concrete, drying plaster and similar applications, heaters (other than integral heater-container units) shall be located at least 6 feet from any LP-Gas container. This shall not prohibit the use of heaters specifically designed for attachment to the container or to a supporting standard, provided they are designed and installed so as to prevent direct or radiant heat application from the heater onto the container. Blower and radiant type heaters shall not be directed toward any LP-Gas container within 20 feet.

(c) If two or more heater-container units, of either the integral or nonintegral type, are located in an unpartitioned area on the same floor, the container or containers of each unit shall be separated from the container or containers of any other unit by at least 20 feet.

(d) When heaters are connected to containers for use in an unpartitioned area on the same floor, the total water capacity of containers manifolded together for connection to a heater or heaters shall not be greater than 735 pounds (nominal 300 pounds LP-Gas capacity).

Such manifolds shall be separated by at least 20 feet.

(e) On floors on which heaters are not connected for use, containers are permitted to be manifolded together for connection to a heater or heaters on another floor, *Provided:*

(1) The total water capacity of containers connected to any one manifold is not greater than 2,450 pounds (nominal 1,000 pounds LP-Gas capacity) and;

(2) Where more than one manifold having a total water capacity greater than 735 pounds (nominal 300 pounds LP-Gas capacity) are located in the same unpartitioned area, they shall be separated by at least 50 feet.

(f) Storage of containers awaiting use shall be in accordance with paragraph (f) of this section.

(vi) Containers are permitted to be used in industrial occupancies for processing, research, or experimental purposes as follows:

(a) The maximum water capacity of individual containers shall be 245 pounds (nominal 100 pounds LP-Gas capacity).

(b) Containers connected to a manifold shall have a total water capacity not greater than 735 pounds (nominal 300 pounds LP-Gas capacity) and not more than one such manifold may be located in the same room unless separated at least 20 feet from a similar unit.

(c) The amount of LP-Gas in containers for research and experimental use shall be limited to the smallest practical quantity.

(vii)

(a) Containers are permitted to be used in industrial occupancies with essentially noncombustible contents where portable equipment for space heating is essential and where a permanent heating installation is not practical, as follows:

(b) Containers and heaters shall comply with and be used in accordance with subdivision (v) of this subparagraph.

(viii) Containers are permitted to be used in buildings for temporary emergency heating purposes, if necessary to prevent damage to the buildings or contents, when the permanent heating system is temporarily out of service, as follows:

(a) Containers and heaters shall comply with and be used in accordance with subdivision (v) of this subparagraph.

(b) The temporary heating equipment shall not be left unattended.

(ix) Containers are permitted to be used temporarily in buildings for training purposes related in installation and use of LP-Gas systems, as follows:

(a) The maximum water capacity of individual containers shall be 245 pounds (nominal 100 pounds LP-Gas capacity), but the maximum quantity of LP-Gas that may be placed in each container shall be 20 pounds.

(b) If more than one such container is located in the same room, the containers shall be separated by at least 20 feet.

(6) Container valves and accessories.

(i) Valves in the assembly of multiple container systems shall be arranged so that replacement of containers can be made without shutting off the flow of gas in the system.

NOTE: This provision is not to be construed as requiring an automatic changeover device.

(ii) Regulators and low-pressure relief devices shall be rigidly attached to the cylinder valves, cylinders, supporting standards, the building walls or otherwise rigidly secured and shall be so installed or protected that the elements (sleet, snow, or ice) will not affect their operation.

(iii) Valves and connections to the containers shall be protected while in transit, in storage, and while being moved into final utilization, as follows:

(a) By setting into the recess of the container to prevent the possibility of their being struck if the container is dropped upon a flat surface, or

(b) By ventilated cap or collar, fastened to the container capable of withstanding a blow from any direction equivalent to that of a 30-pound weight dropped 4 feet. Construction must be such that a blow will not be transmitted to the valve or other connection.

(iv) When containers are not connected to the system, the outlet valves shall be kept tightly closed or plugged, even though containers are considered empty.

(v) Containers having a water capacity in excess of 50 pounds (approximately 21 pounds LP-Gas capacity), recharged at the installation, shall be provided with excess flow or backflow check valves to prevent the discharge of container contents in case of failure of the filling or equalizing connection.

(7) Safety devices.

(i) Containers shall be provided with safety devices as required by DOT regulations.

(ii) A final stage regulator of an LP-Gas system (excluding any appliance regulator) shall be equipped on the low-pressure side with a relief valve which is set to start to discharge within the limits specified in Table H-30.

TABLE H-30

Regulator delivery pressure	Relief valve start-to-discharge pressure setting (percent of regulator delivery pressure)	
	Minimum	Maximum
1 p.s.i.g. or less	200	300
Above 1 p.s.i.g. but not over 3 p.s.i.g	140	200
Above 3 p.s.i.g	125	200

(iii) When a regulator or pressure relief valve is used inside a building for other than purposes specified in paragraph (b)(6)(i)(*a*)–(*g*) of this section, the relief valve and the space above the regulator and relief valve diaphragms shall be vented to the outside air with the discharge outlet located not less than 3 feet horizontally away from any building opening which is below such discharge. These provisions do not apply to individual appliance regulators when protection is otherwise provided nor to subparagraph (5) of this paragraph and paragraph (b)(10)(xiii) of this section. In buildings devoted exclusively to gas distribution purposes, the space above the diaphragm need not be vented to the outside.

(8) Reinstallation of containers. Containers shall not be reinstalled unless they are requalified in accordance with DOT regulations.

(9) Permissible product. A product shall not be placed in a container marked with a service pressure less than four-fifths of the maximum vapor pressure of product at 130° F.

(d) Sytems utilizing containers other than DOT containers.

(1) Application. This paragraph applies specifically to systems utilizing storage containers other than those constructed in accordance with DOT specifications. Paragraph (b) of this section applies to this paragraph unless otherwise noted in paragraph (b) of this section.

(2) Design pressure and classification of storage containers. Storage containers shall be designed and classified in accordance with Table H-31.

TABLE H-31

Container type	For gases with vapor press. Not to exceed lb. per sq. in. gage at 100° F. (37.8° C.)	Minimum design pressure of container, lb. per sq. in. gage	
		1949 and earlier editions of ASME Code (Par. U-68, U-69)	1949 edition of ASME Code (Par. U-200, U-201); 1950, 1952, 1956, 1959, 1962, 1965, and 1968 (Division I) editions of ASME Code; All editions of API-ASME Code[3]
[1] 80	[1] 80	[1] 80	[1] 100
100	100	100	125
125	125	125	156
150	150	150	187
175	175	175	219
[2] 200	215	200	250

[1] New storage containers of the 80 type have not been authorized since Dec. 31. 1947.

[2] Container type may be increased by increments of 25. The minimum design pressure of containers shall be 100% of the container type designation when constructed under 1949 or earlier editions of the ASME Code (Par. U-68 and U-69). The minimum design pressure of containers shall be 125% of the container type designation when constructed under: (1) the 1949 ASME Code (Par. U-200 and U-201), (2) 1950, 1952. 1956, 1959. 1962, 1965, and 1968 (Division I) editions of the ASME Code, and (3) all editions of the API-ASME Code.

[3] Construction of containers under the API-ASME Code is not authorized after July 1, 1961.

(3) Container valves and accessories, filler pipes, and discharge pipes.

(i) The filling pipe inlet terminal shall not be located inside a building. For containers with a water capacity of 125 gallons or more, such terminals shall be located not less than 10 feet from any building (see paragraph (b)(6)(ii) of this section), and preferably not less than 5 feet from any driveway, and shall be located in a protective housing built for the purpose.

(ii) The filling connection shall be fitted with one of the following:

(a) Combination back-pressure check valve and excess flow valve.

(b) One double or two single back-pressure check valves.

(c) A positive shutoff valve, in conjunction with either:

(1) An internal back pressure valve, or

(2) An internal excess flow valve.

(iii) All openings in a container shall be equipped with approved automatic excess flow valves except in the following: filling connections as provided in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph; safety relief connections, liquid-level gaging devices as provided in paragraphs (b)(7)(iv), (19)(iii), and (19)(viii) of this section; pressure gage connections as provided in paragraph (b)(7)(v) of this section, as provided in subdivisions (iv), (vi), and (vii) of this subparagraph.

(iv) An excess flow valve is not required in the withdrawal service line providing the following are complied with:

(a) Such systems' total water capacity does not exceed 2,000 U.S. gallons.

(b) The discharge from the service outlet is controlled by a suitable manually operated shutoff valve which is:

(1) Threaded directly into the service outlet of the container; or

(2) Is an integral part of a substantial fitting threaded into or on the service outlet of the container; or

(3) Threaded directly into a substantial fitting threaded into or on the service outlet of the container.

(c) The shutoff valve is equipped with an attached handwheel or the equivalent.

(d) The controlling orifice between the contents of the container and the outlet of the shutoff valve does not exceed five-sixteenths inch in diameter for vapor withdrawal systems and one-eighth inch in diameter for liquid withdrawal systems.

(e) An approved pressure-reducing regulator is directly attached to the outlet of the shutoff valve and is rigidly supported, or that an approved pressure-reducing regulator is attached to the outlet of the shutoff valve by means of a suitable flexible connection, provided the regulator is adequately supported and properly protected on or at the tank.

(v) All inlet and outlet connections except safety relief valves, liquid level gaging devices and pressure gages on containers of 2,000 gallons water capacity, or more, and on any container used to supply fuel directly to an internal combustion engine, shall be labeled to designate whether they communicate with vapor or liquid space. Labels may be on valves.

(vi) In lieu of an excess flow valve openings may be fitted with a quick-closing internal valve which, except during operating periods shall remain closed. The internal mechanism for such valves may be provided with a secondary control which shall be equipped with a fusible plug (not over 220° F. melting point) which will cause the internal valve to close automatically in case of fire.

(vii) Not more than two plugged openings shall be permitted on a container of 2,000 gallons or less water capacity.

(viii) Containers of 125 gallons water capacity or more manufactured after July 1, 1961, shall be provided with an approved device for liquid evacuation, the size of which shall be three-fourths inch National Pipe Thread minimum. A plugged opening will not satisfy this requirement.

(4) Safety devices.

(i) All safety devices shall comply with the following:

(a) All container safety relief devices shall be located on the containers and shall have direct communication with the vapor of space of the container.

(b) In industrial and gas manufacturing plants, discharge pipe from safety relief valves on pipe lines within a building shall discharge vertically upward and shall be piped to a point outside a building.

(c) Safety relief device discharge terminals shall be so located as to provide protection against physical damage and such discharge pipes shall be fitted with loose raincaps. Return bends and restrictive pipefittings shall not be permitted.

(d) If desired, discharge lines from two or more safety relief devices located on the same unit, or similar lines from two or more different units, may be run into a common discharge header, provided that the cross-sectional area of such header be at least equal to the sum of the cross-sectional area of the individual discharge lines, and that the setting of safety relief valves are the same.

(e) Each storage container of over 2,000 gallons water capacity shall be provided with a suitable pressure gage.

(f) A final stage regulator of an LP-Gas system (excluding any appliance regulator) shall be equipped on the low-pressure side with a relief valve which is set to start to discharge within the limits specified in Table H-30.

(g) When a regulator or pressure relief valve is installed inside a building, the relief valve and the space above the regulator and relief valve diaphragms shall be vented to the outside air with the discharge outlet located not less than 3 feet horizontally away from any opening into the building which is below such discharge. (These provisions do not apply to individual appliance regulators when protection is otherwise provided.

In buildings devoted exclusively to gas distribution purposes, the space above the diaphragm need not be vented to the outside.)

(ii) Safety devices for aboveground containers shall be provided as follows:

(a) Containers of 1,200 gallons water capacity or less which may contain liquid fuel when installed above ground shall have the rate of discharge required by paragraph (b)(10)(ii) of this section provided by a spring-loaded relief valve or valves. In addition to the required spring-loaded relief valve(s), suitable fuse plug(s) may be used provided the total discharge area of the fuse plug(s) for each container does not exceed 0.25 square inch.

(b) The fusible metal of the fuse plugs shall have a yield temperature of 208° F. minimum and 220° F. maximum. Relief valves and fuse plugs shall have direct communication with the vapor space of the container.

(c) On a container having a water capacity greater than 125 gallons, but not over 2,000 gallons, the discharge from the safety relief valves shall be vented away from the container vertically upwards and unobstructed to the open air in such a manner as to prevent any impingement of escaping gas upon the container; loose-fitting rain caps shall be used. Suitable provision shall be made for draining condensate which may accumulate in the relief valve or its discharge pipe.

(d) On containers of 125 gallons water capacity or less, the discharge from safety relief devices shall be located not less than 5 feet horizontally away from any opening into the building below the level of such discharge.

(e) On a container having a water capacity greater than 2,000 gallons, the discharge from the safety relief valves shall be vented away from the container vertically upwards to a point at least 7 feet above the container, and unobstructed to the open air in such a manner as to prevent any impingement of escaping gas upon the container; loose-fitting rain caps shall be used. Suitable provision shall be made so that any liquid or condensate that may accumulate inside of the safety relief valve or its discharge pipe will not render the valve inoperative. If a drain is used, a means shall be provided to protect the container, adjacent containers, piping, or equipment against impingement of flame resulting from ignition of product escaping from the drain.

(iii) On all containers which are installed underground and which contain no liquid fuel until buried and covered, the rate of discharge of the spring-loaded relief valve installed thereon may be reduced to a minimum of 30 percent of the rate of discharge specified in paragraph (b)(10)(ii) of this section. Containers so protected shall not be uncovered after installation until the liquid fuel has been removed therefrom. Containers which may contain liquid fuel before being installed underground and before being completely covered with earth are to be considered aboveground containers when determining the rate of discharge requirement of the relief valves.

(iv) On underground containers of more than 2,000 gallons water capacity, the discharge from safety relief devices shall be piped vertically and directly upward to a point at least 7 feet above the ground.

Where there is a probability of the manhole or housing becoming flooded, the discharge from regulator vent lines shall be above the highest probable water level. All manholes or housings shall be provided with ventilated louvers or their equivalent, the area of such openings equaling or exceeding the combined discharge areas of the safety relief valves and other vent lines which discharge their content into the manhole housing.

(v) Safety devices for vaporizers shall be provided as follows:

(a) Vaporizers of less than 1 quart total capacity, heated by the ground or the surrounding air, need not be equipped with safety relief valves provided that adequate tests certified by any of the authorities referred to in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, demonstrate that the assembly is safe without safety relief valves.

(b) No vaporizer shall be equipped with fusible plugs.

(c) In industrial and gas manufacturing plants, safety relief valves on vaporizers within a building shall be piped to a point outside the building and be discharged upward.

(5) Reinstallation of containers. Containers may be reinstalled if they do not show any evidence of harmful external corrosion or other damage. Where containers are reinstalled underground, the corrosion resistant coating shall be put in good condition (see subparagraph (7)(vi) of this paragraph). Where containers are reinstalled aboveground, the safety devices and gaging devices shall comply with subparagraph (4) of this paragraph and paragraph (b)(19) of this section respectively for aboveground containers.

(6) Capacity of containers. A storage container shall not exceed 90,000 gallons water capacity.

(7) Installation of storage containers.

(i) Containers installed above ground, except as provided in subdivision (vii) of this subparagraph, shall be provided with substantial masonry or noncombustible structural supports on firm masonry foundation.

(ii) Aboveground containers shall be supported as follows:

(a) Horizontal containers shall be mounted on saddles in such a manner as to permit expansion and contraction. Structural metal supports may be employed when they are protected against fire in an approved manner. Suitable means of preventing corrosion shall be provided on that portion of the container in contact with the foundations or saddles.

(b) Containers of 2,000 gallons water capacity or less may be installed with nonfireproofed ferrous metal supports if mounted on concrete pads or footings, and if the distance from the outside bottom of the container shell to the concrete pad, footing, or the ground does not exceed 24 inches.

(iii) Any container may be installed with nonfireproofed ferrous metal supports if mounted on concrete pads or footings, and if the distance from the outside bottom of the container to the ground does not exceed 5 feet, provided the container is in an isolated location.

(iv) Containers may be partially buried providing the following requirements are met:

(a) The portion of the container below the surface and for a vertical distance not less than 3 inches above the surface of the ground is protected to resist corrosion, and the container is protected against settling and corrosion as required for fully buried containers.

(b) Spacing requirements shall be as specified for underground tanks in paragraph (b)(6)(ii) of this section.

(c) Relief valve capacity shall be as required for aboveground containers.

(d) Container is located so as not to be subject to vehicular damage, or is adequately protected against such damage.

(e) Filling densities shall be as required for above-ground containers.

(v) Containers buried underground shall be placed so that the top of the container is not less than 6 inches below grade. Where an underground container might be subject to abrasive action or physical damage due to vehicular traffic or other causes, then it shall be:

(a) Placed not less than 2 feet below grade, or

(b) Otherwise protected against such physical damage.

It will not be necessary to cover the portion of the container to which manhole and other connections are affixed; however, where necessary, protection shall be provided against vehicular damage. When necessary to prevent floating, containers shall be securely anchored or weighted.

(vi)

(a) Containers shall be given a protective coating before being placed under ground. This coating shall be equivalent to hot-dip galvanizing or to two coatings of red lead followed by a heavy coating of coal tar or asphalt. In lowering the container into place, care shall be exercised to prevent damage to the coating. Any damage to the coating shall be repaired before backfilliing.

(b) Containers shall be set on a firm foundation (firm earth may be used) and surrounded with earth or sand firmly tamped in place.

(vii) Containers with foundations attached (portable or semiportable containers with suitable steel "runners" or "skids" and popularly known in the industry as "skid tanks") shall be designed, installed, and used in accordance with these rules subject to the following provisions:

(a) If they are to be used at a given general location for a temporary period not to exceed 6 months they need not have fire-resisting foundations or saddles but shall have adequate ferrous metal supports.

(b) They shall not be located with the outside bottom of the container shell more than 5 feet above the surface of the ground unless fire-resisting supports are provided.

(c) The bottom of the skids shall not be less than 2 inches or more than 12 inches below the outside bottom of the container shell.

(d) Flanges, nozzles, valves, fittings, and the like, having communication with the interior of the container, shall be protected against physical damage.

(e) When not permanently located on fire-resisting foundations, piping connections shall be sufficiently flexible to minimize the possibility of breakage or leakage of connections if the container settles, moves, or is otherwise displaced.

(f) Skids, or lugs for attachment of skids, shall be secured to the container in accordance with the code or rules under which the container is designed and built (with a minimum factor of safety of four) to withstand loading in any direction equal to four times the weight of the container and attachments when filled to the maximum permissible loaded weight.

(viii) Field welding where necessary shall be made only on saddle plates or brackets which were applied by the manufacturer of the tank.

(ix) For aboveground containers, secure anchorage or adequate pier height shall be provided against possible container flotation wherever sufficiently high floodwater might occur.

(x) When permanently installed containers are interconnected, provision shall be made to compensate for expansion, contraction, vibration, and settling of containers, and interconnecting piping. Where flexible connections are used, they shall be of an approved type and shall be designed for a bursting pressure of not less than five times the vapor pressure of the product at 100° F. The use of nonmetallic hose is prohibited for permanently interconnecting such containers.

(xi) Container assemblies listed for interchangeable installation above ground or under ground shall conform to the requirements for aboveground installations with respect to safety relief capacity and filling density. For installation above ground all other requirements for aboveground installations shall apply. For installation under ground all other requirements for underground installations shall apply.

(8) Protection of container accessories.

(i) Valves, regulating, gaging, and other container accessory equipment shall be protected against tampering and physical damage. Such accessories shall also be so protected during the transit of containers intended for installation underground.

(ii) On underground or combination aboveground-underground containers, the service valve handwheel, the terminal for connecting the hose, and the opening through which there can be a flow from safety relief valves shall be at least 4 inches above the container and this opening shall be located in the dome or housing. Underground systems shall be so installed that all the above openings, including the regulator vent, are located above the normal maximum water table.

(iii) All connections to underground containers shall be located within a substantial dome, housing, or manhole and with access thereto protected by a substantial cover.

(9) Drips for condensed gas. Where vaporized gas on the low-pressure side of the system may condense to a liquid at normal operating temperatures and pressures, suitable means shall be provided for revaporization of the condensate.

(10) Damage from vehicles. When damage to LP-Gas systems from vehicular traffic is a possibility, precautions against such damage shall be taken.

(11) Drains. No drains or blowoff lines shall be directed into or in proximity to sewer systems used for other purposes.

(12) General provisions applicable to systems in industrial plants (of 2,000 gallons water capacity and more) and to bulk filling plants.

(i) When standard watch service is provided, it shall be extended to the LP-Gas installation and personnel properly trained

(ii) If loading and unloading are normally done during other than daylight hours, adequate lights shall be provided to illuminate storage containers, control valves, and other equipment.

(iii) Suitable roadways or means of access for extinguishing equipment such as wheeled extinguishers or fire department apparatus shall be provided.

(iv) To minimize trespassing or tampering, the area which includes container appurtenances, pumping equipment, loading and unloading facilities, and cylinder-filling facilities shall be enclosed with at least a 6-foot-high industrial type fence unless otherwise adequately protected. There shall be at least two means of emergency access.

(13) Container-charging plants.

(i) The container-charging room shall be located not less than:

(a) Ten feet from bulk storage containers.

(ii) Tank truck filling station outlets shall be located not less than:

(a) Revoked

(b) Ten feet from pumps and compressors if housed in one or more separate buildings.

(iii) The pumps or compressors may be located in the container-charging room or building, in a separate building, or outside of buildings. When housed in a separate building, such building (a small noncombustible weather cover is not to be construed as a building) shall be located not less than:

(a) Ten feet from bulk storage tanks.

(b) Revoked

(c) Twenty-five feet from sources of ignition.

(iv) When a part of the container-charging building is to be used for a boiler room or where open flames or similar sources of ignition exist or are employed, the space to be so occupied shall be separated from container charging room by a partition wall or walls of fire-resistant construction continuous from floor to roof or ceiling. Such separation walls shall be without openings and shall be joined to the floor, other walls, and ceiling or roof in a manner to effect a permanent gastight joint.

(v) Electrical equipment and installations shall conform with paragraphs (b)(17) and (18) of this section.

(14) Fire protection.

(i) Each bulk plant shall be provided with at least one approved portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 12–B, C.

(ii) In industrial installations involving containers of 150,000 gallons aggregate water capacity or more, provision shall be made for an adequate supply of water at the container site for fire protection in the container area, unless other adequate means for fire control are provided. Water hydrants shall be readily accessible and so spaced as to provide water protection for all containers. Sufficient lengths of firehose shall be provided at each hydrant location on a hose cart, or other means provided to facilitate easy movement of the hose in the container area. It is desirable to equip the outlet of each hose line with a combination fog nozzle. A shelter shall be provided to protect the hose and its conveyor from the weather.

(15) Painting. Revoked

(16) Lighting. Electrical equipment and installations shall conform to paragraphs (b)(17) and (18) of this section.

(17) Vaporizers for internal combustion engines. The provisions of paragraph (e)(8) of this section shall apply.

(18) Gas regulating and mixing equipment for internal combustion engines. The provisions of paragraph (e)(9) of this section shall apply.

(e) Liquefied petroleum gas as a motor fuel.

(1) Application.

(i) This paragraph applies to internal combustion engines, fuel containers, and pertinent equipment for the use of liquefied petroleum gases as a motor fuel on easily movable, readily portable units including self-propelled vehicles.

(ii) Fuel containers and pertinent equipment for internal combustion engines using liquefied petroleum gas where installation is of the stationary type are covered by paragraph (d) of this section. This paragraph does not apply to containers for transportation of liquefied petroleum gases nor to marine fuel use. All requirements of paragraph (b) of this section apply to this paragraph, unless otherwise noted in paragraph (b) of this section.

(2) General.

(i) Fuel may be used from the cargo tank of a truck while in transit, but not from cargo tanks on trailers or semitrailers. The use of fuel from the cargo tanks to operate stationary engines is permitted providing wheels are securely blocked.

(ii) Passenger-carrying vehicles shall not be fueled while passengers are on board.

(iii) Industrial trucks (including lift trucks) equipped with permanently mounted fuel containers shall be charged outdoors. Charging equipment shall comply with the provisions of paragraph (h) of this section.

(iv) LP-Gas fueled industrial trucks shall comply with the Standard for Type Designations, Areas of Use, Maintenance and Operation of Powered Industrial Trucks, NFPA 505–1969.

(v) Engines on vehicles shall be shut down while fueling if the fueling operation involves venting to the atmosphere.

(3) Design pressure and classification of fuel containers.

(i) Except as covered in subdivisions (ii) and (iii) of this subparagraph, containers shall be in accordance with Table H–32.

(ii) Fuel containers for use in industrial trucks (including lift trucks) shall be either DOT containers authorized for LP-Gas service having a minimum service pressure of 240 p.s.i.g. or minimum Container Type 250. Under 1950 and later ASME codes, this means a 312.5-p.s.i.g. design pressure container.

(iii) Containers manufactured and maintained under DOT specifications and regulations may be used as fuel containers. When so used they shall conform to all requirements of this paragraph.

TABLE H-32

Container type	For gases with vapor press. not to exceed lb. per sq. in. gage at 100° F. (37.8 C.)	Minimum design pressure of container lb. per sq. in. gage	
		1949 and earlier editions of ASME Code (Par. U–68, U–69)	1949 edition of ASME Code (Par. U–200, U–201); 1950, 1952, 1956, 1959, 1962, 1965, and 1968 (Division I) editions of ASME Code; All editions of API-ASME Code[2]
[1] 200	215	200	250

[1] Container type may be increased by increments of 25. The minimum design pressure of containers shall be 100% of the container type designation when constructed under 1949 or earlier editions of the ASME Code (Par. U–68 and U–69). The minimum design pressure of containers shall be 125% of the container type designation when constructed under: (1) the 1949 ASME Code (Par. U–200 and U–201), (2) 1950, 1952, 1956, 1959, 1962, 1965, and 1968 (Division I) editions of the ASME Code, and (3) all editions of the API-ASME Code.

[2] Construction of containers under the API-ASME Code is not authorized after July 1, 1961.

(iv) All container inlets and outlets except safety relief valves and gaging devices shall be labeled to designate whether they communicate with vapor or liquid space. Labels may be on valves.

(4) Installation of fuel containers.

(i) Containers shall be located in a place and in a manner to minimize the possibility of damage to the container. Containers located in the rear of trucks and buses, when protected by substantial bumpers, will be considered in conformance with this requirement. Fuel containers on passenger-carrying vehicles shall be installed as far from the engine as is practicable, and the passenger space and any space containing radio equipment shall be sealed from the container space to prevent direct seepage of gas to these spaces. The container compartment shall be vented to the outside. In case the fuel container is mounted near the engine or the exhaust system, the container shall be shielded against direct heat radiation.

(ii) Containers shall be installed with as much clearance as practicable but never less than the minimum road clearance of the vehicle under maximum spring deflection. This minimum clearance shall be to the bottom of the container or to the lowest fitting on the container or housing, whichever is lower.

(iii) Permanent and removable fuel containers shall be securely mounted to prevent jarring loose, slipping, or rotating, and the fastenings shall be designed and constructed to withstand static loading in any direction equal to twice the weight of the tank and attachments when filled with fuel using a safety factor of not less than four based on the ultimate strength of the material to be used. Field welding, when necessary, shall be made only on saddle plates, lugs or brackets, originally attached to the container by the tank manufacturer.

(iv) Fuel containers on buses shall be permanently installed.

(v) Containers from which vapor only is to be withdrawn shall be installed and equipped with suitable connections to minimize the accidental withdrawal of liquid.

(5) Valves and accessories.

(i) Container valves and accessories shall have a rated working pressure of at least 250 p.s.i.g., and shall be of a type suitable for liquefied petroleum gas service.

(ii) The filling connection shall be fitted with an approved double back-pressure check valve, or a positive shut-off in conjunction with an internal back-pressure check valve. On a removable container the filler valve may be a hand operated shutoff valve with an internal excess flow valve. Main shutoff valves on the container on liquid and vapor lines must be readily accessible.

(iii) With the exceptions of subdivision (iv)(*c*) of this subparagraph, filling connections equipped with approved automatic back-pressure check valves, and safety relief valves, all connections to containers having openings for the flow of gas in excess of a No. 54 drill size shall be equipped with approved automatic excess flow valves to prevent discharge of content in case connections are broken.

(iv) Liquid-level gaging devices:

(a) Variable liquid-level gages which require the venting of fuel to the atmosphere shall not be used on fuel containers of industrial trucks (including lift trucks).

(b) On portable containers that may be filled in the vertical and/or horizontal position, the fixed liquid-level gage must indicate maximum permitted filling level for both vertical and horizontal filling with the container oriented to place the safety relief valve in communication with the vapor space.

(c) In the case of containers used solely in farm tractor service, and charged at a point at least 50 feet from any important building, the fixed liquid-level gaging device may be so constructed that the outward flow of container content exceeds that passed by a No. 54 drill size opening, but in no case shall the flow exceed that passed by a No. 31 drill-size opening. An excess flow valve is not required. Fittings equipped with such restricted drill size opening and container on which they are used shall be marked to indicate the size of the opening.

(d) All valves and connections on containers shall be adequately protected to prevent damage due to accidental contact with stationary objects or from loose objects thrown up from the road, and all valves shall be safeguarded against damage due to collision, overturning or other accident. For farm tractors where parts of the vehicle provide such protection to valves and fittings, the foregoing requirements shall be considered fulfilled. However, on removable type containers the protection for the fittings shall be permanently attached to the container.

(e) When removable fuel containers are used, means shall be provided in the fuel system to minimize the escape of fuel when the containers are exchanged. This may be accomplished by either of the following methods:

(1) Using an approved automatic quick-closing coupling (a type closing in both directions when uncoupled) in the fuel line, or

(2) Closing the valve at the fuel container and allowing the engine to run until the fuel in the line is consumed.

(6) Piping—including pipe, tubing, and fittings.

(i) Pipe from fuel container to first-stage regulator shall be not less than schedule 80 wrought iron or steel (black or galvanized), brass or copper; or seamless copper, brass, or steel tubing. Steel tubing shall have a minimum wall thickness of 0.049 inch. Steel pipe or tubing shall be adequately protected against exterior corrosion. Copper tubing shall be types K or L or equivalent having a minimum wall thickness of 0.032 inch. Approved flexible connections may be used between container and regulator or between regulator and gas-air mixer within the limits of approval. The use of aluminum pipe or tubing is prohibited. In the case of removable containers an approved flexible connection shall be used between the container and the fuel line.

(ii) All piping shall be installed, braced, and supported so as to reduce to a minimum the possibility of vibration strains or wear.

(7) Safety devices.

(i) Spring-loaded internal type safety relief valves shall be used on all motor fuel containers.

(ii) The discharge outlet from safety relief valves shall be located on the outside of enclosed spaces and as far as practicable from possible sources of ignition, and vented upward within 45 degrees of the vertical in such a manner as to prevent impingement of escaping gas upon containers, or parts of vehicles, or on vehicles in adjacent lines of traffic. A rain cap or other protector shall be used to keep water and dirt from collecting in the valve.

(iii) When a discharge line from the container safety relief valve is used, the line shall be metallic, other than aluminum, and shall be sized, located, and maintained so as not to restrict the required flow of gas from the safety relief valve. Such discharge line shall be able to withstand the pressure resulting from the discharge of vapor when the safety relief valve is in the full open position. When flexibility is necessary, flexible metal hose or tubing shall be used.

(iv) Portable containers equipped for volumetric filling may be filled in either the vertical or horizontal position only when oriented to place the safety relief valve in communication with the vapor space.

(v) Paragraph (b)(10)(xii) of this section for hydrostatic relief valves shall apply.

(8) Vaporizers.

(i) Vaporizers and any part thereof and other devices that may be subjected to container pressure shall have a design pressure of at least 250 p.s.i.g.

(ii) Each vaporizer shall have a valve or suitable plug which will permit substantially complete draining of the vaporizer. It shall be located at or near the lowest portion of the section occupied by the water or other heating medium.

(iii) Vaporizers shall be securely fastened so as to minimize the possibility of becoming loosened.

(iv) Each vaporizer shall be permanently marked at a visible point as follows:

(a) With the design pressure of the fuel-containing portion in p.s.i.g.

(b) With the water capacity of the fuel-containing portion of the vaporizer in pounds.

(v) Devices to supply heat directly to a fuel container shall be equipped with an automatic device to cut off the supply of heat before the pressure inside the fuel container reaches 80 percent of the start to discharge pressure setting of the safety relief device on the fuel container.

(vi) Engine exhaust gases may be used as a direct source of heat supply for the vaporization of fuel if the materials of construction of those parts of the vaporizer in contact with exhaust gases are resistant to the corrosive action of exhaust gases and the vaporizer system is designed to prevent excessive pressures.

(vii) Vaporizers shall not be equipped with fusible plugs.

(9) Gas regulating and mixing equipment.

(i) Approved automatic pressure reducing equipment shall be installed in a secure manner between the fuel supply container and gas-air mixer for the purpose of reducing the pressure of the fuel delivered to the gas-air mixer.

(ii) An approved automatic shutoff valve shall be provided in the fuel system at some point ahead of the inlet of the gas-air mixer, designed to prevent flow of fuel to the mixer when the ignition is off and the engine is not running. In the case of industrial trucks and engines operating in buildings other than those used exclusively to house engines, the automatic shutoff valve shall be designed to operate if the engine should stop. Atmospheric type regulators (zero governors) shall be considered adequate as an automatic shutoff valve only in cases of outdoor operation such as farm tractors, construction equipment, irrigation pump engines, and other outdoor stationary engine installations.

(iii) The sources of the air for combustion shall be completely isolated from the passenger compartment, ventilating system, or air-conditioning system.

(10) Capacity of containers. No single fuel container used on passenger carrying vehicles shall exceed 200 gallons water capacity. No single fuel container on other vehicles normally operating on the highway shall exceed 300 gallons water capacity except as provided in subparagraph (2)(i) of this paragraph.

(11) Stationary engines in buildings. Stationary engines and gas turbines installed in buildings, including portable engines used instead of or to supplement stationary engines, shall comply with the Standard for the Institution and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines, NFPA 37-1970, and the appropriate provisions of paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section.

(12) Portable engines in buildings.

(i) Portable engines may be used in buildings only for emergency use, except as provided by subparagraph (11) of this paragraph.

(ii) Exhaust gases shall be discharged to outside the building or to an area where they will not constitute a hazard.

(iii) Provision shall be made to supply sufficient air for combustion and cooling.

(iv) An approved automatic shutoff valve shall be provided in the fuel system ahead of the engine, designed to prevent flow of fuel to the engine when the ignition is off or if the engine should stop.

(v) The capacity of LP-Gas containers used with such engines shall comply with the applicable occupancy provision of paragraph (c)(5) of this section.

(13) Industrial trucks inside buildings.

(i) LP-Gas-fueled industrial trucks are permitted to be used in buildings and structures.

(ii) No more than two LP-Gas containers shall be used on an industrial truck for motor fuel purposes.

(iii) Revoked

(iv) Revoked

(v) Industrial trucks shall not be parked and left unattended in areas of possible excessive heat or sources of ignition.

(14) Garaging LP-Gas-fueled vehicles.

(i) LP-Gas-fueled vehicles may be stored or serviced inside garages provided there are no leaks in the fuel system and the fuel tanks are not filled beyond the maximum filling capacity specified in paragraph (b)(12)(i) of this section.

(ii) LP-Gas-fueled vehicles being repaired in garages shall have the container shutoff valve closed except when fuel is required for engine operation.

(iii) Such vehicles shall not be parked near sources of heat, open flames, or similar sources of ignition or near open pits unless such pits are adequately ventilated.

(f) Storage of containers awaiting use or resale.

(1) Application. This paragraph shall apply to the storage of portable containers not in excess of 1,000 pounds water capacity, filled or partially filled, at user location but not connected for use, or in storage for resale by dealers or resellers. This paragraph shall not apply to containers stored at charging plants or at plants devoted primarily to the storage and distribution of LP-Gas or other petroleum products.

(2) General.

(i) Containers in storage shall be located so as to minimize exposure to excessive temperature rise, physical damage, or tampering by unauthorized persons.

(ii) Containers when stored inside shall not be located near exits, stairways, or in areas normally used or intended for the safe exit of people.

(iii) Container valves shall be protected while in storage as follows:

(a) By setting into recess of container to prevent the possibility of their being struck if the container is dropped upon a flat surface, or

(b) By ventilated cap or collar, fastened to container capable of withstanding blow from any direction equivalent to that of a 30-pound weight dropped 4 feet. Construction must be such that a blow will not be transmitted to a valve or other connection.

(iv) The outlet valves of containers in storage shall be closed.

(v) Empty containers which have been in LP-Gas service when stored inside, shall be considered as full containers for the purpose of determining the maximum quantity of LP-Gas permitted by this paragraph.

(3) Storage within buildings frequented by the public. Revoked

(4) Storage within buildings not frequented by the public (such as industrial buildings).

(i) The quantity of LP-Gas stored shall not exceed 300 pounds (approximately 2,550 cubic feet in vapor form) except as provided in subparagraph (5) of this paragraph.

(ii) Containers carried as a part of service equipment on highway mobile vehicles are not to be considered in the total storage capacity in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph provided such vehicles are stored in private garages, and are limited to one container per vehicle with an LP-Gas capacity of not more than 100 pounds. All container valves shall be closed.

(5) Storage within special buildings or rooms.

(i) The quantity of LP-Gas stored in special buildings or rooms shall not exceed 10,000 pounds.

(ii) The walls, floors, and ceilings of container storage rooms that are within or adjacent to other parts of the building shall be constructed of material having at least a 2-hour fire resistance rating.

(iii) A portion of the exterior walls or roof having an area not less than 10 percent of that of the combined area of the enclosing walls and roof shall be of explosion relieving construction.

[39 F.R. 9957, March 15, 1974.]

(iv) Each opening from such storage rooms to other parts of the building shall be protected by a 1½ hour (B) fire door listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(v) Such rooms shall have no open flames for heating or lighting.

(vi) Such rooms shall be adequately ventilated both top and bottom to the outside only. The openings from such vents shall be at least 5 feet away from any other opening into any building.

(vii) The floors of such rooms shall not be below ground level. Any space below the floor shall be of solid fill or properly ventilated to the open air.

(viii) Such storage rooms shall not be located adjoining the line of property occupied by schools, churches, hospitals, athletic fields or other points of public gathering.

(ix) Fixed electrical equipment shall be installed in accordance with paragraph (b)(18) of this section.

(6) Storage outside of buildings.

(i) Storage outside of buildings, for containers awaiting use or resale, shall be located in accordance with Table H-33 with respect to:

(a) the nearest important building or group of buildings;

(b) Revoked

(c) busy thoroughfares;

(ii) Containers shall be in a suitable enclosure or otherwise protected against tampering.

TABLE H-33

Quantity of LP-Gas Stored:	*Distance*
500 pounds or less	0
501 to 2,500 pounds	0*
2,501 to 6,000 pounds	10 feet
6,001 to 10,000 pounds	20 feet
Over 10,000 pounds	25 feet

*Container or containers shall be at least 10 feet from any building on adjoining property, any sidewalk, or any of the exposures described in § 1910.110(f)(6)(i) (*c*) or (*d*) of this paragraph.

(7) Fire protection. Storage locations other than supply depots separated and located apart from dealer, reseller, or user establishments shall be provided with at least one approved portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 8–B, C.

(g) LP-Gas system installations on commercial vehicles.

(1) Application. This paragraph applies to LP-Gas-system installations on vehicles (whether self-propelled or of the trailer or semitrailer type) used for commercial, construction, to all exchangeable container systems with container capacities greater than 105 pounds water capacity (approximately 45 pounds LP-Gas capacity) and to systems using containers permanently mounted on vehicles. It does not apply to LP-Gas motor fuel systems covered by paragraph (e) of this section. Paragraph (b) of this section applies to this paragraph unless otherwise noted. When such a vehicle is permanently parked, and LP-Gas is supplied from a system not mounted on and secured to the unit, paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section shall apply.

(2) Construction and marking of containers. Containers shall be constructed in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this section, and marked in accordance with the applicable requirements of paragraph (b)(5) of this section, and shall also meet the following:

(i) Containers designed for use as portable cylinders shall be constructed in accordance with DOT specifications, and in accordance with paragraph (b)(3)(v) of this section; where applicable.

(ii) All other containers whether designed for permanent mounting, or for portable or semiportable use (such as skid tanks), shall be constructed as provided for by paragraphs (b)(3)(i) and (iv) of this section. Mounting, securing, and protection of such containers shall be as in subdivisions (iii) and (iv) of this subparagraph.

(iii) Permanently installed containers shall meet the requirements of subdivision (*a*) of this subdivision with regard to container valves and accessories, and subdivision (*b*) of this subdivision as to mounting.

(a)

(1) Nonrecessed container fittings and appurtenances shall be protected against damage by either:

(i) Their location.

(ii) The vehicle frame or bumper, or

(iii) A protective housing. The protective housing, if used, shall comply with the requirements under which the tanks are fabricated with respect to design and construction and shall be designed to withstand static loadings in any direction equal to twice the weight of the tank and attachments when filled with the lading using a safety factor of not less than four, based on the ultimate strength of the material to be used. The housing shall be provided with a weather cover if necessary to insure proper operation of valves and safety devices.

(2) Manually operated shutoff valves, except as covered in paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section, or self-closing internal valves shall be closed except during transfer operations.

(b)

(1) Tank motor vehicles with frames not made integral with the tank, as by welding, shall be provided with turnbuckles or similar positive devices for drawing the tank down tight on the frame. In addition, suitable stops or anchors shall be attached to the frame and/or the tank to prevent relative motion between them due to starting, stopping, and turning. The stops and anchors shall be so installed as to be readily accessible for inspection and maintenance.

(2) Any tank motor vehicle designed and constructed so that the cargo tank constitutes in whole or in part the stress member used in lieu of a frame shall be supported by external cradles subtending at least 120 degrees of the shell circumference. The design calculations shall include beam stress, shear stress, torsion stress, bending moment, and acceleration stress for the cargo tank as a whole using a factor of safety of four, based on the ultimate tensile strength of the material. Maximum concentrated stresses which might be created at pads and cradles due to shear, bending, and torsion shall also be calculated in accordance with Appendix G of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Unfired Pressure Vessel Code, 1968. Fully loaded vehicles shall be assumed to be operating under highway conditions equal to two "g" loading. The effects of fatigue shall be taken into consideration. Cargo tanks mounted on frames may be supported by longitudinal members attached to pads providing the above-stated factors are taken into account.

(3) Where any tank support is attached to any part of a tank head, the stresses imposed upon the head shall be provided for as required in (2) of this subdivision.

(4) Tank supports, stops, anchors, and bumpers shall not be welded directly to the tank but shall be attached by means of pads of the same material as the tank. The pad thickness shall be not less than one-fourth inch, or the thickness of the shell material if less, and no greater than the shell material. Each pad shall extend at least four times its thickness, in each direction, beyond the weld attaching the support, bumper, stop, or anchor. Each pad shall be preformed to an inside radius no greater than the outside radius of the tank at the place of attachment. Each pad corner shall be rounded to a radius at least one-fourth the width of the pad, and no greater than one-half the width of the pad. Weepholes and telltale holes, if used, shall be drilled or punched before the pads are attached to the tank. Each pad shall be attached to the tank by continuous fillet welding using filler material having properties conforming to the recommendations of the maker of the shell and head material.

(iv) Portable or semiportable containers (skid tanks as covered by paragraph (d)(7)(vii) of this section) shall meet the applicable requirements of *(a)* to *(f)* of this subdivision inclusive with regard to container valves and accessories and paragraph (e)(4)(iii) of this section as to mounting. Containers designed for permanent installation as part of systems under paragraph (d) of this section shall not be used.

(a) Nonrecessed container fittings and appurtenances shall be protected against damage by either—

(1) Their location.

(2) The vehicle frame or bumper, or

(3) A protective housing. The protective housing, if used, shall comply with the requirements under which the tanks are fabricated with respect to design and construction and shall be designed to withstand static loadings in any direction equal to twice the weight of the tank and attachments when filled with the lading using a safety factor of not less than four, based on the ultimate strength of the material to be used. The housing shall be provided with a weather cover if necessary to insure proper operation of valves and safety devices.

(b) Filling connections shall be provided with approved automatic back pressure check valves, excess flow check valves or quick closing internal valves to prevent excessive escape of gas in case the filling connection is broken, except that where the filling and discharge connect on a common opening in the container shell, and that opening is fitted with a quick-closing internal valve as specified in subdivision (*c*) of this subdivision, the automatic valve shall not be required. In addition every inlet and outlet connection shall be equipped with a manually or automatically operated shutoff valve. Liquid discharge openings, except those for engine fuel lines, on tanks built after September 1, 1965, shall be fitted with a remotely controlled internal shutoff valve. Such valve shall conform to the following requirements:

(*1*) The seat of the valve shall be inside the tank, or in the opening nozzle or flange, or in a companion flange bolted to the nozzle or flange.

(*2*) All parts of the valve inside the tank, nozzle, or companion flange shall be made of material not subject to corrosion or other deterioration in the presence of the lading.

(*3*) The arrangement of parts shall be such that damage to parts exterior to the tank will not prevent effective seating of the valve.

(*4*) The valve may be operated normally by mechanical means, by hydraulic means, or by air, or gas pressure.

(*5*) The valve shall be provided with remote means of automatic closure, both mechanical and thermal, in at least two places for tanks over 3,500 gallons water capacity. These remote control stations shall be located at each end of the tank and diagonally opposite each other. The thermal control mechanism shall have a fusible element with a melting point not over 220° F. or less than 208° F. At least one remote control station shall be provided for tanks of 3,500 gallons water capacity or less, and such actuating means may be mechanical.

(*c*) All other connections to containers, except those used for gaging devices, thermometer wells, safety relief devices, and plugged openings, shall be provided with suitable automatic excess flow valves, or in lieu thereof may be fitted with quick-closing internal valves.

The control mechanism for the internal valve shall be provided with a secondary control, remote from the fill or discharge connections (for use in the event of accidents or fire during delivery operations), and such control mechanism shall have a fusible element with a melting point not over 220° F. or less than 208°F.

(*d*) Manually operated shutoff valves, except as covered in paragraphs (e)(2)(i) of this section, or self-closing internal valves shall be closed except during transfer operations.

(*e*) Excess flow valves shall close automatically at the rated flow of vapor or liquid as specified by the valve manufacturers. The flow rating of the piping beyond the excess flow valve shall be greater than that of the excess flow valve and such rating shall include valves, fittings, and hose, except, when branching or necessary restrictions are incorporated in such a piping system so that flow ratings are less than that of the excess flow valve at the tank, then additional excess flow valves shall be installed in the piping where such flow rate is reduced.

(*f*) Container inlets and outlets, except those used for safety relief valves, liquid-level gaging devices, and pressure gages, shall be labeled to designate whether they communicate with vapor or liquid space when the container is filled to maximum permitted filling density. Labels may be on valves.

(3) Capacity of a system. No single fuel container used on passenger carrying vehicles shall exceed 200 gallons water capacity.

(4) Description of a system. A system consists of an assembly of equipment installed on a commercial vehicle.

(5) Location of containers and systems.

(i) Containers shall not be installed, transported, or stored (even temporarily) inside any vehicle covered by this paragraph except as provided by the applicable regulations of DOT.

(ii) Containers, control valves, and regulating equipment comprising a complete system shall be suitably protected against damage and weather. Systems may be installed in a recess vaportight to the inside of the vehicle and accessible from and vented to the outside.

(iii) Systems installed outside of mobile units shall be so located that discharge from safety relief devices shall be not less than 3 feet horizontally away from any opening into the unit below the level of such discharge. When the system is located in a recess vaportight to the inside vent openings in such recess shall be not less than 3 feet horizontally away from any opening into the mobile unit below the level of these vents.

(iv) There shall be no fuel connection between tractor and trailer or other vehicle units.

(v) The container or container carrier shall be secured in place by fastenings designed and constructed with a minimum safety factor of four to withstand loading in any direction equal to twice the weight of the container when filled to normal capacity with LP-Gas.

(6) Container valves and accessories. Container valves and accessories shall be provided, protected and mounted as follows:

(i) Systems utilizing DOT cylinders in accordance with paragraph (c)(6) of this section.

(ii) All other systems in accordance with paragraph (d)(3)(ii) through (vii) of this section.

(iii) Portable, semiportable and permanently mounted containers shall be mounted and protected as provided under subparagraph (2)(ii) through (iv) of this paragraph.

(7) Safety-relief devices.

(i) DOT containers shall be provided with safety-relief devices as required by the regulations of DOT.

(ii) ASME containers and API-ASME containers shall be provided with safety-relief devices as required by paragraph (b)(10) of this section.

(iii)

(a) A final stage regulator of an LP-Gas system (excluding any appliance regulator) shall be equipped on the low-pressure side with a relief valve which is set to start to discharge within the limits specified in Table H-30.

(b) The relief valve and space above the regulator and relief valve diaphragms shall be vented to the outside air and terminate at a position to minimize the possibility of vapors accumulating at sources of ignition.

(iv) Whenever equipment such as a cargo heater or cooler on commercial vehicles is a type designed to be in operation while in transit, suitable means to stop the flow such as an excess flow valve or other device, shall be installed. This device will be actuated to stop the flow in the event of a break in the fuel supply line. All excess flow valves shall comply with paragraph (b)(7)(iii) of this section.

(8) System design and line pressure. Systems may be of either vapor withdrawal or liquid withdrawal type and shall comply with the applicable requirements for the type of usage involved.

(9) System enclosure and mounting.

(i) Housing or enclosures shall be designed to provide proper ventilation.

(ii) Hoods, domes, or removable portions of cabinets shall be provided with means to keep them firmly in place during transit.

(iii) Provision shall be incorporated in the assembly to hold the containers firmly in position and prevent their movement during transit in accordance with paragraph (e)(4)(iii) of this section.

(iv) Containers shall be mounted on a substantial support or base secured firmly to the vehicle chassis. Neither the container nor its support shall extend below the frame.

(10) Piping—including pipe, tubing, and fittings.

(i) Regulators shall be connected directly to the container valve outlet or mounted securely by means of a support bracket and connected to the container valve or valves with a listed high pressure flexible connector.

(ii) Provision shall be made between the regulator outlet and the gas service lines by either a flexible connector or a tubing loop to provide for expansion, contraction, jarring, and vibration.

(iii) Pipe, tubing, and fittings shall conform to paragraph (b)(8) of this section except that the use of aluminum alloy piping is prohibited. Steel tubing shall have a minimum wall thickness of 0.049 inch. Steel piping or tubing shall be adequately protected against exterior corrosion.

(iv) Approved gas tubing fittings shall be employed for making tubing connections.

(v) The fuel line shall be firmly fastened in a protected location and where under the vehicle and outside and below any insulation or false bottom, fastenings shall be such as to prevent abrasion or damage to the gasline due to vibration. Where the fuel line passes through structural members or floors, a rubber grommet or equivalent shall be installed to prevent chafing.

(vi) The fuel line shall be installed to enter the vehicle through the floor directly beneath or adjacent to the appliance which it serves. When a branch line is required the tee connection shall be in the main fuel line and located under the floor and outside the vehicle.

(vii) All parts of the system assembly shall be so designed and secured as to preclude such parts working loose during transit.

(11) Appliances.

(i) LP-Gas appliances shall be approved for use on commercial vehicles.

(ii) In the case of vehicles not intended for human occupancy and where the gas-fired heating appliance is used to protect the cargo, such heater may be of the unvented type but provision shall be made to dispose of the products of combustion to the outside.

(iii) In the case of vehicles intended for human occupancy, all gas-fired heating appliances, including water heaters, shall be designed or installed to provide for complete separation of the combustion system from the atmosphere of the living space. Such appliances shall be installed with the combustion air inlet assembly furnished as a component of the appliance and, also, with either—

(a) The flue gas outlet assembly furnished as a component of the appliance, or

(b) A listed roof jack if the appliance is listed for such use.

The combustion air inlet assembly, flue gas outlet assembly, and roof jack shall extend to the outside atmosphere.

(iv) Provision shall be made to insure an adequate supply of outside air for combustion.

(v) All gas-fired heating appliances and water heaters shall be equipped with an approved automatic device designed to shut off the flow of gas to the main burner and to the pilot in the event the pilot flame is extinguished.

(vi) Gas-fired appliances installed in the cargo space shall be located so they are readily accessible.

(vii) Appliances shall be constructed or protected to reduce to a minimum possible damage or impaired operation resulting from cargo shifting or handling.

(viii) Appliances inside the vehicle shall be located so that a fire at an appliance will not block egress of persons therefrom.

(12) General precautions.

(i) DOT containers shall be marked, maintained, and requalified for use in accordance with the regulations of DOT.

(ii) Requalification of containers for continued service is the responsibility of the owner; containers shall be stamped with the date of requalification. When DOT cylinders are requalified by retesting, such retest shall be made in accordance with DOT regulations.

(iii) Containers shall not be charged with fuel unless they bear the proper markings of the code or specifications under which they were constructed, and in addition, with their water capacity. In the case of cylinders or portable containers filled by weight, the container shall be marked with its tareweight.

(iv) DOT containers which have been involved in a fire shall not be recharged until they have been requalified for service according to DOT regulations.

(v) American Petroleum Institute-American Society of Mechanical Engineers (API-ASME) containers or ASME containers which have been involved in a fire shall not be recharged until they have been retested in accordance with the requirements for their original hydrostatic test and found to be suitable for continued service.

(vi) Containers shall not be charged without the consent of the owner.

(vii) A permanent caution plate shall be provided on the appliance or adjacent to the container outside of any enclosure. It shall include the word "Caution" and following instructions, or instructions embodying substantially similar language.

(a) Be sure all appliance valves are closed before opening container valve.

(b) Connections at appliances, regulators, and containers must be checked periodically for leaks with soapy water or its equivalent.

(c) Never use a match or flame to check for leaks.

(d) Container valves must be closed when the equipment is not in use.

(13) Charging of containers. Containers shall be charged as provided in paragraph (b)(12) of this section.

(14) Fire extinguisher. Mobile cook-units shall be provided with at least one approved portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 8–B,C.

(h) Liquefied petroleum gas service stations.

(1) Application. This paragraph applies to storage containers, and dispensing devices, and pertinent equipment in service stations where LP-Gas is stored and is dispensed into fuel tanks of motor vehicles. See paragraph (e) of this section for requirements covering use of LP-Gas as a motor fuel. All requirements of paragraph (b) of this section apply to this paragraph unless otherwise noted.

(2) Design pressure and classification of storage containers. Storage containers shall be designed and classified in accordance with Table H–34.

TABLE H-34

Container type	For gases with vapor pressure not to exceed lb. per sq. in. gage of 100° F. (37.8 C.)	Minimum design pressure of container, lb. per sq. in. gage	
		1949 and earlier editions of ASME Code (Par. U-68, U-69)	1949 edition of ASME Code (Par. U-200, U-201); 1950, 1952 1956, 1959, 1962, 1965 and 1968 (Division 1) editions of ASME Code, all editions of API-ASME Code [2]
[1] 200	215	200	250

[1] Container type may be increased by increments of 25. The minimum design pressure of containers shall be 100 percent of the container type designation when constructed under 1949 or earlier editions of the ASME Code (Par. U-68 and U-69). The minimum design pressure of containers shall be 125 percent of the container type designation when constructed under: (1) the 1949 ASME Code (Paragraphs U-200 and U-201), (2) 1950, 1952, 1956, 1959, 1962, 1965, and 1968 (Division 1) editions of the, ASME Code, and (3) all editions of the API-ASME Code.

[2] Construction of containers under the API-ASME Code is not authorized after July 1, 1961.

(3) Container valves and accessories.

(i) A filling connection on the container shall be fitted with one of the following:

(a) A combination back-pressure check and excess flow valve.

(b) One double or two single back-pressure valves.

(c) A positive shutoff valve, in conjunction with either.

(1) An internal back-pressure valve, or

(2) An internal excess flow valve. In lieu of an excess flow valve, filling connections may be fitted with a quick-closing internal valve, which shall remain closed except during operating periods. The mechanism for such valves may be provided with a secondary control which will cause it to close automatically in case of fire. When a fusible plug is used its melting point shall not exceed 220° F.

(ii) A filling pipe inlet terminal not on the container shall be fitted with a positive shutoff valve in conjunction with either.

(a) A back pressure check valve, or

(b) An excess flow check valve.

(iii) All openings in the container except those listed below shall be equipped with approved excess flow check valves:

(a) Filling connections as provided in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph.

(b) Safety relief connections as provided in paragraph (b)(7)(ii) of this section.

(c) Liquid-level gaging devices as provided in paragraphs (b)(7)(iv) and (19)(iv) of this section.

(d) Pressure gage connections as provided in paragraph (b)(7)(v) of this section.

(iv) All container inlets and outlets except those listed below shall be labeled to designate whether they connect with vapor or liquid (labels may be on valves):

(a) Safety relief valves.

(b) Liquid-level gaging devices.

(c) Pressure gages.

(v) Each storage container shall be provided with a suitable pressure gage.

(4) Safety-relief valves.

(i) All safety-relief devices shall be installed as follows:

(a) On the container and directly connected with the vapor space.

(b) Safety-relief valves and discharge piping shall be protected against physical damage. The outlet shall be provided with loose-fitting rain caps. There shall be no return bends or restrictions in the discharge piping.

(c) The discharge from two or more safety relief valves having the same pressure settings may be run into a common discharge header. The cross-sectional area of such header shall be at least equal to the sum of the cross-sectional areas of the individual discharges.

(d) Discharge from any safety relief device shall not terminate in any building nor beneath any building.

(ii) Aboveground containers shall be provided with safety relief valves as follows:

(a) The rate of discharge, which may be provided by one or more valves, shall be not less than that specified in paragraph (b)(10)(ii) of this section.

(b) The discharge from safety relief valves shall be vented to the open air unobstructed and vertically upwards in such a manner as to prevent any impingement of escaping gas upon the container; loose-fitting rain caps shall be used. On a container having a water capacity greater than 2,000 gallons, the discharge from the safety relief valves shall be vented away from the container vertically upwards to a point at least 7 feet above the container. Suitable provisions shall be made so that any liquid or condensate that may accumulate inside of the relief valve or its discharge pipe will not render the valve inoperative. If a drain is used, a means shall be provided to protect the container, adjacent containers, piping, or equipment against impingement of flame resulting from ignition of the product escaping from the drain.

(iii) Underground containers shall be provided with safety relief valves as follows:

(a) The discharge from safety-relief valves shall be piped vertically upward to a point at least 10 feet above the ground. The discharge lines or pipes shall be adequately supported and protected against physical damage.

(b) Removed

(c) If no liquid is put into a container until after it is buried and covered, the rate of discharge of the relief valves may be reduced to not less than 30 percent of the rate shown in paragraph (b)(10)(ii) of this section. If liquid fuel is present during installation of containers, the rate of discharge shall be the same as for aboveground containers. Such containers shall not be uncovered until emptied of liquid fuel.

(5) Capacity of liquid containers. Individual liquid storage containers shall not exceed 30,000 gallons water capacity.

(6) Installation of storage containers.

(i)

(a) Each storage container used exclusively in service station operation shall comply with the following table which specifies minimum distances to a building, groups of buildings.

	Minimum distances	
Water capacity per container (gallons)	Above ground and underground (feet)	Between aboveground containers (feet)
Up to 2,000	25	3
Over 2,000	50	5

NOTE: The above distances may be reduced to not less than 10 feet for service station buildings of other than wood frame construction.

(b) Readily ignitible material including weeds and long dry grass, shall be removed within 10 feet of containers.

(c) The minimum separation between LP-Gas containers and flammable liquid tanks shall be 20 feet and the minimum separation between a container and the centerline of the dike shall be 10 feet.

(d) LP-Gas containers located near flammable liquid containers shall be protected against the flow or accumulation of flammable liquids by diking, diversion curbs, or grading.

(e) LP-Gas containers shall not be located within diked areas for flammable liquid containers.

(f) Field welding is permitted only on saddle plates or brackets which were applied by the container manufacturer.

(g) When permanently installed containers are interconnected, provision shall be made to compensate for expansion, contraction, vibration, and settling of containers and interconnecting piping. Where flexible connections are used, they shall be of an approved type and shall be designed for a bursting pressure of not less than five times the vapor pressure of the product at 100° F. The use of nonmetallic hose is prohibited for interconnecting such containers.

(h) Where high water table or flood conditions may be encountered protection against container flotation shall be provided.

(ii) Aboveground containers shall be installed in accordance with this subdivision.

(a) Containers may be installed horizontally or vertically.

(b) Containers shall be protected by crash rails or guards to prevent physical damage unless they are so protected by virtue of their location. Vehicles shall not be serviced within 10 feet of containers.

(c) Container foundations shall be of substantial masonry or other noncombustible material. Containers shall be mounted on saddles which shall permit expansion and contraction, and shall provide against the excessive concentration of stresses. Corrosion protection shall be provided for tank-mounting areas. Structural metal container supports shall be protected against fire. This protection is not required on prefabricated storage and pump assemblies, mounted on a common base, with container bottom not more than 24 inches above ground and whose water capacity is 2,000 gallons or less if the piping connected to the storage and pump assembly is sufficiently flexible to minimize the possibility of breakage or leakage in the event of failure of the container supports.

(iii) Underground containers shall be installed in accordance with this subdivision.

(a) Containers shall be given a protective coating before being placed under ground. This coating shall be equivalent to hot-dip galvanizing or to two coatings of red lead followed by a heavy coating of coal tar or asphalt. In lowering the container into place, care shall be exercised to minimize abrasion or other damage to the coating. Damage to the coating shall be repaired before backfilling.

(b) Containers shall be set on a firm foundation (firm earth may be used) and surrounded with earth or sand firmly tamped in place. Backfill should be free of rocks or other abrasive materials.

(c) A minimum of 2 feet of earth cover shall be provided. Where ground conditions make compliance with this requirement impractical, equivalent protection against physical damage shall be provided. The portion of the container to which manhole and other connections are attached need not be covered. If the location is subjected to vehicular traffic, containers shall be protected by a concrete slab or other cover adequate to prevent the weight of a loaded vehicle imposing concentrated direct loads on the container shell.

(7) Protection of container fittings. Valves, regulators, gages, and other container fittings shall be protected against tampering and physical damage.

(8) Transport truck unloading point.

(i) During unloading, the transport truck shall not be parked on public thoroughfares and shall be at least 5 feet from storage containers, and shall be positioned so that shutoff valves are readily accessible.

(ii) The filling pipe inlet terminal shall not be located within a building nor within 10 feet of any building or driveway. It shall be protected against physical damage.

(9) Piping, valves, and fittings.

(i) Piping may be underground, above ground, or a combination of both. It shall be well supported and protected against physical damage and corrosion.

(ii) Piping laid beneath driveways shall be installed to prevent physical damage by vehicles.

(iii) Piping shall be wrought iron or steel (black or galvanized), brass or copper pipe; or seamless copper, brass, or steel tubing and shall be suitable for a minimum pressure of 250 p.s.i.g. Pipe joints may be screwed, flanged, brazed, or welded. The use of aluminum alloy piping or tubing is prohibited.

(iv) All shutoff valves (liquid or gas) shall be suitable for liquefied petroleum gas service and designed for not less than the maximum pressure to which they may be subjected. Valves which may be subjected to container pressure shall have a rated working pressure of at least 250 p.s.i.g.

(v) All materials used for valve seats, packing, gaskets, diaphragms, etc., shall be resistant to the action of LP-Gas.

(vi) Fittings shall be steel, malleable iron, or brass having a minimum working pressure of 250 p.s.i.g. Cast iron pipe fittings, such as ells, tees, and unions shall not be used.

(vii) All piping shall be tested after assembly and proved free from leaks at not less than normal operating pressures.

(viii) Provision shall be made for expansion, contracting, jarring, and vibration, and for settling. This may be accomplished by flexible connections.

(10) Pumps and accessories. All pumps and accessory equipment shall be suitable for LP-Gas service, and designed for not less than the maximum pressure to which they may be subjected. Accessories shall have a minimum rated working pressure of 250 p.s.i.g. Positive displacement pumps shall be equipped with suitable pressure actuated bypass valves permitting flow from pump discharge to storage container or pump suction.

(11) Dispensing devices.

(i) Meters, vapor separators, valves, and fittings in the dispenser shall be suitable for LP-Gas service and shall be designed for a minimum working pressure of 250 p.s.i.g.

(ii) Provisions shall be made for venting LP-Gas contained in a dispensing device to a safe location.

(iii) Pumps used to transfer LP-Gas shall be equipped to allow control of the flow and to prevent leakage or accidental discharge. Means shall be provided outside the dispensing device to readily shut off the power in the event of fire or accident.

(iv) A manual shutoff valve and an excess flow check valve shall be installed downstream of the pump and ahead of the dispenser inlet.

(v)

(a) Dispensing hose shall be resistant to the action of LP-Gas in the liquid phase and designed for a minimum bursting pressure of 1,250 p.s.i.g.

(b) An excess flow check valve or automatic shutoff valve shall be installed at the terminus of the liquid line at the point of attachment of the dispensing hose.

(vi)

(a) LP-Gas dispensing devices shall be located not less than 10 feet from aboveground storage containers greater than 2,000 gallons water capacity. The dispensing devices shall not be less than 20 feet from any building (not including canopies), basement, cellar, pit, or line of adjoining property which may be built upon and not less than 10 feet from sidewalks, streets, or thoroughfares. No drains or blowoff lines shall be directed into or in proximity to the sewer systems used for other purposes.

(b) LP-Gas dispensing devices shall be installed on a concrete foundation or as part of a complete storage and dispensing assembly mounted on a common base, and shall be adequately protected from physical damage.

(c) LP-Gas dispensing devices shall not be installed within a building except that they may be located under a weather shelter or canopy provided this area is not enclosed on more than two sides. If the enclosing sides are adjacent to each other, the area shall be properly ventilated.

(vii) The dispensing of LP-Gas into the fuel container of a vehicle shall be performed by a competent attendant who shall remain at the LP-Gas dispenser during the entire transfer operation.

(12) Additional rules. There shall be no smoking on the driveway of service stations in the dispensing areas or transport truck unloading areas. Conspicuous signs prohibiting smoking shall be posted within sight of the customer being served. Letters on such signs shall be not less than 4 inches high. The motors of all vehicles being fueled shall be shut off during the fueling operations.

(13) Electrical. Electrical equipment and installations shall conform to paragraphs (b) (17) and (18) of this section.

(14) Fire protection. Each service station shall be provided with at least one approved portable fire extinguisher having at least an 8-B, C, rating.

(i) Scope.

(1) Application.

(i) Paragraph (b) of this section applies to installations made in accordance with the requirements of paragraphs (c), (d), (e), (g), and (h) of this section, except as noted in each of those paragraphs.

(ii) Paragraphs (c) through (h) of this section apply as provided in each of those paragraphs.

(2) Inapplicability. This section does not apply to:

(i) Marine and pipeline terminals, natural gas processing plants, refineries, or tank farms other than those at industrial sites.

(ii) LP-Gas refrigerated storage systems;

(iii) LP-Gas when used with oxygen. The requirements of § 1910.252 shall apply to such use;

(iv) LP-Gas when used in utility gas plants. The National Fire Protection Association Standard for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases at Utility Gas Plants, NFPA No. 59-1968, shall apply to such use;

(v) Low-pressure (not in excess of one-half pound per square inch or 14 inches water column) LP-Gas piping systems, and the installation and operation of residential and commercial appliances including their inlet connections, supplied through such systems. For such systems, the

National Fire Protection Association Standard for the Installation of Gas Appliances and Gas Piping, NFPA 54-1969 shall apply.

(3) Retroactivity. Unless otherwise stated, it is not intended that the provisions of this section be retroactive.

(i) Existing plants, appliances, equipment, buildings, structures, and installations for the storage, handling or use of LP-Gas, which were in compliance with the current provisions of the National Fire Protection Association Standard for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases NFPA No. 58, at the time of manufacture or installation may be continued in use, if such continued use does not constitute a recognized hazard that is causing or is likely to cause death or serious physical harm to employees.

(ii) Stocks of equipment and appliances on hand in such locations as manufacturers' storage, distribution warehouses, and dealers' storage and showrooms, which were in compliance with the current provisions of the National Fire Protection Association Standard for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases, NFPA No. 58, at the time of manufacture, may be placed in service, if such use does not constitute a recognized hazard that is causing or is likely to cause death or serious physical harm to employees.

1910.111—STORAGE AND HANDLING OF ANHYDROUS AMMONIA

(a) General.

(1) Scope.

(i) This standard is intended to apply to the design, construction, location, installation, and operation of anhydrous ammonia systems including refrigerated ammonia storage systems.

(ii) This standard does not apply to:

(a) Ammonia manufacturing plants.

(b) Refrigeration plants where ammonia is used solely as a refrigerant.

(2) Definitions. As used in this section.

(i) "Appurtenances"—All devices such as pumps, compressors, safety relief devices, liquid-level gaging devices, valves and pressure gages.

[38 F.R. 3598, February 8, 1973.]

(ii) "Cylinder"—A container of 1,000 pounds of water capacity or less constructed in accordance with Department of Transportation specifications.

(iii) "Code"—The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)—1968.

(iv) "Container"—Includes all vessels, tanks, cylinders, or spheres used for transportation, storage, or application of anhydrous ammonia.

(v) "DOT"—U.S. Department of Transportation.

(vi) "Design pressure" is identical to the term "Maximum Allowable Working Pressure" used in the Code.

(vii) "Farm vehicle" (implement of husbandry)—A vehicle for use on a farm on which is mounted a container of not over 1,200 gallons water capacity.

(viii) "Filling density"—the percent ratio of the weight of the gas in a container to the weight of water at 60 F. that the container will hold.

(ix) "Gas"—Anhydrous ammonia in either the gaseous or liquefied state.

(x) "Gas mask"—Gas masks approved by the Bureau of Mines, U.S. Department of the Interior.

(xi) "Capacity"—Total volume of the container in standard U.S. gallons.

(xii) DOT specifications—Regulations of the Department of Transportation published in 49 CFR Chapter I.

(b) Basic rules.

This paragraph applies to all paragraphs of this section unless otherwise noted.

(1) Approval of equipment and systems. Each appurtenance shall be approved in accordance with paragraph (b) (1) (i), (ii), (iii), or (iv) of this section.

(i) It was installed before February 8, 1973, and was approved, tested, and installed in accordance with either the provisions of the American National Standard for the Storage and Handling of Anhydrous Ammonia, K61.1, or the Fertilizer Institute Standards for the Storage and Handling of Agricultural Anhydrous Ammonia, M-1, in effect at the time of installation; or

(ii) It is accepted, or certified, or listed, or labeled, or otherwise determined to be safe by a nationally recognized testing laboratory; or

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(iii) It is a type which no nationally recognized testing laboratory does, or will undertake to, accept, certify, list, label, or determine to be safe; and such equipment is inspected or tested by any Federal, State, municipal, or other local authority responsible for enforcing occupational safety provisions of a Federal, State, municipal or other local law, code, or regulation pertaining to the storage, handling, transport, and use of anhydrous ammonia, and found to be in compliance with either the provisions of the American National Standard for the Storage and Handling of Anhydrous Ammonia, K61.1, or the Fertilizer Institute Standards for the Storage and Handling of Agricultural Anhydrous Ammonia, M-1, in effect at the time of installation; or

(vi) For the purposes of this paragraph (b)(1), refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(v) For the purposes of this paragraph (b)(1), the word "listed" means that equipment is of a kind mentioned in a list which is published by a nationally recognized laboratory which makes periodic inspection of the production of such equipment, and states such equipment meets nationally recognized standards or has been tested and found safe for use in a specified manner. "Labeled" means there is attached to it a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory which, makes periodic inspections of the production of such equipment, and whose labeling indicates compliance with nationally recognized standards or tests to determine safe use in a specified manner. "Certified" means it has been tested and found by a nationally recognized testing laboratory to meet nationally recognized standards or to be safe for use in a specified manner, or is of a kind whose production is periodically inspected by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and it bears a label, tag, or other record of certification.

[38 F.R. 3598, February 8, 1973.]

(2) Requirements for construction, original test and requalification of nonrefrigerated containers.

(i) Containers used with systems covered in paragraphs (c), (f), (g), and (h) of this section shall be constructed and tested in accordance with the Code except that construction under Table UW12 at a basic joint efficiency of under 80 percent is not authorized.

(ii) Containers built according to the Code do not have to comply with Paragraphs UG125 to UG128 inclusive, and Paragraphs UG132 and UG133 of the Code.

(iii) Containers exceeding 36 inches in diameter or 250 gallons water capacity shall be constructed to comply with one or more of the following:

(a) Containers shall be stress relieved after fabrication in accordance with the Code, or

(b) Cold-formed heads, when used, shall be stress relieved, or

(c) Hot-formed heads shall be used.

(iv) Welding to the shell, head, or any other part of the container subject to internal pressure shall be done in compliance with the Code. Other welding is permitted only on saddle plates, lugs, or brackets attached to the container by the container manufacturer.

(v) Containers used with systems covered in paragraph (e) of this section shall be constructed and tested in accordance with the DOT specifications.

(vi) The provisions of subdivision (i) of this subparagraph shall not be construed as prohibiting the continued use or reinstallation of containers constructed and maintained in accordance with the 1949, 1950, 1952, 1956, 1959, and 1962 editions of the Code or any revisions thereof in effect at the time of fabrication.

(3) Marking nonrefrigerated containers.

(i) System nameplates, when required, shall be permanently attached to the system so as to be readily accessible for inspection and shall include markings as prescribed in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph.

(ii) Each container or system covered in paragraphs (c), (f), (g), and (h) of this section shall be marked as specified in the following:

(a) With a notation "Anhydrous Ammonia."

(b) With a marking identifying compliance with the rules of the Code under which the container is constructed.

Under ground: Container and system nameplate
Above ground: Container.

(c) With a notation whether the system is designed for underground or aboveground installation or both.

(d) With the name and address of the supplier of the system or the trade name of the system and with the date of fabrication.

Under ground and above ground: System nameplate.

(e) With the water capacity of the container in pounds at 60° F. or gallons, U.S. Standard.

Under ground: Container and system nameplate.
Above ground: Container.

(f) With the design pressure in pounds per square inch.

Under ground: Container and system nameplate.
Above ground: Container.

(g) With the wall thickness of the shell and heads.

Under ground: Container and system nameplate.
Above ground: Container.

(h) With marking indicating the maximum level to which the container may be filled with liquid anhydrous ammonia at temperatures between 20° F. and 130° F. except on containers provided with fixed level indicators, such as fixed length dip tubes, or containers that are filled with weight. Markings shall be in increments of not more than 20° F.

Above ground and under ground: System nameplate or on liquid-level gaging device.

(i) With the total outside surface area of the container in square feet.

Under ground: System nameplate.
Above ground: No requirement.

(j) Marking specified on the container shall be on the container itself or on a nameplate permanently attached to it.

(4) Marking refrigerated containers. Each refrigerated container shall be marked with nameplate on the outer covering in an accessible place as specified in the following:

(i) With the notation, "Anhydrous Ammonia."

(ii) With the name and address of the builder and the date of fabrication.

(iii) With the water capacity of the container in gallons, U.S. Standard.

(iv) With the design pressure.

(v) With the minimum temperature in degrees Fahrenheit for which the container was designed.

(vi) The maximum allowable water level to which the container may be filled for test purposes.

(vii) With the density of the product in pounds per cubic foot for which the container was designed.

(viii) With the maximum level to which the container may be filled with liquid anhydrous ammonia.

(5) Location of containers.

(i) Consideration shall be given to the physiological effects of ammonia as well as to adjacent fire hazards in selecting the location for a storage container. Containers shall be located outside of buildings or in buildings or sections thereof especially provided for this purpose.

(ii) Permanent storage containers shall be located at least 50 feet from a dug well or other sources of potable water supply, unless the container is a part of a water-treatment installation.

(iii) Revoked

(iv) Revoked

(v) Storage areas shall be kept free of readily ignitible materials such as waste, weeds, and long dry grass.

(6) Container appurtenances.

(i) All appurtenances shall be designed for not less than the maximum working pressure of that portion of the system on which they are installed. All appurtenances shall be fabricated from materials proved suitable for anhydrous ammonia service.

(ii) All connections to containers except safety relief devices, gaging devices, or those fitted with No. 54 drill-size orifice shall have shutoff valves located as close to the container as practicable.

(iii) Excess flow valves where required by these standards shall close automatically at the rated flows of vapor or liquid as specified by the manufacturer. The connections and line including valves and fittings being protected by an excess flow valve shall have a greater capacity than the rated flow of the excess flow valve so that the valve will close in case of failure of the line or fittings.

(iv) Liquid-level gaging devices that require bleeding of the product to the atmosphere and which are so constructed that outward flow will not exceed that passed by a No. 54 drill-size opening need not be equipped with excess flow valves.

(v) Openings from the container or through fittings attached directly on the container to which pressure gage connections are made need not be equipped with excess flow valves if such openings are not larger than No. 54 drill size.

(vi) Excess flow and back pressure check valves where required by the standards in this section shall be located inside of the container or at a point outside as close as practicable to where the line enters the container. In the latter case installation shall be made in such manner that any undue strain beyond the excess flow or back pressure check valve will not cause breakage between the container and the valve.

(vii) Excess flow valves shall be designed with a bypass, not to exceed a No. 60 drill-size opening to allow equalization of pressures.

(viii) All excess flow valves shall be plainly and permanently marked with the name or trademark of the manufacturer, the catalog number, and the rated capacity.

(7) Piping, tubing, and fittings.

(i) All piping, tubing, and fittings shall be made of material suitable for anhydrous ammonia service.

(ii) All piping, tubing, and fittings shall be designed for a pressure not less than the maximum pressure to which they may be subjected in service.

(iii) All refrigerated piping shall conform to the Refrigeration Piping Code, American National Standards Institute, B31.5-1966 with addenda B31.1a-1968 as it applies to ammonia.

(iv) Piping used on non-refrigerated systems shall be at least American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) A-53-69 Grade B Electric Resistance Welded and Electric Flash Welded Pipe or equal. Such pipe shall be at least schedule 40 when joints are welded, or welded and flanged. Such pipe shall be at least schedule 80 when joints are threaded. Threaded connections shall not be back-welded. Brass, copper, or galvanized steel pipe shall not be used.

(v) Tubing made of brass, copper, or other material subject to attack by ammonia shall not be used.

(vi) Cast iron fittings shall not be used but this shall not prohibit the use of fittings made specifically for ammonia service of malleable, nodular, or high strength gray iron meeting American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) A47-68, ASTM 395-68, or ASTM A126-66 Class B or C.

(vii) Joint compounds shall be resistant to ammonia.

(8) Hose specifications.

(i) Hose used in ammonia service shall conform to the joint Agricultural Ammonia Institute—Rubber Manufacturers Association Specifications for Anhydrous Ammonia Hose.

(ii) Hose subject to container pressure shall be designed for a minimum working pressure of 350 p.s.i.g. and a minimum burst pressure of 1,750 p.s.i.g. Hose assemblies, when made up, shall be capable of withstanding a test pressure of 500 p.s.i.g.

(iii) Hose and hose connections located on the low-pressure side of flow control or pressure-reducing valves shall be designed for a bursting pressure of not less than five times the pressure setting of the safety relief devices protecting that portion of the system but not less than 125 p.s.i.g. All connections shall be so designed and constructed that there will be no leakage when connected.

(iv) Where hose is to be used for transferring liquid from one container to another, "wet" hose is recommended. Such hose shall be equipped with approved shutoff valves at the discharge end. Provision shall be made to prevent excessive pressure in the hose.

(v) On all hose one-half inch outside diameter and larger, used for the transfer of anhydrous ammonia liquid or vapor, there shall be etched, cast, or impressed at 5-foot intervals the following information.

> "Anhydrous Ammonia" xxx p.s.i.g. (maximum working pressure), manufacturer's name or trademark, year of manufacture.

In lieu of this requirement the same information may be contained on a nameplate permanently attached to the hose.

(9) Safety relief devices.

(i) Every container used in systems covered by paragraphs (c), (f), (g), and (h) of this section shall be provided with one or more safety relief valves of the spring-loaded or equivalent type. The discharge from safety-relief valves shall be vented away from the container upward and unobstructed to the atmosphere. All relief-valve discharge openings shall have suitable rain caps that will allow free discharge of the vapor and prevent entrance of water. Provision shall be made for draining condensate which may accumulate. The rate of the discharge shall be in accordance with the provisions of Table H-36.

TABLE H-36

Minimum required rate of discharge in cubic feet per minute of air at 120 percent of the maximum permitted start to discharge pressure for safety relief valves.

Surface area (sq. ft.)	*Flow rate CFM air*
20	258
25	310
30	360
35	408
40	455
45	501
50	547
55	591
60	635
65	678
70	720
75	762
80	804
85	845
90	885
95	925
100	965
105	1,010
110	1,050
115	1,090
120	1,120
125	1,160
130	1,200
135	1,240
140	1,280
145	1,310
150	1,350
155	1,390
160	1,420
165	1,460
170	1,500
175	1,530
180	1,570
185	1,600
190	1,640

TABLE H-36—Continued

Minimum required rate of discharge in cubic feet per minute of air at 120 percent of the maximum permitted start to discharge pressure for safety relief valves.

Surface area (sq. ft.)	*Flow rate CFM air*
195	1,670
200	1,710
210	1,780
220	1,850
230	1,920
240	1,980
250	2,050
260	2,120
270	2,180
280	2,250
290	2,320
300	2,380
310	2,450
320	2,510
330	2,570
340	2,640
350	2,700
360	2,760
370	2,830
380	2,890
390	2,950
400	3,010
450	3,320
500	3,620
550	3,910
600	4,200
650	4,480
700	4,760
750	5,040
800	5,300
850	5,590
900	5,850
950	6,120
1,000	6,380
1,050	6,640
1,100	6,900
1,150	7,160
1,200	7,410
1,250	7,660
1,300	7,910
1,350	8,160
1,400	8,410
1,450	8,650
1,500	8,900
1,550	9,140
1,600	9,380
1,650	9,620
1,700	9,860
1,750	10,090

TABLE H-36—Continued

Minimum required rate of discharge in cubic feet per minute of air at 120 percent of the maximum permitted start to discharge pressure for safety relief valves.

Surface area (sq. ft.)	*Flow rate CFM air*
1,800	10,330
1,850	10,560
1,900	10,800
1,950	11,030
2,000	11,260
2,050	11,490
2,100	11,720
2,150	11,950
2,200	12,180
2,250	12,400
2,300	12,630
2,350	12,850
2,400	13,080
2,450	13,300
2,500	13,520

"Surface Area=total outside surface area of container in square feet. When the surface area is not stamped on the nameplate or when the marking is not legible the area can be calculated by using one of the following formulas:

(1) Cylindrical container with hemispherical heads:

Area=overall length in feet times outside diameter in feet times 3.1416.

(2) Cylindrical container with other than hemispherical heads:

Area=(overall length in feet plus 0.3 outside diameter in feet) times outside diameter in feet times 3.1416.

(3) Spherical container:

Area=outside diameter in feet squared times 3.1416."

"Flow Rate—CFM Air=cubic feet per minute of air required at standard conditions, 60° F. and atmospheric pressure (14.7 p.s.i.a.)."

"The rate of discharge may be interpolated for intermediate values of surface area. For containers with total outside surface area greater than 2,500 square feet, the required flow rate can be calculated using the formula: Flow Rate CFM Air=22.11 $A^{0.82}$, where A= outside surface area of the container in square feet."

(ii) Container safety-relief valves shall be set to start-to-discharge as follows, with relation to the design pressure of the container:

Containers	Minimum (percent)	Maximum (percent)
ASME-U-68, U-69	110	125
ASME-U-200, U-201	95	100
ASME 1959, 1956, 1952, or 1962	95	100
API-ASME	95	100
U.S. Coast Guard	95	100

As required by DOT Regulations.

(iii) Safety relief devices used in systems covered by paragraphs (c), (f), (g), and (h) of this section shall be constructed to discharge at not less than the rates required in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph before the pressure is in excess of 120 percent (not including the 10 percent tolerance referred to in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph) of the maximum permitted start-to-discharge pressure setting of the device.

(iv) Safety-relief valves shall be so arranged that the possibility of tampering will be minimized. If the pressure setting adjustment is external, the relief valves shall be provided with means for sealing the adjustment.

(v) Shutoff valves shall not be installed between the safety-relief valves and the container; except, that a shut-off valve may be used where the arrangement of this valve is such as always to afford full required capacity flow through the relief valves.

(vi) Safety-relief valves shall direct communication with the vapor space of the container.

(vii) Each container safety-relief valve used with systems covered by paragraphs (c), (f), (g), and (h) of this section shall be plainly and permanently marked with the symbol "NH_3" or "AA"; with the pressure in pounds-per-square-inch gage at which the valve is set to start-to-discharge; with the actual rate of discharge of the valve at its full open position in cubic feet per minute of air at 60° F. and atmospheric pressure; and with the manufacturer's name and catalog number. Example: "NH_3 250—4050 Air" indicates that the valve is suitable for use on an anhydrous ammonia container, is set to start-to-discharge at a pressure of 250 p.s.i.g., and that its rate of discharge at full open position (subdivisions (ii) and (iii) of this subparagraph) is 4,050 cubic feet per minute of air.

(viii) The flow capacity of the relief valve shall not be restricted by any connection to it on either the upstream or downstream side.

(ix) A hydrostatic relief valve shall be installed between each pair of valves in the liquid ammonia piping or hose where liquid may be trapped so as to relieve into the atmosphere at a safe location.

(10) General.

(i) Removed

(ii) All stationary storage installations shall have at least two suitable gas masks in readily accessible locations. Full face masks with ammonia canisters as approved by the Bureau of Mines, U.S. Department of the Interior, are suitable for emergency action for most leaks, particularly those that occur outdoors. For protection in concentrated ammonia atmospheres self-contained breathing air apparatus is required.

(iii) Stationary storage installations shall have an easily accessible shower or a 50-gallon drum of water.

(iv) Each vehicle transporting ammonia in bulk except farm applicator vehicles shall carry a container of at least 5 gallons of water and shall be equipped with a full face mask.

(11) Charging of containers.

(i) The filling densities for containers that are not refrigerated shall not exceed the following:

Type of container	Percent by weight	Percent by volume
Aboveground—Uninsulated	56	82
Aboveground—Uninsulated	-	87.5
Aboveground—Insulated	57	83.5
Underground—Uninsulated	58	85
DOT—In accord with DOT regulations.		

(ii) Aboveground uninsulated containers may be charged 87.5 percent by volume provided the temperature of the anhydrous ammonia being charged is determined to be not lower than 30° F. or provided the charging of the container is stopped at the first indication of frost or ice formation on its outside surface and is not resumed until such frost or ice has disappeared.

(12) Transfer of liquids.

(i) Anhydrous ammonia shall always be at a temperature suitable for the material of construction and the design of the receiving container.

(ii) The employer shall require the continuous presence of an attendant in the vicinity of the operation during such time as ammonia is being transferred.

(iii) Containers shall be charged or used only upon authorization of the owner.

(iv) Containers shall be gaged and charged only in the open atmosphere or in buildings or areas thereof provided for that purpose.

(v) Pumps used for transferring ammonia shall be those manufactured for that purpose.

(a) Pumps shall be designed for at least 250 p.s.i.g. working pressure.

(b) Positive displacement pumps shall have, installed off the discharged port, a constant differential relief valve discharging into the suction port of the pump through a line of sufficient size to carry the full capacity of the pump at relief valve setting, which setting and installation shall be according to the pump manufacturer's recommendations.

(c) On the discharge side of the pump, before the relief valve line, there shall be installed a pressure gage graduated from 0 to 400 p.s.i.

(d) Plant piping shall contain shut-off valves located as close as practical to pump connections.

(vi) Compressors used for transferring or refrigerating ammonia shall be recommended for ammonia service by the manufacturer.

(a) Compressors shall be designed for at least 250 p.s.i.g. working pressure.

(b) Plant piping shall contain shutoff valves located as close as practical to compressor connections.

(c) A relief valve large enough to discharge the full capacity of the compressor shall be connected to the discharge before any shutoff valve.

(d) Compressors shall have pressure gages at suction and discharge graduated to at least one and one-half times the maximum pressure that can be developed.

(e) Adequate means, such as drainable liquid trap, shall be provided on the compressor suction to minimize the entry of liquid into the compressor.

(vii) Loading and unloading systems shall be protected by suitable devices to prevent emptying of the storage container or the container being loaded or unloaded in the event of severance of the hose. Backflow check valves or properly sized excess flow valves shall be installed where necessary to provide such protection. In the event that such valves are not practical, remotely operated shutoff valves may be installed.

(13) Tank car unloading points and operations.

(i) Provisions for unloading tank cars shall conform to the applicable recommendations contained in the DOT regulations.

(ii) The employer shall insure that unloading operations are performed by reliable persons properly instructed and given the authority to monitor careful compliance with all applicable procedures.

(iii) Caution signs shall be so placed on the track or car as to give necessary warning to persons approaching the car from open end or ends of siding and shall be left up until after the car is unloaded and disconnected from discharge connections. Signs shall be of metal or other suitable material, at least 12 by 15 inches in size and bear the words "STOP—Tank Car Connected" or "STOP—Men at Work" the word, "STOP," being in letters at least 4 inches high and the other words in letters at least 2 inches high.

(iv) The track of a tank car siding shall be substantially level.

(v) Brakes shall be set and wheels blocked on all cars being unloaded.

(14) Liquid-level gaging device.

(i) Each container except those filled by weight shall be equipped with an approved liquid-level gaging device. A thermometer well shall be provided in all containers not utilizing a fixed liquid-level gaging device.

(ii) All gaging devices shall be arranged so that the maximum liquid level to which the container is filled is readily determined.

(iii) Gaging devices that require bleeding of the product to the atmosphere such as the rotary tube, fixed tube, and slip tube devices shall be designed so that the maximum opening of the bleed valve is not larger than No. 54 drill size unless provided with an excess flow valve. (This requirement does not apply to farm vehicles used for the application of ammonia as covered in paragraph (h) of this section.)

(iv) Gaging devices shall have a design pressure equal to or greater than the design pressure of the container on which they are installed.

(v) Fixed tube liquid-level gages shall be designed and installed to indicate that level at which the container is filled to 85 percent of its water capacity in gallons.

(vi) Gage glasses of the columnar type shall be restricted to stationary storage installations. They shall be equipped with shutoff valves having metallic handwheels, with excess-flow valves, and with extra heavy glass adequately protected with a metal housing applied by the gage manufacturer. They shall be shielded against the direct rays of the sun.

(15) Removed

(16) Electrical equipment and wiring.

(i) Electrical equipment and wiring for use in ammonia installations shall be general purpose or weather resistant as appropriate.

(ii) Electrical systems shall be installed and maintained in accordance with Subpart S of this part.

(c) Systems utilizing stationary, nonrefrigerated storage containers.

This paragraph applies to stationary, nonrefrigerated storage installations utilizing containers other than those covered in paragraph (e) of this section. Paragraph (b) of this section applies to this paragraph unless otherwise noted.

(1) Design pressure and construction of containers. The minimum design pressure for nonrefrigerated containers shall be 250 p.s.i.g.

(2) Container valves and accessories filling and discharge connections.

(i) Each filling connection shall be provided with combination back-pressure check valve and excess-flow valve; one double or two single back-pressure check valves; or a positive shutoff valve in conjunction with either an internal back-pressure check valve or an internal excess flow valve.

(ii) All liquid and vapor connections to containers except filling pipes, safety relief connections, and liquid-level gaging and pressure gage connections provided with orifices not larger than No. 54 drill size as required in paragraphs (b)(6)(iv) and (v) of this section shall be equipped with excess-flow valves.

(iii) Each storage container shall be provided with a pressure gage graduated from 0 to 400 p.s.i. Gages shall be designated for use in ammonia service.

(iv) All containers shall be equipped with vapor return valves.

(3) Safety-relief devices.

(i) Every container shall be provided with one or more safety-relief valves of the spring-loaded or equivalent type in accordance with paragraph (b)(9) of this section.

(ii) The rate of discharge of spring-loaded safety relief valves installed on underground containers may be reduced to a minimum of 30 percent of the rate of discharge specified in Table H–36. Containers so protected shall not be uncovered after installation until the liquid ammonia has been removed. Containers which may contain liquid ammonia before being installed underground and before being completely covered with earth are to be considered aboveground containers when determining the rate of discharge requirements of the safety-relief valves.

(iii) On underground installations where there is a probability of the manhole or housing becoming flooded, the discharge from vent lines shall be located above the high water level. All manholes or housings shall be provided with ventilated louvers or their equivalent, the area of such openings equalling or exceeding combined discharge areas of safety-relief valves and vent lines which discharge their content into the manhole housing.

(iv) Vent pipes, when used, shall not be restricted or of smaller diameter than the relief-valve outlet connection.

(v) If desired, vent pipes from two or more safety-relief devices located on the same unit, or similar lines from two or more different units may be run into a common discharge header, provided the capacity of such header is at least equal to the sum of the capacities of the individual discharge lines.

(4) Reinstallation of containers.

(i) Containers once installed under ground shall not later be reinstalled above ground or under ground, unless they successfully withstand hydrostatic pressure retests at the pressure specified for the original hydrostatic test as required by the code under which constructed and show no evidence of serious corrosion.

(ii) Where containers are reinstalled above ground, safety devices or gaging devices shall comply with paragraph (b)(9) of this section and this subparagraph respectively for aboveground containers.

(5) Installation of storage containers.

(i) Containers installed above ground, except as provided in subdivision (v) of this subparagraph shall be provided with substantial concrete or masonry supports, or structural steel supports on firm concrete or masonry foundations. All foundations shall extend below the frost line.

(ii) Horizontal aboveground containers shall be so mounted on foundations as to permit expansion and contraction. Every container shall be supported to prevent the concentration of excessive loads on the supporting portion of the shell. That portion of the container in contact with foundations or saddles shall be protected against corrosion.

(iii) Containers installed under ground shall be so placed that the top of the container is below the frost line and in no case less than 2 feet below the surface of the ground. Should ground conditions make compliance with these requirements impracticable, installation shall be made otherwise to prevent physical damage. It will not be necessary to cover the portion of the container to which manhole and other connections are affixed. When necessary to prevent floating, containers shall be securely anchored or weighted.

(iv) Underground containers shall be set on a firm foundation (firm earth may be used) and surrounded with earth or sand well tamped in place. The container, prior to being placed under ground, shall be given a corrosion resisting protective coating. The container thus coated shall be so lowered into place as to prevent abrasion or other damage to the coating.

(v) Containers with foundations attached (portable or semiportable tank containers with suitable steel "runners" or "skids" and commonly known in the industry as "skid tanks") shall be designed and constructed in accordance with subparagraph (1) of this paragraph.

(vi) Secure anchorage or adequate pier height shall be provided against container flotation wherever sufficiently high flood water might occur.

(vii) The distance between underground containers of over 2,000 gallons capacity shall be at least 5 feet.

(6) Protection of appurtenances.

(i) Valves, regulating, gaging, and other appurtenances shall be protected against tampering and physical damage. Such appurtenances shall also be protected during transit of containers.

(ii) All connections to underground containers shall be located within a dome, housing, or manhole and with access thereto by means of a substantial cover.

(7) Damage from vehicles. Precaution shall be taken against damage to ammonia systems from vehicles.

(d) Refrigerated storage systems.

This paragraph applies to systems utilizing containers with the storage of anhydrous ammonia under refrigerated conditions. All applicable rules of paragraph (b) of this section apply to this paragraph unless otherwise noted.

(1) Design of containers.

(i) The design temperature shall be the minimum temperature to which the container will be refrigerated.

(ii) Containers with a design pressure exceeding 15 p.s.i.g. shall be constructed in accordance with paragraph (b)(2) of this section, and the materials shall be selected from those listed in API Standard 620, Recommended Rules for Design and Construction of Large, Welded, Low-Pressure Storage Tanks, Fourth Edition, 1970, Tables 2.02, R2.2, R2.2(A), R2.2.1, or R2.3.

(iii) Containers with a design pressure of 15 p.s.i.g. and less shall be constructed in accordance with the applicable requirements of API Standard 620 including its Appendix R.

(iv) When austenitic steels or nonferrous materials are used, the Code shall be used as a guide in the selection of materials for use at the design temperature.

(v) The filling density for refrigerated storage containers shall be such that the container will not be liquid full at a liquid temperature corresponding to the vapor pressure at the start-to-discharge pressure setting of the safety-relief valve.

(2) Installation of refrigerated storage containers.

(i) Containers shall be supported on suitable noncombustible foundations designed to accommodate the type of container being used.

(ii) Adequate protection against flotation or other water damage shall be provided wherever high flood water might occur.

(iii) Containers for product storage at less than 32° F. shall be supported in such a way, or heat shall be supplied, to prevent the effects of freezing and consequent frost heaving.

(3) Shutoff valves. When operating conditions make it advisable, a check valve shall be installed on the fill connection and a remotely operated shutoff valve on other connections located below the maximum liquid level.

(4) Safety relief devices.

(i) Safety relief valves shall be set to start-to-discharge at a pressure not in excess of the design pressure of the container and shall have a total relieving capacity sufficient to prevent a maximum pressure in the container of more than 120 percent of the design pressure. Relief valves for refrigerated storage containers shall be self-contained spring-loaded, weight-loaded, or self-contained pilot-operated type.

(ii) The total relieving capacity shall be the larger of:

(a) Possible refrigeration system upset such as

(*1*) Cooling water failure,

(*2*) Power failure,

(*3*) Instrument air or instrument failure,

(*4*) Mechanical failure of any equipment,

(*5*) Excessive pumping rates.

(b) Fire exposure determined in accordance with Compressed Gas Association (CGA) S-1, Part 3, Safety Relief Device Standards for Compressed Gas Storage Containers, 1959, except that "A" shall be the total exposed surface area in square feet up to 25 foot above grade or to the equator of the storage container if it is a sphere, whichever is greater. If the relieving capacity required for fire exposure is greater than that required by (*a*) of this subdivision, the additional capacity may be provided by weak roof to shell seams in containers operating at essentially atmospheric pressure and having an inherently weak roof-to-shell seam. The weak roof-to-shell seam is not to be considered as providing any of the capacity required in (*a*) of this subdivision.

(iii) If vent lines are installed to conduct the vapors from the relief valve, the back pressure under full relieving conditions shall not exceed 50 percent of the start-to-discharge pressure for pressure balanced valves or 10 percent of the start-to-discharge pressure for conventional valves. The vent lines shall be installed to prevent accumulation of liquid in the lines.

(iv) The valve or valve installation shall provide weather protection.

(v) Atmospheric storage shall be provided with vacuum breakers. Ammonia gas, nitrogen, methane, or other inert gases can be used to provide a pad.

(5) Protection of container appurtenances. Appurtenances shall be protected against tampering and physical damage.

(6) Reinstallation of refrigerated storage containers. Containers of such size as to require field fabrication shall, when moved and reinstalled, be reconstructed and reinspected in complete accordance with the requirements under which they were constructed. The containers shall be subjected to a pressure retest and if rerating is necessary, rerating shall be in accordance with applicable requirements.

(7) Damage from vehicles. Precaution shall be taken against damage from vehicles.

(8) Refrigeration load and equipment.

(i) The total refrigeration load shall be computed as the sum of the following:

(a) Load imposed by heat flow into the container caused by the temperature differential between design ambient temperature and storage temperature.

(b) Load imposed by heat flow into the container caused by maximum sun radiation.

(c) Maximum load imposed by filling the container with ammonia warmer than the design storage temperature.

(ii) More than one storage container may be handled by the same refrigeration system.

(9) Compressors.

(i) A minimum of two compressors shall be provided either of which shall be of sufficient size to handle the loads listed in subparagraphs (8)(i)(*a*) and (*b*) of this paragraph. Where more than two compressors are provided minimum standby equipment equal to the largest normally operating equipment shall be installed. Filling compressors may be used as standby equipment for holding compressors.

(ii) Compressors shall be sized to operate with a suction pressure at least 10 percent below the minimum setting of the safety valve(s) on the storage container and shall withstand a suction pressure at least equal to 120 percent of the design pressure of the container.

(10) Compressor drives.

(i) Each compressor shall have its individual driving unit.

(ii) An emergency source of power of sufficient capacity to handle the loads listed in subparagraphs (8)(i)(*a*) and (*b*) of this paragraph shall be provided unless facilities are available to safely dispose of vented vapors while the refrigeration system is not operating.

(11) Automatic control equipment.

(i) The refrigeration system shall be arranged with suitable controls to govern the compressor operation in accordance with the load as evidenced by the pressure in the container(s).

(ii) An emergency alarm system shall be installed to function in the event the pressure in the container(s) rises to the maximum allowable operating pressure.

(iii) An emergency alarm and shutoff shall be located in the condenser system to respond to excess discharge pressure caused by failure of the cooling medium.

(iv) All automatic controls shall be installed in a manner to preclude operation of alternate compressors unless the controls will function with the alternate compressors.

(12) Separators for compressors.

(i) An entrainment separator of suitable size and design pressure shall be installed in the compressor suction line of lubricated compression. The separator shall be equipped with a drain and gaging device.

(13) Condensers. The condenser system may be cooled by air or water or both. The condenser shall be designed for at least 250 p.s.i.g. Provision shall be made for purging noncondensibles either manually or automatically.

(14) Receiver and liquid drain. A receiver shall be provided with a liquid-level control to discharge the liquid ammonia to storage. The receiver shall be designed for at least 250 p.s.i.g. and be equipped with the necessary connections, safety valves, and gaging device.

(15) Insulation. Refrigerated containers and pipelines which are insulated shall be covered with a material of suitable quality and thickness for the temperatures encountered. Insulation shall be suitably supported and protected against the weather. Weatherproofing shall be of a type which will not support flame propagation.

(e) Systems utilizing portable DOT containers.

(1) Conformance. Cylinders shall comply with DOT specifications and shall be maintained, filled, packaged, marked, labeled, and shipped to comply with 49 CFR Chapter I and Marking Portable Compressed Gas Containers to Identify the Material Contained, ANSI Z48.1–1954 (R1970).

(2) Storage. Cylinders shall be stored in an area free from ignitable debris and in such manner as to prevent external corrosion. Storage may be indoors or outdoors.

(3) Heat protection. Cylinders filled in accordance with DOT regulations will become liquid full at 145° F. Cylinders shall be protected from heat sources such as radiant flame and steampipes. Heat shall not be applied directly to cylinders to raise the pressure.

(4) Protection. Cylinders shall be stored in such manner as to protect them from moving vehicles or external damage.

(5) Valve cap. Any cylinder which is designed to have a valve protection cap shall have the cap securely in place when the cylinder is not in service.

(f) Tank motor vehicles for the transportation of ammonia.

(1) This paragraph applies to containers and pertinent equipment mounted on tank motor vehicles including semitrailers and full trailers used for the transportation of ammonia. This paragraph does not apply to farm vehicles. For requirements covering farm vehicles, refer to paragraphs (g) and (h) of this section.

Paragraph (b) of this section applies to this paragraph unless otherwise noted. Containers and pertinent equipment for tank motor vehicles for the transportation of anhydrous ammonia, in addition to complying with the requirements of this section, shall also comply with the requirements of DOT.

(2) Design pressure and construction of containers.

(i) The minimum design pressure for containers shall be that specified in the regulations of the DOT.

(ii) The shell or head thickness of any container shall not be less than three-sixteenth inch.

(iii) All container openings, except safety relief valves, liquid-level gaging devices, and pressure gages, shall be labeled to designate whether they communicate with liquid or vapor space.

(3) Container appurtenances.

(i) All appurtenances shall be protected against physical damage.

(ii) All connections to containers, except filling connections, safety relief devices, and liquid-level and pressure gage connections, shall be provided with suitable automatic excess flow valves, or in lieu thereof, may be fitted with quick-closing internal valves, which shall remain closed except during delivery operations. The control mechanism for such valves may be provided with a secondary control remote from the delivery connections and such control mechanism shall be provided with a fusible section (melting point 208° F. to 220° F.) which will permit the internal valve to close automatically in case of fire.

(iii) Filling connections shall be provided with automatic back-pressure check valves, excess-flow valves, or quick-closing internal valves, to prevent back-flow in case the filling connection is broken. Where the filling and discharge connect to a common opening in the container shell and that opening is fitted with a quick-closing internal valve as specified in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph, the automatic valve shall not be required.

(iv) All containers shall be equipped for spray loading (filling in the vapor space) or with an approved vapor return valve of adequate capacity.

(4) Piping and fittings.

(i) All piping, tubing, and fittings shall be securely mounted and protected against damage. Means shall be provided to protect hoses while the vehicle is in motion.

(ii) Fittings shall comply with paragraph (b)(6) of this section. Pipe shall be Schedule 80.

(5) Safety relief devices.

(i) The discharge from safety relief valves shall be vented away from the container upward and unobstructed to the open air in such a manner as to prevent any impingement of escaping gas upon the container; loose-fitting rain caps shall be used. Size of discharge lines from safety relief valves shall not be smaller than the nominal size of the safety-relief valve outlet connection. Suitable provision shall be made for draining condensate which may accumulate in the discharge pipe.

(ii) Any portion of liquid ammonia piping which at any time may be closed at both ends shall be provided with a hydrostatic relief valve.

(6) Transfer of liquids.

(i) The content of tank motor vehicle containers shall be determined by weight, by a suitable liquid-level gaging device, or other approved methods. If the content of a container is to be determined by liquid-level measurement, the container shall have a thermometer well so that the internal liquid temperature can be easily determined. This volume when converted to weight shall not exceed the filling density specified by the DOT.

(ii) Any pump, except a constant speed centrifugal pump, shall be equipped with a suitable pressure actuated bypass valve permitting flow from discharge to suction when the discharge pressure rises above a predetermined point. Pump discharge shall also be equipped with a spring-loaded safety relief valve set at a pressure not more than 135 percent of the setting of the bypass valve or more than 400 p.s.i.g., whichever is larger.

(iii) Compressors shall be equipped with manually operated shutoff valves on both suction and discharge connections. Pressure gages of bourdon-tube type shall be installed on the suction and discharge of the compressor before the shutoff valves. The compressor shall not be operated if either pressure gage is removed or is inoperative. A spring-loaded, safety-relief valve capable of discharging to atmosphere the full flow of gas from the compressor at a pressure not exceeding 300 p.s.i.g. shall be connected between the compressor discharge and the discharge shutoff valve.

(iv) Valve functions shall be clearly and legibly identified by metal tags or nameplates permanently affixed to each valve.

(7) Full trailers and semitrailers.

(i) All full trailers shall be firmly and securely attached to the vehicle drawing them by means of suitable drawbars supplemented by a safety chain (or chains) or safety cables.

(ii) Every full trailer or semitrailer shall have a reliable system of brakes, and adequate provision shall be made to operate the brakes from the driver's seat.

(iii) Every full trailer shall be equipped with self-energizing brakes.

(iv) Full trailers shall be so designed that the towed vehicle will follow substantially in the path of the towing vehicle and will not whip or swerve dangerously from side to side.

(v) Where a fifth wheel is employed, it shall be ruggedly designed, securely fastened to both units, and equipped with a positive locking mechanism which will prevent separation of the two units except by manual release.

(8) Protection against collision. Each tank motor vehicle shall be provided with properly attached bumpers or chassis extension arranged to protect the tank, piping, valves, and fittings from physical damage in case of collision.

(9) Chock blocks. At least two chock blocks shall be provided. These blocks shall be placed to prevent rolling of the vehicle whenever it is parked during loading and unloading operations.

(10) Portable tank containers (skid tanks). Where portable tank containers are used for farm storage they shall comply with paragraph (c)(1) of this section. When portable tank containers are used in lieu of cargo tanks and are permanently mounted on tank motor vehicles for the transportation of ammonia, they shall comply with the requirements of this paragraph.

(g) Systems mounted on farm vehicles other than for the application of ammonia.

(1) Application. This paragraph applies to containers of 1,200 gallons capacity or less and pertinent equipment mounted on farm vehicles (implements of husbandry) and used other than for the application of ammonia to the soil. Paragraph (b) of this section applies to this paragraph unless otherwise noted.

(2) Design pressure and classification of containers.

(i) The minimum design pressure for containers shall be 250 p.s.i.g.

(ii) The shell or head thickness of any container shall be not less than three-sixteenths of an inch.

(3) Mounting containers.

(i) A suitable "stop" or "stops" shall be mounted on the vehicle or on the container in such a way that the container shall not be dislodged from its mounting due to the vehicle coming to a sudden stop. Back slippage shall also be prevented by proper methods.

(ii) A suitable "hold down" device shall be provided which will anchor the container to the vehicle at one or more places on each side of the container.

(iii) When containers are mounted on four-wheel trailers, care shall be taken to insure that the weight is distributed evenly over both axles.

(iv) When the cradle and the tank are not welded together suitable material shall be used between them to eliminate metal-to-metal friction.

(4) Container appurtenances.

(i) All containers shall be equipped with a fixed liquid-level gage.

(ii) All containers with a capacity exceeding 250 gallons shall be equipped with a pressure gage having a dial graduated from 0–400 p.s.i.

(iii) The filling connection shall be fitted with combination back-pressure check valve and excess-flow valve; one double or two single back-pressure check valves; or a positive shutoff valve in conjunction with either an internal back-pressure check valve or an internal excess flow valve.

(iv) All containers with a capacity exceeding 250 gallons shall be equipped for spray loading or with an approved vapor return valve.

(v) All vapor and liquid connections except safety-relief valves and those specifically exempted by paragraph (b)(6)(v) of this section shall be equipped with approved excess-flow valves or may be fitted with quick-closing internal valves which, except during operating periods, shall remain closed.

(vi) Fittings shall be adequately protected from damage by a metal box or cylinder with open top securely fastened to the container or by rigid guards, well braced, welded to the container on both sides of the fittings or by a metal dome. If a metal dome is used, the relief valve shall be properly vented through the dome.

(vii) If a liquid withdrawal line is installed in the bottom of a container, the connections thereto, including hose, shall not be lower than the lowest horizontal edge of the vehicle axle.

(viii) Provision shall be made to secure both ends of the hose while in transit.

(5) Marking the container. There shall appear on each side and on the rear end of the container in letters at least 4 inches high, the words, "Caution—Ammonia" or the container shall be marked in accordance with DOT regulations.

(6) Farm vehicles.

(i) Farm vehicles shall conform with State regulations.

(ii) All trailers shall be securely attached to the vehicle drawing them by means of drawbars supplemented by suitable safety chains.

(iii) A trailer shall be constructed so that it will follow substantially in the path of the towing vehicle and will not whip or swerve dangerously from side to side.

(iv) All vehicles shall carry a can containing 5 gallons or more of water.

(h) Systems mounted on farm vehicles for the application of ammonia.

(1) This paragraph applies to systems utilizing containers of 250 gallons capacity or less which are mounted on farm vehicles (implement of husbandry) and used for the application of ammonia to the soil. Paragraph (b) of this section applies to this paragraph unless otherwise noted. Where larger containers are used, they shall comply with paragraph (g) of this section.

(2) Design pressure and classification of containers.

(i) The minimum design pressure for containers shall be 250 p.s.i.g.

(ii) The shell or head thickness of any container shall not be less than three-sixteenths inch.

(3) Mounting of containers. All containers and flow-control devices shall be securely mounted.

(4) Container valves and accessories.

(i) Each container shall have a fixed liquid-level gage.

(ii) The filling connection shall be fitted with a combination back-pressure check valve and an excess-flow valve; one double or two single back-pressure check valves: or a positive shutoff valve in conjunction with an internal back-pressure check valve or an internal excess-flow valve.

(iii) The applicator tank may be filled by venting to open air provided the bleeder valve orifice does not exceed seven-sixteenths inch in diameter.

(iv) Regulation equipment may be connected directly to the tank coupling or flange, in which case a flexible connection shall be used between such regulating equipment and the remainder of the liquid withdrawal system. Regulating equipment not so installed shall be flexibly connected to the container shutoff valve.

(v) No excess flow valve is required in the liquid withdrawal line provided the controlling orifice between the contents of the container and the outlet of the shutoff valve does not exceed seven-sixteenths inch in diameter.

1910.112 [RESERVED]

1910.113 [RESERVED]

1910.114—EFFECTIVE DATES

(a) The provisions of this Subpart H shall become effective on August 27, 1971, except as provided in the remaining paragraphs of this section.

(b) The following provisions shall become effective on February 15, 1972:

§ 1910.101(b).
§ 1910.102.
§ 1910.103 (a)(2), (b)(1)(i), (b)(1)(iii), (b)(2)(ii), and (b)(3).
§ 1910.105.
§ 1910.106 (b)(1), (b)(2), (b)(3), and (b)(4).
§ 1910.106 (b)(5), (c)(1), (c)(2), (c)(3), (c)(4), (c)(5), (c)(6), (d)(2), (d)(3)(ii), (d)(4)(i), (d)(4)(iii), (d)(4)(iv), (d)(5)(v), (d)(5)(vi)(*a*), (e)(3)(iii), (e)(3)(v), (e)(4), (e)(7), (f)(2)(iii), (f)(3)(i), (f)(4)(iii), (f)(4)(iv), (f)(4)(viii), (f)(5), (g), (h), and (i).
§ 1910.107 (b)(1), (b)(2), (b)(3), (b)(4), (b)(5)(i), (b)(5)(iii), (b)(5)(iv), (b)(6), (b)(7), (b)(8), (b)(10), (c)(1), (c)(4), (c)(5), (c)(6), (c)(7), (d), (e)(7), (e)(8), (f)(1), (f)(2), (h), (i), (j), (l)(2), (l)(3), (l)(5), (l)(6), (l)(7), and (m)(1).
§ 1910.108 (b), (c), (e)(1), (g)(2), (g)(3), (g)(4), and (g)(5).
§ 1910.108 (g)(6) and (h).
§ 1910.110.
§ 1910.111.

(c) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a), (b), or (d) of this section, any provision in any other section of this subpart which contains in itself a specific effective date or time limitation shall become effective on such date or shall apply in accordance with such limitation.

(d) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a), or (b) of this section, if any standard in 41 CFR Part 50–204, other than a national consensus standard incorporated by reference in § 50–204.2(a)(1), is or becomes applicable at any time to any employment and place of employment, by virtue of the Walsh-Healey Public Contracts Act, or the Service Contract Act of 1965, or the National Foundation on Arts and Humanities Act of 1965, any corresponding established Federal standard in this Subpart H which is derived from 41 CFR Part 50–204 shall also become effective, and shall be applicable to such employment and place of employment, on the same date.

1910.115—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

Sec.	*Source*
1910.101	41 CFR 50–204.67, 70, and 71.
1910.102	41 CFR 50–204.66.
1910.103	NFPA No. 50B–1968, Standard for Liquified Hydrogen Systems at Consumer sites.
1910.104	NFPA No. 566–1965, Standard for the Installation of Bulk Oxygen Systems at Consumer Sites.
1910.105-106	NFPA No. 30–1969, Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code.
1910.107	NFPA No. 33–1969, Standard for Spray Finishing using Flammable and Combustible Materials.
1910.108	NFPA No. 34–1966, Standard for Dip Tanks Containing Flammable or Combustible Liquids.
1910.109	NFPA No. 495–1970, Code for Manufacture, Transportation, Storage and Use of Explosives and Blasting Agents.
1910.110	NFPA 58-69, Standard for the Handling of Liquified Petroleum Cases.
1910.111	ANSI K61.1-1966, Storage and Handling of Anhydrous Ammonia.

1910.116—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), 60 Batterymarch Street, Boston, MA 02110.

National Plant Food Institute, 1700 K Street NW., Washington, DC 20006.

Compressed Gas Association, Inc., 500 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10036.

American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Inc., United Engineering Center, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.

American Petroleum Institute, 1801 K Street NW., Washington, DC 20006.

National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel, Inspectors, 1155 North High Street, Columbus, OH 43201.

American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103.

Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. (UL), 207 East Ohio Street, Chicago, IL 60611.

Fertilizer Institute, 1015 18th Street N.W., Washington, DC 20036

[38 F.R. 3598, February 8, 1973.]

1910.120—HAZARDOUS WASTE OPERATIONS AND EMERGENCY RESPONSE

(a) Scope, application, and definitions.

(1) Scope. This section covers the following operations, unless the employer can demonstrate that the operation does not involve employee exposure or the reasonable possibility for employee exposure to safety or health hazards:

(i) Clean-up operations required by a governmental body, whether Federal, state, local or other involving hazardous substances that are conducted at uncontrolled hazardous waste sites (including, but not limited to, the EPA's National Priority Site List (NPL), state priority site lists, sites recommended for the EPA NPL, and initial investigations of government identified sites which are conducted before the presence or absence of hazardous substances has been ascertained);

(ii) Corrective actions involving cleanup operations at sites covered by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 (RCRA) as amended (42 U.S.C. 6901 *et seq.*);

(iii) Voluntary clean-up operations at sites recognized by Federal, state, local or other governmental bodies as uncontrolled hazardous waste sites;

(iv) Operations involving hazardous wastes that are conducted at treatment, storage, and disposal (TSD) facilities regulated by 40 CFR Parts 264 and 265 pursuant to RCRA; or by agencies under agreement with U.S.E.P.A. to implement RCRA regulations; and

(v) Emergency response operations for releases of, or substantial threats of releases of, hazardous substances without regard to the location of the hazard.

(2) Application.

(i) All requirements of Part 1910 and Part 1926 of Title 29 of the Code of Federal Regulations apply pursuant to their terms to hazardous waste and emergency response operations whether covered by this section or not. If there is a conflict or overlap, the provision more protective of employee safety and health shall apply without regard to 29 CFR 1910.5(c)(1).

(ii) Hazardous substance clean-up operations within the scope of paragraphs (a)(1)(i) through (a)(1)(iii) of this section must comply with all paragraphs of this section except paragraphs (p) and (q).

(iii) Operations within the scope of paragraph (a)(1)(iv) of this section must comply only with the requirements of paragraph (p) of this section.

Exceptions: For large quantity generators of hazardous waste who store those wastes less than 90 days and for small quantity generators of hazardous wastes, who have emergency response teams that respond to releases of, or substantial threats of releases of, hazardous substances, for their RCRA workplaces only paragraph (p)(8) of this section is applicable. Such generators of hazardous wastes who do not have emergency response teams that respond to releases of, or substantial threats of releases of, hazardous substances are exempt from the requirements of this section.

(iv) Emergency response operations for releases of, or substantial threats of releases of, hazardous substances which are not covered by paragraphs (a)(1)(i) through (a)(1)(iv) of this section must only comply with the requirements of paragraph (q) of this section.

(3) Definitions. "Buddy system" means a system of organizing employees into work groups in such a manner that each employee of the work group is designated to be observed by at least one other employee in the work group. The purpose of the buddy system is to provide rapid assistance to employees in the event of an emergency.

"Clean-up operation" means an operation where hazardous substances are removed, contained, incinerated, neutralized, stabilized, cleared-up, or in any other manner processed or handled with the ultimate goal of making the site safer for people or the environment.

"Decontamination" means the removal of hazardous substances from employees and their equipment to the extent necessary to preclude the occurrence of foreseeable adverse health affects.

"Emergency response" or "responding to emergencies" means a response effort by employees from outside the immediate release area or by other designated responders (i.e., mutual-aid groups, local fire departments, etc.) to an occurrence which results or is likely to result, in an uncontrolled release of a hazardous substance. Responses to incidental releases of hazardous substances where the substance can be absorbed, neutralized, or otherwise controlled at the time of release by employees in the immediate release area, or by maintenance personnel are not considered to be emergency responses within the scope of this standard. Responses to releases of hazardous substances where there is no potential safety or health hazard (i.e., fire, explosion, or chemical exposure) are not considered to be emergency responses.

"Facility" means (A) any building, structure, installation, equipment, pipe or pipeline (including any pipe into a sewer or publicly owned treatment works), well, pit, pond, lagoon, impoundment, ditch, storage container, motor vehicle, rolling stock, or aircraft, or (B) any site or area where a hazardous substance has been deposited, stored, disposed of, or placed, or otherwise come to be located; but does not include any consumer product in consumer use or any water-borne vessel.

(3) "Hazardous materials response (HAZMAT) team" means an organized group of employees, designated by the employer, who are expected to perform work to handle and control actual or potential leaks or spills of hazardous substances requiring possible close approach to the substance. The team members perform responses to releases or potential releases of hazardous substances for the purpose of control or stabilization of the incident. A HAZMAT team is not a fire brigade nor is a typical fire brigade a HAZMAT team. A HAZMAT team, however, may be a separate component of a fire brigade or fire department.

"Hazardous substance" means any substance designated or listed under paragraphs (A) through (D) of this definition, exposure to which results or may result in adverse affects on the health or safety of employees:

(a) Any substance defined under section 101(14) of CERCLA;

(b) Any biological agent and other disease-causing agent as defined in section 101(33) of CERCLA;

(c) Any substance listed by the U.S. Department of Transportation as hazardous materials under 49 CFR 172.101 and appendices; and

(d) Hazardous waste as herein defined.

"Hazardous waste" means

(a) A waste or combination of wastes as defined in 40 CFR 261.3, or

(b) Those substances defined as hazardous wastes in 49 CFR 171.8.

"Hazardous waste operation" means any operation conducted within the scope of this standard.

"Hazardous waste site" or "Site" means any facility or location within the scope of this standard at which hazardous waste operations take place.

"*Health hazard*" means a chemical, mixture of chemicals or a pathogen for which there is statistically significant evidence based on at least one study conducted in accordance with established scientific principles that acute or chronic health effects may occur in exposed employees. the term "health hazard" includes chemicals which are carcinogens, toxic or highly toxic agents, reproductive toxins, irritants, corrosives, sensitizers, heptaotoxins, nephrotoxins, neurotoxins, agents which act on the hematopoietic system, and agents which damage the lungs, skin, eyes, or mucous membranes. It also includes stress due to temperature extremes. Further definition of the terms used above can be found in Appendix A to 29 CFR 1910.1200.

"IDLH" or "Immediately dangerous to life or health" means an atmospheric concentration of any toxic, corrosive or asphyxiant substance that poses an immediate threat to life or would cause irreversible or delayed adverse health effects or would interfere with an individual's ability to escape from a dangerous atmosphere.

"Oxygen deficiency" means that concentration of oxygen by volume below which atmosphere supplying respiratory protection must be provided. It exists in atmospheres where the percentage of oxygen by volume is less than 19.5 percent oxygen.

"Permissible exposure limit" means the exposure, inhalation or dermal permissible exposure limit specified in 29 CFR Part 1910, Subparts G and Z.

"Published exposure level" means the exposure limits published in "NIOSH Recommendations for Occupational Health Standards" dated 1986 incorporated by reference, or if none is specified, the exposure limits published in the standards specified by the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists in their publication "Threshold Limit Values and Biological Exposure Indices for 1987–88" dated 1987 incorporated by reference.

"Post emergency response" means that portion of an emergency response performed after the immediate threat of a release has been stabilized or eliminated and clean-up of the site has begun. If post emergency response is performed by an employer's own employees who were part of the initial emergency response, it is considered to be part of the initial response and not post emergency response. However, if a group of an employer's own employees, separate from the group providing initial response, performs the clean-up operation, then the separate group of employees would be considered to be performing post-emergency response and subject to paragraph (g)(11) of this section.

"Qualified person" means a person with specific training, knowledge and experience in the area for which the person has the responsibility and the authority to control.

"Site safety and health supervisor (or official)" means the individual located on a hazardous waste site who is responsible to the employer and has the authority and knowledge necessary to implement the site safety and health plan and verify compliance with applicable safety and health requirements.

"Small quantity generator" means a generator of hazardous wastes who in any calendar month generates no more than 1,000 kilograms (2,205 pounds) of hazardous waste in that month.

"Uncontrolled hazardous waste site" means an area where an accumulation of hazardous waste creates a threat to the health and safety of individuals or the environment or both. Some sites are found on public lands, such as those created by former municipal, county or state landfills where illegal or poorly managed waste disposal has taken place. Other sites are found on private property, often belonging to generators or former generators of hazardous waste. Examples of such sites include, but are not limited to, surface impoundments, landfills, dumps, and tank or drum farms. Normal operations at TSD sites are not covered by this definition.

(b) Safety and health program.

Note to (b): Safety and health programs developed and implemented to meet other Federal, state, or local regulations are considered acceptable in meeting this requirement if they cover or are modified to cover the topics required in this paragraph. An additional or separate safety and health program is not required by this paragraph.

(1) General.

(i) Employers shall develop and implement a written safety and health program for their employees involved in hazardous waste operations. The program shall be designed to identify, evaluate, and control safety and health hazards, and provide for emergency response for hazardous waste operations.

(ii) The written safety and health program shall incorporate the following:

(a) An organizational structure;

(b) A comprehensive workplan;

(c) A site-specific safety and health plan which need not repeat the employer's standard operating procedures required in paragraph (b)(1)(ii)(F) of this section;

(d) The safety and health training program;

(e) The medical surveillance program;

(f) The employer's standard operating procedures for safety and health; and

(g) Any necessary interface between general program and site specific activities.

(iii) Site excavation. Site excavations created during initial site preparation or during hazardous waste operations shall be shored or sloped as appropriate to prevent accidental collapse in accordance with Subpart P of 29 CFR Part 1926.

(iv) Contractors and sub-contractors. An employer who retains contractor or subcontractor services for work in hazardous waste operations shall inform those contractors, sub-contractors, or their representatives of the site emergency response procedures and any potential fire, explosion, health, safety or other hazards of the hazardous waste operation that have been identified by the employer, including those identified in the employer's information program.

(v) Program availability. The written safety and health program shall be made available to any contractor or subcontractor or their representative who will be involved with the hazardous waste operation; to employees; to employee designated representatives; to OSHA personnel, and to personnel of other Federal, state, or local agencies with regulatory authority over the site.

(2) Organizational structure part of the site program.

(i) The organizational structure part of the program shall establish the specific chain of command and specify the overall responsibilities of supervisors and employees. It shall include, at a minimum, the following elements:

(a) A general supervisor who has the responsibility and authority to direct all hazardous waste operations.

(b) A site safety and health supervisor who has the responsibility and authority to develop and implement the site safety and health plan and verify compliance.

(c) All other personnel needed for hazardous waste site operations and emergency response and their general functions and responsibilities.

(d) The lines of authority, responsibility, and communication.

(ii) The organizational structure shall be reviewed and updated as necessary to reflect the current status of waste site operations.

(3) Comprehensive workplan part of the site program. The comprehensive workplan part of the program shall address the tasks and objectives of the site operations and the logistics and resources required to reach those tasks and objectives.

(i) The comprehensive workplan shall address anticipated clean-up activities as well as normal operating procedures which need not repeat the employer's procedures available elsewhere.

(ii) The comprehensive workplan shall define work tasks and objectives and identify the methods for accomplishing those tasks and objectives.

(iii) The comprehensive workplan shall establish personnel requirements for implementing the plan.

(iv) The comprehensive workplan shall provide for the implementation of the training required in paragraph (e) of this section.

(v) The comprehensive workplan shall provide for the implementation of the required informational programs required in paragraph (i) of this section.

(vi) The comprehensive workplan shall provide for the implementation of the medical surveillance program described in paragraph (f) of this section.

(4) Site-specific safety and health plan part of the program.

(i) General. The site safety and health plan, which must be kept on site, shall address the safety and health hazards of each phase of site operation and include the requirements and procedures for employee protection.

(ii) Elements. The site safety and health plan, as a minimum, shall address the following:

(a) A safety and health risk or hazard analysis for each site task and operation found in the workplan.

(b) Employee training assignments to assure compliance with paragraph (e) of this section.

(c) Personal protective equipment to be used by employees for each of the site tasks and operations being conducted as required by the personal protective equipment program in paragraph (g)(5) of this section.

(d) Medical surveillance requirements in accordance with the program in paragraph (f) of this section.

(e) Frequency and types of air monitoring, personnel monitoring, and environmental sampling techniques and instrumentation to be used, including methods of maintenance and calibration of monitoring and sampling equipment to be used.

(f) Site control measures in accordance with the site control program required in paragraph (d) of this section.

(g) Decontamination procedures in accordance with paragraph (k) of this section.

(h) An emergency response plan meeting the requirements of paragraph (l) of this section for safe and effective responses to emergencies, including the necessary PPE and other equipment.

(i) Confined space entry procedures.

(j) A spill containment program meeting the requirements of paragraph (j) of this section.

(iii) Pre-entry briefing. The site specific safety and health plan shall provide for pre-entry briefings to be held prior to initiating any site activity, and at such other times as necessary to ensure that employees are apprised of the site safety and health plan and that this plan is being followed. The information and data obtained from site characterization and analysis work required in paragraph (c) of this section shall be used to prepare and update the site safety and health plan.

(iv) Effectiveness of site safety and health plan. Inspections shall be conducted by the site safety and health supervisor or, in the absence of that individual, another individual who is knowledgeable in occupational safety and health, acting on behalf of the employer as necessary to determine the effectiveness of the site safety and health plan. Any deficiencies in the effectiveness of the site safety and health plan shall be corrected by the employer.

(c) Site characterization and analysis.

(1) General. Hazardous waste sites shall be evaluated in accordance with this paragraph to identify specific site hazards and to determine the appropriate safety and health control procedures needed to protect employees from the identified hazards.

(2) Preliminary evaluation. A preliminary evaluation of a site's characteristics shall be performed prior to site entry by a qualified person in order to aid in the selection of appropriate employee protection methods prior to site entry. Immediately after initial site entry, a more detailed evaluation of the site's specific characteristics shall be performed by a qualified person in order to further identify existing site hazards and to further aid in the selection of the appropriate engineering controls and personal protective equipment for the tasks to be performed.

(3) Hazard identification. All suspected conditions that may pose inhalation or skin absorption hazards that are immediately dangerous to life or health (IDLH), or other conditions that may cause death or serious harm, shall be identified during the preliminary survey and evaluated during the detailed survey. Examples of such hazards include, but are not limited to, confined space entry, potentially explosive or flammable situations, visible vapor clouds, or areas where biological indicators such as dead animals or vegetation are located.

(4) Required information. The following information to the extent available shall be obtained by the employer prior to allowing employees to enter a site:

(i) Location and approximate size of the site.

(ii) Description of the response activity and/or the job task to be performed.

(iii) Duration of the planned employee activity.

(iv) Site topography and accessibility by air and roads.

(v) Safety and health hazards expected at the site.

(vi) Pathways for hazardous substance dispersion.

(vii) Present status and capabilities of emergency response teams that would provide assistance to hazardous waste clean-up site employees at the time of an emergency.

(viii) Hazardous substances and health hazards involved or expected at the site, and their chemical and physical properties.

(5) Personal protective equipment. Personal protective equipment (PPE) shall be provided and used during initial site entry in accordance with the following requirements:

(i) Based upon the results of the preliminary site evaluation, an ensemble of PPE shall be selected and used during initial site entry which will provide protection to a level of exposure below permissible exposure limits and published exposure levels for known or suspected hazardous substances and health hazards, and which will provide protection against other known and suspected hazards identified during the preliminary site evaluation. If there is no permissible exposure limit or published exposure level, the employer may use other published studies and information as a guide to appropriate personal protective equipment.

(ii) If positive-pressure self-contained breathing apparatus is not used as part of the entry ensemble, and if respiratory protection is warranted by the potential hazards identified during the preliminary site evaluation, an escape self-contained breathing apparatus of at least five minute's duration shall be carried by employees during initial site entry.

(iii) If the preliminary site evaluation does not produce sufficient information to identify the hazards or suspected hazards of the site, an ensemble providing protection equivalent to Level B PPE shall be provided as minimum protection, and direct reading instruments shall be used as appropriate for identifying IDLH conditions. (See Appendix B for a description of Level B hazards and the recommendations for Level B protective equipment.)

(iv) Once the hazards of the site have been identified, the appropriate PPE shall be selected and used in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.

(6) Monitoring. The following monitoring shall be conducted during initial site entry when the site evaluation produces information that shows the potential for ionizing radiation or IDLH conditions, or when the site information is not sufficient reasonably to eliminate these possible conditions:

(i) Monitoring with direct reading instruments for hazardous levels of ionizing radiation.

(ii) Monitoring the air with appropriate direct reading test equipment (i.e., combustible gas meters, detector tubes) for IDLH and other conditions that may cause death or serious harm (combustible or explosive atmospheres, oxygen deficiency, toxic substances).

(iii) Visually observing for signs of actual or potential IDLH or other dangerous conditions.

(iv) An ongoing air monitoring program in accordance with paragraph (h) of this section shall be implemented after site characterization has determined the site is safe for the startup of operations.

(7) Risk identification. Once the presence and concentrations of specific hazardous substances and health hazards have been established, the risks associated with these substances shall be identified. Employees who will be working on the site shall be informed of any risks that have been identified. In situations covered by the Hazard Communication Standard, 29 CFR 1910.1200, training required by that standard need not be duplicated.

Note to (c)(7).—Risks to consider include, but are not limited to:

(a) Exposures exceeding the permissible exposure limits and published exposure levels.

(b) IDLH concentrations.

(c) Potential skin absorption and irritation sources.

(d) Potential eye irritation sources.

(e) Explosion sensitivity and flammability ranges.

(f) Oxygen deficiency.

(8) Employee notification. Any information concerning the chemical, physical, and toxicologic properties of each substance known or expected to be present on site that is available to the employer and relevant to the duties an employee is expected to perform shall be made available to the affected employees prior to the commencement of their work activities. The employer may utilize information developed for the hazard communication standard for this purpose.

(d) Site control.

(1) General. Appropriate site control procedures shall be implemented to control employee exposure to hazardous substances before clean-up work begins.

(2) Site control program. A site control program for protecting employees which is part of the employer's site safety and health program required in paragraph (b) of this section shall be developed during the planning stages of a hazardous waste clean-up operation and modified as necessary as new information becomes available.

(3) Elements of the site control program. The site control program shall, as a minimum, include: A site map; site work zones; the use of a "buddy system"; site communications including alerting means for emergencies; the standard operating procedures or safe work practices; and, identification of the nearest medical assistance. Where these requirements are covered elsewhere they need not be repeated.

(e) Training.

(1) General.

(i) All employees working on site (such as but not limited to equipment operators, general laborers and others) exposed to hazardous substances, health hazards, or safety hazards and their supervisors and management responsible for the site shall receive training meeting the requirements of this paragraph before they are permitted to engage in hazardous waste operations that could expose them to hazardous substances, safety, or health hazards, and they shall receive review training as specified in this paragraph.

(ii) Employees shall not be permitted to participate in or supervise field activities until they have been trained to a level required by their job function and responsibility.

(2) Elements to be covered. The training shall thoroughly cover the following:

(i) Names of personnel and alternates responsible for site safety and health;

(ii) Safety, health and other hazards present on the site;

(iii) Use of personal protective equipment;

(iv) Work practices by which the employee can minimize risks from hazards;

(v) Safe use of engineering controls and equipment on the site;

(vi) Medical surveillance requirements, including recognition of symptoms and signs which might indicate overexposure to hazards; and

(vii) The contents of paragraphs (g) through (j) of the site safety and health plan set forth in paragraph (b)(4)(ii) of this section.

(3) Initial training.

(i) General site workers (such as equipment operators, general laborers and supervisory personnel) engaged in hazardous substance removal or other activities which expose or potentially expose workers to hazardous substances and health hazards shall receive a minimum of 40 hours of instruction off the site, and a minimum of three days actual field experience under the direct supervision of a trained, experienced supervisor.

(ii) Workers on site only occasionally for a specific limited task (such as, but not limited to, ground water monitoring, land surveying, or geo-physical surveying) and who are unlikely to be exposed over permissible exposure limits and published exposure limits shall receive a minimum of 24 hours of instruction off the site, and the minimum of one day actual field experience under the direct supervision of a trained, experienced supervisor.

(iii) Workers regularly on site who work in areas which have been monitored and fully characterized indicating that exposures are under permissible exposure limits and published exposure limits where respirators are not necessary, and the characterization indicates that there are no health hazards or the possibility of an emergency developing, shall receive a minimum of 24 hours of instruction off the site and the minimum of one day actual field experience under the direct supervision of a trained, experienced supervisor.

(iv) Workers with 24 hours of training who are covered by paragraphs (a)(3)(ii)and (a)(3)(iii) of this section, and who become general site workers or who are required to wear respirators, shall have the additional 16 hours and two days of training necessary to total the training specified in paragraph (e)(3)(i).

(4) Management and supervisor training. On-site management and supervisors directly responsible for, or who supervise employees engaged in, hazardous waste operations shall receive 40 hours initial training, and three days of supervised field experience (the training may be reduced to 24 hours and one day if the only area of their responsibility is employees covered by paragraphs (e)(3)(ii) and (e)(3)(iii) and at least eight additional hours of specialized training at the time of job assignment on such topics as, but not limited to, the employer's safety and health program and the associated employee training program, personal protective equipment program, spill containment program, and health hazard monitoring procedure and techniques.

(5) Qualifications for trainers. Trainers shall be qualified to instruct employees about the subject matter that is being presented in training. Such trainers shall have satisfactorily completed a training program for teaching the subjects they are expected to teach, or they shall have the academic credentials and instructional experience necessary for teaching the subjects. Instructors shall demonstrate competent instructional skills and knowledge of the applicable subject matter.

(6) Training certification. Employees and supervisors that have received and successfully completed the training and field experience specified in paragraphs (e)(1) through (e)(4) of this section shall be certified by their instructor or the head instructor and trained supervisor as having successfully completed the necessary training. A written certificate shall be given to each person so certified. Any person who has not been so certified or who does not meet the requirements of paragraph (e)(9) of this section shall be prohibited from engaging in hazardous waste operations.

(7) Emergency response. Employees who are engaged in responding to hazardous emergency situations at hazardous waste clean-up sites that may expose them to hazardous substances shall be trained in how to respond to such expected emergencies.

(8) Refresher training. Employees specified in paragraph (e)(1) of this section, and managers and supervisors specified in paragraph (e)(4) of this section, shall receive eight hours of refresher training annually on the items specified in paragraph (e)(2) and/or (e)(4) of this section, any critique of incidents that have occurred in the past year that can serve as training examples of related work, and other relevant topics.

(9) Equivalent training. Employers who can show by documentation or certification that an employee's work experience and/or training has resulted in training equivalent to that training required in paragraphs (e)(1) through (e)(4) of this section shall not be required to provide the initial training requirements of those paragraphs to such employees. However, certified employees new to a site shall receive appropriate, site specific training before site entry and have appropriate supervised field experience at the new site. Equivalent training includes any academic training or the training that existing employees might have already received from actual hazardous waste site work experience.

(f) Medical surveillance.

(1) General. Employers engaged in operations specified in paragraphs (a)(1)(i) through (a)(1)(iv) of this section and not covered by (a)(2)(iii) exceptions and employers of employees specified in paragraph (g)(9) shall institute a medical surveillance program in accordance with this paragraph.

(2) Employees covered. The medical surveillance program shall be instituted by the employer for the following employees:

(i) All employees who are or may be exposed to hazardous substances or health hazards at or above the permissible exposure limits or, if there is no permissible exposure limit, above the published exposure levels for these substances, without regard to the use of respirators, for 30 days or more a year;

(ii) All employees who wear a respirator for 30 days or more a year or as required by § 1910.134;

(iii) All employees who are injured due to overexposure from an emergency incident involving hazardous substances or health hazards; or

(iv) Members of HAZMAT teams.

(3) Frequency of medical examinations and consultations.

Medical examinations and consultations shall be made available by the employer to each employee covered under paragraph (f)(2) of this section on the following schedules:

(i) For employees covered under paragraphs (f)(2)(i), (f)(2)(ii), and (f)(2)(iv):

(a) Prior to assignment;

(b) At least once every twelve months for each employee covered unless the attending physician believes a longer interval (not greater than biennially) is appropriate;

(c) At termination of employment or reassignment to an area where the employee would not be covered if the employee has not had an examination within the last six months;

(d) As soon as possible upon notification by an employee that the employee has developed signs or symptoms indicating possible overexposure to hazardous substances or health hazards, or that the employee has been injured or exposed above the permissible exposure limits or published exposure levels in an emergency situation;

(e) At more frequent times, if the examining physician determines that an increased frequency of examination is medically necessary.

(ii) For employees covered under paragraph (f)(2)(iii) and for all employees including those of employers covered by paragraph (a)(1)(v) who may have been injured, received a health impairment, developed signs or symptoms which may have resulted from exposure to hazardous substances resulting from an emergency incident, or exposed during an emergency incident to hazardous substances at concentrations above the permissible exposure limits or the published exposure levels without the necessary personal protective equipment being used:

(a) As soon as possible following the emergency incident or development of signs or symptoms;

(b) At additional times, if the examining physician determines that follow-up examinations or consultations are medically necessary.

(4) Content of medical examinations and consultations.

(i) Medical examinations required by paragraph (f)(3) of this section shall include a medical and work history (or updated history if one is in the employee's file) with special emphasis on symptoms related to the handling of hazardous substances and health hazards, and to fitness for duty including the ability to wear any required PPE under conditions (i.e., temperature extremes) that may be expected at the work site.

(ii) The content of medical examinations or consultations made available to employees pursuant to paragraph (f) shall be determined by the attending physician. The guidelines in the *Occupational Safety and Health Guidance Manual for Hazardous Waste Site Activities* (See Appendix D, Reference #10) should be consulted.

(5) Examination by a physician and costs. All medical examinations and procedures shall be performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician, preferably one knowledgeable in occupational medicine, and shall be provided without cost to the employee, without loss of pay, and at a reasonable time and place.

(6) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide one copy of this standard and its appendices to the attending physician, and in addition the following for each employee:

(i) A description of the employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposures.

(ii) The employee's exposure levels or anticipated exposure levels.

(iii) A description of any personal protective equipment used or to be used.

(iv) Information from previous medical examinations of the employee which is not readily available to the examining physician.

(v) Information required by §1910.134.

(7) Physician's written opinion.

(i) The employer shall obtain and furnish the employee with a copy of a written opinion from the attending physician containing the following:

(a) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical conditions which would place the employee at increased risk of material impairment of the employee's health from work in hazardous waste operations or emergency response, or from respirator use.

(b) The physician's recommended limitations upon the employee's assigned work.

(c) The results of the medical examination and tests if requested by the employee.

(d) A statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and any medical conditions which require further examination or treatment.

(ii) The written opinion obtained by the employer shall not reveal specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposures.

(8) Recordkeeping.

(i) An accurate record of the medical surveillance required by paragraph (f) of this section shall be retained. This record shall be retained for the period specified and meet the criteria of 29 CFR 1910.20.

(ii) The record required in paragraph (f)(8)(i) of this section shall include at least the following information:

(a) The name and social security number of the employee;

(b) Physician's written opinions, recommended limitations, and results of examinations and tests;

(c) Any employee medical complaints related to exposure to hazardous substances;

(d) A copy of the information provided to the examining physician by the employer, with the exception of the standard and its appendices.

(g) Engineering controls, work practices, and personal protective equipment for employee protection.

Engineering controls, work practices, personal protective equipment, or a combination of these shall be implemented in accordance with this paragraph to protect employees from exposure to hazardous substances and safety and health hazards.

(1) Engineering controls, work practices and PPE for substances regulated in Subparts G and Z.

(i) Engineering controls and work practices shall be instituted to reduce and maintain employee exposure to or below the permissible exposure limits for substances regulated by 29 CFR Part 1910, to the extent required by Subpart Z, except to the extent that such controls and practices are not feasible.

Note to (g)(1)(i): Engineering controls which may be feasible include the use of pressurized cabs or control booths on equipment, and/or the use of remotely operated material handling equipment. Work practices which may be feasible are removing all non-essential employees from potential exposure during opening of drums, wetting down dusty operations and locating employees upwind of possible hazards.

(ii) Whenever engineering controls and work practices are not feasible, PPE shall be used to reduced and maintain employee exposures to or below the permissible exposure limits or dose limits for substances regulated by 29 CFR Part 1910, Subpart Z.

(iii) The employer shall not implement a schedule of employee rotation as a means of compliance with permissible exposure limits or dose limits except when there is no other feasible way of complying with the airborne or dermal dose limits for ionizing radiation.

(iv) The provisions of 29 CFR, Subpart G, shall be followed.

(2) Engineering controls, work practices, and PPE for substances not regulated in Subparts G and Z. An appropriate combination of engineering controls, work practices and personal protective equipment shall be used to reduce and maintain employee exposure to or below published exposure levels for hazardous substances and health hazards not regulated by 29 CFR Part 1910, Subparts G and Z. The employer may use the published literature and MSDS as a guide in making the employer's determination as to what level of protection the employer believes is appropriate for hazardous substances and health hazards for which there is no permissible exposure limit or published exposure limit.

(3) Personal protective equipment selection.

(i) Personal protective equipment (PPE) shall be selected and used which will protect employees from the hazards and potential hazards they are likely to encounter as identified during the site characterization and analysis.

(ii) Personal protective equipment selection shall be based on an evaluation of the performance characteristics of the PPE relative to the requirements and limitations of the site, the task-specific conditions and duration, and the hazards and potential hazards identified at the site.

(iii) Positive pressure self-contained breathing apparatus, or positive pressure air-line respirators equipped with an escape air supply, shall be used when chemical exposure levels present will create a substantial possibility of immediate death, immediate serious illness or injury, or impair the ability to escape.

(iv) Totally-encapsulating chemical protective suits (protection equivalent to Level A protection as recommended in Appendix B) shall be used in conditions where skin absorption of a hazardous substance may result in a substantial possibility of immediate death, immediate serious illness or injury, or impair the ability to escape.

(v) The level of protection provided by PPE selection shall be increased when additional information on site conditions indicates that increased protection is necessary to reduce employee exposures below permissible exposure limits and published exposure levels for hazardous substances and health hazards. (See Appendix B for guidance on selecting PPE ensembles.)

Note to (g)(3): The level of employee protection provided may be decreased when additional information or site conditions show that decreased protection will not result in hazardous exposures to employees.

(vi) Personal protective equipment shall be selected and used to meet the requirements of 29 CFR Part 1910, Subpart I, and additional requirements specified in this section.

(4) Totally-encapsulating chemical protective suits.

(i) Totally-encapsulating suits shall protect employees from the particular hazards which are identified during site characterization and analysis.

(ii) Totally-encapsulating suits shall be capable of maintaining positive air pressure. (See Appendix A for a test method which may be used to evaluate this requirement.)

(iii) Totally-encapsulating suits shall be capable of preventing inward test gas leakage of more than 0.5 percent. (See Appendix A for a test method which may be used to evaluate this requirement.)

(5) Personal protective equipment (PPE) program. A written personal protective equipment program, which is part of the employer's safety and health program required in paragraph (b) of this section or required in paragraph (p)(1) of this section and which is also a part of the site-specific safety and health plan shall be established. The PPE program shall address the elements listed below. When elements, such as donning and doffing procedures, are provided by the manufacturer of a piece of equipment and are attached to the plan, they need not be rewritten into the plan as long as they adequately address the procedure or element.

(i) PPE selection based upon site hazards,

(ii) PPE use and limitations of the equipment,

(iii) Work mission duration,

(iv) PPE maintenance and storage,

(v) PPE decontamination and disposal,

(vi) PPE training and proper fitting,

(vii) PPE donning and doffing procedures,

(viii) PPE inspection procedures prior to, during, and after use,

(ix) Evaluation of the effectiveness of the PPE program, and

(x) Limitations during temperature extremes, heat stress, and other appropriate medical considerations.

(h) Monitoring.

(1) General.

(i) Monitoring shall be performed in accordance with this paragraph where there may be a question of employee exposure to hazardous concentrations of hazardous substances in order to assure proper selection of engineering controls, work practices and personal protective equipment so that employees are not exposed to levels which exceed permissible exposure limits or published exposure levels for hazardous substances.

(ii) Air monitoring shall be used to identify and quantify airborne levels of hazardous substances and safety and health hazards in order to determine the appropriate level of employee protection needed on site.

(2) Initial entry. Upon initial entry, representative air monitoring shall be conducted to identify any IDLH condition, exposure over permissible exposure limits or published exposure levels, exposure over a radioactive material's dose limits or other dangerous condition such as the presence of flammable atmospheres or oxygen-deficient environments.

(3) Periodic monitoring. Periodic monitoring shall be conducted when the possibility of an IDLH condition or flammable atmosphere has developed or when there is indication that exposures may have risen over permissible exposure limits or published exposure levels since prior monitoring. Situations where it shall be considered whether the possibility that exposures have risen are as follows:

(i) When work begins on a different portion of the site.

(ii) When contaminants other than those previously identified are being handled.

(iii) When a different type of operation is initiated (e.g., drum opening as opposed to exploratory well drilling).

(iv) When employees are handling leaking drums or containers or working in areas with obvious liquid contamination (e.g., a spill or lagoon).

(4) Monitoring of high-risk employees. After the actual clean-up phase of any hazardous waste operation commences; for example, when soil, surface water or containers are moved or disturbed; the employer shall monitor those employees likely to have the highest exposure to hazardous substances and health hazards likely to be present above permissible exposure limits or published exposure levels by using personal sampling frequently enough to characterize employee exposures. If the employees likely to have the highest exposure are over permissible exposure limits or published exposure limits, then monitoring shall continue to determine all employees likely to be above those limits. The employer may utilize a representative sampling approach by documenting that the employees and chemicals chosen for monitoring are based on the criteria stated above.

Note to (h): It is not required to monitor employees engaged in site characterization operations covered by paragraph (c) of this section.

(i) Informational programs.

Employers shall develop and implement a program, which is part of the employer's safety and health program required in paragraph (b) of this section, to inform employees, contractors, and subcontractors (or their representative) actually engaged in hazardous waste operations of the nature, level and degree of exposure likely as a result of participation in such hazardous waste operations. Employees, contractors and subcontractors working outside of the operations part of a site are not covered by this standard.

(j) Handling drums and containers.

(1) General.

(i) Hazardous substances and contaminated soils, liquids, and other residues shall be handled, transported, labeled, and disposed of in accordance with this paragraph.

(ii) Drums and containers used during the clean-up shall meet the appropriate DOT, OSHA, and EPA regulations for the wastes that they contain.

(iii) When practical, drums and containers shall be inspected and their integrity shall be assured prior to being moved. Drums or containers that cannot be inspected before being moved because of storage conditions (i.e., buried beneath the earth, stacked behind other drums, stacked several tiers high in a pile, etc.) shall be moved to an accessible location and inspected prior to further handling.

(iv) Unlabeled drums and containers shall be considered to contain hazardous substances and handled accordingly until the contents are positively identified and labeled.

(v) Site operations shall be organized to minimize the amount of drum or container movement.

(vi) Prior to movement of drums or containers, all employees exposed to the transfer operation shall be warned of the potential hazards associated with the contents of the drums or containers.

(vii) U.S. Department of Transportation specified salvage drums or containers and suitable quantities of proper absorbent shall be kept available and used in areas where spills, leaks, or ruptures may occur.

(viii) Where major spills may occur, a spill containment program, which is part of the employer's safety and health program required in paragraph (b) of this section, shall be implemented to contain and isolate the entire volume of the hazardous substance being transferred.

(ix) Drums and containers that cannot be moved without rupture, leakage, or spillage shall be emptied into a sound container using a device classified for the material being transferred.

(x) A ground-penetrating system or other type of detection system or device shall be used to estimate the location and depth of buried drums or containers.

(xi) Soil or covering material shall be removed with caution to prevent drum or container rupture.

(xii) Fire extinguishing equipment meeting the requirements of 29 CFR Part 1910, Subpart L, shall be on hand and ready for use to control incipient fires.

(2) Opening drums and containers. The following procedures shall be followed in areas where drums or containers are being opened:

(i) Where an airline respirator system is used, connections to the source of air supply shall be protected from contamination and the entire system shall be protected from physical damage.

(ii) Employees not actually involved in opening drums or containers shall be kept a safe distance from the drums or containers being opened.

(iii) If employees must work near or adjacent to drums or containers being opened, a suitable shield that does not interfere with the work operation shall be placed between the employee and the drums or containers being opened to protect the employee in case of accidental explosion.

(iv) Controls for drum or container opening equipment, monitoring equipment, and fire suppression equipment shall be located behind the explosion-resistant barrier.

(v) When there is a reasonable possibility of flammable atmospheres being present, material handling equipment and hand tools shall be of the type to prevent sources of ignition.

(vi) Drums and containers shall be opened in such a manner that excess interior pressure will be safety relieved. If pressure can not be relieved from a remote location, appropriate shielding shall be placed between the employee and the drums or containers to reduce the risk of employee injury.

(vii) Employees shall not stand upon or work from drums or containers.

(3) Material handling equipment. Material handling equipment used to transfer drums and containers shall be selected, positioned and operated to minimize sources of ignition related to the equipment from igniting vapors released from ruptured drums or containers.

(4) Radioactive wastes. Drums and containers containing radioactive wastes shall not be handled until such time as their hazard to employees is properly assessed.

(5) Shock sensitive wastes. As a minimum, the following special precautions shall be taken when drums and containers containing or suspected of containing shock-sensitive wastes are handled:

(i) All non-essential employees shall be evacuated from the area of transfer.

(ii) Material handling equipment shall be provided with explosive containment devices or protective shields to protect equipment operators from exploding containers.

(iii) An employee alarm system capable of being perceived above surrounding light and noise conditions shall be used to signal the commencement and completion of explosive waste handling activities.

(iv) Continuous communications (i.e., portable radios, hand signals, telephones, as appropriate) shall be maintained between the employee-in-charge of the immediate handling area and both the site safety and health supervisor and the command post until such time as the handling operation is completed. Communication equipment or methods that could cause shock sensitive materials to explode shall not be used.

(v) Drums and containers under pressure, as evidenced by bulging or swelling, shall not be moved until such time as the cause for excess pressure is determined and appropriate containment procedures have been implemented to protect employees from explosive relief of the drum.

(vi) Drums and containers containing packaged laboratory wastes shall be considered to contain shock-sensitive or explosive materials until they have been characterized.

Caution: Shipping of shock sensitive wastes may be prohibited under U.S. Department of Transportation regulations. Employers and their shippers should refer to 49 CFR 173.21 and 173.50.

(6) Laboratory waste packs. In addition to the requirements of paragraph (j)(5) of this section, the following precautions shall be taken, as a minimum, in handling laboratory waste packs (lab packs):

(i) Lab packs shall be opened only when necessary and then only by an individual knowledgeable in the inspection, classification, and segregation of the containers within the pack according to the hazards of the wastes.

(ii) If crystalline material is noted on any container, the contents shall be handled as a shock-sensitive waste until the contents are identified.

(7) Sampling of drum and container contents. Sampling of containers and drums shall be done in accordance with a sampling procedure which is part of the site safety and health plan developed for and available to employees and others at the specific worksite.

(8) Shipping and transport.

(i) Drums and containers shall be identified and classified prior to packaging for shipment.

(ii) Drum or container staging areas shall be kept to the minimum number necessary to identify and classify materials safely and prepare them for transport.

(iii) Staging areas shall be provided with adequate access and egress routes.

(iv) Bulking of hazardous wastes shall be permitted only after a thorough characterization of the materials has been completed.

(9) Tank and vault procedures.

(i) Tanks and vaults containing hazardous substances shall be handled in a manner similar to that for drums and containers, taking into consideration the size of the tank or vault.

(ii) Appropriate tank or vault entry procedures as described in the employer's safety and health plan shall be followed whenever employees must enter a tank or vault.

(k) Decontamination.

(1) General. Procedures for all phases of decontamination shall be developed and implemented in accordance with this paragraph.

(2) Decontamination procedures.

(i) A decontamination procedure shall be developed, communicated to employees and implemented before any employees or equipment may enter areas on site where potential for exposure to hazardous substances exists.

(ii) Standard operating procedures shall be developed to minimize employee contact with hazardous substances or with equipment that has contacted hazardous substances.

(iii) All employees leaving a contaminated area shall be appropriately decontaminated; all contaminated clothing and equipment leaving a contaminated area shall be appropriately disposed of or decontaminated.

(iv) Decontamination procedures shall be monitored by the site safety and health supervisor to determine their effectiveness. When such procedures are found to be ineffective, appropriate steps shall be taken to correct any deficiencies.

(3) Location. Decontamination shall be performed in geographical areas that will minimize the exposure of uncontaminated employees or equipment to contaminated employees or equipment.

(4) Equipment and solvents. All equipment and solvents used for decontamination shall be decontaminated or disposed of properly.

(5) Personal protective clothing and equipment.

(i) Protective clothing and equipment shall be decontaminated, cleaned, laundered, maintained or replaced as needed to maintain their effectiveness.

(ii) Employees whose non-impermeable clothing becomes wetted with hazardous substances shall immediately remove that clothing and proceed to shower. The clothing shall be disposed of or decontaminated before it is removed from the work zone.

(6) Unauthorized employees. Unauthorized employees shall not remove protective clothing or equipment from change rooms.

(7) Commercial laundries or cleaning establishments. Commercial laundries or cleaning establishments that decontaminate protective clothing or equipment shall be informed of the potentially harmful effects of exposures to hazardous substances.

(8) Showers and change rooms. Where the decontamination procedure indicates a need for regular showers and change rooms outside of a contaminated area, they shall be provided and meet the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.141. If temperature conditions prevent the effective use of water, then other effective means for cleansing shall be provided and used.

(l) Emergency response by employees at uncontrolled hazardous waste sites.

(1) Emergency response plan.

(i) An emergency response plan shall be developed and implemented by all employers within the scope of this section to handle anticipated emergencies prior to the commencement of hazardous waste operations. The plan shall be in writing and available for inspection and copying by employees, their representatives, OSHA personnel and other governmental agencies with relevant responsibilities.

(ii) Employers who will evacuate their employees from the workplace when an emergency occurs, and who do not permit any of their employees to assist in handling the emergency, are exempt from the requirements of this paragraph if they provide an emergency action plan complying with section 1910.38(a) of this part.

(2) Elements of an emergency response plan. The employer shall develop an emergency response plan for emergencies which shall address, as a minimum the following:

(i) Pre-emergency planning.

(ii) Personnel roles, lines of authority, and communication.

(iii) Emergency recognition and prevention.

(iv) Safe distances and places of refuge.

(v) Site security and control.

(vi) Evacuation routes and procedures.

(vii) Decontamination procedures which are not covered by the site safety and health plan.

(viii) Emergency medical treatment and first aid.

(ix) Emergency alerting and response procedures.

(x) Critique of response and follow-up.

(xi) PPE and emergency equipment.

(3) Procedures for handling emergency incidents.

(i) In addition to the elements for the emergency response plan required in paragraph (l)(2) of this section, the following elements shall be included for emergency response plans:

(a) Site topography, layout, and prevailing weather conditions.

(b) Procedures for reporting incidents to local, state, and federal governmental agencies.

(ii) The emergency response plan shall be a separate section of the Site Safety and Health Plan.

(iii) The emergency response plan shall be compatible and integrated with the disaster, fire and/or emergency response plans of local, state, and federal agencies.

(iv) The emergency response plan shall be rehearsed regularly as part of the overall training program for site operations.

(v) The site emergency response plan shall be reviewed periodically and, as necessary, be amended to keep it current with new or changing site conditions or information.

(vi) An employee alarm system shall be installed in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.165 to notify employees of an emergency situation; to stop work activities if necessary; to lower background noise in order to speed communication; and to begin emergency procedures.

(vii) Based upon the information available at time of the emergency, the employer shall evaluate the incident and the site response capabilities and proceed with the appropriate steps to implement the site emergency response plan.

(m) Illumination.

Areas accessible to employees shall be lighted to not less than the minimum illumination intensities listed in the following Table H-120.1 while any work is in progress:

TABLE H-120.1—MINIMUM ILLUMINATION INTENSITIES IN FOOT-CANDLES

Foot-candles	Area or operations
5	General site areas.
3	Excavation and waste areas, accessways, active storage areas, loading platforms, refueling, and field maintenance areas.
5	Indoors: Warehouses, corridors, hallways, and exitways.
5	Tunnels, shafts, and general underground work areas. (Exception: Minimum of 10 foot-candles is required at tunnel and shaft heading during drilling mucking, and scaling. Mine Safety and Health Administration approved cap lights shall be acceptable for use in the tunnel heading).
10	General shops (e.g., mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, active storerooms, barracks or living quarters, locker or dressing rooms, dining areas, and indoor toilets and workrooms.)
30	First aid stations, infirmaries, and offices.

(n) Sanitation at temporary workplaces.

(1) Potable water.

(i) An adequate supply of potable water shall be provided on the site.

(ii) Portable containers used to dispense drinking water shall be capable of being tightly closed, and equipped with a tap. Water shall not be dipped from containers.

(iii) Any container used to distribute drinking water shall be clearly marked as to the nature of its contents and not used for any other purpose.

(iv) Where single service cups (to be used but once) are supplied, both a sanitary container for the unused cups and a receptacle for disposing of the used cups shall be provided.

(2) Nonpotable water.

(i) Outlets for nonpotable water, such as water for firefighting purposes, shall be identified to indicate clearly that the water is unsafe and is not to be used for drinking, washing, or cooking purposes.

(ii) There shall be no cross-connection, open or potential, between a system furnishing potable water and a system furnishing nonpotable water.

(3) Toilet facilities.

(i) Toilets shall be provided for employees according to the following Table H-120.2.

TABLE H-120.2—TOILET FACILITIES

Number of employees	Minimum number of facilities
20 or fewer	One.
More than 20, fewer than 200.	One toilet seat and one urinal per 40 employees.
More than 200	One toilet seat and one urinal per 50 employees.

(ii) Under temporary field conditions, provisions shall be made to assure that at least one toilet facility is available.

(iii) Hazardous waste sites not provided with a sanitary sewer shall be provided with the following toilet facilities unless prohibited by local codes:

(a) Chemical toilets;

(b) Recirculating toilets;

(c) Combustion toilets; or

(d) Flush toilets.

(iv) The requirements of this paragraph for sanitation facilities shall not apply to mobile crews having transportation readily available to nearby toilet facilities.

(v) Doors entering toilet facilities shall be provided with entrance locks controlled from inside the facility.

(4) Food handling. All food service facilities and operations for employees shall meet the applicable laws, ordinances, and regulations of the jurisdictions in which they are located.

(5) Temporary sleeping quarters. When temporary sleeping quarters are provided, they shall be heated, ventilated, and lighted.

(6) Washing facilities. The employer shall provide adequate washing facilities for employees engaged in operations where hazardous substances may be harmful to employees. Such facilities shall be in near proximity to the worksite; in areas where exposures are below permissible exposure limits and published exposure levels and which are under the controls of the employer; and shall be so equipped as to enable employees to remove hazardous substances from themselves.

(7) Showers and change rooms. When hazardous waste clean-up or removal operations commence on a site and the duration of the work will require six months or greater time to complete, the employer shall provide showers and change rooms for all employees exposed to hazardous substances and health hazards involved in hazardous waste clean-up or removal operations.

(i) Showers shall be provided and shall be provided and shall meet the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.141(d)(3).

(ii) Change rooms shall be provided and shall meet the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.141(e). Change rooms shall consist of two separate change areas separated by the shower area required in paragraph (n)(7)(i) of this section. One change area, with an exit leading off the worksite, shall provide employees with a clean area where they can remove, store, and put on street clothing. The second area, with an exit to the worksite, shall provide employees with an area where they can put on, remove and store work clothing and personal protective equipment.

(iii) Showers and change rooms shall be located in areas where exposures are below the permissible exposure limits and published exposure levels. If this cannot be accomplished, then a ventilation system shall be provided that will supply air that is below the permissible exposure limits and published exposure levels.

(iv) Employers shall assure that employees shower at the end of their work shift and when leaving the hazardous waste site.

(o) New technology programs.

(1) The employer shall develop and implement procedures for the introduction of effective new technologies and equipment developed for the improved protection of employees working with hazardous waste clean-up operations, and the same shall be implemented as part of the site safety and health program to assure that employee protection is being maintained.

(2) New technologies, equipment or control measures available to the industry, such as the use of foams, absorbents, adsorbents, neutralizers, or other means to suppress the level of air contaminants while excavating the site or for spill control, shall be evaluated by employers or their representatives. Such an evaluation shall be done to determine the effectiveness of the new methods, materials, or equipment before implementing their use on a large scale for enhancing employee protection. Information and data from manufacturers or suppliers may be used as part of the employer's evaluation effort. Such evaluations shall be made available to OSHA upon request.

(p) Certain Operations Conducted Under the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 (RCRA).

Employers conducting operations at treatment, storage, and disposal (TSD) facilities specified in paragraph (a)(1)(iv) of this section not exempted by paragraph (a)(2)(iii) of this section shall provide and implement the programs specified in this paragraph.

(1) Safety and health program. The employer shall develop and implement a written safety and health program for employees involved in hazardous waste operations that shall be available for inspection by employees, their representatives and OSHA personnel. The program shall be designed to identify, evaluate and control safety and health hazards in their facilities for the purpose of employee protection, to provide for emergency response meeting the requirements of paragraph (p)(8) of this section and to address as appropriate site analysis, engineering controls, maximum exposure limits, hazardous waste handling procedures and uses of new technologies.

(2) Hazard communication program. The employer shall implement a hazard communication program meeting the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.1200 as part of the employer's safety and program.

Note to 1910.120.—The exemption for hazardous waste provided in §1910.1200 is applicable to this section.

(3) Medical surveillance program. The employer shall develop and implement a medical surveillance program meeting the requirements of paragraph (f) of this section.

(4) Decontamination program. The employer shall develop and implement a decontamination procedure meeting the requirements of paragraph (k) of this section.

(5) New technology program. The employer shall develop and implement procedures meeting the requirements of paragraph (o) of this section for introducing new and innovative equipment into the workplace.

(6) Material handling program. Where employees will be handling drums or containers, the employer shall develop and implement procedures meeting the requirements of paragraphs (j)(1)(ii) through (viii) and (xi) of this section, as well as (j)(3) and (j)(8) of this section prior to starting such work.

(7) Training program.

(i) New employees. The employer shall develop and implement a training program, which is part of the employer's safety and health program, for employees involved with hazardous waste operations to enable employees to perform their assigned duties and functions in a safe and healthful manner so as not to endanger themselves or other employees. The initial training shall be for 24 hours and refresher training shall be for eight hours annually. Employees who have received the initial training required by this paragraph shall be given a written certificate attesting that they have successfully completed the necessary training.

(ii) Current employees. Employers who can show by an employee's previous work experience and/or training that the employee has had training equivalent to the initial training required by this paragraph, shall be considered as meeting the initial training requirements of this paragraph as to that employee. Equivalent training includes the training that existing employees might have already received from actual site work experience. Current employees shall receive eight hours of refresher training annually.

(iii) Trainers. Trainers who teach initial training shall have satisfactorily completed a training course for teaching the subjects they are expected to teach or they shall have the academic credentials and instruction experience necessary to demonstrate a good command of the subject matter of the courses and competent instructional skills.

(8) Emergency response program.

(i) Emergency response plan. An emergency response plan shall be developed and implemented by all employers. Such plans need not duplicate any of the subjects fully addressed in the employer's contingency planning required by permits, such as those issued by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, provided that the contingency plan is made part of the emergency response plan shall be a written portion of the employers safety and health program required in paragraph (p)(1) of this section. Employers who will evacuate their employees from the worksite location when an emergency occurs and who do not permit any of their employees to assist in handling the emergency are exempt from the requirements of paragraph (p)(8) if they provide an emergency action plan complying with §1910.38(a) of this part.

(ii) Elements of an emergency response plan. The employer shall develop an emergency response plan for emergencies which shall address, as a minimum, the following areas to the extent that they are not addressed in any specific program required in this paragraph:

(a) Pre-emergency planning and coordination with outside parties.

(b) Personnel roles, lines of authority, and communication.

(c) Emergency recognition and prevention.

(d) Safe distances and places of refuge.

(e) Site security and control.

(f) Evacuation routes and procedures.

(g) Decontamination procedures.

(h) Emergency medical treatment and first aid.

(i) Emergency alerting and response procedures.

(j) Critique of response and follow-up.

(k) PPE and emergency equipment.

(iii) Training.

(a) Training for emergency response employees shall be completed before they are called upon to perform in real emergencies. Such training shall include the elements of the emergency response plan, standard operating procedures the employer has established for the job, the personal protective equipment to be worn and procedures for handling emergency incidents.

Exception #1: An employer need not train all employees to the degree specified if the employer divides the work force in a manner such that a sufficient number of employees who have responsibility to control emergencies have the training specified, and all other employees, who may first respond to an emergency incident, have sufficient awareness training to recognize that an emergency response situation exists and that they are instructed in that case to summon the fully trained employees and not attempt control activities for which they are not trained.

Exception #2: An employer need not train all employees to the degree specified if arrangements have been made in advance for an outside fully-trained emergency response team to respond in a reasonable period and all employees, who may come to the incident first, have sufficient awareness training to recognize that an emergency response situation exists and they have been instructed to call the designated outside fully-trained emergency response team for assistance.

(b) Employee members of TSD facility emergency response organizations shall be trained to a level of competence in the recognition of health and safety hazards to protect themselves and other employees. This would include training in the methods used to minimize the risk from safety and health hazards; in the safe use of control equipment; in the selection and use of appropriate personal protective equipment; in the safe operating procedures to be used at the incident scene; in the techniques of coordination with other employees to minimize risks; in the appropriate response to over exposure from health hazards or injury to themselves and other employees; and in the recognition of subsequent symptoms which may result from over exposures.

(c) The employer shall certify that each covered employee has attended and successfully completed the training required in paragraph (p)(8)(iii) of this section, or shall certify the employee's competency at least yearly. The method used to demonstrate competency for certification of training shall be recorded and maintained by the employer.

(iv) Procedures for handling emergency incidents.

(a) In addition to the elements for the emergency response plan required in paragraph (p)(8)(ii) of this section, the following elements shall be included for emergency response plans to the extent that they do not repeat any information already contained in the emergency response plan:

(1) Site topography, layout, and prevailing weather conditions.

(2) Procedures for reporting incidents to local, state, and federal governmental agencies.

(b) The emergency response plan shall be compatible and integrated with the disas-

best copy available

ter, fire and/or emergency response plans of local, state, and federal agencies.

(c) The emergency response plan shall be rehearsed regularly as part of the overall training program for site operations.

(d) The site emergency response plan shall be reviewed periodically and, as necessary, be amended to keep it current with new or changing site conditions or information.

(e) An employee alarm system shall be installed in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.165 to notify employees of an emergency situation; to stop work activities if necessary; to lower background noise in order to speed communication; and to begin emergency procedures.

(f) Based upon the information available at time of the emergency, the employer shall evaluate the incident and the site response capabilities and proceed with the appropriate steps to implement the site emergency response plan.

(q) Emergency response to hazardous substance releases.

This paragraph covers employers whose employees are engaged in emergency response no matter where it occurs except that it does not cover employees engaged in operations specified in paragraphs (a)(1)(i) through (a)(1)(iv) of this section. Those emergency response organizations who have developed and implemented programs equivalent to this paragraph for handling releases of hazardous substances pursuant to section 303 of the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 (Emergency Planning and Community Right-to-Know Act of 1986, 42 U.S.C. 11003) shall be deemed to have met the requirements of this paragraph.

(1) Emergency response plan. An emergency response plan shall be developed and implemented to handle anticipated emergencies prior to the commencement of emergency response operations. The plan shall be in writing and available for inspection and copying by employees, their representatives and OSHA personnel. Employers who will evacuate their employees from the workplace when an emergency occurs, and who do not permit any of their employees to assist in handling the emergency, are exempt from the requirements of this paragraph if they provide an emergency action plan in accordance with §1910.38(a) of this part.

(2) Elements of an emergency response plan. The employer shall develop an emergency response plan for emergencies which shall address, as a minimum, the following to the extent that they are not addressed elsewhere:

(i) Pre-emergency planning and coordination with outside parties.

(ii) Personnel roles, lines of authority, training, and communication.

(iii) Emergency recognition and prevention.

(iv) Safe distances and places of refuse.

(v) Site security and control.

(vi) Evacuation routes and procedures.

(vii) Decontamination.

(viii) Emergency medical treatment and first aid.

(ix) Emergency alerting and response procedures.

(x) Critique of response and follow-up.

(xi) PPE and Emergency equipment.

(xii) Emergency response organizations may use the local emergency response plan or the state emergency response plan or both, as part of their emergency response plan to avoid duplication. Those items of the emergency response plan that are being properly addressed by the SARA Title III plans may be substituted into their emergency plan or otherwise kept together for the employer and employee's use.

(3) Procedures for handling emergency response.

(i) The senior emergency response official responding to an emergency shall become the individual in charge of a site-specific Incident Command System (ICS). All emergency responders and their communications shall be coordinated and controlled through the individual in charge of the ICS assisted by the senior official present for each employer.

Note to (q)(3)(i).—The "senior official" at an emergency response is the most senior official on the site who has the responsibility for controlling the operations at the site. Initially it is the senior officer on the first-due piece of responding emergency apparatus to arrived on the incident scene. As more senior officers arrive (i.e., battalion chief, fire chief, state law enforcement official, site coordinator, etc.) the position is passed up the line of authority which has been previously established.

(ii) The individual in charge of the ICS shall identify, to the extent possible, all hazardous substances or conditions present and shall address as appropriate site analysis, use of engineering controls, maximum exposure limits, hazardous substance handling procedures, and use of any new technologies.

(iii) Based on the hazardous substances and/or conditions present, the individual in charge of the ICS shall implement appropriate emergency operations, and assure that the personal protective equipment worn is appropriate for the hazards to be encountered. However, personal protective equipment shall meet, at a minimum, the criteria contained in 29 CFR 1910.156(e) when worn while performing fire fighting operations beyond the incipient stage for any incident or site.

(iv) Employees engaged in emergency response and exposed to hazardous substances presenting an inhalation hazard or potential inhalation hazard shall wear positive pressure self-contained breathing apparatus while engaged in emergency response, until such time that the individual in charge of the ICS determines through the use of air monitoring that a decreased level of respiratory protection will not result in hazardous exposures to employees.

(v) The individual in charge of the ICS shall limit the number of emergency response personnel at the emergency site, in those areas of potential or actual exposure to incident or site hazards, to those who are actively performing emergency operations. However, operations in hazardous areas shall be performed using the buddy system in groups of two or more.

(vi) Back-up personnel shall stand by with equipment ready to provide assistance or rescue. Advance first aid support personnel, as a minimum, shall also stand by with medical equipment and transportation capability.

(vii) The individual in charge of the ICS shall designate a safety official, who is knowledgeable in the operations being implemented at the emergency response site, with specific responsibility to identify and evaluate hazards and to provide direction with respect to the safety of operations for the emergency at hand.

(viii) When activities are judged by the safety official to be an IDLH condition and/or to involve an imminent danger condition, the safety official shall have the authority to alter, suspend, or terminate those activities. The safety official shall immediately inform the individual in charge of the ICS of any actions needed to be taken to correct these hazards at an emergency scene.

(ix) After emergency operations have terminated, the individual in charge of the ICS shall implement appropriate decontamination procedures.

(x) When deemed necessary for meeting the tasks at hand, approved self-contained compressed air breathing apparatus may be used with approved cylinders from other approved self-contained compressed air breathing apparatus provided that such cylinders are of the same capacity and pressure rating. All compressed air cylinders used with self-contained breathing apparatus shall meet U.S. Department of Transportation and National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health criteria.

(4) Skilled support personnel. Personnel, not necessarily an employer's own employees, who are skilled in the operation of certain equipment, such as mechanized earth moving or digging equipment or crane and hoisting equipment, and who are needed temporarily to perform immediate emergency support work that cannot reasonably be performed in a timely fashion by an employer's own employees, and who will be or may be exposed to the hazards at an emergency response scene, are not required to meet the training required in this paragraph for the employer's regular employees. However, these personnel shall be given an initial briefing at the site prior to their participation in any emergency response. The initial briefing shall include instruction in the wearing of appropriate personal protective equipment, what chemical hazards are involved, and what duties are to be performed. All other appropriate safety and health precautions provided to the employer's own employees shall be used to assure the safety and health of these personnel.

(5) Specialist employees. Employees who, in the course of their regular job duties, work with and are trained in the hazards of specific hazardous substances, and who will be called upon to provide technical advice or assistance at a hazardous substance release incident to the individual in charge, shall receive training or demonstrate competency in the area of their specialization annually.

(6) Training. Training shall be based on the duties and function to be performed by each responder of an emergency response organization. The skill and knowledge levels required for all new responders, those hired after the effective date of this standard, shall be conveyed to them through training before they are permitted to take part in actual emergency operations on an incident. Employees who participate, or are expected to participate, in emergency response, shall be given training in accordance with the following paragraphs:

(i) First responder awareness level. First responders at the awareness level are individuals who are likely to witness or discover a hazardous substance release and who have been trained to initiate an emergency response sequence by notifying the proper authorities of the release. They would take no further action beyond notifying the authorities of the release. First responders at the awareness level shall have sufficient training to have had sufficient experience to objectively demonstrate competency in the following areas.

(a) An understanding of what hazardous materials are, and the risks associated with them in an incident.

(b) An understanding of the potential outcomes associated with an emergency created when hazardous materials are present.

(c) The ability to recognize the presence of hazardous materials in an emergency.

(d) The ability to identify the hazardous materials, if possible.

(e) An understanding of the role of the first responder awareness individual in the employer's emergency response plan including the site security and control and the U.S. Department of Transportation's Emergency Response Guidebook.

(f) The ability to realize the need for additional resources, and to make appropriate notifications to the communication center.

(ii) First responder operations level. First responders at the operations level are individuals who respond to releases or potential releases of hazardous substances as part of the initial response to the site for the purpose of protecting nearby persons, property, or the environment from the effects of the release. They are trained to respond in a defensive fashion without actually trying to stop the release. Their function is to contain the release from a safe distance, keep it from spreading, and prevent exposures. First responders at the operational level shall have received at least eight hours of training or have had sufficient experience to objectively demonstrate competency in the following areas in addition to those listed for the awareness level and the employer shall so certify:

(a) Knowledge of the basic hazard and risk assessment techniques.

(b) Know how to select and use proper personal protective equipment provided to the first responder operational level.

(c) An understanding of basic hazardous materials terms.

(d) Know how to perform basic control, containment and/or confinement operations within the capabilities of the resources and personal protective equipment available with their unit.

(e) Know how to implement basic decontamination procedures.

(f) An understanding of the relevant standard operating procedures and termination procedures.

(iii) Hazardous materials technician. Hazardous materials technicians are individuals who respond to releases or potential releases for the purpose of stopping the release. They assume a more aggressive role than a first responder at the operations level in that they will approach the point of release in order to plug, patch or otherwise stop the release of a hazardous substance. Hazardous materials technicians shall have received at least 24 hours of training equal to the first responder operations level and in addition have competency in the following areas and the employer shall so certify:

(a) Know how to implement the employer's emergency response plan.

(b) Know the classification, identification and verification of known and unknown materials by using field survey instruments and equipment.

(c) Be able to function within an assigned role in the Incident Command System.

(d) Know how to select and use proper specialized chemical personal protective equipment provided to the hazardous materials technician.

(e) Understand hazard and risk assessment techniques.

(f) Be able to perform advance control, containment, and/or confinement operations within the capabilities of the resources and personal protective equipment available with the unit.

(g) Understand and implement decontamination procedures.

(h) Understand termination procedures.

(i) Understand basic chemical and toxicological terminology and behavior.

(iv) Hazardous materials specialist. Hazardous materials specialists are individuals who respond with and provide support to hazardous materials technicians. Their duties parallel those of the hazardous materials technician, however, those duties require a more directed or specific knowledge of the various substances they may be called upon to contain. The hazardous materials specialist would also act as the site liaison with Federal, state, local and other government authorities in regards to site activities. Hazardous materials specialists shall have received at least 24 hours of training equal to the technician level and in addition have competency in the following areas and the employer shall so certify:

(a) Know how to implement the local emergency response plan.

(b) Understand classification, identification and verification of known and unknown materials by using advanced survey instruments and equipment.

(c) Know of the state emergency response plan.

(d) Be able to select and use roper specialized chemical personal protective equipment provided to the hazardous materials specialist.

(e) Understand in-depth hazard and risk techniques.

(f) Be able to perform specialized control, containment, and/or confinement operations within the capabilities of the resources and personal protective equipment available.

(g) Be able to determine and implement decontamination procedures.

(h) Have the ability to develop a site safety and control plan.

(i) Understand chemical, radiological and toxicological terminology and behavior.

(v) On scene incident commander. Incident commanders, who will assume control of the incident scene beyond the first responder awareness level, shall receive at least 24 hours of training equal to the first responder operations level and in addition have competency in the following areas and the employer shall so certify:

(a) Know and be able to implement the employer's incident command system.

(b) Know how to implement the employer's emergency response plan.

(c) Know and understand the hazards and risks associated with employees working in chemical protective clothing.

(d) Know how to implement the local emergency response plan.

(e) Know of the state emergency response plan and of the Federal Regional Response Team.

(f) Know and understand the importance of decontamination procedures.

(7) Trainers. Trainers who teach any of the above training subjects shall have satisfactorily completed a training course for teaching the subjects they are expected to teach, such as the courses offered by the U.S. Fire Academy, or they shall have the training and/or academic credentials and instructional experience necessary to demonstrate competent instructional skills and a good command of the subject matter of the courses they are to teach.

(8) Refresher training.

(i) Those employees who are trained in accordance with paragraph (q)(6) of this section shall receive annual refresher training of sufficient content and duration to maintain their competencies, or shall demonstrate competency in those areas at least yearly.

(ii) A statement shall be made of the training or competency, and if a statement of competency is made, the employer shall keep a record of the methodology used to demonstrate competency.

(9) Medical surveillance and consultation.

(i) Members of an organized and designated HAZMAT team and hazardous materials specialists shall receive a baseline physical examination and be provided with medical surveillance as required in paragraph (f) of this section.

(ii) Any emergency response employees who exhibits signs or symptoms which may have resulted from exposure to hazardous substances during the course of an emergency incident, either immediately or subsequently, shall be provided with medical consultation as required in paragraph (f)(3)(ii) of this section.

(10) Chemical protective clothing. Chemical protective clothing and equipment to be used by organized and designated HAZMAT team members, or to be used by hazardous materials specialists, shall meet the requirements of paragraphs (g)(3) through (5) of this section.

(11) Post-emergency response operations. Upon completion of the emergency response, if it is determined that it is necessary to remove hazardous substances, health hazards, and materials contaminated with them (such as contaminated soil or other elements of the natural environment) from the site of the incident, the employer conducting the clean-up shall comply with one of the following:

(i) Meet all of the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (o) of this section; or

(ii) Where the clean-up is done on plant property using plant or workplace employees, such employees shall have completed the training requirements of the following: 29 CFR 1910.38(a); 1910.134; 1910.1200, and other appropriate safety and health training made necessary by the tasks that they are expected to be performed such as personal protective equipment and decontamination procedures. All equipment to be used in the performance of the clean-up work shall be in serviceable condition and shall have been inspected prior to use.

APPENDICES TO 1910.120—HAZARDOUS WASTE OPERATIONS AND EMERGENCY RESPONSE

Note: The following appendices serve as non-mandatory guidelines to assist employees and employers in complying with the appropriate requirements of this section. However paragraph 1910.120(g) makes mandatory in certain circumstances the use of Level A and Level B PPE protection.

Appendix A—Personal Protective Equipment Test Methods

This appendix sets forth the nonmandatory examples of tests which may be used to evaluate compliance with § 1910.120 (g)(4)(ii) and (iii). Other tests and other challenge agents may be used to evaluate compliance.

A. Totally-encapsulating chemical protective suit pressure test.

1.0—Scope

1.1 This practice measures the ability of a gas tight totally-encapsulating chemical protective suit material, seams, and closures to maintain a fixed positive pressure. The results of this practice allow the gas tight integrity of a totally-encapsulating chemical protective suit to be evaluated.

1.2 Resistance of the suit materials to permeation, penetration, and degradation by specific hazardous substances is not determined by this test method.

2.0—Definition of terms

2.1 "Totally-encapsulated chemical protective suit (TECP suit)" means a full body garment which is constructed of protective clothing materials; covers the wearer's torso, head, arms, legs and respirator; may cover the wearer's hands and feet with tightly attached gloves and boots; completely encloses the wearer and respirator by itself or in combination with the wearer's gloves and boots.

2.2 "Protective clothing material" means any material or combination of materials used in an item of clothing for the purpose of isolating parts of the body from direct contact with a potentially hazardous liquid or gaseous chemicals.

2.3 "Gas tight" means, for the purpose of this test method, the limited flow of a gas under pressure from the inside of a TECP suit to atmosphere at a prescribed pressure and time interval.

3.0—Summary of test method

3.1 The TECP suit is visually inspected and modified for the test. The test apparatus is attached to the suit to permit inflation to the pre-test suit expansion pressure for removal of suit wrinkles and creases. The pressure is lowered to the test pressure and monitored for three minutes. If the pressure drop is excessive, the TECP suit fails the test and is removed from service. The test is repeated after leak location and repair.

4.0—Required Supplies

4.1 Source of compressed air.

4.2 Test apparatus for suit testing, including a pressure measurement device with a sensitivity of at least ¼ inch water gauge.

4.3 Vent valve closure plugs or sealing tape.

4.4 Soapy water solution and soft brush.

4.5 Stop watch or appropriate timing device.

5.0—Safety Precautions

5.1 Care shall be taken to provide the correct pressure safety devices required for the source of compressed air used.

6.0—Test Procedure

6.1 Prior to each test, the tester shall perform a visual inspection of the suit. Check the suit for seam integrity by visually examining the seams and gently pulling on the seams. Ensure that all air supply lines, fittings, visor, zippers, and valves are secure and show no signs of deterioration.

6.1.1 Seal off the vent valves along with any other normal inlet or exhaust points (such as umbilical air line fittings or face piece opening) with tape or other appropriate means (caps, plugs, fixture, etc.). Care should be exercised in the sealing process not to damage any of the suit components.

6.1.2 Close all closure assemblies.

6.1.3 Prepare the suit for inflation by providing an improvised connection point on the suit for connecting an airline. Attach the pressure test apparatus to the suit to permit suit inflation from a compressed air source equipped with a pressure indicating regulator. The leak tightness of the pressure test apparatus should be tested before and after each test by closing off the end of the tubing attached to the suit and assuring a pressure of three inches water gauge for three minutes can be maintained. If a component is removed for the test, that component shall be replaced and a second test conducted with another component removed to permit a complete test of the ensemble.

6.1.4 The pre-test expansion pressure (A) and the suit test pressure (B) shall be supplied by the suit manufacturer, but in no case shall they be less than: (A) = three inches water gauge; and (B) = two inches water gauge. The ending suit pressure (C) shall be no less than 80 percent of the test pressure (B); i.e., the pressure drop shall not exceed 20 percent of the test pressure (B).

6.1.5 Inflate the suit until the pressure inside is equal to pressure (A), the pre-test expansion suit pressure. Allow at least one minute to fill out the wrinkles in the suit. Release sufficient air to reduce the suit pressure to pressure (B), the suit test pressure. Begin timing. At the end of three minutes, record the suit pressure as pressure (C), the ending suit pressure. The difference between the suit test pressure and the ending suit test pressure (B–C) shall be defined as the suit pressure drop.

6.1.6 If the suit pressure drop is more than 20 percent of the suit test pressure (B) during the three-minute test period, the suit fails the test and shall be removed from service.

7.0—Retest Procedure

7.1 If the suit fails the test check for leaks by inflating the suit to pressure (A) and brushing or wiping the entire suit (including seams, closures, lens gaskets, glove-to-sleeve joints, etc.) with a mild soap and water solution. Observe the suit for the formation of soap bubbles, which is an indication of a leak. Repair all identified leaks.

7.2 Retest the TECP suit as outlined in Test procedure 6.0.

8.0—Report

8.1 Each TECP suit tested by this practice shall have the following information recorded:

8.1.1 Unique identification number, identifying brand name, date of purchase, material of construction, and unique fit features, e.g., special breathing apparatus.

8.1.2 The actual values for test pressures (A), (B), and (C) shall be recorded along with the specific observation times. If the ending pressure (C) is less than 80 percent of the test pressure (B), the suit shall be identified as failing the test. When possible, the specific leak location shall be identified in the test records. Retest pressure data shall be recorded as an additional test.

8.1.3 The source of the test apparatus used shall be identified and the sensitivity of the pressure gauge shall be recorded.

8.1.4 Records shall be kept for each pressure test even if repairs are being made at the test location.

Caution

Visually inspect all parts of the suit to be sure they are positioned correctly and secured tightly before putting the suit back into service. Special care should be taken to examine each exhaust valve to make sure it is not blocked.

Care should also be exercised to assure that the inside and outside of the suit is completely dry before it is put into storage.

B. Totally-encapsulating chemical protective suit qualitative leak test.

1.0—Scope

1.1 This practice semi-qualitatively tests gas tight totally-encapsulating chemical protective suit integrity by detecting inward leakage of ammonia vapor. Since no modifications are made to the suit to carry out this test, the results from this practice provide a realistic test for the integrity of the entire suit.

1.2 Resistance of the suit materials to permeation, penetration, and degradation is not determined by this test method. ASTM test methods are available to test suit materials for these characteristics and the tests are usually conducted by the manufacturers of the suits.

2.0—Definition of terms

2.1 "Totally-encapsulated chemical protective suit (TECP suit) means a full body garment which is constructed of protective clothing materials; covers the wearer's torso, head, arms, legs and respirator; may cover the wearer's hands and feet with tightly attached gloves and boots; completely encloses the wearer and respirator by itself or in combination with the wearer's gloves, and boots.

2.2 "Protective clothing material" means any material or combination of materials used in an item of clothing for the purpose of isolating parts of the body from direct contact with a potentially hazardous liquid or gaseous chemicals.

2.3 "Gas tight" means, for the purpose of this test method, the limited flow of a gas under pressure from the inside of a TECP suit to atmosphere at a prescribed pressure and time interval.

2.4 "Intrusion Coefficient" means a number expressing the level of protection provided by a gas tight totally-encapsulating chemical protective suit. The intrusion coefficient is calculated by dividing the test room challenge agent concentration by the concentration of challenge agent found inside the suit. The accuracy of the intrusion coefficient is dependent on the challenge agent monitoring methods. The larger the intrusion coefficient the greater the protection provided by the TECP suit.

3.0—Summary of recommended practice

3.1 The volume of concentrated aqueous ammonia solution (ammonia hydroxide NH_4OH) required to generate the test atmosphere is determined using the directions outlined in 6.1. The suit is donned by a person wearing the appropriate respiratory equipment (either a positive pressure self-contained breathing apparatus or a positive pressure supplied air respirator) and worn inside the enclosed test room. The concentrated aqueous ammonia solution is taken by the suited individual into the test room and poured into an open plastic pan. A two-minute evaporation period is observed before the test room concentration is measured, using a high range ammonia length of stain detector tube. When the ammonia vapor reaches a concentration of between 1000 and 1200 ppm, the suited individual starts a standardized exercise protocol to stress and flex the suit. After this protocol is completed, the test room concentration is measured again. The suited individual exits the test room and his stand-by person measures the ammonia concentration inside the suit using a low range ammonia length of stain detector tube or other more sensitive ammonia detector. A stand-by person is required to observe the test individual during the test procedure; aid the person in donning and doffing the TECP suit; and monitor the suit interior. The intrusion coefficient of the suit can be calculated by dividing the average test area concentration by the interior suit concentration. A colorimetric ammonia indicator strip of bromophenol blue or equivalent is placed on the inside of the suit face piece lens so that the suited individual is able to detect a color change and know if the suit has a significant leak. If a color change is observed the individual shall leave the test room immediately.

4.0—Required supplies

4.1 A supply of concentrated aqueous (58 percent ammonium hydroxide by weight).

4.2 A supply of bromophenol/blue indicating paper or equivalent, sensitive to 5-10 ppm ammonia or greater over a two-minute period of exposure. [pH 3.0 (yellow) to pH 4.6 (blue)]

4.3 A supply of high range (0.5-10 volume percent) and low range (5-700 ppm) detector tubes for ammonia and the corresponding sampling pump. More sensitive ammonia detectors can be substituted for the low range detector tubes to improve the sensitivity of this practice.

4.4 A shallow plastic pan (PVC) at least 12":14":1" and a half pint plastic container (PVC) with tightly closing lid.

4.5 A graduated cylinder or other volumetric measuring device of at least 50 milliliters in volume with an accuracy of at least ± 1 milliliters.

5.0—Safety precautions

5.1 Concentrated aqueous ammonium hydroxide, NH_4OH, is a corrosive volatile liquid requiring eye, skin, and respiratory protection. The person conducting the test shall review the MSDS for aqueous ammonia.

5.2 Since the established permissible exposure limit for ammonia is 50 ppm, only persons wearing a positive pressure self-contained breathing apparatus or a positive pressure supplied air respirator shall be in the chamber. Normally only the person wearing the totally-encapsulating suit will be inside the chamber. A stand-by person shall have a positive pressure self-contained breathing apparatus, or a positive pressure supplied air respirator available to enter the test area should the suited individual need assistance.

5.3 A method to monitor the suited individual must be used during this test. Visual contact is the simplest but other methods using communication devices are acceptable.

5.4 The test room shall be large enough to allow the exercise protocol to be carried out and then to be ventilated to allow for easy exhaust of the ammonia test atmosphere after the test(s) are completed.

5.5 Individuals shall be medically screened for the use of respiratory protection and checked for allergies to ammonia before participating in this test procedure.

6.0—Test procedure

6.1.1 Measure the test area to the nearest foot and calculate its volume in cubic feet. Multiply the test area volume by 0.2 milliliters of concentrated aqueous ammonia solution per cubic foot of test area volume to determine the approximate volume of concentrated aqueous ammonia required to generate 1000 ppm in the test area.

6.1.2 Measure this volume from the supply of concentrated aqueous ammonia and place it into a closed plastic container.

6.1.3 Place the container, several high range ammonia detector tubes, and the pump in the clean test pan and locate it near the test area entry door so that the suited individual has easy access to these supplies.

6.2.1 In a non-contaminated atmosphere, open a pre-sealed ammonia indicator strip and fasten one end of the strip to the inside of the suit face shield lens where it can be seen by the wearer. Moisten the indicator strip with distilled water. Care shall be taken not to contaminate the detector part of the indicator paper by touching it. A small piece of masking tape or equivalent should be used to attach the indicator strip to the interior of the suit face shield.

6.2.2 If problems are encountered with this method of attachment, the indicator strip can be attached to the outside of the respirator face piece lens being used during the test.

6.3 Don the respiratory protective device normally used with the suit, and then don the TECP suit to be tested. Check to be sure all openings which are intended to be sealed (zippers, gloves, etc.) are completely sealed. DO NOT, however, plug off any venting valves.

6.4 Step into the enclosed test room such as a closet, bathroom, or test booth, equipped with an exhaust fan. No air should be exhausted from the chamber during the test because this will dilute the ammonia challenge concentrations.

6.5 Open the container with the premeasured volume of concentrated aqueous ammonia within the enclosed test room, and pour the liquid into the empty plastic test pan. Wait two minutes to allow for adequate volatilization of the concentrated aqueous ammonia. A small mixing fan can be used near the evaporation pan to increase the evaporation rate of the ammonia solution.

6.6 After two minutes a determination of the ammonia concentration within the chamber should be made using the high range colorimetric detector tube. A concentration of 1000 ppm ammonia or greater shall be generated before the exercises are started.

6.7 To test the integrity of the suit the following four minute exercise protocol should be followed:

6.7.1 Raising the arms above the head with at least 15 raising motions completed in one minute.

6.7.2 Walking in place for one minute with at least 15 raising motions of each leg in a one-minute period.

6.7.3 Touching the toes with at least 10 complete motions of the arms from above the head to touching of the toes in a one-minute period.

6.7.4 Knee bends with at least 10 complete standing and squatting motions in a one-minute period.

6.8 If at any time during the test the colorimetric indicating paper should change colors, the test should be stopped and section 6.10 and 6.12 initiated (See ¶4.2).

6.9 After completion of the test exercise, the test area concentration should be measured again using the high range colorimetric detector tube.

6.10 Exit the test area.

6.11 The opening created by the suit zipper or other appropriate suit penetration should be used to determine the ammonia concentration in the suit with the low range length of stain detector tube or other ammonia monitor. The internal TECP suit air should be sampled far enough from the enclosed test area to prevent a false ammonia reading.

6.12 After completion of the measurement of the suit interior ammonia concentration the test is concluded and the suit is doffed and the respirator removed.

6.13 The ventilating fan for the test room should be turned on and allowed to run for enough time to remove the ammonia gas. The fan shall be vented to the outside of the building.

6.14 Any detectable ammonia in the suit interior (five ppm ammonia (NH_3) or more for the length of stain detector tube) indicates that the suit has failed the test. When other ammonia detectors are used a lower level of detection is possible, and it should be specified as the pass/fail criteria.

6.15 By following this test method, an intrusion coefficient of approximately 200 or more can be measured with the suit in a completely operational condition. If the intrusion coefficient is 200 or more, then the suit is suitable for emergency response and field use.

7.0—Retest procedures

7.1 If the suit fails this test, check for leaks by following the pressure test in test A above.

7.2 Retest the TECP suit as outlined in the test procedure 6.0.

8.0—Report

8.1 Each gas tight totally-encapsulating chemical protective suit tested by this practice shall have the following information recorded.

8.1.1 Unique identification number, identifying brand name, date of purchase, material of construction, and unique suit features; e.g., special breathing apparatus.

8.1.2 General description of test room used for test.

8.1.3 Brand name and purchase date of ammonia detector strips and color change data.

8.1.4 Brand name, sampling range, and expiration date of the length of stain ammonia detector tubes. The brand name and model of the sampling pump should also be recorded. If another type of ammonia detector is used, it should be identified along with its minimum detection limit for ammonia.

8.1.5 Actual test results shall list the two test area concentrations, their average, the interior suit concentration, and the calculated intrusion coefficient. Retest data shall be recorded as an additional test.

8.2 The evaluation of the data shall be specified as "suit passed" or "suit failed," and the date of the test. Any detectable ammonia (five ppm or greater for the length of stain detector tube) in the suit interior indicates the suit has failed this test. When other ammonia detectors are used, a lower level of detection is possible and it should be specified as the pass fail criteria.

Caution

Visually inspect all parts of the suit to be sure they are positioned correctly and secured tightly before putting the suit back into service. Special care should be taken to examine each exhaust valve to make sure it is not blocked.

Care should also be exercised to assure that the inside and outside of the suit is completely dry before it is put into storage.

Appendix B—General Description and Discussion of the Levels of Protection and Protective Gear

This appendix sets forth information about personal protective equipment (PPE) protection levels which may be used to assist employers in complying with the PPE requirements of this section.

As required by the standard, PPE must be selected which will protect employees from the specific hazards which they are likely to encounter during their work on-site.

Selection of the appropriate PPE is a complex process which should take into consideration a variety of factors. Key factors involved in this process are identification of the hazards, or suspected hazards; their routes of potential hazard to employees (inhalation, skin absorption, ingestion, and eye or skin contact); and the performance of the PPE *materials* (and seams) in providing a barrier to these hazards. The amount of protection provided by PPE is material-hazard specific. That is, protective equipment materials will protect well against some hazardous substances and poorly, or not at all, against others. In many instances, protective equipment materials cannot be found which will provide continuous protection from the particular hazardous substance. In these cases the breakthrough time of the protective material should exceed the work durations, or the exposure after breakthrough may not pose a hazardous level.

Other factors in this selection process to be considered are matching the PPE to the employee's work requirements and task-specific conditions. The durability of PPE materials, such as tear strength and seam strength, should be considered in relation to the employee's tasks. The effects of PPE in relation to heat stress and task duration are a factor in selecting and using PPE. In some cases layers of PPE may be necessary to provide sufficient protection, or to protect expensive PPE inner garments, suits or equipment.

The more that is known about the hazards at the site, the easier the job of PPE selection becomes. As more information about the hazards and conditions at the site becomes available, the site supervisor can make decisions to up-grade or down-grade the level of PPE protection to match the tasks at hand.

The following are guidelines which an employer can use to begin the selection of the appropriate PPE. As noted above, the site information may suggest the use of combinations of PPE selected from the different protection levels (i.e., A, B, C, or D) as being more suitable to the hazards of the work. It should be cautioned that the listing below does not fully address the performance of the specific PPE material in relation to the specific hazards at the job site, and that PPE selection, evaluation and re-selection is an ongoing process until sufficient information about the hazards and PPE performance is obtained.

Part A. Personal protective equipment is divided into four categories based on the degree of protection afforded. (See Part B of this appendix for further explanation of Levels A, B, C, and D hazards.)

I. Level A—To be selected when the greatest level of skin, respiratory, and eye protection is required.

The following constitute Level A equipment; it may be used as appropriate;

1. Positive pressure, full face-piece self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA), or positive pressure supplied air respirator with escape SCBA, approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH).

2. Totally-encapsulating chemical-protective suit.

3. Coveralls.[1]

4. Long underwear.[1]

5. Gloves, outer, chemical-resistant.

6. Gloves, inner, chemical-resistant.

7. Boots, chemical-resistant, steel toe and shank.

8. Hard hat (under suit).[1]

9. Disposable protective suit, gloves and boots (depending on suit construction, may be worn over totally-encapsulating suit).

II. Level B—The highest level of respiratory protection is necessary but a lesser level of skin protection is needed.

The following constitute Level B equipment; it may be used as appropriate.

1. Positive pressure, full-facepiece self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA), or positive pressure supplied air respirator with escape SCBA (NIOSH approved).

2. Hooded chemical-resistant clothing (overalls and sleeved jacket; coveralls; one or two-piece chemical-spla[illegible] disposable chemical-resistant overalls).

3. Coveralls.[1]

4. Gloves, outer, chemical-resistant.

5. Gloves, inner, chemical-resistant.

6. Boots, outer, chemical-resistant steel toe and shank.

7. Boot-covers, outer, chemical-resistant (disposable).[1]

8. Hard hat.[1]

9. [Reserved]

10. Face shield.[1]

III. Level C—The concentration(s) and type(s) of airborne substance(s) is known and the criteria for using air purifying respirators are met.

The following constitute Level C equipment; it may be used as appropriate.

1. Full-face or half-mask, air purifying respirators (NIOSH approved).

2. Hooded chemical-resistant clothing (overalls; two-piece chemical-splash suit; disposable chemical-resistant overalls).

3. Coveralls.[1]

4. Gloves, outer, chemical-resistant.

5. Gloves, inner, chemical-resistant.

6. Boots (outer), chemical-resistant steel toe and shank.[1]

7. Boot-covers, outer, chemical-resistant (disposable).[1]

8. Hard hat.[1]

9. Escape mask.[1]

10. Face shield.[1]

IV. Level D—A work uniform affording minimal protection, used for nuisance contamination only.

The following constitute Level D equipment; it may be used as appropriate:

1. Coveralls.

2. Gloves.[1]

3. Boots/shoes, chemical-resistant steel toe and shank.

4. Boots, outer, chemical-resistant (disposable).[1]

5. Safety glasses or chemical splash goggles*.

6. Hard hat.[1]

7. Escape mask.[1]

8. Face shield.[1]

Part B. The types of hazards for which levels A, B, C, and D protection are appropriate are described below:

I. Level A—Level A protection should be used when:

1. The hazardous substance has been identified and requires the highest level of protection for skin, eyes, and the respiratory system based on either the measured (or potential for) high concentration of atmospheric vapors, gases, or particulates; or the site operations and work functions involve a high potential for splash, immersion, or exposure to unexpected vapors, gases, or particulates of materials that are harmful to skin or capable of being absorbed through the skin;

2. Substances with a high degree of hazard to the skin are known or suspected to be present, and skin contact is possible; or

3. Operations are being conducted in confined, poorly ventilated areas, and the absence of conditions requiring Level A have not yet been determined.

II. Level B—Level B protection should be used when:

1. The type and atmospheric concentration of substances have been identified and require a high level of respiratory protection, but less skin protection;

2. The atmosphere contains less than 19.5 percent oxygen; or

3. The presence of incompletely identified vapors or gases is indicated by a direct-reading organic vapor detection instrument, but vapors and gases are not suspected of containing high levels of chemicals harmful to skin or capable of being absorbed through the skin.

---

[1] Optional, as applicable.

Note: This involves atmospheres with IDLH concentrations of specific substances that present severe inhalation hazards and that do not represent a severe skin hazard; or that do not meet the criteria for use of air-purifying respirators.

III. Level C—Level C protection should be used when:

1. The atmospheric contaminants, liquid splashes, or other direct contact will not adversely affect or be absorbed through any exposed skin;

2. The types of air contaminants have been identified, concentrations measured, and an air-purifying respirator is available that can remove the contaminants; and

3. All criteria for the use of air-purifying respirators are met.

IV. Level D—Level D protection should be used when:

1. The atmosphere contains no known hazard; and

2. Work functions preclude splashes, immersion, or the potential for unexpected inhalation of or contact with hazardous levels of any chemicals.

Note: As stated before, combinations of personal protective equipment other than those described for Levels A, B, C, and D protection may be more appropriate and may be used to provide the proper level of protection.

As an aid in selecting suitable chemical protective clothing, it should be noted that the National Fire Protection Association is developing standards on chemical protective clothing. These standards are currently undergoing public review prior to adoption, including:

NFPA 1991—Standard on Vapor-Protective Suits for Hazardous Chemical Emergencies (EPA Level A Protective Clothing)

NFPA 1991—Standard on Liquid Splash-Protective Suits for Hazardous Chemical Emergencies (EPA Level B Protective Clothing.)

NFPA 1993—Standard on Liquid Splash-Protective Suits for Non-emergency, Non-flammable Hazardous Chemical Situations (EPA Level B Protective Clothing)

These standards would apply documentation and performance requirements to the manufacture of chemical protective suits. Chemical protective suits meeting these requirements would be labelled as compliant with the appropriate standard. When these standards are adopted by the National Fire Protection Association, it is recommended that chemical protective suits which meet these standards be used.

Appendix C—Compliance Guidelines

1. Occupational Safety and Health Program. Each hazardous waste site clean-up effort will require an occupational safety and health program headed by the site coordinator or the employer's representative. The purpose of the program will be the protection of employees at the site and will be an extension of the employer's overall safety and health program. The program will need to be developed before work begins on the site and implemented as work proceeds as stated in paragraph (b). The program is to facilitate coordination and communication of safety and health issues among personnel responsible for the various activities which will take place at the site. It will provide the overall means for planning and implementing the needed safety and health training and job orientation of employees who will be working at the site. The program will provide the means for identifying and controlling worksite hazards and the means for monitoring program effectiveness. The program will need to cover the responsibilities and authority of the site coordinator or the employer's manager on the site for the safety and health of employees at the site, and the relationships with contractors or support services as to what each employer's safety and health responsibilities are for their employees on the site. Each contractor on the site needs to have its own safety and health program so structured that it will smoothly interface with the program of the site coordinator or principal contractor.

Also those employers involved with treating, storing or disposal of hazardous waste as covered in paragraph (p) must have implemented a safety and health program for their employees. This program is to include the hazard communication program required in paragraph (p)(1) and the training required in paragraphs (p)(7) and (p)(8) as parts of the employers comprehensive overall safety and health program. This program is to be in writing.

Each site or workplace safety and health program will need to include the following: (1) Policy statements of the line of authority and accountability for implementing the program, the objectives of the program and the role of the site safety and health supervisor or manager and staff; (2) means or methods for the development of procedures for identifying and controlling workplace hazards at the site; (3) means or methods for the development and communication to employees of the various plans, work rules, standard operating procedures and practices that pertain to individual employees and supervisors; (4) means for the training of supervisors and employees to develop the needed skills and knowledge to perform their work in a safe and healthful manner; (5) means to anticipate and prepare for emergency situations; and (6) means for obtaining information feedback to aid in evaluating the program and for improving the effectiveness of the program. The management and employees should be trying continually to improve the effectiveness of the program thereby enhancing the protection being afforded those working on the site.

Accidents on the site or workplace should be investigated to provide information on how such occurrences can be avoided in the future. When injuries or illnesses occur on the site or workplace, they will need to be investigated to determine what needs to be done to prevent this incident from occurring again. Such information will need to be used as feedback on the effectiveness of the program and the information turned into positive steps to prevent any reoccurrence. Receipt of employee suggestions or complaints relating to safety and health issues involved with site or workplace activities is also a feedback mechanism that can be used effectively to improve the program and may serve in part as an evaluative tool(s).

For the development and implementation of the program to be the most effective, professional safety and health personnel should be used. Certified Safety Professionals, Board Certified Industrial Hygienists or Registered Professional Safety Engineers are good examples of professional stature for safety and health managers who will administer the employer's program.

2. Training. The training programs for employees subject to the requirements of paragraph (e) of this standard should address: the safety and health hazards employees should expect to find on hazardous waste clean-up sites; what control measures or techniques are effective for those hazards; what monitoring procedures are effective in characterizing exposure levels; what makes an effective employer's safety and health program; what a site safety and health plan should include; hands on training with personal protective equipment and clothing they may be expected to use; the contents of the OSHA standard relevant to the employee's duties and function; and, employee's responsibilities under OSHA and other regulations. Supervisors will need training in their responsibilities under the safety and health program and its subject areas such as the spill containment program, the personal protective equipment program, the medical surveillance program, the emergency response plan and other areas.

The training programs for employees subject to the requirements of paragraph (p) of this standard should address: the employers safety and health program elements impacting employees; the hazard communication program; the medical surveillance program; the hazards and the controls for such hazards that employees need to know for their job duties and functions. All require annual refresher training.

The training programs for employees covered by the requirements of paragraph (q) of this standard should address those competencies required for the various levels of response such as: the hazards associated with hazardous substances; hazard identification and awareness; notification of appropriate persons; the need for and use of personal protective equipment including respirators; the decontamination procedures to be used; preplanning activities for hazardous substance incidents including the emergency response plan; company standard operating procedures for hazardous substance emergency responses; the use of the incident command system and other subjects. Hands-on training should be stressed whenever possible. Critiques done after an incident which include an evaluation of what worked and what did not and how could the incident be better handled the next time may be counted as training time.

For hazardous materials specialists (usually members of hazardous materials teams), the training should address the care, use and/or testing of chemical protective clothing including totally encapsulating suits, the medical surveillance program, the standard operating procedures for the hazardous materials team including the use of plugging and patching equipment and other subject areas.

Officers and leaders who may be expected to be in charge at an incident should be fully knowledgeable of their company's incident command system. They should know where and how to obtain additional assistance and be familiar with the local district's emergency response plan and the state emergency response plan.

Specialist employees such as technical experts, medical experts or environmental experts that work with hazardous materials in their regular jobs, who may be sent to the incident scene by the shipper, manufacturer or governmental agency to advise and assist the person in charge of the incident should have training on an annual basis. Their training should include the care and use of personal protective equipment including respirators; knowledge of the incident command system and how they are to relate to it; and those areas needed to keep them current in their respective field as it relates to safety and health involving specific hazardous substances.

Those skilled support personnel, such as employees who work for public works departments or equipment operators who operate bulldozers, sand trucks, backhoes, etc., who may be called to the incident scene to provide emergency support assistance, should have at least a safety and health briefing before entering the area of potential or actual exposure. These skilled support personnel, who have not been a part of the emergency response plan and do not meet the training requirements, should be made aware of the hazards they face and should be provided all necessary protective clothing and equipment required for their tasks.

3. Decontamination. Decontamination procedures should be tailored to the specific hazards of the site, and may vary in complexity and number of steps, depending on the level of hazard and the employee's exposure to the hazard. Decontamination procedures and PPE decontamination methods will vary depending upon the specific substance, since one procedure or method may not work for all substances. Evaluation of decontamination methods and procedures should be performed, as necessary, to assure that employees are not exposed to hazards by re-using PPE. References in Appendix F may be used for guidance in establishing an effective decontamination program. In addition, the U.S. Coast Guard's Manual, "Policy Guidance for Response to Hazardous Chemical Releases," U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington DC (COMDTINST M16465.30) is a good reference for establishing an effective decontamination program.

4. Emergency response plans. States, along with designated districts within the states, will be developing or have developed local emergency response plans. These state and district plans should be utilized in the emergency response plans called for in the standard. Each employer should assure that its emergency response plan is compatible with the local plan. The major reference being used to aid in developing the state and local district plans is the **Hazardous Materials Emergency Planning Guide**, NRT—1. The current Emergency Response Guidebook from the U.S. Department of Transportation, CMA's CHEMTREC and the Fire Service Emergency Management Handbook may also be used as resources.

Employers involved with treatment, storage, and disposal facilities for hazardous waste, which have the required contingency plan called for by their permit, would not need to duplicate the same planning elements. Those items of the emergency response plan that are properly addressed in the contingency plan may be substituted into the emergency response plan required in 1910.120 or otherwise kept together for employer and employee use.

5. Personal protective equipment programs. The purpose of personal protective clothing and equipment (PPE) is to shield or isolate individuals from the chemical, physical, and biologic hazards that may be encountered at a hazardous substance site.

As discussed in Appendix B, no single combination of protective equipment and clothing is capable of protecting against all hazards. Thus PPE should be used in conjunction with other protective methods and its effectiveness evaluated periodically.

The use of PPE can itself create significant worker hazards, such as heat stress, physical and psychological stress, and impaired vision, mobility, and communication. For any given situation, equipment and clothing should be selected that provide an adequate level of protection. However, over-protection, as well as under-protection, can be hazardous and should be avoided where possible.

Two basic objectives of any PPE program should be to protect the wearer from safety and health hazards, and to prevent injury to the wearer from incorrect use and/or malfunction of the PPE. To accomplish these goals, a comprehensive PPE program should include hazard identification, medical monitoring, environmental surveillance, selection, use, maintenance, and decontamination of PPE and its associated training.

The written PPE program should include policy statements, procedures, and guidelines. Copies should be made available to all employees, and a reference copy should be made available at the worksite. Technical data on equipment, maintenance manuals, relevant regulations, and other essential information should also be collected and maintained.

6. Incident command system (ICS). Paragraph 1910.120(q)(3)(ii) requires the implementation of an ICS. The ICS is an organized approach to effectively control and **manage** operations at an emergency incident. The individual in charge of the ICS is the senior official responding to the incident. The ICS is not much different than the "command post" approach used for many years by the fire service. During large complex fires involving several companies and many pieces of apparatus, a command post would be established. This enabled **one** individual to be in charge of managing the incident, rather than having several officers from different companies making separate, and sometimes conflicting, decisions. The individual in charge of the command post would delegate responsibility for performing various tasks to subordinate officers. Additionally, all communications were routed through the command post to reduce the number of radio transmissions and eliminate confusion. However, strategy, tactics, and all decisions were made by one individual.

The ICS is a very similar system, except it is implemented for emergency response to all incidents, both large and small, that involve hazardous substances.

For a small incident, the individual in charge of the ICS may perform many tasks of the ICS. There may not be any, or little, delegation of tasks to subordinates. For example, in response to a small incident, the individual in charge of the ICS, in addition to normal command activities, may become the safety officer and may designate only one employee (with proper equipment) as a backup to provide assistance if needed. OSHA does recommend, however, that at least two employees be designated as back-up personnel since the assistance needed may include rescue.

To illustrate the operation of the ICS, the following scenario might develop during a small incident, such as an overturned tank truck with a small leak of flammable liquid.

The first responding senior officer would implement and take command of the ICS. That person would size-up the incident and determine if additional personnel and apparatus were necessary; would determine what actions to take to control the leak; and, determine the proper level of personal protective equipment. If additional assistance is not needed, the individual in charge of the ICS would implement actions to stop and control the leak using the fewest number of personnel that can effectively accomplish the tasks. The individual in charge of the ICS then would designate himself as the safety officer and two other employees as a back-up in case rescue may become necessary. In this scenario, decontamination procedures would not be necessary.

A large complex incident may require many employees and difficult, time-consuming efforts to control. In these situations, the individual in charge of the ICS will want to delegate different tasks to subordinates in order to maintain a span of control that will keep the number of subordinates, that are reporting, to a manageable level.

Delegation of task at large incidents may be by location, where the incident scene is divided into sectors, and subordinate officers coordinate activities within the sector that they have been assigned.

Delegation of tasks can also be by function. Some of the functions that the individual in charge of the ICS may want to delegate at a large incident are: medical services; evacuation; water supply; resources (equipment, apparatus); media relations; safety; and, site control (integrate activities with police for crowd and traffic control). Also for a large incident, the individual in charge of the ICS will designate several employees as back-up personnel; and a number of safety officers to monitor conditions and recommend safety precautions.

Therefore, no matter what size or complexity an incident may be, by implementing an ICS there will be *one individual in charge* who makes the decisions and gives directions; and, all actions, and communications are coordinated through one central point of command. Such a system should reduce confusion, improve safety, organize and coordinate actions, and should facilitate effective management of the incident.

7. Site Safety and Control Plans. The safety and security of response personnel and others in the area of an emergency response incident site should be of primary concern to the incident commander. The use of a site safety and control plan could greatly assist those in charge of assuring the safety and health of employees on the site.

A comprehensive site safety and control plan should include the following: summary analysis of hazards on the site and a risk analysis of those hazards; site map or sketch; site work zones (clean zone, transition or decontamination zone, work or hot zone); use of the buddy system; site communications; command post or command center; standard operating procedures and safe work practices; medical assistance and triage area; hazard monitoring plan (air contaminate monitoring, etc.); decontamination procedures and area; and other relevant areas. This plan should be a part of the employer's emergency response plan or an extension of it to the specific site.

8. Medical surveillance programs. Workers handling hazardous substances may be exposed to toxic chemicals, safety hazards, biologic hazards, and radiation. Therefore, a medical surveillance program is essential to assess and monitor workers' health and fitness for employment in hazardous waste operations and during the course of work; to provide emergency and other treatment as needed; and to keep accurate records for future reference.

The **Occupational Safety and Health Guidance Manual for Hazardous Waste Site Activities** developed by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), the U.S. Coast Guard (USCG), and the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA); October 1985 provides an excellent example of the types of medical testing that should be done as part of a medical surveillance program.

Appendix D—References

The following references may be consulted for further information on the subject of this standard:

1. OSHA Instruction DFO CPL 2.70—January 29, 1986, *Special Emphasis Program: Hazardous Waste Sites.*

2. OSHA Instruction DFO CPL 2-2.37A—January 29, 1986, *Technical Assistance and Guidelines for Superfund and Other Hazardous Waste Site Activities.*

3. OSHA Instruction DTS CPL 2.74—January 29, 1986, *Hazardous Waste Activity Form, OSHA 175.*

4. **Hazardous Waste Inspections Reference Manual,** U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, 1986.

5. **Memorandum of Understanding Among the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, the United States Coast Guard, and the United States Environmental Protection Agency,** *Guidance for Worker Protection During Hazardous Waste Site Investigations and Clean-up and Hazardous Substance Emergencies.* December 18, 1980.

6. **National Priorities List,** 1st Edition, October 1984; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Revised periodically.

7. **The Decontamination of Response Personnel,** Field Standard Operating Procedures (F.S.O.P.) 7; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Emergency and Remedial Response, Hazardous Response Support Division, December 1984.

8. **Preparation of a Site Safety Plan,** Field Standard Operating Procedures (F.S.O.P.) 9; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Emergency and Remedial Response, Hazardous Response Support Division, April 1985.

9. **Standard Operating Safety Guidelines;** U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Emergency and Remedial Response, Hazardous Response Support Division, Environmental Response Team; November 1984.

10. **Occupational Safety and Health Guidance Manual for Hazardous Waste Site Activities,** National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), U.S. Coast Guard (USCG), and Environmental Protection Agency (EPA); October 1985.

11. **Protecting Health and Safety at Hazardous Waste Sites; An Overview,** U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA/625/9—85/006; September 1985.

12. **Hazardous Waste Sites and Hazardous Substance Emergencies,** NIOSH Worker Bulletin, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health; December 1982.

13. **Personal Protective Equipment for Hazardous Materials Incidents: A Selection Guide;** U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health; October 1984.

14. **Fire Service Emergency Management Handbook,** International Association of Fire Chiefs Foundation, 101 East Holly Avenue, Unit 10B, Sterling, VA 22170, January 1985.

15. **Emergency Response Guidebook,** U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC, 1987.

16. **Report to the Congress on Hazardous Materials Training, Planning and Preparedness,** Federal Emergency Management Agency, Washington, DC, July 1986.

17. **Workbook for Fire Command,** Alan V. Brunacini and J. David Beageron, National Fire Protection Association, Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269, 1985.

18. **Fire Command,** Alan V. Brunacini, National Fire Protection, Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269, 1985.

19. **Incident Command System,** Fire Protection Publications, Oklahoma State University, Stillwater, OK 74078, 1983.

20. **Site Emergency Response Planning,** Chemical Manufacturers Association, Washington, DC 20037, 1986.

21. **Hazardous Materials Emergency Planning Guide,** NRT-1, Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC, March 1987.

22. **Community Teamwork: Working Together to Promote Hazardous Materials Transportation Safety.** U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC, May 1983.

23. **Disaster Planning Guide for Business and Industry,** Federal Emergency Management Agency, Publication No. FEMA 141, August 1987.

(The Office of Management and Budget has approved the information collection requirements in this section under control number 1218–0139)

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART I—PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT

1910.132 General requirements.
1910.133 Eye and face protection.
1910.134 Respiratory protection.
1910.135 Occupational head protection.
1910.136 Occupational foot protection.
1910.137 Electrical protective devices.
1910.138 Additional delay in effective date.
1910.139 Sources of standards.
1910.140 Standards organizations.

SUBPART I—PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT

1910.132—GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

INTERP

(a) Application.

Protective equipment, including personal protective equipment for eyes, face, head, and extremities, protective clothing, respiratory devices, and protective shields and barriers, shall be provided, used, and maintained in a sanitary and reliable condition wherever it is necessary by reason of hazards of processes or environment, chemical hazards, radiological hazards, or mechanical irritants encountered in a manner capable of causing injury or impairment in the function of any part of the body through absorption, inhalation or physical contact.

(b) Employee-owned equipment.

Where employees provide their own protective equipment, the employer shall be responsible to assure its adequacy, including proper maintenance, and sanitation of such equipment.

(c) Design.

All personal protective equipment shall be of safe design and construction for the work to be performed.

1910.133—EYE AND FACE PROTECTION

(a) General.

(1) Protective eye and face equipment shall be required where there is a reasonable probability of injury that can be prevented by such equipment. In such cases, employers shall make conveniently available a type of protector suitable for the work to be performed, and employees shall use such protectors. No unprotected person shall knowingly be subjected to a hazardous environmental condition. Suitable eye protectors shall be provided where machines or operations present the hazard of flying objects, glare, liquids, injurious radiation, or a combination of these hazards.

(2) Protectors shall meet the following minimum requirements:

(i) They shall provide adequate protection against the particular hazards for which they are designed.

(ii) They shall be reasonably confortable when worn under the designated conditions.

(iii) They shall fit snugly and shall not unduly interfere with the movements of the wearer.

(iv) They shall be durable.

(v) They shall be capable of being disinfected.

(vi) They shall be easily cleanable.

(vii) Protectors should be kept clean and in good repair.

(3) Persons whose vision requires the use of corrective lenses in spectacles, and who are required by this standard to wear eye protection, shall wear goggles or spectacles of one of the following types:

(i) Spectacles whose protective lenses provide optical correction.

(ii) Goggles that can be worn over corrective spectacles without disturbing the adjustment of the spectacles.

(iii) Goggles that incorporate corrective lenses mounted behind the protective lenses.

(4) Every protector shall be distinctly marked to facilitate identification only of the manufacturer.

(5) When limitations or precautions are indicated by the manufacturer, they shall be transmitted to the user and care taken to see that such limitations and precautions are strictly observed.

(6) Design, construction, testing, and use of devices for eye and face protection shall be in accordance with American National Standard for Occupational and Educational Eye and Face Protection, Z87.1-1968.

1910.134—RESPIRATORY PROTECTION

(a) Permissible practice.

(1) In the control of those occupational diseases caused by breathing air contaminated with harmful dusts, fogs, fumes, mists, gases, smokes, sprays, or vapors, the primary objective shall be to prevent atmospheric contamination. This shall be accomplished as far as feasible by accepted engineering control measures (for example, enclosure or confinement of the operation, general and local ventilation, and substitution of less toxic materials). When effective engineering controls are not feasible, or while they are being instituted, appropriate respirators shall be used pursuant to the following requirements.

(2) Respirators shall be provided by the employer when such equipment is necessary to protect the health of the employee. The employer shall provide the respirators which are applicable and suitable for the purpose intended. The employer shall be responsible for the establishment and maintenance of a respiratory protective program which shall include the requirements outlined in paragraph (b) of this section.

(3) The employee shall use the provided respiratory protection in accordance with instructions and training received.

(b) Requirements for a minimal acceptable program.

(1) Written standard operating procedures governing the selection and use of respirators shall be established.

(2) Respirators shall be selected on the basis of hazards to which the worker is exposed.

(3) The user shall be instructed and trained in the proper use of respirators and their limitations.

(4) Removed

(5) Respirators shall be regularly cleaned and disinfected. Those used by more than one worker shall be thoroughly cleaned and disinfected after each use.

(6) Respirators shall be stored in a convenient, clean, and sanitary location.

(7) Respirators used routinely shall be inspected during cleaning. Worn or deteriorated parts shall be replaced. Respirators for emergency use such as self-contained devices shall be thoroughly inspected at least once a month and after each use.

(8) Appropriate surveillance of work area conditions and degree of employee exposure or stress shall be maintained.

(9) There shall be regular inspection and evaluation to determine the continued effectiveness of the program.

(10) Persons should not be assigned to tasks requiring use of respirators unless it has been determined that they are physically able to perform the work and use the equipment. The local physician shall determine what health and physical conditions are pertinent. The respirator user's medical status should be reviewed periodically (for instance, annually).

(11) Approved or accepted respirators shall be used when they are available. The respirator furnished shall provide adequate respiratory protection against the particular hazard for which it is designed in accordance with standards established by competent authorities. The U.S. Department of Interior, Bureau of Mines, and the U.S. Department of Agriculture are recognized as such authorities. Although respirators listed by the U.S. Department of Agriculture continue to be acceptable for protection against specified pesticides, the U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Mines, is the agency now responsible for testing and approving pesticide respirators.

(c) Selection of respirators.

Proper selection of respirators shall be made according to the guidance of American National Standard Practices for Respiratory Protection Z88.2-1969.

(d) Air quality.

(1) Compressed air, compressed oxygen, liquid air, and liquid oxygen used for respiration shall be of high purity. Oxygen shall meet the requirements of the United States Pharmacopoeia for medical or breathing oxygen. Breathing air shall meet at least the requirements of the specification for Grade D breathing air as described in Compressed Gas Association Commodity Specification G-7.1-1966. Compressed oxygen shall not be used in supplied-air respirators or in open circuit self-contained breathing apparatus that have previously used compressed air. Oxygen must never be used with air line respirators.

(2) Breathing air may be supplied to respirators from cylinders or air compressors.

(i) Cylinders shall be tested and maintained as prescribed in the Shipping Container Specification Regulations of the Department of Transportation (49 CFR Part 178).

(ii) The compressor for supplying air shall be equipped with necessary safety and standby devices. A breathing air-type compressor shall be used. Compressors shall be constructed and situated so as to avoid entry of contaminated air into the system and suitable in-line air purifying sorbent beds and filters installed to further assure breathing air quality. A receiver of sufficient capacity to enable the respirator wearer to escape from a contaminated atmosphere in event of compressor failure, and alarms to indicate compressor failure and overheating shall be installed in the system. If an oil-lubricated compressor is used, it shall have a high-temperature or carbon monoxide alarm, or both. If only a high-temperature alarm is used, the air from the compressor shall be frequently tested for carbon monoxide to insure that it meets the specifications in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph.

(3) Air line couplings shall be incompatible with outlets for other gas systems to prevent inadvertent servicing of air line respirators with nonrespirable gases or oxygen.

(4) Breathing gas containers shall be marked in accordance with American National Standard Method of Marking Portable Compressed Gas Containers to Identify the Material Contained, Z48.1-1954; Federal Specification BB-A-1034a, June 21, 1968, Air, Compressed for Breathing Purposes; or Interim Federal Specification GG-B-00675b, April 27, 1965, Breathing Apparatus, Self-Contained.

(e) Use of respirators.

(1) Standard procedures shall be developed for respirator use. These should include all information and guidance necessary for their proper selection, use, and care. Possible emergency and routine uses of respirators should be anticipated and planned for.

(2) The correct respirator shall be specified for each job. The respirator type is usually specified in the work procedures by a qualified individual supervising the respiratory protective program. The individual issuing them shall be adequately instructed to insure that the correct respirator is issued.

(3) Written procedures shall be prepared covering safe use of respirators in dangerous atmospheres that might be encountered in normal operations or in emergencies. Personnel shall be familiar with these procedures and the available respirators.

(i) In areas where the wearer, with failure of the respirator, could be overcome by a toxic or oxygen-deficient atmosphere, at least one additional man shall be present. Communications (visual, voice, or signal line) shall be maintained between both or all individuals present. Planning shall be such that one individual will be unaffected by any likely incident and have the proper rescue equipment to be able to assist the other(s) in case of emergency.

(ii) When self-contained breathing apparatus or hose masks with blowers are used in atmospheres immediately dangerous to life or health, standby men must be present with suitable rescue equipment.

(iii) Persons using air line respirators in atmospheres immediately hazardous to life or health shall be equipped with safety harnesses and safety lines for lifting or removing persons from hazardous atmospheres or other and equivalent provisions for the rescue of persons from hazardous atmospheres shall be used. A standby man or men with suitable self-contained breathing apparatus shall be at the nearest fresh air base for emergency rescue.

(4) Respiratory protection is no better than the respirator in use, even though it is worn conscientiously. Frequent random inspections shall be conducted by a qualified individual to assure that respirators are properly selected, used, cleaned, and maintained.

(5) For safe use of any respirator, it is essential that the user be properly instructed in its selection, use, and maintenance. Both supervisors and workers shall be so instructed by competent persons. Training shall provide the men an opportunity to handle the respirator, have it fitted properly, test its face-piece-to-face seal, wear it in normal air for a long familiarity period, and, finally, to wear it in a test atmosphere.

(i) Every respirator wearer shall receive fitting instructions including demonstrations and practice in how the respirator should be worn, how to adjust it, and how to determine if it fits properly. Respirators shall not be worn when conditions prevent a good face seal. Such conditions may be a growth of beard, sideburns, a skull cap that projects under the facepiece, or temple pieces on glasses. Also, the absence of one or both dentures can seriously affect the fit of a facepiece. The worker's diligence in observing these factors shall be evaluated by periodic check. To assure proper protection, the facepiece fit shall be checked by the wearer each time he puts on the respirator. This may be done by following the manufacturer's facepiece fitting instructions.

(ii) Providing respiratory protection for individuals wearing corrective glasses is a serious problem. A proper seal cannot be established if the temple bars of eye glasses extend through the sealing edge of the full facepiece. As a temporary measure, glasses with short temple bars or without temple bars may be taped to the wearer's head. Wearing of contact lenses in contaminated atmospheres with a respirator shall not be allowed. Systems have been developed for mounting corrective lenses inside full facepieces. When a workman must wear corrective lenses as part of the facepiece, the facepiece and lenses shall be fitted by qualified individuals to provide good vision, comfort, and a gas-tight seal.

(iii) If corrective spectacles or goggles are required, they shall be worn so as not to affect the fit of the facepiece. Proper selection of equipment will minimize or avoid this problem.

(f) Maintenance and care of respirators.

(1) A program for maintenance and care of respirators shall be adjusted to the type of plant, working conditions, and hazards involved, and shall include the following basic services:

(i) Inspection for defects (including a leak check),

(ii) Cleaning and disinfecting,

(iii) Repair,

(iv) Storage

Equipment shall be properly maintained to retain its original effectiveness.

(2)

(i) All respirators shall be inspected routinely before and after each use. A respirator that is not routinely used but is kept ready for emergency use shall be inspected after each use and at least monthly to assure that it is in satisfactory working condition.

(ii) Self-contained breathing apparatus shall be inspected monthly. Air and oxygen cylinders shall be fully charged according to the manufacturer's instructions. It shall be determined that the regulator and warning devices function properly.

(iii) Respirator inspection shall include a check of the tightness of connections and the condition of the facepiece, headbands, valves, connecting tube, and canisters. Rubber or elastomer parts shall be inspected for pliability and signs of deterioration. Stretching and manipulating rubber or elastomer parts with a massaging action will keep them pliable and flexible and prevent them from taking a set during storage.

(iv) A record shall be kept of inspection dates and findings for respirators maintained for emergency use.

(3) Routinely used respirators shall be collected, cleaned, and disinfected as frequently as necessary to insure that proper protection is provided for the wearer. Respirators maintained for emergency use shall be cleaned and disinfected after each use.

(4) Replacement or repairs shall be done only by experienced persons with parts designed for the respirator. No attempt shall be made to replace components or to make adjustment or repairs beyond the manufacturer's recommendations. Reducing or admission valves or regulators shall be returned to the manufacturer or to a trained technician for adjustment or repair

(5)

(i) After inspection, cleaning, and necessary repair, respirators shall be stored to protect against dust, sunlight, heat, extreme cold, excessive moisture, or damaging chemicals. Respirators placed at stations and work areas for emergency use should be quickly accessible at all times and should be stored in compartments built for the purpose. The compartments should be clearly marked. Routinely used respirators, such as dust respirators, may be placed in plastic bags. Respirators should not be stored in such places as lockers or tool boxes unless they are in carrying cases or cartons.

(ii) Respirators should be packed or stored so that the facepiece and exhalation valve will rest in a normal position and function will not be impaired by the elastomer setting in an abnormal position.

(iii) Instructions for proper storage of emergency respirators, such as gas masks and self-contained breathing apparatus, are found in "use and care" instructions usually mounted inside the carrying case lid.

(g) Identification of gas mask canisters.

(1) The primary means of identifying a gas mask canister shall be by means of properly worded labels. The secondary means of identifying a gas mask canister shall be by a color code.

(2) All who issue or use gas masks falling within the scope of this section shall see that all gas mask canisters purchased or used by them are properly labeled and colored in accordance with these requirements before they are placed in service and that the labels and colors are properly maintained at all times thereafter until the canisters have completely served their purpose.

(3) On each canister shall appear in bold letters the following:

(i)

Canister for ....
(Name for atmospheric contaminant)
or
Type N Gas Mask Canister

(ii) In addition, essentially the following wording shall appear beneath the appropriate phase on the canister label: "For respiratory protection in atmospheres containing not more than .... percent by volume of ....
...."

(4) Canisters having a special high-efficiency filter for protection against radionuclides and other highly toxic particulates shall be labeled with a statement of the type and degree of protection afforded by the filter. The label shall be affixed to the neck end of, or to the gray stripe which is around and near the top of, the canister. The degree of protection shall be marked as the percent of penetration of the canister by a 0.3-micron-diameter dioctyl phthalate (DOP) smoke at a flow rate of 85 liters per minute.

(5) Each canister shall have a label warning that gas masks should be used only in atmospheres containing sufficient oxygen to support life (at least 16 percent by volume), since gas mask canisters are only designed to neutralize or remove contaminants from the air.

(6) Each gas mask canister shall be painted a distinctive color or combination of colors indicated in Table I-1. All colors used shall be such that they are clearly identifiable by the user and clearly distinguishable from one another. The color coating used shall offer a high degree of resistance to chipping, scaling, peeling, blistering, fading, and the effects of the ordinary atmospheres to which they may be exposed under normal conditions of storage and use. Appropriately colored pressure sensitive tape may be used for the stripes.

TABLE I–1

Atmospheric contaminants to be protected against	*Colors assigned**
Acid gases	White.
Hydrocyanic acid gas	White with ½-inch green stripe completely around the canister near the bottom.
Chlorine gas	White with ½-inch yellow stripe completely around the canister near the bottom.
Organic vapors	Black.
Ammonia gas	Green.
Acid gases and ammonia gas	Green with ½-inch white stripe completely around the canister near the bottom.
Carbon monoxide	Blue.
Acid gases and organic vapors	Yellow.
Hydrocyanic acid gas and chloropicrin vapor	Yellow with ½-inch blue stripe completely around the canister near the bottom.
Acid gases, organic vapors, and ammonia gases.	Brown.
Radioactive materials, excepting tritium and noble gases.	Purple (Magenta).
Particulates (dusts, fumes, mists, fogs, or smokes) in combination with any of the above gases or vapors.	Canister color for contaminant, as designated above, with ½-inch gray stripe completely around the canister near the top.
All of the above atmospheric contaminants	Red with ½-inch gray stripe completely around the canister near the top.

*Gray shall not be assigned as the main color for a canister designed to remove acids or vapors.

NOTE: Orange shall be used as a complete body, or stripe color to represent gases not included in this table. The user will need to refer to the canister label to determine the degree of protection the canister will afford.

1910.135—OCCUPATIONAL HEAD PROTECTION

Helmets for the protection of heads of occupational workers from impact and penetration from falling and flying objects and from limited electric shock and burn shall meet the requirements and specifications established in American National Standard Safety Requirements for Industrial Head Protection, Z89.1–1969.

1910.136—OCCUPATIONAL FOOT PROTECTION

Safety-toe footwear for employees shall meet the requirements and specifications in American National Standard for Men's Safety-Toe Footwear, Z41.1–1967.

1910.137—ELECTRICAL PROTECTIVE DEVICES

Rubber protective equipment for electrical workers shall conform to the requirements established in the American National Standards Institute Standards as specified in the following list:

Item	*Standard*
Rubber insulating gloves	J6.6-1967.
Rubber matting for use around electric apparatus.	J6.7-1935 (R1962).
Rubber insulating blankets	J6.4-1970.
Rubber insulating hoods	J6.2-1950 (R1962).
Rubber insulating line hose	J6.1-1950 (R1962).
Rubber insulating sleeves	J6.5-1962.

1910.138—EFFECTIVE DATES

(a) The provisions of this Subpart I shall become effective on August 27, 1971, except that:

(1) Any provision in any other section of this subpart which contains in itself a specific effective date or time limitation shall become effective on such date or shall apply in accordance with such limitation; and

(2) If any standard in 41 CFR Part 50–204, other than a national consensus standard incorporated by reference in § 50–204.2(a)(1), is or becomes applicable at any time to any employment and place of employment, by virtue of the Walsh-Healey Public Contracts Act, or the Service Contract Act of 1965, or the National Foundation on Arts and Humanities Act of 1965, any corresponding established Federal standard in this Subpart I which is derived from 41 CFR Part 50–204 shall also become effective, and shall be applicable to such employment and place of employment, on the same date.

1910.139—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

Sec.	*Source*
1910.132	41 CFR 50–204.7.
1910.133(a)	ANSI Z87.1–1968, Eye and Face Protection.
1910.134	ANSI Z88.2–1969, Standard Practice for Respiratory Protection.
1910.134 Table I-1.	ANSI K13.1–1967, Identification of Gas Mask Canister.
1910.135	ANSI Z89.1–1969, Safety Requirements for Industrial Head Protection.
1910.136	ANSI Z41.1–1967, Men's Safety-Toe Footwear.
1910.137	ANSI Z9.4–1968, Ventilation and Safe Practices of Abrasive Blasting Operations.

1910.140—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

Specific standards of the following organization have been referenced in this part. Copies of the referenced materials may be obtained from the issuing organization.

American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART J—GENERAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

1910.141 Sanitation.
1910.142 Temporary labor camps.
1910.143 Nonwater carriage disposal systems.
1910.144 Safety color code for marking physical hazards.
1910.145 Specifications for accident prevention signs and tags.
1910.146 [Reserved]
1910.147 Sources of standards.
1910.148 Standards organizations.

Authority: Secs. 4, 6, and 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12-71 (36 FR 8754), 8-76 (41 FR 25059) or 9-83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable. Sections 1910.141 and .145 also issued under 29 CFR Part 1911.

[51 F.R. 33260, September 19, 1986]

SUBPART J—GENERAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

1910.141—SANITATION

(a) General.

(1) **Scope.**—This section applies to permanent places of employment.

(2) Definitions applicable to this section.

(i) "Lavatory" means a basin or similar vessel used exclusively for washing of the hands, arms, faces, and head.

(ii) "Nonwater carriage toilet facility," means a toilet facility not connected to a sewer.

(iii)"Number of employees" means, unless otherwise specified, the maximum number of employees present at any one time on a regular shift.

(iv) "Personal service room," means a room used for activities not directly connected with the production or service function performed by the establishment. Such activities include, but are not limited to, first-aid, medical services, dressing, showering, toilet use, washing, and eating.

(v) "Potable water" means water which meets the quality standards prescribed in the U.S. Public Health Service Drinking Water Standards, published in 42 CFR part 72, or water which is approved for drinking purposes by the State or local authority having jurisdiction.

(vi) "Toilet facility," means a fixture maintained within a toilet room for the purpose of defecation or urination, or both.

(vii) "Toilet room," means a room maintained within or on the premises of any place of employment, containing toilet facilities for use by employees.

(viii) "Toxic material" means a material in concentration or amount which exceeds the applicable limit established by a standard, such as §§ 1910.1000 and 1910.1001 or, in the absence of an applicable standard, which is of such toxicity so as to constitute a recognized hazard that is causing or is likely to cause death or serious physical harm.

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975.]

(ix) "Urinal" means a toilet facility maintained within a toilet room for the sole purpose of urination.

(x) "Water closet" means a toilet facility maintained within a toilet room for the purpose of both defecation and urination and which is flushed with water.

(xi) "Wet process" means any process or operation in a workroom which normally results in surfaces upon which employees may walk or stand becoming wet.

(3) Housekeeping.

(i) All places of employment shall be kept clean to the extent that the nature of the work allows.

(ii) The floor of every workroom shall be maintained, so far as practicable, in a dry condition. Where wet processes are used, drainage shall be maintained and false floors, platforms, mats, or other dry standing places shall be provided, where practicable, or appropriate waterproof footgear shall be provided.

(iii) To facilitate cleaning, every floor, working place, and passageway shall be kept free from protruding nails, splinters, loose boards, and unnecessary holes and openings.

(4) Waste disposal.

(i) Any receptacle used for putrescible solid or liquid waste or refuse shall be so constructed that it does not leak and may be thoroughly cleaned and maintained in a sanitary condition. Such a receptacle shall be equipped with a solid tight-fitting cover, unless it can be maintained in a sanitary condition without a cover. This requirement does not prohibit the use of receptacles which are designed to permit the maintenance of a sanitary condition without regard to the aforementioned requirements.

(ii) All sweepings, solid or liquid wastes, refuse, and garbage shall be removed in such a manner as to avoid creating a menace to health and as often as necessary or appropriate to maintain the place of employment in a sanitary condition.

(5) Vermin control. Every enclosed workplace shall be so constructed, equipped, and maintained, so far as reasonably practicable, as to prevent the entrance or harborage of rodents, insects, and other vermin. A continuing and effective extermination program shall be instituted where their presence is detected.

(b) Water supply.

(1) Potable water.

(i) Potable water shall be provided in all places of employment, for drinking, washing of the person, cooking, washing of foods, washing of cooking or eating utensils, washing of food preparation or processing premises, and personal service rooms.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Portable drinking water dispensers shall be designed, constructed, and serviced so that sanitary conditions are maintained, shall be capable of being closed, and shall be equipped with a tap.

(iv) Revoked

(v) Open containers such as barrels, pails, or tanks for drinking water from which the water must be dipped or poured, whether or not they are fitted with a cover, are prohibited.

(vi) A common drinking cup and other common utensils are prohibited.

(2) Nonpotable water.

(i) Outlets for nonpotable water, such as water for industrial or firefighting purposes, shall be posted or otherwise marked in a manner that will indicate clearly that the water is unsafe and is not to be used for drinking, washing of the person, cooking, washing of food, washing of cooking or eating utensils, washing of food preparation or processing premises, or personal service rooms, or for washing clothes.

(ii) Construction of nonpotable water systems or systems carrying any other nonpotable substance shall be such as to prevent backflow or backsiphonage into a potable water system.

(iii) Nonpotable water shall not be used for washing any portion of the person, cooking or eating utensils, or clothing. Nonpotable water may be used for cleaning work premises, other than food processing and preparation premises and personal service rooms: *Provided*, That this nonpotable water does not contain concentrations of chemicals, fecal coliform, or other substances which could create insanitary conditions or be harmful to employees.

(c) Toilet facilities.

(1) General.

(i) Except as otherwise indicated in this subdivision (i), toilet facilities, in toilet rooms separate for each sex, shall be provided in all places of employment in accordance with table J-1 of this section. The number of facilities to be provided for each sex shall be based on the number of employees of that sex for whom the facilities are furnished. Where toilet rooms will be occupied by no more than one person at a time, can be locked from the inside, and contain at least one water closet, separate toilet rooms for each sex need not be provided. Where such single-occupancy rooms have more than one toilet facility, only one such facility in each toilet room shall be counted for the purpose of table J-1.

TABLE J-1

Number of employees:	*Minimum number of water closets* [1]
1 to 15	1.
16 to 35	2.
36 to 55	3.
56 to 80	4.
81 to 110	5.
111 to 150	6.
Over 150	1 additional fixture for each additional 40 employees.

[1] Where toilet facilities will not be used by women, urinals may be provided instead of water closets, except that the number of water closets in such cases shall not be reduced to less than $^{2}/_{3}$ of the minimum specified.

(ii) The requirements of subdivision (i) of this subparagraph do not apply to mobile crews or to normally unattended work locations so long as employees working at these locations have transportation immediately available to nearby toilet facilities which meet the other requirements of this subparagraph.

(iii) The sewage disposal method shall not endanger the health of employees.

(2) Construction of toilet rooms.

(i) Each water closet shall occupy a separate compartment with a door and walls or partitions between fixtures sufficiently high to assure privacy.

(3) Construction and installation of toilet facilities. Revoked

(d) Washing facilities.

(1) General. Washing facilities shall be maintained in a sanitary condition.

(2) Lavatories.

INTERP

(i) Lavatories shall be made available in all places of employment

The requirements of this subdivision do not apply to mobile crews or to normally unattended work locations if employees working at these locations have transportation readily available to nearby washing facilities which meet the other requirements of this paragraph.

(ii) Each lavatory shall be provided with hot and cold running water, or tepid running water.

(iii) Hand soap or similar cleansing agents shall be provided.

(iv) Individual hand towels or sections thereof, of cloth or paper, warm air blowers or clean individual sections of continuous cloth toweling, convenient to the lavatories, shall be provided.

(3) Showers.

(i) Whenever showers are required by a particular standard, the showers shall be provided in accordance with subdivisions (ii) through (v) of this subparagraph.

(ii) One shower shall be provided for each 10 employees of each sex, or numerical fraction thereof, who are required to shower during the same shift.

(iii) Body soap or other appropriate cleansing agents convenient to the showers shall be provided as specified in paragraph (d)(2)(iii) of this section.

(iv) Showers shall be provided with hot and cold water feeding a common discharge line.

(v) Employees who use showers shall be provided with individual clean towels.

(e) Change rooms.

Whenever employees are required by a particular standard to wear protective clothing because of the possibility of contamination with toxic materials, change rooms equipped with storage facilities for street clothes and separate storage facilities for the protective clothing shall be provided.

(f) Clothes drying facilities.

Where working clothes are provided by the employer and become wet or are washed between shifts, provision shall be made to insure that such clothing, is dry before reuse.

(g) Consumption of food and beverages on the premises.

(1) Application. This paragraph shall apply only where employees are permitted to consume food or beverages, or both, on the premises.

(2) Eating and drinking areas. No employee shall be allowed to consume food or beverages in a toilet room nor in any area exposed to a toxic material.

(3) Waste disposal containers. Receptacles constructed of smooth, corrosion resistant, easily cleanable, or disposable materials, shall be provided and used for the disposal of waste food. The number, size, and location of such receptacles shall encourage their use and not result in overfilling. They shall be emptied not less frequently than once each working day, unless unused, and shall be maintained in a clean and sanitary condition. Receptacles shall be provided with a solid tight-fitting cover unless sanitary conditions can be maintained without use of a cover.

(4) Sanitary storage. No food or beverages shall be stored in toilet rooms or in an area exposed to a toxic material.

(h) Food handling.

All employee food service facilities and operations shall be carried out in accordance with sound hygienic principles. In all places of employment where all or part of the food service is provided, the food dispensed shall be wholesome, free from spoilage, and shall be processed, prepared, handled, and stored in such a manner as to be protected against contamination.

[38 F.R. 10930, May 3, 1973.]

1910.142—TEMPORARY LABOR CAMPS

(a) Site.

(1) All sites used for camps shall be adequately drained. They shall not be subject to periodic flooding, nor located within 200 feet of swamps, pools, sink holes, or other surface collections of water unless such quiescent water sufaces can be subjected to mosquito control measures. The camp shall be located so the drainage from and through the camp will not endanger any domestic or public water supply. All sites shall be graded, ditched, and rendered free from depressions in which water may become a nuisance.

(2) All sites shall be adequate in size to prevent overcrowding of necessary structures. The principal camp area in which food is prepared and served and where sleeping quarters are located shall be at least 500 feet from any area in which livestock is kept.

(3) The grounds and open areas surrounding the shelters shall be maintained in a clean and sanitary condition free from rubbish, debris, waste paper, garbage, or other refuse.

(4) Whenever the camp is closed for the season or permanently, all garbage, manure, and other refuse shall be collected and so disposed of as to prevent nuisance. All abandoned privy pits shall be filled with earth and the grounds and buildings left in a clean and sanitary condition. If privy buildings remain, they shall be locked or otherwise secured to prevent entrance.

(b) Shelter.

(1) Every shelter in the camp shall be constructed in a manner which will provide protection against the elements.

(2) Each room used for sleeping purposes shall contain at least 50 square feet of floor space for each occupant. At least a 7-foot ceiling shall be provided.

(3) Beds, cots, or bunks, and suitable storage facilities such as wall lockers for clothing

and personal articles shall be provided in every room used for sleeping purposes. Such beds or similar facilities shall be spaced not closer than 36 inches both laterally and end to end, and shall be elevated at least 12 inches from the floor. If double-deck bunks are used, they shall be spaced not less than 48 inches both laterally and end to end. The minimum clear space between the lower and upper bunk shall be not less than 27 inches. Triple-deck bunks are prohibited.

(4) The floors of each shelter shall be constructed of wood, asphalt, or concrete. Wooden floors shall be of smooth and tight construction. The floors shall be kept in good repair.

(5) All wooden floors shall be elevated not less than 1 foot above the ground level at all points to prevent dampness and to permit free circulation of air beneath.

(6) Nothing in this section shall be construed to prohibit "banking" with earth or other suitable material around the outside walls in areas subject to extreme low temperatures.

(7) All living quarters shall be provided with windows the total of which shall be not less than one-tenth of the floor area. At least one-half of each window shall be so constructed that it can be opened for purposes of ventilation.

(8) All exterior openings shall be effectively screened with 16-mesh material. All screen doors shall be equipped with self-closing devices.

(9) In a room where workers cook, live, and sleep a minimum of 100 square feet per person shall be provided. Sanitary facilities shall be provided for storing and preparing food.

(10) In camps where cooking facilities are used in common, stoves (in ratio of one stove to 10 persons or one stove to two families) shall be provided in an enclosed and screened shelter. Sanitary facilities shall be provided for storing and preparing food.

(11) All heating, cooking, and water heating equipment shall be installed in accordance with State and local ordinances, codes, and regulations governing such installations. If a camp is used during cold weather, adequate heating equipment shall be provided.

(c) Water supply.

(1) An adequate and convenient water supply, approved by the appropriate health authority, shall be provided in each camp for drinking, cooking, bathing, and laundry purposes.

(2) A water supply shall be deemed adequate if it is capable of delivering 35 gallons per person per day to the campsite at a peak rate of 2½ times the average hourly demand.

(3) The distribution lines shall be capable of supplying water at normal operating pressures to all fixtures for simultaneous operation. Water outlets shall be distributed throughout the camp in such a manner that no shelter is more than 100 feet from a yard hydrant if water is not piped to the shelters.

(4) Where water under pressure is available, one or more drinking fountains shall be provided for each 100 occupants or fraction thereof. The construction of drinking fountains shall comply with ANSI Standard Specifications for Drinking Fountains, Z4.2-1942. Common drinking cups are prohibited.

(d) Toilet facilities.

(1) Toilet facilities adequate for the capacity of the camp shall be provided.

(2) Each toilet room shall be located so as to be accessible without any individual passing through any sleeping room. Toilet rooms shall have a window not less than 6 square feet in area opening directly to the outside area or otherwise be satisfactorily ventilated. All outside openings shall be screened with 16-mesh material. No fixture, water closet, chemical toilet, or urinal shall be located in a room used for other than toilet purposes.

(3) A toilet room shall be located within 200 feet of the door of each sleeping room. No privy shall be closer than 100 feet to any sleeping room, dining room, lunch area, or kitchen.

(4) Where the toilet rooms are shared, such as in multifamily shelters and in barracks type facilities, separate toilet rooms shall be provided for each sex. These rooms shall be distinctly marked "for men" and "for women" by signs printed in English and in the native language of the persons occupying the camp, or marked with easily understood pictures or symbols. If the facilities for each sex are in the same building, they shall be separated by solid walls or partitions extending from the floor to the roof or ceiling.

(5) Where toilet facilities are shared, the number of water closets or privy seats provided for each sex shall be based on the maximum number of persons of that sex which the camp is designed to house at any one time, in the ratio of one such unit to each 15 persons, with a minimum of two units for any shared facility.

(6) Urinals shall be provided on the basis of one unit or 2 linear feet of urinal trough for each 25 men. The floor from the wall and for a distance not less than 15 inches measured from the outward edge of the urinals shall be constructed of materials impervious to moisture. Where water under pressure is available, urinals shall be provided with an adequate water flush. Urinal troughs in privies shall drain freely into the pit or vault and the construction of this drain shall be such as to exclude flies and rodents from the pit.

(7) Every water closet installed on or after August 31, 1971, shall be located in a toilet room.

(8) Each toilet room shall be lighted naturally, or artificially by a safe type of lighting at all hours of the day and night.

(9) An adequate supply of toilet paper shall be provided in each privy, water closet, or chemical toilet compartment.

(10) Privies and toilet rooms shall be kept in a sanitary condition. They shall be cleaned at least daily.

(e) Sewage disposal facilities.

In camps where public sewers are available, all sewer lines and floor drains from buildings shall be connected thereto.

(f) Laundry, handwashing, and bathing facilities.

(1) Laundry, handwashing, and bathing facilities shall be provided in the following ratio:

(i) Handwash basin per family shelter or per six persons in shared facilities.

(ii) Shower head for every 10 persons.

(iii) Laundry tray or tub for every 30 persons.

(iv) Slop sink in each building used for laundry, hand washing, and bathing.

(2) Floors shall be of smooth finish but not slippery materials; they shall be impervious to moisture. Floor drains shall be provided in all shower baths, shower rooms, or laundry rooms to remove waste water and facilitate cleaning. All junctions of the curbing and the floor shall be coved. The walls and partitions of shower rooms shall be smooth and impervious to the height of splash.

(3) An adequate supply of hot and cold running water shall be provided for bathing and laundry purposes. Facilities for heating water shall be provided.

(4) Every service building shall be provided with equipment capable of maintaining a temperature of at least 70° F. during cold weather.

(5) Facilities for drying clothes shall be provided.

(6) All service buildings shall be kept clean.

(g) Lighting.

Where electric service is available, each habitable room in a camp shall be provided with at least one ceiling-type light fixture and at least one separate floor- or wall-type convenience outlet. Laundry and toilet rooms and rooms where people congregate shall contain at least one ceiling- or wall-type fixture. Light levels in toilet and storage rooms shall be at least 20 foot-candles 30 inches from the floor. Other rooms, including kitchens and living quarters, shall be at least 30 foot-candles 30 inches from the floor.

(h) Refuse disposal.

(1) Fly-tight, rodent-tight, impervious, cleanable or single service containers, approved by the appropriate health authority shall be provided for the storage of garbage. At least one such container shall be provided for each family shelter and shall be located within 100 feet of each shelter on a wooden, metal, or concrete stand.

(2) Garbage containers shall be kept clean.

(3) Garbage containers shall be emptied when full, but not less than twice a week.

(i) Construction and operation of kitchens, dining hall, and feeding facilities.

(1) In all camps where central dining or multiple family feeding operations are permitted or provided, the food handling facilities shall comply with the requirements of the "Food Service Sanitation Ordinance and Code," Part V of the "Food Service Sanitation Manual," U.S. Public Health Service Publication 934 (1965).

(2) A properly constructed kitchen and dining hall adequate in size, separate from the sleeping quarters of any of the workers or their families, shall be provided in connection with all food handling facilities. There shall be no direct opening from living or sleeping quarters into a kitchen or dining hall.

(3) No person with any communicable disease shall be employed or permitted to work in the preparation, cooking, serving, or other handling of food, foodstuffs, or materials used therein, in any kitchen or dining room operated in connection with a camp or regularly used by persons living in a camp.

(j) Insect and rodent control.

Effective measures shall be taken to prevent infestation by and harborage of animal or insect vectors or pests.

(k) First aid.

(1) Adequate first aid facilities approved by a health authority shall be maintained and made available in every labor camp for the emergency treatment of injured persons.

(2) Such facilities shall be in charge of a person trained to administer first aid and shall be readily accessible for use at all times.

(l) Reporting communicable disease.

(1) It shall be the duty of the camp superintendent to report immediately to the local health officer the name and address of any individual in the camp known to have or suspected of having a communicable disease.

(2) Whenever there shall occur in any camp a case of suspected food poisoning or an unusual prevalence of any illness in which fever, diarrhea, sore throat, vomiting, or jaundice is a prominent symptom, it shall be the duty of the camp superintendent to report immediately the existence of the outbreak to the health authority by telegram or telephone.

1910.143—NONWATER CARRIAGE DISPOSAL SYSTEMS

Revoked

1910.144—SAFETY COLOR CODE FOR MARKING PHYSICAL HAZARDS

(a) Color identification.

(1) **Red**. Red shall be the basic color for the identification of:

(i) Fire protection equipment and apparatus.

(ii) **Danger**. Safety cans or other portable containers of flammable liquids having a flashpoint at or below 80° F. table containers of flammable liquids (open cup tester), excluding shipping containers, shall be painted red with some additional clearly visible identification either in the form of a yellow band around the can or the name of the contents conspicuously stenciled or painted on the can in yellow. Red lights shall be provided at barricades and at temporary obstructions, as specified in ANSI Safety Code for Building Construction, A10.2-1944. Danger signs shall be painted red.

(iii) **Stop**. Emergency stop bars on hazardous machines such as rubber mills, wire blocks, flat work ironers, etc., shall be red. Stop buttons or electrical switches used for emergency stopping of machinery shall be red.

(2) **Orange**. Revoked

(3) **Yellow**. Yellow shall be the basic color for designating caution and for marking physical hazards such as: Striking against, stumbling, falling, tripping, and "caught in between."

1910.145—SPECIFICATIONS FOR ACCIDENT PREVENTION SIGNS AND TAGS

(a) Scope.

(1) These specifications apply to the design, application, and use of signs or symbols (as included in paragraphs (c) through (e) of this section) intended to indicate and, insofar as possible, to define specific hazards of a nature such that failure to designate them may lead to accidental injury to workers or the public, or both, or to property damage. These specifications are intended to cover all safety signs except those designed for streets, highways, railroads, and marine regulations. These specifications do not apply to plant bulletin boards or to safety posters.

(2) All new signs and replacements of old signs on or after August 31, 1971, shall be in accordance with these specifications.

(b) Definitions.

As used in this section, the word "sign" refers to a surface on which letters or other markings appear, prepared for the warning of, or safety instructions of, industrial workers or members of the public who may be exposed to hazards. Excluded from this definition, however, are news releases, displays commonly known as safety posters, and bulletins used for employee education.

(c) Classification of signs according to use.

(1) Danger signs.

(i) There shall be no variation in the type of design of signs posted to warn of specific dangers and radiation hazards.

(ii) All employees shall be instructed that danger signs indicate immediate danger and that special precautions are necessary.

(2) Caution signs.

(i) Caution signs shall be used only to warn against potential hazards or to caution against unsafe practices.

(ii) All employees shall be instructed that caution signs indicate a possible hazard against which proper precaution should be taken.

(3) Safety instruction signs. Safety instruction signs shall be used where there is a need for general instructions and suggestions relative to safety measures.

(d) Sign design

(1) Design features. All signs shall be furnished with rounded or blunt corners and shall be free from sharp edges, burrs, splinters, or other sharp projections. The ends or heads of bolts or other fastening devices shall be located in such a way that they do not constitute a hazard.

(2) Danger signs.

(i) The colors red, black, and white shall be those of opaque glossy samples as specified in Table 1 of Fundamental Specification of Safety Colors for CIE Standard Source "C", American National Standard Z53.1-1967.

(ii) Revoked

(3) Radiation warning signs. Revoked

(4) Caution signs.

(i) Standard color of the background shall be yellow; and the panel, black with yellow letters. Any letters used against the yellow background shall be black. The colors shall be those of opaque glossy samples as specified in Table 1 of American National Standard Z53.1-1967.

(5) Exit signs. Revoked

(6) Safety instruction signs.

(i) Standard color of the background shall be white; and the panel, green with white letters. Any letters used against the white background shall be black. The colors shall be those of opaque glossy samples as specified in Table 1 of American National Standard, Z53.1-1967.

(7) Directional signs. Revoked

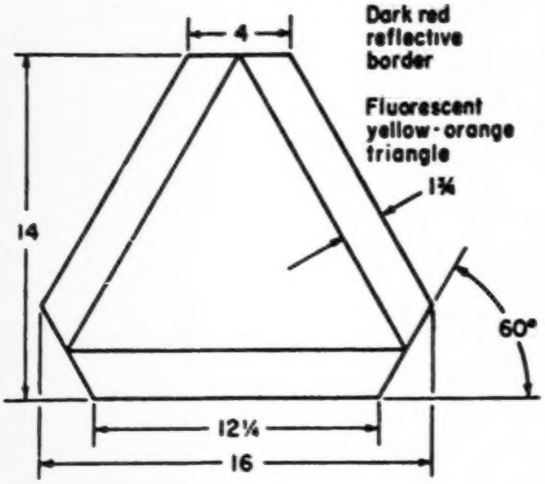
(8) In-Plant traffic signs. Revoked

(9) Informational signs. Revoked

(10) Slow-moving vehicle emblem. This emblem (see Fig. J—7) consists of a fluorescent yellow-orange triangle with a dark red reflective border. The yellow-orange fluorescent triangle is a highly visible color for daylight exposure. The reflective border defines the shape of the fluorescent color in daylight and creates a hollow red triangle in the path of motor vehicle headlights at night. The

INTERP

emblem is intended as a unique identification for, and it shall be used only on, vehicles which by design move slowly (25 m.p.h. or less) on the public roads. The emblem is not a clearance marker for wide machinery nor is it intended to replace required lighting or marking of slow-moving vehicles. Neither the color film pattern and its dimensions nor the backing shall be altered to permit use of advertising or other markings. The material, location, mounting, etc., of the emblem shall be in accordance with the American Society of Agricultural Engineers Emblem for Identifying Slow-Moving Vehicles, ASAE R276, 1967, or ASAE S276.2 (ANSI B114.1-1971).


4
Dark red reflective border
Fluorescent yellow-orange triangle
1¾
14
60°
12¼
16

NOTE: All dimensions are in inches.

Fig. J-7
Slow-Moving Vehicle Emblem

(e) Sign wordings.

(1) Examples of wordings. Revoked

(2) Nature of wording. The wording of any sign should be easily read and concise. The sign should contain sufficient information to be easily understood. The wording should make a positive, rather than negative suggestion and should be accurate in fact.

(3) Danger signs. Revoked

(4) Biological hazard signs. The biological hazard warning shall be used to signify the actual or potential presence of a biohazard and to identify equipment, containers, rooms, materials, experimental animals, or combinations thereof, which contain, or are contaminated with, viable hazardous agents. For the purpose of this subparagraph the term "biological hazard," or "biohazard," shall include only those infectious agents presenting a risk or potential risk to the well-being of man.

The symbol design shall be a fluorescent orange or orange-red color. Background color is optional as long as there is sufficient contrast for the symbol to be clearly defined. Appropriate wording may be used in association with the symbol to indicate the nature or identity of the hazard, name of individual responsible for its control, precautionary information, etc., but never should this information be superimposed on the symbol.

(f) Accident prevention tags.

(1) Scope and application.

(i) This paragraph (f) applies to all accident prevention tags used to identify hazardous conditions and provide a message to employees with respect to hazardous conditions as set forth in paragraph (f)(3) of this section, or to meet the specific tagging requirements of other OSHA standards.

(ii) This paragraph (f) does not apply to construction, maritime or agriculture.

(2) Definitions. "Biological hazard" or "BIOHAZARD" means those infectious agents preventing a risk of death, injury or illness to employees.

"Major message" means that portion of a tag's inscription that is more specific than the signal word and that indicates the specific hazardous condition or the instruction to be communicated to the employee. Examples include: "High Voltage," "Close Clearance," "Do Not Start," or "Do Not Use" or a corresponding pictograph used with a written text or alone.

"Pictograph" means a pictorial representation used to identify a hazardous condition or to convey a safety instruction.

"Signal word" means that portion of a tag's inscription that contains the word or words that are intended to capture the employee's immediate attention.

"Tag" means a device usually made of card, paper, pasteboard, plastic or other material used to identify a hazardous condition.

(3) Use. Tags shall be used as a means to prevent accidental injury or illness to employees who are exposed to hazardous or potentially hazardous conditions, equipment or operations which are out of the ordinary, unexpected or not readily apparent. Tags shall be used until such time as the identified hazard is eliminated or the hazardous operation is completed. Tags need not be used where signs, guarding or other positive means of protection are being used.

(4) General tag criteria. All required tags shall meet the following criteria:

(i) Tags shall contain a signal word and a major message.

(a) The signal word shall be either "Danger," "Caution," or "Biological Hazard," "BIOHAZARD," or the biological hazard symbol.

(b) The major message shall indicate the specific hazardous condition or the instruction to be communicated to the employee.

(ii) The signal word shall be readable at a minimum distance of five feet (1.52 m) or such greater distance as warranted by the hazard.

(iii) The tag's major message shall be presented in either pictographs, written text or both.

(iv) The signal word and the major message shall be understandable to all employees who may be exposed to the identified hazard.

(v) All employees shall be informed as to the meaning of the various tags used throughout the workplace and what special precautions are necessary.

(vi) Tags shall be affixed as close as safely possible to their respective hazards by a positive means such as string, wire, or adhesive that prevents their loss or unintentional removal.

(5) Danger tags. Danger tags shall be used in major hazard situations where an immediate hazard presents a threat of death or serious injury to employees. Danger tags shall be used only in these situations.

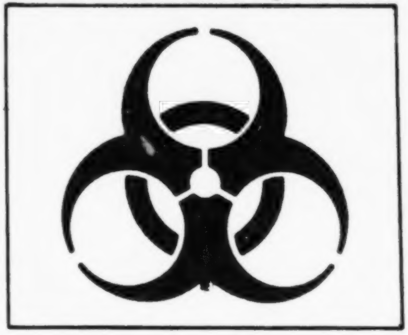
(6) Caution tags. Caution tags shall be used in minor hazard situations where a non-immediate or potential hazard or unsafe practice presents a lesser threat of employee injury. Caution tags shall be used only in these situations.

(7) Warning tags. Warning tags may be used to represent a hazard level between "Caution" and "Danger," instead of the required "Caution" tag, provided that they have a signal word of "Warning," an appropriate major message, and otherwise meet the general tag criteria of paragraph (f)(4) of this section.

(8) Biological hazard tags.

(i) Biological hazard tags shall be used to identify the actual or potential presence of a biological hazard and to identify equipment, containers, rooms, experimental animals, or combinations thereof, that contain or are contaminated with hazardous biological agents.

(ii) The symbol design for biological hazard tags shall conform to the design shown below:



Biological Hazard Symbol Configuration.

(9) Other tags. Other tags may be used in addition to those required by this paragraph (f), or in other situations where this paragraph (f) does not require tags, provided that they do not detract from the impact or visibility of the signal word and major mesage of any required tag.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 1218-0132)

APPENDIX A—RECOMMENDED COLOR CODING

While the standard does not specifically mandate colors to be used on accident prevention tags, the following color scheme is recommended by OSHA for meeting the requirements of this section:

"DANGER"—Red, or predominantly red, with lettering or symbols in a contrasting color.

"CAUTION"—Yellow, or predominantly yellow, with lettering or symbols in a contrasting color.

"WARNING"—Orange, or predominantly orange, with lettering or symbols in a contrasting color.

"BIOLOGICAL HAZARD"—Fluorescent orange or orange-red, or predominantly so, with lettering or symbols in a contrasting color.

APPENDIX B—REFERENCES FOR FURTHER INFORMATION

The following references provide information which can be helpful in understanding the requirements contained in various sections of the standard:

1. Bresnahan, Thomas F., and Bryk, Joseph, "The Hazard Association Values of Accident Prevention Signs", *Journal of American Society of Safety Engineers*; January 1975.

2. Dreyfuss, H., *Symbol Sourcebook*, McGraw Hill; New York, NY, 1972.

3. Glass, R. A. and others. *Some Criteria for Colors and Signs in Workplaces*, National Bureau of Standards, Washington DC, 1983.

4. *Graphic Symbols for Public Areas and Occupational Environments*, Treasury Board of Canada, Ottawa, Canada, July 1980.

5. Howett, G. L., *Size of Letters Required for Visibility as a Function of Viewing Distance and Observer Acuity*, National Bureau of Standards, Washington DC, July 1983.

6. Lerner, N. D. and Collins, B. L., *The Assessment of Safety Symbol Understandability by Different Testing Methods*, National Bureau of Standards, Washington DC, 1980.

7. Lerner, N. D. and Collins, B. L., *Workplace Safety Symbols*, National Bureau of Standards, Washington DC, 1980.

8. Modley, R. and Meyers, W. R., *Handbook of Pictorial Symbols*, Dover Publication, New York, N.Y. 1976.

9. *Product Safety Signs and Labels*, FMC Corporation, Santa Clara, CA, 1978.

10. *Safety Color Coding for Marking Physical Hazards*, Z53.1, American National Standards Institute, New York, NY, 1979.

11. *Signs and Symbols for the Occupational Environment, Can. 3-Z-321-77*, Canadian Standards Association, Ottawa, September 1977.

12. *Symbols for Industrial Safety*, National Bureau of Standards, Washington DC, April 1982.

13. *Symbol Signs*, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington DC, November 1974.

1910.146—[RESERVED]

Pages 355 thru 362 deleted

1910.147—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

The standards in this Subpart J are derived from the following sources:

Sec.	*Source*
1910.141	ANSI Z4.1-1968. Minimum Requirements for Sanitation in Place of Employment.
1910.142	ANSI Z4.4-1968, Minimum Requirements for Sanitation in Temporary Labor Camps.
1910.143	ANSI Z4.3-1970. Minimum Requirements for Nonwater Carriage. Disposal Systems.
1910.144	ANSI Z53.1-1967, Safety Color Code for Marking Physical Hazards.
1910.145 (a)-(e)	ANSI Z35.1-1968. Specifications for Accident Prevention Signs, and ANSI B114.1-1971, Slow-Moving Vehicle Identification Emblem.
1910.145(f)	ANSI Z35.2-1968, Specifications for Accident Prevention Tags.

1910.148—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

Standard and specifications of the following organizations have been referenced in this Subpart J:

American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

National Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, 5032 Alhambra Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90032.

American Society of Agricultural Engineers, 2950 Niles Road, Post Office Box 229, St. Joseph, MI 49085.

1910.149—EFFECTIVE DATES

(a) The provisions of this Subpart J shall become effective on August 27, 1971, except as provided in the remaining paragraphs of this section.

(b) The following provisions shall become effective on February 15, 1972:

§ 1910.142(b)(2), (b)(5), (b)(7), (d)(6), (f), (g), (i)(1) and (2).

or shall apply in accordance with such limitation.

(d) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a) of this section, if any standard in 41 CFR Part 50–204, other than a national consensus standard incorporated by reference in

(c) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a), (b), or (d) of this section, any provision in any other section of this subpart which contains in itself a specific effective date or time limitation shall become effective on such date 50–204.2(a)(1), is or becomes applicable at any time to any employment and place of employment, by virtue of the Walsh-Healey Public Contracts Act, or the Service Contract Act of 1965, or the National Foundation on Arts and Humanities Act of 1965, any corresponding established Federal standard in this Subpart J which is derived from 41 CFR Part 50–204 shall also become effective, and shall be applicable to such employment and place of employment, on the same date.

[36 F.R. 15105, Aug. 13, 1971]

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART K—MEDICAL AND FIRST AID

1910.151 Medical services and first aid.
1910.152 [Reserved]
1910.153 Sources of standards.

SUBPART K—MEDICAL AND FIRST AID

INTERP

1910.151—MEDICAL SERVICES AND FIRST AID

(a) The employer shall ensure the ready availability of medical personnel for advice and consultation on matters of plant health.

(b) In the absence of an infirmary, clinic, or hospital in near proximity to the workplace which is used for the treatment of all injured employees, a person or persons shall be adequately trained to render first aid. First aid supplies approved by the consulting physician shall be readily available.

(c) Where the eyes or body of any person may be exposed to injurious corrosive materials, suitable facilities for quick drenching or flushing of the eyes and body shall be provided within the work area for immediate emergency use.

INTERP

1910.152—[RESERVED]

1910.153—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

The standard in § 1910.151 is derived from 41 CFR 50–204.6.

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART L—FIRE PROTECTION

1910.155 Scope, application and definitions applicable to this subpart.
1910.156 Fire Brigades.

PORTABLE FIRE SUPPRESSION EQUIPMENT

1910.157 Portable fire extinguishers.
1910.158 Standpipe and hose systems.

FIXED FIRE SUPPRESSION EQUIPMENT

1910.159 Automatic sprinkler systems.
1910.160 Fixed extinguishing systems, general.
1910.161 Fixed extinguishing systems, dry chemical.
1910.162 Fixed extinguishing systems, gaseous agent.
1910.163 Fixed entinguishing systems, water spray and foam.

OTHER FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

1910.164 Fire detection systems.
1910.165 Employee alarm systems.
1910.165a Sources of standards.
1910.165b Standards organizations.

Authority: Secs. 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12–71 (36 FR 8754), 8–76 (41 FR 25059) or No. 9–83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable.

Sections 1910.155, 1910.158, 1910.160 and 1910.161 also issued under 29 CFR Part 1911.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

1910.155—SCOPE, APPLICATION AND DEFINITIONS APPLICABLE TO THIS SUBPART

(a) Scope. This subpart contains requirements for fire brigades, and all portable and fixed fire suppression equipment, fire detection systems, and fire or employee alarm systems installed to meet the fire protection requirements of 29 CFR Part 1910.

(b) Application. This subpart applies to all employments except for maritime, construction, and agriculture.

(c) Definitions applicable to this subpart.

(1) "After-flame" means the time a test specimen continues to flame after the flame source has been removed.

(2) "Aqueous film forming foam (AFFF)" means a fluorinated surfactant with a foam stabilizer which is diluted with water to act as a temporary barrier to exclude air from mixing with the fuel vapor by developing an aqueous film on the fuel surface of some hydrocarbons which is capable of suppressing the generation of fuel vapors.

(3) "Approved" means acceptable to the Assistant Secretary under the following criteria:

(i) If it is accepted, or certified, or listed, or labeled or otherwise determined to be safe by a nationally recognized testing laboratory; or

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(ii) With respect to an installation or equipment of a kind which no nationally recognized testing laboratory accepts, certifies, lists, labels, or determines to be safe, if it is inspected or tested by another Federal agency and found in compliance with the provisions of the applicable National Fire Protection Association Fire Code; or

(iii) With respect to custom-made equipment or related installations which are designed, fabricated for, and intended for use by manufacturer on the basis of test data which the employer keeps and makes available for inspection to the Assistant Secretary.

(iv) For the purposes of paragraph (c)(3) of this section:

(a) Equipment is listed if it is of a kind mentioned in a list which is published by a nationally recognized testing laboratory which makes periodic inspections of the production of such equipment and which states that such equipment meets nationally recognized standards or has been tested and found safe for use in a specified manner;

(b) Equipment is labeled if there is attached to it a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory which makes periodic inspections of the production of such equipment and whose labeling indicates compliance with nationally recognized standards or tests to determine safe use in a specified manner;

(c) Equipment is accepted if it has been inspected and found by a nationally recognized testing laboratory to conform to specified plans or to procedures of applicable codes; and

(d) Equipment is certified if it has been tested and found by a nationally recognized testing laboratory to meet nationally recognized standards or to be safe for use in a specified manner or is of a kind whose production is periodically inspected by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and if it bears a label, tag, or other record of certification.

(e) Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(4) "Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health or designee.

(5) "Automatic fire detection device" means a device designed to automatically detect the presence of fire by heat, flame, light, smoke or other products of combustion.

(6) "Buddy-breathing device" means an accessory to self-contained breathing apparatus which permits a second person to share the same air supply as that of the wearer of the apparatus.

(7) "Carbon dioxide" means a colorless, odorless, electrically nonconductive inert gas (chemical formula CO_2) that is a medium for extinguishing fires by reducing the concentration of oxygen or fuel vapor in the air to the point where conbustion is impossible.

(8) "Class A fire" means a fire involving ordinary combustible materials such as paper, wood, cloth, and some rubber and plastic materials.

(9) "Class B fire" means a fire involving flammable or combustible liquids, flammable gases, greases and similar materials, and some rubber and plastic materials.

(10) "Class C fire" means a fire involving energized electrical equipment where safety to the employee requires the use of electrically nonconductive extinguishing media.

(11) "Class D fire" means a fire involving combustible metals such as magnesium, titanium, zirconium, sodium, lithium and potassium.

(12) "Dry chemical" means an extinguishing agent composed of very small particles of chemicals such as, but not limited to, sodium bicarbonate, potassium bicarbonate, urea-based potassium bicarbonate, potassium chloride, or monoammonium phosphate supplemented by special treatment to provide resistance to packing and moisture absorption (caking) as well as to provide proper flow capabilities. Dry chemical does not include dry powders.

(13) "Dry powder" means an compound used to extinguish or control Class D fires.

(14) "Education" means the process of imparting knowledge or skill through systematic instruction. It does not require formal classroom instruction.

(15) "Enclosed structure" means a structure with a roof or ceiling and at least two walls which may present fire hazards to employees, such as accumulations of smoke, toxic gases and heat similar to those found in buildings.

(16) "Extinguisher classification" means the letter classification given an extinguisher to designate the class or classes of fire on which an extinguisher will be effective.

(17) "Extinguisher rating" means the numerical rating given to an extinguisher which indicates the extinguishing potential of the unit based on standardized tests developed by Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.

(18) "Fire brigade" (private fire department, industrial fire department) means an organized group of employees who are knowledgeable, trained, and skilled in at least basic fire fighting operations.

(19) "Fixed extinguishing system" means a permanently installed system that either extinguishes or controls a fire at the location of the system.

(20) "Flame resistance" is the property of materials, or combinations of component materials, to retard ignition and restrict the spread of flame.

(21) "Foam" means a stable aggregation of small bubbles which flow freely over a burning liquid surface and form a coherent blanket which seals combustible vapors and thereby extinguishes the fire.

(22) "Gaseous agent" is a fire extinguishing agent which is in the gaseous state at normal room temperature and pressure. It has low viscosity, can expand or contract with changes in pressure and temperature, and has the ability to diffuse readily and to distribute itself uniformly throughout an enclosure

(23) "Halon 1211" means a colorless, faintly sweet smelling, electrically nonconductive liquefied gas (chemical formula $CBrC1F_2$) which is a medium for extinguishing fires by inhibiting the chemical chain reaction of fuel and oxygen. It is also known as bromochlorodifluoromethane.

(24) "Halon 1301" means a colorless, ordorless, electrically nonconductive gas (chemical formula $CBrF_3$) which is a medium for extinguishing fires by inhibiting the chemical chain reaction of fuel and oxygen. It is also known as bromotrifluoromethane.

(25) "Helmet" is a head protective device consisting of a rigid shell, energy absorption system and chin strap intended to be worn to provide protection for the head or portions thereof, against impact, flying or falling objects, electric shock, penetration, heat and flame.

(26) "Incipient stage fire" means a fire which is in the initial or beginning stage and which can be controlled or extinguished by portable fire extinguishers, Class II standpipe or small hose systems without the need for protective clothing or breathing apparatus.

(27) "Inspection" means a visual check of fire protection systems and equipment to ensure that they are in place, charged, and ready for use in the event of a fire.

(28) "Interior structural fire fighting" means the physical activity of fire suppression, rescue or both, inside of buildings or enclosed structures which are involved in a fire situation beyond the incipient stage.

(29) "Lining"means a material permanently attached to the inside of the outer shell of a garment for the purpose of thermal protection and padding.

(30) "Local application system" means a fixed fire suppression system which has a supply of extinguishing agent, with nozzles arranged to automatically discharge extinguishing agent directly on the burning material to extinguish or control a fire.

(31) "Maintenance" means the performance of services on fire protection equipment and systems to assure that they will perform as expected in the event of a fire. Maintenance differs from inspection in that maintenance requires the checking of internal fitting, devices and agent supplies.

(32) "Multipurpose dry chemical" means a dry chemical which is approved for use on Class A, Class B and Class C fires.

(33) "Outer shell" is the exterior layer of material on the fire coat and protective trousers which forms the outermost barrier between the fire fighter and the environment. It is attached to the vapor barrier and liner and is usually constructed with a storm flap, suitable closures, and pockets.

(34) "Positive-pressure breathing apparatus" means self-contained breathing apparatus in which the pressure in the breathing zone is positive in relation to the immediate environment during inhalation and exhalation.

(35) "Pre-discharge employee alarm" means an alarm which will sound at a set time prior to actual discharge of an extinguishing system so that employees may evacuate the discharge area prior to system discharge.

(36) "Quick disconnect valve" mean a device which start the flow of air by inserting of the hose (which leads from the facepiece) into the regulator of self-contained breathing apparatus, and stops the flow of air by disconnection of the hose from the regulator.

(37) "Sprinkler alarm" means an approved device installed so that any waterflow from a sprinkler system equal to or greater than that from single automatic sprinkler will result in an audible alarm signal on the premises.

(38) "Sprinkler system" means a system of piping designed in accordance with fire protection engineering standards and installed to control or extinguish fires. The system includes an adequate and reliable water supply, and a network of specially sized piping and sprinklers which are interconnected. The system also includes a control valve and a device for actuating an alarm when the system is in operation.

(39) "Standpipe systems"

(i) "Class I standpipe system" means a 2½" (6.3 cm) hose connection for use by fire departments and those trained in handling heavy fire streams.

(ii) "Class II standpipe system" means a 1½" (3.8 cm) hose system which provides a means for the control or extinguishment of incipient stage fires.

(iii) "Class III standpipe system" means a combined system of hose which is for the use of employees trained in the use of hose operations and which is capable of furnishing effective water discharge during the more advanced stages of fire (beyond the incipient stage) in the interior of workplaces. Hose outlets are available for both 1½ (3.8 cm) and 2½ (6.3 cm) hose.

(iv) "Small hose system" means a system of hose ranging in diameter from ⅝" (1.6 cm up to 1½" (3.8 cm) which is for the use of employees and which provides a means for the control and extinguishment of incipient stage fires.

(40) "Total flooding system" means a fixed suppression system which is arranged to automatically discharge a predetermined concentration of agent into an enclosed space for the purpose of fire extinguishment or control.

(41) "Training" means the process of making proficient through instruction and hands-on practice in the operation of equipment, including respiratory protection equipment, that is expected to be used and in the performance of assigned duties.

(42) "Vapor barrier" means that material used to prevent or substantially inhibit the transfer of water, corrosive liquids and steam or other hot vapors from the outside of a garment to the wearer's body.

1910.156—FIRE BRIGADES

(a) Scope and application

(1) Scope. This section contains requirements for the organization, training, and personal protective equipment of fire brigades whenever they are established by an employer.

(2) Application. The requirements of this section apply to fire brigades, industrial fire departments and private or contractual type fire departments. Personal protective equipment requirements apply only to members of fire brigades performing interior structural fire fighting. The requirements of this section do not apply to airport crash rescue or forest fire fighting operations.

(b) Organization.

(1) Organizational statement. The employer shall prepare and maintain a statement or written policy which establishes the existence of a fire brigade; the basic organizational structure; the type, amount, and frequency of training to be provided to fire brigade members; the expected number of members in the fire brigade; and the functions that the fire brigade is to perform at the workplace. The organizational statement shall be available for inspection by the Assistant Secretary and by employees or their designated representatives.

(2) Personnel. The employer shall assure that employees who are expected to do interior structural fire fighting are physically capable of performing duties which may be assigned to them during emergencies. The employer shall not permit employees with known heart disease, epilepsy, or emphysema, to participate in fire brigade emergency activities unless a physician's certificate of the employees' fitness to participate in such activities is provided. For employees assigned to fire brigades before September 15, 1980, this paragraph is effective on September 15, 1990. For employees assigned to fire brigades on or after September 15, 1980, this paragraph is effective December 15, 1980.

(c) Training and education.

(1) The employer shall provide training and education for all fire brigade members commensurate with those duties and functions that fire brigade members are expected to perform. Such training and education shall be provided to fire brigade members before they perform fire brigade emergency activities. Fire brigade leaders and training instructors shall be provided with training and education which is more comprehensive than that provided to the general membership of the fire brigade.

(2) The employer shall assure that training and education is conducted frequently enough to assure that each member of the fire brigade is able to perform the member's assigned duties and functions satisfactorily and in a safe manner so as not to endanger fire brigade members or other employees. All fire brigade members shall be provided with training at least annually. In addition, fire brigade members who are expected to perform interior structural fire fighting shall be provided with an education session or training at least quarterly.

(3) The quality of the training and education program for fire brigade members shall be similar to those conducted by such fire training schools as the Maryland Fire and Rescue Institute; Iowa Fire Service Extension; West Virginia Fire Service Extension; Georgia Fire Academy, New York State Department, Fire Prevention and Control; Louisiana State University Firemen Training Program, or Washington State's Fire Service Training Commission for Vocational Education. (For example, for the oil refinery industry, with its unique hazards, the training and education program for those fire brigade members shall be similar to those conducted by Texas A & M University, Lamar University, Reno Fire School, or the Delaware State Fire School.)

(4) The employer shall inform fire brigade members about special hazards such as storage and use of flammable liquids and gases, toxic chemicals, radioactive sources, and water reactive substances, to which they may be exposed during fire and other emergencies. The fire brigade members shall also be advised of any changes that occur in relation to the special hazards. The employer shall develop and make available for inspection by fire brigade members, written procedures that describe the actions to be taken in situations involving the special hazards and shall include these in the training and education program.

(d) Fire fighting equipment. The employer shall maintain and inspect, at least annually, fire fighting equipment to assure the safe operational condition of the equipment. Portable fire extinguishers and respirators shall be inspected at least monthly. Fire fighting equipment that is in damaged or unserviceable condition shall be removed from service and replaced.

(e) Protective clothing. The following requirements apply to those employees who perform interior structural fire fighting. The requirements do not apply to employees who use fire extinguishers or standpipe systems to control or extinguish fires only in the incipient stage.

(1) General.

(i) The employer shall provide at no cost to the employee and assure the use of protective clothing which complies with the requirements of this paragraph. The employer shall assure that protective clothing ordered or purchased after July 1, 1981, meets the requirements contained in this paragraph. As the new equipment is provided, the employer shall assure that all fire brigade members wear the equipment when performing interior structural fire fighting. After July 1, 1985, the employer shall assure that all fire brigade members wear protective clothing meeting the requirements of this paragraph when performing interior structural fire fighting.

(ii) The employer shall assure that protective clothing protects the head, body, and extremities, and consists of at least the following components: foot and leg protection; hand protection; body protection; eye, face and head protection.

(2) Foot and leg protection.

(i) Foot and leg protection shall meet the requirements of paragraphs (e)(2)(ii) and (e)(2)(iii) of this section, and may be achieved by either of the following methods:

(a) Fully extended boots which provide protection for the legs; or

(b) Protective shoes or boots worn in combination with protective trousers that meet the requirements of paragraph (e)(3) of this section.

(ii) Protective footwear shall meet the requirements of § 1910.136 for Class 75 footwear. In addition, protective footwear shall be water-resistant for at least 5 inches (12.7 cm) above the bottom of the heel and shall be equipped with slip-resistant outer soles.

(iii) Protective footwear shall be tested in accordance with paragraph (1) of Appendix E, and shall provide protection against penetration of the midsole by a size 8D common nail when at least 300 pound (1330 N) of static force is applied to the nail.

(3) Body protection.

(i) Body protection shall be coordinated with foot and leg protection to ensure full body protection for the wearer. This shall be achieved by one of the following methods:

(a) Wearing of a fire-resistive coat meeting the requirements of paragraph (e)(3)(ii) of this section in combination with fully extended boots meeting the requirements of paragraphs (e)(2)(ii) and (e)(2)(iii) of this section; or

(b) Wearing of fire-resistive coat in combination with protective trousers both of which meet the requirements of paragraph (e)(3)(ii) of this section.

(ii) The performance, construction, and testing of fire-resistive coats and protective trousers shall be at least equivalent to the requirements of the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) standard NFPA No. 1971-1975, "Protective Clothing for Structural Fire Fighting," (See Appendix D to Subpart L) with the following permissible variations from those requirements:

(a) Tearing strength of the outer shell shall be a minimum of 8 pounds (35.6 N) in any direction when tested in accordance with paragraph (2) of Appendix E; and

(b) The outer shell may discolor but shall not separate or melt when placed in a forced air laboratory oven at a temperature of 500°F (260°C) for a period of five minutes. After cooling to ambient temperature and using the test method specified in paragraph (3) of Appendix E, char length shall not exceed 4.0 inches (10.2 cm) and after-flame shall not exceed 2.0 seconds.

(4) Hand protection.

(i) Hand protection shall consist of protective gloves or glove system which will provide protection against cut, puncture, and heat penetration. Gloves or glove system shall be tested in accordance with the test methods contained in the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) 1976 publication, "The Development of Criteria for Fire Fighter's Gloves; Vol. II, Part II: Test Methods," (See Appendix D to Subpart L) and shall meet the following criteria for cut, puncture, and heat penetration:

(a) materials used for gloves shall resist surface cut by a blade with an edge having a 60° included angle and a .025 mm (.001 in) radius, under an applied force of 7.2 kg (16 pounds), and at a slicing velocity of greater or equal to 2.5 cm/sec(60 in/min);

(b) materials used for the palm and palm side of the fingers shall resist puncture by a penetrometer (simulating a 4d lath nail), under an applied force of 6 kg (13.2 pounds), and at a velocity greater or equal to .85 cm/sec(20 in/min); and

(c) the temperature inside the palm and gripping surface of the fingers of gloves shall not exceed 57°C (135°F) when gloves or glove system are exposed to 500°C (932°F) for five second at 28 kPa (4 psi) pressure.

(ii) Exterior materials of gloves shall be flame resistant and shall be tested in accordance with paragraph (3) of Appendix E. Maximum allowable afterflame shall be 2.0 seconds, and the maximum char length shall be 4.0 inches (10.2cm).

(iii) When design of the fire-resistive coat does not otherwise provide protection for the wrists, protective gloves shall have wristlets of at least 4.0 inches (10.2 cm) in length to protect the wrist area when the arms are extended upward and outward from the body.

(5) Head, eye and face protection.

(i) Head protection shall consist of a protective head device with ear flaps and chin strap which meet the performance, construction, and testing requirements of the National Fire Safety and Research Office of the National Fire Prevention and Control Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce (now known as the U.S. Fire Administration), which are contained in "Model Performance Criteria for Structural Firefighters' Helmets" (August 1977) (See Appendix D to Subpart L).

(ii) Protective eye and face devices which comply with § 1910.133 shall be used by fire brigade members when performing operations where the hazards of flying or falling materials which may cause eye and face injuries are present. Protective eye and face devices provided as accessories to protective head devices (face shields) are permitted when such devices meet the requirements of § 1910.133.

(iii) Full facepieces, helmets, or hoods of breathing apparatus which meet the requirements of § 1910.134 and paragraph (f) of this section, shall be acceptable as meeting the eye and face protection requirements of paragraph (e)(5)(ii) of this section.

(f) Respiratory protection devices.

(1) General requirements.

(i) The employer shall provide at no cost to the employee and assure the use of respirators which comply with the requirements of this paragraph. The employer shall assure that respiratory protective devices worn by fire brigade members meet the requirements contained in § 1910.134 and the requirements contained in this paragraph, and are certified under 30 CFR Part II.

(ii) Approved self-contained breathing apparatus with full-facepiece, or with approved helmet or hood configuration, shall be provided to and worn by fire brigade members while working inside buildings or confined spaces where toxic products of combustion or an oxygen deficiency may be present. Such apparatus shall also be worn during emergency situations involving toxic substances.

(iii) Approved self-contained breathing apparatus may be equipped with either a "buddy-breathing" device or a quick disconnect valve, even if these devices are not certified by NIOSH. If these accessories are used, they shall not cause damage to the apparatus, or restrict the air flow of the apparatus, or obstruct the normal operation of the apparatus.

(iv) Approved self-contained compressed air breathing apparatus may be used with approved cylinders from other approved self-contained compressed air breathing apparatus provided that such cylinders are of the same capacity and pressure rating. All compressed air cylinders used with self-contained breathing apparatus shall meet DOT and NIOSH criteria.

(v) Self-contained breathing apparatus shall have a minimum service life rating of 30 minutes in accordance with the methods and requirements of the Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA) and NIOSH, except for escape self-contained breathing apparatus (ESCBA) used only for emergency escape purposes.

(vi) Selfcontained breathing apparatus shall be provided with an indicator which automatically sounds an audible alarm when the remaining service life of the apparatus is reduced to within a range of 20 to 25 percent of its rated service time.

(2) Positive-pressure breathing apparatus.

(i) The employer shall assure that self-contained breathing apparatus ordered or purchased after July 1, 1981, for use by fire brigade members performing interior structural fire fighting operations, are of the pressure-demand or other positive-pressure type. Effective July 1, 1983, only pressure-demand or other positive-pressure self-contained breathing apparatus shall be worn by fire brigade members performing interior structural fire fighting.

(ii) This paragraph does not prohibit the use of a self-contained breathing apparatus where the apparatus can be switched from a demand to a positive-pressure mode. However, such apparatus shall be in the positive-pressure mode when fire brigade members are performing interior structural fire fighting operations.

(iii) Negative pressure self-contained breathing apparatus with a rated service life of more than 2 hours and which have a minimum protection factor of 5,000, as determined by an acceptable quantitative fit test performed on each individual, is acceptable for use only during those interior structural fire fighting situations for which the employer demonstrates that long duration breathing apparatus is necessary. Quantitative fit test procedures shall be available for inspection by the Assistant Secretary or authorized representative. Such negative-pressure breathing apparatus will continue to be acceptable for 18 months after a positive-pressure breathing apparatus with the same or longer rated service life is certified by NIOSH. After this 18-month period, all self-contained breathing apparatus used for these long duration situations shall be of the positive-pressure type.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

PORTABLE FIRE SUPPRESSION EQUIPMENT

1910.157—PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

(a) Scope and application. The requirements of this section apply to the placement, use, maintenance, and testing of portable fire extinguishers provided for the use of employees. Paragraph (d) of this section does not apply to extinguishers provided for employee use on the outside of workplace buildings or structures. Where extinguishers are provided but are not intended for employee use and the employer has an emergency action plan and a dire prevention plan which meet the requirements of § 1910.38, then only the requirements of paragraphs (e) and (f) of this section apply.

(b) Exemptions

(1) Where the employer has established and implemented a written fire safety policy which requires the immediate and total evacuation of employees from the workplace upon the sounding of a fire alarm signal and which includes an emergency action plan and a fire prevention plan which meet the requirements of § 1910.38, and when extinguishers are not available in the workplace, the employer is exempt from all requirements of this section unless a specific standard in Part 1910 requires that a portable fire extinguisher be provided.

(2) Where the employer has an emergency action plan meeting the requirements of § 1910.38 which designates certain employees to be the only employees authorized to use the available portable fire extinguishers, and which requires all other employees in the fire area to immediately evacuate the affected work area upon the sounding of the fire alarm, the employer is exempt from the distribution requirements in paragraph (d) of this section.

(c) General requirements.

(1) The employer shall provide portable fire extinguishers and shall mount, locate and identify them so that they are readily accessible to employees without subjecting the employees to possible injury.

(2) Only approved portable fire extinguishers shall be used to meet the requirements of this section.

(3) The employer shall not provide or make available in the workplace portable fire extinguishers using carbon tetrachloride or chlorobromomethane extinguishing agents

(4) The employer shall assure that portable fire extinguishers are maintained in a fully charged and operable condition and kept in their designated places at all times except during use.

(5) The employer shall permanently remove from service by January 1, 1982, all soldered or riveted shell self-generating soda acid or self-generating foam or gas cartridge water type portable fire extinguishers which are operated by inverting the extinguisher to rupture the cartridge or to initiate an uncontrollable pressure generating chemical reaction to expel the agent.

(d) Selection and distribution.

(1) Portable fire extinguishers shall be provided for employee use and selected and distributed based on the classes of anticipated workplace fires and on the size and degree of hazard which would affect their use.

(2) The employer shall distribute portable fire extinguishers for use by employees on Class A fires so that the travel distance for employees to any extinguisher is 75 feet (22.9 m) or less.

(3) The employer may use uniformly spaced standpipe systems or hose stations connected to a sprinkler system installed for emergency use by employees instead of Class A portable fire extinguishers, provided that such systems meet the respective requirements of § 1910.158 or § 1910.159, that they provide total coverage of the area to be protected, and that employees are trained at least annually in their use.

(4) The employer shall distribute portable fire extinguishers for use by employees on Class B fires so that the travel distance from the Class B hazard area to any extinguisher is 50 feet (15.2 m) or less.

(5) The employer shall distribute portable fire extinguishers used for Class C hazards on the basis of the appropriate pattern for the existing Class A or Class B hazards.

(6) The employer shall distribute portable fire extinguishers or other containers of Class D extinguishing agent for use by employees so that the travel distance from the combustible metal working area to any extinguishing agent is 75 feet (22.9 m) or less. Portable fire extinguishers for Class D hazards are required in those combustible metal working areas where combustible metal powders, flakes, shavings, or similarly sized products are generated at least once every two weeks.

(e) Inspection, maintenance and testing.

(1) The employer shall be responsible for the inspection, maintenance and testing of all portable fire extinguishers in the workplace.

(2) Portable extinguishers or hose used in lieu thereof under paragraph (d)(3) of this section shall be visually inspected monthly.

(3) The employer shall assure that portable fire extinguishers are subjected to an annual maintenance check. Stored pressure extinguishers do not require an internal examination. The employer shall record the annual maintenance date and retain this record for one year after the last entry or the life of the shell, whichever is less. The record shall be available to the Assistant Secretary upon request.

(4) The employer shall assure that stored pressure dry chemical extinguishers that require a 12-year hydrostatic test are emptied and subjected to applicable maintenance procedures every 6 years. Dry chemical extinguishers having non-refillable disposable containers are exempt from this requirement. When recharging or hydrostatic testing is performed, the 6-year requirement begins from that date.

(5) The employer shall assure that alernate equivalent protection is provided when portable fire extinguishers are removed from service for maintenance and recharging.

(f) Hydrostatic testing.

(1) The employer shall assure that hydrostatic testing is performed by trained persons with suitable testing equipment and facilities.

(2) The employer shall assure that portable extinguishers are hydrostatically tested at the intervals listed in Table L-1 of this section, except under any of the following conditions: INTERP

(i) when the unit has been repaired by soldering, welding, brazing, or use of patching compounds; INTERP

(ii) when the cylinder or shell threads are damaged;

Table L-1

Type of extinguishers	Test interval (years)
Soda acid (soldered brass shells) (until 1/1/82)	(1)
Soda acid (stainless steel shell)	5
Cartridge operated water and/or antifreeze	5
Stored pressure water and/or antifreeze	5
Wetting agent	5
Foam (soldered brass shells) (until 1/1/82)	(1)
Foam (stainless steel shell)	5
Aqueous Film Forming foam (AFFF)	5
Loaded stream	5
Dry chemical with stainless steel	5
Carbon dioxide	5
Dry chemical, stored pressure, with mild steel, brazed brass or aluminum shells	12
Dry chemical, cartridge or cylinder operated, with mild steel shells	12
Halon 1211	12
Halon 1301	12
Dry powder, cartridge or cylinder operated with mild steel shell	12

[1] Extinguishers having shells constructed of copper or brass joined by soft solder or rivets shall not be hydrostatically tested and shall be removed from service by January 1, 1982. (Not permitted)

(iii) when there is corrosion that has caused pitting, including corrosion under removable name plate assemblies;

(iv) when the extinguisher has been burned in a fire; or

(v) when a calcium chloride extinguishing agent has been used in a stainless steel shell.

(3) In addition to an external visual examination, the employer shall assure that an internal examination of cylinders and shells to be tested is made prior to the hydrostatic tests.

INTERP

(4) The employer shall assure that portable fire extinguishers are hydrostatically tested whenever they show new evidence of corrosion or mechanical injury, except under the conditions listed in paragraph (f)(2)(i)-(v) of this section.

(5) The employer shall assure that hydrostatic tests are performed on estinguisher hose assemblies which are equipped with a shut-off nozzle at the discharge end of the hose. The test interval shall be the same as specified for the extinguisher on which the hose is installed.

(6) The employer shall assure that carbon dioxide hose assemblies with a shut-off nozzle are hydrostatically tested at 1,250 psi (8,620 kPa).

(7) The employer shall assure that dry chemical and dry powder hose assemblies with a shut-off nozzle are hydrostatically tested at 300 psi (2,070 kPa).

(8) Hose assemblies passing a hydrostatic test do not require any type of recording or stamping.

(9) The employer shall assure that hose assemblies for carbon dioxide extinguishers that require a hydrostatic test are tested within a protective cage device.

(10) The employer shall assure that carbon dioxide extinguishers and nitrogen or carbon dioxide cylinders used with wheeled extinguishers are tested every 5 years at 5/3 of the service pressure as stamped into the cylinder. Nitrogen cylinders which comply with 49 CFR 173.34(e)(15) may be hydrostatically tested every 10 years.

(11) The employer shall assure that all stored pressure and Halon 1211 types of extinguishers are hydrostatically tested at the factory test pressure not to exceed two times the service pressure.

(12) The employer shall assure that acceptable self-generating type soda acid and foam extinguishers are tested at 350 psi (2,410 kPa).

(13) Air or gas pressure may not be for hydrostatic testing.

(14) Extinguisher shells, cylinders, or cartridges which fail a hydrostatic pressure test, or which are not fit for testing shall be removed from service and from the workplace.

(15)

(i) The equipment for testing compressed gas type cylinders shall be of the water jacket type. The equipment shall be provided with an expansion indicator which operates with an accuracy within one percent of the total expansion or 0.1cc of liquid.

(ii) The equipment for testing noncompressed gas type cylinders shall consist of the following:

(a) A hydrostatic test pump, hand or power operated, capable of producing not less than 150 percent of the test pressure, which shall include appropriate check valves and fittings;

(b) A flexible connection for attachment to fittings to test through the extinguisher nozzle, test bonnet, or hose outlet, as is applicable; and

(c) A protective cage or barrier for personal protection of the tester, designed to provide visual observation of the extinguisher under test.

(16) The employer shall maintain and provide upon request to the Assistant Secretary evidence that the required hydrostatic testing of fire extinguishers has been performed at the time intervals shown in Table L-1. Such evidence shall be in the form of a certification record which includes the date of the test, the signature of the person who performed the test and the serial number, or

other identifier, of the fire extinguisher that was tested. Such records shall be kept until the extinguisher is hydrostatically retested at the time interval specified in Table L-1 or until the extinguisher is taken out of service, whichever comes first.

[51 F.R. 34560, September 29, 1986]

(g) Training and education.

(1) Where the employer has provided portable fire extinguishers for employee use in the workplace, the employer shall also provide an educational program to familiarize employees with the general principles of fire extinguisher use and the hazards involved with incipient stage fire fighting.

(2) The employer shall provide the education required in paragraph (g)(1) of this section upon initial employment and at least annually thereafter.

(3) The employer shall provide employees who have been designated to use fire fighting equipment as part of an emergency action plan with training in the use of the appropriate equipment.

(4) The employer shall provide the training required in paragraph (g)(3) of this section upon initial assignment to the designated group of employees and at least annually thereafter.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

1910.158—STANDPIPE AND HOSE SYSTEMS

(a) Scope and application.

(1) **Scope.** This section applies to all small hose, Class II, and Class III standpipe systems installed to meet the requirements of a particular OSHA standard.

(2) **Exception.** This section does not apply to Class I standpipe systems.

(b) **Protection of standpipes.** The employer shall assure that standpipes are located or otherwise protected against mechanical damage. Damaged standpipes shall be repaired promptly.

(c) Equipment.

(1) **Reels and cabinets.** Where reels or cabinets are provided to contain fire hose, the employer shall assure that they are designed to facilitate prompt use of the hose valves, the hose, and other equipment at the time of a fire or other emergency. The employer shall assure that the reels and cabinets are conspicuously identified and used only for fire equipment.

(2) **Hose outlets and connections.**

(i) The employer shall assure that hose outlets and connections are located high enough above the floor to avoid being obstructed and to be accessible to employees.

(ii) The employer shall standardize screw threads or provide appropriate adapters throughout the system and assure that the hose connections are compatible with those used on the supporting fire equipment.

(3) **Hose.**

(i) The employer shall assure that every 1½" (3.8 cm) or smaller hose outlet used to meet this standard is equipped with hose connected and ready for use. In extremely cold climates where such installation may result in damaged equipment, the hose may be stored in another location provided it is readily available and can be connected when needed.

(ii) Standpipe systems installed after January 1, 1981, for use by employees, shall be equipped with lined hose. Unlined hose may remain in use on existing systems. However, after the effective date of this standard, unlined hose which becomes unserviceable shall be replaced with lined hosed.

(iii) Beginning January 1, 1981, the employer shall provide hose of such length that friction loss resulting from water flowing through the hose will not decrease the pressure at the nozzle below 30 psi (210 kPa). The dynamic pressure at the nozzle shall be within the range of 30 psi (210 kPa) to 125 psi (860 kPa).

(4) **Nozzles.** Beginning July 1, 1981, the employer shall assure that standpipe hose is equipped with shut-off type nozzles.

(d) **Water supply.** The minimum water supply for standpipe and hose systems, which are provided for the use of employees, shall be sufficient to provide 100 gallons per minute (6.3 l/s) for a period of at least thirty minutes.

(e) Tests and maintenance.

(1) **Acceptance tests.**

(i) The employer shall assure that the piping of Class II and Class III systems installed after January 1, 1981, including yard piping, is hydrostatically tested for a period of at least 2 hours at not less than 200 psi (1380 kPa), or at least 50 psi (340 kPa) in excess of normal pressure when such pressure is greater than 150 psi (1030 kPa).

(ii) The employer shall assure that hose on all standpipe systems installed after January 1, 1981, is hydrostatically tested with couplings in place, at a pressure of not less than 200 psi (1380 kPa), before it is placed in service. This pressure shall be maintained for at least 15 seconds and not more than one minute during which time the hose shall not leak nor shall any jacket thread break during the test.

(2) **Maintenance**

(i) The employer shall assure that water supply tanks are kept filled to the proper level except during repairs. When pressure tanks are used, the employer shall assure that proper pressure is maintained at all times except during repairs.

(ii) The employer shall assure that valves in the main piping connections to the automatic sources of water supply are kept fully open at all times except during repair.

(iii) The employer shall assure that hose systems are inspected at least annually and after each use to assure that all of the equipment and hose are in place, available for use, and in serviceable condition.

(iv) When the system or any portion thereof is found not to be serviceable, the employer shall remove it from service immediately and replace it with equivalent protection such as extinguishers and fire watches.

(v) The employer shall assure that hemp or linen hose on existing systems is unracked, physically inspected for deterioration, and reracked using a different fold pattern at least annually. The employer shall assure that defective hose is replaced in accordance with paragraph (c)(3)(ii).

(vi) The employer shall designate trained persons to conduct all inspections required under this section.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

FIXED FIRE SUPPRESSION EQUIPMENT

1910.159—AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

(a) Scope and application.

(1) The requirements of this section apply to all automatic sprinkler systems installed to meet a particular OSHA standard.

(2) For automatic sprinkler systems used to meet OSHA requirements and installed prior to the effective date of this standard, compliance with the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) or the National Board of Fire Underwriters (NBFU) standard in effect at the time of the system's installation will be acceptable as compliance with this section.

(b) **Exemptions.** Automatic sprinkler systems installed in workplaces, but not required by OSHA, are exempt from the requirements of this section.

(c) General requirements.

(1) Design.

(i) All automatic sprinkler designs used to comply with this standard shall provide the necessary discharge patterns, densities, and water flow characteristics for complete coverage in a particular workplace or zoned subdivision of the workplace.

(ii) The employer shall assure that only approved equipment and devices are used in the design and installation of automatic sprinkler systems used to comply with this standard.

(2) **Maintenance.** The employer shall properly maintain an automatic sprinkler system installed to comply with this section. The employer shall assure that a main drain flow test is performed on each system annually. The inspector's test valve shall be opened as least every two years to assure that the sprinkler system operates properly.

(3) **Acceptance tests.** The employer shall conduct proper acceptance tests on sprinkler systems installed for employee protection after January 1, 1981, and record the dates of such tests. Proper acceptance tests include the following:

(i) flushing of underground connections;

(ii) hydrostatic tests of piping in system;

(iii) air tests in dry-pipe systems;

(iv) dry-pipe valve operation; and

(v) test of drainage facilities.

(4) **Water supplies.** The employer shall assure that every automatic sprinkler system is provided with at least one automatic water supply capable of providing design water flow for at least 30 minutes. An auxiliary water supply or equivalent protection shall be provided when the automatic water supply is out of service, except for systems of 20 or fewer sprinklers.

(5) **Hose connections for fire fighting use.** The employer may attach hose connections for fire fighting use to wet pipe sprinkler systems provided that the water supply satisfies the combined design demand for sprinklers and standpipes.

(6) **Protection of piping.** The employer shall assure that automatic sprinkler system piping is protected against freezing and exterior surface corrosions.

(7) **Drainage.** The employer shall assure that all dry sprinkler pipes and fittings are installed so that the systems may be totally drained.

(8) Sprinklers.

(i) The employer shall assure that only approved sprinklers are used on systems.

(ii) The employer may not use older style sprinklers to replace standard sprinklers without a complete engineering review of the altered part of the system.

(iii) The employer shall assure that sprinklers are protected from mechanical damage.

(9) **Sprinkler alarms.** On all sprinkler systems having more than twenty (20) sprinklers, the employer shall assure that a local waterflow alarm is provided which sounds an audible signal on the premises upon water flow through the system equal to the flow from a single sprinkler.

(10) **Sprinkler spacing.** The employer shall assure that sprinklers are spaced to provide a maximum protection area per sprinkler, a minimum of interference to the discharge pattern by building or structural members or building contents and suitable sensitivity to possible fire hazards. The minimum vertical clearance between sprinklers and material below shall be 18 inches.

(11) **Hydraulically designed systems.** The employer shall assure that hydraulically designed automatic sprinkler systems or portions therefore are identified and that the location, number of sprinklers in the hydraulically designed section, and the basis of the design is indicated. Central records may be used in lieu of signs at sprinkler valves provided the records are available for inspection and copying by the Assistant Secretary.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

1910.160—FIXED EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS, GENERAL

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to all fixed extinguishing systems installed to meet a particular OSHA standard except for automatic sprinkler systems which are covered by § 1910.159.

(2) This section also applies to fixed systems not installed to meet a particular OSHA standard, but which, by means of their operation, may expose employees to possible injury, death, or adverse health consequences caused by the extinguishing agent. Such systems are only subject to the requirements of paragraphs (b)(4) through (b)(7) and (c) of this section.

(3) Systems otherwise covered in paragraph (a)(2) of this section which are installed in areas with no employee exposure are exempted from the requirements of this section.

(b) General requirements.

(1) Fixed extinguishing system components and agents shall be designed and approved for use on the specific fire hazards they are expected to control or extinguish.

(2) If for any reason a fixed extinguishing system becomes inoperable, the employer shall notify employees and take the necessary temporary precautions to assure their safety until the system is restored to operating order. Any defects or impairments shall be properly corrected by trained personnel.

(3) The employer shall provide a distinctive alarm or signaling system which complies with § 1910.165 and is capable of being perceived above ambient noise or light levels, on all extinguishing systems in those portions of the workplace covered by the extinguishing system to indicate when the extinguishing system is discharging. Discharge alarms are not required on systems where discharge is immediately recognizable.

(4) The employer shall provide effective safeguards to warn employees against entry into discharge areas where the atmosphere remains hazardous to employee safety or health.

(5) The employer shall post hazard warning or caution signs at the entrance to, and inside of, areas protected by fixed extinguishing systems which use agents in concentrations known to be hazardous to employee safety and health.

(6) The employer shall assure that fixed systems are inspected annually by a person knowledgeable in the design and function of the system to assure that the system is maintained in good operating condition.

(7) The employer shall assure that the weight and pressure of refillable containers is checked at least semiannually. If the container shows a loss in net content or weight of more than 5 percent, or a loss in pressure of more than 10 percent, it shall be subjected to maintenance.

(8) The employer shall assure that factory charged nonrefillable containers which have no means of pressure indication are weighed at least semiannually. If a container shows a loss in net weight or more than 5 percent it shall be replaced.

(9) The employer shall assure that inspection and maintenance dates are recorded on the container, on a tag attached to the container, or in a central location. A record of the last semiannual check shall be maintained until the container is checked again or for the life of the container, whichever is less.

(10) The employer shall train employees designated to inspect, maintain, operate, or repair fixed extinguishing systems and annually review their training to keep them up-to-date in the functions they are to perform.

(11) The employer shall not use chlorobromomethane or carbon tetrachloride as an extinguishing agent where employees may be exposed.

(12) The employer shall assure that systems installed in the presence of corrosive atmospheres are constructed of non-corrosive material or otherwise protected against corrosion.

(13) Automatic detection equipment shall be approved, installed and maintained in accordance with § 1910.164.

(14) The employer shall assure that all systems designed for and installed in areas with climatic extremes shall operate effectively at the expected extreme temperatures.

(15) The employer shall assure that at least one manual station is provided for discharge activation of each fixed extinguishing system.

(16) The employer shall assure that manual operating devices are identified as to the hazard against which they will provide protection.

(17) The employer shall provide and assure the use of the personal protective equipment needed for immediate rescue of employees trapped in hazardous atmospheres created by an agent discharge.

(c) Total flooding systems with potential health and safety hazards to employees.

(1) The employer shall provide an emergency action plan in accordance with § 1910.38 for each area within a workplace that is protected by a total flooding system which provides agent concentrations exceeding the maximum safe levels set forth in paragraphs (b)(5) and (b)(6) of § 1910.162.

(2) Systems installed in areas where employees cannot enter during or after the system's operation are exempt from the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section.

(3) On all total flooding systems the employer shall provide a pre-discharge employee alarm which complies with § 1910.165, and is capable of being perceived above ambient light or noise levels before the system discharges, which will give employees time to safely exit from the discharge area prior to system discharge.

(4) The employer shall provide automatic actuation of total flooding systems by means of an approved fire detection device installed and interconnected with a pre-discharge employee alarm system to give employees time to safely exit from the discharge area prior to system discharge.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

1910.161—FIXED EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS, DRY CHEMICAL

(a) Scope and application. This section applies to all fixed extinguishing systems using dry chemical as the extinguishing agent, installed to meet a particular OSHA standard. These systems shall also comply with § 1910.160.

(b) Specific requirements.

(1) The employer shall assure that dry chemical agents are compatible with any foams or wetting agents with which they are used.

(2) The employer may not mix together dry chemical extinguishing agents of different compositions. The employer shall assure that dry chemical systems are refilled with the chemical stated on the approval nameplate or an equivalent compatible material.

(3) When dry chemical discharge may obscure vision, the employer shall provide a predischarge employee alarm which complies with § 1910.165 and which will give employees time to safely exit from the dicharge area prior to system discharge.

(4) The employer shall sample the dry chemical supply of all but stored pressure systems at least annually to assure that the dry chemical supply is free of moisture which may cause the supply to cake or form lumps.

(5) The employer shall assure that the rate of application of dry chemicals is such that the designed concentration of the system will be reached within 30 seconds of initial discharge.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

1910.162—Fixed extinguishing systems, gaseous agent

(a) Scope and application.

(1) Scope. This section applies to all fixed extinguishing systems, using a gas as the extinguishing agent, installed to meet a particular OSHA standard. These systems shall also comply with § 1910.160. In some cases, the gas may be in a liquid state during storage.

(2) Application. The requirements of paragraphs (b)(2) and (b)(4) through (b)(7) shall apply only to total flooding systems.

(b) Specific requirements.

(1) Agents used for initial supply and replenishment shall be of the type approved for the system's application. Carbon dioxide obtained by dry ice conversion to liquid is not acceptable unless it is processed to remove excess water and oil.

(2) Except during overhaul, the employer shall assure that the designed concentration of gaseous agents is maintained until the fire has been extinguished or is under control.

(3) The employer shall assure that employees are not exposed to toxic levels of gaseous agent or its decomposition products.

(4) The employer shall assure that the designed extinguishing concentration is reached within 30 seconds of initial discharge except for Halon systems which must achieve design concentration within 10 seconds.

(5) The employer shall provide a distinctive pre-discharge employee alarm capable of being perceived above ambient light or noise levels when agent design concentrations exceed the maximum safe level for employee exposure. A pre-discharge employee alarm for alerting employees before system discharge shall be provided on Halon 1211 and carbon dioxide systems with a design concentration of 4 percent or greater and for Halon 1301 systems with a design concentration of 10 percent or greater. The pre-discharge employee alarm shall provide employees time to safely exit the discharge area prior to system discharge.

(6)

(i) Where egress from an area cannot be accomplished within one minute, the employer shall not use Halon 1301 in concentrations greater than 7 percent.

(ii) Where egress takes greater than 30 seconds but less than one minute, the employer shall not use Halon 1301 in a concentration greater than 10 percent.

(iii) Halon 1301 concentrations greater than 10 percent are only permitted in areas not normally occupied by employees provided that any employee in the area can escape within 30 seconds. The employer shall assure that no unprotected employees enter the area during agent discharge.

1910.163—Fixed extinguishing systems, water spray and foam

(a) Scope and application. This section applies to all fixed extinguishing systems, using water or foam solution as the extinguishing agent, installed to meet a particular OSHA standard. These systems shall also comply with §1910.160. This section does not apply to automatic sprinkler systems which are covered under §1910.159.

(b) Specific requirements

(1) The employer shall assure that foam and water spray systems are designed to be effective in at least controlling fire in the protected area or on protected equipment.

(2) The employer shall assure that drainage of water spray systems is directed away from areas where employees are working and that no emergency egress is permitted through the drainage path.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

1910.164—FIRE DETECTION SYSTEMS

(a) Scope and application. This section applies to all automatic fire detection systems installed to meet the requirements of a particular OSHA standard.

(b) Installation and restoration.

(1) The employer shall assure that all devices and equipment constructed and installed to comply with this standard are approved for the purpose for which they are intended.

(2) The employer shall restore all fire detection systems and components to normal operating condition as promptly as possible after each test or alarm. Spare detection devices and components which are normally destroyed in the process of detecting fires shall be available on the premises or from a local supplier in sufficient quantities and locations for prompt restoration of the system.

(c) Maintenance and testing.

(1) The employer shall maintain all systems in an operable condition except during repairs or maintenance.

(2) The employer shall assure that fire detectors and fire detection systems are tested and adjusted as often as needed to maintain proper reliability and operating condition except that factory calibrated detectors need not be adjusted after installation.

(3) The employer shall assure that pneumatic and hydraulic operated detection systems installed after January 1, 1981, are equipped with supervised systems.

(4) The employer shall assure that the servicing, maintenance and testing of fire detection systems, including cleaning and necessary sensitivity adjustments are performed by a trained person knowledgeable in the operations and functions of the system.

(5) The employer shall also assure that fire detectors that need to be cleaned of dirt, dust, or other particulates in order to be fully operational are cleaned at regular periodic intervals.

(d) Protection of fire detectors.

(1) The employer shall assure that fire detection equipment installed outdoors or in the presence of corrosive atmospheres be protected from corrosion. The employer shall provide a canopy, hood, or other suitable protection for detection equipment requiring protection from the weather.

(2) The employer shall locate or otherwise protect detection equipment so that it is protected from mechanical or physical impact which might render it inoperable.

(3) The employer shall assure that detectors are supported independently of their attachment to wires or tubing.

(e) Response time.

(1) The employer shall assure that fire detection systems installed for the purpose of actuating fire extinguishment or suppression systems shall be designed to operate in time to control or extinguish a fire.

(2) The employer shall assure that fire detection systems installed for the purpose of employee alarm and evacuation be designed and installed to provide a warning for emergency action and safe escape of employees.

(3) The employer shall not delay alarms or devices initiated by fire detector actuation for more than 30 seconds unless such delay is necessary for the immediate safety of employees. When such delay is necessary, it shall be addressed in an emergency action plan meeting the requirements of § 1910.38.

(f) Number, location and spacing of detecting devices. The employer shall assure that the number, spacing and location of fire detectors is based upon design data obtained from field experience, or tests, engineering surveys, the manufacturer's recommendations, or a recognized testing laboratory listing.

[45 F.R. 60703, September 12, 1980.]

1910.165—EMPLOYEE ALARM SYSTEMS

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to all emergency employee alarms installed to meet a particular OSHA standard. This section does not apply to those discharge or supervisory alarms required on various fixed extinguishing systems or to supervisory alarms on fire suppression, alarm or detection systems unless they are intended to be employee alarm systems.

(2) The requirements in this section that pertain to maintenance, testing and inspection shall apply to all local fire alarm signaling systems used for alerting employees regardless of the other functions of the system.

(3) All pre-discharge employee alarms installed to meet a particular OSHA standard shall meet the requirements of paragraphs (b)(1) through (b)(4), (c), and (d)(1) of this section.

(b) General requirements

(1) The employee alarm system shall provide warning for necessary emergency action as called for in the emergency action plan, or for reaction time for safe escape of employees from the workplace or the immediate work area, or both.

(2) The employee alarm shall be capable of being perceived above ambient noise or light levels by all employees in the affected portions of the workplace. Tactile devices may be used to alert those employees who would not otherwise be able to recognize the audibile or visual alarm.

(3) The employee alarm shall be distinctive and recognizable as a signal to evacuate the work area or to perform actions designated under the emergency action plan.

(4) The employer shall explain to each employee the preferred means of reporting emergencies, such as manual pull box alarms, public address systems, radio or telephones. The employer shall post emergency telephone numbers near telephones, or employee notice boards, and other conspicuous locations when telephones serve as a means of reporting emergencies. Where a communication system also serves as the employee alarm system, all emergency messages shall have priority over all nonemergency messages.

(5) The employer shall establish procedures for sounding emergency alarms in the workplace. For those employers with 10 or fewer employees in a particular workplace, direct voice communication is an acceptable procedure for sounding the alarm provided all employees can hear the alarm. Such workplaces need not have a back-up system.

(c) Installation and restoration.

(1) The employer shall assure that all devices, components, combinations of devices or systems constructed and installed to comply with this standard are approved. Steam whistles, air horns, strobe lights or similar lighting devices, or tactile devices meeting the requirements of this section are considered to meet this requirement for approval.

(2) The employer shall assure that all employee alarm systems are restored to normal operating condition as promptly as possible after each test or alarm. Spare alarm devices and components subject to wear or destruction shall be available in sufficient quantities and locations for prompt restoration of the system.

(d) Maintenance and testing.

(1) The employer shall assure that all employee alarm systems are maintained in operating condition except when undergoing repairs or maintenance.

(2) The employer shall assure that a test of the reliability and adequacy of non-supervised employee alarm systems is made every two months. A different actuation device shall be used in each test of a multi-actuation device system so that no individual device is used for two consecutive tests.

(3) The employer shall maintain or replace power supplies as often as is necessary to assure a fully operational condition. Back-up means of alarm, such as employee runners or telephones, shall be provided when systems are out of service.

(4) The employer shall assure that employee alarm circuitry installed after January 1, 1981, which is capable of being supervised is supervised and that it will provide positive notification to assigned personnel whenever a deficiency exists in the system. The employer shall assure that all supervised employee alarm systems are tested at least annually for reliability and adequacy.

(5) The employer shall assure that the servicing, maintenance and testing of employee alarms are done by persons trained in the designed operation and functions necessary for reliable and safe operation of the system.

(e) Manual operation. The employer shall assure that manually operated actuation devices for use in conjunction with employee alarms are unobstructed, conspicuous and readily accessible.

(APPENDIX A TO SUBPART L)

Fire Protection

1910.156 Fire brigades

1. **Scope.** This section does not require an employer to organize a fire brigade. However, if an employer does decide to organize a fire brigade, the requirements of this section apply.

2. **Pre-fire planning.** It is suggested that pre-fire planning be conducted by the local fire department and/or the workplace fire brigade in order for them to be familiar with the workplace and process hazards. Involvement with the local fire department or fire prevention bureau is encouraged to facilitate coordination and cooperation between members of the fire brigade and those who might be called upon for assistance during a fire emergency.

3. **Organizational statement.** In addition to the information required in the organizational statement, paragraph 1910.156(b)(1), it is suggested that the organizational statement also contain the following information: a description of the duties that the fire brigade members are expected to perform; the line authority of each fire brigade officer; the number of the fire brigade officers and number of training instructors; and a list and description of the types of awards or recognition that brigade members may be eligible to receive.

4. **Physical capability.** The physical capability requirement

applies only to those fire brigade members who perform interior structural fire fighting. Employees who cannot meet the physical capability requirement may still be members of the fire brigade as long as such employees do not perform interior structural fire fighting. It is suggested that fire brigade members who are unable to perform interior structural fire fighting be assigned less stressful and physically demanding fire brigade dutiens, e.g., certain types of training, recordkeeping, fire prevention inspection and maintenance, and fire pump operations.

Physically capable can be defined as being able to perform those duties specified in the training requirements of section 1910.156(c). Physically capable can also be determined by physical performance tests or by a physical examination when the examining physician is aware of the duties that the fire brigade member is expected to perform.

It is also recommended that fire brigade members participate in a physical fitness program. There are many benefits which can be attributed to being physically fit. It is believed that physical fitness may help to reduce the number of sprain and strain injuries as well as contributing to the improvement of the cardiovascular system.

5. **Training and education.** The paragraph on training and education does not contain specific training and education requirements because the type, amount, and frequency of training and education will be as varied as are the purposes for which fire brigades are organized. However, the paragraph does require that training and education be commensurate with those functions that the fire brigade is expected to perform; i.e., those functions specified in the organizational statement. Such a performance requirement provides the necessary flexibility to design a training program which meets the needs of individual fire brigades.

At a minimum, hands-on training is required to be conducted annually for all fire brigade members. However, for those fire brigade members who are expected to perform interior structural fire fighting, some type of training or education session must be provided at least quarterly.

In addition to the required hands-on training, it is strongly recommended that fire brigade members receive other types of training and education such as: classroom instruction, review of emergency action procedures, pre-fire planning, review of special hazards in the workplace, and practice in the use of self-contained breathing apparatus.

It is not necessary for the employer to duplicate the same training or education that a fire brigade member receives as a member of a community volunteer fire department, rescue squad, or similar organization. However, such training or education must have been provided to the fire brigade member within the past year and it must be documented that the fire brigade member has received the training or education. For example: there is no need for a fire brigade member to receive another training class in the use of positive-pressure self-contained breathing apparatus if the fire brigade member has recently completed such training as a member of a community fire department. Instead, the fire brigade member should receive training or education covering other important equipment or duties of the fire brigade as they relate to the workplace hazards, facilities and processes.

It is generally recognized that the effectiveness of fire brigade training and education depends upon the expertise of those providing the training and education as well as the motivation of the fire brigade members. Fire brigade training instructors must receive a higher level of training and education than the fire brigade members they will be teaching. This includes being more knowledgeable about the functions to be performed by the fire brigade and the hazards involved. The instructors should be qualified to train fire brigade members and demonstrate skills in communication, methods of teaching, and motivation. It is important for instructors and fire brigade members alike to be motivated toward the goal of the fire brigade and be aware of the importance of the service that they are providing for the protection of other employees and the workplace.

It is suggested that publications from the International Fire Service Training Association, the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA-1041), the International Society of Fire Service Instructors and other fire training sources be consulted for recommended qualifications of fire brigade training instructors.

In order to be effective, fire brigades must have competent leadership and supervision. It is important for those who supervise the fire brigade during emergency situations, e.g., fire brigade chiefs, leaders, etc., to receive the necessary training and education for supervising fire brigade activities during these hazardous and stressful situations. These fire brigade members with leadership responsibilities should demonstrate skills in strategy and tactics, fire suppression and prevention techniques, leadership principles, pre-fire planning, and safety practices. It is again suggested that fire service training sources be consulted for determining the kinds of training and education which are necessary for those with fire brigade leadership responsibilities.

It is further suggested that fire brigade leaders and fire brigade instructors receive more formalized training and education on a continuing basis by attending classes provided by such training sources as universities and university fire extension services.

The following rerommendations should not be considered to be all of the necessary elements of a complete comprehensive training program, but the information may be helpful as a guide in developing a fire brigade training program.

All fire brigade members should be familiar with exit facilities and their location, emergency escape routes for handicapped workers, and the workplace "emergency action plan."

In addition, fire brigade members who are expected to control and extinguish fires in the incipient stage should, at a minimum, be trained in the use of fire extinguishers, standpipes, and other fire equipment they are assigned to use. They should also be aware of first aid medical procedures and procedures for dealing with special hazards to which they may be exposed. Training and education should include both classroom instruction and actual operation of the equipment under simulated emergency conditions. Hands-on type training must be conducted at least annually but some functions should be reviewed more often.

In addition to the above training, fire brigade members who are expected to perform emergency rescue and interior structural fire fighting should, at a minimum, be familiar with the proper techniques in rescue and fire suppression procedures. Training and education should include fire protection courses, classroom training, simulated fire situations including "wet drills" and, when feasible, extinguishment of actual mock fires. Frequency of training or education must be at least quarterly, but some drills or classroom training should be conducted as often as monthly or even weekly to maintain the proficiency of fire brigade members.

There are many excellent sources of training and education that the employer may want to use in developing a training program for the workplace fire brigade. These sources include publications, seminars, and courses offered by universities.

There are also excellent fire school courses by such facilities as Texas A and M University, Delaware State Fire School, Lamar University, and Reno Fire School, that deal with those unique hazards which may be encountered by fire brigades in the oil and chemical industry. These schools, and others, also offer excellent training courses which would be beneficial to fire brigades in other types of industries. These courses should be a continuing part of the training program, and employers are strongly encouraged to take advantage of these excellent resources.

It is also important that fire brigade members be informed about special hazards to which they may be exposed during fire and other emergencies. Such hazards as storage and use areas of flammable liquids and gases, toxic chemicals, water-reactive substances, etc., can pose difficult problems. There must be written procedures developed that describe the actions to be taken in situations involving special hazards. Fire brigade members must be trained in handling these special hazards as well as keeping abreast of any changes that occur in relation to these special hazards.

6. Fire fighting equipment. It is important that fire fighting equipment that is in damaged or unserviceable condition be removed from service and replaced. This will prevent fire brigade members from using unsafe equipment by mistake.

Fire fighting equipment, except portable fire extinguishers and respirators, must be inspected at least annually. Portable fire extinguishers and respirators are required to be inspected at least monthly.

7. Protective clothing.

(A) General. Paragraph (e) of § 1910.156 does not require all fire brigade members to wear protective clothing. It is not the intention of these standards to require employers to provide a full ensemble of protective clothing for every fire brigade member without consideration given to the types of hazardous environments to which the fire brigade member might be exposed. it is the intention of these standards to require adequate protection for those fire brigade members who might be exposed to fires in an advanced stage, smoke, toxic gases, and high temperatures. Therefore, the protective clothing requirements only apply to those fire brigade members who perform interior structural fire fighting operations.—

Additionally, the protective clothing requirements do not apply to the protective clothing worn during outside fire fighting operations (brush and forest fires, crash crew operations) or other special fire fighting activities. It is important that the protective clothing to be worn during these types of fire fighting operations reflect the hazards which are expected to be encountered by fire brigade members.

(B) Foot and leg protection. Section 1910.156 permits an option to achieve foot and leg protection.

The section recognizes the interdependence of protective clothing to cove one or more parts of the body. Therefore, an option is given so that fire brigade members may meet the foot and leg requirements by either wearing long fire-resistive coats in combination with fully extended boots, or by wearing shorter fire-resistive costs in combination with protective trousers and protective shoes or shorter boots.

(C) Body protection. Paragraph (e)(3) of § 1910.156 provides an option for fire brigade members to achieve body protection. Fire brigade members may wear a fire-resistive coat in combination with fully extended boots, or they may wear a fire-resistive coat in combination with protective trousers.

Fire-resistive coats and protective trousers meeting all of the requirements contained in NFPA 1971-1975 "Protective Clothing for Structural Fire Fighters," are acceptable as meeting the requirements of this standard.

The lining is required to be permanently attached to the outer shell. However, it is permissible to attach the lining to the outer shell material by stitching in one area such as at the neck. Fastener tape or snap fasteners may be used to secure the rest of the lining to the outer shell to facilitate cleaning. Reference to permanent lining does not refer to a winter liner which is a detachable extra lining used to give added protection to the wearer against the effects of cold weather and wind.

(D) Hand protection. The requirements of the paragraph on hand protection may be met by protective gloves or a glove system. A glove system consists of a combination of different gloves. The usual components of a glove system consist of a pair of gloves, which provide thermal insulation to the hand, worn in combination with a second pair of gloves which provide protection against flame, cut, and puncture.

It is suggested that protective gloves provide dexterity and a sense of feel for objects. Criteria and test methods for dexterity are contained in the NIOSH publications, "The Development of Criteria for Firefighters' Gloves; Vol. I: Glove Requirements" and "Vol. II: Glove Criteria and Test Methods." These NIOSH publications also contain a permissible modified version of Federal Test Method 191, Method 5903, (paragraph (3) of Appendix E) for flame resistance when gloves, rather than glove material, are tested for flame resistance.

(E) Head, eye, and face protection. Head protective devices which meet the requirements contained in NFPA No. 1972 are acceptable as meeting the requirements of this standard for head protection.

Head protective devices are required to de provided with ear flaps so that the ear flaps will be available if needed. It is recommended that ear protection always be used while fighting interior structural fires.

Many head protective devices are equipped with face shields to protect the eyes and face. These face shields are permissible as meeting the eye and face protection requirements of this paragraph as long as such face shields meet the requirements of § 1910.133 of the General Industry Standards.

Additionally, full facepieces, helmets or hoods of approved breathing apparatus which meet the requirements of § 1910.134 and paragraph (f) of § 1910.156 are also acceptable as meeting the eye and face protection requirements.

It is recommended that a flame resistant protective head covering such as a hood or snood, which will not adversely affect the seal of a respirator facepiece, be worn during interior structural fire fighting operations to protect the sides of the face and hair.

8. Respiratory protective devices. Respiratory protection is required to be worn by fire brigade members while working inside buildings or confined spaces where toxic products of combustion or an oxygen deficiency is likely to be present; respirators are also to be worn during emergency situations involving toxic substances. When fire brigade members respond to emergency situations, they may be exposed to unknown contaminants in unknown concentrations. Therefore, it is imperative that fire brigade members wear proper respiratory protective devices during these situations. Additionally, there are many instances where toxic products of combustion are still present during mop-up and overhaul operations. Therefore, fire brigade members should continue to wear respirators during these types of operations.

Self-contained breathing apparatus are not required to be equipped with either a buddy-breathing device or a quick-disconnect valve. However, these accessories may be very useful and are acceptable as long as such accessories do not cause damage to the apparatus, restrict the air flow of the apparatus, or obstruct the normal operation of the apparatus.

Buddy-breathing devices are useful for emergency situations where a victim or another fire brigade member can share the same air supply with the wearer of the apparatus for emergency escape purposes.

The employer is encouraged to provide fire brigade members with an alternative means of repiratory protection to be used only for emergency escape purposes if the self-contained breathing apparatus becomes inoperative. Such alternative means of respiratory protection may be either a buddy-breathing device or an escape self-contained breathing apparatus (ESCBA). The ESCBA is a short-duration respiratory protective device which is approved for only emergency escape purposes. It is suggested that if ESCBA units are used, that they be of at least 5 minutes service life.

Quick-disconnect valves are devices which start the flow of air by insertion of the hose (which leads to the facepiece) into the regulator of self-contained breathing apparatus, and stop the flow of air by disconnecting the hose from the regulator. These devices are particularly useful for those positive-pressure self-contained breathing apparatus which do not have the capability of being switched from the demand to the positive-pressure mode.

The use of a self-contained breathing apparatus where the apparatus can be switched from a demand to a positive-pressure mode is acceptable as long as the apparatus is in the positive-pressure mode when performing interior structural fire fighting operations. Also acceptable are approved repiratory protective devices which have been converted to the positive-pressure type when such modification is accomplished by trained and experienced persons using kits or parts approved by NIOSH and provided by the manufacturer and by following the manufacturer's instructions.

There are situations which require the use of respirators which have a duration of 2 hours or more. Presently, there are no approved positive-pressure apparatus with a rated service life of more than 2 hours. Consequently, negative-pressure self-contained breathing apparatus with a rated service life of more than 2 hours and which have a minimum protection factor of 5,000 as determined by an acceptable quantitative fit test performed on each individual, will be acceptable for use during situations which require long duration apparatus. Long duration apparatus may be needed in such instances as working in tunnels, subway systems, etc. Such negative-pressure breathing apparatus will continue to be acceptable for a maximum of 18 months after a positive-pressure apparatus with the same or longer rated service life of more than 2 hours is certified by NIOSH/MSHA. After this 18 month phase-in period, all self-contained breathing apparatus used for these long duration situations will have to be of the positive-pressure type.

Protection factor (sometimes called fit factor) is defined as the ratio of the contaminant concentrations outside of the respirator to the contaminant concentrations inside the facepiece of the respirator.

$$PF = \frac{\text{Concentration outside respirator}}{\text{Concentration inside facepiece}}$$

Protection factors are determined by quantitative fit tests. An acceptable quantitative fit test should include the following elements:

1. A fire brigade member who is physically and medically capable of wearing respirators, and who is trained in the use of respirators, dons a self-contained breathing apparatus equipped with a device that will monitor the concentration of a contaminant inside the facepiece.

2. The fire brigade member than performs a qualitative fit test to assure the best face to facepiece seal as possible. A qualitative fit test can consist of a negative-pressure test, positive-pressure test, isoamyl acetate vapor (banana oil) test, or an irritant smoke test. For more details on respirator fitting see the NIOSH booklet entitled "A Guide to Industrial Respiratory Protection" June, 1976, and HEW publication No. (NIOSH) 76-189.

3. The wearer should then perform physical activity which reflects the level of work activity which would be expected during fire fighting activities. The physical activity should include simulated fire-ground work activity or physical exercise such as running-in-place, a step test, etc.

4. Without readjusting the apparatus, the wearer is placed in a test atmosphere containing a non-toxic contaminant with a known, constant, concentration.

The protection factor is then determined by dividing the known concentration of the contaminant in the test atmosphere by the concentration of the contaminant inside the facepiece when the following exercises are performed:

(a) Normal breathing with head motionless for one minute;

(b) Deep breathing with head motionless for 30 seconds;

(c) Turning head slowly from side to side while breathing normally, pausing for at least two breaths before changing direction. Continue for at least one minute;

(d) Moving head slowly up and down while breathing normally, pausing for at least two breaths before changing direction. Continue for at least two minutes;

(e) Reading from a prepared text, slowly and clearly, and loudly enough to be heard and understood. Continue for one minute; and

(f) Normal breathing with head motionless for at least one minute.

The protection factor which is determined must be at least 5,000. The quantitative fit test should be conducted at least three times. It is acceptable to conduct all three tests on the same day. However, there should be at least one hour between tests to reflect the protection afforded by the apparatus during different times of the day.

The above elements are not meant to be a comprehensive, technical description of a quantitative fit test protocol. However, quantitative fit test procedures which include these elements are acceptable for determining protection factors. Procedures for a quantitative fit test are required to be available for inspection by the Assistant Secretary or authorized representative.

Organizations such as Los Alamos Sceintific Laboratory, Lawrence Livermore Laboratory, NIOSH, and American National Standards Institute (ANSI) are excellent sources for additional information concerning qualitative and quantitative fit testing.

1910.157 Portable fire extinguishers.

1. Scope and application. The scope and application of this section is written to apply to three basic types of workplaces. First, there are those workplaces where the employer has chosen to evacuate all employess from the workplace at the time of a fire emergency. Second, there are those workplaces where the employer has chosen to permit certain employees to fight fires and to evacuate all other non-essential employees at the time of a fire emergency. Third, there are those workplaces where the employer has chosen to permit all employees in the workplace to use portable fire extinguishers to fight fires.

The section also addresses two kinds of work areas. The entire workplace can be divided into outside (exterior) work areas and inside (interior) work areas. This division of the workplace into two areas is done in recognition of the different types of hazards employees may be exposed to during fire fighting operations. Fires in interior workplaces, pose a greater hazard to employees; they can produce greater exposure to quantities of smoke, toxic gases, and heat because of the capability of a building or structure to contain or entrap these products of combustion until the building can be ventilated. Exterior work areas, normally open to the environment, are somewhat less hazardous, because the products of combustion are generally carried away by the thermal column of the fire. Employees also have a greater selection of evacuation routes if it is necessary to abandon fire fighting efforts.

In recognition of the degree of hazard present in the two types of work areas, the standards for exterior work areas are somewhat less restrictive in regards to extinguisher distribution. Paragraph (a) explains this by specifying which paragraphs in the section apply.

2. Portable fire extinguisher exemptions. In recognition of the three options given to employers in regard to the amount of employee evacuation to be carried out, the standards permit certain exemptions based on the number of employees expected to use fire extinguishers.

Where the employer has chosen to totally evacuate the workplace at the time of a fire emergency and when fire extinguishers are not provided, the requirements of this section do not apply to that workplace.

Where the employer has chosen to partially evacuate the workplace or the effected area at the time of a fire emergency and has permitted certain designated employees to remain behind to operate critical plant operations or to fight fires with extinguishers, then the employer is exempt from the distribution requirements of this section. Employees who will be remaining behind to perform incipient fire fighting or members of a fire brigade must be trained in their duties. The training must result in the employees becoming familiar with the locations of fire extinguishers. Therefore, the employer must locate the extinguishers in convenient locations where the employees know they can be found. For example, they could be mounted in the fire truck or cart that the fire brigade uses when it responds to a fire emergency. They can also be distributed as set forth in the National Fire Protection Association's Standard No. 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."

Where the employer has decided to permit all employees in the workforce to use fire extinguishers, then the entire OSHA standard applies.

3. Portable fire extinguisher mounting. Previous standards for mounting fire extinguishers have been criticized for requiring specific mounting location. In recognition of this criticism, the standard has been rewritten to permit as much flexibility in extinguisher mounting as is acceptable to assure that fire extinguishers are available when needed and that employees are not subjected to injury hazards when they try to obtain an extinguisher.

It is the intent of OSHA to permit the mounting of extinguishers in any location that is accessible to employees without the use of portable devices such as a ladder. This limitation is necessary because portable devices can be moved or taken from the place where they are needed and, therefore, might not be available at the time of an emergency.

Employers are given as much flexibility as possible to assure that employees can obtain extinguishers as fast as possible. For example, an acceptable method of mounting extinguishers in areas where fork lift trucks or tow-motors are used is to mount the units on retractable board which, by means of counterweighting, can be raised above the level where they could be struck by vehicular traffic. When needed, they can be lowered quickly for use. This method of mounting can also reduce vandalism and unauthorized use of extinguishers. The extinguishers may also be mounted as outlined in the National Fire Protection Association's Standard No. 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."

4. Selection and distribution. The employer is responsible for the proper selection and distribution of fire extinguishers and the determination of the necessary degree of protection. The selection and distribution of fire extinguishers must reflect the type and class of fire hazards associated with a particular workplace

Extinguishers for protecting Class A hazards may be selected from the following types: water, foam, loaded stream, or multipurpose dry chemical. Extinguishers for protecting Class B hazards may be selected from the following types: Halon 1301, Halon 1211, carbon dioxide, dry chemicals, foam, or loaded stream. Extinguishers for Class C hazards may be selected form the following types: Halon 1301, Halon 1211, carbon dioxide, or dry chemical.

Combustible metal (Class D hazards) fires pose a different type of fire problem in the workplace. Extinguishers using water, gas, or certain dry chemicals cannot extinguish or control this type of fire. Therefore, certain metals have specific dry powder extinguishing agents which can extinguish or control this type of fire. Those agents which have been specifically approved for use on certain metal fires provide the best protection; however, there are also some "universal" type agents which can be used effectively on a variety of combustible metal fires if necessary. The "universal" type agents include: Foundry flux, Lith-X powder, TMB liquid, pyromet powder, TEC powder, dry talc, dry graphite powder, dry sand, dry sodium chloride, dry soda ash, lithium chloride, zirconium silicate, and dry dolomite.

Water is not generally accepted as an effective extinguishing agent for metal fires. When applied to hot burning metal, water will break down into its basic atoms of oxygen and hydrogen. This chemical breakdown contributes to the combustion of the metal. However, water is also a good universal coolant and can be used on some combustible metals, but only under proper conditions and application, to reduce the temperature of the burning metal below the ignition point. For example, automatic deluge systems in magnesium plants can discharge such large quantities of water on burning magnesium that the fire will be extinguished. The National Fire Protection Association has specific standards for this type of automatic sprinkler system. Further information on the control of metal fires with water can be found in the National Fire Protection Association's **Fire Protection Handbook.**

An excellent source of selection and distribution criteria is found in the National Fire Protection Association's Standard No. 10. Other sources of information include the National Safety Council and the employer's fire insurance carrier.

5. Substitution of standpipe systems for portable fire extinguishers. The employer is permitted to substitute acceptable standpipe systems for portable fire extinguishers under certain circumstances. It is necessary to assure that any substitution will provide the same coverage that portable units provide. This means that fire hoses, because of thier limited portability, must be spaced throughout the protected area so that they can reach around obstructions such as columns, machinery, etc. and so that they can reach into closets and other enclosed areas.

6. Inspection, maintenance and testing. The ultimate responsibility for the inspection, maintenance and testing of portable fire extinguishers lies with the employer. The actual inspection, maintenance, and testing may, however, be conducted by outside contractors with whom the employer has arranged to do the work. When contracting for such work, the employer should assure that the contractor is capable of performing the work that is needed to comply with this standard.

If the employer should elect to perform the inspection, maintenance, and testing requirements of this section in-house, then the employer must make sure that those persons doing the work have been trained to do the work and to recognize problem areas which could cause an extinguisher to be inoperable. The National Fire Protection Association provides excellent guidelines in its standard for portable fire extinguishers. The employer may also check with the manufacturer of the unit that has been purchased and obtain guidelines on inspection, maintenance, and testing. Hydrostatic testing is a process that should left to contractors or individuals using suitable facilities and having the training necessary to perform the work.

Anytime the employer has removed an extinguisher from service to be checked or repaired, alternate equivalent protection must be provided. Alternate equivalent protection could include replacing the extinguisher with one or more units having equivalent or equal ratings, posting a fire watch, restricting the unprotected area from employee exposure, or providing a hose system ready to operate.

7. Hydrostatic testing. As stated before, the employer may contract for hydrostatic testing. However, if the employer wishes to provide the testing service, certain equipment and facilities must be available. Employees should be made aware of the hazards associated with hydrostatic testing and the importance of using proper guards and water pressures. Severe injury can result if extinguisher shells fail violently under hydrostatic pressure.

Employers are encouraged to use contractors who can perform adequate and reliable service. Firms which have been certified by the Materials Transportation Board (MTB) of the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) or State licensed extinguisher servicing firms or recognized by the National Association of Fire Equipment Distributors in Chicago, Illinois, are generally acceptable for performing this service.

8. Training and education. This part of the standard is of the utmost importance to employers and employees if the risk of injury or death due to extinguisher use is to be reduced. If an employer is going to permit an employee to fight a workplace fire of any size, the employer must make sure that the employee knows everything necessary to assure the employee's safety.

Training and education can be obtained through many channels. Often, local fire departments in larger cities have fire prevention bureaus or similar organizations which can provide basic fire prevention training programs. Fire insurance companies will have data and information available. The National Fire Protection Association and the National Safety Council will provide, at a small cost, publications that can be used in a fire prevention program.

Actual fire fighting training can be obtained from various sources in the country. The Texas A & M University, the University of Maryland's Fire and Rescue Institute, West Virginia University's Fire Service Extension, Iowa State University's Fire Service Extension and other State training schools and land grant colleges have fire fighting programs directed to industrial applications. Some manufacturers of extinguishers, such as the Ansul Company and Safety First, conduct fire schools for customers in the proper use of extinguishers. Several large corporations have taken time to develop their own on-site training programs which expose employees to the actual "feeling" of fire fighting. Simulated fires for training of employees in the proper use of extinguishers are also an acceptable part of a training program.

In meeting the requirements of this section, the employer may also provide educational materials, without classroom instruction, through the use of employee notice campaigns using instruction sheets or flyers or similar types of informal programs. The employer must make sure that employees are trained and educated to recognize not only what type of fire is being fought and how to fight it, but also when it is time to get away from it and leave fire suppression to more experienced fire fighters.

1910.158 Standpipe and hose systems.

1. **Scope and application.** This section has been written to provide adequate coverage of those standpipe and hose systems that an employer may install in the workplace to meet the requirements of a particular OSHA standard. For example, OSHA permits the substitution of hose systems for portable fire extinguishers in § 1910.157. If an employer chooses to provide hose systems instead of portable Class A fire extinguishers, then those hose systems used for substitution would have to meet the applicable requirements of § 1910.157. All other standpipe and hose systems not used as a substitute would be exempt from these requirements.

The section specifically exempts Class I large hose systems. By large hose systems, OSHA means those 2½" hose lines that are usually associated with fire departments of the size that provide their own water supply through fire apparatus. When the fire gets to the size that outside protection of that degree is necessary, OSHA believes that in most industries employees will have been evacuated from the fire area and the "professional" fire fighters will take control.

2. **Protection of standpipes.** Employers must make sure that standpipes are protected so that they can be relied upon during a fire emergency. This means protecting the pipes from mechanical and physical damage. There are various means for protecting the equipment such as, but not limited to, enclosing the supply piping in the construction of the building, locating the standpipe in an area which is inaccessible to vehicles, or locating the standpipe in a stairwell.

3. **Hose covers and cabinets.** The employer should keep fire protection hose equipment in cabinets or inside protective covers which will protect it from the weather elements, dirt or other damaging sources. The use of protective covers must be easily removed or opened to assure that hose and nozzle are accessible. When the employer places hose in a cabinet, the employer must make sure that the hose and nozzle are accessible to employees without subjecting them to injury. In order to make sure that the equipment is readily accessible, the employer must also make sure that the cabinets used to store equipment are kept free of obstructions and other equipment which may interfere with the fast distribution of the fire hose stored in the cabinet.

4. **Hose outlets and connections.** The employer must assure that employees who use standpipe and hose systems can reach the hose rack and hose valve without the use of portable equipment such as ladders. Hose reels are encouraged for use because one employee can retrieve the hose, charge it, and place it into service without much difficulty.

5. **Hose.** When the employer elects to provide small hose in lieu of portable fire extinguishers, those hose stations being used for the substitution must have hose attached and ready for service. However, if more than the necessary amount of small hose outlets are provided, hose does not have to be attached to those outlets that would provide redundant coverage. Further, where the installation of hose on outlets may expose the hose to extremely cold climates, the employer may store the hose in houses or similar protective areas and connect it to the outlet when needed.

There is approved lined hose available that can be used to replace unlined hose which is stored on racks in cabinets. The lined hose is constructed so that it can be folded and placed in cabinets in the same manner as unlined hose.

Hose ie considered to be unserviceable when it deteriorates to the extent that it can no longer carry water at the required pressure and flow rates. Dry rotted linen or hemp hose, cross threaded couplings, and punctured hose are examples of unserviceable hose.

6. **Nozzles.** Variable stream nozzles can provide useful variations in water flow and spray patterns during fire fighting operations and they are recommended for employee use. It is recommended that 100 psi nozzle pressure be used to provide good flow patterns for variable stream nozzles. The most desirable attribute for nozzles is the ability of the nozzle person to shut off the water flow at the nozzle when it is necessary. This can be accomplished in many ways. For example, a shut-off nozzle with a lever or rotation of the nozzle to stop flow would be effective, but in other cases a simple globe valve placed between a straight stream nozzle and the hose could serve the same purpose. For straight stream nozzles 50 psi nozzle pressure is recommended. The intent of this standard is to protect the employee from "run-away" hoses if it becomes necessary to drop a pressurized hose line and retreat from the fire front and other related hazards.

7. **Design and installation.** Standpipe and hose systems designed and installed in accordance with NFPA Standard No. 14-1976, "Standpipe and Hose Systems," are considered to be in compliance with this standard.

1910.159 Automatic sprinkler systems.

1. **Scope and application.** This section contains the minimum requirements for design, installation and maintenance of sprinkler systems that are needed for employee safety. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration is aware of the fact that the National Board of Fire Underwriters is no longer an active organization, however, sprinkler systems still exist that were designed and installed in accordance with that organization's standards. Therefore, OSHA will recognize sprinkler systems designed to, and maintained in accordance with, NBFU and earlier NFPA standards.

2. **Exemptions.** In an effort to assure that employers will continue to use automatic sprinkler systems as the primary fire protection system in workplaces, OSHA is exempting form coverage those systems not required by a particular OSHA standard and which have been installed in workplaces solely for the purpose of protecting property. Many of these types of systems are installed in areas or buildings with little or no employee exposure. An example is those warehouses where employees may enter occasionally to take inventory or move stock. Some employers may choose to shut down those systems which are not specifically required by OSHA rather than upgrade them to comply with the standards. OSHA does not intend to regulate such systems. OSHA only intends to regulate those systems which are installed to comply with a particular OSHA standard.

3. Design. There are two basic types of sprinkler system design. Pipe schedule designed systems are based on pipe schedule tables developed to protect hazards with standard sized pipe, number of sprinklers, and pipe lengths. Hydraulic designed systems are based on an engineered design of pipe size which will produce a given water density or flow rate at any particular point in the system. Either design can be used to comply with this standard.

The National Fire Protection Association's Standard No. 13, "Automatic Sprinkler Systems," contains the tables needed to design and install either type of system. Minimum water supplies, densities, and pipe sizes are given for all types of occupancies.

The employer may check with a reputable fire protection engineering consultant or sprinkler design company when evaluating existing systems or designing a new installation.

With the advent of new construction materials for the manufacture of sprinkler pipe, materials, other than steel have been approved for use as sprinkler pipe. Selection of pipe material should be made on the basis of the type of installation and the acceptability of the material to local fire and building officials where such systems may serve more than one purpose.

Before new sprinkler systems are placed into service, an acceptance test is to be conducted. The employer should invite the installer, designer, insurance representative, and a local fire official to witness the test. Problems found during the test are to be corrected before the system is placed into service.

4. Maintenance. It is important that any sprinkler system maintenance be done only when there is minimal employee exposure to the fire hazard. For example, if repairs or changes to the system are to be made, they should be made during those hours when employees are not working or are not occupying that portion of the workplace protected by the portion of the system which has been shut down.

The procedures for performing a flow test via a main drain test or by the use of an inspector's test valve can be obtained from the employer's fire insurance company or from the National Fire Protection Association's Standard No. 13A, "Sprinkler System, Maintenance."

5. Water supplies. The water supply to a sprinkler system is one of the most important factors an employer should consider when evaluating a system. Obviously, if there is no water supply, the system is useless. Water supplies can be lost for various reasons such as improperly closed valves, excessive demand, and broken water mains, and broken fire pumps. The employer must be able to determine if or when this type of condition exists either by performing a main drain test or visual inspection. Another problem may be an inadequate water supply. For example, a light hazard occupancy may, through rehabilitation or change in tenants, become an ordinary or high hazard occupancy. In such cases, the existing water supply may not be able to provide the pressure or duration necessary for proper protection. Employers must assure that proper design and tests have been made to assure an adequate water supply. These tests can be arranged through the employer's fire insurance carrier or through a local sprinkler maintenance company or through the local fire prevention organization.

Anytime the employer must shut down the primary water supply for a sprinkler system, the standard requires that equivalent protection be provided. Equivalent protection may include a fire watch with extinguishers or hose lines in place and manned, or a secondary water supply such as a tank truck and pump, or a tank or fire pond with fire pumps, to protect the areas where the primary water supply is limited or shut down. The employer may also require evacuation of the workplace and have an emergency action plan which specifies such action.

6. Protection of piping. Piping which is exposed to corrosive atmospheres, either chemical or natural, can become defective to the extent that it is useless. Employers must assure that piping is protected from corrosion by its material of construction, e.g., stainless steel, or by a protective coating, e.g., paint.

7. Sprinklers. When an employer finds it necessary to replace sprinkler system components or otherwise change a sprinkler's design, employer should make a complete fire protection engineering survey of that part of the system being changed. This review should assure that the changes to the system will not alter the effectiveness of the system as it is presently designed. Water supplies, densities and flow characteristics should be maintained.

8. Protection of sprinklers. All components of the system must be protected from mechanical impact damage. This can be achieved with the use of mechanical guards or screens or by locating components in areas where physical contact is impossible or limited.

9. Sprinkler alarms. The most recognized sprinkler alarm is the water motor gong or bell that sounds when water begins to flow through the system. This is not however, the only type of acceptable water flow alarm. Any alarm that gives an indication that water is flowing through the system is acceptable. For example, a siren, a whistle, a flashing light, or similar alerting device which can transmit a signal to the necessary persons would be acceptable. The purpose of the alarm is to alert persons that the system is operating, and that some type of planned action is necessary.

10. Sprinkler spacing. For a sprinkler system to be effective there must be an adequate discharge of water spray from the sprinkler head. Any obstructions which hinder the designed density or spray pattern of the water may create unprotected areas which can cause fire to spread. There are some sprinklers that, because of the system's design, are deflected to specific areas. This type of obstruction is acceptible if the system's design takes it into consideration in providing adequate coverage.

1910.160 Fixed extinguishing systems general.

1. Scope and application. This section contains the general requirements that are applicable to all fixed extinguishing systems installed to meet OSHA standards. It also applies to those fixed extinguishing systems, generally total flooding, which are not required by OSHA, but which, because of the agent's discharge, may expose employees to hazardous concentrations of extinguishing agents or combustion by-products. Employees who work around fixed extinguishing systems must be warned of the possible hazards associated with the system and its agent. For example, fixed dry chemical extinguishing systems may generate a large enough cloud of dry chemical particles that employees may become visually disoriented. Certain gaseous agents can expose employees to hazardous by-products of combustion when the agent comes into contact with hot metal or other hot surface. Some gaseous agents may be present in hazardous concentrations when the system has totally discharged because an extra rich concentration is necessary to extinguish deep-seated fires. Certain local application systems may be designed to discharge onto the flaming surface of a liquid, and it is possible that the liquid can splatter when hit with the discharging agent. All of these hazards must be determined before the system is placed into operation, and must be discussed with employees.

Based on the known toxicological effects of agents such as carbon tetrachloride and chlorobromomethane, OSHA is not permitting the use of these agents in areas where employees can be exposed to the agent or its side effects. However, chlorobromomethane has been accepted and may be used as an explosion suppression agent in unoccupied spaces. OSHA is permitting the use of this agent only in areas where employees will not be exposed.

2. **Distinctive alarm signals.** A distinctive alarm signal is required to indicate that a fixed system is discharging. Such a signal is necessary on those systems where it is not immediately apparent that the system is discharging. For example, certain gaseous agents make a loud noise when they discharge. In this case no alarm signal is necessary. However, where systems are located in remote locations or away from the general work area and where it is possible that a system could discharge without anyone knowing that it is doing so, then a distinctive alarm is necessary to warn employees of the hazards that may exist. The alarm can be a bell, gong, whistle, horn, flashing light, or any combination of signals as long as it is identifiable as a discharge alarm.

3. **Maintenance.** The employer is responsible for the maintenance of all fixed systems, but this responsibility does not preclude the use of outside contractors to do such work. New systems should be subjected to an acceptance test before placed in service. The employer should invite the installer, designer, insurance representative and others to witness the test. Problems found during the test need to be corrected before the system is considered operational.

4. **Manual discharge stations.** There are instances, such as for mechanical reasons and others, where the standards call for a manual back-up activation device. While the location of this device is not specified in the standard, the employer should assume that the device should be located where employees can easily reach it. It could, for example, be located along the main means of egress from the protected area so that employees could activate the system as they evacuate the work area.

5. **Personal protective equipment.** The employer is required to provide the necessary personal protective equipment to rescue employees who may be trapped in a totally flooded environment which may be hazardous to their health. The equipment would normally include a positive-pressure self-contained breathing apparatus and any necessary first aid equipment. In cases where the employer can assure the prompt arrival of the local fire department or plant emergency personnel which can provide the equipment, this can be considered as complying with the standards.

1910.161 Fixed estinguishing systems, dry chemical.

1. **Scope and application.** The requirements of this section apply only to dry chemical systems. These requirements are to be used in conjunction with the requirements of § 1910.160.

2. **Maintenance.** The employer is responsible for assuring that dry chemical systems will operate effectively. To do this, periodic maintenance is necessary. One test that must be conducted during the maintenance check is one which will determine if the agent has remained free of moisture. If an agent absorbs any moisture, it may tend to cake and thereby clog the system. An easy test for acceptable moisture content is to take a lump of dry chemical from the container and drop it from a height of four inches. If the lump crumbles into fine particles, the agent is acceptable.

1910.162 Fixed extinguishing systems, gaseous agent.

1. **Scope and application.** This section applies only to those systems which use gaseous agents. The requirements of § 1910.160 also apply to the gaseous agent systems covered in this section.

2. **Design concentrations.** Total flooding gaseous systems are based on the volume of gas which must be discharged in order to produce a certain designed concentration of gas in an enclosed area. The concentration needed to extinguish a fire depends on several factors including the type of fire hazard and the amount of gas expected to leak away from the area during discharge. At times it is necessary to "super-saturate" a work area to provide for expected leakage from the enclosed area. In such cases, employers must assure that the flooded area has been ventilated before employees are permitted to reenter the work area without protective clothing and respirators.

3. **Toxic decomposition.** Certain halogenated hydrocarbons will break down or decompose when they are combined with high temperatures found in the fire environment. The products of the decomposition can include toxic elements or compounds. For example, when Halon 1211 is placed into contact with hot metal it will break down and form bromide or fluoride fumes. The employer must find out which toxic products may result from decomposition of a particular agent from the manufacturer, and take the necessary precautions to prevent employee exposure to the hazard.

1910.163 Fixed extinguishing systems, water spray and foam.

1. **Scope and application.** This section applies to those systems that use water spray or foam. The requirements of § 1910.160 also apply to this type of system.

2. **Characteristics of foams.** When selecting the type of foam for a specific hazard, the employer should consider the following limitations of some foams.

a. Some foams are not acceptable for use on fires involving flammable gases and liquefied gases with boiling points below ambient workplace temperatures. Other foams are not effective when used on fires involving polar solvent liquids.

b. Any agent using water as part of the mixture should not be used on fire involving combustible metals unless it is applied under proper conditions to reduce the temperature of burning metal below the ignition temperature. The employer should use only those foams that have been tested and accepted for this application by a recognized independent testing laboratory.

c. Certain types of foams may be incompatible and break down when they are mixed together.

d. For fires involving water miscible solvents, employers should use only those foams tested and approved for such use. Regular protein foams may not be effective on such solvents.

Whenever employers provide a foam or water spray system, drainage facilities must be provided to carry contaminated water or foam overflow away from the employee work area and egress routes. This drainage system should drain to a central impounding area where it can be collected and disposed of properly. Other government agencies may have regulations concerning environmental considerations.

1910.164 Fire detection systems.

1. **Installation and restoration.** Fire detection systems must be designed by knowledgeable engineers or other professionals, with expertise in fire detection systems and when the systems are installed, there should be an acceptance test performed on the system to insure it operates properly. The manufacturer's recommendations for system design should be consulted. While entire systems may not be approved, each component used in the system is required to be approved. Custom fire detection systems should be designed by knowledgeable fire protection or electrical engineers who are familiar with the workplace hazards and conditions. Some systems may only have one or two individual detectors for a small workplace, but good design and installation is still important. An acceptance test should be performed on all systems, including these smaller systems.

OSHA has a requirement that spare components used to replace those which may be destroyed during an alarm situation be available in sufficient quantities and locations for prompt restoration of the system. This does not mean that the parts or components have to be stored at the workplace. If the employer can assure that the supply of parts is available in the local community or the general metropolitan area of the workplace, then the requirements for storage and availability have been met. The intent is to make sure that the alarm system is fully operational when employees are occupying the workplace, and that when the system operates it can be returned to full service the next day or sooner.

2. **Supervision.** Fire detection systems should be supervised. The object of supervision is detection of any failure of the circuitry, and the employer should use any method that will assure that the system's circuits are operational. Electrically operated sensors for air pressure, fluid pressure, or electrical circuits, can provide effective monitoring and are the typical types of supervision.

3. **Protection of fire detectors.** Fire detectors must be protected from corrosion either by protective coating, by being manufactured from non-corrosive materials or by location. Detectors must also be protected from mechanical impact damage, either by suitable cages or metal guards where such hazards are present, or by locating them above or out of contact with materials or equipment which may cause damage.

4. **Number, location, and spacing of detectors.** This information can be obtained from the approval listing for detectors or NFPA standards. It can also be obtained from fire protection engineers or consultants or manufacturers of equipment who have access to approval listing and design methods.

1910.165 Employee alarm systems.

1. **Scope and application.** This section is intended to apply to employee alarm systems used for all types of employee emergencies except those which occur so quickly and at such a rapid rate (e.g., explosions) that any action by the employee is extremely limited following detection.

In small workplaces with 10 or less employees the alarm system can be by direct voice communication (shouting) where any one individual can quickly alert all other employees. Radio may be used to transmit alarms from remote workplaces where telephone service is not available, provided that radio messages will be monitored by emergency services, such as fire, police or others, to insure alarms are transmitted and received.

2. **Alarm signal alternatives.** In recognition of physically impaired individuals, OSHA is accepting various methods of giving alarm signals. For example, visual, tactile or audible alarm signals are acceptable methods for giving alarms to employees. Flashing lights or vibrating devices can be used in areas where the employer has hired employees with hearing or vision impairments. Vibrating devices, air fans, or other tactile devices can be used where visually and hearing impaired employees work. Employers are cautioned that certain frequencies of flashing lights have been claimed to initiate epileptic seizures in some employees and that this fact should be considered when selecting an alarm device. Two way radio communications would be most appropriate for transmitting emergency alarms in such workplaces which may be remote or where telephones may not be available.

3. **Reporting alarms.** Employee alarms may require different means of reporting, depending on the workplace involved. For example, in small workplaces, a simple shout throughout the workplace may be sufficient to warn employees of a fire or other emergency. In larger workplaces, more sophisticated equipment is necessary so that entire plants or high-rise buildings are not evacuated for one small emergency. In remote areas, such as pumping plants, radio communication with a central base station may be necessary. The goal of this standard is to assure that all employees who need to know that an emergency exists can be notified of the emergency. The method of transmitting the alarm should reflect the situation found at the workplace.

Personal radio transmitters, worn by an individual, can be used where the individual may be working such as in a remote location. Such personal radio transmitters shall send a distinct signal and should clearly indicate who is having an emergency, the location, and the nature of the emergency. All radio transmitters need a feedback system to assure that the emergency alarm is sent to the people who can provide assistance.

For multi-story buildings or single story buildings with interior walls for subdivisions, the more traditional alarm systems are recommended for these types of workplaces. Supervised telephone or manual fire alarm or pull box stations with paging systems to transmit messages throughout the building is the recommended alarm system. The alarm box stations should be available within a travel distance of 200 feet. Water flow detection on a sprinkler system, fire detection systems (guard's supervisory station) or tour signal (watchman's service), or other related systems may be part of the overall system. The paging system may be used for nonemergency operations provided the emergency messages and uses will have precedence over all other uses of the system.

4. **Supervision.** The requirements for supervising the

employee alarm system circuitry and power supply may be accomplished in a variety of ways. Typically, electrically operated sensors for air pressure, fluid pressure, steam pressure, or electrical continuity of circuitry may be used to continuously monitor the system to assure it is operational and to identify trouble in the system and give a warning signal.

APPENDIX B TO SUBPART L

National Consensus Standards

The following table contains a cross-reference listing of those current national consensus standards which contains information and guidelines that would be considered acceptable in complying with requirements in the specific sections of Subpart L.

Subpart L section	National consensus standard
1910.156	ANSI/NFPA No. 1972; Structural Fire Fighter's Helmets.
	ANSI Z88.5 American National Standard, Practice for Respirator Protection for the Fire Service.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 1971, Protective Clothing for Structural Fire Fighters.
	NFPA No. 1041, Fire Service Instructor Professional Qualifications.
1910.157	ANSI/NFPA No. 10, Portable Fire Extinguishers.
1910.158	ANSI/NFPA No. 18, Wetting Agents.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 20, Centrifugal Fire Pumps.
	NFPA No. 21, Steam Fire Pumps.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 22, Water Tanks.
	NFPA No. 24, Outside Protection.
	NFPA No. 26, Supervision of Values.
	NFPA No. 13E, Fire Department Operations in Properties Protected by Sprinkler, Standpipe Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 194, Fire Hose Connections.
	NFPA No. 197, Initial Fire Attack, Training for.
	NFPA No. 1231, Water Supplies for Suburban and Rural Fire Fighting.
1910.159	ANSI/NFPA No. 13, Sprinkler Systems.
	NFPA No. 13A, Sprinkler Systems, Maintenance.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 18, Wetting Agents.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 20, Centrifugal Fire Pumps.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 22, Water Tanks.
	NFPA No. 24, Outside Protection.
	NFPA No. 26, Supervision of Valves.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 72B, Auxiliary Signaling Systems.
	NFPA No. 1231, Water Supplies for Suburban and Rural Fire Fighting.
1910.160	ANSI/NFPA No. 11, Foam Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA 11A, High Expansion Foam Extinguishing Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 11B, Synthetic Foam and Combined Agent Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 12, Carbon Dioxide Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 12A, Halon 1301 Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 12B, Halon 1211 Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 15, Water Spray Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA 16 Foam-Water Spray Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 17, Dry Chemical Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA 69, Explosion Suppression Systems.
1910.161	ANSI/NFPA No. 11B, Synthetic Foam and Combined Agent Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 17, Dry Chemical Systems.
1910.162	ANSI/NFPA No. 12, Carbon Dioxide Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 12A, Halon 1211 Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 12B, Halon 1301 Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 69, Explosion Suppression Systems.
1910.163	ANSI/NFPA No. 11, Foam Extinguishing Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 11A, High Expansion Foam Extinguishing Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 11B, Synthetic Foam and Combined Agent Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 15, Water Spray Fixed Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 16, Foam-Water Spray Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 18, Wetting Agents.
	NFPA No. 26, Supervision of Valves.
1910.164	ANSI/NFPA No. 71, Central Station Signaling Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 72A, Local Protective Signaling Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 72B, Auxiliary Signaling Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 72D, Proprietary Protective Signaling Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 72E, Automatic Fire Detectors.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 101, Life Safety Code.
1910.165	ANSI/NFPA No. 71, Central Station Signaling Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 72A, Local Protective Signaling Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 72B, Auxiliary Protective Signaling Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 72C, Remote Station Protective Signaling Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 72D, Proprietary Protective Signaling Systems.
	ANSI/NFPA No. 101, Life Safety Code.
Metric Conversion	ANSI/ASTM NSo. E380, American National Standard for Metric Practice.

NFPA standards are available from the National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue Boston, MA 03210.

ANSI Standards are available from the American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

APPENDIX C TO SUBPART L

Fire Protection References for Further Information

I. **Appendix general references.** The following references provide information which can be helpful in understanding the requirements contained in all of the sections of Subpart L:

A. Fire Protection Handbook, National Fire Protection Association; 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

B. Accident Prevention Manual for Industrial Operations, National Safety Council; 425 North Michigan Avenue, Chicago, IL 60611.

C. Various associations also publish information which may be useful in understanding these standard. Examples of these associations are: Fire Equipment Manufacturers Association (FEMA) of Arlington, VA 22204 and the National Association of Fire Equipment Distributors (NAFED) of Chicago, IL 60601.

II. **Appendix references applicable to individual sections.** The following references are grouped according to individual sections contained in Subpart L. These references provide information which may be helpful in understanding and implementing the standards of each section of Subpart L.

A. § 1910.156. Fire brigades:

1. Private Fire Brigades, NFPA 27; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston MA 02210.

2. Initial Fire Attack, Training Standard On, NFPA 197; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

3. Fire Fighter Professional Qualifications, NFPA 1001; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

4. Organization for Fire Services, NFPA 1201; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

5. Organization of a Fire Department, NFPA 1202; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

6. **Protective Clothing for Structural Fire Fighting, ANSI/NFPA 1971; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.**

7. **American National Standard for Men's Safety-Toe Footwear, ANSI Z4.1; American National Standards Institute, New York, NY 10018.**

8. **American National Standard for Occupational and Educational Eye and Face Protection, ANSI Z87.1; American National Standards Institute, New York, NY 10018.**

9. **American National Standard, Safety Requirements for Industrial Head Protection, ANSI Z89.1; American National Standards Institute, New York, NY 10018.**

10. **Specifications for Protective Headgear for Vehicular Users, ANSI Z90.1; American National Standards Institute, New York, NY 10018.**

11. **Testing Physical Fitness; Davis and Santa Maria,** *Fire Command.* **April 1975.**

12. **Development of a Job-Related Physical Performance Examination for Fire Fighters;** Dotson and Others. A summary report for the National Fire Prevention and Control Administration. Washington, DC, March 1977.

13. **Proposed Sample Standards for Fire Fighters' Protective Clothing and Equipment;** International Association of Fire Fighters, Washington, DC.

14. **A Study of Facepiece Leakage of Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus by DOP Man Tests;** Los Alamos Scientific Laboratory, Los Alamos, NM.

15. **The Development of Criteria for Fire Fighters' Gloves; Vol. II: Glove Criteria and Test Methods;** National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Cincinnati, OH, 1976.

16. **Made Performance Criteria for Structural Fire Fighters' Helmets;** National Fire Prevention and Control Administration, Washington, DC, 1977.

17. **Firefighters;** Job Safety and Health Magazine, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Washington, DC. June 1978.

18. **Eating Smoke—The Dispensable Diet;** Utech, H.P. The Fire Independent, 1975.

19. **Project Monoxide—A Medical Study of an Occupational Hazard of Fire Fighters;** International Associations of Fire Fighters, Washington, DC.

20. **Occupational Exposures to Carbon Monoxide in Baltimore Firefighters; Radford Baltimore, MD. Journal of Occupational Medicine, September, 1976.**

21. **Fire Brigades;** National Safety Council, Chicago, IL. 1966.

22. **American National Standard, Practice for Respiratory Protection for the Fire Service;** ANSI Z88.5; American National Standards Institute, New York, NY 10018.

23. **Respirator Studies for the Nuclear Regulatory Commission; October 1, 1977—September 30, 1978. Evaluation and Performance of Open Circuit Breathing Apparatus.** NU REG/CR-1235. Los Alamos Scientific Laboratory; Los Alamos, NM. 87545, January, 1980.

B. 1910.157. Portable fire extinguishers:

1. **Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers.** ANSI/NFPA 10; National Fire Protection Asociation, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

2. Methods for Hydrostatic Testing of Compressed Gas Cylinders, -1; Compressed Gas Association, 500 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10036.

3. Recommendations for the Disposition of Unserviceable Compressed Gas Cylinders, C-2; Compressed Gass Association, 500 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10036.

4. Standard for Visual Inspection of Compressed Gas Cylinders, C-6; Compressed Gas Association, 500 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10036.

5. Portable Fire Extinguisher Selection Guide, National Association of Fire Equipment Distributors; 111 East Wacker Drive, Chicago, IL 60601.

C. △ 1910.158, Standpipe and hose systems:

1. Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems, ANSI/NFPA 13; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

2. Standard of the Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems, ANSI/NFPA 14; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

3. Standard for the Installation of Centrifugal Fire Pumps, ANSI/NFPA 20; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

4. Standard for Water Tanks for Private Fire Protection, ANSI/NFPA 22; National Fire Protection Associations, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

5. Standard for Screw Threads and Gaskets for Fire Hose Connections, ANSI/NFPA 194; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

6. Standard for Fire Hose, NFPA 196; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

7. Standard for the Care of Fire Hose, NFPA 198; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

D. § 1910.159. Automatic sprinkler systems:

1. Standard of the Installation of Sprinkler Systems. ANSI-NFPA 13; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

2. Standard for the Care and Maintenance of Sprinkler Systems, ANSI/NFPA 13A; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

3. Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems. ANSI/NFPA 14; National Fire Protention Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

4. Standard for the Installation of Centrifugal Fire bpumps. ANSI/NFPA 20; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

5. Standard for Water Tanks for bprivate Fire Protection. ANSI/NFPA 22; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

6.,Standard for Indoor General Storage. ANSI/NFPA 231; Nationel Fire Protection Association 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

7. Standard for Rock Storage of Materials, ANSI/NFPA 231C; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

E. § 1910.160. Fixed extinguishing systems—general information:

1. Standard for Foam Extinguishing Systems, ANSI-NFPA 11; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

2. Standard for Hi-Expansion Foam Systems. ANSI/NFPA 11A; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

3. Standard on Synthetic Foam and Combined Agent Systems, ANSI/NFPA 11B; National Fire Protection Assocition, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

4. Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems, ANSI/NFPA 12; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

5. Standard on Halon 1301, ANSI/NFPA 12A) National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

6. Standard on Halon 1211, ANSI/NFPA 12B; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

7. Standard for Water Spray Systems, ANSI/NFPA 15; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

8. Standard for Foam-Water Sprinkler Systems and Foam-Water Spray Systems, ANSI/NFPA 16; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

9. Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems, ANSI/NFPA 17; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

F. § 1910.161. Fixed extinguishing systems—dry chemical:

1. Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems. ANSI/NFPA 17; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

2. National Electrical Code, ANSI/NFPA 70; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

3. Standard for the Installation of Equipment for the Removal fo Smoke and Grease-Laden Vapor from Commercial Cooking Equipment. NFPA 96; National Fire Protection, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

STANDARDS AND INTERPRETATIONS

G. **§ 1910.162. Fixed extinguishing systems—gaseous agents:**

1. **Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems**, ANSI/NFPA 12; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

2. **Standard on Halon 1301**, ANSI/NFPA 12B; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

3. **Standard on Halon 1211**, ANSI/NFPA 12; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

4. **Standard on Explosion Prevention Systems**. ANSI/NFPA 69; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

5. **National Electrical Code**, ANSI/NFPA 70; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

6. **Standard on Automatic Fire Detectors**, ANSI/NFPA 72E; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA, 02210.

7. **Determination of Halon 1301/1211 Threshold Extinguishing Concentrations Using the Cup Burner Method**. Riley and Olson, Ansul Report AL-530-A.

H. **§ 1910.163. Fixed extinguishing systems—water spray and foam agents:**

1. Standard for Foam Extinguisher Systems, ANSI/NFPA 11; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

2. Standard for High Expansion Foam Systems, ANSI/NFPA 11A; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

3. Standard for Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection, ANSI/NFPA 15; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

4. Standard for the Installation of Foam-Water Sprinkler Systems and Foam-Water Spray Systems, ANSI/NFPA 16; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

I. **§ 1910.164. Fire Detection systems:**

1. National Electrical Code, ANSI/NFPA 70; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

2. Standard for Central Station Signaling Systems, ANSI/NFPA 71; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

3. Standard on Automatic Fire Detectors, ANSI/NFPA 72E; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

J. **§ 1910.165. Employee alarm systems:**

1. National Electrical Code, ANSI/NFPA 70; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

2. Standard for Central Station Signaling systems, ANSI/NFPA 71; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

3. Standard for Local Protective Signaling Systems, ANSI/NFPA 72A; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

4. Standard for Auxiliary Protective Signaling Systems, ANSI/NFPA 72B; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

5. Standard for Remote Station Protective Signaling Systems, ANSI/NFPA 72C; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

6. Standard for Proprietary Protective Signaling Systems, ANSI/NFPA 72D; National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210.

7. Vocal Emergency Alarms in Hospitals and Nursing Facilities: Practice and Potential, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, D.C., July 1977.

8. Fire Alarm and Communication Systems, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, D.C., April 1976.

APPENDIX D TO SUBPART L.—AVAILABILITY OF PUBLICATIONS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCES IN SECTION 1910.156 FIRE BRIGADES

The final standard for fire brigades, Section 1910.156, contains provisions which incorporate certain publications by reference. The publications provide criteria and test methods for protective clothing worn by those fire brigade members who are expected to perform interior structural fire fighting. The standard references the publications as the chief sources of information for determining if the protective clothing affords the required level of protection.

It is appropriate to note that the final standard does not require employers to purchase a copy of the referenced publications. Instead, employers can specify (in purchase orders to the manufacturers) that the protective clothing meet the criteria and test methods contained in the referenced publications and can rely on the manufacturers assurances of compliance. Employers, however, may desire to obtain a copy of the referenced publications for their own information.

The paragraph designation of the standard where the referenced publications appear, the title of the publications, and the availability of the publications are as follows:

STANDARDS AND INTERPRETATIONS

Paragraph designation	Referenced Publication	Available From
1910.156(e)(3)(ii)	"Protective Clothing for Structural Fire Fighting." NFPA No. 1971 (1975).	National Fire Protection Association, 470 Atlantic Ave., Boston, MA 02210.
1910.156(e)(4)(i)	"Development of Criteria for Fire Fighter's Gloves; Vol. II, Part II: Test Methods" (1976).	U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402. Stock No. for Vol. II is: 071-033-0201-1.
1910.156(e)(5)(i)	"Model Performance Criteria for Structural Firefighter's Helmets" (1977)	U.S. Fire Administration, National Fire Safety and Research Office, Washington, D.C. 20230.

The referenced publications (or a microfiche of the publications) are available for review at many universities and public libraries throughout the country. These publications may also be examined at the OSHA Technical Data Center. Room N2439—Rear, United States Department of Labor, 200 Constitution Ave., N.W., Washington, D.C. 20210 (202-523-9700), or at any OSHA Regional Office (see telephone directories under United States Government-Labor Department).

Appendix E To Subpart L—Test Methods for Protective Clothing

This appendix contains test methods which must be used to determine if protective clothing affords the required level of protection as specified in § 1910.156, fire brigades.

(1) Puncture resistance test method for foot protection.

A. Apparatus. The puncture resistance test shall be performed on a testing machine having a movable platform adjusted to travel at ¼-inch per minute. Two blocks of hardwood, metal, or plastic shall be prepared as follows: the blocks shall be of such size and thickness as to insure a suitable rigid test ensemble and allow for at least one-inch of the pointed end of an 8D nail to be exposed for the penetration. One block shall have a hole drilled to hold an 8D common nail firmly at an angle of 98½. The second block shall have a maximum ½-inch diameter hole drilled through it so that the hole will allow free passage of the nail after it penetretes the insole during the test.

B. Procedure. The test ensemble consisting of the sample unit, the two prepared blocks, a piece of leather outsole 10 to 11 irons thick and a new 8D nail, shall be placed as follows: the 8D nail in the hole, the sample of outsole stock superimposed above the nail, the area of the sole plate to be tested placed on the outsole, and the second block with hole so placed as to allow for free passage of the nail after it passes through the outsole stock and sole plate in that order. The machine shall be started and the pressure, in pounds required for the nail to completely penetrate the outsole and sole plate, recorded to the nearest five pounds. Two determinations shall be made on each sole plate and the results averaged. A new nail shall be used for each determination.

C. Source. These test requirements are contained in "Military Specification. For Fireman's Boots," MIL-B—2885D (1973 and amendment dated 1975) and are reproduced for your convenience.

(2) Test method for determining the strength of cloth by tearing: Trapezoid Method.

A. Test specimen. The specimen shall be a rectangle of cloth 3-inches by 6-inches. The long dimension shall be parallel to the warp for warp tests and parallel to the filling for filling tests. No two specimens for warp tests shall contain the same warp yearns, nor shall any two specimens for filling tests contain the same filling yarns. The specimen shall be a rectangle of cloth 3-inches by 6-inches. The long dimension shall be parallel to the warp for warp tests and parallel to the filling for filling tests. No two specimens for warp tests shall contain the same warp yarns, nor shall any two specimens for filling tests contain the same filling yarns. The specimen shall be taken no nearer the selvage than 110 the width of the cloth. An isoscles trapezoid having an altitude of 3-inches and bases of 1 and 4 inches in length, respectively, shall be marked on each specimen, preferably with the aid of a template. A cut approximately ⅜-inch in length shall then be made in the center of a perpendicular to the 1-inch edge.

B. Apparatus.

(i) Six-ounce weight tension clamps shall be used so designed that the six ounces of weight are distributed evenly across the complete width of the sample.

(ii) The machine shall consist of three main parts: Straining mechanism, clamps for holding specimen, and load and elongation recording mechanisms.

(iii) A machine wherein the specimen is held between two clamps and strained by a uniform movement of the pulling clamp shall be used.

(iv) The machine shall be adjusted so that the pulling clamp shall have a uniform speed of 12 5 10.5 inches per minute.

(iv) The machine shall have two clamps with two jaws on each clamp. The design of the two clamps shall be such that one gripping surface or jaw may be an integral part of the rigid frame of the clamp or be fastened to allow a slight vertical movement, while the other gripping surface or jaw shall be completely moveable. The dimension of the immovable jaw of each clamp parallel to the application of the load shall measure one-inch, and the dimension of the jaw perpendicular to this direction shall measure three inches or more. The face of the movable jaw of each clamp shall measure one-inch by three inches.

Each jaw face shall have a flat smooth, gripping surface. All edges which might cause a cutting action shall be rounded to a radius of not over 1/64-inch. In cases where a cloth tends to slip when being tested, the jaws may be faced with rubber or other material to prevent slippage. The distance between the jaws (gage length) shall be one-inch at the start of the test.

(vi) Calibrated dial; scale or chart shall be used to indicate applied load and elongation. The machine shall be adjusted or set, so that the maximum load required to break the specimen will remain indicated on the calibrated dial or scale after the test specimen has ruptured.

(vii) The machine shall be of such capcity that the maximum load required to break the specimen shall be not greater than 85 percent or less than 15 percent of the rated capacity.

(viii) The error of the machine shall not exceed 2 percent up to and including a 50-pound load and 1 percent over a 50-pound load at any reading within its loading range.

(ix) All machine attachments for determining maximum loads shall be disengaged during this test.

C. Procedure.

(i) The specimen shall be clamped in the machine along the nonparallel sides of the trapezoid so that these sides lie along the lower edge of the upper clamp and the upper edge of the lower clamp with the cut halfway between the clamps. The short trapezoid base shall be held taut and the long trapezoid base shall lie in the folds.

(ii) The machine shall be started and the force necessary to tear the cloth shall be observed by means of an autographic recording device. The speed of the pulling clamp shall be 12 inches ±0.5 inch per minute.

(iii) If a specimen slips between the jaws, breaks in or at the edges of the jaws, or if for any reason attributable to faulty technique, an individual measurement falls markedly below the average test results for the sample unit, such result shall be discarded and another specimen shall be tested.

(iv) The tearing strength of the specimen shall be the average of the five highest peak loads of reistance registered for 3 inches of separation of the tear.

D. Report

(i)Five specimens in each of the warp and filling direction stall be tested from each sample unit.

(ii) The tearing strength of the sample unit shall be the average of the result obtained from the specimens tested in each of the warp and filling directions and shall be reported separately to the nearest 0.1 pound.

E. Source.These test requirements are contained in "Federal Test Method Standard 191, Method 5136" and are reproduced for your convenience.

(3) Test method for determining flame resistance of cloth; vertical.

A. Test specimen.The specimen shall be a rectangle of cloth 2¾ inches (7.0 cm) by 12 inches (30.5 cm) with the long dimension parallel to either the warp or filling direction of the cloth. No two warp specimens shall contain the same warp yarns, and no two filling specimens shall contain the same filling yarn.

B. Number of determinations. Five specimens from each of the warp and filling directions shall be teeted from each sample unit.

C. Apparatus

(i)Cabinet. A cabinet and accessories shall be fabricated in accordance with the requirements specified in Figures L-1, L-2, and L-3. Galvanized sheet metal or other suitable metal shall be used. The entire inside back wall of the cabinet shall be painted black to facilitate the viewing of the test specimen and pilot flame.

(ii) Burner. The burner shall be equipped with a variable orifice to adjust the flame height, a barrel having a ⅜-inch (9.5 mm) inside diameter and a pilot light.

(a) The burner may be constructed by combining a ⅜-inch (9.5 mm) inside diameter barrel 3 ± ¼ inches (76.2 ± 6.4 mm) long from a fixed orifice burner with a base from a variable orifice burner.

(b) The pilot light tube shall have a diameter of approximately 1/16-inch (1.6 mm) and shall be spaced ⅛-inch (3.2 mm) away from the burner edge with a pilot flame ⅛-inch (3.2 mm) long.

(c) The necessary gas connections and the applicable plumbing shall be as specified in Figure L-4 except that a solenoid valve may be used in lieu of the stopcock valve to which the burner is attached. The stopcock valve or solenoid valve, whichever is used, shall be capable of being fully opened or fully closed in 0.1-second.

(d) On the side of the barrel of the burner, opposite the pilot light there shall be a metal rod of approximately ⅛-inch (3.2 mm) diameter spaced ½-inch (12.7 mm) from the barrel and extending above the burner. The rod shall have two 5/16-inch (7.9 mm) prongs marking the distances of ¾-inch (19 mm) and 1½ inches (38.1 mm) above the top of the burner.

(e) The burner shall be fixed in a position so that the center of the barrel of the burner is directly below the center of the specimen.

(iii) There shall be a control valve system with a delivery rate designed to furnish gas to the burner under a pressure of 2½ ± ¼ pounds (1.1-kg ± 0.1 kg) per square inch at the burner inlet (see (g)(3)(vi)(A)). The manufacturer's recommended delivery rate for the valve system shall be included in the required pressure.

(iv) A synthetic gas mixture shall be of the following composition within the following limits (analyzed at standard conditions): 55 ± 3 percent hydrogen, 24 ± 1 percent methane, 3 ± 1 percent ethane, and 18 ± 1 percent carbon monoxide which will give a specific gravity of 0.365 ± 0.018 (air = 1) and a B.T.U. content of 540 ± 20 per cubic foot (dry basis) at 69.8°F (21°C).

(v) There shall be metal hooks and weights to produce a series of total loads to determine length of char. The metal hooks shall consist of No. 19 gage steel wire or equivalent and shall be made from 3-inch (76.2 mm) lengths of wire and bent ½-inch (12.7 mm) from one end to a 45 degree hook. One end of the hook shall be fastened around the neck of the weight to be used.

(vi) There shall be a stop watch or other device to measure the burning time to 0.2-second.

(vii) There shall be a scale, graduated in 0.1-inch (mm) to measure the length of char.

D. Procedure.

(i) The material undergoing test shall be evaluated for the characteristics of after-flame time and char length on each specimen.

(ii) All specimens to be tested shall be at moisture equilibrium under standard atmospheric conditions in accordance with paragraph (3)C of this appendix. Each specimen to be tested shall be exposed to the test flame within 20 seconds after removal from the standard atmosphere. In case of dispute, all testing will be conducted under Standard Atmospheric conditions in accordance with paragraph (3)C of this appendix.

(iii) The specimen in its holder shall be suspended vertically in the cabinet in such a manner that the entire length of the specimen is exposed and the lower end is ¾-inch (19 mm) above the top of the gas burner. The apparatus shall be set up in a draft free area.

(iv) Prior to inserting the specimen, the pilot flame shall be adjusted to approximately ⅛-inch (3.2 mm) in height measured from its lowest point to the tip.

The burner flame shall be adjusted by means of the needle valve in the base of the burner to give a flame height of 1½ inches (38.1 mm) with the stopcock fully open and the air supply to burner shut off and taped. The 1½-inch (38.1 mm) flame height is obtained by adjusting the valve so that the uppermost portion (tip) of the flame is level with the tip of the metal prong (see Fig L-2) specified for adjustment of flame height. It is an important aspect of the evaluation that the flame height to be adjusted with the tip of the flame level with the tip of the metal prong. After inserting the specimen, the stopcock shall be fully opened, and the burner flame applied vertically at the middle of the lower edge of the specimen for 12 seconds and the burner turned off. The cabinet door shall remain shut during testing.

(v) The after-flame shall be the time the specimen continues to flame after the burner flame is shut off.

(vi) After each specimen is removed, the test cabinet shall be cleared of fumes and smoke prior to testing the next specimen.

(vii) After both flaming and glowing have ceased, the char length shall be measured. The char length shall be the distance from the end of the specimen, which was exposed to the flame, to the end of a tear (made lengthwise) of the specimen through the center of the charred area as follows: The specimen shall be folded lengthwise and creased by hand along a line through the highest peak of the charred area. The hook shall be inserted in the specimen (or a hole, ¼-inch (6.4 mm) diameter or less, punched out for the hook) at one side of the charred area ¼-inch (6.4 mm) from the adjacent outside edge and ¼-inch (6.4 mm) in from the lower end. A weight of sufficient size such that the weight and hook together shall equal the total tearing load required in Table L-2 of this section shall be attached to the hook.

(viii) A tearing force shall be applied gently to the specimen by grasping the corner of the cloth at the opposite edge of the char from the load and raising the specimen and weight clear of the supporting surface. The end of the tear shall be marked off on the edge and the char length measurement made along the undamaged edge.

Loads for determining char length applicable to the weight of the test cloth shall be as shown in Table L-2.

Specified weight per square yard of cloth before any fire retardant treatment or coating—ounces	Total learning weight for determining the charred length—pound
2.0 to 6.0	0.25
Over 6.0 to 15.0	0.50
Over 15.0 to 23.0	0.75
Over 23.0	1.0

Table L-2

(ix) The after-flame time of the specimen shall be recorded to the nearest 0.2-second and the char length to the nearest 0.1-inch (1 mm).

E. Report.

(i) The after-flame time and char length of the sample unit shall be the average of the results obtained from the individual specimens tested. All values obtained from the individual specimens shall be recorded.

(ii) The after-flame time shall be reported in the nearest 0.2-second and the char length to the nearest 0.1-inch (1 mm).

F. Source. These test requirements are contained in "Federal Test Method Standard 191, Method 5903 (1971)" and are reproduced for your convenience.

(Sec. 4, 6, 8, 84 Stat. 1592, 1593, 1599 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 6557); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 8-76 (41 FR 25059); 29 CFR Part 1911).

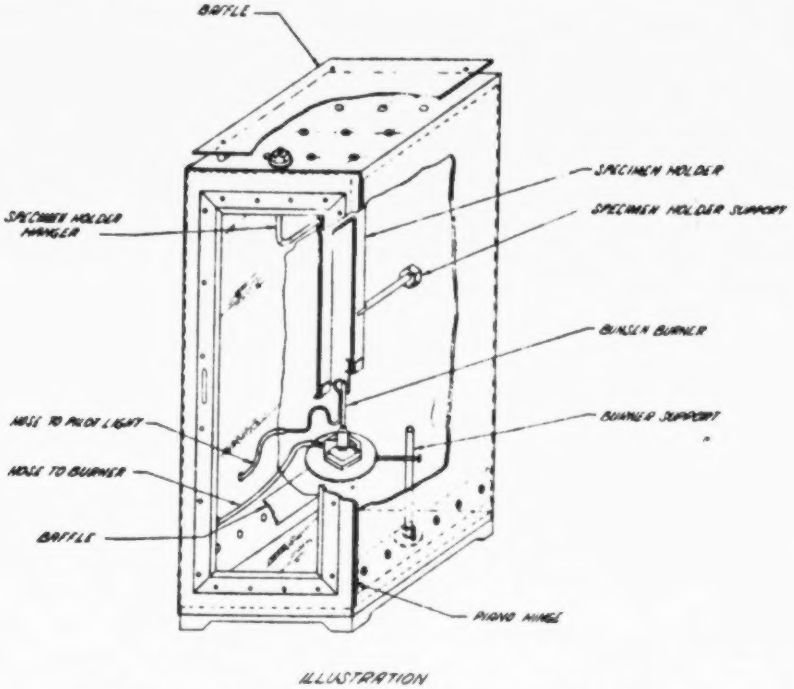

BAFFLE
SPECIMEN HOLDER
SPECIMEN HOLDER SUPPORT
SPECIMEN HOLDER HANGER
BUNSEN BURNER
BURNER SUPPORT
HOSE TO PILOT LIGHT
HOSE TO BURNER
BAFFLE
PIANO HINGE
ILLUSTRATION

FIGURE L-1 - Verticle flame resistance textile apparatus.

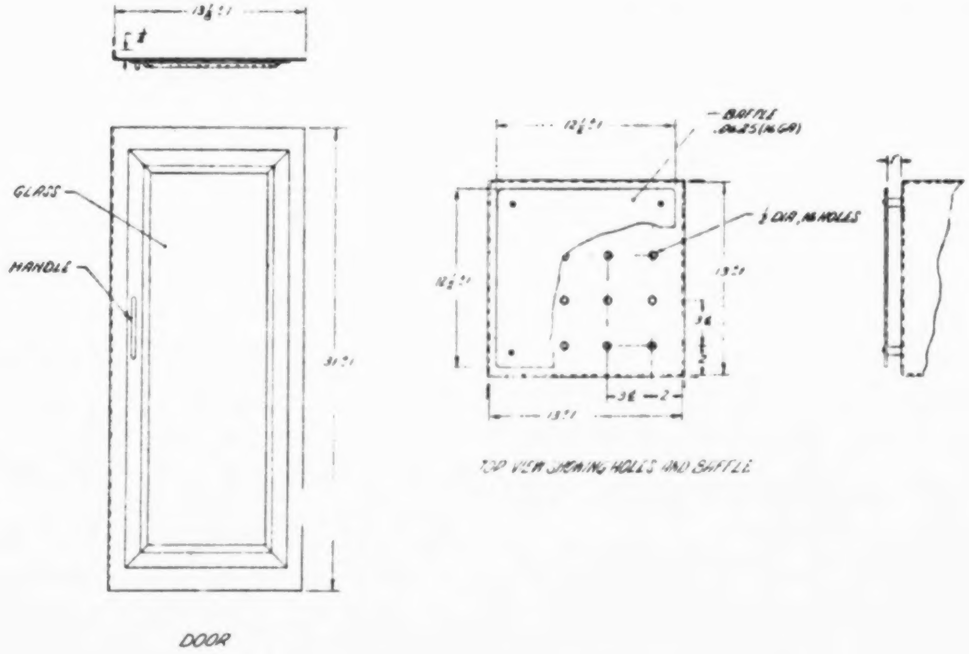

GLASS
HANDLE
DOOR
BAFFLE .0625 (16 GA)
1/2 DIA, 16 HOLES
TOP VIEW SHOWING HOLES AND BAFFLE

FIGURE L-2 - Vertical flame resistance textile apparatus,
door and top view w/baffle.

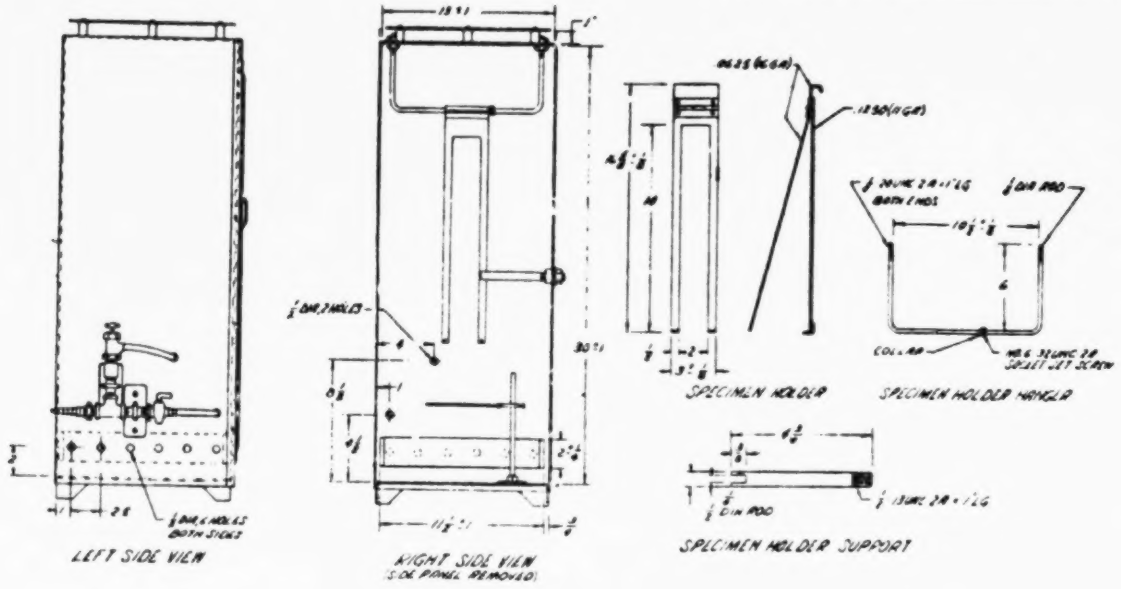

18 ±1
1"
30 ±1
1/2 DIA, 2 HOLES
2 1/4
11 1/2 ±1
1/2 DIA, 6 HOLES BOTH SIDES
LEFT SIDE VIEW
RIGHT SIDE VIEW
(SIDE PANEL REMOVED)
.0625 (16 GA)
.1250 (11 GA)
10
2
3 ± 1/8
SPECIMEN HOLDER
1/4 20UNC 2A x 1"LG BOTH ENDS
1/4 DIA ROD
6
COLLAR
NO. 6 32UNC 2A SOCKET SET SCREW
SPECIMEN HOLDER HANGER
1/4 DIA ROD
1/4 13UNC 2A x 1"LG
SPECIMEN HOLDER SUPPORT

FIGURE L-3 - Verticle flame resistance textile apparatus, views and details.

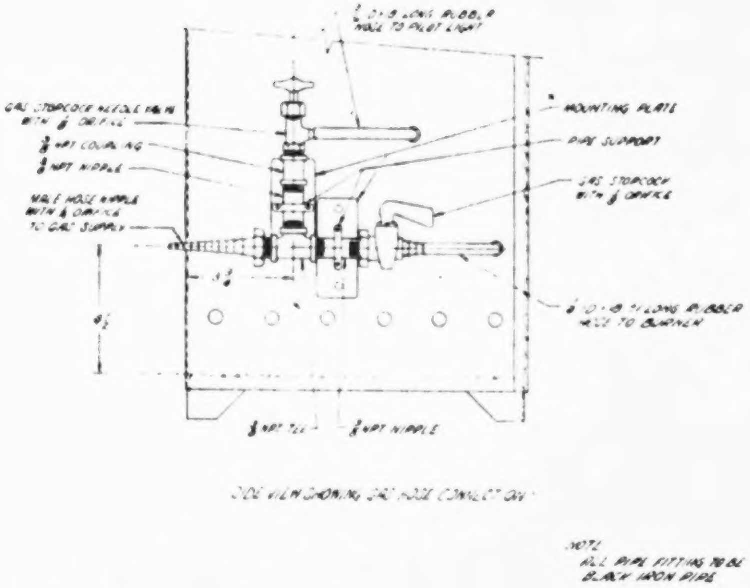

LONG RUBBER HOSE TO PILOT LIGHT
GAS STOPCOCK NEEDLE VALVE WITH 1/8 ORIFICE
3/8 NPT COUPLING
3/8 NPT NIPPLE
MALE HOSE NIPPLE WITH 1/8 ORIFICE TO GAS SUPPLY
MOUNTING PLATE
PIPE SUPPORT
GAS STOPCOCK WITH 1/8 ORIFICE
LONG RUBBER HOSE TO BURNER
3/8 NPT TEE
3/8 NPT NIPPLE
SIDE VIEW SHOWING GAS HOSE CONNECTION
NOTE
ALL PIPE FITTING TO BE BLACK IRON PIPE

FIGURE L-4 - Vertical flame resistance textile apparatus.

[FR Doc. 80-27781 Filed 9-11-80. 8:45 am]

BILLING CODE 4510-26-C

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART M—COMPRESSED GAS AND COMPRESSED AIR EQUIPMENT

1910.166 Reserved.
1910.167 Reserved.
1910.168 Reserved.
1910.169 Air receivers.
1910.170 Sources of standards.
1910.171 Standards organizations.

SUBPART M—COMPRESSED GAS AND COMPRESSED AIR EQUIPMENT

1910.166 THRU 1910.168—RESERVED

Pages 385 thru 394 deleted.

1910.169—AIR RECEIVERS

(a) General requirements.

(1) Application. This section applies to compressed air receivers, and other equipment used in providing and utilizing compressed air for performing operations such as cleaning, drilling, hoisting, and chipping. On the other hand, however, this section does not deal with the special problems created by using compressed air to convey materials nor the problems created when men work in compressed air as in tunnels and caissons. This section is not intended to apply to compressed air machinery and equipment used on transportation vehicles such as steam railroad cars, electric railway cars, and automotive equipment.

(2) New and existing equipment.

INTERP **(i)** All new air receivers installed after the effective date of these regulations shall be constructed in accordance with the 1968 edition of the A.S.M.E. Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code Section VIII.

(ii) All safety valves used shall be constructed, installed, and maintained in accordance with the A.S.M.E. Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII Edition 1968.

(b) Installation and equipment requirements.

(1) Installation. Air receivers shall be so installed that all drains, handholes, and manholes therein are easily accessible. Under no circumstances shall an air receiver be buried underground or located in an inaccessible place.

INTERP **(2) Drains and traps.** A drain pipe and valve shall be installed at the lowest point of every air receiver to provide for the removal of accumulated oil and water. Adequate automatic traps may be installed in addition to drain valves. The drain valve on the air receiver shall be opened and the receiver completely drained frequently and at such intervals as to prevent the accumulation of excessive amounts of liquid in the receiver.

(3) Gages and valves.

(i) Every air receiver shall be equipped with an indicating pressure gage (so located as to be readily visible) and with one or more spring-loaded safety valves. The total relieving capacity of such safety valves shall be such as to prevent pressure in the receiver from exceeding the maximum allowable working pressure of the receiver by more than 10 percent.

(ii) No valve of any type shall be placed between the air receiver and its safety valve or valves.

(iii) Safety appliances, such as safety valves, indicating devices and controlling devices, shall be constructed, located, and installed so that they cannot be readily rendered inoperative by any means, including the elements.

(iv) All safety valves shall be tested frequently and at regular intervals to determine whether they are in good operating condition.

1910.170—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

Sec.	*Source*
1910.169	ANSI B-19, 1938 Safety Code for Compressed Air Machinery.

1910.171—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

Specific standards of the following organizations have been referenced in this part. Copies of the referenced materials may be obtained from the issuing organizations.

Compressed Gas Association, Inc., 500 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10036.

American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Inc., United Engineering Center, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.

National Fire Protection Association, 60 Batterymarch Street, Boston, MA 02110.

American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

PART 1910

Occupational Safety and Health Standards

SUBPART N—MATERIALS HANDLING AND STORAGE

1910.176 Handling materials—general.
1910.177 Servicing multi-piece and single piece rim wheels.
1910.178 Powered industrial trucks.
1910.179 Overhead and gantry cranes.
1910.180 Crawler, locomotive, and truck cranes.
1910.181 Derricks.
1910.182 Effective dates.
1910.183 Helicopters
1910.184 Slings
1910.189 Sources of Standards
1910.190 Standards Organizations

Authority: Secs 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12-71 (36 FR 8754), 8-76 (41 FR 25059 (or 9-83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable.

Sections 1910.178, .176, .179, .180, .181, .183, .184, .189 and .190 also issued under 29 CFR Part 1911.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

SUBPART N—MATERIALS HANDLING AND STORAGE

1910.176—HANDLING MATERIALS—GENERAL

(a) Use of mechanical equipment.

Where mechanical handling equipment is used, sufficient safe clearances shall be allowed for aisles, at loading docks, through doorways and wherever turns or passage must be made. Aisles and passageways shall be kept clear and in good repair, with no obstruction across or in aisles that could create a hazard. Permanent aisles and passageways shall be appropriately marked.

(b) Secure storage.

Storage of material shall not create a hazard. Bags, containers, bundles, etc., stored in tiers shall be stacked, blocked, interlocked and limited in height so that they are stable and secure against sliding or collapse.

(c) Housekeeping.

Storage areas shall be kept free from accumulation of materials that constitute hazards from tripping, fire, explosion, or pest harborage. Vegetation control will be exercised when necessary.

(d) Drainage. Revoked

(e) Clearance limits.

Clearance signs to warn of clearance limits shall be provided.

(f) Rolling railroad cars.

Derail and/or bumper blocks shall be provided on spur railroad tracks where a rolling car could contact other cars being worked, enter a building, work or traffic area.

(g) Guarding.

Covers and/or guardrails shall be provided to protect personnel from the hazards of open pits, tanks, vats, ditches, etc.

1910.177—SERVICING MULTI-PIECE AND SINGLE PIECE RIM WHEELS

(a) Scope.

(1) This section applies to the servicing of multi-piece and single piece rim wheels used on large vehicles such as trucks, tractors, trailers, buses and off-road machines. It does not apply to the servicing of rim wheels used on automobiles, or on pickup trucks and vans utilizing automobile tires or truck tires designated "LT".

(2) This section does not apply to employers and places of employment regulated under the Construction Safety Standards, 29 CFR Part 1926; the Agriculture Standards, 29 CFR Part 1928; or the Maritime Standards, 29 CFR 1915–1918.

(3) All provisions of this section apply to the servicing of both single piece rim wheels and multi-piece rim wheels unless designated otherwise.

(b) Definitions. "Barrier" means a fence, wall or other structure or object placed between a single piece rim wheel and an employee during tire inflation, to contain the rim wheel components in the event of the sudden release of the contained air of the single piece rim wheel.

"Charts" means the United States Department of Transportation, National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) publications entitled "Safety Precautions for Mounting and Demounting Tube-Type Truck/Bus Tires" and "Multi-Piece Rim Wheel Matching Chart," or any other publications such as rim manuals containing, at a minimum, the same instructions, safety precautions and other information contained on those charts that are applicable to the types of rim wheels being serviced.

"Installing a rim wheel" means the transfer and attachment of an assembled rim wheel onto a vehicle axle hub. "Removing" means the opposite of installing.

"Mounting a tire" means the assembly or putting together of the wheel and tire components to form a rim wheel, including inflation. "Demounting" means the opposite of mounting.

"Multi-piece rim wheel" means the assemblage of a multi-piece wheel with the tire tube and other components.

"Multi-piece wheel" means a vehicle wheel consisting of two or more parts, one of which is a side or locking ring designed to hold the tire on the wheel by interlocking components when the tire is inflated.

"Restraining device" means an apparatus such as a cage, rack, assemblage of bars and other components that will constrain all rim wheel components during an explosive separation of a multi-piece rim wheel, or during the sudden release of the contained air of a single piece rim wheel.

"Rim manual" means a publication containing instructions from the manufacturer or other qualified organization for correct mounting, demounting, maintenance, and safety precautions peculiar to the type of wheel being serviced.

"Rim wheel" means an assemblage of tire, tube and liner (where appropriate), and wheel components.

"Service" or "servicing" means the mounting and demounting of rim wheels, and related activities such as inflating, deflating, installing, removing, and handling.

"Service area" means that part of an employer's premises used for the servicing of rim wheels, or any other place where an employee services rim wheels.

"Single piece rim wheel" means the assemblage of single piece rim wheel with the tire and other components.

"Single piece wheel" means a vehicle wheel consisting of one part, designed to hold the tire on the wheel when the tire is inflated.

"Trajectory" means any potential path or route that a rim wheel component may travel during an explosive separation, or the sudden release of the pressurized air, or an area at which an airblast from a single piece rim wheel may be released. The trajectory may deviate from paths which are perpendicular to the assembled position of the rim wheel at the time of separation of explosion. (See Appendix A for examples of trajectories.)

"Wheel" means that portion of a rim wheel which provides the method of attachment of the assembly to the axle of a vehicle and also provides the means to contain the inflated portion of the assembly (i.e., the tire and/or tube).

(c) Employee training.

(1) The employer shall provide a program to train all employees who service rim wheels in the hazards involved in servicing those rim wheels and the safety procedures to be followed.

(i) The employer shall assure that no employee services any rim wheel unless the employee has been trained and instructed in correct procedures of servicing the type of wheel being serviced, and in the safe operating procedures described in paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section.

(ii) Information to be used in the training program shall include, at a minimum, the applicable data contained in the charts (rim manuals) and the contents of this standard.

(iii) Where an employer knows or has reason to believe that any of his employees is unable to read and understand the charts or rim manual, the employer shall assure that the employee is instructed concerning the contents of the charts and rim manual in a manner which the employee is able to understand.

(2) The employer shall assure that each employee demonstrates and maintains the ability to service rim wheels safely, including performance of the following tasks:

(i) Demounting of tires (including deflation);

(ii) Inspection and identification of the rim wheel components;

(iii) Mounting of tires (including inflation with a restraining device or other safe guard required by this section);

(iv) Use of the restraining device or barrier, and other equipment required by this section;

(v) Handling of rim wheels;

(vi) Inflation of the tire when a single piece rim wheel is mounted on a vehicle;

(vii) An understanding of the necessity of standing outside the trajectory both during inflation of the tire and during inspection of the rim wheel following inflation; and

(viii) Installation and removal of rim wheels.

(3) The employer shall evaluate each employee's ability to perform these tasks and to service rim wheels safely, and shall provide additional training as necessary to assure that each employee maintains his or her proficiency.

(d) Tire servicing equipment.

(1) The employer shall furnish a restraining device for inflating tires on multi-piece wheels.

(2) The employer shall provide a restraining device or barrier for inflating tires on single piece wheels unless the rim wheel will be bolted onto a vehicle during inflation.

(3) Restraining devices and barriers shall comply with the following requirements:

(i) Each restraining device or barrier shall have the capacity to withstand the maximum force that would be transferred to it during a rim wheel separation occurring at 150 percent of the maximum tire specification pressure for the type of rim wheel being serviced.

(ii) Restraining devices and barriers shall be capable of preventing the rim wheel components from being thrown outside or beyond the device or barrier for any rim wheel positioned within or behind the device;

(iii) Restraining devices and barriers shall be visually inspected prior to each day's use and after any separation of the rim wheel components or sudden release of contained air. Any restraining device or barrier exhibiting damage such as the following defects shall be immediately removed from service:

(a) Cracks at welds;

(b) Cracked or broken components;

(c) Bent or sprung components caused by mishandling, abuse, tire explosion or rim wheel separation;

(d) Pitting of components due to corrosion; or

(e) Other structural damage which would decrease its effectiveness.

(iv) Restraining devices or barriers removed from service shall not be returned to service until they are repaired and reinspected. Restraining devices or barriers requiring structural repair such as component replacement or rewelding shall not be returned to service until they are certified by either the manufacturer or a Registered Professional Engineer as meeting the strength requirements of paragraph (d)(3)(i) of this section.

APPENDIX A
TRAJECTORY

WARNING

STAY OUT OF THE TRAJECTORY AS INDICATED BY SHADED AREA

Note: Under some circumstances, the trajectory may deviate from its expected path

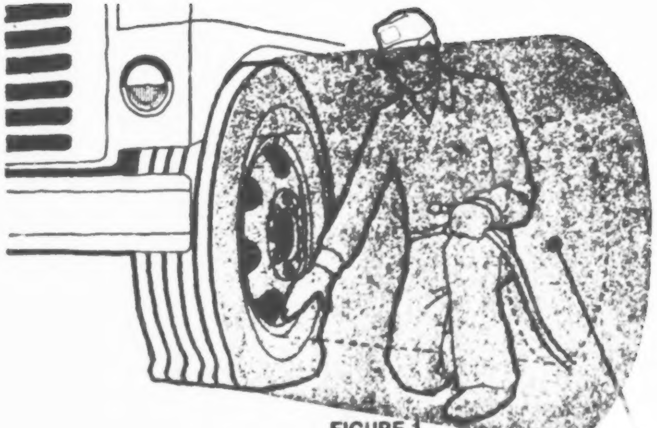


FIGURE 1

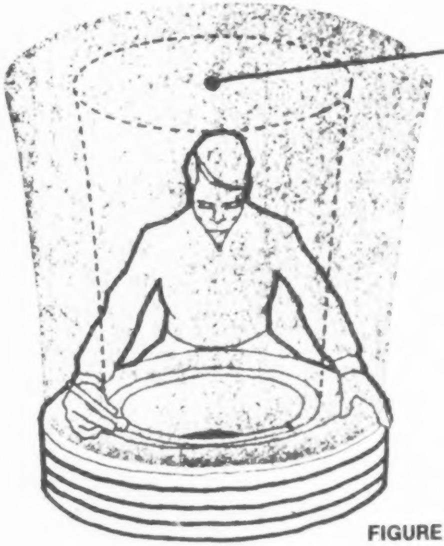


FIGURE 2

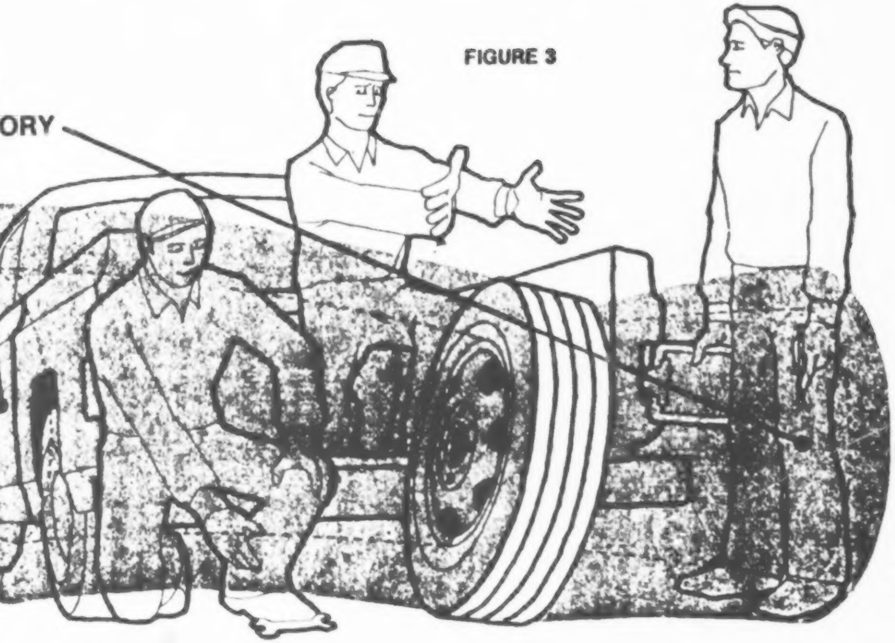


FIGURE 3

(4) The employer shall furnish and assure that an air line asembly consisting of the following components be used for inflating tires:

(i) A clip-on chuck;

(ii) An in-line valve with a pressure gauge or a presettable regulator; and

(iii) A sufficient length of hose between the clip-on chuck and the in-line valve (if one is used) to allow the employee to stand outside the trajectory.

(5) Current charts (rim manuals) containing instructions for the types of wheels being serviced shall be available in the service area.

(6) The employer shall furnish and assure that only tools recommended in the rim manual for the type of wheel being serviced are used to service rim wheels.

(e) Wheel component acceptability.

(1) Multi-piece wheel components shall not be interchanged except as provided in the charts or in the applicable rim manual.

(2) Multi-piece wheel components and single piece wheels shall be inspected prior to assembly. Any wheel or wheel component which is bent out of shape, pitted from corrosion, broken, or cracked shall not be used and shall be marked or tagged unserviceable and removed from the service area. Damaged or leaky valves shall be replaced.

(3) Rim flanges, rim gutters, rings, bead seating surfaces and the bead areas of tires shall be free of any dirt, surface rust, scale or loose or flaked rubber build-up prior to mounting and inflation.

(4) The size (bead diameter and tire/wheel widths) and type of both the tire and the wheel shall be checked for compatibility prior to assembly of the rim wheel.

(f) Safe operating procedure—multipiece rim wheels. The employer shall establish a safe operating procedure for servicing multi-piece rim wheels and shall assure that employees are instructed in and follow that procedure. The procedure shall include at least the following elements:

(1) Tires shall be completely deflated before demounting by removal of the valve core.

(2) Tires shall be completely deflated by removing the valve core before a rim wheel is removed from the axle in either of the following situations:

(i) When the tire has been driven underinflated at 80% or less of its recommended pressure, or

(ii) When there is obvious or suspected damage to the tire or wheel components.

(3) Rubber lubricant shall be applied to bead and rim mating surfaces during assembly of the wheel and inflation of the tire, unless the tire or wheel manufacturer recommends against it.

(4) If a tire on a vehicle is underinflated but has more than 80% of the recommended pressure, the tire may be inflated while the rim wheel is on the vehicle provided remote control inflation equipment is used, and no employees remain in the trajectory during inflation.

(5) Tires shall be inflated outside a restraining device only to a pressure sufficient to force the tire bead onto the rim ledge and create an airtight seal with the tire and bead.

(6) Whenever a rim wheel is in a restraining device the employee shall not rest or lean any part of his body or equipment on or against the restraining device.

(7) After tire inflation, the tire and wheel components shall be inspected while still within the restraining device to make sure that they are properly seated and locked. If further adjustment to the tire or wheel components is necessary, the tire shall be deflated by removal of the valve core before the adjustment is made.

(8) No attempt shall be made to correct the seating of side and lock rings by hammering, striking or forcing the components while the tire is pressurized.

(9) Cracked, broken, bent or otherwise damaged rim components shall not be reworked, welded, brazed, or otherwise heated.

(10) Whenever multi-piece rim wheels are being handled, employees shall stay out of the trajectory unless the employer can demonstrate that performance of the servicing makes the employee's presence in the trajectory necessary.

(11) No heat shall be applied to a multi-piece wheel or wheel component.

(g) Safe operating procedure—single piece rim wheels. The employer shall establish a safe operating procedure for servicing single piece rim wheels and shall assure that employees are instructed in and follow that procedure. The procedure shall include at least the following elements:

(1) Tires shall be completely deflated by removal of the valve core before demounting.

(2) Mounting and demounting of the tire shall be done only from the narrow ledge side of the wheel. Care shall be taken to avoid damaging the tire beads while mounting tires on wheels. Tires shall be mounted only on compatible wheels of matching bead diameter and width.

(3) Nonflammable rubber lubricant shall be applied to bead and wheel mating surfaces before assembly of the rim wheel, unless the tire or wheel manufacturer recommends against the use of any rubber lubricant.

(4) If a tire changing machine is used, the tire shall be inflated only to the minimum pressure necessary to force the tire bead onto the rim ledge while on the tire changing machine.

(5) If a bead expander is used, it shall be removed before the valve core is installed and as soon as the rim wheel becomes airtight (the tire bead slips onto the bead seat).

(6) Tires may be inflated only when contained within a restraining device, positioned behind a barrier or bolted on the vehicle with the lug nuts fully tightened.

(7) Tires shall not be inflated when any flat, solid surface is in the trajectory and within one foot of the sidewall.

(8) Employees shall stay out of the trajectory when inflating a tire.

(9) Tires shall not be inflated to more than the inflation pressure stamped in the sidewall unless a higher pressure is recommended by the manufacturer.

(10) Tires shall not be inflated above the maximum pressure recommended by the manufacturer to seat the tire bead firmly against the rim flange.

(11) No heat shall be applied to a single piece wheel.

(12) Cracked, broken, bent, or otherwise damaged wheels shall not be reworked, welded, brazed, or otherwise heated.

APPENDIX B—ORDERING INFORMATION FOR NHTSA CHARTS

OHSA has reprinted the NHTSA Charts as part of a continuing campaign to alert rim wheel servicing personnel of the industry accepted procedures for servicing multi-piece rim wheels.

Reprints of the charts are available through the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) Area Offices. The address and telephone number of the nearest OSHA Area Office can be obtained by looking in the local telphone directory under U.S. Government, U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration. Single copies are available without charge.

Individuals, establishments and other organizations desiring multiple copies of these charts may order them from the Publications Office, U.S. Department of Labor, Room N4101, Washington, D.C. 20210. Telephone: (202) 523-9667.

1910.178—POWERED INDUSTRIAL TRUCKS

(a) General requirements.

(1) This section contains safety requirements relating to fire protection, design, maintenance, and use of fork trucks, tractors, platform lift trucks, motorized hand trucks, and other specialized industrial trucks powered by electric motors or inter-

nal combustion engines. This section does not apply to compressed air or nonflammable compressed gas-operated industrial trucks, nor to farm vehicles, nor to vehicles intended primarily for earth moving or over-the-road hauling.

[38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(2) All new powered industrial trucks acquired and used by an employer after the effective date specified in paragraph (b) of § 1910.182 shall meet the design and construction requirements for powered industrial trucks established in the "American National Standard for Powered Industrial Trucks, Part II, ANSI B56.1-1969", except for vehicles intended primarily for earth moving or over-the-road hauling.

INTERP

(3) Approved trucks shall bear a label or some other identifying mark indicating approval by the testing laboratory. See subparagraph (7) of this paragraph and paragraph 405 of "American National Standard for Powered Industrial Trucks, Part II, ANSI B56.1-1969", which is incorporated by reference in subparagraph (2) of this paragraph and which provides that if the powered industrial truck is accepted by a nationally recognized testing laboratory it should be so marked.

(4) Modifications and additions which affect capacity and safe operation shall not be performed by the customer or user without manufacturers prior written approval. Capacity, operation, and maintenance instruction plates, tags, or decals shall be changed accordingly.

(5) If the truck is equipped with front-end attachments other than factory installed attachments, the user shall request that the truck be marked to identify the attachments and show the approximate weight of the truck and attachment combination at maximum elevation with load laterally centered.

(6) The user shall see that all nameplates and markings are in place and are maintained in a legible condition.

INTERP

(7) As used in this section, the term, "approved truck" or "approved industrial truck" means a truck that is listed or approved for fire safety purposes for the intended use by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, using nationally recognized testing standards. Refer to § 1910.155 (c)(3)(iv)(A) for definition of listed, and to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(b) Designations.

For the purpose of this standard there are eleven different designations of industrial trucks or tractors as follows: D, DS, DY, E, ES, EE, EX, G, GS, LP, and LPS.

(1) The D designated units are units similar to the G units except that they are diesel engine powered instead of gasoline engine powered.

(2) The DS designated units are diesel powered units that are provided with additional safeguards to the exhaust, fuel and electrical systems. They may be used in some locations where a D unit may not be considered suitable.

(3) The DY designated units are diesel powered units that have all the safeguards of the DS units and in addition do not have any electrical equipment including the ignition and are equipped with temperature limitation features.

(4) The E designated units are electrically powered units that have minimum acceptable safeguards against inherent fire hazards.

(5) The ES designated units are electrically powered units that, in addition to all of the requirements for the E units, are provided with additional safeguards to the electrical system to prevent emission of hazardous sparks and to limit surface temperatures. They may be used in some locations where the use of an E unit may not be considered suitable.

(6) The EE designated units are electrically powered units that have, in addition to all of the requirements for the E and ES units, the electric motors and all other electrical equipment completely enclosed. In certain locations the EE unit may be used where the use of an E and ES unit may not be considered suitable.

(7) The EX designated units are electrically powered units that differ from the E, ES, or EE units in that the electrical fittings and equipment are so designed, constructed and assembled that the units may be used in certain atmospheres containing flammable vapors or dusts.

(8) The G designated units are gasoline powered units having minimum acceptable safeguards against inherent fire hazards.

(9) The GS designated units are gasoline powered units that are provided with additional safeguards to the exhaust, fuel, and electrical systems. They may be used in some locations where the use of a G unit may not be considered suitable.

(10) The LP designated unit is similar to the G unit except that liquefied petroleum gas is used for fuel instead of gasoline.

(11) The LPS designated units are liquefied petroleum gas powered units that are provided with additional safeguards to the exhaust, fuel, and electrical systems. They may be used in some locations where the use of an LP unit may not be considered suitable.

(12) The atmosphere or location shall have been classified as to whether it is hazardous or nonhazardous prior to the consideration of industrial trucks being used therein and the type of industrial truck required shall be as provided in paragraph (d) of this section for such location.

(c) Designated locations.

(1) The industrial trucks specified under subparagraph (2) of this paragraph are the minimum types required but industrial trucks having greater safeguards may be used if desired.

(2) **For specific areas of use see Table N-1 which tabulates the information contained in this section. References in parentheses are to the corresponding classification as used in the National Electrical Code, NFPA No. 70-1971; ANSI C1-1971 (Rev. of C1-1968) for the convenience of persons familiar with those classifications.**

(i) Power-operated industrial trucks shall not be used in atmospheres containing hazardous concentration of acetylene, butadiene, ethylene oxide, hydrogen (or gases or vapors equivalent in hazard to hydrogen, such as manufactured gas), propylene oxide, acetaldehyde, cyclopropane, diethyl ether, ethylene, isoprene, or unsymmetrical dimethyl hydrazine (UDMH).

(ii)

(a) Power-operated industrial trucks shall not be used in atmospheres containing hazardous concentrations of metal dust, including aluminum, magnesium, and their commercial alloys, other metals of similarly hazardous characteristics, or in atmospheres containing carbon black, coal or coke dust except approved power-operated industrial trucks designated as EX may be used in such atmospheres.

(b) In atmospheres where dust of magnesium, aluminum or aluminum bronze may be present, fuses, switches, motor controllers, and circuit breakers of trucks shall have enclosures specifically approved for such locations.

(iii) Only approved power-operated industrial trucks designated as EX may be used in atmospheres containing acetone, acrylonitrile, alcohol, ammonia, benzine, benzol, butane, ethylene dichloride, gasoline, hexane, lacquer solvent vapors, naphtha, natural gas, propane, propylene, styrene, vinyl acetate, vinyl chloride, or xylenes in quantities sufficient to produce explosive or ignitable mixtures and where such concentrations of these gases or vapors exist continuously, intermittently or periodically under normal operating conditions or may exist frequently because of repair, maintenance operations, leakage, breakdown or faulty operation of equipment.

TABLE N-1

SUMMARY TABLE ON USE OF INDUSTRIAL TRUCKS IN VARIOUS LOCATIONS

Classes	Unclassified	Class I locations								Class II locations						Class III locations	
Description of classes	Locations not possessing atmospheres as described in other columns.	Locations in which flammable gases or vapors are, or may be, present in the air in quantities sufficient to produce explosive or ignitible mixtures.								Locations which are hazardous because of the presence of combustible dust.						Locations where easily ignitible fibers or flyings are present but not likely to be in suspension in quantities sufficient to produce ignitible mixtures.	
Groups in classes	None	A	B	C	D					E	F	G				None	
Examples of locations or atmospheres in classes and groups	Piers and Wharves inside and outside general storage General industrial or commercial properties	Acetylene	Hydrogen	Ethyl ether	Gasoline Naphtha Alcohols Acetone Lacquer solvent Benzene					Metal dust	Carbon black Coal dust Coke dust	Grain dust Flour dust Starch dust Organic dust				Baled waste, cocoa fiber, cotton, excelsior, hemp, istle, jute, kapok, oakum, sisal, Spanish moss, synthetic fibers, tow	
		1				2				1			2			1	-
Divisions (Nature of Hazardous Conditions)	None	Above condition exists continuously, intermittently or periodically under normal operating conditions.				Above condition may occur accidentally as due to a puncture of a storage drum.				Explosive mixture may be present under normal operating conditions, or where failure of equipment may cause the condition to exist simultaneously with arcing or sparking of electrical equipment, or where dusts of an electrically conducting nature may be present.			Explosive mixture not normally present, but where deposits of dust may cause heat rise in electrical equipment, or where such deposits may be ignited by arcs or sparks from electrical equipment.			Locations in which easily ignitible fibers or materials producing combustible flyings are handled, manufactured, or used.	Locations in which easily ignitible fibers are stored or handled except in the process of manufacture).
Authorized uses of trucks by types in groups of classes and divisions																	
Groups in classes	None	A	B	C	D	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	E	F	G	None	None
Types of trucks authorized:																	
Diesel:																	
Type D	D**																
Type DS									DS						DS		DS
Type DY									DY						DY	DY	DY
Electric:																	
Type E	E**																E
Type ES									ES						ES		ES
Type EE									EE						EE	EE	EE
Type EX					EX				EX		EX	EX			EX	EX	EX
Gasoline:																	
Type G	G**																
Type GS									GS						GS		GS
LP-Gas:																	
Type LP	LP**																
Type LPS									LPS						LPS		LPS
Paragraph Ref. in No. 505	210.211	201 (a)			203 (a)	209 (a)			204 (a), (b)	202 (a)	205 (a)		209 (a)		206 (a) (b)	207 (a)	208 (a)

**Trucks conforming to these Types may also be used—see subdivision (c)(2)(x) and (c)(2)(xii) of this section.

(iv) Power-operated industrial trucks designated as DY, EE, or EX may be used in locations where volatile flammable liquids or flammable gases are handled, processed or used, but in which the hazardous liquids, vapors or gases will normally be confined within closed containers or closed systems from which they can escape only in case of accidental rupture or breakdown of such containers or systems, or in the case of abnormal operation of equipment; also in locations in which hazardous concentrations of gases or vapors are normally prevented by positive mechanical ventilation but which might become hazardous through failure or abnormal operation of the ventilating equipment; or in locations which are adjacent to Class I, Division 1 locations, and to which hazardous concentrations of gases or vapors might occasionally be communicated unless such communication is prevented by adequate positive-pressure ventilation from a source of clear air, and effective safeguards against ventilation failure are provided.

(v) In locations used for the storage of hazardous liquids in sealed containers or liquefied or compressed gases in containers, approved power-operated industrial trucks designated as DS, ES, GS, or LPS may be used. This classification includes locations where volatile flammable liquids or flammable gases or vapors are used, but which, would become hazardous only in case of an accident or of some unusual operating condition. The quantity of hazardous material that might escape in case of accident, the adequacy of ventilating equipment, the total area involved, and the record of the industry or business with respect to explosions or fires are all factors that should receive consideration in determining whether or not the DS or DY, ES, EE, GS, LPS designated truck possesses sufficient safeguards for the location. Piping without valves, checks, meters and similar devices would not ordinarily be deemed to introduce a hazardous condition even though used for hazardous liquids or gases. Locations used for the storage of hazardous liquids or of liquefied or compressed gases in sealed containers would not normally be considered hazardous unless subject to other hazardous conditions also.

(vi)

(a) Only approved power-operated industrial trucks designated as EX shall be used in atmospheres in which combustible dust is or may be in suspension continuously, intermittently, or periodically under normal operating conditions, in quantities sufficient to produce explosive or ignitable mixtures, or where mechanical failure or abnormal operation of machinery or equipment might cause such mixtures to be produced.

(b) The EX classification usually includes the working areas of grain handling and storage plants, room containing grinders or pulverizers, cleaners, graders, scalpers, open conveyors or spouts, open bins or hoppers, mixers, or blenders, automatic or hopper scales, packing machinery, elevator heads and boots, stock distributors, dust and stock collectors (except all-metal collectors vented to the outside), and all similar dust producing machinery and equipment in grain processing plants, starch plants, sugar pulverizing plants, malting plants, hay grinding plants, and other occupancies of similar nature; coal pulverizing plants (except where the pulverizing equipment is essentially dust tight); all working areas where metal dusts and powders are produced, processed, handled, packed, or stored (except in tight containers); and other similar locations where combustible dust may, under normal operating conditions, be present in the air in quantities sufficient to produce explosive or ignitable mixtures.

INTERP

(vii) Only approved power-operated industrial trucks designated as DY, EE, or EX shall be used in atmospheres in which combustible dust will not normally be in suspension in the air or will not be likely to be thrown into suspension by the normal operation of equipment or apparatus in quantities sufficient to produce explosive or ignitable mixtures but where deposits or accumulations of such dust may be ignited by arcs or sparks originating in the truck.

(viii) Only approved power-operated industrial trucks designated as DY, EE, or EX shall be used in locations which are hazardous because of the presence of easily ignitible fibers or flyings but in which such fibers or flyings are not likely to be in suspension in the air in quantities sufficient to produce ignitable mixtures.

(ix) Only approved power-operated industrial trucks designated as DS, DY, ES, EE, EX, GS, or LPS shall be used in locations where easily ignitable fibers are stored or handled, including outside storage, but are not being processed or manufactured. Industrial trucks designated as E, which have been previously used in these locations may be continued in use.

(x) On piers and wharves handling general cargo, any approved power-operated industrial truck designated as Type D, E, G, or LP may be used, or trucks which conform to the requirements for these types may be used.

(xi) If storage warehouses and outside storage locations are hazardous only the approved power-operated industrial truck specified for such locations in this paragraph (c)(2) shall be used. If not classified as hazardous, any approved power-operated industrial truck designated as Type D, E, G, or LP may be used or trucks which conform to the requirements for these types may be used.

(xii) If general industrial or commercial properties are hazardous, only approved power-operated industrial trucks specified for such locations in this paragraph (c)(2) shall be used. If not classified as hazardous, any approved power-operated industrial truck designated as Type D, E, G, or LP may be used, or trucks which conform to the requirements of these types may be used.

(d) Converted industrial trucks.

Power-operated industrial trucks that have been originally approved for the use of gasoline for fuel, when converted to the use of liquefied petroleum gas fuel in accordance with paragraph (q) of this section, may be used in those locations where G, GS or LP, and LPS designated trucks have been specified in the preceding paragraphs.

(e) Safety guards.

(1) High Lift Rider trucks shall be fitted with an overhead guard manufactured in accordance with paragraph (a)(2) of this section, unless operating conditions do not permit.

(2) If the type of load presents a hazard, the user shall equip fork trucks with a vertical load backrest extension manufactured in accordance with paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(f) Fuel handling and storage.

(1) The storage and handling of liquid fuels such as gasoline and diesel fuel shall be in accordance with NFPA Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code (NFPA No. 30–1969).

(2) The storage and handling of liquefied petroleum gas fuel shall be in accordance with NFPA Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases (NFPA No. 58–1969).

(g) Changing and charging storage batteries.

(1) Battery charging installations shall be located in areas designated for that purpose.

(2) Facilities shall be provided for flushing and neutralizing spilled electrolyte, for fire protection, for protecting charging apparatus from damage by trucks, and for adequate ventilation for dispersal of fumes from gassing batteries.

(3) Removed

(4) A conveyor, overhead hoist, or equivalent material handling equipment shall be provided for handling batteries.

(5) Reinstalled batteries shall be properly positioned and secured in the truck.

(6) A carboy tilter or siphon shall be provided for handling electrolyte.

(7) When charging batteries, acid shall be poured into water; water shall not be poured into acid.

(8) Trucks shall be properly positioned and brake applied before attempting to change or charge batteries.

(9)

Care shall be taken to assure that vent caps are functioning. The battery (or compartment) cover(s) shall be open to dissipate heat.

(10) Smoking shall be prohibited in the charging area.

(11) Precautions shall be taken to prevent open flames, sparks, or electric arcs in battery charging areas.

(12) Tools and other metallic objects shall be kept away from the top of uncovered batteries.

(h) Lighting for operating areas.

(1) Removed

(2) Where general lighting is less than 2 lumens per square foot, auxiliary directional lighting shall be provided on the truck.

(i) Control of noxious gases and fumes.

(1) Concentration levels of carbon monoxide gas created by powered industrial truck operations shall not exceed the levels specified in § 1910.1000.

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975.]

(2) Removed

(j) Dockboards (bridge plates).

See § 1910.30(a).

(k) Trucks and railroad cars.

INTERP (1) The brakes of highway trucks shall be set and wheel chocks placed under the rear wheels to prevent the trucks from rolling while they are boarded with powered industrial trucks.

(2) Wheel stops or other recognized positive protection shall be provided to prevent railroad cars from moving during loading or unloading operations.

(3) Fixed jacks may be necessary to support a semitrailer and prevent upending during the loading or unloading when the trailer is not coupled to a tractor.

(4) Positive protection shall be provided to prevent railroad cars from being moved while dockboards or bridge plates are in position.

(l) Operator training.

Only trained and authorized operators shall be permitted to operate a powered industrial truck. Methods shall be devised to train operators in the safe operation of powered industrial trucks.

(m) Truck operations.

(1) Trucks shall not be driven up to anyone standing in front of a bench or other fixed object.

(2) No person shall be allowed to stand or pass under the elevated portion of any truck, whether loaded or empty.

(3) Unauthorized personnel shall not be permitted to ride on powered industrial trucks. A safe place to ride shall be provided where riding of trucks is authorized.

(4) The employer shall prohibit arms or legs from being placed between the uprights of the mast or outside the running lines of the truck.

(5)

(i) When a powered industrial truck is left unattended, load engaging means shall be fully lowered, controls shall be neutralized, power shall be shut off, and brakes set. Wheels shall be blocked if the truck is parked on an incline.

(ii) A powered industrial truck is unattended when the operator is 25 feet or more away from the vehicle which remains in his view, or whenever the operator leaves the vehicle and it is not in his view.

(iii) When the operator of an industrial truck is dismounted and within 25 feet of the truck still in his view, the load engaging means shall be fully lowered, controls neutralized, and the brakes set to prevent movement.

[38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(6) A safe distance shall be maintained from the edge of ramps or platforms while on any elevated dock, or platform or freight car. Trucks shall not be used for opening or closing freight doors. INTERP

(7) Brakes shall be set and wheel blocks shall be in place to prevent movement of trucks, INTERP

trailers, or railroad cars while loading or unloading. Fixed jacks may be necessary to support a semitrailer during loading or unloading when the trailer is not coupled to a tractor. The flooring of trucks, trailers, and railroad cars shall be checked for breaks and weakness before they are driven onto.

(8) There shall be sufficient headroom under overhead installations, lights, pipes, sprinkler system, etc.

(9) An overhead guard shall be used as protection against falling objects. It should be noted that an overhead guard is intended to offer protection from the impact of small packages, boxes, bagged material, etc., representative of the job application, but not to withstand the impact of a falling capacity load.

(10) A load backrest extension shall be used whenever necessary to minimize the possibility of the load or part of it from falling rearward.

(11) Only approved industrial trucks shall be used in hazardous locations.

(12) Whenever a truck is equipped with vertical only, or vertical and horizontal controls elevatable with the lifting carriage or forks for lifting personnel, the following additional precautions shall be taken for the protection of personnel being elevated.

(i) Use of a safety platform firmly secured to the lifting carriage and/or forks.

(ii) Means shall be provided whereby personnel on the platform can shut off power to the truck.

(iii) Such protection from falling objects as indicated necessary by the operating conditions shall be provided.

(13) [Revoked]

38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(14) Fire aisles, access to stairways, and fire equipment shall be kept clear.

(n) Traveling.

(1) All traffic regulations shall be observed, including authorized plant speed limits. A safe distance shall be maintained approximately three truck lengths from the truck ahead, and the truck shall be kept under control at all times.

(2) The right of way shall be yielded to ambulances, fire trucks, or other vehicles in emergency situations.

(3) Other trucks traveling in the same direction at intersections, blind spots, or other dangerous locations shall not be passed.

(4) The driver shall be required to slow down and sound the horn at cross aisles and other locations where vision is obstructed. If the load being carried obstructs forward view, the driver shall be required to travel with the load trailing.

(5) Railroad tracks shall be crossed diagonally wherever possible. Parking closer than 8 feet from the center of railroad tracks is prohibited.

(6) The driver shall be required to look in the direction of, and keep a clear view of the path of travel.

(7) Grades shall be ascended or descended slowly.

(i) When ascending or descending grades in excess of 10 percent, loaded trucks shall be driven with the load upgrade.

(ii) Removed

(iii) On all grades the load and load engaging means shall be tilted back if applicable, and raised only as far as necessary to clear the road surface.

(8) Under all travel conditions the truck shall be operated at a speed that will permit it to be brought to a stop in a safe manner.

(9) Stunt driving and horseplay shall not be permitted.

(10) The driver shall be required to slow down for wet and slippery floors.

(11) Dockboard or bridgeplates, shall be properly secured before they are driven over. Dockboard or bridgeplates shall be driven over carefully and slowly and their rated capacity never exceeded.

(12) Elevators shall be approached slowly, and then entered squarely after the elevator car is properly leveled. Once on the elevator, the controls shall be neutralized, power shut off, and the brakes set.

(13) Motorized hand trucks must enter elevator or other confined areas with load end forward.

(14) Running over loose objects on the roadway surface shall be avoided.

(15) While negotiating turns, speed shall be reduced to a safe level by means of turning the hand steering wheel in a smooth, sweeping motion. Except when maneuvering at a very low speed, the hand steering wheel shall be turned at a moderate, even rate.

(o) Loading.

(1) Only stable or safely arranged loads shall be handled. Caution shall be exercised when handling off-center loads which cannot be centered.

(2) Only loads within the rated capacity of the truck shall be handled.

(3) The long or high (including multiple-tiered) loads which may affect capacity shall be adjusted.

(4) Trucks equipped with attachments shall be operated as partially loaded trucks when not handling a load.

(5) A load engaging means shall be placed under the load as far as possible; the mast shall be carefully tilted backward to stabilize the load.

(6) Extreme care shall be used when tilting the load forward or backward, particularly when high tiering. Tilting forward with load engaging means elevated shall be prohibited except to pick up a load. An elevated load shall not be tilted forward except when the load is in a deposit position over a rack or stack. When stacking or tiering, only enough backward tilt to stabilize the load shall be used.

(p) Operation of the truck.

(1) If at any time a powered industrial truck is found to be in need of repair, defective, or in any way unsafe, the truck shall be taken out of service until it has been restored to safe operating condition.

(2) Fuel tanks shall not be filled while the engine is running. Spillage shall be avoided.

(3) Spillage of oil or fuel shall be carefully washed away or completely evaporated and the fuel tank cap replaced before restarting engine.

(4) No truck shall be operated with a leak in the fuel system until the leak has been corrected.

(5) Open flames shall not be used for checking electrolyte level in storage batteries or gasoline level in fuel tanks.

(q) Maintenance of industrial trucks.

(1) Any power-operated industrial truck not in safe operating condition shall be removed from service. All repairs shall be made by authorized personnel.

(2) No repairs shall be made in Class I, II, and III locations.

(3) Those repairs to the fuel and ignition systems of industrial trucks which involve fire hazards shall be conducted only in locations designated for such repairs.

(4) Trucks in need of repairs to the electrical system shall have the battery disconnected prior to such repairs.

(5) All parts of any such industrial truck requiring replacement shall be replaced only by parts equivalent as to safety with those used in the original design.

(6) Industrial trucks shall not be altered so that the relative positions of the various parts are different from what they were when originally received from the manufacturer, nor shall they be altered either by the addition of extra parts not provided by the manufacturer or by the elimination of any parts, except as provided in subparagraph (12) of this paragraph. Additional counter-weighting of fork trucks shall not be done unless approved by the truck manufacturer.

(7) Industrial trucks shall be examined before being placed in service, and shall not be placed in service if the examination shows any condition adversely affecting the safety of the vehicle. Such examination shall be made at least daily.

Where industrial trucks are used on a round-the-clock basis, they shall be examined after each shift. Defects when found shall be immediately reported and corrected.

(8) Water mufflers shall be filled daily or as frequently as is necessary to prevent depletion of the supply of water below 75 percent of the filled capacity. Vehicles with mufflers having screens or other parts that may become clogged shall not be operated while such screens or parts are clogged. Any vehicle that emits hazardous sparks or flames from the exhaust system shall immediately be removed from service, and not returned to service until the cause for the emission of such sparks and flames has been eliminated.

(9) When the temperature of any part of any truck is found to be in excess of its normal operating temperature, thus creating a hazardous condition, the vehicle shall be removed from service and not returned to service until the cause for such overheating has been eliminated.

(10) Industrial trucks shall be kept in a clean condition, free of lint, excess oil, and grease. Noncombustible agents should be used for cleaning trucks. Low flash point (below 100° F.) solvents shall not be used. High flash point (at or above 100° F.) solvents may be used. Precautions regarding toxicity, ventilation, and fire hazard shall be consonant with the agent or solvent used.

(11) Where it is necessary to use antifreeze in the engine cooling system, only those products having a glycol base shall be used.

(12) Industrial trucks originally approved for the use of gasoline for fuel may be converted to liquefied petroleum gas fuel provided the complete conversion results in a truck which embodies the features specified for LP or LPS designated trucks. Such conversion equipment shall be approved. The description of the component parts of this conversion system and the recommended method of installation on specific trucks are contained in the "Listed by Report."

1910.179—OVERHEAD AND GANTRY CRANES

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

(1) A "crane" is a machine for lifting and lowering a load and moving it horizontally, with the hoisting mechanism an integral part of the machine. Cranes whether fixed or mobile are driven manually or by power.

(2) An "automatic crane" is a crane which when activated operates through a preset cycle or cycles.

(3) A "cab-operated crane" is a crane controlled by an operator in a cab located on the bridge or trolley.

(4) "Cantilever gantry crane" means a gantry or semigantry crane in which the bridge girders or trusses extend transversely beyond the crane runway on one or both sides.

(5) "Floor-operated crane" means a crane which is pendant or nonconductive rope controlled by an operator on the floor or an independent platform.

(6) "Gantry crane" means a crane similar to an overhead crane except that the bridge for carrying the trolley or trolleys is rigidly supported on two or more legs running on fixed rails or other runway.

(7) "Hot metal handling crane" means an overhead crane used for transporting or pouring molten material.

(8) "Overhead crane" means a crane with a movable bridge carrying a movable or fixed hoisting mechanism and traveling on an overhead fixed runway structure.

(9) "Power-operated crane" means a crane whose mechanism is driven by electric, air, hydraulic, or internal combustion means.

(10) A "pulpit-operated crane" is a crane operated from a fixed operator station not attached to the crane.

(11) A "remote-operated crane" is a crane controlled by an operator not in a pulpit or in the cab attached to the crane, by any method other than pendant or rope control.

(12) A "semigantry crane" is a gantry crane with one end of the bridge rigidly supported on one or more legs that run on a fixed rail or runway, the other end of the bridge being supported by a truck running on an elevated rail or runway.

(13) "Storage bridge crane" means a gantry type crane of long span usually used for bulk storage of material; the bridge girders or trusses are rigidly or nonrigidly supported on one or more legs. It may have one or more fixed or hinged cantilever ends.

(14) "Wall crane" means a crane having a jib with or without trolley and supported from a side wall or line of columns of a building. It is a traveling type and operates on a runway attached to the side wall or columns.

(15) "Appointed" means assigned specific responsibilities by the employer or the employer's representative.

(16) "ANSI" means the American National Standards Institute.

(17) An "auxiliary hoist" is a supplemental hoisting unit of lighter capacity and usually higher speed than provided for the main hoist.

(18) A "brake" is a device used for retarding or stopping motion by friction or power means.

(19) A "drag brake" is a brake which provides retarding force without external control.

(20) A "holding brake" is a brake that automatically prevents motion when power is off.

(21) "Bridge" means that part of a crane consisting of girders, trucks, end ties, footwalks, and drive mechanism which carries the trolley or trolleys.

(22) "Bridge travel" means the crane movement in a direction parallel to the crane runway.

(23) A "bumper" (buffer) is an energy absorbing device for reducing impact when a moving crane or trolley reaches the end of its permitted travel; or when two moving cranes or trolleys come in contact.

(24) The "cab" is the operator's compartment on a crane.

(25) "Clearance" means the distance from any part of the crane to a point of the nearest obstruction.

(26) "Collectors current" are contacting devices for collecting current from runway or bridge conductors.

(27) "Conductors, bridge" are the electrical conductors located along the bridge structure of a crane to provide power to the trolley.

(28) "Conductors, runway" (main) are the electrical conductors located along a crane runway to provide power to the crane.

(29) The "control braking means" is a method of controlling crane motor speed when in an overhauling condition.

(30) "Countertorque" means a method of control by which the power to the motor is reversed to develop torque in the opposite direction.

(31) "Dynamic" means a method of controlling crane motor speeds when in the overhauling condition to provide a retarding force.

(32) "Regenerative" means a form of dynamic braking in which the electrical energy generated is fed back into the power system.

(33) "Mechanical" means a method of control by friction.

(34) "Controller, spring return" means a controller which when released will return automatically to a neutral position.

(35) "Designated" means selected or assigned by the employer or the employer's representative as being qualified to perform specific duties.

(36) A "drift point" means a point on a travel motion controller which releases the brake while the motor is not energized. This allows for coasting before the brake is set.

(37) The "drum" is the cylindrical member around which the ropes are wound for raising or lowering the load.

(38) An "equalizer" is a device which compensates for unequal length or stretch of a rope.

(39) "Exposed" means capable of being contacted inadvertently. Applied to hazardous objects not adequately guarded or isolated.

(40) "Fail-safe" means a provision designed to automatically stop or safely control any motion in which a malfunction occurs.

(41) "Footwalk" means the walkway with handrail, attached to the bridge or trolley for access purposes.

(42) A "hoist" is an apparatus which may be a part of a crane, exerting a force for lifting or lowering.

(43) "Hoist chain" means the load bearing chain in a hoist.

NOTE: Chain properties do not conform to those shown in ANSI B30.9–1971, Safety Code for Slings.

(44) "Hoist motion" means that motion of a crane which raises and lowers a load.

(45) "Load" means the total superimposed weight on the load block or hook.

(46) The "load block" is the assembly of hook or shackle, swivel, bearing, sheaves, pins, and frame suspended by the hoisting rope.

(47) "Magnet" means an electromagnetic device carried on a crane hook to pick up loads magnetically.

(48) "Main hoist" means the hoist mechanism provided for lifting the maximum rated load.

(49) A "man trolley" is a trolley having an operator's cab attached thereto.

(50) "Rated load" means the maximum load for which a crane or individual hoist is designed and built by the manufacturer and shown on the equipment nameplate(s).

(51) "Rope" refers to wire rope, unless otherwise specified.

(52) "Running sheave" means a sheave which rotates as the load block is raised or lowered.

(53) "Runway" means an assembly of rails, beams, girders, brackets, and framework on which the crane or trolley travels.

(54) "Side pull" means that portion of the hoist pull acting horizontally when the hoist lines are not operated vertically.

(55) "Span" means the horizontal distance center to center of runway rails.

(56) "Standby crane" means a crane which is not in regular service but which is used occasionally or intermittently as required.

(57) A "stop" is a device to limit travel of a trolley or crane bridge. This device normally is attached to a fixed structure and normally does not have energy absorbing ability.

(58) A "switch" is a device for making, breaking, or for changing the connections in an electric circuit.

(59) An "emergency stop switch" is a manually or automatically operated electric switch to cut off electric power independently of the regular operating controls.

(60) A "limit switch" is a switch which is operated by some part or motion of a power-driven machine or equipment to alter the electric circuit associated with the machine or equipment.

(61) A "main switch" is a switch controlling the entire power supply to the crane.

(62) A "master switch" is a switch which dominates the operation of contactors, relays, or other remotely operated devices.

(63) The "trolley" is the unit which travels on the bridge rails and carries the hoisting mechanism.

(64) "Trolley travel" means the trolley movement at right angles to the crane runway.

(65) "Truck" means the unit consisting of a frame, wheels, bearings, and axles which supports the bridge girders or trolleys.

(b) General requirements.

(1) Application. This section applies to overhead and gantry cranes, including semigantry, cantilever gantry, wall cranes, storage bridge cranes, and others having the same fundamental characteristics. These cranes are grouped because they all have trolleys and similar travel characteristics.

(2) New and existing equipment. All new overhead and gantry cranes constructed and installed on or after August 31, 1971, shall meet the design specifications of the American National Standard Safety Code for Overhead and Gantry Cranes, ANSI B30.2.0–1967.

(3) Modifications. Cranes may be modified and rerated provided such modifications and the supporting structure are checked thoroughly for the new rated load by a qualified engineer or the equipment manufacturer. The crane shall be tested in accordance with paragraph (k)(2) of this section. New rated load shall be displayed in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph.

(4) Wind indicators and rail clamps. Outdoor storage bridges shall be provided with automatic rail clamps. A wind-indicating device shall be provided which will give a visible or audible alarm to the bridge operator at a predetermined wind velocity. If the clamps act on the rail heads, any beads or weld flash on the railheads shall be ground off.

(5) Rated load marking. The rated load of the crane shall be plainly marked on each side of the crane, and if the crane has more than one hoisting unit, each hoist shall have its rated load marked on it or its load block and this marking shall be clearly legible from the ground or floor.

(6) Clearance from obstruction.

(i) Minimum clearance of 3 inches overhead and 2 inches laterally shall be provided and maintained between crane and obstructions in conformity with Crane Manufacturers Association of America, Inc., Specification No. 61 (formerly the Electric Overhead Crane Institute, Inc.).

(ii) Where passageways or walkways are provided obstructions shall not be placed so that safety of personnel will be jeopardized by movements of the crane.

(7) Clearance between parallel cranes. If the runways of two cranes are parallel, and there are no intervening walls or structure, there shall be adequate clearance provided and maintained between the two bridges.

(8) Designated personnel. Only designated personnel shall be permitted to operate a crane covered by this section.

[38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(c) Cabs.

(1) Cab location.

(i) The general arrangement of the cab and the location of control and protective equipment shall be such that all operating handles are within convenient reach of the operator when facing the area to be served by the load hook, or while facing the direction of travel of the cab. The arrangement shall allow the operator a full view of the load hook in all positions.

(ii) The cab shall be located to afford a minimum of 3 inches clearance from all fixed structures within its area of possible movement.

(iii) Removed

(2) Access to crane. Access to the cab and/or bridge walkway shall be by a conveniently placed fixed ladder, stairs, or platform requiring no step over any gap exceeding 12 inches. Fixed ladders shall be in conformance with the American National Standard Safety Code for Fixed Ladders, ANSI A14.3-1956.

(3) Fire extinguisher. Carbon tetrachloride extinguishers shall not be used.

(4) Lighting. Light in the cab shall be sufficient to enable the operator to see clearly enough to perform his work.

(d) Footwalks and ladders.

(1) Location of footwalks.

(i) If sufficient headroom is available on cab-operated cranes, a footwalk shall be provided on the drive side along the entire length of the bridge of all cranes having the trolley running on the top of the girders.

(ii) Where foot walks are located, in no case shall less than 48 inches of headroom be provided.

(2) Construction of footwalks.

(i) Footwalks shall be of rigid construction and designed to sustain a distributed load of at least 50 pounds per square foot.

(ii) Footwalks shall have a walking surface of antislip type.

NOTE: Wood will meet this requirement.

(iii) Removed

(iv) The inner edge shall extend at least to the line of the outside edge of the lower cover plate or flange of the girder.

(3) Toeboards and handrails for footwalks. Toeboards and handrails shall be in compliance with section 1910.23 of this part.

(4) Ladders and stairways.

(i) Gantry cranes shall be provided with ladders or stairways extending from the ground to the footwalk or cab platform.

(ii) Stairways shall be equipped with rigid and substantial metal handrails. Walking surfaces shall be of an antislip type.

(iii) Ladders shall be permanently and securely fastened in place and shall be constructed in compliance with § 1910.27.

(e) Stops, bumpers, rail sweeps, and guards.

(1) Trolley stops.

(i) Stops shall be provided at the limits of travel of the trolley.

(ii) Stops shall be fastened to resist forces applied when contacted.

(iii) A stop engaging the tread of the wheel shall be of a height at least equal to the radius of the wheel.

(2) Bridge bumpers.

(i) A crane shall be provided with bumpers or other automatic means providing equivalent effect, unless the crane travels at a slow rate of speed and has a faster deceleration rate due to the use of sleeve bearings, or is not operated near the ends of bridge and trolley travel, or is restricted to a limited distance by the nature of the crane operation and there is no hazard of striking any object in this limited distance, or is used in similar operating conditions. The bumpers shall be capable of stopping the crane (not including the lifted load) at an average rate of deceleration not to exceed 3 ft/s/s when traveling in either direction at 20 percent of the rated load speed.

(a) The bumpers shall have sufficient energy absorbing capacity to stop the crane when traveling at a speed of at least 40 percent of rated load speed.

(b) The bumper shall be so mounted that there is no direct shear on bolts.

(ii) Bumpers shall be so designed and installed as to minimize parts falling from the crane in case of breakage.

(3) Trolley bumpers.

(i) A trolley shall be provided with bumpers or other automatic means of equivalent effect, unless the trolley travels at a slow rate of speed, or is not operated near the ends of bridge and trolley travel, or is restricted to a limited distance of the runway and there is no hazard of striking any object in this limited distance, or is used in similar operating conditions. The bumpers shall be capable of stopping the trolley (not including the lifted load) at an average rate of deceleration not to exceed 4.7 ft/s/s when traveling in either direction at one-third of the rated load speed.

[38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(ii) When more than one trolley is operated on the same bridge, each shall be equipped with bumpers or equivalent on their adjacent ends.

(iii) Bumpers or equivalent shall be designed and installed to minimize parts falling from the trolley in case of age.

[38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(4) Rail sweeps. Bridge trucks shall be equipped with sweeps which extend below the top of the rail and project in front of the truck wheels.

(5) Guards for hoisting ropes.

(i) If hoisting ropes run near enough to other parts to make fouling or chafing possible, guards shall be installed to prevent this condition.

(ii) A guard shall be provided to prevent contact between bridge conductors and hoisting ropes if they could come into contact.

(6) Guards for moving parts.

(i) Exposed moving parts such as gears, set screws, projecting keys, chains, chain sprockets, and reciprocating components which might constitute a hazard under normal operating conditions shall be guarded.

(ii) Guards shall be securely fastened.

(iii) Each guard shall be capable of supporting without permanent distortion the weight of a 200-pound person unless the guard is located where it is impossible for a person to step on it.

(f) Brakes.

(1) Brakes for hoists.

(i) Each independent hoisting unit of a crane shall be equipped with at least one self-setting brake, hereafter referred to as a holding brake, applied directly to the motor shaft or some part of the gear train.

(ii) Each independent hoisting unit of a crane, except worm-geared hoists, the angle of whose worm is such as to prevent the load from accelerating in the lowering direction shall, in addition to a holding brake, be equipped with control braking means to prevent overspeeding.

(2) Holding brakes.

(i) Holding brakes for hoist motors shall have not less than the following percentage of the full load hoisting torque at the point where the brake is applied.

(a) 125 percent when used with a control braking means other than mechanical.

(b) 100 percent when used in conjunction with a mechanical control braking means.

(c) 100 percent each if two holding brakes are provided.

(ii) Holding brakes on hoists shall have ample thermal capacity for the frequency of operation required by the service.

(iii) Holding brakes on hoists shall be applied automatically when power is removed.

(iv) Where necessary holding brakes shall be provided with adjustment means to compensate for wear.

(v) The wearing surface of all holding-brake drums or discs shall be smooth.

(vi) Each independent hoisting unit of a crane handling hot metal and having power control braking means shall be equipped with at least two holding brakes.

(3) Control braking means.

(i) A power control braking means such as regenerative, dynamic or countertorque braking, or a mechanically controlled braking means shall be capable of maintaining safe lowering speeds of rated loads.

(ii) The control braking means shall have ample thermal capacity for the frequency of operation required by service.

(4) Brakes for trolleys and bridges.

(i) Foot operated brakes shall not require an applied force of more than 70 pounds to develop manufacturer's rated brake torque.

(ii) Brakes may be applied by mechanical, electrical, pneumatic, hydraulic, or gravity means.

(iii) Where necessary brakes shall be provided with adjustment means to compensate for wear.

(iv) The wearing surface of all brakedrums or discs shall be smooth.

(v) All foot-brake pedals shall be constructed so that the operator's foot will not easily slip off the pedal.

(vi) Foot-operated brakes shall be equipped with automatic means for positive release when pressure is released from the pedal.

(vii) Brakes for stopping the motion of the trolley or bridge shall be of sufficient size to stop the trolley or bridge within a distance in feet equal to 10 percent of full load speed in feet per minute when traveling at full speed with full load.

(viii) If holding brakes are provided on the bridge or trolleys, they shall not prohibit the use of a drift point in the control circuit.

(ix) Brakes on trolleys and bridges shall have ample thermal capacity for the frequency of operation required by the service to prevent impairment of functions from overheating.

(5) Application of trolley brakes.

(i) On cab-operated cranes with cab on trolley, a trolley brake shall be required as specified under subparagraph (4) of this paragraph.

(ii) A drag brake may be applied to hold the trolley in a desired position on the bridge and to eliminate creep with the power off.

(6) Application of bridge brakes.

(i) On cab-operated cranes with cab on bridge, a bridge brake is required as specified under subparagraph (4) of this paragraph.

(ii) On cab-operated cranes with cab on trolley, a bridge brake of the holding type shall be required.

(iii) On all floor, remote and pulpit-operated crane bridge drives, a brake or non-coasting mechanical drive shall be provided.

(g) Electric equipment.

(1) General.

(i) Wiring and equipment shall comply with § 1910.309.

(ii) The control circuit voltage shall not exceed 600 volts for a.c. or d.c. current.

(iii) The voltage at pendant pushbuttons shall not exceed 150 volts for a.c. and 300 volts for d.c.

(iv) Where multiple conductor cable is used with a suspended pushbutton station, the station must be supported in some satisfactory manner that will protect the electrical conductors against strain.

(v) Pendant control boxes shall be constructed to prevent electrical shock and shall be clearly marked for identification of functions.

(2) Equipment.

(i) Electrical equipment shall be so located or enclosed that live parts will not be exposed to accidental contact under normal operating conditions.

(ii) Electric equipment shall be protected from dirt, grease, oil, and moisture.

(iii) Guards for live parts shall be substantial and so located that they cannot be accidently deformed so as to make contact with the live parts.

(3) Controllers.

(i) Cranes not equipped with spring-return controllers or momentary contact pushbuttons shall be provided with a device which will disconnect all motors from the line on failure of power and will not permit any motor to be restarted until the controller handle is brought to the "off" position, or a reset switch or button is operated.

(ii) Lever operated controllers shall be provided with a notch or latch which in the "off" position prevents the handle from being inadvertently moved to the "on" position. An "off" detent or spring return arrangement is acceptable.

(iii) The controller operating handle shall be located within convenient reach of the operator.

(iv) As far as practicable, the movement of each controller handle shall be in the same general directions as the resultant movements of the load.

(v) The control for the bridge and trolley travel shall be so located that the operator can readily face the direction of travel.

(vi) For floor-operated cranes, the controller or controllers if rope operated, shall automatically return to the "off" position when released by the operator.

(vii) Pushbuttons in pendant stations shall return to the "off" position when pressure is released by the crane operator.

(viii) Automatic cranes shall be so designed that all motions shall fail-safe if any malfunction of operation occurs.

(ix) Remote-operated cranes shall function so that if the control signal for any crane motion becomes ineffective the crane motion shall stop.

(4) Resistors.

(i) Enclosures for resistors shall have openings to provide adequate ventilation, and shall be installed to prevent the accumulation of combustible matter too near to hot parts.

(ii) Resistor units shall be supported so as to be as free as possible from vibration.

(iii) Provision shall be made to prevent broken parts or molten metal falling upon the operator or from the crane.

(5) Switches.

(i) The power supply to the runway conductors shall be controlled by a switch or circuit breaker located on a fixed structure, accessible from the floor, and arranged to be locked in the open position.

(ii) On cab-operated cranes a switch or circuit breaker of the enclosed type, with provision for locking in the open position, shall be provided in the leads from the runway conductors. A means of opening this switch or circuit breaker shall be located within easy reach of the operator.

(iii) On floor-operated cranes, a switch or circuit breaker of the enclosed type, with provision for locking in the open position, shall be provided in the leads from the runway conductors. This disconnect shall be mounted on the bridge or footwalk near the runway collectors. One of the following types of floor-operated disconnects shall be provided:

(a) Nonconductive rope attached to the main disconnect switch.

(b) An undervoltage trip for the main circuit breaker operated by an emergency stop button in the pendant pushbutton in the pendant pushbutton station.

(c) A main line contactor operated by a switch or pushbutton in the pendant pushbutton station.

(iv) The hoisting motion of all electric traveling cranes shall be provided with an overtravel limit switch in the hoisting direction.

(v) All cranes using a lifting magnet shall have a magnet circuit switch of the enclosed type with provision for locking in the open position. Means for discharging the inductive load of the magnet shall be provided.

(6) Runway conductors. Conductors of the open type mounted on the crane runway beams or overhead shall be so located or so guarded that persons entering or leaving the cab or crane footwalk normally could not come into contact with them.

(7) Extension lamps. If a service receptacle is provided in the cab or on the bridge of cab-operated cranes, it shall be a grounded three-prong type permanent receptacle, not exceeding 300 volts.

(h) Hoisting equipment.

(1) Sheaves.

(i) Sheave grooves shall be smooth and free from surface defects which could cause rope damage.

(ii) Sheaves carrying ropes which can be momentarily unloaded shall be provided with close-fitting guards or other suitable devices to guide the rope back into the groove when the load is applied again.

(iii) The sheaves in the bottom block shall be equipped with close-fitting guards that will prevent ropes from becoming fouled when the block is lying on the ground with ropes loose.

(iv) Pockets and flanges of sheaves used with hoist chains shall be of such dimensions that the chain does not catch or bind during operation.

(v) All running sheaves shall be equipped with means for lubrication. Permanently lubricated, sealed and/or shielded bearings meet this requirement.

(2) Ropes.

(i) In using hoisting ropes, the crane manufacturer's recommendation shall be followed. The rated load divided by the number of parts of rope shall not exceed 20 percent of the nominal breaking strength of the rope.

(ii) Socketing shall be done in the manner specified by the manufacturer of the assembly.

(iii) Rope shall be secured to the drum as follows:

(a) No less than two wraps of rope shall remain on the drum when the hook is in its extreme low position.

(b) Rope end shall be anchored by a clamp securely attached to the drum, or by a socket arrangement approved by the crane or rope manufacturer.

(iv) Eye splices. [Reserved.]

(v) Rope clips attached with U-bolts shall have the U-bolts on the dead or short end of the rope. Spacing and number of all types of clips shall be in accordance with the clip manufacturer's recommendation. Clips shall be drop-forged steel in all sizes manufactured commercially. When a newly installed rope has been in operation for an hour, all nuts on the clip bolts shall be retightened.

(vi) Swaged or compressed fittings shall be applied as recommended by the rope or crane manufacturer.

(vii) Wherever exposed to temperatures, at which fiber cores would be damaged, rope having an independent wire-rope or wire-strand core, or other temperature-damage resistant core shall be used.

(viii) Replacement rope shall be the same size, grade, and construction as the original rope furnished by the crane manufacturer, unless otherwise recommended by a wire rope manufacturer due to actual working condition requirements.

(3) Equalizers. If a load is supported by more than one part of rope, the tension in the parts shall be equalized.

(4) Hooks. Hooks shall meet the manufacturer's recommendations and shall not be overloaded.

(i) Warning device.

Except for floor-operated cranes a gong or other effective warning signal shall be provided for each crane equipped with a power traveling mechanism.

(j) Inspection.

(1) Inspection classification.

(i) Initial inspection. Prior to initial use all new and altered cranes shall be inspected to insure compliance with the provisions of this section.

(ii) Inspection procedure for cranes in regular service is divided into two general classifications based upon the intervals at which inspection should be performed. The intervals in turn are dependent upon the nature of the critical components of the crane and the degree of their exposure to wear, deterioration, or malfunction. The two general classifications are herein designated as "frequent" and "periodic" with respective intervals between inspections as defined below:

(a) Frequent inspection—Daily to monthly intervals.

(b) Periodic inspection—1 to 12-month intervals.

(2) Frequent inspection. The following items shall be inspected for defects at intervals as defined in subparagraph (1)(ii) of this paragraph or as specifically indicated, including observation during operation for any defects which might appear between regular inspections. All deficiencies such as listed shall be carefully examined and determination made as to whether they constitute a safety hazard:

(i) All functional operating mechanisms for maladjustment interfering with proper operation. Daily.

(ii) Deterioration or leakage in lines, tanks, valves, drain pumps, and other parts of air or hydraulic systems. Daily.

(iii) Hooks with deformation or cracks. Visual inspection daily; monthly inspection with a certification record which includes the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection and the serial number, or other identifier, of the hook inspected. For hooks with cracks or having more than 15 percent in excess of normal throat opening or more than 10° twist from the plane of the unbent hook refer to paragraph (1)(3)(iii)(*a*) of this section.

(iv) Hoist chains, including end connections, for excessive wear, twist, distorted links interfering with proper function, or stretch beyond manufacturer's recommendations. Visual inspection daily; monthly inspection with a certification record which includes the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection and an identifier of the chain which was inspected.

[51 F.R. 34560, September 29, 1986]

(v) [Revoked]

[40 F.R. 27400, June 27, 1975.]

(vi) All functional operating mechanisms for excessive wear of components.

(vii) Rope reeving for noncompliance with manufacturer's recommendations.

(3) Periodic inspection. Complete inspections of the crane shall be performed at intervals as generally defined in subparagraph (1)(ii)(*b*) of this paragraph, depending upon its activity, severity of service, and environment, or as specifically indicated below. These inspections shall include the requirements of subparagraph (2) of this paragraph and in addition, the following items. Any deficiencies such as listed shall be carefully examined and determination made as to whether they constitute a safety hazard:

(i) Deformed, cracked, or corroded members.

(ii) Loose bolts or rivets.

(iii) Cracked or worn sheaves and drums.

(iv) Worn, cracked or distorted parts such as pins, bearings, shafts, gears, rollers, locking and clamping devices.

(v) Excessive wear on brake system parts, linings, pawls, and ratchets.

(vi) Load, wind, and other indicators over their full range, for any significant inaccuracies.

(vii) Gasoline, diesel, electric, or other powerplants for improper performance or noncompliance with applicable safety requirements.

(viii) Excessive wear of chain drive sprockets and excessive chain stretch.

(ix) Removed

(x) Electrical apparatus, for signs of pitting or any deterioration of controller contactors, limit switches and pushbutton stations.

(4) Cranes not in regular use.

(i) A crane which has been idle for a period of 1 month or more, but less than 6 months, shall be given an inspection conforming with requirements of subparagraph (2) of this paragraph and paragraph (m)(2) of this section before placing in service.

(ii) A crane which has been idle for a period of over 6 months shall be given a complete inspection conforming with requirements of subparagraphs (2) and (3) of this paragraph and paragraph (m)(2) of this section before placing in service.

(iii) Standby cranes shall be inspected at least semi-annually in accordance with requirements of subparagraph (2) of this paragraph and paragraph (m)(2) of this section.

(k) Testing.

(1) Operational tests.

(i) Prior to initial use all new and altered cranes shall be tested to insure compliance with this section including the following functions:

(**a**) Hoisting and lowering.

(**b**) Trolley travel.

(**c**) Bridge travel.

(**d**) Limit switches, locking and safety devices.

(ii) The trip setting of hoist limit switches shall be determined by tests with an empty hook traveling in increasing speeds up to the maximum speed. The actuating mechanism of the limit switch shall be located so that it will trip the switch, under all conditions, in sufficient time to prevent contact of the hook or hook block with any part of the trolley.

(2) Rated load test. Test loads shall not be more than 125 percent of the rated load unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. The test reports shall be placed on file where readily available to appointed personnel.

(l) Maintenance.

(1) Preventive maintenance. A preventive maintenance program based on the crane manufacturer's recommendations shall be established.

(2) Maintenance procedure.

(i) Before adjustments and repairs are started on a crane the following precautions shall be taken:

(**a**) The crane to be repaired shall be run to a location where it will cause the least interference with other cranes and operations in the area.

(**b**) All controllers shall be at the off position.

(**c**) The main or emergency switch shall be open and locked in the open position.

(**d**) Warning or "out of order" signs shall be placed on the crane, also on the floor beneath or on the hook where visible from the floor.

(**e**) Where other cranes are in operation on the same runway, rail stops or other suitable means shall be provided to prevent interference with the idle crane.

(**f**) Removed

(ii) After adjustments and repairs have been made the crane shall not be operated until all guards have been reinstalled, safety devices reactivated and maintenance equipment removed.

(3) Adjustments and repairs.

(i) Any unsafe conditions disclosed by the inspection requirements of paragraph (j) of this section shall be corrected before operation of the crane is resumed. Adjustments and repairs shall be done only by designated personnel.

(ii) Adjustments shall be maintained to assure correct functioning of components. The following are examples:

(a) All functional operating mechanisms.

(b) Limit switches.

(c) Control systems.

(d) Brakes.

(e) Power plants.

(iii) Repairs or replacements shall be provided promptly as needed for safe operation. The following are examples:

(a) Crane hooks showing defects described in paragraph (j)(2)(iii) of this section shall be discarded. Repairs by welding or reshaping are not generally recommended. If such repairs are attempted they shall only be done under competent supervision and the hook shall be tested to the load requirements of paragraph (k)(2) of this section before further use.

(b) Load attachment chains and rope slings showing defects described in paragraph (j)(2)(iv) and (v) of this section respectively.

(c) All critical parts which are cracked, broken, bent, or excessively worn.

(d) Pendant control stations shall be kept clean and function labels kept legible.

(m) Rope inspection.

(1) Running ropes. A thorough inspection of all ropes shall be made at least once a month and a certification record which includes the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection and an identifier for the ropes which were inspected shall be kept on file where readily available to appointed personnel. Any deterioration, resulting in appreciable loss of original strength, shall be carefully observed and determination made as to whether further use of the rope would constitute a safety hazard. Some of the conditions that could result in an appreciable loss of strength are the following:

[51 F.R. 34560, September 29, 1986]

(i) Reduction of rope diameter below nominal diameter due to loss of core support, internal or external corrosion, or wear of outside wires.

(ii) A number of broken outside wires and the degree of distribution or concentration of such broken wires.

(iii) Worn outside wires.

(iv) Corroded or broken wires at end connections.

(v) Corroded, cracked, bent, worn, or improperly applied end connections.

(vi) Severe kinking, crushing, cutting, or unstranding.

(2) Other ropes. All rope which has been idle for a period of a month or more due to shutdown or storage of a crane on which it is installed shall be given a thorough inspection before it is used. This inspection shall be for all types of deterioration and shall be performed by an appointed person whose approval shall be required for further use of the rope. A certification record shall be available for inspection which includes the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection and an identifier for the rope which was inspected.

[51 F.R. 34560, September 29, 1986]

(n) Handling the load.

(1) Size of load. The crane shall not be loaded beyond its rated load except for test purposes as provided in paragraph (k) of this section.

(2) Attaching the load.

(i) The hoist chain or hoist rope shall be free from kinks or twists and shall not be wrapped around the load.

(ii) The load shall be attached to the load block hook by means of slings or other approved devices.

(iii) Care shall be taken to make certain that the sling clears all obstacles.

(3) Moving the load.

(i) The load shall be well secured and properly balanced in the sling or lifting device before it is lifted more than a few inches.

(ii) Before starting to hoist the following conditions shall be noted:

(a) Hoist rope shall not be kinked.

(b) Multiple part lines shall not be twisted around each other.

(c) The hook shall be brought over the load in such a manner as to prevent swinging.

(iii) During hoisting care shall be taken that:

(a) There is no sudden acceleration or deceleration of the moving load.

(b) The load does not contact any obstructions.

(iv) Cranes shall not be used for side pulls except when specifically authorized by a responsible person who has determined that the stability of the crane is not thereby endangered and that various parts of the crane will not be overstressed.

(v) While any employee is on the load or hook, there shall be no hoisting, lowering, or traveling.

(vi) The employer shall require that the operator avoid carrying loads over people.

(vii) The operator shall test the brakes each time a load approaching the rated load is handled. The brakes shall be tested by raising the load a few inches and applying the brakes.

(viii) The load shall not be lowered below the point where less than two full wraps of rope remain on the hoisting drum.

(ix) When two or more cranes are used to lift a load one qualified responsible person shall be in charge of the operation. He shall analyze the operation and instruct all personnel involved in the proper positioning, rigging of the load, and the movements to be made.

(x) The employer shall insure that the operator does not leave his position at the controls while the load is suspended.

(xi) When starting the bridge and when the load or hook approaches near or over personnel, the warning signal shall be sounded.

(4) Hoist limit switch.

(i) At the beginning of each operator's shift, the upper limit switch of each hoist shall be tried out under no load. Extreme care shall be exercised; the block shall be "inched" into the limit or run in at slow speed. If the switch does not operate properly, the appointed person shall be immediately notified.

(ii) The hoist limit switch which controls the upper limit of travel of the load block shall never be used as an operating control.

(o) Other requirements, general.

(1) Ladders.

(i) The employer shall insure that hands are free from encumbrances while personnel are using ladders.

(ii) Articles which are too large to be carried in pockets or belts shall be lifted and lowered by hand line.

(2) Cabs.

(i) Necessary clothing and personal belongings shall be stored in such a manner as not to interfere with access or operation.

(ii) Tools, oil cans, waste, extra fuses, and other necessary articles shall be stored in the tool box, and shall not be permitted to lie loose in or about the cab.

(3) Fire extinguishers. The employer shall insure that operators are familiar with the operation and care of fire extinguishers provided.

1910.180—CRAWLER LOCOMOTIVE AND TRUCK CRANES

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

(1) A "crawler crane" consists of a rotating superstructure with power plant, operating machinery, and boom, mounted on a base, equipped with crawler treads for travel. Its function is to hoist and swing loads at various radii.

(2) A "locomotive crane" consists of a rotating superstructure with powerplant, operating machinery and boom, mounted on a base or car equipped for travel on railroad track. It may be self-propelled or propelled by an outside source. Its function is to hoist and swing loads at various radii.

(3) A "truck crane" consists of a rotating superstructure with powerplant, operating machinery and boom, mounted on an automotive truck equipped with a powerplant for travel. Its function is to hoist and swing loads at various radii.

(4) A "wheel mounted crane" (wagon crane) consists of a rotating superstructure with powerplant, operating machinery and boom, mounted on a base or platform equipped with axles and rubber-tired wheels for travel. The base is usually propelled by the engine in the superstructure, but it may be equipped with a separate engine controlled from the superstructure. Its function is to hoist and swing loads at various radii.

(5) An "accessory" is a secondary part or assembly of parts which contributes to the overall function and usefulness of a machine.

(6) "Appointed" means assigned specific responsibilities by the employer or the employer's representative

(7) "ANSI" means the American National Standards Institute.

(8) An "angle indicator" (boom) is an accessory which measures the angle of the boom to the horizontal.

(9) The "axis of rotation" is the vertical axis around which the crane superstructure rotates.

(10) "Axle" means the shaft or spindle with which or about which a wheel rotates. On truck- and wheel-mounted cranes it refers to an automotive type of axle assembly including housings, gearing, differential, bearings, and mounting appurtenances.

(11) "Axle" (bogie) means two or more automotive-type axles mounted in tandem in a frame so as to divide the load between the axles and permit vertical oscillation of the wheels.

(12) The "base" (mounting) is the traveling base or carrier on which the rotating superstructure is mounted such as a car, truck, crawlers, or wheel platform.

(13) The "boom" (crane) is a member hinged to the front of the rotating superstructure with the outer end supported by ropes leading to a gantry or A-frame and used for supporting the hoisting tackle.

(14) The "boom angle" is the angle between the longitudinal centerline of the boom and the horizontal. The boom longitudinal centerline is a straight line between the boom foot pin (heel pin) centerline and boom point sheave pin centerline.

(15) The "boom hoist" is a hoist drum and rope reeving system used to raise and lower the boom. The rope system may be all live reeving or a combination of live reeving and pendants.

(16) The "boom stop" is a device used to limit the angle of the boom at the highest position.

(17) A "brake" is a device used for retarding or stopping motion by friction or power means.

(18) A "cab" is a housing which covers the rotating superstructure machinery and/or operator's station. On truck-crane trucks a separate cab covers the driver's station.

(19) The "clutch" is a friction, electromagnetic, hydraulic, pneumatic, or positive mechanical device for engagement or disengagement of power.

(20) The "counterweight" is a weight used to supplement the weight of the machine in providing stability for lifting working loads.

(21) "Designated" means selected or assigned by the employer or the employer's representative as being qualified to perform specific duties.

(22) The "drum" is the cylindrical members around which ropes are wound for raising and lowering the load or boom.

(23) "Dynamic" (loading) means loads introduced into the machine or its components by forces in motion.

(24) The "gantry" (A-frame) is a structural frame, extending above the superstructure, to which the boom support ropes are reeved.

(25) A "jib" is an extension attached to the boom point to provide added boom length for lifting specified loads. The jib may be in line with the boom or offset to various angles.

(26) "Load" (working) means the external load, in pounds, applied to the crane, including the weight of load-attaching equipment such as load blocks, shackles, and slings.

(27) "Load block" (upper) means the assembly of hook or shackle, swivel, sheaves, pins, and frame suspended from the boom point.

(28) "Load block" (lower) means the assembly of hook or shackle, swivel, sheaves, pins, and frame suspended by the hoisting ropes.

(29) A "load hoist" is a hoist drum and rope reeving system used for hoisting and lowering loads.

(30) "Load ratings" are crane ratings in pounds established by the manufacturer in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(31) "Outriggers" are extendable or fixed metal arms, attached to the mounting base, which rest on supports at the outer ends.

(32) "Rail clamp" means a tong-like metal device, mounted on a locomotive crane car, which can be connected to the track.

(33) "Reeving" means a rope system in which the rope travels around drums and sheaves.

(34) "Rope" refers to a wire rope unless otherwise specified.

(35) "Side loading" means a load applied at an angle to the vertical plane of the boom.

(36) A "standby crane" is a crane which is not in regular service but which is used occasionally or intermittently as required.

(37) A "standing (guy) rope" is a supporting rope which maintains a constant distance between the points of attachment to the two components connected by the rope.

(38) "Structural competence" means the ability of the machine and its components to withstand the stresses imposed by applied loads.

(39) "Superstructure" means the rotating upper frame structure of the machine and the operating machinery mounted thereon.

(40) "Swing" means the rotation of the superstructure for movement of loads in a horizontal direction about the axis of rotation.

(41) "Swing mechanism" means the machinery involved in providing rotation of the superstructure.

(42) "Tackle" is an assembly of ropes and sheaves arranged for hoisting and pulling.

(43) "Transit" means the moving or transporting of a crane from one jobsite to another.

(44) "Travel" means the function of the machine moving from one location to another, on a jobsite.

(45) The "travel mechanism" is the machinery involved in providing travel.

(46) "Wheelbase" means the distance between centers of front and rear axles. For a multiple axle assembly the axle center for wheelbase measurement is taken as the midpoint of the assembly.

(47) The "whipline" (auxiliary hoist) is a separate hoist rope system of lighter load capacity and higher speed than provided by the main hoist.

(48) A "winch head" is a power driven spool for handling of loads by means of friction between fiber or wire rope and spool.

(b) General requirements.

(1) Application. This section applies to crawler cranes, locomotive cranes, wheel mounted cranes of both truck and self-propelled wheel type, and any variations thereof which retain the same fundamental characteristics. This section includes only cranes of the above types, which are basically powered by internal combustion engines or electric motors and which utilize drums and ropes. Cranes designed for railway and automobile wreck clearances are excepted. The requirements of this section are applicable only to machines when used as lifting cranes.

(2) New and existing equipment. All new crawler, locomotive, and truck cranes constructed and utilized on or after August 31, 1971, shall meet the design specifications of the American National Standard Safety Code for Crawler, Locomotive, and Truck Cranes, ANSI B30.5-1968. Crawler, locomotive, and truck cranes constructed prior to August 31, 1971, should be modified to conform to those design specifications by February 15, 1972, unless it can be shown that the crane cannot feasibly or economically be altered and that the crane substantially complies with the requirements of this section.

(3) Designated personnel. Only designated personnel shall be permitted to operate a crane covered by this section.

[38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(c) Load ratings.

(1) Load ratings—where stability governs lifting performance.

(i) The margin of stability for determination of load ratings, with booms of stipulated lengths at stipulated working radii for the various types of crane mountings, is established by taking a percentage of the loads which will produce a condition of tipping or balance with the boom in the least stable direction, relative to the mounting. The load ratings shall not exceed the following percentages for cranes, with the indicated types of mounting under conditions stipulated in subdivisions (ii) and (iii) of this subparagraph.

Type of crane mounting	*Maximum load ratings (percent of tipping loads)*
Locomotive, without outriggers:	
Booms 60 feet or less	85
Booms over 60 feet	[1] 85
Locomotive, using outriggers fully extended	80
Crawler, without outriggers	75
Crawler, using outriggers fully extended	85
Truck and wheel mounted without outriggers or using outriggers fully extended	85

[1] Unless this results in less than 30,000 pound-feet net stabilizing moment about the rail, which shall be minimum with such booms.

(ii) The following stipulations shall govern the application of the values in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph for locomotive cranes:

(**a**) Tipping with or without the use of outriggers occurs when half of the wheels farthest from the load leave the rail.

(**b**) The crane shall be standing on track which is level within 1 percent grade.

(**c**) Radius of the load is the horizontal distance from a projection of the axis of rotation to the rail support surface, before loading, to the center of vertical hoist line or tackle with load applied.

(**d**) Tipping loads from which ratings are determined shall be applied under static conditions only, i.e., without dynamic effect of hoisting, lowering, or swinging.

(**e**) The weight of all auxiliary handling devices such as hoist blocks, hooks, and slings shall be considered a part of the load rating.

(iii) Stipulations governing the application of the values in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph for crawler, truck, and wheel-mounted cranes shall be in accordance with Crane Load-Stability Test Code, Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE) J765.

(iv) The effectiveness of these preceding stability factors will be influenced by such additional factors as freely suspended loads, track, wind, or ground conditions, condition and inflation of rubber tires, boom lengths, proper operating speeds for existing conditions, and, in general, careful and competent operation. All of these shall be taken into account by the user.

(2) Load rating chart. A substantial and durable rating chart with clearly legible letters and figures shall be provided with each crane and securely fixed to the crane cab in a location easily visible to the operator while seated at his control station.

(d) Inspection classification.

(1) Initial inspection. Prior to initial use all new and altered cranes shall be inspected to insure compliance with provisions of this section.

(2) Regular inspection. Inspection procedure for cranes in regular service is divided into two general classifications based upon the intervals at which inspection should be performed. The intervals in turn are dependent upon the nature of the critical components of the crane and the degree of their exposure to wear, deterioration, or malfunction. The two general classifications are herein designated as "frequent" and "periodic", with respective intervals between inspections as defined below:

(i) Frequent inspection: Daily to monthly intervals.

(ii) Periodic inspection: 1- to 12-month intervals, or as specifically recommended by the manufacturer.

(3) Frequent inspection. Items such as the following shall be inspected for defects at intervals as defined in subdivision (2)(i) of this subparagraph or as specifically indicated including observation during operation for any defects which might appear between regular inspections. Any deficiencies such as listed shall be carefully examined and determination made as to whether they constitute a safety hazard:

(i) All control mechanisms for maladjustment interfering with proper operation: Daily.

(ii) All control mechanisms for excessive wear of components and contamination by lubricants or other foreign matter.

(iii) All safety devices for malfunction.

(iv) Deterioration or leakage in air or hydraulic systems: Daily.

(v) Crane hooks with deformations or cracks. For hooks with cracks or having more than 15 percent in excess of normal throat opening or more than 10° twist from the plane of the unbent hook.

(vi) Rope reeving for noncompliance with manufacturer's recommendations.

(vii) Electrical apparatus for malfunctioning, signs of excessive deterioration, dirt, and moisture accumulation.

(4) Periodic inspection. Complete inspections of the crane shall be performed at intervals as generally defined in subparagraph (2)(ii) of this paragraph depending upon its activity, severity of service, and environment, or as specifically indicated below. These inspections shall include the requirements of subparagraph (3) of this paragraph and in addition, items such as the following. Any deficiencies such as listed shall be carefully examined and determination made as to whether they constitute a safety hazard:

(i) Deformed, cracked, or corroded members in the crane structure and boom.

(ii) Loose bolts or rivets.

(iii) Cracked or worn sheaves and drums.

(iv) Worn, cracked, or distorted parts such as pins, bearings, shafts, gears, rollers and locking devices.

(v) Excessive wear on brake and clutch system parts, linings, pawls, and ratchets.

(vi) Load, boom angle, and other indicators over their full range, for any significant inaccuracies.

(vii) Gasoline, diesel, electric, or other power plants for improper performance or noncompliance with safety requirements.

(viii) Excessive wear of chain-drive sprockets and excessive chain stretch.

(ix) Travel steering, braking, and locking devices, for malfunction.

(x) Excessively worn or damaged tires.

(5) Cranes not in regular use.

(i) A crane which has been idle for a period of one month or more, but less than 6 months, shall be given an inspection conforming with requirements of subparagraph (3) of this paragraph and paragraph (g)(2)(ii) of this section before placing in service.

(ii) A crane which has been idle for a period of six months shall be given a complete inspection conforming with requirements of subparagraphs (3) and (4) of this paragraph and paragraph (g)(2)(ii) of this section before placing in service.

(iii) Standby cranes shall be inspected at least semiannually in accordance with requirements of subparagraph (3) of this paragraph and paragraph (g)(2)(ii) of this section. Such cranes which are exposed to adverse environment should be inspected more frequently.

(6) Inspection records. Certification records which include the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection and the serial number, or other identifier, of the crane which was inspected shall be made monthly on critical items in use such as brakes, crane hooks, and ropes. This certification record shall be kept readily available.

[51 F.R. 34560, September 29, 1986

(e) Testing.

(1) Operational tests.

(i) In addition to prototype tests and quality-control measures, each new production crane shall be tested by the manufacturer to the extent necessary to insure compliance with the operational requirements of this paragraph including functions such as the following:

(a) Load hoisting and lowering mechanisms.

(b) Boom hoisting and lower mechanisms.

(c) Swinging mechanism.

(d) Travel mechanism.

(e) Safety devices.

(ii) Where the complete production crane is not supplied by one manufacturer such tests shall be conducted at final assembly.

(iii) Certified production-crane test results shall be made available.

(2) Rated load test.

(i) Written reports shall be available showing test procedures and confirming the adequacy of repairs or alterations.

(ii) Test loads shall not exceed 110 percent of the rated load at any selected working radius.

(iii) Where rerating is necessary:

(a) Crawler, truck, and wheel-mounted cranes shall be tested in accordance with SAE Recommended Practice, Crane Load Stability Test Code J765 (April 1961).

(b) Locomotive cranes shall be tested in accordance with paragraph (c)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section.

(c) Rerating test report shall be readily available.

(iv) No cranes shall be rerated in excess of the original load ratings unless such rating changes are approved by the crane manufacturer or final assembler.

(f) Maintenance procedure, general.

After adjustments and repairs have been made the crane shall not be operated until all guards have been reinstalled, safety devices reactivated, and maintenance equipment removed.

(g) Rope inspection.

(1) Running ropes. A thorough inspection of all ropes in use shall be made at least once a month and a certification record which includes the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection and an identifier for the ropes shall be prepared and kept on file where readily available. All inspections shall be performed by an appointed or authorized person. Any deterioration, resulting in appreciable loss of original strength shall be carefully observed and determination made as to whether further use of the rope would constitute a safety hazard. Some of the conditions that could result in an appreciable loss of strength are the following:

[51 F.R. 34561, September 29, 1986]

(i) Reduction of rope diameter below nominal diameter due to loss of core support, internal or external corrosion, or wear of outside wires.

(ii) A number of broken outside wires and the degree of distribution of concentration of such broken wires.

(iii) Worn outside wires.

(iv) Corroded or broken wires at end connections.

(v) Corroded, cracked, bent, worn, or improperly applied end connections.

(vi) Severe kinking, crushing, cutting, or unstranding.

(2) Other ropes.

(i) Heavy wear and/or broken wires may occur in sections in contact with equalizer sheaves or other sheaves where rope travel is limited, or with saddles. Particular care shall be taken to inspect ropes at these locations.

(ii) All rope which has been idle for a period of a month or more due to shutdown or storage of a crane on which it is installed shall be given a thorough inspection before it is used. This inspection shall be for all types of deterioration and shall be performed by an appointed or authorized person whose approval shall be required for further use of the rope. A certification record which includes the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection, and an identifier for the rope which was inspected shall be prepared and kept readily available.

[51 F.R. 34561, September 29, 1986]

(iii) Particular care shall be taken in the inspection of nonrotating rope.

(h) Handling the load.

(1) Size of load.

(i) No crane shall be loaded beyond the rated load, except for test purposes as provided in paragraph (e) of this section.

(ii) When loads which are limited by structural competence rather than by stability are to be handled, it shall be ascertained that the weight of the load has been determined within plus or minus 10 percent before it is lifted.

(2) Attaching the load.

(i) The hoist rope shall not be wrapped around the load.

(ii) The load shall be attached to the hook by means of slings or other approved devices.

(3) Moving the load.

(i) The employer shall assure that:

(a) The crane is level and where necessary blocked properly.

(b) The load is well secured and properly balanced in the sling or lifting device before it is lifted more than a few inches.

(ii) Before starting to hoist, the following conditions shall be noted:

(a) Hoist rope shall not be kinked.

(b) Multiple part lines shall not be twisted around each other.

(c) The hook shall be brought over the load in such a manner as to prevent swinging.

(d) Removed

(iii) During hoisting care shall be taken that:

(a) There is no sudden acceleration or deceleration of the moving load.

(b) The load does not contact any obstructions.

(iv) Side loading of booms shall be limited to freely suspended loads. Cranes shall not be used for dragging loads sideways.

(v) No hoisting, lowering, swinging, or traveling shall be done while anyone is on the load or hook.

(vi) The operator should avoid carrying loads over people.

(vii) On truck-mounted cranes, no loads shall be lifted over the front area except as approved by the crane manufacturer.

(viii) The operator shall test the brakes each time a load approaching the rated load is handled by raising it a few inches and applying the brakes.

(ix) Outriggers shall be used when the load to be handled at that particular radius exceeds the rated load without outriggers as given by the manufacturer for that crane. Where floats are used they shall be securely attached to the outriggers. Wood blocks used to support outriggers shall:

(a) Be strong enough to prevent crushing.

(b) Be free from defects.

(c) Be of sufficient width and length to prevent shifting or toppling under load.

(x) Neither the load nor the boom shall be lowered below the point where less than two full wraps of rope remain on their respective drums.

(xi) Before lifting loads with locomotive cranes without using outriggers, means shall be applied to prevent the load from being carried by the truck springs.

(xii) When two or more cranes are used to lift one load, one designated person shall be responsible for the operation. He shall be required to analyze the operation and instruct all personnel involved in the proper positioning, rigging of the load, and the movements to be made.

(xiii) In transit the following additional precautions shall be exercised:

(a) The boom shall be carried in line with the direction of motion.

(b) The superstructure shall be secured against rotation, except when negotiating turns when there is an operator in the cab or the boom is supported on a dolly.

(c) The empty hook shall be lashed or otherwise restrained so that it cannot swing freely.

(xiv) Before traveling a crane with load, a designated person shall be responsible for determining and controlling safety. Decisions such as position of load, boom location, ground support, travel route, and speed of movement shall be in accord with his determinations.

(xv) A crane with or without load shall not be traveled with the boom so high that it may bounce back over the cab.

(xvi) When rotating the crane, sudden starts and stops shall be avoided. Rotational speed shall be such that the load does not swing out beyond the radii at which it can be controlled. A tag or restraint line shall be used when rotation of the load is hazardous.

(xvii) When a crane is to be operated at a fixed radius, the boom-hoist pawl or other positive locking device shall be engaged.

(xviii) Ropes shall not be handled on a winch head without the knowledge of the operator.

(xix) While a winch head is being used, the operator shall be within convenient reach of the power unit control lever.

(4) Holding the load.

(i) The operator shall not be permitted to leave his position at the controls while the load is suspended.

(ii) No person should be permitted to stand or pass under a load on the hook.

(iii) If the load must remain suspended for any considerable length of time, the operator shall hold the drum from rotating in the lowering direction by activating the positive controllable means of the operator's station.

(i) Other requirements.

(1) Rail clamps. Rail clamps shall not be used as a means of restraining tipping of a locomotive crane.

(2) Ballast or counterweight. Cranes shall not be operated without the full amount of any ballast or counterweight in place as specified by the maker, but truck cranes that have dropped the ballast or counterweight may be operated temporarily with special care and only for light loads without full ballast or counterweight in place. The ballast or counterweight in place specified by the manufacturer shall not be exceeded.

(3) Cabs.

(i) Necessary clothing and personal belongings shall be stored in such a manner as to not interfere with access or operation.

(ii) Tools, oil cans, waste, extra fuses, and other necessary articles shall be stored in the tool box, and shall not be permitted to lie loose in or about the cab.

(4) Refueling.

(i) Refueling with small portable containers shall be done with an approved safety type can equipped with an automatic closing cap and flame arrester. Refer to § 1910.155(c)(3) for definition of approved.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(ii) Machines shall not be refueled with the engine running.

(5) Fire extinguishers.

(i) A carbon dioxide, dry chemical, or equivalent fire extinguisher shall be kept in the cab or vicinity of the crane.

(ii) Operating and maintenance personnel shall be made familiar with the use and care of the fire extinguishers provided.

(6) Swinging locomotive cranes. A locomotive crane shall not be swung into a position where railway cars on an adjacent track might strike it, until it has been ascertained that cars are not being moved on the adjacent track and proper flag protection has been established.

(j) Operating near electric power lines.

(1) Clearances. Except where the electrical distribution and transmission lines have been deenergized and visibly grounded at point of work or where insulating barriers not a part of or an attachment to the crane have been erected to prevent physical contact with the lines, cranes shall be operated proximate to, under, over, by, or near power-lines only in accordance with the following:

(i) For lines rated 50 kv. or below, minimum clearance between the lines and any part of the crane or load shall be 10 feet.

(ii) For lines rated over 50 kv. minimum, clearance between the lines and any part of the crane or load shall be 10 feet plus 0.4 inch for each 1 kv. over 50 kv., or twice the length of the line insulator but never less than 10 feet.

(iii) In transit with no load and boom lowered the clearance shall be a minimum of 4 feet.

(2) Boom guards. Cage-type boom guards, insulating links, or proximity warning devices may be used on cranes, but the use of such devices shall not operate to alter the requirements of subparagraph (1) of this paragraph.

(3) Notification. Before the commencement of operations near electrical lines, the owners of the lines or their authorized representative shall be notified and provided with all pertinent information. The cooperation of the owner shall be requested.

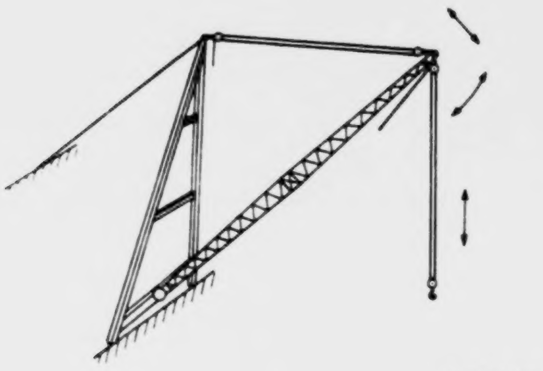
(4) Overhead wires. Any overhead wire shall be considered to be an energized line unless and until the person owning such line or the electrical utility authorities indicate that it is not an energized line.

1910.181—DERRICKS

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

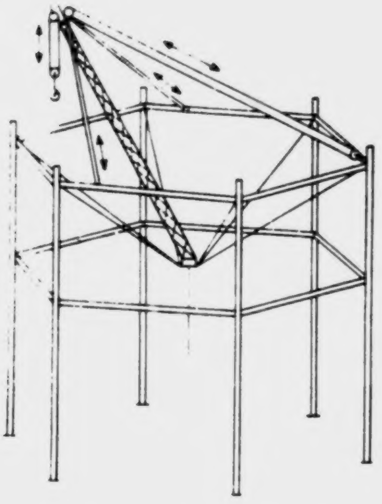
(1) A "derrick" is an apparatus consisting of a mast or equivalent member held at the head by guys or braces, with or without a boom, for use with a hoisting mechanism and operating ropes.

(2) "A-frame derrick" means a derrick in which the boom is hinged from a cross member between the bottom ends of two upright members spread apart at the lower ends and joined at the top; the boom point secured to the junction of the side members, and the side members are braced or guyed from this junction point.



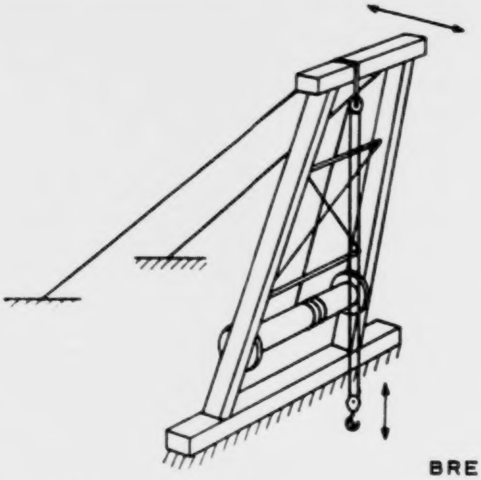
A-FRAME

(3) A "basket derrick" is a derrick without a boom, similar to a gin pole, with its base supported by ropes attached to corner posts or other parts of the structure. The base is at a lower elevation than its supports. The location of the base of a basket derrick can be changed by varying the length of the rope supports. The top of the pole is secured with multiple reeved guys to position the top of the pole to the desired location by varying the length of the upper guy lines. The load is raised and lowered by ropes through a sheave or block secured to the top of the pole.



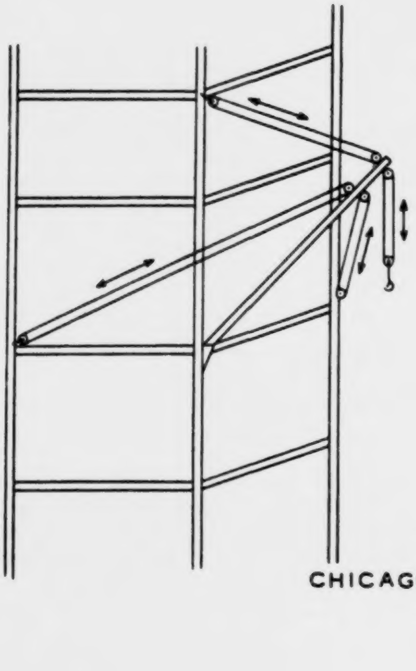
BASKET

(4) "Breast derrick" means a derrick without boom. The mast consists of two side members spread farther apart at the base than at the top and tied together at top and bottom by rigid members. The mast is prevented from tipping forward by guys connected to its top. The load is raised and lowered by ropes through a sheave or block secured to the top crosspiece.



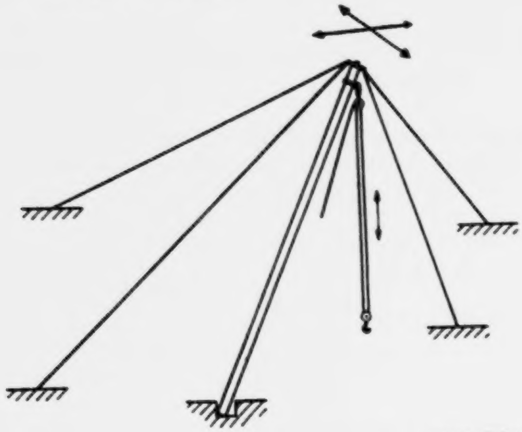
BREAST

(5) "Chicago boom derrick" means a boom which is attached to a structure, an outside upright member of the structure serving as the mast, and the boom being stepped in a fixed socket clamped to the upright. The derrick is complete with load, boom, and boom point swing line falls.



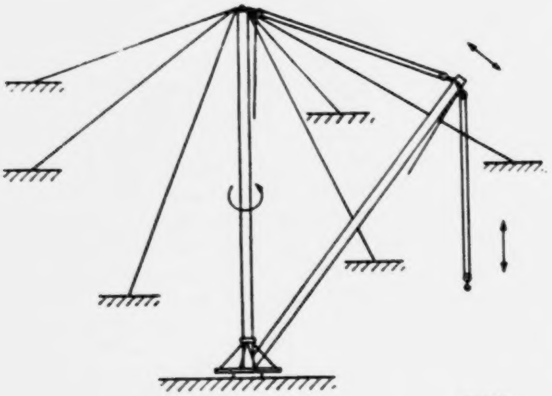
CHICAGO BOOM

(6) A "gin pole derrick" is a derrick without a boom. Its guys are so arranged from its top as to permit leaning the mast in any direction. The load is raised and lowered by ropes reeved through sheaves or blocks at the top of the mast.



GIN POLE

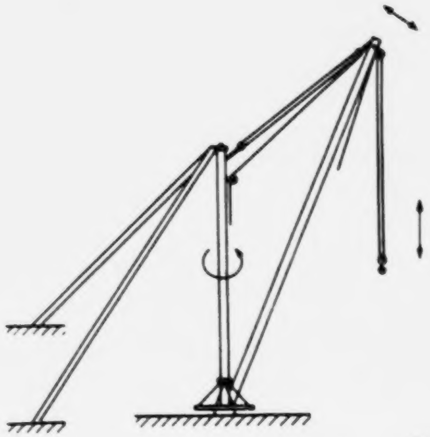
(7) "Guy derrick" means a fixed derrick consisting of a mast capable of being rotated, supported in a vertical position by guys, and a boom whose bottom end is hinged or pivoted to move in a vertical plane with a reeved rope between the head of the mast and the boom point for raising and lowering the boom, and a reeved rope from the boom point for raising and lowering the load.



GUY

(8) "Shearleg derrick" means a derrick without a boom and similar to a breast derrick. The mast, wide at the bottom and narrow at the top, is hinged at the bottom and has its top secured by a multiple reeved guy to permit handling loads at various radii by means of load tackle suspended from the mast top.

(9) A "stiffleg derrick" is a derrick similar to a guy derrick except that the mast is supported or held in place by two or more stiff members, called stifflegs, which are capable of resisting either tensile or compressive forces. Sills are generally provided to connect the lower ends of the stifflegs to the foot of the mast.



STIFF LEG

(10) "Appointed" means assigned specific responsibilities by the employer or the employer's representative.

(11) "ANSI" means the American National Standards Institute.

(12) A boom is a timber or metal section or strut, pivoted or hinged at the heel (lower end) at a location fixed in height on a frame or mast or vertical member, and with its point (upper end) supported by chains, ropes, or rods to the upper end of the frame, mast, or vertical member. A rope for raising and lowering the load is reeved through sheaves or a block at the boom point. The length of the boom shall be taken as the straight line distance between the axis of the foot pin and the axis of the boom point sheave pin, or where used, the axis of the upper load block attachment pin.

(13) "Boom harness" means the block and sheave arrangement on the boom point to which the topping lift cable is reeved for lowering and raising the boom.

(14) The "boom point" is the outward end of the top section of the boom.

(15) "Derrick bullwheel" means a horizontal ring or wheel, fastened to the foot of a derrick, for the purpose of turning the derrick by means of ropes leading from this wheel to a powered drum.

(16) "Designated" means selected or assigned by the employer or employer's representative as being qualified to perform specific duties.

(17) "Eye" means a loop formed at the end of a rope by securing the dead end to the live end at the base of the loop.

(18) A "fiddle block" is a block consisting of two sheaves in the same plane held in place by the same cheek plates.

(19) The "foot bearing" or "foot block" (sill block) is the lower support on which the mast rotates.

(20) A "gudgeon pin" is a pin connecting the mast cap to the mast allowing rotation of the mast.

(21) A "guy" is a rope used to steady or secure the mast or other member in the desired position.

(22) "Load, working" means the external load, in pounds, applied to the derrick, including the weight of load attaching equipment such as load blocks, shackles, and slings.

(23) "Load block, lower" means the assembly of sheaves, pins, and frame suspended by the hoisting rope.

(24) "Load block, upper" means the assembly of sheaves, pins, and frame suspended from the boom.

(25) "Mast" means the upright member of the derrick.

(26) "Mast cap (spider)" means the fitting at the top of the mast to which the guys are connected.

(27) "Reeving" means a rope system in which the rope travels around drums and sheaves.

(28) "Rope" refers to wire rope unless otherwise specified.

(29) "Safety Hook" means a hook with a latch to prevent slings or load from accidentally slipping off the hook.

(30) "Side loading" is a load applied at an angle to the vertical plane of the boom.

(31) The "sill" is a member connecting the foot block and stiffleg or a member connecting the lower ends of a double member mast.

(32) A "standby derrick" is a derrick not in regular service which is used occasionally or intermittently as required.

(33) "Stiffleg" means a rigid member supporting the mast at the head.

(34) "Swing" means rotation of the mast and/or boom for movements of loads in a horizontal direction about the axis of rotation.

(b) General requirements.

(1) Application. This section applies to guy, stiffleg, basket, breast, gin pole, Chicago boom and A-frame derricks of the stationary type, capable of handling loads at variable reaches and powered by hoists through systems of rope reeving, used to perform lifting hook work, single or multiple line bucket work, grab, grapple, and magnet work. Derricks may be permanently installed for temporary use as in construction work. The requirements of this section also apply to any modification of these types which retain their fundamental features, except for floating derricks.

(2) New and existing equipment. All new derricks constructed and installed on or after August 31, 1971, shall meet the design specifications of the American National Standard Safety Code for Derricks, ANSI B30.6–1969.

(3) **Designated personnel.** Only designated personnel shall be permitted to operate a derrick covered by this section.

[38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(c) Load ratings.

(1) **Rated load marking.** For permanently installed derricks with fixed lengths of boom, guy, and mast, a substantial, durable, and clearly legible rating chart shall be provided with each derrick and securely affixed where it is visible to personnel responsible for the safe operation of the equipment. The chart shall include the following data:

(i) Manufacturer's approved load ratings at corresponding ranges of boom angle or operating radii.

(ii) Specific lengths of components on which the load ratings are based.

(iii) Required parts for hoist reeving. Size and construction of rope may be shown either on the rating chart or in the operating manual.

(2) **Nonpermanent installations.** For nonpermanent installations, the manufacturer shall provide sufficient information from which capacity charts can be prepared for the particular installation. The capacity charts shall be located at the derricks or the jobsite office.

(d) Inspection.

(1) **Inspection classification.**

(i) Prior to initial use all new and altered derricks shall be inspected to insure compliance with the provisions of this section.

(ii) Inspection procedure for derricks in regular service is divided into two general classifications based upon the intervals at which inspection should be performed. The intervals in turn are dependent upon the nature of the critical components of the derrick and the degree of their exposure to wear, deterioration, or malfunction. The two general classifications are herein designated as frequent and periodic with respective intervals between inspections as defined below:

(a) Frequent inspection—Daily to monthly intervals.

(b) Periodic inspection—1- to 12-month intervals, or as specified by the manufacturer.

(2) **Frequent inspection.** Items such as the following shall be inspected for defects at intervals as defined in subparagraph (1)(ii)(*a*) of this paragraph or as specifically indicated, including observation during operation for any defects which might appear between regular inspections. Deficiencies shall be carefully examined for any safety hazard:

(i) All control mechanisms: Inspect daily for adjustment, wear, and lubrication.

(ii) All chords and lacing: Inspect daily, visually.

(iii) Tension in guys: Daily.

(iv) Plumb of the mast.

(v) Deterioration or leakage in air or hydraulic systems: Daily.

(vi) Derrick hooks for deformations or cracks; for hooks with cracks or having more than 15 percent in excess of normal throat opening or more than 10° twist from the plane of the unbent hook, refer to paragraph (e)(3)(iii) of this section.

(vii) Rope reeving; visual inspection for noncompliance with derrick manufacturer's recommendations.

(viii) Hoist brakes, clutches, and operating levers: check daily for proper functioning before beginning operations.

(ix) Electrical apparatus for malfunctioning, signs of excessive deterioration, dirt, and moisture accumulation.

(3) Periodic inspection.

(i) Complete inspections of the derrick shall be performed at intervals as generally defined in subparagraph (1)(ii)(*b*) of this paragraph depending upon its activity, severity of service, and environment, or as specifically indicated below. These inspections shall include the requirements of subparagraph (2) of this paragraph and in addition, items such as the following. Deficiencies shall be carefully examined and a determination made as to whether they constitute a safety hazard:

(a) Structural members for deformations, cracks, and corrosion.

(b) Bolts or rivets for tightness.

(c) Parts such as pins, bearings, shafts, gears, sheaves, drums, rollers, locking and clamping devices, for wear, cracks, and distortion.

(d) Gudgeon pin for cracks, wear, and distortion each time the derrick is to be erected.

(e) Powerplants for proper performance and compliance with applicable safety requirements.

(f) Hooks.

(ii) Foundation or supports shall be inspected for continued ability to sustain the imposed loads.

(4) Derricks not in regular use.

(i) A derrick which has been idle for a period of 1 month or more, but less than 6 months, shall be given an inspection conforming with requirements of subparagraph (2) of this paragraph and paragraph (g)(3) of this section before placing in service.

(ii) A derrick which has been idle for a period of over 6 months shall be given a complete inspection conforming with requirements of subparagraphs (2) and (3) of this paragraph and paragraph (g)(3) of this section before placing in service.

(iii) Standby derricks shall be inspected at least semiannually in accordance with requirements of subparagraph (2) of this paragraph and paragraph (g)(3) of this section.

(e) Testing.

(1) Operational tests. Prior to initial use all new and altered derricks shall be tested to insure compliance with this section including the following functions:

(i) Load hoisting and lowering.

(ii) Boom up and down.

(iii) Swing.

(iv) Operation of clutches and brakes of hoist.

(2) Anchorages. All anchorages shall be approved by the appointed person. Rock and hairpin anchorages may require special testing.

(f) Maintenance.

(1) Preventive maintenance. A preventive maintenance program based on the derrick manufacturer's recommendations shall be established.

(2) Maintenance procedure.

(i) Before adjustments and repairs are started on a derrick the following precautions shall be taken:

(a) The derrick to be repaired shall be arranged so it will cause the least interference with other equipment and operations in the area.

(b) All hoist drum dogs shall be engaged.

(c) The main or emergency switch shall be locked in the open position, if an electric hoist is used.

(d) Warning or out of order signs shall be placed on the derrick and hoist.

(e) The repairs of booms of derricks shall either be made when the booms are lowered and adequately supported or safely tied off.

(f) A good communication system shall be set up between the hoist operator and the appointed individual in charge of derrick operations before any work on the equipment is started.

(ii) After adjustments and repairs have been made the derrick shall not be operated until all guards have been reinstalled, safety devices reactivated, and maintenance equipment removed.

(3) Adjustments and repairs.

(i) Any unsafe conditions disclosed by inspection shall be corrected before operation of the derrick is resumed.

(ii) Adjustments shall be maintained to assure correct functioning of components.

(iii) Repairs or replacements shall be provided promptly as needed for safe operation. The following are examples of conditions requiring prompt repair or replacement:

(a) Hooks showing defects described in paragraph (d)(2)(vi) of this section shall be discarded.

(b) All critical parts which are cracked, broken, bent, or excessively worn.

(c) Revoked

(d) All replacement and repaired parts shall have at least the original safety factor.

(g) Rope inspection.

(1) Running ropes. A thorough inspection of all ropes in use shall be made at least once a month and a certification record which includes the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection, and an identifier for the ropes which were inspected shall be prepared and kept on file where readily available. Any deterioration, resulting in appreciable loss of original strength shall be carefully observed and determination made as to whether further use of the rope would constitute a safety hazard. Some of the conditions that could result in an appreciable loss of strength are the following:

[51 F.R. 34561, September 29, 1986]

(i) Reduction of rope diameter below nominal diameter due to loss of core support, internal or external corrosion, or wear of outside wires.

(ii) A number of broken outside wires and the degree of distribution or concentration of such broken wires.

(iii) Worn outside wires.

(iv) Corroded or broken wires at end connections.

(v) Corroded, cracked, bent, worn, or improperly applied end connections.

(vi) Severe kinking, crushing, cutting, or unstranding.

(2) Limited travel ropes. Heavy wear and/or broken wires may occur in sections in contact with equalizer sheaves or other sheaves where rope travel is limited, or with saddles. Particular care shall be taken to inspect ropes at these locations.

(3) Idle ropes. All rope which has been idle for a period of a month or more due to shutdown or storage of a derrick on which it is installed shall be given a thorough inspection before it is used.

This inspection shall be for all types of deterioration. A certification record shall be prepared and kept readily available which includes the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection, and an identifier for the ropes which were inspected.

[51 F.R. 34561, September 29, 1986]

(4) Nonrotating ropes. Particular care shall be taken in the inspection of nonrotating rope.

(h) Operations of derricks.

Derrick operations shall be directed only by the individual specifically designated for that purpose.

(i) Handling the load.

(1) Size of load.

(i) No derrick shall be loaded beyond the rated load.

(ii) When loads approach the maximum rating of the derrick, it shall be ascertained that the weight of the load has been determined within plus or minus 10 percent before it is lifted.

(2) Attaching the load.

(i) The hoist rope shall not be wrapped around the load.

(ii) The load shall be attached to the hook by means of slings or other suitable devices.

(3) Moving the load.

(i) The load shall be well secured and properly balanced in the sling or lifting device before it is lifted more than a few inches.

(ii) Before starting to hoist, the following conditions shall be noted:

(a) Hoist rope shall not be kinked.

(b) Multiple part lines shall not be twisted around each other.

(c) The hook shall be brought over the load in such a manner as to prevent swinging.

(d) Removed

(iii) During hoisting, care shall be taken that:

(a) There is no sudden acceleration or deceleration of the moving load.

(b) Load does not contact any obstructions.

(iv) A derrick shall not be used for side loading except when specifically authorized by a responsible person who has determined that the various structural components will not be overstressed.

(v) No hoisting, lowering, or swinging shall be done while anyone is on the load or hook.

(vi) The operator should avoid carrying loads over people.

(vii) The operator shall test the brakes each time a load approaching the rated load is handled by raising it a few inches and applying the brakes.

(viii) Neither the load nor boom shall be lowered below the point where less than two full wraps of rope remain on their respective drums.

(ix) When rotating a derrick, sudden starts and stops shall be avoided. Rotational speed shall be such that the load does not swing out beyond the radius at which it can be controlled.

(x) Boom and hoisting rope systems shall not be twisted.

(4) Holding the load.

(i) The operator shall not be allowed to leave his position at the controls while the load is suspended.

(ii) People should not be permitted to stand or pass under a load on the hook.

(iii) If the load must remain suspended for any considerable length of time, a dog, or pawl and ratchet, or other equivalent means, rather than the brake alone, shall be used to hold the load.

(5) Use of winch heads.

(i) Ropes shall not be handled on a winch head without the knowledge of the operator.

(ii) While a winch head is being used, the operator shall be within convenient reach of the power unit control lever.

(6) Securing boom. Dogs, pawls, or other positive holding mechanism on the hoist shall be engaged. When not in use, the derrick boom shall:

(i) Be laid down;

(ii) Be secured to a stationary member, as nearly under the head as possible, by attachment of a sling to the load block; or

(iii) Be hoisted to a vertical position and secured to the mast.

(j) Other requirements.

(1) Guards.

(i) Exposed moving parts, such as gears, ropes, setscrews, projecting keys, chains, chain sprockets, and reciprocating components, which constitute a hazard under normal operating conditions shall be guarded.

(ii) Guards shall be securely fastened.

(iii) Each guard shall be capable of supporting without permanent distortion, the weight of a 200-pound person unless the guard is located where it is impossible for a person to step on it.

(2) Hooks.

(i) Hooks shall meet the manufacturer's recommendations and shall not be overloaded.

(ii) Safety latch type hooks shall be used wherever possible.

(3) Fire extinguishers.

(i) A carbon dioxide, dry chemical, or equivalent fire extinguisher shall be kept in the immediate vicinity of the derrick.

(ii) Operating and maintenance personnel shall be familiar with the use and care of the fire extinguishers provided.

(4) Refueling.

(i) Refueling with portable containers shall be done with approved safety type containers equipped with automatic closing cap and flame arrester. Refer to § 1910.155(c)(3) for definition of Approved.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(ii) Machines shall not be refueled with the engine running.

(5) Operating near electric powerlines.

(i) Except where the electrical distribution and transmission lines have been deenergized and visibly grounded at point of work or where insulating barriers not a part of or an attachment to the derrick have been erected to prevent physical contact with the lines, derricks shall be operated proximate to, under, over, by, or near powerlines only in accordance with the following:

(a) For lines rated 50 kv. or below minimum clearance between the lines and any part of the derrick or load shall be 10 feet.

(b) For lines rated over 50 kv. minimum clearance between the lines and any part of the derrick or load shall be 10 feet plus 0.4 inch for each 1 kv. over 50 kv., or use twice the length of the line insulator, but never less than 10 feet.

(ii) Cage-type boom guards, insulating links, or proximity warning devices may be used on derricks, but the use of such devices shall not operate to alter the requirements of subdivision (i) of this subparagraph.

(iii) Before the commencement of operations near electrical lines, the owners of the lines or their authorized representatives shall be notified and provided with all pertinent information. The owner's cooperation shall be requested.

(iv) Any overhead wire shall be considered to be an energized line until the owner of the line or their authorized representatives state that it is deenergized.

(6) Cab or operating enclosure.

(i) Necessary clothing and personnel belongings shall be stored in such a manner as to not interfere with access or operation.

(ii) Tools, oilcans, waste, extra fuses, and other necessary articles shall be stored in the toolbox, and shall not be permitted to lie loose in or about the cab or operating enclosure.

1910.182—EFFECTIVE DATES

(a) The provisions of this Subpart N shall become effective on August 27, 1971, except as provided in the remaining paragraphs of this section.

(b) The following provisions shall become effective on February 15, 1972:

§ 1910.177 (d) and (f).
§ 1910.178 (a) (2) and (3), (c), (e), and (m) (11).
§ 1910.179 (b)(6), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g), and (h).
§ 1910.180(c).

(c) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a), (b), or (d) of this section, any provision in any other section of this subpart which contains in itself a specific effective date or time limitation shall become effective on such date or shall apply in accordance with such limitation.

(d) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a) of this section, if any standard in 41 CFR Part 50–204, other than a national consensus standard incorporated by reference in § 50–204.2(a)(1), is or becomes applicable at any time to any employment and place of employment, by virtue of the Walsh-Healey Public Contracts Act, or the Service Contract Act of 1965, or the National Foundation on Arts and Humanities Act of 1965, any corresponding established Federal Standard in this Subpart N which is derived from 41 CFR Part 50–204 shall also become effective and shall be applicable to such employment and place of employment, on the same date.

1910.183—HELICOPTERS

(a) Helicopter regulations. Helicopter cranes shall be expected to comply with any applicable regulations of the Federal Aviation Administration.

(b) Briefing. Prior to each day's operation a briefing shall be conducted. This briefing shall set forth the plan of operation for the pilot and ground personnel.

(c) Slings and tag lines. Loads shall be properly slung. Tag lines shall be of a length that will not permit their being drawn up into the rotors. Pressed sleeve, swedged eyes, or equivalent means shall be used for all freely suspended loads to prevent hand splices from spinning open or cable clamps from loosening.

(d) Cargo hooks. All electrically operated cargo hooks shall have the electrical activating device so designed and installed as to prevent inadvertent operation. In addition, these cargo hooks shall be equipped with an emergency mechanical control for releasing the load. The employer shall ensure that the hooks are tested prior to each day's operation by a competent person to determine that the release functions properly, both electrically and mechanically.

(e) Personal protective equipment.

(1) Personal protective equipment shall be provided and the employer shall ensure its use by employees receiving the load. Personal protective equipment shall consist of complete eye protection and hardhats secured by chinstraps.

(2) Loose-fitting clothing likely to flap in rotor downwash, and thus be snagged on the hoist line, may not be worn.

(f) Loose gear and objects. The employer shall take all necessary precautions to protect employees from flying objects in the rotor downwash. All loose gear within 100 feet of the place of lifting the load or depositing the load, or within all other areas susceptible to rotor downwash shall be secured or removed.

(g) Housekeeping. Good housekeeping shall be maintained in all helicopter loading and unloading areas.

(h) Load safety. The size and weight of loads, and the manner in which loads are connected to the helicopter shall be checked. A lift may not be made if the helicopter operator believes the lift cannot be made safely.

(i) Hooking and unloading loads. When employees perform work under hovering craft, a safe means of access shall be provided for employees to reach the hoist line hook and engage or disengage cargo slings. Employees may not be permitted to perform work under hovering craft except when necessary to hook or unhook loads.

(j) Static charge. Static charge on the suspended load shall be dissipated with a grounding device before ground personnel touch the suspended load, unless protective rubber gloves are being worn by all ground personnel who may be required to touch the suspended load.

(k) Weight limitation. The weight of an external load shall not exceed the helicopter manufacturer's rating.

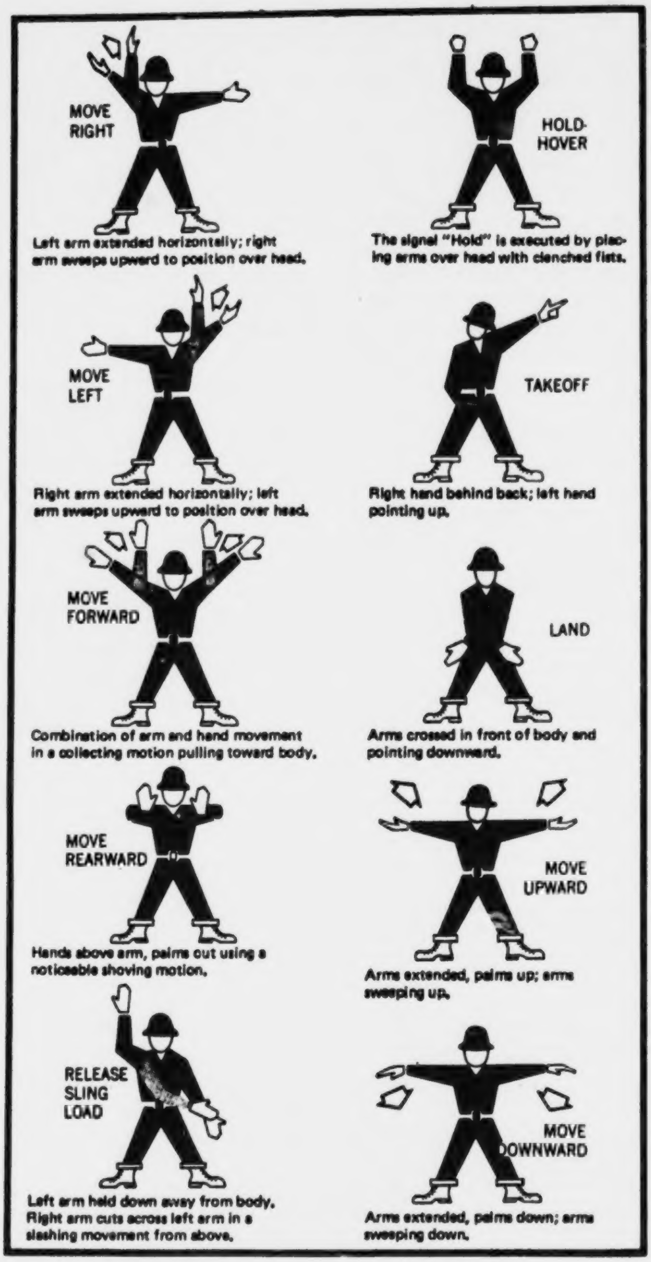
(l) Ground lines. Hoist wires or other gear, except for pulling lines or conductors that are allowed to "pay out" from a container or roll off a reel, shall not be attached to any fixed ground structure, or allowed to foul on any fixed structure.

(m) Visibility. Ground personnel shall be instructed and the employer shall ensure that when visibility is reduced by dust or other conditions, they shall exercise special caution to keep clear of main and stabilizing rotors. Precautions shall also be taken by the employer to eliminate, as far as practical, the dust or other conditions reducing the visibility.

(n) Signal systems. The employer shall instruct the aircrew and ground personnel on the signal systems to be used and shall review the system with the employees in advance of hoisting the load. This applies to both radio and hand signal systems. Hand signals, where used, shall be as shown in Figure N-1.

(o) Approach distance. No employee shall be permitted to approach within 50 feet of the helicopter when the rotor blades are turning, unless his work duties require his presence in that area.

(p) Approaching helicopter. The employer shall instruct employees, and shall ensure, that whenever approaching or leaving a helicopter which has its blades rotating, all employees shall remain in full view of the pilot and keep in a crouched position. No employee shall be permitted to work in the area from the cockpit or cabin rearward while blades are rotating, unless


MOVE RIGHT
HOLD-HOVER
MOVE LEFT
TAKEOFF
MOVE FORWARD
LAND
MOVE REARWARD
MOVE UPWARD
RELEASE SLING LOAD
MOVE DOWNWARD

Left arm extended horizontally; right arm sweeps upward to position over head.

The signal "Hold" is executed by placing arms over head with clenched fists.

Right arm extended horizontally; left arm sweeps upward to position over head.

Right hand behind back; left hand pointing up.

Combination of arm and hand movement in a collecting motion pulling toward body.

Arms crossed in front of body and pointing downward.

Hands above arm, palms out using a noticeable shoving motion.

Arms extended, palms up; arms sweeping up.

Left arm held down away from body. Right arm cuts across left arm in a slashing movement from above.

Arms extended, palms down; arms sweeping down.

FIGURE N-1 HELICOPTER HAND SIGNAL

authorized by the helicopter operator to work there.

(q) Personnel. Sufficient ground personnel shall be provided to ensure that helicopter loading and unloading operations can be performed safely.

(r) Communications. There shall be constant reliable communication between the pilot and the designated employee of the ground crew who acts as a signalman during the period of loading and unloading. This signalman shall be clearly distinguishable from other ground personnel.

(s) Fires. Open fires shall not be permitted in areas where they could be spread by the rotor downwash.

[40 F.R. 13435, March 26, 1975.]

1910.184—SLINGS

(a) Scope.

This section applies to slings used in conjunction with other material handling equipment for the movement of material by hoisting, in employments covered by this Part. The types of slings covered are those made from alloy steel chain, wire rope, metal mesh, natural or synthetic fiber rope (conventional three strand construction), and synthetic web (nylon, polyester, and polypropylene).

(b) Definitions.

"Angle of loading" is the inclination of a leg or branch of a sling measured from the horizontal or vertical plane as shown in Fig. N-184-5; provided that an angle of loading of five degrees or less from the vertical may be considered a vertical angle of loading.

"Basket hitch" is a sling configuration whereby the sling is passed under the load and has both ends, end attachments, eyes or handles on the hook or a single master link.

"Braided wire rope" is a wire rope formed by plaiting component wire ropes.

"Bridle wire rope sling" is a sling composed of multiple wire rope legs with the top ends gathered in a fitting that goes over the lifting hook.

"Cable laid endless sling-mechanical joint" is a wire rope sling made endless by joining the ends of a single length of cable laid rope with one or more metallic fittings.

"Cable laid grommet-hand tucked" is an endless wire rope sling made from one length of rope wrapped six times around a core formed by hand tucking the ends of the rope inside the six wraps.

"Cable laid rope" is a wire rope composed of six wire ropes wrapped around a fiber or wire rope core.

"Cable laid rope sling-mechanical joint" is a wire rope sling made from a cable laid rope with eyes fabricated by pressing or swaging one or more metal sleeves over the rope junction.

"Choker hitch" is a sling configuration with one end of the sling passing under the load and through an end attachment, handle or eye on the other end of the sling.

"Coating" is an elastomer or other suitable material applied to a sling or to a sling component to impart desirable properties.

"Cross rod" is a wire used to join spirals of metal mesh to form a complete fabric. (See Fig. N-184-2.)

"Designated" means selected or assigned by the employer or the employer's representative as being qualified to perform specific duties.

"Equivalent entity" is a person or organization (including an employer) which, by possession of equipment, technical knowledge and skills, can perform with equal competence the same repairs and tests as the person or organization with which it is equated.

"Fabric (metal mesh)" is the flexible portion of a metal mesh sling consisting of a series of transverse coils and cross rods.

"Female handle (choker)" is a handle with a handle eye and a slot of such dimension as to permit passage of a male handle thereby allowing the use of a metal mesh sling in a choker hitch. (See Fig. N-184-1.)

"Handle" is a terminal fitting to which metal mesh fabric is attached. (See Fig. N-184-1.)

"Handle eye" is an opening in a handle of a metal mesh sling shaped to accept a hook, shackle or other lifting device. (See Fig. N-184-1.)

"Hitch" is a sling configuration whereby the sling is fastened to an object or load, either directly to it or around it.

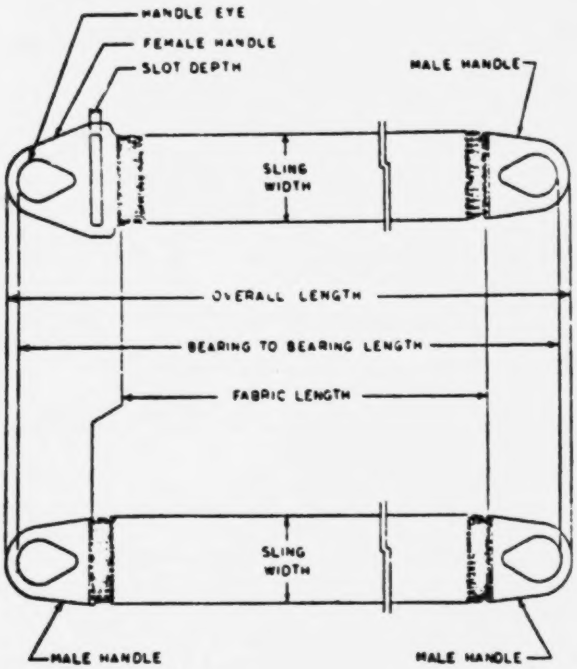


FIG. N-184-1

Metal Mesh Sling (Typical)

"Link" is a single ring of a chain.

"Male handle (triangle)" is a handle with a handle eye.

"Master coupling link" is an alloy steel welded coupling link used as an intermediate link to join alloy steel chain to master links. (See Fig. N-184-3.)

"Master link" or "gathering ring" is a forged or welded steel link used to support all members (legs) of an alloy steel chain sling or wire rope sling. (See Fig. N-184-3.)

"Mechanical coupling link" is a nonwelded, mechanically closed steel link used to attach master links, hooks, etc., to alloy steel chain.

"Proof load" is the load applied in performance of a proof test.

"Proof test" is a nondestructive tension test performed by the sling manufacturer or an equivalent entity to verify construction and workmanship of a sling.

"Rated capacity" or "working load limit" is the maximum working load permitted by the provisions of this section.

"Reach" is the effective length of an alloy steel chain sling measured from the top bearing surface of the upper terminal component to the bottom bearing surface of the lower terminal component.

"Selvage edge" is the finished edge of synthetic webbing designed to prevent unraveling.

"Sling" is an assembly which connects the load to the material handling equipment.

"Sling manufacturer" is a person or organization that assembles sling components into their final form for sale to users.

"Spiral" is a single transverse coil that is the basic element from which metal mesh is fabricated. (See Fig. N-184-2.)

"Strand laid endless sling-mechanical joint" is a wire rope sling made endless from one length of rope with the ends joined by one or more metallic fittings.

"Strand laid grommet-hand tucked" is an endless wire rope sling made from one length of strand wrapped six times around a core formed by hand tucking the ends of the strand inside the six wraps.

"Strand laid rope" is a wire rope made with strands (usually six or eight) wrapped around a fiber core, wire strand core, or independent wire rope core (IWRC).

"Vertical hitch" is a method of supporting a load by a single, vertical part or leg of the sling. (See Fig. N-184-4.)

(c) Safe operating practices.

Whenever any sling is used, the following practices shall be observed:

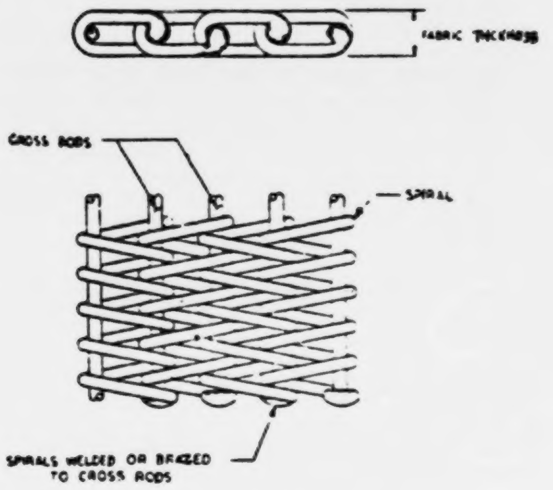

FABRIC THICKNESS
CROSS RODS
SPIRAL
SPIRALS WELDED OR BRAZED TO CROSS RODS

FIG. N-184-2

Metal Mesh Construction

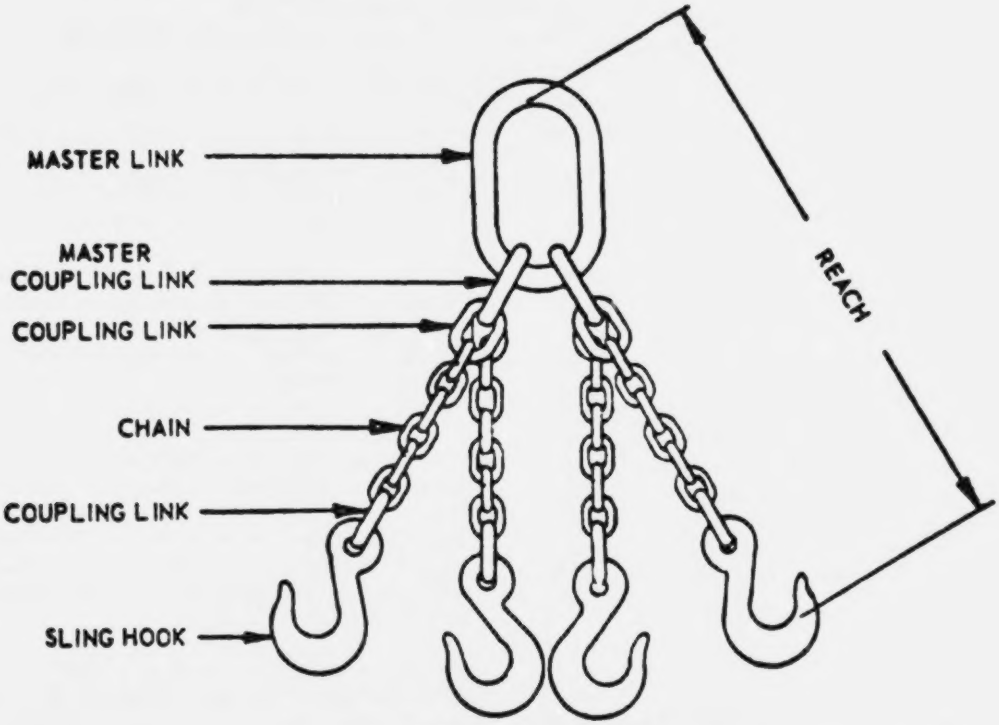

MASTER LINK
MASTER COUPLING LINK
COUPLING LINK
CHAIN
COUPLING LINK
SLING HOOK
REACH

FIG. N-184-3

Major Components of a Quadruple Sling.

(1) Slings that are damaged or defective shall not be used.

(2) Slings shall not be shortened with knots or bolts or other makeshift devices.

(3) Sling legs shall not be kinked.

(4) Slings shall not be loaded in excess of their rated capacities.

(5) Slings used in a basket hitch shall have the loads balanced to prevent slippage.

(6) Slings shall be securely attached to their loads.

(7) Slings shall be padded or protected from the sharp edges of their loads.

(8) Suspended loads shall be kept clear of all obstructions.

(9) All employees shall be kept clear of loads about to be lifted and of suspended loads.

(10) Hands or fingers shall not be placed between the sling and its load while the sling is being tightened around the load.

(11) Shock loading is prohibited.

(12) A sling shall not be pulled from under a load when the load is resting on the sling.

(d) Inspections.

Each day before being used, the sling and all fastenings and attachments shall be inspected for damage or defects by a competent person designated by the employer. Additional inspections shall be performed during sling use, where service conditions warrant. Damaged or defective slings shall be immediately removed from service.

(e) Alloy steel chain slings.

(1) Sling identification. Alloy steel chain slings shall have permanently affixed durable identification stating size, grade, rated capacity, and reach.

(2) Attachments.

(i) Hooks, rings, oblong links, pear shaped links, welded or mechanical coupling links or other attachments shall have a rated capacity at least equal to that of the alloy steel chain with which they are used or the sling shall not be used in excess of the rated capacity of the weakest component.

(ii) Makeshift links or fasteners formed from bolts or rods, or other such attachments, shall not be used.

(3) Inspections.

(i) In addition to the inspection required by paragraph (d) of this section, a thorough periodic inspection of alloy steel chain slings in use shall be made on a regular basis, to be determined on the basis of

(a) frequency of sling use;

(b) severity of service conditions;

(c) nature of lifts being made; and

(d) experience gained on the service life of slings used in similar circumstances. Such inspections shall in no event be at intervals greater than once every 12 months.

(ii) The employer shall make and maintain a record of the most recent month in which each alloy steel chain sling was thoroughly inspected, and shall make such record available for examination.

(iii) The thorough inspection of alloy steel chain slings shall be performed by a competent person designated by the employer, and shall include a thorough inspection for wear, defective welds, deformation and increase in length. Where such defects or deterioration are present, the sling shall be immediately removed from service.

(4) Proof testing. The employer shall ensure that before use, each new, repaired, or reconditioned alloy steel chain sling, including all welded components in the sling assembly, shall be proof tested by the sling manufacturer or equivalent entity, in accordance with paragraph 5.2 of the American Society of Testing and Materials Specification A391-65 (ANSI G61.1-1968). The employer shall retain a certificate of the proof test and shall make it available for examination.

(5) Sling use. Alloy steel chain slings shall not be used with loads in excess of the rated capacities prescribed in Table N-184-1. Slings not included in this table shall be used only in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

(6) Safe operating temperatures. Alloy steel chain slings shall be permanently removed from service if they are heated above 1000° F. When exposed to service temperatures in excess of 600° F, maximum working load limits permitted in Table N-184-1 shall be reduced in accordance with the chain or sling manufacturer's recommendations.

(7) Repairing and reconditioning alloy steel chain slings.

(i) Worn or damaged alloy steel chain slings or attachments shall not be used until repaired. When welding or heat testing is performed, slings shall not be used unless repaired, reconditioned and proof tested by the sling manufacturer or an equivalent entity.

(ii) Mechanical coupling links or low carbon steel repair links shall not be used to repair broken lengths of chain.

TABLE N-184-1

Rated Capacity (Working Load Limit), for Alloy Steel Chain Sling; Rated Capacity (Working Load Limit), Pounds

Chain Size, Inches	Single Branch Sling - 90 degree Loading	Double Sling			Triple and Quadruple Sling (3)		
		Vertical Angle (1)			Vertical Angle (1)		
		30 degree	45 degree	60 degree	30 degree	45 degree	60 degree
		Horizontal Angle (2)			Horizontal Angle (2)		
		60 degree	45 degree	30 degree	60 degree	45 degree	30 degree
1/4	3,250	5,650	4,550	3,250	8,400	6,800	4,900
3/8	6,600	11,400	9,300	6,600	17,000	14,000	9,900
1/2	11,250	19,500	15,900	11,250	29,000	24,000	17,000
5/8	16,500	28,500	23,300	16,500	43,000	35,000	24,500
3/4	23,000	39,800	32,500	23,000	59,500	48,500	34,500
7/8	28,750	49,800	40,600	28,750	74,500	61,000	43,000
1	38,750	67,100	54,800	38,750	101,000	82,000	58,000
1-1/8	44,500	77,000	63,000	44,500	115,500	94,500	66,500
1-1/4	57,500	99,500	81,000	57,500	149,000	121,500	86,000
1-3/8	67,000	116,000	94,000	67,000	174,000	141,000	100,500
1-1/2	80,000	138,000	112,500	80,000	207,000	169,000	119,500
1-3/4	100,000	172,000	140,000	100,000	258,000	210,000	150,000

(1) Rating of multileg slings adjusted for angle of loading measured as the included angle between the inclined leg and the vertical as shown in Figure N-184-5.

(2) Rating of multileg slings adjusted for angle of loading between the inclined leg and the horizontal plane of the load, as shown in Figure N-184-5.

(3) Quadruple sling rating is same as triple sling because normal lifting practice may not distribute load uniformly to all 4 legs.

(8) Effects of wear. If the chain size at any point of any links is less than that stated in Table N-184-2, the sling shall be removed from service.

TABLE N-184-2

Minimum Allowable Chain Size At Any Point of Link

Chain Size, Inches	Minimum Allowable Chain Size, Inches
1/4	13/64
3/8	19/64
1/2	25/64
5/8	31/64
3/4	19/32
7/8	45/64
1	13/16
1-1/8	29/32
1-1/4	1
1-3/8	1- 3/32
1-1/2	1- 3/16
1-3/4	1-13/32

(9) Deformed attachments.

(i) Alloy steel chain sling with cracked or deformed master links, coupling links or other components shall be removed from service.

[40 F.R. 31598, July 28, 1975.]

(ii) Slings shall be removed from service if hooks are cracked, have been opened more than 15 percent of the normal throat opening measured at the narrowest point or twisted more than 10 degrees from the plane of the unbent hook.

(f) Wire rope slings.

(1) Sling use. Wire rope slings shall not be used with loads in excess of the rated capacities shown in Tables N-184-3 through N-184-14. Slings not included in these tables shall be used only in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

(2) Minimum sling lengths.

(i) Cable laid and 6 × 19 and 6 × 37 slings shall have a minimum clear length of wire rope 10 times the component rope diameter between splices, sleeves or end fittings.

(ii) Braided slings shall have a minimum clear length of wire rope 40 times the component rope diameter between the loops or end fittings.

(iii) Cable laid grommets, strand laid grommets and endless slings shall have a minimum circumferential length of 96 times their body diameter.

(3) Safe operating temperatures. Fiber core wire rope slings of all grades shall be permanently removed from service if they are exposed to temperatures in excess of 200° F. When nonfiber core wire rope slings of any grade are used at temperatures above 400° F or below minus 60° F, recommendations of the sling manufacturer regarding use at that temperature shall be followed.

(4) End Attachments.

(i) Welding of end attachments, except covers to thimbles, shall be performed prior to the assembly of the sling.

(ii) All welded end attachments shall not be used unless proof tested by the manufacturer or equivalent entity at twice their rated capacity prior to initial use. The employer shall retain a certificate of the proof test, and make it available for examination.

(5) Removal from service. Wire rope slings shall be immediately removed from service if any of the following conditions are present:

(i) Ten randomly distributed broken wires in one rope lay, or five broken wires in one strand in one rope lay.

(ii) Wear or scraping of one-third the original diameter of outside individual wires.

(iii) Kinking, crushing, bird caging or any other damage resulting in distortion of the wire rope structure.

(iv) Evidence of heat damage.

(v) End attachments that are cracked, deformed or worn.

(vi) Hooks that have been opened more than 15 percent of the normal throat opening measured at the narrowest point or twisted

TABLE N-184-3

Rated Capacities for Single Leg Slings 6 x 19 and 6 x 37 Classification Improved Plow Steel Grade Rope With Fiber Core (FC)

Rope Dia (Inches)	Rope Constr	Rated Capacities, Tons (2,000 lb) Vertical HT	Vertical MS	Vertical S	Choker HT	Choker MS	Choker S	Vertical Basket HT	Vertical Basket MS	Vertical Basket S
1/4	6 x 19	0.49	0.51	0.55	0.37	0.38	0.41	0.99	1.0	1.1
5/16	6 x 19	0.76	0.79	0.85	0.57	0.59	0.64	1.5	1.6	1.7
3/8	6 x 19	1.1	1.1	1.2	0.80	0.85	0.91	2.1	2.2	2.4
7/16	6 x 19	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.1	1.1	1.2	2.9	3.0	3.3
1/2	6 x 19	1.8	2.0	2.1	1.4	1.5	1.6	3.7	3.9	4.3
9/16	6 x 19	2.3	2.5	2.7	1.7	1.9	2.0	4.6	5.0	5.4
5/8	6 x 19	2.8	3.1	3.3	2.1	2.3	2.5	5.6	6.2	6.7
3/4	6 x 19	3.9	4.4	4.8	2.9	3.3	3.6	7.8	8.8	9.5
7/8	6 x 19	5.1	5.9	6.4	3.9	4.5	4.8	10.0	12.0	13.0
1	6 x 19	6.7	7.7	8.4	5.0	5.8	6.3	13.0	15.0	17.0
1-1/8	6 x 19	8.4	9.5	10.0	6.3	7.1	7.9	17.0	19.0	21.0
1-1/4	6 x 37	9.8	11.0	12.0	7.4	8.3	9.2	20.0	22.0	25.0
1-3/8	6 x 37	12.0	13.0	15.0	8.9	10.0	11.0	24.0	27.0	30.0
1-1/2	6 x 37	14.0	16.0	17.0	10.0	12.0	13.0	28.0	32.0	35.0
1-5/8	6 x 37	16.0	18.0	21.0	12.0	14.0	15.0	33.0	37.0	41.0
1-3/4	6 x 37	19.0	21.0	24.0	14.0	16.0	18.0	38.0	43.0	48.0
2	6 x 37	25.0	28.0	31.0	18.0	21.0	23.0	49.0	55.0	62.0

HT = Hand Tucked Splice and Hidden Tuck Splice
For hidden tuck splice (IWRC) use values in HT columns.

MS = Mechanical Splice

S = Swaged or Zinc Poured Socket

* These values only apply when the D/d ratio for HT slings is 10 or greater, and for MS and S slings is 20 or greater where:

D = Diameter of curvature around which the body of the sling is bent.

d = Diameter of rope.

TABLE N-184-4

Rated Capacities for Single Leg Slings
6 x 19 and 6 x 37 Classification Improved Plow Steel Grade Rope
With Independent Wire Rope Core (IWRC)

Rope		Rated Capacities, Tons (2,000 lb)								
		Vertical			Choker			Vertical Basket*		
Dia (Inches)	Constr	HT	MS	S	HT	MS	S	HT	MS	S
1/4	6 x 19	0.53	0.56	0.59	0.40	0.42	0.44	1.0	1.1	1.2
5/16	6 x 19	0.81	0.87	0.92	0.61	0.65	0.69	1.6	1.7	1.8
3/8	6 x 19	1.1	1.2	1.3	0.86	0.93	0.98	2.3	2.5	2.6
7/16	6 x 19	1.5	1.7	1.8	1.2	1.3	1.3	3.1	3.4	3.5
1/2	6 x 19	2.0	2.2	2.3	1.5	1.6	1.7	3.9	4.4	4.6
9/16	6 x 19	2.5	2.7	2.9	1.8	2.1	2.2	4.9	5.5	5.8
5/8	6 x 19	3.0	3.4	3.6	2.2	2.5	2.7	6.0	6.8	7.2
3/4	6 x 19	4.2	4.9	5.1	3.1	3.6	3.8	8.4	9.7	10.0
7/8	6 x 19	5.5	6.6	6.9	4.1	4.9	5.2	11.0	13.0	14.0
1	6 x 19	7.2	8.5	9.0	5.4	6.4	6.7	14.0	17.0	18.0
1-1/8	6 x 19	9.0	10.0	11.0	6.8	7.8	8.5	18.0	21.0	23.0
1-1/4	6 x 37	10.0	12.0	13.0	7.9	9.2	9.9	21.0	24.0	26.0
1-3/8	6 x 37	13.0	15.0	16.0	9.6	11.0	12.0	25.0	29.0	32.0
1-1/2	6 x 37	15.0	17.0	19.0	11.0	13.0	14.0	30.0	35.0	38.0
1-5/8	6 x 37	18.0	20.0	22.0	13.0	15.0	17.0	35.0	41.0	44.0
1-3/4	6 x 37	20.0	24.0	26.0	15.0	18.0	19.0	41.0	47.0	51.0
2	6 x 37	26.0	30.0	33.0	20.0	23.0	25.0	53.0	61.0	66.0

HT = Hand Tucked Splice
For hidden tuck splice (IWRC) use Table I values in HT column.

MS = Mechanical Splice.

S = Swaged or Zinc Poured Socket.

* These values only apply when the D/d ratio for HT slings is 10 or greater, and for MS and S Slings is 20 or greater where:

D = Diameter of curvature around which the body of the sling is bent.

d = Diameter of rope.

TABLE N-184-5

Rated Capacities for Single Leg Slings
Cable Laid Rope—Mechanical Splice Only
7 x 7 x 7 & 7 x 7 x 19 Constructions Galvanized Aircraft Grade Rope
7 x 6 x 19 IWRC Construction Improved Plow Steel Grade Rope

Rope		Rated Capacities, Tons (2,000 lb)		
Dia (Inches)	Constr	Vertical	Choker	Vertical Basket*
1/4	7 x 7 x 7	0.50	0.38	1.0
3/8	7 x 7 x 7	1.1	0.81	2.0
1/2	7 x 7 x 7	1.8	1.4	3.7
5/8	7 x 7 x 7	2.8	2.1	5.5
3/4	7 x 7 x 7	3.8	2.9	7.6
5/8	7 x 7 x 19	2.9	2.2	5.8
3/4	7 x 7 x 19	4.1	3.0	8.1
7/8	7 x 7 x 19	5.4	4.0	11.0
1	7 x 7 x 19	6.9	5.1	14.0
1-1/8	7 x 7 x 19	8.2	6.2	16.0
1-1/4	7 x 7 x 19	9.9	7.4	20.0
3/4	7 x 6 x 19 IWRC	3.8	2.8	7.6
7/8	7 x 6 x 19 IWRC	5.0	3.8	10.0
1	7 x 6 x 19 IWRC	6.4	4.8	13.0
1-1/8	7 x 6 x 19 IWRC	7.7	5.8	15.0
1-1/4	7 x 6 x 19 IWRC	9.2	6.9	18.0
1-5/16	7 x 6 x 19 IWRC	10.0	7.5	20.0
1-3/8	7 x 6 x 19 IWRC	11.0	8.2	22.0
1-1/2	7 x 6 x 19 IWRC	13.0	9.6	26.0

These values only apply when the D/d ratio is 10 or greater where:

D = Diameter of curvature around which the body of the sling is bent.

d = Diameter of rope.

TABLE N-184-6

Rated Capacities for Single Leg Slings
8-Part and 6-Part Braided Rope
6 x 7 and 6 x 19 Construction Improved Plow Steel Grade Rope
7 x 7 Construction Galvanized Aircraft Grade Rope

Component Ropes		Rated Capacities, Tons (2,000 lb)					
Diameter		Vertical		Choker		Basket, Vertical to 30 degree	
(Inches)	Constr	8-Part	6-Part	8-Part	6-Part	8-Part	6-Part
3/32	6 x 7	0.42	0.32	0.32	0.24	0.74	0.55
1/8	6 x 7	0.76	0.57	0.57	0.42	1.3	0.98
3/16	6 x 7	1.7	1.3	1.3	0.94	2.9	2.2
3/32	7 x 7	0.51	0.39	0.38	0.29	0.89	0.67
1/8	7 x 7	0.95	0.71	0.71	0.53	1.6	1.2
3/16	7 x 7	2.1	1.5	1.5	1.2	3.6	2.7
3/16	6 x 19	1.7	1.3	1.3	0.98	3.0	2.2
1/4	6 x 19	3.1	2.3	2.3	1.7	5.3	4.0
5/16	6 x 19	4.8	3.6	3.6	2.7	8.3	6.2
3/8	6 x 19	6.8	5.1	5.1	3.8	12.0	8.9
7/16	6 x 19	9.3	6.9	6.9	5.2	16.0	12.0
1/2	6 x 19	12.0	9.0	9.0	6.7	21.0	15.0
9/16	6 x 19	15.0	11.0	11.0	8.5	26.0	20.0
5/6	6 x 19	19.0	14.0	14.0	10.0	32.0	24.0
3/4	6 x 19	27.0	20.0	20.0	15.0	46.0	35.0
7/8	6 x 19	36.0	27.0	27.0	20.0	62.0	47.0
1	6 x 19	47.0	35.0	35.0	26.0	81.0	61.0

These values only apply when the D/d ratio is 20 or greater where:

D = Diameter of curvature around which the body of the sling is bent.

d = Diameter of component rope.

TABLE N-184-7

Rated Capacities for 2-Leg & 3-Leg Bridle Slings
6 x 19 and 6 x 37 Classification Improved Plow Steel Grade Rope
With Fiber Core (FC)

Rope		Rated Capacities, Tons (2,000 lb)											
		2-Leg Bridle Slings						3-Leg Bridle Slings					
Dia (Inches)	Constr.	Vert 30 degree Horz 60 degree		45 degree Angle		Vert 60 degree Horz 30 degree		Vert 30 degree Horz 60 degree		45 degree Angle		Vert 60 degree Horz 30 degree	
		HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS
1/4	6 x 19	0.85	0.88	0.70	0.72	0.49	0.51	1.3	1.3	1.0	1.1	0.74	0.76
5/16	6 x 19	1.3	1.4	1.1	1.1	0.76	0.79	2.0	2.0	1.6	1.7	1.1	1.2
3/8	6 x 19	1.8	1.9	1.5	1.6	1.1	1.1	2.8	2.9	2.3	2.4	1.6	1.7
7/16	6 x 19	2.5	2.6	2.0	2.2	1.4	1.5	3.7	4.0	3.0	3.2	2.1	2.3
1/2	6 x 19	3.2	3.4	2.6	2.8	1.8	2.0	4.8	5.1	3.9	4.2	2.8	3.0
9/16	6 x 19	4.0	4.3	3.2	3.5	2.3	2.5	6.0	6.5	4.9	5.3	3.4	3.7
5/8	6 x 19	4.8	5.3	4.0	4.4	2.8	3.1	7.3	8.0	5.9	6.5	4.2	4.6
3/4	6 x 19	6.8	7.6	5.5	6.2	3.9	4.4	10.0	11.0	8.3	9.3	5.8	6.6
7/8	6 x 19	8.9	10.0	7.3	8.4	5.1	5.9	13.0	15.0	11.0	13.0	7.7	8.9
1	6 x 19	11.0	13.0	9.4	11.0	6.7	7.7	17.0	20.0	14.0	16	10.0	11.0
1-1/8	6 x 19	14.0	16.0	12.0	13.0	8.4	9.5	22.0	24.0	18.0	20.0	13.0	14.0
1-1/4	6 x 37	17.0	19.0	14.0	16.0	9.8	11.0	25.0	29.0	21.0	23.0	15.0	17.0
1-3/8	6 x 37	20.0	23.0	17.0	19.0	12.0	13.0	31.0	35.0	25.0	28.0	18.0	20.0
1-1/2	6 x 37	24.0	27.0	20.0	22.0	14.0	16.0	36.0	41.0	30.0	33.0	21.0	24.0
1-5/8	6 x 37	28.0	32.0	23.0	26.0	16.0	18.0	43.0	48.0	35.0	39.0	25.0	28.0
1-3/4	6 x 37	33.0	37.0	27.0	30.0	19.0	21	49.0	56.0	40.0	45.0	28.0	32.0
2	6 x 37	43.0	48.0	35.0	39.0	25.0	28.0	64.0	72.0	52.0	59.0	37.0	41.0

HT = Hand Tucked Splice.

MS = Mechanical Splice

TABLE N-184-8

Rated Capacities for 2-Leg & 3-Leg Bridle Slings
6 x 19 and 6 x 37 Classification Improved Plow Steel Grade Rope
With Independent Wire Rope Core (IWRC)

Rope		Rated Capacities, Tons (2,000 lb)											
		2-Leg Bridle Sling						3-Leg Bridle Sling					
Dia (Inches)	Constr.	Vert 30 degree Horz 60 degree		45 degree Angle		Vert 60 degree Horz 30 degree		Vert 30 degree Horz 60 degree		45 degree Angle		Vert 60 degree Horz 30 degree	
		HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS
1/4	6 x 19	0.92	0.97	0.75	0.79	0.53	0.56	1.4	1.4	1.1	1.2	0.79	0.84
5/16	6 x 19	1.4	1.5	1.1	1.2	0.81	0.87	2.1	2.3	1.7	1.8	1.2	1.3
3/8	6 x 19	2.0	2.1	1.6	1.8	1.1	1.2	3.0	3.2	2.4	2.6	1.7	1.9
7/16	6 x 19	2.7	2.9	2.2	2.4	1.5	1.7	4.0	4.4	3.3	3.6	2.3	2.5
1/2	6 x 19	3.4	3.8	2.8	3.1	2.0	2.2	5.1	5.7	4.2	4.6	3.0	3.3
9/16	6 x 19	4.3	4.8	3.5	3.9	2.5	2.7	6.4	7.1	5.2	5.8	3.7	4.1
5/8	6 x 19	5.2	5.9	4.2	4.8	3.0	3.4	7.8	8.8	6.4	7.2	4.5	5.1
3/4	6 x 19	7.3	8.4	5.9	6.9	4.2	4.9	11.0	13.0	8.9	10.0	6.3	7.3
7/8	6 x 19	9.6	11.0	7.8	9.3	5.5	6.6	14.0	17.0	12.0	14.0	8.3	9.9
1	6 x 19	12.0	15.0	10.0	12.0	7.2	8.5	19.0	22.0	15.0	18.0	11.0	13.0
1-1/8	6 x 19	16.0	18.0	13.0	15.0	9.0	10.0	23.0	27.0	19.0	22.0	13.0	16.0
1-1/4	6 x 37	18.0	21.0	15.0	17.0	10.0	12.0	27.0	32.0	22.0	26.0	16.0	18.0
1-3/8	6 x 37	22.0	25.0	18.0	21.0	13.0	15.0	33.0	38.0	27.0	31.0	19.0	22.0
1-1/2	6 x 37	26.0	30.0	21.0	25.0	15.0	17.0	39.0	45.0	32.0	37.0	23.0	26.0
1-5/8	6 x 37	31.0	35.0	25.0	29.0	18.0	20.0	46.0	53.0	38.0	43.0	27.0	31.0
1-3/4	6 x 37	35.0	41.0	29.0	33.0	20.0	24.0	53.0	61.0	43.0	50.0	31.0	35.0
2	6 x 37	46.0	53.0	37.0	43.0	26.0	30.0	68.0	79.0	56.0	65.0	40.0	46.0

HT = Hand Tucked Splice

MS= Mechanical Splice

TABLE N-184-9

Rated Capacities for 2-Leg & 3-Leg Bridle Slings
Cable Laid Rope—Mechanical Splice Only
7 x 7 x 7 and 7 x 7 x 19 Constructions Galvanized Aircraft Grade Rope
7 x 6 x 19 IWRC Construction Improved Plow Steel Grade Rope

Rope		Rated Capacities, Tons (2,000 lb)					
		2-Leg Bridle Sling			3-Leg Bridle Sling		
Dia (Inches)	Constr	Vert 30 deg Horz 60 deg	45 degree Angle	Vert 60 deg Horz 30 deg	Vert 30 deg Horz 60 deg	45 degree Angle	Vert 60 deg Horz 30 deg
1/4	7 x 7 x 7	0.87	0.71	0.50	1.3	1.1	0.75
3/8	7 x 7 x 7	1.9	1.5	1.1	2.8	2.3	1.6
1/2	7 x 7 x 7	3.2	2.6	1.8	4.8	3.9	2.8
5/8	7 x 7 x 7	4.8	3.9	2.8	7.2	5.9	4.2
3/4	7 x 7 x 7	6.6	5.4	3.8	9.9	8.1	5.7
5/8	7 x 7 x 19	5.0	4.1	2.9	7.5	6.1	4.3
3/4	7 x 7 x 19	7.0	5.7	4.1	10.0	8.6	6.1
7/8	7 x 7 x 19	9.3	7.6	5.4	14.0	11.0	8.1
1	7 x 7 x 19	12.0	9.7	6.9	18.0	14.0	10.0
1-1/8	7 x 7 x 19	14.0	12.0	8.2	21.0	17.0	12.0
1-1/4	7 x 7 x 19	17.0	14.0	9.9	26.0	21.0	15.0
3/4	7x6x19 IWRC	6.6	5.4	3.8	9.9	8.0	5.7
7/8	7x6x19 IWRC	8.7	7.1	5.0	13.0	11.0	7.5
1	7x6x19 IWRC	11.0	9.0	6.4	17.0	13.0	9.6
1-1/8	7x6x19 IWRC	13.0	11.0	7.7	20.0	16.0	11.0
1-1/4	7x6x19 IWRC	16.0	13.0	9.2	24.0	20.0	14.0
1-5/16	7x6x19 IWRC	17.0	14.0	10.0	26.0	21.0	15.0
1-3/8	7x6x19 IWRC	19.0	15.0	11.0	28.0	23.0	16.0
1-1/2	7x6x19 IWRC	22.0	18.0	13.0	33.0	27.0	19.0

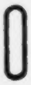
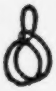
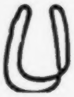
TABLE N-184-10

Rated Capacities For 2-Leg and 3-Leg Bridle Slings
8-Part and 6-Part Braided Rope
6 x 7 and 6 x 19 Construction Improved Plow Steel Grade Rope
7 x 7 Construction Galvanized Aircraft Grade Rope

Component Rope		Rated Capacities, Tons (2,000 lb)											
		2-Leg Bridle Slings						3-Leg Bridle Slings					
Dia (Inches)	Contr.	Vert 30 degree Horz 60 degree		45 degree Angle		Vert 60 degree Horz 30 degree		Vert 30 degree Horz 60 degree		45 degree Angle		Vert 60 degree Horz 30 degree	
		8-Part	6-Part	8-Part	6-Part	8-Part	6-Part	8-Part	6-Part	8-Part	6-Part	8-Part	6-Part
3/32	6 x 7	0.74	0.55	0.60	0.45	0.42	0.32	1.1	0.83	0.90	0.68	0.64	0.48
1/8	6 x 7	1.3	0.98	1.1	0.80	0.76	0.57	2.0	1.5	1.6	1.2	1.1	0.85
3/16	6 x 7	2.9	2.2	2.4	1.8	1.7	1.3	4.4	3.3	3.6	2.7	2.5	1.9
3/32	7 x 7	0.89	0.67	0.72	0.55	0.51	0.39	1.3	1.0	1.1	0.82	0.77	0.58
1/8	7 x 7	1.6	1.2	1.3	1.0	0.95	0.71	2.5	1.8	2.0	1.5	1.4	1.1
3/16	7 x 7	3.6	2.7	2.9	2.2	2.1	1.5	5.4	4.0	4.4	3.3	3.1	2.3
3/16	6 x 19	3.0	2.2	2.4	1.8	1.7	1.3	4.5	3.4	3.7	2.8	2.6	1.9
1/4	6 x 19	5.3	4.0	4.3	3.2	3.1	2.3	8.0	6.0	6.5	4.9	4.6	3.4
5/16	6 x 19	8.3	6.2	6.7	5.0	4.8	3.6	12.0	9.3	10.0	7.6	7.1	5.4
3/8	6 x 19	12.0	8.9	9.7	7.2	6.8	5.1	18.0	13.0	14.0	11.0	10.0	7.7
7/16	6 x 19	16.0	12.0	13.0	9.8	9.3	6.9	24.0	18.0	20.0	15.0	14.0	10.0
1/2	6 x 19	21.0	15.0	17.0	13.0	12.0	9.0	31.0	23.0	25.0	19.0	18.0	13.0
9/16	6 x 19	26.0	20.0	21.0	16.0	15.0	11.0	39.0	29.0	32.0	24.0	23.0	17.0
5/8	6 x 19	32.0	24.0	26	20.0	19.0	14.0	48.0	36.0	40.0	30.0	28.0	21.0
3/4	6 x 19	46.0	35.0	38.0	28.0	27.0	20.0	69.0	52.0	56.0	42.0	40.0	30.0
7/8	6 x 19	62.0	47.0	51.0	38.0	36.0	27.0	94.0	70.0	76.0	57.0	54.0	40.0
1	6 x 19	81.0	61.0	66.0	50.0	47.0	35.0	122.0	91.0	99.0	74.0	70.0	53.0

TABLE N-184-11

RATED CAPACITIES FOR STRAND LAID GROMMET-HAND TUCKED IMPROVED PLOW STEEL GRADE ROPE

ROPE BODY		RATED CAPACITIES, TONS (2,000 lb)		
Dia (Inches)	Constr	 Vertical	 Choker	 Vertical Basket
1/4	7 × 19	0.85	0.64	1.7
5/16	7 × 19	1.3	1.0	2.6
3/8	7 × 19	1.9	1.4	3.8
7/16	7 × 19	2.6	1.9	5.2
1/2	7 × 19	3.3	2.5	6.7
9/16	7 × 19	4.2	3.1	8.4
5/8	7 × 19	5.2	3.9	10.0
3/4	7 × 19	7.4	5.6	15.0
7/8	7 × 19	10.0	7.5	20.0
1	7 × 19	13.0	9.7	26.0
1-1/8	7 × 19	16.0	12.0	32.0
1-1/4	7 × 37	18.0	14.0	37.0
1-3/8	7 × 37	22.0	16.0	44.0
1-1/2	7 × 37	26.0	19.0	52.0

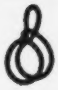
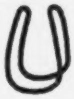
These values only apply when the D/d ratio is 5 or greater where:

D = Diameter of curvature around which rope is bent.

d = Diameter of rope body.

TABLE N-184-12

RATED CAPACITIES FOR CABLE LAID GROMMET-HAND TUCKED 7 × 6 × 7 AND 7 × 6 × 19 CONSTRUCTIONS IMPROVED PLOW STEEL GRADE ROPE 7 × 7 × 7 CONSTRUCTION GALVANIZED AIRCRAFT GRADE ROPE

CABLE BODY		RATED CAPACITIES, TONS (2,000 lb)		
Dia (Inches)	Constr	Vertical	 Choker	 Vertical Basket[*]
3/8	7 × 6 × 7	1.3	0.95	2.5
9/16	7 × 6 × 7	2.8	2.1	5.6
5/8	7 × 6 × 7	3.8	2.8	7.6
3/8	7 × 7 × 7	1.6	1.2	3.2
9/16	7 × 7 × 7	3.5	2.6	6.9
5/8	7 × 7 × 7	4.5	3.4	9.0
5/8	7 × 6 × 19	3.9	3.0	7.9
3/4	7 × 6 × 19	5.1	3.8	10.0
15/16	7 × 6 × 19	7.9	5.9	16.0
1-1/8	7 × 6 × 19	11.0	8.4	22.0
1-5/16	7 × 6 × 19	15.0	11.0	30.0
1-1/2	7 × 6 × 19	19.0	14.0	39.0
1-11/16	7 × 6 × 19	24.0	18.0	49.0
1-7/8	7 × 6 × 19	30.0	22.0	60.0
2-1/4	7 × 6 × 19	42.0	31.0	84.0
2-5/8	7 × 6 × 19	56.0	42.0	112.0

[*] These values only apply when the D/d ratio is 5 or greater where:

D = Diameter of curvature around which cable body is bent.

d = Diameter of cable body.

TABLE N-184-13

RATED CAPACITIES FOR STRAND LAID ENDLESS SLINGS-MECHANICAL JOINT IMPROVED PLOW STEEL GRADE ROPE

ROPE BODY		RATED CAPACITIES, TONS (2,000 lb)		
Dia (Inches)	Constr	Vertical	Choker	Vertical Basket*
1/4	6 × 19 IWRC	0.92	0.69	1.8
3/8	6 × 19 IWRC	2.0	1.5	4.1
1/2	6 × 19 IWRC	3.6	2.7	7.2
5/8	6 × 19 IWRC	5.6	4.2	11.0
3/4	6 × 19 IWRC	8.0	6.0	16.0
7/8	6 × 19 IWRC	11.0	8.1	21.0
1	6 × 19 IWRC	14.0	10.0	28.0
1-1/8	6 × 19 IWRC	18.0	13.0	35.0
1-1/4	6 × 37 IWRC	21.0	15.0	41.0
1-3/8	6 × 37 IWRC	25.0	19.0	50.0
1-1/2	6 × 37 IWRC	29.0	22.0	59.0

* These values only apply when the D/d ratio is 5 or greater where:

D = Diameter of curvature around which rope is bent.

d = Diameter of rope body.

TABLE N-184-14

RATED CAPACITIES FOR CABLE LAID ENDLESS SLINGS-MECHANICAL JOINT 7 × 7 × 7 and 7 × 7 × 19 CONSTRUCTIONS GALVANIZED AIRCRAFT GRADE ROPE 7 × 6 × 19 IWRC CONSTRUCTION IMPROVED PLOW STEEL GRADE ROPE

CABLE BODY		RATED CAPACITIES, TONS (2,000 lb)		
Dia (Inches)	Constr	Vertical	Choker	Vertical Basket*
1/4	7 × 7 × 7	0.83	0.62	1.6
3/8	7 × 7 × 7	1.8	1.3	3.5
1/2	7 × 7 × 7	3.0	2.3	6.1
5/8	7 × 7 × 7	4.5	3.4	9.1
3/4	7 × 7 × 7	6.3	4.7	12.0
5/8	7 × 7 × 19	4.7	3.5	9.5
3/4	7 × 7 × 19	6.7	5.0	13.0
7/8	7 × 7 × 19	8.9	6.6	18.0
1	7 × 7 × 19	11.0	8.5	22.0
1-1/8	7 × 7 × 19	14.0	10.0	28.0
1-1/4	7 × 7 × 19	17.0	12.0	33.0
3/4	7 × 6 × 19 IWRC	6.2	4.7	12.0
7/8	7 × 6 × 19 IWRC	8.3	6.2	16.0
1	7 × 6 × 19 IWRC	10.0	7.9	21.0
1-1/8	7 × 6 × 19 IWRC	13.0	9.7	26.0
1-1/4	7 × 6 × 19 IWRC	16.0	12.0	31.0
1-3/8	7 × 6 × 19 IWRC	18.0	14.0	37.0
1-1/2	7 × 6 × 19 IWRC	22.0	16.0	43.0

* These values only apply when D/d value is 5 or greater where:

D = Diameter of curvature around which cable body is bent.

d = Diameter of cable body.

more than 10 degrees from the plane of the unbent hook.

(vii) Corrosion of the rope or end attachments.

(6) (Deleted)

[41 F.R. 13352, March 30, 1976.]

(g) Metal mesh slings.

(1) Sling marking. Each metal mesh sling shall have permanently affixed to it a durable marking that states the rated capacity for vertical basket hitch and choker hitch loadings.

(2) Handles. Handles shall have a rated capacity at least equal to the metal fabric and exhibit no deformation after proof testing.

(3) Attachments of handles to fabric. The fabric and handles shall be joined so that:

(i) The rated capacity of the sling is not reduced.

(ii) The load is evenly distributed across the width of the fabric.

(iii) Sharp edges will not damage the fabric.

(4) Sling coatings. Coatings which diminish the rated capacity of a sling shall not be applied.

(5) Sling testing. All new and repaired metal mesh slings, including handles, shall not be used unless proof tested by the manufacturer or equivalent entity at a minimum of 1½ times their rated capacity. Elastomer impregnated slings shall be proof tested before coating.

(6) Proper use of metal mesh slings. Metal mesh slings shall not be used to lift loads in excess of their rated capacities as prescribed in Table N-184-15. Slings not included in this table shall be used only in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

(7) Safe operating temperatures. Metal mesh slings which are not impregnated with elastomers may be used in a temperature range from minus 20° F to plus 550° F without decreasing the working load limit. Metal mesh slings impregnated with polyvinyl chloride or neoprene may be used only in a temperature range from zero degrees to plus 200° F. For operations outside these temperature ranges or for metal mesh slings impregnated with other materials, the sling manufacturer's recommendations shall be followed.

(8) Repairs.

(i) Metal mesh slings which are repaired shall not be used unless repaired by a metal mesh sling manufacturer or an equivalent entity.

(ii) Once repaired, each sling shall be permanently marked or tagged, or a written record maintained, to indicate the date and nature of the repairs and the person or organization that performed the repairs. Records of repairs shall be made available for examination.

(9) Removal from service. Metal mesh slings shall be immediately removed from service if any of the following conditions are present:

(i) A broken weld or broken brazed joint along the sling edge.

(ii) Reduction in wire diameter of 25 per cent due to abrasion or 15 per cent due to corrosion.

(iii) Lack of flexibility due to distortion of the fabric.

(iv) Distortion of the female handle so that the depth of the slot is increased more than 10 per cent.

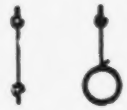
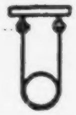
(v) Distortion of either handle so that the width of the eye is decreased more than 10 per cent.

(vi) A 15 percent reduction of the original cross sectional area of metal at any point around the handle eye.

(vii) Distortion of either handle out of its plane.

TABLE N-184-15

Rated Capacities
Carbon Steel & Stainless Steel
Metal Mesh Slings

Sling Width In Inches	 Vertical or Choker	 Vertical Basket	Effect of Angle on Rated Capacities In Basket Hitch		
			30 deg Vertical 60 deg Horizontal	45 deg Vertical 45 deg Horizontal	60 deg Vertical 30 deg Horizontal

Heavy Duty-10 Ga 35 Spirals/Ft of sling width

2	1,500	3,000	2,600	2,100	1,500
3	2,700	5,400	4,700	3,800	2,700
4	4,000	8,000	6,900	5,600	4,000
6	6,000	12,000	10,400	8,400	6,000
8	8,000	16,000	13,800	11,300	8,000
10	10,000	20,000	17,000	14,100	10,000
12	12,000	24,000	20,700	16,900	12,000
14	14,000	28,000	24,200	19,700	14,000
16	16,000	32,000	27,700	22,600	16,000
18	18,000	36,000	31,100	25,400	18,000
20	20,000	40,000	34,600	28,200	20,000

Medium Duty-12 Ga 43 Spirals/Ft of sling width

2	1,350	2,700	2,300	1,900	1,400
3	2,000	4,000	3,500	2,800	2,000
4	2,700	5,400	4,700	3,800	2,700
6	4,500	9,000	7,800	6,400	4,500
8	6,000	12,000	10,400	8,500	6,000
10	7,500	15,000	13,000	10,600	7,500
12	9,000	18,000	15,600	12,700	9,000
14	10,500	21,000	18,200	14,800	10,500
16	12,000	24,000	20,800	17,000	12,000
18	13,500	27,000	23,400	19,100	13,500
20	15,000	30,000	26,000	21,200	15,000

Light Duty-14 Ga 59 Spirals/Ft of sling width

2	900	1,800	1,600	1,300	900
3	1,400	2,800	2,400	2,000	1,400
4	2,000	4,000	3,500	2,800	2,000
6	3,000	6,000	5,200	4,200	3,000
8	4,000	8,000	6,900	5,700	4,000
10	5,000	10,000	8,600	7,100	5,000
12	6,000	12,000	10,400	8,500	6,000
14	7,000	14,000	12,100	9,900	7,000
16	8,000	16,000	13,900	11,300	8,000
18	9,000	18,000	15,600	12,700	9,000
20	10,000	20,000	17,300	14,100	10,000

(h) Natural and synthetic fiber rope slings.

(1) Sling use.

(i) Fiber rope slings made from conventional three strand construction fiber rope shall not be used with loads in excess of the rated capacities prescribed in Tables N-184-16 through N-184-19.

(ii) Fiber rope slings shall have a diameter of curvature meeting at least the minimums specified in Figs. N-184-4 and N-184-5.

(iii) Slings not included in these tables shall be used only in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

(2) Safe operating temperatures. Natural and synthetic fiber rope slings, except for wet frozen slings, may be used in a temperature range from minus 20° F to plus 180° F without decreasing the working load limit. For operations outside this temperature range and for wet frozen slings, the sling manufacturer's recommendations shall be followed.

(3) Splicing. Spliced fiber rope slings shall not be used unless they have been spliced in accordance with the following minimum requirements and in accordance with any additional recommendations of the manufacturer:

(i) In manila rope, eye splices shall consist of at least three full tucks, and short splices shall consist of at least six full tucks, three on each side of the splice center line.

(ii) In synthetic fiber rope, eye splices shall consist of at least four full tucks, and short splices shall consist of at least eight full tucks, four on each side of the center line.

(iii) Strand end tails shall not be trimmed flush with the surface of the rope immediately adjacent to the full tucks. This applies to all types of fiber rope and both eye and short splices. For fiber rope under one inch in diameter, the tail shall project at least six rope diameters beyond the last full tuck. For fiber rope one inch in diameter and larger, the tail shall project at least six inches beyond the last full tuck. Where a projecting tail interferes with the use of the sling, the tail shall be tapered and spliced into the body of the rope using at least two additional tucks (which will require a tail length of approximately six rope diameters beyond the last full tuck).

(iv) Fiber rope slings shall have a minimum clear length of rope between eye splices equal to 10 times the rope diameter.

(v) Knots shall not be used in lieu of splices.

(vi) Clamps not designed specifically for fiber ropes shall not be used for splicing.

(vii) For all eye splices, the eye shall be of such size to provide an included angle of not greater than 60 degrees at the splice when the eye is placed over the load or support.

(4) End attachments. Fiber rope slings shall not be used if end attachments in contact with the rope have sharp edges or projections.

(5) Removal from service. Natural and synthetic fiber rope sling shall be immediately removed from service if any of the following conditions are present:

(i) Abnormal wear.

(ii) Powdered fiber between strands.

(iii) Broken or cut fibers.

(iv) Variations in the size or roundness of strands.

(v) Discoloration or rotting.

(vi) Distortion of hardware in the sling.

(6) Repairs. Only fiber rope slings made from new rope shall be used. Use of repaired or reconditioned fiber rope slings is prohibited.

(i) Synthetic web slings.

(1) Sling identification. Each sling shall be marked or coded to show the rated capacities for each type of hitch and type of synthetic web material.

TABLE N-184-16
Manila Rope Slings

Rope Dia. Nominal in Inches	Nominal Weight Per 100 ft. in Pounds	Eye & Eye Sling						Endless Sling					
		Vertical Hitch	Choker Hitch	Basket Hitch				Vertical Hitch	Choker Hitch	Basket Hitch			
				Angle of Rope to Horizontal						Angle of Rope to Horizontal			
				90°	60°	45°	30°			90°	60°	45°	30°
				Angle of Rope to Vertical						Angle of Rope to Vertical			
				0	30°	45°	60°			0	30°	45°	60°
1/2	7.5	480	240	960	830	680	480	865	430	1,730	1,500	1,220	865
9/16	10.4	620	310	1,240	1,070	875	620	1,120	560	2,230	1,930	1,580	1,120
5/8	13.3	790	395	1,580	1,370	1,120	790	1,420	710	2,840	2,460	2,010	1,420
3/4	16.7	970	485	1,940	1,680	1,370	970	1,750	875	3,490	3,020	2,470	1,750
13/16	19.5	1,170	585	2,340	2,030	1,650	1,170	2,110	1,050	4,210	3,650	2,980	2,110
7/8	22.5	1,390	695	2,780	2,410	1,970	1,390	2,500	1,250	5,000	4,330	3,540	2,500
1"	27.0	1,620	810	3,240	2,810	2,290	1,620	2,920	1,460	5,830	5,050	4,120	2,920
1 1/16	31.3	1,890	945	3,780	3,270	2,670	1,890	3,400	1,700	6,800	5,890	4,810	3,400
1 1/8	36.0	2,160	1,080	4,320	3,740	3,050	2,160	3,890	1,940	7,780	6,730	5,500	3,890
1 1/4	41.7	2,430	1,220	4,860	4,210	3,440	2,430	4,370	2,190	8,750	7,580	6,190	4,370
1 5/16	47.9	2,700	1,350	5,400	4,680	3,820	2,700	4,860	2,430	9,720	8,420	6,870	4,860
1 1/2	59.9	3,330	1,670	6,660	5,770	4,710	3,330	5,990	3,000	12,000	10,400	8,480	5,990
1 5/8	74.6	4,050	2,030	8,100	7,010	5,730	4,050	7,290	3,650	14,600	12,600	10,300	7,290
1 3/4	89.3	4,770	2,390	9,540	8,260	6,740	4,770	8,590	4,290	17,200	14,900	12,100	8,590
2"	107.5	5,580	2,790	11,200	9,660	7,890	5,580	10,000	5,020	20,100	17,400	14,200	10,000
2 1/8	125.0	6,480	3,240	13,000	11,200	9,160	6,480	11,700	5,830	23,300	20,200	16,500	11,700
2 1/4	146.0	7,380	3,690	14,800	12,800	10,400	7,380	13,300	6,640	26,600	23,000	18,800	13,300
2 1/2	166.7	8,370	4,190	16,700	14,500	11,800	8,370	15,100	7,530	30,100	26,100	21,300	15,100
2 5/8	190.8	9,360	4,680	18,700	16,200	13,200	9,360	16,800	8,420	33,700	29,200	23,800	16,800

See Figs. N-184-4 & N-184-5 for sling configuration descriptions.

TABLE N-184-17
Nylon Rope Slings

Rope Dia. Nominal in Inches	Nominal Weight Per 100 Ft. in Pounds	Eye & Eye Sling						Endless Sling					
		Vertical Hitch	Choker Hitch	Basket Hitch				Vertical Hitch	Choker Hitch	Basket Hitch			
				Angle of Rope to Horizontal						Angle of Rope to Horizontal			
				90°	60°	45°	30°			90°	60°	45°	30°
				Angle of Rope to Vertical						Angle of Rope to Vertical			
				0°	30°	45°	60°			0°	30°	45°	60°
1/2	6.5	635	320	1,270	1,100	900	635	1,140	570	2,290	1,980	1,620	1,140
9/16	8.3	790	395	1,580	1,370	1,120	790	1,420	710	2,840	2,460	2,010	1,420
5/8	10.5	1,030	515	2,060	1,780	1,460	1,030	1,850	925	3,710	3,210	2,620	1,850
3/4	14.5	1,410	705	2,820	2,440	1,990	1,410	2,540	1,270	5,080	4,400	3,590	2,540
13/16	17.0	1,680	840	3,360	2,910	2,380	1,680	3,020	1,510	6,050	5,240	4,280	3,020
7/8	20.0	1,980	990	3,960	3,430	2,800	1,980	3,560	1,780	7,130	6,170	5,040	3,560
1"	26.0	2,480	1,240	4,960	4,300	3,510	2,480	4,460	2,230	8,930	7,730	6,310	4,460
1 1/16	29.0	2,850	1,430	5,700	4,940	4,030	2,850	5,130	2,570	10,300	8,890	7,260	5,130
1 1/8	34.0	3,270	1,640	6,540	5,660	4,620	3,270	5,890	2,940	11,800	10,200	8,330	5,890
1 1/4	40.0	3,710	1,860	7,420	6,430	5,250	3,710	6,680	3,340	13,400	11,600	9,450	6,680
1 5/16	45.0	4,260	2,130	8,520	7,380	6,020	4,260	7,670	3,830	15,300	13,300	10,800	7,670
1 1/2	55.0	5,250	2,630	10,500	9,090	7,420	5,250	9,450	4,730	18,900	16,400	13,400	9,450
1 5/8	68.0	6,440	3,220	12,900	11,200	9,110	6,440	11,600	5,800	23,200	20,100	16,400	11,600
1 3/4	83.0	7,720	3,860	15,400	13,400	10,900	7,720	13,900	6,950	27,800	24,100	19,700	13,900
2"	95.0	9,110	4,560	18,200	15,800	12,900	9,110	16,400	8,200	32,800	28,400	23,200	16,400
2 1/8	109.0	10,500	5,250	21,000	18,200	14,800	10,500	18,900	9,450	37,800	32,700	26,700	18,900
2 1/4	129.0	12,400	6,200	24,800	21,500	17,500	12,400	22,300	11,200	44,600	38,700	31,600	22,300
2 1/2	149.0	13,900	6,950	27,800	24,100	19,700	13,900	25,000	12,500	50,000	43,300	35,400	25,000
2 5/8	168.0	16,000	8,000	32,000	27,700	22,600	16,000	28,800	14,400	57,600	49,900	40,700	28,800

See Figs. N-184-4 & N-184-5 for sling configuration descriptions.

TABLE N-184-18
Polyester Rope Slings

Rope Dia. Nominal In Inches	Nominal Weight Per 100 Ft. In Pounds		Eye & Eye Sling						Endless Sling					
			Vertical Hitch	Choker Hitch	Basket Hitch				Vertical Hitch	Choker Hitch	Basket Hitch			
					Angle of Rope to Horizontal 90°	60°	45°	30°			Angle of Rope to Horizontal 90°	60°	45°	30°
					Angle of Rope to Vertical 0°	30°	45°	60°			Angle of Rope to Vertical 0°	30°	45°	60°
1/2	8.0		635	320	1,270	1,100	900	635	1,140	570	2,290	1,980	1,620	1,140
9/16	10.2		790	395	1,580	1,370	1,120	790	1,420	710	2,840	2,460	2,010	1,420
5/8	13.0		990	495	1,980	1,710	1,400	990	1,780	890	3,570	3,090	2,520	1,780
3/4	17.5		1,240	620	2,480	2,150	1,750	1,240	2,230	1,120	4,470	3,870	3,160	2,230
13/16	21.0		1,540	770	3,080	2,670	2,180	1,540	2,770	1,390	5,540	4,800	3,920	2,770
7/8	25.0		1,780	890	3,560	3,080	2,520	1,780	3,200	1,600	6,410	5,550	4,530	3,200
1"	30.5		2,180	1,090	4,360	3,780	3,080	2,180	3,920	1,960	7,850	6,800	5,550	3,920
1 1/16	34.5		2,530	1,270	5,060	4,380	3,580	2,530	4,550	2,280	9,110	7,990	6,440	4,550
1 1/8	40.0		2,920	1,460	5,840	5,060	4,130	2,920	5,260	2,630	10,500	9,100	7,440	5,260
1 1/4	46.3		3,290	1,650	6,580	5,700	4,650	3,290	5,920	2,960	11,800	10,300	8,380	5,920
1 5/16	52.5		3,710	1,860	7,420	6,430	5,250	3,710	6,680	3,340	13,400	11,600	9,450	6,680
1 1/2	66.8		4,630	2,320	9,260	8,020	6,550	4,630	8,330	4,170	16,700	14,400	11,800	8,330
1 5/8	82.0		5,640	2,820	11,300	9,770	7,980	5,640	10,200	5,080	20,300	17,600	14,400	10,200
1 3/4	98.0		6,710	3,360	13,400	11,600	9,490	6,710	12,100	6,040	24,200	20,900	17,100	12,100
2"	118.0		7,920	3,960	15,800	13,700	11,200	7,920	14,300	7,130	28,500	24,700	20,200	14,300
2 1/8	135.0		9,110	4,460	18,200	15,800	12,900	9,110	16,400	8,200	32,800	28,400	23,200	16,400
2 1/4	157.0		10,600	5,300	21,200	18,400	15,000	10,600	19,100	9,540	38,200	33,100	27,000	19,100
2 1/2	181.0		12,100	6,050	24,200	21,000	17,100	12,100	21,800	10,900	43,600	37,700	30,800	21,800
2 5/8	205.0		13,600	6,800	27,200	23,600	19,200	13,600	24,500	12,200	49,000	42,400	34,600	24,500

TABLE N-184-19

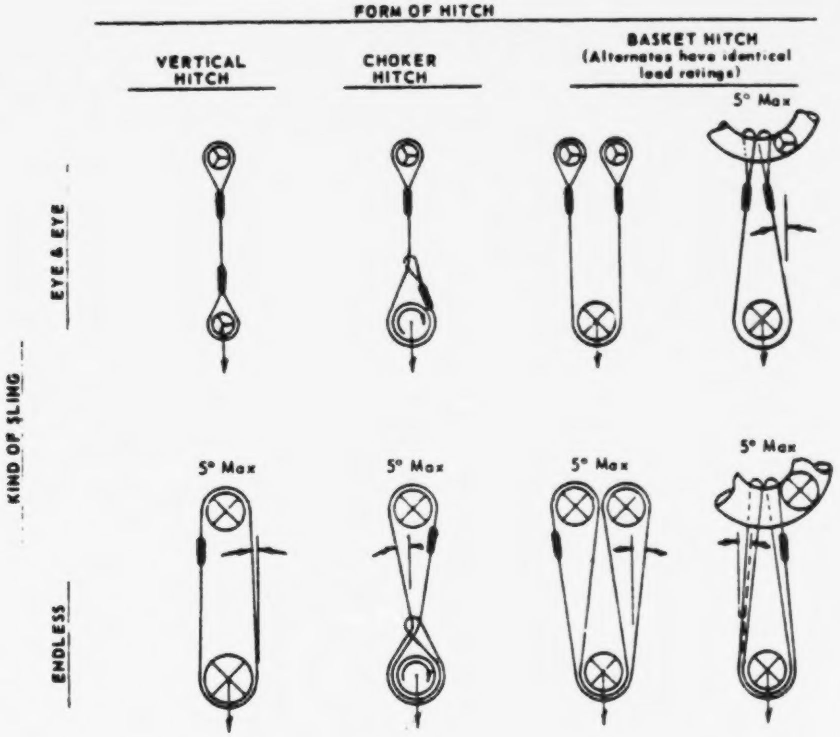
Polypropylene Rope Slings

		Eye & Eye Sling						Endless Sling					
				Basket Hitch						Basket Hitch			
				Angle of Rope to Horizontal						Angle of Rope to Horizontal			
Rope Dia. Nominal In Inches	Nominal Weight Per 100 Ft. In Pounds	Vertical Hitch	Choker Hitch	90°	60°	45°	30°	Vertical Hitch	Choker Hitch	90°	60°	45°	30°
				Angle of Rope to Vertical						Angle of Rope to Vertical			
				0°	30°	45°	60°			0°	30°	45°	60°
1/2	4.7	645	325	1,290	1,120	910	645	1,160	580	2,320	2,010	1,640	1,160
9/16	6.1	780	390	1,560	1,350	1,100	780	1,400	700	2,810	2,430	1,990	1,400
5/8	7.5	950	475	1,900	1,650	1,340	950	1,710	855	3,420	2,960	2,420	1,710
3/4	10.7	1,300	650	2,600	2,250	1,840	1,300	2,340	1,170	4,680	4,050	3,310	2,340
13/16	12.7	1,520	760	3,040	2,630	2,150	1,520	2,740	1,370	5,470	4,740	3,870	2,740
7/8	15.0	1,760	880	3,520	3,050	2,490	1,760	3,170	1,580	6,340	5,490	4,480	3,170
1"	18.0	2,140	1,070	4,280	3,700	3,030	2,140	3,850	1,930	7,700	6,670	5,450	3,860
1 1/16	20.4	2,450	1,230	4,900	4,240	3,460	2,450	4,410	2,210	8,820	7,640	6,240	4,410
1 1/8	23.7	2,800	1,400	5,600	4,850	3,960	2,800	5,040	2,520	10,100	8,730	7,130	5,040
1 1/4	27.0	3,210	1,610	6,420	5,560	4,540	3,210	5,780	2,890	11,600	10,000	8,170	5,780
1 5/16	30.5	3,600	1,800	7,200	6,240	5,090	3,600	6,480	3,240	13,000	11,200	9,170	6,480
1 1/2	38.5	4,540	2,270	9,080	7,860	6,420	4,540	8,170	4,090	16,300	14,200	11,600	8,170
1 5/8	47.5	5,510	2,760	11,000	9,540	7,790	5,510	9,920	4,960	19,800	17,200	14,000	9,920
1 3/4	57.0	6,580	3,290	13,200	11,400	9,300	6,580	11,800	5,920	23,700	20,500	16,800	11,800
2"	69.0	7,960	3,980	15,900	13,800	11,300	7,960	14,300	7,160	28,700	24,800	20,300	14,300
2 1/8	80.0	9,330	4,670	18,700	16,200	13,200	9,330	16,800	8,400	33,600	29,100	23,800	16,800
2 1/4	92.0	10,600	5,300	21,200	18,400	15,000	10,600	19,100	9,540	38,200	33,100	27,000	19,100
2 1/2	107.0	12,200	6,100	24,400	21,100	17,300	12,200	22,000	11,000	43,900	38,000	31,100	22,000
2 5/8	120.0	13,800	6,900	27,600	23,900	19,600	13,800	24,800	12,400	49,700	43,000	35,100	24,800

See Figs. N-184-4 & 184-5 for sling configuration descriptions.

FIGURE N-184-4

Basic Sling Configurations with Vertical Legs


FORM OF HITCH
VERTICAL HITCH
CHOKER HITCH
BASKET HITCH (Alternates have identical load ratings)
5° Max
EYE & EYE
KIND OF SLING
ENDLESS
5° Max
5° Max
5° Max
5° Max

NOTES: Angle 5° or less from the vertical may be considered vertical angles.

For slings with legs more than 5° off vertical, the actual angle as shown in Figure N-184-5 must be considered.

EXPLANATION OF SYMBOLS: MINIMUM DIAMETER OF CURVATURE

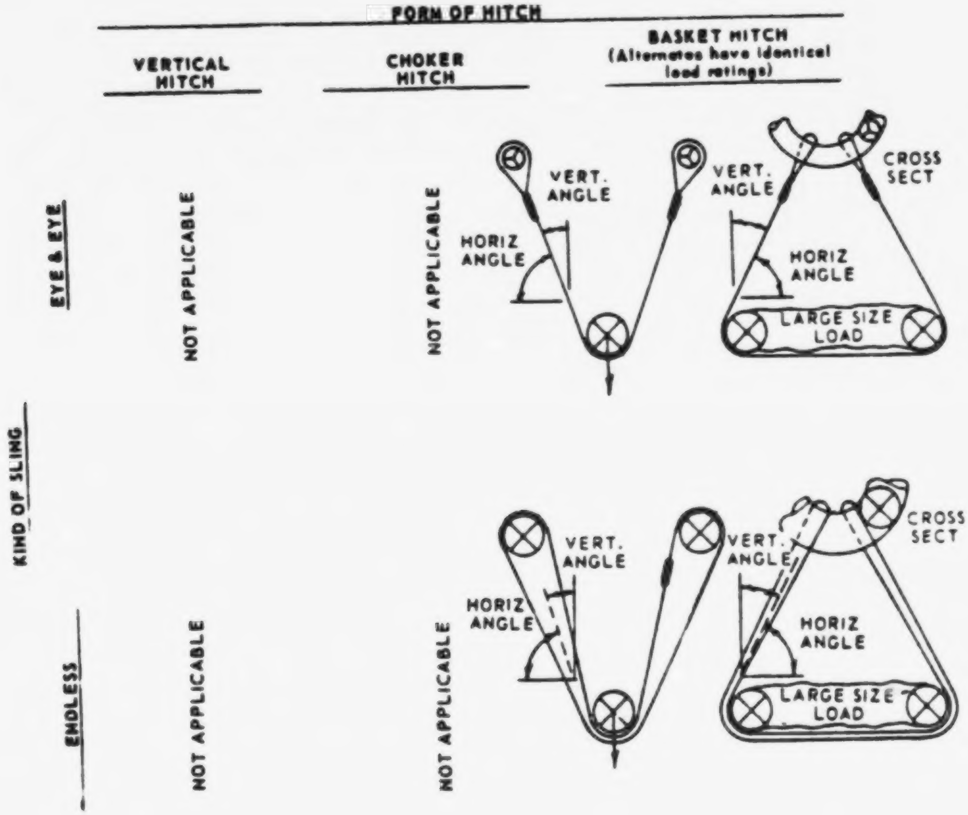
Represents a contact surface which shall have a diameter or curvature at least double the diameter of the rope from which the sling is made.

Represents a contact surface which shall have a diameter of curvature at least 8 times the diameter of the rope.

Represents a load in a choker hitch and illustrates the rotary force on the load and/or the slippage of the rope in contact with the load. Diameter of curvature of load surface shall be at least double the diameter of the rope.

FIGURE N-184-5

Sling Configurations with Angled Legs


FORM OF HITCH
VERTICAL HITCH
CHOKER HITCH
BASKET HITCH (Alternates have identical load ratings)
KIND OF SLING
EYE & EYE
NOT APPLICABLE
NOT APPLICABLE
VERT. ANGLE
HORIZ ANGLE
VERT. ANGLE
CROSS SECT
HORIZ ANGLE
LARGE SIZE LOAD
ENDLESS
NOT APPLICABLE
NOT APPLICABLE
VERT. ANGLE
HORIZ ANGLE
VERT. ANGLE
CROSS SECT
HORIZ ANGLE
LARGE SIZE LOAD

NOTES: For vertical angles of 5° or less, refer to Figure N-184-4 "Basic Sling Configurations with Vertical Legs".

See Figure N-184-4 for explanation of symbols.

(2) Webbing. Synthetic webbing shall be of uniform thickness and width and selvage edges shall not be split from the webbing's width.

(3) Fittings. Fittings shall be:

(a) Of a minimum breaking strength equal to that of the sling; and

(b) Free of all sharp edges that could in any way damage the webbing.

(4) Attachment of end fittings to webbing and formation of eyes. Stitching shall be the only method used to attach end fittings to webbing and to form eyes. The thread shall be in an even pattern and contain a sufficient number of stitches to develop the full breaking strength of the sling.

(5) Sling use. Synthetic web slings illustrated in Fig. N-184-6 shall not be used with loads in excess of the rated capacities specified in Tables N-184-20 through N-184-22. Slings not included in these tables shall be used only in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

(6) Environmental conditions. When synthetic web slings are used, the following precautions shall be taken:

(i) Nylon web slings shall not be used where fumes, vapors, sprays, mists or liquids of acids or phenolics are present.

(ii) Polyester and polypropylene web slings shall not be used where fumes, vapors, sprays, mists or liquids of caustics are present.

(iii) Web slings with aluminum fittings shall not be used where fumes, vapors, sprays, mists or liquids of caustics are present.

(7) Safe operating temperatures. Synthetic web slings of polyester and nylon shall not be used at temperatures in excess of 180° F. Polypropylene web slings shall not be used at temperatures in excess of 200° F.

(8) Repairs.

(i) Synthetic web slings which are repaired shall not be used unless repaired by a sling manufacturer or an equivalent entity.

(ii) Each repaired sling shall be proof tested by the manufacturer or equivalent entity to twice the rated capacity prior to its return to service. The employer shall retain a certificate of the proof test and make it available for examination.

(iii) Slings, including webbing and fittings, which have been repaired in a temporary manner shall not be used.

(9) Removal from service. Synthetic web slings shall be immediately removed from service if any of the following conditions are present:

(i) Acid or caustic burns;

(ii) Melting or charring of any part of the sling surface;

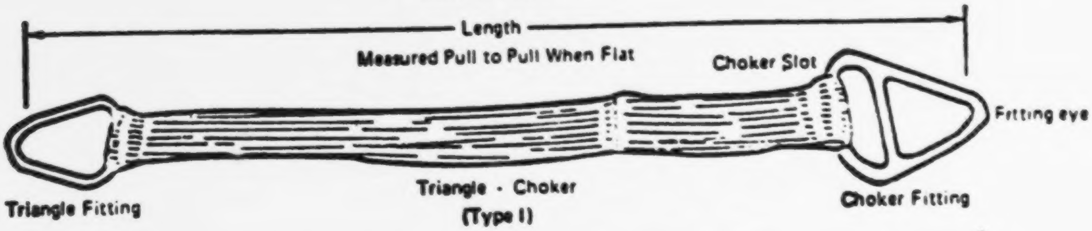
(iii) Snags, punctures, tears or cuts;

(iv) Broken or worn stitches; or

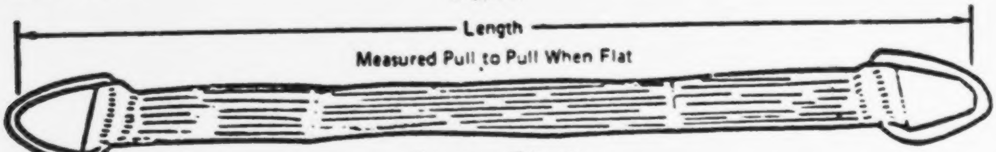
(v) Distortion of fittings.

FIG. N-184-6

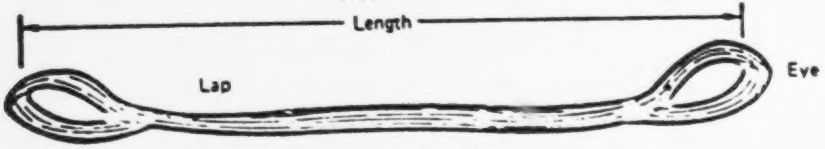
Basic Synthetic Web Sling Constructions


Length
Measured Pull to Pull When Flat
Choker Slot
Fitting eye
Triangle Fitting
Choker Fitting

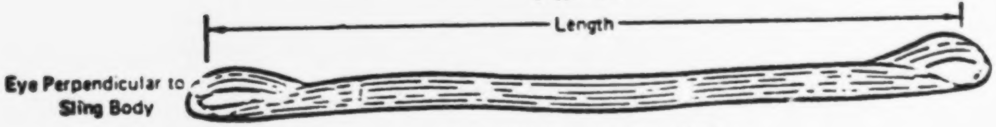
Triangle - Choker
(Type I)


Length
Measured Pull to Pull When Flat

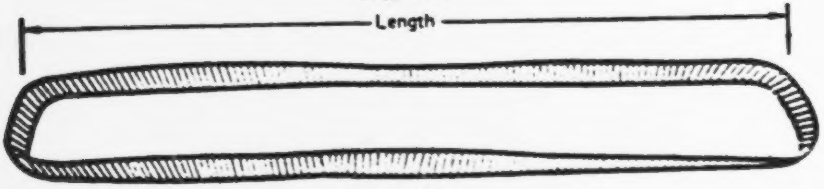
Triangle - Triangle
(Type II)


Length
Lap
Eye

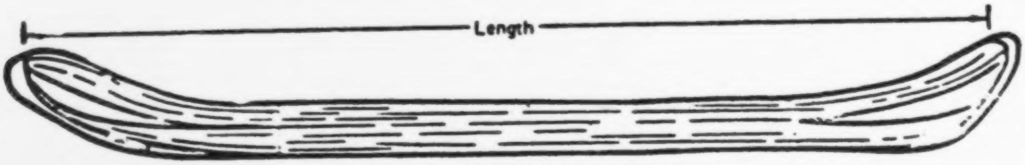
Eye and Eye With Flat Eyes
(Type III)


Length
Eye Perpendicular to Sling Body

Eye and Eye With Twisted Eyes
(Type IV)



Endless Type
(Type V)



Return Eye
(Type VI)

TABLE N-184-20

Rated Capacity in Pounds
Synthetic Web Slings
1,000 Lbs Per Inch of Width
Single Ply

Sling Body Width, Inches	Triangle—Choker Slings, Type I Triangle—Triangle Slings, Type II Eye & Eye with Flat Eye Slings, Type III Eye & Eye with Twisted Eye Slings, Type IV						Endless Slings, Type V						Return Eye Slings, Type VI					
	Vert.	Choker	Vert. Basket	30 Basket	45 Basket	60 Basket	Vert	Choker	Vert. Basket	30 Basket	45 Basket	60 Basket	Vert	Choker	Vert. Basket	30 Basket	45 Basket	60 Basket
1	1,000	750	2,000	1,700	1,400	1,000	1,600	1,300	3,200	2,800	2,300	1,600	800	650	1,600	1,400	1,150	800
2	2,000	1,500	4,000	3,500	2,800	2,000	3,200	2,600	6,400	5,500	4,500	3,200	1,600	1,300	3,200	2,800	2,300	1,600
3	3,000	2,200	6,000	5,200	4,200	3,000	4,800	3,800	9,600	8,300	6,800	4,800	2,400	1,950	4,800	4,150	3,400	2,400
4	4,000	3,000	8,000	6,900	5,700	4,000	6,400	5,100	12,800	11,100	9,000	6,400	3,200	2,600	6,400	5,500	4,500	3,200
5	5,000	3,700	10,000	8,700	7,100	5,000	8,000	6,400	16,000	13,900	11,300	8,000	4,000	3,250	8,000	6,900	5,650	4,000
6	6,000	4,500	12,000	10,400	8,500	6,000	9,600	7,700	19,200	16,600	13,600	9,600	4,800	3,800	9,600	8,300	6,800	4,800

Notes: 1. All angles shown are measured from the vertical.

2. Capacities for intermediate widths not shown may be obtained by interpolation.

TABLE N-184-21

Rated Capacity in Pounds
Synthetic Web Slings
1,200 Lbs Per Inch of Width
Single Ply

Sling Body Width, Inches	Triangle—Choker Slings, Type I Triangle—Triangle Slings, Type II Eye & Eye with Flat Eye Slings, Type III Eye & Eye with Twisted Eye Slings, Type IV						Endless Slings, Type V						Return Eye Slings, Type VI					
	Vert	Choker	Vert. Basket	30 Basket	45 Basket	60 Basket	Vert.	Choker	Vert. Basket	30 Basket	45 Basket	60 Basket	Vert	Choker	Vert. Basket	30 Basket	45 Basket	60 Basket
1	1,200	900	2,400	2,100	1,700	1,200	1,900	1,500	3,800	3,300	2,700	1,900	950	750	1,900	1,650	1,350	950
2	2,400	1,800	4,800	4,200	3,400	2,400	3,800	3,000	7,600	6,600	5,400	3,800	1,900	1,500	3,800	3,300	2,700	1,900
3	3,600	2,700	7,200	6,200	5,100	3,600	5,800	4,600	11,600	10,000	8,200	5,800	2,850	2,250	5,700	4,950	4,050	2,850
4	4,800	3,600	9,600	8,300	6,800	4,800	7,700	6,200	15,400	13,300	10,900	7,700	3,800	3,000	7,600	6,600	5,400	3,800
5	6,000	4,500	12,000	10,400	8,500	6,000	9,600	7,700	19,200	16,600	13,600	9,600	4,750	3,750	9,500	8,250	6,750	4,750
6	7,200	5,400	14,400	12,500	10,200	7,200	11,500	9,200	23,000	19,900	16,300	11,500	5,800	4,600	11,600	10,000	8,200	5,800

Notes: 1. All angles shown are measured from the vertical.

2. Capacities for intermediate widths not shown may be obtained by interpolation.

TABLE N-184-22

Rated Capacity in Pounds
Synthetic Web Slings
1,600 Lbs Per Inch of Width
Single Ply

Sling Body Width, Inches	Triangle—Choker Slings, Type I Triangle—Triangle Slings, Type II Eye & Eye with Flat Eye Slings, Type III Eye & Eye with Twisted Eye Slings, Type IV						Endless Slings, Type V						Return Eye Slings, Type VI					
	Vert.	Choker	Vert. Basket	30° Basket	45° Basket	60° Basket	Vert.	Choker	Vert. Basket	30° Basket	45° Basket	60° Basket	Vert.	Choker	Vert. Basket	30° Basket	45° Basket	60° Basket
1	1,600	1,200	3,200	2,800	2,300	1,600	2,600	2,100	5,200	4,500	3,700	2,600	1,050	1,050	2,600	2,250	1,850	1,300
2	3,200	2,400	6,400	5,500	4,500	3,200	5,100	4,100	10,200	8,800	7,200	5,100	2,600	2,100	5,200	4,500	3,700	2,600
3	4,800	3,600	9,600	8,300	6,800	4,800	7,700	6,200	15,400	13,300	10,900	7,700	3,900	3,150	7,800	6,750	5,500	3,900
4	6,400	4,800	12,800	11,100	9,000	6,400	10,100	8,200	20,400	17,700	14,400	10,200	5,100	4,100	10,200	8,800	7,200	5,100
5	8,000	6,000	16,000	13,800	11,300	8,000	12,800	10,200	25,600	22,200	18,100	12,800	6,400	5,150	12,800	11,050	9,050	6,400
6	9,600	7,200	19,200	16,600	13,600	9,600	15,400	12,300	30,800	26,700	21,800	15,400	7,700	6,200	15,400	13,300	10,900	7,700

Notes: 1. All angles shown are measured from the verticle.

2. Capacities for intermediate widths not shown may be obtained by interpolation.

1910.189—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

Sec.	*Source*
1910.176	41 CFR 50-204.3.
1910.177	NFPA No. 231-1970, General Indoor Storage.
1910.178(a)(1)	NFPA No. 505-1969, Powered Industrial Trucks.
1910.178(a)(2)	ANSI B56.1-1969, Standard for Powered Industrial Trucks, Part II.
1910.178(a)(3)	NFPA No. 505-1969, Powered Industrial Trucks.
1910.178(a)(4)-(7)	ANSI B56.1-1969, Standard for Powered Industrial Trucks.
1910.178(b)-(d)	NFPA No. 505-1969, Powered Industrial Trucks.
1910.178(e)-(p)	ANSI B56.1-1969, Powered Industrial Trucks.
1910.178(q)	NFPA No. 505-1969, Powered Industrial Trucks.
1910.179	ANSI B30.2.0-1967, Safety Code for Overhead and Gantry Cranes.
1910.180	ANSI B30.5-1968, Safety Code for Crawler, Locomotive, and Truck Cranes.
1910.181	ANSI B30.6-1969, Safety Code for Derricks.

1910.190—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

Specific standards of the following organizations have been referenced in this part. Copies of the referenced materials may be obtained from the issuing organizations.

American Society of Heating, Refrigeration, and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc., 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.

American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19103.

Crane Manufacturers Association of America, Inc., 1 Thomas Circle NW., Washington, DC 20005.

American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

National Fire Protection Association, 60 Batterymarch Street, Boston, MA 02110.

Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc., 485 Lexington Avenue, New York, NY 10017.

[40 F.R. 27400, June 27, 1975]

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART O—MACHINERY AND MACHINE GUARDING INTERP

1910.211 Definitions.
1910.212 General requirements for all machines.
1910.213 Woodworking machinery requirements.
1910.214 Cooperage machinery.
1910.215 Abrasive wheel machinery.
1910.216 Mills and calenders in the rubber and plastics industries.
1910.217 Mechanical power presses.
1910.218 Forging machines.
1910.219 Mechanical power-transmission apparatus.
1910.220 Additional delay in effective date.
1910.221 Sources of standards.
1910.222 Standards organizations.

Authority: Secs. 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12-71 (36 FR 8754), 8-76 (41 FR 25059) or 9-83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable.

[51 F.R. 34561, September 29, 1986]

SUBPART O—MACHINERY AND MACHINE GUARDING

1910.211—DEFINITIONS

(a) As used in §§ 1910.213 and 1910.214 unless the context clearly requires otherwise, the following woodworking machinery terms shall have the meaning prescribed in this paragraph.

(1) "Point of operations" means that point at which cutting, shaping, boring, or forming is accomplished upon the stock.

(2) "Push stick" means a narrow strip of wood or other soft material with a notch cut into one end and which is used to push short pieces of material through saws.

(3) "Block" means a short block of wood, provided with a handle similar to that of a plane and a shoulder at the rear end, which is used for pushing short stock over revolving cutters.

(b) As used in § 1910.215 unless the context clearly requires otherwise, the following abrasive wheel machinery terms shall have the meanings prescribed in this paragraph.

(1)"Type 1 straight wheels" means wheels having diameter, thickness, and hole size dimensions, and they should be used only on the periphery. Type 1 wheels shall be mounted between flanges.

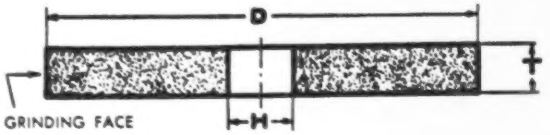
LIMITATION: Hole dimension (H) should not be greater than two-thirds of wheel diameter dimension (D) for precision, cylindrical, centerless, or surface grinding applications. Maximum hole size for all other applications should not exceed one-half wheel diameter.

(2) "Type 2 cylinder wheels" means wheels having diameter, wheel thickness, and rim thickness dimensions. Grinding is performed on the rim face only, dimension W. Cylinder wheels may be plain, plate mounted, inserted nut, or of the projecting stud type.

LIMITATION: Rim height, T dimension, is generally equal to or greater than rim thickness, W dimension.

Figure No. O-1

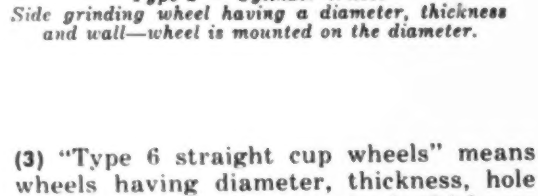
TYPE 1 STRAIGHT WHEELS



Type 1 — Straight Wheel.
Peripheral grinding wheel having a diameter, thickness and hole.

Figure No. O-2

TYPE 2 CYLINDER WHEELS



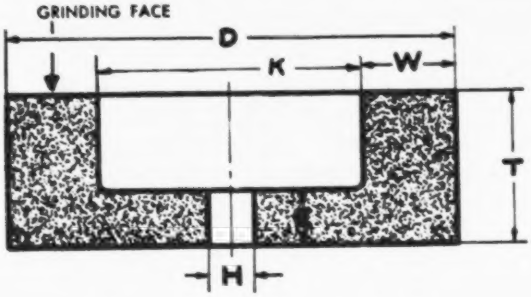
Type 2 — Cylinder Wheel
Side grinding wheel having a diameter, thickness and wall—wheel is mounted on the diameter.

(3) "Type 6 straight cup wheels" means wheels having diameter, thickness, hole size, rim thickness, and back thickness dimensions. Grinding is always performed on rim face, W dimension.

LIMITATION: Minimum back thickness, E dimension, should not be less than one-fourth T dimension. In addition, when unthreaded hole wheels are specified, the inside flat, K dimension, must be large enough to accommodate a suitable flange.

Figure No. 0-3

TYPE 6 STRAIGHT CUP WHEELS

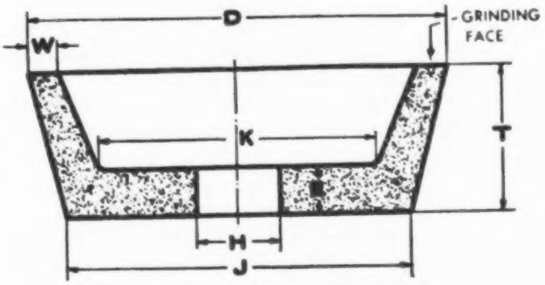


Type 6 — Straight-cup Wheel
Side grinding wheel having a diameter, thickness and hole with one side straight or flat and the opposite side recessed. This type, however, differs from Type 5 in that the grinding is performed on the wall of the abrasive created by the difference between the diameter of the recess and the outside diameter of the wheel. Therefore, the wall dimension "W" takes precedence over the diameter of the recess as an essential intermediate dimension to describe this shape type.

(4) "Type 11 flaring cup wheels" mean wheels having double diameter dimensions D and J, and in addition have thickness, hole size, rim and back thickness dimensions. Grinding is always performed on rim face, W dimension. Type 11 wheels are subject to all limitations of use and mounting listed for type 6 straight sided cup wheels definition.

Figure No. 0-4

TYPE 11 FLARING CUP WHEELS



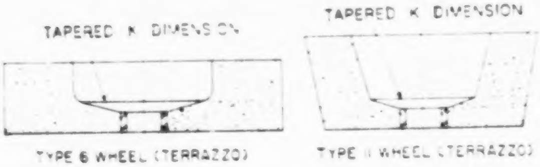
Type 11 — Flaring-cup Wheel
Side grinding wheel having a wall flared or tapered outward from the back. Wall thickness at the back is normally greater than at the grinding face (W).

LIMITATION: Minimum back thickness, E dimension, should not be less than one-fourth T dimension. In addition, when unthreaded hole wheels are specified the inside flat, K dimension, shall be large enough to accommodate a suitable flange.

(5) "Modified types 6 and 11 wheels (terrazzo)" mean some type 6 and 11 cup wheels used in the terrazzo trade having tapered K dimensions to match a special tapered flange furnished by the machine builder.

LIMITATION: These wheels shall be mounted only with a special tapered flange.

Figure No. 0-5
Type 6& 11 Wheels (Terrazzo)



Typical examples of modified types 6 and 11 wheels (terrazzo) showing tapered K dimensions.

(6) "Types 27 and 28 depressed center wheels" mean wheels having diameter, thickness, and hole size dimensions. Both types are reinforced organic bonded wheels having offset hubs which permit side and peripheral grinding operations without interference with the mounting. Type 27 wheels are manufactured with flat grinding rims permitting notching and cutting operations. Type 28 wheels have saucer shaped grinding rims.

(i) Limitations: Special supporting, back adapter and inside flange nuts are required for the proper mounting of these types of wheels subject to limitations of § 1910.215(c)(4) (i) and (ii).

(ii) Mounts which are affixed to the wheel by the manufacturer may not require an inside nut and shall not be reused.

(7) "Type 27A depressed center, cutting-off wheels" mean wheels having diameter, thickness, and hole size dimensions. They are reinforced, organic bonded, offset hub type wheels, usually 16 inches diameter and larger, specially designed for use on cutting-off machines where mounting nut or outer flange interference cannot be tolerated.

LIMITATIONS: See § 1910.215(c)(1).

(8) "Surface feet per minute" (s.f.p.m.) means the distance in feet any one abrasive grain on the peripheral surface of a grinding wheel travels in 1 minute.

$$\text{Surface Feet Per Minute} = \frac{3.1416 \times \text{diameter in inches} \times \text{r.p.m.}}{12}$$

or

$$.262 \times \text{diameter in inches} \times \text{r.p.m.}$$

Examples: (a) 24-inch diameter wheel, 1,000 revolutions per minute. Surface Feet per minute .262 × 24 × 1,000 = 6,288 s.f.p.m.

(b) 12-inch diameter wheel, 1,000 revolutions per minute. Surface Feet per minute .262 × 12 × 1,000 = 3,144 s.f.p.m.

(9) "Flanges" means collars, discs or plates between which wheels are mounted and are referred to as adaptor, sleeve, or back up type. See paragraph (c) of § 1910.215 for full description.

(10) "Snagging" means grinding which removes relatively large amounts of material without regard to close tolerances or surface finish requirements.

(11) "Off-hand grinding" means the grinding of any material or part which is held in the operator's hand.

(12) "Safety guard" means an enclosure designed to restrain the pieces of the grinding wheel and furnish all possible protection in the event that the wheel is broken in operation. See paragraph (b) of § 1910.215.

(13) "Cutting off wheels" mean wheels having diameter thickness and hole size dimensions and are subject to all limitations of mounting and use listed for type 1 wheels, the definition in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph and paragraph (d) of § 1910.215. They may be steel centered, diamond abrasive or organic bonded abrasive of the plain or reinforced type.

(i) Limitation: Cutting off wheels are recommended only for use on specially designed and fully guarded machines and are subject to the following maximum thickness and hole size limitations.

Wheel diameter:	*Max. thickness (inch)*
6 inch and smaller	3/16
Larger than 6 inches to 12 inches	1/4
Larger than 12 inches to 23 inches	3/8
Larger than 23 inches	1/2

(ii) Maximum hole size for cutting-off wheels should not be larger than 1/4-wheel diameter.

(14) "Abrasive wheel" means a cutting tool consisting of abrasive grains held together by organic or inorganic bonds. Diamond and reinforced wheels are included.

(15) "Organic wheels" means wheels which are bonded by means of an organic material such as resin, rubber, shellac, or other similar bonding agent.

(16) "Inorganic wheels" means wheels which are bonded by means of inorganic material such as clay, glass, porcelain, sodium silicate, magnesium oxychloride, or metal. Wheels bonded with clay, glass, porcelain or related ceramic materials are characterized as "vitrified bonded wheels."

(c) As used in 1910.216, unless the context clearly requires otherwise, the following mills and calendars in the rubber and plastic industries terms shall have the meanings prescribed in this paragraph.

(1) "Bite" means the nip point between any two inrunning rolls.

(2) "Calender" means a machine equipped with two or more metal rolls revolving in opposite directions and used for continuously sheeting or plying up rubber and plastics compounds and for frictioning or coating materials with rubber and plastics compounds.

(3) "Mill" means a machine consisting of two adjacent metal rolls, set horizontally, which revolve in opposite directions (i.e., toward each other as viewed from above) used for the mechanical working of rubber and plastics compounds.

(d) As used in §1910.217, unless the context clearly requires otherwise, the following power press terms shall have the meaning prescribed in this paragraph.

(1) "Antirepeat" means the part of the clutch/brake control system designed to limit the press to a single stroke if the tripping means is held operated. Antirepeat requires release of all tripping mechanisms before another stroke can be initiated. "Antirepeat" is also called single stroke reset or reset circuit.

(2) "Brake" means the mechanism used on a mechanical power press to stop and/or hold the crankshaft, either directly or through a gear train, when the clutch is disengaged.

(3) "Bolster plate" means the plate attached to the top of the bed of the press having drilled holes or T-slots for attaching the lower die or die shoe.

(4) "Clutch" means the coupling mechanism used on a mechanical power press to couple the flywheel to the crankshaft, either directly or through a gear train.

(5) "Full revolution clutch" means a type of clutch that, when tripped, cannot be disengaged until the crankshaft has completed a full revolution and the press slide a full stroke.

(6) "Part revolution clutch" means a type of clutch that can be disengaged at any point before the crankshaft has completed a full revolution and the press slide a full stroke.

(7) "Direct drive" means the type of driving arrangement wherein no clutch is used; coupling and decoupling of the driving torque is accomplished by energization and deenergization of a motor. Even though not employing a clutch, direct drives match the operational characteristics of "part revolution clutches" because the driving power may be disengaged during the stroke of the press.

(8) "Concurrent" means acting in conjunction, and is used to describe a situation wherein two or more controls exist in an operated condition at the same time.

(9) "Continuous" means uninterrupted multiple strokes of the slide without intervening stops (or other clutch control action) at the end of individual strokes.

(10) "Counterbalance" means the mechanism that is used to balance or support the weight of the connecting rods, slide, and slide attachments.

(11) "Device" means a press control or attachment that:

(i) Restrains the operator from inadvertently reaching into the point of operation, or

(ii) Prevents normal press operation if the operator's hands are inadvertently within the point of operation, or

(iii) Automatically withdraws the operator's hands if the operator's hands are inadvertently within the point of operation as the dies close, or

[53 F.R. 8353, March 14, 1988]

(iv) Prevents the initiation of a stroke, or stops of stroke in progress, when there is an intrusion through the sensing field by any part of the operator's body or by any other object.

[53 F.R. 8353, March 14, 1988]

(12) "Presence sensing device" means a device designed, constructed and arranged to create a sensing field or area that signals the clutch/brake control to deactivate the clutch and activate the brake of the press when any part of the operator's body or a hand tool is within such field or area.

[53 F.R. 8353, March 14, 1988]

(13) "Gate or movable barrier device" means a movable barrier arranged to enclose the point of operation before the press stroke can be started.

(14) "Holdout or restraint device" means a mechanism, including attachments for operator's hands, that when anchored and adjusted prevent the operator's hands from entering the point of operation.

(15) "Pull-out device" means a mechanism attached to the operator's hands and connected to the upper die or slide of the press, that is designed, when properly adjusted, to withdraw the operator's hands as the dies close, if the operator's hands are inadvertently within the point of operation.

(16) "Sweep device" means a single or double arm (rod) attached to the upper die or slide of the press and designed to move the operator's hands to a safe position as the dies close, if the operator's hands are inadvertently within the point of operation.

(17) "Two hand control device" means a two hand trip that further requires concurrent pressure from both hands of the operator during a substantial part of the die-closing portion of the stroke of the press.

(18) "Die" means the tooling used in a press for cutting or forming material. An upper and a lower die make a complete set.

(19) "Die builder" means any person who builds dies for power presses.

(20) "Die set" means a tool holder held in alignment by guide posts and bushings and consisting of a lower shoe, an upper shoe or punch holder, and guide posts and bushings.

(21) "Die setter" means an individual who places or removes dies in or from mechanical power presses, and who, as a part of his duties, makes the necessary adjustments to cause the tooling to function properly and safely.

(22) "Die setting" means the process of placing or removing dies in or from a mechanical power press, and the process of adjusting the dies, other tooling and safeguarding means to cause them to function properly and safely.

(23) "Die shoe" means a plate or block upon which a die holder is mounted. A die shoe functions primarily as a base for the complete die assembly, and, when used, is bolted or clamped to the bolster plate or the face of slide.

(24) "Ejector" means a mechanism for removing work or material from between the dies.

(25) "Face of slide" means the bottom surface of the slide to which the punch or upper die is generally attached.

(26) "Feeding" means the process of placing or removing material within or from the point of operation.

(27) "Automatic feeding" means feeding wherein the material or part being processed is placed within or removed from the point of operation by a method or means not requiring action by an operator on each stroke of the press.

(28) "Semiautomatic feeding" means feeding wherein the material or part being processed is placed within or removed from point of operation by an auxiliary means controlled by operator on each stroke of the press.

(29) "Manual feeding" means feeding wherein the material or part being processed is handled by the operator on each stroke of the press.

(30) "Food control" means the foot operated control mechanism designed to be used with a clutch or clutch/brake control system.

(31) "Foot pedal" means the foot operated lever designed to operate the mechanical linkage that trips a full revolution clutch.

(32) "Guard" means a barrier that prevents entry of the operator's hands or fingers into the point of operation.

(33) "Die enclosure guard" means an enclosure attached to the die shoe or stripper, or both, in a fixed position.

(34) "Fixed barrier guard" means a die space barrier attached to the press frame.

(35) "Interlocked press barrier guard" means a barrier attached to the press frame and interlocked so that the press stroke cannot be started normally unless the guard itself, or its hinged or movable sections, enclose the point of operation.

(36) "Adjustable barrier guard" means a barrier requiring adjustment for each job or die setup.

(37) "Guide post" means the pin attached to the upper or lower die shoe, operating within the bushing on the opposing die shoe, to maintain the alignment of the upper and lower dies.

(38) "Hand feeding tool" means any hand held tool designed for placing or removing material or parts to be processed within or from the point of operation.

(39) "Inch" means an intermittent motion imparted to the slide (on machines using part revolution clutches) by momentary operation of the "Inch" operating means. Operation of the "Inch" operating means engages the driving clutch so that a small portion of one stroke or indefinite stroking can occur, depending upon the length of time the "Inch" operating means is held operated. "Inch" is a function used by the die setter for setup of dies and tooling, but is not intended for use during production operations by the operator.

(40) "Jog" means an intermittent motion imparted to the slide by momentary operation of the drive motor, after the clutch is engaged with the flywheel at rest.

(41) "Knockout" means a mechanism for releasing material from either die.

(42) "Liftout" means the mechanism also known as knockout.

(43) "Operator's station" means the complete complement of controls used by or available to an operator on a given operation for stroking the press.

(44) "Pinch point" means any point other than the point of operation at which it is possible for a part of the body to be caught between the moving parts of a press or auxiliary equipment, or between moving and stationary parts of a press or auxiliary equipment or between the material and moving part or parts of the press or auxiliary equipment.

(45) "Point of operation" means the area of the press where material is actually positioned and work is being performed during any process such as shearing, punching, forming, or assembling.

(46) "Press" means a mechanically powered machine that shears, punches, forms or assembles metal or other material by means of cutting, shaping, or combination dies attached to slides. A press consists of a stationary bed or anvil, and a slide (or slides) having a controlled reciprocating motion toward and away from the bed surface, the slide being guided in a definite path by the frame of the press.

(47) "Repeat" means an unintended or unexpected successive stroke of the press resulting from a malfunction.

(48) "Safety block" means a prop that, when inserted between the upper and lower dies or between the bolster plate and the face of the slide, prevents the slide from falling of its own deadweight.

(49) "Single stroke" means one complete stroke of the slide, usually initiated from a full open (or up) position, followed by closing (or down), and then a return to the full open position.

(50) "Single stroke mechanism" means an arrangement used on a full revolution clutch to limit the travel of the slide to one complete stroke at each engagement of the clutch.

(51) "Slide" means the main reciprocating press member. A slide is also called a ram, plunger, or platen.

(52) "Stop control" means an operator control designed to immediately deactivate the clutch control and activate the brake to stop slide motion.

(53) "Stripper" means a mechanism or die part for removing the parts or material from the punch.

(54) "Stroking selector" means the part of the clutch/brake control that determines the type of stroking when the operating means is actuated. The stroking selector generally includes positions for "Off" (Clutch Control), "Inch," "Single Stroke," and "Continuous" (when Continuous is furnished).

(55) "Trip or (tripping)" means activation of the clutch to "run" the press.

(56) "Turnover bar" means a bar used in die setting to manually turn the crankshaft of the press.

(57) "Two-hand trip" means a clutch actuating means requiring the concurrent use of both hands of the operator to trip the press.

(58) "Unitized tooling" means a type of die in which the upper and lower members are incorporated into a selfcontained unit so arranged as to hold the die members in alignment.

(59) "Control system" means sensors, manual input and mode selection elements, interlocking and decision-making circuitry, and output elements to the press operating mechanism.

(60) "Brake monitor" means a sensor designed constructed, and arranged to monitor the effectiveness of the press braking system.

[39 F.R. 41841, December 3, 1974.]

(61) "Presence sensing device initiation" means an operating mode of indirect manual initiation of a single stroke by a presence sensing device when it senses that work motions of the operator, related to feeding and/or removing parts, are completed and all parts of the operator's body or hand tools are safely clear of the point of operation.

(62) "Safety system" means the integrated total system, including the pertinent elements of the press, the controls, the safeguarding and any required supplemental safeguarding, and their interfaces with the operator, and the environment, designed, constructed and arranged to operate together as a unit, such that a single failure or single operating error will not cause injury to personnel due to point of operation hazards.

(63) "Authorized person" means one to whom the authority and responsibility to perform a specific assignment has been given by the employer.

(64) "Certification" or "certify" means, in the case of design certification/validation, that the manufacturer has reviewed and tested the design and manufacture, and in the case of installation certification/validation and annual recertification/revalidation, that the employer has reviewed and tested the installation, and concludes in both cases that the requirements of § 1910.217 (a) through (h) and Appendix A have been met. The certifications are made to the validation organization.

(65) "Validation" or "validate" means for PSDI safety systems that an OSHA recognized third-party validation organization:

(i) For design certification/validation has reviewed the manufacturer's certification that the PSDI safety system meets the requirements of §1910.217 (a) through (h) and Appendix A and the underlying tests and analyses performed by the manufacturer, has performed additional tests and analyses which may be required by §1910.217 (a) through (h) and Appendix A, and concludes that the requirements of §1910.217 (a) through (h) and Appendix A have been met; and

(ii) For installation certification/validation and annual recertification/revalidation has reviewed the employer's certification that the PSDI safety system meets the requirements of §1910.217 (a) through (h) and Appendix A and the underlying tests performed by the employer, has performed additional tests and analyses which may be required by §1910.217 (a) through (h) and Appendix A, and concludes that the requirements of §1910.217 (a) through (h) and Appendix A have been met.

(66) "Certification/validation" and "certify/validate" means the combined process of certification and validation.

(e) As used in §1910.218, unless the context clearly requires otherwise, the following forging and hot metal terms shall have the meaning prescribed in this paragraph.

(1) "Forging" means the product of work on metal formed to a desired shape by impact or pressure in hammers, forging machines (upsetters), presses, rolls, and related forming equipment. Forging hammers, counter-blow equipment and high-energy-rate forging machines impart impact to the work-piece, while most other types of forging equipment impart squeeze pressure in shaping the stock. Some metals can be forged at room temperature, but the majority of metals are made more plastic for forging by heating.

(2) "Open frame hammers (or blacksmith hammers)" mean hammers used primarily for the shaping of forgings by means of impact with flat dies. Open frame hammers generally are so constructed that the anvil assembly is separate from the operating mechanism and machine supports; it rests on its own independent foundation. Certain exceptions are forging hammers made with frame mounted on the anvil; e.g., the smaller single-frame hammers are usually made with the anvil and frame in one piece.

(3) "Steam hammers" mean a type of drop hammer where the ram is raised for each stroke by a double-action steam cylinder and the energy delivered to the workpiece is supplied by the velocity and weight of the ram and attached upper die driven downward by steam pressure. Energy delivered during each stroke may be varied.

(4) "Gravity hammers" mean a class of forging hammer wherein energy for forging is obtained by the mass and velocity of a freely falling ram and the attached upper die. Examples: board hammers and air-lift hammers.

(5) "Forging presses" mean a class of forging equipment wherein the shaping of metal between dies is performed by mechanical or hydraulic pressure, and usually is accomplished with a single workstroke of the press for each die station.

(6) "Trimming presses" mean a class of auxiliary forging equipment which removes flash or excess metal from a forging. This trimming operation can also be done cold, as can coining, a product sizing operation.

(7) "High-energy-rate forging machines" mean a class of forging equipment wherein only by authorized personnel whose qualifications include a knowledge of the provisions of Table O-10 and this subparagraph.

high ram velocities resulting from the sudden release of a compressed gas against a free piston impart impact to the workpiece.

(8) "Forging rolls" mean a class of auxiliary forging equipment wherein stock is shaped between power driven rolls bearing contoured dies. Usually used for preforming, roll forging is often employed to reduce thickness and increase length of stock.

(9) "Ring rolls" mean a class for forging equipment used for shaping weldless rings from pierced discs or thick-walled, ring-shaped blanks between rolls which control wall thickness, ring diameter, height and contour.

(10) "Bolt-headers" mean the same as an upsetter or forging machine except that the diameter of stock fed into the machine is much smaller, i.e., commonly three-fourths inch or less.

(11) Rivet making machines mean the same as upsetters and boltheaders when producing rivets with stock diameter of 1-inch or more. Rivet making with less than 1-inch diameter is usually a cold forging operation, and therefore not included in this subpart.

(12) Upsetters (or forging machines, or headers) type of forging equipment, related to the mechanical press, in which the main forming energy is applied horizontally to the workpiece which is gripped and held by prior action of the dies.

(f) As used in § 1910.219, unless, the context clearly requires otherwise, the following mechanical power-transmission guarding terms shall have the meaning prescribed in this paragraph.

(1) "Belts" include all power transmission belts, such as flat belts, round belts, V-belts, etc., unless otherwise specified.

(2) "Belt shifter" means a device for mechanically shifting belts from tight to loose pulleys or vice versa, or for shifting belts on cones of speed pulleys.

(3) "Belt pole" (sometimes called a "belt shipper" or "shipper pole,") means a device used in shifting belts on and off fixed pulleys on line or countershaft where there are no loose pulleys.

(4) "Exposed to contact" means that the location of an object is such that a person is likely to come into contact with it and be injured.

(5) "Flywheels" include flywheels, balance wheels, and flywheel pulleys mounted and revolving on crankshaft of engine or other shafting.

(6) "Maintenance runway" means any permanent runway or platform used for oiling, maintenance, running adjustment, or repair work, but not for passageway.

(7) "Nip-point belt and pulley guard" means a device which encloses the pulley and is provided with rounded or rolled edge slots through which the belt passes.

(8) "Point of operation" means that point at which cutting, shaping, or forming is accomplished upon the stock and shall include such other points as may offer a hazard to the operator in inserting or manipulating the stock in the operation of the machine.

(9) "Prime movers" include steam, gas, oil, and air engines, motors, steam and hydraulic turbines, and other equipment used as a source of power.

(10) "Sheaves" mean grooved pulleys, and shall be so classified unless used as flywheels.

INTERP

1910.212—GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MACHINES

INTERP

(a) Machine guarding.

(1) Types of guarding. One or more methods of machine guarding shall be provided to protect the operator and other employees in the machine area from hazards such as those created by point of operation, ingoing nip points, rotating parts, flying chips and sparks. Examples of guarding methods are—barrier guards, two-hand tripping devices, electronic safety devices, etc.

INTERP

(2) General requirements for machine guards. Guards shall be affixed to the machine where possible and secured elsewhere if for any reason attachment to the machine is not possible. The guard shall be such that it does not offer an accident hazard in itself.

(3) Point of operation guarding.

(i) Point of operation is the area on a machine where work is actually performed upon the material being processed.

INTERP

(ii) The point of operation of machines whose operation exposes an employee to injury, shall be guarded. The guarding device shall be in conformity with any appropriate standards therefor, or, in the absence of applicable specific standards, shall be so designed and constructed as to prevent the operator from having any part of his body in the danger zone during the operating cycle.

(iii) Special handtools for placing and removing material shall be such as to permit easy handling of material without the operator placing a hand in the danger zone. Such tools shall not be in lieu of other guarding required by this section, but can only be used to supplement protection provided.

(iv) The following are some of the machines which usually require point of operation guarding:

(a) Guillotine cutters.

(b) Shears.

(c) Alligator shears.

(d) Power presses.

(e) Milling machines.

(f) Power saws.

(g) Jointers.

(h) Portable power tools.

(i) Forming rolls and calenders.

(4) Barrels, containers, and drums. Revolving drums, barrels, and containers shall be guarded by an enclosure which is interlocked with the drive mechanism, so that the barrel, drum, or container cannot revolve unless the guard enclosure is in place.

(5) Exposure of blades. When the periphery of the blades of a fan is less than seven (7) feet above the floor or working level, the blades shall be guarded. The guard shall have openings no larger than one half (½) inch. INTERP

(b) Anchoring fixed machinery.

Machines designed for a fixed location shall be securely anchored to prevent walking or moving.

1910.213—WOODWORKING MACHINERY REQUIREMENTS

(a) Machine construction general.

(1) Each machine shall be so constructed as to be free from sensible vibration when the largest size tool is mounted and run idle at full speed.

(2) Arbors and mandrels shall be constructed so as to have firm and secure bearing and be free from play.

(3) Revoked

INTERP

(4) Any automatic cutoff saw that strokes continuously without the operator being able to control each stroke shall not be used.

(5) Saw frames or tables shall be constructed with lugs cast on the frame or with an equivalent means to limit the size of the saw blade that can be mounted, so as to avoid overspeed caused by mounting a saw larger than intended.

(6) Circular saw fences shall be so constructed that they can be firmly secured to the table or table assembly without changing their alignment with the saw. For saws with tilting tables or tilting arbors the fence shall be so constructed that it will remain in a line parallel with the saw, regardless of the angle of the saw with the table.

(7) Circular saw gages shall be so constructed as to slide in grooves or tracks that are accurately machined, to insure exact alignment with the saw for all positions of the guide.

(8) Hinged saw tables shall be so constructed that the table can be firmly secured in any position and in true alignment with the saw.

(9) All belts, pulleys, gears, shafts, and moving parts shall be guarded in accordance with the specific requirements of § 1910.219.

(10) It is recommended that each power-driven woodworking machine be provided with a disconnect switch that can be locked in the off position.

(11) The frames and all exposed, noncurrent-carrying metal parts of portable electric woodworking machinery operated at more than 90 volts to ground shall be grounded and other portable motors driving electric tools which are held in the hand while being operated shall be grounded if they operate at more than 90 volts to ground. The ground shall be provided through use of a separate ground wire and polarized plug and receptacle.

(12) For all circular saws where conditions are such that there is a possibility of contact with the portion of the saw either beneath or behind the table, that portion of the saw shall be covered with an exhaust hood, or, if no exhaust system is required, with a guard that shall be so arranged as to prevent accidental contact with the saw.

(13) Revolving double arbor saws shall be fully guarded in accordance with all the requirements for circular crosscut saws or with all the requirements for circular ripsaws, according to the kind of saws mounted on the arbors.

(14) No saw, cutter head, or tool collar shall be placed or mounted on a machine arbor unless the tool has been accurately machined to size and shape to fit the arbor.

(15) Combs (featherboards) or suitable jigs shall be provided at the workplace for use when a standard guard cannot be used, as in dadoing, grooving, jointing, moulding, and rabbeting.

(b) Machine controls and equipment.

(1) A mechanical or electrical power control shall be provided on each machine to make it possible for the operator to cut off the power from each machine without leaving his position at the point of operation.

(2) On machines driven by belts and shafting, a locking-type belt shifter or an equivalent positive device shall be used.

(3) On applications where injury to the operator might result if motors were to restart after power failures, provision shall be made to prevent machines from automatically restarting upon restoration of power.

(4) Power controls and operating controls should be located within easy reach of the operator while he is at his regular work location, making it unnecessary for him to reach over the cutter to make adjustments. This does not apply to constant pressure controls used only for setup purposes.

(5) On each machine operated by electric motors, positive means shall be provided for rendering such controls or devices inoperative while repairs or adjustments are being made to the machines they control.

(6) Each operating treadle shall be protected against unexpected or accidental tripping.

(7) Feeder attachments shall have the feed rolls or other moving parts so covered or guarded as to protect the operator from hazardous points.

(c) Hand-fed ripsaws.

INTERP

(1) Each circular hand-fed ripsaw shall be guarded by a hood which shall completely enclose that portion of the saw above the table and that portion of the saw above the material being cut. The hood and mounting shall be arranged so that the hood will automatically adjust itself to the thickness of and remain in contact with the material being cut but it shall not offer any considerable resistance to insertion of material to saw or to passage of the material being sawed. The hood shall be made of adequate strength to resist blows and strains incidental to reasonable operation, adjusting, and handling, and shall be so designed as to protect the operator from flying splinters and broken saw teeth. It shall be made of material that is soft enough so that it will be **unlikely to cause tooth breakage. The hood shall be so mounted as to insure that its operation will be positive, reliable, and in true alignment with the saw; and the mounting shall be adequate in strength to resist any reasonable side thrust or other force tending to throw it out of line.**

(2) Each hand-fed circular ripsaw shall be furnished with a spreader to prevent material from squeezing the saw or being thrown back on the operator. The spreader shall be made of hard tempered steel, or its equivalent, and shall be thinner than the saw kerf. It shall be of sufficient width to provide adequate stiffness or rigidity to resist any reasonable side thrust or blow tending to bend or throw it out of position. The spreader shall be attached so that it will **remain in true alignment with the saw even when either the saw or table is tilted. The provision of a spreader in connection with grooving, dadoing, or rabbeting is not required. On the completion of such operations, the spreader shall be immediately replaced.**

(3) Each hand-fed circular ripsaw shall be provided with nonkickback fingers or dogs so located as to oppose the thrust or tendency of the saw to pick up the material or to throw it back toward the operator. They shall be designed to provide adequate holding power for all the thicknesses of materials being cut.

(d) Hand-fed crosscut table saws.

(1) Each circular crosscut table saw shall be guarded by a hood which shall meet all the requirements of paragraph (c)(1) of this section for hoods for circular ripsaws.

(2) Removed

(e) Circular resaws.

(1) Each circular resaw shall be guarded by a hood or shield of metal above the saw. This hood or shield shall be so designed as to guard against danger from flying splinters or broken saw teeth.

(2) Each circular resaw (other than self-feed saws with a roller or wheel at back of the saw) shall be provided with a spreader fastened securely behind the saw. The spreader shall be slightly thinner than the saw kerf and slightly thicker than the saw disk.

(f) Self-feed circular saws.

(1) Feed rolls and saws shall be protected by a hood or guard to prevent the hands of the operator from coming in contact with the in-running rolls at any point. The guard shall be constructed of heavy material, preferably metal, and the bottom of the guard shall come down to within three-eighths inch of the plane formed by the bottom or working surfaces of the feed rolls. This distance (three-eighths inch) may be increased to three-fourths inch, provided the lead edge of the hood is extended to be not less than 5½ inches in front of the nip point between the front roll and the work.

(2) Each self-feed circular ripsaw shall be provided with sectional nonkickback fingers for the full width of the feed rolls. They shall be located in front of the saw and so arranged as to be in continual contact with the wood being fed.

(g) Swing cutoff saws.

The requirements of this paragraph are also applicable to sliding cutoff saws mounted above the table.

(1) Each swing cutoff saw shall be provided with a hood that will completely enclose the upper half of the saw, the arbor end, and the point of operation at all positions of the saw. The hood shall be constructed in such a manner and of such material that it will protect the operator from flying splinters and broken saw teeth. Its hood shall be so designed that it will automatically cover the lower portion of the blade, so that when the saw is returned to the back of the table the hood will rise on top of the fence, and when the saw is moved forward the hood will drop on top of and remain in contact with the table or material being cut.

(2) Each swing cutoff saw shall be provided with an effective device to return the saw automatically to the back of the table when released at any point of its travel. Such a device shall not depend for its proper functioning upon any rope, cord, or spring. If there is a counterweight, the bolts supporting the bar and counterweight shall be provided with cotter pins; and the counterweight shall be prevented from dropping by either a bolt passing through both the bar and counterweight, or a bolt put through the extreme end of the bar, or, where the counterweight does not encircle the bar, a safety chain attached to it.

(3) Limit chains or other equally effective devices shall be provided to prevent the saw from swinging beyond the front or back edges of the table, or beyond a forward position where the gullets of the lowest saw teeth will rise above the table top.

(4) Inverted swing cutoff saws shall be provided with a hood that will cover the part of the saw that protrudes above the top of the table or above the material being cut. It shall automatically adjust itself to the thickness of and remain in contact with the material being cut.

(h) Radial saws.

INTERP

(1) The upper hood shall completely enclose the upper portion of the blade down to a point that will include the end of the saw arbor. The upper hood shall be constructed in such a manner and of such material that it will protect the operator from flying splinters, broken saw teeth, etc., and will deflect sawdust away from the operator. The sides of the lower exposed portion of the blade shall be guarded to the full diameter of the blade by a device that will automatically adjust itself to the thickness of the stock and remain in contact with stock being cut to give maximum protection possible for the operation being performed.

(2) Each radial saw used for ripping shall be provided with nonkickback fingers or dogs located on both sides of the saw so as to oppose the thrust or tendency of the saw to pick up the material or to throw it back toward the operator. They shall be designed to provide adequate holding power for all the thicknesses of material being cut.

(3) An adjustable stop shall be provided to prevent the forward travel of the blade beyond the position necessary to complete the cut in repetitive operations.

(4) Installation shall be in such a manner that the front end of the unit will be slightly higher than the rear, so as to cause the cutting head to return gently to the starting position when released by the operator.

INTERP

(5) Ripping and ploughing shall be against the direction in which the saw turns. The direction of the saw rotation shall be conspicuously marked on the hood. In addition, a permanent label not less than 1½ inches by ¾ inch shall be affixed to the rear of the guard at approximately the level of the arbor, reading as follows: "Danger: Do Not Rip or Plough From This End."

INTERP

(i) Bandsaws and band resaws.

(1) All portions of the saw blade shall be enclosed or guarded, except for the working portion of the blade between the bottom of the guide rolls and the table. Bandsaw wheels shall be fully encased. The outside periphery of the enclosure shall be solid. The front and back of the band wheels shall be either enclosed by solid material or by wire mesh or perforated metal. Such mesh or perforated metal shall be not less than 0.037 inch (U.S. Gage No. 20), and the openings shall be not greater than three-eighths inch. Solid material used for this purpose shall be of an equivalent strength and firmness. The guard for the portion of the blade between the sliding guide and the upper-saw-wheel guard shall protect the saw blade at the front and outer side. This portion of the guard shall be self-adjusting to raise and lower with the guide. The upper-wheel guard shall be made to conform to the travel of the saw on the wheel.

(2) Each bandsaw machine shall be provided with a tension control device to indicate a proper tension for the standard saws used on the machine, in order to assist in the elimination of saw breakage due to improper tension.

(3) Feed rolls of band resaws shall be protected with a suitable guard to prevent the hands of the operator from coming in contact with the in-running rolls at any point. The guard shall be constructed of heavy material, preferably metal, and the edge of the guard shall come to within three-eighths inch of the plane formed by the inside face of the feed roll in contact with the stock being cut.

(j) Jointers.

(1) Each hand-fed planer and jointer with horizontal head shall be equipped with a cylindrical cutting head, the knife projection of which shall not exceed one-eighth inch beyond the cylindrical body of the head.

(2) The opening in the table shall be kept as small as possible. The clearance between the edge of the rear table and the cutter head shall be not more than one-eighth inch. The table throat opening shall be not more than 2½ inches when tables are set or aligned with each other for zero cut.

(3) Each hand-fed jointer with a horizontal cutting head shall have an automatic guard which will cover all the section of the head on the working side of the fence or gage. The guard shall effectively keep the operator's hand from coming in contact with the revolving knives. The guard shall automatically adjust itself to cover the unused portion of the head and shall remain in contact with the material at all times.

(4) Each hand-fed jointer with horizontal cutting head shall have a guard which will cover the section of the head back of the gage or fence.

(5) Each wood jointer with vertical head shall have either an exhaust hood or other guard so arranged as to enclose completely the revolving head, except for a slot of such width as may be necessary and convenient for the application of the material to be jointed.

(k) Tenoning machines.

(1) Feed chains and sprockets of all double end tenoning machines shall be completely enclosed, except for that portion of chain used for conveying the stock.

(2) At the rear ends of frames over which feed conveyors run, sprockets and chains shall be guarded at the sides by plates projecting beyond the periphery of sprockets and the ends of lugs.

(3) Each tenoning machine shall have all cutting heads, and saws if used, covered by metal guards. These guards shall cover at least the unused part of the periphery of the cutting head. If such a guard is constructed of sheet metal, the material used shall be not less than one-sixteenth inch in thickness, and if cast iron is used, it shall be not less than three-sixteenths inch in thickness.

(4) Where an exhaust system is used, the guard shall form part or all of the exhaust hood and shall be constructed of metal of a thickness not less than that specified in subparagraph (3) of this paragraph.

(l) Boring and mortising machines.

(1) Safety-bit chucks with no projecting set screws shall be used.

(2) Boring bits should be provided with a guard that will enclose all portions of the bit and chuck above the material being worked.

(3) The top of the cutting chain and driving mechanism shall be enclosed.

(4) If there is a counterweight, one of the following or equivalent means shall be used to prevent its dropping:

(i) It shall be bolted to the bar by means of a bolt passing through both bar and counterweight;

(ii) A bolt shall be put through the extreme end of the bar;

(iii) Where the counterweight does not encircle the bar, a safety chain shall be attached to it;

(iv) Other types of counterweights shall be suspended by chain or wire rope and shall travel in a pipe or other suitable enclosure wherever they might fall and cause injury.

(5) Universal joints on spindles of boring machines shall be completely enclosed in such a way as to prevent accidental contact by the operator.

(6) Each operating treadle shall be covered by an inverted U-shaped metal guard, fastened to the floor, and of adequate size to prevent accidental tripping.

(m) Wood shapers and similar equipment.

(1) The cutting heads of each wood shaper, hand-fed panel raiser, or other similar machine not automatically fed, shall be enclosed with a cage or adjustable guard so designed as to keep the operator's hand away from the cutting edge. The diameter of circular shaper guards shall be not less than the greatest diameter of the cutter. In no case shall a warning device of leather or other material attached to the spindle be acceptable.

(2) Removed

(3) All double-spindle shapers shall be provided with a spindle starting and stopping device for each spindle.

(n) Planing, molding, sticking, and matching machines.

(1) Each planing, molding, sticking, and matching machine shall have all cutting heads, and saws if used, covered by a metal guard. If such guard is constructed of sheet metal, the material used shall be not less than $^1/_{16}$ inch in thickness, and if cast iron is used, it shall be not less than three-sixteenths inch in thickness.

(2) Where an exhaust system is used, the guards shall form part or all of the exhaust hood and shall be constructed of metal of a thickness not less than that specified in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph.

(3) Feed rolls shall be guarded by a hood or suitable guard to prevent the hands of the operator from coming in contact with the in-running rolls at any point. The guard shall be fastened to the frame carrying the rolls so as to remain in adjustment for any thickness of stock.

(4) Surfacers or planers used in thicknessing multiple pieces of material simultaneously shall be provided with sectional infeed rolls having sufficient yield in the construction of the sections to provide feeding contact pressure on the stock, over the permissible range of variation in stock thickness specified or for which the machine is designed. In lieu of such yielding sectional rolls, suitable section kickback finger devices shall be provided at the infeed end.

(o) Profile and swing-head lathes and wood heel turning machine.

(1) Each profile and swing-head lathe shall have all cutting heads covered by a metal guard. If such a guard is constructed of sheet metal, the material used shall be not less than one-sixteenth inch in thickness; and if cast iron is used, it shall not be less than three-sixteenths inch in thickness.

(2) Cutting heads on wood-turning lathes, whether rotating or not, shall be covered as completely as possible by hoods or shields.

(3) Shoe last and spoke lathes, doweling machines, wood heel turning machines, and other automatic wood-turning lathes of the rotating knife type shall be equipped with hoods enclosing the cutter blades completely except at the contact points while the stock is being cut.

(4) Lathes used for turning long pieces of wood stock held only between the two centers shall be equipped with long curved guards extending over the tops of the lathes in order to prevent the work pieces from being thrown out of the machines if they should become loose.

(5) Where an exhaust system is used, the guard shall form part or all of the exhaust hood and shall be constructed of metal of a thickness not less than that specified in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph.

(p) Sanding machines.

(1) Feed rolls of self-feed sanding machines shall be protected with a semicylindrical guard to prevent the hands of the operator from coming in contact with the in-running rolls at any point. The guard shall be constructed of heavy material, preferably metal, and firmly secured to the frame carrying the rolls so as to remain in adjustment for any thickness of stock. The bottom of the guard should come down to within three-eighths inch of a plane formed by the bottom or contact face of the feed roll where it touches the stock.

(2) Each drum sanding machine shall have an exhaust hood, or other guard if no exhaust system is required, so arranged as to enclose the revolving drum, except for that portion of the drum above the table, if a table is used, which may be necessary and convenient for the application of the material to be finished.

(3) Each disk sanding machine shall have the exhaust hood, or other guard if no exhaust system is required, so arranged as to enclose the revolving disk, except for that portion of the disk above the table, if a table is used, which may be necessary for the application of the material to be finished.

(4) Belt sanding machines shall be provided with guards at each nip point where the sanding belt runs on to a pulley. These guards shall effectively prevent the hands or fingers of the operator from coming in contact with the nip points. The unused run of the sanding belt shall be guarded against accidental contact.

(q) Veneer cutters and wringers.

(1) Veneer slicer knives shall be guarded to prevent accidental contact with knife edge, at both front and rear.

(2) Veneer clippers shall have automatic feed or shall be provided with a guard which will make it impossible to place a finger or fingers under the knife while feeding or removing the stock.

(3) Sprockets on chain or slat-belt conveyors shall be enclosed.

(4) Where practicable, hand and foot-power guillotine veneer cutters shall be provided with rods or plates or other satisfactory means, so arranged on the feeding side that the hands cannot reach the cutting edge of the knife while feeding or holding the stock in place.

(5) Power-driven guillotine veneer cutters, except continuous feed trimmers, shall be equipped with:

(i) Starting devices which require the simultaneous action of both hands to start the cutting motion and of at least one hand on a control during the complete stroke of the knife; or

(ii) An automatic guard which will remove the hands of the operator from the danger zone at every descent of the blade, used in conjunction with one-hand starting devices which require two distinct movements of the device to start the cutting motion, and so designed as to return positively to the nonstarting position after each complete cycle of the knife.

(6) Where two or more workers are employed at the same time on the same power-driven guillotine veneer cutter equipped with two-hand control, the device shall be so arranged that each worker shall be required to use both hands simultaneously on the controls to start the cutting motion, and at least one hand on a control to complete the cut.

(7) Power-driven guillotine veneer cutters, other than continuous trimmers, shall be provided, in addition to the brake or other stopping mechanism, with an emergency device which will prevent the machine from operating in the event of failure of the brake when the starting mechanism is in the nonstarting position.

(r) Miscellaneous woodworking machines.

(1) The feed rolls of roll type glue spreaders shall be guarded by a semicylindrical guard. The bottom of the guard shall come to within three-eights inch of a plane formed by bottom or contact face of the feed roll where it touches the stock.

(2) Drag saws shall be so located as to give at least a 4-foot clearance for passage when the saw is at the extreme end of the stroke; or if such clearance is not obtainable, the saw and its driving mechanism shall be provided with a standard enclosure.

(3) For combination or universal woodworking machines each point of operation of any tool shall be guarded as required for such a tool in a separate machine.

(4) The mention of specific machines in paragraphs (a) thru (q) and this paragraph (r) of this section, inclusive, is not intended to exclude other woodworking machines from the requirement that suitable guards and exhaust hoods be provided to reduce to a minimum the hazard due to the point of operation of such machines.

(s) Inspection and maintenance of woodworking machinery.

(1) Dull, badly set, improperly filed, or improperly tensioned saws shall be immediately removed from service, before they begin to cause the material to stick, jam, or kick back when it is fed to the saw at normal speed. Saws to which gum has adhered on the sides shall be immediately cleaned.

(2) All knives and cutting heads of woodworking machines shall be kept sharp, properly adjusted, and firmly secured. Where two or more knives are used in one head, they shall be properly balanced.

(3) Bearings shall be kept free from lost motion and shall be well lubricated.

(4) Arbors of all circular saws shall be free from play.

(5) Sharpening or tensioning of saw blades or cutters shall be done only by persons of demonstrated skill in this kind of work.

best copy available

(6) Emphasis is placed upon the importance of maintaining cleanliness around woodworking machinery, particularly as regards the effective functioning of guards and the prevention of fire hazards in switch enclosures, bearings, and motors.

(7) All cracked saws shall be removed from service.

(8) The practice of inserting wedges between the saw disk and the collar to form what is commonly known as a "wobble saw" shall not be permitted.

(9) Push sticks or push blocks shall be provided at the work place in the several sizes and types suitable for the work to be done.

(10) 'Revoked

(11) Revoked

(12) The knife blade of jointers shall be so installed and adjusted that it does not protrude more than one-eighth inch beyond the cylindrical body of the head. Push sticks or push blocks shall be provided at the work place in the several sizes and types suitable for the work to be done.

(13) Whenever veneer slicers or rotary veneer-cutting machines have been shutdown for the purpose of inserting logs or to make adjustments, operators shall make sure that machine is clear and other workmen are not in a hazardous position before starting the machine.

(14) Operators shall not ride the carriage of a veneer slicer.

1910.214—COOPERAGE MACHINERY

Revoked

Pages 495 and 496 deleted

1910.215—ABRASIVE WHEEL MACHINERY

(a) General requirements.

(1) Machine guarding. Abrasive wheels shall be used only on machines provided with safety guards as defined in the following paragraphs of this section, except:

(i) Wheels used for internal work while within the work being ground;

(ii) Mounted wheels, used in portable operations, 2 inches and smaller in diameter; and

(iii) Types 16, 17, 18, 18R, and 19 cones, plugs, and threaded hole pot balls where the work offers protection.

(2) Guard design. The safety guard shall cover the spindle end, nut, and flange projections. The safety guard shall be mounted so as to maintain proper alignment with the wheel, and the strength of the fastenings shall exceed the strength of the guard, except:

(i) Safety guards on all operations where the work provides a suitable measure of protection to the operator, may be so constructed that the spindle end, nut, and outer flange are exposed; and where the nature of the work is such as to entirely cover the side of the wheel, the side covers of the guard may be omitted; and

(ii) The spindle end, nut, and outer flange may be exposed on machines designed as portable saws.

(3) Flanges. Grinding machines shall be equipped with flanges in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(4) Work rests. On offhand grinding machines, work rests shall be used to support the work. They shall be of rigid construction and designed to be adjustable to compensate for wheel wear. Work rests shall be kept adjusted closely to the wheel with a maximum opening of one-eighth inch to prevent the work from being jammed between the wheel and the rest, which may cause wheel breakage. The work rest shall be securely clamped after each adjustment. The adjustment shall not be made with the wheel in motion.

(5) Excluded machinery. Natural sandstone wheels and metal, wooden, cloth, or paper discs, having a layer of abrasive on the surface are not covered by this section.

(b) Guarding of abrasive wheel machinery.

(1) Cup wheels. Cup wheels (Types 6 and 11) shall be protected by:

(i) Safety guards as specified in subparagraphs (1) through (10) of this paragraph:

(ii) Band type guards as specified in subparagraph (11) of this paragraph; and

(iii) Special "Revolving Cup Guards" which mount behind the wheel and turn with it. They shall be made of steel or other material with adequate strength and shall enclose the wheel sides upward from the back for one-third of the wheel thickness. The mounting features shall conform with all requirements of this section. It is necessary to maintain clearance between the wheel side and the guard. This clearance shall not exceed one-sixteenth inch.

(2) Guard exposure angles. The maximum exposure angles specified in subparagraphs (3) through (8) of this paragraph shall not be exceeded. Visors or other accessory equipment shall not be included as a part of the guard when measuring the guard opening, unless such equipment has strength equal to that of the guard.

(3) Bench and floor stands. The angular exposure of the grinding wheel periphery and sides for safety guards used on machines known as bench and floor stands should not exceed 90° or one-fourth of the periphery. This exposure shall begin at a point not more than 65° above the horizontal plane of the wheel spindle. (See Figures O–6 and O–7 and subparagraph (9) of this paragraph.)

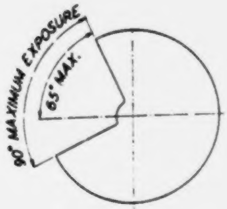

90° MAXIMUM EXPOSURE
65° MAX.

FIGURE NO. O-6

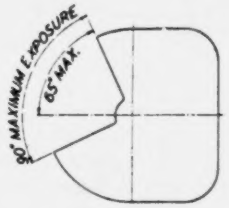

90° MAXIMUM EXPOSURE
65° MAX.

FIGURE NO. O-7

Wherever the nature of the work requires contact with the wheel below the horizontal plane of the spindle, the exposure shall not exceed 125°. (See Figures O–8 and O–9.)

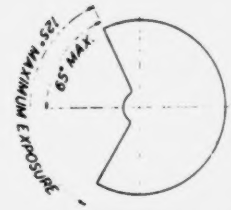

125° MAXIMUM EXPOSURE
65° MAX.

FIGURE NO. O-8

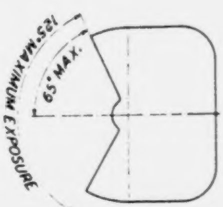

125° MAXIMUM EXPOSURE
65° MAX.

FIGURE NO. O-9

(4) Cylindrical grinders. The maximum angular exposure of the grinding wheel periphery and sides for safety guards used on cylindrical grinding machines shall not exceed 180°. This exposure shall begin at a point not more than 65° above the horizontal plane of the wheel spindle. (See Figures O–10 and O–11 and subparagraph (9) of this paragraph.)

(5) Surface grinders and cutting-off machines. The maximum angular exposure of the grinding wheel periphery and sides for safety guards used on cutting-off machines and on surface grinding machines which employ the wheel periphery shall not exceed 150°. This exposure shall begin at a point not less than 15° below the horizontal plane of the wheel spindle. (See Figures O–12 and O–13.)

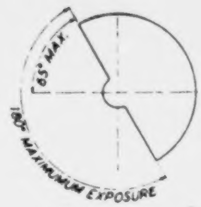

65° MAX.
180° MAXIMUM EXPOSURE

FIGURE NO. O-10

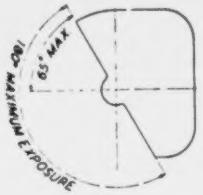

65° MAX.
180° MAXIMUM EXPOSURE

FIGURE NO. O-11

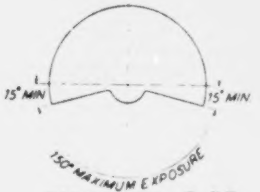

15° MIN
15° MIN
150° MAXIMUM EXPOSURE

FIGURE NO. O-12

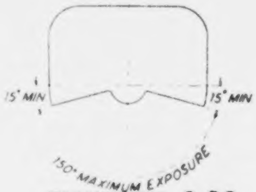

15° MIN
15° MIN
150° MAXIMUM EXPOSURE

FIGURE NO. O-13

(6) Swing frame grinders. The maximum angular exposure of the grinding wheel periphery and sides for safety guards used on machines known as swing frame grinding machines shall not exceed 180°, and the top half of the wheel shall be enclosed at all times. (See Figure O–14 and O–15.)

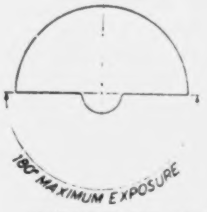

180° MAXIMUM EXPOSURE

FIGURE NO. O-14

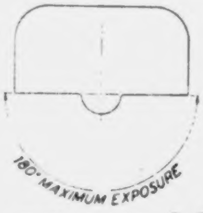

180° MAXIMUM EXPOSURE

FIGURE NO. O-15

(7) Automatic snagging machines. The maximum angular exposure of the grinding wheel periphery and sides for safety guards used on grinders known as automatic snagging machines shall not exceed 180° and the top half of the wheel shall be enclosed at all times. (See Figures O–14 and O–15.)

(8) Top grinding. Where the work is applied to the wheel above the horizontal centerline, the exposure of the grinding wheel periphery shall be as small as possible and shall not exceed 60°. (See Figures O–16 and O–17.)

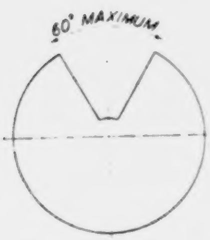


FIGURE NO. 0-16

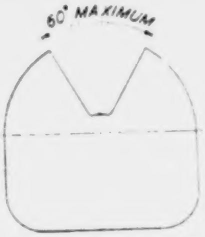


FIGURE NO. 0-17

(9) Exposure adjustment. Safety guards of the types described in subparagraphs (3) and (4) of this paragraph, where the operator stands in front of the opening, shall be constructed so that the peripheral protecting member can be adjusted to the constantly decreasing diameter of the wheel. The maximum angular exposure above the horizontal plane of the wheel spindle as specified in subparagraphs (3) and (4) of this paragraph shall never be exceeded, and the distance between the wheel periphery and the adjustable tongue or the end of the peripheral member at the top shall never exceed one-fourth inch. (See Figures O–18, O–19, O–20, O–21, O–22, and O–23.)

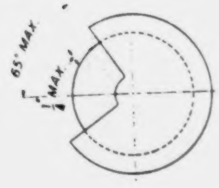


FIGURE NO. 0-18

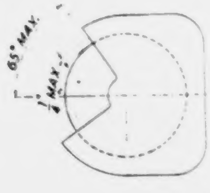


FIGURE NO. 0-19

CORRECT

Showing adjustable tongue giving required angular protection for all sizes of wheel used.

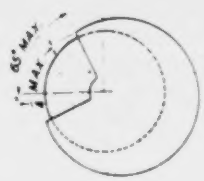


FIGURE NO. 0-20

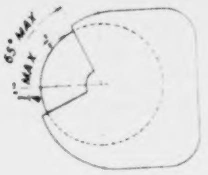


FIGURE NO. 0-21

CORRECT

Showing movable guard with opening small enough to give required protection for smallest size wheel used.

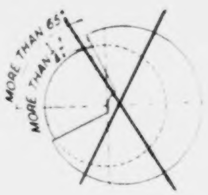


FIGURE NO. 0-22

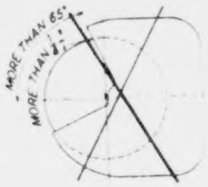


FIGURE NO. 0-23

INCORRECT

Showing movable guard with size of opening correct for full size wheel but too large for smaller wheels.

(10) Material requirements and minimum dimensions.

(i) See Figures O–36 and O–37 and Table O–9 for minimum basic thickness of peripheral and side members for various types of safety guards and classes of service.

(ii) If operating speed does not exceed 8,000 surface feet per minute cast iron safety guards, malleable iron guards or other guards as described in subparagraph (10)(iii) of this paragraph shall be used.

(iii) Cast steel, or structural steel, safety guards as specified in Figures O–36 and O–37 and Table O–9 shall be used where operating speeds of wheels are faster than 8,000 surface feet per minute up to a maximum of 16,000 surface feet per minute.

(iv) For cutting-off wheels 16 inches diameter and smaller and where speed does not exceed 16,000 surface feet per minute, cast iron or malleable iron safety guards as specified in Figures O–36 and O–37, and in Table O–9 shall be used.

(v) For cutting-off wheels larger than 16 inches diameter and where speed does not exceed 14,200 surface feet per minute, safety guards as specified in Figures O–27 and O–28, and in Table O–1 shall be used.

(vi) For thread grinding wheels not exceeding 1 inch in thickness cast iron or malleable iron safety guards as specified in Figures O–36 and O–37, and in Table O–9 shall be used.

(11) Band type guards—general specifications. Band type guards shall conform to the following general specifications:

(i) The bands shall be of steel plate or other material of equal or greater strength. They shall be continuous, the ends being either riveted, bolted, or welded together in such a manner as to leave the inside free from projections.

(ii) The inside diameter of the band shall not be more than 1 inch larger than the outside diameter of the wheel, and shall be mounted as nearly concentric with the wheel as practicable.

(iii) The band shall be of sufficient width and its position kept so adjusted that at no time will the wheel protrude beyond the edge of the band a distance greater than that indicated in Figure O–29 and in Table O–2 or the wall thickness (W), whichever is smaller.

(12) Guard design specifications. Abrasive wheel machinery guards shall meet the design specifications of the American National Standard Safety Code for the Use, Care, and Protection of Abrasive Wheels, ANSI B7.1–1970. This requirement shall not apply to natural sandstone wheels or metal, wooden, cloth, or paper discs, having a layer of abrasive on the surface.

(c) Flanges.

(1) General requirements. All abrasive wheels shall be mounted between flanges which shall not be less than one-third the diameter of the wheel.

(i) Exceptions:

(a) Mounted wheels.

(b) Portable wheels with threaded inserts or projecting studs.

(c) Abrasive discs (inserted nut, inserted washer and projecting stud type).

(d) Plate mounted wheels.

(e) Cylinders, cup, or segmental wheels that are mounted in chucks.

(f) Types 27 and 28 wheels.

(g) Certain internal wheels.

(h) Modified types 6 and 11 wheels (terrazzo).

(i) Cutting-off wheels, Types 1 and 27A (see subdivisions (ii) and (iii) of this subparagraph).

(ii) Type 1 cutting-off wheels are to be mounted between properly relieved flanges which have matching bearing surfaces. Such flanges shall be at least one-fourth the wheel diameter.

(iii) Type 27A cutting-off wheels are designed to be mounted by means of flat, not relieved, flanges having matching bearing surfaces and which may be less than one-third but shall not be less than one-fourth the wheel diameter. (See Figure O–24 for one such type of mounting.)

(iv) There are three general types of flanges:

(a) straight relieved flanges (see Figure O–32);

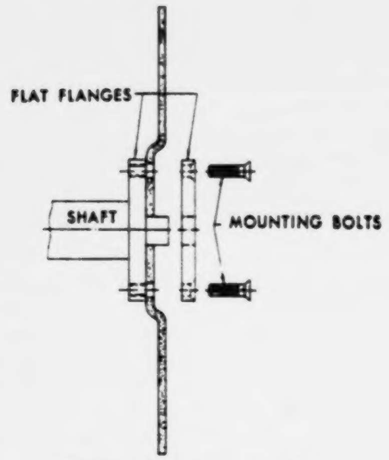


FIGURE NO. O-24

The Type 27A Wheel is mounted between flat non-relieved flanges of equal bearing surfaces.

(b) straight unrelieved flanges (see Figure O-30);

(c) adaptor flanges (see Figures O-33 and O-34);

(v) Regardless of flange type used, the wheel shall always be guarded. Blotters shall be used in accordance with subparagraph (6) of this paragraph.

(2) Design and material. Revoked

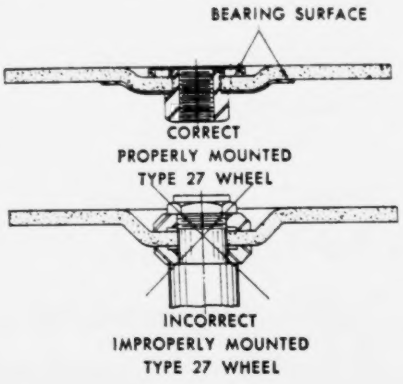
(3) Finish and balance. Flanges shall be dimensionally accurate and in good balance. There shall be no rough surfaces or sharp edges.

(4) Uniformity of diameter.

(i) Both flanges, of any type, between which a wheel is mounted, shall be of the same diameter and have equal bearing surface. Exceptions are set forth in the remaining subdivisions of this subparagraph.

(ii) Type 27 and Type 28 wheels, because of their shape and usage, require specially designed adaptors. The back flange shall extend beyond the central hub or raised portion and contact the wheel to counteract the side pressure on the wheel in use. The adaptor nut which is less than the minimum one-third diameter of wheel fits in the depressed side of wheel to prevent interference in side grinding and serves to drive the wheel by its clamping force against the depressed portion of the back flange. The variance in flange diameters, the adaptor nut being less than one-third wheel diameter, and the use of side pressure in wheel operation limits the use to reinforced organic bonded wheels. Mounts which are affixed to the wheel by the manufacturer shall not be reused. Type 27 and Type 28 wheels shall be used only with a safety guard located between wheel and operator during use. (See Figure O-24-A.)

FIGURE NO. O-24-A



Types 27 and 28 wheels, because of their shape, require specially designed adaptors.

(iii) Modified Types 6 and 11 wheels (terrazzo) with tapered K dimension.

(5) Recess and undercut.

(i) Straight relieved flanges made according to Table O-6 and Figure O-32 shall be recessed at least one-sixteenth inch on the side next to the wheel for a distance as specified in Table O-6.

(ii) Straight flanges of the adaptor or sleeve type (Table O-7 and Figures O-33 and O-34) shall be undercut so that there will be no bearing on the sides of the wheel within one-eighth inch of the arbor hole.

(6) Blotters.

(i) Blotters (compressible washers) shall always be used between flanges and abrasive wheel surfaces to insure uniform distribution of flange pressure. (See paragraph (d)(5) of this section.)

(ii) Exception:

(a) Mounted wheels.

(b) Abrasive discs (inserted nut, inserted washer, and projecting stud type).

(c) Plate mounted wheels.

(d) Cylinders, cups, or segmental wheels that are mounted in chucks.

(e) Types 27 and 28 wheels.

(f) Certain Type 1 and Type 27A cutting-off wheels.

(g) Certain internal wheels.

(h) Type 4 tapered wheels.

(i) Diamond wheels, except certain vitrified diamond wheels.

(j) Modified Types 6 and 11 wheel (terrazzo)—blotters applied flat side of wheel only.

(7) Driving flange. The driving flange shall be securely fastened to the spindle and the bearing surface shall run true. When more than one wheel is mounted between a single set of flanges, wheels may be cemented together or separated by specially designed spacers. Spacers shall be equal in diameter to the mounting flanges and have equal bearing surfaces. (See paragraph (d)(6) of this section.)

(8) Dimensions.

(i) Tables O-4 and O-6 and Figures O-30 and O-32 show minimum dimensions for straight relieved and unrelieved flanges for use with wheels with small holes that fit directly on the machine spindle. Dimensions of such flanges shall never be less than indicated.

(ii) Table O-5, and Table O-7 and Figures O-31, O-33, O-34 show minimum dimensions for straight adaptor flanges for use with wheels having holes larger than the spindle. Dimensions of such adaptor flanges shall never be less than indicated.

(iii) Table O-8 and Figure O-35 show minimum dimensions for straight flanges that are an integral part of wheel sleeves which are frequently used on precision grinding machines. Dimensions of such flanges shall never be less than indicated.

(9) Repairs and maintenance. All flanges shall be maintained in good condition. When the bearing surfaces become worn, warped, sprung, or damaged they should be trued or refaced. When refacing or truing, care shall be exercised to make sure that proper relief and rigidity is maintained as specified in subparagraphs (2) and (5) of this paragraph and they shall be replaced when they do not conform to these subparagraphs and Table O-4, Figure O-30, Table O-5, Figure O-31, Table O-6, Figure O-32, and Table O-8, Figure O-35.

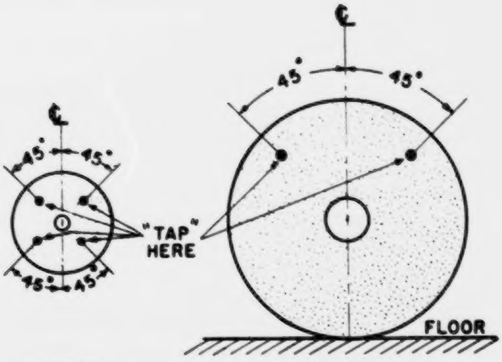
Failure to observe these rules might cause excessive flange pressure around the hole of the wheel. This is especially true of wheel-sleeve or adaptor flanges.

(d) Mounting.

(1) Inspection. Immediately before mounting, all wheels shall be closely inspected and sounded by the user (ring test) to make sure they have not been damaged in transit, storage, or otherwise. The spindle speed of the machine shall be checked before mounting of the wheel to be certain that it does not exceed the maximum operating speed marked on the wheel. Wheels should be tapped gently with a light nonmetallic implement, such as the handle of a screwdriver for light wheels, or a wooden mallet for heavier wheels. If they sound cracked (dead), they shall not be used. This is known as the "Ring Test."

(i) Wheels must be dry and free from sawdust when applying the ring test, otherwise the sound will be deadened. It should also be noted that organic bonded wheels do not emit the same clear metallic ring as do vitrified and silicate wheels.

(ii) "Tap" wheels about 45° each side of the vertical centerline and about 1 or 2 inches from the periphery as indicated by the spots in Figure O-25 and Figure O-26. Then rotate the wheel 45° and repeat the test. A sound and undamaged wheel will give a clear metallic tone. If cracked, there will be a dead sound and not a clear "ring."



Light Wheels
Suspend from hole by small pin or finger

FIGURE NO. O-25

Heavy Wheels
Support on clean hard floor

FIGURE NO. O-26

(2) Arbor size. Grinding wheels shall fit freely on the spindle and remain free under all grinding conditions. A controlled clearance between the wheel hole and the machine spindle (or wheel sleeves or adaptors) is essential to avoid excessive pressure from mounting and spindle expansion. To accomplish this, the machine spindle shall be made to nominal (standard) size plus zero minus .002 inch, and the wheel hole shall be made suitably oversize to assure safety clearance under the conditions of operating heat and pressure.

(3) Surface condition. All contact surfaces of wheels, blotters and flanges shall be flat and free of foreign matter.

(4) Bushing. When a bushing is used in the wheel hole it shall not exceed the width of the wheel and shall not contact the flanges.

(5) Blotters. When blotters or flange facings of compressible material are required, they shall cover entire contact area of wheel flanges. Blotters need not be used with the following types of wheels:

(i) Mounted wheels.

(ii) Abrasive discs (inserted nut, inserted washer, and projecting-stud type).

(iii) Plate mounted wheels.

(iv) Cylinders, cups, or segmental wheels that are mounted in chucks.

(v) Types 27 and 28 wheels.

(vi) Certain Type 1 and Type 27A cutting-off wheels.

(vii) Certain internal wheels.

(viii) Type 4 tapered wheels.

(ix) Diamond wheels, except certain vitrified diamond wheels.

(6) Multiple wheel mounting. When more than one wheel is mounted between a single set of flanges, wheels may be cemented together or separated by specially designed spacers. Spacers shall be equal in diameter to the mounting flanges and have equal bearing surfaces. When mounting wheels which have not been cemented together, or ones which do not utilize separating spacers, care must be exercised to use wheels specially manufactured for that purpose.

(7) Removed

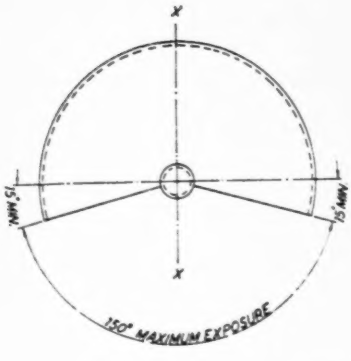
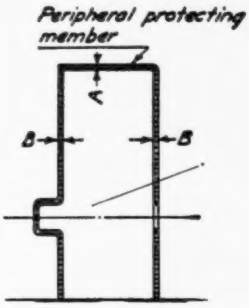


FIGURE NO. O-27



Section X-X

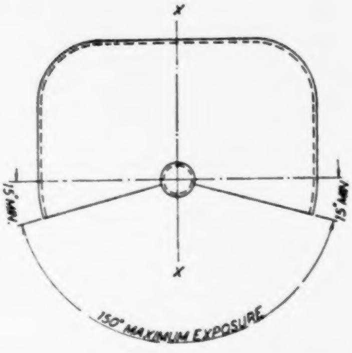


FIGURE NO. O-28

TABLE O-1—MINIMUM BASIC THICKNESS FOR PERIPHERAL AND SIDE MEMBERS FOR SAFETY GUARDS USED WITH CUTTING-OFF WHEELS

Material used in construction of guard	Maximum thickness of cutting off wheel	Speed not to exceed	Cutting off wheel diameters									
			6 to 11 inches		Over 11 to 20 inches		Over 20 to 30 inches		Over 30 to 48 inches		Over 48 to 72 inches	
			A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
Structural steel (min. tensile strength 60,000 p.s.i.)	½ inch or less...	14,200 SFPM....	1/16	1/16	3/32	3/32	⅛	⅛	3/16	3/16	¼	¼
	½ inch or less...	16,000 SFPM....	3/32	⅛	⅛	⅛	3/16	⅛	¼	3/16	5/16	¼

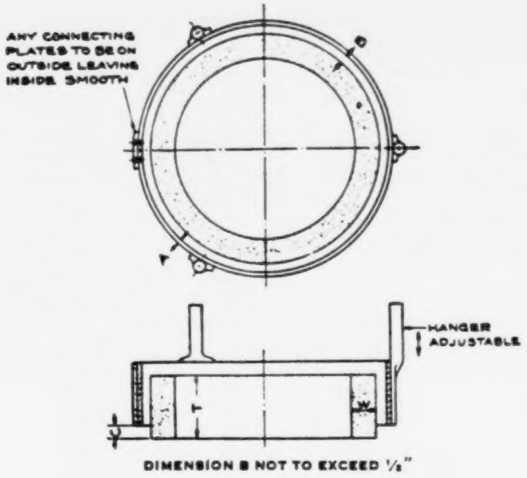

ANY CONNECTING PLATES TO BE ON OUTSIDE LEAVING INSIDE SMOOTH
HANGER ADJUSTABLE
DIMENSION B NOT TO EXCEED ½"

FIGURE NO. 0-29

TABLE O-2—EXPOSURE VERSUS WHEEL THICKNESS

Overall thickness of wheel (T) (inches)	*Maximum exposure of wheel (C) (inches)*
½	¼
1	½
2	¾
3	1
4	1½
5 and over	2

TABLE O-3—GUIDE FOR CONSTRUCTION OF BAND TYPE GUARDS
[Maximum Wheel Speed 7,000 SFPM]

Minimum material specifications	Diameter of wheel	Minimum thickness of band A	Minimum diameter of rivets	Maximum distance between centers of rivets
	Inches	*Inches*	*Inches*	*Inches*
Hot rolled steel SAE 1008	Under 8	1/16	3/16	¾
	8 to 24	⅛	¼	1
	Over 24 to 30	¼	⅜	1¼

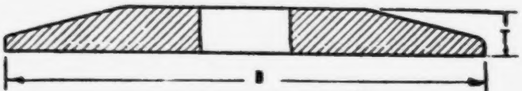


FIGURE NO. 0-30

Driving flange secured to spindle for use only on portable wheels with threaded inserts or projecting studs.

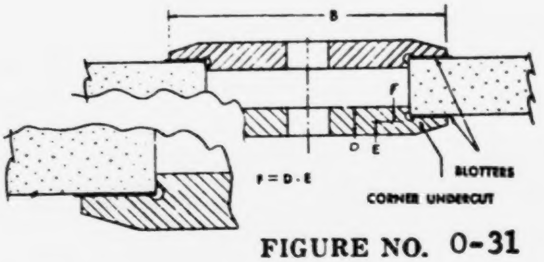

B
F
D
E
F = D - E
BLOTTERS
CORNER UNDERCUT

FIGURE NO. 0-31

TABLE O-4—MINIMUM DIMENSIONS FOR STRAIGHT UNRELIEVED FLANGES FOR WHEELS WITH THREADED INSERTS OR PROJECTING STUDS

A Diameter of wheel	B[1] Minimum outside diameter of flange	T Minimum thickness of flange
Inches	*Inches*	*Inches*
1	⅝	⅛
2	1	⅛
3	1	3/16
4	1⅜	3/16
5	1¾	¼
6	2	⅜

[1] NOTE: Must be large enough to extend beyond the bushing. Where prong anchor or cupback bushing are used, this footnote does not apply.

TABLE O-5—MINIMUM DIMENSIONS FOR STRAIGHT ADAPTOR FLANGE—FOR ORGANIC BONDED WHEELS OVER 1 1/4 INCHES THICK [1]

Wheel diameter	Wheel hole diameter	B Minimum flange diameter	D Minimum thickness of flange at bore	E Minimum thickness of flange at edge of undercut	F [1] (D–E) minimum thickness
Inches	*Inches*	*Inches*	*Inches*	*Inches*	*Inches*
12 to 14	4	6	7/8	3/8	1/2
	5	7	7/8	3/8	1/2
	6	8	7/8	3/8	1/2
Larger than 14 to 18	4	6	7/8	3/8	1/2
	5	7	7/8	3/8	1/2
	6	8	7/8	3/8	1/2
	7	9	7/8	3/8	1/2
	8	10	7/8	3/8	1/2
Larger than 18 to 24	6	8	1	1/2	1/2
	7	9	1	1/2	1/2
	8	10	1	1/2	1/2
	10	12	1	1/2	1/2
	12	14	1	1/2	1/2
Larger than 24 to 30	12	15	1	1/2	1/2
Larger than 30 to 36	12	15	1 3/8	7/8	1/2

[1] For wheels under 1 1/4 inches thick F dimension shall not exceed 40 percent of wheel thickness.

TABLE O-6—MINIMUM DIMENSIONS FOR STRAIGHT RELIEVED FLANGES

A [1] Diameter of wheel	B Minimum outside diameter of flanges	C Radial width of bearing surface Minimum	 Maximum	D Minimum thickness of flange at bore	E Minimum thickness of flange at edge of recess
Inches	*Inches*	*Inches*	*Inches*	*Inches*	*Inches*
1	5/8	1/16	1/8	1/16	1/16
2	3/4	1/8	3/16	1/8	3/32
3	1	1/8	3/16	3/16	3/32
4	1 3/8	1/8	3/16	3/16	1/8
5	1 3/4	3/16	1/4	1/4	1/8
6	2	1/4	1/2	3/8	3/16
7	2 1/2	1/4	1/2	3/8	3/16
8	3	1/4	1/2	3/8	3/16
10	3 1/2	5/16	5/8	3/8	1/4
12	4	5/16	5/8	1/2	5/16
14	4 1/2	3/8	3/4	1/2	5/16
16	5 1/2	1/2	1	1/2	5/16
18	6	1/2	1	5/8	3/8
20	7	5/8	1 1/4	5/8	3/8
22	7 1/2	5/8	1 1/4	5/8	7/16
24	8	3/4	1 1/4	5/8	7/16
26	8 1/2	3/4	1 1/4	5/8	1/2
28	10	7/8	1 1/2	3/4	1/2
30	10	7/8	1 1/2	3/4	5/8
36	12	1	2	7/8	3/4
42	14	1	2	7/8	3/4
48	16	1 1/4	2	1 1/8	1
60	20	1 1/4	2	1 1/4	1 1/8
72	24	1 1/2	2 1/2	1 3/8	1 1/4

[1] Flanges for wheels under 2 inches diameter may be unrelieved and shall be maintained flat and true.

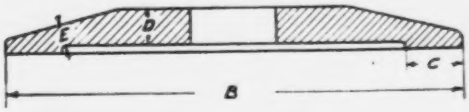


FIGURE NO. 0-32

Driving flange secured to spindle.

TABLE O-7—MINIMUM DIMENSIONS FOR STRAIGHT FLANGES—FOR MECHANICAL GRINDERS 12,500 S.F.P.M. TO 16,500 S.F.P.M.[1]

Wheel diameter	Wheel hole diameter	B Minimum flange diameter	D Minimum thickness of flange at bore	E Minimum thickness of flange at edge of undercut	F [2] (D-E) minimum thickness
20	6	8	1	½	½
20	8	10	1½	¾	¾
24	12	15	2	1	1
30	12	15	2	1	1
36	12	15	2	1	1

[1] Flanges shall be of steel, quality SAE 1040 or equivalent, annealed plate, heat treated to R_c 25-30.

[2] For wheels under 1¼ inch thick F dimension shall not exceed 40 percent of wheel thickness.

TABLE O-8—MINIMUM DIMENSIONS FOR STRAIGHT FLANGES USED AS WHEEL SLEEVES FOR PRECISION GRINDING ONLY

Wheel diameter	Wheel hole diameter	B Minimum outside diameter of flange	D Minimum thickness of flange at bore	E Minimum thickness of flange at edge of undercut
Inches	*Inches*	*Inches*	*Inches*	*Inches*
12 to 14	5	7	½	7/16
Larger than 14 to 20	5	7	⅝	7/16
	6	8	⅝	7/16
	8	10	⅝	7/16
	10	11½	⅝	7/16
	12	13½	⅝	7/16
Larger than 20 to 30	8	10	¾	½
	10	11½	¾	½
	12	13½	¾	½
	16	17½	¾	½
Larger than 30 to 42	12	13½	¾	½
	16	17½	¾	½
	18	19½	¾	½
	20	21½	¾	½
Larger than 42 to 60	16	20	1	¾
	20	24	1	¾
	24	29	1⅛	⅞

NOTE: These flanges may be clamped together by means of a central nut, or by a series of bolts or some other equivalent means of fastening. For hole sizes smaller than shown in this table, use table 12.

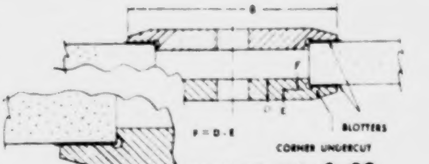


FIGURE NO. 0-33
Central Nut Mounting
Driving flange secured to spindle.

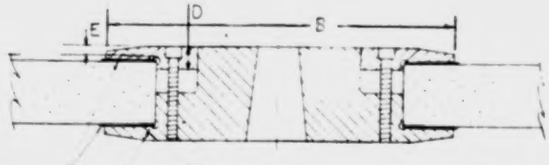


FIGURE NO. 0-34
Multiple Screw Mounting
Driving flange secured to spindle.

TABLE 0-9—MINIMUM BASIC THICKNESSES OF PERIPHERAL AND SIDE MEMBERS FOR SAFETY GUARDS

Material used in construction of guard	Maximum thickness of grinding wheel	Grinding wheel diameters													
		3 to 6 inches		Over 6 to 12 inches		Over 12 to 16 inches		Over 16 to 20 inches		Over 20 to 24 inches		Over 24 to 30 inches		Over 30 to 48 inches	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
	Inches	*Inches*		*Inches*		*Inches*		*Inches*		*Inches*		*Inches*		*Inches*	
Material satisfactory [1] for speeds up to 8,000 SFPM. Cast iron (min. tensile strength 20,000 p.s.i.) Class 20.	2	1/4	1/4	3/8	5/16	1/2	3/8	5/8	1/2	7/8	5/8	1	3/4	1 1/4	1
	4	5/16	5/16	3/8	5/16	1/2	3/8	3/4	5/8	1	5/8	1 1/8	3/4	1 3/8	1
	6	3/8	5/16	1/2	7/16	5/8	1/2	1	5/8	1 1/8	3/4	1 1/4	7/8	1 1/2	1 1/8
	8			5/8	9/16	7/8	3/4	1	3/4	1 1/8	3/4	1 1/4	7/8	1 1/2	1 1/8
	10			3/4	11/16	7/8	3/4	1	3/4	1 1/8	3/4	1 1/4	7/8	1 1/2	1 1/8
	16					1 1/8	1	1 1/4	1	1 5/16	1	1 7/16	1 1/16	1 3/4	1 3/8
	20							1 3/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	1 1/8	1 1/2	1 3/8	2	1 5/8
Material satisfactory [1] for speeds up to 9,000 SFPM. Malleable iron (min. tensile strength 50,000 p.s.i.) Grade 32510.	2	1/4	1/4	3/8	5/16	1/2	3/8	5/8	1/2	3/4	5/8	7/8	3/4	1	7/8
	4	5/16	5/16	3/8	5/16	1/2	3/8	5/8	1/2	3/4	5/8	7/8	3/4	1 1/8	7/8
	6	3/8	5/16	1/2	7/16	5/8	1/2	3/4	5/8	7/8	5/8	1	3/4	1 1/4	7/8
	8			1/2	7/16	5/8	1/2	3/4	5/8	7/8	5/8	1	3/4	1 1/4	7/8
	10			1/2	7/16	5/8	1/2	3/4	5/8	7/8	5/8	1	3/4	1 1/4	7/8
	16					13/16	11/16	13/16	11/16	1	3/4	1 1/8	7/8	1 3/8	1
	20							7/8	3/4	1	3/4	1 1/8	7/8	1 1/2	1 1/8
Materials satisfactory [1] for speeds up to 16,000 SFPM. Steel castings (min tensile strength 60,000 p.s.i.) Grade V60-30.	2	1/4	1/4	5/16	5/16	3/8	3/8	1/2	7/16	5/8	1/2	3/4	5/8	7/8	3/4
	4	1/4	1/4	1/2	1/2	1/2	1/2	9/16	1/2	5/8	1/2	3/4	5/8	1	3/4
	6	3/8	1/4	3/4	5/8	3/4	5/8	3/4	5/8	13/16	11/16	13/16	11/16	1 1/8	3/4
	8			7/8	3/4	7/8	3/4	7/8	3/4	7/8	3/4	15/16	13/16	1 3/8	1
	10			1	7/8	1	7/8	1	7/8	1 1/8	15/16	1 1/8	1	1 7/16	1 1/16
	16					1 1/4	1 1/8	1 1/4	1 1/8	1 1/4	1 1/8	1 1/4	1 1/8	1 13/16	1 7/16
	20							1 3/8	1 1/4	1 3/8	1 1/4	1 7/16	1 5/16	2 1/16	1 11/16
Structural steel (min. tensile strength 60,000 p.s.i.).	2	1/8	1/16	5/16	1/4	5/16	1/4	5/16	1/4	5/16	1/4	3/8	5/16	1/2	3/8
	4	1/8	1/16	3/8	5/16	3/8	5/16	3/8	5/16	3/8	5/16	3/8	5/16	1/2	3/8
	6	3/16	1/16	1/2	3/8	7/16	3/8	7/16	3/8	7/16	3/8	7/16	3/8	3/4	1/2
	8			1/2	3/8	9/16	7/16	9/16	7/16	9/16	7/16	5/8	1/2	3/4	1/2
	10			9/16	7/16	5/8	1/2	5/8	1/2	5/8	1/2	5/8	1/2	7/8	5/8
	16					5/8	9/16	3/4	5/8	3/4	5/8	13/16	11/16	1 1/16	13/16
	20							13/16	11/16	13/16	11/16	7/8	3/4	1 3/16	15/16

---

[1] The recommendations listed in the above table are guides for the conditions stated. Other material, designs or dimensions affording equal or superior protection are also acceptable.

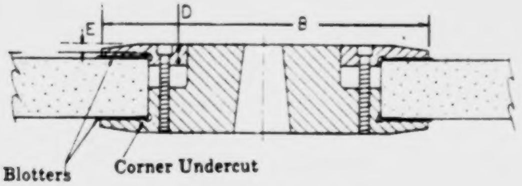

E
D
B
Blotters
Corner Undercut

FIGURE NO. 0-35

Driving flange secured to spindle.

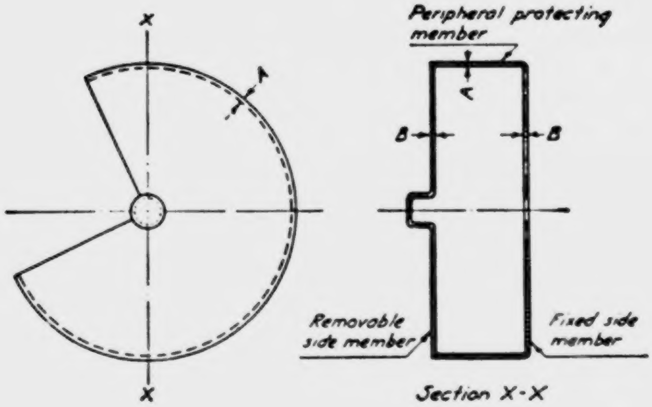

X
A
X
Peripheral protecting member
A
B
B
Removable side member
Fixed side member
Section X-X

FIGURE NO. 0-36

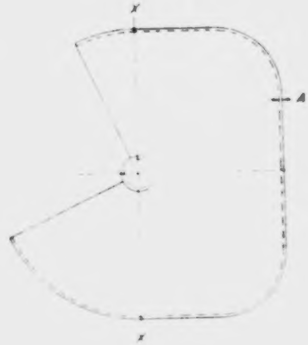


FIGURE NO. 0-37

1910.216—MILLS AND CALENDERS IN THE RUBBER AND PLASTICS INDUSTRIES

(a) General requirements.

(1) New installations. All new installations on or after August 31, 1971, shall be in conformity with this section.

(2) Existing installations. All existing plant installations or equipment contracted for prior to August 31, 1971, shall comply with this section.

(3) Auxiliary equipment. Mechanical and electrical equipment and auxiliaries shall be installed in accordance with this section and Subpart S of this part.

(4) Mill roll heights. All new mill installations shall be installed so that the top of the operating rolls is not less than 50 inches above the level on which the operator stands, irrespective of the size of the mill.

This distance shall apply to the actual working level, whether it be at the general floor level, in a pit, or on a platform.

(b) Mill safety controls.

(1) Safety trip control. A safety trip control shall be provided in front and in back of each mill. It shall be accessible and shall operate readily on contact. The safety trip control shall be one of the following types or a combination thereof.

(i) Pressure-sensitive body bars. Installed at front and back of each mill having a 46-inch roll height or over. These bars shall operate readily by pressure of the mill operator's body.

(ii) Safety triprod. Installed in the front and in the back of each mill and located within 2 inches of a vertical plane tangent to the front and rear rolls. The top rods shall be not more than 72 inches above the level on which the operator stands. The triprods shall be accessible and shall operate readily whether the rods are pushed or pulled.

(iii) Safety tripwire cable or wire center cord. Installed in the front and in the back of each mill and located within 2 inches of a vertical plane tangent to the front and rear rolls. The cables shall not be more than 72 inches above the level on which the operator stands. The tripwire cable or wire center cord shall operate readily whether cable or cord is pushed or pulled.

(2) Removed

(3) Auxiliary equipment. All auxiliary equipment such as mill divider, support bars, spray pipes, feed conveyors, strip knives, etc., shall be located in such a manner as to avoid interference with access to and operation of safety devices.

(c) Calender safety controls.

(1) Safety trip, face. A safety triprod, cable, or wire center cord shall be provided across each pair of in-running rolls extending the length of the face of the rolls. It shall be readily accessible and operate whether pushed or pulled. The safety tripping devices shall be located within reach of the operator and the bite.

(2) Safety trip, side. On both sides of the calender and near each end of the face of the roll, there shall be a cable or wire center cord connected to the safety trip. They shall operate readily when pushed or pulled.

(d) Protection by location.

(1) Mills. Where a mill is so installed that persons cannot normally reach through, over, under, or around to come in contact with the roll bite or be caught between a roll and an adjacent object, then, provided such elements are made a fixed part of a mill, safety control devices listed in paragraph (b) of this section shall not apply.

(2) Calenders. Where a calender is so installed that persons cannot normally reach through, over, under, or around to come in contact with the roll bite or be caught between a roll and an adjacent object, then, provided such elements are made a fixed part of a calender, safety control devices listed in paragraph (c) of this section shall not apply.

(e) Trip and emergency switches.

All trip and emergency switches shall not be of the automatically resetting type, but shall require manual resetting.

(f) Stopping limits.

(1) Determination of distance of travel. All measurements on mills and calenders shall be taken with the rolls running empty at maximum operating speed. Stopping distances shall be expressed in inches of surface travel of the roll from the instant the emergency stopping device is actuated.

(2) Stopping limits for mills. All mills irrespective of the size of the rolls or their arrangement (individually or group-driven) shall be stopped within a distance, as measured in inches of surface travel, not greater than 1½ percent of the peripheral no-load surface speeds of the respective rolls as determined in feet per minute.

(3) Stopping limits for calenders.

(i) All calenders, irrespective of size of the rolls or their configuration, shall be stopped within a distance, as measured in inches of surface travel, not greater than 1¾ percent of the peripheral no-load surface speeds of the respective calender rolls as determined in feet per minute.

(ii) Where speeds above 250 feet per minute as measured on the surface of the drive roll are used, stopping distances of more than 1¾ percent are permissible. Such stopping distances shall be subject to engineering determination.

(g) Alarm. Removed

1910.217—MECHANICAL POWER PRESSES

(a) General requirements.

(1) New installations. Revoked

(2) Former installations. Revoked

(3) All installations. Revoked

(4) Reconstruction and modification. It shall be the responsibility of any person reconstructing, or modifying a mechanical power press to do so in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section.

(5) Excluded machines. Press brakes, hydraulic and pneumatic power presses, bulldozers, hot bending and hot metal presses, forging presses and hammers, riveting machines and similar types of fastener applicators are excluded from the requirements of this section.

(b) Mechanical power press guarding and construction, general.

(1) Hazards to personnel associated with broken or falling machine components. Machine components shall be designed, secured, or covered to minimize hazards caused by breakage, or loosening and falling or release of mechanical energy (i.e. broken springs).

(2) Brakes. Friction brakes provided for stopping or holding a slide movement shall be inherently self-engaging by requiring power or force from an external source to cause disengagement. Brake capacity shall be sufficient to stop the motion of the slide quickly and capable of holding the slide and its attachments at any point in its travel.

[38 F.R. 16223, June 21, 1973.]

(3) Machines using full revolution positive clutches.

(i) Machines using full revolution clutches shall incorporate a single-stroke mechanism.

(ii) If the single-stroke mechanism is dependent upon spring action, the spring(s) shall be of the compression type, operating on a rod or guided within a hole or tube, and designed to prevent interleaving of the spring coils in event of breakage.

(4) Foot pedals (treadle).

(i) The pedal mechanism shall be protected to prevent unintended operation from falling or moving objects or by accidental stepping onto the pedal.

(ii) A pad with a nonslip contact area shall be firmly attached to the pedal.

(iii) The pedal return spring(s) shall be of the compression type, operating on a rod or guided within a hole or tube, or designed to prevent interleaving of spring coils in event of breakage.

(iv) If pedal counterweights are provided, the path of the travel of the weight shall be enclosed.

(5) Hand operated levers.

(i) Hand-lever-operated power presses shall be equipped with a spring latch on the operating lever to prevent premature or accidental tripping.

(ii) The operating levers on handtripped presses having more than one operating station shall be interlocked to prevent the tripping of the press except by the "concurrent" use of all levers.

(6) Two-hand trip.

(i) A two-hand trip shall have the individual operator's hand controls protected against unintentional operation and have the individual operator's hand controls arranged by design and construction and/or separation to require the use of both hands to trip the press and use a control arrangement requiring concurrent operation of the individual operator's hand controls.

(ii) Two-hand trip systems on full revolution clutch machines shall incorporate an antirepeat feature.

(iii) If two-hand trip systems are used on multiple operator presses, each operator shall have a separate set of controls.

(7) Machines using part revolution clutches.

(i) The clutch shall release and the brake shall be applied when the external clutch engaging means is removed, deactivated, or deenergized.

(ii) A red color stop control shall be provided with the clutch/brake control system. Momentary operation of the stop control shall immediately deactivate the clutch and apply the brake. The stop control shall override any other control, and reactuation of the clutch shall require use of the operating (tripping) means which has been selected.

(iii) A means of selecting Off, "Inch," Single Stroke, and Continuous (when the continuous function is furnished) shall be supplied with the clutch/brake control to select type of operation of the press. Fixing of selection shall be by means capable of supervision by the employer.

(iv) The "Inch" operating means shall be designed to prevent exposure of the workers hands within the point of operation by:

(a) Requiring the concurrent use of both hands to actuate the clutch, or

(b) Being a single control protected against accidental actuation and so located that the worker cannot reach into the point of operation while operating the single control.

(v) Two-hand controls for single stroke shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) Each hand control shall be protected against unintended operation and arranged by design, construction, and/or separation so that the concurrent use of both hands is required to trip the press.

(b) The control system shall be designed to permit an adjustment which will require concurrent pressure from both hands during the die closing portion of the stroke.

(c) The control system shall incorporate an antirepeat feature.

(d) The control systems shall be designed to require release of all operators' hand controls before an interrupted stroke can be resumed. This requirement pertains only to those single-stroke, two-hand controls manufactured and installed on or after August 31, 1971.

(vi) [Reserved]

(vii) Controls for more than one operating station shall be designed to be activated and deactivated in complete sets of two operator's hand controls per operating station by means capable of being supervised by the employer. The clutch/brake control system shall be designed and constructed to prevent actuation of the clutch if all operating stations are bypassed.

(viii) Those clutch/brake control systems which contain both single and continuous functions shall be designed so that completion of continuous circuits may be supervised by the employer. The initiation of continuous run shall require a prior action or decision by the operator in addition to the selection of Continuous on the stroking selector, before actuation of the operating means will result in continuous stroking.

(ix) If foot control is provided, the selection method between hand and foot control shall be separate from the stroking selector and shall be designed so that the selection may be supervised by the employer.

(x) Foot operated tripping controls, if used, shall be protected so as to prevent operation from falling or moving objects, or from unintended operation by accidental stepping onto the foot control.

(xi) The control of air-clutch machines shall be designed to prevent a significant increase in the normal stopping time due to a failure within the operating valve mechanism, and to inhibit further operation if such failure does occur. This requirement shall apply only to those clutch/brake air-valve controls manufactured and installed on or after August 31, 1971, but shall not apply to machines intended only for continuous, automatic feeding applications.

(xii) The clutch/brake control shall incorporate an automatic means to prevent initiation or continued activation of the Single Stroke or Continuous functions unless the press drive motor is energized and in the forward direction.

(xiii) The clutch/brake control shall automatically deactivate in event of failure of the power or pressure supply for the clutch engaging means. Reactivation of the clutch shall require restoration of normal supply and the use of the tripping mechanism(s).

(xiv) The clutch/brake control shall automatically deactivate in event of failure of the counterbalance(s) air supply. Reactivation of the clutch shall require restoration of normal air supply and use of the tripping mechanism(s).

(xv) Selection of bar operation shall be by means capable of being supervised by the employer. A separate pushbutton shall be employed to activate the clutch, and the clutch shall be activated only if the driver motor is deenergized.

(8) Electrical.

(i) A main power disconnect switch capable of being locked only in the Off position shall be provided with every power press control system.

(ii) The motor start button shall be protected against accidental operation.

(iii) All mechanical power press controls shall incorporate a type of drive motor starter that will disconnect the drive motor from the power source in the event of control voltage or power source failure, and require operation of the motor start button to restart the motor when voltage conditions are restored to normal.

(iv) All a.c. control circuits and solenoid valve coils shall be powered by not more than a nominal 120-volt a.c. supply obtained from a transformer with an isolated secondary. Higher voltages that may be necessary for operation of machine or control mechanisms shall be isolated from any control mechanism handled by the operator, but motor starters with integral Start-Stop buttons may utilize line voltage control. All d.c. control circuits shall be powered by not more than a nominal 240-volt d.c. supply isolated from any higher voltages.

[45 F.R. 8594, February 8, 1980]

(v) All clutch/brake control electrical circuits shall be protected against the possibility of an accidental ground in the control circuit causing false operation of the press.

(vi) Electrical clutch/brake control circuits shall incorporate features to minimize the possibility of an unintended stroke in the event of the failure of a control component to function properly, including relays, limit switches, and static output circuits.

[39 F.R. 41841, December 3, 1974.]

(9) **Slide counterbalance systems.**

(i) Spring counterbalance systems when used shall incorporate means to retain system parts in event of breakage.

(ii) Spring counterbalances when used shall have the capability to hold the slide and its attachments at midstroke, without brake applied.

(iii) Air counterbalance cylinders shall incorporate means to retain the piston and rod in case of breakage or loosening.

(iv) Air counterbalance cylinders shall have adequate capability to hold the slide and its attachments at any point in stroke, without brake applied.

(v) Air counterblance cylinders shall incorporate means to prevent failure of capability (sudden loss of pressure) in event of air supply failure.

(10) **Air controlling equipment.** Air controlling equipment shall be protected against foreign material and water entering the pneumatic system of the press. A means of air lubrication shall be provided when needed.

(11) **Hydraulic equipment.** The maximum anticipated working pressures in any hydraulic system on a mechanical power press shall not exceed the safe working pressure rating of any component used in that system.

(12) **Pressure vessels.** All pressure vessels used in conjunction with power presses shall conform to the American Society of Mechanical Engineers Code for Pressure Vessels, 1968 Edition.

(13) **Control reliability.** When required by paragraph (c)(5) of this section, the control system shall be constructed so that a failure within the system does not prevent the normal stopping action from being applied to the press when required, but does prevent initiation of a successive stroke until the failure is corrected. The failure shall be detectable by a simple test, or indicated by the control system. This requirement does not apply to those elements of the control system which have no effect on the protection against point of operation injuries.

(14) **Brake system monitoring.** When required by paragraph (c)(5) of this section, the brake monitor shall meet the following requirements:

(i) Be so constructed as to automatically prevent the activation of a successive stroke if the stopping time or braking distance deteriorates to a point where the safety distance being utilized does not meet the requirements set forth in paragraph (c)(3)(iii)(e) or (c)(3)(vii)(c) of this section. The brake monitor used with the Type B gate or movable barrier device shall be installed in a manner to detect slide top-stop overrun beyond the normal limit reasonably established by the employer.

(ii) Be installed on a press such that it indicates when the performance of the braking system has deteriorated to the extent described in paragraph (b)(14)(i) of this section; and

[40 F.R. 3982, January 27, 1975.]

(iii) Be constructed and installed in a manner to monitor brake system performance on each stroke.

[39 F.R. 41841, December 3, 1974.]

(c) Safeguarding the point of operation.

(1) General requirements.

(i) It shall be the responsibility of the employer to provide and insure the usage of "point of operation guards" or properly applied and adjusted point of operation devices on every operation performed on a mechanical power press. See Table O–10.

(ii) The requirement of subdivision (i) of this subparagraph shall not apply when the point of operation opening is one-fourth inch or less. See Table O–10.

(2) Point of operation guards.

(i) Every point of operation guard shall meet the following design, construction, application, and adjustment requirements:

(a) It shall prevent entry of hands or fingers into the point of operation by reaching through, over, under or around the guard;

(b) It shall conform to the maximum permissible openings of Table O–10;

(c) It shall, in itself, create no pinch point between the guard and moving machine parts;

(d) It shall utilize fasteners not readily removable by operator, so as to minimize the possibility of misuse or removal of essential parts;

(e) It shall facilitate its inspection, and

(f) It shall offer maximum visibility of the point of operation consistent with the other requirements.

(ii) A die enclosure guard shall be attached to the die shoe or stripper in a fixed position.

(iii) A fixed barrier guard shall be attached securely to the frame of the press or to the bolster plate.

(iv) An interlocked press barrier guard shall be attached to the press frame or bolster and shall be interlocked with the press clutch control so that the clutch cannot be activated unless the guard itself, or the hinged or movable sections of the guard are in position to conform to the requirements of Table O–10.

(v) The hinged or movable sections of an interlocked press barrier guard shall not be used for manual feeding. The guard shall prevent opening of the interlocked section and reaching into the point of operation prior to die closure or prior to the cessation of slide motion. See paragraph (c)(3)(ii) of this section regarding manual feeding through interlocked press barrier devices.

[39 F.R. 41841, December 3, 1974.]

(vi) The adjustable barrier guard shall be securely attached to the press bed, bolster plate, or die shoe, and shall be adjusted and operated in conformity with Table O–10 and the requirements of this subparagraph. Adjustments shall be made only by authorized personnel whose qualifications include a knowledge of the provisions of Table O-10 and this subparagraph.

(vii) A point of operation enclosure which does not meet the requirements of this subparagraph and Table O–10 shall be used only in conjunction with point of operation devices.

(3) Point of operation devices

(i) Point of operation devices shall protect the operator by:

(a) Preventing and/or stopping normal stroking of the press if the operator's hands are inadvertently placed in the point of operation; or

(b) Preventing the operator from inadvertently reaching into the point of operation, or withdrawing his hands if they are inadvertently located in the point of operation, as the dies close; or

[39 F.R. 41841, December 3, 1974.]

(c) Preventing the operator from inadvertently reaching into the point of operation at all times; or

(d) [Revoked]

(e) Requiring application of both of the operator's hands to machine operating controls and locating such controls at such a safety distance from the point of operation that the slide completes the downward travel or stops before the operator can reach into the point of operation with his hands; or

(f) Enclosing the point of operation before a press stroke can be initiated and maintaining this closed condition until the motion of the slide had ceased; or

(g) Enclosing the point of operation before a press stroke can be initiated, so as to prevent an operator from reaching into the point of operation prior to die closure or prior to cessation of slide motion during the downward stroke.

(ii) A gate or movable barrier device shall protect the operator as follows:

(a) A Type A gate or movable barrier device shall protect the operator in the manner specified in paragraph (c)(3)(i)*(f)* of this section, and

(b) A Type B gate or movable barrier device shall protect the operator in the manner specified in paragraph (c)(3)(i)*(g)* of this section.

(iii) A presence sensing point of operation device shall protect the operator as provided in paragraph (c)(3)(i)(*a*) of this section, and shall be interlocked into the control circuit to prevent or stop slide motion if the operator's hand or other part of his body is within the sensing field of the device during the downstroke of the press slide.

(a) The device may not be used on machines using full revolution clutches.

(b) The device may not be used as a tripping means to initiate slide motion, except when used in total conformance with paragraph (h) of this section.

[53 F.R. 8353, March 14, 1988]

(c) The device shall be constructed so that a failure within the system does not prevent the normal stopping action from being applied to the press when required, but does prevent the initiation of a successive stroke until the failure is corrected. The failure shall be indicated by the system.

(d) Muting (bypassing of the protective function) of such device, during the upstroke of the press slide, is permitted for the purpose of parts ejection, circuit checking, and feeding.

(e) The safety distance (Ds) from the sensing field to the point of operation shall be greater than the distance determined by the following formula:

Ds = 63 inches/second x Ts where:

Ds = minimum safety distance (inches); 63 inches/second = hand speed constant; and Ts = stopping time of the press measured at approximately 90° position of crankshaft rotation (seconds).

(f) Guards shall be used to protect all areas of entry to the point of operation not protected by the presence sensing device.

(iv) The pull-out device shall protect the operator as specified in paragraph (c)(3)(i)(*b*) of this section and shall include attachments for each of the operator's hands.

(a) Attachments shall be connected to and operated only by the press slide or upper die.

(b) Attachment shall be adjusted to prevent the operator from reaching into the point of operation or to withdraw the operator's hands from the point of operation before the dies close.

(c) A separate pull-out device shall be provided for each operator if more than one operator is used on a press.

(d) Each pull-out device in use shall be visually inspected and checked for proper adjustment at the start of each operator shift, following a new die set-up, and when operators are changed. Necessary maintenance or repair or both shall be performed and completed before the press is operated. Records of inspections and maintenance shall be kept in accordance with paragraph (e) of this section.

(v) The sweep device may not be used for point of operation safeguarding after December 31, 1976.

(vi) A holdout or a restraint device shall protect the operator as specified in subdivision (i)(c) of this subparagraph and shall include attachments for each of the operator's hands. Such attachments shall be securely anchored and adjusted in such a way that the operator is restrained from reaching into the point of operation. A separate set of restraints shall be provided for each operator if more than one operator is required on a press.

(vii) The two hand control device shall protect the operator as specified in paragraph (c)(3)(i)(*e*) of this section.

(a) When used in press operations requiring more than one operator, separate two hand controls shall be provided for each operator, and shall be designed to require concurrent application of all operators' controls to activate the slide. The removal of a hand from any control button shall cause the slide to stop.

(b) Each two hand control shall meet the construction requirements of paragraph (b)(7)(v) of this section.

(c) The safety distance (D_s) between each two hand control device and the point of operation shall be greater than the distance determined by the following formula:

D_s = 63 inches/second × T_s; where:
D_s = minimum safety distance (inches);
63 inches/second = hand speed constant; and
T_s = stopping time of the press measured at approximately [illegible] position of crankshaft rotation (seconds).

(d) Two hand control shall be fixed in position so that only a supervisor or safety engineer is capable of relocating the controls.

(viii) The two hand trip device shall protect the operator as specified in paragraph (c)(3)(i)(*e*) of this section.

(a) When used in press operations requiring more than one operator, separate two hand trips shall be provided for each operator, and shall be designed to require concurrent application of all operators' controls to activate the slide.

[40 F.R. 3982, January 27, 1975.]

(b) Each two hand trip shall meet the construction requirements of paragraph (b)(6) of this section.

(c) The safety distance (D_m) between the two hand trip and the point of operation shall be greater than the distance determined by the following formula:

D_m = 63 inches/second × T_m; where:
D_m = minimum safety distance (inches);
63 inches/second = hand speed constant; and
T_m = the maximum time the press takes for the die closure after it has been tripped (seconds). For full revolution clutch presses with only one engaging point T_m is equal to the time necessary for one and one half revolutions of the crankshaft. For full revolution clutch presses with more than one engaging point, T_m shall be calculated as follows:

$$T_m = \left\{ \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\text{Number of engaging points per revolution}} \right\} \times \text{time necessary to complete one revolution of the crankshaft (seconds)}$$

(d) Two hand trips shall be fixed in position so that only a supervisor or safety engineer is capable of relocating the controls.

(ix) [Revoked]

[39 F.R. 41841, December 3, 1974]

(4) Hand feeding tools. Hand feeding tools are intended for placing and removing materials in and from the press. Hand feeding tools are not a point of operation guard or protection device and shall not be used in lieu of the "guards" or devices required in this section.

(5) Additional requirements for safeguarding. **Where the operator feeds or removes parts by placing one or both hands in the point of operation, and a two hand control, presence sensing device of Type B gate or movable barrier (on a part revolution clutch) is used for safeguarding:**

(i) the employer shall use a control system and a brake monitor which comply with paragraphs (b)(13) and (14) of this section. This requirement shall be complied with by November 1, 1975;

(ii) the exception in paragraph (b)(7)(v)(*d*) of this section for two hand controls manufactured and installed before August 31, 1971 is not applicable under this paragraph (c)(5);

(iii) the control of air clutch machines shall be designed to prevent a significant increase in the normal stopping time due to a failure within the operating valve mechanism, and to inhibit further operation if such failure does occur, where a part revolution clutch is employed. The exception in paragraph (b)(7)(xi) of this section for controls manufactured and installed before August 31, 1971, is not applicable under this paragraph (c)(5).

(d) Design, construction, setting and feeding of dies.

(1) **General requirements.** Effective February 1, 1975, the employer shall:

(i) use dies and operating methods designed to control or eliminate hazards to operating personnel, and

(ii) furnish and enforce the use of hand tools for freeing and removing stuck work or scrap pieces from the die, so that no employee need reach into the point of operation for such purposes.

(2) [Revoked]

[39 F.R. 41841, December 3, 1974.]

(3) **Scrap handling.** The employer shall provide means for handling scrap from roll feed or random length stock operations. Scrap cutters used in conjunction with scrap handling systems shall be safeguarded in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section and with § 1910.219.

[45 F.R. 8594, February 8, 1980.]

(4) **Guide post hazard.** The hazard created by a guide post (when it is located in immediate vicinity of the operator) when separated from its bushing by more than one-fourth inch shall be considered as a point of operation hazard and be protected in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(5) **Unitized tooling.** If unitized tooling is used, the opening between the top of the punch holder and the face of the slide, or striking pad, shall be safeguarded in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section.

[45 F.R. 8594, February 8, 1980.]

(6) **Tonnage, stroke, and weight designation.** All dies shall be:

(i) Stamped with the tonnage and stroke requirements, or have these characteristics recorded if these records are readily available to the die setter;

(ii) Stamped to indicate upper die weight when necessary for air counterbalance pressure adjustment; and

(iii) Stamped to indicate complete die weight when handling equipment may become overloaded.

(7) **Die fastening.** Provision shall be made in both the upper and lower shoes for securely mounting the die to the bolster and slide. Where clamp caps or setscrews are used in conjunction with punch stems, additional means of securing the upper shoe to the slide shall be used.

(8) **Die handling.** Handling equipment attach points shall be provided on all dies requiring mechanical handling.

(9) **Diesetting.**

(i) The employer shall establish a diesetting procedure that will insure compliance with paragraph (c) of this section.

[45 F.R. 8549, February 8, 1980.]

(ii) The employer shall provide spring loaded turnover bars, for presses designed to accept such turnover bars.

(iii) The employer shall provide die stops or other means to prevent losing control of the die while setting or removing dies in presses which are inclined.

(iv) The employer shall provide and enforce the use of safety blocks for use whenever dies are being adjusted or repaired in the press.

(v) The employer shall provide brushes, swabs, lubricating rolls, and automatic or manual pressure guns so that operators and diesetters shall not be required to reach into the point of operation or other hazard areas to lubricate material, punches or dies.

(e) Inspection, maintenance, and modification of presses.

(1) **Inspection and maintenance records.**

(i) It shall be the responsibility of the employer to establish and follow a program of periodic and regular inspections of his power presses to ensure that all their parts, auxiliary equipment, and safeguards are in a safe operating condition and adjustment. The employer shall maintain a certification record of inspections which includes the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection and the serial number, or other identifier, of the power press that was inspected.

(ii) Each press shall be inspected and tested no less than weekly to determine the condition of the clutch/brake mechanism, antirepeat feature and single stroke mechanism. Necessary maintenance or repair or both shall be performed and completed before the press is operated. Thee requirements do not apply to those presses which comply with paragraphs (b)(13) and (14) of this section. The employer shall maintain a certification record of inspections, tests and maintenance work which includes the date of the inspection, test or maintenance; the signature of the person who performed the inspection, test, or maintenance; and the serial number or other identifier of the press that was inspected, tested or maintained.

[51 F.R. 34561, September 29, 1986]

(2) Modification. It shall be the responsibility of any person modifying a power press to furnish instructions with the modification to establish new or changed guidelines for use and care of the power press so modified.

(3) Training of maintenance personnel. It shall be the responsibility of the employer to insure the original and continuing competence of personnel caring for, inspecting, and maintaining power presses.

(f) Operation of power presses.

(1) Employment of minors. Revoked

(2) Instruction to operators. The employer shall train and instruct the operator in the safe method of work before starting work on any operation covered by this section. The employer shall insure by adequate supervision that correct operating procedures are being followed.

(3) Work area. The employer shall provide clearance between machines so that movement of one operator will not interfere with the work of another. Ample room for cleaning machines, handling material, work pieces, and scrap shall also be provided. All surrounding floors shall be kept in good condition and free from obstructions, grease, oil, and water.

(4) Overloading. The employer shall operate his presses within the tonnage and attachment weight ratings specified by the manufacturer.

This table shows the distances that guards shall be positioned from the danger line in accordance with the required openings.

TABLE O-10

Distance of opening from point of operation hazard (inches)	*Maximum width of opening (inches)*
$\frac{1}{2}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$
$1\frac{1}{2}$ to $2\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{8}$
$2\frac{1}{2}$ to $3\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
$3\frac{1}{2}$ to $5\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{8}$
$5\frac{1}{2}$ to $6\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$
$6\frac{1}{2}$ to $7\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{7}{8}$
$7\frac{1}{2}$ to $12\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$
$12\frac{1}{2}$ to $15\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$
$15\frac{1}{2}$ to $17\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{7}{8}$
$17\frac{1}{2}$ to $31\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{8}$

(g) Reports of injuries to employees operating mechanical power presses.

The employer shall, within 30 days of the occurrence, report to either the Director of the Office of Standards Development, OSHA, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, D.C. 20210, or the State agency administering a plan approved by the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, all point of operation injuries to operators or other employees. The following information shall be included in the report:

(i) Employer's name, address and location of the workplace (establishment).

(ii) Employee's name, injury sustained, and the task being performed (operation, set-up, maintenance or other).

(iii) Type of clutch used on the press (full revolution, part revolution, or direct drive).

(iv) Type of safeguard(s) being used (two hand control, two hand trip, pull-outs, sweeps or other). If the safeguard is not described in this section, give a complete description.

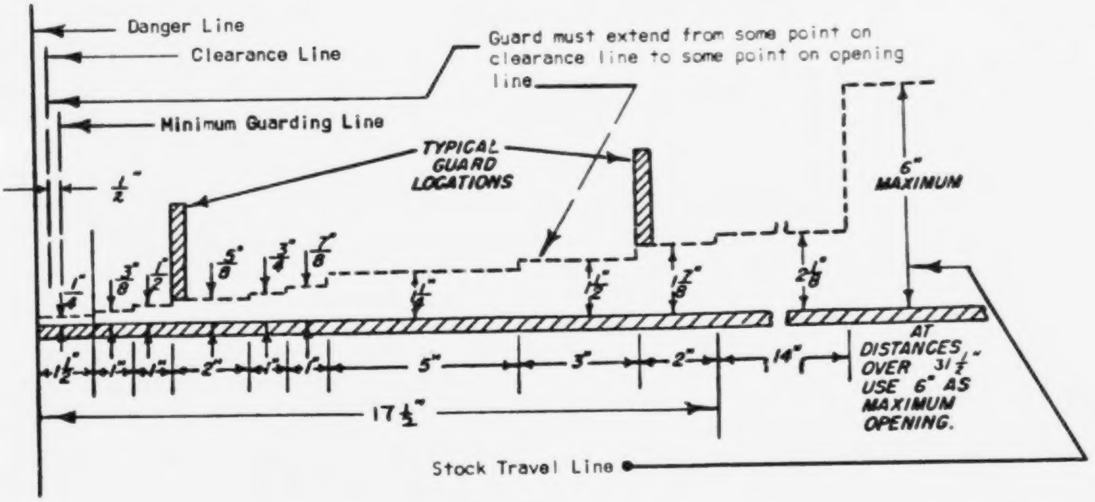
(v) Cause of the accident (repeat of press, safeguard failure, removing stuck part or scrap, no safeguard provided, no safeguard in use, or other).

(vi) Type of feeding (manual with hands in dies or with hands out of dies, semiautomatic, automatic, or other).

(vii) Means used to actuate press stroke (foot trip, foot control, hand trip, hand control, or other).

(viii) Number of operators required for the operation and the number of operators provided with controls and safeguards.

[39 F.R. 41841, December 3, 1974.]


Danger Line
Clearance Line
Guard must extend from some point on clearance line to some point on opening line
Minimum Guarding Line
TYPICAL GUARD LOCATIONS
1/2"
1/4"
3/8"
1/2"
5/8"
3/4"
7/8"
1 1/4"
1 1/2"
1 7/8"
2 1/8"
6" MAXIMUM
1 1/2"
1"
1"
2"
1"
1"
5"
3"
2"
14"
AT DISTANCES OVER 31 1/2" USE 6" AS MAXIMUM OPENING.
17 1/2"
Stock Travel Line

Explanation of above diagram:

This diagram shows the accepted safe openings between the bottom edge of a guard and feed table at various distances from the danger line (point of operation).

The *clearance line* marks the distance required to prevent contact between guard and moving parts.

The *minimum guarding line* is the distance between the infeed side of the guard and the danger line which is one-half inch from the danger line.

The various openings are such that for average size hands an operator's fingers won't reach the point of operation.

After installation of point of operation guards and before a job is released for operation a check should be made to verify that the guard will prevent the operator's hands from reaching the point of operation.

(h) Presence sensing device initiation (PSDI)

(1) General

(i) The requirements of paragraph (h) shall apply to all part revolution mechanical power presses used in the PSDI mode of operation.

(ii) The relevant requirements of paragraphs (a) through (g) of this section also shall apply to all presses used in the PSDI mode of operation, whether or not cross referenced in this paragraph (h). Such cross-referencing of specific requirements from paragraphs (a) through (g) of this section is intended only to enhance convenience and understanding in relating to the new provisions to the existing standard, and is not to be construed as limiting the applicability of other provisions in paragraphs (a) through (g) of this section.

(iii) Full revolution mechanical power presses shall not be used in the PSDI mode of operation.

(iv) Mechanical power presses with a configuration which would allow a person to enter, pass through, and become clear of the sensing field into the hazardous portion of the press shall not be used in the PSDI mode of operation.

(v) The PSDI mode of operation shall be used only for normal production operations. Die-setting and maintenance procedures shall comply with paragraphs (a) through (g) of this section, and shall not be done in the PSDI mode.

(2) Brake and clutch requirements.

(i) Presses with flexible steel band brakes or with mechanical linkage actuated brakes or clutches shall not be used in the PSDI mode.

(ii) Brake systems on presses used in the PSDI mode shall have sufficient torque so that each average value of stopping times (Ts) for stops initiated at approximately 45 degrees, 60 degrees, and 90 degrees, respectively, of crankshaft angular position, shall not be more than 125 percent of the average value of the stopping time at the top crankshaft position. Compliance with this requirement shall be determined by using the heaviest upper die to be used on the press, and operating at the fastest press speed if there is speed selection.

(iii) Where brake engagement and clutch release is effected by spring action, such spring(s) shall operate in compression on a rod or within a hole or tube, and shall be of non-interleaving design.

(3) Pneumatic systems.

(i) Air valve and air pressure supply/control.

(a) The requirements of paragraphs (b)(7)(xiii), (b)(7)(xiv), (b)(10), (b)(12) and (c)(5)(iii) of this section apply to the pneumatic systems of machines used in the PSDI mode.

(b) The air supply for pneumatic clutch/brake control valves shall incorporate a filter, an air regulator, and, when necessary for proper operation, a lubricator.

(c) The air pressure supply for clutch/brake valves on machines used in the PSDI mode shall be regulated to pressures less than or equal to the air pressure used when making the stop time measurements required by paragraph (h)(2)(ii) of this section.

(ii) Air counterbalance systems.

(a) Where presses that have slide counterbalance systems are used in the PSDI mode, the counterbalance system shall also meet the requirements of paragraph (b)(9) of this section.

(b) Counterbalances shall be adjusted in accordance with the press manufacturer's recommendations to assure correct counterbalancing of the slide attachment (upper die) weight for all operations performed on presses used in the PSDI mode. The adjustments shall be made before performing the stopping time measurements required by paragraphs (b)(2)(ii), (h)(5)(iii), and (h)(9)(v) of this section.

(4) Flywheels and bearings. Presses whose designs incorporate flywheels running on journals on the crankshaft or back shaft, or bull gears running on journals mounted on the crankshaft, shall be inspected, lubricated, and maintained as provided in paragraph (h)(10) of this section to reduce the possibility of unintended and uncontrolled press strokes caused by bearing seizure.

(5) Brake monitoring.

(i) Presses operated in the PSDI mode shall be equipped with a brake monitor that meets the requirements of paragraphs (b)(13) and (b)(14) of this section. In addition, the brake monitor shall be adjusted during installation certification to prevent successive stroking of the press if increases in stopping time cause an increase in the safety distance above that required by paragraph (h)(9)(v) of this section.

(ii) Once the PSDI safety system has been certified/validated, adjustment of the brake monitor shall not be done without prior approval of the validation organization for both the brake monitor adjustment and the corresponding adjustment of the safety distance. The validation organization shall in its installation validation, state that in what circumstances, if any, the employer has advance approval for adjustment, when prior oral approval is appropriate and when prior approval must be in writing. The adjustment shall be done under the supervision of an authorized person whose qualifications include knowledge of safety distance requirements and experience with the brake system and its adjustment. When brake wear or other factors extend press stopping time beyond the limit permitted by the brake monitor, adjustment, repair, or maintenance shall be performed on the brake or other press system element that extends the stopping time.

(iii) The brake monitor setting shall allow an increase of no more than 10 percent of the longest stopping time for the press, or 10 milliseconds, whichever is longer, measured at the top of the stroke.

(6) Cycle control and control systems.

(i) The control system on presses used in the PSDI mode shall meet the applicable requirements of paragraphs (b)(7), (b)(8), (b)(13), and (c)(5) of this section.

(ii) The control system shall incorporate a means of dynamically monitoring for decoupling of the rotary position indicating mechanism drive from the crankshaft. This monitor shall stop slide motion and prevent successive press strokes if decoupling occurs, or if the monitor itself fails.

(iii) The mode selection means of paragraph (b)(7)(iii) of this section shall have at least one position for selection of the PSDI mode. Where more than one interruption of the light sensing field is used in the initiation of a stroke, either the mode selection means must have one position for each function, or a separate selection means shall be provided which becomes operable when the PSDI mode is selected. Selection of PSDI mode and the number of interruptions/withdrawals of the light sensing field required to initiate a press cycle shall be by means capable of supervision by the employer.

(iv) A PSDI set-up/reset means shall be provided which requires an overt action by the operator, in addition to PSDI mode selection, before operation of the press by means of PSDI can be started.

(v) An indicator visible to the operator and readily seen by the employer shall be provided which shall clearly indicate that the system is set-up for cycling in the PSDI mode.

(vi) The control system shall incorporate a timer to deactivate PSDI when the press does not stroke within the period of time set by the timer. The timer shall be manually adjustable, to a maximum time of 30 seconds. For any timer setting greater than 15 seconds, the adjustment shall be made by the use of a special tool available only to authorized persons. Following a deactivation of PSDI by the timer, the system shall make it necessary to reset the set-up/reset means in order to reactivate the PSDI mode.

(vii) Reactivation of PSDI operation following deactivation of the PSDI mode from any other cause, such as activation of the red color stop control required by paragraph (b)(7)(ii) of this section, interruption of the presence sensing field, opening of an interlock, or reselection of the number of sensing field interruptions/withdrawals required to cycle the press, shall require resetting of the set-up/reset means.

(viii) The control system shall incorporate an automatic means to prevent initiation or continued operation in the PSDI mode unless the press drive motor is energized in the forward direction of crank shaft rotation.

(ix) The control design shall preclude any movement of the slide caused by operation of power on, power off, or selector switches, or from checks for proper operations as required by paragraph (h)(6)(xiv) of this section.

(x) All components and subsystems of the control system shall be designed to operate together to provide total control system compliance with the requirements of this section.

(xi) Where there is more than one operator of a press used for PSDI, each operator shall be protected by a separate, independently functioning, presence sensing device. The control system shall require that each sensing field be interrupted the selected number of times prior to initiating a stroke. Further, each operator shall be provided with a set-up/reset means that meets the requirements of paragraph (h)(6) of this section, and which must be actuated to initiate operation of the press in the PSDI mode.

(xii) [Reserved].

(xiii) The Control system shall incorporate interlocks for supplemental guards, if used, which will prevent stroke initiation or will stop a stroke in progress if any supplemental guard fails or is deactivated.

(xiv) The control system shall perform checks for proper operation of all cycle control logic element switches and contacts at least once each cycle. Control elements shall be checked for correct status after power "on" and before the initial PSDI stroke.

(xv) The control system shall have provisions for an "inch" operating means meeting the requirements of paragraph (b)(7)(iv) of this section. Die-setting shall not be done in the PSDI mode. Production shall not be done in the "inch" mode.

(xvi) The control system shall permit only a single stroke per initiation command.

(xvii) Controls with internally stored programs (e.g., mechanical, electro-mechanical, or electronic) shall meet the requirements of paragraph (b)(13) of this section, and shall default to a predetermined safe condition in the event of any single failure within the system. Programmable controllers which meet the requirements for controls with internally stored programs stated above shall be permitted only if all logic elements affecting the safety system and point of operation safety are internally stored and protected in such a manner that they cannot be altered or manipulated by the user to an unsafe condition.

(7) Environmental requirements. Control components shall be selected, constructed, and connected together in such a way as to withstand expected operational and environmental stresses, at least including those outlined in Appendix A. "Such stresses shall not so affect the control system as to cause unsafe operation.

(8) Safety system.

(i) Mechanical power presses used in the PSDI mode shall be operated under the control of a safety system which, in addition to meeting the applicable requirements of paragraphs (b)(13) and (c)(5) and other applicable provisions of this section, shall function such that a single failure or single operating error shall not cause injury to personnel from point of operation hazards.

(ii) The safety system shall be designed, constructed, and arranged as an integral total system, including all elements of the press, the controls, the safeguarding and any required supplemental safeguarding, and their interfaces with the operator and that part of the environment which has effect on the protection against point of operation hazards.

(9) Safeguarding the point of operation.

(i) The point of operation of presses operated in the PSDI mode shall be safeguarded in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section, except that the safety distance requirements of paragraph (h)(9)(v) of this section shall be used for PSDI operation.

(ii)

(a) PSDI shall be implemented only by use of light curtain (photo-electric) presence sensing devices which meet the requirements of paragraph (c)(3)(iii)(*(c)* of this section unless the requirements of the following paragraph have been met.

(b) Alternatives to photo-electric light curtains may be used for PSDI when the employer can demonstrate, through tests and analysis by the employer or the manufacturer, that the alternative is as safe as the photo-electric light curtain, that the alternative meets the conditions of this section, has the same long term reliability as light curtains and can be integrated into the entire safety system as provided for in this section. Prior to use, both the employer and manufacturer must certify that these requirements and all the other applicable requirements of this section are met and these certifications must be validated by an OSHA-recognized third-party validation organization to meet these additional requirements and all the other applicable requirements of paragraphs (a) through (h) and Appendix A of this section. Three months prior to the operation of any alternative system, the employer must notify the OSHA Directorate of Safety Standards Programs of the name of the system to be installed, the manufacturer and the OSHA-recognized third-party validation organization immediately. Upon request, the employer must make available to that office all tests and analyses for OSHA review.

(iii) Individual sensing fields of presence sensing devices used to initiate strokes in the PSDI mode shall cover only one side of the press.

(iv) Light curtains used for PSDI operation shall have minimum object sensitivity not to exceed one and one-fourth inches (31.75 mm). Where light curtain object sensitivity is user-adjustable, either discretely or continuously, design features shall limit the minimum object sensitivity adjustment not to exceed one and one-fourth inches (31.75 mm). Blanking of the sensing field is not permitted.

(v) The safety distance (Ds) from the sensing field of the presence sensing device to the point of operation shall be greater than or equal to the distance determined by the formula:

$Ds = Hs \times (Ts + Tp + Tr + 2Tm) + Dp$ Where:

Ds = Minimum safety distance.

HS = Hand speed constant of 63 inches per second (1.6 m/s).

Ts = Longest press stopping time, in seconds, computed by taking averages of multiple measurements at each of three positions (45 degrees, 60 degrees, and 90 degrees) of crankshaft angular position; the longest of the three averages is the stopping time to use. (Ts is defined as the sum of the kinetic energy dissipation time plus the pneumatic/magnetic/hydraulic reaction time of the clutch/brake operating mechanism(s).)

Tp = Longest presence sensing device response time, in seconds.

Tr = Longest response time, in seconds, of all interposing control elements between the presence sensing device and the clutch/brake operating mechanism(s).

Tm = Increase in the press stopping time at the top of the stroke, in seconds, allowed by the brake monitor for brake wear. The time increase allowed shall be limited to no more than 10 percent of the longest press stopping time measured at the top of the stroke, or 10 milliseconds, whichever is longer.

Dp = Penetration depth factor, required to provide for possible penetration through the presence sensing field by fingers or hand before detection occurs. The penetration depth factor shall be determined from Graph h-1 using the minimum object sensitivity size.

1910.218—FORGING MACHINES

(a) General requirements.

(1) Use of lead. The safety requirements of this subparagraph apply to lead casts or other use of lead in the forge shop or die shop.

(i) Thermostatic control of heating elements shall be provided to maintain proper melting temperature and prevent overheating.

(ii) Fixed or permanent lead pot installations shall be exhausted.

(iii) Portable units shall be used only in areas where good, general room ventilation is provided.

(iv) Personal protective equipment (gloves, goggles, aprons, and other items) shall be worn.

(v) A covered container shall be provided to store dross skimmings.

(vi) Equipment shall be kept clean, particularly from accumulations of yellow lead oxide.

(2) Inspection and maintenance. It shall be the responsibility of the employer to maintain all forge shop equipment in a condition which will insure continued safe operation. This responsibility includes:

(i) Establishing periodic and regular maintenance safety checks and keeping certification records of these inspections which include the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection and the serial number, or other identifier, for the forging machine which was inspected.

(ii) Scheduling and recording the inspection of guards and point of operation protection devices at frequent and regular intervals. Recording of inspections shall be in the form of a certification record which includes the date the inspection was performed, the signature of the person who performed the inspection and the serial number, or other identifier, of the equipment inspected.

[51 F.R. 34561, September 29, 1986]

(iii) Training personnel for the proper inspection and maintenance of forging machinery and equipment.

(iv) All overhead parts shall be fastened or protected in such a manner that they will not fly off or fall in event of failure.

(3) Hammers and presses.

(i) All hammers shall be positioned or installed in such a manner that they remain on or are anchored to foundations sufficient to support them according to applicable engineering standards.

(ii) All presses shall be installed in such a manner that they remain where they are positioned or they are anchored to foundations sufficient to support them according to applicable engineering standards.

(iii) Means shall be provided for disconnecting the power to the machine and for locking out or rendering cycling controls inoperable.

(iv) The ram shall be blocked when dies are being changed or other work is being done on the hammer. Blocks or wedges shall be made of material the strength and construction of which should meet or exceed the specifications and dimensions shown in Table O–11.

(v) Tongs shall be of sufficient length to clear the body of the worker in case of kickback, and shall not have sharp handle ends.

(vi) Oil swabs, or scale removers, or other devices to remove scale shall be provided. These devices shall be long enough to enable a man to reach the full length of the die without placing his hand or arm between the dies.

TABLE O-11—STRENGTH AND DIMENSIONS FOR WOOD RAM PROPS

Size of timber, inches [1]	Square inches in cross section	Minimum allowable crushing strength parallel to grain, p.s.i.[2]	Maximum static load within short column range [3]	Safety factor	Maximum recommended weight of forging hammer for timber used	Maximum allowable length of timber, inches
4 x 4	16	5,000	80,000	10	8,000	44
6 x 6	36	5,000	180,000	10	18,000	66
8 x 8	64	5,000	320,000	10	32,000	88
10 x 10	100	5,000	500,000	10	50,000	100
12 x 12	144	5,000	720,000	10	72,000	132

[1] Actual dimension.

[2] Adapted from U.S. Department of Agriculture Technical Bulletin 479. Hardwoods recommended are those whose ultimate crushing strengths in compression parallel to grain are 5,000 p.s.i. (pounds per square inch) or greater.

[3] Slenderness ratio formula for short columns is $L/d=11$, where L=length of timber in inches and d=least dimension in inches; this ratio should not exceed 11.

(vii) Material handling equipment shall be of adequate strength, size, and dimension to handle diesetting operations safely.

(viii) A scale guard of substantial construction shall be provided at the back of every hammer, so arranged as to stop flying scale.

(ix) A scale guard of substantial construction shall be provided at the back of every press, so arranged as to stop flying scale.

(b) Hammers, general.

(1) Keys. Die keys and shims shall be made from a grade of material that will not unduly crack or splinter.

(2) Foot operated devices. All foot operated devices (i.e., treadles, pedals, bars, valves, and switches) shall be substantially and effectively protected from unintended operation.

(c) Presses.

All manually operated valves and switches shall be clearly identified and readily accessible.

(d) Power-driven hammers.

(1) Safety cylinder head. Every steam or air hammer shall have a safety cylinder head to act as a cushion if the rod should break or pullout of the ram.

(2) Shutoff valve. Steam hammers shall be provided with a quick closing emergency valve in the admission pipeline at a convenient location. This valve shall be closed and locked in the off position while the hammer is being adjusted, repaired, or serviced, or when the dies are being changed.

(3) Cylinder draining. Steam hammers shall be provided with a means of cylinder draining, such as a self-draining arrangement or a quick-acting drain cock.

(4) Pressure pipes. Steam or air piping shall conform to the specifications of American National Standard ANSI B31.1.0-1967, Power Piping with Addenda issued before April 28, 1971.

(e) Gravity hammers.

(1) Air-lift hammers.

(i) Air-lift hammers shall have a safety cylinder head as required in paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(ii) Air-lift hammers shall have an air shutoff valve as required in paragraph (d)(2) of this section.

(iii) Air-lift hammers shall be provided with two drain cocks: one on main head cylinder, and one on clamp cylinder.

(iv) Air piping shall conform to the specifications of the ANSI B31.1.0-1967, Power Piping with Addenda issued before April 28, 1971.

(2) Board drophammers.

(i) A suitable enclosure shall be provided to prevent damaged or detached boards from falling. The board enclosure shall be securely fastened to the hammer.

(ii) All major assemblies and fittings which can loosen and fall shall be properly secured in place.

(f) Forging presses.

(1) Mechanical forging presses. When dies are being changed or maintenance is being performed on the press, the following shall be accomplished:

(i) The power to the press shall be locked out.

(ii) The flywheel shall be at rest.

(iii) The ram shall be blocked with a material the strength of which shall meet or exceed the specifications or dimensions shown in Table O-11.

(2) Hydraulic forging presses. When dies are being changed or maintenance is being performed on the press, the following shall be accomplished:

(i) The hydraulic pumps and power apparatus shall be locked out.

(ii) The ram shall be blocked with a material the strength of which shall meet or exceed the specifications or dimensions shown in Table O-11.

(g) Trimming presses.

(1) Hot trimming presses. The requirements of paragraph (f)(1) of this section shall also apply to hot trimming presses.

(2) Cold trimming presses. Cold trimming presses shall be safeguarded in accordance with § 1910.217(c).

(h) Upsetters.

(1) General requirements. All upsetters shall be installed so that they remain on their supporting foundations.

(2) Lockouts. Upsetters shall be provided with a means for locking out the power at its entry point to the machine and rendering its cycling controls inoperable.

(3) Manually operated controls. All manually operated valves and switches shall be clearly identified and readily accessible.

(4) Tongs. Tongs shall be of sufficient length to clear the body of the worker in case of kickback, and shall not have sharp handle ends.

(5) Changing dies. When dies are being changed, maintenance performed, or any work done on the machine, the power to the upsetter shall be locked out, and the flywheel shall be at rest.

(i) Other forging equipment.

(1) Boltheading. The provisions of paragraph (h) of this section shall apply to boltheading.

(2) Rivet making. The provisions of paragraph (h) of this section shall apply to rivet making.

(j) Other forge facility equipment.

(1) Billet shears. A positive-type lockout device for disconnecting the power to the shear shall be provided.

(2) Saws. Every saw shall be provided with a guard of not less than one-eighth inch sheet metal positioned to stop flying sparks.

(3) Conveyors. Conveyor power transmission equipment shall be guarded in accordance with ANSI B20.1-1957, Safety Code for Conveyors, Cableways, and Related Equipment.

(4) Shot blast. The cleaning chamber shall have doors or guards to protect operators.

(5) Grinding. Personal protective equipment shall be used in grinding operations, and equipment shall be used and maintained in accordance with ANSI B7.1-1970, Safety Code for the Use, Care, and Protection of Abrasive Wheels, and with § 1910.215.

1910.219—MECHANICAL POWER-TRANSMISSION APPARATUS

INTERP

(a) General requirements.

INTERP

(1) This section covers all types and shapes of power-transmission belts, except the following when operating at two hundred and fifty (250) feet per minute or less:

(i) Flat belts one (1) inch or less in width,

(ii) Flat belts two (2) inches or less in width which are free from metal lacings or fasteners,

(iii) Round belts one-half (½) inch or less in diameter; and

(iv) Single strand V-belts, the width of which is thirteen thirty-seconds ($^{13}/_{32}$) inch or less.

(2) Vertical and inclined belts (paragraphs (e) (3) and (4) of this section) if not more than two and one-half (2½) inches wide and running at a speed of less than one thousand (1,000) feet per minute, and if free from metal lacings or fastenings may be guarded with a nip-point belt and pulley guard.

(3) For the Textile Industry, because of the presence of excessive deposits of lint, which constitute a serious fire hazard, the sides and face sections only of nip-point belt and pulley guards are required, provided the guard shall extend at least six (6) inches beyond the rim of the pulley on the in-running and off-running sides of the belt and at least two (2) inches away from the rim and face of the pulley in all other directions.

(4) This section covers the principal features with which power transmission safeguards shall comply.

(b) Prime-mover guards.

(1) Flywheels. Flywheels located so that any part is seven (7) feet or less above floor or platform shall be guarded in accordance with the requirements of this subparagraph:

(i) With an enclosure of sheet, perforated, or expanded metal, or woven wire;

(ii) With guard rails placed not less than fifteen (15) inches nor more than twenty (20) inches from rim. When flywheel extends into pit or is within 12 inches of floor, a standard toeboard shall also be provided;

(iii) When the upper rim of flywheel protrudes through a working floor, it shall be entirely enclosed or surrounded by a guardrail and toeboard.

(iv) For flywheels with smooth rims five (5) feet or less in diameter, where the preceding methods cannot be applied, the following may be used: A disk attached to the flywheel in such manner as to cover the spokes of the wheel on the exposed side and present a smooth surface and edge, at the same time providing means for periodic inspection. An open space, not exceeding four (4) inches in width, may be left between the outside edge of the disk and the rim of the wheel if desired, to facilitate turning the wheel over. Where a disk is used, the keys or other dangerous projections not covered by disk shall be cut off or covered. This subdivision does not apply to flywheels with solid web centers.

(v) Adjustable guard to be used for starting engine or for running adjustment may be provided at the flywheel of gas or oil engines. A slot opening for jack bar will be permitted.

(vi) Wherever flywheels are above working areas, guards shall be installed having sufficient strength to hold the weight of the flywheel in the event of a shaft or wheel mounting failure.

(2) Cranks and connecting rods. Cranks and connecting rods, when exposed to contact shall be guarded in accordance with paragraphs (m) and (n) of this section, or by a guardrail as described in paragraph (o) (5) of this section.

(3) Tail rods or extension piston rods. Tail rods or extension piston rods shall be guarded in accordance with paragraphs (m) and (o) of this section, or by a guardrail on sides and end, with a clearance of not less than fifteen (15) nor more than twenty (20) inches when rod is fully extended.

(c) Shafting

(1) Installation.

(i) Each continuous line of shafting shall be secured in position against excessive endwise movement.

(ii) Inclined and vertical shafts, particularly inclined idler shafts, shall be securely held in position against endwise thrust.

(2) Guarding horizontal shafting.

(i) All exposed parts of horizontal shafting seven (7) feet or less from floor or working platform, excepting runways used exclusively for oiling, or running adjustments, shall be protected by a stationary casing enclosing shafting completely or by a trough enclosing sides and top or sides and bottom of shafting as location requires.

(ii) Shafting under bench machines shall be enclosed by a stationary casing, or by a trough at sides and top or sides and bottom, as location requires. The sides of the trough shall come within at least six (6) inches of the underside of table, or if shafting is located near floor within six (6) inches of floor. In every case the sides of trough shall extend at least two (2) inches beyond the shafting or protuberance.

(3) Guarding vertical and inclined shafting. Vertical and inclined shafting seven (7) feet or less from floor or working platform, excepting maintenance runways, shall be enclosed with a stationary casing in accordance with requirements of paragraphs (m) and (o) of this section.

(4) Projecting shaft ends.

(i) Projecting shaft ends shall present a smooth edge and end and shall not project more than one-half the diameter of the shaft unless guarded by nonrotating caps or safety sleeves.

(ii) Unused keyways shall be filled up or covered.

(5) Power-transmission apparatus located in basements. All mechanical power transmission apparatus located in basements, towers, and rooms used exclusively for power transmission equipment shall be guarded in accordance with this section, except that the requirements for safeguarding belts, pulleys, and shafting need not be complied with when the following requirements are met:

(i) The basement, tower, or room occupied by transmission equipment is locked against unauthorized entrance.

(ii) The vertical clearance in passageways between the floor and power transmission beams, ceiling, or any other objects, is not less than five feet six inches (5 ft. 6 in.).

(iii) The intensity of illumination conforms to the requirements of ANSI A11.1-1965 (R-1970).

(iv) Revoked

(v) The route followed by the oiler is protected in such manner as to prevent accident.

(d) Pulleys.

(1) Guarding. Pulleys, any parts of which are seven (7) feet or less from the floor or working platform, shall be guarded in accordance with the standards specified in paragraphs (m) and (o) of this section. Pulleys serving as balance wheels (e.g., punch presses) on which the point of contact between belt and pulley is more than six feet six inches (6 ft. 6 in.) from the floor or platform may be guarded with a disk covering the spokes.

(2) Location of pulleys.

(i) Unless the distance to the nearest fixed pulley, clutch, or hanger exceeds the width of the belt used, a guide shall be provided to prevent the belt from leaving the pulley on the side where insufficient clearance exists.

(ii) Removed

(3) Broken pulleys. Pulleys with cracks, or pieces broken out of rims, shall not be used.

(4) Pulley speeds. Pulleys intended to operate at rim speed in excess of manufacturers normal recommendations shall be specially designed and carefully balanced for the speed at which they are to operate.

(e) Belt, rope, and chain drives.

(1) Horizontal belts and ropes.

(i) Where both runs of horizontal belts are seven (7) feet or less from the floor level, the guard shall extend to at least fifteen (15) inches above the belt or to a standard height (see Table O-12), except that where both runs of a horizontal belt are 42 inches or less from the floor, the belt shall be fully enclosed in accordance with paragraphs (m) and (o) of this section.

(ii) In powerplants or power-development rooms, a guardrail may be used in lieu of the guard required by subdivision (i) of this subparagraph.

(2) Overhead horizontal belts.

(i) Overhead horizontal belts, with lower parts seven (7) feet or less from the floor or platform, shall be guarded on sides and bottom in accordance with paragraph (o)(3) of this section.

(ii) Horizontal overhead belts more than seven (7) feet above floor or platform shall be guarded for their entire length under the following conditions:

(a) If located over passageways or work places and traveling 1,800 feet or more per minute.

(b) If center to center distance between pulleys is ten (10) feet or more.

(c) If belt is eight (8) inches or more in width.

(iii) Where the upper and lower runs of horizontal belts are so located that passage of persons between them would be possible, the passage shall be either:

(a) Completely barred by a guardrail or other barrier in accordance with paragraphs (m) and (o) of this section; or

(b) Where passage is regarded as necessary, there shall be a platform over the lower run guarded on either side by a railing completely filled in with wire mesh or other filler, or by a solid barrier. The upper run shall be so guarded as to prevent contact therewith either by the worker or by objects carried by him. In powerplants only the lower run of the belt need be guarded.

(iv) Overhead chain and link belt drives are governed by the same rules as overhead horizontal belts and shall be guarded in the same manner as belts.

(3) Vertical and inclined belts. INTERP

(i) Vertical and inclined belts shall be enclosed by a guard conforming to standards in paragraphs (m) and (o) of this section.

(ii) All guards for inclined belts shall be arranged in such a manner that a minimum clearance of seven (7) feet is maintained between belt and floor at any point outside of guard.

(4) Vertical belts. Vertical belts running over a lower pulley more than seven (7) feet above floor or platform shall be guarded at the bottom in the same manner as horizontal overhead belts, if conditions are as stated in subparagraphs (2)(ii)(a) and (c) of this paragraph.

(5) Cone-pulley belts.

(i) The cone belt and pulley shall be equipped with a belt shifter so constructed as to adequately guard the nip point of the belt and pulley. If the frame of the belt shifter does not adequately guard the nip point of the belt and pulley, the nip point shall be further protected by means of a vertical guard placed in front of the pulley and extending at least to the top of the largest step of the cone.

(ii) If the belt is of the endless type or laced with rawhide laces, and belt shifter is not desired, the a belt will be considered guarded if the nip point of the belt and pulley is protected by a nip point guard located in front of the cone extending at least to the top of the largest step of the cone, and formed to show the contour of the cone in order to give the nip point of the belt and pulley the maximum protection.

(iii) If the cone is located less than 3 feet from the floor or working platform, the cone pulley and belt shall be guarded to a height of 3 feet regardless of whether the belt is endless or laced with rawhide.

(6) Belt tighteners.

(i) Suspended counterbalanced tighteners and all parts thereof shall be of substantial construction and securely fastened; the bearings shall be securely capped. Means must be provided to prevent tightener from falling, in case the belt breaks.

(ii) Where suspended counterweights are used and not guarded by location, they shall be so encased as to prevent accident.

(f) Gears, sprockets, and chains.

(1) Gears. Gears shall be guarded in accordance with one of the following methods:

(i) By a complete enclosure; or

(ii) By a standard guard as described in paragraph (o) of this section, at least seven (7) feet high extending six (6) inches above the mesh point of the gears; or

(iii) By a band guard covering the face of gear and having flanges extended inward beyond the root of the teeth on the exposed side or sides. Where any portion of the train of gears guarded by a band guard is less than six (6) feet from the floor a disk guard or a complete enclosure to the height of six (6) feet shall be required.

(2) Hand-operated gears. Subparagraph (1) of this paragraph does not apply to hand-operated gears used only to adjust machine parts and which do not continue to move after hand power is removed. However, the guarding of these gears is highly recommended.

(3) Sprockets and chains. All sprocket wheels and chains shall be enclosed unless they are more than seven (7) feet above the floor or platform. Where the drive extends over other machine or working areas, protection against falling shall be provided. This subparagraph does not apply to manually operated sprockets.

(4) Openings for oiling. When frequent oiling must be done, openings with hinged or sliding self-closing covers shall be provided. All points not readily accessible shall have oil feed tubes if lubricant is to be added while machinery is in motion.

(g) Guarding friction drives.

The driving point of all friction drives when exposed to contact shall be guarded, all arm or spoke friction drives and all web friction drives with holes in the web shall be entirely enclosed, and all projecting belts on friction drives where exposed to contact shall be guarded.

(h) Keys, setscrews, and other projections.

(1) All projecting keys, setscrews, and other projections in revolving parts shall be removed or made flush or guarded by metal cover. This subparagraph does not apply to keys or setscrews within gear or sprocket casings or other enclosures, nor to keys, setscrews, or oilcups in hubs of pulleys less than twenty (20) inches in diameter where they are within the plane of the rim of the pulley.

(2) It is recommended, however, that no projecting setscrews or oilcups be used in any revolving pulley or part of machinery.

(i) Collars and couplings.

(1) Collars. All revolving collars, including split collars, shall be cylindrical, and screws or bolts used in collars shall not project beyond the largest periphery of the collar.

(2) Couplings. Shaft couplings shall be so constructed as to present no hazard from bolts, nuts, setscrews, or revolving surfaces. Bolts, nuts, and setscrews will, however, be permitted where they are covered with safety sleeves or where they are used parallel with the shafting and are countersunk or else do not extend beyond the flange of the coupling.

(j) Bearings and facilities for oiling.

All drip cups and pans shall be securely fastened.

(k) Guarding of clutches, cutoff couplings, and clutch pulleys.

(1) Guards. Clutches, cutoff couplings, or clutch pulleys having projecting parts, where such clutches are located seven (7) feet or less above the floor or working platform, shall be enclosed by a stationary guard constructed in accordance with this section. A "U" type guard is permissible.

(2) Engine rooms. In engine rooms a guardrail, preferably with toeboard, may be used instead of the guard required by subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, provided such a room is occupied only by engineroom attendants.

(l) Belt shifters, clutches, shippers, poles, perches, and fasteners.

(1) Belt shifters.

(i) Tight and loose pulleys on all new installations made on or after August 31, 1971, shall be equipped with a permanent belt shifter provided with mechanical means to prevent belt from creeping from loose to tight pulley. It is recommended that old installations be changed to conform to this rule.

(ii) Belt shifter and clutch handles shall be rounded and be located as far as possible from danger of accidental contact, but within easy reach of the operator. Where belt shifters are not directly located over a machine or bench, the handles shall be cut off six feet six inches (6 ft. 6 in.) above floor level.

(iii) Removed

(2) Belt shippers and shipper poles. The use of belt poles as substitutes for mechanical shifters is not recommended.

(3) Belt perches. Where loose pulleys or idlers are not practicable, belt perches in form of brackets, rollers, etc., shall be used to keep idle belts away from the shafts.

(4) Belt fasteners. Belts which of necessity must be shifted by hand and belts within seven (7) feet of the floor or working platform which are not guarded in accordance with this section shall not be fastened with metal in any case, nor with any other fastening which by construction or wear will constitute an accident hazard.

(m) Standard guards—general requirements.

(1) Materials.

(i) Standard conditions shall be secured by the use of the following materials. Expanded metal, perforated or solid sheet metal, wire mesh on a frame of angle iron, or iron pipe securely fastened to floor or to frame of machine.

(ii) All metal should be free from burrs and sharp edges.

(2) Methods of manufacture.

(i) Expanded metal, sheet or perforated metal, and wire mesh shall be securely fastened to frame

(n) Disk, shield, and "U" guards. Revoked

(o) Approved materials.

(1) Minimum requirements. The materials and dimensions specified in this paragraph shall apply to all guards, except horizontal overhead belts, rope, cable, or chain guards more than seven (7) feet above floor, or platform.

(i) Revoked

(a) All guards shall be rigidly braced every three (3) feet or fractional part of their height to some fixed part of machinery or building structure. Where guard is exposed to contact with moving equipment additional strength may be necessary.

(2) Wood guards.

(i) Wood guards may be used in the woodworking and chemical industries, in industries where the presence of fumes or where manufacturing conditions would cause the rapid deterioration of metal guards; also in construction work and in locations outdoors where extreme cold or extreme heat make metal guards and railings undesirable. In all other industries, wood guards shall not be used.

(3) Guards for horizontal overhead belts.

(i) Guards for horizontal overhead belts shall run the entire length of the belt and follow the line of the pulley to the ceiling or be carried to the nearest wall, thus enclosing the belt effectively. Where belts are so located as to make it impracticable to carry the guard to wall or ceiling, construction of guard shall be such as to enclose completely the top and bottom runs of belt and the face of pulleys.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Suitable reinforcement shall be provided for the ceiling rafters or overhead floor beams, where such is necessary, to sustain safely the weight and stress likely to be imposed by the guard. The interior surface of all guards, by which is meant the surface of the guard with which a belt will come in contact, shall be smooth and free from all projections of any character, except where construction demands it; protruding shallow roundhead rivets may be used. Overhead belt guards shall be at least one-quarter wider than belt which they protect, except that this clearance need not in any case exceed six (6) inches on each side. Overhead rope drive and block and roller-chain-drive guards shall be not less than six (6) inches wider than the drive on each side. In overhead silent chain-drive guards where the chain is held from lateral displacement on the sprockets, the side clearances required on drives of twenty (20) inch centers or under shall be not less than one-fourth inch from the nearest moving chain part, and on drives of over twenty (20) inch centers a minimum of one-half inch from the nearest moving chain part.

(4) Guards for horizontal overhead rope and chain drives. Overhead-rope and chain-drive guard construction shall conform to the rules for overhead-belt guard construction

(5) Guardrails and toeboards.

(i) Guardrail shall be forty-two (42) inches in height, with midrail between top rail and floor.

(ii) Posts shall be not more than eight (8) feet apart; they are to be permanent and substantial, smooth, and free from protruding nails, bolts, and splinters. If made of pipe, the post shall be one and one-fourth ($1\frac{1}{4}$) inches inside diameter, or larger. If made of metal shapes or bars, their section shall be equal in strength to that of one and one-half ($1\frac{1}{2}$) by one and one-half ($1\frac{1}{2}$) by three-sixteenths ($\frac{3}{16}$) inch angle iron. If made of wood, the posts shall be two by four (2 x 4) inches or larger. The upper rail shall be two by four (2 x 4) inches, or two one by four (1 x 4) strips, one at the top and one at the side of posts. The midrail may be one by four (1 x 4) inches or more. **Where panels are fitted with expanded metal or wire mesh as noted in Table O-12 the middle rails may be omitted. Where guard is exposed to contact with moving equipment, additional strength may be necessary.**

(iii) Toeboards shall be four (4) inches or more in height, of wood, metal, or of metal

Pages 533 and 534 deleted

grill not exceeding one (1) inch mesh.

(p) Care of equipment.

(1) General. All power-transmission equipment shall be inspected at intervals not exceeding 60 days and be kept in good working condition at all times.

(2) Shafting.

(i) Shafting shall be kept in alignment, free from rust and excess oil or grease.

(ii) Where explosives, explosive dusts, flammable vapors or flammable liquids exist, the hazard of static sparks from shafting shall be carefully considered.

(3) Bearings. Bearings shall be kept in alignment and properly adjusted.

(4) Hangers. Hangers shall be inspected to make certain that all supporting bolts and screws are tight and that supports of hanger boxes are adjusted properly.

(5) Pulleys.

(i) Pulleys shall be kept in proper alignment to prevent belts from running off.

(ii) Removed

(iii) Removed

(iv) Removed

(6) Care of belts.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Inspection shall be made of belts, lacings, and fasteners and such equipment kept in good repair.

(iii) Removed

(7) Lubrication. The regular oilers shall wear tight-fitting clothing. Machinery shall be oiled when not in motion, wherever possible.

1910.220—EFFECTIVE DATES

(a) The provisions of this Subpart O shall become effective on August 27, 1971, except as provided in the remaining paragraphs of this section.

(b) The following provisions shall become effective on February 15, 1972:

§ 1910.212(a).
§ 1910.213 (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), (i), (j), (k), (l), (m), (n), (o), (p), (q), and (r).
§ 1910.214 (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), (i), (j), (k), (l), (m), (n), (o), (p), (q), (r), (s), (t), (u), and (v).
§ 1910.215 (a) and (b).
§ 1910.216 (a), (b), (c), and (f).
§ 1910.217 (a), (b), (c), and (d).
§ 1910.218 (a), (b), (d), (e), (g), and (j).
§ 1910.219 (b), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), (i), and (k).

(c) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a), (b), or (d) of this section, any provision in any other section of this subpart which contains in itself a specific effective date or time limitation shall become effective on such date or shall apply in accordance with such limitation.

(d) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, if any standard in 41 CFR Part 50–204, other than a national consensus standard incorporated by reference in § 50–204.2 (a)(1), is or becomes applicable at any time to any employment and place of employment, by virtue of the Walsh-Healey Public Contracts Act, or the Service Contract Act of 1965, or the National Foundation on Arts and Humanities Act of 1965, any corresponding established Federal standard in this Subpart O which is derived from 41 CFR Part 50–204 shall also become effective, and shall be applicable to such employment and place of employment, on the same date.

[36 F.R. 15106, Aug. 13, 1971]

1910.221—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

The standards contained in this Subpart O are derived from the following sources:

Standard	*Source*
§ 1910.212	41 CFR 50-204.5.
§ 1910.213	ANSI 01.1-1954-(R 1971), Safety Code for Code for Woodworking Machinery.
§ 1910.214	ANSI 01.1-1954-(R 1961), Safety Code for Woodworking Machinery.
§ 1910.215	ANSI B 7.1-1970, Safety Code for Abrasive Wels.
§ 1910.216	ANSI B 28.1-1967, Safety Code for Mills Calendars in the Rubber and Plastic Industries.
§ 191.217	ANSI B 11.1-1971, Safety Standard for Construction, Care, and Use of Mechanical Power Presses.
§ 1910.218	ANSI B 24.1, 1971 Safety Standard for Forging.
§ 1910.219	ANSI B 15.1-1953-(R-1958) Safety Code for Mechanical Power Transmission Apparatus

1910.222—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

The standards and specifications of the following organizations have been referenced in this Subpart O: Copies of the references materials may be obtained from the issuing organizations

1. American National Standards Institute, Inc., 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

2. American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 345 East 47 Street, New York, NY 10017.

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART P—HAND AND PORTABLE POWERED TOOLS AND OTHER HAND-HELD EQUIPMENT

1910.241 Definitions.
1910.242 Hand and portable powered tools and equipment, general.
1910.243 Guarding of portable powered tools.
1910.244 Other portable tools and equipment.
1910.245 Additional delay in effective date.
1910.246 Sources of standards.
1910.247 Standards organizations.

SUBPART P—HAND AND PORTABLE POWERED TOOLS AND OTHER HAND-HELD EQUIPMENT

1910.241—DEFINITIONS

As used in this subpart:

(a) Explosive-actuated fastening tool terms.

(1) Hammer-operated piston tool—low-velocity type. A tool which, by means of a heavy mass hammer supplemented by a load, moves a piston designed to be captive to drive a stud, pin, or fastener into a work surface, always starting the fastener at rest and in contact with the work surface. It shall be so designed that when used with any load that accurately chambers in it and that is commercially available at the time the tool is submitted for approval, it will not cause such stud, pin, or fastener to have a mean velocity in excess of 300 feet per second when measured 6.5 feet from the muzzle end of the barrel.

(2) High-velocity tool. A tool or machine which, when used with a load, propels or discharges a stud, pin, or fastener, at velocities in excess of 300 feet per second when measured 6.5 feet from the muzzle end of the barrel, for the purpose of impinging it upon, affixing it to, or penetrating another object or material.

(3) Low-velocity piston tool. A tool that utilizes a piston designed to be captive to drive a stud, pin, or fastener into a work surface. It shall be so designed that when used with any load that accurately chambers in it and that is commercially available at the time the tool is submitted for approval, it will not cause such stud, pin, or fastener to have a mean velocity in excess of 300 feet per second when measured 6.5 feet from the muzzle end of the barrel.

(4) Stud, pin, or fastener. A fastening device specifically designed and manufactured for use in explosive-actuated fastening tools.

(5) To chamber. To fit properly without the use of excess force, the case being duly supported.

(6) Explosive powerload, also known as load. Any substance in any form capable of producing a propellant force.

(7) Tool. An explosive-actuated fastening tool, unless otherwise indicated, and all accessories pertaining thereto.

(8) Protective shield or guard. A device or guard attached to the muzzle end of the tool, which is designed to confine flying particles.

(b) Abrasive wheel terms.

(1) Mounted wheels. Mounted wheels, usually 2-inch diameter or smaller, and of various shapes, may be either organic or inorganic bonded abrasive wheels. They are secured to plain or threaded steel mandrels.

(2) Tuck pointing. Removal, by grinding, of cement, mortar, or other nonmetallic jointing material.

(3) Tuck pointing wheels. Tuck pointing wheels, usually Type 1, reinforced organic bonded wheels have diameter, thickness and hole size dimension. They are subject to the same limitations of use and mounting as Type 1 wheels defined in subparagraph (10) of this paragraph.

LIMITATION: Wheels used for tuck pointing should be reinforced, organic bonded. (See § 1910.243(c)(1)(ii)(c).)

(4) Portable grinding. A grinding operation where the grinding machine is designed to be hand held and may be easily moved from one location to another.

(5) Organic bonded wheels. Organic wheels are wheels which are bonded by means of an organic material such as resin, rubber, shellac, or other similar bonding agent.

(6) Safety guard. A safety guard is an enclosure designed to restrain the pieces of the grinding wheel and furnish all possible protection in the event that the wheel is broken in operation.

(7) Reinforced wheels. The term "reinforced" as applied to grinding wheels shall define a class of organic wheels which contain strengthening fabric or filament. The term "reinforced" does not cover wheels using such mechanical additions as steel rings, steel cup backs or wire or tape winding.

(8) Type 11 flaring cup wheels. Type 11 flaring cup wheels have double diameter dimensions D and J, and in addition have thickness, hole size, rim and back thickness dimensions. Grinding is always performed on rim face, W dimension. Type 11 wheels are subject to all limitations of use and mounting listed for Type 6 straight sided cup wheels definition in subparagraph (9) of this paragraph.

TYPE 11 FLARING CUP WHEELS

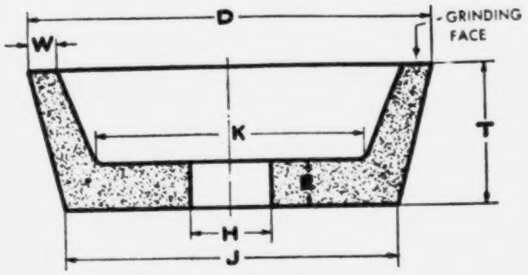


Figure P-1

Type 11 — Flaring-cup Wheel
Side grinding wheel having a wall flared or tapered outward from the back. Wall thickness at the back is normally greater than at the grinding face (W).

LIMITATION: Minimum back thickness, E dimension, ould not be less than one-fourth T dimension. In addin when unthreaded hole wheels are specified the ide flat, K dimension, shall be large enough to accomlate a suitable flange.

(9) Type 6 straight cup wheels. Type 6 cup wheels have diameter, thickness, hole size, rim thickness, and back thickness dimensions. Grinding is always performed on rim face, W dimension.

TYPE 6 STRAIGHT CUP WHEELS

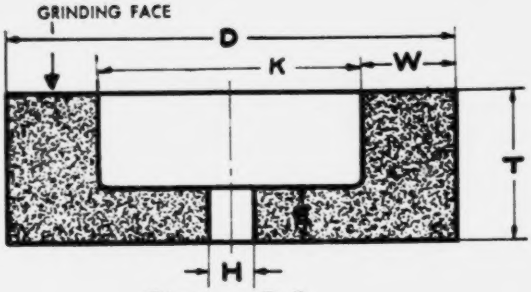


Figure P-2

Type 6 — Straight-cup Wheel
Side grinding wheel having a diameter, thickness and hole with one side straight or flat and the opposite side recessed. This type, however, differs from Type 5 in that the grinding is performed on the wall of the abrasive created by the difference between the diameter of the recess and the outside diameter of the wheel. Therefore, the wall dimension "W" takes precedence over the diameter of the recess as an essential intermediate dimension to describe this shape type.

LIMITATION: Minimum back thickness, E dimension, should not be less than one-fourth T dimension. In addition, when unthreaded hole wheels are specified, the inside flat, K dimension, must be large enough to accommodate a suitable flange.

(10) Type 1 straight wheels. Type 1 straight wheels have diameter, thickness, and hole size dimensions and should be used only on the periphery. Type 1 wheels shall be mounted between flanges.

TYPE 1 STRAIGHT WHEELS

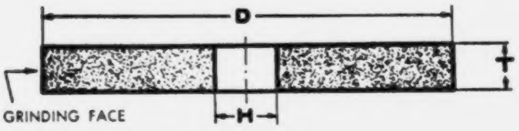


Figure P-3

Type 1 — Straight Wheel
Peripheral grinding wheel having a diameter, thickness and hole.

LIMITATION: Hole dimension (H) should not be greater than two-thirds of wheel diameter dimension (D) for precision, cylindrical, centerless, or surface grinding applications. Maximum hole size for all other applications should not exceed one-half wheel diameter.

(c) Power lawnmower terms. Revoked

(d) Jack terms.

(1) Jack. A jack is an appliance for lifting and lowering or moving horizontally a load by application of a pushing force.

NOTE: Jacks may be of the following types: Lever and ratchet, screw and hydraulic.

(2) Rating. The rating of a jack is the maximum working load for which it is designed to lift safely that load throughout its specified amount of travel.

NOTE: To raise the rated load of a jack, the point of application of the load, the applied force, and the length of lever arm should be those designated by the manufacturer for the particular jack considered.

1910.242—HAND AND PORTABLE POWERED TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT, GENERAL

(a) General requirements.

Each employer shall be responsible for the safe condition of tools and equipment used by employees, including tools and equipment which may be furnished by employees.

(b) Compressed air used for cleaning.

Compressed air shall not be used for cleaning purposes except where reduced to less than 30 p.s.i. and then only with effective chip guarding and personal protective equipment.

INTERP

1910.243—GUARDING OF PORTABLE POWERED TOOLS

(a) Portable powered tools.

(1) Portable circular saws.

(i) All portable, power-driven circular saws having a blade diameter greater than 2 inches shall be equipped with guards above and below the base plate or shoe. The upper guard shall cover the saw to the depth of the teeth, except for the minimum arc required to permit the base to be tilted for bevel cuts. The lower guard shall cover the saw to the depth of the teeth, except for the minimum arc required to allow proper retraction and contact with the work. When the tool is withdrawn from the work, the lower guard shall automatically and instantly return to covering position.

(ii) Paragraph (a)(1)(i) of this section does not apply to circular saws used in the meat industry for meat cutting purposes.

(2) Switches and controls.

(i) All hand-held powered circular saws having a blade diameter greater than 2 inches, electric, hydraulic or pneumatic chain saws, and percussion tools without positive accessory holding means shall be equipped with a constant pressure switch or control that will shut off the power when the pressure is released. All hand-held gasoline powered chain saws shall be equipped with a constant pressure throttle control that will shut off the power to the saw chain when the pressure is released.

(ii) All hand-held powered drills, tappers, fastener drivers, horizontal, vertical, and angle grinders with wheels greater than 2 inches in diameter, disc sanders with discs greater than 2 inches in diameter, belt sanders, reciprocating saws, saber, scroll, and jig saws with blade shanks greater than a nominal one-fourth inch, and other similarly operating powered tools shall be equipped with a constant pressure switch or control, and may have a lock-on control provided that turnoff can be accomplished by a single motion of the same finger or fingers that turn it on.

(iii)

(a) All other hand-held powered tools, such as, but not limited to, platen sanders, grinders with wheels 2 inches in diameter or less, disc sanders with discs 2 inches in diameter or less, routers, planers, laminate trimmers, nibblers, shears, saber, scroll, and jig saws with blade shanks a nominal one-fourth of an inch wide or less, may be equipped with either a positive "on-off" control, or other controls as described by paragraph (a)(2)(i) and (ii) of this section.

(b) Saber, scroll, and jig saws with nonstandard blade holders may use blades with shanks which are nonuniform in width, provided the narrowest portion of the blade shank is an integral part in mounting the blade.

(c) Blade shank width shall be measured at the narrowest portion of the blade shank when saber, scroll, and jig saws have nonstandard blade holders.

(d) "Nominal" in this subparagraph means ±0.05 inch.

(iv) The operating control on hand-held power tools shall be so located as to minimize the possibility of its accidental operation, if such accidental operation would constitute a hazard to employees.

(v) This subparagraph does not apply to concrete vibrators, concrete breakers, powered tampers, jack hammers, rock drills, garden appliances, household and kitchen appliances, personal care appliances, medical or dental equipment, or to fixed machinery.

INTERP

(3) Portable belt sanding machines. Belt sanding machines shall be provided with guards at each nip point where the sanding belt runs onto a pulley. These guards shall effectively prevent the hands or fingers of the operator from coming in contact with the nip points. The unused run of the sanding belt shall be guarded against accidental contact.

(4) Cracked saws. All cracked saws shall be removed from service.

(5) Grounding. Portable electric powered tools shall meet the electrical requirements of Subpart S of this part.

(b) Pneumatic powered tools and hose.

INTERP

(1) Tool retainer. A tool retainer shall be installed on each piece of utilization equipment which, without such a retainer, may eject the tool.

(2) Airhose. Hose and hose connections used for conducting compressed air to utilization equipment shall be designed for the pressure and service to which they are subjected.

(c) Portable abrasive wheels.

(1) General requirements. Abrasive wheels shall be used only on machine provided with safety guards as defined in paragraph (c) (1) through (4) of this section.

(i) Exceptions. The requirements of this subparagraph (1) shall not apply to the following classes of wheels and conditions:

(a) Wheels used for internal work while within the work being ground;

(b) Mounted wheels used in portable operations 2 inches and smaller in diameter; (see definition § 1910.241 (b)(1)); and

(c) Types 16, 17, 18, 18R, and 19 cones, and plugs, and threaded hole pot balls where the work offers protection.

(ii)

(a) A safety guard shall cover the spindle end, nut and flange projections. The safety guard shall be mounted so as to maintain proper alignment with the wheel, and the strength of the fastenings shall exceed the strength of the guard.

(b) **Exception.**—Safety guards on all operations where the work provides a suitable measure of protection to the operator may be so constructed that the spindle end, nut and outer flange are exposed. Where the nature of the work is such as to entirely cover the side of the wheel, the side covers of the guard may be omitted.

(c) **Exception.**—The spindle end, nut, and outer flange may be exposed on portable machines designed for, and used with, type 6, 11, 27, and 28 abrasive wheels, cutting off wheels, and tuck pointing wheels.

[38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(2) Cup wheels. Cup wheels (Types 6 and 11) shall be protected by:

(i) Safety guards as specified in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph; or,

(ii) Special "revolving cup guards" which mount behind the wheel and turn with it. They shall be made of steel or other material with adequate strength and shall enclose the wheel sides upward from the back for one-third of the wheel thickness. The mounting features shall conform with all regulations. (See subparagraph (5) of this paragraph.) It is necessary to maintain clearance between the wheel side and the guard. The clearance shall not exceed one-sixteenth inch; or,

(iii) Some other form of guard that will insure as good protection as that which would be provided by the guards specified in subdivision (i) or (ii) of this subparagraph.

(3) Vertical portable grinders. Safety guards used on machines known as right angle head or vertical portable grinders shall have a maximum exposure angle of 180°, and the guard shall be so located so as to be between the operator and the wheel during use. Adjustment of guard shall be such that pieces of an accidentally broken wheel will be deflected away from the operator. (See Figure P-4.)

(4) Other portable grinders. The maximum angular exposure of the grinding wheel periphery and sides for safety guards used on other portable grinding machines shall not exceed 180° and the top half of the wheel shall be enclosed at all times. (See Figures P-5 and P-6.)

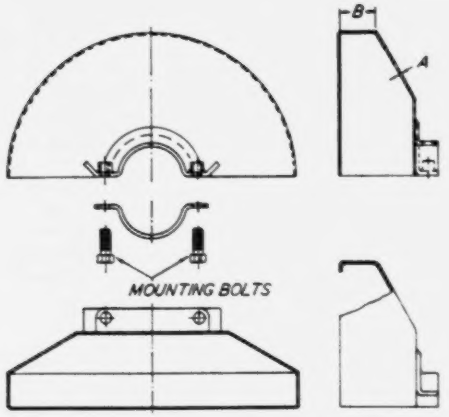


FIGURE NO. P-4

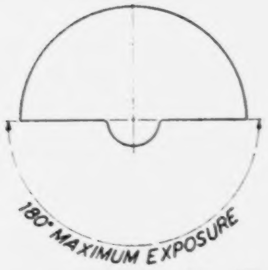


FIGURE NO. P-5

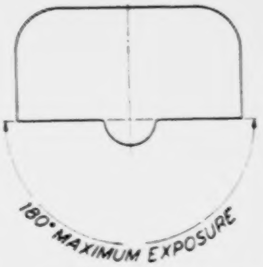


FIGURE NO. P-6

(5) Mounting and inspection of abrasive wheels.

(i) Immediately before mounting, all wheels shall be closely inspected and sounded by the user (ring test, see Subpart O, § 1910.215(d)(1)) to make sure they have not been damaged in transit, storage, or otherwise. The spindle speed of the machine shall be checked before mounting of the wheel to be certain that it does not exceed the maximum operating speed marked on the wheel.

(ii) Grinding wheels shall fit freely on the spindle and remain free under all grinding conditions. A controlled clearance between the wheel hole and the machine spindle (or wheel sleeves or adaptors) is essential to avoid excessive pressure from mounting and spindle expansion. To accomplish this, the machine spindle shall be made to nominal (standard) size plus zero minus .002 inch, and the wheel hole shall be made suitably oversize to assure safety clearance under the conditions of operating heat and pressure.

(iii) All contact surfaces of wheels, blotters, and flangers shall be flat and free of foreign matter.

(iv) When a bushing is used in the wheel hole it shall not exceed the width of the wheel and shall not contact the flanges.

(v) Requirements for the use of flanges and blotters, see Subpart O, § 1910.215(c).

(6) Excluded machinery. Natural sandstone wheels and metal, wooden, cloth, or paper discs, having a layer of abrasive on the surface are not covered by this paragraph.

[38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(d) Explosive actuated fastening tools.

(1) General requirements.

(i) Explosive-actuated fastening tools which are actuated by explosives or any similar means and propel a stud, pin, fastener, or other object for the purpose of affixing it by penetration to any other object shall meet the design requirements in "American National Standard Safety Requirements for Explosive-Actuated Fastening Tools," ANSI A10.3–1970. This requirement does not apply to devices designed for attaching objects to soft construction materials, such as wood, plaster, tar, dry wallboard, and the like, or to stud welding equipment.

(ii) Operators and assistants using tools shall be safeguarded by means of eye protection. Head and face protection shall be used, as required by working conditions, as set forth in Subpart I.

(2) Inspection, maintenance, and tool handling.

(i) High-velocity tools. Tools of this type shall have the characteristics outlined in (*a*) through (*h*) of this subdivision

(a) The muzzle end of the tool shall have a protective shield or guard at least 3½ inches in diameter, mounted perpendicular to and concentric with the barrel, and designed to confine any flying fragments or particles that might otherwise create a hazard at the time of firing.

(b) Where a standard shield or guard cannot be used, or where it does not cover all apparent avenues through which flying particles might escape, a special shield, guard, fixture, or jig designed and built by the manufacturer of the tool being used, which provides this degree of protection, shall be used as a substitute.

(c) The tool shall be so designed that it cannot be fired unless it is equipped with a standard protective shield or guard, or a special shield, guard, fixture, or jig.

(d)

(1) The firing mechanism shall be so designed that the tool cannot fire during loading or preparation to fire, or if the tool should be dropped while loaded.

(2) Firing of the tool shall be dependent upon at least two separate and distinct operations of the operator, with the final firing movement being separate from the operation of bringing the tool into the firing position.

(e) The tool shall be so designed as not to be operable other than against a work surface, and unless the operator is holding the tool against the work surface with a force at least 5 pounds greater than the total weight of the tool.

(f) The tool shall be so designed that it will not operate when equipped with the standard guard indexed to the center position if any bearing surface of the guard is tilted more than 8° from contact with the work surface.

(g) The tool shall be so designed that positive means of varying the power are available or can be made available to the operator as part of the tool, or as an auxiliary, in order to make it possible for the operator to select a power level adequate to perform the desired work without excessive force.

(h) The tool shall be so designed that all breeching parts will be reasonably visible to allow a check for any foreign matter that may be present.

(ii) Tools of the low-velocity-piston type shall have the characteristics outlined in (*a*) through (*e*) of this subdivision

(a) The muzzle end of the tool shall be designed so that suitable protective shields, guards, jigs, or fixtures, designed and built by the manufacturer of the tool being used, can be mounted perpendicular to the barrel. A standard spall shield shall be supplied with each tool.

(b)

(1) The tool shall be designed so that it shall not in ordinary usage propel or discharge a stud, pin, or fastener while loading or during preparation to fire, or if the tool should be dropped while loaded.

(2) Firing of the tool shall be dependent upon at least two separate and distinct operations of the operator, with the final firing movement being separate from the operation of bringing the tool into the firing position.

(c) The tool shall be so designed as not to be operable other than against a work surface, and unless the operator is holding the tool against the work surface with a force at least 5 pounds greater than the total weight of the tool.

(d) The tool shall be so designed that positive means of varying the power are available or can be made available to the operator as part of the tool, or as an auxiliary, in order to make it possible for the operator to select a power level adequate to perform the desired work without excessive force.

(e) The tool shall be so designed that all breeching parts will be reasonably visible to allow a check for any foreign matter that may be present.

(iii) Tools of the hammer-operated piston tools—low-velocity type shall have the characteristics outlined in (*a*) through (*e*) of this subdivision

(a) The muzzle end of the tool shall be so designed that suitable protective shields, guards, jigs, or fixtures, designed and built by the manufacturer of the tool being used, can be mounted perpendicular to the barrel. A standard spall shield shall be supplied with each tool.

(b) The tool shall be so designed that it shall not in ordinary usage propel or discharge a stud, pin, or fastener while loading, or during preparation to fire, or if the tool should be dropped while loaded.

(c) Firing of the tool shall be dependent upon at least two separate and distinct operations of the operator, with the final firing movement being separate from the operation of bringing the tool into the firing position.

(d) The tool shall be so designed that positive means of varying the power are available or can be made available to the operator as part of the tool, or as an auxiliary, in order to make it possible for the operator to select a power level adequate to perform the desired work without excessive force.

(e) The tool shall be so designed that all breeching parts will be reasonably visible to allow a check for any foreign matter that may be present.

(3) Requirements for loads and fasteners.

(i) There shall be a standard means of identifying the power levels of loads used in tools.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) No load (cased or caseless) shall be used if it will accurately chamber in any existing approved commercially available low-velocity piston tool or hammer operated piston tool—low-velocity type and will cause a fastener to have a mean velocity in excess of 300 feet per second when measured 6.5 feet from the muzzle end of the barrel. No individual test firing of a series shall exceed 300 feet per second by more than 8 percent.

(iv) Fasteners used in tools shall be only those specifically manufactured for use in such tools.

(4) Operating requirements.

(i) Before using a tool, the operator shall inspect it to determine to his satisfaction that it is clean, that all moving parts operate freely, and that the barrel is free from obstructions.

(ii) When a tool develops a defect during use, the operator shall immediately cease to use it, until it is properly repaired.

(iii) Tools shall not be loaded until just prior to the intended firing time. Neither loaded nor empty tools are to be pointed at any workmen.

(iv) No tools shall be loaded unless being prepared for immediate use, nor shall an unattended tool be left loaded.

(v) In case of a misfire, the operator shall hold the tool in the operating position for at least 30 seconds. He shall then try to operate the tool a second time. He shall wait another 30 seconds, holding the tool in the operating position; then he shall proceed to remove the explosive load in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

(vi) A tool shall never be left unattended in a place where it would be available to unauthorized persons.

(vii) Fasteners shall not be driven into very hard or brittle materials including, but not limited to, cast iron, glazed tile, surface-hardened steel, glass block, live rock, face brick, or hollow tile.

(viii) Driving into materials easily penetrated shall be avoided unless such materials are backed by a substance that will prevent the pin or fastener from passing completely through and creating a flying-missile hazard on the other side.

(ix)

(a) Fasteners shall not be driven directly into materials such as brick or concrete closer than 3 inches from the unsupported edge or corner, or into steel surfaces closer than one-half inch from the unsupported edge or corner, unless a special guard, fixture, or jig is used. (Exception: Low-velocity tools may drive no closer than 2 inches from an edge in concrete or one-fourth inch in steel.)

(b) When fastening other materials, such as a 2- by 4-inch wood section to a concrete surface, it is permissible to drive a fastener of no greater than $^{7}/_{32}$-inch shank diameter not closer than 2 inches from the unsupported edge or corner of the work surface.

(x) Fasteners shall not be driven through existing holes unless a positive guide is used to secure accurate alignment.

(xi) No fastener shall be driven into a spalled area caused by an unsatisfactory fastening.

(xii) Tools shall not be used in an explosive or flammable atmosphere.

(xiii) All tools shall be used with the correct shield, guard, or attachment recommended by the manufacturer.

(xiv) Any tool found not in proper working order shall be immediately removed from service. The tool shall be inspected at regular intervals and shall be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

(e) Power lawnmowers

(1) General requirements

(i) Power lawnmowers of the walk-behind, riding-rotary, and reel power lawnmowers designed for sale to the general public shall meet the design specifications in "American National Standard Safety Specifications for Power Lawnmowers" ANSI B71.1–X1968. These specifications do not apply to a walk-behind mower which has been converted to a riding mower by the addition of a sulky. Also, these specifications do not apply to flail mowers, sicklebar mowers, or mowers designed for commercial use.

[50 F.R. 4649, February 1, 1985.]

(ii) All power-driven chains, belts, and gears shall be so positioned or otherwise guarded to prevent the operator's accidental contact therewith, during normal starting, mounting, and operation of the machine.

(iii) A shutoff device shall be provided to stop operation of the motor or engine. This device shall require manual and intentional reactivation to restart the motor or engine.

(iv) All positions of the operating controls shall be clearly identified.

(v) The words, "Caution. Be sure the operating control(s) is in neutral before starting the engine," or similar wording shall be clearly visible at an engine starting control point on self-propelled mowers.

(2) Walk-behind and riding rotary mowers.

(i) The mower blade shall be enclosed except on the bottom and the enclosure shall extend to or below the lowest cutting point of the blade in the lowest blade position.

(ii) Guards which must be removed to install a catcher assembly shall comply with the following:

(a) Warning instructions shall be affixed to the mower near the opening stating that the mower shall not be used without either the catcher assembly or the guard in place.

(b) The catcher assembly or the guard shall be shipped and sold as part of the mower.

(c) The instruction manual shall state that the mower shall not be used without either the catcher assembly or the guard in place.

(d) The catcher assembly, when properly and completely installed, shall not create a condition which violates the limits given for the guarded opening.

(iii) Openings in the blade enclosure, intended for the discharge of grass, shall be limited to a maximum vertical angle of the opening of 30°. Measurements shall be taken from the lowest blade position.

(iv) The total effective opening area of the grass discharge opening(s) shall not exceed 1,000 square degrees on units having a width of cut less than 27½ inches, or 2,000 square degrees on units having a width of cut 27½ inches or over.

(v) The word "Caution," or stronger wording, shall be placed on the mower at or near each discharge opening.

(vi) [Revoked]

[38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(vii) Blade(s) shall stop rotating from the manufacturer's specified maximum speed within 15 seconds after declutching, or shutting off power.

(viii) In a multipiece blade, the means of fastening the cutting members to the body of the blade or disc shall be so designed that they will not become worn to a hazardous condition before the cutting members themselves are worn beyond use.

(ix) The maximum tip speed of any blade shall be 19,000 feet per minute.

(3) Walk-behind rotary mowers.

(i) The horizontal angle of the opening(s) in the blade enclosure, intended for the discharge of grass, shall not contact the operator area.

(ii) There shall be one of the following at all openings in the blade enclosure intended for the discharge of grass:

(a) A minimum unobstructed horizontal distance of 3 inches from the end of the discharge chute to the blade tip circle.

(b) A rigid bar fastened across the discharge opening, secured to prevent removal without the use of tools. The bottom of the bar shall be no higher than the bottom edge of the blade enclosure.

(iii) The highest point(s) of the front of the blade enclosure, except discharge openings, shall be such that any line extending a maximum of 15° downward from the horizontal toward the blade shaft axis (axes) shall not intersect the horizontal plane within the blade tip circle. The highest point(s) on the blade enclosure front, except discharge-openings, shall not exceed $1^1/_4$ inches above the lowest cutting point of the blade in the lowest blade position. Mowers with a swingover handle are to be considered as having no front in the blade enclosure and therefore shall comply with subparagraph (2)(i) of this paragraph.

[38 F.R. 14371, June 1, 1973.]

(iv) The mower handle shall be fastened to the mower so as to prevent loss of control by unintentional uncoupling while in operation.

(v) A positive upstop or latch shall be provided for the mower handle in the normal operating position(s). The upstop shall not be subject to unintentional disengagement during normal operation of the mower. The upstop or latch shall not allow the center or the handle grips to come closer than 17 inches horizontally behind the closest path of the mower blade(s) unless manually disengaged.

(vi) A swing-over handle, which complies with the above requirements, will be permitted.

(vii) Wheel drive disengaging controls, except deadman controls, shall move opposite to the direction of the vehicle motion in order to disengage the drive. Deadman controls shall automatically interrupt power to a drive when the operator's actuating force is removed, and may operate in any direction to disengage the drive.

[50 F.R. 4649, February 1, 1985.]

(4) Riding rotary mowers.

(i) The highest point(s) of all openings in the blade enclosure, front shall be limited by a vertical angle of opening of 15° and a maximum distance of 1¼ inches above the lowest cutting point of the blade in the lowest blade position.

(ii) Opening(s) shall be placed so that grass or debris will not discharge directly toward any part of an operator seated in a normal operator position.

(iii) There shall be one of the following at all openings in the blade enclosure intended for the discharge of grass.

(a) A minimum unobstructed horizontal distance of 6 inches from the end of the discharge chute to the blade tip circle.

(b) A rigid bar fastened across the discharge opening, secured to prevent removal without the use of tools. The bottom of the bar shall be no higher than the bottom edge of the blade enclosure.

(iv) Mowers shall be provided with stops to prevent jackknifing or locking of the steering mechanism.

(v) Vehicle stopping means shall be provided.

(vi) Hand-operated wheel drive disengaging controls shall move opposite to the direction of vehicle motion in order to disengage the drive. Foot-operated wheel drive disengaging controls shall be depressed to disengage the drive. Deadman controls, both hand and foot operated, shall automatically interrupt power to a drive when the operator's actuating force is removed, and may operate in any direction to disengage the drive.

[50 F.R. 4649, February 1, 1985.]

1910.244—OTHER PORTABLE TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT

(a) Jacks.

(1) Loading and marking.

(i) The operator shall make sure that the jack used has a rating sufficient to lift and sustain the load.

(ii) The rated load shall be legibly and permanently marked in a prominent location on the jack by casting, stamping, or other suitable means.

(2) Operation and maintenance.

(i) In the absence of a firm foundation, the base of the jack shall be blocked. If there is a possibility of slippage of the cap, a block shall be placed in between the cap and the load.

(ii) The operator shall watch the stop indicator, which shall be kept clean, in order to determine the limit of travel. The indicated limit shall not be overrun.

(iii) After the load has been raised, it shall be cribbed, blocked, or otherwise secured at once.

(iv) Hydraulic jacks exposed to freezing temperatures shall be supplied with an adequate antifreeze liquid.

(v) All jacks shall be properly lubricated at regular intervals.

(vi) Each jack shall be thoroughly inspected at times which depend upon the service conditions. Inspections shall be not less frequent than the following:

(a) For constant or intermittent use at one locality, once every 6 months,

(b) For jacks sent out of shop for special work, when sent out and when returned,

(c) For a jack subjected to abnormal load or shock, immediately before and immediately thereafter.

(vii) Repair or replacement parts shall be examined for possible defects.

(viii) Jacks which are out of order shall be tagged accordingly, and shall not be used until repairs are made.

(b) Abrasive blast cleaning nozzles.

The blast cleaning nozzles shall be equipped with an operating valve which must be held open manually. A support shall be provided on which the nozzle may be mounted when it is not in use.

1910.245—EFFECTIVE DATES

(a) The provisions of this Subpart P shall become effective on August 27, 1971, except as provided in the remaining paragraphs of this section.

(b) The following provisions shall become effective on February 15, 1972:

§ 1910.243 (a)(1), (a)(2), (a)(3), (b)(1), (c)(1), (c)(2), (c)(3), (d)(1), (d)(2), and (e).

(c) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a), (b), or (d) of this section, any provision in any other section of this subpart which contains in itself a specific effective date or time limitation shall become effective on such date or shall apply in accordance with such limitation.

(d) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a) of this section, if any standard in 41 CFR Part 50–204, other than a national consensus standard incorporated by reference in § 50–204.2 (a)(1), is or becomes applicable at any time to any employment and place of employment, by virtue of the Walsh-Healey Public Contracts Act, or the Service Contract Act of 1965, or the National Foundation on Arts and Humanities Act of 1965, any corresponding established Federal standard in this Subpart P which is derived from 41 CFR Part 50–204 shall also become effective, and shall be applicable to such employment and place of employment, on the same date.

1910.246—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

Sec.	*Source*
1910.241(a)	ANSI A10.3 (1970), Safety Requirements for Explosive Actuated Fastening Tools.
1910.241(b)	ANSI B7.1-1970, Safety Code for the Use, Care, and Protection of Abrasive Wheels.
1910.241(c)	ANSI B71.1-1968, Safety Specifications for Power Lawn Mowers.
1910.241(d)	ANSI B30.1-1943, Safety Code for Jacks
1910.242	41 CFR 50-204.4 and 50-204.8.
1910.243(a)	ANSI O1.1-1954 (R1961), Safety Code for Woodworking Machines.
1910.243(b)	ANSI B19.1-1938, Compressed Air Machinery and Equipment.
1910.243(c)	ANSI B7.1-1970, Safety Code for the Use,
1910.243(d)	ANSI A10.3-1970, Explosive Actuated Fastening Tools.
1910.243(e)	ANSI B71.1-1968, Safety Specifications for Power Lawn Mowers.
1910.244(a)	ANSI B30.1-1943 (R 1952), Safety Code for Jacks.
1910.244(b)	ANSI Z9.4-1968, Ventilation and Safe Practices for Abrasive Blasting Operations.

1910.247—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

Specific standards of the following organization have been referenced in this subpart. Copies of the referenced materials may be obtained from the issuing organization.

American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway,
New York, N.Y. 10018.

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART Q—WELDING, CUTTING, AND BRAZING

1910.251 Definitions.
1910.252 Welding, cutting, and brazing.
1910.253 Sources of standards.
1910.254 Standards organizations.

Authority: Secs. 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12-71 (36 FR 8754), 8-76 (41 FR 25059) or 9-83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable.

Section 1910.251 also issued under 29 CFR Part 1911.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

SUBPART Q—WELDING, CUTTING, AND BRAZING

1910.251—DEFINITIONS

As used in this subpart:

(a) "Welder" and "welding operator" mean any operator of electric or gas welding and cutting equipment.

(b) "Approved" means listed or approved by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Refer to § 1910.155(c)(3) for definitions of listed and approved, and § 1910.7 for nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

(c) All other welding terms are used in accordance with American Welding Society—Terms and Definitions—A3.0—1969.

1910.252—WELDING, CUTTING, AND BRAZING

(a) Installation and operation of oxygen-fuel gas systems for welding and cutting.

(1) General requirements.

(i) Flammable mixture. Mixtures of fuel gases and air or oxygen may be explosive and shall be guarded against. No device or attachment facilitating or permitting mixtures of air or oxygen with flammable gases prior to consumption, except at the burner or in a standard torch, shall be allowed unless approved for the purpose.

(ii) Maximum pressure. Under no condition shall acetylene be generated, piped (except in approved cylinder manifolds) or utilized at a pressure in excess of 15 p.s.i. gage pressure or 30 p.s.i. absolute pressure. (The 30 p.s.i. absolute pressure limit is intended to prevent unsafe use of acetylene in pressurized chambers such as caissons, underground excavations or tunnel construction.) This requirement is not intended to apply to storage of acetylene dissolved in a suitable solvent in cylinders manufactured and maintained according to U.S. Department of Transportation requirements, or to acetylene for chemical use. The use of liquid acetylene shall be prohibited.

(iii) Apparatus. Only approved apparatus such as torches, regulators or pressure-reducing valves, acetylene generators, and manifolds shall be used.

(iv) Personnel. Workmen in charge of the oxygen or fuel-gas supply equipment, including generators, and oxygen or fuel-gas distribution piping systems shall be instructed and judged competent by their employers for this important work before being left in charge. Rules and instructions covering the operation and maintenance of oxygen or fuel-gas supply equipment including generators, and oxygen or fuel-gas distribution piping systems shall be readily available.

(2) Cylinders and containers.

(i) Approval and marking.

(a) All portable cylinders used for the storage and shipment of compressed gases shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with the regulations of the U.S Department of Transportation, 49 CFR Parts 171-179.

(b) Compressed gas cylinders shall be legibly marked, for the purpose of identifying the gas content, with either the chemical or the trade name of the gas.

Such marking shall be by means of stenciling, stamping, or labeling, and shall not be readily removable. Whenever practical, the marking shall be located on the shoulder of the cylinder. This method conforms to the American National Standard Method for Marking Portable Compressed Gas Containers to Identify the Material Contained, ANSI Z48.1–1954.

(c) Compressed gas cylinders shall be equipped with connections complying with the American National Standard Compressed Gas Cylinder Valve Outlet and Inlet Connections, ANSI B57.1—1965.

(d) All cylinders with a water weight capacity of over 30 pounds shall be equipped with means of connecting a valve protection cap or with a collar or recess to protect the valve.

(ii) Storage of cylinders—general.

(a) Cylinders shall be kept away from radiators and other sources of heat.

(b) Inside of buildings, cylinders shall be stored in a well-protected, well-ventilated, dry location, at least 20 feet from highly combustible materials such as oil or excelsior. Cylinders should be stored in definitely assigned places away from elevators, stairs, or gangways. Assigned storage spaces shall be located where cylinders will not be knocked over or damaged by passing or falling objects, or subject to tampering by unauthorized persons. Cylinders shall not be kept in unventilated enclosures such as lockers and cupboards.

(c) Empty cylinders shall have their valves closed.

(d) Valve protection caps, where cylinder is designed to accept a cap, shall always be in place, hand-tight, except when cylinders are in use or connected for use.

(iii) Fuel-gas cylinder storage. Inside a building, cylinders, except those in actual use or attached ready for use, shall be limited to a total gas capacity of 2,000 cubic feet or 300 pounds of liquefied petroleum gas.

(a) For storage in excess of 2,000 cubic feet total gas capacity of cylinders or 300 pounds of liquefied petroleum gas, a separate room or compartment conforming to the requirements specified in subparagraphs (6)(vi)(*a*) (8) and (9) of this paragraph shall be provided, or cylinders shall be kept outside or in a special building. Special buildings, rooms or compartments shall have no open flame for heating or lighting and shall be well ventilated. They may also be used for storage of calcium carbide in quantities not to exceed 600 pounds, when contained in metal containers complying with subparagraphs (7)(i) (*a*) and (*b*) of this paragraph.

(b) Acetylene cylinders shall be stored valve end up.

(iv) Oxygen storage.

(a) Oxygen cylinders shall not be stored near highly combustible material, especially oil and grease; or near reserve stocks of carbide and acetylene or other fuel-gas cylinders, or near any other substance likely to cause or accelerate fire; or in an acetylene generator compartment.

(b) Oxygen cylinders stored in outside generator houses shall be separated from the generator or carbide storage rooms by a noncombustible partition having a fire-resistance rating of at least 1 hour. This partition shall be without openings and shall be gastight.

(c) Oxygen cylinders in storage shall be separated from fuel-gas cylinders or combustible materials (especially oil or grease), a minimum distance of 20 feet or by a noncombustible barrier at least 5 feet high having a fire-resistance rating of at least one-half hour.

(d) Where a liquid oxygen system is to be used to supply gaseous oxygen for welding or cutting and the system has a storage capacity of more than 13,000 cubic feet of oxygen (measured at 14.7 p.s.i.a. and 70° F.), connected in service or ready for service, or more than 25,000 cubic feet of oxygen (measured at 14.7 p.s.i.a. and 70° F), including unconnected reserves on hand at the site, it shall comply with the provisions of the Standard for Bulk Oxygen Systems at Consumer Sites, NFPA No. 566–1965.

(v) Operating procedures.

(a) Cylinders, cylinder valves, couplings, regulators, hose, and apparatus shall be kept free from oily or greasy substances. Oxygen cylinders or apparatus shall not be handled with oily hands or gloves. A jet of oxygen must never be permitted to strike an oily surface, greasy clothes, or enter a fuel oil or other storage tank.

(b)

(1) When transporting cylinders by a crane or derrick, a cradle, boat, or suitable platform shall be used. Slings or electric magnets shall not be used for this purpose. Valve-protection caps, where cylinder is designed to accept a cap, shall always be in place.

(2) Cylinders shall not be dropped or struck or permitted to strike each other violently.

(3) Valve-protection caps shall not be used for lifting cylinders from one vertical position to another. Bars shall not be used under valves or valve-protection caps to pry cylinders loose when frozen to the ground or otherwise fixed; the use of warm (not boiling) water is recommended. Valve-protection caps are designed to protect cylinder valves from damage.

(4) Unless cylinders are secured on a special truck, regulators shall be removed and valve-protection caps, when provided for, shall be put in place before cylinders are moved.

(5) Cylinders not having fixed hand wheels shall have keys, handles, or nonadjustable wrenches on valve stems while these cylinders are in service. In multiple cylinder installations only one key or handle is required for each manifold.

(6) Cylinder valves shall be closed before moving cylinders.

(7) Cylinder valves shall be closed when work is finished.

(8) Valves of empty cylinders shall be closed.

(9) Cylinders shall be kept far enough away from the actual welding or cutting operation so that sparks, hot slag, or flame will not reach them, or fire-resistant shields shall be provided.

(10) Cylinders shall not be placed where they might become part of an electric circuit. Contacts with third rails, trolley wires, etc., shall be avoided. Cylinders shall be kept away from radiators, piping systems, layout tables, etc., that may be used for grounding electric circuits such as for arc welding machines. Any practice such as the tapping of an electrode against a cylinder to strike an arc shall be prohibited.

(11) Cylinders shall never be used as rollers or supports, whether full or empty.

(12) The numbers and markings stamped into cylinders shall not be tampered with.

(13) No person, other than the gas supplier, shall attempt to mix gases

in a cylinder. No one, except the owner of the cylinder or person authorized by him, shall refill a cylinder.

(14) No one shall tamper with safety devices in cylinders or valves.

(15) Cylinders shall not be dropped or otherwise roughly handled.

(16) Unless connected to a manifold, oxygen from a cylinder shall not be used without first attaching an oxygen regulator to the cylinder valve. Before connecting the regulator to the cylinder valve, the valve shall be opened slightly for an instant and then closed. Always stand to one side of the outlet when opening the cylinder valve.

(17) A hammer or wrench shall not be used to open cylinder valves. If valves cannot be opened by hand, the supplier shall be notified.

(18)

(i) Cylinder valves shall not be tampered with nor should any attempt be made to repair them. If trouble is experienced, the supplier should be sent a report promptly indicating the character of the trouble and the cylinder's serial number. Supplier's instructions as to its disposition shall be followed.

(ii) Complete removal of the stem from a diaphragm-type cylinder valve shall be avoided.

(c)

(1) Fuel-gas cylinders shall be placed with valve end up whenever they are in use. Liquefied gases shall be stored and shipped with the valve end up.

(2) Cylinders shall be handled carefully. Rough handling, knocks, or falls are liable to damage the cylinder, valve or safety devices and cause leakage.

(3) Before connecting a regulator to a cylinder valve, the valve shall be opened slightly and closed immediately. The valve shall be opened while standing to one side of the outlet; never in front of it. Never crack a fuel-gas cylinder valve near other welding work or near sparks, flame, or other possible sources of ignition.

(4) Before a regulator is removed from a cylinder valve, the cylinder valve shall be closed and the gas released from the regulator.

(5) Nothing shall be placed on top of an acetylene cylinder when in use which may damage the safety device or interfere with the quick closing of the valve.

(6) If cylinders are found to have leaky valves or fittings which cannot be stopped by closing of the valve, the cylinders shall be taken outdoors away from sources of ignition and slowly emptied.

(7) A warning should be placed near cylinders having leaking fuse plugs or other leaking safety devices not to approach them with a lighted cigarette or other source of ignition. Such cylinders should be plainly tagged; the supplier should be promptly notified and his instructions followed as to their return.

(8) Safety devices shall not be tampered with.

(9) Fuel-gas shall never be used from cylinders through torches or other devices equipped with shutoff valves without reducing the pressure through a suitable regulator attached to the cylinder valve or manifold.

(10) The cylinder valve shall always be opened slowly.

(11) An acetylene cylinder valve shall not be opened more than one and one-

half turns of the spindle, and preferably no more than three-fourths of a turn.

(12) Where a special wrench is required it shall be left in position on the stem of the valve while the cylinder is in use so that the fuel-gas flow can be quickly turned off in case of emergency. In the case of manifolded or coupled cylinders at least one such wrench shall always be available for immediate use.

(3) Manifolding of cylinders.

(i) Fuel-gas manifolds.

(a) Manifolds shall be approved either separately for each component part or as an assembled unit.

(b) Except as provided in subdivision (c) of this subdivision fuel-gas cylinders connected to one manifold inside a building shall be limited to a total capacity not exceeding 300 pounds of liquefied petroleum gas or 3,000 cubic feet of other fuel-gas. More than one such manifold with connected cylinders may be located in the same room provided the manifolds are at least 50 feet apart or separated by a noncombustible barrier at least 5 feet high having a fire-resistance rating of at least one-half hour.

(c) Fuel-gas cylinders connected to one manifold having an aggregate capacity exceeding 300 pounds of liquefied petroleum gas or 3,000 cubic feet of other fuel-gas shall be located outdoors, or in a separate building or room constructed in accordance with subparagraphs (6)(vi)(*a*)(*8*) and (*9*) of this paragraph.

(d) Separate manifold buildings or rooms may also be used for the storage of drums of calcium carbide and cylinders containing fuel gases as provided in subparagraph (2)(iii) of this paragraph. Such buildings or rooms shall have no open flames for heating or lighting and shall be well-ventilated.

(e) High-pressure fuel-gas manifolds shall be provided with approved pressure regulating devices.

(ii) High-pressure oxygen manifolds (for use with cylinders having a Department of Transportation service pressure above 200 p.s.i.g.).

(a) Manifolds shall be approved either separately for each component part or as an assembled unit.

(b) Oxygen manifolds shall not be located in an acetylene generator room. Oxygen manifolds shall be separated from fuel-gas cylinders or combustible materials (especially oil or grease), a minimum distance of 20 feet or by a noncombustible barrier at least 5 feet high having a fire-resistance rating of at least one-half hour.

(c) Except as provided in subdivision (*d*) of this subdivision oxygen cylinders connected to one manifold shall be limited to a total gas capacity of 6,000 cubic feet. More than one such manifold with connected cylinders may be located in the same room provided the manifolds are at least 50 feet apart or separated by a noncombustible barrier at least 5 feet high having a fire-resistance rating of at least one-half hour.

(d) An oxygen manifold, to which cylinders having an aggregate capacity of more than 6,000 cubic feet of oxygen are connected, should be located outdoors or in a separate noncombustible building. Such a manifold, if located inside a building having other occupancy, shall be located in a separate room of noncombustible construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least one-half hour or in an area with no combustible material within 20 feet of the manifold.

(e) An oxygen manifold or oxygen bulk supply system which has storage capacity of more than 13,000 cubic feet of oxygen (measured at 14.7 p.s.i.a. and 70° F.), connected in service or ready for service, or more than 25,000 cubic feet of oxygen (measured at 14.7 p.s.i.a. and 70° F.), including unconnected reserves on hand at the site, shall comply with the provisions of the Standard for Bulk Oxygen Systems at Consumer Sites, NFPA No. 566–1965.

(f) High-pressure oxygen manifolds shall be provided with approved pressure-regulating devices.

(iii) Low-pressure oxygen manifolds (for use with cylinders having a Department of Transportation service pressure not exceeding 200 p.s.i.g.).

(a) Manifolds shall be of substantial construction suitable for use with oxygen at a pressure of 250 p.s.i.g. They shall have a minimum bursting pressure of 1,000 p.s.i.g. and shall be protected by a safety relief device which will relieve at a maximum pressure of 500 p.s.i.g. DOT–4L200 cylinders have safety devices which relieve at a maximum pressure of 250 p.s.i.g. (or 235 p.s.i.g. if vacuum insulation is used).

(b) Hose and hose connections subject to cylinder pressure shall comply with subparagraph (5)(v) of this paragraph. Hose shall have a minimum bursting pressure of 1,000 p.s.i.g.

(c) The assembled manifold including leads shall be tested and proven gas-tight at a pressure of 300 p.s.i.g. The fluid used for testing oxygen manifolds shall be oil-free and not combustible.

(d) The location of manifolds shall comply with subdivisions (ii) (*b*), (*c*), (*d*), and (*e*) of this subdivision.

(e) The following sign shall be conspicuously posted at each manifold:

Low-Pressure Manifold
Do Not Connect High-Pressure Cylinders
Maximum Pressure—250 P.S.I.G.

(iv) Portable outlet headers.

(a) Portable outlet headers shall not be used indoors except for temporary service where the conditions preclude a direct supply from outlets located on the service piping system.

(b) Each outlet on the service piping from which oxygen or fuel-gas is withdrawn to supply a portable outlet header shall be equipped with a readily accessible shutoff valve.

(c) Hose and hose connections used for connecting the portable outlet header to the service piping shall comply with subparagraph (5)(v) of this paragraph.

(d) Master shutoff valves for both oxygen and fuel-gas shall be provided at the entry end of the portable outlet header.

(e) Portable outlet headers for fuel-gas service shall be provided with an approved hydraulic back-pressure valve installed at the inlet and preceding the service outlets, unless an approved pressure-reducing regulator, an approved back-flow check valve, or an approved hydraulic back-pressure valve is installed at each outlet. Outlets provided on headers for oxygen service may be fitted for use with pressure-reducing regulators or for direct hose connection.

(f) Each service outlet on portable outlet headers shall be provided with a valve assembly that includes a detachable outlet seal cap, chained or otherwise attached to the body of the valve.

(g) Materials and fabrication procedures for portable outlet headers shall comply with subparagraphs (4) (i), (ii), and (v) of this paragraph.

(h) Portable outlet headers shall be provided with frames which will support the equipment securely in the correct operating position and protect them from damage during handling and operation.

(v) Manifold operating procedures.

(a) Cylinder manifolds shall be installed under the supervision of someone familiar with the proper practices with reference to their construction and use.

(b) All component parts used in the methods of manifolding described in subdivision (i) of this subdivision shall be approved as to materials, design and construction either separately or as an assembled unit.

(c) All manifolds and parts used in methods of manifolding shall be used only for the gas or gases for which they are approved.

(d) When acetylene cylinders are coupled, approved flash arresters shall be installed between each cylinder and the coupler block. For outdoor use only, and when the number of cylinders coupled does not exceed three, one flash arrester installed between the coupler block and regulator is acceptable.

(e) Removed

(f) The aggregate capacity of fuel-gas cylinders connected to a portable manifold inside a building shall not exceed 3,000 cubic feet of gas.

(g) Acetylene and liquified fuel-gas cylinders shall be manifolded in a vertical position.

(h) The pressure in the gas cylinders connected to and discharged simultaneously through a common manifold shall be approximately equal.

(4) Service piping systems.

(i) Materials and design.

(a)

(1) Piping and fittings shall comply with Section 2, Industrial Gas and Air Piping Systems, of the American National Standard Code for Pressure Piping ANSI B31.1, 1967, insofar as it does not conflict with subdivisions *(i)* and *(ii)* of this subdivision:

(i) Pipe shall be at least Schedule 40 and fittings shall be at least standard weight in sizes up to and including 6-inch nominal.

(ii) Copper tubing shall be Types K or L in accordance with the Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube, ASTM B88-66a.

(2) Piping shall be steel, wrought iron, brass or copper pipe, or seamless copper, brass or stainless steel tubing, except as provided in *(b)* and *(c)* of this subdivision.

(b)

(1) Oxygen piping and fittings at pressures in excess of 700 p.s.i.g., shall be stainless steel or copper alloys.

(2) Hose connections and hose complying with subparagraph (5)(v) of this paragraph may be used to connect the outlet of a manifold pressure regulator to piping providing the working pressure of the piping is 250 p.s.i.g. or less and the length of the hose does not exceed 5 feet. Hose shall have a minimum bursting pressure of 1,000 p.s.i.g.

(3) When oxygen is supplied to a service piping system from a low-pressure oxygen manifold without an intervening pressure regulating device, the piping system shall have a minimum design pressure of 250 p.s.i.g. A pressure regulating device shall be used at each station outlet when the connected equipment is for use at pressures less than 250 p.s.i.g.

(c)

(1) Piping for acetylene or acetylenic compounds shall be steel or wrought iron.

(2) Unalloyed copper shall not be used for acetylene or acetylenic compounds except in listed equipment.

(ii) Piping joints.

(a) Joints in steel or wrought iron piping shall be welded, threaded or flanged. Fittings, such as ells, tees, couplings, and unions, may be rolled, forged or cast steel, malleable iron or nodular iron. Gray or white cast iron fittings are prohibited.

(b) Joints in brass or copper pipe shall be welded, brazed, threaded, or flanged. If of the socket type, they shall be brazed with silver-brazing alloy or similar high melting point (not less than 800° F.) filler metal.

(c) Joints in seamless copper, brass, or stainless steel tubing shall be approved gas tubing fittings or the joints shall be brazed. If of the socket type, they shall be brazed with silver-brazing alloy or similar high melting point (not less than 800° F.) filler metal.

(iii) Installation.

(a) Distribution lines shall be installed and maintained in a safe operating condition.

(b) All piping shall be run as directly as practicable, protected against physical damage, proper allowance being made for expansion and contraction, jarring and vibration. Pipe laid underground in earth shall be located below the frost line and protected against corrosion. After assembly, piping shall be thoroughly blown out with air, nitrogen, or carbon dioxide to remove foreign materials. For oxygen piping, only oil-free air, oil-free nitrogen, or oil-free carbon dioxide shall be used.

(c) Only piping which has been welded or brazed shall be installed in tunnels, trenches or ducts. Shutoff valves shall be located outside such conduits. Oxygen piping may be placed in the same tunnel, trench or duct with fuel-gas pipelines, provided there is good natural or forced ventilation.

(d) Low points in piping carrying moist gas shall be drained into drip pots constructed so as to permit pumping or draining out the condensate at necessary intervals. Drain valves shall be installed for this purpose having outlets normally closed with screw caps or plugs. No open end valves or petcocks shall be used, except that in drips located out of doors, underground, and not readily accessible, valves may be used at such points if they are equipped with means to secure them in the closed position. Pipes leading to the surface of the ground shall be cased or jacketed where necessary to prevent loosening or breaking.

(e) Gas cocks or valves shall be provided for all buildings at points where they will be readily accessible for shutting off the gas supply to these buildings in any emergency. There shall also be provided a shutoff valve in the discharge line from the generator, gas holder, manifold or other source of supply.

(f) Shutoff valves shall not be installed in safety relief lines in such a manner that the safety relief device can be rendered ineffective.

(g) Fittings and lengths of pipe shall be examined internally before assembly and, if necessary, freed from scale or dirt. Oxygen piping and fittings shall be washed out with a suitable solution which will effectively remove grease and dirt but will not react with oxygen. Hot water solutions of caustic soda or trisodium phosphate are effective cleaning agents for this purpose.

(h) Piping shall be thoroughly blown out after assembly to remove foreign materials. For oxygen piping, oil-free air, oil-free nitrogen, or oil-free carbon dioxide shall be used. For other piping, air or inert gas may be used.

(i) When flammable gas lines or other parts of equipment are being purged of air or gas, open lights or other sources of ignition shall not be permitted near uncapped openings.

(j) No welding or cutting shall be performed on an acetylene or oxygen pipeline, including the attachment of hangers or supports, until the line has been purged. Only oil-free air, oil-free nitrogen, or oil-free carbon dioxide shall be used to purge oxygen lines.

(iv) Painting and signs.

(a) Underground pipe and tubing and outdoor ferrous pipe and tubing shall be covered or painted with a suitable material for protection against corrosion.

(b) Aboveground piping systems shall be marked in accordance with the American National Standard Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems, ANSI A13.1-1956.

(c) Station outlets shall be marked to indicate the name of the gas.

(v) Testing.

(a) Piping systems shall be tested and proved gas tight at 1½ times the maximum operating pressure, and shall be thoroughly purged of air before being placed in service. The material used for testing oxygen lines shall be oil free and noncombustible. Flames shall not be used to detect leaks.

(b) When flammable gas lines or other parts of equipment are being purged of air or gas, sources of ignition shall not be permitted near uncapped openings.

(5) Protective equipment, hose, and regulators.

(i) General. Equipment shall be installed and used only in the service for which it is approved and as recommended by the manufacturer.

(ii) Pressure relief devices. Service piping systems shall be protected by pressure relief devices set to function at not more than the design pressure of the systems and discharging upwards to a safe location.

(iii) Piping protective equipment.

(a) The fuel-gas and oxygen piping systems, including portable outlet headers shall incorporate the protective equipment shown in Figures Q-1, Q-2, and Q-3.

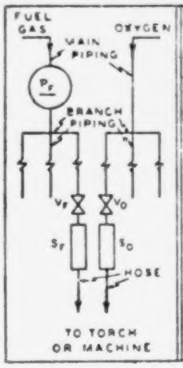


Fig. Q-1

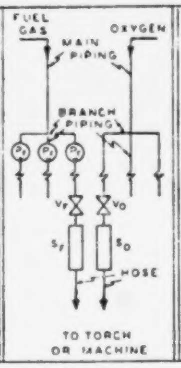


Fig. Q-2

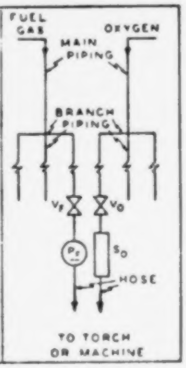


Fig. Q-3

LEGEND

P_F — Protective equipment in fuel gas piping
V_F — Fuel gas station outlet valve
V_O — Oxygen station outlet valve
S_F — Backflow prevention device(s) at fuel gas station outlet
S_O — Backflow prevention device(s) at oxygen station outlet

When only a portion of a fuel-gas system is to be used with oxygen, only that portion need comply with subparagraph (5)(iii)(a) of this paragraph.

(b) Approved protective equipment (designated P_F in Figs. Q-1, Q-2, and Q-3) shall be installed in fuel-gas piping to prevent:

(1) Backflow of oxygen into the fuel-gas supply system;

(2) Passage of a flash back into the fuel-gas supply system; and

(3) Excessive back pressure of oxygen in the fuel-gas supply system. The three functions of the protective equipment may be combined in one device or may be provided by separate devices.

(i) The protective equipment shall be located in the main supply line, as in Figure Q–1 or at the head of each branch line, as in Figure Q–2 or at each location where fuel-gas is withdrawn, as in Figure Q–3. Where branch lines are of 2-inch pipe size or larger or of substantial length, protective equipment (designated as P_F) shall be located as shown in either Q–2 and Q–3.

(ii) Backflow protection shall be provided by an approved device that will prevent oxygen from flowing into the fuel-gas system or fuel from flowing into the oxygen system (see S_F, Figs. Q–1 and Q–2).

(iii) Flash-back protection shall be provided by an approved device that will prevent flame from passing into the fuel-gas system.

(iv) Back-pressure protection shall be provided by an approved pressure-relief device set at a pressure not greater than the pressure rating of the backflow or the flashback protection device, whichever is lower. The pressure-relief device shall be located on the downstream side of the backflow and flashback protection devices. The vent from the pressure-relief device shall be at least as large as the relief device inlet and shall be installed without low points that may collect moisture. If low points are unavoidable, drip pots with drains closed with screw plugs or caps shall be installed at the low points. The vent terminus shall not endanger personnel or property through gas discharge; shall be located away from ignition sources; and shall terminate in a hood or bend.

(c) If pipeline protective equipment incorporates a liquid, the liquid level shall be maintained, and a suitable antifreeze may be used to prevent freezing.

(d) Fuel gas for use with equipment not requiring oxygen shall be withdrawn upstream of the piping protective devices.

(iv) Station outlet protective equipment.

(a) A check valve, pressure regulator, hydraulic seal, or combination of these devices shall be provided at each station outlet, including those on portable headers, to prevent backflow, as shown in Figures Q–1, Q–2, and Q–3 and designated as S_F and S_O.

(b) When approved pipeline protective equipment (designated P_F) is located at the station outlet as in Figure Q–3, no additional check valve, pressure regulator, or hydraulic seal is required.

(c) A shutoff valve (designated V_F and V_O) shall be installed at each station outlet and shall be located on the upstream side of other station outlet equipment.

(d) If the station outlet is equipped with a detachable regulator, the outlet shall terminate in a union connection that complies with the Regulator Connection Standards, 1958, Compressed Gas Association.

(e) If the station outlet is connected directly to a hose, the outlet shall terminate in a union connection complying with the Standard Hose Connection Specifications, 1957, Compressed Gas Association.

(f) Station outlets may terminate in pipe threads to which permanent connections are to be made, such as to a machine.

(g) Station outlets shall be equipped with a detachable outlet seal cap secured in place. This cap shall be used to seal the outlet except when a hose, a regulator, or piping is attached.

(h) Where station outlets are equipped with approved backflow and flashback protective devices, as many as four torches may be supplied from one station outlet through rigid piping, provided each outlet from such piping is equipped with a shutoff valve and provided the fuel-gas capacity of any one torch does not exceed 15 cubic feet per hour.

This subdivision does not apply to machines.

(v) Hose and hose connections.

(a) Hose for oxy-fuel gas service shall comply with the Specification for Rubber Welding Hose, 1958, Compressed Gas Association and Rubber Manufacturers Association.

(b) Revoked

(c) When parallel lengths of oxygen and acetylene hose are taped together for convenience and to prevent tangling, not more than 4 inches out of 12 inches shall be covered by tape.

(d) Hose connections shall comply with the Standard Hose Connection Specifications, 1957, Compressed Gas Association.

(e) Hose connections shall be clamped or otherwise securely fastened in a manner that will withstand, without leakage, twice the pressure to which they are normally subjected in service, but in no case less than a pressure of 300 p.s.i. Oil-free air or an oil-free inert gas shall be used for the test.

(f) Hose showing leaks, burns, worn places, or other defects rendering it unfit for service shall be repaired or replaced.

(vi) Pressure-reducing regulators.

(a) Pressure-reducing regulators shall be used only for the gas and pressures for which they are intended. The regulator inlet connections shall comply with Regulator Connection Standards, 1958, Compressed Gas Association.

(b) When regulators or parts of regulators, including gages, need repair, the work shall be performed by skilled mechanics who have been properly instructed.

(c) Gages on oxygen regulators shall be marked "USE NO OIL."

(d) Union nuts and connections on regulators shall be inspected before use to detect faulty seats which may cause leakage of gas when the regulators are attached to the cylinder valves.

(6) Acetylene generators.

(i) Approval and marking.

(a) Generators shall be of approved construction and shall be plainly marked with the maximum rate of acetylene in cubic feet per hour for which they are designed; the weight and size of carbide necessary for a single charge; the manufacturer's name and address; and the name or number of the type of generator.

(b) Carbide shall be of the size marked on the generator nameplate.

(ii) Rating and pressure limitations.

(a) The total hourly output of a generator shall not exceed the rate for which it is approved and marked. Unless specifically approved for higher ratings, carbide-feed generators shall be rated at 1 cubic foot per hour per pound of carbide required for a single complete charge.

(b) Relief valves shall be regularly operated to insure proper functioning. Relief valves for generating chambers shall be set to open at a pressure not in excess of 15 p.s.i.g. Relief valves for hydraulic back pressure valves shall be set to open at a pressure not in excess of 20 p.s.i.g.

(c) Nonautomatic generators shall not be used for generating acetylene at pressures exceeding 1 p.s.i.g., and all water overflows shall be visible.

(iii) **Location**. The space around the generator shall be ample for free, unobstructed operation and maintenance and shall permit ready adjustment and charging.

(iv) Stationary acetylene generators (automatic and nonautomatic).

(a)

(1) The foundation shall be so arranged that the generator will be level and so that no excessive strain will be placed on the generator or its connections. Acetylene generators shall be grounded.

(2) Generators shall be placed where water will not freeze. The use of common salt (sodium chloride) or other corrosive chemicals for protection against freezing is not permitted. (For heating systems see subdivision (6)(vi)(*c*) of this subparagraph.)

(3) Except when generators are prepared in accordance with subdivision (vii)(*a*)(*4*) of this subparagraph, sources of ignition shall be prohibited in outside generator houses or inside generator houses or inside generator rooms.

(4) Water shall not be supplied through a continuous connection to the generator except when the generator is provided with an adequate open overflow or automatic water shutoff which will effectively prevent overfilling of the generator. Where a noncontinuous connection is used, the supply line shall terminate at a point not less than 2 inches above the regularly provided opening for filling so that the water can be observed as it enters the generator.

(5) Unless otherwise specifically approved, generators shall not be fitted with continuous drain connections leading to sewers, but shall discharge through an open connection into a suitably vented outdoor receptacle or residue pit which may have such connections. An open connection for the sludge drawoff is desirable to enable the generator operator to observe leakage of generating water from the drain valve or sludge cock.

(b)

(1) Each generator shall be provided with a vent pipe

(2) The escape or relief pipe shall be rigidly installed without traps and so that any condensation will drain back to the generator.

(3) The escape or relief pipe shall be carried full size to a suitable point outside the building. It shall terminate in a hood or bend located at least 12 feet above the ground, preferably above the roof, and as far away as practicable from windows or other openings into buildings and as far away as practicable from sources of ignition such as flues or chimneys and tracks used by locomotives. Generating chamber relief pipes shall not be inter-connected but shall be separately led to the outside air. The hood or bend shall be so constructed that it will not be obstructed by rain, snow, ice, insects, or birds. The outlet shall be at least 3 feet from combustible construction.

(c)

(1) Gas holders shall be constructed on the gasometer principle, the bell being suitably guided. The gas bell shall move freely without tendency to bind and shall have a clearance of at least 2 inches from the shell.

(2) The gas holder may be located in the generator room, in a separate room or out of doors. In order to prevent collapse of the gas bell or infiltration of air due to a vacuum caused by the compressor or booster pump or cooling of the gas, a compressor or booster cutoff shall be provided at a point 12 inches or more above the landing point of the bell. When the gas holder is located indoors, the room shall be ventilated in accordance with subdivision (vi)(*b*) of this subparagraph and heated and lighted in accordance with subdivisions (vi) (*c*) and (*d*) of this subparagraph.

(3) When the gas holder is not located within a heated building, gas holder seals shall be protected against freezing.

(4) Means shall be provided to stop the generator-feeding mechanism before the gas holder reaches the upper limit of its travel.

(5) When the gas holder is connected to only one generator, the gas capacity of the holder shall be not less than one-third of the hourly rating of the generator.

(6) If acetylene is used from the gas holder without increase in pressure at some points but with increase in pressure by a compressor or booster pump at other points, approved piping protective devices shall be installed in each supply line. The low-pressure protective device shall be located between the gas holder and the shop piping, and the medium-pressure protective device shall be located between the compressor or booster pump and the shop piping (see Figure Q-4). Approved protective equipment (designated P_F) is used to prevent: Backflow of oxygen into the fuel-gas supply system; passage of a flashback into the fuel-gas supply system; and excessive back pressure of oxygen in the fuel-gas supply system. The three functions of the protective equipment may be combined in one device or may be provided by separate devices.

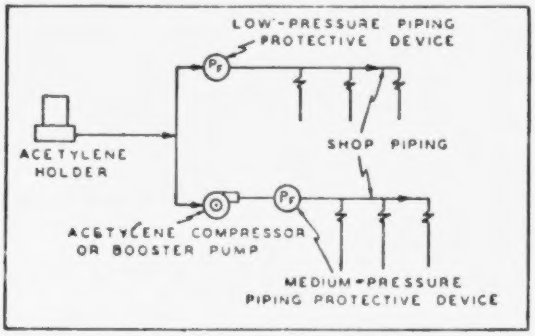

LOW-PRESSURE PIPING PROTECTIVE DEVICE
P_F
ACETYLENE HOLDER
SHOP PIPING
P_F
ACETYLENE COMPRESSOR OR BOOSTER PUMP
MEDIUM-PRESSURE PIPING PROTECTIVE DEVICE

Figure Q-4

(d)

(1) The compressor or booster system shall be of an approved type.

(2) Wiring and electrical equipment in compressor or booster pump rooms or enclosures shall conform to the provisions of section 1910.324 for Class I, Division 2 locations.

(3) Compressors and booster pump equipment shall be located in well-ventilated areas away from open flames, electrical or mechanical sparks, or other ignition sources.

(4) Compressor or booster pumps shall be provided with pressure relief valves which will relieve pressure exceeding 15 p.s.i.g. to a safe outdoor location as provided in subdivision (*b*) of this subdivision, or by returning the gas to the inlet side or to the gas supply source.

(5) Compressor or booster pump discharge outlets shall be provided with

approved protective equipment. (See subparagraph (5) of this paragraph.)

(v) Portable acetylene generators.

(a)

(1) All portable generators shall be of a type approved for portable use.

(2) Portable generators shall not be used within 10 feet of combustible material other than the floor.

(3) Portable generators shall not be used in rooms of total volume less than 35 times the total gas-generating capacity per charge of all generators in the room. Generators shall not be used in rooms having a ceiling height of less than 10 feet. (To obtain the gas-generating capacity in cubic feet per charge, multiply the pounds of carbide per charge by 4.5.)

(4) Portable generators shall be protected against freezing. The use of salt or other corrosive chemical to prevent freezing is prohibited.

(b)

(1) Portable generators shall be cleaned and recharged and the air mixture blown off outside buildings.

(2) When charged with carbide, portable generators shall not be moved by crane or derrick.

(3) When not in use, portable generators shall not be stored in rooms in which open flames are used unless the generators contain no carbide and have been thoroughly purged of acetylene. Storage rooms shall be well ventilated.

(4) When portable acetylene generators are to be transported and operated on vehicles, they shall be securely anchored to the vehicles. If transported by truck, the motor shall be turned off during charging, cleaning, and generating periods.

(5) Portable generators shall be located at a safe distance from the welding position so that they will not be exposed to sparks, slag, or misdirection of the torch flame or overheating from hot materials or processes.

(vi) Outside generator houses and inside generator rooms for stationary acetylene generators.

(a)

(1) No opening in any outside generator house shall be located within 5 feet of any opening in another building.

(2) Walls, floors, and roofs of outside generator houses shall be of noncombustible construction.

(3) When a part of the generator house is to be used for the storage or manifolding of oxygen cylinders, the space to be so occupied shall be separated from the generator or carbide storage section by partition walls continuous from floor to roof or ceiling, of the type of construction stated in subdivision (8) of this subdivision. Such separation walls shall be without openings and shall be joined to the floor, other walls and ceiling or roof in a manner to effect a permanent, gas-tight joint.

(4) Exit doors shall be located so as to be readily accessible in case of emergency.

(5) Explosion venting for outside generator houses and inside generator rooms shall be provided in exterior walls or roofs. The venting areas shall be equal to not less than 1 square foot per 50 cubic feet of room volume and may consist of any one or any combination of the following: Walls of light, noncombustible material preferably single-thickness,

single-strength glass; lightly fastened hatch covers; lightly fastened swinging doors in exterior walls opening outward; lightly fastened walls or roof designed to relieve at a maximum pressure of 25 pounds per square foot.

(6) The installation of acetylene generators within buildings shall be restricted to buildings not exceeding one story in height; provided, however, that this will not be construed as prohibiting such installations on the roof or top floor of a building exceeding such height.

(7) Generators installed inside buildings shall be enclosed in a separate room

(8) The walls, partitions, floors, and ceilings of inside generator rooms shall be of noncombustible construction having a fire-resistance rating of at least 1 hour. The walls or partitions shall be continuous from floor to ceiling and shall be securely anchored. At least one wall of the room shall be an exterior wall.

(9) Openings from an inside generator room to other parts of the building shall be protected by a swinging type, self-closing fire door for a Class B opening and having a rating of at least 1 hour. Windows in partitions shall be wired glass and approved metal frames with fixed sash. Installation shall be in accordance with the Standard for the Installation of Fire Doors and Windows, NFPA 80-1970.

(b) Inside generator rooms or outside generator houses shall be well ventilated with vents located at floor and ceiling levels.

(c) Heating shall be by steam, hot water, enclosed electrically heated elements or other indirect means. Heating by flames or fires shall be prohibited in outside generator houses or inside generator rooms, or in any enclosure communicating with them.

(d)

(1) Generator houses or rooms shall have natural light during daylight hours. Where artificial lighting is necessary it shall be restricted to electric lamps installed in a fixed position. Unless specifically approved for use in atmospheres containing acetylene, such lamps shall be provided with enclosures of glass or other noncombustible material so designed and constructed as to prevent gas vapors from reaching the lamp or socket and to resist breakage. Rigid conduit with threaded connections shall be used.

(2) Lamps installed outside of wired-glass panels set in gas-tight frames in the exterior walls or roof of the generator house or room are acceptable.

(e) Electric switches, telephones, and all other electrical apparatus which may cause a spark, unless specifically approved for use inside acetylene generator rooms, shall be located outside the generator house or in a room or space separated from the generator room by a gas-tight partition, except that where the generator system is designed so that no carbide fill opening or other part of the generator is open to the generator house or room during the operation of the generator, and so that residue is carried in closed piping from the residue discharge valve to a point outside the generator house or room, electrical equipment in the generator house or room shall conform to the provisions of Subpart S of this part for Class I, Division 2 locations.

(vii) Maintenance and operation.

(a) Unauthorized persons shall not be permitted in outside generator houses or inside generator rooms.

(1) Operating instructions shall be posted in a conspicuous place near the generator or kept in a suitable place available for ready reference.

(2) When recharging generators the order of operations specified in the instructions supplied by the manufacturer shall be followed.

(3) In the case of batch-type generators, when the charge of carbide is exhausted and before additional carbide is added, the generating chamber shall always be flushed out with water, renewing the water supply in accordance with the instruction card furnished by the manufacturer.

(4) The water-carbide residue mixture drained from the generator shall not be discharged into sewer pipes or stored in areas near open flames. Clear water from residue settling pits may be discharged into sewer pipes.

(b) The carbide added each time the generator is recharged shall be sufficient to refill the space provided for carbide without ramming the charge. Steel or other ferrous tools shall not be used in distributing the charge.

(c) Generator water chambers shall be kept filled to proper level at all times except while draining during the recharging operation.

(d) Whenever repairs are to be made or the generator is to be charged or carbide is to be removed, the water chamber shall be filled to the proper level.

(e) Previous to making repairs involving welding, soldering, or other hot work or other operations which produce a source of ignition, the carbide charge and feed mechanism shall be completely removed. All acetylene shall be expelled by completely flooding the generator shell with water and the generator shall be disconnected from the piping system. The generator shall be kept filled with water, if possible, or positioned to hold as much water as possible.

(f) Hot repairs shall not be made in a room where there are other generators unless all the generators and piping have been purged of acetylene.

(7) Calcium carbide storage.

(i) Packaging.

(a) Calcium carbide shall be contained in metal packages of sufficient strength to prevent rupture. The packages shall be provided with a screw top or equivalent. These packages shall be constructed water- and air-tight. Solder shall not be used in such a manner that the package would fail if exposed to fire.

(b) Packages containing calcium carbide shall be conspicuously marked "Calcium Carbide—Dangerous If Not Kept Dry" or with equivalent warning.

(c) Caution: Metal tools, even the so-called spark resistant type may cause ignition of an acetylene and air mixture when opening carbide containers.

(d) Sprinkler systems shall not be installed in carbide storage rooms.

(ii) Storage indoors.

(a) Calcium carbide in quantities not to exceed 600 pounds may be stored indoors in dry, waterproof, and well-ventilated locations.

(1) Calcium carbide not exceeding 600 pounds may be stored indoors in the same room with fuel-gas cylinders.

(2) Packages of calcium carbide, except for one of each size, shall be kept sealed. The seals shall not be broken when there is carbide in excess of 1 pound in any other unsealed package of the same size of carbide in the room.

(b) Calcium carbide exceeding 600 pounds but not exceeding 5,000 pounds shall be stored:

(1) In accordance with subdivision (*c*) of this subdivision.

(2) In an inside generator room or outside generator house; or

(3) In a separate room in a one-story building which may contain other occupancies, but without cellar or basement beneath the carbide storage section. Such rooms shall be constructed in accordance with subdivision (vi)(*a*) (*8*) and (*9*) of this subdivision and ventilated in accordance with subdivision (vi)(*b*) of this subdivision. These rooms shall be used for no other purpose.

(c) Calcium carbide in excess of 5,000 pounds shall be stored in one-story buildings without cellar or basement and used for no other purpose, or in outside generator houses. If the storage building is of noncombustible construction, it may adjoin other one-story buildings if separated therefrom by unpierced firewalls; if it is detached less than 10 feet from such building or buildings, there shall be no opening in any of the mutually exposing sides of such buildings within 10 feet. If the storage building is of combustible construction, it shall be at least 20 feet from any other one- or two-story building, and at least 30 feet from any other building exceeding two stories.

(iii) Storage outdoors.

(a) Calcium carbide in unopened metal containers may be stored outdoors.

(b) Carbide containers to be stored outdoors shall be examined to make sure that they are in good condition. Periodic reexaminations shall be made for rusting or other damage to a container that might affect its water or air tightness.

(c) The bottom tier of each row shall be placed on wooden planking or equivalent, so that the containers will not come in contact with the ground or ground water.

(d) Revoked

(e) Containers of carbide which have been in storage the longest shall be used first.

(8) Public exhibitions and demonstrations.

Revoked

[illegible] installation, and operation [illegible] welding and cutting equipment.

(1) General.

(i) Equipment selection. Welding equipment shall be chosen for safe application to the work to be done as specified in subparagraph (2) of this paragraph.

(ii) Installation. Welding equipment shall be installed safely as specified by subparagraph (3) of this paragraph.

(iii) Instruction. Workmen designated to operate arc welding equipment shall have been properly instructed and qualified to operate such equipment as specified in subparagraph (4) of this paragraph.

(2) Application of arc welding equipment.

(i) General. Assurance of consideration of safety in design is obtainable by choosing apparatus complying with the Requirements for Electric Arc-Welding Apparatus, NEMA EW—1—1962, National Electrical Manufacturers Association or the Safety Standard for Transformer-Type Arc-Welding Machines, ANSI C33.2—1956, Underwriters' Laboratories.

(ii) Environmental conditions.

(a) Standard machines for arc welding service shall be designed and constructed to carry their rated load with rated temperature rises where the temperature of the cooling air does not exceed 40° C. (104° F.) and where the altitude does not exceed 3,300 feet, and shall be suitable for operation in atmospheres containing gases, dust, and light rays produced by the welding arc.

(b) Unusual service conditions may exist, and in such circumstances machines shall be especially designed to safely meet the requirements of the service. Chief among these conditions are:

(1) Exposure to unusually corrosive fumes.

(2) Exposure to steam or excessive humidity.

(3) Exposure to excessive oil vapor.

(4) Exposure to flammable gases.

(5) Exposure to abnormal vibration or shock.

(6) Exposure to excessive dust.

(7) Exposure to weather.

(8) Exposure to unusual seacoast or shipboard conditions.

(iii) Voltage. The following limits shall not be exceeded.

(a) Alternating-current machines

(1) Manual arc welding and cutting—80 volts.

(2) Automatic (machine or mechanized) arc welding and cutting—100 volts.

(b) Direct-current machines

(1) Manual arc welding and cutting—100 volts.

(2) Automatic (machine or mechanized) arc welding and cutting—100 volts.

(c) When special welding and cutting processes require values of open circuit voltages higher than the above, means shall be provided to prevent the operator from making accidental contact with the high voltage by adequate insulation or other means.

(d) For a.c. welding under wet conditions or warm surroundings where perspiration is a factor, the use of reliable automatic controls for reducing no load voltage is recommended to reduce the shock hazard.

(iv) Design.

(a) A controller integrally mounted in an electric motor driven welder shall have capacity for carrying rated motor current, shall be capable of making and interrupting stalled rotor current of the motor, and may serve as the running overcurrent device if provided with the number of overcurrent units as specified by Subpart S of this part.

(b) On all types of arc welding machines, control apparatus shall be enclosed except for the operating wheels, levers, or handles.

(c) Input power terminals, tap change devices and live metal parts connected to input circuits shall be completely enclosed and accessible only by means of tools.

(d) Terminals for welding leads should be protected from accidental electrical contact by personnel or by metal objects i.e., vehicles, crane hooks, etc. Protection may be obtained by use of: dead-front receptacles for plug connections; recessed openings with nonremovable hinged covers; heavy insulating sleeving or taping or other equivalent electrical and mechanical protection. If a welding lead terminal which is intended to be used exclusively for connection to the work is connected to the grounded enclosure, it must be done by a conductor at least two AWG sizes smaller than the grounding conductor and the terminal shall be marked to indicate that it is grounded.

(e) No connections for portable control devices such as push buttons to be carried by the operator shall be connected to an a.c. circuit of higher than 120 volts. Exposed metal parts of portable control devices operating on circuits above 50 volts shall be grounded by a grounding conductor in the control cable.

(f) Auto transformers or a.c. reactors shall not be used to draw welding current directly from any a.c. power source having a voltage exceeding 80 volts.

(3) Installation of arc welding equipment.

(i) General. Installation including power supply shall be in accordance with the requirements of Subpart S of this part.

(ii) Grounding.

(a) The frame or case of the welding machine (except engine-driven machines shall be grounded under the conditions and according to the methods prescribed in Subpart S of this part.

(b) Conduits containing electrical conductors shall not be used for completing a work-lead circuit. Pipelines shall not be used as a permanent part of a work-lead circuit, but may be used during construction, extension or repair providing current is not carried through threaded joints, flanged bolted joints, or caulked joints and that special precautions are used to avoid sparking at connection of the work-lead cable.

(c) Chains, wire ropes, cranes, hoists, and elevators shall not be used to carry welding current.

(d) Where a structure, conveyor, or fixture is regularly employed as a welding current return circuit, joints shall be bonded or provided with adequate current collecting devices.

(e) All ground connections shall be checked to determine that they are mechanically strong and electrically adequate for the required current.

(iii) Supply connections and conductors.

(a) A disconnecting switch or controller shall be provided at or near each welding machine which is not equipped with such a switch or controller mounted as an integral part of the machine. The switch shall be in accordance with Subpart S of this part. Overcurrent protection shall be provided as specified in Subpart S of this part. A disconnect switch with overload protection or equivalent disconnect and protection means, permitted by Subpart S of this part, shall be provided for each outlet intended for connection to a portable welding machine.

(b) For individual welding machines, the rated current-carrying capacity of the supply conductors shall be not less than the rated primary current of the welding machines.

(c) For groups of welding machines, the rated current-carrying capacity of conductors may be less than the sum of the rated primary currents of the welding machines supplied. The conductor rating shall be determined in each case according to the machine loading based on the use to be made of each welding machine and the allowance permissible in the event that all the welding machines supplied by the conductors will not be in use at the same time.

(d) In operations involving several welders on one structure, d.c. welding process requirements may require the use of both polarities; or supply circuit limitations for a.c. welding may require distribution of machines among the phases of the supply circuit. In such cases no load voltages between electrode holders will be 2 times normal in d.c. or 1, 1.41, 1.73, or 2 times normal on a.c. machines. Similar voltage differences will exist if both a.c. and d.c. welding are done on the same structure.

(1) All d.c. machines shall be connected with the same polarity.

(2) All a.c. machines shall be connected to the same phase of the supply circuit and with the same instantaneous polarity.

(4) Operation and maintenance.

(i) General. Workmen assigned to operate or maintain arc welding equipment shall be acquainted with the requirements of subparagraphs (b), (d), (e), and (f) of this section; if doing gas-shielded arc welding, also Recommended Safe Practices for Gas-Shielded Arc Welding, A6.1–1966, American Welding Society.

(ii) Machine hook up. Before starting operations all connections to the machine shall be checked to make certain they are properly made. The work lead shall be firmly attached to the work; magnetic work clamps shall be freed from adherent metal particles of spatter on contact surfaces. Coiled welding cable shall be spread out before use to avoid serious overheating and damage to insulation.

(iii) Grounding. Grounding of the welding machine frame shall be checked. Special attention shall be given to safety ground connections of portable machines.

(iv) Leaks. There shall be no leaks of cooling water, shielding gas or engine fuel.

(v) Switches. It shall be determined that proper switching equipment for shutting down the machine is provided.

(vi) Manufacturers' instructions. Printed rules and instructions covering operation of equipment supplied by the manufacturers shall be strictly followed.

(vii) Electrode holders. Electrode holders when not in use shall be so placed that they cannot make electrical contact with persons, conducting objects, fuel or compressed gas tanks.

(viii) Electric shock. Cables with splices within 10 feet of the holder shall not be used. The welder should not coil or loop welding electrode cable around parts of his body.

(ix) Maintenance.

(a) The operator should report any equipment defect or safety hazard to his supervisor and the use of the equipment shall be discontinued until its safety has been assured. Repairs shall be made only by qualified personnel.

(b) Machines which have become wet shall be thoroughly dried and tested before being used.

(c) Cables with damaged insulation or exposed bare conductors shall be replaced. Joining lengths of work and electrode cables shall be done by the use of connecting means specifically intended for the purpose. The connecting means shall have insulation adequate for the service conditions.

(c) Installation and operation of resistance welding equipment.

(1) General.

(i) Installation. All equipment shall be installed by a qualified electrician in conformance with Subpart S of this part. There shall be a safety-type disconnecting switch or a circuit breaker or circuit interrupter to open each power circuit to the machine, conveniently located at or near the machine, so that the power can be shut off when the machine or its controls are to be serviced.

(ii) Thermal protection. Ignitron tubes used in resistance welding equipment shall be equipped with a thermal protection switch.

(iii) Personnel. Workmen designated to operate resistance welding equipment shall have been properly instructed and judged competent to operate such equipment.

(iv) Guarding. Controls of all automatic or air and hydraulic clamps shall be arranged or guarded to prevent the operator from accidentally activating them.

(2) Spot and seam welding machines (nonportable).

(i) Voltage. All external weld initiating control circuits shall operate on low voltage, not over 120 volts, for the safety of the operators.

(ii) Capacitor welding. Stored energy or capacitor discharge type of resistance welding equipment and control panels involving high voltage (over 550 volts) shall be suitably insulated and protected by complete enclosures, all doors of which shall be provided with suitable interlocks and contacts wired into the control circuit (similar to elevator interlocks). Such interlocks or contacts shall be so designed as to effectively interrupt power and short circuit all capacitors when the door or panel is open. A manually operated switch or suitable positive device shall be installed, in addition to the mechanical interlocks or contacts, as an added safety measure assuring absolute discharge of all capacitors.

(iii) Interlocks. All doors and access panels of all resistance welding machines and control panels shall be kept locked and interlocked to prevent access, by unauthorized persons, to live portions of the equipment.

(iv) Guarding. All press welding machine operations, where there is a possibility of the operator's fingers being under the point of operation, shall be effectively guarded by the use of a device such as an electronic eye safety circuit, two hand controls or protection similar to that prescribed for punch press operation, § 1910.217. All chains, gears, operating bus linkage, and belts shall be protected by adequate guards, in accordance with § 1910.219.

(v) Shields. The hazard of flying sparks shall be, wherever practical, eliminated by installing a shield guard of safety glass or suitable fire-resistant plastic at the point of operation. Additional shields or curtains shall be installed as necessary to protect passing persons from flying sparks. (See paragraph (e)(2)(i)(*c*) of this section.)

(vi) Foot switches. All foot switches shall be guarded to prevent accidental operation of the machine.

(vii) Stop buttons. Two or more safety emergency stop buttons shall be provided on all special multispot welding machines, including 2-post and 4-post weld presses.

(viii) Safety pins. On large machines, four safety pins with plugs and receptacles (one in each corner) shall be provided so that when safety pins are removed and inserted in the ram or platen, the press becomes inoperative.

(ix) Grounding. Where technically practical, the secondary of all welding transformers used in multispot, projection and seam welding machines shall be grounded. This may be done by permanently grounding one side of the welding secondary current circuit. Where not technically practical, a center tapped grounding reactor connected across the secondary or the use of a safety disconnect switch in conjunction with the welding control are acceptable alternates. Safety disconnect shall be arranged to open both sides of the line when welding current is not present.

(3) Portable welding machines.

(i) Counterbalance. All portable welding guns shall have suitable counterbalanced devices for supporting the guns, including cables, unless the design of the gun or fixture makes counterbalancing impractical or unnecessary.

(ii) Safety chains. All portable welding guns, transformers and related equipment that is suspended from overhead structures, eye beams, trolleys, etc. shall be equipped with safety chains or cables. Safety chains or cables shall be capable of supporting the total shock load in the event of failure of any component of the supporting system.

(iii) Clevis. Each clevis shall be capable of supporting the total shock load of the suspended equipment in the event of trolley failure.

(iv) Switch guards. All initiating switches, including retraction and dual schedule switches, located on the portable welding gun shall be equipped with suitable guards capable of preventing accidental initiation through contact with fixturing, operator's clothing, etc. Initiating switch voltage shall not exceed 24 volts.

(v) Moving holder. The movable holder, where it enters the gun frame, shall have sufficient clearance to prevent the shearing of fingers carelessly placed on the operating movable holder.

(vi) Grounding. The secondary and case of all portable welding transformers shall be grounded. Secondary grounding may be by center tapped secondary or by a center tapped grounding reactor connected across the secondary.

(4) Flash welding equipment.

(i) Ventilation and flash guard. Flash welding machines shall be equipped with a hood to control flying flash. In cases of high production, where materials may contain a film of oil and where toxic elements and metal fumes are given off, ventilation shall be provided in accordance with paragraph (f) of this section.

(ii) Fire curtains. For the protection of the operators of nearby equipment, fire-resistant curtains or suitable shields shall be set up around the machine and in such a manner that the operators movements are not hampered.

(5) Hazards and precautions. Revoked

(6) Maintenance. Periodic inspection shall be made by qualified maintenance personnel, and a certification record maintained. The certification record shall include the date of inspection, the signature of the person who performed the inspection and the serial number, or other identifier, for the equipment inspected. The operator shall be instructed to report any equipment defects to his supervisor and the use of the equipment shall be discontinued until safety repairs have been completed.

[51 F.R. 34562, September 29, 1986]

(d) Fire prevention and protection.

(1) Basic precautions. For elaboration of these basic precautions and of the special precautions of subparagraph (2) of this paragraph as well as a delineation of the fire protection and prevention responsibilities of welders and cutters, their supervisors (including outside contractors) and those in management on whose property cutting and welding is to be performed, see Standard for Fire Prevention in Use of Cutting and Welding Processes, NFPA Standard 51B, 1962. The basic precautions for fire prevention in welding or cutting work are:

(i) Fire hazards. If the object to be welded or cut cannot readily be moved, all movable fire hazards in the vicinity shall be taken to a safe place.

(ii) Guards. If the object to be welded or cut cannot be moved and if all the fire hazards cannot be removed, then guards shall be used to confine the heat, sparks, and slag, and to protect the immovable fire hazards.

(iii) Restrictions. If the requirements stated in subdivision (i) and (ii) of this subdivision cannot be followed then welding and cutting shall not be performed.

(2) Special precautions. When the nature of the work to be performed falls within the scope of subdivision (ii) of this subdivision certain additional precautions may be necessary:

(i) Combustible material. Wherever there are floor openings or cracks in the flooring that cannot be closed, precautions shall be taken so that no readily combustible materials on the floor below will be exposed to sparks which might drop through the floor. The same precautions shall be observed with regard to cracks or holes in walls, open doorways and open or broken windows.

(ii) Fire extinguishers. Suitable fire extinguishing equipment shall be maintained in a state of readiness for instant use. Such equipment may consist of pails of water, buckets of sand, hose or portable extinguishers depending upon the nature and quantity of the combustible material exposed.

(iii) Fire watch.

(a) Fire watchers shall be required whenever welding or cutting is performed in locations where other than a minor fire might develop, or any of the following conditions exist:

(1) Appreciable combustible material, in building construction or contents, closer than 35 feet to the point of operation.

(2) Appreciable combustibles are more than 35 feet away but are easily ignited by sparks.

(3) Wall or floor openings within a 35-foot radius expose combustible material in adjacent areas including concealed spaces in walls or floors.

(4) Combustible materials are adjacent to the opposite side of metal partitions, walls, ceilings, or roofs and are likely to be ignited by conduction or radiation.

(b) Fire watchers shall have fire extinguishing equipment readily available and be trained in its use. They shall be familiar with facilities for sounding an alarm in the event of a fire. They shall watch for fire in all exposed areas, try to extinguish them only when obviously within the capacity of the equipment available, or otherwise sound the alarm. A fire watch shall be maintained for at least a half hour after completion of welding or cutting operations to detect and extinguish possible smoldering fires.

(iv) Authorization. Before cutting or welding is permitted, the area shall be inspected by the individual responsible for authorizing cutting and welding operations. He shall designate precautions to be followed in granting authorization to proceed preferably in the form of a written permit.

(v) Floors. Where combustible materials such as paper clippings, wood shavings, or textile fibers are on the floor, the floor shall be swept clean for a radius of 35 feet. Combustible floors shall be kept wet, covered with damp sand, or protected by fire-resistant shields. Where floors have been wet down, personnel operating arc welding or cutting equipment shall be protected from possible shock.

(vi) Prohibited areas. Cutting or welding shall not be permitted in the following situations:

(a) In areas not authorized by management.

(b) In sprinklered buildings while such protection is impaired.

(c) In the presence of explosive atmospheres (mixtures of flammable gases, vapors, liquids, or dusts with air), or explosive atmospheres that may develop inside uncleaned or improperly prepared tanks or equipment which have previously contained such materials, or that may develop in areas with an accumulation of combustible dusts.

(d) In areas near the storage of large quantities of exposed, readily ignitible materials such as bulk sulfur, baled paper, or cotton.

(vii) Relocation of combustibles. Where practicable, all combustibles shall be relocated at least 35 feet from the work site. Where relocation is impracticable, combustibles shall be protected with flameproofed covers or otherwise shielded with metal or asbestos guards or curtains.

(viii) Ducts. Ducts and conveyor systems that might carry sparks to distant combustibles shall be suitably protected or shut down.

(ix) Combustible walls. Where cutting or welding is done near walls, partitions, ceiling or roof of combustible construction fire-resistant shields or guards shall be provided to prevent ignition.

(x) Noncombustible walls. If welding is to be done on a metal wall, partition, ceiling or roof, precautions shall be taken to prevent ignition of combustibles on the other side, due to conduction or radiation, preferably by relocating combustibles. Where combustibles are not relocated, a fire watch on the opposite side from the work shall be provided.

(xi) Combustible cover. Welding shall not be attempted on a metal partition, wall, ceiling or roof having a combustible covering nor on walls or partitions of combustible sandwich-type panel construction.

(xii) Pipes. Cutting or welding on pipes or other metal in contact with combustible walls, partitions, ceilings or roofs shall not be undertaken if the work is close enough to cause ignition by conduction.

(xiii) Management. Management shall recognize its responsibility for the safe usage of cutting and welding equipment on its property and:

(a) Based on fire potentials of plant facilities, establish areas for cutting and welding, and establish procedures for cutting and welding, in other areas.

(b) Designate an individual responsible for authorizing cutting and welding operations in areas not specifically designed for such processes.

(c) Insist that cutters or welders and their supervisors are suitably trained in the safe operation of their equipment and the safe use of the process.

(d) Advise all contractors about flammable materials or hazardous conditions of which they may not be aware.

(xiv) Supervisor. The Supervisor:

(a) Shall be responsible for the safe handling of the cutting or welding equipment and the safe use of the cutting or welding process.

(b) Shall determine the combustible materials and hazardous areas present or likely to be present in the work location.

(c) Shall protect combustibles from ignition by the following:

(1) Have the work moved to a location free from dangerous combustibles.

(2) If the work cannot be moved, have the combustibles moved to a safe distance from the work or have the combustibles properly shielded against ignition.

(3) See that cutting and welding are so scheduled that plant operations that might expose combustibles to ignition are not started during cutting or welding.

(d) Shall secure authorization for the cutting or welding operations from the designated management representative.

(e) Shall determine that the cutter or welder secures his approval that conditions are safe before going ahead.

(f) Shall determine that fire protection and extinguishing equipment are properly located at the site.

(g) Where fire watches are required, he shall see that they are available at the site.

(xv) Fire prevention precautions. Cutting or welding shall be permitted only in areas that are or have been made fire safe. When work cannot be moved practically, as in most construction work, the area shall be made safe by removing combustibles or protecting combustibles from ignition sources.

(3) Welding or cutting containers.

(i) Used containers. No welding, cutting, or other hot work shall be performed on used drums, barrels, tanks or other containers until they have been cleaned so thoroughly as to make absolutely certain that there are no flammable materials present or any substances such as greases, tars, acids, or other materials which when subjected to heat, might produce flammable or toxic vapors. Any pipe lines or connections to the drum or vessel shall be disconnected or blanked.

(ii) Venting and purging. All hollow spaces, cavities or containers shall be vented to permit the escape of air or gases before preheating, cutting or welding. Purging with inert gas is recommended.

(4) Confined spaces.

(i) Accidental contact. When arc welding is to be suspended for any substantial period of time, such as during lunch or overnight, all electrodes shall be removed from the holders and the holders carefully located so that accidental contact cannot occur and the machine be disconnected from the power source.

(ii) Torch valve. In order to eliminate the possibility of gas escaping through leaks or improperly closed valves, when gas welding or cutting, the torch valves shall be closed and the gas supply to the torch positively shutoff at some point outside the confined area whenever the torch is not to be used for a substantial period of time, such as during lunch hour or overnight. Where practicable, the torch and hose shall also be removed from the confined space.

(e) Protection of personnel.

(1) General.

(i) Railing. A welder or helper working on platforms, scaffolds, or runways shall be protected against falling. This may be accomplished by the use of railings, safety belts, life lines, or some other equally effective safeguards.

(ii) Welding cable. Welders shall place welding cable and other equipment so that it is clear of passageways, ladders, and stairways.

(2) Eye protection.

(i) Selection.

(a) Helmets or hand shields shall be used during all arc welding or arc cutting operations, excluding submerged arc welding. Helpers or attendants shall be provided with proper eye protection.

(b) Goggles or other suitable eye protection shall be used during all gas welding or oxygen cutting operations. Spectacles without side shields, with suitable filter lenses are permitted for use during gas welding operations on light work, for torch brazing or for inspection.

(c) All operators and attendants of resistance welding or resistance brazing equipment shall use transparent face shields or goggles, depending on the particular job, to protect their faces or eyes, as required.

(d) Eye protection in the form of suitable goggles shall be provided where needed for brazing operations not covered in *(a)*, *(b)*, and *(c)* of this subdivision.

(ii) Specifications for protectors.

(a) Helmets and hand shields shall be made of a material which is an insulator for heat and electricity. Helmets, shields and goggles shall be not readily flammable and shall be capable of withstanding sterilization.

(b) Helmets and hand shields shall be arranged to protect the face, neck and ears from direct radiant energy from the arc.

(c) Helmets shall be provided with filter plates and cover plates designed for easy removal.

(d) All parts shall be constructed of a material which will not readily corrode or discolor the skin.

(e) Goggles shall be ventilated to prevent fogging of the lenses as much as practicable.

(f) Removed

(g) All glass for lenses shall be tempered, substantially free from striae, air bubbles, waves and other flaws. Except when a lens is ground to provide proper optical correction for defective vision, the front and rear surfaces of lenses and windows shall be smooth and parallel.

(h) Lenses shall bear some permanent distinctive marking by which the source and shade may be readily identified.

(i) The following is a guide for the selection of the proper shade numbers. These recommendations may be varied to suit the individual's needs.

Welding operation	*Shade No.*
Shielded metal-arc welding—1/16-, 3/32-, 1/8-, 5/32-inch electrodes	10
Gas-shielded arc welding (nonferrous)—1/16-, 3/32-, 1/8-, 5/32-inch electrodes	11
Gas-shielded arc welding (ferrous)—1/16-, 3/32-, 1/8-, 5/32-inch electrodes	12
Shielded metal-arc welding:	
3/16-, 7/32-, 1/4-inch electrodes	12
5/16-, 3/8-inch electrodes	14
Atomic hydrogen welding	10–14
Carbon arc welding	14
Soldering	2

Welding operation	*Shade No.*
Torch brazing	3 or 4
Light cutting, up to 1 inch	3 or 4
Medium cutting, 1 inch to 6 inches	4 or 5
Heavy cutting, 6 inches and over	5 or 6
Gas welding (light) up to 1/8 inch	4 or 5
Gas welding (medium) 1/8 inch to 1/2 inch	5 or 6
Gas welding (heavy) 1/2 inch and over	6 or 8

NOTE: In gas welding or oxygen cutting where the torch produces a high yellow light, it is desirable to use a filter or lens that absorbs the yellow or sodium line in the visible light of the operation.

(j) All filter lenses and plates shall meet the test for transmission of radiant energy prescribed in ANSI Z87.1—1968—American National Standard Practice for Occupational and Educational Eye and Face Protection.

(iii) Protection from arc welding rays. Where the work permits, the welder should be enclosed in an individual booth painted with a finish of low reflectivity such as zinc oxide (an important factor for absorbing ultraviolet radiations) and lamp black, or shall be enclosed with noncombustible screens similarly painted. Booths and screens shall permit circulation of air at floor level. Workers or other persons adjacent to the welding areas shall be protected from the rays by noncombustible or flameproof screens or shields or shall be required to wear appropriate goggles.

(3) Protective clothing.

(i) General requirements. Employees exposed to the hazards created by welding, cutting, or brazing operations shall be protected by personal protective equipment in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.132. Appropriate protective clothing required for any welding operation will vary with the size, nature and location of the work to be performed.

(ii) Specified protective clothing. Revoked

(4) Work in confined spaces.

(i) General. As used herein confined space is intended to mean a relatively small or restricted space such as a tank, boiler, pressure vessel, or small compartment of a ship.

(ii) Ventilation. Ventilation is a prerequisite to work in confined spaces. For ventilation requirements see paragraph (f) of this section.

(iii) Securing cylinders and machinery. When welding or cutting is being performed in any confined spaces the gas cylinders and welding machines shall be left on the outside. Before operations are started, heavy portable equipment mounted on wheels shall be securely blocked to prevent accidental movement.

(iv) Lifelines. Where a welder must enter a confined space through a manhole or other small opening, means shall be provided for quickly removing him in case of emergency. When safety belts and lifelines are used for this purpose they shall be so attached to the welder's body that his body cannot be jammed in a small exit opening. An attendant with a preplanned rescue procedure shall be stationed outside to observe the welder at all times and be capable of putting rescue operations into effect.

(v) Electrode removal. When arc welding is to be suspended for any substantial period of time, such as during lunch or overnight, all electrodes shall be removed from the holders and the holders carefully located so that accidental contact cannot occur and the machine disconnected from the power source.

(vi) Gas cylinder shutoff. In order to eliminate the possibility of gas escaping through leaks or improperly closed valves, when gas welding or cutting, the torch valves shall be closed and the fuel-gas and oxygen supply to the torch positively shut off at some point outside the confined area whenever the torch is not to be used for a substantial period of time, such as during lunch hour or overnight. Where practicable the torch and hose shall also be removed from the confined space.

(vii) Warning sign. After welding operations are completed, the welder shall mark the hot metal or provide some other means of warning other workers.

(f) Health protection and ventilation.

(1) General.

(i) Contamination. The requirements in this paragraph have been established on the basis of the following three factors in arc and gas welding which govern the amount of contamination to which welders may be exposed:

(a) Dimensions of space in which welding is to be done (with special regard to height of ceiling).

(b) Number of welders.

(c) Possible evolution of hazardous fumes, gases, or dust according to the metals involved.

(ii) Ventilation. Removed

(iii) Screens. When welding must be performed in a space entirely screened on all sides, the screens shall be so arranged that no serious restriction of ventilation exists. It is desirable to have the screens so mounted that they are about 2 feet above the floor unless the work is performed at so low a level that the screen must be extended nearer to the floor to protect nearby workers from the glare of welding.

(iv) Maximum allowable concentration. Local exhaust or general ventilating systems shall be provided and arranged to keep the amount of toxic fumes, gases, or dusts below the maximum allowable concentration as specified in § 1910.1000.

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 2975.]

(v) Precautionary labels. A number of potentially hazardous materials are employed in fluxes, coatings, coverings, and filler metals used in welding and cutting or are released to the atmosphere during welding and cutting. These include but are not limited to the materials itemized in paragraphs (f)(5) through (12) of this section. The suppliers of welding materials shall determine the hazard, if any, associated with the use of their materials in welding, cutting, etc.

(a) All filler metals and fusible granular materials shall carry the following notice, as a minimum, on tags, boxes, or other containers:

CAUTION

Welding may produce fumes and gases hazardous to health. Avoid breathing these fumes and gases. Use adequate ventilation. See ANSI Z49.1-1967 Safety in Welding and Cutting published by the American Welding Society.

(b) Brazing (welding) filler metals containing cadmium in significant amounts shall carry the following notice on tags, boxes, or other containers:

WARNING

CONTAINS CADMIUM—POISONOUS FUMES MAY BE FORMED ON HEATING

Do not breathe fumes. Use only with adequate ventilation such as fume collectors, exhaust ventilators, or air-supplied respirators. See ANSI Z49.1-1967.

If chest pain, cough, or fever develops after use, call physician immediately.

(c) Brazing and gas welding fluxes containing fluorine compounds shall have a cautionary wording to indicate that they contain fluorine compounds. One such cautionary wording recommended by the American Welding Society for brazing and gas welding fluxes reads as follows:

CAUTION

CONTAINS FLUORIDES

This flux when heated gives off fumes that may irritate eyes, nose and throat.

1. Avoid fumes—use only in well-ventilated spaces.
2. Avoid contact of flux with eyes or skin.
3. Do not take internally.

(2) Ventilation for general welding and cutting.

(i) General. Mechanical ventilation shall be provided when welding or cutting is done on metals not covered in subparagraphs (5) through (12) of this paragraph. (For specific materials, see the ventilation requirements of subparagraphs (5) through (12) of this paragraph.)

(a) In a space of less than 10,000 cubic feet per welder.

(b) In a room having a ceiling height of less than 16 feet.

(c) In confined spaces or where the welding space contains partitions, balconies, or other structural barriers to the extent that they significantly obstruct cross ventilation.

(ii) Minimum rate. Such ventilation shall be at the minimum rate of 2,000 cubic feet per minute per welder, except where local exhaust hoods and booths as per subparagraph (3) of this paragraph, or airline respirators approved by the U.S. Bureau of Mines for such purposes are provided. Natural ventilation is considered sufficient for welding or cutting operations where the restrictions in subdivision (i) of this subdivision are not present.

(3) Local exhaust hoods and booths. Mechanical local exhaust ventilation may be by means of either of the following:

(i) Hoods. Freely movable hoods intended to be placed by the welder as near as practicable to the work being welded and provided with a rate of airflow sufficient to maintain a velocity in the direction of the hood of 100 linear feet per minute in the zone of welding when the hood is at its most remote distance from the point of welding. The rates of ventilation required to accomplish this control velocity using a 3-inch wide flanged suction opening are shown in the following table:

Welding zone	Minimum air flow [1] cubic feet/minutes	Duct diameter, inches [2]
4 to 6 inches from arc or torch	150	3
6 to 8 inches from arc or torch	275	3½
8 to 10 inches from arc or torch	425	4½
10 to 12 inches from arc or torch	600	5½

[1] When brazing with cadmium bearing materials or when cutting on such materials increased rates of ventilation may be required.

[2] Nearest half-inch duct diameter based on 4,000 feet per minute velocity in pipe.

(ii) Fixed enclosure. A fixed enclosure with a top and not less than two sides which surround the welding or cutting operations and with a rate of airflow sufficient to maintain a velocity away from the welder of not less than 100 linear feet per minute.

(4) Ventilation in confined spaces.

(i) Air replacement. All welding and cutting operations carried on in confined spaces shall be adequately ventilated to prevent the accumulation of toxic materials or possible oxygen deficiency. This applies not only to the welder but also to helpers and other personnel in the immediate vicinity. All air replacing that withdrawn shall be clean and respirable.

(ii) Airline respirators. In such circumstances where it is impossible to provide such ventilation, airline respirators or hose masks approved by the U.S. Bureau of Mines for this purpose shall be used.

(iii) Self-contained units. In areas immediately hazardous to life, hose masks with blowers or self-contained breathing equipment shall be used. The breathing equipment shall be approved by the U.S. Bureau of Mines.

(iv) Outside helper. Where welding operations are carried on in confined spaces and where welders and helpers are provided with hose masks, hose masks with blowers or self-contained breathing equipment approved by the U.S. Bureau of Mines, a worker shall be stationed on the outside of such confined spaces to insure the safety of those working within.

(v) Oxygen for ventilation. Oxygen shall never be used for ventilation.

(5) Fluorine compounds.

(i) General. In confined spaces, welding or cutting involving fluxes, coverings, or other materials which contain fluorine compounds shall be done in accordance with subparagraph (4) of this paragraph. A fluorine compound is one that contains fluorine, as an element in chemical combination, not as a free gas.

(ii) Maximum allowable concentration. The need for local exhaust ventilation or airline respirators for welding or cutting in other than confined spaces will depend upon the individual circumstances. However, experience has shown such protection to be desirable for fixed-location production welding and for all production welding on stainless steels. Where air samples taken at the welding location indicate that the fluorides liberated are below the maximum allowable concentration, such protection is not necessary.

(6) Zinc.

(i) Confined spaces. In confined spaces welding or cutting involving zinc-bearing base or filler metals or metals coated with zinc-bearing materials shall be done in accordance with subparagraph (4) of this paragraph.

(ii) Indoors. Indoors, welding or cutting involving zinc-bearing base or filler metals coated with zinc-bearing materials shall be done in accordance with subparagraph (3) of this paragraph.

(7) Lead.

(i) Confined spaces. In confined spaces, welding involving lead-base metals (erroneously called lead-burning) shall be done in accordance with subparagraph (4) of this paragraph.

(ii) Indoors. Indoors, welding involving lead-base metals shall be done in accordance with subparagraph (3) of this paragraph.

(iii) Local ventilaton. In confined spaces or indoors, welding or cutting involving metals containing lead, other than as an impurity, or involving metals coated with lead-bearing materials, including paint shall be done using local exhaust ventilation or airline respirators. Outdoors such operations shall bedone using respiratory protective equipment approved by the U.S. Bureau of Mines for such purposes. In all cases, workers in the immediate vicinity of the cutting operation shall be protected as necessary by local exhaust ventilation or airline respirators.

(8) Beryllium. Welding or cutting indoors, outdoors, or in confined spaces involving beryllium-containing base or filler metals shall be done using local exhaust ventilation and airline respirators unless atmospheric tests under the most adverse conditions have established that the workers' exposure is within the acceptable concentrations defined by § 1910.1000. In all cases, workers in the immediate vicinity of the welding or cutting operations shall be protected as necessary by local exhaust ventilation or airline respirators.

(9) Cadmium.

(i) General. Welding or cutting indoors or in confined spaces involving cadmium-bearing or cadmium-coated base metals shall be done using local exhaust ventilation or airline respirators unless atmospheric tests under the most adverse conditions have established that the workers' exposure is within the acceptable concentrations defined by § 1910.1000. Outdoors such operations shall be done using respiratory protective equipment such as fume respirators approved by the U.S. Bureau of Mines for such purposes.

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975.]

(ii) Confined space. Welding (brazing) involving cadmium-bearing filler metals shall be done using ventilation as prescribed in paragraph (3) or (4) of this paragraph if the work is to be done in a confined space.

(10) Mercury. Welding or cutting indoors or in a confined space involving metals coated with mercury-bearing materials including paint, shall be done using local exhaust ventilation or airline respirators unless atmospheric tests under the most adverse conditions have established that the workers' exposure is within the acceptable concentrations defined by § 1910.1000. Outdoors such operations shall be done using respiratory protective equipment approved by the U.S. Bureau of Mines for such purposes.

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975.]

(11) Cleaning compounds.

(i) Manufacturer's instructions. In the use of cleaning materials, because of their possible toxicity or flammability, appropriate precautions such as manufacturers instructions shall be followed.

(ii) Degreasing. Degreasing or other cleaning operations involving chlorinated hydrocarbons shall be so located that no vapors from these operations will reach or be drawn into the atmosphere surrounding any welding operation. In addition, trichloroethylene and perchlorethylene should be kept out of atmospheres penetrated by the ultraviolet radiation of gas-shielded welding operations.

(12) Cutting of stainless steels. Oxygen cutting, using either a chemical flux or iron powder or gas-shielded arc cutting of stainless steel, shall be done using mechanical ventilation adequate to remove the fumes generated.

(13) First-aid equipment. First-aid equipment shall be available at all times. All injuries shall be reported as soon as possible for medical attention. First aid shall be rendered until medical attention can be provided.

(g) Industrial applications.

(1) Transmission pipeline.

(i) General. The requirements of paragraphs (b), (e), and (f) of this section shall be observed.

(ii) Field shop operations. Where field shop operations are involved for fabrication of fittings, river crossings, road crossings, and pumping and compressor stations the requirements of paragraphs (a), (b), (d), (e), and (f) of this section shall be observed.

(iii) Electric shock. When arc welding is performed in wet conditions, or under conditions of high humidity, special protection against electric shock shall be supplied.

(iv) Pressure testing. In pressure testing of pipelines, the workers and the public shall be protected against injury by the blowing out of closures or other pressure restraining devices. Also, protection shall be provided against expulsion of loose dirt that may have become trapped in the pipe.

(v) Construction standards. The welded construction of transmission pipelines shall be conducted in accordance with the Standard for Welding Pipe Lines and Related Facilities, API Std. 1104–1968.

(vi) Flammable substance lines. The connection, by welding, of branches to pipelines carrying flammable substances shall be performed in accordance with Welding or Hot Tapping on Equipment Containing Flammables, API Std. PSD No. 2201–1963.

(vii) X-ray inspection. The use of X-rays and radioactive isotopes for the inspection of welded pipeline joints shall be carried out in conformance with the American National Standard Safety Standard for Non-Medical X-ray and Sealed Gamma-Ray Sources, ANSI Z54.1–1963.

(2) Mechanical piping systems.

(i) General. The requirements of paragraphs (a), (b), (d), (e), and (f) of this section shall be observed.

(ii) X-ray inspection. The use of X-rays and radioactive isotopes for the inspection of welded piping joints shall be in conformance with the American National Standard Safety Standard for Non-Medical X-ray and Sealed Gamma-Ray Sources. ANSI Z54.1-1963.

1910.253—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

Sec.	*Source*
1910.251	ANSI Z49.1-1967, Safety in Welding and Cutting.
1910.252	(a) NFPA—51-1969, Welding and Cutting Oxygen Fuel Gas Systems.
	(b) ANSI Z-49.1 1967, Safety in Welding and Cutting.
	(c) NFPA 51B 1962, Cutting and Welding Processes.
	(d) 41 CFR 50-204.7.

1910.254—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

Specific standards of the following organizations have been referenced in this subpart. Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the issuing organizations. The names and addresses of the issuing organizations are as follows:

(a) American National Standards Institute (ANSI), 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

(b) National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), 60 Batterymarch Street, Boston, MA 02110.

(c) Compressed Gas Association, Inc., 500 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10036.

(d) American Petroleum Institute, 1801 K Street NW., Washington, DC 20006.

(e) American Welding Society, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.

(f) Rubber Manufacturers Association, 444 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10022.

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART R—SPECIAL INDUSTRIES

1910.261	Pulp, paper, and paperboard mills.
1910.262	Textiles.
1910.263	Bakery equipment.
1910.264	Laundry machinery and operations.
1910.265	Sawmills.
1910.266	Pulpwood logging.
1910.267	Agricultural operations.
1910.268	Telecommunications.
1910.272	Grain handling facilities.
1910.274	Sources of standards.
1910.275	Standards organizations.

Authority: Secs. 4, 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 12-71 (36 FR 8754), 8-76 (41 FR 25059) or 9-83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable.

Sections 1910.261, 1910.262, 1910.265, 1910.266, 1910.267, 1910.268, 1910.269, 1910.274 and 1910.275 also issued under 29 CFR Part 1911.

[53 F.R. 12122, April 12, 1988]

SUBPART R—SPECIAL INDUSTRIES

1910.261—PULP, PAPER, AND PAPERBOARD MILLS

(a) General requirements.

(1) Application. This section applies to establishments where pulp, paper, and paperboard are manufactured and converted. This section does not apply to logging and the transportation of logs to pulp, paper, and paperboard mills.

(2) Standards incorporated by reference. Standards covering issues of occupational safety and health which have general application without regard to any specific industry are incorporated by reference in paragraphs (b) through (m) of this section and in subparagraphs (3) and (4) of this paragraph and made applicable under this section. Such standards shall be construed according to the rules set forth in § 1910.5.

(3) General incorporation of standards. Establishments subject to this section shall comply with the following standards of the American National Standards Institute:

(i) Practice for Industrial Lighting, A11.1—1965 (R-1970).

(ii) Safety Requirements for Floor and Wall Openings, Railings, and Toe Boards, A12.1—1967.

(iii) Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems, A13.1—1956.

(iv) Safety Code for Portable Wood Ladders, A14.1—1968.

(v) Safety Code for Portable Metal Ladders, A14.2—1956.

(vi) Safety Code for Fixed Ladders, A14.3—1956.

(vii) Safety Code for Elevators, Dumbwaiters, and Moving Walks, A17.1—1965, including Supplements A17.1a—1967, A17.1b—1968, A17.1c—1969, and A17.1d—1970.

(viii) Practice for the Inspection of Elevators (Inspector's Manual), A17.2—1960, including Supplements A17.2a—1965 and A17.2b—1967.

(ix) Safety Code for Mechanical Power-Transmission Apparatus, B15.1—1953 (Reaffirmed 1958).

(x) Safety Code for Conveyors, Cableways, and Related Equipment, B20.1—1957.

(xi) Safety Code for Cranes, Derricks, and Hoists, B30.2—1943 (Reaffirmed 1952 and partially revised by B30.2.0—1967 and B30.5—1968).

(xii) Overhead and Gantry Cranes, B30.2.0—1967 (Partial Revision of B30.2—1943).

(xiii) Crawler, Locomotive, and Truck Cranes, B30.5—1968 (Partial Revision of B30.2—1943).

(xiv) Power Piping, B31.1.0—1967 and addenda B31.10a—1969. Fuel Gas Piping, B31.2—1968.

(xv) Safety Code for Powered Industrial Trucks, B56.1—1969.

(xvi) Identification of Gas-Mask Canisters, K13.1—1967.

(xvii) Safety Code for Woodworking Machinery, O1.1—1954 (Reaffirmed 1961).

(xviii) Requirements for Sanitation in Places of Employment, Z4.1—1968.

(xix) Safety Code for Ventilation and Operation of Open-Surface Tanks, Z9.1—1951.

(xx) Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems, Z9.2—1960.

(xxi) Prevention of Sulfur Fires and Explosions, Z12.12—1968.

(xxii) Method of Measurement of Real-Ear Attenuation of Ear Protectors at Threshold, Z24.22—1957.

(xxiii) Installation of Blower and Exhaust Systems for Dust, Stock, and Vapor Removal or Conveying, Z33.1—1961.

(xxiv) Specifications for Accident Prevention Signs, Z35.1—1968.

(xxv) Practice for Occupational and Educational Eye and Face Protection, Z87.1—1968 (Partial Revision of Z2.1—1959).

(xxvi) Practices for Respiratory Protection, Z88.2—1969.

(xxvii) Safety Requirements for Industrial Head Protection, Z89.1—1969.

(4) Other standards. The following standards shall be considered standards under this section:

(i) ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels, including addenda 1969.

(ii) Building Exits Code for Life Safety from Fire, NFPA 101—1970.

(iii) Safety in the Handling and Use of Explosives, IME Pamphlet No. 17, July 1960, Institute of Makers of Explosives.

(b) Safe practices.

(1) Guards. All driving mechanisms, power-transmission apparatus, and prime movers shall be constructed, guarded, and used in conformity with American National Standard B15.1—1963 (Reaffirmed 1958).

(2) Personal protective clothing and equipment. Foot protection, shin-guards, hard hats, noise attenuation devices, or other personal protective clothing and equipment shall be worn when the extent of the hazard is such as to warrant their use. Such equipment shall be worn whenever specifically required by other paragraphs of this section. All equipment shall be maintained in accordance with applicable American National Standards. Respirators, goggles, and protective masks, rubber gloves, rubber boots, and other such equipment shall be cleaned and disinfected before being used by another employee. Eye, head, respiratory, and ear protection, where specified, shall conform to American National Standards Z24.22—1957, Z87.1—1968, Z88.2—1969, and Z89.1—1969.

(3) Floors and platforms. Floors, platforms, and work surfaces shall be maintained in accordance with American National Standard A12.1—1967.

(4) Lockouts. Devices such as padlocks shall be provided for locking out the source of power at the main disconnect switch. Before any maintenance, inspection, cleaning, adjusting, or servicing of equipment (electrical, mechanical, or other) that requires entrance into or close contact with the machinery or equipment, the main power disconnect switch or valve, or both, controlling its source of power or flow of material, shall be locked out or blocked off with padlock, blank flange, or similar device.

(5) Vessel entering. Lifelines and safety harness shall be worn by anyone entering closed vessels, tanks, chip bins, and similar equipment, and a person shall be stationed outside in a position to handle the line and to summon assistance in case of emergency. The air in the vessels shall be tested for oxygen deficiency and the presence of both toxic and explosive gases and vapors, before entry into closed vessels, tanks, etc., is permitted. Self-contained air- or oxygen-supply masks shall be readily available in case of emergency. Work shall not be done on equipment under conditions where an injury would result if a valve were unexpectedly opened or closed unless the valve has been locked in a safe position.

(6) Industrial power trucks. All industrial power truck operations shall conform to American National Standard B56.1—1969. All forklift trucks shall be provided with overhead guards. All guards shall be designed in compliance with American National Standard B56.1—1969. Design requirements shall provide protection for the liquid petroleum tank.

(7) Emergency lighting. Emergency lighting shall be provided wherever it is necessary for employees to remain at their machines or stations to shut down equipment in case of power failure. Emergency lighting shall be provided at stairways and passageways or aisleways used by employees for emergency exit in case of power failure. Emergency lighting shall be provided in all plant first aid and medical facilities.

(c) Handling and storage of pulpwood and pulp chips.

(1) Handling pulpwood with forklift trucks. Where large forklift trucks, or lift trucks with clamjaws, are used in the yard, the operator's enclosed cab shall be provided with an escape hatch, whenever the hydraulic arm blocks escape through the side doors.

(2) Handling pulpwood with cranes or stackers.

(i) Where locomotive cranes are used for loading or unloading pulpwood, the pulpwood shall be piled so as to allow a clearance of not less than 24 inches between the pile and the end of the cab of any locomotive crane in use, when the cab is turned in any working position.

(ii) The minimum distance of the pulpwood pile from the centerline of a standard-gage track shall be maintained at not less than 8½ feet.

(iii) Logs shall be piled in an orderly and stable manner, with no projection into walkways or roadways.

(iv) Railroad cars shall not be spotted on tracks adjacent to the locomotive cranes unless a 24-inch clearance is maintained, as required in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph.

(v) The handling and storage of other materials shall conform to subdivisions (i) and (ii) of this subparagraph with respect to clearance.

(vi) Equipment and practices shall conform to American National Standards B30.2—1943 (Reaffirmed 1952) and B30.2.0—1967.

(vii) Personal protective equipment for such uses as foot, head, and eye protection shall be required for workers on a job basis.

(viii) No person shall be permitted to walk beneath a suspended load, bucket, or hook.

(3) Handling pulpwood from ships.

(i) Ladders and gangplanks with railings to boat docks shall meet the requirements of American National Standards A12.1—1967, A14.1—1968, A14.2—1956, and A14.3—1956, and shall be securely fastened in place.

(ii) The hatch tender shall be required to signal the hoisting engineer to move the load only after the men working in the hold are in the clear.

(iii) The air in the ship's hold, tanks, or closed vessels shall be tested for oxygen deficiency and for both toxic and explosive gases and vapors.

(4) Handling pulpwood from flatcars and all other railway cars.

(i) Railroad flatcars for the conveyance of pulpwood loaded parallel to the length of the car shall be equipped with safety-stake pockets.

(ii) Where pulpwood is loaded crosswise on a flatcar sufficient stakes of sizes not smaller than 4 by 4 inches shall be used to prevent the load from shifting.

(iii) When it is necessary to cut stakes, those on the unloading side should be partially cut through first, and then the binder wires cut on the opposite side. Wire cutters equipped with long extension handles shall be used. No person shall be permitted along the dumping side of the car after the stakes have been cut.

(iv) When steel straps without stakes are used, the steel straps shall be cut from a safe area to prevent employees from being struck by the falling logs.

(v) Flatcars and all other cars shall be chocked during unloading. Where equipment is not provided with hand brakes, rail clamping chocks shall be used.

(vi) A derail shall be used to prevent movement of other rail equipment into cars where persons are working.

(5) Handling pulpwood from trucks.

(i) Cutting of stakes and binder wires shall be done in accordance with subparagraph 4(iii) of this paragraph.

(ii) Where binder chain and steel stakes are used, the binder chains shall be released and the stakes tripped from the opposite side of the load spillage.

(iii) Where binder chains and crane slings are used, the crane slings shall be attached and taut before the binder chains are released. The hooker shall see that the helper is clear before signaling for the movement of the load.

(6) Handling pulp chips from railway cars.

(i) All cars shall be securely fastened in place and all employees in the clear before dumping is started.

(ii) Personal protective equipment for such uses as foot, head, and eye protection shall be provided, and employees shall wear the equipment when working in the woodyard. Ear protection shall be provided when the noise level may be harmful.

(7) Handling pulp chips from trucks and trailers.

(i) All trucks and trailers shall be securely fastened in place and all employees in the clear before dumping is started.

(ii) Personal protective equipment shall be in accordance with subparagraph (6)(ii) of this paragraph.

(8) Cranes.

(i) Crane boom and load capacities as specified by the manufacturer shall be posted in the cab of the crane in accordance with American National Standards B30.2—1943 (reaffirmed 1968) and B30.2.0—1967.

(ii) A safety device such as a heavy chain or cable at least equal in strength to the lifting cables shall be fastened to the boom and to the frame of the boom crane (if it is other than locomotive) at the base. Alternatively, a telescoping safety device shall be fastened to the boom and to the cab frame, so as to prevent the boom from snapping back over the cab in the event of lifting cable breakage.

(iii) A crane shall not be operated where any part thereof may come within 10 feet of overhead powerlines (or other overhead obstructions) unless the powerlines have been deenergized. The boom shall be painted bright yellow from and including the head sheave to a point 6 feet down the boom towards the cab.

(iv) Standard signals for the operation of cranes shall be established for all movements of the crane, in accordance with American National Standards B30.2—1943 (reaffirmed 1968) and B30.2.0—1967.

(v) Only one member of the crew shall be authorized to give signals to the crane operator.

(vi) All cranes shall be equipped with a suitable warning device such as a horn or whistle.

(vii) A sheave guard shall be provided beneath the head sheave of the boom.

(9) Traffic warning signs or signals.

(i) A flagman shall direct the movement of cranes or locomotives being moved across railroad tracks or roads, and at any points where the vision of the operator is restricted. The flagman must always remain in sight of the operator when the crane or locomotive is in motion. The blue flag policy shall be used to mark stationary cars day and night. This policy shall include marking the track in advance of the spotted cars (flag for daytime, light for darkness).

(ii) After cars are spotted for loading or unloading, warning flags or signs shall be placed in the center of the track at least 50 feet away from the cars and a derail set to protect workmen in the car.

(10) Illumination. Artificial illumination shall be provided when loading or unloading is performed after dark, in accordance with American National Standard A11.1—1965 (R—1970).

(11) Bridge or dock plates. The construction and use of bridge or dock plates shall conform to requirements of American National Standard B56.1—1969.

(12) Barking devices. When barking drums are employed in the yard, the requirements of paragraph (e)(12) of this section shall apply.

(13) Hand tools. Handles of wood hooks shall be locked to the shank to prevent them from rotating.

(14) Removal of pulpwood.

(i) The ends of a woodpile shall be properly sloped and cross-tiered into the pile. Upright poles shall not be used at the ends of woodpiles. To knock down wood from the woodpile, mechanical equipment shall be used to permit employees to keep in the clear of loosened wood.

(ii) If dynamite is used to loosen the pile, only authorized personnel shall be permitted to handle and discharge the explosive. An electric detonator is preferable for firing; if a fuse is used, it shall be an approved safety fuse with a burning rate of not less than 120 seconds per yard and a minimum length of 3 feet, in accordance with Safety in the Handling and Use of Explosives, IME Pamphlet No. 17, July 1960.

(15) Belt conveyors.

(i) The sides of the conveyor shall be constructed so that the wood will not fall off.

(ii) Where conveyors cross passageways or roadways, a horizontal platform shall be provided under the conveyor extending out from the sides of the conveyor a distance equal to 1½ times the length of the wood handled. The platform shall extend the width of the road plus 2 feet on each side and shall be kept free of wood and rubbish. The edges of the platform shall be provided with toeboards or other protection to prevent wood from falling, in accordance with American National Standard A12.1—1967.

(iii) All conveyors for pulpwood shall have the inrunning nips between chain and sprockets guarded; also, turning drums shall be guarded.

(iv) Every belt conveyor shall have an emergency stop cable extending the length of the conveyor so that it may be stopped from any location along the line, or conveniently located stop buttons within 10 feet of each work station, in accordance with American National Standard B20.1—1957.

(16) Signs. Where conveyors cross walkways or roadways in the yards, signs reading "Danger—Overhead Conveyor" or an equivalent warning shall be erected, in accordance with American National Standard Z35.1—1968.

(d) Handling and storage of raw materials other than pulpwood or pulp chips.

(1) Personal protective equipment.

(i) Whenever possible, all dust, fumes, and gases incident to handling materials shall be controlled at the source, in accordance with American National Standard Z9.2—1960. Where control at the source is not possible, respirators with goggles or protective masks shall be provided, and employees shall wear them when handling alum, clay, soda ash, lime, bleach powder, sulfur, chlorine, and similar materials, and when opening rag bales.

(ii) When handling liquid acid or alkali, workmen shall be provided with approved eye and face protection and protective clothing, in accordance with American National Standard Z87.1—1968.

(2) Clearance.

(i) When materials are being piled inside a building and upon platforms, an aisle clearance at least 3 feet greater than the widest truck in use shall be provided.

(ii) Baled paper and rags stored inside a building shall not be piled closer than 18 inches to walls, partitions, or sprinkler heads.

(3) Piling and unpiling pulp.

(i) Piles of wet lap pulp (unless palletized) shall be stepped back one-half the width of the sheet for each 8 feet of pile height. Sheets of pulp shall be interlapped to make the pile secure. Pulp shall not be piled over pipelines to jeopardize pipes, or so as to cause overloading of floors, or to within 18 inches below sprinkler heads.

(ii) Piles of pulp shall not be undermined when being unpiled.

(iii) Floor capacities shall be clearly marked on all floors.

(4) Chocking rolls.

(i) Removed

(ii) Where rolls are pyramided two or more high, chocks shall be installed between each roll on the floor and at every row Where pulp and paper rolls are stored on smooth floors in processing areas, rubber chocks with wooden core shall be used.

(iii) When rolls are decked two or more high, the bottom rolls shall be chocked on each side to prevent shifting in either direction.

(iv) Removed

(e) Preparing pulpwood.

(1) Gang and slasher saws. A guard shall be provided in front of all gang and slasher saws to protect workers from wood thrown by saws. A guard shall be placed over tail sprockets.

(2) Slasher tables. Saws shall be stopped and power switches shall be locked out and tagged whenever it is necessary for any person to be on the slasher table.

(3) Slasher drive belts, pulleys, and shafts. All belts, pulleys, and shafts shall be guarded in accordance with American National Standard B15.1—1955 (Reaffirmed 1958).

(4) Runway to the jack ladder. The runway from the pond or unloading dock to the table shall be protected with standard handrails and toeboards. Inclined portions shall have cleats or equivalent nonslip surfacing, in accordance with American National Standard A12.1—1967. Protective equipment shall be provided for persons working over water.

(5) Guards below table. Where not protected by the frame of the machine, the underside of the slasher saws shall be enclosed with guards.

(6) Conveyors. The requirements of paragraph (c)(15)(iv) of this section shall apply.

(7) Circular saws (not slasher saws). Saws shall be provided with standard guards, in accordance with American National Standard 01.1—1954 (Reaffirmed 1961).

(8) Barker feed. Each barker shall be equipped with a feed and turnover device which will make it unnecessary for the operator to hold a bolt or log by hand during the barking operation. Eye, ear, and head protection shall be provided for the operator, in accordance with paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(9) Guards. A guard shall be installed around barkers to confine flying particles, in accordance with American National Standard B15.1—1953 (Reaffirmed 1958).

(10) Stops. All control devices shall be locked out and tagged when knives are being changed.

(11) Speed governor. Water wheels, when directly connected to barker disks or grinders, shall be provided with speed governors, if operated with gate wide open.

(12) Continuous barking drums.

(i) When platforms or floors allow access to the sides of the drums, a standard railing shall be constructed around the drums. When two or more drums are arranged side by side, proper walkways with standard handrails shall be provided between each set, in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(ii) Sprockets and chains, gears, and trunnions shall have standard guards, in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(iii) Whenever it becomes necessary for a workman to go within a drum, the driving mechanism shall be locked and tagged, at the main disconnect switch, in accordance with paragraph (b)(4) of this section.

(13) Intermittent barking drums. In addition to motor switch, clutch, belt shifter, or other power disconnecting device, intermittent barking drums shall be equipped with a device which may be locked to prevent the drum from moving while it is being emptied or filled.

(14) Hydraulic barkers. Hydraulic barkers shall be enclosed with strong baffles at the inlet and the outlet. The operator shall be protected by at least five-ply laminated glass.

(15) Splitter block. The block upon or against which the wood is rested shall have a corrugated surface or other means provided that the wood will not slip. Wood to be split, and also the splitting block, shall be free of ice, snow, or chips. The operator shall be provided with eye and foot protection. A clear and unobstructed view shall be maintained between equipment and workers around the block and the workers' help area.

(16) Power control. Power for the operation of the splitter shall be controlled by a clutch or equivalent device.

(17) Knot cleaners. The operators of knot cleaners of the woodpecker type shall wear eye protection equipment.

(18) Chipper spout. The feed system to the chipper spout shall be arranged in such a way that the operator does not stand in a direct line with the chipper spout. All chipper spouts shall be enclosed to a height of at least 42 inches from the floor or operator's platform. When other protection is not sufficient, the operator shall wear a safety belt line. The safety belt line shall be fastened in such a manner as to make it impossible for the operator to fall into the throat of the chipper. Ear protection equipment shall be worn by the operator and others in the immediate area if there is any possibility that the noise level may be harmful (see § 1910.95).

(19) Carriers for knives. Carriers shall be provided and used for transportation of knives.

(f) Rag and old paper preparation.

(1) Ripping and trimming tools.

(i) Hand knives and scissors shall have blunt points, shall be fastened to the table with chain or thong, and shall not be carried on the person but placed safely in racks or sheaths when not in use.

(ii) Hand knives and sharpening steels shall be provided with guards at the junction of the handle and the blade.

(2) Shredders, cutters, and dusters.

(i) Rotating heads or cylinders shall be completely enclosed except for an opening at the feed side sufficient to permit only the entry of stock. The enclosure shall extend over the top of the feed rolls. It shall be constructed either of solid material or with mesh or openings not exceeding one-half inch and substantial enough to contain flying particles and prevent accidental contact with moving parts. The enclosure shall be bolted or locked into place.

(ii) A smooth-pivoted idler roll resting on the stock or feed table shall be provided in front of feed rolls except when arrangements prevent the operator from standing closer than 36 inches to any part of the feed rolls.

(iii) Any manually fed cutter, shredder, or duster shall be provided with an idler roll as per subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph or the operator shall use special hand-feeding tools.

(iv) Hoods of cutters, shredders, and dusters shall have exhaust ventilation, in accordance with American National Standard Z9.2—1960.

(3) Blowers.

(i) Blowers used for transporting rags shall be provided with feed hoppers having outer edges located not less than 48 inches from the fan.

(ii) The arrangement of the blower discharge outlets and work areas shall be such as to prevent material from falling on workers.

(4) Conveyors. Conveyors and conveyor drive belts and pulleys shall be fully enclosed or, if open and within 7 feet of the floor, shall be constructed and guarded in accordance with paragraph (c)(15) of this section and American National Standards B15.1—1953 (Reaffirmed 1958) and B20.1—1957.

(5) Dust. Measures for the control of dust shall be provided, in accordance with American National Standards Z33.1—1961, Z87.1—1968, and Z88.2—1969.

(6) Rag cookers.

(i) When cleaning, inspection, or other work requires that persons enter rag cookers, all steam and water valves, or other control devices, shall be locked and tagged in the closed or "off" position. Blank flanging of pipelines is acceptable in place of closed and locked valves.

(ii) When cleaning, inspection, or other work requires that persons must enter the cooker, one person shall be stationed outside in a position to observe and assist in case of emergency, in accordance with paragraph (b) (5) of this section.

(iii) Removed

(iv) Rag cookers shall be provided with safety valves in accordance with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels—1968, with Addenda.

(g) Chemical processes of making pulp.

(1) Sulfur burners.

(i) Sulfur-burner houses shall be safely and adequately ventilated, and every precaution shall be taken to guard against dust explosion hazards and fires, in accordance with American National Standards Z9.2—1960 and Z12.12—1968.

(ii) Nonsparking tools and equipment shall be used in handling dry sulfur.

(iii) Sulfur storage bins shall be kept free of sulfur dust accumulation, in accordance with American National Standard Z9.2—1960.

(iv) Electrical equipment shall be of the explosion-proof type, in accordance with the requirements of §§ 1910.308 through 1910.309.

(v) Sulfur-melting equipment shall not be located in the burner room.

(2) Protection for employees (acid plants).

(i) Gas masks, fitted with canisters containing absorbents for the particular acids, gases, or mists involved, shall be provided for employees of the acid department.

(ii) Supplied air respirators shall be strategically located for emergency and rescue use.

(iii) During inspection, repairs, or maintenance of acid towers, the workman shall be provided with eye protection, a supplied air respirator, a safety belt, and an attached lifeline. The line shall be extended to an attendant stationed outside the tower opening.

(3) Acid tower structure. Outside elevators shall be inspected daily during winter months when ice materially affects safety. Elevators, runways, stairs, etc., for the acid tower shall be inspected monthly for defects that may occur because of exposure to acid or corrosive gases.

(4) Tanks (acid).

(i) Tanks shall be free of acid and shall be washed out with water, and fresh air shall be blown into them before allowing men to enter. Men entering the tanks shall be provided with supplied air respirators, lifebelts, and attached lifelines.

(ii) A man shall be stationed outside to summon assistance if necessary. All intake valves to a tank shall be blanked off or disconnected.

(5) Clothing. Where lime slaking takes place, employees shall be provided with rubber boots, rubber gloves, protective aprons, and eye protection. A deluge shower and eye fountain shall be provided to flush the skin and eyes to counteract lime or acid burns.

(6) Lead burning. When lead burning is being done within tanks, fresh air shall be forced into the tanks so that fresh air will reach the face of the worker first and the direction of the current will never be from the source of the fumes toward the face of the workers. Supplied air respirators (constant-flow type) shall be provided.

(7) Hoops for acid storage tanks. Hoops of tanks shall be made of rods rather than flat strips and shall be safely maintained by scheduled inspections.

(8) Chip and sawdust bins. Steam or compressed-air lances, or other facilities, shall be used for breaking down the arches caused by jamming in chip lofts. No worker shall be permitted to enter a bin unless provided with a safety belt, with line attached, and an attendant stationed at the bin to summon assistance.

(9) Exits (digester building). At least one unobstructed exit at each end of the room shall be provided on each floor of a digester building.

(10) Gas masks (digester building). Gas masks shall be available. These masks shall furnish adequate protection against sulfurous acid and chlorine gases, and shall be inspected and tested at frequent intervals, not to exceed 1 month, in accordance with American National Standards Z87.1—1968, and Z88.2—1969.

(11) Elevators.

(i) Elevators shall be constructed in accordance with American National Standard A17.1—1965.

(ii) Elevators shall be equipped with gas masks for the maximum number of passengers.

(iii) Elevators shall be equipped with an alarm system to advise of failure.

(12) Blowoff valves and piping.

(i) The blowoff valve of a digester shall be arranged so as to be operated from another room, remote from safety valves.

(ii) Through bolts instead of cap bolts shall be used on all digester pipings.

(iii) Heavy duty pipe, valves, and fittings shall be used between the digester and blow pit. These valves, fittings, and pipes shall be inspected at least semiannually to determine the degree of deterioration.

(iv) Digester blow valves shall be pinned or locked in closed position throughout the entire cooking period.

(13) Blow pits and blow tanks.

(i) Blow-pit openings shall be preferably on the side of the pit instead of on top. When located on top, openings shall be as small as possible and shall be provided with railings, in accordance with American National Standard A12.1—1967.

(ii) A specially constructed ladder shall be used for access to blow pits, to be constructed so that the door of the blow pit cannot be closed when the ladder is in place; other means shall be provided to prevent the closing of the pit door when anyone is in the pit.

(iii) A signaling device shall be installed in the digester and blow-pit rooms and chip bins to be operated as a warning before and while digesters are being blown.

(iv) Blow-pit hoops shall be maintained in a safe condition.

(14) Blowing digester.

(i) Blowoff valves shall be opened slowly.

(ii) After the digester has started to be blown, the blowoff valve shall be left open, and the hand plate shall not be removed until the digester cook signals the blowpit man that the blow is completed. Whenever it becomes necessary to remove the hand plate to clear stock, operators shall wear eye protection equipment and protective clothing to guard against burns from hot stock.

(iii) Means shall be provided whereby the digester cook shall signal the man in the chip bin before starting to load the digester.

(iv) Removed

(15) Inspecting and repairing digester.

(i) Valves controlling lines leading into a digester shall be locked out and tagged. The keys to the locks shall be in the possession of a person or persons doing the inspecting or making repairs.

(ii) Fresh air shall be blown into the digester constantly while workmen are inside. Supplied air respirators shall be available in the event the fresh air supply fails or is inadequate.

(iii) No inspector shall enter a digester unless a lifeline is securely fastened to his body by means of a safety belt and at least one other experienced employee is stationed outside the digester to handle the line and to summon assistance. All ladders and lifelines shall be inspected before each use.

(iv) The concentration of lead dust in the air shall not exceed the limits specified in § 1910.1000.

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975.]

(v) All employees entering digesters for inspection or repair work shall be provided with protective headgear. Eye protection and dust masks shall be provided to workmen while the old brick lining is being removed, in accordance with American National Standards, Z87.1—1968, Z88.2—1969, and Z89.1—1969.

(vi) Sanitary facilities shall be provided as specified in American National Standard Z4.1—1968.

(16) Pressure tanks-accumulators (acid).

(i) Safety regulations governing inspection and repairing of pressure tanks-accumulators (acid) shall be the same as those specified in subparagraph (15) of this paragraph.

(ii) The pressure tanks-accumulators shall be inspected twice annually. (See the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels—1968, with Addenda.)

(17) Pressure vessels (safety devices).

(i) A safety valve shall be installed in a separate line from each pressure vessel; no hand valve shall be installed between this safety valve and the pressure vessel. Safety valves shall be checked between each cook to be sure they have not become plugged or corroded to the point of being inoperative. (See the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels—1968, with Addenda.)

(ii) All safety devices shall conform to Paragraph U-2 in the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels—1968, with Addenda.

(18) Miscellaneous. Insofar as the processes of the sulfate and soda operations are similar to those of the sulfite processes, the standard of subparagraphs (1) through (17) of this paragraph shall apply.

(i) Quick operating showers, bubblers, etc., shall be available for emergency use in case of caustic soda burns.

(ii) Rotary tenders, smelter operators, and those cleaning smelt spouts shall be provided with eye protection equipment (fitted with lenses that filter out the harmful rays emanating from the light source) when actively engaged in their duties, in accordance with American National Standard Z87.1—1968.

(iii) Heavy-duty pipe, valves, and fittings shall be used between digester and blow pit. These shall be inspected at least semiannually to determine the degree of deterioration and repaired or replaced when necessary, in accordance with American National Standards B31.1—1955, B31.1a—1963, B31.1.0—1967, and B31.2—1968.

(iv) Smelt-dissolving tanks shall be covered and the cover kept closed, except when samples are being taken.

(v) Smelt tanks shall be provided with vent stacks and explosion doors, in accordance with American National Standard Z9.1—1951.

(19) Blow lines.

(i) Removed

(ii) Removed

(iii) When blow lines from more than one digester lead into one pipe, the cock or valve of the blow line from the tank being inspected or repaired shall be locked or tagged out, or the line shall be disconnected and blocked off.

(20) Furnace room. Exhaust ventilation shall be provided where niter cake is fed into a rotary furnace and shall be so designed and maintained as to keep the concentration of hydrogen sulfide gas below the parts per million listed in § 1910.1000.

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975.]

(21) Inspection and repair of tanks. All piping leading to tanks shall be blanked off or valved and locked or tagged. Any lines to sewers shall be blanked off to protect workers from air contaminants.

(22) Welding. Welding on blow tanks, accumulator tanks, or any other vessels where turpentine vapor or other combustible vapor could gather shall be done only after the vessel has been completely purged of fumes. Fresh air shall be supplied workers inside of vessels.

(23) Turpentine systems and storage tanks. Nonsparking tools and ground hose shall be used when pumping out the tank. The tank shall be surrounded by a berm or moat.

(h) Bleaching.

(1) Bleaching engines. Bleaching engines, except the Bellmer type, shall be completely covered on the top, with the exception of one small opening large enough to allow filling but too small to admit a man. Platforms leading from one engine to another shall have standard guardrails, in accordance with American National Standard A12.1—1967.

(2) Bleach mixing rooms.

(i) The room in which the bleach powder is mixed shall be provided with adequate exhaust ventilation, located at the floor level, in accordance with American National Standard Z9.1—1951.

(ii) Chlorine gas shall be carried away from the work place and breathing area by an exhaust system. The gas shall be rendered neutral or harmless before being discharged into the atmosphere. The requirements of American National Standard Z9.2—1960 shall apply to this subdivision.

(iii) Gas masks shall be provided for emergency use, in accordance with American National Standards K13.1—1967 and Z88.2—1969.

(iv) For emergency and rescue work, independent self-contained oxygen masks or supplied air equipment shall be provided. (See American National Standards Z88.2—1969.)

(3) Liquid chlorine.

(i) Tanks of liquid chlorine shall be stored in an adequately ventilated unoccupied room, where their possible leakage cannot affect workers.

(ii) Gas masks capable of absorbing chlorine shall be supplied, conveniently placed, and regularly inspected, and workers who may be exposed to chlorine gas shall be instructed in their use.

(iii) For emergency and rescue work, independent self-contained oxygen-type masks or supplied air equipment shall be provided.

(iv) At least two exits, remote from each other, shall be provided for all rooms in which chlorine is stored.

(v) Spur tracks upon which tank cars containing chlorine and caustic are spotted and connected to pipelines shall be protected by means of a derail in front of the cars.

(vi) All chlorine, caustic, and acid lines shall be marked for positive identification, in accordance with American National Standard A13.1—1967.

(4) Bagged or drummed chemicals. Bagged or drummed chemicals require efficient handling to prevent damage and spillage. Certain oxidizing chemicals used in bleaching pulp and also in some sanitizing work require added precautions for safety in storage and handling. In storage, these chemicals must be isolated from combustible materials and other chemicals with which they will react, such as acids. They must also be kept dry, clean and uncontaminated.

(i) Mechanical pulp process.

(1) Pulp grinders.

(i) Water wheels directly connected to pulp grinders shall be provided with speed governors limiting the peripheral speed of the grinder to that recommended by the manufacturer.

(ii) Doors of pocket grinders shall be arranged so as to keep them from closing accidentally.

(2) Butting saws. Hood guards shall be provided on butting saws, in accordance with American National Standard O1.1—1954 (reaffirmed 1961).

(3) Floors and platforms. The requirements of paragraph (b) (3) of this section shall apply.

(4) Personal protection. Persons exposed to falling material shall wear eye, head, foot, and shin protection equipment, in accordance with American National Standards Z87.1—1968, Z88.2—1969, Z89.1—1969, and Z41.1—1967.

(j) Stock preparation.

(1) Pulp shredders.

(i) Cutting heads shall be completely enclosed except for an opening at the feed side sufficient to permit only entry of stock. The enclosure shall be bolted or locked in place. The enclosure shall be of solid material or with mesh or other openings not exceeding one-half inch.

(ii) Either a slanting feed table with its outer edge not less than 36 inches from the cutting head or an automatic feeding device shall be provided.

(iii) Repairs for cleaning of blockage shall be done only when the shredder is shutdown and control devices locked.

(iv) All power-driven mechanisms shall be guarded in accordance with paragraph (b) (1) of this section.

(2) Pulp conveyors. Pulp conveyors and conveyor drive belts and pulleys shall be fully enclosed, or if open and within 7 feet of the floor, shall be constructed and guarded in accordance with American National Standard B20.1—1957.

(3) Floors, steps, and platforms. The requirements of paragraph (b) (3) of this section shall apply.

(4) Beaters.

(i) Beater rolls shall be provided with covers.

(ii) Guard rails 42 inches high shall be provided around beaters where tub tops are less than 42 inches from the floor, in accordance with paragraph (b) (3) of this section and American National Standard A12.1—1967.

(iii) When cleaning, inspecting, or other work requires that persons enter the beaters, all control devices shall be locked or tagged out, in accordance with paragraph (b) (4) of this section.

(iv) When beaters are fed from floor above, the chute opening, if less than 42 inches from the floor, shall be provided with a complete rail or other enclosure. Openings for manual feeding shall be sufficient only for entry of stock and shall be provided with at least two permanently secured crossrails, in accordance with American National Standard A12.1—1967.

(v) Removed

(vi) Floors around beaters shall be provided with sufficient drainage to remove wastes.

(5) Pulpers.

(i) All pulpers having the top or any other opening of vessel less than 42 inches from the floor or work platform shall have such openings guarded by railed or other enclosures. For manual charging, openings shall be sufficient only to permit the entry of stock and shall be provided with at least two permanently secured crossrails, in accordance with American National Standard A12.1—1967.

(ii) When cleaning, inspecting, or other work requires that persons enter the pulpers, they shall be equipped with safety belt and lifeline, and one person shall be stationed outside at a position to observe and assist in case of emergency.

(iii) When cleaning, inspecting, or other work requires that persons enter pulpers, all steam, water, or other control devices shall be locked or tagged out. Blank flanging and tagging of pipe lines is acceptable in place of closed and locked or tagged valves. Blank flanging of steam and water lines shall be acceptable in place of valve locks.

(iv) All power mechanisms shall be guarded in accordance with American National Standard B15.1—1953 (reaffirmed 1958).

(6) Stock chests.

(i) All control devices shall be locked or tagged out when persons enter stock chests, in accordance with paragraph (b) (4) of this section.

(ii) All power mechanisms shall be guarded in accordance with paragraph (b) (1) of this section.

(iii) When cleaning, inspecting, or other work requires that persons enter stock chests, they shall be provided with a low-voltage extension light.

(k) Machine room.

(1) Emergency stops. Paper machines shall be equipped with devices that will stop the machine quickly in an emergency. The devices shall consist of push buttons for electric motive power (or electrically operated engine stops), pull cords connected directly to the prime mover, control clutches, or other devices, interlocked with adequate braking action. The devices shall be tested periodically by making use of them when stopping the machine and shall be so located that any person working on the machine can quickly disconnect the machine from the source of power in case of emergency.

(2) Drives.

(i) All drives, pulleys, couplings, and shafts on equipment requiring service while operating shall have standard guards in accordance with paragraph (b) (1) of this section.

(ii) All drives shall be provided with lockout devices at the power switch which interrupts the flow of current to the unit.

(iii) All ends of rotating shafts including dryer drum shafts shall be completely guarded.

(iv) All accessible disengaged doctor blades should be covered.

(v) All exposed shafts shall be guarded. Crossovers shall be provided.

(vi) Oil cups and grease fittings shall be placed in a safe area remote from nip and heat hazards.

(3) Protective equipment. Face shields, aprons, and rubber gloves shall be provided for workmen handling acids in accordance with paragraphs (b) (2) and (d) (1) of this section.

(4) Walkways. Steps and footwalks along the fourdrinier and press section shall have nonslip surfacing and be complete with standard handrails, when practical, in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(5) Removed

(6) Steps. Steps of uniform rise and tread with nonslip surfaces shall be provided at each press in accordance with American National Standard A12.1—1967.

(7) Plank walkways. A removable plank shall be provided along each press, with standard guardrails installed. The planks shall have nonslip surfaces in accordance with paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(8) Dryer lubrication. If a gear bearing must be oiled while the machine is in operation, an automatic oiling device to protect the oiler shall be provided, or oil cups and grease fittings shall be placed along the walkways out of reach of hot pipes and dryer gears.

(9) Levers. All levers carrying weights shall be constructed so that weights will not slip or fall off.

(10) First dryer. Either a permanent guardrail or apron guard or both shall be installed in front of the first dryer in each section in accordance with paragraph (b) (1) of this section.

(11) Steam and hot-water pipes. All exposed steam and hot-water pipes within 7 feet of the floor or working platform or within 15 inches measured horizontally from stairways, ramps, or fixed ladders shall be covered with an insulating material, or guarded in such manner as to prevent contact.

(12) Dryer gears. Dryer gears shall be guarded excepting where the oilers' walkway is removed out of reach of the gears' nips and spokes and hot pipes in accordance with American National Standard B15.1—1953 (reaffirmed 1958).

(13) Broke hole.

(i) A guardrail shall be provided at broke holes in accordance with American National Standard A12.1—1967.

(ii) Where pulpers are located directly below the broke hole on a paper machine and where the broke hole opening is large enough to permit a worker to fall through, any employee pushing broke down the hole shall wear a safety belt attached to a safety belt line. The safety belt line shall be fastened in such a manner that it is impossible for the person to fall into the pulper.

(iii) An alarm bell or a flashing light shall be actuated before dropping material through the broke hole.

(14) Feeder belt. A feeder belt or other effective device shall be provided for starting paper through the calender stack.

(15) Steps. Steps or ladders of uniform rise and tread with nonslip surfaces shall be provided at each calender stack. Handrails and hand grips shall be provided at each calender stack in accordance with American National Standard A12.1—1967.

(16) Grounding. All calender stacks and spreader bars shall be grounded as protection against shock induced by static electricity in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.314.

(17) Sole plates. All exposed sole plates between dryers, calenders, reels, and rewinders shall have a nonskid surface.

(18) Nip points. The hazard of the nip points on all calender rolls shall be eliminated or minimized by means of an effective barrier device, or by feeding the paper into the rolls by means of a rope carrier, air jets, or hand feeding devices.

(19) Platforms.

(i) Removed

(ii) Removed

(20) Scrapers. Alloy steel scrapers with pullthrough blades approximately 3 by 5 inches in size shall be used to remove "·cabs" from calender rolls.

(21) Illumination. Permanent lighting shall be installed in all areas where employees are required to make machine adjustments and sheet transfers in accordance with the American National Standard A11.1—1965 (R 1970).

(22) Control panels. All control panel handles and buttons shall be protected from accidental contact.

(23) Space between reels. Revoked

(24) Lifting reels.

(i) The reels shall stop rotating before being lifted from bearings.

(ii) All lifting equipment (clamps, cables, and slings) shall be maintained in a safe condition and inspected regularly.

(iii) Reel shafts with square block ends shall be guarded.

(25) Feeder belts. Feeder belts, carrier ropes, air carriage, or other equally effective means shall be provided for starting paper into the nip or drum-type reels.

(26) Inrunning nip.

(i) Where the nipping points of all drum winders and rewinders is on the operator's side, it shall be guarded by barrier guards interlocked with the drive mechanism.

(ii) Removed

(27) Core collars. Set screws for securing core collars to winding and unwinding shafts shall not protrude above the face of the collar. All edges of the collar with which an operator's hand comes in contact shall be beveled to remove all sharp corners.

(28) Slitter knives. Slitter knives shall be guarded so as to prevent accidental contact. Carriers shall be provided and used for transportation of slitter knives.

(29) Winder shaft. The winder shall have a guide rail to align the shaft for easy entrance into the opened rewind shaft bearing housings.

(30) Core shaft. When the core shaft weighs in excess of the safe standard, a mechanical device such as a dolly shall be provided for carrying all or part of the weight when it is being removed from the set of paper and placed in the dressing brackets on the winder.

(31) Winder area. A nonskid surface shall be provided in the front vicinity of the winder to prevent accidental slipping.

(32) Radiation. Special standards regarding the use of radiation equipment shall be posted and followed as required by § 1910.96.

(l) Finishing room.

(1) Cleaning rolls. Rolls shall be cleaned only on the outrunning side.

(2) Emergency stops. Electrically or manually operated quick power disconnecting devices, interlocked with braking action, shall be provided on all operating sides of the machine within easy reach of all employees. These devices shall be tested by making use of them when stopping the machine.

(3) Core collars. The requirements of paragraph (k)(27) of this section and the American National Standard B15.1—1953 (reaffirmed 1958) shall apply.

(4) Elevators. These shall be in accordance with American National Standard A17.1—1965.

(5) Control panels. The requirements of paragraph (k)(22) of this section shall apply.

(6) Guillotine-type cutters.

(i) Each guillotine-type cutter shall be equipped with a control which requires the operator and his helper, if any, to use both hands to engage the clutch.

(ii) Each guillotine-type cutter shall be equipped with a nonrepeat device.

(iii) Carriers shall be provided and used for transportation of guillotine-type cutter knives.

(7) Rotary cutter.

(i) On single-knife machines a guard shall be provided at a point of contact to the knife.

(ii) On duplex cutters the protection required for single-knife machines shall be provided for the first knife, and a hood shall be provided for the second knife.

(iii) Safe access shall be provided to the knives of a rotary cutter by means of catwalks with nonslip surfaces, railings, and toeboards in accordance with paragraph (b) (3) of this section.

(iv) A guard shall be provided for the spreader or squeeze roll at the nip side on sheet cutters.

(v) Electrically or manually operated quick power disconnecting devices with adequate braking action shall be provided on all operating sides of the machine within easy reach of all operators.

(vi) The outside slitters shall be guarded.

(8) Platers.

(i) A guard shall be arranged across the face of the rolls to serve as a warning that the operator's hand is approaching the danger zone.

(ii) A quick power disconnecting device shall be installed on each machine within easy reach of the operator.

(9) Finishing room rewinders.

(i) The nipping points of all drum winders and rewinders located on the operator's side shall be guarded by either automatic or manually operated barrier guards of sufficient height to protect fully anyone working around them. The barrier guard shall be interlocked with the drive mechanism to prevent operating above jog speed without the guard in place.

A zero speed switch should be installed to prevent the guard from being raised while the roll is turning.

(ii) A nonskid surface shall be provided in front of the rewinder to prevent an employee from slipping in accordance with paragraph (b) (3) of this section.

(iii) Mechanical lifting devices shall be provided for placing and removing rolls from the machine.

(10) Control panels. The requirements of paragraph (k) (22) of this section shall apply.

(11) Roll-type embosser. The nipping point located on the operator's side shall be guarded by either automatic or manually operated barrier guards interlocked with the drive.

(12) Sorting and counting tables.

(i) Tables shall be smooth and free from splinters, with edges and corners rounded.

(ii) Paddles shall be smooth and free from splinters.

(13) Roll splitters. The nip point and cutter knife shall be guarded by either automatic or manually operated barrier guards.

(m) Materials handling.

(1) Hand trucks. No person shall be permitted to ride on a powered hand truck unless it is so designed by the manufacturer. A limit switch shall be on operating handle—30 degrees each way from a 45-degree angle up and down.

(2) Power trucks. Power trucks shall comply with American National Standard B56.1—1969. Adequate ventilation shall be provided and the trucks properly maintained, so that dangerous concentrations of carbon monoxide cannot be generated, especially in warehouses or other isolated areas of a plant.

(3) Cartons. The carton-stitching machine shall be guarded to prevent the operator from coming in contact with the stitching head.

(4) Banding of skids, cartons, cases, etc. Banders and helpers shall wear eye protection equipment in accordance with paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(5) Unloading cars or trucks.

(i) Where steel bands or wires are used in boxcars or trucks, all loaders and helpers shall wear eye protection in accordance with paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(ii) The construction and use of bridge or dock plates shall conform to the requirements of American National Standard B56.1—1969.

(iii) Flag signals, derails, or other protective devices shall be used to protect men during switching operations. The blue flag policy shall be invoked according to paragraph (c)(9)(i) of this section.

(n) Effective dates.

(1) The provisions of this § 1910.261 shall become effective on August 27, 1971, except as provided in the remaining subparagraphs of this paragraph.

(2) The following provisions shall become effective on February 15, 1972:

§ 1910.261 (a)(3), (b)(6), (f)(2)(iv), (f)(5), (g)(1)(iv), (g)(11)(i), (j)(5)(iv), (k)(12), (k)(32), and (m)(2).

(3) Notwithstanding anything in subparagraph (1), (2), or (4) of this paragraph, any provision in any other paragraph of this section which contains in itself a specific effective date or time limitation shall become effective on such date or shall apply in accordance with such limitation.

(4) Notwithstanding subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, if any standard in 41 CFR Part 50–204, other than a national consensus standard incorporated by reference in § 50–204.2(a)(1), is or becomes applicable at any time to any employment and place of employment, by virtue of the Walsh-Healey Public Contracts Act, or the Service Contract Act of 1965, or the National Foundation on Arts and Humanities Act of 1965, any corresponding established Federal standard in this § 1910.261 which is derived from 41 CFR Part 50-204 shall also become effective, and shall be applicable to such employment and place of employment, on the same date.

1910.262—TEXTILES

(a) Application requirements.

(1) Application. The requirements of this subpart for textile safety apply to the design, installation, processes, operation, and maintenance of textile machinery, equipment, and other plant facilities in all plants engaged in the manufacture and processing of textiles, except those processes used exclusively in the manufacture of synthetic fibers.

(2) Standards incorporated by reference. Standards covering issues of occupational safety and health which are of general application without regard to any specific industry are incorporated by reference in paragraphs of this section and made applicable to textiles. All such standards shall be construed according to the rules of construction set out in § 1910.5.

(b) Definitions applicable to this section.

(1) Belt shifter. A "belt shifter" is a device for mechanically shifting a belt from one pulley to another.

(2) Belt shifter lock. A "belt shifter lock" is a device for positively locking the belt shifter in position while the machine is stopped and the belt is idling on the loose pulleys.

(3) Calender. A "calender" in essence consists of a set of heavy rollers mounted on vertical side frames and arranged to pass cloth between them. Calenders may have two to ten rollers, or bowls, some of which can be heated.

(4) Embossing calender. An "embossing calender" is a calender with two or more rolls, one of which is engraved for producing figured effects of various kinds on a fabric.

(5) Cans (drying). Drying "cans" are hollow cylindrical drums mounted in a frame so they can rotate. They are heated with steam and are used to dry fabrics or yarn as it passes around the perimeter of the can.

(6) Carbonizing. "Carbonizing" means the removing of vegetable matter such as burns, straws, etc., from wool by treatment with acid, followed by heat. The undesired matter is reduced to a carbon-like form which may be removed by dusting or shaking.

(7) Card. A "card" machine consists of cylinders of various sizes—and in certain cases flats—covered with card clothing and set in relation to each other so that fibers in staple form may be separated into individual relationship. The speed of the cylinders and their direction of rotation varies. The finished product is delivered as a sliver. Cards of different types are: The revolving flat card, the roller-and-clearer card, etc.

(8) Card clothing. "Card clothing" is the material with which many of the surfaces of a card are covered; e.g., the cylinder, doffer, etc. It consists of a thick foundation material, usually made of textile fabrics, through which are pressed many fine, closely spaced, specially bent wires.

(9) Comber. A "comber" is a machine for combing fibers of cotton, wool, etc. The essential parts are a device for feeding forward a fringe of fibers at regular intervals and an arrangement of combs or pins which, at the right time, pass through the fringe. All tangled fibers, short fibers, and neps are removed and the long fibers are laid parallel.

(10) Combing machinery. "Combing machinery" is a general classification, including combers, sliver lap machines, ribbon lap machines, and gill boxes, but excluding cards.

(11) Cutter (rotary staple). A rotary staple "cutter" is a machine consisting of one or more rotary blades used for the purpose of cutting textile fibers into staple lengths.

(12) Exposed to contact. "Exposed to contact" shall mean that the location of an object, material, nip point, or point of operation is such that a person is liable to come in contact with it in his normal course of employment.

(13) Garnett machine. A "Garnett machine" means any of a number of types of machines for opening hard twisted waste of wool, cotton, silk, etc. Essentially, such machines consist of a lickerin; one or more cylinders, each having a complement worker and stripper rolls; and a fancy roll and doffer. The action of such machines is somewhat like that of a wool card, but it is much more severe in that the various rolls are covered with garnett wire instead of card clothing.

(14) Gill box. A "gill box" is a machine used in the worsted system of manufacturing yarns. Its function is to arrange the fibers in parallel order. Essentially, it consists of a pair of feed rolls and a series of followers where the followers move at a faster surface speed and perform a combing action.

(15) Interlock. An "interlock" is a device that operates to prevent the operation of machine while the cover or door of the machine is open or unlocked, and which will also hold the cover or door closed and locked while the machine is in motion.

(16) Jig (dye). A dye "jig" is a machine for dyeing piece goods. The cloth, at full width, passes from a roller through the dye liquor in an open vat and is then wound on another roller. The operation is repeated until the desired shade is obtained.

(17) Kier. A "kier" is a large metal vat, usually a pressure type, in which fabrics may be boiled out, bleached, etc.

(18) Lapper (ribbon). A ribbon "lapper" is a machine used to prepare laps for feeding a cotton comb; its purpose is to provide a uniform lap in which the fibers have been straightened as much as possible.

(19) Lapper (sliver). A sliver "lapper" is a machine in which a number of parallel card slivers are drafted slightly, laid side by side in a compact sheet, and wound into a cylindrical package.

(20) Loom. A "loom" is a machine for effecting the interlacing of two series of yarns crossing one another at right angles. The warp yarns are wound on a warp beam and pass through heddles and reed. The filling is shot across in a shuttle and settled in place by reed and lay, and the fabric is wound on a cloth beam.

(21) Mangle (starch). A "starch mangle" is a mangle that is used specifically for starching cotton goods. It commonly consists of two large rolls and a shallow open vat with several immersion rolls. The vat contains the starch solution.

(22) Mangle (water). A "water mangle" is a calender having two or more rolls used for squeezing water from fabrics before drying. Water mangles also may be used in other ways during the finishing of various fabrics.

(23) Mule. A "mule" is a type of spinning frame having a head stock and a carriage as its two main sections. The head stock is stationary. The carriage is movable and it carries the spindles which draft and spin the roving into the yarn. The carriage extends over the whole width of the machine and moves slowly toward and away from the head stock during the spinning operation.

(24) Nip. "Nip" shall mean the point of contact between two in-running rolls.

(25) Openers and pickers. "Openers and pickers" means a general classification which includes breaker pickers, intermediate pickers, finisher pickers, single process pickers, multiple process pickers, willow machines, card and picker waste cleaners, thread extractors, shredding machines, roving waste openers, shoddy pickers, bale breakers, feeders, vertical openers, lattice cleaners, horizontal cleaners, and any similar machinery equipped with either cylinders, screen section, calender section, rolls, or beaters used for the preparation of stock for further processing.

(26) Paddler. A "paddler" consists of a trough for a solution and two or more squeeze rolls between which cloth passes after being passed through a mordant or dye bath.

(27) Point of operation. "Point of operation" shall mean that part of the machine where the work of cutting, shearing, squeezing, drawing, or manipulating the stock in any other way is done.

(28) Printing machine (roller type). A "roller printing machine" is a machine consisting of a large central cylinder, or pressure bowl, around the lower part of the perimeter of which is placed a series of engraved color rollers (each having a color trough), a furnisher roller, doctor blades, etc. The machine is used for printing fabrics.

(29) Ranges (bleaching continuous). "Continuous bleaching ranges" are of several types and may be made for cloth in rope or open-width form. The goods, after wetting out, pass through a squeeze roll into a saturator containing a solution of caustic soda and then to an enclosed J-box. A V-shaped arrangement is attached to the front part of the J-box for uniform and rapid saturation of the cloth with steam before it is packed down in the J-box. The cloth, in a single strand rope form, passes over a guide roll down the first arm of the "V" and up the second. Steam is injected into the "V" at the upper end of the second arm so that the cloth is rapidly saturated with steam at this point. The J-box capacity is such that cloth will remain hot for a sufficient time to complete the scouring action. It then passes a series of washers with a squeeze roll in between. The cloth then passes through a second set of saturator, J-box, and washer, where it is treated with the peroxide solution. By slight modification of the form of the unit, the same process can be applied to open-width cloth.

(30) Range (mercerizing). A "mercerizing range" consists generally of a 3-bowl mangle, a tenter frame, and a number of boxes for washing and scouring. The whole setup is in a straight line and all parts operate continuously. The combination is used to saturate the cloth with sodium hydroxide, stretch it while saturated, and washing out most of the caustic before releasing tension.

(31) Sanforizing machine. A "sanforizing machine" is a machine consisting of a large steam-heated cylinder, an endless, thick, woolen felt blanket which is in close contact with the cylinder for most of its perimeter, and an electrically heated shoe which presses the cloth against the blanket while the latter is in a stretched condition as it curves around feed-in roll.

(32) Shearing machine. A "shearing machine" is a machine used in shearing cloth. Cutting action is provided by a number of steel blades spirally mounted on a roller. The roller rotates in close contact with a fixed ledger blade. There may be from one to six such rollers on a machine.

(33) Singeing machine. A "singeing machine" is a machine used particularly with cotton; it comprises of a heated roller, plate, or an open gas flame. The material is rapidly passed over the roller or the plate or through the open gas flame to remove, fuzz or hairiness on yarn or cloth by burning.

(34) Slasher. A "slasher" is a machine used for applying a size mixture to warp yarns. Essentially, it consists of a stand for holding section beams, a size box, one or more cylindrical dryers or an enclosed hot air dryer, and a beaming end for finding the yarn on the loom beams.

(35) Solvent (industrial organic). "Industrial organic solvent" means any organic volatile liquid or compound, or any combination of these substances which are used to dissolve or suspend a nonvolatile or slightly volatile substance for industrial utilization. It shall also apply to such substances when used as detergents or cleansing agents. It shall not apply to petroleum products when such products are used as fuel.

(36) Tenter frame. A "tenter frame" is a machine for drying cloth under tension. It essentially consists of a pair of endless traveling chains fitted with clips of fine pins and carried on tracks. The cloth is firmly held at the selvages by the two chains which diverge as they move forward so that the cloth is brought to the desired width.

(37) Warper. A "warper" is any machine for preparing and arranging the yarns intended for the warp of a fabric, specifically, a beam warper.

(c) General safety requirements.

(1) Means of stopping machines. Every textile machine shall be provided with individual mechanical or electrical means for stopping such machines. On machines driven by belts and shafting, a locking-type shifter or an equivalent positive device shall be used. On operations where injury to the operator might result if motors were to restart after power failures, provision shall be made to prevent machines from automatically restarting upon restoration of power.

(2) Handles. Stopping and starting handles shall be designed to the proper length to prevent the worker's hand or fingers from striking against any revolving part, gear guard, or any other part of the machine.

(3) Machine guarding. Mechanical power-transmission equipment shall be guarded in conformity with § 1910.219.

(4) Housekeeping. Aisles and working spaces shall be kept in good order, clean and free of obstructions in accordance with requirements of § 1910.141.

(5) Inspection and maintenance. All guards and other safety devices, including starting and stopping devices, shall be properly maintained.

(6) Lighting. Lighting shall conform to American National Standard A11.1—1965.

(7) Identification of piping systems. Identification of piping systems shall conform to American National Standard A13.1—1956.

(8) Identification of physical hazards. Identification of physical hazards shall be in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.144.

(9) Steam pipes. All pipes carrying steam or hot water for process or servicing machinery, when exposed to contact and located within seven feet of the floor or working platform shall be covered with a heat-insulating material, or otherwise properly guarded.

(d) Openers and pickers.

(1) Beater guards. When any opening or picker machinery is equipped with a beater, such beater shall be provided with metal covers which will prevent contact with the beater. Such covers shall be provided with an interlock which will prevent the cover from being raised while the machine is in motion and prevent the operation of the machine while the cover is open.

(2) Cleanout holes. Cleanout holes within reaching distance of the fan or picker beater shall have their covers securely fastened and they shall not be opened while the machine is in motion.

(3) Feed rolls. The feed rolls on all opening and picking machinery shall be covered with a guard designed to prevent the operator from reaching the nip while the machinery is in operation.

(4) Removal of foreign ferrous material. All textile opener lines shall be equipped with magnetic separators, tramp iron separators, or other means for the removal of foreign ferrous material.

(e) Cotton cards.

(1) Enclosures. Cylinder and lickerins shall be completely protected and the doffers should be enclosed.

(2) Enclosure fastenings. The enclosures or covers shall be kept in place while the machine is in operation, except when stripping or grinding.

(3) Stripping rolls. On operations calling for flat strippings which are allowed to fall on the doffer cover, where such strippings are removed by hand, the doffer cover shall be kept closed and securely fastened to prevent the opening of the cover while the machine is in operation. When it becomes necessary to clean the cards while they are in motion, a long-handled brush or dust mop shall be used.

(f) Garnett machines.

(1) Lickerin. Garnett lickerins shall be enclosed.

(2) Fancy rolls. Garnett fancy rolls shall be enclosed by covers. These shall be installed in a way that keeps worker rolls reasonably accessible for removal or adjustment.

(3) Underside of machine. The underside of the garnett shall be guarded by a screen mesh or other form of enclosure to prevent access.

(g) Spinning mules.

A substantial fender of metal or hardwood shall be installed in front of the carriage wheels, the fender to extend to within one-fourth inch of the rail.

(h) Slashers.

(1) Cylinder dryers.

(i) Reducing valves, safety valves, and pressure gages. Reducing valves, safety valves, and pressure gages shall conform to the ASME Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels, 1968.

(ii) Vacuum relief valves. Vacuum relief valves shall conform to the ASME Code for Pressure Vessels, Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels, 1968.

(iii) Lever control. When slashers are operated by control levers, these levers shall be connected to a horizontal bar or treadle located not more than 69 inches above the floor to control the operation from any point.

(iv) Pushbutton control. Slashers operated by pushbutton control shall have stop and start buttons located at each end of the machine, and additional buttons located on both sides of the machine, at the size box and the delivery end. If calender rolls are used, additional buttons shall be provided at both sides of the machine at points near the nips, except when slashers are equipped with an enclosed dryer.

(v) Nip guards. All nip guards shall comply with the requirements of subparagraph (2)(iv) of this paragraph.

(vi) Cylinder enclosure. When enclosures or hoods are used over cylinder drying rolls, such enclosures or hoods shall be provided with an exhaust system which will effectively prevent wet air and steam from escaping into the workroom.

(vii) Expansion chambers. Slasher kettles and cookers shall be provided with expansion chambers in the covers, or drains, to prevent surging over. Steam-control valves shall be so located that they can be operated without exposing the worker to moving parts, hot surfaces, or steam.

(2) Enclosed hot air dryer.

(i) Lever control. When slashers are operated by control levers, these levers shall be connected to a horizontal bar or treadle located not more than 69 inches above the floor to control the operation from any point.

(ii) Push-button control. Slashers operated by push-button control shall have one start button at each end of the machine and stop buttons shall be located on both sides of the machines at intervals spaced not more than 6 feet on centers. Inching buttons should be installed.

(iii) Dryer enclosure. The dryer enclosure shall be provided with an exhaust system which will effectively prevent wet air and steam from escaping into the workroom.

(iv) Nip guards. All nip guards shall comply with Table R–1.

TABLE R–1

GUARD OPENINGS

Openings in the guard or between the guard and working surface shall not be greater than the following:

Distance of opening from nip point	*Maximum width of opening*
0 to 1½	¼
1½ to 2½	⅜
2½ to 3½	½
3½ to 5½	⅝
5½ to 6½	¾
6½ to 7½	⅞
7½ to 8½	1¼

The measurements in Table R–1 are all in inches.

(v) Expansion chambers. Slasher kettles and cookers shall be provided with expansion chambers in the covers, or drains, to prevent surging over. Steam control valves shall be so located that they can be operated without exposing the worker to moving parts, hot surfaces, or steam.

(i) Warpers.

(1) Swiveled double-bar gates. Swiveled double-bar gates shall be installed on all warpers operating in excess of 450 yards per minute. These gates shall be so interlocked that the machine cannot be operated until the gate is in the "closed position," except for the purpose of inching or jogging.

(2) Closed position. "Closed position" shall mean that the top bar of the gate shall be at least 42 inches from the floor or working platform; and the lower bar shall be at least 21 inches from the floor or working platform; and the gate shall be located 15 inches from the vertical tangent to the beam head.

(j) Drawing frames, slubbers, roving parts, cotton combers, ring spinning frames, twisters.

Gear housing covers on all installations of drawing frames, slubbers, roving frames, cotton combers, ring spinning frames, and twisters shall be equipped with interlocks.

(k) Gill boxes.

(1) Pin guard. A guard shall be placed ahead of the feed end and shall be so designed that it will prevent the worker's fingers from being caught in the pins of the intersecting fallers.

(2) Nip guards. All nip guards shall comply with the requirements of paragraph (h)(2)(iv) of this section.

(l) Heavy draw boxes, finishers, and speeders used in worsted drawing.

(1) Band pulley covers. Covers for band pulleys shall be closed when the machine is in motion.

(2) Benches or working platforms. Benches or working platforms approximately 10 inches in height and 8 inches in width should be installed along the entire running length of the machine for the worker to stand on while creeling the machine. Such benches or platforms shall be covered with an abrasive or nonslip material.

(m) Sliver and ribbon lappers (cotton).

Cover guard. An interlocking cover guard shall be installed over the large calender drums and the lap spool, designed to prevent the operator from coming in contact with the nip.

(n) Looms.

(1) Shuttle guard. Each loom shall be equipped with a guard designed to minimize the danger of the shuttle flying out of the shed.

(2) Protection for loom fixer. Provisions shall be made so that every loom fixer can prevent the loom from being started while he is at work on the loom. This may be accomplished by means of a lock, the key to which is retained in the possession of the loom fixer, or by some other effective means to prevent starting the loom.

(o) Shearing machines.

All revolving blades on shearing machines shall be guarded so that the opening between the cloth surface and the bottom of the guard will not exceed three-eighths inch.

(p) Continuous bleach range (cotton and rayon).

(1) J-box protection. Each valve controlling the flow of steam, injurious gases, or liquids into a J-box shall be equipped with a chain, lock, and key, so that any worker who enters the J-box can lock the valve and retain the key in his possession. Any other method which will prevent steam, injurious gases, or liquids from entering the J-box while the worker is in it will be acceptable.

(2) Open-width bleaching. The nip of all in-running rolls on open-width bleaching machine rolls shall be protected with a guard to prevent the worker from being caught at the nip. The guard shall extend across the entire length of the nip.

(q) Kiers.

(1) Reducing valves, safety valves, and pressure gages. Reducing valves, safety valves, and pressure gages shall conform to the ASME Code for Unfired Pressure Vessels, Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels, 1968.

(2) Kier valve protection. Each valve controlling the flow of steam, injurious gases, or liquids into a kier shall be equipped with a chain, lock, and key, so that any worker who enters the kier can lock the valve and retain the key in his possession. Any other method which will prevent steam, injurious gases, or liquids from entering the kier while the worker is in it will be acceptable.

(r) Gray and white bins.

On new installations guard rails conforming to § 1910.23 shall be provided where workers are required to plait by hand from the top of the bin so as to protect the worker from falling to a lower level.

(s) Mercerizing range (piece goods).

(1) Stopping devices. A stopping device shall be provided at each end of the machine.

(2) Frame ends. A guard shall be installed at each end of the frame between the in-running chain and the clip opener, to prevent the worker's fingers from being caught.

(3) Mangle and washers. The nip at the in-running rolls shall conform to § 1910.264.

(t) Tenter frames.

(1) Stopping devices. A stopping device shall be provided at each end of the machine.

(2) Frame ends. A guard shall be installed at each end of the frame at the in-running chain and clip opener.

(3) Oil cups. Oil cups shall be safely located to permit easy access.

(u) Dyeing jigs.

(1) Stopping devices. Each dye jig shall be equipped with individual mechanical or electrical means for stopping the machine.

(2) Roll arms. Roll arms on jigs shall be built to allow for extra large batches, and to prevent the center bar from being forced off, causing the batch to fall.

(v) Padders—nip guards.

All nip guards shall comply with the requirements of paragraph (h)(2)(iv) of this section.

(w) Drying cans.

(1) Pressure reducing valves and pressure gages. Pressure reducing valves and pressure gages shall conform to the ASME Code for Pressure Vessels, Section VIII, 1968, Unfired Pressure Vessels.

(2) Vacuum collapse. If cans are not designed to prevent vacuum collapse, each can shall be equipped with one or more vacuum relief valves with openings of sufficient size to prevent the collapse of the can if vacuum occurs.

(x) Flat-work ironer.

(1) Feed rolls. The feed rolls shall be guarded to conform to § 1910.264.

(2) Pressure rolls. Pressure rolls shall be covered or guarded to conform to § 1910.264.

(y) Extractors.

(1) Centrifugal extractor.

(i) Cover. Each extractor shall be equipped with a metal cover.

(ii) Interlocking device. Each extractor shall be equipped with an interlocking device that will prevent the cover from being opened while the basket is in motion, and also prevent the power operation of the basket while the cover is open.

(iii) Brakes. Each extractor shall be equipped with a mechanically or electrically operated brake to quickly stop the basket when the power driving the basket is shut off.

(iv) Maximum allowable speed. Each centrifugal extractor shall be effectively secured in position on the floor or foundation so as to eliminate unnecessary vibration, and should not be operated at a speed greater than the manufacturer's rating, which shall be stamped where easily visible in letters not less than one-quarter inch in height. The maximum allowable speed shall be given in revolutions per minute (rpm).

(2) Engine drum extractor—overspeed governor. Each engine individually driving an extractor shall be provided with an approved engine stop and speed limit governor.

(3) Squeezer or wringer extractor nip guards. All nip guards shall comply with the requirements of paragraph (h)(2)(iv) of this section.

(z) Nip guards.

All nip guards for water mangle, starch mangle, back-washer (worsted yarn) crabbing machines, decating machines, shall comply with the requirements of paragraph (h)(2)(iv).

(aa) Sanforizing and palmer machine.

A safety trip rod, cable, or wire center cord shall be provided across the front and back of all palmer cylinders extending the length of the face of the cylinder. It shall operate readily whether pushed or pulled. This safety trip shall be not more than 72 inches above the level on which the operator stands and shall be readily accessible.

(bb) Rope washers.

(1) Splash guard. Splash guards shall be installed on all rope washers unless the machine is so designed as to prevent the water or liquid from splashing the operator, the floor, or working surface.

(2) Safety stop bar. A safety trip rod, cable or wire center cord shall be provided across the front and back of all rope washers extending the length of the face of the washer. It shall operate readily whether pushed or pulled. This safety trip shall be not more than 72 inches above the level on which the operator stands and shall be readily accessible.

(cc) Laundry washer tumbler or shaker.

(1) Interlocking device. Each drying tumbler, each double cylinder shaker or clothes tumbler, and each washing machine shall be equipped with an interlock device which will prevent the power operation of the inside cylinder when the outer door on the case or shell is open, and which will also prevent the outer door on the case or shell from being opened without shutting off the power.

INTERP

(2) Means of holding covers or doors in open position. Each enclosed barrel shall also be equipped with adequate means for holding open the doors or covers of the inner and outer cylinders or shells while it is being loaded or unloaded.

(dd) Printing machine (roller type).

(1) Nip guards. All nip guards shall comply with the requirements of paragraph (h)(2)(iv) of this section.

(2) Crown wheel and roller gear nip protection. The engraved roller gears and the large crown wheel shall be provided with a protective disc which will enclose the nips of the in-running gears. Individual discs for each nip will be acceptable.

(ee) Calenders.

The nip at the in-running side of the rolls shall be provided with a guard extending across the entire length of the nip and arranged to prevent the fingers of the workers from being pulled in between the rolls or between the guard and the rolls, and constructed so that the cloth can be fed into the rolls safely.

(ff) Rotary staple cutters.

A guard shall be installed completely enclosing the cutters to prevent the hands of the operator from reaching the cutting zone.

(gg) Clothing folding machine.

The crank arm and blade guide rods on both sides of the cloth-folding machines shall be protected from contact by barrier guards constructed to conform to the requirements of § 1910.219.

(hh) Hand bailing machine.

An angle-iron-handle stop guard shall be installed at the right angle to the frame of the machine. The stop guard shall be so designed and so located that it will prevent the handle from traveling beyond the vertical position should the handle slip from the operator's hand when the pawl has been released from the teeth of the takeup gear.

(ii) Roll bench.

Cleats shall be installed on the ends of roll benches.

(jj) Cuttle or swing folder (overhead type).

The bottom of the overhead folders shall be located not less than 7 feet from the floor or working surface.

(kk) Color-mixing room.

Floors in color-mixing rooms shall be constructed to drain easily.

(ll) Open tanks and vats for mixing and storage of hot or corrosive liquids.

(1) Protection against falls. Open tanks and vats containing hot or corrosive liquids shall be protected to conform to the requirements of § 1910.23.

(2) Shutoff valves. Boiling tanks, caustic tanks, and hot liquid containers, so located that the operator cannot see the contents from the floor or working area, shall have emergency shutoff valves controlled from a point not subject to danger of splash. Valves shall conform to the ASME Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels, 1968.

(mm) Dye kettles and vats.

Pipes or drains of sufficient capacity to carry the contents safely away from the working area shall be installed where there are dye kettles and vats which may at any time contain hot or corrosive liquids. These shall not empty directly onto the floor.

(nn) Acid carboys.

Carboys shall be provided with inclinators, or the acid shall be withdrawn from the carboys by means of pumping without pressure in the carboy, or by means of hand operated siphons.

(oo) Handling caustic soda and caustic potash.

Means shall be provided for handling and emptying caustic soda and caustic potash containers to prevent workers from coming in contact with the caustic (see paragraph (qq) of this section).

(pp) First aid.

Wherever acids or caustics are used, provision shall be made for a copious and flowing supply of fresh, clean water.

(qq) Personal protective equipment.

(1) Personal protective equipment. Workers engaged in handling acids or caustics in bulk, repairing pipe lines containing acids or caustics, etc., shall be provided with protective occupational (safety) equipment to conform to the requirements of § 1910.132, § 1910.133, and § 1910.134.

(2) Respirators, gas masks, and such appliances, for emergency use only, shall be of a type required by § 1910.134.

(rr) Workroom ventilation.

In all workrooms in which potentially toxic substances are used, the maximum allowable concentrations listed in § 1910.1000 shall be maintained. Open surface tanks shall conform to the requirements of § 1910.94(d).

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975.]

1910.263—BAKERY EQUIPMENT

(a) General requirements.

(1) Application. The requirements of this section shall apply to the design, installation, operation and maintenance of machinery and equipment used within a bakery.

(b) Definitions applicable to this section.

Revoked

(c) General machine guarding.

(1) Electrical grounding. Revoked

(2) Gears. All gears shall be completely enclosed regardless of location.

(3) Sprockets and V-belt drives. Sprockets and V-belt drives located within reach from platforms or passageways or located within 8 feet 6 inches from the floor shall be completely enclosed.

(4) Rotating parts. Revoked

(5) Lubrication. Where machinery must be lubricated while in motion, stationary lubrication fittings inside a machine shall be provided with extension piping to a point of safety so that the employee will not have to reach into any dangerous part of the machine when lubricating.

(6) Removable covers or guards. Revoked

(7) Ventilation through machine guards.

Revoked

(8) Hot pipes. Exposed hot water and steam pipes shall be covered with insulating material wherever necessary to protect employee from contact.

(d) Flour-handling equipment.

(1) General requirements for flour handling.

(i) Wherever any of the various pieces of apparatus comprising a flour-handling system are run in electrical unity with one another the following safeguards shall apply:

(a) Revoked

(b) Wherever a flour-handling system is of such size that the beginning of its operation is far remote from its final delivery end, all electric motors operating each apparatus comprising this system shall be controlled at each of two points, one located at each remote end, either of which will stop all motors.

(c) Revoked

(d) Control circuits for magnetic controllers shall be so arranged that the opening of any one of several limit switches, which may be on an individual unit, will serve to de-energize all of the motors of that unit.

(2) Bag chutes and bag lifts (bag-arm elevators).

(i) Bag chutes (gravity chutes for handling flour bags) shall be so designed so as to keep to a minimum the speed of flour bags. If the chute inclines more than 30° from the horizontal, there shall be an upturn at the lower end of the chute to slow down the bags.

(ii) Bag-arm elevators with manual takeoff shall be designed to operate at a capacity not exceeding seven bags per minute. The arms on the conveyor chain shall be so spaced as to obtain the full capacity of the elevator with the lowest possible chain speed. There shall be an electric limit switch at the unloading end of the bag-arm elevator so installed as to automatically stop the conveyor chain if any bag fails to clear the conveyor arms.

(iii) Revoked

(iv) Man lifts shall be prohibited in bakeries. Bag or barrel lifts shall not be used as man lifts.

(3) Dumpbin and blender.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Revoked

(iv) Revoked

(v) All dumpbin and blender hoods shall be of sufficient capacity to prevent circulation of flour dust outside the hoods.

(vi) All dumpbins shall be of a suitable height from floor to enable the operator to dump flour from bags, without causing undue strain or fatigue. Where the edge of any bin is more than 24 inches above the floor, a bag rest step shall be provided.

(vii) A control device for stopping the dumpbin and blender shall be provided close to the normal location of the operator.

(4) Flour elevators. Revoked

(5) Bolting reels. Revoked

(6) Storage bins.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Storage bins shall be provided with gaskets and locks or latches to keep the cover closed, or other equivalent devices in order to insure the dust tightness of the cover. Covers at openings where an employee may enter the bin shall also be provided with a hasp and a lock, so located that the employee may lock the cover in the open position whenever it is necessary to enter the bin.

(iii) Storage bins where the side is more than 5 feet in depth shall be provided with standard stationary safety ladders, both inside and outside, to reach from floor level to top of bin and from top of bin to inside bottom, keeping the ladder end away from the moving screw conveyor.

(iv) Revoked

(v) Revoked

(vi) The main entrance cover of large storage bins located at the interior exit ladder shall be provided with an electric interlock for motors operating both feed and unloading screw, so that these motors cannot operate while the cover is open.

(7) Screw conveyors.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Revoked

(iii) The covers of all screw conveyors shall be made removable in convenient sections, held on with stationary clamps located at proper intervals keeping all covers dust-tight. Where drop or hinged bottom sections are provided this provision shall not apply.

(8) Sifters.

(i) Enclosures of all types of flour sifters shall be so constructed that they are dust-tight but readily accessible for interior inspection.

(ii) Revoked

(9) Flour scales.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Traveling or track-type flour scales shall be equipped with bar handles for moving same. The bar should be at least 1 inch in diameter and well away from trolley track wheels.

(e) Mixers.

(1) Horizontal dough mixers.

(i) Mixers with external power application shall have all belts, chains, gears, pulleys, sprockets, clutches, and other moving parts completely enclosed.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Each mixer shall be equipped with an individual motor and control, and with a conveniently located manual switch to prevent the mixer from being started in the usual manner while the machine is being serviced and cleaned.

(iv) All electrical control stations shall be so located that the operator must be in full view of the bowl in its open position. No duplication of such controls other than a stop switch shall be permitted.

(v) All mixers with power and manual dumping arrangements shall be equipped with safety devices which shall:

(a) Engage both hands of the operator, when the agitator is in motion under power, and while the bowl is opened more than one-fifth of its total opening.

(b) Prevent the agitator from being started, while the bowl is more than one-fifth open, without engaging both hands of the operator;

(vi) Revoked

(vii) Revoked

(viii) Every mixer shall be equipped with a full enclosure over the bowl which is closed at all times while the agitator is in motion. Only minor openings in this enclosure, such as ingredient doors, flour inlets, etc., each representing less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ square feet in area, shall be capable of being opened while the mixer is in operation.

(ix) Revoked

(x) Overhead covers or doors which are subject to accidental closure shall be counterbalanced to remain in an open position or provided with means to hold them open until positively released by the operator.

(xi) thru **(xvii)** Revoked

(xviii) Valves and controls to regulate the coolant in mixer jackets shall be located so as to permit access by the operator without jeopardizing his safety.

(2) Vertical mixers.

(i) Vertical mixers shall comply with paragraphs (e)(1)(i), (iii), (ix), and (x) of this section."

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Bowl locking devices shall be of a positive type which require the attention of the operator for unlocking.

(iv) Devices shall be made available for moving bowls weighing more than 80 pounds, with contents, into and out of the mixing position on the machine.

(f) Dividers.

(1) Pinch and shear points. Revoked

(2) Front guards. Revoked

(3) Rear of divider. The back of the divider shall have a complete cover to enclose all of the moving parts, or each individual part shall be enclosed or guarded to remove the separate hazards. The rear cover shall be provided with a limit switch in order that the machine cannot operate when this cover is open. The guard on the back shall be hinged so that it cannot be completely removed and if a catch or brace is provided for holding the cover open, it shall be designed so that it will not release due to vibrations or minor bumping whereby the cover may drop on an employee.

(g) Moulders.

(1) Hoppers. Mechanical feed moulders shall be provided with hoppers so designed and connected to the proofer that an employee's hands cannot get into the hopper where they will come in contact with the in-running rolls.

(2) Hand-fed moulders. Hand-fed moulders shall be provided with a belt-feed device or the hopper shall be extended high enough so that the hands of the operator cannot get into the feed rolls. The top edge of such a hopper shall be well rounded to prevent injury when it is struck or bumped by the employee's hand.

(3) Stopping devices. There shall be a stopping device within easy reach of the operator who feeds the moulder and another stopping device within the reach of the employee taking the dough away from the moulder.

(h) Manually fed dough brakes.

(1) Top-roll protection. The top roll shall be protected by a heavy gage metal shield extending over the roll to go within 6 inches of the hopper bottom board. The shield may be perforated to permit observation of the dough entering the rolls.

(2) Emergency stop bar. An emergency stop bar shall be provided, and so located that the body of the operator will press against the bar if the operator slips and falls toward the rolls, or if the operator gets his hand caught in the rolls. The bar shall apply the body pressure to open positively a circuit that will deenergize the drive motor. In addition, a brake which is inherently self-engaging by requiring power or force from an external source to cause disengagement shall be activated at the same time causing the rolls to stop instantly. The emergency stop bar shall be checked for proper operation every 30 days.

[38 F.R. 16223, June 21, 1973.]

(i) Miscellaneous equipment.

(1) Proof boxes. All door locks shall be operable both from within and outside the box. Guide rails shall be installed to center the rack as it enters, passes through, and leaves the proof box.

(2) Fermentation room. Fermentation room doors shall have nonshatterable wire glass or plastic panels for vision through doors.

(3) Troughs. Troughs shall be mounted on antifriction bearing casters thus making it possible for the operator to move and direct the motion of the trough with a minimum of effort.

(4) Hand trucks.

(i) Casters shall be set back from corners to be out of the way of toes and heels, but not far enough back to cause the truck to be unstable.

(ii) A lock or other device shall be provided to hold the handle in vertical position when the truck is not in use.

(5) Lift trucks. A lock or other device shall be provided to hold the handle in vertical position when the truck is not in use.

(6) Racks.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Racks shall be equipped with handles so located with reference to the frame of the rack that no part of the operator's hands extends beyond the outer edge of the frame when holding onto the handles.

(iii) Antifriction bearing casters shall be used to give the operator better control of the rack.

(7) Conveyors.

(i) Wherever a conveyor passes over a main aisleway, regularly occupied work area, or passageway, the underside of the conveyor shall be completely enclosed to prevent broken chains or other material from falling in the passageway.

(ii) Stop bumpers shall be installed on all delivery ends of conveyors, wherever manual removal of the product carried is practiced.

(iii) Where hazard of getting caught exists a sufficient number of stop buttons shall be provided to enable quick stopping of the conveyor.

(8) Overhead rail systems. Revoked

(9) Dough chutes. Revoked

(10) Skids. Revoked

(11) Ingredient premixers, emulsifiers, etc.

(i) All top openings shall be provided with covers attached to the machines. These covers should be so arranged and interlocked that power will be shutoff whenever the cover is opened to a point where the operator's fingers might come in contact with the beaters.

(12) Chain tackle.

(i) All chain tackle shall be marked prominently, permanently, and legibly with maximum load capacity.

(ii) All chain tackle shall be marked permanently, and legibly with minimum support specification.

(iii) Safety hooks shall be used.

(13) Trough hoists, etc.

(i) All hoists shall be marked prominently, permanently, and legibly with maximum load capacity.

(ii) All hoists shall be marked permanently and legibly with minimum support specifications.

(iii) Safety catches shall be provided for the chain so that the chain will hold the load in any position.

(iv) Safety hooks shall be used.

(14) Air-conditioning units.

(i) Revoked

(ii) On large units with doors to chambers large enough to be entered, all door locks shall be operable from both inside and outside.

(15) Pan washing tanks.

(i) Revoked

(ii) The surface of the floor of the working platform shall be maintained in nonslip condition.

(iii) Revoked

(iv) Revoked

(v) Power ventilated exhaust hoods shall be provided over the tanks.

(16) Pan washing machines. Revoked

(17) Cake depositors. Revoked

(18) Icing machines. Revoked

(19) Bread coolers, conveyor type. Revoked

(20) Bread coolers, rack type.

(i) Revoked

(ii) All door locks shall be operable from both within and outside the cooler.

(21) Bread and cake boxes, trays, etc. Revoked

(22) Doughnut machines. Separate flues shall be provided,

(i) For venting vapors from the frying section, and

(ii) For venting products of combustion from the combustion chamber used to heat the fat.

(23) Open fat kettles.

(i) The floor around kettles shall be maintained in nonslip condition.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Revoked

(iv) The top of the kettle shall be not less than 36 inches above floor or working level.

(24) Steam kettles.

(i) Positive locking devices shall be provided to hold kettles in the desired position.

(ii) Kettles with steam jackets shall be provided with safety valves in accordance with the ASME Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Unfired Pressure Vessels, 1968.

(j) Slicers and wrappers.

(1) Slicers.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Revoked

(iii) The cover over the knife head of reciprocating-blade slicers shall be provided with an interlocking arrangement so that the machine cannot operate unless the cover is in place.

(iv) On slicers with endless band knives, each motor shall be equipped with a magnet brake which operates whenever the motor is not energized. Each door, panel, or other point of access to the cutting blades shall be arranged by means of mechanical or electric interlocks so that the motor will be deenergized if all such access doors, panels, or access points are not closed.

(v) When it is necessary to sharpen slicer blades on the machine, a barrier shall be provided leaving only sufficient opening for the sharpening stone to reach the knife blades.

(vi) Revoked

(vii) Slicer wrapper conditions.

(a) Revoked

(b) Revoked

(c) Mechanical control levers for starting and stopping both slicing machine conveyors and wrapping machines shall be extended or so located that an operator in one location can control both machines. Such levers should be provided wherever necessary, but these should be so arranged that there is only one station capable of starting the wrapping machine and conveyor assembly, and this starting station should be so arranged or guarded as to prevent accidental starting. The electric control station for starting and stopping the electric motor driving the wrapping machine and conveyor should be located near the clutch starting lever.

(2) Wrappers.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Electrical heaters on wrappers shall be protected by a cover plate properly separated or insulated from the heaters in order that accidental contact with this cover plate will not cause a burn to the operator.

(k) Biscuit and cracker equipment.

(1) Meal, peanut, and fig grinders.

(i) If the hopper is removable it shall be provided with an electric interlock so that the machine cannot be put in operation when the hopper is removed.

(ii) Where grid guards cannot be used, feed conveyors to hoppers, or baffle-type hoppers, shall be provided. Hoppers in such cases shall be enclosed and provided with hinged covers, and equipped with electric interlock to prevent operation of the machine with the cover open.

(2) Sugar and spice pulverizers.

(i) All drive belts used in connection with sugar and spice pulverizers shall be grounded by means of metal combs or other effective means of removing static electricity. All pulverizing of sugar or spice grinding shall be done in accordance with NFPA 62—1967 (Standard for Dust

Hazards of Sugar and Cocoa), NFPA 656—1959 (Standard for Dust Hazards in Spice Grinding Plants).

(ii) Magnetic separators shall be provided to reduce fire and explosion hazards.

(3) Cheese, fruit, and food cutters. These machines shall be protected in accordance with the requirements of subparagraph (1) of this paragraph.

(4) Jam, icing, and marshmallow beaters of horizontal tub type. Revoked

(5) Reversible dough brakes. Reversible brakes shall be provided with a guard or tripping mechanism on each side of the rolls. These guards shall be so arranged as to stop the machine or reverse the direction of the rolls so that they are outrunning if the guard is moved by contact of the operator.

(6) Cross-roll brakes. Cross-roll brakes shall be provided with guards that are similar in number and equal in effectiveness to guards on hand-fed brakes.

(7) Box- and roll-type dough sheeters.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Hoppers for sheeters shall have an automatic stop bar or automatic stopping device along the back edge of the hopper. If construction does not permit location at the back edge, the automatic stop bar or automatic stopping device shall be located where it will be most effective to accomplish the desired protection.

(8) Cutting and panning, embossing; peeling, bar, and frutana machines. Revoked

(9) Rotary, die machines, pretzel rolling, and pretzel-stick extruding machines. Dough hoppers shall have the entire opening protected with substantial grid-type guards to prevent the employee from getting his hands caught in moving parts, or the hopper shall be extended high enough so that the operator's hands cannot get into moving parts.

(10) Band ovens. Revoked

(11) Wafer-cutting machines. Revoked

(12) Pan cooling towers.

(i) Where pan cooling towers extend to two or more floors, a lockout switch shall be provided on each floor in order that mechanics working on the tower may positively lock the mechanism against starting. Only one start switch shall be used in the motor control circuit.

(13) Chocolate melting, refining, and mixing kettles. Each kettle shall be provided with a cover to enclose the top of the kettle. The bottom outlet of each kettle shall be of such size and shape that the operator cannot reach in to touch the revolving paddle or come in contact with the shear point between the paddle and the side of the kettle.

(14) Caddie, cover, and box stitchers

Revoked

(15) Carton-wrapping and bundling machines.

Revoked

(16) Carton and lining feeding machines. Revoked

(17) Peanut cooling trucks. Mechanically operated peanut cooling trucks shall have a grid-type cover over the entire top.

(l) Ovens.

(1) General location.

(i) thru (vi) Revoked

(vii) Ovens shall be located so that possible fire or explosion will not expose groups of persons to possible injury. For this reason ovens shall not adjoin lockers, lunch or sales rooms, main passageways, or exits.

(2) Recommended construction. Revoked

(3) Safeguards of mechanical parts.

(i) Emergency stop buttons shall be provided on mechanical ovens near the point where operators are stationed.

(ii) All piping at ovens shall be tested to be gastight.

(iii) Main shutoff valves, operable separately from any automatic valve, shall be provided to permit turning off the fuel or steam in case of an emergency.

(a) Main shutoff valves shall be located so that explosions, fires, etc. will not prevent access to these valves.

(b) Main shutoff valves shall be locked in the closed position when men must enter the oven or when the oven is not in service.

(4) thru (7). Revoked

(8) Electrical heating equipment.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Revoked

(iii) A main disconnect switch or circuit breaker shall be provided. This switch or circuit breaker shall be so located that it can be reached quickly and safely. The main switch or circuit breaker shall have provisions for locking it in the open position if any work on the electrical equipment or inside the oven must be performed.

(9) General requirements.

(i) Protecting devices shall be properly maintained and kept in working order.

(ii) All safety devices on ovens shall be inspected at intervals of not less than twice a month by an especially appointed, properly instructed bakery employee, and not less than once a year by representatives of the oven manufacturers.

(iii)

(a) Protection of gas pilot lights shall be provided when it is impracticable to protect the main flame of the burner and where the pilot flame cannot contact the flame electrode without being in the path of the main flame of the burner. Failure of any gas pilot shall automatically shut off the fuel supply to the burner.

(b) Ovens with multiple burners shall be equipped with individual atmospheric pilot lights where there is sufficient secondary air in the baking chamber and where gas is available; or else each burner shall be equipped with an electric spark type ignition device.

(iv) Burners of a capacity exceeding 150,000 B.t.u. per hour equipped with electric ignition shall be protected in addition by quick-acting combustion safeguards.

(a) The high-tension current for any electric spark-type ignition device shall originate in a power supply line which is interlocked with the fuel supply for the oven in such a way that in case of current failure both the source of electricity to the high-tension circuits and the fuel supply shall be turned off simultaneously.

(b) Revoked

(c) Combustion safeguards used in connection with electric ignition systems on ovens shall be so designed as to prevent an explosive mixture from accumulating inside the oven before ignition has taken place.

(v) When fuel is supplied and used at line pressure, safety shutoff valves shall be provided in the fuel line leading to the burner.

(a) When fuel is supplied in excess of line pressure, safety shutoff valves shall be provided in the fuel line leading to the burners, unless the fuel supply lines are equipped with other automatic valves which will prevent the flow of fuel when the compressing equipment is stopped.

(b) The safety shutoff valve shall be positively tight and shall be tested at least twice monthly.

(c) and (d) Revoked

(e) A safety shutoff valve shall require manual operation for reopening after it has closed, or the electric circuit shall be so arranged that it will require a manual operation for reopening the safety shutoff valve.

(f) Manual reset-type safety shutoff valves shall be so arranged that they cannot be locked in an open position by external means.

(g) Where blowers are used for supplying the air for combustion the safety shutoff valve shall be interlocked so that it will close in case of air failure.

(h) Where gas or electric ignition is used, the safety shutoff valve shall close in case of ignition failure. On burners equipped with combustion safeguards, the valve shall close in case of burner flame failure.

(vi) One main, manually operated, fuel shutoff valve shall be provided on each oven, and shall be located ahead of all other valves in the system.

(vii) All individual gas or oil burners with a heating capacity over 150,000 B.t.u. per hour shall be protected by a safeguard which is actuated by the flame and which will react to flame failure in a time interval not to exceed 2 seconds. All safeguards, once having shut down a gas or oil burner, shall require manual resetting and starting of the burner or burners.

(viii) Any space in an oven (except direct fired ovens) which could be filled with an explosive mixture shall be protected by explosion vents. Explosion vents shall be made of minimum weight consistent with adequate insulation.

(a) Explosion doors which have a substantial weight shall be attached by chains or similar means to prevent flying parts from injuring the personnel in case of an explosion.

(b) Where explosion vents are so located that flying parts or gases might endanger the personnel working on or near the oven, internal or external protecting means shall be provided in the form of heavily constructed shields or deflectors made from noncombustible material.

(c) Specifically exempted from the provisions of subdivision (viii) of this subparagraph are heating systems on ovens in which the fuel is admitted only to enclosed spaces which shall have been tested to prove that their construction will resist repeated explosions without deformation are exempt from the requirements of subdivisions (viii) (a) and (b) of this paragraph.

(ix) Flues and dampers. Revoked

(x) Revoked

(xi) Where the gas supply pressure is substantially higher than that at which the burners of an oven are designed to operate, a gas pressure regulator shall be employed.

(a) Revoked

(b) Revoked

(c) Revoked

(d) A relief valve shall be placed on the outlet side of gas pressure regulators where gas is supplied at high pressure. The discharge from this valve shall be piped to the outside of the building.

(10) Direct-fired ovens.

(i) Direct-fired ovens shall be safeguarded against failure of fuel, air, or ignition.

(ii) To prevent the possible accumulation of explosive gases from being ignited after a shutdown, all direct-fired ovens with a heating capacity over 150,000 B.t.u. per hour shall be ventilated before the ignition system, combustion air blower, and the fuel can be turned on. The preventilation shall insure at least four complete changes of atmosphere in the baking chamber by discharging the oven atmosphere to the outside of the building and entraining fresh air into it. The preventilation shall be repeated whenever the heating equipment is shut down by a safety device.

(11) Direct recirculating ovens.

(i) Each circulating fan in direct recirculating ovens shall be interconnected with the burner in such a manner that the fuel is shut off by a safety valve when the fan is not running.

(ii) The flame of the burner or burners in direct recirculating ovens shall be protected by a quick-acting flame-sensitive safeguard which will automatically shut off the fuel supply in case of burner failure.

(12) Flue-type ovens. Revoked

(13) Indirect-fired multiple burner ovens. Revoked

(14) Steam-tube ovens. Revoked

(15) Indirect recirculating ovens.

(i) Revoked

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Duct systems (in ovens) operating under pressure shall be tested for tightness in the initial starting of the oven and also at intervals not farther apart than 6 months.

1910.264—LAUNDRY MACHINERY AND OPERATIONS

(a) Definitions applicable to this section.

Revoked

(b) General requirements.

This section applies to moving parts of equipment used in laundries and to conditions peculiar to this industry, with special reference to the point of operation of laundry machines. This section does not apply to dry-cleaning operations.

(c) Point-of-operation guards.

(1) Washroom machines.

(i) Marking machine. Revoked

(ii) Washing machine.

(a) Revoked

(b) Each washing machine shall be provided with means for holding open the doors or covers of inner and outer cylinders or shells while being loaded or unloaded.

(iii) Extractor. Revoked

(2) Starching and drying machines.

(i) Starching machine (cylinder or box type). Revoked

(ii) Drying-room fan. Revoked

(iii) Drying tumbler.

(a) Revoked

INTERP

(b) Each drying tumbler shall be provided with means for holding open the doors or covers of inner and outer cylinders or shells while being loaded or unloaded.

(iv) Shaker (clothes tumbler).

(a) Revoked

(b)

(1) Revoked

(2) Each shaker or clothes tumbler of the double-cylinder type shall be provided with means for holding open the doors or covers of inner and outer cylinders or shells while being loaded or unloaded.

(v) Exception. Provisions of subdivision (iii), (iv)(*a*)(*1*), and (iv)(*b*) of this subparagraph shall not apply to shakeout or conditioning tumblers where the clothes are loaded into the open end of the revolving cylinder and are automatically discharged out of the opposite end.

(3) Finishing machines. Revoked

(4) Miscellaneous machines and equipment

(i) Sewing machine. Revoked

(ii) Exhaust or ventilating fans. Revoked

(iii) Steam pipes.

(a) All steam pipes that are within 7 feet of the floor or working platform, and with which the worker may come into contact, shall be insulated or covered with a heat-resistive material or shall be otherwise properly guarded.

(b) Where pressure-reducing valves are used, one or more relief or safety valves shall be provided on the low-pressure side of the reducing valve, in case the piping or equipment on the low-pressure side does not meet the requirements for full initial pressure. The relief or safety valve shall be located adjacent to, or as close as possible to, the reducing valve. Proper protection shall be provided to prevent injury or damage caused by fluid escaping from relief or safety valves if vented to the atmosphere. The vents shall be of ample size and as short and direct as possible. The combined discharge capacity of the relief valves shall be such that the pressure rating of the lower-pressure piping and equipment will not be exceeded if the reducing valve sticks or fails to open.

(d) Operating rules.

(1) General.

(i) Floors. Revoked

(ii) Table tops, shelves, and machine woodwork.

Revoked

(iii) Markers. Markers and others handling soiled clothes shall be warned against touching the eyes, mouth, or any part of the body on which the skin has been broken by a scratch or abrasion; and they shall be cautioned not to touch or eat food until their hands have been thoroughly washed.

(iv) Ventilation. Revoked

(v) Instruction of employees. Employees shall be properly instructed as to the hazards of their work and be instructed in safe practices, by bulletins, printed rules, and verbal instructions.

(2) Mechanical.

(i) Safety guards.

(a) No safeguard, safety appliance, or device attached to, or forming an integral part of any machinery shall be removed or made ineffective except for the purpose of making immediate repairs or adjustments. Any such safeguard, safety appliance, or device removed or made ineffective during the repair or adjustment of such machinery shall be replaced immediately upon the completion of such repairs or adjustments.

Pages 627 thru 640 deleted

1910.265—SAWMILLS

(a) General requirements.

(1) Application. This section includes safety requirements for sawmill operations including, but not limited to, log and lumber handling, sawing, trimming, and planing; waste disposal; operation of dry kilns; finishing; shipping; storage; yard and yard equipment; and for power tools and affiliated equipment used in connection with such operations, but excluding the manufacture of plywood, cooperage, and veneer.

(2) Incorporation of standards by reference. Certain of the paragraphs of this section incorporate and apply occupational safety and health standards of general application without regard to any specific industry. Such standards shall apply to sawmill operations in accordance with the rules of construction set forth in § 1910.5.

(b) Definitions applicable to this section.

(1) A-frame. The term "A-frame" means a structure made of two independent columns fastened together at the top and separated at the bottom for stability.

(2) Annealing. The term "annealing" means heating then cooling to soften and render less brittle.

(3) Binder. The term "binder" means a chain, cable, rope, or other approved material used for binding loads.

(4) Boom. The term "boom" means logs or timbers fastened together end to end and used to contain floating logs. The term includes enclosed logs.

(5) Brow log. The term "brow log" means a log placed parallel to a roadway at a landing or dump to protect vehicles while loading or unloading.

(6) Bunk. The term "bunk" means a cross support for a load.

(7) Cant. The term "cant" means a log slabbed on one or more sides.

(8) Carriage (log carriage). The term "carriage" means a framework mounted on wheels which runs on tracks or in grooves in a direction parallel to the face of the saw, and which contains apparatus to hold a log securely and advance it towards the saw.

(9) Carrier. The term "carrier" means an industrial truck so designed and constructed that it straddles the load to be transported with mechanisms to pick up the load and support it during transportation.

(10) Chipper. The term 'chipper" means a machine which cuts material into chips.

(11) Chock (bunk block) (cheese block). The terms "chock," "bunk block," and "cheese block" mean a wedge that prevents logs or loads from moving.

(12) Cold deck. The term "cold deck" means a pile of logs stored for future removal.

(13) Crotch lines. The term "crotch lines" means two short lines attached to a hoisting line by a ring or shackle, the lower ends being attached to loading hooks.

(14) Dog (carriage dog). The term "dog" means a steel tooth, one or more of which are attached to each carriage knee to hold log firmly in place on carriage.

(15) Drag saw. The term "drag saw" means a power-driven, reciprocating crosscut saw mounted on suitable frame and used for bucking logs.

(16) Head block. The term "head block" means that part of a carriage which holds the log and upon which it rests. It generally consists of base, knee, taper set, and mechanism.

(17) Head rig. The term "head rig" means a combination of head saw and log carriage used for the initial breakdown of logs into timbers, cants, and boards.

(18) Hog. The term "hog" means a machine for cutting or grinding slabs and other coarse residue from the mill.

(19) Husk. The term "husk" means a head saw framework on a circular mill.

(20) Industrial truck. The term "industrial truck" means a mobile power-driven truck or tractor.

(21) Kiln tender. The term "kiln tender" means the operator of a kiln.

(22) Lift truck. The term "lift truck" means an industrial truck used for lateral transportation and equipped with a power-operated lifting device, usually in the form of forks, for piling or unpiling lumber units or packages.

(23) Live rolls. The term "live rolls" means cylinders of wood or metal mounted on horizontal axes and rotated by power, which are used to convey slabs, lumber, and other wood products.

(24) Loading boom. The term "loading boom" means any structure projecting from a pivot point to guide a log when lifted.

(25) Log deck. The term "log deck" means a platform in the sawmill on which the logs remain until needed for sawing.

(26) Lumber hauling truck. The term "lumber hauling truck" means an industrial truck, other than a lift truck or a carrier, used for the transport of lumber.

(27) Log haul. The term "log haul" means a conveyor for transferring logs to mill.

(28) Package. The term "package" means a unit of lumber.

(29) Peavy. The term "peavy" means a stout wooden handle fitted with a spike and hook and used for rolling logs.

(30) Pike pole. The term "pike pole" means a long pole whose end is shod with a sharp pointed spike.

(31) Pitman rod. The term "pitman rod" means connecting rod.

(32) Resaw. The term "resaw" means band, circular, or sash gang saws used to break down slabs, cants, or flitches into lumber.

(33) Running line. The term "running line" means any moving rope as distinguished from a stationary rope such as a guyline.

(34) Safety factor. The term "safety factor" means a calculated reduction factor which may be applied to laboratory test values to obtain safe working stresses for wooden beams and other mechanical members; ratio of breaking load to safe load.

(35) Saw guide. The term "saw guide" means a device for steadying a circular or bandsaw.

(36) Setwork. The term "setwork" means a mechanism on a sawmill carriage which enables an operator to move the log into position for another cut.

(37) Sorting gaps. The term "sorting gaps" means the areas on a log pond enclosed by boom sticks into which logs are sorted.

(38) Spreader wheel. The term "spreader wheel" means a metal wheel that separates the board from the log in back of circular saws to prevent binding.

(39) Splitter. The term "splitter" means a knife-type, nonrotating spreader.

(40) Sticker. The term "sticker" means a strip of wood or other material used to separate layers of lumber.

(41) Stiff boom. The term "stiff boom" means the anchored, stationary boom sticks which are tied together and on which boom men work.

(42) Swifter. The term "swifter" is a means of tying boom sticks together to prevent them from spreading while being towed.

(43) Telltale. The term "telltale" means a device used to serve as a warning for overhead objects.

(44) Top saw. The term "top saw" means the upper of two circular saws on a head rig, both being on the same husk.

(45) Tramway. The term "tramway" means a way for trams, usually consisting of parallel tracks laid on wooden beams.

(46) Trestle. The term "trestle" means a braced framework of timbers, piles or steelwork for carrying a road or railroad over a depression.

(c) Building facilities, and isolated equipment.

(1) Safety factor. All buildings, docks, tramways, walkways, log dumps, and other structures shall be designed, constructed and maintained so as to support the imposed load in accordance with a safety factor.

(2) Work areas. Work areas under mills shall be as evenly surfaced as local conditions permit. They shall be free from unnecessary obstructions and provided with lighting facilities in accordance with American National Standard for Industrial Lighting A11.1—1965.

(3) Floors. Flooring in buildings and on ramps and walkways shall be constructed and installed in accordance with established principles of mechanics and sound engineering practices. They shall be of adequate strength to support the estimated or actual dead and live loads acting on them with the resultant stress not exceeding the allowable stress for the material being used.

(i) Floor and wall openings. All floor and wall openings shall be protected as prescribed in § 1910.23.

(ii) Areas beneath floor openings. Areas under floor openings shall, where practical, be fenced off. When this is not practical, they shall be plainly marked and telltales shall be installed to hang over these areas.

(iii) Floor maintenance. The flooring of buildings, docks, and passageways shall be kept in good repair. When a hazardous condition develops that cannot be immediately repaired, the area shall be guarded until adequate repairs are made.

(iv) Nonslip floors. Floors, footwalks, and passageways in the work area around machines or other places where a person is required to stand or walk shall be provided with effective means to minimize slipping.

(4) Walkways, docks, and platforms.

(i) Width. Walkways, docks, and platforms shall be of sufficient width to provide adequate passage and working areas.

(ii) Maintenance. Walkways shall be evenly floored and kept in good repair.

(iii) Docks. Docks and runways used for the operation of lift trucks and other vehicles shall have a substantial guard or shear timber except where loading and unloading are being performed.

(iv) Elevated walks. All elevated walks, runways, or platforms, if 4 feet or more from the floor level, shall be provided with a standard railing except on loading or unloading sides of platforms. If height exceeds 6 feet, a standard toe board also shall be provided to prevent material from rolling or falling off.

(v) Elevated platforms. Where elevated platforms are used routinely on a daily basis they shall be equipped with stairways or fixed ladders in accordance with § 1910.27.

(vi) Hazardous locations. Where required, walkways and stairways with standard handrails shall be provided in elevated and hazardous locations. Where such passageways are over walkways or work areas, standard toe boards shall be provided.

(5) Stairways.

(i) Construction. Stairways shall be constructed in accordance with § 1910.24.

(ii) Handrails. Stairways shall be provided with a standard handrail on at least one side or on any open side. Where stairs are more than four feet wide there shall be a standard handrail at each side, and where more than eight feet wide, a third standard handrail shall be erected in the center of the stairway.

(iii) Lighting. All stairways shall be adequately lighted as prescribed in subparagraph (9) of this paragraph.

(6) Emergency exits including doors and fire escapes.

(i) Opening. Doors shall not open directly on or block a flight of stairs, and shall swing in the direction of exit travel.

(ii) Identification. Exits shall be located and identified in a manner that affords ready exit from all work areas.

(iii) Swinging doors. All swinging doors shall be provided with windows; with one window for each section of double swinging doors. Such windows shall be of shatterproof or safety glass unless otherwise protected against breakage.

(iv) Sliding doors. Where sliding doors are used as exits, an inner door shall be cut inside each of the main doors and arranged to open outward.

(v) Barriers and warning signs. Where a doorway opens upon a railroad track or upon a tramway or dock over which vehicles travel, a barrier or other warning device shall be placed to prevent workmen from stepping into moving traffic.

(7) Air requirements. Ventilation shall be provided to supply adequate fresh healthful air to rooms, buildings, and work areas.

(8) Vats and tanks. All open vats and tanks into which workmen could fall shall be guarded.

(9) Lighting.

(i) Adequacy. Illumination shall be provided and designed to supply adequate general and local lighting to rooms, buildings, and work areas during the time of use.

(ii) Effectiveness. Factors upon which the adequacy and effectiveness of illumination will be judged, include the following:

(a) The quantity of light in foot-candle intensity shall be sufficient for the work being done.

(b) The quality of the light shall be such that it is free from glare, and has correct direction, diffusion, and distribution.

(c) Shadows and extreme contrasts shall be avoided or kept to a minimum.

(10) Ladders. Ladders shall be installed and maintained as specified in §§ 1910.25, 1910.26, and 1910.27.

(11) Hazard marking. Physical hazard marking shall be as specified in § 1910.144 of this part.

(12) Electrical wiring and equipment.

(i) All electrical equipment should be installed and maintained in accordance with requirements specified in Subpart S of this part.

(ii) Repairs. Electrical repairs shall be made only by authorized and qualified personnel.

(iii) Identification. Marks of identification on electrical equipment shall be clearly visible.

(iv) Protective equipment. Rubber protective equipment shall be provided as required by § 1910.137.

(v) Open switches. Before working on electrical equipment, switches shall be open and shall be tagged, blocked, or locked out.

(vi) Concealed conductors. Where electrical conductors are known to be concealed, no work shall be performed until such conductors are located.

(vii) Overload relays. Overload relays shall be reset by authorized qualified personnel only.

(viii) Passageways to panels. Passageways to switch centers or panels shall at all times be kept free from obstruction. Not less than 3 feet of clear space shall be maintained in front of switch centers or panels at all times.

(ix) Bridging fuses. Doubling or bridging fuses shall be prohibited.

(13) Hydraulic systems. Means shall be provided to block, chain, or otherwise secure equipment normally supported by hydraulic pressure so as to provide for safe maintenance.

(14) Liquefied petroleum gas storage and handling. Storage and handling of liquified petroleum gas shall be in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.110.

(15) Gas piping and appliances. All gas piping and appliances shall be installed in accordance with the American National Standard Requirements for Gas Appliances and Gas Piping Z21.30—1964.

(16) Flammable liquids. Flammable liquids shall be stored and handled in accordance with § 1910.106.

(17) Storage, handling, and use of chemicals.

(i) Threshold limits. Employees shall not be exposed to airborne concentration of toxic dusts, fumes, vapors, mists or gases that exceed the threshold limit values set forth by § 1910.1000.

[40 F.R. 23072, May 28, 1975.]

(ii) Protective equipment. The use of chemicals shall be controlled so as to protect employees from harmful exposure to toxic materials. Where necessary, employees shall be provided with and required to wear such protective equipment as will afford adequate protection against harmful exposure as required by Subpart I of this part.

(iii) Open surface tank operations. Open surface tank operations shall conform to the requirements of § 1910.94(d).

(18) Conveyors.

(i) Standards. Construction, operation, and maintenance of conveyors shall be in accordance with American National Standard B20.1—1957.

(ii) Guarding. Spiked live rolls shall be guarded.

(19) Stationary tramways and trestles.

(i) Foundations and walkways. Tramways and trestles shall have substantial mud sills or foundations which shall be frequently inspected and kept in repair. When vehicles are operated on tramways and trestles which are used for foot passage, traffic shall be controlled or a walkway with standard handrails at the outer edge and shear timber on the inner edge shall be provided. This walkway shall be wide enough to allow adequate clearance to vehicles. When walkways cross over other thoroughfares, they shall be solidly fenced at the outer edge to a height of 42 inches over such thoroughfares.

(ii) Clearance. Stationary tramways and trestles shall have a vertical clearance of 22 feet over railroad rails. When constructed over carrier docks or roads, they shall have a clearance of 6 feet above the driver's foot rest on the carrier, and in no event shall this clearance be less than 12 feet from the roadway. In existing operations where it is impractical to obtain such clearance, telltales, electric signals, signs or other precautionary measures shall be installed.

(20) Blower, collecting, and exhaust systems.

(i) Design, construction, and maintenance. Blower, collecting, and exhaust systems should be designed, constructed, and maintained in accordance with American National Standards Z33.1—1961 (For the Installation of Blower and Exhaust Systems for Dust, Stock, and Vapor Removal or Conveying) and Z12.2—1962 (R1969) (Code for the Prevention of Dust Explosion in Woodworking and Wood Flour Manufacturing Plants).

(ii) Collecting systems. All mills containing one or more machines that create dust, shavings, chips, or slivers during a period of time equal to or greater than one-fourth of the working day, shall be equipped with a collecting system. It may be either continuous or automatic, and shall be of sufficient strength and capacity to enable it to remove such refuse from points of operation and immediate vicinities of machines and work areas.

(iii) Exhaust or conveyor systems. Each woodworking machine that creates dust, shavings, chips, or slivers shall be equipped with an exhaust or conveyor system located and adjusted to remove the maximum amount of refuse from the point of operation and immediate vicinity.

(iv) Exhaust pipes. Revoked

(v) Dust chambers. Exhaust pipes shall not discharge into an unconfined outside pile if uncontrolled fire or explosion hazards are created. They may empty into settling or dust chambers, designed to prevent the dust or refuse from entering any work area. Such chambers shall be constructed and operated to minimize the danger of fire or dust explosion.

(vi) Hand removal of refuse. Provision for the daily removal of refuse shall be made in all operations not required to have an exhaust system or having refuse too heavy, bulky, or otherwise unsuitable to be handled by the exhaust system.

(21) Chippers.

(i) Whole-log chippers. The feed system to the chipper shall be arranged so the operator does not stand in direct line with the chipper spout (hopper). The chipper spout shall be enclosed to a height of not less than 36 inches from the floor or the operator's platform. A safety belt and lifeline shall be worn by workmen when working at or near the spout unless the spout is guarded. The lifeline shall be short enough to prevent workers from falling into the chipper.

(ii) Hogs.

(a) Hog mills shall be so designed and arranged that from no position on the rim of the chute shall the distance to the cutter knives be less than 40 inches.

(b) Hog feed chutes shall be provided with suitable and approved baffles which shall minimize material from being thrown from the mill.

(c) Employees feeding hog mills shall be provided with safety belts and lines unless guarded.

(22) Mechanical power-transmission apparatus. The construction, operation, and maintenance of all mechanical power-transmission apparatus shall be in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.219.

(23) Bins, bunkers, hoppers, and fuel houses.

(i) Guarding. Open bins, bunkers, and hoppers whose upper edges extend less than 3 feet above working level shall be equipped with standard handrails and toe boards, or have their tops covered by a substantial grill or grating with openings small enough to prevent a man from falling through.

(ii) Use of wheeled equipment to load bins. Where automotive or other wheeled equipment is used to move materials into bins, bunkers, and hoppers, adequate guard rails shall be installed along each side of the runway, and a substantial bumper stop provided when necessary.

(iii) Exits, lighting, and safety devices. Fuel houses and bins shall have adequate exits and lighting, and all necessary safety devices shall be provided and shall be used by persons entering these structures.

(iv) Walkways. Where needed, fuel houses and bins shall have a standard railed platform or walkway near the top.

(24) Ropes, cables, slings, and chains.

(i) Safe usage. Ropes, cables, slings, and chains shall be used in accordance with safe use practices recommended by the manufacturer or within safe limits recommended by the equipment manufacturer when used in conjunction with it.

(ii) Hooks. No open hook shall be used in rigging to lift any load where there is hazard from relieving the tension on the hook from the load or hook catching or fouling.

(iii) Work by qualified persons. Installation, inspection, maintenance, repair, and testing of ropes, cables, slings, and chains shall be done only by persons qualified to do such work.

(iv) Slings.

(a) Slings and their fittings and fastenings, when in use, shall be inspected daily for evidence of overloading, excessive wear, or damage. Slings found to be defective shall be removed from service.

(b) Proper storage shall be provided for slings while not in use.

(c) Suitable protection shall be provided between the sling and sharp unyielding surfaces of the load to be lifted.

(v) Ropes or cables.

(a) Wire rope or cable shall be inspected when installed and once each week thereafter, when in use. It shall be removed from hoisting or load-carrying service when kinked or when one of the following conditions exists:

(1) When three broken wires are found in one lay of 6 by 6 wire rope.

(2) When six broken wires are found in one lay of 6 by 19 wire rope.

(3) When nine broken wires are found in one lay of 6 by 37 wire rope.

(4) When eight broken wires are found in one lay of 8 by 19 wire rope.

(5) When marked corrosion appears.

(6) Wire rope of a type not described herein shall be removed from service when 4 percent of the total number of wires composing such rope are found to be broken in one lay.

(b) Wire rope removed from service due to defects shall be plainly marked or identified as being unfit for further use on cranes, hoists, and other load carrying devices.

(c) The ratio between the rope diameter and the drum, block, sheave, or pulley tread diameter shall be such that the rope will adjust itself to the bend without excessive wear, deformation, or injury. In no case shall the safe value of drums, blocks, sheaves, or pulleys be reduced when replacing such items unless compensating changes are made for rope used and for safe loading limits.

(vi) Drums, sheaves, and pulleys. Drums, sheaves, and pulleys shall be smooth and free from surface defects liable to injure rope. Drums, sheaves, or pulleys having eccentric bores or cracked hubs, spokes, or flanges shall be removed from service.

(vii) Connections. Connections, fittings, fastenings, and other parts used in connection with ropes and cables shall be of good quality and of proper size and strength, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

(viii) Socketing, splicing, and seizing.

(a) Socketing, splicing, and seizing of cables shall be performed only by qualified persons.

(b) All eye splices shall be made in an approved manner and wire rope thimbles of proper size shall be fitted in the eye, except that in slings the use of thimbles shall be optional.

(c) Wire rope clips attached with U-bolts shall have these bolts on the dead or short end of the rope. The U-bolt nuts shall be retightened immediately after initial load carrying use and at frequent intervals thereafter.

(d) When a wedge socket-type fastening is used, the dead or short end of the cable shall be clipped with a U-bolt or otherwise made secure against loosening.

(e) **Fittings.** Hooks, shackles, rings, pad eyes, and other fittings that show excessive wear or that have been bent, twisted, or otherwise damaged shall be removed from service.

(f) **Running lines.** Running lines of hoisting equipment located within 6 feet 6 inches of the ground or working level shall be boxed off or otherwise guarded, or the operating area shall be restricted.

(g) **Number of wraps on drum.** There shall be not less than two full wraps of hoisting cable on the drum of cranes and hoists at all times of operation.

(h) **Drum flanges.** Drums shall have a flange at each end to prevent the cable from slipping off.

(i) **Sheave guards.** Bottom sheaves shall be protected by close fitting guards to prevent cable from jumping the sheave.

(j) **Preventing abrasion.** The reeving of a rope shall be so arranged as to minimize chafing or abrading while in use.

(ix) Chains.

(a) Chains used in load carrying service shall be inspected before initial use and weekly thereafter.

(b) Chain shall be normalized or annealed periodically as recommended by the manufacturer.

(c) If at any time any 3-foot length of chain is found to have stretched one-third the length of a link it shall be discarded.

(d) Bolts or nails shall not be placed between two links to shorten or join chains.

(e) Broken chains shall not be spliced by inserting a bolt between two links with the head of the bolt and nut sustaining the load, or by passing one link through another and inserting a bolt or nail to hold it.

(x) Fiber rope.

(a) Frozen fiber rope shall not be used in load carrying service.

(b) Fiber rope that has been subjected to acid or excessive heat shall not be used for load carrying purposes.

(c) Fiber rope shall be protected from abrasion by padding where it is fastened or drawn over square corners or sharp or rough surfaces.

(25) Reserved.

(26) Mechanical stackers and unstackers.

(i) Power-transmission apparatus. Stackers and unstackers, shall have all gears, sprockets, chains, belt drives, and other power transmission apparatus guarded as specified in § 1910.219.

(ii) Lumber lifting devices. Lumber lifting devices on all stackers shall be designed and arranged so as to minimize the possibility of lumber falling from such devices.

(iii) Blocking hoisting platform. Means shall be provided to positively block the hoisting platform when employees must go beneath the stacker or unstacker hoist.

(iv) Identifying controls. Every manually operated control switch shall be properly identified and so located as to be readily accessible to the operator.

(v) Locking main control switches. Main control switches shall be so designed that they can be locked in the open position.

(vi) Guarding side openings. The hoistway side openings at the top level of the stacker and unstacker shall be protected by enclosures of standard railings.

(vii) Guarding hoistway openings. When the hoist platform or top of the load is below the working platform, the hoistway openings shall be guarded.

(viii) Guarding lower landing area. The lower landing area of stackers and unstackers shall be guarded by enclosures that prevent entrance to the area or pit below the hoist platform. Entrances should be protected by electrically interlocked gates which, when open, will disconnect the power and set the hoist brakes. When the interlock is not installed, other positive means of protecting the entrance shall be provided.

(ix) Inspection. Every stacker and unstacker shall be inspected at frequent intervals and all defective parts shall be immediately repaired or replaced.

(x) Cleaning pits. Safe means of entrance and exit shall be provided to permit cleaning of pits.

(xi) Preventing entry to hazardous area. Where the return of trucks from unstacker to stacker is by mechanical power or gravity, adequate signs, warning devices, or barriers shall be erected to prevent entry into the hazardous area.

(27) Lumber piling and storage.

(i) Pile foundations. In stacking units of lumber, pile foundations shall be designed and arranged to support maximum loads without sinking, sagging, or permitting the piles to topple. In unit package piles, substantial bolsters or unit separators shall be placed between each package directly over the stickers.

(ii) Stacking dissimilar unit packages. Long units of lumber shall not be stacked upon shorter packages except where a stable pile can be made with the use of package separators.

(iii) Unstable piles. Piles of lumber which have become unstable shall be immediately made safe, or the area into which they might fall shall be fenced or barricaded and employees prohibited from entering it.

(iv) Stickers. Unit packages of lumber shall be provided with stickers as necessary to insure stability under ordinary operating conditions.

(v) Sticker alignment. Stickers shall extend the full width of the package, shall be uniformly spaced, and shall be aligned one above the other. Stickers may be lapped with a minimum overlapping of 12 inches. Stickers shall not protrude more than 2 inches beyond the sides of the package.

(vi) Pile height. The height of unit package piles shall be dependent on the dimensions of the packages and shall be such as to provide stability under normal operating conditions. Adjacent lumber piles may be tied together with separators to increase stability.

(28) Lumber loading. Loads shall be built and secured to insure stability in transit.

(29) Burners.

(i) Guying. If the burner stack is not self-supporting, it shall be guyed or otherwise supported.

(ii) Runway. The conveyor runway to the burner shall be equipped with a standard handrail. If the runway crosses a roadway or thoroughfare, standard toe boards shall be provided in addition.

(30) Vehicles.

(i) Scope. Vehicles shall include all mobile equipment normally used in sawmill, planing mill, storage, shipping, and yard operations.

(ii) Warning signals and spark arrestors. All vehicles shall be equipped with audible warning signals and where practicable shall have spark arrestors.

(iii) Lights. All vehicles operated in the dark or in poorly lighted areas shall be equipped with head and tail lights.

(iv) Overhead guard. All vehicles operated in areas where overhead hazards exist shall be equipped with an approved overhead guard. See American National Standard Safety Code for Powered Industrial Trucks, B56.1—1969.

(v) Platform guard. Where the operator is exposed to hazard from backing the vehicle into objects, an approved platform guard shall be provided and so arranged as to not impede exit of driver from vehicle.

(vi) Exposed parts. Vehicle flywheels, gears, sprockets, chains, shear points, and other exposed parts constituting a hazard to the operator or other persons shall be guarded in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.219.

(vii) Operation in buildings. Vehicles powered by internal combustion engines shall not operate in buildings unless the buildings are adequately ventilated.

(viii) Load limits. No vehicle shall be operated with loads exceeding its safe load capacity.

(ix) Brakes. All vehicles shall be equipped with brakes capable of holding and controlling the vehicle and capacity load upon any incline or grade over which they may be operated.

(x) Lift trucks. Lift trucks shall be designed, constructed, maintained, and operated in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.178.

(xi) Carriers.

(a) Carriers shall be so designed and constructed that the operator's field of vision shall not be unnecessarily restricted.

(b) Carriers shall be provided with an access ladder or equivalent.

(xii) Lumber hauling trucks.

(a) On trucks where movement of load on stopping would endanger the operator, a substantial bulkhead shall be installed behind the operator's seat. This shall extend to the top of the operator's compartment.

(b) Stakes, stake pockets, racks, tighteners, and binders shall provide adequate means to secure the load against any movement during transit.

(c) Where rollers are used, at least two shall be equipped with locks which shall be locked when supporting loads during transit.

(31) Traffic control and flow.

(i) Hazardous crossings. Railroad tracks and other hazardous crossings shall be plainly posted and appropriate traffic control devices (American National Standard D8.1—1967 for Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Protection) should be utilized.

(ii) Restricted overhead clearance. All areas of restricted side or overhead clearance shall be plainly marked.

(iii) Pickup and unloading points. Pickup and unloading points and paths for lumber packages on conveyors and transfers and other areas where accurate spotting is required, shall be plainly marked and wheel stops provided where necessary.

(iv) Aisles, passageways, and roadways. Aisles, passageways, and roadways shall be sufficiently wide to provide safe side clearance. One-way aisles may be used for two-way traffic if suitable turnouts are provided.

(d) Log handling, sorting, and storage.

(1) Log unloading methods, equipment, and facilities.

(i) Unloading methods.

(a) Stakes and chocks which trip shall be constructed in such manner that the tripping mechanism that releases the stake or chocks is activated at the opposite side of the load being tripped.

(b) Binders on logs shall not be released prior to securing with unloading lines or other unloading device.

(c) Binders shall be released only from the side on which the unloader operates, except when released by remote control devices or except when person making release is protected by racks or stanchions or other equivalent means.

(d) Loads on which a binder is fouled by the unloading machine shall have an extra binder or metal band of equal strength placed around the load, or the load shall be otherwise secured so the fouled binder can be safely removed.

(ii) Unloading equipment and facilities.

(a) Machines used for hoisting, unloading, or lowering logs shall be equipped with brakes capable of controlling or holding the maximum load in midair.

INTERP

(b) The lifting cylinders of all hydraulically operated log handling machines shall be equipped with a positive device for preventing the uncontrolled lowering of the load or forks in case of a failure in the hydraulic system.

(c) A limit switch shall be installed on powered log handling machines to prevent the lift arms from traveling too far in the event the control switch is not released in time.

(d) When forklift-type machines are used to load trailers, a means of securing the loading attachment to the fork shall be installed and used.

(e) A-frames and similar log unloading devices shall have adequate height to provide safe clearance for swinging loads and to provide for adequate crotch lines and spreader bar devices.

(f) Log handling machines used to stack logs or lift loads above operator's head shall be equipped with adequate overhead protection.

(g) All mobile log handling machines shall be equipped with headlights and backup lights.

(h) Unloading devices shall be equipped with a horn or other plainly audible signaling device.

(i) Movement of unloading equipment shall be coordinated by audible or hand signals when operator's vision is impaired or operating in the vicinity of other employees.

(j) Wood pike poles shall be made of straight-grained, select material. Metal or conductive pike poles shall not be used around exposed energized electrical conductors. Defective, blunt, or dull pike poles shall not be used.

(2) Log unloading and storage areas.

(i) General.

(a) Log dumps, booms, ponds, or storage areas used at night shall be illuminated in accordance with the requirements of American National Standard A11.1—1965 (R-1970) Standard Practice for Industrial Lighting.

(b) Log unloading areas shall be arranged and maintained to provide a safe working area.

(c) Where skids are used, space adequate to clear a man's body shall be maintained between the top of the skids and the ground.

(d) Signs prohibiting unauthorized foot or vehicle traffic in log unloading and storage areas shall be posted.

(ii) Water log dumps.

(a) Ungrounded electrically powered hoists using hand-held remote control in grounded locations, such as log dumps or mill-log lifts, shall be actuated by circuits operating at less than 50 volts to ground.

(b) Roadbeds at log dumps shall be of sufficient width and evenness to insure safe operation of equipment.

(c) An adequate brow log or skid timbers or the equivalent shall be provided where necessary. Railroad-type dumps, when located where logs are dumped directly into water or where entire loads are lifted from vehicle, may be exempted providing such practice does not create a hazardous exposure of personnel or equipment.

(d) Unloading lines shall be arranged so that it is not necessary for the employees to attach them from the pond or dump side of the load except when entire loads are lifted from the log-transporting vehicle.

(e) Unloading lines, crotch lines, or equally effective means shall be arranged and used in a manner to minimize the possibility of any log from swinging or rolling back.

(f) When logs are unloaded with peavys or similar manual methods, means shall be provided and used that will minimize the danger from rolling or swinging logs.

(g) Guardrails, walkways, and standard handrails shall be installed

(h) Approved life rings (see: 46 CFR 160.099 and 46 CFR 160.050) with line attached and maintained to retain buoyancy shall be provided.

(iii) Log booms and ponds.

(a) Walkways and floats shall be installed and securely anchored to provide adequate passageway for employees.

(b) All regular boom sticks and foot logs shall be reasonably straight, with no protruding knots and bark, and shall be capable of supporting, above the water line at either end, the weight of an employee and equipment.

(c) Permanent cable swifters shall be so arranged that it will not be necessary to roll boom sticks in order to attach or detach them.

(d) Periodic inspection of cable or dogging lines shall be made to determine when repair or removal from service is necessary.

(e) The banks of the log pond in the vicinity of the log haul shall be reinforced to prevent caving in.

(f) Artificial log ponds shall be drained, cleaned, and refilled when unhealthy stagnation or pollution occurs.

(g) Employees whose duties require them to work from boats, floating logs, boom sticks, or walkways along or on water shall be provided with and shall wear appropriate buoyant devices while performing such duties.

(h) Stiff booms shall be two float logs wide secured by boom chains or other connecting devices, and of a width adequate for the working needs. Walking surfaces shall be free of loose material and maintained in good repair.

(i) Boom sticks shall be fastened together with adequate crossties or couplings.

(j) Floating donkeys or other power-driven machinery used on booms shall be placed on a raft or float with enough buoyancy to keep the deck well above water.

(k) All sorting gaps shall have a substantial stiff boom on each side.

(iv) Pond boats and rafts. The applicable provisions of the Standard for Fire Protection for Motorcraft, NFPA No 302—1968, shall be complied with.

(a) Decks of pond boats shall be covered with nonslip material.

(b) Powered pond boats or rafts shall be provided with at least one approved fire extinguisher, and one lifering with line attached.

(c) Boat fuel shall be transported and stored in approved safety containers. Refer to § 1910.155(c)(3) for definition of approved.

[53 F.R. 12123, April 12, 1988]

(d) Inspection, maintenance, and ventilation of the bilge area shall be provided to prevent accumulation of highly combustible materials.

(e) Adequate ventilation shall be provided for the cabin area on enclosed cabin-type boats to prevent accumulation of harmful gases or vapors.

(v) Dry deck storage.

(a) Dry deck storage areas shall be kept orderly and shall be maintained in a condition which is conducive to safe operation of mobile equipment.

(b) Logs shall be stored in a safe and orderly manner, and roadways and traffic lanes shall be maintained at a width adequate for safe travel of log handling equipment.

(c) Logs shall be arranged to minimize the chance of accidentally rolling from the deck.

(vi) Log hauls and slips.

(a) Walkways along log hauls shall have a standard handrail on the outer edge, and cleats or other means to assure adequate footing and enable employees to walk clear of the log chute.

(b) Log haul bull chains or cable shall be designed, installed, and maintained to provide adequate safety for the work need.

(c) Log haul gear and bull chain drive mechanism shall be guarded.

(d) Substantial troughs for the return strand of log haul chains shall be provided over passageways.

(e) Log haul controls shall be located and identified to operate from a position where the operator will, at all times, be in the clear of logs, machinery, lines, and rigging. In operations where control is by lever exposed to incoming logs, the lever shall be arranged to operate the log haul only when moved toward the log slip or toward the log pond.

(f) A positive stop shall be installed on all log hauls to prevent logs from traveling too far ahead in the mill.

(g) Overhead protection shall be provided for employees working below logs being moved to the log deck.

(h) Log wells shall be provided with safeguards to minimize the possibility of logs rolling back into well from log deck.

(3) Log decks.

(i) Access. Safe access to the head rig shall be provided.

(ii) Stops. Log decks shall be provided with adequate stops, chains, or other safeguards to prevent logs from rolling down the deck onto the carriage or its runway.

(iii) Barricade. A barricade or other positive stop of sufficient strength to stop any log shall be erected between the sawyer's stand and the log deck.

(iv) Loose chains. Loose chains from overhead canting devices or other equipment shall not be allowed to hang over the log deck in such manner as to strike employees.

(v) Swing saws. Swing saws on log decks shall be equipped with a barricade and stops for protection of employees who may be on the opposite side of the log haul chute.

(vi) Drag saws. Where reciprocating log cutoff saws (drag saws) are provided, they shall not project into walkway or aisle.

(vii) Circular cutoff saws. Circular log bucking or cutoff saws shall be so located and guarded as to allow safe entrance to and exit from the building.

(viii) Entrance doorway. Where the cutoff saw partially blocks the entrance from the log haul runway, the entrance shall be guarded.

(4) Mechanical barkers.

(i) Rotary barkers. Rotary barking devices shall be so guarded as to protect employees from flying chips, bark, or other extraneous material.

(ii) Elevating ramp. If an elevating ramp or gate is used, it shall be provided with a safety chain, hook, or other means of suspension while employees are underneath.

(iii) Area around barkers. The hazardous area around ring barkers and their conveyors shall be fenced off or posted as a prohibited area for unauthorized persons.

(iv) Enclosing hydraulic barkers. Hydraulic barkers shall be enclosed with strong baffles at the inlet and outlet. The operator shall be protected by adequate safety glass or equivalent.

(v) Holddown rolls. Holddown rolls shall be installed at the infeed and outfeed sections of mechanical ring barkers to control the movement of logs.

(e) Log breakdown and related machinery and facilities.

(1) Log carriages and carriage runways.

(i) Bumpers. A substantial stop or bumper with adequate shock-absorptive qualities shall be installed at each end of the carriage runway.

(ii) Footing. Rider-type carriages shall be floored to provide secure footing and a firm working platform for the block setter.

(iii) Sheave housing. Sheaves on rope-driven carriages shall be guarded at floor line with substantial housings.

(iv) Carriage control. A positive means shall be provided to prevent unintended movement of the carriage. This may involve a control locking device, a carriage tie-down, or both.

(v) Barriers and warning signs. A barrier shall be provided to prevent employees from entering the space necessary for travel of the carriage, with headblocks fully receded, for the full length and extreme ends of carriage runways. Warning signs shall be posted at possible entry points to this area.

(vi) Overhead clearance. For a rider-type carriage adequate overhead clear space above the carriage deck shall be provided for the full carriage runway length.

(vii) Sweeping devices. Carriage track sweeping devices shall be used to keep track rails clear of debris.

(viii) Dogs. Dogging devices shall be adequate to secure logs, cants, or boards, during sawing operations.

(2) Head saws.

(i) Band head saws.

(a) Band head saws shall not be operated at speeds in excess of those recommended by the manufacturer.

(b) Band head saws shall be thoroughly inspected for cracks, splits, broken teeth, and other defects. A bandsaw with a crack greater than one-tenth the width of the saw shall not be placed in service until width of saw is reduced to eliminate crack, until cracked section is removed, or crack development is stopped.

(c) Provisions shall be made for alerting and warning employees before starting band head saws, and measures shall be taken to insure that all persons are in the clear.

(ii) Bandsaw wheels.

(a) No bandsaw wheel shall be run at a peripheral speed in excess of that recommended by the manufacturer. The manufacturer's recommended maximum speed shall be stamped in plainly legible figures on some portion of the wheel.

(b) Band head saw wheels shall be subjected to monthly inspections. Hubs, spokes, rims, bolts, and rivets shall be thoroughly examined in the course of such inspections. A loose or damaged hub, a rim crack, or loose spokes shall make the wheel unfit for service.

(c) Band wheels shall be completely encased or guarded, except for a portion of the upper wheel immediately around the point where the blade leaves the wheel, to permit operator to observe movement of equipment. Necessary ventilating and observation ports may be permitted. Substantial doors or gates are allowed for repair, lubrication, and saw changes; such doors or gates shall be closed securely during operation. Band head rigs shall be equipped with a saw catcher or guard of substantial construction.

(iii) Single circular head saws.

(a) Circular head saws shall not be operated at speeds in excess of those specified by the manufacturer. Maximum speed shall be etched on the saw.

(b) Circular head saws shall be equipped with safety guides which can be readily adjusted without use of hand tools.

(c) The upper saw of a double circular mill shall be provided with a substantial hood or guard. A screen or other suitable device shall be placed so as to protect the sawyer from flying particles.

(d) All circular sawmills where live rolls are not used behind the head saw shall be equipped with a spreader wheel or splitter.

(iv) Twin circular head saws. Twin circular head saw rigs such as scrag saws shall meet the specifications for single circular head saws in subdivision (iii) of this subparagraph where applicable.

(v) Whole-log sash gang saws (Swedish gangs).

(a) Cranks, pitman rods, and other moving parts shall be adequately guarded.

(b) Feed rolls shall be enclosed by a cover over the top, front, and open ends except where guarded by location. Drive mechanism to feed rolls shall be enclosed.

(c) Carriage cradles of whole-log sash gang saws (Swedish gangs), shall be of adequate height to prevent logs from kicking out while being loaded.

(3) Resaws.

(i) Band resaws. Band resaws shall meet the specifications for band head saws as required by subparagraph (2)(i) of this paragraph.

(ii) Circular gang resaws.

(a) Banks of circular gang resaws shall be guarded by a hood.

(b) Circular gang resaws shall be provided with safety fingers or other antikickback devices.

(c) Circular gang resaws shall not be operated at speeds exceeding those recommended by the manufacturer.

(d) Feed belts and drive pulleys shall be guarded in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.219.

(e) Feed rolls shall be guarded.

(f) Each circular gang resaw, except self-feed saws with a live roll or wheel at back of saw, shall be provided with spreaders.

(iii) Sash gang resaws. Sash gang resaws shall meet the safety specifications of whole-log sash gang saws in accordance with the requirements of subparagraph (2)(v) of this paragraph.

(4) Trimmer saws.

(i) Maximum speed. Trimmer saws shall not be run at peripheral speeds in excess of those recommended by the manufacturer.

(ii) Guards.

(a) Trimmer saws shall be guarded in front by adequate baffles to protect against flying debris and they shall be securely bolted to a substantial frame. These guards for a series of saws shall be set as close to the top of the trimmer table as is practical.

(b) The end saws on trimmers shall be guarded.

(c) The rear of trimmer saws shall have a guard the full width of the saws and as much wider as practical.

(iii) Safety stops. Automatic trimmer saws shall be provided with safety stops or hangers to prevent saws from dropping on table.

(5) Edgers.

(i) Location.

(a) Where vertical arbor edger saws are located ahead of the main saw, they shall be so guarded that an employee cannot contact any part of the edger saw from his normal position.

(b) Edgers shall not be located in the main roll case behind the head saws.

(ii) Guards.

(a) The top and the openings in end and side frames of edgers shall be adequately guarded and gears and chains shall be fully housed. Guards may be hinged or otherwise arranged to permit oiling and the removal of saws.

(b) All edgers shall be equipped with pressure feed rolls.

(c) Pressure feed rolls on edgers shall be guarded against accidental contact.

(iii) Antikickback devices.

(a) Edgers shall be provided with safety fingers or other approved methods of preventing kickbacks or guarding against them. A barricade in line with the edger, if properly fenced off, may be used if safety fingers are not feasible to install.

(b) A controlling device shall be installed and located so that the operator can stop the feed mechanism without releasing the tension of the pressure rolls.

(iv) Operating speed of live rolls. Live rolls and tailing devices in back of edger shall operate at a speed not less than the speed of the edger feed rolls.

(6) Planers.

(i) Guards.

(a) All cutting heads shall be guarded.

(b) Side head hoods shall be of sufficient height to safeguard the head setscrew.

(c) Pressure feed rolls and "pineapples" shall be guarded.

(d) Levers or controls shall be so arranged or guarded as to reduce the possibility of accidental operation.

(f) Dry kilns and facilities.

(1) Kiln foundations. Dry kilns shall be constructed upon solid foundations to prevent tracks from sagging.

(2) Passageways. A passageway shall be provided to give adequate clearance on at least one side or in the center of end-piled kilns and on two sides of cross-piled kilns.

(3) Doors.

(i) Main kiln doors.

(a) Main kiln doors shall be provided with a method of holding them open while kiln is being loaded.

(b) Counterweights on vertical lift doors shall be boxed or otherwise guarded.

(c) Adequate means shall be provided to firmly secure main doors, when they are disengaged from carriers and hangers, to prevent toppling.

(ii) Escape doors.

(a) If operating procedures require access to kilns, kilns shall be provided with escape doors that operate easily from the inside, swing in the direction of exit, and are located in or near the main door at the end of the passageway.

(b) Escape doors shall be of adequate height and width to accommodate an average size man.

(4) Pits. Pits shall be well ventilated, drained, and lighted, and shall be large enough to safely accommodate the kiln operator together with operating devices such as valves, dampers, damper rods, and traps.

(5) Steam mains. All high-pressure steam mains located in or adjacent to an operating pit shall be covered with heat-insulating material.

(6) Ladders. A fixed ladder, in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.27 or other adequate means shall be provided to permit access to the roof. Where controls and machinery are mounted on the roof, a permanent stairway with standard handrail shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.24.

(7) Chocks. A means shall be provided for chocking or blocking cars.

(8) Kiln tender room. A warm room shall be provided for kiln employees to stay in during cold weather after leaving a hot kiln.

(9) Mechanical equipment. All belts, pulleys, blowers, and other exposed moving equipment used in or about kilns shall be guarded in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.219.

(g) Personal protective equipment.

The requirements for personal protective equipment specified in Subpart I shall be complied with.

(h) Sanitation requirements.

The requirements of § 1910.141 shall govern sanitation practices.

(i) Fire protection.

The requirements of Subpart L of this part shall be complied with in providing the necessary fire protection for sawmills.

(j) Effective dates.

(1) The provisions of this § 1910.265 shall become effective on August 27, 1971, except as provided in the remaining subparagraphs of this paragraph.

(2) The following provisions shall become effective on February 15, 1972: § 1910.265 (c)(12), (c)(15), and (c)(30)(iv).

(3) Notwithstanding subparagraph (1), (2), or (4) of this paragraph, any provision in any other paragraph of this section which contains in itself a specific effective date or time limitation shall become effective on such date or shall apply in accordance with such limitation.

(4) Notwithstanding anything in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, if any standard in 41 CFR Part 50–204, other than a national consensus standard incorporated by reference in § 50–204.2(a)(1), is or becomes applicable at any time to any employment and place of employment, by virtue of the Walsh-Healey Public Contracts Act, or the Service Contract Act of 1965, or the National Foundation on Arts and Humanities Act of 1965, any corresponding established Federal standard in this § 1910.265 which is derived from 41 CFR Part 50–204 shall also become effective, and shall be applicable to such employment and place of employment, on the same date.

1910.266—PULPWOOD LOGGING

(a) Application.

(1) General. This section applies to pulpwood logging operations including but not limited to the operations of felling, limbing, marking, bucking, loading, skidding, prehauling and other operations associated with the preparation and movement of pulpwood timber from the stump to the point of delivery. The provisions of this section do not apply to logging operations relating to sawlogs, veneer bolts, poles, piling and other forest products.

(2) Standards incorporated by reference. Standards covering issues of occupational safety and health which are of general application without regard to any specific industry are incorporated by reference in paragraphs of this section and made applicable to pulpwood logging. All such standards shall be construed according to the rules of construction set out in § 1910.5.

(b) Definitions applicable to this section.

(1) Arch. The term "arch" means an extension to rear section of a vehicle used in skidding used to raise the forward part of a load clear of the ground.

(2) Back cut (felling cut). The term "back cut" means the final cut in a felling operation made on the opposite side from the undercut.

(3) Backfill. The term "backfill" means excavated material used to build up a road higher than the original level.

(4) Ballistic nylon. The term "ballistic nylon" means a fabric of high tensile properties designed to provide protection from lacerations.

(5) Borrow. The term "borrow" means road construction material which is taken to another location for use. The source area is called "borrow pit."

(6) Buck. The term "buck" means the process of severing a tree into sections (logs or bolts).

(7) Choker. The term "choker" means a length of wire rope or chain with a loop or noose at one end used to secure trees or sections of trees for skidding.

(8) Debark. The term "debark" means the action of removing bark from trees or sections of trees. Debark generally denotes mechanical means as opposed to manual peeling. Synonyms are "bark" and "barking."

(9) Fairlead. The term "fairlead" means an arrangement of horizontal, and sometimes vertical, rollers usually mounted at the end of an arch to allow free play of wire rope during winching.

(10) Fell. The term "fell" means the process of severing a tree from the stump so that it drops to the ground. Note that "fell" and "feller" are used in this standard. The terms "fall" and "faller" are commonly used in the Western United States and they have the same meaning as "fell" and "feller."

(11) Grade (see slope). The term "grade" means the slope of a surface such as a roadway. Also, the elevation of a real or planned surface or structure.

(12) Guarded. The term "guarded" means protected by a cover, shield, rail, or other device, or by location, so as to reduce the probability of injury.

(13) Guyline. The term "guyline" means a line used to stay or support spar trees, booms, etc.

(14) Landing. The term "landing" means any area where wood is concentrated. It is also called "yard," "deck," "brow."

(15) Lodged tree. The term "lodged tree" means a tree that has not fallen to the ground after being partly or wholly separated from its stump or otherwise displaced from its natural position.

(16) Pickaroon. The term "pickaroon" means a device with a head similar to an axe but with a point rather than a blade mounted on the end of a handle which is used to assist in the lifting and placement of bolts of wood.

(17) Prehaul. The term "prehaul" means the hauling of forest products by off-the-road vehicles, nonhighway transport, or other movement prior to highway or rail movement, where the pulpwood travels clear of the ground. The term "forward" has the same meaning.

(18) Riprap. The term "riprap" means rock, metal stripping, or wooden timbers used to contain and stabilize earth embankments and fills.

(19) Root wad. The term "root wad" means the ball of roots which extends above ground level when a tree is pushed over by wind or other means.

(20) Skid. The term "skid" means the movement of bolts, logs, or trees by pulling or towing across the terrain. It may be accomplished by a stationary machine, a moving vehicle, or animal. The term is also called "yarding." The definitive feature is contact between the terrain and the product during movement.

(21) Slope (see grade). The term "slope" is a term of measurement in percent and means the increase in height over the distance measured. An increase of 1 foot over a distance of 5 feet is expressed as a 20 percent slope.

(22) Snag. The term "snag" means any dead standing tree or portion thereof remaining standing.

(23) Spring pole. The term "spring pole" means a section of tree, sapling, limb, etc which is, by virtue of its arrangement with relation to other materials, under tension.

(24) Undercut. The term "undercut" means a notch cut in a tree to guide the tree in felling.

(25) Widow maker. The term "widow maker" means an overhanging limb or section of tree which could become dislodged and drop to the ground (see also "lodged tree").

(26) Wood hook. The terms "wood hook" and "pulp hook" mean a device to be held in one hand which is fitted with a pointed section. The device is used to assist in the manual piling and handling of bolts of wood (see Pickaroon).

(c) General requirements.

(1) Clothing, personal protective devices, and first aid.

(i) Gloves shall be provided for use when working with wire rope in any form.

(ii) Safety boots or shoes (excluding low cut shoes) shall be provided in accordance with American National Standard for Men's Safety-Toe Footwear, Z41.1—1967.

(iii) Safety helmets of approved design in accordance with American National Standard for Safety Requirements for Industrial Head Protection, Z89.1—1969 shall be provided.

(iv) Eye or face protection in accordance with American National Standard for Practice for Occupational and Educational Eye and Face Protection, Z87.1—1968 shall be provided for use where chips and sawdust or flying particles are present.

(v) Dust masks in accordance with American National Standard Practices for Respiratory Protection Z88.2—1969 shall be provided for use where conditions warrant.

(vi) Protection against the effects of noise exposure shall be provided when the sound levels exceed those shown in Table G-16 of § 1910.95 when measured on the A scale of a standard sound level meter at slow response.

(vii) First aid kits sufficient for the number of employees shall be provided at the work site and on all transport vehicles. In all areas where poisonous snakes may exist, snake bite kits shall be a part of the regular first aid equipment. First aid kits shall be regularly inspected and replenished.

(2) Handtools.

(i) The employer shall be responsible for the safe condition of tools when furnished by him and user shall inspect tool to assure safe condition.

(ii) Handles shall be sound, straight and tight fitting.

(iii) Driven tools shall be dressed to remove any mushrooming.

(iv) Cutting tools shall be kept sharp and properly shaped.

(v) Wood hooks and pickaroons of good grade steel shall be used.

(vi) Tools shall be used for purposes for which they were designed.

(vii) Handtools shall be sheathed or boxed if transported in a vehicle with personnel. If not contained in a box, the sheathed tools shall be fastened to the vehicle.

(viii) Proper storage facilities shall be provided for hand tools. Tools shall be stored in the provided location at all times when not in use.

(ix) Periodic inspections shall be made to assure all tools are serviceable and others removed from use.

(3) Environmental conditions.

(i) All work shall terminate and employees moved to a place of safety during electrical storms and periods of high winds or other unusual weather conditions are dangerous to personnel.

(ii) Dead, broken, or rotted limbs or trees that are a hazard (widow makers) shall be felled or otherwise removed before commencing logging operations, building roads, trails or landing, in their vicinity.

(4) Work areas.

(i) All persons shall be instructed to work within the vocal range of other workmen unless a procedure has been established for periodically checking their location and welfare.

(ii) All men shall be accounted for at the end of each work day.

(iii) An approved fire extinguisher shall be provided at locations where machines are operating and/or on each vehicle. Refer to § 1910.155(c)(3) for definition of approved.

(iv) Fuel shall be stored only in approved well-marked containers located for safe access for fueling vehicles and equipment and at a safe distance from all fire hazards. Refer to § 1910.155(c)(3) for definition of approved.

[53 F.R. 12123, April 12, 1988]

ing vehicles and equipment and at a safe distance from all fire hazards.

(5) Chain saw operations.

(i) Chain saw operators shall be instructed to daily inspect the saws daily to assure that all handles and guards are in place and tight, that all controls function properly, and that the muffler is operative.

(ii) Chain saw operators shall be instructed to follow manufacturer's instructions as to operation and adjustment.

(iii) Chain saw operators shall be instructed to fuel the saw only in safe areas and not under conditions conducive to fire such as near men smoking, hot engine, etc.

(iv) Chain saw operators shall be instructed to hold the saw with both hands during operation.

(v) Chain saw operators shall be instructed to start the saw at least 10 feet away from fueling area.

(vi) Chain saw operators shall be instructed to start the saw only on the ground or when otherwise firmly supported.

(vii) Chain saw operators shall be instructed to be certain of footing and to clear away brush which might interfere before starting to cut.

(viii) Chain saw operators shall be instructed not to use engine fuel for starting fires or as a cleaning solvent.

(ix) Chain saw operators shall be instructed to shut off the saw when carrying it for a distance greater than from tree to tree or in hazardous conditions such as slippery surfaces or heavy underbrush. The saw shall be at idle speed when carried short distances.

(x) Chain saw operators shall be instructed to carry the saw in a manner to prevent contact with the chain and muffler.

(xi) Chain saw operators shall be instructed not to use the saw to cut directly overhead or at a distance that would require the operator to relinquish a safe grip on the saw.

(6) Stationary and mobile equipment operation.

(i) Equipment operators shall be instructed as to the manufacturers recommendations for equipment operation, maintenance, safe practices, and site operating procedures.

(ii) Equipment shall be kept free of flammable material.

(iii) Equipment shall be kept free of any material which might contribute to slipping and falling.

(iv) Engine of equipment shall be shut down during fueling, servicing, and repairs except where operation is required for adjustment.

(v) Equipment shall be inspected for evidence of failure or incipient failure.

(vi) The equipment operator shall be instructed to walk completely around machine and assure that no obstacles or personnel are in the area before startup.

(vii) The equipment operator shall be instructed to start and operate equipment only from the operator's station or from safe area recommended by the manufacturer.

(viii) Seat belt shall be provided on mobile equipment.

(ix) The equipment operator shall be instructed to check all controls for proper function and response before starting working cycle.

(x) The equipment operator shall be instructed to ground or secure all movable elements when not in use.

(xi) The equipment operator shall be advised of the load capacity and operating speed of the equipment.

(xii) The equipment operator shall be advised of the stability limitations of the equipment.

(xiii) The equipment operator shall be instructed to maintain adequate distance from other equipment and personnel.

(xiv) Where signalmen are used, the equipment operator shall be instructed to operate the equipment only on signal from the designated signalman and only when signal is distinct and clearly understood.

(xv) The equipment operator shall be instructed not to operate movable elements (boom, grapple, load, etc.) close to or over personnel.

(xvi) The equipment operator shall be instructed to signal his intention before operation when personnel are in or near the working area.

(xvii) The equipment operator shall be instructed to dismount and stand clear for all loading and unloading of his mobile vehicle by other mobile equipment. The dismounted operator shall be visible to loader operator.

(xviii) The equipment operator shall be instructed to operate equipment in a manner that will not place undue shock loads on wire rope.

(xix) The equipment operator shall be instructed not to permit riders or observers on the machine unless approved seating and protection is provided.

(xx) The equipment operator shall be instructed to shut down the engine when the equipment is stopped, apply brake locks and ground moving elements before he dismounts.

(xxi) The equipment operator shall be instructed, when any equipment is transported from one job location to another, to transport it on a vehicle of sufficient rated capacity and the equipment shall be properly secured during transit.

(xxii) When any equipment is being moved or operated in the vicinity of an electric distribution line a minimum clearance of ten feet shall be maintained between the electric distribution line and all elements of the machine.

(7) Explosives. Only trained and experienced personnel shall handle or use explosives. Usage shall comply with the requirements of § 1910.109.

(d) Equipment protective devices—stationary and mobile equipment.

(1) Operator's manual. There shall be an operator's manual or operating instructions with each machine. It will describe operation, maintenance, and safe practices.

(2) Protective canopy. A protective canopy shall be provided for the operator of mobile equipment. It shall be so constructed as to protect the operator from injury due to falling trees or limbs, saplings or branches which might enter the compartment side areas, and snapping winch lines or other objects.

(i) The canopy shall be of adequate size so as not to impair the operator's movements.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) The overhead covering shall be of solid material and extend the full width of the canopy.

(iv) The lower portion of cab shall be completely enclosed with solid material, except at entrances, to prevent the operator from being injured from obstacles entering the cab.

(v) The upper rear portion of cab shall be fully enclosed with open mesh material with openings of such a size as to reject the entrance of an object larger than 1$\frac{3}{4}$ inch in diameter. It shall provide maximum rearward visibility.

(vi) Open mesh shall be extended forward as far as possible from the rear corners of the cab sides so as to give the maximum protection against obstacles, branches, etc., entering the cab area.

(vii) Deflectors shall also be installed ahead of the operator to deflect whipping saplings and branches. These shall be located so as to not impede ingress or egress from the compartment.

(viii) The entrance opening of the canopy shall be not less than 52 inches in vertical height.

(ix) Where glass is used it shall be safety glass. An approved substitute may be used.

(a) An additional metal screen shall be used where glass alone is not adequate operator protection.

(b) Provision shall be made to clean glass to assure adequate visibility.

(3) Guards. Guards shall be provided for exposed moving elements such as shafts, pulleys, belts, conveyors, and gears in accordance with § 1910.219 and American National Standard Safety Code for Conveyors, Cableways, and Related Equipment, B20.1—1957. Guards shall be in place at all times machine is in operation.

(4) Mufflers. Mufflers provided by the manufacturer or their equivalent shall be in place at all times the machine is in operation.

(5) Guylines. Guylines shall be arranged in such manner that stresses will be imposed on not less than two guylines. Stumps used for anchoring guylines shall be carefully chosen as to position and strength. They shall be tied back if necessary. Standing trees shall not be used for this purpose.

(6) Stability and reliability. Crane and loader stability and boom reliability shall be in accordance with American National Standard Safety Code for Cranes, Derricks and Hoists Overhead and Gantry Cranes, B30.2.0—1967, and American National Standard Safety Code for Cranes, Derricks and Hoists—Crawler, Locomotive, and Truck Cranes, B30.5—1968.

(e) Pulpwood harvesting.

(1) Felling, general.

(i) Work areas shall be assigned such that a tree cannot fall into an adjacent work area. The recommended distance between workers is twice the height of trees being felled.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Workers shall be instructed not to approach a feller closer than twice the height of trees being felled until the feller has acknowledged the signal of approach.

(iv) Lodged trees shall be pulled to the ground at first opportunity with mechanical equipment or animal.

(v) Workers shall be instructed not to work under a lodged tree.

(vi) Special precautions shall be taken to prevent felling trees into powerlines.

(vii) If a tree does make contact with a powerline the power company shall be notified immediately and all personnel shall remain clear of the area until power company personnel advises that conditions are safe.

(2) Manual felling.

(i) The feller shall be instructed to plan retreat path and clear path as necessary before cut is started.

(ii) The feller shall be instructed to appraise situation for dead limbs, the lean of tree to be cut, wind conditions, location of other trees and other hazards and exercise proper precautions before cut is started.

(iii) Undercuts shall be about one-third the diameter of the tree to guide tree and reduce possibility of splitting. (Local practice where small diameter trees are felled without being undercut is acceptable if the direction of fall is controlled by the practice.)

(iv) Back or felling cut shall be parallel to the inner edge of the undercut and approximately two inches higher than the undercut.

(v) The saw shall be shut off before feller starts his retreat.

(vi) On terrain where trees are likely to slide or roll fellers shall be instructed to fell trees from the uphill side and arrange to keep uphill from previously felled trees.

(3) Bucking.

(i) Bucking on slopes shall be from the uphill side unless the log has been securely blocked to prevent rolling or swinging.

(ii) Spring poles and trees under stress shall be cut so that employee is clear when the tension is released. (This is accomplished by cutting under the bend.)

(iii) Trees piled for bucking shall be piled in an orderly parallel manner that minimizes hazard to employees.

(4) Limbing. Spring poles and limbs under stress shall be cut in such a manner that the employee is clear when tension is released.

(5) Mechanical debarking and delimbing. Guarding shall be provided so as to protect employees from flying chunks, logs, chips, bark, limbs, and other material and to prevent the worker from contacting moving parts.

(6) Skidding and prehauling, general.

(i) Only a designated, trained operator shall operate a skid or prehaul machine.

(ii) Choker setters shall work on uphill side of log.

(iii) No passenger personnel shall ride on a prehaul vehicle, logs, pallets, skid pans or other load unless adequate seating and protection is provided except on animal powered wagons.

(iv) Chokers shall be positioned near the end of the log or tree length to allow turning of the prehaul vehicle, to prevent the penetration of the operator station and to reduce possibility of striking the wheel or track.

(v) During winching, the equipment shall be positioned so that the winch line is in alignment with the long axis of the prehaul machine.

(vi) A stuck or inoperative vehicle shall be towed. A loaded pallet shall not be pushed.

(vii) Stakes shall not be added to permit a load beyond the rated capacity of pallets and trailers.

(viii) The operator shall be instructed to be observant and cautious of height of load and vehicle when traveling under trees, limbs, and other overhead obstructions.

(7) Skidding and prehauling equipment requirements.

(i) Arches, fairleads, drawbars, hitches and bumpers or fenders shall be designed and constructed to allow a minimum radius vehicle turn without the load contacting a rear tire or the rear of a track assembly.

(ii) Towed equipment such as skid pans, pallets and trailers shall be attached in such a manner as to allow a full 90° turn, prevent overrunning of the towed vehicle, and assure control of the towed equipment.

(iii) Animal towed equipment shall be equipped with a hand brake within reach of the driver.

(iv) Prehaulers shall have a means for securely retaining pallets or pulpwood.

(v) Prehaulers shall have a means of securely retaining loader for transport when so equipped.

(vi) Provision shall be made to securely fasten and to protect all tools and material on the carrier.

(8) Personnel transport.

(i) The driver shall be properly licensed.

(ii) Flammable liquids shall not be transported on personnel carriers unless a safe and adequate compartment is provided.

(iii) Seats shall be securely fastened.

(9) Off highway truck transport. Revoked

(10) Manual loading.

(i) The carrier shall be positioned to provide safe working clearance between carrier and pile.

(ii) Proper lifting techniques shall be used, i.e., straight back and bend knees.

(iii) The stick shall be placed in the carrier in such manner that it is or will be properly secured.

(iv) Manual handling shall be limited to a weight consistent with safe practices.

(11) Machine loading.

(i) Piles shall be located to provide a safe work area.

(ii) Only the machine operator and slingman, where used, shall be in the work area.

(iii) The load shall be positioned for balance and to prevent slippage or loss. Slings shall be placed to secure and balance the load.

(12) Storage. Piles shall be located and constructed in a manner to provide safe working area around them.

(13) Banding and piling bundles.

(i) Steel bands in good condition shall be used.

(ii) Bands shall be placed when bundle is close to ground.

(iii) No part of the body shall be under the bundle at any time. Bundles shall be placed on runners. Bundles may be double stacked with top end bundle one half or more back from the lower rank end bundle.

(14) Chipping (in-woods locations).

(i) Acess covers or doors shall not be opened until the drum or disk is at a complete stop.

(ii) Infeed and discharge ports shall be designed to prevent contact by personnel with disc, knives, or blower blades.

(15) Roads and trails, general.

(i) Roads shall be maintained and hazardous conditions corrected.

(ii) Where vision is limited warnings shall be posted.

(iii) Curve radii shall be the maximum consistent with terrain.

(iv) When nightwork is necessary adequate lighting shall be provided.

(v) Local road standards and maximum weight of traffic expected shall be used as guides for materials, construction features and drainage.

(16) Road and trail pioneering and earthwork.

(i) Banks at the borrow area shall be sloped to prevent slides.

(ii) Backfill shall be adequately compacted.

(iii) Roadside banks shall be sloped or stabilized to prevent slides.

(iv) Overhanging banks, large rocks and debris shall be removed or secured.

(v) Where riprap is used the material and design shall assure safe containment of material.

(vi) Trees or snags which may fall into the road shall be felled.

(17) Road and trail drainage.

(i) Drainage shall be provided to prevent washouts and landslides.

(ii) Culverts shall be of adequate strength and of a size to handle maximum runoff.

(iii) Where necessary, ditches and banks shall be stabilized by vegetation, riprap or other adequate means.

(18) Road and trail surfacing. Road surface shall be properly compacted, graded and crowned.

(19) Bridges.

(i) Construction shall provide for maximum anticipated loads and side thrust with a substantial safety factor.

(ii) Bridges shall be decked and curbed.

(f) Effective dates.

(1) The provisions of this § 1910.266 shall become effective on August 27, 1971, except as provided in the remaining subparagraphs of this paragraph.

(2) Paragraph (d)(2) of this section shall become effective on February 15, 1972.

(3) Notwithstanding anything in subparagraph (1), (2), or (4) of this paragraph, any provision in any other paragraph of this section which contains in itself a specific effective date or time limitation shall become effective on such date or shall apply in accordance with such limitation.

(4) Notwithstanding anything in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, if any standard in 41 CFR Part 50-204, other than a national consensus standard incorporated by reference in § 50-204.2(a)(1), is or becomes applicable at any time to any employment and place of employment, by virtue of the Walsh-Healey Public Contracts Act, or the Service Contract Act of 1965, or the National Foundation on Arts and Humanities Act of 1965, any corresponding established Federal standard in this § 1910.266 which is derived from 41 CFR Part 40-204 shall also become effective, and shall be applicable to such employment and place of employment, on the same date.

1910.267—AGRICULTURAL OPERATIONS

[These standards have been transferred to § 1928.21 of this chapter.]

1910.268—TELECOMMUNICATIONS

(a) Application.

(1) This section sets forth safety and health standards that apply to the work conditions, practices, means, methods, operations, installations and processes performed at telecommunications centers and at telecommunications field installations, which are located outdoors or in building spaces used for such field installations. "Center" work includes the installation, operation, maintenance, rearrangement, and approval of communications equipment and other associated equipment in telecommunications switching centers. "Field" work includes the installation, operation, maintenance, rearrangement, and removal of conductors and other equipment used for signal or communication service, and of their supporting or containing structures, overhead or underground, on public or private rights of way, including buildings or other structures.

(2) These standards do not apply:

INTERP

(i) To construction work, as defined in § 1910.12 nor

(ii) to installations under the exclusive control of electric utilities used for the purpose of communications or metering, or for generation, control, transformation, transmission, and distribution of electric energy which are located in buildings used exclusively by the electric utilities for such purposes, or located outdoors on property owned or leased by the electric utilities or on public highways, streets, roads, etc., or outdoors by established rights on private property.

INTERP

(3) Operations or conditions not specifically covered by this section are subject to all the applicable standards contained in this Part 1910. See § 1910.5(c). Operations which involve construction work, as defined in § 1910.12 are subject to all the applicable standards contained in Part 1926 of this chapter.

(b) General

(1) Buildings containing telecommunications centers.

(i) Illumination. Lighting in telecommunication centers shall be provided in an adequate amount such that continuing work operations, routine observations, and the passage of employees can be carried out in a safe and healthful manner. Certain specific tasks in centers, such as splicing cable and the maintenance and repair of equipment frame lineups, may require a higher level of illumination. In such cases, the employer shall install permanent lighting or portable supplemental lighting to attain a higher level of illumination shall be provided as needed to permit safe performance of the required task.

(ii) Working surfaces. Guard rails and toe boards may be omitted on distribution frame mezzanine platforms to permit access to equipment. This exemption applies only on the side or sides of the platform facing the frames and only on those portions of the platform adjacent to equipment frames.

(iii) Working spaces. "Maintenance aisles," or "wiring aisles," between equipment frame lineups are working spaces and are not a means of egress for purposes of § 1910.35(a).

(iv) Special doors. When blastproof or power actuated doors are installed in specially designed hardsite security buildings and spaces, they shall be designed and installed so that they can be used as a means of egress in emergencies.

(v) Equipment, machinery and machine guarding. When power plant machinery in telecommunications centers is operated with commutators and couplings uncovered, the adjacent housing shall be clearly marked to alert personnel to the rotating machinery.

(2) Battery handling.

(i) Eye protection devices which provide side as well as frontal eye protection for employees shall be provided when measuring storage battery specific gravity or handling electrolyte, and the employer shall ensure that such devices are used by the employees. The employer shall also ensure that acid resistant gloves and aprons shall be worn for protection against spattering. Facilities for quick drenching or flushing of the eyes and body shall be provided unless the storage batteries are of the enclosed type and equipped with explosion proof vents, in which case sealed water rinse or neutralizing packs may be substituted for the quick drenching or flushing facilities. Employees assigned to work with storage batteries shall be instructed in emergency procedures such as dealing with accidental acid spills.

(ii) Electrolyte (acid or base, and distilled water) for battery cells shall be mixed in a well ventilated room. Acid or base shall be poured gradually, while stirring, into the water. Water shall never be poured into concentrated (greater than 75 percent) acid solutions. Electrolyte shall never be placed in metal containers nor stirred with metal objects.

(iii) When taking specific gravity readings, the open end of the hydrometer shall be covered with an acid resistant material while moving it from cell to cell to avoid splashing or throwing the electrolyte.

(3) Medical and first aid. First aid supplies recommended by a consulting physician shall be placed in weatherproof containers (unless stored indoors) and shall be easily accessible. Each first aid kit shall be inspected at least once a month. Expended items shall be replaced.

(4) Hazardous materials. Highway mobile vehicles and trailers stored in garages in accordance with § 1910.110 may be equipped to carry more than one LP-gas container, but the total capacity of LP-gas containers per work vehicle stored in garages shall not exceed 100 pounds of LP-gas. All container valves shall be closed when not in use.

(5) Compressed gas. When using or transporting nitrogen cylinders in a horizontal position, special compartments, racks, or adequate blocking shall be provided to prevent cylinder movement. Regulators shall be removed or guarded before a cylinder is transported.

(6) Support structures. No employee, or any material or equipment, may be supported or permitted to be supported on any portion of a pole structure, platform, ladder, walkway or other elevated structure or aerial device unless the employer ensures that the support structure is first inspected by a competent person and it is determined to be adequately strong, in good working condition and properly secured in place.

(7) Approach distances to exposed energized overhead power lines and parts. The employer shall ensure that no employee approaches or takes any conductive object closer to any electrically energized overhead power lines and parts than prescribed in Table R-2, unless:

(i) The employee is insulated or guarded from the energized parts (insulating gloves rated for the voltage involved shall be considered adequate insulation), or

(ii) The energized parts are insulated or guarded from the employee and any other conductive object at a different potential, or

(iii) The power conductors and equipmen are deenergized and grounded.

TABLE R-2—Approach Distances to Exposed Energized Overhead Power Lines and Parts

Voltage range (phase to phase, RMS)	*Approach distance (inches)*
300 V and less	([1])
Over 300V, not over 750V	12
Over 750V not over 2kV	18
Over 2kV, not over 15kV	24
Over 15kV, not over 37kV	36
Over 37kV, not over 87.5kV	42
Over 87.5kV, not over 121kV	48
Over 121kV, not over 140kV	54

[1] Avoid contact.

(8) Illumination of field work. Whenever natural light is insufficient to adequately illuminate the worksite, artificial illumination shall be provided to enable the employee to perform the work safely.

(c) Training

Employers shall provide training in the various precautions and safe practices described in this section and shall insure that employees do not engage in the activities to which this section applies until such employees have received proper training in the various precautions and safe practices required by this section. However, where the employer can demonstrate that an employee is already trained in the precautions and safe practices required by this section prior to his employment, training need not be provided to that employee in accordance with this section. Where training is required, it shall consist of on-the-job training or classroom-type training or a combination of both. The training program shall include a list of the subject courses and the types of personnel required to receive such instruction. A written description of the training program and a record of employees who have received such training shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment and shall be made available upon request to the Assistant Secretary for Occupational Safety and Health. Such training shall, where appropriate, include the following subjects:

(1) Recognition and avoidance of dangers relating to encounters with harmful substances, and animal, insect, or plant life.

(2) Procedures to be followed in emergency situations, and

(3) First aid training, including instruction in artificial respiration.

(d) Employee protection in public work areas.

(1) Before work is begun in the vicinity of vehicular or pedestrian traffic which may endanger employees, warning signs and/or flags or other traffic control devices shall be placed conspicuously to alert and channel approaching traffic. Where further protection is needed, barriers shall be utilized. At night, warning lights shall be prominently displayed, and excavated areas shall be enclosed with protective barricades.

(2) If work exposes energized or moving parts that are normally protected, danger signs shall be displayed and barricades erected, as necessary, to warn other personnel in the area.

(3) The employer shall insure that an employee finding any crossed or fallen wires which create or may create a hazardous situation at the work area: (i) Remains on guard or adopts other adeqauate means to warn other employees of the danger and (ii) has the proper authority notified at the earliest practical moment.

(e) Tools and personal protective equipment—Generally.

Personal protective equipment, protective devices and special tools needed for the work of employees shall be provided and the employer shall ensure that they are used by employees. Before each day's use the employer shall ensure that these presonal protective devices, tools, and equipment are carefully inspected by a competent person to ascertain that they are in good condition.

(f) Rubber insulating equipment.

(1) Rubber insulating equipment designed for the voltage levels to be encountered shall be provided and the employer shall ensure that they are used by employees as required by this section. This equipment shall meet the electrical and physical requirements contained in ANSI J6.6-1971 "Standard Specifications for Rubber Insulating Gloves," and ANSI J6.4-1971 "Standard Specifications for Rubber Insulating Blankets," with the exception that the maximum proof test current for a 14 inch Class I glove shall be no more than 14 mA, and with the further exception that existing 14 inch Class I rubber gloves that meet a maximum proof test current of 16 mA and a minimum breakdown voltage of 17,000 volts (RMS) acquired prior to July 1, 1975 may be used as long as these gloves comply with the retest requirements of paragraph (f) (5) of this section.

(2) When these gloves are used on jobs where they may be torn, they shall be protected with heavy outer canvas or leather gloves.

(3) Revoked

(4) Protective equipment fabricated of material other than rubber shall provide electrical and mechanical protection at least equal to that of the rubber equipment.

(5) The employer is responsible for the periodic retesting of all insulating gloves, blankets, and other rubber insulating equipment. This retesting shall be electrical, visual and mechanical. The following maximum retesting intervals shall apply.

Gloves, blankets, and other insulating equipment	Natural rubber	Synthetic rubber
	Months	*Months*
New	12	18
Re-issued	9	15

(6) Gloves and blankets shall be marked to indicate compliance with the retest schedule, and shall be marked with the date the next test is due. Gloves found to be defective in the field or by the tests set forth in paragraph (f) (5) of this section shall be destroyed by cutting them open from the finger to the gauntlet.

(7) When not being used, insulating gloves shall be stored in glove bags or in their original containers. Insulating blankets shall be stored in a canister or other device which offers equivalent protection.

(8) Insulating gloves and blankets shall be stored away from direct sunlight, steampipes, radiators and other sources of excessive heat. Gloves and blankets shall not be folded while in storage; however, blankets may be rolled for storage.

(9) Rubber gloves shall be visually inspected and air tested prior to each day's use.

(g) Personal climbing equipment

(1) General. Safety belts and straps shall be provided and the employer shall ensure their use when work is performed at positions more than 4 feet above ground, on poles, and on towers, except as provided in paragraphs (n) (7) and (n) (8) of this section. No safety belts, safety straps or lanyards acquired after July 1, 1975 may be used unless they meet the tests set forth in paragraph (g) (2) of this section. The employer shall ensure that all safety belts and straps are inspected by a competent person prior to each day's use to determine that they are in safe working condition.

(2) Telecommunication lineman's body belts, safety straps, and lanyards.

(i) General requirements.

(a) Hardware for lineman's body belts, safety straps, and lanyards shall be drop forged or pressed steel and shall have a corrosion resistant finish tested to meet the requirements of the American Society for Testing and Materials B117-64 (50-hour test). Surfaces shall be smooth and free of sharp edges. Production samples of lineman's safety straps, body belts and lanyards shall be approved by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, as having been tested in accordance with and as meeting the requirements of this paragraph.

(b) All buckles shall withstand a 2,000-pound tensile test with a maximum permanent deformation no greater than one sixty-fourth inch.

(c) D rings shall withstand a 5,000-pound tensile test without cracking or breaking.

(d) Snaphooks shall withstand a 5,000-pound tensile test, or shall withstand a 3,000-pound tensile test and a 180° bend test. Tensile failure is indicated by distortion of the snaphook sufficient to release the keeper; bend test failure is indicated by cracking of the snaphook.

(ii) Specific requirements.

(a)

(1) All fabric used for safety straps shall be capable of withstanding an A.C. dielectric test of not less than 25,000 volts per foot "dry" for 3 minutes, without visible deterioration.

(2) All fabric and leather used shall be tested for leakage current. Fabric or leather may not be used if the leakage current exceeds 1 milliampere when a potential of 3,000 volts is applied to the electrodes positioned 12 inches apart.

(3) In lieu of alternating current tests, equivalent direct current tests may be performed.

(b) The cushion part of the body belt shall:

(1) Contain no exposed rivets on the inside. This provision does not apply to belts used by craftsmen not engaged in line work.

(2) Be at least three inches in width;

(3) Be at least five thirty-seconds (${}^{5}/_{32}$) inch thick, if made of leather; and

(c) Revoked

(d) Suitable copper, steel, or equivalent liners shall be used around the bars of D-rings to prevent wear between these members and the leather or fabric enclosing them.

(e) All stitching shall be done with a minimum 42-pound weight nylon or equivalent thread and shall be lock stitched. Stitching parallel to an edge may not be less than three-sixteenths (${}^{3}/_{16}$) inch from the edge of the narrowest member caught by the thread. The use of cross stitching on leather is prohibited.

(f) The keepers of snaphooks shall have a spring tension that will not allow the keeper to begin to open when a weight of 2½ pounds or less is applied, but the keepers shall begin to open when a weight of four pounds is applied. In making this determination, the weight shall be supported on the keeper against the end of the nose.

(g) Safety straps, lanyards, and body belts shall be tested in accordance with the following procedure:

(1) Attach one end of the safety strap and lanyard to a rigid support, and the other end to a 250-pound canvas bag of sand;

(2) Allow the 250-pound canvas bag of sand to free fall 4 feet when testing safety straps and 6 feet when testing lanyards. In each case, the strap or lanyard shall stop the fall of the 250-pound bag;

(3) Failure of the strap or lanyard shall be indicated by any breakage or slippage sufficient to permit the bag to fall free from the strap or lanyard.

(4) The entire "body belt assembly" shall be tested using one D-ring. A safety strap or lanyard shall be used that is capable of passing the "impact loading test" described in paragraph (g) (2) (ii) (G) (2) of this section and attached as required in paragraph (g) (2) (ii) (G) (1) of this section. The body belt shall be secured to the 250-pound bag of sand at a point which simulates the waist of a man and shall be dropped as stated in paragraph (g) (2) (ii) (G) (2) of this section. Failure of the body belt shall be indicated by any breakage or slippage sufficient to permit the bag to fall free from the body belt.

(3) Pole climbers.

(i) Pole climbers may not be used if the gaffs are less than 1¼ inches in length as measured on the underside of the gaff. The gaffs of pole climbers shall be covered with safety caps when not being used for their intended use.

(ii) The employer shall ensure that pole climbers are inspected by a competent person for the following conditions: Fractured or cracked gaffs or leg irons, loose or dull gaffs, broken straps or buckles. If any of these conditions exist, the defect shall be corrected before the climbers are used.

(iii) Pole climbers shall be inspected as required in this paragraph (g) (3) before each day's use and a gaff cut-out test performed at least weekly when in use.

(iv) Pole climbers may not be worn when:

(a) Working in trees (specifically designed tree climbers shall be used for tree climbing),

(b) Working on ladders,

(c) Working in an aerial lift,

(d) Driving a vehicle, nor

(e) Walking on rocky, hard, frozen, brushy or hilly terrain.

(h) Ladders.

(1) The employer shall ensure that no employee nor any material or equipment may be supported or permitted to be supported on any portion of a ladder unless it is first determined, by inspections and checks conducted by a competent person that such ladder is adequately strong, in good condition, and properly secured in place, as required in Subpart D of this part and as required in this section.

(2) The spacing between steps or rungs permanently installed on poles and towers shall be no more than 18 inches (36 inches on any one side). This requirement also applies to fixed ladders on towers, when towers are so equipped. Spacing between steps shall be uniform above the initial unstepped section, except where working, standing, or access steps are required. Fixed ladder rungs and step rungs for poles and towers shall have a minimum diameter of ⅝". Fixed ladder rungs shall have a minimum clear width of 12 inches. Steps for poles and towers shall have a minimum clear width of 4½ inches. The spacing between detachable steps may not exceed 30 inches on any one side, and these steps shall be properly secured when in use.

(3) After April 30, 1975, portable wood ladders intended for general use may not be painted but may be coated with a transclucent nonconductive coating. Portable wood ladders may not be longitudinally reinforced with metal.

(4) Portable wood ladders that are not being carried on vehicles and are not in active use shall be stored where they will not be exposed to the elements and where there is good ventilation.

(5) The provisions of § 1910.25(c) (5) shall apply to rolling ladders used in telecommunications centers, except that such ladders shall have a minimum inside width, between the side rails, of at least eight inches.

(6) Climbing ladders or stairways on scaffolds used for access and egress shall be affixed or built into the scaffoid by proper design and engineering, and shall be so located that their use will not disturb the stability of the scaffold. The rungs of the climbing device shall be equally spaced, but may not be less than 12 inches nominal nor more than 16 inches nominal apart. Horizontal end rungs used for platform support may also be utilized as a climbing device if such rungs meet the spacing requirement of this paragraph (h) (6), and if there is sufficient clearance between the rung and the edge of the platform to afford an adequate handhold. If a portable ladder is affixed to the scaffold, it shall be securely attached and shall have rungs meeting the spacing requirements of this paragraph (h) (6). Clearance shall be provided in the back of the ladder of not less than 6 inches from center of rung to the nearest scaffold structural member.

(7) When a ladder is supported by an aerial strand, and ladder hooks or other supports are not being used, the ladder shall be extended at least 2 feet above the strand and shall be secured to it (e.g. lashed or held by a safety strap around the strand and ladder side rail). When a ladder is supported by a pole, it shall be securely lashed to the pole unless the ladder is specifically designed to prevent movement when used in this application.

(8) The following requirements apply to metal manhole ladders.

(i) Metal manhole ladders shall be free of structural defects and free of accident hazards such as sharp edges and burrs. The metal shall be protected against corrosion unless inherently corrosion-resistant.

(ii) These ladders may be designed with parallel side rails, or with side rails varying uniformly in separation along the length (tapered), or with side rails flaring at the base to increase stability.

(iii) The spacing of rungs or steps shall be on 12-inch centers.

(iv) Connections between rungs or steps and siderails shall be constructed to insure rigidity as well as strength.

(v) Rungs and steps shall be corrugated, knurled, dimpled, coated with skid-resistant material, or otherwise treated to minimize the possibility of slipping.

(vi) Ladder hardware shall meet the strength requirements of the ladder's component parts and shall be of a material that is protected against corrosion unless inherently corrosion-resistant. Metals shall be so selected as to avoid excessive galvanic action.

(i) Other tools and personal protective equipment

(1) Head protection. Head protection meeting the requirements of ANSI Z89.2-1971, "Safety Requirements for Industrial Protective Helmets for Electrical Workers, Class B" shall be provided whenever there is exposure to possible high voltage electrical contact, and the employer shall ensure that the head protection is used by employees.

(2) Eye protection. Eye protection meeting the requirements of § 1910.133 (a) (2) thru (a) (6) shall be provided and the employer shall ensure its use by employees where foreign objects may enter the eyes due to work operations such as but not limited to:

(i) Drilling or chipping stone, brick or masonry, breaking concrete or pavement, etc. by hand tools (sledgehammer, etc.) or power tools such as pneumatic drills or hammers;

(ii) Working on or around high speed emery or other grinding wheels unprotected by guards;

(iii) Cutting or chipping terra cotta ducts, tile, etc.

(iv) Working under motor vehicles requiring hammering;

(v) Cleaning operations using compressed air, steam, or sand blast;

(vi) Acetylene welding or similar operations where sparks are thrown off;

(vii) Using powder actuated stud drivers;

(viii) Tree pruning or cutting underbrush;

(ix) Handling battery cells and solutions, such as taking battery readings with a hydrometer and thermometer;

(x) Removing or rearranging strand or open wire; and

(xi) Performing lead sleeve wiping and while soldering.

(3) Tent heaters. Flame-type heaters may not be used within ground tents or on platforms within aerial tents unless:

(i) The tent covers are constructed of fire resistant materials, and

(ii) Adequate ventilation is provided to maintain safe oxygen levels and avoid harmful buildup of combustion products and combustible gases.

(4) Torches. Torches may be used on aerial splicing platforms or in buckets enclosed by tents provided the tent material is constructed of fire resistant material and the torch is turned off when not in actual use. Aerial tents shall be adequately ventilated while the torch is in operation.

(5) Portable power equipment. Nominal 120V, or less, portable generators used for providing power at work locations do not require grounding if the output circuit is completely isolated from the frame of the unit.

(6) Vehicle-mounted utility generators. Vehicle-mounted utility generators used for providing nominal 240V AC or less for powering portable tools and equipment need not be grounded to earth if all of the following conditions are met:

(i) One side of the voltage source is solidly strapped to the metallic structure of the vehicle;

(ii) Grounding-type outlets are used, with a "grounding" conductor between the outlet grounding terminal and the side of the voltage source that is strapped to the vehicle;

(ii) All metallic encased tools and equipment that are powered from this system are equipped with three-wire cords and grounding-type attachment plugs, except as designated in paragraph (i) (7) of this section.

(7) Portable lights, tools, and appliances. Portable lights, tools, and appliances having non-current-carrying external metal housing may be used with power equipment described in paragraph (i) (5) of this section without an equipment grounding conductor. When operated from commercial power such metal parts of these devices shall be grounded, unless these tools or appliances are protected by a system of double insulation, or its equivalent. Where such a system is employed, the equipment shall be distinctively marked to indicate double insulation.

(8) Soldering devices. Grounding shall be omitted when using soldering irons, guns or wire-wrap tools on telecommunications circuits.

(9) Lead work. The wiping of lead joints using melted solder, gas fueled torches, soldering irons or other appropriate heating devices, and the soldering of wires or other electrical connections do not constitute the welding, cutting and brazing described in Subpart Q of this part. When operated from commercial power the metal housing of electric solder pots shall be grounded. Electric solder pots may be used with the power equipment described in paragraph (i) (5) of this section without a grounding conductor. The employer shall ensure that wiping gloves or cloths and eye protection are used in lead wiping operations. A drip pan to catch hot lead drippings shall also be provided and used.

(j) Vehicle-mounted material handling devices and other mechanical equipment

(1) General.

(i) The employer shall ensure that visual inspections are made of the equipment by a competent person each day the equipment is to be used to ascertain that it is in good condition.

(ii) The employer shall ensure that tests shall be made at the beginning of each shift by a competent person to insure the vehicle brakes and operating systems are in proper working condition.

(2) Scrapers, loaders, dozers, graders and tractors.

(i) All rubber-tired, self propelled scrapers, rubber-tired front end loaders, rubber-tired dozers, agricultural and industrial tractors, crawler tractors, crawler-type loaders, and motor graders, with or without attachments, that are used in telecommunications work shall have rollover protective structures that meet the requirements of Subpart W of Part 1926 of this Title.

(ii) Eye protection shall be provided and the employer shall ensure that it is used by employees when working in areas where flying material is generated.

(3) Vehicle-mounted elevating and rotating work platforms. These devices shall not be operated with any conductive part of the equipment closer to exposed energized power lines than the clearances set forth in Table R-2 of this section.

(4) Derrick trucks and similar equipment.

(i) This equipment shall not be operated with any conductive part of the equipment closer to exposed energized power lines than the clearances set forth in Table R-2 of this section.

(ii) When derricks are used to handle poles near energized power conductors, these operations shall comply with the requirements contained in paragraphs (b) (7) and (n) (11) of this section.

(iii) Moving parts of equipment and machinery carried on or mounted on telecommunications line trucks shall be guarded. This may be done with barricades as specified in paragraph (d) (2) of this section.

(iv) Derricks and the operation of derricks shall comply with the following requirements:

(a) Manufacturer's specifications, load ratings and instructions for derrick operation shall be strictly observed.

(b) Rated load capacities and instructions related to derrick operation shall be conspicuously posted on a permanent weather-resistant plate or decal in a location on the derrick that is plainly visible to the derrick operator.

(c) Prior to derrick operation the parking brake must be set and the stabilizers extended if the vehicle is so equipped. When the vehicle is situated on a grade, at least two wheels must be chocked on the downgrade side.

(d) Only persons trained in the operation of the derrick shall be permitted to operate the derrick.

(e) Hand signals to derrick operators shall be those prescribed by ANSI B30.6-1969, "Safety Code for Derricks".

(f) The employer shall ensure that the derrick and its associated equipment are inspected by a competent person at intervals set by the manufacturer but in no case less than once per year. Records shall be maintained including the dates of inspections, and necessary repairs made, if corrective action was required.

(g) Modifications or additions to the derrick and its associated equipment that alter its capacity or affect its safe operation shall be made only with written certification from the manufacturer, or other equivalent entity, such as a nationally recognized testing laboratory, that the modification results in the equipment being safe for its intended use. Such changes shall require the changing and posting of revised capacity and instruction decals or plates. These new ratings or limitations shall be as provided by the manufacturer or other equivalent entity.

(h) Wire rope used with derricks shall be of improved plow steel or equivalent. Wire rope safety factors shall be in accordance with American National Standards Institute B30.6-1969.

(i) Wire rope shall be taken out of service, or the defective portion removed, when any of the following conditions exist:

(1) The rope strength has been significantly reduced due to corrosion, pitting, or excessive heat, or

(2) The thickness of the outer wires of the rope has been reduced to two-thirds or less of the original thickness, or

(3) There are more than six broken wires in any one rope lay, or

(4) There is excessive permanent distortion caused by kinking, crushing, or severe twisting of the rope.

(k) Materials handling and storage

(1) Poles—When working with poles in piles or stacks, work shall be performed from the ends of the poles as much as possible, and precautions shall be taken for the safety of employees at the outer end of the pole. During pole hauling operations, all loads shall be secured to prevent displacement. Lights, reflectors and/or flags shall be displayed on the end and sides of the load as necessary. The requirements for installation, removal, or other handling of poles in pole lines are prescribed in paragraph (n) of this section which pertains to overhead lines. In the case of hoisting machinery equipped with a positive stop loadholding device, it shall be permissible for the operator to leave his position at the controls (while a load is suspended) for the sole purpose of assisting in positioning the load prior to landing it. Prior to unloading steel, poles, crossarms, and similar material, the load shall be thoroughly examined to ascertain that the load has not shifted, that binders or stakes have not broken, and that the load is not otherwise hazardous to employees.

(2) Cable reels. Cable reels in storage shall be checked or otherwise restrained when there is a possibility that they might accidentally roll from position.

(l) Cable fault locating and testing.

(1) Employees involved in using high voltages to locate trouble or test cables shall be instructed in the precautions necessary for their own safety, and the safety of other employees.

(2) Before the voltage is applied, cable conductors shall be isolated to the extent practicable. Employees shall be warned, by such techniques as briefing and tagging at all affected locations, to stay clear while the voltage is applied.

(m) Grounding for employee protection—pole lines

(1) Power conductors. Electric power conductors and equipment shall be considered as energized unless the employee can visually determine that they are bonded to one of the grounds listed in paragraph (m) (4) of this section.

(2) Nonworking open wire. Nonworking open wire communications lines shall be bonded to one of the grounds listed in paragraph (m) (4) of this section.

(3) Vertical power conduit, power ground wires and street light fixtures.

(i) Metal power conduit on joint use poles, exposed vertical power ground wires, and street light fixtures which are below communications attachments or less than 20 inches above these attachments, shall be considered energized and shall be tested for voltage unless the employee can visually determine that they are bonded to the communications suspension strand or cable sheath.

(ii) If no hazardous voltage is shown by the voltage test, a temporary bond shall be placed between such street light fixture, exposed vertical power grounding conductor, or metallic power conduit and the communications cable strand. Temporary bonds used for this purpose shall have sufficient conductivity to carry at least 500 amperes for a period of one second without fusing.

(4) Suitable protective grounding. Acceptable grounds for protective grounding are as follows:

(i) A vertical ground wire which has been tested, found safe, and is connected to a power system multigrounded neutral or the grounded neutral of a power secondary system where there are at least three services connected;

(ii) Communications cable sheath or shield and its supporting strand where the sheath or shield is:

(a) Bonded to an underground or buried cable which is connected to a central office ground, or

(b) Bonded to an underground metallic piping system, or

(c) Bonded to a power system multi-grounded neutral or grounded neutral of a power secondary system which has at least three services connected;

(iii) Guys which are bonded to the grounds specified in paragraphs (m) (4) (i) and (ii) of this section and which have continuity uninterrupted by an insulator; and

(iv) If all of the preceding grounds are not available, arrays of driven ground rods where the resultant resistance to ground will be low enough to eliminate danger to personnel or permit prompt operation of protective devices.

(5) Attaching and removing temporary bonds. When attaching grounds (bonds), the first attachment shall be made to the protective ground. When removing bonds, the connection to the line or equipment shall be removed first. Insulating gloves shall be worn during these operations.

(6) Temporary grounding of suspension strand.

(i) The suspension strand shall be grounded to the existing grounds listed in paragraph (m) (4) of this section when being placed on jointly used poles or during thunderstorm activity.

(ii) Where power crossings are encountered on nonjoint lines, the strand shall be bonded to an existing ground listed in paragraph (m) (4) of this section as close as possible to the crossing. This bonding is not required where crossings are made on a common crossing pole unless there is an upward change in grade at the pole.

(iii) Where roller-type bonds are used, they shall be restrained so as to avoid stressing the electrical connections.

(iv) Bonds between the suspension strand and the existing ground shall be at least No. 6AWG copper.

(v) Temporary bonds shall be left in place until the strand has been tensioned, dead ended, and permanently grounded.

(vi) The requirements of paragraphs (m) (6) (i) through (m) (6) (v) of this section do not apply to the installation of insulated strand.

(7) Antenna work-radio transmitting stations 3-30 MHZ.

(i) Prior to grounding a radio transmitting station antenna, the employer shall insure that the rigger in charge:

(a) Prepares a danger tag signed with his signature,

(b) Requests the transmitting technician to shutdown the transmitter and to ground the antenna with its grounding switch,

(c) Is notified by the transmitting technician that the transmitter has been shutdown, and

(d) Tags the antenna ground switch personally in the presence of the transmitting technician after the antenna has been grounded by the transmitting technician.

(ii) Power shall not be applied to the antenna, nor shall the grounding switch be opened under any circumstances while the tag is affixed.

(iii)

(a) Where no grounding switches are provided, grounding sticks shall be used, one on each side of line, and tags shall be placed on the grounding sticks, antenna switch, or plate power switch in a conspicuous place.

(b) When necessary to further reduce excessive radio frequency pickup, ground sticks or short circuits shall be placed directly on the transmission lines near the transmitter in addition to the regular grounding switches.

(c) In other cases, the antenna lines may be disconnected from ground and the transmitter to reduce pickup at the point in the field.

(iv) All radio frequency line wires shall be tested for pickup with an insulated probe before they are handled either with bare hands or with metal tools.

(v) The employer shall insure that the transmitting technician warn the riggers about adjacent lines which are, or may become energized.

(vi) The employer shall insure that when antenna work has been completed, the rigger in charge of the job returns to the transmitter, notifies the transmitting technician in charge that work has been completed, and personally removes the tag from the antenna ground switch.

(n) Overhead lines

(1) Handling suspension strand.

(i) The employer shall insure that when handling cable suspension strand which is being installed on poles carrying exposed energized power conductors, employees shall wear insulating gloves and shall avoid body contact with the strand until after it has been tensioned, dead-ended and permanently grounded.

(ii) The strand shall be restrained against upward movement during installation:

(a) On joint-use poles, where there is an upward change in grade at the pole, and

(b) On non-joint-use poles, where the line crosses under energized power conductors.

(2) Need for testing wood poles. Unless temporary guys or braces are attached, the following poles shall be tested in accordance with paragraph (n) (3) of this section and determined to be safe before employees are permitted to climb them:

(i) Dead-end poles, except properly braced or guyed "Y" or "T" cable junction poles,

(ii) Straight line poles which are not storm guyed and where adjacent span lengths exceed 165 feet.

(iii) Poles at which there is a downward change in grade and which are not guyed or braced corner poles or cable junction poles.

(iv) Poles which support only telephone drop wire, and

(v) Poles which carry less than ten communication line wires. On joint use poles, one power line wire shall be considered as two communication wires for purposes of this paragraph (n) (2) (v).

(3) Methods of testing wood poles. One of the following methods or an equivalent method shall be used for testing wood poles:

(i) Rap the pole sharply with a hammer weighing about 3 pounds, starting near the ground line and continuing upwards circumferentially around the pole to a height of approximately 6 feet. The hammer will produce a clear sound and rebound sharply when striking sound wood. Decay pockets will be indicated by a dull sound and/or a less pronounced hammer rebound. When decay pockets are indicated, the pole shall be considered unsafe. Also, prod the pole as near the ground line as possible using a pole prod or a screwdriver with a blade at least 5 inches long. If substantial decay is encountered, the pole shall be considered unsafe.

(ii) Apply a horizontal force to the pole and attempt to rock it back and forth in a direction perpendicular to the line. Caution shall be exercised to avoid causing power wires to swing together. The force may be applied either by pushing with a pike pole or pulling with a rope. If the pole cracks during the test, it shall be considered unsafe.

(4) Unsafe poles or structures. Poles or structures determined to be unsafe by test or observation may not be climbed until made safe by guying, bracing or other adequate means. Poles determined to be unsafe to climb shall, until they are made safe, be tagged in a conspicuous place to alert and warn all employees of the unsafe condition.

(5) Test requirements for cable suspension strand.

(i) Before attaching a splicing platform to a cable suspension strand, the strand shall be tested and determined to have strength sufficient to support the weight of the platform and the employee. Where the strand crosses above power wires or railroad tracks it may not be tested but shall be inspected in accordance with paragraph (n) (6) of this section.

(ii) The following method or an equivalent method shall be used for testing the strength of the strand: A rope, at least-eighths inch in diameter, shall be thrown over the strand. On joint lines, the rope shall be passed over the strand using tree pruner handles or a wire raising tool. If two employees are present, both shall grip the double rope and slowly transfer their entire weight to the rope and attempt to raise themselves off the ground. If only one employee is present, one end of the rope which has been passed over the strand shall be tied to the bumper of the truck, or other equally secure anchorage. The employee then shall grasp the other end of the rope and attempt to raise himself off the ground.

(6) Inspection of strand. Where strand passes over electric power wires or railroad tracks, it shall be inspected from an elevated working position at each pole supporting the span in question. The strand may not be used to support any splicing platform, scaffold or cable car, if any of the following conditions exist:

(i) Corrosion so that no galvanizing can be detected,

(ii) One or more wires of the strand are broken,

(iii) Worn spots, or

(iv) Burn marks such as those caused by contact with electric power wires.

(7) Outside work platforms. Unless adequate railings are provided, safety straps and body belts shall be used while working on elevated work platforms such as aerial splicing platforms, pole platforms, ladder platforms and terminal balconies.

(8) Other elevated locations. Safety straps and body belts shall be worn when working at elevated positions on poles, towers or similar structures, which do not have adequately guarded work areas.

(9) Installing and removing wire and cable. Before installing or removing wire or cable, the pole or structure shall be guyed, braced, or otherwise supported, as necessary, to prevent failure of the pole or structure.

(10) Avoiding contact with energized power conductors or equipment. When cranes, derricks, or other mechanized equipment are used for setting, moving, or removing poles, all necessary precautions shall be taken to avoid contact with energized power conductors or equipment.

(11) Handling poles near energized power conductors.

(i) Joint use poles may not be set, moved, or removed where the nominal voltage of open electrical power conductors exceeds 34.5kV phase to phase (20kV to ground).

(ii) Poles that are to be placed, moved or removed during heavy rains, sleet or wet snow in joint lines carrying more than 8.7kV phase to phase voltage (5kV to ground) shall be guarded or otherwise prevented from direct contact with overhead energized power conductors.

(iii)

(a) In joint lines where the power voltage is greater than 750 volts but less than 34.5kV phase to phase (20kV to ground), wet poles being placed, moved or removed shall be insulated with either a rubber insulating blanket, a fiberglass box guide, or equivalent protective equipment.

(b) In joint lines where the power voltage is greater than 8.7kV phase to phase (5kV to ground) but less than 34.5kV phase to phase (20kV to ground), dry poles being placed, moved, or removed shall be insulated with either a rubber insulating blanket, a fiberglass box guide, or equivalent protective equipment.

(c) Where wet or dry poles are being removed, insulation of the pole is not required if the pole is cut off 2 feet or more below the lowest power wire and also cut off near the ground line.

(iv) Insulating gloves shall be worn when handling the pole with either hands or tools, when there exists a possibility that the pole may contact a power conductor. Where the voltage to ground of the power conductor exceeds 15kV to ground, Class II gloves (as defined in ANSI J6.6–1971) shall be used. For voltages not exceeding 15kV to ground, insulating gloves shall have a breakdown voltage of at least 17kV.

(v) The guard or insulating material used to protect the pole shall meet the appropriate 3 minute proof test voltage requirements contained in the ANSI J6.4–1971.

(vi) When there exists a possibility of contact between the pole or the vehicle-mounted equipment used to handle the pole, and an energized power conductor, the following precautions shall be observed:

(a) When on the vehicle which carries the derrick, avoid all contact with the ground, with persons standing on the ground, and with all grounded objects such as guys, tree limbs, or metal sign posts. To the extent feasible, remain on the vehicle as long as the possibility of contact exists.

(b) When it is necessary to leave the vehicle, step onto an insulated blanket and break all contact with the vehicle before steping off the blanket and onto the ground. As a last resort, if a blanket is not available, the employee may jump cleanly from the vehicle.

(c) When it is necessary to enter the vehicle, first step onto an insulating blanket and break all contact with the ground, grounded objects and other persons before touching the truck or derrick.

(12) Working position on poles. Climbing and working are prohibited above the level of the lowest electric power conducter on the pole (exclusive of vertical runs and street light wiring), except:

(i) where communications facilities are attached above the electric power conductors, and a rigid fixed barrier is installed between the electric power facility and the communications facility, or

(ii) where the electric power conductors are cabled secondary service drops carrying less than 300 volts to ground and are attached 40 inches or more below the communications conductors or cables.

(13) Metal tapes and ropes.

(i) Metal measuring tapes, metal measuring ropes, or tapes containing conductive strands may not be used when working near exposed energized parts.

(ii) Where it is necessary to measure clearances from energized parts, only nonconductive devices shall be used.

(o) Underground lines.

The provisions of this paragraph apply to the guarding of manholes and street openings, and to the ventilation and testing for gas in manholes and unvented vaults, where telecommunications field work is performed on or with underground lines.

(1) Guarding manholes and street openings.

(i) When covers of manholes or vaults are removed, the opening shall be promptly guarded by a railing, temporary cover, or other suitable temporary barrier which is appropriate to prevent an accidental fall through the opening and to protect employees working in the manhole from foreign objects entering the manhole.

(ii) While work is being performed in the manhole, a person with basic first aid training shall be immediately available to render assistance if there is cause for believing that a safety hazard exists, and if the requirements contained in paragraphs (d) (1) and (o) (1) (i) of this section do not adequately protect the employee(s). Examples of manhole worksite hazards which shall be considered to constitute a safety hazard include, but are not limited to:

(a) Manhole worksites where safety hazards are created by traffic patterns that cannot be corrected by provisions of paragraph (d) (1) of this section.

(b) Manhole worksites that are subject to unusual water hazards that cannot be abated by conventional means.

(c) Manhole worksites that are occupied jointly with power utilities as described in paragraph (o) (3) of this section.

(2) Requirements prior to entering manholes and unvented vaults

(i) Before an employee enters a manhole, the following steps shall be taken:

(a) The internal atmosphere shall be tested for combustible gas and, except when continuous forced ventilation is provided, the atmosphere shall also be tested for oxygen deficiency.

(b) When unsafe conditions are detected by testing or other means, the work area shall be ventilated and otherwise made safe before entry.

(ii) An adequate continuous supply of air shall be provided while work is performed in manholes under any of the following conditions:

(a) Where combustible or explosive gas vapors have been initially detected and subsequently reduced to a safe level by ventilation,

(b) Where organic solvents are used in the work procedure,

(c) Where open flame torches are used in the work procedure,

(d) Where the manhole is located in that portion of a public right of way open to vehicular traffic and/or exposed to a seepage of gas or gases, or

(e) Where a toxic gas or oxygen deficiency is found.

(iii)

(a) The requirements of paragraphs (o) (2) (i) and (ii) of this section do not apply to work in central office cable vaults that are adequately ventilated.

(b) The requirements of paragraphs (o) (2) (i) and (ii) of this section apply to work in unvented vaults.

(3) Joint power and telecommunication manholes. While work is being performed in a manhole occupied jointly by an electric utility and a telecommunication utility, an employee with basic first aid training shall be available in the immediate vicinity to render emergency assistance as may be required. The employee whose presence is required in the immediate vicinity for the purposes of rendering emergency assistance is not to be precluded from occasionally entering a manhole to provide assistance other than in an emergency. The requirement of this paragraph (o) (3) does not preclude a qualified employee, working alone, from entering for brief periods of time, a manhole where energized cables or equipment are in service, for the purpose of inspection, housekeeping, taking readings, or similar work if such work can be performed safely.

(4) Ladders. Ladders shall be used to enter and exit manholes exceeding 4 feet in depth.

(5) Flames. When open flames are used in manholes, the following precautions shall be taken to protect against the accumulation of combustible gas:

(i) A test for combustible gas shall be made immediately before using the open flame device, and at least once per hour while using the device; and

(ii) a fuel tank (e.g., acetylene) may not be in the manhole unless in actual use.

(p) Microwave transmission.

(1) Eye protection. Employers shall insure that employees do not look into an open waveguide which is connected to an energized source of microwave radiation.

(2) Hazardous area. Accessible areas associated with microwave communication systems where the electromagnetic radiation level exceeds the radiation protection guide given in § 1910.97 shall be posted as described in that section. The lower half of the warning symbol shall include the following:

Radiation in this area may exceed hazard limitations and special precautions are required. Obtain specific instruction before entering.

(3) Protective measures. When an employee works in an area where the electromagnetic radiation exceeds the radiation protection guide, the employer shall institute measures that insure that the employee's exposure is not greater than that permitted by the radiation guide. Such measures shall include, but not be limited to those of an administrative or engineering nature or those involving personal protective equipment.

(q) Tree trimming—electrical hazards

(1) General.

(i) Employees engaged in pruning, trimming, removing, or clearing trees from lines shall be required to consider all overhead and underground electrical power conductors to be energized with potentially fatal voltages, never to be touched (contacted) either directly or indirectly.

(ii) Employees engaged in line-clearing operations shall be instructed that:

(a) A direct contact is made when any part of the body touches or contacts an energized conductor, or other energized electrical fixture or apparatus.

(b) An indirect contact is made when any part of the body touches any object in contact with an energized electrical conductor, or other energized fixture or apparatus.

(c) An indirect contact can be made through conductive tools, tree branches, trucks, equipment, or other objects, or as a result of communications wires, cables, fences, or guy wires being accidentally energized.

(d) Electric shock will occur when an employee, by either direct or indirect contact with an energized conductor, energized tree limb, tool, equipment, or other object, provides a path for the flow of electricity to a grounded object or to the ground itself. Simultaneous contact with two energized conductors will also cause electric shock which may result in serious or fatal injury.

(iii) Before any work is performed in proximity to energized conductors, the system operator/owner of the energized conductors shall be contacted to ascertain if he knows of any hazards associated with the conductors which may not be readily apparent. This rule does not apply when operations are performed by or on behalf of, the system operator/owner.

(2) Working in proximity to electrical hazards.

(i) Employers shall ensure that a close inspection is made by the employee and by the foreman or supervisor in charge before climbing, entering, or working around any tree, to determine whether an electrical power conductor passes through the tree, or passes within reaching distance of an employee working in the tree. If any of these conditions exist either directly or indirectly, an electrical hazard shall be considered to exist unless the system operator/owner has caused the hazard to be removed by deenergizing the lines, or installing protective equipment.

(ii) Only qualified employees or trainees, familiar with the special techniques and hazards involved in line clearance, shall be permitted to perform the work if it is found that an electrical hazard exists.

(iii) During all tree working operations aloft where an electrical hazard of more than 750V exists, there shall be a second employee or trainee qualified in line clearance tree trimming within normal voice communication.

(iv) Where tree work is performed by employees qualified in line-clearance tree trimming and trainees qualified in line-clearance tree trimming, the clearances from energized conductors given in Table R-3 shall apply.

Table R-3—Minimum working distances from energized conductors for line-clearance tree trimmers and line-clearance tree-trimmer trainees

Voltage range (phase to phase) (kilovolts)	Minimum working distance
2.1 to 15.0	2 ft. 0 in.
15.1 to 35.0	2 ft. 4 in.
35.1 to 46.0	2 ft. 6 in.
46.1 to 72.5	3 ft. 0 in.
72.6 to 121.0	3 ft. 4 in.
138.0 to 145.0	3 ft. 6 in.
161.0 to 169.0	3 ft. 8 in.
230 0 to 242.0	5 ft. 0 in.
345.0 to 362.0	7 ft. 0 in.
500.0 to 552.0	11 ft. 0 in.
700.0 to 765.0	15 ft. 0 in.

(v) Branches hanging on an energized conductor may only be removed using appropriately installed equipment.

(vi) Rubber footwear, including lineman's overshoes, shall not be considered as providing any measure of safety from electrical hazards.

(vii) Ladders, platforms, and aerial devices, including insulated aerial devices, may not be brought in contact with an electrical conductor, reliance shall not be placed on their dielectric capabilities.

(viii) When an aerial lift device contacts an electrical conductor, the truck supporting the aerial lift device shall be considered energized.

(3) Storm work and emergency conditions.

(i) Since storm work and emergency conditions create special hazards, only authorized representatives of the electric utility system operator/owner and not telecommunication workers may perform tree work in these situations where energized electrical power conductors are involved.

(ii) When an emergency condition develops due to tree operations, work shall be suspended and the system operator/owner shall be notified immediately.

(r) Buried facilities—Communications lines and power lines in the same trench [Reserved]

(s) Definitions

(1) Aerial lifts. Aerial lifts include the following types of vehicle-mounted aerial devices used to elevate personnel to jobsites above ground:

(i) Extensible boom platforms,

(ii) Aerial ladders,

(iii) Articulating boom platforms,

(iv) Vertical towers,

(v) A combination of any of the above defined in ANSI A92.2–1969. These devices are made of metal, wood, fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP), or other material; are powered or manually operated; and are deemed to be aerial lifts whether or not they are capable of rotating about a substantially vertical axis.

(2) Aerial splicing platform. This consists of a platform, approximately 3 ft. x 4 ft., used to perform aerial cable work. It is furnished with fiber or synthetic ropes for supporting the platform from aerial strand, detachable guy ropes for anchoring it, and a device for raising and lowering it with a handline.

(3) Aerial tent. A small tent usually constructed of vinyl coated canvas which is usually supported by light metal or plastic tubing. It is designed to protect employees in inclement weather while working on ladders, aerial splicing platforms, or aerial devices.

(4) Alive or live (energized). Electrically connected to a source of potential difference, or electrically charged so as to have a potential siginficantly different from that of the earth in the vicinity. The term "live" is sometimes used in the place of the term "current-carrying," where the intent is clear, to avoid repetition of the longer term.

(5) Barricade. A physical construction such as types, cones, or "A" frame type wood and/or metal structure intended to warn and limit access to a work area.

(6) Barrier. A physical obstruction which is intended to prevent contact with energized lines or equipment, or to prevent unauthorized access to work area.

(7) Bond. An electrical connection from one conductive element to another for the purpose of minimizing potential differences or providing suitable conductivity for fault current or for mitigation of leakage current and electrolytic action.

(8) Cable. A conductor with insulation, or a standard conductor with or without insulation and other coverings (single-conductor cable), or a combination of conductors insulated from one another (multiple-conductor cable).

(9) Cable sheath. A protective covering applied to cables.

NOTE.—A cable sheath may consist of multiple layers of which one or more is conductive.

(10) Circuit. A conductor or system of conductors through which an electric current is intended to flow.

(11) Communication lines. The conductors and their supporting or containing structures for telephone, telegraph, railroad signal, data, clock, fire, police-alarm, community television antenna and other systems which are used for public or private signal or communication service, and which operate at potentials not exceeding 400 volts to ground or 750 volts between any two points of the circuit, and the transmitted power of which does not exceed 150 watts. When communications lines operate at less than 150 volts to ground, no limit is placed on the capacity of the system. Specifically designed communications cables may include communication circuits not complying with the preceding limitations, where such circuits are also used incidentally to supply power to communication equipment.

(12) Conductor. A material, usually in the form of a wire, cable, or bus bar, suitable for carrying an electric current.

(13) Effectively grounded. Intentionally connected to earth through a ground connection or connections of sufficiently low impedance and having sufficient current-carrying capacity to prevent the build-up of voltages which may result in undue hazard to connected equipment or persons.

(14) Equipment. A general term which includes materials, fittings, devices, appliances, fixtures, apparatus, and similar items used as part of, or in connection with, a supply or communications installation.

(15) Ground (reference). That conductive body, usually earth, to which an electric potential is referenced.

(16) Ground (as a noun). A conductive connection, whether intentional or accidental, by which an electric circuit or equipment is connected to reference ground.

(17) Ground (as a verb). The connecting or establishment of a connection, whether by intention or accident, of an electric circuit or equipment to reference ground.

(18) Ground tent. A small tent usually constructed of vinyl coated canvas supported by a metal or plastic frame. Its purpose is to protect employees from inclement weather while working at buried cable pedestal sites or similar locations.

(19) Grounded conductor. A system or circuit conductor which is intentionally grounded.

(20) Grounded systems. A system of conductors in which at least one conductor or point (usually the middle wire, or the neutral point of transformer or generator windings) is intentionally grounded, either solidly or through a current-limiting device (not a current-interrupting device).

(21) Grounding electrode conductor. (Grounding conductor). A conductor used to connect equipment or the grounded circuit of a wiring system to a grounding electrode.

(22) Insulated. Separated from other conducting surfaces by a dielectric substance (including air space) offering a high resistance to the passage of current.

NOTE.—When any object is said to be insulated, it is understood to be insulated in suitable manner for the conditions to which it is subjected. Otherwise, it is, within the purpose of these rules, uninsulated. Insulating coverings of conductors is one means of making the conductor insulated.

(23) Insulation (as applied to cable). That which is relied upon to insulate the conductor from other conductors or conducting parts or from ground.

(24) Joint use. The sharing of a common facility, such as a manhole, trench or pole, by two or more different kinds of utilities (e.g., power and telecommunications).

(25) Ladder platform. A device designed to facilitate working aloft from an extension ladder. A typical device consists of a platform (approximately 9" x 18") hinged to a welded pipe frame. The rear edge of the platform and the bottom cross-member of the frame are equipped with latches to lock the platform to ladder rungs.

(26) Ladder seat. A removable seat used to facilitate work at an elevated position on rolling ladders in telecommunication centers.

(27) Manhole. A subsurface enclosure which personnel may enter and which is used for the purpose of installing, operating, and maintaining submersible equipment and/or cable.

(28) Manhole platform. A platform consisting of separate planks which are laid across steel platform supports. The ends of the supports are engaged in the manhole cable racks.

(29) Microwave transmission. The act of communicating or signaling utilizing a frequency between 1 GHz (gigahertz) and 300 GHz inclusively.

(30) Nominal voltage. The nominal voltage of a system or circuit is the value assigned to a system or circuit of a given voltage class for the purpose of convenient designation. The actual voltage may vary above or below this value.

(31) Pole balcony or seat. A balcony or seat used as a support for workmen at pole-mounted equipment or terminal boxes. A typical device consists of a bolted assembly of steel details and a wooden platform. Steel braces run from the pole to the underside of the balcony. A guard rail (approximately 30" high) may be provided.

(32) Pole Platform. A platform intended for use by a workman in splicing and maintenance operations in an elevated position adjacent to a pole. It consists of a platform equipped at one end with a hinged chain binder for securing the platform to a pole. A brace from the pole to the underside of the platform is also provided.

(33) Qualified employee. Any worker who by reason of his training and experience has demonstrated his ability to safely perform his duties.

(34) Qualified line-clearance tree trimmer. A tree worker who through related training and on-the-job experience is familiar with the special techniques and hazards involved in line clearance.

(35) Qualified line-clearance tree-trimmer trainee. Any worker regularly assigned to a line-clearance tree-trimming crew and undergoing on-the-job training who, in the course of such training, has demonstrated his ability to perform his duties safely at his level of training.

(36) System operator/owner. The person or organization that operates or controls the electrical conductors involved.

(37) Telecommunications center. An installation of communication equipment under the exclusive control of an organization providing telecommunications service, that is located outdoors or in a vault, chamber, or a building space used primarily for such installations.

NOTE.—Telecommunication centers are facilities established, equipped and arranged in accordance with engineered plans for the purpose of providing telecommunications service. They may be located on premises owned or leased by the organization providing telecommunication service, or on the premises owned or leased by others. This definition includes switch rooms (whether electromechanical, electronic, or computer controlled), terminal rooms, power rooms, repeater rooms, transmitter and receiver rooms, switchboard operating rooms, cable vaults, and miscellaneous communications equipment rooms. Simulation rooms of telecommunication centers for training or developmental purposes are also included.

(38) Telecommunications derricks. Rotating or nonrotating derrick structures permanently mounted on vehciles for the purpose of lifting, lowering, or positioning hardware and materials used in telecommunications work.

(39) Telecommunication line truck. A truck used to transport men, tools, and material, and to serve as a traveling workshop for telecommunication installation and maintenance work. It is sometimes equipped with a boom and auxiliary equipment for setting poles, digging holes, and elevating material or men.

(40) Telecommunication service. The furnishing of a capability to signal or communicate at a distance by means such as telephone, telegraph, police and fire-alarm, community antenna television, or similar system, using wire, conventional cable, coaxial cable, wave guides, microwave transmission, or other similar means.

(41) Unvented vault. An enclosed vault in which the only openings are access openings.

(42) Vault. An enclosure above or below ground which personnel may enter and which is used for the purpose of installing, operating, and/or maintaining equipment and/or cable which need not be of submersible design.

(43) Vented vault. An enclosure as described in paragraph (s) (42) of this section, with provision for air changes using exhaust flue stack(s) and low level air intake(s), operating on differentials of pressure and temperature providing for air flow.

(44) Voltage of an effectively grounded circuit. The voltage between any conductor and ground unless otherwise indicated.

(45) Voltage of a circuit not effectively grounded. The voltage between any two conductors. If one circuit is directly connected to and supplied from another circuit of higher voltage (as in the case of an autotransformer), both are considered as of the higher voltage, unless the circuit of lower voltage is effectively grounded, in which case its voltage is not determined by the circuit of higher voltage. Direct connection implies electric connection as distinguished from connection merely through electromagnetic or electrostatic induction.

1910.272—GRAIN HANDLING FACILITIES

(a) Scope. This section contains requirements for the control of grain dust fires and explosions, and certain other safety hazards associated with grain handling facilities. It applies in addition to all other relevant provisions of Part 1910 (or Part 1917 at marine terminals).

(b) Application.

(1) Paragraphs (a) through (m) of this section apply to grain elevators, feed mills, flour mills, rice mills, dust pelletizing plants, dry corn mills, soybean flaking operations, and the dry grinding operations of soycake.

(2) Paragraphs (n), (o), and (p) of this section apply only to grain elevators.

(c) Definitions.

(1) "Choked leg" means a condition of material buildup in the bucket elevator that results in the stoppage of material flow and bucket movement. A bucket elevator is not considered choked that has the up-leg partially or fully loaded and has the boot and discharge cleared allowing bucket movement.

(2) "Fugitive grain dust" means combustible dust particles, emitted from the stock handling system, of such size as will pass through a U.S. Standard 40 mesh sieve (425 microns or less).

(3) "Grain elevator" means a facility engaged in the receipt, handling, storage, and shipment of bulk raw agricultural commodities such as corn, wheat, oats, barley, sunflower seeds, and soybeans.

(4) "Hot work" means work involving electric or gas welding, cutting, brazing, or similar flame producing operations.

(5) "Inside bucket elevator" means a bucket elevator that has the boot and more than 20 percent of the total leg height (above grade or ground level) inside the grain elevator structure. Bucket elevators with leg casings that are inside (and pass through the roofs) of rail or truck dump sheds with the remainder of the leg outside of the grain elevator structure, are not considered inside bucket elevators.

(6) "Jogging" means repeated starting and stopping of drive motors in an attempt to clear choked legs.

(7) "Lagging" means a covering on drive pulleys used to increase the coefficient of friction between the pulley and the belt.

(8) "Permit" means the written certification by the employer authorizing employees to perform identified work operations subject to specified precautions.

(d) Emergency action plan. The employer shall develop and implement an emergency action plan meeting the requirements contained in § 1910.38(a).

(e) Training.

(1) The employer shall provide training to employees at least annually and when changes in job assignment will expose them to new hazards. Current employees, and new employees prior to starting work, shall be trained in at least the following:

(i) General safety precautions associated with the facility, including recognition and preventive measures for the hazards related to dust accumulations and common ignition sources such as smoking; and,

(ii) Specific procedures and safety practices applicable to their job tasks including but not limited to, cleaning procedures for grinding equipment, clearing procedures for choked legs, housekeeping procedures, hot work procedures, preventive maintenance procedures and lock-out/tag-out procedures.

(2) Employees assigned special tasks, such as bin entry and handling of flammable or toxic substances, shall be provided training to perform these tasks safely.

(f) Hot work permit.

(1) The employer shall issue a permit for all hot work, with the following exceptions:

(i) Where the employer or the employer's representative (who would otherwise authorize the permit) is present while the hot work is being performed;

(ii) In welding shops authorized by the employer;

(iii) In hot work areas authorized by the employer which are located outside of the grain handling structure.

(2) The permit shall certify that the requirements contained in § 1910.252(d) have been implemented prior to beginning the hot work operations. The permit shall be kept on file until completion of the hot work operations.

(g) Entry into bins, silos, and tanks. This paragraph applies to employees entering bins, silos, or tanks. It does not apply to employees entering flat storage buildings or tanks where the diameter of such structures is greater than the height, unless entry is made from the top of the structure.

(1) The following actions shall be taken before employees enter bins, silos, or tanks:

(i) The employer shall issue a permit for entering bins, silos, or tanks unless the employer or the employer's representative (who would otherwise authorize the permit) is present during the entire operation. The permit shall certify that the precautions contained in this paragraph (§ 1910.272(g)) have been implemented prior to employees entering bins, silos or tanks. The permit shall be kept on file until completion of the entry operations.

(ii) All mechanical, electrical, hydraulic, and pneumatic equipment which present a danger to employees inside bins, silos, or tanks shall be disconnected, locked-out and tagged, blocked-off, or prevented from operating by other means or methods.

(iii) The atmosphere within a bin, silo, or tank shall be tested for the presence of combustible gases, vapors, and toxic agents when the employer has reason to believe they may be present. Additionally, the atmosphere within a bin, silo, or tank shall be tested for oxygen content unless there is continuous natural air movement or continuous forced-air ventilation before and during the period employees are inside. If the oxygen level is less than 19.5%, or if combustible gas or vapor is detected in excess of 10% of the lower flammable limit, or if toxic agents are present in excess of the ceiling values listed in Subpart Z of 29 CFR Part 1910, or if toxic agents are present in concentrations that will cause health effects which prevent employees from effecting self-rescue or communication to obtain assistance, the following provisions apply.

(a) Ventilation shall be provided until the unsafe condition or conditions are eliminated, and the ventilation shall be continued as long as there is a possibility of recurrence of the unsafe condition while the bin, silo, or tank is occupied by employees.

(b) If toxicity or oxygen deficiency cannot be eliminated by ventilation, employees entering the bin, silo, or tank shall wear an appropriate respirator. Respirator use shall be in accordance with the requirements of § 1910.134.

(2) When entering bins, silos, or tanks from the top, employees shall wear a body harness with lifeline, or use a boatswain's chair that meets the requirements of Subpart D of this Part.

(3) An observer, equipped to provide assistance, shall be stationed outside the bin, silo, or tank being entered by an employee. Communications (visual, voice, or signal line) shall be maintained between the observer and employee entering the bin, silo, or tank.

(4) The employer shall provide equipment for rescue operations which is specifically suited for the bin, silo, or tank being entered.

(5) The employee acting as observer shall be trained in rescue procedures, including notification methods for obtaining additional assistance.

(6) Employees shall not enter bins, silos, or tanks underneath a bridging condition, or where a buildup of grain products on the sides could fall and bury them.

(h) Contractors.

(1) The employer shall inform contractors performing work at the grain handling facility of known potential fire and explosion hazards related to the contractor's work and work area. The employer shall also inform contractors of the applicable safety rules of the facility.

(2) The employer shall explain the applicable provisions of the emergency action plan to contractors.

(i) Housekeeping.

(1) The employer shall develop and implement a written housekeeping program that establishes the frequency and method(s) determined best to reduce accumulations of fugitive grain dust on ledges, floors, equipment, and other exposed surfaces.

(2) In addition, the housekeeping program for *grain elevators* shall address fugitive grain dust accumulations at priority housekeeping areas.

(i) Priority housekeeping areas shall include *at least* the following:

(a) Floor areas within 35 feet (10.7 m) of inside bucket elevators;

(b) Floors of enclosed areas containing grinding equipment;

(c) Floors of enclosed areas containing grain dryers located inside the facility.

(ii) The employer shall immediately remove any fugitive grain dust accumulations whenever they exceed 1/8 inch (.32 cm) at priority housekeeping areas, pursuant to the housekeeping program, or shall demonstrate and assure, through the development and implementation of the housekeeping program, that equivalent protection is provided.

(3) The use of compressed air to blow dust from ledges, walls, and other areas shall only be permitted when all machinery that presents an ignition source in the area is shut-down, and all other known potential ignition sources in the area are removed or controlled.

(4) Grain and product spills shall not be considered fugitive grain dust accumulations. However, the housekeeping program shall address the procedures for removing such spills from the work area.

(j) Grate openings. Receiving-pit feed openings, such as truck or railcar receiving-pits, shall be covered by grates. The width of openings in the grates shall be a maximum of 2½ inches (6.35 cm).

(k) Filter collectors.

(1) Not later than March 30, 1989, all fabric dust filter collectors which are a part of a pneumatic dust collection system shall be equipped with a monitoring device that will indicate a pressure drop across the surface of the filter.

(2) Filter collectors installed after March 30, 1988 shall be:

(i) Located outside the facility; or

(ii) Located in an area inside the facility protected by an explosion suppression system; or

(iii) Located in an area inside the facility that is separated from other areas of the facility by construction having at least a one hour fire-resistance rating, and which is adjacent to an exterior wall and vented to the outside. The vent and ductwork shall be designed to resist rupture due to deflagration.

(l) Preventive maintenance.

(1) The employer shall implement preventive maintenance procedures consisting of:

(i) Regularly scheduled inspections of at least the mechanical and safety control equipment associated with dryers, grain stream processing equipment, dust collection equipment including filter collectors, and bucket elevators;

(ii) Lubrication and other appropriate maintenance in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations, or as determined necessary by prior operating records.

(2) The employer shall promptly correct dust collection systems which are malfunctioning or which are operating below designed efficiency. Additionally, the employer shall promptly correct, or remove from service, overheated bearings and slipping or misaligned belts associated with inside bucket elevators.

(3) A certification record shall be maintained of each inspection, performed in accordance with this paragraph (l), containing the date of the inspection, the name of the person who performed the inspection and the serial number, or other identifier, of the equipment specified in paragraph (l)(1)(i) of this section that was inspected.

(4) The employer shall implement procedures for the use of tags and locks which will prevent the inadvertent application of energy or motion to equipment being repaired, serviced, or adjusted, which could result in employee injury. Such locks and tags shall be removed in accordance with established procedures only by the employee installing them or, if unavailable, by his or her supervisor.

(m) Grain stream processing equipment. The employer shall equip grain stream processing equipment (such as hammer mills, grinders, and pulverizers) with an effective means of removing ferrous material from the incoming grain stream.

(n) Emergency escape.

(1) The employer shall provide at least two means of emergency escape from galleries (bin decks).

(2) The employer shall provide at least one means of emergency escape in tunnels of existing grain elevators. Tunnels in grain elevators constructed after the effective date of this standard shall be provided with at least two means of emergency escape.

(o) Continuous-flow bulk raw grain dryers.

(1) Not later than April 1, 1991, all direct-heat grain dryers shall be equipped with automatic controls that:

(i) Will shut-off the fuel supply in case of power or flame failure or interruption of air movement through the exhaust fan; and,

(ii) Will stop the grain from being fed into the dryer if excessive temperature occurs in the exhaust of the drying section.

(2) Direct-heat grain dryers installed after March 30, 1988 shall be:

(i) Located outside the grain elevator; or

(ii) Located in an area inside the grain elevator protected by a fire or explosion suppression system; or

(iii) Located in an area inside the grain elevator which is separated from other areas of the facility by construction having at least a one hour fire-resistance rating.

(p) Inside bucket elevators.

(1) Bucket elevators shall not be jogged to free a choked leg.

(2) All belts and lagging purchased after March 30, 1988 shall be conductive. Such belts shall have a surface electrical resistance not to exceed 300 megohms.

(3) Not later than April 1, 1991, all bucket elevators shall be equipped with a means of access to the head pulley section to allow inspection of the head pulley, lagging, belt, and discharge throat of the elevator head. The boot section shall also be provided with a means of access for clean-out of the boot and for inspection of the boot, pulley, and belt.

(4) Not later than April 1, 1991, the employer shall:

(i) Mount bearings externally to the leg casing; or,

(ii) Provide vibration monitoring, temperature monitoring, or other means to monitor the condition of those bearings mounted inside or partially inside the leg casing.

(5) Not later than April 1, 1991, the employer shall equip bucket elevators with a motion detection device which will shut-down the bucket elevator when the belt speed is reduced by no more than 20% of the normal operating speed.

(6) Not later than April 1, 1991, the employer shall:

(i) Equip bucket elevators with a belt alignment monitoring device which will initiate an alarm to employees when the belt is not tracking properly; or,

(ii) Provide a means to keep the belt tracking properly, such as a system that provides constant alignment adjustment of belts.

(7) Paragraphs (p)(5) and (p)(6) of this section do not apply to grain elevators having a permanent storage capacity of less than one million bushels, provided that daily visual inspection is made of bucket movement and tracking of the belt.

(8) Paragraphs (p)(4), (p)(5), and (p)(6) of this section do not apply to the following:

(i) Bucket elevators which are equipped with an operational fire and explosion suppression system capable of protecting at least the head and boot section of the bucket elevator; or,

(ii) Bucket elevators which are equipped with pneumatic or other dust control systems or methods that keep the dust concentration inside the bucket elevator at least 25% below the lower explosive limit at all times during operations.

Note: The following appendices to § 1910.272 serve as nonmandatory guidelines to assist employers and employees in complying with the requirements of this section, as well as to provide other helpful information.

No additional burdens are imposed through these appendices.

APPENDIX B TO 1910.272 GRAIN HANDLING FACILITIES

Examples presented in this appendix may not be the only means of achieving the performance goals in the standard.

1. Scope and Application

The provisions of this standard apply in addition to any other applicable requirements of this Part 1910 (or Part 1917 at marine terminals). The standard contains requirements for new and existing grain handling facilities. The standard does not apply to seed plants which handle and prepare seeds for planting of future crops, nor to on-farm storage or feed lots.

2. Emergency Action Plan

The standard requires the employer to develop and implement an emergency action plan. The emergency action plan (§ 1910.38(a)) covers those designated actions employers and employees are to take to ensure employee safety from fire and other emergencies. The plan specifies certain minimum elements which are to be addressed. These elements include the establishment of an employee alarm system, the development of evacuation procedures, and training employees in those actions they are to take during an emergency.

The standard does not specify a particular method for notifying employees of an emergency. Public announcement systems, air horns, steam whistles, a standard fire alarm system, or other types of employee alarm may be used. However, employers should be aware that employees in a grain facility may have difficulty hearing an emergency alarm, or distinguishing an emergency alarm from other audible signals at the facility, or both. Therefore, it is important that the type of employee alarm used be distinguishable and distinct.

The use of the floor plans or workplace maps which clearly show the emergency escape routes should be included in the emergency action plan; color coding will aid employees in determining their route assignments. The employer should designate a safe area, outside the facility, where employees can congregate after evacuation, and implement procedures to account for all employees after emergency evacuation has been completed.

It is also recommended that employers seek the assistance of the local fire department for the purpose of preplanning for emergencies. Preplanning is encouraged to facilitate coordination and cooperation between facility personnel and those who may be called upon for assistance during an emergency. It is important for emergency service units to be aware of the usual work locations of employees at the facility.

3. Training

It is important that employees be trained in the recognition and prevention of hazards associated with grain facilities, especially those hazards associated with their own work tasks. Employees should understand the factors which are necessary to produce a fire or explosion, i.e., fuel (such as grain dust), oxygen, ignition source, and (in the case of explosions) confinement. Employees should be made aware that any efforts they make to keep these factors from occurring simultaneously will be an important step in reducing the potential for fires and explosions.

The standard provides flexibility for the employer to design a training program which fulfills the needs of a facility. The type, amount, and frequency of training will need to reflect the tasks that employees are expected to perform. Although training is to be provided to employees at least annually, it is recommended that safety meetings or discussions and drills be conducted at more frequent intervals.

The training program should include those topics applicable to the particular facility, as well as topics such as: Hot work procedures; lock-out/tag-out procedures; bin entry procedures; bin cleaning procedures; grain dust explosions; fire prevention; procedures for handling "hot grain"; housekeeping procedures, including methods and frequency of dust removal; pesticide and fumigant usage; proper use and maintenance of personal protective equipment; and, preventive maintenance. The types of work clothing should also be considered in the program at least to caution against using polyester clothing that easily melts and increases the severity of burns, as compared to wool or fire retardant cotton.

In implementing the training program, it is recommended that the employer utilize films, slide-tape presentations, pamphlets, and other information which can be obtained from such sources as the Grain Elevator and Processing Society, the Cooperative Extension Service of the U.S. Department of Agriculture, Kansas State University's Extension Grain Science and Industry, and other state agriculture schools, industry associations, union organizations, and insurance groups.

4. *Hot Work Permit*

The implementation of a permit system for hot work is intended to assure that employers maintain control over operations involving hot work and to assure that employees are aware of and utilize appropriate safeguards when conducting these activities.

Precautions for hot work operations are specified in 29 CFR 1910.252(d), and include such safeguards as relocating the hot work operation to a safe location if possible, relocating or covering combustible material in the vicinity, providing fire extinguishers, and provisions for establishing a fire watch. Permits are not required for hot work operations conducted in the presence of the employer or the employer's authorized representative who would otherwise issue the permit, or in an employer authorized welding shop or when work is conducted outside and away from the facility.

It should be noted that the permit is not a record, but is an authorization of the employer certifying that certain safety precautions have been implemented prior to the beginning of work operations.

5. *Entry Into Bins, Silos, And Tanks*

In order to assure that employers maintain control over employee entry into bins, silos, and tanks, OSHA is requiring that the employer issue a permit for entry into bins, silos, and tanks unless the employer (or the employer's representative who would otherwise authorize the permit) is present at the entry and during the entire operation.

Employees should have a thorough understanding of the hazards associated with entry into bins, silos, and tanks. Employees are not to be permitted to enter these spaces from the bottom when grain or other agricultural products are hung up or sticking to the sides which might fall and injure or kill an employee. Employees should be made aware that the atmosphere in bins, silos, and tanks can be oxygen deficient or toxic. Employees should be trained in the proper methods of testing the atmosphere, as well as in the appropriate procedures to be taken if the atmosphere is found to be oxygen deficient or toxic. When a fumigant has been recently applied in these areas and entry must be made, aeration fans should be running continuously to assure a safe atmosphere for those inside. Periodic monitoring of toxic levels should be done by direct reading instruments to measure the levels, and, if there is an increase in these readings, appropriate actions should be promptly taken.

Employees have been buried and suffocated in grain or other agricultural products because they sank into the material. Therefore, it is suggested that employees not be permitted to walk or stand on the grain or other grain product where the depth is greater than waist high. In this regard, employees must use a full body harness or boatswain's chair with a lifeline when entering from the top. A winch system with mechanical advantage (either powered or manual) would allow better control of the employee than just using a hand held hoist line, and such a system would allow the observer to remove the employee easily without having to enter the space.

It is important that employees be trained in the proper selection and use of any personal protective equipment which is to be worn. Equally important is the training of employees in the planned emergency rescue procedures. Employers should carefully read § 1910.134(e)(3) and assure that their procedures follow these requirements. The employee acting as observer is to be equipped to provide assistance and is to know procedures for obtaining additional assistance. The observer should not enter a space until adequate assistance is available. It is recommended that an employee trained in CPR be readily available to provide assistance to those employees entering bins, silos, or tanks.

6. *Contractors*

These provisions of the standard are intended to ensure that outside contractors are cognizant of the hazards associated with grain handling facilities, particularly in relation to the work they are to perform for the employer. Also, in the event of an emergency, contractors should be able to take appropriate action as a part of the overall facility emergency action plan. Contractors should also be aware of the employer's permit systems. Contractors should develop specified procedures for performing hot work and for entry into bins, silos, and tanks and these activities should be coordinated with the employer.

"Contractors are responsible for informing their own employees."

This coordination will help to ensure that employers know what work is being performed at the facility by contractors; where it is being performed; and, that it is being performed in a manner that will not endanger employees.

7. *Housekeeping*

The housekeeping program is to be designed to keep dust accumulations and emissions under control inside grain facilities. The housekeeping program, which is to be written, is to specify the frequency and method(s) used to best reduce dust accumulations.

Ship, barge, and rail loadout and receiving areas which are located outside the facility need not be addressed in the housekeeping program. Additionally, truck dumps which are open on two or more sides need not be addressed by the housekeeping program. Other truck dumps should be addressed in the housekeeping program to provide for regular cleaning during periods of receiving grain or agricultural products. The housekeeping program should provide coverage for all workspaces in the facility and includes walls, beams, etc., especially in relation to the extent that dust could accumulate.

Dust Accumulations

Almost all facilities will require some level of manual housekeeping. Manual housekeeping methods, such as vacuuming or sweeping with soft bristle brooms, should be used which will minimize the possibility of layered dust being suspended in the air when it is being removed.

The housekeeping program should include a contingency plan to respond to situations where dust accumulates rapidly due to a failure of a dust enclosure hood, an unexpected breakdown of the dust control system, a dust-tight connection inadvertently knocked open, etc.

The housekeeping program should also specify the manner of handling spills. Grain spills are not considered to be dust accumulations.

A fully enclosed horizontal belt conveying system where the return belt is inside the enclosure should have inspection access such as sliding panels or doors to permit checking of equipment, checking for dust accumulations and facilitate cleaning if needed.

Dust Emissions

Employers should analyze the entire stock handling system to determine the location of dust emissions and effective methods to control or to eliminate them. The employer should make sure that holes in spouting, casings of bucket elevators, pneumatic conveying pipes, screw augers, or drag conveyor casings, are patched or otherwise properly repaired to prevent leakage. Minimizing free falls of grain or grain products by using choke feeding techniques, and utilization of dust-tight enclosures at transfer points, can be effective in reducing dust emissions.

Each housekeeping program should specify the schedules and control measures which will be used to control dust emitted from the stock handling system. The housekeeping program should address the schedules to be used for cleaning dust accumulations from motors, critical bearings and other potential ignition sources in the working areas. Also, the areas around bucket elevator legs, milling machinery and similar equipment should be given priority in the cleaning schedule. The method of disposal of the dust which is swept or vacuumed should also be planned.

Dust may accumulate in somewhat inaccessible areas, such as those areas where ladders or scaffolds might be necessary to reach them. The employer may want to consider the use of compressed air and long lances to blow down these areas frequently. The employer may also want to consider the periodic use of water and hoselines to wash down these areas. If these methods are used, they are to be specified in the housekeeping program along with the appropriate safety precautions, including the use of personal protective equipment such as eyewear and dust respirators.

Several methods have been effective in controlling dust emissions. A frequently used method of controlling dust emissions is a pneumatic dust collection system. However, the installation of a poorly designed pneumatic dust collection system has fostered a false sense of security and has often led to an inappropriate reduction in manual housekeeping. Therefore, it is imperative that the system be designed properly and installed by a competent contractor. Those employers who have a pneumatic dust control system that is not working according to expectations should request the engineering design firm, or the manufacturer of the filter and related equipment, to conduct an evaluation of the system to determine the corrections necessary for proper operation of the system. If the design firm or manufacturer of the equipment is not known, employers should contact their trade association for recommendations of competent designers of pneumatic dust control systems who could provide assistance.

When installing a new or upgraded pneumatic control system, the employer should insist on an acceptance test period of 30 to 45 days of operation to ensure that the system is operating as intended and designed. The employer should also obtain maintenance, testing, and inspection information from the manufacturer to ensure that the system will continue to operate as designed.

Aspiration of the leg, as part of a pneumatic dust collection system, is another effective method of controlling dust emissions. Aspiration of the leg consists of a flow of air across the entire boot, which entrains the liberated dust and carries it up the up-leg to take-off points. With proper aspiration, dust concentrations in the leg can be lowered below the lower explosive limit. Where a prototype leg installation has been instrumented and shown to be effective in keeping the dust level 25% below the lower explosive limit during normal operations for the various products handled, then other legs of similar size, capacity and products being handled which have the same design criteria for the air aspiration would be acceptable to OSHA, provided the prototype test report is available on site.

Another method of controlling dust emissions is enclosing the conveying system, pressurizing the general work area, and providing a lower pressure inside the enclosed conveying system. Although this method is effective in controlling dust emissions from the conveying system, adequate access to the inside of the enclosure is necessary to facilitate frequent removal of dust accumulations. This is also necessary for those systems called "self-cleaning."

The use of edible oil sprayed on or into a moving stream of grain is another method which has been used to control dust emissions. Tests performed using this method have shown that the oil treatment can reduce dust emissions. Repeated handling of the grain may necessitate additional oil treatment to prevent liberation of dust. However, before using this method, operators of grain handling facilities should be aware that the Food and Drug Administration must approve the specific oil treatment used on products for food or feed.

As a part of the housekeeping program, grain elevators are required to address accumulations of dust at priority areas using the action level. The standard specifies a maximum accumulation of ⅛ inch dust, measurable by a ruler or other measuring device, anywhere within a priority area as the upper limit at which time employers must initiate action to remove the accumulations using designated means or methods. Any accumulation in excess of this amount and where no action has been initiated to implement cleaning would constitute a violation of the standard, unless the employer can demonstrate equivalent protection. Employers should make every effort to minimize dust accumulations on exposed surfaces since dust is the fuel for a fire or explosion, and it is recognized that a ⅛ inch dust accumulation is more than enough to fuel such occurrences.

8. *Filter Collectors*

Proper sizing of filter collectors for the pneumatic dust control system they serve is very important for the overall effectiveness of the system. The air to cloth ratio of the system should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. If higher ratios are used, they can result in more maintenance on the filter, shorter bag or sock life, increased differential pressure resulting in higher energy costs, and an increase in operational problems.

A photohelic gauge, magnehelic gauge, or manometer, may be used to indicate the pressure rise across the inlet and outlet of the filter. When the pressure exceeds the design value for the filter, the air volume will start to drop, and maintenance will be required. Any of these three monitoring devices is acceptable as meeting paragraph (k)(1) of the standard.

The employer should establish a level or target reading on the instrument which is consistent with the manufacturer's recommendations that will indicate when the filter should be serviced. This target reading on the instrument and the accompanying procedures should be in the preventive maintenance program. These efforts would minimize the blinding of the filter and the subsequent failure of the pneumatic dust control system.

There are other instruments that the employer may want to consider using to monitor the operation of the filter. One instrument is a zero motion switch for detecting a failure of motion by the rotary discharge valve on the hopper. If the rotary discharge valve stops turning, the dust released by the bag or sock will accumulate in the filter hopper until the filter becomes clogged. Another instrument is a level indicator which is installed in the hopper of the filter to detect the buildup of dust that would otherwise cause the filter hopper to be plugged. The installation of these instruments should be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

All of these monitoring devices and instruments are to be capable of being read at an accessible location and checked as frequently as specified in the preventive maintenance program.

Filter collectors or portable vacuum cleaners, and those used where fans are not part of the system, are not covered by requirements of paragraph (k) of the standard.

9. Preventive Maintenance

The control of dust and the control of ignition sources are the most effective means for reducing explosion hazards. Preventive maintenance is related to ignition sources in the same manner as housekeeping is related to dust control and should be treated as a major function in a facility. Equipment such as critical bearings, belts, buckets, pulleys, and milling machinery are potential ignition sources, and periodic inspection and lubrication of such equipment through a scheduled preventive maintenance program is an effective method for keeping equipment functioning properly and safely. The use of vibration detection methods, heat sensitive tape or other heat detection methods that can be seen by the inspector or maintenance person will allow for a quick, accurate, and consistent evaluation of bearings and will help in the implementation of the program.

The standard does not require a specific frequency for preventive maintenance. The employer is permitted flexibility in determining the appropriate interval for maintenance provided that the effectiveness of the maintenance program can be demonstrated. Scheduling of preventive maintenance should be based on manufacturer's recommendations for effective operation, as well as from the employer's previous experience with the equipment. However, the employer's schedule for preventive maintenance should be frequent enough to allow for both prompt identification and correction of any problems concerning the failure or malfunction of the mechanical and safety control equipment associated with bucket elevators, dryers, filter collectors and magnets. The pressure-drop monitoring device for a filter collector, and the condition of the lagging on the head pulley, are examples of items that require regularly scheduled inspections. A system of identifying the date, the equipment inspected and the maintenance performed, if any, will assist employers in continually refining their preventive maintenance schedules and identifying equipment problem areas. Open work orders where repair work or replacement is to be done at a designated future date as scheduled, would be an indication of an effective preventive maintenance program.

It is imperative that the prearranged schedule of maintenance be adhered to regardless of other facility constraints. The employer should give priority to the maintenance or repair work associated with safety control equipment, such as that on dryers, magnets, alarm and shut-down systems on bucket elevators, bearings on bucket elevators, and the filter collectors in the dust control system. Benefits of a strict preventive maintenance program can be a reduction of unplanned downtime, improved equipment performance, planned use of resources, more efficient operations, and, most importantly, safer operations.

The standard also requires the employer to develop and implement procedures consisting of locking out and tagging equipment to prevent the inadvertent application of energy or motion to equipment being repaired, serviced, or adjusted, which could result in employee injury. All employees who have responsibility for repairing or servicing equipment, as well as those who operate the equipment, are to be familiar with the employer's lock and tag procedures. A lock is to be used as the positive means to prevent operation of the disconnected equipment. Tags are to be used to inform employees why equipment is locked out. Tags are to meet requirements in § 1910.145(f). Locks and tags may only be removed by employees that placed them, or by their supervisor, to ensure the safety of the operation.

10. Grain Stream Processing Equipment

The standard requires an effective means of removing ferrous material from grain streams so that such material does not enter equipment such as hammer mills, grinders and pulverizers. Large foreign objects, such as stones, should have been removed at the receiving pit. Introduction of foreign objects and ferrous material into such equipment can produce sparks which can create an explosion hazard. Acceptable means for removal of ferrous materials include the use of permanent or electromagnets. Means used to separate foreign objects and ferrous material should be cleaned regularly and kept in good repair as part of the preventive maintenance program in order to maximize their effectiveness.

11. Emergency Escape

The standard specifies that at least two means of escape must be provided from galleries (bin decks). Means of emergency escape may include any available means of egress (consisting of three components, exit access, exit, and exit discharge as defined in § 1910.35), the use of controlled descent devices with landing velocities not to exceed 15 ft/sec., or emergency escape ladders from galleries. Importantly, the means of emergency escape are to be addressed in the facility emergency action plan. Employees are to know the location of the nearest means of emergency escape and the action they must take during an emergency.

12. Dryers

Liquefied petroleum gas fired dryers should have the vaporizers installed at least ten feet from the dryer. The gas piping system should be protected from mechanical damage. The employer should establish procedures for locating and repairing leaks when there is a strong odor of gas or other signs of a leak.

13. Inside Bucket Elevators

Hazards associated with inside bucket elevator legs are the source of many grain elevator fires and explosions. Therefore, to mitigate these hazards, the standard requires the implementation of special safety precautions and procedures, as well as the installation of safety control devices. The standard provides for a phase-in period for many of the requirements to provide the employer time for planning the implementation of the requirements. Additionally, for elevators with a permanent storage capacity of less than one million bushels, daily visual inspection of belt alignment and bucket movement can be substituted for alignment monitoring devices and motion detection devices.

The standard requires that belts (purchased after the effective date of the standard) have surface electrical resistance not to exceed 300 megohms. Test methods available regarding electrical resistance of belts are: The American Society for Testing and Materials D257-76, "Standard Test Methods for D-C Resistance or Conductance of Insulating Materials"; and, the International Standards Organization's #284, "Conveyor Belts-Electrical Conductivity-Specification and Method of Test." When an employer has a written certification from the manufacturer that a belt has been tested using one of the above test methods, and meets the 300 megohm criteria, the belt is acceptable as meeting this standard. When using conductive belts, the employer should make certain that the head pulley and shaft are grounded through the drive motor ground or by some other equally effective means. When V-type belts are used to transmit power to the head pulley assembly from the motor drive shaft, it will be necessary to provide electrical continuity from the head pulley assembly to ground, e.g., motor grounds."

Employers should also consider purchasing new belts that are flame retardant or fire resistive. A flame resistance test for belts is contained in 30 CFR 18.65.

APPENDIX B TO 1910.272 GRAIN HANDLING FACILITIES

National Consensus Standards

The following table contains a cross-reference listing of current national consensus standards which provide information that may be of assistance to grain handling operations. Employers who comply with provisions in these national consensus standards that provide equal or greater protection than those in § 1910.272 will be considered in compliance with the corresponding requirements in § 1910.272.

Subject	National consensus standards
Grain elevators and facilities handling bulk raw agricultural commodities	ANSI/NFPA 61B
Feed mills	ANSI/NFPA 61C
Facilities handling agricultural commodities for human consumption	ANSI/NFPA 61D
Pneumatic conveying systems for agricultural commodities	ANSI/NFPA 66
Guide for explosion venting	ANSI/NFPA 68
Explosion prevention systems	ANSI/NFPA 69
Dust removal and exhaust systems	ANSI/NFPA 91

APPENDIX C TO 1910.272 GRAIN HANDLING FACILITIES

References for Further Information

The following references provide information which can be helpful in understanding the requirements contained in various provisions of the standard, as well as provide other helpful information.

1. *Accident Prevention Manual for Industrial Operations*, National Safety Council, 425 North Michigan Avenue, Chicago, Illinois 60611.

2. *Practical Guide to Elevator Design*, National Grain and Feed Association, P.O. Box 28328, Washington, DC 20005.

3. *Dust Control for Grain Elevators*; National Grain and Feed Association, P.O. Box 28328, Washington, DC 20005.

4. *Prevention of Grain Elevator and Mill Explosions*; National Academy of Sciences, Washington, DC. (Available from National Technical Information Service, Springfield, Virginia 22151.)

5. *Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Explosions in Grain Elevators and Facilities Handling Bulk Raw Agricultural Commodities*, NFPA 61B; National Fire Protection Association, Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02269.

6. *Standard for the Prevention of Fire and Dust Explosions in Feed Mills*, NFPA 61C; National Fire Protection Association, Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02269.

7. *Standard for the Prevention of Fire and Dust Explosions in the Milling of Agricultural Commodities for Human Consumption*, NFPA 61D; National Fire Protection Association, Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02269.

8. *Standard for Pneumatic Conveying Systems for Handling Feed, Flour, Grain and Other Agricultural Dusts*, NFPA 66; National Fire Protection Association, Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02269.

9. *Guide for Explosion Venting*, NFPA 68, National Fire Protection Association, Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02269.

10. *Standard on Explosion Prevention Systems*, NFPA 69; National Fire Protection Association, Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02269.

11. *Safety-Operations Plans*, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC 20250.

12. *Inplant Fire Prevention Control Programs*, Mill Mutual Fire Prevention Bureau, 1 Pierce Place, Suite 1260 West, Itasca, Illinois 60143–1269.

13. *Guidelines for Terminal Evaluators*; Mill Mutual Fire Prevention Bureau, 1 Pierce Place, Suite 1260 West, Itasca, Illinois 60143–1269.

14. *Standards for Preventing the Horizontal and Vertical Spread of Fires in Grain Handling Properties*; Mill Mutual Fire Prevention Bureau, 1 Pierce Place, Suite 1260 West, Itasca, Illinois 60143–1269.

15. *Belt Conveyors for Bulk Materials*, Part I and Part II, Data Sheet 570, Revision A; National Safety Council, 425 North Michigan Avenue, Chicago, Illinois 60611.

16. *Suggestions for Precautions and Safety Practices in Welding and Cutting*; Mill Mutual Fire Prevention Bureau, 1 Pierce Place, Suite 1260 West, Itasca, Illinois 60143–1269.

17. *Food Bins and Tanks*, Data Sheet 524; National Safety Council, 425 North Michigan Avenue, Chicago, Illinois 60611.

18. *Pneumatic Dust Control in Grain Elevators*; National Academy of Sciences, Washington, DC. (Available from

National Technical Information Service, Springfield, Virginia 22151.)

19. *Dust Control Analysis and Layout Procedures for Grain Storage and Processing Plants;* Mill Mutual Fire Prevention Bureau, 1 Pierce Place, Suite 1260 West, Itasca, Illinois 60143-1269.

20. *Standard for the Installation of Blower and Exhaust Systems for Dust, Stock and Vapor Removal*, NFPA 91; National Fire Protection Association, Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02269.

21. *Standards for the Installation of Direct Heat Grain Driers in Grain and Milling Properties;* Mill Mutual Fire Prevention Bureau, 1 Pierce Place, Suite 1260 West, Itasca, Illinois 60143–1269.

22. *Guidelines for Lubrication and Bearing Maintenance;* Mill Mutual Fire Prevention Bureau, 1 Pierce Place, Suite 1260 West, Itasca, Illinois 60143–1269.

23. *Organized Maintenance in Grain and Milling Properties;* Mill Mutual Fire Prevention Bureau.

24. *Safe and Efficient Elevator Legs for Grain and Milling Properties;* Mill Mutual Fire Prevention Bureau, 1 Pierce Place, Suite 1260 West, Itasca, Illinois 60143–1269.

25. *Explosion Venting and Suppression of Bucket Elevators;* National Grain and Feed Association, P.O. Box 28328, Washington, DC 20005.

26. *Lightning Protection Code*, NFPA 78; National Fire Protection Association, Batterymarch Park, Quincy, Massachusetts 02269.

27. *Occupational Safety in Grain Elevators*, DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 83–126); National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Morgantown, West Virginia 26505.

28. *Retrofitting and Constructing Grain Elevators;* National Grain and Feed Association, P.O. Box 28328, Washington, DC 20005.

29. *Grain Industry Safety and Health Center—Training Series* (Preventing grain dust explosions, operations maintenance safety, transportation safety, occupational safety and health); Grain Elevator and Processing Society, P.O. Box 15026, Commerce Station, Minneapolis, Minnesota 55415–0026.

30. *Suggestions for Organized Maintenance;* The Mill Mutuals Loss Control Department, 1 Pierce Place, Suite 1260 West, Itasca, Illinois 60143–1269.

31. *Safety—The First Step to Success;* The Mill Mutuals Loss Control Department 1 Pierce Place, Suite 1260 West, Itasca, Illinois 60143–1269.

32. *Emergency Plan Notebook;* Schoeff, Robert W. and James L. Balding, Kansas State University, Cooperative Extension Service, Extension Grain Science and Industry, Shellenberger Hall, Manhattan, Kansas 66506.

(Information collection requirements contained in paragraphs (d) and (i) were approved by the Office of Management and Budget under Control Number 1218–0144.)

1910.274—SOURCES OF STANDARDS

Sec.	*Source*
1910.261	ANSI P1.1—1969, Safety Standard for Pulp, Paper, and Paperboard Mills.
1910.264	ANSI L1.1—1956, Textile Safety Code.
1910.263	ANSI Z50.1—1947, Safety Code for Bakery Equipment.
1910.262	ANSI Z8.1—1961, Safety Code for Laundry Machinery and Operations.
1910.265	ANSI 02.1—1969, Safety Requirements for Sawmills.
1910.266	ANSI O3.1—1971, Pulpwood Logging Safety Standards.

1910.275—STANDARDS ORGANIZATION

Specific standards of the following organizations have been referenced in this subpart. Copies of the referenced standards may be obtained from the issuing organizations. The names and addresses of the issuing organizations are as follows:

American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
1430 Broadway
New York, New York 10018

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
470 Atlantic Avenue
Boston, Massachusetts 02210

American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Inc.,
United Engineering Center
345 East 47th Street
New York, New York 10017

Institute of Markers of Explosives
420 Lexington Avenue
New York, New York 10017

Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.
207 East Ohio Street
Chicago, Illinois 60611

American Society for Testing & Materials (ASTM)
1916 Race Street
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19103

[40 F.R. 13435, March 26, 1975.]

SUBPART S
ELECTRICAL

General

1910.301 Introduction.

Design Safety Standards for Electrical Systems

1910.302 Electric utilization systems.
1910.303 General requirements.
1910.304 Wiring design and protection.
1910.305 Wiring methods, components, and equipment for general use.
1910.306 Specific purpose equipment and installations.
1910.307 Hazardous (classified) locations.
1910.308 Special systems.
1910.309—1910.330 [Reserved]

Safety-Related Work Practices

1910.331—1910.360 [Reserved]

Safety-Related Maintenance Requirements

1910.361—1910.380 [Reserved]

Safety Requirements for Special Equipment

1910.381—1910.398 [Reserved]

Definitions

1910.399 Definitions application to this subpart.
Appendix A—Reference Documents.
Appendix B—Explanatory Data [Reserved]
Appendix C—Tables, Notes, and Charts [Reserved]

Authority: Secs. 4(b)(2) and 6(b), 84 Stat. 1592, 1593 (29 U.S.C. 653, 655), Secretary of Labor's Order No. 8-76 (41 FR 25059), 29 CFR Part 1911.

Authority: Secs. 6, 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Order No. 8–76 (41 FR 25059) or 9–83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable; and 29 CFR Part 1911.

[53 F.R. 12123, April 12, 1988]

Source: Provisions of this Subpart S published 46 F.R. 40434, January 16, 1981 unless otherwise indicated. Corrected at 46 F.R. 40185, August 7, 1981.

best copy available

SUBPART S—ELECTRICAL

GENERAL

1910.301—INTRODUCTION

This subpart addresses electrical safety requirements that are necessary for the practical safeguarding of employees in their workplaces and is divided into four major divisions as follows:

(a) Design safety standards for electrical systems. These regulations are contained in §§ 1910.302 through 1910.330. Sections 1910.302 through 1910.308 contain design safety standards for electric utilization systems. Included in this category are all electric equipment and installations used to provide electric power and light for employee workplaces. Sections 1910.309 through 1910.330 are reserved for possible future design safety standards for other electrical systems.

(b) Safety-related work practices.

These regulations will be contained in §§ 1910.331 through 1910.360.

(c) Safety-related maintenance requirements. These regulations will be contained in §§ 1910.361 through 1910.380.

(d) Safety requirements for special equipment. These regulations will be contained in §§ 1910.381 through 1910.398.

(e) Definitions. Definitions applicable to each division are contained in § 1910.399.

DESIGN SAFETY STANDARDS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

1910.302—ELECTRIC UTILIZATION SYSTEMS

Sections 1910.302 through 1910.308 contain design safety standards for electric utilization systems.

(a) Scope.

(1) Covered. The provisions of §§ 1910.302 through 1910.308 of this subpart cover electrical installations and utilization equipment installed or used within or on buildings, structures, and other premises including:

(i) Yards,

(ii) Carnivals,

(iii) Parking and other lots,

(iv) Mobile homes,

(v) Recreational vehicles,

(vi) Industrial substations,

(vii) Conductors that connect the installations to a supply of electricity, and

(viii) Other outside conductors on the premises.

(2) Not covered. The provisions of §§ 1910.302 through 1910.308 of this subpart do not cover:

(i) Installations in ships, watercraft, railway rolling stock, aircraft, or automotive vehicles other than mobile homes and recreational vehicles.

(ii) Installations underground in mines.

(iii) Installations of railways for generation, transformation, transmission, or distribution of power used exclusively for operation of rolling stock or installations used exclusively for signaling and communication purposes.

(iv) Installations of communication equipment under the exclusive control of communication utilities, located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations.

(v) Installations under the exclusive control of electric utilities for the purpose of communication or metering; or for the generation, control, transformation, transmission, and distribution of electric energy located in buildings used exclusively by utilities for such purposes or located outdoors on property owned or leased by the utility or on public highways, streets, roads, etc., or outdoors by established rights on private property.

(b) Extent of application.

(1) The requirements contained in the sections listed below shall apply to all electrical installations and utilization equipment, regardless of when they were designed or installed.

Sections:

1910.303(b)	Examination, installation, and use of equipment.
1910.303(c)	Splices.
1910.303(d)	Arcing parts.
1910.303(e)	Marking.
1910.303(f)	Identification of disconnecting means.
1910.303(g)(2)...	Guarding of live parts.
1910.304(e)(1)(i).	Protection of conductors and equipment.
1910.304(e)(1)(iv)	Location in or on premises.
1910.304(e)(1)(v)	Arcing or suddenly moving parts.
1910.304(f)(1)(ii)	2-Wire DC systems to be grounded:
1910.304(f)(1)(iii) and 1910.304(f)(1)(iv).	AC Systems to be grounded.
1910.304(f)(1)(v)	AC Systems 50 to 1000 volts not required to be grounded.
1910.304(f)(3) ...	Grounding connections.
1910.304(f)(4) ...	Grounding path.
1910.304(f)(5)(iv)(*a*) through 1910.304(f)(5)(iv)(*d*)	Fixed equipment required to be grounded.
1910.304(f)(5)(v)	Grounding of equipment connected by cord and plug.
1910.304(f)(5)(vi)	Grounding of nonelectrical equipment.
1910.304(f)(6)(i) .	Methods of grounding fixed equipment.
1910.305(g)(1)(i) and 1910.305(g)(1)(ii).	Flexible cords and cables, uses.
1910.305(g)(1)(iii)	Flexible cords and cables prohibited.
1910.305(g)(2)(ii)	Flexible cords and cables, splices.
1910.305(g)(2)(iii)	Pull at joints and terminals of flexible cords and cables.
1910.307	Hazardous (classified) locations.

(2) Every electric utilization system and all utilization equipment installed after March 15, 1972, and every major replacement, modification, repair, or rehabilitation, after March 15, 1972, of any part of any electric utilization system or utilization equipment installed before March 15, 1972, shall comply with the provisions of §§ 1910.302 through 1910.308.

Note.—"Major replacements, modifications, repairs, or rehabilitations" include work similar to that involved when a new building or facility is built, a new wing is added, or an entire floor is renovated.

(3) The following provisions apply to electric utilization systems and utilization equipment installed after April 16, 1981:

§§ 1910.303(h)(4)(ii) 1910.303(h)(4)(i)	Entrance and access to work-space (over 600 volts).
§ 1910.304(e)(1)(vi)(*b*)	Circuit breakers operated vertically.
§ 1910.304(e)(1)(vi)(*c*)	Circuit breakers used as switches.
§ 1910.304(f)(7)(ii)	Grounding of systems of 1000 volts or more supplying portable or mobile equipment.
§ 1910.305(i)(6)(ii)(*b*)	Switching series capacitors over 600 volts.
§ 1910.306(c)(2) .	Warning signs for elevators and escalators.
§ 1910.306(i)	Electrically controlled irrigation machines.
§ 1910.306(j)(5) .	Ground-fault circuit interrupters for fountains.
§ 1910.308(a)(1)(ii)	Physical protection of conductors over 600 volts.
§ 1910.308(c)(2) .	Marking of Class 2 and Class 3 power supplies.
§ 1910.308(d) ...	Fire protective signaling circuits.

1910.303—GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

(a) Approval. The conductors and equipment required or permitted by this subpart shall be acceptable only if approved.

(b) Examination, installation, and use of equipment.

(1) Examination. Electrical equipment shall be free from recognized hazards that are likely to cause death or serious physical harm to employees. Safety of equipment shall be determined using the following considerations:

(i) Suitability for installation and use in conformity with the provisions of this subpart. Suitability of equipment for an identified purpose may be evidenced by listing or labeling for that identified purpose.

(ii) Mechanical strength and durability, including, for parts designed to enclose and protect other equipment, the adequacy of the protection thus provided.

(iii) Electrical insulation.

(iv) Heating effects under conditions of use.

(v) Arcing effects.

(vi) Classificaton by type, size, voltage, current capacity, specific use.

(vii) Other factors which contribute to the practical safeguarding of employees using or likely to come in contact with the equipment.

(2) Installation and use. Listed or labeled equipment shall be used or installed in accordance with any instructions included in the listing or labeling.

(c) Splices. Conductors shall be spliced or joined with splicing devices suitable for the use or by brazing, welding, or soldering with a fusible metal or alloy. Soldered splices shall first be so spliced or joined as to be mechanically and electrically secure without solder and then soldered. All splices and joints and the free ends of conductors shall be covered with an insulation equivalent to that of the conductors or with an insulating device suitable for the purpose.

(d) Arcing parts. Parts of electric equipment which in ordinary operation produce arcs, sparks, flames, or molten metal shall be enclosed or separated and isolated from all combustible material.

(e) Marking. Electrical equipment may not be used unless the manufacturer's name, trademark, or other descriptive marking by which the organization responsible for the product may be identified is placed on the equipment. Other markings shall be provided giving voltage, current, wattage, or other ratings as necessary. The marking shall be of sufficient durability to withstand the environment involved.

(f) Identification of disconnecting means and circuits. Each disconnecting means required by this subpart for motors and appliances shall be legibly marked to indicate its purpose, unless located and arranged so the purpose is evident. Each service, feeder, and branch circuit, at its disconnecting means or overcurrent device, shall be legibly marked to indicate its purpose, unless located and arranged so the purpose is evident. These markings shall be of sufficient durability to withstand the environment involved.

(g) 600 Volts, nominal, or less

(1) Working space about electric equipment. Sufficient access and working space shall be provided and maintained about all electric equipment to permit ready and safe operation and maintenance of such equipment.

(i) Working clearances. Except as required or permitted elsewhere in this subpart, the dimension of the working space in the direction of access to live parts operating at 600 volts or less and likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while alive may not be less than indicated in

Table S-1. In addition to the dimensions shown in Table S-1, workspace may not be less than 30 inches wide in front of the electric equipment. Distances shall be measured from the live parts if they are exposed, or from the enclosure front or opening if the live parts are enclosed. Concrete, brick, or tile walls are considered to be grounded. Working space is not required in back of assemblies such as dead-front switchboards or motor control centers where there are no renewable or adjustable parts such as fuses or switches on the back and where all connections are accessible from locations other than the back.

Table S-1.—*Working clearances*

Nominal voltage to ground	Minimum clear distance for condition[2] (ft)		
	(a)	*(b)*	*(c)*
0–150	[1]3	[1]3	3
151–600	[1]3	3½	4

[1] Minimum clear distances may be 2 feet 6 inches for installations built prior to April 16, 1981.

[2] Conditions *(a)*, *(b)*, and *(c)*, are as follows: *(a)* Exposed live parts on one side and no live or grounded parts on the other side of the working space, or exposed live parts on both sides effectively guarded by suitable wood or other insulating material. Insulated wrie or insulated busbars operating at not over 300 volts are not considered live parts. *(b)* Exposed live parts on one side and grounded parts on the other side *(c)* Exposed live parts on both sides of the workspace [not guarded as provided in Condition *(a)*] with the operator between.

(ii) Clear spaces. Working space required by this subpart may not be used for storage. When normally enclosed live parts are exposed for inspection or servicing, the working space, if in a passageway or general open space, shall be suitably guarded.

(iii) Access and entrance to working space. At least one entrance of sufficient area shall be provided to give access to the working space about electric equipment.

(iv) Front working space. Where there are live parts normally exposed on the front of switchboards or motor control centers, the working space in front of such equipment may not be less than 3 feet.

(v) Illumination. Illumination shall be provided for all working spaces about service equipment, switchboards, panelboards, and motor control centers installed indoors.

(vi) Headroom. The minimum headroom of working spaces about service equipment, switchboards, panelboards, or motor control centers shall be 6 feet 3 inches.

Note.—As used in this section a motor control center is an assembly of one or more enclosed sections having a common power bus and principally containing motor control units.

(2) Guarding of live parts.

(i) Except as required or permitted elsewhere in this subpart, live parts of electric equipment operating at 50 volts or more shall be guarded against accidental contact by approved cabinets or other forms of approved enclosures, or by any of the following means:

(a) By location in a room, vault, or similar enclosure that is accessible only to qualified persons.

(b) By suitable permanent, substantial partitions or screens so arranged that only qualified persons will have access to the space within reach of the live parts. Any openings in such partitions or screens shall be so sized and located that persons are not likely to come into accidental contact with live parts or to bring conducting objects into contact with them.

(c) By location on a suitable balcony, gallery, or platform so elevated and arranged as to exclude unqualified persons.

(d) By elevation of 8 feet or more above the floor or other working surface.

(ii) In locations where electric equipment would be exposed to physical damage, enclosures or guards shall be so arranged and of such strength as to prevent such damage.

(iii) Entrances to rooms and other guarded locations containing exposed live parts shall be marked with conspicuous warning signs forbidding unqualified persons to enter.

(h) Over 600 volts, nominal.

(1) General. Conductors and equipment used on circuits exceeding 600 volts, nominal, shall comply with all applicable provisions of paragraphs (a) through (g) of this section and with the following provisions which supplement or modify those requirements. The provisions of paragraphs (h)(2), (h)(3), and (h)(4) of this section do not apply to equipment on the supply side of the service conductors.

(2) Enclosure for electrical installations. Electrical installations in a vault, room, closet or in an area surrounded by a wall, screen, or fence, access to which is controlled by lock and key or other approved means, are considered to be accessible to qualified persons only. A wall, screen, or fence less than 8 feet in height is not considered to prevent access unless it has other features that provide a degree of isolation equivalent to an 8 foot fence. The entrances to all buildings, rooms, or enclosures containing exposed live parts or exposed conductors operating at over 600 volts, nominal, shall be kept locked or shall be under the observation of a qualified person at all times.

(i) Installations accessible to qualified persons only. Electrical installations having exposed live parts shall be accessible to qualified persons only and shall comply with the applicable provisions of paragraph (h)(3) of this section.

(ii) Installations accessible to unqualified persons. Electrical installations that are open to unqualified persons shall be made with metal-enclosed equipment or shall be enclosed in a vault or in an area, access to which is controlled by a lock. If metal-enclosed equipment is installed so that the bottom of the enclosure is less than 8 feet above the floor, the door or cover shall be kept locked. Metal-enclosed switchgear, unit substations, transformers, pull boxes, connection boxes, and other similar associated equipment shall be marked with appropriate caution signs. If equipment is exposed to physical damage from vehicular traffic, suitable guards shall be provided to prevent such damage. Ventilating or similar openings in metal-enclosed equipment shall be designed so that foreign objects inserted through these openings will be deflected from energized parts.

(3) Workspace about equipment. Sufficient space shall be provided and maintained about electric equipment to permit ready and safe operation and maintenance of such equipment. Where energized parts are exposed, the minimum clear workspace may not be less than 6 feet 6 inches high (measured vertically from the floor or platform), or less than 3 feet wide (measured parallel to the equipment). The depth shall be as required in Table S-2. The workspace shall be adequate to permit at least a 90-degree opening of doors or hinged panels.

(i) Working space. The minimum clear working space in front of electric equipment such as switchboards, control panels, switches, circuit breakers, motor controllers, relays, and similar equipment may not be less than specified in Table S-2 unless otherwise specified in this subpart. Distances shall be measured from the live parts if they are exposed, or from the enclosure front or opening if the live parts are enclosed. However, working space is not required in back of equipment such as deadfront switchboards or control assemblies where there are no renewable or adjustable parts (such as fuses or switches) on the back and where all connections are accessible from locations other than the back. Where rear access is required to work on deenergized parts on the back of enclosed equipment, a minimum working space of 30 inches horizontally shall be provided.

Table S-2.—*Minimum Depth of Clear Working Space in Front of Electric Equipment*

Nominal voltage to ground	Conditions[2](ft)		
	(a)	*(b)*	*(c)*
601 to 2,500	3	4	5
2,501 to 9,000	4	5	6
9,001 to 25,000	5	6	9
25,001 to 75kV[1]	6	8	10
Above 75kV[1]	8	10	12

[1] Minimum depth of clear working space in front of electric equipment with a nominal voltage to ground above 25,000 volts may be the same as for 25,000 volts under Conditions *(a)*, *(b)* and *(c)* for installations built prior April 16, 1981. (2) Conditions (a), (b) and (c) are as follows: *(a)* Exposed live parts on one side and no live or grounded parts on the other side of the working space, or exposed live parts on both sides effectively guarded by suitable wood or other insulating materials. Insulated wire or in-

sulated busbars operating at not over 300 volts are not considered live parts. *(b)* Exposed live parts on one side and grounded parts on the other side. Concrete, brick, or tile walls will be considered as grounded surfaces. *(c)* Exposed live parts on both sides of the workspace not guarded as provided in Condition (a) with the operator between.

(ii) Illumination. Adequate illumination shall be provided for all working spaces about electric equipment. The lighting outlets shall be so arranged that persons changing lamps or making repairs on the lighting system will not be endangered by live parts or other equipment. The points of control shall be so located that persons are not likely to come in contact with any live part or moving part of the equipment while turning on the lights.

(iii) Elevation of unguarded live parts. Unguarded live parts above working space shall be maintained at elevations not less than specified in Table S-3.

Table S-3.—*Elevation of Unguarded Energized Parts Above Working Space*

Nominal voltage between phases	Minimum elevation
601 to 7,500	*8 feet 6 inches.
7,501 to 35,000	9 feet.
Over 35kV	9 feet + 0.37 inches per kV above 35kV.

*Note.—Minimum elevation may be 8 feet 0 inches for installations built prior to April 16, 1981 if the nominal voltage between phases is in the range of 601-6600 volts.

(4) Entrance and access to workspace. (See § 1910.302(b)(3).)

(i) At least one entrance not less than 24 inches wide and 6 feet 6 inches high shall be provided to give access to the working space about electric equipment. On switchboard and control panels exceeding 48 inches in width, there shall be one entrance at each end of such board where practicable. Where bare energized parts at any voltage or insulated energized parts above 600 volts are located adjacent to such entrance, they shall be suitably guarded.

(ii) Permanent ladders or stairways shall be provided to give safe access to the working space around electric equipment installed on platforms, balconies, mezzanine floors, or in attic or roof rooms or spaces.

1910.304—WIRING DESIGN AND PROTECTION

(a) Use and identification of grounded and grounding conductors.

(1) Identification of conductors. A conductor used as a grounded conductor shall be identifiable and distinguishable from all other conductors. A conductor used as an equipment grounding conductor shall be identifiable and distinguishable from all other conductors.

(2) Polarity of connections. No grounded conductor may be attached to any terminal or lead so as to reverse designated polarity.

(3) Use of grounding terminals and devices. A grounding terminal or grounding-type device on a receptacle, cord connector, or attachment plug may not be used for purposes other than grounding.

(b) Branch circuits.

(1) Ground-fault protection for personnel on construction sites. The employer shall use either ground-fault circuit interrupters as specified in paragraph (b)(1)(i) of this section or an assured equipment grounding conductor program as specified in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section, to protect employees on construction sites. These requirements are in addition to any other requirements for equipment grounding conductors.

(i) Ground-fault circuit interrupters. All 120-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacle outlets on construction sites, which are not a part of the permanent wiring of the building or structure and which are in use by employees, shall have approved ground-fault circuit interrupters for personnel protection. Receptacles on a two-wire, single-phase portable or vehicle-mounted generator rated not more than 5 kW, where the circuit conductors of the generator are insulated from the generator frame and all other grounded surfaces, need not be protected with ground-fault circuit interrupters.

(ii) Assured equipment grounding conductor program. The employer shall establish and implement an assured equipment grounding conductor program on construction sites covering all cord sets, receptacles which are not a part of the permanent wiring of the building or structure, and equipment connected by cord and plug, which are available for use or used by employees. This program shall comply with the following minimum requirements:

(a) A written description of the program, including the specific procedures adopted by the employer, shall be available at the jobsite for inspection and copying by the Assistant Secretary and any affected employee.

(b) The employer shall designate one or more competent persons (as defined in 29 CFR 1926.32(f)) to implement the program.

(c) Each cord set, attachment cap, plug and receptacle of cord sets, and any equipment connected by cord and plug, except cord sets and receptacles which are fixed and not exposed to damage, shall be visually inspected before each day's use for external defects, such as deformed or missing pins or insulation damage, and for indication of possible internal damage. Equipment found damaged or defective may not be used until repaired.

(d) The following tests shall be performed on all cord sets, receptacles which are not a part of the permanent wiring of the building or structure, and cord- and plug-connected equipment required to be grounded:

(1) All equipment grouding conductors shall be tested for continuity and shall be electrically continuous.

(2) Each receptacle and attachment cap or plug shall be tested for correct attachment of the equipment grounding conductor. The equipment grounding conductor shall be connected to its proper terminal.

(e) All required tests shall be performed:

(1) Before first use;

(2) Before equipment is returned to service following any repairs;

(3) Before equipment is used after any incident which can be reasonably suspected to have caused damage (for example, when a cord set is run over); and

(4) At intervals not to exceed 3 months, except that cord sets and receptacles which are fixed and not exposed to damage shall be tested at intervals not exceeding 6 months.

(f) The employer may not make available or permit the use by employees of any equipment which has not met the requirements of this paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section.

(g) Tests performed as required in this paragraph shall be recorded. This test record shall identify each receptacle, cord set, and cord- and plug-connected equipment that passed the test, and shall indicate the last date it was tested or the interval for which it was tested. This record shall be kept by means of logs, color coding, or other effective means, and shall be maintained until replaced by a more current record. The record shall be made available on the jobsite for inspection by the Assistant Secretary and any affected employee.

(2) Outlet devices. Outlet devices shall have an ampere rating not less than the load to be served.

(c) Outside conductors, 600 volts, nominal, or less. Paragraphs (c)(1), (c)(2), (c)(3), and (c)(4) of this section apply to branch circuit, feeder, and service conductors rated 600 volts, nominal, or less and run outdoors as open conductors. Paragraph (c)(5) applies to lamps installed under such conductors.

(1) Conductors on poles. Conductors supported on poles shall provide a horizontal climbing space not less than the following:

(i) Power conductors below communication conductors—30 inches.

(ii) Power conductors alone or above communication conductors: 300 volts or less—24 inches; more than 300 volts—30 inches.

(iii) Communication conductors below power conductors with power conductors 300 volts or less—24 inches; more than 300 volts—30 inches.

(2) Clearance from ground. Open conductors shall conform to the following minimum clearances:

(i) 10 feet—above finished grade, sidewalks, or from any platform or projection from which they might be reached.

(ii) 12 feet—over areas subject to vehicular traffic other than truck traffic.

(iii) 15 feet—over areas other than those specified in paragraph (c)(2)(iv) of this section that are subject to truck traffic.

(iv) 18 feet—over public streets, alleys, roads, and driveways.

(3) Clearance from building openings. Conductors shall have a clearance of at least 3 feet from windows, doors, porches, fire escapes, or similar locations. Conductors run above the top level of a window are considered to be out of reach from that window and, therefore, do not have to be 3 feet away.

(4) Clearance over roofs. Conductors shall have a clearance of not less than 8 feet from the highest point of roofs over which they pass, except that: ■

(i) Where the voltage between conductors is 300 volts or less and the roof has a slope of not less than 4 inches in 12, the clearance from the roofs shall be at least 3 feet, or

(ii) Where the voltage between conductors is 300 volts or less and the conductors do not pass over more than 4 feet of the overhang portion of the roof and they are terminated at a through-the-roof raceway or approved support, the clearance from the roofs shall be at least 18 inches.

(5) Location of outdoor lamps. Lamps for outdoor lighting shall be located below all live conductors, transformers, or other electric equipment, unless such equipment is controlled by a disconnecting means that can be locked in the open position or unless adequate clearances or other safeguards are provided for relamping operations.

(d) Services.

(1) Disconnecting means.

(i) General. Means shall be provided to disconnect all conductors in a building or other structure from the service-entrance conductors. The disconnecting means shall plainly indicate whether it is in the open or closed position and shall be installed at a readily accessible location nearest the point of entrance of the service-entrance conductors.

(ii) Simultaneous opening of poles. Each service disconnecting means shall simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded conductors.

(2) Services over 600 volts, nominal. The following additional requirements apply to services over 600 volts, nominal.

(i) Guarding. Service-entrance conductors installed as open wires shall be guarded to make them accessible only to qualified persons.

(ii) Warning signs. Signs warning of high voltage shall be posted where other than qualified employees might come in contact with live parts.

(e) Overcurrent protection.

(1) 600 volts, nominal, or less. The following requirements apply to overcurrent protection of circuits rated 600 volts, nominal, or less.

(i) Protection of conductors and equipment. Conductors and equipment shall be protected from overcurrent in accordance with their ability to safely conduct current.

(ii) Grounded Conductors. Except for motor running overload protection, overcurrent devices may not interrupt the continuity of the grounded conductor unless all conductors of the circuit are opened simultaneously.

(iii) Disconnection of fuses and thermal cutouts. Except for service fuses, all cartridge fuses which are accessible to other than qualified persons and all fuses and thermal cutouts on circuits over 150 volts to ground shall be provided with disconnecting means. This disconnecting means shall be installed so that the fuse or thermal cutout can be disconnected from its supply without disrupting service to equipment and circuits unrelated to those protected by the overcurrent device.

(iv) Location in or on premises. Overcurrent devices shall be readily accessible to each employee or authorized building management personnel. These overcurrent devices may not be located where they will be exposed to physical damage nor in the vicinity of easily ignitible material.

(v) Arcing or suddenly moving parts. Fuses and circuit breakers shall be so located or shielded that employees will not be burned or otherwise injured by their operation.

(vi) Circuit breakers.

(a) Circuit breakers shall clearly indicate whether they are in the open (off) or closed (on) position.

(b) Where circuit breaker handles on switchboards are operated vertically rather than horizontally or rotationally, the up position of the handle shall be the closed (on) position. (See § 1910.302 (b)(3).)

(c) If used as switches in 120-volt, fluorescent lighting circuits, circuit breakers shall be approved for the purpose and marked "SWD." (See § 1910.302(b)(3).)

(2) Over 600 volts, nominal. Feeders and branch circuits over 600 volts, nominal, shall have short-circuit protection.

(f) Grounding. Paragraphs (f)(1) through (f)(7) of this section contain grounding requirements for systems, circuits, and equipment.

(1) Systems to be grounded. The following systems which supply premises wiring shall be grounded:

(i) All 3-wire DC systems shall have their neutral conductor grounded.

(ii) Two-wire DC systems operating at over 50 volts through 300 volts between conductors shall be grounded unless:

(a) They supply only industrial equipment in limited areas and are equipped with a ground detector; or

(b) They are rectifier-derived from an AC system complying with paragraphs (f)(1) (iii), (f)(1)(iv), and (f)(1)(v) of this section; or

(c) They are fire-protective signaling circuits having a maximum current of 0.030 amperes.

(iii) AC circuits of less than 50 volts shall be grounded if they are installed as overhead conductors outside of buildings or if they are supplied by transformers and the transformer primary supply system is ungrounded or exceeds 150 volts to ground.

(iv) AC systems of 50 volts to 1000 volts shall be grounded under any of the following conditions, unless exempted by paragraph (f)(1)(v) of this section:

(a) If the system can be so grounded that the maximum voltage to ground on the ungrounded conductors does not exceed 150 volts;

(b) If the system is nominally rated 480Y/277 volt, 3-phase, 4-wire in which the neutral is used as a circuit conductor;

(c) If the system is nominally rated 240/120 volt, 3-phase, 4-wire in which the midpoint of one phase is used as a circuit conductor; or

(d) If a service conductor is uninsulated.

(v) AC systems of 50 volts to 1000 volts are not required to be grounded under any of the following conditions:

(a) If the system is used exclusively to supply industrial electric furnaces for melting, refining, tempering, and the like.

(b) If the system is separately derived and is used exclusively for rectifiers supplying only adjustable speed industrial drives.

(c) If the system is separately derived and is supplied by a transformer that has a primary voltage rating less than 1000 volts, provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The system is used exclusively for control circuits,

(2) The conditions of maintenance and supervision assure that only qualified persons will service the installation,

(3) Continuity of control power is required, and

(4) Ground detectors are installed on the control system.

(d) If the system is an isolated power system that supplies circuits in health care facilities.

(2) Conductors to be grounded. For AC premises wiring systems the identified conductor shall be grounded.

(3) Grounding connections.

(i) For a grounded system, a grounding electrode conductor shall be used to connect both the equipment grounding conductor and the grounded circuit conductor to the grounding electrode. Both the equipment grounding conductor and the grounding electrode conductor shall be connected to the grounded circuit conductor on the supply side of the service disconnecting means, or on the supply side of the system disconnecting means or overcurrent devices if the system is separately derived.

(ii) For an ungrounded service-supplied system, the equipment grounding conductor shall be connected to the grounding electrode conductor at the service equipment. For an ungrounded separately derived system, the equipment grounding conductor shall be connected to the grounding electrode conductor at, or ahead of, the system disconnecting means or overcurrent devices.

(iii) On extentions of existing branch circuits which do not have an equipment grounding conductor, grounding-type receptacles may be grounded to a grounded cold water pipe near the equipment.

(4) Grounding path. The path to ground from circuits, equipment, and enclosures shall be permanent and continuous.

(5) Supports, enclosures, and equipment to be grounded.

(i) Supports and enclosures for conductors. Metal cable trays, metal raceways, and metal enclosures for conductors shall be grounded, except that:

(a) Metal enclosures such as sleeves that are used to protect cable assemblies from physical damage need not be grounded; or

(b) Metal enclosures for conductors added to existing installations of open wire, knob-and-tube wiring, and nonmetallic-sheathed cable need not be grounded if all of the following conditions are met:

(1) runs are less than 25 feet;

(2) enclosures are free from probable contact with ground, grounded metal, metal laths, or other conductive materials; and

(3) enclosures are guarded against employee contact.

(ii) Service equipment enclosures. Metal enclosures for service equipment shall be grounded.

(iii) Frames of ranges and clothes dryers. Frames of electric ranges, wall-mounted ovens, counter-mounted cooking units, clothes dryers, and metal outlet or junction boxes which are part of the circuit for these appliances shall be grounded.

(iv) Fixed equipment. Exposed non-current-carrying metal parts of fixed equipment which may become energized shall be grounded under any of the following conditions:

(a) If within 8 feet vertically or 5 feet horiziontally of ground or grounded metal objects and subject to employee contact.

(b) If located in a wet or damp location and not isolated.

(c) If in electrical contact with metal.

(d) If in a hazardous (classified) location.

(e) If supplied by a metal-clad, metal-sheathed, or grounded metal raceway wiring method.

(f) If equipment operates with any terminal at over 150 volts to the ground; however, the following need not be grounded:

(1) Enclosures for switches or circuit breakers used for other than service equipment and accessible to qualified persons only;

(2) Metal frames of electrically heated appliances which are permanently and effectively insulated from ground; and

(3) The cases of distribution apparatus such as transformers and capacitors mounted on wooden poles at a height exceeding 8 feet above ground or grade level.

(v) Equipment connected by cord and plug. Under any of the conditions described in paragraphs (f)(5)(v)(*a*) through (f)(5)(v)(*c*) of this section, exposed non-current-carrying metal parts of cord- and plug-connected equipment which may become energized shall be grounded.

(a) If in hazardous (classified) locations (see § 1910.307).

(b) If operated at over 150 volts to ground, except for guarded motors and metal frames of electrically heated appliances if the applicance frames are permanently and effectively insulated from ground.

(c) If the equipment is of the following types:

(1) Refrigerators, freezers, and air conditioners;

(2) Clothes-washing, clothes-drying and dishwashing machines, sump pumps, and electrical aquarium equipment;

(3) Hand-held motor-operated tools;

(4) Motor-operated appliances of the following types: hedge clippers, lawn mowers, snow blowers, and wet scrubbers;

(5) Cord- and plug-connected appliances used in damp or wet locations or by employees standing on the ground or on metal floors or working inside of metal tanks or boilers;

(6) Portable and mobile X-ray and associated equipment;

(7) Tools likely to be used in wet and conductive locations; and

(8) Portable hand lamps. Tools likely to be used in wet and conductive locations need not be grounded if supplied through an isolating transformer with an ungrounded secondary of not over 50 volts. Listed or labeled portable tools and appliances protected by an approved system of double insulation, or its equivalent, need not be grounded. If such a system is employed, the equipment shall be distinctively marked to indicate that the tool or appliance utilizes an approved system of double insulation.

(vi) Nonelectrical equipment. The metal parts of the following nonelectrical equipment shall be grounded: frames and tracks of electrically operated cranes; frames of nonelectrically driven elevator cars to which electric conductors are attached; hand operated metal shifting ropes or cables of electric elevators, and metal partitions, grill work, and similar metal enclosures around equipment of over 750 volts between conductors.

(6) Methods of grounding fixed equipment.

(i) Non-current-carrying metal parts of fixed equipment, if required to be grounded by this subpart, shall be grounded by an equipment grounding conductor which is contained within the same raceway, cable, or cord, or runs with or encloses the circuit conductors. For DC circuits only, the equipment grounding conductor may be run separately from the circuit conductors.

(ii) Electric equipment is considered to be effectively grounded if it is secured to, and in electrical contact with, a metal rack or structure that is provided for its support and the metal rack or structure is grounded by the method specified for the non-current-carrying metal parts of fixed equipment in paragraph (f)(6)(i) of this section. For installations made before April 16, 1981, only, electric equipment is also considered to be effectively grounded if it is secured to, and in metallic contact with, the grounded structural metal frame of a building. Metal car frames supported by metal hoisting cables attached to or running over metal sheaves or drums of grounded elevator machines are also considered to be effectively grounded.

(7) Grounding of systems and circuits of 1000 volts and over (high voltage.).

(i) General. If high voltage systems are grounded, they shall comply with all applicable provisions of paragraphs (f)(1) through (f)(6) of this section as supplemented and modified by this paragraph (f)(7).

(ii) Grounding of systems supplying portable or mobile equipment. (See § 1910.302(b)(3).) Systems supplying portable or mobile high voltage equipment, other than substations installed on a temporary basis, shall comply with the following:

(a) Portable and mobile high voltage equipment shall be supplied from a system having its neutral grounded through an impedance. If a delta-connected high voltage system is used to supply the equipment, a system neutral shall be derived.

(b) Exposed non-current-carrying metal parts of portable and mobile equipment shall be connected by an equipment grounding conductor to the point at which the system neutral impedance is grounded.

(c) Ground-fault detection and relaying shall be provided to automatically de-energize any high voltage system component which has developed a ground fault. The continuity of the equipment grounding conductor shall be continuously monitored so as to de-energize automatically the high voltage feeder to the portable equipment upon loss of continuity of the equipment grounding conductor.

(d) The grounding electrode to which the portable or mobile equipment system neutral impedance is connected shall be isolated from and separated in the ground by at least 20 feet from any other system or equipment grounding electrode, and there shall be no direct connection between the grounding electrodes, such as buried pipe, fence, etc.

(iii) Grounding of equipment. All non-current-carrying metal parts of portable equipment and fixed equipment including their associated fences, housings, enclosures, and supporting structures shall be grounded. However, equipment which is guarded by location and isolated from ground need not be grounded. Additionally, pole-mounted distribution apparatus at a height exceeding 8 feet above ground or grade level need not be grounded.

1910.305—WIRING METHODS, COMPONENTS, AND EQUIPMENT FOR GENERAL USE

(a) Wiring methods. The provisions of this section do not apply to the conductors that are an integral part of factory-assembled equipment.

(1) General requirements.

(i) Electrical continuity of metal raceways and enclosures. Metal raceways, cable armor, and other metal enclosures for conductors shall be metallically joined together into a continuous electric conductor and shall be so connected to all boxes, fittings, and cabinets as to provide effective electrical continuity.

(ii) Wiring in ducts. No wiring systems of any type shall be installed in ducts used to transport dust, loose stock or flammable vapors. No wiring system of any type may be installed in any duct used for vapor removal or for ventilation of commercial-type cooking equipment, or in any shaft containing only such ducts.

(2) Temporary wiring. Temporary electrical power and lighting wiring methods may be of a class less than would be required for a permanent installation. Except as specifically modified in this paragraph, all other requirements of this subpart for permanent wiring shall apply to temporary wiring installations.

(i) Uses permitted, 600 volts, nominal or less. Temporary electrical power and lighting installations 600 volts, nominal, or less may be used only:

(**a**) During and for remodeling, maintenance, repair, or demolition of buildings, structures, or equipment, and similar activities;

(**b**) For experimental or development work, and

(**c**) For a period not to exceed 90 days for Christmas decorative lighting, carnivals, and similar purposes.

(ii) Uses permitted, over 600 volts, nominal. Temporary wiring over 600 volts, nominal, may be used only during periods of tests, experiments, or emergencies.

(iii) General requirements for temporary wiring.

(**a**) Feeders shall originate in an approved distribution center. The conductors shall be run as multiconductor cord or cable assemblies, or, where not subject to physical damage, they may be run as open conductors on insultators not more than 10 feet apart. ■

(**b**) Branch circuits shall originate in an approved power outlet or panelboard. Conductors shall be multiconductor cord or cable assemblies or open conductors. If run as open conductors they shall be fastened at ceiling height every 10 feet. No branch-circuit conductor may be laid on the floor. Each branch circuit that supplies receptacles or fixed equipment shall contain a separate equipment grounding conductor if run as open conductors.

(c) Receptacles shall be of the grounding type. Unless installed in a complete metallic raceway, each branch circuit shall contain a separate equipment grounding conductor and all receptacles shall be electrically connected to the grounding conductor.

(d) No bare conductors nor earth returns may be used for the wiring of any temporary circuit.

(e) Suitable disconnecting switches or plug connectors shall be installed to permit the disconnection of all ungrounded conductors of each temporary circuit.

(f) Lamps for general illumination shall be protected from accidental contact or breakage. Protection shall be provided by elevation of at least 7 feet from normal working surface or by a suitable fixture or lampholder with a guard.

(g) Flexible cords and cables shall be protected from accidental damage. Sharp corners and projections shall be avoided. Where passing through doorways or other pinch points, flexible cords and cables shall be provided with protection to avoid damage.

(3) Cable trays.

(i) Uses permitted.

(a) Only the following may be installed in cable tray systems:

(1) Mineral-insulated metal-sheathed cable (Type MI);

(2) Armored cable (Type AC);

(3) Metal-clad cable (Type MC);

(4) Power-limited tray cable (Type PLTC);

(5) Nonmetallic-sheathed cable (Type NM or NMC);

(6) Shielded nonmetallic-sheathed cable (Type SNM);

(7) Multiconductor service-entrance cable (Type SE or USE);

(8) Multiconductor underground feeder and branch-circuit cable (Type UF);

(9) Power and control tray cable (Type TC);

(10) Other factory-assembled, multiconductor control, signal, or power cables which are specifically approved for installation in cable trays; or

(11) Any approved conduit or raceway with its contained conductors.

(b) In industrial establishments only, where conditions of maintenance and supervision assure that only qualified persons will service the installed cable tray system, the following cables may also be installed in ladder, ventilated trough, or 4 inch ventilated channel-type cable trays:

(1) Single conductor cables which are 250 MCM or larger and are Types RHH, RHW, MV, USE, or THW, and other 250 MCM or larger single conductor cables if specifically approved for installation in cable trays. Where exposed to direct rays of the sun, cables shall be sunlight-resistant.

(2) Type MV cables, where exposed to direct rays of the sun, shall be sunlight-resistant.

(c) Cable trays in hazardous (classified) locations shall contain only the cable types permitted in such locations.

(ii) Uses not permitted. Cable tray systems may not be used in hoistways or where subjected to severe physical damage.

(4) Open wiring on insulators.

(i) Uses permitted. Open wiring on insulators is only permitted on systems of 600 volts, nominal, or less for industrial or agricultural establishments and for services.

(ii) Conductor supports. Conductors shall be rigidly supported on noncombustible, nonabsorbent insulating materials and may not contact any other objects.

(iii) Flexible nonmetallic tubing. In dry locations where not exposed to severe physical damage, conductors may be separately enclosed in flexible nonmetallic tubing. The tubing shall be in continuous lengths not exceeding 15 feet and secured to the surface by straps at intervals not exceeding 4 feet 6 inches.

(iv) Through walls, floors, wood cross members, etc. Open conductors shall be separated from contact with walls, floors, wood cross members, or partitions through which they pass by tubes or bushings of noncombustible, nonabsorbent insulating material. If the bushing is shorter than the hole, a waterproof sleeve of nonconductive material shall be inserted in the hole and an insulating bushing slipped into the sleeve at each end in such a manner as to keep the conductors absolutely out of contact with the sleeve. Each conductor shall be carried through a separate tube or sleeve.

(v) Protection from physical damage. Conductors within 7 feet from the floor are considered exposed to physical damage. Where open conductors cross ceiling joints and wall studs and are exposed to physical damage, they shall be protected.

(b) Cabinets, boxes, and fittings.

(1) Conductors entering boxes, cabinets, or fittings. Conductors entering boxes, cabinets, or fittings shall be protected from abrasion, and openings through which conductors enter shall be effectively closed. Unused openings in cabinets, boxes, and fittings shall also be effectively closed.

(2) Covers and canopies. All pull boxes, junction boxes, and fittings shall be provided with covers approved for the purpose. If metal covers are used they shall be grounded. In completed installations each outlet box shall have a cover, faceplate, or fixture canopy. Covers of outlet boxes having holes through which flexible cord pendants pass shall be provided with bushings designed for the purpose or shall have smooth, well-rounded surfaces on which the cords may bear.

(3) Pull and junction boxes for systems over 600 volts, nominal. In addition to other requirements in this section for pull and junction boxes, the following shall apply to these boxes for systems over 600 volts, nominal:

(i) Boxes shall provide a complete enclosure for the contained conductors or cables.

(ii) Boxes shall be closed by suitable covers securely fastened in place. Underground box covers that weigh over 100 pounds meet this requirement. Covers for boxes shall be permanently marked "HIGH VOLTAGE." The marking shall be on the outside of the box cover and shall be readily visible and legible.

(c) Switches.

(1) Knife switches. Single-throw knife switches shall be so connected that the blades are dead when the switch is in the open position. Single-throw knife switches shall be so placed that gravity will not tend to close them. Single-throw knife switches approved for use in the inverted position shall be provided with a locking device that will ensure that the blades remain in the open position when so set. Double-throw knife switches may be mounted so that the throw will be either vertical or horizontal. However, if the throw is vertical a locking device shall be provided to ensure that the blades remain in the open position when so set.

(2) Faceplates for flush-mounted snap switches. Flush snap switches that are mounted in ungrounded metal boxes and located within reach of conducting floors or other conducting surfaces shall be provided with faceplates of nonconducting, noncombustible material.

(d) Switchboards and panelboards. Switchboards that have any exposed live parts shall be located in permanently dry locations and accessible only to qualified persons. Panelboards shall be mounted in cabinets, cutout boxes, or enclosures approved for the purpose and shall be dead front. However, panelboards other than the dead front externally-operable type are permitted where accessible only to qualified persons. Exposed blades of knife switches shall be dead when open.

(e) Enclosures for damp or wet locations.

(1) Cabinets, cutout boxes, fittings, boxes, and panelboard enclosures in damp or wet locations shall be installed so as to prevent moisture or water from entering and accumulating within the enclosures. In wet locations the enclosures shall be weatherproof.

(2) Switches, circuit breakers, and switchboards installed in wet locations shall be enclosed in weatherproof enclosures.

(f) Conductors for general wiring. All conductors used for general wiring shall be insulated unless otherwise permitted in this Subpart. The conductor insulation shall be of a type that is approved for the voltage, operating temperature, and location of use. Insulated conductors shall be distinguishable by appropriate color or other suitable means as being grounded conductors, ungrounded conductors, or equipment grounding conductors.

(g) Flexible cords and cables.

(1) Use of flexible cords and cables.

(i) Flexible cords and cables shall be approved and suitable for conditions of use and location. Flexible cords and cables shall be used only for:

(**a**) Pendants;

(**b**) Wiring of fixtures;

(**c**) Connection of portable lamps or appliances;

(**d**) Elevator cables;

(**e**) Wiring of cranes and hoists;

(**f**) Connection of stationary equipment to facilitate their frequent interchange;

(**g**) Prevention of the transmission of noise or vibration;

(**h**) Appliances where the fastening means and mechanical connections are designed to permit removal for maintenance and repair; or

(**i**) Data processing cables approved as a part of the data processing system.

(ii) If used as permitted in paragraphs (g)(1)(i)(*c*), (g)(1)(i)(*f*), or (g)(1)(i)(*h*) of this section, the flexible cord shall be equipped with an attachment plug and shall be energized from an approved receptacle outlet.

(iii) Unless specifically permitted in paragraph (g)(1)(i) of this section, flexible cords and cables may not be used:

(**a**) As a substitute for the fixed wiring of a structure;

(**b**) Where run through holes in walls, ceilings, or floors;

(**c**) Where run through doorways, windows, or similar openings;

(**d**) Where attached to building surfaces; or

(**e**) Where concealed behind building walls, ceilings, or floors.

(iv) Flexible cords used in show windows and showcases shall be Type S, SO, SJ, SJO, ST, STO, SJT, SJTO, or AFS except for the wiring of chain-supported lighting fixtures and supply cords for portable lamps and other merchandise being displayed or exhibited. ■

(2) Identification, splices, and terminations.

(i) A conductor of a flexible cord or cable that is used as a grounded conductor or an equipment grounding conductor shall be distinguishable from other conductors. Types SJ, SJO, SJT, SJTO, S, SO, ST, and STO shall be durably marked on the surface with the type designation, size, and number of conductors.

(ii) Flexible cords shall be used only in continuous lengths without splice or tap. Hard service flexible cords No. 12 or larger may be repaired if spliced so that the splice retains the insulation, outer sheath properties, and usage characteristics of the cord being spliced.

(iii) Flexible cords shall be connected to devices and fittings so that strain relief is provided which will prevent pull from being directly transmitted to joints or terminal screws.

(h) Portable cables over 600 volts, nominal. Multiconductor portable cable for use in supplying power to portable or mobile equipment at over 600 volts, nominal, shall consist of No. 8 or larger conductors employing flexible stranding. Cables operated at over 2,000 volts shall be shielded for the purpose of confining the voltage stresses to the insulation. Grounding conductors shall be provided. Connectors for these cables shall be of a locking type with provisions to prevent their opening or closing while energized. Strain relief shall be provided at connections and terminations. Portable cables may not be operated with splices unless the splices are of the permanent molded, vulcanized, or other approved type. Termination enclosures shall be suitably marked with a high voltage hazard warning, and terminations shall be accessible only to authorized and qualified personnel.

(i) Fixture wires.

(1) General. Fixture wires shall be approved for the voltage, temperature, and location of use. A fixture wire which is used as a grounded conductor shall be identified.

(2) Uses permitted. Fixture wires may be used:

(i) For installation in lighting fixtures and in similar equipment where enclosed or protected and not subject to bending or twisting in use; or

(ii) For connecting lighting fixtures to the branch-circuit conductors supplying the fixtures.

(3) Uses not permitted. Fixture wires may not be used as branch-circuit conductors except at permitted for Class 1 power limited circuits.

(j) Equipment for general use.

(1) Lighting fixtures, lampholders, lamps, and receptacles.

(i) Fixtures, lampholders, lamps, rosettes, and receptacles may have no live parts normally exposed to employee contact. However, rosettes and cleat-type lampholders and receptacles located at least 8 feet above the floor may have exposed parts.

(ii) Handlamps of the portable type supplied through flexible cords shall be equipped with a handle of molded composition or other material approved for the purpose, and a substantial guard shall be attached to the lampholder or the handle.

(iii) Lampholders of the screw-shell type shall be installed for use as lampholders only. Lampholders installed in wet or damp locations shall be of the weatherproof type.

(iv) Fixtures installed in wet or damp locations shall be approved for the purpose and shall be so constructed or installed that water cannot enter or accumulate in wireways, lampholders, or other electrical parts.

(2) Receptacles, cord connectors, and attachment plugs (caps).

(i) Receptacles, cord connectors, and attachment plugs shall be constructed so that no receptacle or cord connector will accept an attachment plug with a different voltage or current rating than that for which the device is intended. However, a 20-ampere T-slot receptacle or cord connector may accept a 15-ampere attachment plug of the same voltage rating.

(ii) A receptacle installed in a wet or damp location shall be suitable for the location.

(3) Appliances.

(i) Appliances, other than those in which the current-carrying parts at high temperatures are necessarily exposed, may have no live parts normally exposed to employee contact.

(ii) A means shall be provided to disconnect each appliance.

(iii) Each appliance shall be marked with its rating in volts and amperes or volts and watts.

(4) Motors. This paragraph applies to motors, motor circuits, and controllers.

(i) In sight from. If specified that one piece of equipment shall be "in sight from" another piece of equipment, one shall be visible and not more than 50 feet from the other.

(ii) Disconnecting means.

(a) A disconnecting means shall be located in sight from the controller location. However, a single disconnecting means may be located adjacent to a group of coordinated controllers mounted adjacent to each other or a multi-motor continuous process machine. The controller disconnecting means for motor branch circuits over 600 volts, nominal, may be out of sight of the controller, if the controller is marked with a warning label giving the location and identification of the disconnecting means which is to be locked in the open position.

(b) The disconnecting means shall disconnect the motor and the controller from all ungrounded supply conductors and shall be so designed that no pole can be operated independently.

(c) If a motor and the driven machinery are not in sight from the controller location, the installation shall comply with one of the following conditions:

(1) The controller disconnecting means shall be capable of being locked in the open position.

(2) A manually operable switch that will disconnect the motor from its source of supply shall be placed in sight from the motor location.

(d) The disconnecting means shall plainly indicate whether it is in the open (off) or closed (on) position.

(e) The disconnecting means shall be readily accessible. If more than one disconnect is provided for the same equipment, only one need be readily accessible.

(f) An individual disconnecting means shall be provided for each motor, but a single disconnecting means may be used for a group of motors under any one of the following conditions:

(1) If a number of motors drive special parts of a single machine or piece of apparatus, such as metal or woodworking machines, crane, or hoist;

(2) If a group of motors is under the protection of one set of branch-circuit protective devices; or

(3) If a group of motors is in a single room in sight from the location of the disconnecting means.

(iii) Motor overload, short-circuit, and ground-fault protection. Motors, motor-control apparatus, and motor branch-circuit conductors shall be protected against overheating due to motor overloads or failure to start, and against short-circuits or ground faults. These provisions shall not require overload protection that will stop a motor where a shutdown is likely to introduce additional or increased hazards, as in the case of fire pumps, or where continued operation of a motor is necessary for a safe shutdown of equipment or process and motor overload sensing devices are connected to a supervised alarm.

(iv) Protection of live parts—all voltages.

(a) Stationary motors having commutators, collectors, and brush rigging located inside of motor end brackets and not conductively connected to supply circuits operating at more than 150 volts to ground need not have such parts guarded. Exposed live parts of motors and controllers operating at 50 volts or more between terminals shall be guarded against accidental contact by any of the following:

(1) By installation in a room or enclosure that is accessible only to qualified persons;

(2) By installation on a suitable balcony, gallery, or platform, so elevated and arranged as to exclude unqualified persons; or

(3) By elevation 8 feet or more above the floor.

(b) Where live parts of motors or controllers operating at over 150 volts to ground are guarded against accidental contact only by location, and where adjustment or other attendance may be necessary during the operation of the apparatus, suitable insulating mats or platforms shall be provided so that the attendant cannot readily touch live parts unless standing on the mats or platforms.

(5) Transformers.

(i) The following paragraphs cover the installation of all transformers except the following:

(a) Current transformers;

(b) Dry-type transformers installed as a component part of other apparatus;

(c) Transformers which are an integral part of an X-ray, high frequency, or electrostatic-coating apparatus;

(d) Transformers used with Class 2 and Class 3 circuits, sign and outline lighting, electric discharge lighting, and power-limited fire-protective signalling circuits; and

(e) Liquid-filled or dry-type transformers used for research, development, or testing, where effective safeguard arrangements are provided.

(ii) The operating voltage of exposed live parts of transformer installations shall be indicated by warning signs or visible markings on the equipment or structure.

(iii) Dry-type, high fire point liquid-insulated, and askarel-insulated transformers installed indoors and rated over 35kV shall be in a vault.

(iv) If they present a fire hazard to employees, oil-insulated transformers installed indoors shall be in a vault.

(v) Combustible material, combustible buildings and parts of buildings, fire escapes, and door and window openings shall be safeguarded from fires which may originate in oil-insulated transformers attached to or adjacent to a building or combustible material.

(vi) Transformer vaults shall be constructed so as to contain fire and combustible liquids within the vault and to prevent unauthorized access. Locks and latches shall be so arranged that a vault door can be readily opened from the inside.

(vii) Any pipe or duct system foreign to the vault installation may not enter or pass through a transformer vault.

(viii) Materials may not be stored in transformer vaults.

(6) Capacitors.

(i) All capacitors, except surge capacitors or capacitors included as a component part of other apparatus, shall be provided with an automatic means of draining the stored charge after the capacitor is disconnected from its source of supply.

(ii) Capacitors rated over 600 volts, nominal, shall comply with the following additional requirements:

(a) Isolating or disconnecting switches (with no interrupting rating) shall be interlocked with the load interrupting device or shall be provided with prominently displayed caution signs to prevent switching load current.

(b) For series capacitors (see § 1910.302 (b)(3)), the proper switching shall be assured by use of at least one of the following:

(1) Mechanically sequenced isolating and bypass switches,

(2) Interlocks, or

(3) Switching procedure prominently displayed at the switching location.

(7) Storage batteries. Provisions shall be made for sufficient diffusion and ventilation of gases from storage batteries to prevent the accumulation of explosive mixtures.

1910.306—SPECIFIC PURPOSE EQUIPMENT AND INSTALLATIONS

(a) Electric signs and outline lighting.

(1) Disconnecting means. Signs operated by electronic or electromechanical controllers located outside the sign shall have a disconnecting means located inside the controller enclosure or within sight of the controller location, and it shall be capable of being locked in the open position. Such disconnecting means shall have no pole that can be operated independently, and it shall open all ungrounded conductors that supply the controller and sign. All other signs, except the portable type, and all outline lighting installations shall have an externally operable disconnecting means which can open all ungrounded conductors and is within the sight of the sign or outline lighting it controls.

(2) Doors or covers giving access to uninsulated parts of indoor signs or outline lighting exceeding 600 volts and accessible to other than qualified persons shall either be provided with interlock switches to disconnect the primary circuit or shall be so fastened that the use of other than ordinary tools will be necessary to open them.

(b) Cranes and hoists. This paragraph applies to the installation of electric equipment and wiring used in connection with cranes, monorail hoists, hoists, and all runways.

(1) Disconnecting means. A readily accessible disconnecting means

(i) shall be provided between the runway contact conductors and the power supply.

(ii) Another disconnecting means, capable of being locked in the open position, shall be provided in the leads from the runway contact conductors or other power supply on any crane or monorail hoist.

(a) If this additional disconnection means is not readily accessible from the crane or monorail hoist operating station, means shall be provided at the operating station to open the power circuit to all motors of the crane or monorail hoist.

(b) The additional disconnect may be omitted if a monorail hoist or hand-propelled crane bridge installation meets all of the following:

(1) The unit is floor controlled;

(2) The unit is within view of the power supply disconnecting means; and

(3) No fixed work platform has been provided for servicing the unit.

(2) Control. A limit switch or other device shall be provided to prevent the load block from passing the safe upper limit of travel of any hoisting mechanism.

(3) Clearance. The dimension of the working space in the direction of access to live parts which may require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while alive shall be a minimum of 2 feet 6 inches. Where controls are enclosed in cabinets, the door(s) shall either open at least 90 degrees or be removable.

(c) Elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, and moving walks.

(1) Disconnecting means. Elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, and moving walks shall have a single means for disconnecting all ungrounded main power supply conductors for each unit.

(2) Warning signs. If interconnections between control panels are necessary for operation of the system on a multicar installation that remains energized from a source other than the disconnecting means, a warning sign shall be mounted on or adjacent to the disconnecting means. The sign shall be clearly legible and shall read "Warning—Parts of the control panel are not de-energized by this switch." (See § 1910.302(b)(3).)

(3) Control panels. If control panels are not located in the same space as the drive machine, they shall be located in cabinets with doors or panels capable of being locked closed.

(d) Electric welders—disconnecting means.

(1) A disconnecting means shall be provided in the supply circuit for each motor-generator arc welder, and for each AC transformer and DC rectifier arc welder which is not equipped with a disconnect mounted as an integral part of the welder.

(2) A switch or circuit breaker shall be provided by which each resistance welder and its control equipment can be isolated from the supply circuit. The ampere rating of this disconnecting means may not be less than the supply conductor ampacity.

(e) Data processing systems—disconnecting means. A disconnecting means shall be provided to disconnect the power to all electronic equipment in data processing or computer rooms. This disconnecting means shall be controlled from locations readily accessible to the operator at the principal exist doors. There shall also be a similar disconnecting means to disconnect the air conditioning system serving this area.

(f) X-Ray equipment. This paragraph applies to X-ray equipment for other than medical or dental use.

(1) Disconnecting means.

(i) A disconnecting means shall be provided in the supply circuit. The disconnecting means shall be operable from a location readily accessible from the X-ray control. For equipment connected to a 120-volt branch circuit of 30 amperes or less, a grounding-type attachment plug cap and receptacle of proper rating may serve as a disconnecting means.

(ii) If more than one piece of equipment is operated from the same high-voltage circuit, each piece or each group of equipment as a unit shall be provided with a high-voltage switch or equivalent disconnecting means. This disconnecting means shall be constructed, enclosed, or located so as to avoid contact by employees with its live parts.

(2) Control.

(i) Radiographic and fluoroscopic types. Radiographic and fluorescopic-type equipment shall be effectively enclosed or shall have interlocks that de-energize the equipment automatically to prevent ready access to live current-carrying parts.

(ii) Diffraction and irradiation types. Diffraction- and irradiation-type equipment shall be provided with a means to indicate when it is energized unless the equipment or installation is effectively enclosed or is provided with interlocks to prevent access to live current-carrying parts during operation.

(g) Induction and dielectric heating equipment.

(1) Scope. Paragraphs (g)(2) and (g)(3) of this section cover induction and dielectric heating equipment and accessories for industrial and scientific applications, but not for medical or dental applications or for appliances.

(2) Guarding and grounding.

(i) Enclosures. The converting apparatus (including the DC line) and high-frequency electric circuits (excluding the output circuits and remote-control circuits) shall be completely contained within enclosures of noncombustible material. ■

(ii) Panel controls. All panel controls shall be of dead-front construction.

(iii) Access to internal equipment. Where doors are used for access to voltages from 500 to 1000 volts AC or DC, either door locks or interlocks shall be provided. Where doors are used for access to voltages of over 1000 volts AC or DC, either mechanical lockouts with a disconnecting means to prevent access until voltage is removed from the cubicle, or both door interlocking and mechanical door locks, shall be provided.

(iv) Warning labels. "Danger" labels shall be attached on the equipment and shall be plainly visible even when doors are open or panels are removed from compartments containing voltages of over 250 volts AC or DC.

(v) Work applicator shielding. Protective cages or adequate shielding shall be used to guard work applicators other than induction heating coils. Induction heating coils shall be protected by insulation and/or refractory materials. Interlock switches shall be used on all hinged access doors, sliding panels, or other such means of access to the applicator. Interlock switches shall be connected in such a manner as to remove all power from the applicator when any one of the access doors or panels is open. Interlocks on access doors or panels are not required if the applicator is an induction heating coil at DC ground potential or operating at less than 150 volts AC.

(vi) Disconnecting means. A readily accessible disconnecting means shall be provided by which each unit of heating equipment can be isolated from its supply circuit.

(3) Remote control. If remote controls are used for applying power, a selector switch shall be provided and interlocked to provide power from only one control point at a time. Switches operated by foot pressure shall be provided with a shield over the contact button to avoid accidental closing the switch.

(h) Electrolytic cells.

(1) Scope. These provisions for electrolytic cells apply to the installation of the electrical components and accessory equipment of electrolytic cells, electrolytic cell lines, and process power supply for the production of aluminum, cadmium, chlorine, copper, fluorine, hydrogen peroxide, magnesium, sodium, sodium chlorate, and zinc. Cells used as a source of electric energy and for electroplating processes and cells used for production of hydrogen are not covered by these provisions.

(2) Definitions applicable to this paragraph.

Cell line: An assembly of electrically interconnected electrolytic cells supplied by a source of direct-current power.

Cell line attachments and auxiliary equipment: Cell line attachments and auxiliary equipment include, but are not limited to: auxiliary tanks; process piping; duct work; structural supports; exposed cell line conductors; conduits and other raceways; pumps; positioning equipment and cell cutout or bypass electrical devices. Auxiliary equipment also includes tools, welding machines, crucibles, and other portable equipment used for operation and maintenance within the electrolytic cell line working zone. In the cell line working zone, auxiliary equipment includes the exposed conductive surfaces of ungrounded cranes and crane-mounted cell-servicing equipment.

Cell line working zone: The cell line working zone is the space envelope wherein operation or maintenance is normally performed on or in the vicinity of exposed energized surfaces of cell lines or their attachments.

Electrolytic Cells: A receptacle or vessel in which electrochemical reactions are caused by applying energy for the purpose of refining or producing usable materials.

(3) Application. Installations covered by paragraph (h) of this section shall comply with all applicable provisions of this subpart, except as follows:

(i) Overcurrent protection of electrolytic cell DC process power circuits need not comply with the requirements of § 1910.304(e).

(ii) Equipment located or used within the cell line working zone or associated with the cell line DC power circuits need not comply with the provisions of § 1910.304(f).

(iii) Electrolytic cells, cell line conductors, cell line attachments, and the wiring of auxiliary equipment and devices within the cell line working zone need not comply with the provisions of §§ 1910.303, and 1910.304 (b) and (c).

(4) Disconnecting means.

(i) If more than one DC cell line process power supply serves the same cell line, a disconnecting means shall be provided on the cell line circuit side of each power supply to disconnect it from the cell line circuit.

(ii) Removable links or removable conductors may be used as the disconnecting means.

(5) Portable electric equipment.

(i) The frames and enclosures of portable electric equipment used within the cell line working zone may not be grounded. However, these frames and enclosures may be grounded if the cell line circuit voltage does not exceed 200 volts DC or if the frames are guarded.

(ii) Ungrounded portable electric equipment shall be distinctively marked and may not be interchangeable with grounded portable electric equipment.

(6) Power supply circuits and receptacles for portable electric equipment.

(i) Circuits supplying power to ungrounded receptacles for hand-held, cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be electrically isolated from any distribution system supplying areas other than the cell line working zone and shall be ungrounded. Power for these circuits shall be supplied through isolating transformers.

(ii) Receptacles and their mating plugs for ungrounded equipment may not have provision for a grounding conductor and shall be of a configuration which prevents their use for equipment required to be grounded.

(iii) Receptacles on circuits supplied by an isolating transformer with an ungrounded secondary shall have a distinctive configuration, shall be distinctively marked, and may not be used in any other location in the plant.

(7) Fixed and portable electric equipment.

(i) AC systems supplying fixed and portable electric equipment within the cell line working zone need not be grounded.

(ii) Exposed conductive surfaces, such as electric equipment housings, cabinets, boxes, motors, raceways and the like that are within the cell line working zone need not be grounded. ■

(iii) Auxiliary electrical devices, such as motors, transducers, sensors, control devices, and alarms, mounted on an electrolytic cell or other energized surface, shall be connected by any of the following means:

(a) Multiconductor hard usage or extra hard usage flexible cord;

(b) Wire or cable in suitable raceways; or

(c) Exposed metal conduit, cable tray, armored cable, or similar metallic systems installed with insulating breaks such that they will not cause a potentially hazardous electrical condition.

(iv) Fixed electric equipment may be bonded to the energized conductive surfaces of the cell line, its attachments, or auxiliaries. If fixed electric equipment is mounted on an energized conductive surface, it shall be bonded to that surface.

(8) Auxiliary nonelectric connections. Auxiliary nonelectric connections, such as air hoses, water hoses, and the like, to an electrolytic cell, its attachments, or auxiliary equipment may not have continuous conductive reinforcing wire, armor, braids, and the like. Hoses shall be of a nonconductive material.

(9) Cranes and hoists.

(i) The conductive surfaces of cranes and hoists that enter the cell line working zone need not be grounded. The portion of an overhead crane or hoist which contacts an energized electrolytic cell or energized attachments shall be insulated from ground.

(ii) Remote crane or hoist controls which may introduce hazardous electrical conditions into the cell line working zone shall employ one or more of the following systems:

(a) Insulated and ungrounded control circuit;

(b) Nonconductive rope operator;

(c) Pendant pushbutton with nonconductive supporting means and having nonconductive surfaces or ungrounded exposed conductive surfaces; or

(d) Radio.

(i) Electrically driven or controlled irrigation machines. (See § 1910.302(b)(3).)

(1) Lightning protection. If an electrically driven or controlled irrigation machines has a stationary point, a driven ground rod shall be connected to the machine at the stationary point for lightning protection.

(2) Disconnecting means. The main disconnecting means for a center pivot irrigation machine shall be located at the point of connection of electrical power to the machine and shall be readily accessible and capable of being locked in the open position. A disconnecting means shall be provided for each motor and controller.

(j) Swimming pools, fountains, and similar installations.

(1) Scope. Paragraphs (j)(2) through (j)(5) of this section apply to electric wiring for and equipment in or adjacent to all swimming, wading, therapeutic, and decorative pools and fountains, whether permanently installed or storable, and to metallic auxiliary equipment, such as pumps, filters, and similar equipment. Therapeutic pools in health care facilities are exempt from these provisions.

(2) Lighting and receptacles.

(i) Receptacles. A single receptacle of the locking and grounding type that provides power for a permanently installed swimming pool recirculating pump motor may be located not less than 5 feet from the inside walls of a pool. All other receptacles on the property shall be located at least 10 feet from the inside walls of a pool. Receptacles which are located within 15 feet of the inside walls of the pool shall be protected by ground-fault circuit interrupters.

Note.—In determining these dimensions, the distance to be measured is the shortest path the supply cord of an appliance connected to the receptacle would follow without piercing a floor, wall, or ceiling of a building or other effective permanent barrier.

(ii) Lighting fixtures and lighting outlets.

(a) Unless they are 12 feet above the maximum water level, lighting fixtures and lighting outlets may not be installed over a pool or over the area extending 5 feet horizontally from the inside walls of a pool. However, a lighting fixture or lighting outlet which has been installed before April 16, 1981, may be located less than 5 feet measured horizontally from the inside walls of a pool if it is at least 5 feet above the surface of the maximum water level and shall be rigidly attached to the existing structure. It shall also be protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter installed in the branch circuit supplying the fixture. ■

(b) Unless installed 5 feet above the maximum water level and rigidly attached to the structure adjacent to or enclosing the pool, lighting fixtures and lighting outlets installed in the area extending between 5 feet and 10 feet horizontally from the inside walls of a pool shall be protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter.

(3) Cord- and plug-connected equipment. Flexible cords used with the following equipment may not exceed 3 feet in length and shall have a copper equipment grounding conductor with a grounding-type attachment plug.

(i) Cord- and plug-connected lighting fixtures installed within 16 feet of the water surface of permanently installed pools.

(ii) Other cord- and plug-connected, fixed or stationary equipment used with permanently installed pools.

(4) Underwater equipment.

(i) A ground-fault circuit interrupter shall be installed in the branch circuit supplying underwater fixtures operating at more than 15 volts. Equipment installed underwater shall be approved for the purpose.

(ii) No underwater lighting fixtures may be installed for operation at over 150 volts between conductors.

(5) Fountains. All electric equipment operating at more than 15 volts, including power supply cords, used with fountains shall be protected by ground-fault circuit interrupters. (See § 1910.302(b)(3).)

1910.307—HAZARDOUS (CLASSIFIED) LOCATIONS

(a) Scope. This section covers the requirements for electric equipment and wiring in locations which are classified depending on the properties of the flammable vapors, liquids or gases, or combustible dusts or fibers which may be present therein and the likelihood that a flammable combustible concentration or quantity is present. Hazardous (classified) locations may be found in occupancies such as, but not limited to, the following: aircraft hangars, gasoline dispensing and service stations, bulk storage plants for gasoline or other volatile flammable liquids, paint-finishing process plants, health care facilities, agricultural or other facilities where excessive combustible dusts may be present, marinas, boat yards, and petroleum and chemical processing plants. Each room, section or area shall be considered individually in determining its classification. These hazardous (classified) locations are assigned six designations as follows:

Class I, Division 1
Class I, Division 2
Class II, Division 1
Class II, Division 2
Class III, Division 1
Class III, Division 2

For definitions of these locations see § 1910.399(a). All applicable requirements in this subpart shall apply to hazardous (classified) locations, unless modified by provisions of this section.

(b) Electrical installations. Equipment, wiring methods, and installations of equipment in hazardous (classified) locations shall be intrinsically safe, or approved for the hazardous (classified) location, or safe for the hazardous (classified) location. Requirements for each of these options are as follows:

(1) Intrinsically safe. Equipment and associated wiring approved as intrinsically safe shall be permitted in any hazardous (classified) location for which it is approved.

(2) Approved for the hazardous (classified) location.

(i) Equipment shall be approved not only for the class of location but also for the ignitible or combustible properties of the specific gas, vapor, dust, or fiber that will be present.

Note.—NFPA 70, the National Electrical Code, lists or defines hazardous gases, vapors, and dusts by "Groups" characterized by their ignitible or combustible properties.

(ii) Equipment shall be marked to show the class, group, and operating temperature or temperature range, based on operation in a 40 degrees C ambient, for which it is approved. The temperature marking may not exceed the ignition temperature of the specific gas or vapor to be encountered. However, the following provisions modify this marking requirement for specific equipment:

(a) Equipment of the non-heat-producing type, such as junction boxes, conduit, and fittings, and equipment of the heat-producing type having a maximum temperature not more than 100 degrees C (212 degrees F) need not have a marked operating temperature or temperature range.

(**b**) Fixed lighting fixtures marked for use in Class I, Division 2 locations only, need not be marked to indicate the group.

(**c**) Fixed general-purpose equipment in Class I locations, other than lighting fixtures, which is acceptable for use in Class I, Division 2 locations need not be marked with the class, group, division, or operating temperature.

(**d**) Fixed dust-tight equipment, other than lighting fixtures, which is acceptable for use in Class II, Division 2 and Class III locations need not be marked with the class, group, division, or operating temperature.

INTERP

(3) Safe for the hazardous (classified) location. Equipment which is safe for the location shall be of a type and design which the employer demonstrates will provide protection from the hazards arising from the combustibility and flammability of vapors, liquids, gases, dusts, or fibers.

Note.—The National Electrical Code, NFPA 70, contains guidelines for determining the type and design of equipment and installations which will meet this requirement. The guidelines of this document address electric wiring, equipment, and systems installed in hazardous (classified) locations and contain specific provisions for the following: wiring methods, wiring connections; conductor insulation, flexible cords, sealing and drainage, transformers, capacitors, switches, circuit breakers, fuses, motor controllers, receptacles, attachment plugs, meters, relays, instruments, resistors, generators, motors, lighting fixtures, storage battery charging equipment, electric cranes, electric hoists and similar equipment, utilization equipment, signaling systems, alarm systems, remote control systems, local loud speaker and communication systems, ventilation piping, live parts, lighting surge protection, and grounding. Compliance with these guidelines will constitute one means, but not the only means, of compliance with this paragraph.

(c) Conduits. All conduits shall be threaded and shall be made wrench-tight. Where it is impractical to make a threaded joint tight, a bonding jumper shall be utilized.

(d) Equipment in Division 2 locations. Equipment that has been approved for a Division 1 location may be installed in a Division 2 location of the same class and group. General-purpose equipment or equipment in general-purpose enclosures may be installed in Division 2 locations if the equipment does not constitute a source of ignition under normal operating conditions.

1910.308—Special systems

(a) Systems over 600 volts, nominal. Paragraphs (a)(1) through (a)(4) of this section cover the general requirements for all circuits and equipment operated at over 600 volts.

(1) Wiring methods for fixed installations.

(i) Above-ground conductors shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, in intermediate metal conduit, in cable trays, in cablebus, in other suitable raceways, or as open runs of metal-clad cable suitable for the use and purpose. However, open runs of non-metallic-sheathed cable or of bare conductors or busbars may be installed in locations accessible only to qualified persons. Metallic shielding components, such as tapes, wires, or braids for conductors, shall be grounded. Open runs of insulated wires and cables having a bare lead sheath or a braided outer covering shall be supported in a manner designed to prevent physical damage to the braid or sheath.

(ii) Conductors emerging from the ground shall be enclosed in approved raceways. (See § 1910.302(b)(3).)

(2) Interrupting and isolating devices.

(i) Circuit breakers installations located indoors shall consist of metal-enclosed units or fire-resistant cell-mounted units. In locations accessible only to qualified personnel, open mounting of circuit breakers is permitted. A means of indicating the open and closed position of circuit breakers shall be provided.

(ii) Fused cutouts installed in buildings or tranformer vaults shall be of a type approved for the purpose. They shall be readily accessible for fuse replacement.

(iii) A means shall be provided to completely isolate equipment for inspection and repairs. Isolating means which are not designed to interrupt the load curent of the circuit shall be either interlocked with an approved circuit interrupter or provided with a sign warning against opening them under load.

(3) Mobile and portable equipment.

(i) Power cable connections to mobile machines. A metallic enclosure shall be provided on the mobile machine for enclosing the terminals of the power cable. The enclosure shall include provisions for a solid connection for the ground wire(s) terminal to effectively ground the machine frame. The method of cable termination used shall prevent any strain or pull on the cable from stressing the electrical connections. The enclosure shall have provision for locking so only authorized qualified persons may open it and shall be marked with a sign warning of the presence of energized parts.

(ii) Guarding live parts. All energized switching and control parts shall be enclosed in effectively grounded metal cabinets or enclosures. Circuit breakers and protective equipment shall have the operating means projecting through the metal cabinet or enclosure so these units can be reset without locked doors being opened. Enclosures and metal cabinets shall be locked so that only authorized qualified persons have access and shall be marked with a sign warning of the presence of energized parts. Collector ring assemblies on revolving-type machines (shovels, draglines, etc.) shall be guarded.

(4) Tunnel installations.

(i) Application. The provisions of this paragraph apply to installation and use of high-voltage power distribution and utilization equipment which is portable and/or mobile, such as substations, trailers, cars, mobile shovels, draglines, hoists, drills, dredges, compressors, pumps, conveyors, and underground excavators.

(ii) Conductors. Conductors in tunnels shall be installed in one or more of the following:

(a) Metal conduit or other metal raceway,

(b) Type MC cable, or

(c) Other approved multiconductor cable.

Conductors shall also be so located or guarded as to protect them from physical damage. Multiconductor portable cable may supply mobile equipment. An equipment grounding conductor shall be run with circuit conductors inside the metal raceway or inside the multiconductor cable jacket. The equipment grounding conductor may be insulated or bare.

(iii) Guarding live parts. Bare terminals of transformers, switches, motor controllers, and other equipment shall be enclosed to prevent accidental contact with energized parts. Enclosures for use in tunnels shall be drip-proof, weatherproof, or submersible as required by the environmental conditions.

(iv) Disconnecting means. A disconnecting means that simultaneously opens all ungrounded conductors shall be installed at each transformer or motor location.

(v) Grounding and bonding. All nonenergized metal parts of electric equipment and metal raceways and cable sheaths shall be effectively grounded and bonded to all metal pipes and rails at the portal and at intervals not exceeding 1000 feet throughout the tunnel.

(b) Emergency power systems.

(1) Scope. The provisions for emergency systems apply to circuits, systems, and equipment intended to supply power for illumination and special loads, in the event of failure of the normal supply.

(2) Wiring methods. Emergency circuit wiring shall be kept entirely independent of all other wiring and equipment and may not enter the same raceway, cable, box, or cabinet as other wiring except either where common circuit elements suitable for the purpose are required, or for transferring power from the normal to the emergency source.

(3) Emergency illumination. Where emergency lighting is necessary, the system shall be so arranged that the failure of any individual lighting element, such as the burning out of a light bulb, cannot leave any space in total darkness.

(c) Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 remote control, signaling, and power-limited circuits.

(1) Classification. Class 1, Class 2, or Class 3 remote control, signaling, or power-limited circuits are characterized by their usage and electrical power limitation which differentiates them from light and power circuits. These circuits are classified in accordance with their respective voltage and power limitations as summarized in paragraphs (c)(1)(i) through (c)(1)(iii) of this section.

(i) Class 1 circuits.

(**a**) A Class 1 power-limited circuit is supplied from a source having a rated output of not more than 30 volts and 1000 volt-amperes.

(**b**) A Class 1 remote control circuit or a Class 1 signaling circuit has a voltage which does not exceed 600 volts; however, the power output of the source need not be limited.

(ii) Class 2 and Class 3 circuits.

(**a**) Power for Class 2 and Class 3 circuits is limited either inherently (in which no overcurrent protection is required) or by a combination of a power source and overcurrent protection.

(**b**) The maximum circuit voltage is 150 volts AC or DC for a Class 2 inherently limited power source, and 100 volts AC or DC for a Class 3 inherently limited power source.

(**c**) The maximum circuit voltage is 30 volts AC and 60 volts DC for a Class 2 power source limited by overcurrent protection, and 150 volts AC or DC for a Class 3 power source limited by overcurrent protection.

(iii) The maximum circuit voltages in paragraphs (c)(1)(i) and (c)(1)(ii) of this section apply to sinusoidal AC or continuous DC power sources, and where wet contact occurrence is not likely.

(2) Marking. A Class 2 or Class 3 power supply unit shall be durably marked where plainly visible to indicate the class of supply and its electrical rating. (See § 1910.302(b)(3).)

(d) Fire protective signaling systems. (See § 1910.302(b)(3).)

(1) Classifications. Fire protective signaling circuits shall be classified either as non-power limited or power limited.

(2) Power sources. The power sources for use with fire protective signaling circuits shall be either power limited or nonlimited as follows:

(i) The power supply of non-power-limited fire protective signaling circuits shall have an output voltage not in excess of 600 volts.

(ii) The power for power-limited fire protective signaling circuits shall be either inherently limited, in which no overcurrent protection is required, or limited by a combination of power source and overcurrent protection.

(3) Non-power-limited conductor location. Non-power-limited fire protective signaling circuits and Class 1 circuits may occupy the same enclosure, cable, or raceway provided all conductors are insulated for maximum voltage of any conductor within the enclosure, cable or raceway. Power supply and fire protective signaling circuit conductors are permitted in the same enclosure, cable, or raceway only if connected to the same equipment.

(4) Power-limited conductor location. Where open conductors are installed, power-limited fire protective signaling circuits shall be separated at least 2 inches from conductors of any light, power, Class 1, and non-power-limited fire protective signaling circuits unless a special and equally protective method of conductor separation is employed. Cables and conductors of two or more power-limited fire protective signaling circuits or Class 3 circuits are permitted in the same cable, enclosure, or raceway. Conductors of one or more Class 2 circuits are permitted within the same cable, enclosure, or raceway with conductors of power-limited fire protective signaling circuits provided that the insulation of Class 2 circuit conductors in the cable, enclosure, or raceway is at least that needed for the power-limited fire protective signaling circuits.

(5) Identification. Fire protective signaling circuits shall be identified at terminal and junction locations in a manner which will prevent unintentional interference with the signaling circuit during testing and servicing. Power-limited fire protective signaling circuits shall be durably marked as such where plainly visible at terminations.

(e) Communications systems.

(1) Scope. These provisions for communication systems apply to such systems as central-station-connected and non-central-station-connected telephone circuits, radio and television receiving and transmitting equipment, including community antenna television and radio distribution systems, telegraph, district messenger, and outside wiring for fire and burglar alarm, and similar central station systems. These installations need not comply with the provisions of §§ 1910.303 through 1910.308(d) except § 1910.304(c)(7) and § 1910.307(b).

(2) Protective devices.

(i) Communication circuits so located as to be exposed to accidental contact with light or power conductors operating at over 300 volts shall have each circuit so exposed provided with a protector approved for the purpose.

(ii) Each conductor of a lead-in from an outdoor antenna shall be provided with an antenna discharge unit or other suitable means that will drain static charges from the antenna system.

(3) Conductor location.

(i) Outside of buildings.

(a) Receiving distribution lead-in or aerial-drop cables attached to buildings and lead-in conductors to radio transmitters shall be so installed as to avoid the possibility of accidental contact with electric light or power conductors.

(b) The clearance between lead-in conductors and any lightning protection conductors may not be less than 6 feet.

(ii) On poles. Where practicable, communication conductors on poles shall be located below the light or power conductors. Communications conductors may not be attached to a crossarm that carries light or power conductors.

(iii) Inside of buildings. Indoor antennas, lead-ins, and other communication conductors attached as open conductors to the inside of buildings shall be located at least 2 inches from conductors of any light or power or Class 1 circuits unless a special and equally protective method of conductor separation, approved for the purpose, is employed.

(4) Equipment location. Outdoor metal structures supporting antennas, as well as self-supporting antennas such as vertical rods or dipole structures, shall be located as far away from overhead conductors of electric light and power circuits of over 150 volts to ground as necessary to avoid the possibility of the antenna or structure falling into or making accidental contact with such circuits.

(5) Grounding.

(i) Lead-in conductors. If exposed to contact with electric light and power conductors, the metal sheath of aerial cables entering buildings shall be grounded or shall be interrupted close to the entrance to the building by an insulating joint or equivalent device. Where protective devices are used, they shall be grounded in an approved manner.

(ii) Antenna structures. Masts and metal structures supporting antennas shall be permanently and effectively grounded without splice or connection in the grounding conductor.

(iii) Equipment enclosures. Transmitters shall be enclosed in a metal frame or grill or separated from the operating space by a barrier, all metallic parts of which are effectively connected to ground. All external metal handles and controls accessible to the operating personnel shall be effectively grounded. Unpowered equipment and enclosures shall be considered grounded where connected to an attached coaxial cable with an effectively grounded metallic shield.

1910.309—1910.330 [Reserved]

Safety-Related Work Practices

1910.331—1910.360 [Reserved]

Safety-Related Maintenance Requirements

1910.361—1910.380 [Reserved]

Safety Requirements for Special Equipment

1910.381—1910.398 [Reserved]

Definitions

1910.399—DEFINITIONS APPLICABLE TO THIS SUBPART

(a) Definitions applicable to §§ 1910.302 through 1910.330.

(1) Acceptable. An installation or equipment is acceptable to the Assistant Secretary of Labor, and approved within the meaning of this Subpart S: (i) If it is accepted, or certified, or listed, or labeled, or otherwise determined to be safe by a nationally recognized testing laboratory; or (ii) with respect to an installation or equipment of a kind which no nationally recognized testing laboratory accepts, certifies, lists, labels, or determines to be safe, if it is inspected or tested by another Federal agency, or by a State, municipal, or other local authority responsible for enforcing occupational safety provisions of the National Electrical Code and found in compliance with the provisions of the National Electrical Code as applied in this Subpart; or (iii) with respect to custom-made equipment or related installations which are designed, fabricated for, and intended for use by a particular customer, if it is determined to be safe for its intended use by its manufacturer on the basis of test data which the employer keeps and makes available for inspection to the Assistant Secretary and his authorized representatives. Refer to § 1910.7 for definition of nationally recognized testing laboratory.

[53 F.R. 12123, April 12, 1988]

(i) If it is accepted, or certified, or listed, or labeled, or otherwise determined to be safe by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, such as, but not limited to, Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. and Factory Mutual Engineering Corp; or

(ii) with respect to an installation or equipment of a kind which no nationally recognized testing laboratory accepts, certifies, lists, labels, or determines to be safe, if it is inspected or tested by another Federal agency, or by a State, municipal, or other local authority responsible for enforcing occupational safety provisions of the National Electrical Code, and found in compliance with the provisions of the National Electrical Code as applied in this Subpart; or

(iii) with respect to custom-made equipment or related installations which are designed, fabricated for, and intended for use by a particular customer, if it is determined to be safe for its intended use by its manufacturer on the basis of test data which the employer keeps and makes available for inspection to the Assistant Secretary and his authorized representatives.

(2) Accepted. An installation is "accepted" if it has been inspected and found by a nationally recognized testing laboratory to conform to specified plans or to procedures of applicable codes.

(3) Accessible. (As applied to wiring methods.) Capable of being removed or exposed without damaging the building structure or finish, or not permanently closed in by the structure or finish of the building. (See "concealed" and "exposed.")

(4) Accessible. (As applied to equipment.) Admitting close approach; not guarded by locked doors, elevation, or other effective means. (See "Readily accessible.")

(5) Ampacity. Current-carrying capacity of electric conductors expressed in amperes.

(6) Appliances. Utilization equipment, generally other than industrial, normally built in standardized sizes or types, which is installed or connected as a unit to perform one or more functions such as clothes washing, air conditioning, food mixing, deep frying, etc.

(7) Approved. Acceptable to the authority enforcing this Subpart. The authority enforcing this Subpart is the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health. The definition of "acceptable" indicates what is acceptable to the Assistant Secretary of Labor, and therefore approved within the meaning of this Subpart.

(8) Approved for the purpose. Approved for a specific purpose, environment, or application described in a particular standard requirement.

Suitability of equipment or materials for a specific purpose, environment or application may be determined by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, inspection agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation as part of its listing and labeling program. (See "Labeled" or "Listed.")

(9) Armored cable. Type AC armored cable is a fabricated assembly of insulated conductors in a flexible metallic enclosure.

(10) Askarel. A generic term for a group of nonflammable synthetic chlorinated hydrocarbons used as electrical insulating media. Askarels of various compositional types are used. Under arcing conditions the gases produced, while consisting predominantly of noncombustible hydrogen chloride, can include varying amounts of combustible gases depending upon the askarel type.

(11) Attachment plug (Plug cap) (Cap). A device which, by insertion in a receptacle, establishes connection between the conductors of the attached flexible cord and the conductors connected permanently to the receptacle.

(12) Automatic. Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current strength, pressure, temperature, or mechanical configuration.

(13) Bare conductor, See "Conductor".

(14) Bonding. The permanent joining of metallic parts to form an electrically conductive path which will assure electrical continuity and the capacity to conduct safely any current likely to be imposed.

(15) Bonding jumper. A reliable conductor to assure the required electrical conductivity between metal parts required to be electrically connected.

(16) Branch circuit. The circuit conductors between the final overcurrent device protecting the circuit and the outlet(s).

(17) Building. A structure which stands alone or which is cut off from adjoining structures by fire walls with all openings therein protected by approved fire doors.

(18) Cabinet. An enclosure designed either for surface or flush mounting, and provided with a frame, mat, or trim in which a swinging door or doors are or may be hung.

(19) Cable tray system. A cable tray system is a unit or assembly of units or sections, and associated fittings, made of metal or other noncumbustible materials forming a rigid structural system used to support cables. Cable tray systems include ladders, troughs, channels, solid bottom trays, and other similar structures.

(20) Cablebus. Cablebus is an approved assembly of insulated conductors with fittings and conductor terminations in a completely enclosed, ventilated, protective metal housing.

(21) Center pivot irrigation machine. A center pivot irrigation machine is a multi-motored irrigation machine which revolves around a central pivot and employs alignment switches or similar devices to control individual motors.

(22) Certified. Equipment is "certified" if it (a) has been tested and found by a nationally recognized testing laboratory to meet nationally recognized standards or to be safe for use in a specified manner, or (b) is of a kind whose production is periodically inspected by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and (c) it bears a label, tag, or other record of certification.

(23) Circuit breaker.

(i) (600 volts nominal, or less). A device designed to open and close a circuit by nonautomatic means and to open the circuit automatically on a predetermined overcurrent without injury to itself when properly applied within its rating.

(ii) (Over 600 volts, nominal). A switching device capable of making, carrying, and breaking currents under normal circuit conditions, and also making, carrying for a specified time, and breaking currents under specified abnormal circuit conditions, such as those of short circuit.

(24) Class I locations. Class I locations are those in which flammable gases or vapors are or may be present in the air in quantities sufficient to produce explosive or ignitible mixtures. Class I locations include the following:

(i) Class I, Division 1. A Class I, Division 1 location is a location:

(a) in which hazardous concentrations of flammable gases or vapors may exist under normal operating conditions; or

(b) in which hazardous concentrations of such gases or vapors may exist frequently because of repair or maintenance operations or because of leakage; or

(c) in which breakdown or faulty operation of equipment or processes might release hazardous concentrations of flammable gases or vapors, and might also cause simultaneous failure of electric equipment.

Note.—This classification usually includes locations where volatile flammable liquids or liquefied flammable gases are transferred from one container to another; interiors of spray booths and areas in the vicinity of spraying and painting operations where volatile flammable solvents are used; locations containing open tanks or vats of volatile flammable liquids; drying rooms or compartments for the evaporation of flammable solvents; locations containing fat and oil extraction equipment using volatile flammable solvents; portions of cleaning and dyeing plants where flammable liquids are used; gas generator rooms and other portions of gas manufacturing plants where flammable gas may escape; inadequately ventilated pump rooms for flammable gas or for volatile flammable liquids; the interiors of refrigerators and freezers in which volatile flammable materials are stored in open, lightly stoppered, or easily ruptured containers; and all other locations where ignitible concentrations of flammable vapors or gases are likely to occur in the course of normal operations.

(ii) Class I, Division 2. A Class I, Division 2 location is a location.

(**a**) in which volatile flammable liquids or flammable gases are handled, processed, or used, but in which the hazardous liquids, vapors, or gases will normally be confined within closed containers or closed systems from which they can escape only in case of accidental rupture or breakdown of such containers or systems, or in case of abnormal operation of equipment; or

(**b**) in which hazardous concentrations of gases or vapors are normally prevented by positive mechanical ventilation, and which might become hazardous through failure or abnormal operations of the ventilating equipment; or

(**c**) that is adjacent to a Class I, Division 1 location, and to which hazardous concentrations of gases or vapors might occasionally be communicated unless such communication is prevented by adequate positive-pressure ventilation from a source of clean air, and effective safeguards against ventilation failure are provided.

Note.—This classification usually includes locations where volatile flammable liquids or flammable gases or vapors are used, but which would become hazardous only in case of an accident or of some unusual operating condition. The quantity of flammable material that might escape in case of accident, the adequacy of ventilating equipment, the total area involved, and the record of the industry or business with respect to explosions or fires are all factors that merit consideration in determining the classification and extent of each location.

Piping without valves, checks, meters, and similar devices would not ordinarily introduce a hazardous condition even though used for flammable liquids or gases. Locations used for the storage of flammable liquids or a liquefied or compressed gases in sealed containers would not normally be considered hazardous unless also subject to other hazardous conditions.

Electrical conduits and their associated enclosures separated from process fluids by a single seal or barrier are classed as a Division 2 location if the outside of the conduit and enclosures is a nonhazardous location.

(25) Class II locations. Class II locations are those that are hazardous because of the presence of combustible dust. Class II locations include the following:

(i) Class II, Division 1. A Class II, Division 1 location is a location:

(**a**) in which combustible dust is or may be in suspension in the air under normal operating conditions, in quantities sufficient to produce explosives or ignitible mixtures; or

(**b**) where mechanical failure or abnormal operation of machinery or equipment might cause such explosive or ignitible mixtures to be produced, and might also provide a source of ignition through simultaneous failure of electric equipment, operation of protection devices, or from other causes, or

(c) in which combustible dusts of an electrically conductive nature may be present.

Note.—This classification may include areas of grain handling and processing plants, starch plants, sugar-pulverizing plants, malting plants, hay-grinding plants, coal pulverizing plants, areas where metal dusts and powders are produced or processed, and other similar locations which contain dust producing machinery and equipment (except where the equipment is dust-tight or vented to the outside). These areas would have combustible dust in the air, under normal operating conditions, in quantities sufficient to produce explosive or ignitible mixtures. Combustible dusts which are electrically nonconductive include dusts produced in the handling and processing of grain and grain products, pulverized sugar and cocoa, dried egg and milk powders, pulverized spices, starch and pastes, potato and woodflour, oil meal from beans and seed, dried hay, and other organic materials which may produce combustible dusts when processed or handled. Dusts containing magnesium or aluminum are particularly hazardous and the use of extreme caution is necessary to avoid ignition and explosion.

(ii) Class II, Division 2. A Class II, Division 2 location is a location in which:

(a) combustible dust will not normally be in suspension in the air in quantities sufficient to produce explosive or ignitible mixtures, and dust accumulations are normally insufficient to interfere with the normal operation of electrical equipment or other apparatus; or

(b) Dust may be in suspension in the air as a result of infrequent malfunctioning of handling or processing equipment, and dust accumulations resulting therefrom may be ignitible by abnormal operation or failure of electrical equipment or other apparatus.

Note.—This classification includes locations where dangerous concentrations of suspended dust would not be likely but where dust accumulations might form on or in the vicinity of electric equipment. These areas may contain equipment from which appreciable quantities of dust would escape under abnormal operating conditions or be adjacent to a Class II Division 1 location, as described above, into which an explosive or ignitible concentration of dust may be put into suspension under abnormal operating conditions.

(26) Class III locations. Class III locations are those that are hazardous because of the presence of easily ignitible fibers or flyings but in which such fibers or flyings are not likely to be in suspension in the air in quantities sufficient to produce ignitible mixtures. Class III locations include the following:

(i) Class III, Division 1. A Class III, Division 1 location is a location in which easily ignitible fibers or materials producing combustible flyings are handled, manufactured, or used.

Note.—Such locations usually include some parts of rayon, cotton, and other textile mills; combustible fiber manufacturing and processing plants; cotton gins and cottonseed mills; flax-processing plants; clothing manufacturing plants; woodworking plants, and establishments; and industries involving similar hazardous processes or conditions.

Easily ignitible fibers and flyings include rayon, cotton (including cotton linters and cotton waste), sisal or henequen, istle, jute, hemp, tow, cocoa fiber, oakum, baled waste kapok, Spanish moss, excelsior, and other materials of similar nature.

(ii) Class III, Division 2. A Class III, Division 2 location is a location in which easily ignitible fibers are stored or handled, except in process of manufacture.

(27) Collector ring. A collector ring is an assembly of slip rings for transferring electrical energy from a stationary to a rotating member.

(28) Concealed. Rendered inaccessible by the structure or finish of the building. Wires in concealed raceways are considered concealed, even though they may become accessible by withdrawing them. [See "Accessible. (As applied to wiring methods.)"]

(29) Conductor.

(i) Bare. A conductor having no covering or electrical insulation whatsoever.

(ii) Covered. A conductor encased within material of composition or thickness that is not recognized as electrical insulation.

(iii) Insulated. A conductor encased within material of composition and thickness that is recognized as electrical insulation.

(30) Conduit body. A separate portion of a conduit or tubing system that provides access through a removable cover(s) to the interior of the system at a junction of two or more sections of the system or at a terminal point of the system. Boxes such as FS and FD or larger cast or sheet metal boxes are not classified as conduit bodies.

(31) Controller. A device or group of devices that serves to govern, in some predetermined manner, the electric power delivered to the apparatus to which it is connected.

(32) Cooking unit, counter-mounted. A cooking appliance designed for mounting in or on a counter and consisting of one or more heating elements, internal wiring, and built-in or separately mountable controls. (See "Oven, wall-mounted.")

(33) Covered conductor. See "Conductor."

(34) Cutout. (Over 600 volts, nominal.) An assembly of a fuse support with either a fuseholder, fuse carrier, or disconnecting blade. The fuseholder or fuse carrier may include a conducting element (fuse link), or may act as the disconnecting blade by the inclusion of a nonfusible member.

(35) Cutout box. An enclosure designed for surface mounting and having swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with the walls of the box proper. (See "Cabinet.")

(36) Damp location. See "Location."

(37) Dead front. Without live parts exposed to a person on the operating side of the equipment.

(38) Device. A unit of an electrical system which is intended to carry but not utilize electric energy.

(39) Dielectric heating. Dielectric heating is the heating of a nominally insulating material due to its own dielectric losses when the materials is placed in a varying electric filed.

(40) Disconnecting means. A device, or group of devices, or other means by which the conductors of a circuit can be disconnected from their source of supply.

(41) Disconnecting (or Isolating) switch. (Over 600 volts, nominal.) A mechanical switching device used for isolating a circuit or equipment from a source of power.

(42) Dry location. See "Location."

(43) Electric sign. A fixed, stationary, or portable self-contained, electrically illuminated utilization equipment with words or symbols designed to convey information or attract attention.

(44) Enclosed. Surrounded by a case, housing, fence or walls which will prevent persons from accidentally contacting energized parts.

(45) Enclosure. The case or housing of apparatus, or the fence or walls surrounding an installation to prevent personnel from accidentally contacting energized parts, or to protect the equipment from physical damage.

(46) Equipment. A general term including material, fittings, devices, appliances, fixtures, apparatus, and the like, used as a part of, or in connection with, an electrical installation.

(47) Equipment grounding conductor. See "Grounding conductor, equipment."

(48) Explosion-proof apparatus. Apparatus enclosed in a case that is capable of withstanding an explosion of a specified gas or vapor which may occur within it and of preventing the ignition of a specified gas or vapor surrounding the enclosure by sparks, flashes, or explosion of the gas or vapor within, and which operates at such an external temperature that it will not ignite a surrounding flammable atmosphere.

(49) Exposed. (As applied to live parts.) Capable of being inadvertently touched or approached nearer than a safe distance by a person. It is applied to parts not suitably guarded, isolated, or insulated (See "Accessible." and "Concealed.")

(50) Exposed. (As applied to wiring methods.) On or attached to the surface or behind panels designed to allow access. [See "Accessible. (As applied to wiring methods.)"]

(51) Exposed. (For the purpose of § 1910.308(e), Communications systems.) Where the circuit is in such a position that in case of failure of supports or insulation, contact with another circuit may result.

(52) Externally operable. Capable of being operated without exposing the operator to contact with live parts.

(53) Feeder. All circuit conductors between the service equipment, or the generator switchboard of an isolated plant, and the final branch-circuit overcurrent device.

(54) Fitting. An accessory such as a locknut, bushing, or other part of a wiring system that is intended primarily to perform a mechanical rather than an electrical function.

(55) Fuse. (Over 600 volts, nominal.) An overcurrent protective device with a circuit opening fusible part that is heated and severed by the passage of overcurrent through it. A fuse comprises all the parts that form a unit capable of performing the prescribed functions. It may or may not be the complete device necessary to connect it into an electrical circuit.

(56) Ground. A conducting connection, whether intentional or accidental, between an electrical circuit or equipment and the earth, or to some conducting body that serves in place of the earth.

(57) Grounded. Connected to earth or to some conducting body that serves in place of the earth.

(58) Grounded, effectively. (Over 600 volts, nominal.) Permanently connected to earth through a ground connection of sufficiently low impedance and having sufficient ampacity that ground fault current which may occur cannot build up to voltages dangerous to personnel.

(59) Grounded conductor. A system or circuit conductor that is intentionally grounded.

(60) Grounding conductor. A conductor used to connect equipment or the grounded circuit of a wiring system to a grounding electrode or electrodes.

(61) Grounding conductor, equipment. The conductor used to connect the non-current-carrying metal parts of equipment, raceways, and other enclosures to the system grounded conductor and/or the grounding electrode conductor at the service equipment or at the source of a separately derived system.

(62) Grounding electrode conductor. The conductor used to connect the grounding electrode to the equipment grounding conductor and/or to the grounded conductor of the circuit at the service equipment or at the source of a separately derived system.

(63) Ground-fault circuit-interrupter. A device whose function is to interrupt the electric circuit to the load when a fault current to ground exceeds some predetermined value that is less than that required to operate the overcurrent protective device of the supply circuit.

(64) Guarded. Covered, shielded, fenced, enclosed, or otherwise protected by means of suitable covers, casings, barriers, rails, screens, mats, or platforms to remove the likelihood of approach to a point of danger or contact by persons or objects.

(65) Health care facilities. Buildings or portions of buildings and mobile homes that contain, but are not limited to, hospitals, nursing homes, extended care facilities, clinics, and medical and dental offices, whether fixed or mobile.

(66) Heating equipment. For the purposes of § 1910.306(g), the term "heating equipment" includes any equipment used for heating purposes if heat is generated by induction or dielectric methods.

(67) Hoistway. Any shaftway, hatchway, well hole, or other vertical opening or space in which an elevator or dumbwaiter is designed to operate.

(68) Identified. Identified, as used in reference to a conductor or its terminal, means that such conductor or terminal can be readily recognized as grounded.

(69) Induction heating. Induction heating is the heating of a nominally conductive material due to its own I^2R losses when the material is placed in a varying electromagnetic field.

■ **(70) Insulated conductor**. See "Conductor."

(71) Interrupter switch. (Over 600 volts, nominal.) A switch capable of making, carrying, and interrupting specified currents.

(72) Irrigation machine. An irrigation machine is an electrically driven or controlled machine, with one or more motors, not hand portable, and used primarily to transport and distribute water for agricultural purposes.

(73) Isolated. Not readily accessible to persons unless special means for access are used.

(74) Isolated power system. A system comprising an isolating transformer or its equivalent, a line isolation monitor, and its ungrounded circuit conductors.

(75) Labeled. Equipment is "labeled" if there is attached to it a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory which, (a) makes periodic inspections of the production of such equipment, and (b) whose labeling indicates compliance with nationally recognized standards or tests to determine safe use in a specified manner.

(76) Lighting outlet. An outlet intended for the direct connection of a lampholder, a lighting fixture, or a pendant cord terminating in a lampholder.

(77) Listed. Equipment is "listed" if it is of a kind mentioned in a list which, (a) is published by a nationally recognized laboratory which makes periodic inspection of the production of such equipment, and (b) states such equipment meets nationally recognized standards or has been tested and found safe for use in a specified manner.

(78) Location.

(i) Damp location. Partially protected locations under canopies, marquees, roofed open porches, and like locations, and interior locations subject to moderate degrees of moisture, such as some basements, some barns, and some cold-storage warehouses.

(ii) Dry location. A location not normally subject to dampness or wetness. A location classified as dry may be temporarily subject to dampness or wetness, as in the case of a building under construction.

(iii) Wet location. Installations underground or in concrete slabs or masonry in direct contact with the earth, and locations subject to saturation with water or other liquids, such as vehicle-washing areas, and locations exposed to weather and unprotected.

(79) Medium voltage cable. Type MV medium voltage cable is a single or multiconductor solid dielectric insulated cable rated 2000 volts or higher.

(80) Metal-clad cable. Type MC cable is a factory assembly of one or more conductors, each individually insulated and enclosed in a metallic sheath of interlocking tape, or a smooth or corrugated tube.

(81) Mineral-insulated metal-sheathed cable. Type MI mineral-insulated metal-sheathed cable is a factory assembly of one or more conductors insulated with a highly compressed refractory mineral insulation and enclosed in a liquidtight and gaslight continuous copper sheath.

(82) Mobile X-ray. X-ray equipment mounted on a permanent base with wheels and/or casters for moving while completely assembled.

(83) Nonmetallic-sheathed cable. Nonmetallic-sheathed cable is a factory assembly of two or more insulated conductors having an outer sheath of moisture resistant, flame-retardant, nonmetallic material. Nonmetallic sheathed cable is manufactured in the following types:

(i) Type NM. The overall covering has a flame-retardant and moisture-resistant finish.

(ii) Type NMC. The overall covering is flame-retardant, moisture-resistant, fungus-resistant, and corrosion-resistant.

(84) Oil (filled) cutout. (Over 600 volts, nominal.) A cutout in which all or part of the fuse support and its fuse link or disconnecting blade are mounted in oil with complete immersion of the contacts and the fusible portion of the conducting element (fuse link), so that arc interruption by severing of the fuse link or by opening of the contacts will occur under oil.

(85) Open wiring on insulators. Open wiring on insulators is an exposed wiring method using cleats, knobs, tubes, and flexible tubing for the protection and support of single insulated conductors run in or on buildings, and not concealed by the building structure.

(86) Outlet. A point on the wiring system at which current is taken to supply utilization equipment.

(87) Outline lighting. An arrangement of incandescent lamps or electric discharge tubing to outline or call attention to certain features such as the shape of a building or the decoration of a window.

(88) Oven, wall-mounted. An oven for cooking purposes designed for mounting in or on a wall or other surface and consisting of one or more heating elements, internal wiring, and built-in or separately mountable controls. (See "*Cooking unit, counter-mounted.*")

(89) Overcurrent. Any current in excess of the rated current of equipment or the ampacity of a conductor. It may result from overload (see definition), short circuit, or ground fault. A current in excess of rating may be accommodated by certain equipment and conductors for a given set of conditions. Hence the rules for overcurrent protection are specific for particular situations.

(90) Overload. Operation of equipment in excess of normal, full load rating, or of a conductor in excess of rated ampacity which, when it persists for a sufficient length of time, would cause damage or dangerous overheating. A fault, such as a short circuit or ground fault, is not an overload. (See "*Overcurrent.*")

(91) Panelboard. A single panel or group of panel units designed for assembly in the form of a single panel; including buses, automatic overcurrent devices, and with or without switches for the control of light, heat, or power circuits; designed to be placed in a cabinet or cutout box placed in or against a wall or partition and accessible only from the front. (See "*Switchboard.*")

(92) Permanently installed decorative fountains and reflection pools. Those that are constructed in the ground, on the ground, or in a building in such a manner that the pool cannot be readily disassembled for storage and are served by electrical circuits of any nature. These units are primarily constructed for their aesthetic value and not intended for swimming or wading.

(93) Permanently installed swimming pools, wading and therapeutic pools. Those that are constructed in the ground, on the ground, or in a building in such a manner that the pool cannot be readily disassembled for storage whether or not served by electrical circuits of any nature.

(94) Portable X-ray. X-ray equipment designed to be hand-carried.

(95) Power and control tray cable. Type TC power and control tray cable is a factory assembly of two or more insulated conductors, with or without associated bare or covered grounding conductors under a nonmetallic sheath, approved for installation in cable trays, in raceways, or where supported by a messenger wire.

(96) Power fuse. (Over 600 volts, nominal.) See "*Fuse.*"

(97) Power-limited tray cable. Type PLTC nonmetallic-sheathed power limited tray cable is a factory assembly of two or more insulated conductors under a nonmetallic jacket.

(98) Power outlet. An enclosed assembly which may include receptacles, circuit breakers, fuseholders, fused switches, buses and watthour meter mounting means; intended to supply and control power to mobile homes, recreational vehicles or boats, or to serve as a means for distributing power required to operate mobile or temporarily installed equipment.

(99) Premises wiring system. That interior and exterior wiring, including power, lighting, control, and signal circuit wiring together with all of its associated hardware, fittings, and wiring devices, both permanently and temporarily installed, which extends from the load end of the service drop, or load end of the service lateral conductors to the outlet(s). Such wiring does not include wiring internal to appliances, fixtures, motors, controllers, motor control centers, and similar equipment.

(100) Qualified person. One familiar with the construction and operation of the equipment and the hazards involved.

(101) Raceway. A channel designed expressly for holding wires, cables, or busbars, with additional functions as permitted in this subpart. Raceways may be of metal or insulating material, and the term includes rigid metal conduit, rigid nonmetallic conduit, intermediate metal conduit, liquidtight flexible metal conduit, flexible metallic tubing, flexible metal conduit, electrical metallic tubing, underfloor raceways, cellular concrete floor raceways, cellular metal floor raceways, surface raceways, wireways, and busways.

(102) Readily accessible. Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal, or inspections, without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or to resort to portable ladders, chairs, etc. (See "*Accessible.*")

(103) Receptacle. A receptacle is a contact device installed at the outlet for the connection of a single attachment plug. A single receptacle is a single contact device with no other contact device on the same yoke. A multiple receptacle is a single device containing two or more receptacles.

(104) Receptacle outlet. An outlet where one or more receptacles are installed.

(105) Remote-control circuit. Any electric circuit that controls any other circuit through a relay or an equivalent device.

(106) Sealable equipment. Equipment enclosed in a case or cabinet that is provided with a means of sealing or locking so that live parts cannot be made accessible without opening the enclosure. The equipment may or may not be operable without opening the enclosure.

(107) Separately derived system. A premises wiring system whose power is derived from generator, transformer, or converter winding and has no direct electrical connection, including a solidly connected grounded circuit conductor, to supply conductors originating in another system.

(108) Service. The conductors and equipment for delivering energy from the electricity supply system to the wiring system of the premises served.

(109) Service cable. Service conductors made up in the form of a cable.

(110) Service conductors. The supply conductors that extend from the street main or from transformers to the service equipment of the premises supplied.

(111) Service drop. The overhead service conductors from the last pole or other aerial support to and including the splices, if any, connecting to the service-entrance conductors at the building or other structure.

(112) Service-entrance cable. Service-entrance cable is a single conductor or multiconductor assembly provided with or without an overall covering, primarily used for services and of the following types:

(i) *Type SE*, having a flame-retardant, moisture-resistant covering, but not required to have inherent protection against mechanical abuse.

(ii) *Type USE*, recognized for underground use, having a moisture-resistant covering, but not required to have a flame-retardant covering or inherent protection against mechanical abuse. Single-conductor cables having an insulation specifically approved for the purpose do not require an outer covering.

(113) Service-entrance conductors, overhead system. The service conductors between the terminals of the service equipment and a point usually outside the building, clear of building walls, where joined by tap or splice to the servicedrap.

(114) Service entrance conductors, underground system. The service conductors between the terminals of the service equipment and the point of connection to the service lateral. Where service equipment is located outside the building walls, there may be no service-entrance conductors, or they may be entirely outside the building.

(115) Service equipment. The necessary equipment, usually consisting of a circuit breaker or switch and fuses, and their accessories, located near the point of entrance of supply conductors to a building or other structure, or an otherwise defined area, and intended to constitute the main control and means of cutoff of the supply.

(116) Service raceway. The raceway that encloses the service-entrance conductors.

(117) Shielded nonmetallic-sheathed cable. Type SNM, shielded nonmetallic-sheathed cable is a factory assembly of two or more insulated conductors in an extruded core of moisture-resistant, flame-resistant metallic material, covered with an overlapping spiral metal tape and wire shield and jacketed with an extruded moisture-, flame-, oil-, corrosion-, fungus-, and sunlight-resistant nonmetallic material.

(118) Show window. Any window used or designed to be used for the display of goods or advertising material, whether it is fully or partly enclosed or entirely open at the rear and whether or not it has a platform raised higher than the street floor level.

(119) Sign. See *"Electric Sign."*

(120) Signaling circuit. Any electric circuit that energizes signaling equipment.

(121) Special permission. The written consent of the authority having jurisdiction.

(122) Storable swimming or wading pool. A pool with a maximum dimension of 15 feet and a maximum wall height of 3 feet and is so constructed that it may be readily disassembled for storage and reassembled to its original integrity.

(123) Switchboard. A large single panel, frame, or assembly of panels which have switches, buses, instruments, overcurrent and other protective devices mounted on the face or back or both. Switchboards are generally accessible from the rear as well as from the front and are not intended to be installed in cabinets. (See *"Panelboard."*)

(124) Switches.

(i) General-use switch. A switch intended for use in general distribution and branch circuits. It is rated in amperes, and it is capable of interrupting its rated current at its rated voltage.

(ii) General-use snap switch. A form of general-use switch so constructed that it can be installed in flush device boxes or on outlet box covers, or otherwise used in conjunction with wiring systems recognized by this subpart.

(iii) Isolating switch. A switch intended for isolating an electric circuit from the source of power. It has no interupting rating, and it is intended to be operated only after the circuit has been opened by some other means.

(iv) Motor-circuit switch. A switch, rated in horsepower, capable of interupting the maximum operating overload current of a motor of the same horsepower rating as the switch at the rated voltage.

(125) Switching devices. (Over 600 volts, nominal.) Devices designed to close and/or open one or more electric circuits. Included in this category are circuit breakers, cutouts, disconnecting (or isolating) switches, disconnecting means, interrupter switches, and oil (filled) cutouts.

(126) Transportable X-ray. X-ray equipment installed in a vehicle or that may readily be disassembled for transport in a vehicle.

(127) Utilization equipment. Utilization equipment means equipment which utilizes electric energy for mechanical, chemical, heating, lighting, or similar useful purpose.

(128) Utilization system. A utilization system is a system which provides electric power and light for employee workplaces, and includes the premises wiring system and utilization equipment.

(129) Ventilated. Provided with a means to permit circulation of air sufficient to remove an excess of heat, fumes, or vapors.

(130) Volatile flammable liquid. A flammable liquid having a flash point below 38 degrees C (100 degrees F) or whose temperature is above its flash point.

(131) Voltage (of a circuit). The greatest root-mean-square (effective) difference of potential between any two conductors of the circuit concerned.

(132) Voltage, nominal. A nominal value assigned to a circuit or system for the purpose of conveniently designating its voltage class (as 120/240, 480Y/277, 600, etc.). The actual voltage at which a circuit operates can vary from the nominal within a range that permits satisfactory operation of equipment.

(133) Voltage to ground. For grounded circuits, the voltage between the given conductor and that point or conductor of the circuit that is grounded; for undergrounded circuits, the greatest voltage between the given conductor and any other conductor of the circuit.

(134) Watertight. So constructed that moisture will not enter the enclosure.

(135) Weatherproof. So constructed or protected that exposure to the weather will not interfere with successful operation. Rainproof, raintight, or watertight equipment can fulfill the requirements for weatherproof where varying weather conditions other than wetness, such as snow, ice, dust, or temperature extremes, are not a factor.

(136) Wet location. See "Location."

(137) Wireways. Wireways are sheet-metal troughs with hinged or removable covers for housing and protecting electric wires and cable and in which conductors are laid in place after the wireway has been installed as a complete system.

(b) Definitions applicable to §§ 1910.331 through 1910.360 [Reserved].

(c) Definitions applicable to §§ 1910.361 through 1910.380 [Reserved].

(d) Definitions applicable to §§ 1910.381 through 1910.398 [Reserved].

Appendix A—Reference Documents

The following references provide information which can be helpful in understanding and complying with the requirements contained in Subpart S:

ANSI A17.1-71 Safety Code for Elevators, Dumbwaiters, Escalators and Moving Walks.
ANSI B9.1-71 Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration.
ANSI B30.2-76 Safety Code for Overhead and Gantry Cranes.
ANSI B30.3-75 Hammerhead Tower Cranes.
ANSI B30.4-73 Safety Code for Portal, Tower, and Pillar Cranes.
ANSI B30.5-68 Safety Code for Crawler, Locomotive, and Truck Cranes.
ANSI B30.6-77 Derricks.
ANSI B30.7-77 Base Mounted Drum Hoists.
ANSI B30.8-71 Safety Code for Floating Cranes and Floating Derricks.
ANSI B30.11-73 Monorail Systems and Underhung Cranes.
ANSI B30.12-75 Handling Loads Suspended from Rotorcraft.
ANSI B30.13-77 Controlled Mechanical Storage Cranes.
ANSI B30.15-73 Safety Code for Mobile Hydraulic Cranes.
ANSI B30.16-73 Overhead Hoists.
ANSI C2-81 National Electrical Safety Code.

ANSI C33.27-74 Safety Standard for Outlet Boxes and Fittings for Use in Hazardous Locations, Class I, Groups A, B, C, and D, and Class II, Groups E, F, and G.

ANSI K61.1-72 Safety Requirements for the Storage and Handling of Anhydrous Ammonia.

ASTM D2155-66 Test Method for Autoignition Temperature of Liquid Petroleum Products.

ASTM D3176-74 Method for Ultimate Analysis of Coal and Coke.

ASTM D3180-74 Method for Calculating Coal and Coke Analyses from As Determined to Different Bases.

IEEE 463-77 Standard for Electrical Safety Practices in Electrolytic Cell Line Working Zones.

NFPA 20-76 Standard for the Installation of Centrifugal Fire Pumps.

NFPA 30-78 Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code.

NFPA 32-74 Standard for Drycleaning Plants

NFPA 33-73 Standard for Spray Application Using Flammable and Combustible Materials.

NFPA 34-74 Standard for Dip Tanks Containing Flammable or Combustible Liquids.

NFPA 35-76 Standard for the Manufacture of Organic Coatings.

NFPA 36-74 Standard for Solvent Extraction Plants.

NFPA 40-74 Standard for the Storage and Handling of Cellulose Nitrate Motion Picture Film.

NFPA 56A-73 Standard for the Use of Inhalation Anesthetics (Flammable and Nonflammable).

NFPA 56F-74 Standard for Nonflammable Medical Gas Systems.

NFPA 58-76 Standard for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases.

NFPA 59-76 Standard for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases at Utility Gas Plants.

NFPA 70-78 National Electrical Code.

NFPA 70C-74 Hazardous Locations Classification.

NFPA 70E Standard for the Electrical Safety Requirements for Employee Workplaces.

NFPA 71-77 Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Central Station Signaling Systems.

NFPA 72A-75 Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Local Protective Signaling Systems for Watchman, Fire Alarm, and Supervisory Service.

NFPA 72B-75 Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Auxiliary Protective Signaling Systems for Fire Alarm Service.

NFPA 72C-75 Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Remote Station Protective Signaling Systems.

NFPA 72D-75 Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Proprietary Protective Signaling Systems for Watchman, Fire Alarm, and Supervisory Service.

NFPA 72E-74 Standard for Automatic Fire Detectors.

NFPA 74-75 Standard for Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Household Fire Warning Equipment.

NFPA 76A-73 Standard for Essential Electrical Systems for Health Care Facilities.

NFPA 77-72 Recommended Practice on Static Electricity.

NFPA 80-77 Standard for Fire Doors and Windows.

NFPA 86A-73 Standard for Ovens and Furnaces; Design, Location and Equipment.

NFPA 88A-73 Standard for Parking Structures.

NFPA 88B-73 Standard for Repair Garages.

NFPA 91-73 Standard for the Installation of Blower and Exhaust Systems for Dust, Stock, and Vapor Removal, or Conveying.

NFPA 101-78 Code for Safety to Life from Fire in Buildings and Structures. (Life Safety Code.)

NFPA 325M-69 Fire-Hazard Properties of Flammable Liquids, Gases, and Volatile Solids.

NFPA 493-75 Standard for Intrinsically Safe Apparatus for Use in Class I Hazardous Locations and Its Associated Apparatus.

NFPA 496-74 Standard for Purged and Pressurized Enclosures for Electrical Equipment in Hazardous Locations.

NFPA 497-75 Recommended Practice for Classification of Class I Hazardous Locations for Electrical Installations in Chemical Plants.

NFPA 505-75 Fire Safety Standard for Powered Industrial Trucks Including Type Designations and Areas of Use.

NMAB 353-1-79 Matrix of Combustion-Relevant Properties and Classification of Gases, Vapors, and Selected Solids.

NMAB 353-2-79 Test Equipment for Use in Determining Classifications of Combustible Dusts.

NMAB 353-3-80 Classification of Combustible Dusts in Accordance with the National Electrical Code.

Appendix B—Explanatory Data [Reserved]

Appendix C—Tables, Notes, and Charts [Reserved]

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

Subpart T—Commercial Diving Operations

GENERAL

1910.401 Scope and application.
1910.402 Definitions.

PERSONNEL REQUIREMENTS

1910.410 Qualifications of dive team.
1910.411 (Removed)

GENERAL OPERATIONS PROCEDURES

1910.420 Safe practice manual.
1910.421 Pre-dive procedures.
1910.422 Procedures during drive
1910.423 Post-dive procedures.

SPECIFIC OPERATIONS PROCEDURES

1910.424 SCUBA diving.
1910.425 Surface-supplied air diving.
1910.426 Mixed-gas diving.
1910.427 Liveboating.

EQUIPMENT PROCEDURES AND REQUIREMENTS

1910.430 Equipment.

RECORDKEEPING

1910.440 Recordkeeping requirements.
1910.441 Effective date.

APPENDIX

Appendix A: Examples of Conditions Which May Restrict or Limit Exposure to Hyperbaric Conditions.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 6, 8, 84 Stat. 1593, 1596, 1599 (29 U.S.C. 655 657); Secretary of Labor's Order 8-76 (41 FR 25059); 29 CFR Part 1911; sec. 41, 44 Stat. (33 U.S.C. 941); sec. 107, 83 Stat. 96 (40 U.S.C. 333).

[42 F.R. 37668, July 22, 1977.]

SUBPART T—COMMERCIAL DIVING OPERATIONS

GENERAL

§ 1910.401 SCOPE AND APPLICATION.

(a) Scope.

(1) This subpart (standard) applies to every place of employment within the waters of the United States, or within any State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, Guam, The Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, Wake Island, Johnston Island, the Canal Zone, or within the Outer Continental Shelf lands as defined in the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act (67 Stat. 462, 43 U.S.C. 1331), where diving and related support operations are performed.

(2) This standard applies to diving and related support operations conducted in connection with all types of work and employments, including general industry, construction, ship repairing, shipbuilding, shipbreaking and longshoring. However, this standard does not apply to any diving operation:

(i) Performed solely for instructional purposes, using open-circuit, compressed air SCUBA and conducted within the no-decompression limits;

(ii) Performed solely for search, rescue, or related public safety purposes by or under the control of a governmental agency; or

(iii) Governed by 45 CFR Part 46 (Protection of Human Subjects, U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare) or equivalent rules or regulations established by another federal agency, which regulate research, development, or related purposes involving human subjects.

(iv) Defined as scientific diving and which is under the direction and control of a diving program containing at least the following elements:

(A) Diving safety manual which includes at a minimum: procedures covering all diving operations specific to the program; procedures for emergency care, including recompression and evacuation; and criteria for diver training and certification.

(B) Diving control (safety) board, with the majority of its members being active divers, which shall at a minimum have the authority to: Approve and monitor diving projects; review and revise the diving safety manual; assure compliance with the manual; certify the depths to which a diver has been trained; take disciplinary action for unsafe practices; and, assure adherence to the buddy system (a diver is accompanied by and is in continuous contact with another diver in the water) for SCUBA diving.

(b) Application in emergencies.

An employer may deviate from the requirements of this standard to the extent necessary to prevent or minimize a situation which is likely to cause death, serious physical harm, or major environmental damage, provided that the employer:

(1) Notifies the Area Director, Occupational Safety and Health Administration within 48 hours of the onset of the emergency situation indicating the nature of the emergency and extent of the deviation from the prescribed regulations; and

(2) Upon request from the Area Director, submits such information in writing.

(c) Employer obligation.

The employer shall be responsible for compliance with:

(1) All provisions of this standard of general applicability; and

(2) All requirements pertaining to specific diving modes to the extent diving operations in such modes are conducted.

1910.402 DEFINITIONS

As used in this standard, the listed terms are defined as follows:

"Acfm": Actual cubic feet per minute.

"ASME Code or equivalent": ASME (American Society of Mechanical Engineers) Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, or an equivalent code which the employer can demonstrate to be equally effective.

"ATA": Atmosphere absolute.

"Bell": An enclosed compartment, pressurized (closed bell) or unpressurized (open bell), which allows the diver to be transported to and from the underwater work area and which may be used as a temporary refuge during diving operations.

"Bottom time": The total elapsed time measured in minutes from the time when the diver leaves the surface in descent to the time that the diver begins ascent.

"Bursting pressure": The pressure at which a pressure containment device would fail structurally.

"Cylinder": A pressure vessel for the storage of gases.

"Decompression chamber": A pressure vessel for human occupancy such as a surface decompression chamber, closed bell, or deep diving system used to decompress divers to treat decompression sickness.

"Decompression sickness": A condition with a variety of symptoms which may result from gas or bubbles in the tissues of divers after pressure reduction.

"Decompression table": A profile or set of profiles of depth-time relationships for ascent rates and breathing mixtures to be followed after a specific depth-time exposure or exposures.

"Dive location": A surface or vessel from which a diving operation is conducted.

"Dive-location reserve breathing gas": A supply system of air or mixed-gas (as appropriate) at the dive location which is independent of the primary supply system and sufficient to support divers during the planned decompression.

"Dive team": Divers and support employees involved in a diving operation, including the designated person-in-charge.

"Diver": An employee working in water using underwater apparatus which supplies compressed breathing gas at the ambient pressure.

"Diver-carried reserve breathing gas": A diver-carried supply of air or mixed gas (as appropriate) sufficient under standard operating conditions to allow the diver to reach the surface, or another source of breathing gas, or to be reached by a standby diver.

"Diving mode": A type of diving requiring specific equipment, procedures and techniques (SCUBA, surface-supplied air, or mixed gas).

"Fsw": Feet of seawater (or equivalent static pressure head).

"Heavy gear": Diver-worn deep-sea dress including helmet, breastplate, dry suit, and weighted shoes.

"Hyperbaric conditions": Pressure conditions in excess of surface pressure.

"Inwater stage": A suspended underwater platform which supports a diver in the water.

"Liveboating": The practice of supporting a surface-supplied air or mixed gas diver from a vessel which is underway.

"Mixed-gas diving": A diving mode in which the diver is supplied in the water with a breathing gas other than air.

"No-decompression limits": The depth-time limits of the "no-decompression limits and repetitive dive group designation table for no-decompression air dives", U.S. Navy Diving Manual or equivalent limits which the employer can demonstrate to be equally effective.

"Psi (g)": Pounds per square inch (gauge).

"Scientific diving" means diving performed solely as a necessary part of a scientific, research, or educational activity by employees whose sole purpose for diving is to perform scientific research tasks. Scientific diving does not include performing any tasks usually associated with commercial diving such as: placing or removing heavy objects underwater; inspection of pipelines and similar objects; construction; demolition; cutting or welding; or the use of explosives.

"SCUBA diving": A diving mode independent of surface supply in which the diver uses open circuit self-contained underwater breathing apparatus.

"Standby diver": A diver at the dive location available to assist a diver in the water.

"Surface-supplied air diving": A diving mode in which the diver in the water is supplied from the dive location with compressed air for breathing.

"Treatment table": A depth-time and breathing gas profile designed to treat decompression sickness.

"Umbilical": The composite hose bundle between a dive location and a diver or bell, or between a diver and a bell, which supplies the diver or bell with breathing gas, communications, power, or heat as appropriate to the diving mode or conditions, and includes a safety line between the diver and the dive location.

"Volume tank": A pressure vessel connected to the outlet of a compressor and used as an air reservoir.

"Working pressure": The maximum pressure to which a pressure containment device may be exposed under standard operating conditions.

PERSONNEL REQUIREMENTS

1910.410 QUALIFICATIONS OF DIVE TEAM

(a) General.

(1) Each dive team member shall have the experience or training necessary to perform assigned tasks in a safe and healthful manner.

(2) Each dive team member shall have experience or training in the following:

(i) The use of tools, equipment and systems relevant to assigned tasks;

(ii) Techniques of the assigned diving mode; and

(iii) Diving operations and emergency procedures.

(3) All dive team members shall be trained in cardiopulmonary resuscitation and first aid (American Red Cross standard course or equivalent).

(4) Dive team members who are exposed to or control the exposure of others to hyperbaric conditions shall be trained in diving-related physics and physiology.

(b) Assignments.

(1) Each dive team member shall be assigned tasks in accordance with the employee's experience or training, except that limited additional tasks may be assigned to an employee undergoing training provided that these tasks are performed under the direct supervision of an experienced dive team member.

(2) The employer shall not require a dive team member to be exposed to hyperbaric conditions against the employee's will, except when necessary to complete decompression or treatment procedures.

(3) The employer shall not permit a dive team member to dive or be otherwise exposed to hyperbaric conditions for the duration of any temporary physical impairment or condition which is known to the employer and is likely to affect adversely the safety or health of a dive team member.

(c) Designated person-in-charge

(1) The employer or an employee designated by the employer shall be at the dive location in charge of all aspects of the diving operation affecting the safety and health of dive team members.

(2) The designated person-in-charge shall have experience and training in the conduct of the assigned diving operation.

1910.411—[REMOVED]

Section 1910.411 is removed.

[49 F.R. 881, January 6, 1984]

GENERAL OPERATIONS PROCEDURES

1910.420 SAFE PRACTICES MANUAL

(a) General.

The employer shall develop and maintain a safe practices manual which shall be made available at the dive location to each dive team member.

(b) Contents.

(1) The safe practices manual shall contain a copy of this standard and the employer's policies for implementing the requirements of this standard.

(2) For each diving mode engaged in, the safe practices manual shall include:

(i) Safety procedures and checklists for diving operations;

(ii) Assignments and responsibilities of the dive team members;

(iii) Equipment procedures and checklists; and

(iv) Emergency procedures for fire, equipment failure, adverse environmental conditions, and medical illness and injury.

1910.421 PRE-DIVE PROCEDURES

(a) General.

The employer shall comply with the following requirements prior to each diving operation, unless otherwise specified.

(b) Emergency aid.

A list shall be kept at the dive location of the telephone or call numbers of the following:

(1) An operational decompression chamber (if not at the dive location);

(2) Accessible hospitals;

(3) Available physicians;

(4) Available means of transportation; and

(5) The nearest U.S. Coast Guard Rescue Coordination Center.

(c) First aid supplies.

(1) A first aid kit appropriate for the diving operation and approved by a physician shall be available at the dive location.

(2) When used in a decompression chamber or bell, the first aid kit shall be suitable for use under hyperbaric conditions.

(3) In addition to any other first aid supplies, an American Red Cross standard first aid handbook or equivalent, and a bag-type manual resuscitator with transparent mask and tubing shall be available at the dive location.

(d) Planning and assessment.

Planning of a diving operation shall include an assessment of the safety and health aspects of the following:

(1) Diving mode;

(2) Surface and underwater conditions and hazards;

(3) Breathing gas supply (including reserves);

(4) Thermal protection;

(5) Diving equipment and systems;

(6) Dive team assignments and physical fitness of dive team members (including any impairment known to the employer);

(7) Repetitive dive designation or residual inert gas status of dive team members;

(8) Decompression and treatment procedures (including altitude corrections); and

(9) Emergency procedures.

(e) Hazardous activities

To minimize hazards to the dive team, diving operations shall be coordinated with other activities in the vicinity which are likely to interfere with the diving operation.

(f) Employee briefing.

(1) Dive team members shall be briefed on:

(i) The tasks to be undertaken;

(ii) Safety procedures for the diving mode;

(iii) Any unusual hazards or environmental conditions likely to affect the safety of the diving operation; and

(iv) Any modifications to operating procedures necessitated by the specific diving operation.

(2) Prior to making individual dive team member assignments, the employer shall inquire into the dive team member's current state of physical fitness, and indicate to the dive team member the procedure for reporting physical problems or adverse physiological effects during and after the dive.

(g) Equipment inspection

The breathing gas supply system including reserve breathing gas supplies, masks, helmets, thermal protection, and bell handling mechanism (when appropriate) shall be inspected prior to each dive.

(h) Warning signal.

When diving from surfaces other than vessels in areas capable of supporting marine traffic, a rigid replica of the international code flag "A" at least one meter in height shall be displayed at the dive location in a manner which allows all-round visibility, and shall be illuminated during night diving operations.

1910.422 PROCEDURES DURING DIVE

(a) General.

The employer shall comply with the following requirements which are applicable to each diving operation unless otherwise specified.

(b) Water entry and exit.

(1) A means capable of supporting the diver shall be provided for entering and exiting the water.

(2) The means provided for exiting the water shall extend below the water surface.

(3) A means shall be provided to assist an injured diver from the water or into a bell.

(c) Communications.

(1) An operational two-way voice communication system shall be used between:

(i) Each surface-supplied air or mixed-gas diver and a dive team member at the dive location or bell (when provided or required); and

(ii) The bell and the dive location.

(2) An operational, two-way communication system shall be available at the dive location to obtain emergency assistance.

(d) Decompression tables.

Decompression, repetitive, and no-decompression tables (as appropriate) shall be at the dive location.

(e) Dive profiles.

A depth-time profile, including when appropriate any breathing gas changes, shall be maintained for each diver during the dive including decompression.

(f) Hand-held power tools and equipment.

(1) Hand-held electrical tools and equipment shall be de-energized before being placed into or retrieved from the water.

(2) Hand-held power tools shall not be supplied with power from the dive location until requested by the diver.

(g) Welding and burning.

(1) A current supply switch to interrupt the current flow to the welding or burning electrode shall be:

(i) Tended by a dive team member in voice communication with the diver performing the welding or burning; and

(ii) Kept in the open position except when the diver is welding or burning.

(2) The welding machine frame shall be grounded.

(3) Welding and burning cables, electrode holders, and connections shall be capable of carrying the maximum current required by the work, and shall be properly insulated.

(4) Insulated gloves shall be provided to divers performing welding and burning operations.

(5) Prior to welding or burning on closed compartments, structures or pipes, which contain a flammable vapor or in which a flammable vapor may be generated by the work, they shall be vented, flooded, or purged with a mixture of gases which will not support combustion.

(h) Explosives.

(1) Employers shall transport, store, and use explosives in accordance with this section and the applicable provisions of §1910.109 and §1926.912 of Title 29 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

(2) Electrical continuity of explosive circuits shall not be tested until the diver is out of the water.

(3) Explosives shall not be detonated while the diver is in the water.

(i) Termination of dive.

The working interval of a dive shall be terminated when:

(1) A diver requests termination;

(2) A diver fails to respond correctly to communications or signals from a dive team member;

(3) Communications are lost and can not be quickly re-established between the diver and a dive team member at the dive location, and between the designated person-in-charge and the person controlling the vessel in liveboating operations; or

(4) A diver begins to use diver-carried reserve breathing gas or the dive-location reserve breathing gas.

1910.423 POST-DIVE PROCEDURES

(a) General.

The employer shall comply with the following requirements which are applicable after each diving operation, unless otherwise specified.

(b) Precautions.

(1) After the completion of any dive, the employer shall:

(i) Check the physical condition of the diver;

(ii) Instruct the diver to report any physical problems or adverse physiological effects including symptoms of decompression sickness;

(iii) Advise the diver of the location of a decompression chamber which is ready for use; and

(iv) Alert the diver to the potential hazards of flying after diving.

(2) For any dive outside the no-decompression limits, deeper than 100 fsw or using mixed gas as a breathing mixture, the employer shall instruct the diver to remain awake and in the vicinity of the decompression chamber which is at the dive location for at least one hour after the dive (including decompression or treatment as appropriate).

(c) Recompression capability.

(1) A decompression chamber capable of recompressing the diver at the surface to a minimum of 165 fsw (6 ATA) shall be available at the dive location for:

(i) Surface-supplied air diving to depths deeper than 100 fsw and shallower than 220 fsw;

(ii) Mixed gas diving shallower than 300 fsw; or

(iii) Diving outside the no-decompression limits shallower than 300 fsw.

(2) A decompression chamber capable or recompressing the diver at the surface to the maximum depth of the dive shall be available at the dive location for dives deeper than 300 fsw.

(3) The decompression chamber shall be:

(i) Dual-lock;

(ii) Multiplace; and

(iii) Located within 5 minutes of the dive location.

(4) The decompression chamber shall be equipped with:

(i) A pressure guage for each pressurized compartment designed for human occupancy;

(ii) A built-in-breathing-system with a minimum of one mask per occupant;

(iii) A two-way voice communication system between occupants and a dive team member at the dive location;

(iv) A view port; and

(v) Illumination capability to light the interior.

(5) Treatment tables, treatment gas appropriate to the diving mode, and sufficient gas to conduct treatment shall be available at the dive location.

[45 F.R. 41634, June 20, 1980.]

(6) A dive team member shall be available at the dive location during and for at least one hour after the dive to operate the decompression chamber (when required or provided).

[45 F.R. 41634, June 20, 1980.]

(d) Record of dive.

(1) The following information shall be recorded and maintained for each diving operation:

(i) Names of dive team members including designated person-in-charge;

(ii) Date, time, and location;

(iii) Diving modes used;

(iv) General nature of work performed;

(v) Approximate underwater and surface conditions (visibility, water temperature and current); and

(vi) Maximum depth and bottom time for each diver.

(2) For each dive outside the no-decompression limits, deeper than 100 fsw or using mixed gas, the following additional information shall be recorded and maintained:

(i) Depth-time and breathing gas profiles;

(ii) Decompression table designation (including modification); and

(iii) Elapsed time since last pressure exposure if less than 24 hours or repetitive dive designation for each diver.

(3) For each dive in which decompression sickness is suspected or symptoms are evident, the following additional information shall be recorded and maintained:

(i) Description of decompression sickness symptoms (including depth and time of onset); and

(ii) Description and results of treatment.

(e) Decompression procedure assessment.

The employer shall:

(1) Investigate and evaluate each incident of decompression sickness based on the recorded information, consideration of the past performance of decompression table used, and individual susceptibility;

(2) Take appropriate corrective action to reduce the probability of recurrence of decompression sickness; and

(3) Prepare a written evaluation of the decompression procedure assessment, including any corrective action taken, within 45 days of the incident of decompression sickness.

SPECIFIC OPERATIONS PROCEDURES

1910.424 SCUBA DIVING

(a) General

Employers engaged in SCUBA diving shall comply with the following requirements, unless otherwise specified.

(b) Limits

SCUBA diving shall not be conducted:

(1) At depths deeper than 130 fsw;

(2) At depths deeper than 100 fsw or outside the no-decompression limits unless a decompression chamber is ready for use;

(3) Against currents exceeding one (1) knot unless line-tended; or

(4) In enclosed or physically confining spaces unless line-tended.

(c) Procedures.

(1) A standby diver shall be available while a diver is in the water.

(2) A diver shall be line-tended from the surface, or accompanied by another diver in the water in continuous visual contact during the diving operation.

(3) A diver shall be stationed at the underwater point of entry when diving is conducted in enclosed or physically confining spaces.

(4) A diver-carried reserve breathing gas supply shall be provided for each diver consisting of:

(i) A manual reserve (J valve); or

(ii) An independent reserve cylinder with a separate regulator or connected to the underwater breathing apparatus.

(5) The valve of the reserve breathing gas supply shall be in the closed position prior to the dive.

1910.425 SURFACE-SUPPLIED AIR DIVING

(a) General.

Employers engaged in surface-supplied air diving shall comply with the following requirements, unless otherwise specified.

(b) Limits

(1) Surface-supplied air diving shall not be conducted at depths deeper than 190 fsw, except that dives with bottom times of 30 minutes or less may be conducted to depths of 220 fsw.

(2) A decompression chamber shall be ready for use at the dive location for any dive outside the no-decompression limits or deeper than 100 fsw.

(3) A bell shall be used for dives with an in water decompression time greater than 120 minutes, except when heavy gear is worn or diving is conducted in physically confining spaces.

(c) Procedures.

(1) Each diver shall be continuously tended while in the water.

(2) A diver shall be stationed at the underwater point of entry when diving is conducted in enclosed or physically confining spaces.

(3) Each diving operation shall have a primary breathing gas supply sufficient to support divers for the duration of the planned dive including decompression.

(4) For dives deeper than 100 fsw or outside the no-decompression limits:

(i) A separate dive team member shall tend each diver in the water;

(ii) A standby diver shall be available while a diver is in the water;

(iii) A diver-carried reserve breathing gas supply shall be provided for each diver except when heavy gear is worn; and

(iv) A dive-location reserve breathing gas supply shall be provided.

(5) For heavy-gear diving deeper than 100 fsw or outside the no-decompression limits:

(i) An extra breathing gas hose capable of supplying breathing gas to the diver in the water shall be available to the standby diver.

(ii) An inwater stage shall be provided to divers in the water.

(6) Except when heavy gear is worn or where physical space does not permit, a diver-carried reserve breathing gas supply shall be provided whenever the diver is prevented by the configuration of the dive area from ascending directly to the surface.

1910.426 MIXED-GAS DIVING

(a) General

Employers engaged in mixed-gas diving shall comply with the following requirements, unless otherwise specified.

(b) Limits.

Mixed-gas diving shall be conducted only when:

(1) A decompression chamber is ready for use at the dive location; and

(i) A bell is used at depths greater than 220 fsw or when the dive involves inwater decompression time of greater than 120 minutes, except when heavy gear is worn or when diving in physically confining spaces; or

(ii) A closed bell is used at depths greater than 300 fsw, except when diving is conducted in physically confining spaces.

(c) Procedures.

(1) A separate dive team member shall tend each diver in the water.

(2) A standby diver shall be available while a diver is in the water.

(3) A diver shall be stationed at the underwater point of entry when diving is conducted in enclosed or physically confining spaces.

(4) Each diving operation shall have a primary breathing gas supply sufficient to support divers for the duration of the planned dive including decompression.

(5) Each diving operation shall have a dive-location reserve breathing gas supply.

(6) When heavy gear is worn:

(i) An extra breathing gas hose capable of supplying breathing gas to the diver in the water shall be available to the standby diver; and

(ii) An inwater stage shall be provided to divers in the water.

(7) An inwater stage shall be provided for divers without access to a bell for dives deeper than 100 fsw or outside the no-decompression limits.

(8) When a closed bell is used, one dive team member in the bell shall be available and tend the diver in the water.

(9) Except when heavy gear is worn or where physical space does not permit, a diver-carried reserve breathing gas supply shall be provided for each diver:

(i) Diving deeper than 100 fsw or outside the no-decompression limits; or

(ii) Prevented by the configuration of the dive area from directly ascending to the surface.

1910.427 LIVEBOATING

(a) General.

Employers engaged in diving operations involving liveboating shall comply with the following requirements.

(b) Limits.

Diving operations involving liveboating shall not be conducted:

(1) With an inwater decompression time of greater than 120 minutes;

(2) Using surface-supplied air at depths deeper than 190 fsw, except that dives with bottom times of 30 minutes or less may be conducted to depths of 220 fsw;

(3) Using mixed gas at depths greater than 220 fsw;

(4) In rough seas which significantly impede diver mobility or work function; or

(5) In other than daylight hours.

(d) Procedures.

(1) The propeller of the vessel shall be stopped before the diver enters or exits the water.

(2) A device shall be used which minimizes the possibility of entanglement of the diver's hose in the propeller of the vessel.

(3) Two-way voice communication between the designated person-in-charge and the person controlling the vessel shall be available while the diver is in the water.

(4) A standby diver shall be available while a diver is in the water.

(5) A diver-carried reserve breathing gas supply shall be carried by each diver engaged in the liveboating operations.

EQUIPMENT PROCEDURES AND REQUIREMENTS

1910.430 EQUIPMENT

(a) General.

(1) All employers shall comply with the following requirements, unless otherwise specified.

(2) Each equipment modification, repair, test, calibration or maintenance service shall be recorded by means of a tagging or logging system, and include the date and nature of work performed, and the name or initials of the person performing the work.

(b) Air compression systems.

(1) Compressors used to supply air to the diver shall be equipped with a volume tank with a check valve on the inlet side, a pressure gauge, a relief valve, and a drain valve.

(2) Air compressor intakes shall be located away from areas containing exhaust or other contaminants.

(3) Respirable air supplied to the diver shall not contain:

(i) A level of carbon monoxide (CO) greater than 20 ppm;

(ii) A level of carbon dioxide (CO_2) greater than 1,000 ppm;

(iii) A level of oil mist greater than 5 milligrams per cubic meter; or

(iv) A noxious or pronounced odor.

(4) The output of air compressor systems shall be tested for air purity every six months by means of samples taken at the connection to the distribution system, except that non-oil lubricated compressors need not be tested for oil mist.

(c) Breathing gas supply hoses.

(1) Breathing gas supply hoses shall:

(i) Have a working pressure at least equal to the working pressure of the total breathing gas system;

(ii) Have a rated bursting pressure at least equal to 4 times the working pressure;

(iii) Be tested at least annually to 1.5 times their working pressure; and

(iv) Have their open ends taped, capped or plugged when not in use.

(2) Breathing gas supply hose connectors shall:

(i) Be made of corrosion-resistant materials;

(ii) Have a working pressure at least equal to the working pressure of the hose to which they are attached; and

(iii) Be resistant to accidental disengagement.

(3) Umbilicals shall:

(i) Be marked in 10-ft. increments to 100 feet beginning at the diver's end, and in 50 ft. increments thereafter;

(ii) Be made of kink-resistant materials; and

(ii) Have a working pressure greater than the pressure equivalent to the maximum depth of the dive (relative to the supply source) plus 100 psi.

(d) Buoyancy control.

(1) Helmets or masks connected directly to the dry suit or other buoyancy-changing equipment shall be equipped with an exhaust valve.

(2) A dry suit or other buoyancy-changing equipment not directly connected to the helmet or mask shall be equipped with an exhaust valve.

(3) When used for SCUBA diving, a buoyancy compensator shall have an inflation source separate from the breathing gas supply.

(4) An inflatable flotation device capable of maintaining the diver at the surface in a face-up position, having a manually activated inflation source independent of the breathing supply, an oral inflation device, and an exhaust valve shall be used for SCUBA diving.

(e) Compressed gas cylinders.

Compressed gas cylinders shall:

(1) Be designed, constructed and maintained in accordance with the applicable provisions of 29 CFR 1910.101 and 1910.169 through 1910.171.

[51 F.R. 33033, September 18, 1986]

(2) Be stored in a ventilated area and protected from excessive heat;

(3) Be secured from falling; and

(4) Have shut-off valves recessed into the cylinder or protected by a cap, except when in use or manifolded, or when used for SCUBA diving.

(f) Decompression chambers.

(1) Each decompression chamber manufactured after the effective date of this standard, shall be built and maintained in accordance with the ASME Code or equivalent.

(2) Each decompression chamber manufactured prior to the effective date of this standard shall be maintained in conformity with the code requirements to which it was built, or equivalent.

(3) Each decompression chamber shall be equipped with:

(i) Means to maintain the atmosphere below a level of 25% oxygen by volume;

(ii) Mufflers on intake and exhaust lines, which shall be regularly inspected and maintained;

(iii) Suction guards on exhaust line openings; and

(iv) A means for extinguishing fire, and shall be maintained to minimize sources of ignition and combustible material.

(g) Gauges and timekeeping devices.

(1) Gauges indicating diver depth which can be read at the dive location shall be used for all dives except SCUBA.

(2) Each depth gauge shall be dead-weight tested or calibrated against a master reference gauge every six months, and when there is a discrepancy greater than two percent (2%) of full scale between any two equivalent gauges.

(3) A cylinder pressure gauge capable of being monitored by the diver during the dive shall be worn by each SCUBA diver.

(4) A timekeeping device shall be available at each dive location.

(h) Masks and helmets.

(1) Surface-supplied air and mixed-gas masks and helmets shall have:

(i) A non-return valve at the attachment point between helmet or mask and hose which shall close readily and positively; and

(ii) An exhaust valve.

(2) Surface-supplied air masks and helmets shall have a minimum ventilation rate capability of 4.5 acfm at any depth at which they are operated or the capability of maintaining the diver's inspired carbon dioxide partial pressure below 0.02 ATA when the diver is producing carbon dioxide at the rate of 1.6 standard liters per minute.

(i) Oxygen safety.

(1) Equipment used with oxygen or mixtures containing over forty percent (40%) by volume oxygen shall be designed for oxygen service.

(2) Components (except umbilicals) exposed to oxygen or mixtures containing over forty percent (40%) by volume oxygen shall be cleaned of flammable materials before use.

(3) Oxygen systems over 125 psig and compressed air systems over 500 psig shall have slow-opening shut-off valves.

(j) Weights and harnesses.

(1) Except when heavy gear is worn, divers shall be equipped with a weight belt or assembly capable of quick release.

(2) Except when heavy gear is worn or in SCUBA diving, each diver shall wear a safety harness with:

(i) A positive buckling device;

(ii) An attachment point for the umbilical to prevent strain on the mask or helmet; and

(iii) A lifting point to distribute the pull force of the line over the diver's body.

RECORDKEEPING

1910.440 RECORDKEEPING REQUIREMENTS

(a) Recording and Reporting.

(1) Reserved.

[51 F.R. 34562, September 29, 1986]

(2) The employer shall record the occurrence of any diving-related injury or illness which requires any dive team member to be hospitalized for 24 hours or more, specifying the circumstances of the incident and the extent of any injuries or illnesses.

(b) Availability of records.

(1) Upon the request of the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, or the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Department of Health, Education and Welfare or their designees, the employer shall make available for inspection and copying any record or document required by this standard.

(2) Records and documents required by this standard shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). Safe practices manuals (s1910.420), depth-time profiles (s1910.422), recordings of dives (s1910.423), decompression procedure assessment evaluations (s1910.423), and records of hospitalizations (s1910.440) shall be provided in the same manner as employee exposure records or analyses using exposure or medical records. Equipment inspections and testing records which pertain to employees (s1910.430) shall also be provided upon request to employees and their designated representatives.

[45 F.R. 35281, May 23, 1980.]

(3) Records and documents required by this standard shall be retained by the employer for the following period:

(i) Dive team member medical records (physician's reports) (§ 1910.411) — 5 years;

(ii) Safe practices manual (§ 1910.420) — current document only.

(iii) Depth-time profile (§ 1910.422) — until completion of the recording of dive, or until completion of decompression procedure assessment where there has been incident of decompression sickness;

(iv) Recording of dive (§ 1910.423) — 1 year, except 5 years where there has been an incident of decompression sickness;

(v) Decompression procedure assessment evaluations (§ 1910.423) — 5 years;

(vi) Equipment inspections and testing records (§ 1910.430) — current entry or tag, or until equipment is withdrawn from service;

(vii) Records of hospitalizations (§ 1910.440) — 5 years.

(4) After the expiration of the retention period of any record required to be kept for five (5) years, the employer shall forward such records to the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Department of Health and Human Services. The employer shall also comply with any additional requirements set forth at 29 CFR 1910.20(h).

[45 F.R. 35281, May 23, 1980.]

(5) In the event the employer ceases to do business:

(i) The successor employer shall receive and retain all dive and employee medical records required by this standard; or

(ii) If there is no successor employer, dive and employee medical records shall be forwarded to the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.

1910.441 EFFECTIVE DATE

This standard shall be effective on October 20, 1977, except that for provisions where decompression chambers or bells are required and such equipment is not yet available, employers shall comply as soon as possible thereafter but in no case later than 6 months after the effective date of the standard.

APPENDIX A

EXAMPLES OF CONDITIONS WHICH MAY RESTRICT OR LIMIT EXPOSURE TO HYPERBARIC CONDITIONS

The following disorders may restrict or limit occupational exposure to hyperbaric conditions depending on severity, presence of residual effects, response to therapy, number of occurrences, diving mode, or degree and duration of isolation.

History of seizure disorder other than early febrile convulsions.

Malignancies (active) unless treated and without recurrence for 5 years.

Chronic inability to equalize sinus and/or middle ear pressure.

Cystic or cavitary disease of the lungs.

Impaired organ function caused by alcohol or drug use.

Conditions requiring continuous medication for control (e.g., antihistamines, steroids, barbiturates, moodaltering drugs, or insulin).

Meniere's disease.

Hemoglobinopathies.

Obstructive or restrictive lung disease.

Vestibular end organ destruction.

Pneumothorax.

Cardiac abnormalities (e.g., pathological heart block, valvular disease, intraventricular conduction defects other than isolated right bundle branch block, angina pectoris, arrhythmia, coronary artery disease).

Juxta-articular osteonecrosis.

Appendix B—Guidelines for Scientific Diving

This appendix contains guidelines that will be used in conjunction with § 1910.401(a)(2)(iv) to determine those scientific diving programs which are exempt from the requirements for commercial diving. The guidelines are as follows:

1. The Diving Control Board consists of a majority of active scientific divers and has autonomous and absolute authority over the scientific diving program's operations.

2. The purpose of the project using scientific diving is the advancement of science; therefore, information and data resulting from the project are non-proprietary.

3. The tasks of a scientific diver are those of an observer and data gatherer. Construction and trouble-shooting tasks traditionally associated with commercial diving are not included within scientific diving.

4. Scientific divers, based on the nature of their activities, must use scientific expertise in studying the underwater environment and, therefore, are scientists or scientists in training.

[50 F.R. 1050, February 9, 1985.]

PART 1910

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS

SUBPART Z—TOXIC AND HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES

1910.1000 Air Contaminants.
1910.1001 Asbestos tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite
1910.1002 Coal tar pitch volatiles; interpretation of term.
1910.1003 4-Nitrobiphenyl.
1910.1004 alpha-Naphthylamine.
1910.1005 4, 4'-Methylene bis(2-chloroaniline).
1910.1006 Methyl chloromethyl ether
1910.1007 3, 3'-Dichlorobenzine (and its salts)
1910.1008 bis-Chloromethyl ether.
1910.1009 beta-Naphthylamine.
1910.1010 Benzidine.
1910.1011 4-Aminodiphenyl.
1910.1012 Ethyleneimine.
1910.1013 beta-Propiolactone.
1910.1014 2-Acetylaminofluorene.
1910.1015 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzine.
1910.1016 N-Nitrosodimethylamine.
1910.1017 Vinyl Chloride.
1910.1018 Inorganic arsenic.
1910.1025 Lead.
1910.1028 Benzene.
1910.1029 Coke Oven Emissions
1910.1043 Cotton dust.
1910.1044 1,2 - dibromo - 3 - chloropropane.
1910.1045 Acrylonitrile.
1910.1047 Ethylene Oxide
1910.1048 Formaldehyde
1910.1101 Non-asbestiform tremolite, anthophyllite and actinolite
1910.1200 Hazard communication.

Authority: Secs. 6, 8 Occupational Safety and Health Act, 29 U.S.C. 655, 657; Secretary of Labor's Orders 12–71 (36 FR 8754), 8–76 (41 FR 25059), or 9–83 (48 FR 35736) as applicable; and 29 CFR Part 1911. Section 1910.1000 Tables Z–1, Z–2, Z–3 also issued under 5 U.S.C. 553. *** § 1910.1048 also issued under 29 U.S.C. 653.

[53 F.R. 27960, July 26, 1988]

SUBPART Z—TOXIC AND HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES

1910.1000—AIR CONTAMINANTS

An employee's exposure to any material listed in table Z-1, Z-2, or Z-3 of this section shall be limited in accordance with the requirements of the following paragraphs of this section.

(a) Table Z-1:

(1) Materials with names preceded by "C"—ceiling values. An employee's exposure to any material in table Z-1, the name of which is preceded by a "C" (e.g., C Boron triflouride), shall at no time exceed the ceiling value given for that material in the table.

(2) Other materials—8-hour time weighted averages. An employee's exposure to any material in table Z-1, the name of which is not preceded by "C", in any 8-hour work shift of a 40-hour work week, shall not exceed the 8-hour time weighted average given for that material in the table.

TABLE Z-1

Substance	p.p.m.[a]	mg./M^3 [b]
Acetaldehyde	200	360
Acetic acid	10	25
Acetic anhydride	5	20
Acetone	1,000	2,400
Acetonitrile	40	70
Acetylene dichloride, see 1, 2-Dichloroethylene		
Acetylene tetrabromide	1	14
Acrolein	0.1	0.25
Acrylamide—Skin		0.3
Aldrin—Skin		0.25
Allyl alcohol—Skin	2	5
Allyl chloride	1	3
C Allylglycidyl ether (AGE)	10	45
Allyl propyl disulfide	2	12
2-Aminoethanol, see Ethanolamine		
2-Aminopyridine	0.5	2
Ammonia	50	35
Ammonium sulfamate (Ammate)		15
n-Amyl acetate	100	525
sec-Amyl acetate	125	650
Aniline—Skin	5	19
Anisidine (o, p-isomers)—Skin		0.5
Antimony and compounds (as Sb)		0.5
ANTU (alpha naphthyl thiourea)		0.3

See footnotes at end of table.

TABLE Z-1—Continued

Substance	p.p.m.[a]	mg./M^3 [b]
Arsine	0.05	0.2
Azinphos-methyl—Skin		0.2
Barium (soluble compounds)		0.5
p-Benzoquinone, see Quinone		
Benzoyl peroxide		5
Benzyl chloride	1	5
Biphenyl, see Diphenyl		
Boron oxide		15
C Boron trifluoride	1	3
Bromine	0.1	0.7
Bromoform—Skin	0.5	5
Butadiene (1, 3-butadiene)	1,000	2,200
Butanethiol, see Butyl mercaptan		
2-Butanone	200	590
2-Butoxy ethanol (Butyl Cellosolve)—Skin	50	240
Butyl acetate (n-butyl acetate)	150	710
sec-Butyl acetate	200	950
tert-Butyl acetate	200	950
Butyl alcohol	100	300
sec-Butyl alcohol	150	450
tert-Butyl alcohol	100	300
C Butylamine—Skin	5	15
C tert-Butyl chromate (as CrO_3)—Skin		0.1
n-Butyl glycidyl ether (BGE)	50	270
Butyl mercaptan	10	35
p-tert-Butyltoluene	10	60
Calcium oxide		5
Camphor		2
Carbaryl (Sevin ®)		5
Carbon black		3.5
Carbon dioxide	5,000	9,000
Carbon monoxide	50	55
Chlordane—Skin		0.5
Chlorinated camphene—Skin		0.5
Chlorinated diphenyl oxide		0.5
C Chlorine	1	3
Chlorine dioxide	0.1	0.3
C Chlorine trifluoride	0.1	0.4
C Chloroacetaldehyde	1	3
α-Chloroacetophenone (phenacylchloride)	0.05	0.3
Chlorobenzene (monochlorobenzene)	75	350
o-Chlorobenzylidene malononitrile (OCBM)	0.05	0.4
Chlorobromomethane	200	1,050
2-Chloro-1,3-butadiene, see Chloroprene		
Chlorodiphenyl (42 percent Chlorine)—Skin		1
Chlorodiphenyl (54 percent Chlorine)—Skin		0.5
1-Chloro,2,3-epoxypropane, see Epichlorhydrin		
2-Chloroethanol, see Ethylene chlorohydrin		

TABLE Z-1—Continued

Substance	p.p.m.[a]	mg./M^3[b]
Chloroethylene, see Vinyl chloride		
C Chloroform (trichloromethane)	50	240
1-Chloro-1-nitropropane	20	100
Chloropicrin	0.1	0.7
Chloroprene (2-chloro-1,3-butadiene)—Skin	25	90
Chromium, sol. chromic, chromous salts as Cr		0.5
Metal and insol. salts		1
Coal tar pitch volatiles (benzene soluble fraction) anthracene, BaP, phenanthrene, acridine, chrysene, pyrene		0.2
Cobalt, metal fume and dust		0.1
Copper fume		0.1
Dusts and Mists		1
Cotton dust (raw)		1[c]
Crag® herbicide		15
Cresol (all isomers)—Skin	5	22
Crotonaldehyde	2	6
Cumene—Skin	50	245
Cyanide (as CN)—Skin		5
Cyclohexane	300	1,050
Cyclohexanol	50	200
Cyclohexanone	50	200
Cyclohexene	300	1,015
Cyclopentadiene	75	200
2, 4-D		10
DDT—Skin		1
DDVP, Skin		1
Decaborane—Skin	0.05	0.3
Demeton®—Skin		0.1
Diacetone alcohol (4-hydroxy-4-methyl-2-pentanone)	50	240
1,2-diaminoethane, see Ethylenediamine		
Diazomethane	0.2	0.4
Diborane	0.1	0.1
Dibutyl Phosphate	1	5
Dibutylphthalate		5
C o-Dichlorobenzene	50	300
p-Dichlorobenzene	75	450
Dichlorodifluoromethane	1,000	4,950
1,3-Dichloro-5,5-dimethyl hydantoin		0.2
1,1-Dichloroethane	100	400
1,2-Dichloroethylene	200	790
C Dichloroethyl ether—Skin	15	90
Dichloromethane, see Methylenechloride		
Dichloromonofluoromethane	1,000	4,200
C 1,1-Dichloro-1-nitroethane	10	60
1,2-Dichloropropane, see Propylenedichloride		
Dichlorotetrafluoroethane	1,000	7,000
Dieldrin—Skin		0.25
Diethylamine	25	75
Diethylamino ethanol—Skin	10	50
Diethylether, see Ethyl ether		
Difluorodibromomethane	100	860
C Diglycidyl ether (DGE)	0.5	2.8
Dihydroxybenzene, see Hydroquinone		
Diisobutyl ketone	50	290
Diisopropylamine—Skin	5	20

See footnotes at end of table.

TABLE Z-1—Continued

Substance	p.p.m.[a]	mg./M^3[b]
Dimethoxymethane, see Methylal		
Dimethyl acetamide—Skin	10	35
Dimethylamine	10	18
Dimethylaminobenzene, see Xylidene		
Dimethylaniline(N-dimethylaniline)—Skin	5	25
Dimethylbenzene, see Xylene		
Dimethyl 1,2-dibromo-2,2-dichloroethyl phosphate, (Dibrom)		3
Dimethylformamide—Skin	10	30
2,6-Dimethylheptanone, see Diisobutyl ketone		
1,1-Dimethylhydrazine—Skin	0.5	1
Dimethylphthalate		5
Dimethylsulfate—Skin	1	5
Dinitrobenzene (all isomers)—Skin		1
Dinitro-o-cresol—Skin		0.2
Dinitrotoluene—Skin		1.5
Dioxane (Diethylene dioxide)—Skin	100	360
Diphenyl	0.2	1
Diphenylmethane diisocyanate (see Methylene bisphenyl isocyanate (MDI)		
Dipropylene glycol methyl ether—Skin	100	600
Di-sec, octyl phthalate (Di-2-ethylhexylphthalate)		5
Endrin—Skin		0.1
Epichlorhydrin—Skin	5	19
EPN—Skin		0.5
1,2-Epoxypropane, see Propyleneoxide		
2,3-Epoxy-1-propanol, see Glycidol		
Ethanethiol, see Ethylmercaptan		
Ethanolamine	3	6
2-Ethoxyethanol—Skin	200	740
2-Ethoxyethylacetate (Cellosolve acetate)—Skin	100	540
Ethyl acetate	400	1,400
Ethyl acrylate—Skin	25	100
Ethyl alcohol (ethanol)	1,000	1,900
Ethylamine	10	18
Ethyl sec-amyl ketone (5-methyl-3-heptanone)	25	130
Ethyl benzene	100	435
Ethyl bromide	200	890
Ethyl butyl ketone (3-Heptanone)	50	230
Ethyl chloride	1,000	2,600
Ethyl ether	400	1,200
Ethyl formate	100	300
C Ethyl mercaptan	10	25
Ethyl silicate	100	850
Ethylene chlorohydrin—Skin	5	16
Ethylenediamine	10	25
C Ethylene glycol dinitrate and/or Nitroglycerin—Skin	[d] 0.2	1
Ethylene glycol monomethyl ether acetate, see Methyl cellosolve acetate		
Ethylene imine—Skin	0.5	1

See footnotes at end of table.

TABLE Z-1—Continued

Substance	p.p.m.[a]	mg./M^3 [b]
Ethylidine chloride, see 1,1-Dichloroethane		
N-Ethylmorpholine—Skin	20	94
Ferbam		15
Ferrovanadium dust		1
Fluoride (as F)		2.5
Fluorine	0.1	0.2
Fluorotrichloromethane	1,000	5,600
Formic acid	5	9
Furfural—Skin	5	20
Furfuryl alcohol	50	200
Glycidol (2,3-Epoxy-1-propanol)	50	150
Glycol monoethyl ether, see 2-Ethoxyethanol		
Guthion ®, see Azinphos-methyl		
Hafnium		0.5
Heptachlor—Skin		0.5
Heptane (n-heptane)	500	2,000
Hexachloroethane—Skin	1	10
Hexachloronaphthalene—Skin		0.2
Hexane (n-hexane)	500	1,800
2-Hexanone	100	410
Hexone (Methyl isobutyl ketone)	100	410
sec-Hexyl acetate	50	300
Hydrazine—Skin	1	1.3
Hydrogen bromide	3	10
C Hydrogen chloride	5	7
Hydrogen cyanide—Skin	10	11
Hydrogen peroxide (90%)	1	1.4
Hydrogen selenide	0.05	0.2
Hydroquinone		2
C Iodine	0.1	1
Iron oxide fume		10
Isoamyl acetate	100	525
Isoamyl alcohol	100	360
Isobutyl acetate	150	700
Isobutyl alcohol	100	300
Isophorone	25	140
Isopropyl acetate	250	950
Isopropyl alcohol	400	980
Isopropylamine	5	12
Isopropylether	500	2,100
Isopropyl glycidyl ether (IGE)	50	240
Ketene	0.5	0.9
Lindane—Skin		0.5
Lithium hydride		0.025
L.P.G. (liquified petroleum gas)	1,000	1,800
Magnesium oxide fume		15
Malathion—Skin		15
Maleic anhydride	0.25	1
C Manganese		5
Mesityl oxide	25	100
Methanethiol, see Methyl mercaptan		
Methoxychlor		15
2-Methoxyethanol, see Methyl cellosolve		
Methyl acetate	200	610
Methyl acetylene (propyne)	1,000	1,650
Methyl acetylene-propadiene mixture (MAPP)	1,000	1,800
Methyl acrylate—Skin	10	35
Methylal (dimethoxymethane)	1,000	3,100
Methyl alcohol (methanol)	200	260
Methylamine	10	12
Methyl amyl alcohol, see Methyl isobutyl carbinol		
Methyl (n-amyl) ketone (2-Heptanone)	100	465
C Methyl bromide—Skin	20	80
Methyl butyl ketone, see 2-Hexanone		
Methyl cellosolve—Skin	25	80
Methyl cellosolve acetate—Skin	25	120
Methyl chloroform	350	1,900
Methylcyclohexane	500	2,000
Methylcyclohexanol	100	470
o-Methylcyclohexanone—Skin	100	460
Methyl ethyl ketone (MEK), see 2-Butanone		
Methyl formate	100	250
Methyl iodide—Skin	5	28
Methyl isobutyl carbinol—Skin	25	100
Methyl isobutyl ketone, see Hexone		
Methyl isocyanate—Skin	0.02	0.05
C Methyl mercaptan	10	20
Methyl methacrylate	100	410
Methyl propyl ketone, see 2-Pentanone		
C α Methyl styrene	100	480
C Methylene bisphenyl isocyanate (MDI)	0.02	0.2
Molybdenum:		
Soluble compounds		5
Insoluble compounds		15
Monomethyl aniline—Skin	2	9
C Monomethyl hydrazine—Skin	0.2	0.35
Morpholine—Skin	20	70
Naphtha (coaltar)	100	400
Naphthalene	10	50
Nickel carbonyl	0.001	0.007
Nickel, metal and soluble cmpds, as Ni		1
Nicotine—Skin		0.5
Nitric acid	2	5
Nitric oxide	25	30
p-Nitroaniline—Skin	1	6
Nitrobenzene—Skin	1	5
p-Nitrochlorobenzene—Skin		1
Nitroethane	100	310
C Nitrogen dioxide	5	9
Nitrogen trifluoride	10	29
C Nitroglycerin—Skin	0.2	2
Nitromethane	100	250
1-Nitropropane	25	90
2-Nitropropane	25	90
Nitrotoluene—Skin	5	30
Nitrotrichloromethane, see Chloropicrin		
Octachloronaphthalene—Skin		0.1
Octane	500	2,350
Oil mist, mineral		5
Organic Arsenic compounds (as As)		0.5
Osmium tetroxide		0.002
Oxalic acid		1
Oxygen difluoride	0.05	0.1
Ozone	0.1	0.2
Paraquat—Skin		0.5
Parathion—Skin		0.1
Pentaborane	0.005	0.01

See footnotes at end of table.

TABLE Z-1—Continued

Substance	p.p.m.[a]	mg./M^3 [b]
Pentachloronaphthalene—Skin		0. 5
Pentachlorophenol—Skin		0. 5
Pentane	1, 000	2, 950
2-Pentanone	200	700
Perchloromethyl mercaptan	0. 1	0. 8
Perchloryl fluoride	3	13. 5
Petroleum distillates (naphtha)	500	2, 000
Phenol—Skin	5	19
p-Phenylene diamine—Skin		0. 1
Phenyl ether (vapor)	1	7
Phenyl ether-biphenyl mixture (vapor)	1	7
Phenylethylene, see Styrene		
Phenyl glycidyl ether (PGE)	10	60
Phenylhydrazine—Skin	5	22
Phosdrin (Mevinphos ®)—Skin		0. 1
Phosgene (carbonyl chloride)	0. 1	0. 4
Phosphine	0. 3	0. 4
Phosphoric acid		1
Phosphorus (yellow)		0. 1
Phosphorus pentachloride		1
Phosphorus pentasulfide		1
Phosphorus trichloride	0. 5	3
Phthalic anhydride	2	12
Picric acid—Skin		0. 1
Pival ® (2-Pivalyl-1,3-indandione)		0. 1
Platinum (Soluble Salts) as Pt		0. 002
Propane	1, 000	1, 800
n-Propyl acetate	200	840
Propyl alcohol	200	500
n-Propyl nitrate	25	110
Propylene dichloride	75	350
Propylene imine—Skin	2	5
Propylene oxide	100	240
Propyne, see Methylacetylene		
Pyrethrum		5
Pyridine	5	15
Quinone	0. 1	0. 4
Rhodium, Metal fume and dusts, as Rh		0. 1
Soluble salts		0. 001
Ronnel		15
Rotenone (commercial)		5
Selenium compounds (as Se)		0. 2
Selenium hexafluoride	0. 05	0. 4
Silver, metal and soluble compounds		0. 01
Sodium fluoroacetate (1080)—Skin		0. 05
Sodium hydroxide		2
Stibine	0. 1	0. 5
Stoddard solvent	500	2,900
Strychnine		0. 15
Sulfur dioxide	5	13
Sulfur hexafluoride	1, 000	6, 000
Sulfuric acid		1
Sulfur monochloride	1	6
Sulfur pentafluoride	0. 025	0. 25
Sulfuryl fluoride	5	20
Systox, see Demeton ®		
2,4,5T		10
Tantalum		5
TEDP—Skin		0. 2
Tellurium		0. 1
Tellurium hexafluoride	0. 02	0. 2
TEPP—Skin		0. 05
C Terphenyls	1	9
1,1,1,2-Tetrachloro-2,2-difluoroethane	500	4, 170
1,1,2,2-Tetrachloro-1,2-difluoroethane	500	4, 170
1,1,2,2-Tetrachloroethane—Skin	5	35
Tetrachloromethane, see Carbon tetrachloride		
Tetrachloronaphthalene—Skin		2
Tetraethyl lead (as Pb)—Skin		0. 075
Tetrahydrofuran	200	590
Tetramethyl lead (as Pb)—Skin		0.075
Tetramethyl succinonitrile—Skin	0. 5	3
Tetranitromethane	1	8
Tetryl (2,4,6-trinitrophenylmethylnitramine)—Skin		1. 5
Thallium (soluble compounds)—Skin as Tl		0. 1
Thiram		5
Tin (inorganic cmpds, except oxides		2
Tin (organic cmpds)		0. 1
C Toluene-2,4-diisocyanate	0. 02	0. 14
o-Toluidine—Skin	5	22
Toxaphene, see Chlorinated camphene		
Tributyl phosphate		5
1,1,1-Trichloroethane see Methyl chloroform		
1,1,2-Trichloroethane—Skin	10	45
Titaniumdioxide		15
Trichloromethane, see Chloroform		
Trichloronaphthalene—Skin		5
1,2,3-Trichloropropane	50	300
1,1,2-Trichloro 1,2,2-trifluoroethane	1, 000	7, 600
Triethylamine	25	100
Trifluoromonobromomethane	1, 000	6, 100
2,4,6-Trinitrophenol, see Picric acid		
2,4,6-Trinitrophenylmethylnitramine, see Tetryl		
Trinitrotoluene—Skin		1. 5
Triorthocresyl phosphate		0. 1
Triphenyl phosphate		3
Turpentine	100	560
Uranium (soluble compounds)		0. 05
Uranium (insoluble compounds)		0. 25
C Vanadium:		
V_2O_5 dust		0. 5
V_2O_5 fume		0. 1
Vinyl benzene, see Styrene		
Vinylcyanide, see Acrylonitrile		
Vinyl toluene	100	480
Warfarin		0. 1
Xylene (xylol)	100	435
Xylidine—Skin	5	25
Yttrium		1
Zinc chloride fume		1
Zinc oxide fume		5
Zirconium compounds (as Zr)		5

See footnotes at end of table.

Footnotes continued on page 700.

•"This standard applies in cotton yarn manufacturing until compliance with § 1910.1043 (c) and (e) is achieved.

[a] Parts of vapor or gas per million parts of contaminated air by volume at 25° C. and 760 mm. Hg pressure.

[b] Approximate milligrams of particulate per cubic meter of air.

(No footnote "c" is used to avoid confusion with ceiling value notations.)

[d] An atmospheric concentration of not more than 0.02 p.p.m., or personal protection may be necessary to avoid headache.

[e] This 8 hour time weighted average is for respirable dust as measured by a vertical elutriator cotton dust sampler or equivalent instrument. This time weighted average applies to the cotton waste processing operations of waste recycling (sorting, blending, cleaning, and willowing) and garnetting.

(b) Table Z–2:

(1) 8-hour time weighted averages. An employee's exposure to any material listed in table Z–2, in any 8-hour work shift of a 40-hour work week, shall not exceed the 8-hour time weighted average limit given for that material in the table.

(2) Acceptable ceiling concentrations. An employee's exposure to a material listed in table Z–2 shall not exceed at any time during an 8-hour shift the acceptable ceiling concentration limit given for the material in the table, except for a time period, and up to a concentration not exceeding the maximum duration and concentration allowed in the column under "acceptable maximum peak above the acceptable ceiling concentration for an 8-hour shift."

(3) Example. During an 8-hour work shift, an employee may be exposed to a concentration of Benzene above 25 p.p.m. (but never above 50 p.p.m.) only for a maximum period of 10 minutes. Such exposure must be compensated by exposures to concentrations less than 10 p.p.m. so that the cumulative exposure for the entire 8-hour work shift does not exceed a weighted average of 10 p.p.m.

TABLE Z–2

Material	8-hour time weighted average	Acceptable ceiling concentration	Acceptable maximum peak above the acceptable ceiling concentration for an 8-hour shift.	
			Concentration	Maximum
Benzene[1] Z37.40–1969	10 p.p.m	25 p.p.m	50 p.p.m	10 minutes.
Beryllium and beryllium compounds (Z37.29–1970).	2 μg./M^3	5 μg./M^3	25 μg./M^3	30 minutes.
Cadmium dust (Z37.5–1970)	0.2 mg./M^3	0.6 mg./M^3		
Cadmium fume (Z37.5–1970)	0.1 mg./M^3	0.3 mg./M^3		
Carbon disulfide (Z37.3–1968)	20 p.p.m	30 p.p.m	100 p.p.m	30 minutes
Carbon tetrachloride (Z37.17–1967)	10 p.p.m	25 p.p.m	200 p.p.m	5 minutes in any 4 hours.
Ethylene dibromide (Z37.31–1970)	20 p.p.m	30 p.p.m	50 p.p.m	5 minutes.
Ethylene dichloride (Z37.21–1969)	50 p.p.m	100 p.p.m	200 p.p.m	5 minutes in any 3 hours.
Fluoride as dust (Z37.28–1969)	2.5 mg./M^3			
Formaldehyde[2] (Z37.16–1967)	3 p.p.m	5 p.p.m	10 p.p.m	30 minutes.
Hydrogen fluoride (Z37.28–1969)	do			
Hydrogen sulfide (Z37.2–1966)		20 p.p.m	50 p.p.m	10 minutes once only if no other measurable exposure occurs.
Methyl chloride (Z37.18–1969)	100 p.p.m	200 p.p.m	300 p.p.m	5 minutes in any 3 hours.
Methylene Chloride (Z37.3–1969)	500 p.p.m	1,000 p.p.m	2,000 p.p.m	5 minutes in any 2 hours.
Organo (alkyl) mercury (Z37.30–1969)	0.01 mg./M^3	0.04 mg./M^3		
Styrene (Z37.15–1969)	100 p.p.m	200 p.p.m	600 p.p.m	5 minutes in any 3 hours.
Tetrachloroethylene (Z37.22–1967)	100 p.p.m	200 p.p.m	300 p.p.m	5 minutes in any 3 hours.
Toluene (Z37.12–1967)	200 p.p.m	300 p.p.m	500 p.p.m	10 minutes.
Trichloroethylene (Z37.19–1967)	100 p.p.m	200 p.p.m	300 p.p.m	5 minutes in any 2 hours.
Mercury (Z37.8–1971)		1 mg./$10M^3$		
Chromic acid and chromates (Z37.7–1971)		do ^{3}		

[46 F.R. 32022, June 19, 1981]

---

[1] This standard applies to the industry segments exempt from the 1 ppm 8 hour TWA and 5 ppm STEL of the benzene standard at § 1910.1028. This standard also applies to any industry for which § 1910.1928 is stayed or otherwise not in effect.

[52 F.R. 34563, September 11, 1987]

[2] This standard applies to any industry for which § 1910.1048 is stayed or otherwise not in effect.

[52 F.R. 46290, December 4, 1987]

(c) Table Z-3: An employee's exposure to any material listed in table Z-3, in any 8-hour work shift of a 40-hour work week, shall not exceed the 8-hour time weighted average limit given for that material in the table.

TABLE Z-3—MINERAL DUSTS

Substance	Mppcf [e]	Mg/M³
Silica:		
Crystalline:		
Quartz (respirable)	$\frac{250^{f}}{\%SiO_2+5}$	$\frac{10mg/M^3 {}^{m}}{\%SiO_2+2}$
Quartz (total dust)		$\frac{30mg/M^3}{\%SiO_2+2}$
Cristobalite: Use ½ the value calculated from the count or mass formulae for quartz.		
Tridymite: Use ½ the value calculated from the formulae for quartz.		
Amorphous, including natural diatomaceous earth	20	$\frac{80mg/M^3}{\%SiO_2}$
Silicates (less than 1% crystalline silica):		
Mica	20	
Soapstone	20	
Talc (non-asbestos-form)	20[n]	
Talc (fibrous). Use asbestos limit		
Tremolite (see talc, fibrous)		
Portland cement	50	
Graphite (natural)	15	
Coal dust (respirable fraction less than 5% SiO_2)		2.4mg/M³ or
For more than 5% SiO_2		$\frac{10mg/M^3}{\%SiO_2+2}$
Inert or Nuisance Dust:		
Respirable fraction	15	5mg/M³
Total dust	50	15mg/M³

NOTE: Conversion factors—
mppcf×35.3 = million particles per cubic meter
= particles per c.c.

[e] Millions of particles per cubic foot of air, based on impinger samples counted by light-field technics.

[f] The percentage of crystalline silica in the formula is the amount determined from air-borne samples, except in those instances in which other methods have been shown to be applicable.

[m] Both concentration and percent quartz for the application of this limit are to be determined from the fraction passing a size-selector with the following characteristics:

[n] Containing < 1% quartz; if > 1% quartz, use quartz limit.

(d) Computation formulae:

(1)

(i) The cumulative exposure for an 8-hour work shift shall be computed as follows:

$$E = \frac{C_aT_a + C_bT_b + \dots C_nT_n}{8}$$

where:

E is the equivalent exposure for the working shift.

C is the concentration during any period of time

T where the concentration remains constant.

T is the duration in hours of the exposure at the concentration C.

The value of E shall not exceed the 8-hour time weighted average limit in table Z-1, Z-2, or Z-3 for the material involved.

(ii) To illustrate the formula prescribed in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph, note that isoamyl acetate has an 8-hour time weighted average limit of 100 p.p.m. (table Z-1). Assume that an employee is subject to the following exposure:

Two hours exposure at 150 p.p.m.
Two hours exposure at 75 p.p.m.
Four hours exposure at 50 p.p.m.

Substituting this information in the formula, we have

$$\frac{2 \times 150 + 2 \times 75 + 4 \times 50}{8} = 81.25 \text{ p.p.m.}$$

Since 81.25 p.p.m. is less than 100 p.p.m., the 8-hour time weighted average limit, the exposure is acceptable.

(2)

(i) In case of a mixture of air contaminants an employer shall compute the equivalent exposure as follows:

$$E_m = \frac{C_1}{L_1} + \frac{C_2}{L_2} + \dots \frac{C_n}{L_n}$$

where:

E_m is the equivalent exposure for the mixture.

C is the concentration of a particular contaminant.

L is the exposure limit for that contaminant, from table Z-1, Z-2, or Z-3.

The value of E_m shall not exceed unity (1).

(ii) To illustrate the formula prescribed in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph, consider the following exposures:

Material	Actual concentration of 8-hour exposure	8-hour time weighted average exposure limit
Acetone (Table Z-1)	500 p.p.m.	1,000 p.p.m.
2-Butanone (Table Z-1)	45 p.p.m.	200 p.p.m.
Toluene (Table Z-2)	40 p.p.m.	200 p.p.m.

Substituting in the formula, we have:

$$E_m = \frac{500}{1{,}000} + \frac{45}{200} + \frac{40}{200}$$
$$E_m = 0.500 + 0.225 + 0.200$$
$$E_m = 0.925$$

Since E_m is less than unity (1), the expoure combination is within acceptable limits.

(e) To achieve compliance with paragraph (a) through (d) of this section, administrative or engineering controls must first be determined and implemented whenever feasible. When such controls are not feasible to achieve full compliance, protective equipment or any other protective measures shall be used to keep the exposure of employees to air contaminants within the limits prescribed in this section. Any equipment and/or technical measures used for this purpose must be approved for each particular use by a competent industrial hygienist or other technically qualified person. Whenever respirators are used, their use shall comply with § 1910.134.

1910.1001—ASBESTOS, TREMOLITE, ANTHOPHYLLITE, AND ACTINOLITE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to all occupational exposures to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite, in all industries covered by the Occupational Safety and Health Act, except as provided in paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(2) This section does not apply to construction work as defined in 29 CFR 1910.12(b). [Exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite in construction work is covered by 29 CFR 1926.58.]

(b) Definitions. "Action level" means an airborne concentration of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals, of 0.1 fiber per cubic centimeter (f/cc) of air calculated as an eight (8)—hour time-weighted average.

"Asbestos" includes chrysotile, amosite, crocidolite, tremolite asbestos, anthophyllite asbestos, actinolite asbestos, and any of these minerals that have been chemically treated and/or altered.

"Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

"Authorized person" means any person authorized by the employer and required by work duties to be present in regulated areas.

"Director" means the Director of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or designee.

"Employee exposure" means that exposure to airborne asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals that would occur if the employee were not using respiratory protective equipment.

"Fiber" means a particulate form of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite, 5 micrometers or longer, with a length-to-diameter ratio of at least 3 to 1.

"High-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter" means a filter capable of trapping and retaining at least 99.97 percent of 0.3 micrometer diameter mono-disperse particles.

"Regulated area" means an area established by the employer to demarcate areas where airborne concentrations of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals exceed, or can reasonably be expected to exceed, the permissible exposure limit.

"Tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite" means the non-asbestos form of these minerals, and any of these minerals that have been chemically treated and/or altered.

(c) Permissible exposure limits (PELS).

(1) Time-weighted average limit (TWA). The employer shall ensure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals in excess of 0.2 fiber per cubic centimeter of air as an eight (8)-hour time-weighted average (TWA) as determined by the method prescribed in Appendix A of this section, or by an equivalent method.

[53 F.R. 35625, September 14, 1988]

(2) Excursion limit. The employer shall ensure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals, in excess of 1.0 fiber per cubic centimeter of air (1 f/cc) as averaged over a sampling period of thirty (30) minutes.

[53 R.R. 35625, September 14, 1988]

(d) Exposure monitoring.

(1) General.

(i) Determinations of employee exposure shall be made from breathing zone air samples that are representative of the 8-hour TWA and 30-minute short-term exposures of each employee.

[53 F.R. 35625, September 14, 1988]

(ii) Representative 8-hour TWA employee exposures shall be determined on the basis of one or more samples representing full-shift exposures for each shift for each employee in each job classification in each work area. Representative 30-minute short-term employee exposures shall be determined on the basis of one or more samples representing 30 minute exposures associated with operations that are most likely to produce exposures above the excursion limit for each shift for each job classification in each work area.

[53 F.R. 35625, September 14, 1988]

(2) Initial monitoring.

(i) Each employer who has a workplace or work operation covered by this standard, except as provided for in paragraphs (d)(2)(ii) and (d)(2)(iii) of this section, shall perform initial monitoring of employees who are, or may reasonably be expected to be exposed to airborne concentrations at or above the action level and/or excursion limit.

(ii) Where the employer has monitored after December 20, 1985, for the TWA and after March 14, 1988, for the excursion limit, and the monitoring satisfies all other requirements of this section, the employer may rely on such earlier monitoring results to satisfy the requirements of paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section.

[53 F.R. 35625, September 14, 1988]

(iii) Where the employer has relied upon objective data that demonstrates that asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals is not capable of being released in airborne concentrations at or above the action level and/or excursion limit under the expected conditions of processing, use, or handling, then no initial monitoring is required.

[53 F.R. 35625, September 14, 1988]

(3) Monitoring frequency (periodic monitoring) and patterns. After the initial determinations required by paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section, samples shall be of such frequency and pattern as to represent with reasonable accuracy the levels of exposure of the employees. In no case shall sampling be at intervals greater than six months for employees whose exposures may reasonably be foreseen to exceed the action level and/or excursion limit.

[53 F.R. 35625, September 14, 1988]

(4) Changes in monitoring frequency. If either the initial or the periodic monitoring required by paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section statistically indicates that employee exposures are below the action level and/or excursion limit, the employer may discontinue the monitoring for those employees whose exposures are represented by such monitoring.

[53 F.R. 35625, September 14, 1988]

(5) Additional monitoring. Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraphs (d)(2)(ii) and (d)(4) of this section, the employer shall institute the exposure monitoring required under paragraphs (d)(2)(i) and (d)(3) of this section whenever there has been a change in the production, process, control equipment, personnel or work practices that may result in new or additional exposures above the action level and/or excursion limit or when the employer has any reason to suspect that a change may result in new or additional exposures above the action level and/or excursion limit.

[53 F.R. 35625, September 14, 1988]

(6) Method of monitoring.

(i) All samples taken to satisfy the monitoring requirements of paragraph (d) shall be personal samples collected following the procedures specified in Appendix A.

(ii) All samples taken to satisfy the monitoring requirements of paragraph (d) shall be evaluated using the OSHA Reference Method (ORM) specified in Appendix A of this section, or an equivalent counting method.

(iii) If an equivalent method to the ORM is used, the employer shall ensure that the method meets the following criteria:

(a) Replicate exposure data used to establish equivalency are collected in side-by-side field and laboratory comparisons; and

(b) The comparison indicates that 90% of the samples collected in the range 0.5 at 2.0 times the permissible limit have an accuracy range of plus or minus 25 percent of the ORM results with a 95% confidence level as demonstrated by a statistically valid protocol; and

(c) The equivalent method is documented and the results of the comparison testing are maintained.

(iv) To satisfy the monitoring requirements of paragraph (d) of the section, employers must use the results of monitoring analysis performed by laboratories which have instituted quality assurance programs that include the elements as prescribed in Appendix A.

(7) Employee notification of monitoring results.

(i) The employer shall, within 15 working days after the receipt of the results of any monitoring performed under the standard, notify the affected employees of these results in writing either individually or by posting of results in an appropriate location that is accessible to affected employees.

(ii) The written notification required by paragraph (d)(7)(i) of this section shall contain the corrective action being taken by the employer to reduce employee exposure to or below the TWA and/or excursion limit, wherever monitoring results indicated that the TWA and/or excursion limit had been exceeded.

[53 F.R. 35625, September 14, 1988]

(e) Regulated Areas.

(1) Establishment. The employer shall establish regulated areas wherever airborne concentrations of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals are in excess of the TWA and/or excursion limit prescribed in paragraph (c) of this section.

[53 F.R. 35625, September 14, 1988]

(2) Demarcation. Regulated areas shall be demarcated from the rest of the workplace in any manner that minimizes the number of persons who will be exposed to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite.

(3) Access. Access to regulated areas shall be limited to authorized persons or to persons authorized by the Act or regulations issued pursuant thereto.

(4) Provision of respirators. Each person entering a regulated area shall be supplied with and required to use a respirator, selected in accordance with paragraph (g)(2) of this section.

(5) Prohibited activities. The employer shall ensure that employees do not eat, drink, smoke, chew tobacco or gum, or apply cosmetics in the regulated areas.

(f) Methods of compliance.

(1) Engineering controls and work practices.

(i) The employer shall institute engineering controls and work practices to reduce and maintain employee exposure to or below the TWA and/or excursion limit, prescribed in paragraph (c) of this section, except to the extent that such controls are not feasible.

[53 F.R. 35626, September 14, 1988]

(ii) Wherever the feasible engineering controls and work practices that can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce employee exposure to or below the TWA and/or excursion limit prescribed in paragraph (c) of this section, the employer shall use them to reduce employee exposure to the lowest levels achievable by these controls and shall supplement them by the use of respiratory protection that complies with the requirements of paragraph (g) of this section.

[53 F.R. 35626, September 14, 1988]

(iii) For the following operations, wherever feasible engineering controls and work practices that can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce the employee exposure to or below the TWA and/or excursion limit, prescribed in paragraph (c) of this section, the employer shall use them to reduce employee exposure to or below 0.5 fiber per cubic centimeter of air (as an eight-hour time-weighted average) or 2.5 fibers/cc for 30 minutes (short-term exposure) and shall supplement them by the use of any combination of respiratory protection that complies with the requirements of paragraph (g) of this section, work practices and feasible engineering controls that will reduce employee exposure to or below the TWA and to or below the excursion limit prescribed in paragraph (c) of this section: Coupling cutoff in primary asbestos cement pipe manufacturing; sanding in primary and secondary asbestos cement sheet manufacturing; grinding in primary and secondary friction product manufacturing; carding and spinning in dry textile processes; and grinding and sanding in primary plastics manufacturing.

[53 F.R. 35626, September 14, 1988]

(iv) Local exhaust ventilation. Local exhaust ventilation and dust collection systems shall be designed, constructed, installed, and maintained in accordance with good practices such as those found in the American National Standard Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems, ANSI Z9.2–1979.

(v) Particular tools. All hand-operated and power-operated tools which would produce or release fibers of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals so as to expose employees to levels in excess of the TWA and/or excursion limit prescribed in paragraph (c) of this section, such as, but not limited to saws, scorers, abrasive wheels, and drills, shall be provided with local exhaust ventilation systems which comply with paragraph (f)(1)(iv) of this section.

[53 F.R. 35626, September 14, 1988]

(vi) Wet methods. Insofar as practicable, asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite, shall be handled, mixed, applied, removed, cut, scored, or otherwise worked in a wet state sufficient to prevent the emission of airborne fibers so as to expose employees to levels in excess of the TWA and/or excursion limit, prescribed in paragraph (c) of this section, unless the usefulness of the product would be diminished thereby.

[53 F.R. 35626, September 14, 1988]

(vii) Materials containing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite shall not be applied by spray methods.

(viii) Particular products and operations. No asbestos cement, mortar, coating, grout, plaster, or similar material containing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite shall be removed from bags, cartons, or other containers in which they are shipped, without being either wetted, or enclosed, or ventilated so as to prevent effectively the release of airborne fibers of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals so as to expose employees to levels in excess of the TWA and/or excursion limit prescribed in paragraph (c) of this section.

[53 F.R. 35626, September 14, 1988]

(ix) Compressed air. Compressed air shall not be used to remove asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite or materials containing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite, unless the compressed air is used in conjunction with a ventilation system designed to capture the dust cloud created by the compressed air.

(2) Compliance program.

(i) Where the TWA and/or excursion limit is exceeded, the employer shall establish and implement a written program to reduce employee exposure to or below the TWA and to or below the excursion limit by means of engineering and work practice controls as required by paragraph (f)(1) of this section, and by the use of respiratory protection where required or permitted under this section.

[53 F.R. 35626, September 14, 1988]

(ii) Such programs shall be reviewed and updated as necessary to reflect significant changes in the status of the employer's compliance program.

(iii) Written programs shall be submitted upon request for examination and copying to the Assistant Secretary, the Director, affected employees and designated employee representatives.

(iv) The employer shall not use employee rotation as a means of compliance with the TWA and/or excursion limit.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(g) Respiratory protection.

(1) General. The employer shall provide respirators, and ensure that they are used, where required by this section. Respirators shall be used in the following circumstances:

(i) During the interval necessary to install or implement feasible engineering and work practice controls;

(ii) In work operations, such as maintenance and repair activities, or other activities for which engineering and work practice controls are not feasible;

(iii) In work situations where feasible engineering and work practice controls are not yet sufficient to reduce exposure to or below the TWA and/or excursion limit; and

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(iv) In emergencies.

(2) Respirator selection.

(i) Where respirators are required under this section, the employer shall select and provide at no cost to the employee, the appropriate respirator as specified in Table 1. The employer shall select respirators from among those jointly approved as being acceptable for protection by the Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA) and by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11.

(ii) The employer shall provide a powered, air-purifying respirator in lieu of any negative pressure respirator specified in Table 1 whenever:

(a) An employee chooses to use this type of respirator; and

TABLE 1.—RESPIRATORY PROTECTION FOR ASBESTOS, TREMOLITE, ANTHOPHYLLITE, AND ACTINOLITE FIBERS

Airborne concentration of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals	Required respirator
Not in excess of 2 f/cc	1. Half-mast air-purifying respirator other than a disposable respirator equipped with high-efficiency filters.
Not in excess of 19 f/cc (40 × PEL	1. Full facepiece air-purifying respirator equipped with high-efficiency filters.
Not in excess of 20 f/cc (100 × PEL).	1. Any powered air-purifying respirator equipped with high-efficiency filters. 2. Any supplied-air respirator operated in continuous flow mode.
Not in excess of 200 f/cc (1000 × PEL).	1. Full facepiece supplied-air respirator operated in pressure demand mode.
Greater than 200 f/cc (> 1,000 × PEL) or unknown concentration	1. Full facepiece supplied air respirator operated in pressure demand mode equipped with an auxiliary positive pressure self-contained breathing apparatus.

Note: a. Respirators assigned for higher environmental concentrations may be used at lower concentrations.

b. A high-efficiency filter means a filter that is at least 99.97 percent efficient against mono-dispersed particles of 0.3 micrometers or larger.

(b) This respirator will provide adequate protection to the employee.

(3) Respirator program.

(i) Where respiratory protection is required, the employer shall institute a respirator program in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.134(b), (d), (e), and (f).

(ii) The employer shall permit each employee who uses a filter respirator to change the filter elements whenever an increase in breathing resistance is detected and shall maintain an adequate supply of filter elements for this purpose.

(iii) Employees who wear respirators shall, be permitted to leave the regulated area to wash their faces and respirator facepieces whenever necessary to prevent skin irritation associated with respirator use.

(iv) No employee shall be assigned to tasks requiring the use of respirators if, based upon his or her most recent examination, an examining physician determines that the employee will be unable to function normally wearing a respirator, or that the safety or health of employee or other employees will be impaired by the use of a respirator. Such employee shall be assigned to another job or given the opportunity to transfer to a different position whose duties he or she is able to perform with the same employer, in the same geographical area and with the same seniority, status, and rate of pay the employee had just prior to such transfer, if such a different position is available.

(4) Respirator fit testing.

(i) The employer shall ensure that the respirator issued to the employee exhibits the least possible facepiece leakage and that the respirator is fitted properly.

(ii) For each employee wearing negative pressure respirators, employers shall perform either quantitative or qualitative face fit tests at the time of initial fitting and at least every six months thereafter. The qualitative fit tests may be used only for testing the fit of half-mask respirators where they are permitted to be worn, and shall be conducted in accordance with Appendix C. The tests shall be used to select facepieces that provide the required protection as prescribed in Table I.

(h) Protective work clothing and equipment.

(1) Provision and use. If an employee is exposed to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals above the TWA and/or excursion limit, or where the possibility of eye irritation exists, the employer shall provide at no cost to the employee and ensure that the employee uses appropriate work clothing and equipment such as, but not limited to:

(i) Coveralls or similar full-body work clothing;

(ii) Gloves, head coverings, and foot coverings; and

(iii) Face shields, vented goggles, or other appropriate protective equipment which complies with §1910.133 of this Part.

(2) Removal and storage.

(i) The employer shall ensure that employees remove work clothing contaminated with asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite only in change rooms provided in accordance with paragraph (i)(1) of this section.

(ii) The employer shall ensure that no employee takes contaminated work clothing out of the change room, except those employees authorized to do so for the purpose of laundering, maintenance, or disposal.

(iii) Contaminated work clothing shall be placed and stored in closed containers which prevent dispersion of the asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite outside the container.

(iv) Containers of contaminated protective devices or work clothing which are to be taken out of change rooms or the workplace for cleaning, maintenance or disposal, shall bear labels in accordance with paragraph (j)(2) of this section.

(3) Cleaning and replacement.

(i) The employer shall clean, launder, repair, or replace protective clothing and equipment required by this paragraph to maintain their effectiveness. The employer shall provide clean protective clothing and equipment at least weekly to each effected employee.

(ii) The employer shall prohibit the removal of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite from protective clothing and equipment by blowing or shaking.

(iii) Laundering of contaminated clothing shall be done so as to prevent the release of airborne fibers of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite, or a combination of these minerals in excess of the permissible exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (c) of this section.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(iv) Any employer who gives contaminated clothing to another person for laundering shall inform such person of the requirement in paragraph (h)(3)(iii) of this section to effectively prevent the release of airborne fibers of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals in excess of the permissible exposure limits.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(v) The employee shall inform any person who launders or cleans protective clothing or equipment contaminated with asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite, of the potentially harmful effects of exposure to absestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite.

(vi) Contaminated clothing shall be transported in sealed impermeable bags, or other closed, impermeable containers, and labeled in accordance with paragraph (j) of this section.

(i) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(1) Change rooms.

(i) The employer shall provide clean change rooms for employees who work in areas where their airborne exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals is above the TWA and/or excursion limit.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(ii) The employer shall ensure that change rooms are in accordance with §1910.141(e) of this part, and are equipped with two separate lockers or storage facilities, so separated as to prevent contamination of the employee's street clothes from his protective work clothing and equipment.

(2) Showers.

(i) The employer shall ensure that employees who work in areas where their airborne exposure is above the TWA and/or excursion limit shower at the end of the work shift.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(ii) The employer shall provide shower facilities which comply with §1910.141(d)(3) of this part.

(iii) The employer shall ensure that employees who are required to shower pursuant to paragraph (i)(2)(i) of this section do not leave the workplace wearing any clothing or equipment worn during the work shift.

(3) Lunchrooms.

(i) The employer shall provide lunchroom facilities for employees who work in areas where their airborne exposure is above the TWA and/or excursion limit.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(ii) The employer shall ensure that lunchroom facilities have a positive pressure, filtered air supply, and are readily accessible to employees.

(iii) The employee shall ensure that employees who work in areas where their airborne exposure is above the TWA and/or excursion limit wash their hands and faces prior to eating, drinking or smoking.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(iv) The employer shall ensure that employees do not enter lunchroom facilities with protective work clothing or equipment unless surface asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite fibers have been removed from the clothing or equipment by vacuuming or other method that removes dust without causing the asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or antinolite to become airborne.

(j) Communication of hazards to employees.

(1) Warning signs.

(i) Posting. Warning signs shall be provided and displayed at each regulated area. In addition, warning signs shall be posted at all approaches to regulated areas so that an employee may read the signs and take necessary protective steps before entering the area.

(ii) Sign specifications. The warning signs required by paragraph (j)(1)(i) of this section shall bear the following information:

DANGER
ASBESTOS
CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE
HAZARD
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY
RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE
CLOTHING
ARE REQUIRED IN THIS AREA

(iii) Where minerals in the regulated area are only tremolite, anthophyllite or actinolite, the employer may replace the term "asbestos" with the appropriate mineral name.

(2) Warning labels.

(i) Labeling. Warning labels shall be affixed to all raw materials, mixtures, scrap, waste, debris, and other products containing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite fibers, or to their containers.

(ii) Label specifications. The labels shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.1200(f) of OSHA's Hazard Communications standard, and shall include the following information:

DANGER
CONTAINS ASBESTOS FIBERS
AVOID CREATING DUST
CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE
HAZARD

(iii) Where minerals to be labeled are only tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite, the employer may replace the term "asbestos" with the appropriate mineral name.

(3) Material safety data sheets. Employers who are manufacturers or importers of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite or asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite products shall comply with the requirements regarding development of material safety data sheets as specified in 29 CFR 1910.1200(g) of OSHA's Hazard Communication standard, except as provided by paragraph (j)(4) of this section.

(4) The provisions for labels required by paragraph (j)(2) or for material safety data sheets required by paragraph (j)(3) do not apply where:

(i) Asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite fibers have been modified by a bonding agent, coating, binder, or other material provided that the manufacturer can demonstrate that during any reasonably foreseeable use, handling, storage, disposal, processing, or transportation, no airborne concentrations of fibers of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals in excess of the action level and/or excursion limit will be released or

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(ii) Asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals is present in a product in concentrations less than 0.1%

(5) Employee information and training.

(i) The employer shall institute a training program for all employees who are exposed to airborne concentrations of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals at or above the action level and/or excursion limit and ensure their participation in the program.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(ii) Training shall be provided prior to or at the time of initial assignment and at least annually thereafter.

(iii) The training program shall be conducted in a manner which the employee is able to understand. The employer shall ensure that each employee is informed of the following:

(a) The health effect associated with asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite exposure;

(b) The relationship between smoking and exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite in producing lung cancer;

(c) The quantity, location, manner of use, release, and storage of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite, and the specific nature of operations which could result in exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite;

(d) The engineering controls and work practices associated with the employee's job assignment;

(e) The specific procedures implemented to protect employees from exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite, such as appropriate work practices, emergency and clean-up procedures, and personal protective equipment to be used;

(f) The purpose, proper use, and limitations of respirators and protective clothing;

(g) The purpose and a description of the medical surveillance program required by paragraph (l) of this section;

(h) The content of this standard, including appendices.

(iv) Access to information and training materials.

(a) The employer shall make a copy of this standard and its appendices readily available without cost to all affected employees.

(b) The employer shall provide, upon request, all materials relating to the employee information and training program to the Assistant Secretary and the training program to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(k) Housekeeping.

(1) All surfaces shall be maintained as free as practicable of accumulations of dusts and waste containing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite.

(2) All spills and sudden releases of material containing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite shall be cleaned up as soon as possible.

(3) Surfaces contaminated with asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite may not be cleaned by the use of compressed air.

(4) Vacuuming. HEPA-filtered vacuuming equipment shall be used for vacuuming. The equipment shall be used and emptied in a manner which minimizes the reentry of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite into the workplace.

(5) Shoveling, dry sweeping and dry clean-up of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite may be used only where vacuuming and/or wet cleaning are not feasible.

(6) Waste disposal. Waste, scrap, debris, bags, containers, equipment, and clothing contaminated with asbetos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite consigned for disposal, shall be collected and disposed of in sealed impermeable bags, or other closed, impermeable containers.

(l) Medical surveillance.

(1) General.

(i) The employer shall institute a medical surveillance program for all employees who are or will be exposed to airborne concentrations of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals at or above the action level and/or excursion limit.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(ii) Examination by a physician.

(a) The employer shall ensure that all medical examinations and procedures are performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician, and shall be provided without cost to the employee and at a reasonable time and place.

(b) Persons other than licensed physicians, who administer the pulmonary function testing required by this section, shall complete a training course in spirometry sponsored by an appropriate academic or professional institution.

(2) Preplacement examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to an occupation exposed to airborne concentrations of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite fibers, a preplacement medical examination shall be provided or made available by the employer.

(ii) Such examination shall include, as a minimum, a medical and work history: A complete physical examination of all systems with emphasis on the respiratory system, the cardiovascular system and digestive tract; completion of the respiratory disease standardized questionnaire in Appendix D, Part 1; a chest roentgenogram (posterior-anterior 14 x 17 inches); pulmonary function tests to include forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiratory volume at 1 second ($FEV_{1.0}$); and any additional tests deemed appropriate by the examining physician. Interpretation and classification of chest roentgenograms shall be conducted in accordance with Appendix E.

(3) Periodic examinations.

(i) Periodic medical examinations shall be made available annually.

(ii) The scope of the medical examination shall be in conformance with the protocol established in paragraph (l)(2)(ii), except that the frequency of chest roentgenograms shall be conducted in accordance with Table 2, and the abbreviated standardized questionnaire contained in Appendix D, Part 2, shall be administered to the employee.

TABLE 2.—FREQUENCY OF CHEST ROENTGENOGRAMS

Years since first exposure	Age of employee		
	15 to 35	35+ to 45	45+
0 to 10	Every 5 years	Every 5 years	Every 5 years
10+	Every 5 years	Every 2 years	Every 1 year

(4) Termination of employment examinations.

(i) The employer shall provide, or make available, a termination of employment medical examination for any employee who has been exposed to airborne concentrations of fibers of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals at or above the action level and/or excursion limit.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(ii) The medical examination shall be in accordance with requirements of the periodic examinations stipulated in paragraph (l)(3) of this section, and shall be given within 30 calendar days before or after the date of termination of employment.

(5) Recent examinations. No medical examination is required of any employee, if adequate records show that the employee has been examined in accordance with any of the preceding paragraphs [(l)(2)-(l)(4)] within the past 1 year period.

(6) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide the following information to the examining physician:

(i) A copy of this standard and Appendices D and E.

(ii) A description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposure.

(iii) The employee's representative exposure level or anticipated exposure level.

(iv) A description of any personal protective and respiratory equipment used or to be used.

(v) Information from previous medical examinations of the affected employee that is not otherwise available to the examining physician.

(7) Physician's written opinion.

(i) The employer shall obtain a written signed opinion from the examining physician. This written opinion shall contain the results of the medical examination and shall include:

(a) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical conditions that would place the employee at an increased risk of material health impairment from exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite;

(b) Any recommended limitations on the employee or upon the use of personal protective equipment such as clothing or respirators; and

(c) A statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and of any medical conditions resulting from asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite exposure that require further explanation or treatment.

(ii) The employer shall instruct the physician not to reveal in the written opinion given to the employer specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite.

(iii) The employer shall provide a copy of the physician's written opinion to the affected employee within 30 days from its receipt.

(m) Recordkeeping.

(1) Exposure measurements.

(i) The employer shall keep an accurate record of all measurements taken to monitor employee exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite as prescribed in paragraph (d) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include at least the following information:

(a) The date of measurement;

(b) The operation involving exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite which is being monitored;

(c) Sampling and analytical methods used and evidence of their accuracy;

(d) Number, duration, and results of samples taken;

(e) Type of respiratory protective devices worn, if any; and

(f) Name, social security number and exposure of the employees whose exposure are represented.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for a least thirty (30) years, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(2) Objective data for exempted operations.

(i) Where the processing, use, or handling of products made from or containing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite is exempted from other requirements of this section under paragraph (d)(2)(iii) of this section, the employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of objective data reasonably relied upon in support of the exemption.

(ii) The record shall include at least the following:

(a) The product qualifying for exemption;

(b) The source of the objective data;

(c) The testing protocol, results of testing, and/or analysis of the material for the release of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite;

(d) A description of the operation exempted and how the data support the exemption; and

(e) Other data relevant to the operations, materials, processing, or employee exposures covered by the exemption.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for the duration of the employer's reliance upon such objective data.

Note.—The employer may utilize the services of competent organizations such as industry trade associations and employee associations to maintain the records required by this section.

(3) Medical surveillance.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee subject to medical surveillance by paragraph (l)(1)(i) of this section, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(ii) The record shall include at least the following information:

(a) The name and social security number of the employee;

(b) Physician's written opinions;

(c) Any employee medical complaints related to exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite; and

(d) A copy of the information provided to the physician as required by paragraph (l)(6) of this section.

(iii) The employer shall ensure that this record is maintained for the duration of employment plus thirty (30) years, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(4) Training. The employer shall maintain all employee training records for one (1) year beyond the last date of employment of that employee.

(5) Availability.

(i) The employer, upon written request, shall make all records required to be maintained by this section available to the Assistant Secretary and the Director for examination and copying.

(ii) The employer, upon request shall make any exposure records required by paragraph (m)(1) of this section available for examination and copying to affected employees, former employees, designated representatives and the Assistant Secretary, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20(a)–(e) and (g)–(i).

(iii) The employer, upon request, shall make employee medical records required by paragraph (m)(2) of this section available for examination and copying to the subject employee, to anyone having the specific written consent of the subject employee, and the Assistant Secretary, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(6) Transfer of records.

(i) The employer shall comply with the requirements concerning transfer of records set forth in 29 CFR 1910.20(h).

(ii) Whenever the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records for the prescribed period, the employer shall notify the Director at least 90 days prior to disposal of records and, upon request, transmit them to the Director.

(n) Observation of monitoring.

(1) Employee observation. The employer shall provide affected employees or their designated representatives an opportunity to observe any monitoring of employee exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite conducted in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Observation procedures. When observation of the monitoring of employee exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, or actinolite requires entry into an area where the use of protective clothing or equipment is required, the observer shall be provided with and be required to use such clothing and equipment and shall comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(o) Dates.

(1) Effective date. The requirements in the amended paragraphs in this section which pertain only to or are triggered by the excursion limit shall become effective October 14, 1988.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(2) Start-up dates. All obligations of this standard commence on the effective date except as follows:

(i) Exposure monitoring. Initial monitoring required by paragraph (d)(2) of this section shall be completed as soon as possible but no later than October 20, 1986.

(ii) Regulated areas. Regulated areas required to be established by paragraph (e) of this section as a result of initial monitoring shall be set up as soon as possible after the results of that monitoring are known and not later than November 17, 1986.

(iii) Respiratory protection. Respiratory protection required by paragraph (g) of this section shall be provided as soon as possible but no later than the following schedule:

(a) Employees whose 8-hour TWA exposure exceeds 2 fibers/cc—July 21, 1986.

(b) Employees whose 8-hour TWA exposure exceeds the PEL but is less than 2 fibers/cc—November 17, 1986.

(c) Powered air-purifying respirators provided under paragraph (g)(2)(ii)—January 16, 1987.

(iv) Hygiene and lunchroom facilities. Construction plans for changerooms, showers, lavatories, and lunchroom facilities shall be completed no later than January 16, 1987; and these facilities shall be constructed and in use no later than July 20, 1987. However, if as part of the compliance plan it is predicted by an independent engineering firm that engineering controls and work practices will reduce exposures below the permissible exposure limit by July 20, 1988, for affected employees, then such facilities need not be completed until 1 year after the engineering controls are completed, if such controls have not in fact succeeded in reducing exposure to below the permissible exposure limit.

(v) Employee information and training. Employee information and training required by paragraph (j)(5) of this section shall be provided as soon as possible but no later than October 20, 1986.

(vi) Medical surveillance. Medical examinations required by paragraph (l) of this section shall be provided as soon as possible but no later than November 17, 1986.

(vii) Compliance program. Written compliance programs required by paragraph (f)(2) of this section as a result of initial monitoring shall be completed and available for inspection and copying as soon as possible but no later than July 20, 1987.

(viii) Methods of compliance. The engineering and work practice controls as required by paragraph (f)(1) shall be implemented as soon as possible but no later than July 20, 1988.

(3) Start-up dates for excursion limit. Compliance with the excursion limit requirements in this section shall be as follows:

(i) Paragraphs (c), (d), (e), (g), (h), (j), (k), (l), (m) of this section, shall be complied with by December 13, 1988.

(ii) Paragraph (f) of this section, shall be complied with by March 13, 1989.

(iii) Paragraph (i) of this section, shall be complied with by September 14, 1989.

[53 F.R. 35627, September 14, 1988]

(p) Appendices.

(1) Appendices A, C, D, and E to this section are incorporated as part of this section and the contents of these Appendices are mandatory.

(2) Appendices B, F, G and H to this section are informational and are not intended to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed or to detract from any existing obligations.

APPENDIX A TO 1910.1001—OSHA REFERENCE METHOD—MANDATORY

This mandatory appendix specifies the procedure for analyzing air samples for asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite and specifies quality control procedures that must be implemented by laboratories performing the analysis. The sampling and analytical methods described below represent the elements of the available monitoring methods (such as the NIOSH 7400 method) which OSHA considers to be essential to achieve adequate employee exposure monitoring while allowing employers to use methods that are already established within their organizations. All employers who are required to conduct air monitoring under paragraph (d) of the standard are required to utilize analytical laboratories that use this procedure, or an equivalent method, for collecting and analyzing samples.

Sampling and Analytical Procedure

1. The sampling medium for air samples shall be mixed cellulose ester filter membranes. These shall be designated by the manufacturer as suitable for asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite counting. See below for rejection of blanks.

2. The preferred collection device shall be the 25-mm diameter cassette with an open-faced 50-mm electrically conductive extension cowl. The 37-mm cassette may be used if necessary but only if written justification for the need to use the 37-mm filter cassette accompanies the sample results in the employee's exposure monitoring record.

3. An air flow rate between .05 liter/min and 2.5 liters/min shall be selected for the 25-mm cassette. If the 37-mm cassette is used, an air flow rate between 1 liter/min and 2.5 liter/min shall be selected.

4. Where possible, a sufficient air volume for each air sample shall be collected to yield between 100 and 1,300 fibers per square millimeter on the membrane filter. If a filter darkens in appearance or if loose dust is seen on the filter, a second sample shall be started.

5. Ship the samples in a rigid container with sufficient packing material to prevent dislodging the collected fibers. Packing material that has a high electrostatic charge on its surface (e.g., expanded polystyrene) cannot be used because such material can cause loss of fibers to the sides of the cassette.

6. Calibrate each personal sampling pump before and after use with a representative filter cassette installed between the pump and the calibration devices.

7. Personal samples shall be taken in the "breathing zone" of the employee (i.e., attached to or near the collar or lapel near the worker's face).

8. Fiber counts shall be made by positive phase contrast using a microscope with an 8 to 10 X eyepiece and a 40 to 45 X objective for a total magnification of approximately 400 X and a numerical aperture of 0.65 to 0.75. The microscope shall also be fitted with a green or blue filter.

9. The microscope shall be fitted with a Walton-Beckett eyepiece graticule calibrated for a field diameter of 100 micrometers (+/−2 micrometers).

10. The phase-shift detection limit of the microscope shall be about 3 degrees measured using the HSE phase shift test slide as outlined below.

a. Place the test slide on the microscope stage and center it under the phase objective.

b. Bring the blocks of grooved lines into focus.

Note.—The slide consists of seven sets of grooved lines (ca. 20 grooves to each block) in descending order of visibility from sets 1 to 7, seven being the least visible. The requirements for asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite counting are that the microscope optics must resolve the grooved lines in set 3 completely, although they may appear somewhat faint, and that the grooved lines in sets 6 and 7 must be invisible. Sets 4 and 5 must be at least partially visible but may vary slightly in visibility between microscopes. A microscope that fails to meet these requirements has either too low or too high a resolution to be used for asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite counting.

c. If the image deteriorates, clean and adjust the microscope optics. If the problem persists, consult the microscope manufacturer.

11. Each set of samples taken will include 10 percent blanks or a minimum of 2 blanks. The blank results shall be averaged and subtracted from the analytical results before reporting. Any samples represented by a blank having a fiber count in excess of 7 fibers/100 fields shall be rejected.

12. The samples shall be mounted by the acetone/triacetin method or a method with an equivalent index of refraction and similar clarity.

13. Observe the following counting rules.

a. Count only fibers equal to or longer than 5 micrometers. Measure the length of curved fibers along the curve.

b. In the absence of other information, count all particles as asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite that have a length-to-width ratio (aspect ratio) of 3:1 or greater.

c. Fibers lying entirely within the boundary of the Walton-Beckett graticule field shall receive a count of 1. Fibers crossing the boundary once, having one end within the circle, shall receive the count of one half (½). Do not count any fiber that crosses the graticule boundary more than once. Reject and do not count any other fibers even though they may be visible outside the graticule area.

d. Count bundles of fibers as one fiber unless individual fibers can be identified by observing both ends of an individual fiber.

e. Count enough graticule fields to yield 100 fibers. Count a minimum of 20 fields; stop counting at 100 fields regardless of fiber count.

14. Blind recounts shall be conducted at the rate of 10 percent.

Quality Control Procedures

1. Intralaboratory program. Each laboratory and/or each company with more than one microscopist counting slides shall establish a statistically designed quality assurance program involving blind recounts and comparisons between microscopists to monitor the variability of counting by each microscopist and between microscopists. In a company with more than one laboratory, the program shall include all laboratories and shall also evaluate the laboratory-to-laboratory variability.

2. Interlaboratory program. Each laboratory analyzing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite samples for compliance determination shall implement an interlaboratory quality assurance program that as a minimum includes participation of at least two other independent laboratories. Each laboratory shall participate in round robin testing at least once every 6 months with at least all the other laboratories in its interlaboratory quality assurance group. Each laboratory shall submit slides typical of its own work load for use in this program. The round robin shall be designed and results analyzed using appropriate statistical methodology.

3. All individuals performing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite analysis must have taken the NIOSH course for sampling and evaluating airborne asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite dust or an equivalent course.

4. When the use of different microscopes contributes to differences between counters and laboratories, the effect of the different microscope shall be evaluated and the microscope shall be replaced, as necessary.

5. Current results of these quality assurance programs shall be posted in each laboratory to keep the microscopists informed.

APPENDIX B TO 1910.1001—DETAILED PROCEDURE FOR ASBESTOS TREMOLITE, ANTHOPHYLLITE, AND ACTINOLITE SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS—NON-MANDATORY

This appendix contains a detailed procedure for sampling and analysis and includes those critical elements specified in Appendix A. Employers are not required to use this procedure, but they are required to use Appendix A. The purpose of Appendix B is to provide a detailed step-by-step sampling and analysis procedure that conforms to the elements specified in Appendix A. Since this procedure may also standardize the analysis and reduce variability. OSHA encourages employers to use this appendix.

Asbestos, Tremolite, Anthophyllite, and Actinolite Sampling and Analysis Method

Technique: Microscopy, Phase Contrast
Analyte: Fibers (manual count)
Sample Preparation: Acetone/triacetin method
Calibration: Phase-shift detection limit about 3 degrees
Range: 100 to 1300 fibers/mm^2 filter area
Estimated limit of detection: 7 fibers/mm^2 filter area
Sampler: Filter (0.8–1.2 um mixed cellulose ester membrane, 25-mm diameter)
Flow rate: 0.5 l/min to 2.5 l/min (25-mm cassette) 1.01 l/min to 2.5 l/min (37-mm cassette)
Sample volume: Adjust to obtain 100 to 1300 fibers/mm^2
Shipment: Routine
Sample stability: Indefinite
Blanks: 10% of samples (minimum 2)
Standard analytical error: 0.25.

Applicability: The working range is 0.02 f/cc (1920–L air sample) to 1.25 f/cc (400-L air sample). The method gives an index of airborne asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite fibers but may be used for other materials such as fibrous glass by inserting suitable parameters into the counting rules. The method does not differentiate between asbestos, tremolite, anthophylite, and actinolite and other fibers. Asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite fibers less than ca. 0.25 um diameter will not be detected by this method.

Interferences: Any other airborne fiber may interfere since all particles meeting the counting criteria are counted. Chainlike particles may appear fibrous. High levels of nonfibrous dust particles may obscure fibers in the field of view and raise the detection limit.

Reagents: 1. Acetone. 2. Triacetin (glycerol triacetate), reagent grade.

Special precautions: Acetone is an extremely flammable liquid and precautions must be taken not to ignite it. Heating of acetone must be done in a ventilated laboratory fume hood using a flameless, spark-free heat source.

Equipment:

1. Collection device: 25-mm cassette with 50-mm extension cowl is revised to read "50-mm electrically conductive extension cowl" with cellulose ester filter, 0.8 to 1.2 mm pore size and backup pad.

Note: Analyze representative filters for fiber background before use and discard the filter lot if more than 5 fibers/100 fields are found.

2. Personal sampling pump, greater than or equal to 0.5-L/min. with flexible connecting tubing.

3. Microscope, phase contrast, with green or blue filter, 8 to 10X eyepiece, and 40 to 45X phase objective (total magnification ca 400X; numerical aperture = 0.65 to 0.75.

4. Slides, glass, single-frosted, pre-cleaned, 25 × 75 mm.

5. Cover slips, 25 × 25 mm, no. 1½ unless otherwise specified by microscope manufacturer.

6. Knife, No. 1 surgical steel, curved blade.

7. Tweezers.

8. Flask. Guth-type, insulated neck, 250 to 500 mL (with single-holed rubber stopper and elbow-jointed glass tubing, 16 to 22 cm long).

9. Hotplate, spark-free, stirring type; heating mantle; or infrared lamp and magnetic stirrer.

10. Syringe, hypodermic, with 22-gauge needle.

11. Graticule. Walton-Beckett type with 100 um diameter circular field at the specimen plane (area = 0.00785 mm^2). (Type G-22).

Note:—the graticule is custom-made for each microscope.

12. HSE/NPL phase contrast test slide, Mark II.

13. Telescope, ocular phase-ring centering.

14. Stage micrometer (0.01 mm divisions).

Sampling

1. Calibrate each personal sampling pump with a representative sampler in line.

2. Fasten the sampler to the worker's lapel as close as possible to the worker's mouth. Remove the top cover from the end of the cowl extension (open face) and orient face down. Wrap the joint between the extender and the monitor's body with shrink tape to prevent air leaks.

3. Submit at least two blanks (or 10% of the total samples, whichever is greater) for each set of samples. Remove the caps from the field blank cassettes and store the caps and cassettes in a clean area (bag or box) during the sampling period. Replace the caps in the cassettes when sampling is completed.

4. Sample at 0.5 L/min or greater. Do not exceed 1 mg total dust loading on the filter. Adjust sampling flow rate, Q (L/min), and time to produce a fiber density, E (fibers/mm^2), of 100 to 1300 fibers/m^2 (3.85×10^4 to 5×10^5 fibers per 25-mm filter with effective collection area (A_c = 385 mm^2)] for optimum counting precision (see step 21 below). Calculate the minimum sampling time. $t_{minimum}$ (min) at the action level (one-half of the current standard), L (f/cc) of the fibrous aerosol being sampled:

$$t_{minimum} = \frac{(Ac)(E)}{(Q)(L)10^3}$$

5. Remove the field monitor at the end of sampling, replace the plastic top cover and small end caps, and store the monitor.

6. Ship the samples in a rigid container with sufficient packing material to prevent jostling or damage.

Note.—Do not use polystyrene foam in the shipping container because of electrostatic forces which may cause fiber loss from the sample filter.

Sample Preparation

Note.—The object is to produce samples with a smooth (non-grainy) background in a medium with a refractive index equal to or less than 1.46. The method below collapses the filter for easier focusing and produces permanent mounts which are useful for quality control and interlaboratory comparison. Other mounting techniques meeting the above criteria may also be used, e.g., the nonpermanent field mounting technique used in P & CAM 239.

7. Ensure that the glass slides and cover slips are free of dust and fibers.

8. Place 40 to 60 ml of acetone into a Guth-type flask. Stopper the flask with a single-hole rubber stopper through which a glass tube extends 5 to 8 cm into the flask. The portion of the glass tube that exits the top of the stopper (8 to 10 cm) is bent downward in an elbow that makes an angle of 20 to 30 degrees with the horizontal.

9. Place the flask in a stirring hotplate or wrap in a heating mantle. Heat the acetone gradually to its boiling temperature (ca. 58 °C).

Caution.—The acetone vapor must be generated in a ventilated fume hood away from all open flames and spark sources. Alternate heating methods can be used, providing no open flame or sparks are present.

10. Mount either the whole sample filter or a wedge cut from the sample filter on a clean glass slide.

a. Cut wedges of ca. 25 percent of the filter area with a curved-blade steel surgical knife using a rocking motion to prevent tearing.

b. Place the filter or wedge, dust side up, on the slide. Static electricity will usually keep the filter on the slide until it is cleared.

c. Hold the glass slide supporting the filter approximately 1 to 2 cm from the glass tube port where the acetone vapor is escaping from the heated flask. The acetone vapor stream should cause a condensation spot on the glass slide ca. 2 to 3 cm in diameter. Move the glass slide gently in the vapor stream. The filter should clear in 2 to 5 sec. If the filter curls, distorts, or is otherwise rendered unusable, the vapor stream is probably not strong enough. Periodically wipe the outlet port with tissue to prevent liquid acetone dripping onto the filter.

d. Using the hypodermic syringe with a 22-gauge needle, place 1 to 2 drops of triacetin on the filter. Gently lower a clean 25-mm square cover slip down onto the filter at a slight angle to reduce the possibility of forming bubbles. If too many bubbles form or the amount of triacetin is insufficient, the cover slip may become detached within a few hours.

e. Glue the edges of the cover slip to the glass slide using a lacquer or nail polish.

Note.—If clearing is slow, the slide preparation may be heated on a hotplate (surface temperature 50 °C) for 15 min to hasten clearing. Counting may proceed immediately after clearing and mounting are completed.

Calibration and Quality Control

11. Calibration of the Walton-Beckett graticule. The diameter, d_c(mm), of the circular counting area and the disc diameter must be specified when ordering the graticule.

a. Insert any available graticule into the eyepiece and focus so that the graticule lines are sharp and clear.

b. Set the appropriate interpupillary distance and, if applicable, reset the binocular head adjustment so that the magnification remains constant.

c. Install the 40 to 45 × phase objective.

d. Place a stage micrometer on the microscope object stage and focus the microscope on the graduate lines.

e. Measure the magnified grid length, L_o (mm), using the stage micrometer.

f. Remove the graticule from the microscope and measure its actual grid length, L_a (mm). This can best be accomplished by using a stage fitted with verniers.

g. Calculate the circle diameter, d_c (mm), for the Walton-Beckett graticule:

$$d_c = \frac{L_a \times D}{L_o}$$

Example.—If L_o = 108 um, L_a = 2.93 mm and D = 100 um, then d_c = 2.71 mm.

h. Check the field diameter. D (acceptable range 100 mm ± 2 mm) with a stage micrometer upon receipt of the graticule from the manufacturer. Determine field area (mm^2).

12. Microscope adjustments. Follow the manufacturer's instructions and also the following:

a. Adjust the light source for even illumination across the field of view at the condenser iris.

Note.—Kohler illumination is preferred, where available.

b. Focus on the particulate material to be examined.

c. Make sure that the field iris is in focus, centered on the sample, and open only enough to fully illuminate the field of view.

d. Use the telescope ocular supplied by the manufacturer to ensure that the phase rings (annular diaphragm and phase-shifting elements) are concentric.

13. Check the phase-shift detection limit of the microscope periodically.

a. Remove the HSE/NPL phase-contrast test slide from its shipping container and center it under the phase objective.

b. Bring the blocks of grooved lines into focus.

Note.—The slide consists of seven sets of grooves (ca. 20 grooves to each block) in descending order of visibility from sets 1 to 7. The requirements for counting are that the microscope optics must resolve the grooved lines in set 3 completely, although they may appear somewhat faint, and that the grooved lines in sets 6 to 7 must be invisible. Sets 4 and 5 must be at least partially visible but may vary slightly in visibility between microscopes. A microscope which fails to meet these requirements has either too low or too high a resolution to be used for asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite counting.

c. If the image quality deteriorates, clean the microscope optics and, if the problem persists, consult the microscope manufacturer.

14. Quality control of fiber counts.

a. Prepare and count field blanks along with the field samples. Report the count on each blank. Calculate the mean of the field blank counts and subtract this value from each sample count before reporting the results.

Note 1.—The identity of the blank filters should be unknown to the counter until all counts have been completed.

Note 2.—If a field blank yields fiber counts greater than 7 fibers/100 fields, report possible contamination of the samples.

b. Perform blind recounts by the same counter on 10 percent of filters counted (slides relabeled by a person other than the counter).

15. Use the following test to determine whether a pair of counts on the same filter should be rejected because of possible bias. This statistic estimates the counting repeatability at the 95% confidence level. Discard the sample if the difference between the two counts exceeds $2.77(F)s_r$, where F = average of the two fiber counts and s_r = relative standard deviation, which should be derived by each laboratory based on historical in-house data.

Note.—If a pair of counts is rejected as a result of this test, recount the remaining samples in the set and test the new counts against the first counts. Discard all rejected paired counts.

16. Enroll each new counter in a training course that compares performance of counters on a variety of samples using this procedure.

Note.—To ensure good reproducibility, all laboratories engaged in asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite counting are required to participate in the Proficiency Analytical Testing (PAT) Program and should routinely participate with other asbestos, tremolite anthophyllite, and actinolite fiber counting laboratories in the exchange of field samples to compare performance of counters.

Measurement

17. Place the slide on the mechanical stage of the calibrated microscope with the center of the filter under the objective lens. Focus the microscope on the plane of the filter.

18. Regularly check phase-ring alignment and Kohler illumination.

19. The following are the counting rules:

a. Count only fibers longer than 5 um. Measure the length of curved fibers along the curve.

b. Count only fibers with a length-to-width ratio equal to or greater than 3:1.

c. For fibers that cross the boundary of the graticule field, do the following:

1. Count any fiber longer than 5 um that lies entirely within the graticule area.

2. Count as ½ fiber any fiber with only one end lying within the graticule area.

3. Do not count any fiber that crosses the graticule boundary more than once.

4. Reject and do not count all other fibers.

d. Count bundles of fibers as one fiber unless individual fibers can be identified by observing both ends of a fiber.

e. Count enough graticule fields to yield 100 fibers. Count a minimum of 20 fields. Stop at 100 fields regardless of fiber count.

20. Start counting from one end of the filter and progress along a radial line to the other end, shift either up or down on the filter, and continue in the reverse direction. Select fields randomly by looking away from the eyepiece briefly while advancing the mechanical stage. When an agglomerate covers ca. ⅙ or more of the field of view, reject the field and select another. Do not report rejected fields in the number of total fields counted.

Note.—When counting a field, continuously scan a range of focal planes by moving the fine focus knob to detect very fine fibers which have become embedded in the filter. The small-diameter fibers will be very faint but are an important contribution to the total count.

Calculations

21. Calculate and report fiber density on the filter E (fibers/mm^2); by dividing the total fiber count. F; minus the mean field blank count B, by the number of fields, n; and the field area. A_f (0.00785 mm^2 for a properly calibrated Walton-Beckett graticule):

$$E = \frac{(F/n_f)-(B/n_b)}{A_f} \text{ fibers/mm}^2$$

where:
n_f = number of fields in submission sample
n_b = number of fields in blank sample

22. Calculate the concentration, C (f/cc), fibers in the air volume sampled, V (L), using the effective collection area of the filter, A_e (385 mm^2 for a 25-mm filter):

$$C = \frac{(E)(Ac)}{V(10^3)}$$

Note.—Periodically check and adjust the value of A_e, if necessary.

APPENDIX C TO 1910.1001—QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE FIT TESTING PROCEDURES—MANDATORY

Qualitative Fit Test Protocols

I. Isoamyl Acetate Protocol.

A. Odor Threshold Screening

1. Three 1-liter glass jars with metal lids (e.g., Mason or Bell jars) are required.

2. Odor-free water (e.g., distilled or spring water) at approximately 25°C shall be used for the solutions.

3. The isoamyl acetate (IAA) (also known as isopentyl acetate) stock solution is prepared by adding 1 cc of pure IAA to 800 cc of odor free water in a 1-liter jar and shaking for 30 seconds. This solution shall be prepared new at least weekly.

4. The screening test shall be conducted in a room separate from the room used for actual fit testing. The two rooms shall be well ventilated but shall not be connected to the same recirculating ventilation system.

5. The odor test solution is prepared in a second jar by placing 0.4 cc of the stock solution into 500 cc of odor free water using a clean dropper or pipette. Shake for 30 seconds and allow to stand for two to three minutes so that the IAA concentration above the liquid may reach equilibrium. This solution may be used for only one day.

6. A test blank is prepared in a third jar by adding 500 cc of odor free water.

7. The odor test and test blank jars shall be labelled 1 and 2 for jar identification. If the labels are put on the lids they can be periodically peeled, dried off and switched to maintain the integrity of the test.

8. The following instructions shall be typed on a card and placed on the table in front of the two test jars (i.e. 1 and 2): "The purpose of this test is to determine if you can smell banana oil at a low concentration. The two bottles in front of you contain water. One of these bottles also contains a small amount of banana oil. Be sure the covers are on tight, then shake each bottle for two seconds. Unscrew the lid of each bottle, one at a time, and sniff at the mouth of the bottle. Indicate to the test conductor which bottle contains banana oil."

9. The mixtures used in the IAA odor detection test shall be prepared in an area separate from where the test is performed, in order to prevent olfactory fatigue in the subject.

10. If the test subject is unable to correctly identify the jar containing the odor test solution, the IAA qualitative fit test may not be used.

11. If the test subject correctly identifies the jar containing the odor test solution, the test subject may proceed to respirator selection and fit testing.

B. Respirator Selection

1. The test subject shall be allowed to pick the most comfortable respirator from a selection including respirators of various sizes from different manufacturers. The selection shall include at least five sizes of elastomeric half facepieces, from at least two manufacturers.

2. The selection process shall be conducted in a room separate from the fit-test chamber to prevent odor fatigue. Prior to the selection process, the test subject shall be shown how to put on a respirator, how it should be positioned on the face, how to set strap tension and how to determine a "comfortable" respirator. A mirror shall be available to assist the subject in evaluating the fit and positioning of the respirator. This instruction may not

constitute the subject's formal training on respirator use, as it is only a review.

3. The test subject should understand that the employee is being asked to select the respirator which provides the most comfortable fit. Each respirator represents a different size and shape and, if fit properly and used properly will provide adequate protection.

4. The test subject holds each facepiece up to the face and eliminates those which obviously do not give a comfortable fit. Normally, selection will begin with a half-mask and if a good fit cannot be found, the subject will be asked to test the full facepiece respirators. (A small percentage of users will not be able to wear any half-mask.)

5. The more comfortable facepieces are noted; the most comfortable mask is donned and *worn at least five minutes* to assess comfort. All donning and adjustments of the facepiece shall be performed by the test subject without assistance from the test conductor or other person. Assistance in assessing comfort can be given by discussing the points in #6 below. If the test subject is not familiar with using a particular respirator, the test subject shall be directed to don the mask several times and to adjust the straps each time to become adept at setting proper tension on the straps.

6. Assessment of comfort shall include reviewing the following points with the test subject and allowing the test subject adequate time to determine the comfort of the respirator:

- Positioning of mask on nose.
- Room for eye protection.
- Room to talk.
- Positioning mask on face and cheeks.

7. The following criteria shall be used to help determine the adequacy of the respirator fit:

- Chin properly placed.
- Strap tension.
- Fit across nose bridge.
- Distance from nose to chin.
- Tendency to slip.
- Self-observation in mirror.

8. The test subject shall conduct the conventional negative and positive-pressure fit checks (e.g. see ANSI Z88.2 1980). Before conducting the negative- or positive-pressure test the subject shall be told to "seat" the mask by rapidly moving the head from side-to-side and up and down, while taking a few deep breaths.

9. The test subject is now ready for fit testing.

10. After passing the fit test, the test subject shall be questioned again regarding the comfort of the respirator. If it has become uncomfortable, another model of respirator shall be tried.

11. The employee shall be given the opportunity to select a different facepiece and be retested if the chosen facepiece becomes increasingly uncomfortable at any time.

C. Fit Test

1. The fit test chamber shall be similar to a clear 55 gal drum liner suspened inverted over a 2 foot diameter frame, so that the top of the chamber is about 6 inches above the test subject's head. The inside top center of the chamber shall have a small hook attached.

2. Each respirator used for the fitting and fit testing shall be equipped with organic vapor cartridges or offer protection against organic vapors. The cartridges or masks shall be changed at least weekly.

3. After selecting, donning, and properly adjusting a respirator, the test subject shall wear it to the fit testing room. This room shall be separate from the room used for odor threshold screening and respirator selection, and shall be well ventilated, as by an exhaust fan or lab hood, to prevent general room contamination.

4. A copy of the following test exercises and rainbow passage shall be taped to the inside of the test chamber:

Test Exercises

i. Breathe normally.

ii. Breathe deeply. Be certain breaths are *deep* and *regular*.

iii. Turn head all the way from one side to the other. Inhale on each side. Be certain movement is complete. Do not bump the respirator against the shoulders.

iv. Nod head up-and-down. Inhale when head is in the full up position (looking toward ceiling). Be certain motions are complete and made about every second. Do not bump the respirator on the chest.

v. Talking. Talk aloud and slowly for several minutes. The following paragraph is called the Rainbow Passage. Reading it will result in a wide range of facial movements, and thus be useful to satisfy this requirement. Alternative passages which serve the same purpose may also be used.

vi. Jogging in place.

vii. Breathe normally.

Rainbow Passage

When the sunlight strikes raindrops in the air, they act like a prism and form a rainbow. The rainbow is a division of white light into many beautiful colors. These take the shape of a long round arch, with its path high above, and its two ends apparently beyond the horizon. There is, according to legend, a boiling pot of gold at one end. People look but no one ever finds it. When a man looks for something beyond reach, his friends say he is looking for the pot of gold at the end of the rainbow.

5. Each test subject shall wear the respirator for at least 10 minutes before starting the fit test.

6. Upon entering the test chamber, the test subject shall be given a 6 inch by 5 inch piece of paper towel or other porous absorbent single ply material. folded in half and wetted with

three-quarters of one cc of pure IAA. The test subject shall hang the wet towel on the hook at the top of the chamber.

7. Allow two minutes for the IAA test concentration to be reached before starting the fit-test exercises. This would be an appropriate time to talk with the test subject, to explain the fit test, the importance of cooperation, the purpose for the head exercises, or to demonstrate some of the exercises.

8. Each exercise described in #4 above shall be performed for at least one minute.

9. If at any time during the test, the subject detects the banana-like odor of IAA, the test has failed. The subject shall quickly exit from the test chamber and leave the test area to avoid olfactory fatigue.

10. If the test is failed, the subject shall return to the selection room and remove the respirator, repeat the odor sensitivity test, select and put on another respirator, return to the test chamber, and again begin the procedure described in c(4) through c(8) above. The process continues until a respirator that fits well has been found. Should the odor sensitivity test be failed, the subject shall wait about 5 minutes before retesting. Odor sensitivity will usually have returned by this time.

11. If a person cannot pass the fit test described above wearing a half-mask respirator from the available selection, full facepiece models must be used.

12. When a respirator is found that passes the test, the subject breaks the faceseal and takes a breath before exiting the chamber. This is to assure that the reason the test subject is not smelling the IAA is the good fit of the respirator facepiece seal and not olfactory fatigue.

13. When the test subject leaves the chamber, the subject shall remove the saturated towel and return it to the person conducting the test. To keep the area from becoming contaminated, the used towels shall be kept in a self-sealing bag so there is no significant IAA concentration buildup in the test chamber during subsequent tests.

14. At least two facepieces shall be selected for the IAA test protocol. The test subject shall be given the opportunity to wear them for one week to choose the one which is more comfortable to wear.

15. Persons who have successfully passed this fit test with a half-mask respirator may be assigned the use of the test respirator in atmospheres with up to 10 times the PEL of airborne asbestos.

16. The test shall not be conducted if there is any hair growth between the skin and the facepiece sealing surface.

17. If hair growth or apparel interfere with a satisfactory fit, then they shall be altered or removed so as to eliminate interference and allow a satisfactory fit. If a satisfactory fit is still not attained, the test subject must use a positive-pressure respirator such as powered air-purifying respirators, supplied air respirator, or self-contained breathing apparatus.

18. If a test subject exhibits difficulty in breathing during the tests, she or he shall be referred to a physician trained in respirator diseases or pulmonary medicine to determine whether the test subject can wear a respirator while performing her or his duties.

19. Qaulitative fit testing shall be repeated at lest every six months.

20. In addition, because the sealing of the respirator may be affected, qualitative fit testing shall be repeated immediately when the test subject has a:

(1) Weight change of 20 pounds or more.

(2) Significant facial scarring in the area of the facepiece seal.

(3) Significant dental changes; i.e., multiple extractions without prothesis, or acquiring dentures.

(4) Reconstructive or cosmetic surgery, or

(5) Any other condition that may interfere with facepiece sealing.

D. Recordkeeping

A summary of all test results shall be maintained in each office for 3 years. The summary shall include:

(1) Name of test subject.

(2) Date of testing.

(3) Name of the test conductor.

(4) Respirators selected (indicate manufacturer, model, size and approval number).

(5) Testing agent.

II. Saccharin Solution Aerosol Protocol

A. Respirator Selection

Respirators shall be selected as described in section IB (respirator selection) above, except that each respirator shall be equipped with a particulate filter.

B. Taste Threshold Screening

1. An enclosure about head and shoulders shall be used for threshold screening (to determine if the individual can taste saccharin) and for fit testing. The enclosure shall be approximately 12 inches in diameter by 14 inches tall with at least the front clear to allow free movement of the head when a respirator is worn.

2. The test enclosure shall have a three-quarter inch hole in front of the test subject's nose and mouth area to accommodate the nebulizer nozzle.

3. The entire screening and testing procedure shall be explained to the test subject prior to conducting the screening test.

4. During the threshold screening test, the test subject shall don the test enclosure and breathe with open mouth with tongue extended.

5. Using a DeVilbiss Model 40 Inhalation Medication Nebulizer or equivalent, the test conductor shall spray the threshold check solution into the enclosure. This nebulizer shall be clearly marked to distinguish it from the fit test solution nebulizer.

6. The threshold check solution consists of 0.83 grams of sodium saccharin. USP in water. It can be prepared by putting 1 cc of the test solution (see C 7 below) in 100 cc of water.

7. To produce the aerosol, the nebulizer bulb is fimrly squeezed so that it collapses completely, then is released and allowed to fully expand.

8. Ten squeezes of the nebulizer bulb are repeated rapidly and then the test subject is asked whether the saccharin can be tasted.

9. If the first response is negative, ten more squeezes of the nebulizer bulb are repeated rapidly and the test subject is again asked whether the saccharin can be tasted.

10. If the second response is negative ten more squeezes are repeated rapidly and the test subject is again asked whether the saccharin can be tasted.

11. The test conductor will take note of the number of squeezes required to elicit a taste response.

12. If the saccharin is not tasted after 30 squeezes (Step 10), the saccharin fit test cannot be performed on the test subject.

13. If a taste response is elicited, the test subject shall be asked to take note of the taste for reference in the fit test.

14. Correct use of the nebulizer means that approximately 1 cc of liquid is used at a time in the nebulizer body.

15. The nebulizer shall be thoroughly rinsed in water, shaken dry, and refilled at least every four hours.

C. Fit Test

1. The test subject shall don and adjust the respirator without the assistance from any person.

2. The fit test uses the same enclosure described in IIB above.

3. Each test subject shall wear the respirator for at least 10 minutes before starting the fit test.

4. The test subject shall don the enclosure while wearing the respirator selected in section 1B above. This respirator shall be properly ajusted and equipped with a particulate filter.

5. The test subject may not eat, drink (except plain water), or chew gum for 15 minutes before the test.

6. A second DeVilbiss Model 40 Inhalation Medication Nebulizer is used to spray the fit test solution into the enclosure. This nebulizer shall be clearly marked to distinguish it from the screening test solution nebulizer.

7. The fit test solution is prepared by adding 83 grams of sodium saccharin to 100 cc of warm water.

8. As before, the test subject shall breathe with mouth open and tongue extended.

9. The nebulizer is inserted into the hole in the front of the enclosure and the fit test solution is sprayed into the enclosure using the same technique as for the taste threshold screening and the same number of squeezes required to elicit a taste response in the screening. (See B8 through B10 above).

10. After generation of the aerosol read the following instructions to the test subject. The test subject shall perform the exercises for one minute each.

i. Breathe normally.

ii. Breathe deeply. Be certain breaths are *deep* and *regular*.

iii. Turn head all the way from one side *to the other*. Be certain movement is complete. Inhale on each side. Do not bump the respirator against the shoulders.

iv. Nod head up-and-down. Be certain motions are complete. Inhale when head is in the full up position (when looking toward the ceiling). Do not bump the respirator on the chest.

v. Talking. Talk aloud and slowly for several minutes. The following paragraph is called the Rainbow Passage. Reading it will result in a wide range of facial movements, and thus be useful to satisfy this requirement. Alternative passages which serve the same purpose may also be used.

vi. Jogging in place.

vii. Breathe normally.

Rainbow Passage

When the sunlight strikes raindrops in the air, they act like a prism and form a rainbow. The rainbow is a division of white light into many beautiful colors. These take the shape of a long round arch, with its path high above, and its two ends apparently beyond the horizon. There is, according to legend, a boiling pot of gold at one end. People look, but no one ever finds it. When a man looks for something beyond his reach, his friends say he is looking for the pot of gold at the end of the rainbow.

11. At the beginning of each exercise, the aerosol concentration shall be replenished using one-half the number of squeezes as initially described in C9.

12. The test subject shall indicate to the test conductor if at any time during the fit test the taste of saccharin is detected.

13. If the saccharin is detected the fit is deemed unsatisfactory and a different respirator shall be tried.

14. At least two facepieces shall be selected by the saccharin solution aerosol test protocol. The test subject shall be given the

opportunity to wear them for one week to choose the one which is more comfortable to wear.

15. Successful completion of the test protocol shall allow the use of the half mask tested respirator in contaminated atmospheres up to 10 times the PEL of asbestos. In other words this protocol may be used to assign protection factors no higher than ten.

16. The test shall not be conducted if there is any hair growth between the skin and the facepiece sealing surface.

17. If hair growth or apparel interfere with a satisfactory fit, then they shall be altered or removed so as to eliminate interference and allow a satisfactory fit. If a satisfactory fit is still not attained, the test subject must use a positive-pressure respirator such as powered air-purifying respirators, supplied air respirator, or self-contained breathing apparatus.

18. If a test subject exhibits difficulty in breathing during the tests, she or he shall be referred to a physician trained in respirator diseases or pulmonary medicine to determine whether the test subject can wear a respirator while performing her or his duties.

19. Qualitative fit testing shall be repeated at least every six months.

20. In addition, because the sealing of the respirator may be affected, qualitative fit testing shall be repeated immediately when the test subject has a:

(1) Weight change of 20 pounds or more.

(2) Significant facial scarring in the area of the facepiece seal.

(3) Significant dental changes; i.e.; multiple extractions without prothesis, or acquiring dentures.

(4) Reconstructive or cosmetic surgery, or

(5) Any other condition that may interfere with facepiece sealing.

D. Recordkeeping

A summary of all test results shall be maintained in each office for 3 years. The summary shall include:

(1) Name of test subject.

(2) Date of testing.

(3) Name of test conductor.

(4) Respirators selected (indicate manufacturer, model, size and approval number).

(5) Testing agent.

III. Irritant Fume Protocol

A. Respirator selection

Respirators shall be selected as described in section IB above, except that each respirator shall be equipped with a high-efficiency cartridge.

B. Fit test

1. The test subject shall be allowed to smell a weak concentration of the irritant smoke to familiarize the subject with the characteristic odor.

2. The test subject shall properly don the respirator selected as above, and wear it for at least 10 minutes before starting the fit test.

3. The test conductor shall review this protocol with the test subject before testing.

4. The test subject shall perform the conventional positive pressure and negative pressure fit checks (see ANSI Z88.2 1980). Failure of either check shall be cause to select an alternate respirator.

5. Break both ends of a ventilation smoke tube containing stannic oxychloride, such as the MSA part #5645, or equivalent. Attach a short length of tubing to one end of the smoke tube. Attach the other end of the smoke tube to a low pressure air pump set to deliver 200 milliliters per minute.

6. Advise the test subject that the smoke can be irritating to the eyes and instruct the subject to keep the eyes closed while the test is performed.

7. The test conductor shall direct the stream of irritant smoke from the tube towards the faceseal area of the test subject. The person conducting the test shall begin with the tube at least 12 inches from the facepiece and gradually move to within one inch, moving around the whole perimeter of the mask.

8. The test subject shall be instructed to do the following exercises while the respirator is being challenged by the smoke. Each exercise shall be performed for one minute.

i. Breathe normally.

ii. Breathe deeply. Be certain breaths are *deep* and *regular.*

iii. Turn head all the way from one side to the other. Be certain movement is complete. Inhale on each side. Do not bump the respirator against the shoulders.

iv. Nod head up-and-down. Be certain motions are complete and made every second. Inhale when head is in the full up position (looking toward ceiling). Do not bump the respirator against the chest.

v. Talking. Talk aloud and slowly for several minutes. The following paragraph is called the Rainbow Passage. Repeating it after the test conductor (keeping eyes closed) will result in a wide range of facial movements, and thus be useful to satisfy this requirement. Alternative passages which serve the same purpose may also be used.

Rainbow Passage

When the sunlight strikes raindrops in the air, they act like a prism and form a rainbow. The rainbow is a division of white light into many beautiful colors. These take the shape of a long round arch, with its path high above, and its two ends apparently beyond the horizon. There is, according to legend, a boiling pot of gold at one end. People look, but no one ever finds it. When a man looks for something beyond his reach, his friends say he is looking for the pot of gold at the end of the rainbow.

vi. Jogging in Place.

vii. Breathe normally.

9. The test subject shall indicate to the test conductor if the irritant smoke is detected. If smoke is detected, the test conductor shall stop the test. In this case, the tested respirator is rejected and another respirator shall be selected.

10. Each test subject passing the smoke test (i.e., without detecting the smoke) shall be given a sensitivity check of smoke from the same tube to determine if the test subject reacts to the smoke. Failure to evoke a response shall void the fit test.

11. Steps B4, B9, B10 of this fit test protocol shall be performed in a location with exhaust ventilation sufficient to prevent general contamination of the testing area by the test agents.

12. At least two facepieces shall be selected by the irritant fume test protocol. The test subject shall be given the opportunity to wear them for one week to choose the one which is more comfortable to wear.

13. Respirators successfully tested by the protocol may be used in contaminated atmospheres up to ten times the PEL of asbestos.

14. The test shall not be conducted if there is any high growth between the skin and the facepiece sealing surface.

15. If hair growth or apparel intefere with a satisfactory fit, then they shall be altered or removed so as to eliminate interference and allow a satisfactory fit. If a satisfactory fit is still not attained, the test subject must use a positive-pressure respiratory such as powered air-purifying respirators, supplied air respirator, or self-contained breathing apparatus.

16. If a test subject exhibits difficulty in breathing during the tests, she or he shall be referred to a physician trained in respirator diseases or pulmonary medicine to determine whether the test subject can wear a respirator while performing her or his duties.

17. Qualitative fit testing shall be repeated at least every six months.

18. In addition, because the sealing of the respirator may be affected, qualitative fit testing shall be repeated immediately when the test subject has a:

(1) Weight change of 20 pounds or more.

(2) Significant facial scarring in the area of the facepiece seal.

(3) Significant dental changes; i.e.; multiple extractions without prothesis, or acquiring dentures.

(4) Reconstructive or cosmestic surgery, or

(5) Any other condition that may interfere with facepiece sealing.

C. **Recordkeeping**

A summary of all test results shall be maintained in each office for 3 years. The summary shall include:

(1) Name of test subject.

(2) Date of testing.

(3) Name of test conductor.

(4) Respirators selected (indicate manufacturer, model, size and approval number).

(5) Testing agent.

Quantitative Fit Test Procedures

1. *General.*

a. The method applies to the negative-pressure nonpowered air-purifying respirators only.

b. The employer shall assign one individual who shall assume the full responsibility for implementing the respirator quantitative fit test program.

2. *Definition.*

a. "Quantitative Fit Test" means the measurement of the effectiveness of a respirator seal in excluding the ambient atmosphere. The test is performed by dividing the measured concentration of challenge agent in a test chamber by the measured concentration of the challenge agent inside the respirator facepiece when the normal air purifying element has been replaced by an essentially perfect purifying element.

b. "Challenge Agent" means the air contaminant introduced into the test chamber so that its concentration inside and outside the respirator may be compared.

c. "Test Subject" means the person wearing the respirator for quantitative fit testing.

d. "Normal Standing Position" means standing erect and straight with arms down along the sides and looking straight ahead.

e. "Fit Factor" means the ratio of challenge agent concentration outside with respect to the inside of a respirator inlet covering (facepiece or enclosure).

3. *Apparatus.*

a. *Instrumentation.* Corn oil, sodium chloride or other appropriate aerosol generation, dilution, and measurement systems shall be used for quantitative fit test.

…t copy available

b. *Test chamber.* The test chamber shall be large enough to permit all test subjects to freely perform all required exercises without distributing the challenge agent concentration or the measurement apparatus. The test chamber shall be equipped and constructed so that the challenge agent is effectively isolated from the ambient air yet uniform in concentration throughout the chamber.

c. When testing air-purifying respirators, the normal filter or cartridge element shall be replaced with a high-efficiency particulate filter supplied by the same manufacturer.

d. The sampling instrument shall be selected so that a strip chart record may be made of the test showing the rise and fall of challenge agent concentration with each inspiration and expiration at fit factors of at least 2,000.

e. The combination of substitute air-purifying elements (if any), challenge agent, and challenge agent concentration in the test chamber shall be such that the test subject is not exposed in excess of PEL to the challenge agent at any time during the testing process.

f. The sampling port on the test specimen respirator shall be placed and constructed so that there is no detectable leak around the port, a free air flow, is allowed into the sampling line at all times and so there is no interference with the fit or performance of the respirator.

g. The test chamber and test set-up shall permit the person administering the test to observe one test subject inside the chamber during the test.

h. The equipment generating the challenge atmosphere shall maintain the concentration of challenge agent constant within a 10 percent variation for the duration of the test.

i. The time lag (interval between an event and its being recorded on the strip chart) of the instrumentation may not exceed 2 seconds.

j. The tubing for the test chamber atmosphere and for the respirator sampling port shall be the same diameter, length and material. It shall be kept as short as possible. The smallest diameter tubing recommended by the manufacturer shall be used.

k. The exhaust flow from the test chamber shall pass through a high-efficiency filter before release to the room.

l. When sodium chloride aerosol is used, the relative humidity inside the test chamber shall not exceed 50 percent.

4. *Procedural Requirements.*

a. The fitting of half-mask respirators should be started with those having multiple sizes and a variety of interchangeable cartridges and canisters such as the MSA Comfo II-M, North M. Survivair M, A-O M, or Scott-M. Use either of the tests outlined below to assure that the facepiece is properly adjusted.

(1) *Positive pressure test.* With the exhaust port(s) blocked, the negative pressure of slight inhalation should remain constant for several seconds.

(2) *Negative pressure test.* With the intake port(s) blocked, the negative pressure slight inhalation should remain constant for several seconds.

b. After a facepiece is adjusted, the test subject shall wear the facepiece for at least 5 minutes before conducting a qualitive test by using either of the methods described below and using the exercise regime described in 5.a., b., c., d, and e.

(1) *Isoamyl acetate test.* When using organic vapor cartridges, the test subject who can smell the odor should be unable to detect the odor of isoamyl acetate squirted into the air near the most vulnerable portions of the facepiece seal. In a location which is separated from the test area, the test subject shall be instructed to close her/his eyes during the test period. A combination cartridge or canister with organic vapor and high-efficiency filters shall be used when available for the particular mask being tested. The test subject shall be given an opportunity to smell the odor of isoamyl acetate before the test is conducted.

(2) *Irritant fume test.* When using high-efficiency filters, the test subject should be unable to detect the odor of irritant fume (stannic chloride or titanium tetrachloride ventilation smoke tubes) squirted into the air near the most vulnerable portions of the facepiece seal. The test subject shall be instructed to close her/his eyes during the test period.

c. The test subject may enter the quantitative testing chamber only if she or he has obtained a satisfactory fit as stated in 4.b. of this Appendix.

d. Before the subject enters the test chamber, a reasonably stable challenge agent concentration shall be measured in the test chamber.

e. Immediately after the subject enters the test chamber, the challenge agent concentration inside the respirator shall be measured to ensure that the peak penetration does not exceed 5 percent for a half-mask and 1 percent for a full facepiece.

f. A stable challenge agent concentration shall be obtained prior to the actual start of testing.

(1) Respirator restraining straps may not be overtightened for testing. The straps shall be adjusted by the wearer to give a reasonably comfortable fit typical of normal use.

5. *Exercise Regime.* Prior to entering the test chamber, the test subject shall be given complete instructions as to her/his part in the test procedures. The test subject shall perform the following exercises, in the order given, for each independent test.

a. *Normal Breathing (NB).* In the normal standing position, without talking, the subject shall breathe normally for at least one minute.

b. *Deep Breathing (DB).* In the normal standing position the subject shall do deep breathing for at least one minute pausing so as not to hyperventilate.

c. *Turning head side to side (SS).* Standing in place the subject shall slowly turn his/her head from side between the extreme positions to each side. The head shall be held at each extreme position for at least 5 seconds. Perform for at least three complete cycles.

d. *Moving head up and down (UD).* Standing in place, the subject shall slowly move his/her head up and down between the extreme position straight up and the extreme position straight down. The head shall be held at each extreme position for at least 5 seconds. Perform for at least three complete cycles.

e. *Reading (R).* The test subject (keeping eyes closed) shall repeat after the test conductor the 'rainbow passage' at the end of this section. The subject shall talk slowly and aloud so as to be heard clearly by the test conductor or monitor.

f. *Grimace (G).* The test subject shall grimace, smile, frown, and generally contort the face using the facial muscles. Continue for at least 15 seconds.

g. *Bend over and touch toes (B).* The test subject shall bend at the waist and touch toes and return to upright position. Repeat for at least 30 seconds.

h. *Jogging in place (J).* The test subject shall perform jog in place for at least 30 seconds.

i. *Normal Breathing (NB).* Same as exercise.

Rainbow Passage

When the sunlight strikes raindrops in the air, they act like a prism and form a rainbow. The rainbow is a division of white light into many beautiful colors. These take the shape of a long round arch, with its path high above, and its two ends apparently beyond the horizon. There is, according to legend, a boiling pot of gold at one end. People look, but no one ever finds it. When a man looks for something beyond reach, his friends say he is looking for the pot of gold at the end of the rainbow.

6. The test shall be terminated whenever any single peak penetration exceeds 5 percent for half-masks and 1 percent for full facepieces. The test subject may be refitted and retested. If two of the three required tests are terminated, the fit shall be deemed inadequate.

7. *Calculation of Fit Factors.*

a. The fit factor determined by the quantitative fit test equals the average concentration inside the respirator.

b. The average test chamber concentration is the arithmetic average of the test chamber concentration at the beginning and at the end of the test.

c. The average peak concentration of the challenge agent inside the respirator shall be the arithmetic average peak concentrations for each of the nine exercises of the test which are computed as the arithmetic average of the peak concentrations found for each breath during the exercise.

d. The average peak concentration for an exercise may be determined graphically if there is not a great variation in the peak concentrations during a single exercise.

8. *Interpretation of Test Results.* The fit factor measured by the quantitative fit testing shall be the lowest of the three protection factors resulting from three independent tests.

9. *Other Requirements.*

a. The test subject shall not be permitted to wear a half-mask or full facepiece mask if the minimum fit factor of 100 or 1,000, respectively, cannot be obtained. If hair growth or apparel interfere with a satisfactory fit, then they shall be altered or removed so as to eliminate interference and allow a satisfactory fit. If a satisfactory fit is still not attained, the test subject must use a positive-pressure respirator such as powered air-purifying respirators, supplied air respirator, or self-contained breathing apparatus.

b. The test shall not be conducted if there is any hair growth between the skin and the facepiece sealing surface.

c. If a test subject exhibits difficulty in breathing during the tests, she or he shall be referred to a physician trained in respirator diseases or pulmonary medicine to determine whether the test subject can wear a respirator while performing her or his duties.

d. The test subject shall be given the opportunity to wear the assigned respirator for one week. If the respirator does not provide a satisfactory fit during actual use, the test subject may request another QNFT which shall be performed immediately.

e. A respirator fit factor card shall be issued to the test subject with the following information:

(1) Name.

(2) Date of fit test.

(3) Protection factors obtained through each manufacturer, model and approval number of respirator tested.

(4) Name and signature of the person that conducted the test.

f. Filters used for qualitative or quantitative fit testing shall be replaced weekly, whenever increased breathing resistance is encountered, or when the test agent has altered the integrity of the filter media. Organic vapor cartridges/canisters shall be replaced daily or sooner if there is any indication of breakthrough by the test agent.

10. In addition, because the sealing of the respirator may be affected, quantitative fit testing shall be repeated immediately when the test subject has a:

(1) Weight change of 20 pounds or more,

(2) Significant facial scarring in the area of the facepiece seal,

(3) Significant dental changes; i.e., multiple extractions without prothesis, or acquiring dentures,

(4) Reconstructive or cosmetic surgery, or

(5) Any other condition that may interfere with facepiece sealing.

11. *Recordkeeping.*

A summary of all test results shall be maintained for 3 years. The summary shall include:

(1) Name of test subject.

(2) Date of testing.

(3) Name of the test conductor.

(4) Fit factors obtained from every respirator tested (indicate manufacturer, model, size and approval number).

APPENDIX D TO 1910.1001—MEDICAL QUESTIONNAIRES; MANDATORY

This mandatory appendix contains the medical questionnaires that must be administered to all employees who are exposed to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite, or a combination of these minerals above the action level, and who will therefore be included in their employer's medical surveillance program. Part 1 of the appendix contains the Initial Medical Questionnaire, which must be obtained for all new hires who will be covered by the medical surveillance requirements. Part 2 includes the abbreviated Periodical Medical Questionnaire, which must be administered to all employees who are provided periodic medical examinations under the medical surveillance provisions of the standard.

Part 1
INITIAL MEDICAL QUESTIONNAIRE

1. NAME ____________________

2. SOCIAL SECURITY # __ __ __ __ __ __ __ __ __ (1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9)

3. CLOCK NUMBER __ __ __ __ __ __ (10 11 12 13 14 15)

4. PRESENT OCCUPATION ____________________

5. PLANT ____________________

6. ADDRESS ____________________

7. ____________________ (Zip Code)

8. TELEPHONE NUMBER ____________________

9. INTERVIEWER ____________________

10. DATE ____________________ __ __ __ __ __ __ (16 17 18 19 20 21)

11. Date of Birth ____________________ Month Day Year __ __ __ __ __ __ (22 23 24 25 26 27)

12. Place of Birth ____________________

13. Sex 1. Male __ 2. Female __

14. What is your marital status? 1. Single __ 2. Married __ 3. Widowed __ 4. Separated/ Divorced __

15. Race 1. White __ 2. Black __ 3. Asian __ 4. Hispanic __ 5. Indian __ 6. Other __

16. What is the highest grade completed in school? __________
(For example 12 years is completion of high school)

OCCUPATIONAL HISTORY

17A. Have you ever worked full time (30 hours per week or more) for 6 months or more? 1. Yes __ 2. No __

IF YES TO 17A:

B. Have you ever worked for a year or more in any dusty job? 1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __

Specify job/industry ____________ Total Years Worked __

Was dust exposure: 1. Mild __ 2. Moderate __ 3. Severe __

C. Have you even been exposed to gas or chemical fumes in your work? 1. Yes __ 2. No __
Specify job/industry ____________ Total Years Worked __

Was exposure: 1. Mild __ 2. Moderate __ 3. Severe __

D. What has been your usual occupation or job--the one you have worked at the longest?

1. Job occupation ____________________

2. Number of years employed in this occupation ____________________

3. Position/job title ____________________

4. Business, field or industry ____________________

(Record on lines the years in which you have worked in any of these industries, e.g. 1960-1969)

Have you ever worked:	YES	NO
E. In a mine?	☐	☐
F. In a quarry?	☐	☐
G. In a foundry?	☐	☐
H. In a pottery?	☐	☐
I. In a cotton, flax or hemp mill?	☐	☐
J. With asbestos?	☐	☐

18. PAST MEDICAL HISTORY

	YES	NO
A. Do you consider yourself to be in good health?	☐	☐
If "NO" state reason ____________		
B. Have you any defect of vision?	☐	☐
If "YES" state nature of defect ____________		
C. Have you any hearing defect?	☐	☐
If "YES" state nature of defect ____________		

D. Are you suffering from or have you ever suffered from:

a. Epilepsy (or fits, seizures, convulsions)?	☐	☐
b. Rheumatic fever?	☐	☐
c. Kidney disease?	☐	☐
d. Bladder disease?	☐	☐
e. Diabetes?	☐	☐
f. Jaundice?	☐	☐

19. CHEST COLDS AND CHEST ILLNESSES

19A. If you get a cold, does it usually go to your chest? (Usually means more than 1/2 the time)	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Don't get colds __
20A. During the past 3 years, have you had any chest illnesses that have kept you off work, indoors at home, or in bed?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 20A: B. Did you produce phlegm with any of these chest illnesses?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __
C. In the last 3 years, how many such illnesses with (increased) phlegm did you have which lasted a week or more?	Number of illnesses __ No such illnesses __
21. Did you have any lung trouble before the age of 16?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
22. Have you ever had any of the following?	
1A. Attacks of bronchitis?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 1A: B. Was it confirmed by a doctor?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __
C. At what age was your first attack?	Age in Years __ Does Not Apply __
2A. Pneumonia (include bronchopneumonia)?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 2A: B. Was it confirmed by a doctor?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __
C. At what age did you first have it?	Age in Years __ Does Not Apply __
3A. Hay Fever?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 3A: B. Was it confirmed by a doctor?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __
C. At what age did it start?	Age in Years __ Does Not Apply __
23A. Have you ever had chronic bronchitis?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 23A: B. Do you still have it?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __
C. Was it confirmed by a doctor?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __
D. At what age did it start?	Age in Years __ Does Not Apply __
24A. Have you ever had emphysema?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 24A: B. Do you still have it?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __
C. Was it confirmed by a doctor?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __
D. At what age did it start?	Age in Years __ Does Not Apply __
25A. Have you ever had asthma?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 25A: B. Do you still have it?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __
C. Was it confirmed by a doctor?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __
D. At what age did it start?	Age in Years __ Does Not Apply __
E. If you no longer have it, at what age did it stop?	Age stopped __ Does Not Apply __
26. Have you ever had:	
A. Any other chest illness?	1. Yes __ 2. No __

If yes, please specify ______________________________

B. Any chest operations? 1. Yes __ 2. No __

If yes, please specify ____________________

C. Any chest injuries? 1. Yes __ 2. No __

If yes, please specify ____________________

27A. Has a doctor ever told you that you had heart trouble? 1. Yes __ 2. No __

IF YES TO 27A:

B. Have you ever had treatment for heart trouble in the past 10 years? 1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __

28A. Has a doctor ever told you that you had high blood pressure? 1. Yes __ 2. No __

IF YES TO 28A:

B. Have you had any treatment for high blood pressure (hypertension) in the past 10 years? 1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __

29. When did you last have your chest X-rayed? (Year) __ __ __ __ (25 26 27 28)

30. Where did you last have your chest X-rayed (if known)? ____________________

What was the outcome? ____________________

FAMILY HISTORY

31. Were either of your natural parents ever told by a doctor that they had a chronic lung condition such as:

	FATHER			MOTHER		
	1. Yes	2. No	3. Don't Know	1. Yes	2. No	3. Don't Know
A. Chronic Bronchitis?	__	__	__	__	__	__
B. Emphysema?	__	__	__	__	__	__
C. Asthma?	__	__	__	__	__	__
D. Lung cancer?	__	__	__	__	__	__
E. Other chest conditions	__	__	__	__	__	__
F. Is parent currently alive?	__	__	__	__	__	__
G. Please Specify	__ Age if Living __ Age at Death __ Don't Know			__ Age if Living __ Age at Death __ Don't Know		

H. Please specify cause of death ____________________ ____________________

COUGH

32A. Do you usually have a cough? (Count a cough with first smoke or on first going out of doors. Exclude clearing of throat.) (If no, skip to question 32C.) 1. Yes __ 2. No __

B. Do you usually cough as much as 4 to 6 times a day 4 or more days out of the week? 1. Yes __ 2. No __

C. Do you usually cough at all on getting up or first thing in the morning? 1. Yes __ 2. No __

D. Do you usually cough at all during the rest of the day or at night? 1. Yes __ 2. No __

IF YES TO ANY OF ABOVE (32A, B, C, or D), ANSWER THE FOLLOWING. IF NO TO ALL, CHECK DOES NOT APPLY AND SKIP TO NEXT PAGE

E. Do you usually cough like this on most days for 3 consecutive months or more during the year? 1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does not apply __

F. For how many years have you had the cough? Number of years __ Does not apply __

33A. Do you usually bring up phlegm from your chest? (Count phlegm with the first smoke or on first going out of doors. Exclude phlegm from the nose. Count swallowed phlegm.) (If no, skip to 33C) 1. Yes __ 2. No __

B. Do you usually bring up phlegm like this as much as twice a day 4 or more days out of the week? 1. Yes __ 2. No __

C. Do you usually bring up phlegm at all on getting up or first thing in the morning? 1. Yes __ 2. No __

D. Do you usually bring up phlegm at all during the rest of the day or at night? 1. Yes __ 2. No __

IF YES TO ANY OF THE ABOVE (33A, B, C, or D), ANSWER THE FOLLOWING: IF NO TO ALL, CHECK DOES NOT APPLY AND SKIP TO 34A.

E. Do you bring up phlegm like this on most days for 3 consecutive months or more during the year? 1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does not apply __

F. For how many years have you had trouble with phlegm?	Number of years __ Does not apply __

EPISODES OF COUGH AND PHLEGM

34A. Have you had periods or episodes of (increased*) cough and phlegm lasting for 3 weeks or more each year? *(For persons who usually have cough and/or phlegm)	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 34A	
B. For how long have you had at least 1 such episode per year?	Number of years __ Does not apply __

WHEEZING

35A. Does your chest ever sound wheezy or whistling	
1. When you have a cold?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
2. Occasionally apart from colds?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
3. Most days or nights?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 1, 2, or 3 in 35A	
B. For how many years has this been present?	Number of years __ Does not apply __
36A. Have you ever had an attack of wheezing that has made you feel short of breath?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 36A	
B. How old were you when you had your first such attack?	Age in years __ Does not apply __
C. Have you had 2 or more such episodes?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does not apply __
D. Have you ever required medicine or treatment for the(se) attack(s)?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does not apply __

BREATHLESSNESS

37. If disabled from walking by any condition other than heart or lung disease, please describe and proceed to question 39A.
Nature of condition(s) ______________________________

38A. Are you troubled by shortness of breath when hurrying on the level or walking up a slight hill?	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 38A	
B. Do you have to walk slower than people of your age on the level because of breathlessness?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does not apply __
C. Do you ever have to stop for breath when walking at your own pace on the level?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does not apply __
D. Do you ever have to stop for breath after walking about 100 yards (or after a few minutes) on the level?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does not apply __
E. Are you too breathless to leave the house or breathless on dressing or climbing one flight of stairs?	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does not apply __

TOBACCO SMOKING

39A. Have you ever smoked cigarettes? (No means less than 20 packs of cigarettes or 12 oz. of tobacco in a lifetime or less than 1 cigarette a day for 1 year.)	1. Yes __ 2. No __
IF YES TO 39A	
B. Do you now smoke cigarettes (as of one month ago)	1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does not apply __
C. How old were you when you first started regular cigarette smoking?	Age in years __ Does not apply __
D. If you have stopped smoking cigarettes completely, how old were you when you stopped?	Age stopped __ Check if still smoking __ Does not apply __
E. How many cigarettes do you smoke per day now?	Cigarettes per day __ Does not apply __
F. On the average of the entire time you smoked, how many cigarettes did you smoke per day?	Cigarettes per day __ Does not apply __
G. Do or did you inhale the cigarette smoke?	1. Does not apply __ 2. Not at all __ 3. Slightly __ 4. Moderately __ 5. Deeply __
40A. Have you ever smoked a pipe regularly? (Yes means more than 12 oz. of tobacco in a lifetime.)	1. Yes __ 2. No __

IF YES TO 40A:
FOR PERSONS WHO HAVE EVER SMOKED A PIPE

B. 1. How old were you when you started to smoke a pipe regularly? — Age __

2. If you have stopped smoking a pipe completely, how old were you when you stopped? — Age stopped __ / Check if still smoking pipe __ / Does not apply __

C On the average over the entire time you smoked a pipe, how much pipe tobacco did you smoke per week? — __ oz. per week (a standard pouch of tobacco contains 1 1/2 oz.) / __ Does not apply

D. How much pipe tobacco are you smoking now? — oz. per week __ / Not currently smoking a pipe __

E. Do you or did you inhale the pipe smoke?
1. Never smoked __
2. Not at all __
3. Slightly __
4. Moderately __
5. Deeply __

41A. Have you ever smoked cigars regularly? (Yes means more than 1 cigar a week for a year) — 1. Yes __ 2. No __

IF YES TO 41A
FOR PERSONS WHO HAVE EVER SMOKED CIGARS

B. 1. How old were you when you started smoking cigars regularly? — Age __

2. If you have stopped smoking cigars completely, how old were you when you stopped. — Age stopped __ / Check if still smoking cigars __ / Does not apply __

C. On the average over the entire time you smoked cigars, how many cigars did you smoke per week? — Cigars per week __ / Does not apply __

D. How many cigars are you smoking per week now? — Cigars per week __ / Check if not smoking cigars currently __

E. Do or did you inhale the cigar smoke?
1. Never smoked __
2. Not at all __
3. Slightly __
4. Moderately __
5. Deeply __

Signature ______________ Date ______________

Part 2
PERIODIC MEDICAL QUESTIONNAIRE

1. NAME ______________

2. SOCIAL SECURITY # __ __ __ __ __ __ __ __ __ __
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

3. CLOCK NUMBER __ __ __ __ __ __
10 11 12 13 14 15

4. PRESENT OCCUPATION ______________

5. PLANT ______________

6. ADDRESS ______________

7. ______________
(Zip Code)

8. TELEPHONE NUMBER ______________

9. INTERVIEWER ______________

10. DATE ______________ __ __ __ __ __ __ __
16 17 18 19 20 21

11. What is your marital status? — 1. Single __ 2. Married __ 3. Widowed __ 4. Separated/Divorced __

12. OCCUPATIONAL HISTORY

12A. In the past year, did you work full time (30 hours per week or more) for 6 months or more? — 1. Yes __ 2. No __

IF YES TO 12A:

12B. In the past year, did you work in a dusty job? — 1. Yes __ 2. No __ 3. Does Not Apply __

12C. Was dust exposure: 1. Mild __ 2. Moderate __ 3. Severe __

12D. In the past year, were you exposed to gas or chemical fumes in your work? — 1. Yes __ 2. No __

12E. Was exposure: 1. Mild __ 2. Moderate __ 3. Severe __

12F. In the past year, what was your:
1. Job/occupation? ______________
2. Position/job title? ______________

13. RECENT MEDICAL HISTORY

13A. Do you consider yourself to be in good health? Yes ___ No ___

If NO, state reason ______________________________

13B. In the past year, have you developed:

	Yes	No
Epilepsy?	___	___
Rheumatic fever?	___	___
Kidney disease?	___	___
Bladder disease?	___	___
Diabetes?	___	___
Jaundice?	___	___
Cancer?	___	___

14. CHEST COLDS AND CHEST ILLNESSES

14A. If you get a cold, does it *usually* go to your chest? (Usually means more than 1/2 the time)
1. Yes ___ 2. No ___
3. Don't get colds ___

15A. During the past year, have you had any chest illnesses that have kept you off work, indoors at home, or in bed?
1. Yes ___ 2. No ___
3. Does Not Apply ___

IF YES TO 15A:

15B. Did you produce phlegm with any of these chest illnesses?
1. Yes ___ 2. No ___
3. Does Not Apply ___

15C. In the past year, how many such illnesses with (increased) phlegm did you have which lasted a week or more?
Number of illnesses ___
No such illnesses ___

16. RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

In the past year have you had:

	Yes or No	Further Comment on Positive Answers
Asthma	___	
Bronchitis	___	
Hay Fever	___	
Other Allergies	___	
Pneumonia	___	
Tuberculosis	___	
Chest Surgery	___	
Other Lung Problems	___	
Heart Disease	___	

Do you have:

	Yes or No	Further Comment on Positive Answers
Frequent colds	___	
Chronic cough	___	
Shortness of breath when walking or climbing one flight or stairs	___	

Do you:

Wheeze	___	
Cough up phlegm	___	
Smoke cigarettes	___	Packs per day ___ How many years ___

Date ________________ Signature ____________________________

BILLING CODE 4510-26-C

APPENDIX E TO 1910.1001—INTERPRETATION AND CLASSIFICATION OF CHEST ROENTGENOGRAMS—MANDATORY

(a) Chest roentgenograms shall be interpreted and classified in accordance with a professionally accepted Classification system and recorded on an interpretation form following the format of the CDC/NIOSH(M) 2.8 form. As a minimum, the content within the bold lines of this form (items 1 through 4) shall be included. This form is not to be submitted to NIOSH.

(b) Roentgenograms shall be interpreted and classified only by a B-reader, a board eligible/certified radiologist, or an experienced physician with known expertise in pneumoconioses.

(c) All interpreters, whenever interpreting chest roentgenograms made under this section, shall have immediately available for reference a complete set of the ILO-U/C International Classification of Radiographs for Pneumoconioses, 1980.

APPENDIX F TO1910.1001—WORK PRACTICES AND ENGINEERING CONTROLS FOR AUTOMOTIVE BRAKE REPAIR OPERATIONS—NON-MANDATORY

This appendix is intended as guidance for employers in the automotive brake and clutch repair industry who wish to reduce their employees' asbestos exposures during repair operations to levels below the new standard's action level (0.1 f/cc). OSHA believes that employers in this industry sector are likely to be able to reduce their employees' exposures to asbestos by employing the engineering and work practice controls described in Sections A and B of this appendix. Those employers who choose to use these controls and who achieve exposures below the action level will thus be able to avoid any burden that might be imposed by complying with such requirements as medical surveillance, recordkeeping, training, respiratory, protection, and regulated areas, which are triggered when employee exposures exceed the action level or PEL.

Asbestos exposure in the automotive brake and clutch repair industry occurs primarily during the replacement of clutch plates and brake pads, shoes, and linings. Asbestos fibers may become airborne when an automotive mechanic removes the asbestos-containing residue that has been deposited as brakes and clutches wear. Employee exposures to asbestos occur during the cleaning of the brake drum or clutch housing.

Based on evidence in the rulemaking record (Exs. 84–74, 84–263, 90–148), OSHA believes that employers engaged in brake repair operations who implement any of the work practices and engineering controls described in Sections A and B of this appendix may be able to reduce their employees' exposures to levels below the action level (0.1 fiber/cc). These control methods and the relevant record evidence on these and other methods are described in the following sections.

A. Enclosed Cylinder/HEPA Vacuum System Method

The enclosed cylinder-vacuum system used in one of the facilities visited by representatives of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) during a health hazard evaluation of brake repair facilities (Ex. 84–263) consists of three components:

(1) A wheel-shaped cylinder designed to cover and enclose the wheel assembly;

(2) A compressed-air hose and nozzle that fits into a port in the cylinder; and

(3) A HEPA-filtered vacuum used to evacuate airborne dust generated within the cylinder by the compressed air.

To operate the system, the brake assembly is enclosed in a cylinder that has viewing ports to provide visibility and cotton sleeves through which the mechanic can handle the brake assembly parts. The cylinder effectively isolates asbestos dust in the drum from the mechanic's breathing zone. "One company manufactures the brake assembly isolation cylinder"[1]. The cylinder is equipped with built-in compressed-air guns and a connection for a vacuum cleaner equipped with a High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filter. This type of filter is capable of removing all particles greater than 0.3 microns from the air. When the vacuum cleaner's filter is full, it must be replaced according to the manufacturer's instruction, and appropriate HEPA-filtered dual cartridge respirators should be worn during the process. The filter of the vacuum cleaner is assumed to be contaminated with asbestos fibers and should be handled carefully, wetted with a fine mist of water, placed immediately in a labelled plastic bag, and disposed of properly. When the cylinder is in place around the brake assembly and the HEPA vacuum is connected, compressed air is blown into the cylinder to loosen level, it is described in detail above.) Data collected by the Mount Sinai Medical Center (Ex. 90–148) for Nilfisk of America, Inc., the manufacturer of the brake assembly enclosure system, showed that for two or three operators sampled, the exposure of mechanics to airborne asbestos fibers was nondetectable. For the third operator sampled by Mt. Sinai researchers, the exposure was 0.5 f/cc, which the authors attributed to asbestos that had contaminated the operator's clothing in the course of previous brake repair operations performed without the enclosed cylinder/vacuum system.

---

[1] Mention of tradenames or commercial products does not constitute endorsement of recommendation for use.

The HEPA vacuum system can be disconnected from the brake assembly isolation cylinder when the cylinder is not being used. The HEPA vacuum can then be used for clutch facing work, grinding, or other routine cleaning.

B. Compressed Air/Solvent System Method

A compressed-air hose fitted at the end with a bottle of solvent can be used to loosen the asbestos-containing residue and to capture the resulting airborne particles in the solvent mist. The mechanic should begin spraying the asbestos-contaminated parts with the solvent at a sufficient distance to ensure that the asbestos particles are not dislodged by the velocity of the solvent spray. After the asbestos particles are thoroughly wetted, the spray may be brought closer to the parts and the parts may be sprayed as necessary to remove grease and other material. The automotive parts sprayed with the mist are then wiped with a rag, which must then be disposed of appropriately. Rags should be placed in a labelled plastic bag or other container while they are still wet. This ensures that the asbestos fibers will not become airborne after the brake and clutch parts have been cleaned. (If cleanup rags are laundered rather than disposed of, they must be washed using methods appropriate for the laundering of asbestos-contaminated materials.)

OSHA believes that a variant of this compressed-air/solvent mist process offers advantages over the compressed-air/solvent mist technique discussed above, both in terms of costs and employee protection. The variant involves the use of spray cans filled with any of several solvent cleaners commercially available from auto supply stores. Spray cans of solvent are inexpensive, readily available, and easy to use. These cans will also save time, because no solvent delivery system has to be assembled, i.e., no compressed-air hose/mister ensemble. OSHA believes that a spray can will deliver solvent to the parts to be cleaned with considerably less force than the alternative compressed-air delivery system described above, and will thus generate fewer airborne asbestos fibers than the compressed-air method. The Agency therefore believes that the exposure levels of automotive repair mechanics using the spray can/solvent mist process will be even lower than the exposures reported by NIOSH (Ex. 84–263) for the compressed-air/solvent mist system (0.08 f/cc).

C. Information on the Effectiveness of Various Control Measures

The amount of airborne asbestos generated during brake and clutch repair operations depends on the work practices and engineering controls used during the repair or removal activity. Data in the rulemaking record document the 8-hour time-weighted average (TWA_8) asbestos exposure levels associated with various methods of brake and clutch repair and removal.

NIOSH submitted a report to the record entitled "Health Hazard Evaluation for Automotive Brake Repair" (Ex. 84–263). In addition, Exhibits 84–74 and 90–148 provided exposure data for comparing the airborne concentrations of asbestos generated by the use of various work practices during brake repair operations. These reports present exposure data for brake repair operations involving a variety of controls and work practices, including:

- Use of compressed air to blow out the brake drums:

- Use of compressed air to blow out the brake drums;

- Use of a brush, without a wetting agent, to remove the asbestos-containing residue;

- Use of a brush dipped in water or a solvent to remove the asbestos-containing residue;

- Use of an enclosed vacuum cleaning system to capture the asbestos-containing residue; and

- Use of a solvent mixture applied with compressed air to remove the residue.

Prohibited Methods

The use of compressed air to blow the asbestos-containing residue off the surface of the brake drum removes the residue effectively but simultaneously produces an airborne cloud of asbestos fibers. According to NIOSH (Ex. 84–263), the peak exposures of mechanics using this technique were as high as 15 fibers/cc, and 8-hour TWA exposures ranged from 0.03 to 0.19 f/cc.

Dr. William J. Nicholson of the Mount Sinai School of Medicine (Ex. 84–74) cited data from Knight and Hickish (1970) that indicated that the concentration of asbestos ranged from 0.84 to 5.35 f/cc over a 60-minute sampling period when compressed air was being used to blow out the asbestos-containing residue from the brake drum. In the same study, a peak concentration of 87 f/cc was measured for a few seconds during brake cleaning performed with compressed air. Rohl et al. (1976) (Ex. 90–148) measured area concentrations (of unspecified duration) within 3–5 feet of operations involving the cleaning of brakes with compressed air and obtained readings ranging from 6.6 to 29.8 f/cc. Because of the high exposure levels that result from cleaning brake and clutch parts using compressed air. OSHA has prohibited this practice in the revised standard.

Ineffective Methods

When dry brushing was used to remove the asbestos-containing residue from the brake drums and wheel assemblies, peak exposures measured by NIOSH ranged from 0.61 to 0.81 f/cc, while 8-hour TWA levels were at the new standard's permissible exposure limit (PEL) of 0.2 f/cc (Ex. 84–263). Rohl and his colleagues (Ex. 90–148) collected area samples 1–3 feet from a brake cleaning operation being performed with a dry brush, and measured concentrations ranging from 1.3 to 3.6 f/cc; however, sampling times and TWA concentrations were not presented in the Rohl et al. study.

When a brush wetted with water, gasoline, or Stoddart solvent was used to clean the asbestos-containing residue from the affected parts, exposure levels (8-hour TWAs) measured by NIOSH also exceeded the new 0.2 f/cc PEL, and peak exposures ranged as high as 2.62 f/cc (Ex. 84–263).

Preferred Methods

Use of an engineering control system involving a cylinder that completely encloses the brake shoe assembly and a High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filter-equipped vacuum produced 8-hour TWA employee exposures of 0.01 f/cc and peak exposures ranging from nondetectable to 0.07 f/cc (Ex. 84–263). (Because this system achieved exposure levels below the standard's action level, it is described in detail above.) Data collected by the Mount Sinai Medical Center (Ex. 90–148) for Nilfisk of America, Inc., the manufacturer of the brake assembly enclosure system, showed that for two of three operators sampled, the exposure of mechanics to airborne asbestos fibers was nondetectable. For the third operator sampled by Mt. Sinai researchers, the exposure was 0.5 f/cc, which the authors attributed to asbestos that had contaminated the operator's clothing in the course of previous brake repair operations performed without the enclosed cylinder/vacuum system.

Some automotive repair facilities use a compressed-air hose to apply a solvent mist to remove the asbestos-containing residue from the brake drums before repair. The NIOSH data (Ex. 84–263) indicated that mechanics employing this method experienced exposures (8-hour TWAs) of 0.8 f/cc, with peaks of 0.25 to 0.68 f/cc. This technique, and a variant of it that OSHA believes is both less costly and more effective in reducing employee exposures, is described in greater detail above in Sections A and B.

D. Summary

In conclusion, OSHA believes that it is likely that employers in the brake and clutch repair industry will be able to avail themselves of the action level trigger built into the revised standard if they conscientiously employ one of the three control methods described above: the enclosed cylinder/HEPA vacuum system, the compressed air/solvent method, or the spray can/solvent mist system.

APPENDIX G TO 1910.1001—SUBSTANCE TECHNICAL INFORMATION FOR ASBESTOS—NON-MANDATORY

I. Substance Identification

A. Substance: "Asbestos" is the name of a class of magnesium-silicate minerals that occur in fibrous form. Minerals that are included in this group are chrysotile, crocidolite, amosite, tremolite asbestos, anthophyllite asbestos, and actinolite asbestos.

B. Asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite are used in the manufacture of heat-resistant clothing, automative brake and clutch linings, and a variety of building materials including floor tiles, roofing felts, ceiling tiles, asbestos-cement pipe and sheet, and fire-resistant drywall. Asbestos is also present in pipe and boiler insulation materials, and in sprayed-on materials located on beams, in crawlspaces, and between walls.

C. The potential for a product containing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite to release breatheable fibers depends on its degree of friability. Friable means that the material can be crumbled with hand pressure and is therefore likely to emit fibers. The fibrous or fluffy sprayed-on materials used for fireproofing, insulation, or sound proofing are considered to be friable, and they readily release airborne fibers if disturbed. Materials such as vinyl-asbestos floor tile or roofing felts are considered nonfriable and generally do not emit airborne fibers unless subjected to sanding or sawing operations. Asbestos-cement pipe or sheet can emit airborne fibers if the materials are cut or sawed, or if they are broken during demolition operations.

D. Permissible exposure: Exposure to airborne asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite fibers may not exceed 0.2 fibers per cubic centimeter of air (0.2 f/cc) averaged over the 8-hour workday.

II. Health Hazard Data

A. Asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite can cause disabling respiratory disease and various types of cancers if the fibers are inhaled. Inhaling or ingesting fibers from contaminated clothing or skin can also result in these diseases. The symptoms of these diseases generally do not appear for 20 or more years after initial exposure.

B. Exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite has been shown to cause lung cancer, mesothelioma, and cancer of the stomach and colon. Mesothelioma is a rare cancer of the thin membrane lining of the chest and abdomen. Symptoms of mesothelioma include shortness of breath, pain in the walls of the chest, and/or abdominal pain.

III. Respirators and Protective Clothing

A. Respirators: You are required to wear a respirator when performing tasks that result in asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite exposure that exceeds the permissible exposure limit (PEL) of 0.2 f/cc. These conditions can occur while your employer is in the process of installing engineering controls to reduce asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite exposure, or where engineering controls are not feasible to reduce asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite exposure. Air-purifying respirators equipped with a high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter can be used where airborne asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite fiber concentrations do not exceed 2 f/cc; otherwise, air-supplied, positive-pressure, full facepiece respirators must be used. Disposable respirators or dust masks are not permitted to be used for asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite work. For effective protection, respirators must fit your face and head snugly. Your employer is required to conduct fit tests when you are first assigned a respirator and every 6 months thereafter. Respirators should not be loosened or removed in work situations where their use is required.

B. Protective Clothing: You are required to wear protective clothing in work areas where asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite fiber concentrations exceed the permissible exposure limit (PEL) of 0.2 f/cc to prevent contamination of the skin. Where protective clothing is required, your employer must provide you with clean garments. Unless you are working on a large asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite removal or demolition project, your employer must also provide a change room and separate lockers for your street clothes and contaminated work clothes. If you are working on a large asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite removal or demolition project, and where it is feasible to do so, your employer must provide a clean room, shower, and decontamination room contiguous to the work area. When leaving the work area, you must remove contaminated clothing before proceeding to the shower. If the shower is not adjacent to the work area, you must vacuum your clothing before proceeding to the change room and shower. To prevent inhaling fibers in contaminated change rooms and showers, leave your respirator on until you leave the shower and enter the clean change room.

IV. Disposal Procedures and Cleanup

A. Wastes that are generated by processes where asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite are present include:

1. Empty asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite shipping containers.

2. Process wastes such as cuttings, trimmings, or reject material.

3. Housekeeping waste from sweeping or vacuuming.

4. Asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite fireproofing or insulating material that is removed from buildings.

5. Building products that contain asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite removed during building renovation or demolition.

5. Contaminated disposable protective clothing.

B. Empty shipping bags can be flattened under exhaust hoods and packed into airtight containers for disposal. Empty shipping drums are difficult to clean and should be sealed.

C. Vacuum bags or disposable paper filters should not be cleaned, but should be sprayed with a fine water mist and placed into a labeled waste container.

D. Process waste and housekeeping waste should be wetted with water or a mixture of water and surfactant prior to packaging in disposable containers.

E. Material containing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite that is removed from buildings must be disposed of in leak-tight 6-mil thick plastic bags, plastic-lined cardboard containers, or plastic-lined metal containers. These wastes, which are removed while wet, should be sealed in containers before they dry out to minimize the release of asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite fibers during handling.

V. Access to Information

A. Each year, your employer is required to inform you of the information contained in this standard and appendices for asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite. In addition, your employer must instruct you in the proper work practices for handling materials containing asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite, and the correct use of protective equipment.

B. Your employer is required to determine whether you are being exposed to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite. You or your representative has the right to observe employee measurements and to record the results obtained. Your employer is required to inform you of your exposure, and, if you are exposed above the permissible limit, he or she is required to inform you of the actions that are being taken to reduce your exposure to within the permissible limit.

C. Your employer is required to keep records of your exposures and medical examinations. These exposure records must be kept for at least thirty (30) years. Medical records must be kept for the period of your employment plus thirty (30) years.

D. Your employer is required to release your exposure and medical records to your physician or designated representative upon your written request.

APPENDIX H TO 1910.1001—MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE GUIDELINES FOR ASBESTOS TREMOLITE, ANTHOPHYLLITE, AND ACTINOLITE NONMANDATORY

I. Route of Entry Inhalation, Ingestion

II. Toxicology

Clinical evidence of the adverse effects associated with exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite, is present in the form of several well-conducted epidemiological studies of occupationally exposed workers, family contacts of workers, and persons living near asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite mines. These studies have shown a definite association between exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite and an increased incidence of lung cancer, pleural and peritoneal mesothelioma, gastrointestinal cancer, and asbestosis. The latter is a disabling fibrotic lung disease that is caused only by exposure to asbestos. Exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite has also been associated with an increased incidence of esophageal, kidney, laryngeal, pharyngeal, and buccal cavity cancers. As with other known chronic occupational diseases, disease associated with asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite generally appears about 20 years following the first occurrence of exposure: There are no known acute effects associated with exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite.

Epidemiological studies indicate that the risk of lung cancer among exposed workers who smoke cigarettes is greatly increased over the risk of lung cancer among nonexposed smokers or exposed nonsmokers. These studies suggest that cessation of smoking will reduce the risk of lung cancer for a person exposed to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite but will not reduce it to the same level of risk as that existing for an exposed worker who has never smoked.

III. Signs and Symptoms of Exposure-Related Disease

The signs and symptoms of lung cancer or gastrointestinal cancer induced by exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite are not unique, except that a chest X-ray of an exposed patient with lung cancer may show pleural plaques, pleural calcification, or pleural fibrosis. Symptoms characteristic of mesothelioma include shortness of breath, pain in the walls of the chest, or abdominal pain. Mesothelioma has a much longer latency period compared with lung cancer (40 years versus 15–20 years), and mesothelioma is therefore more likely to be found among workers who were first exposed to asbestos at an early age. Mesothelioma is always fatal.

Asbestosis is pulmonary fibrosis caused by the accumulation of asbestos fibers in the lungs. Symptoms include shortness of breath, coughing, fatigue, and vague feelings of sickness. When the fibrosis worsens, shortness of breath occurs even at rest. The diagnosis of asbestosis is based on a history of exposure to asbestos, the presence of characteristic radiologic changes, endinspiratory crackles (rales), and other clinical features of fibrosing lung disease. Pleural plaques and thickening are observed on X-rays taken during the early stages of the disease. Asbestosis is often a progressive disease even in the absence of continued exposure, although this appears to be a highly individualized characteristic. In severe cases, death may be caused by respiratory or cardiac failure.

IV. Surveillance and Preventive Considerations

As noted above, exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite has been linked to an increased risk of lung cancer, mesothelioma, gastrointestinal cancer, and asbestosis among occupationally exposed workers. Adequate screening tests to determine an employee's potential for developing serious chronic diseases, such as cancer, from exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite do not presently exist. However, some tests, particularly chest X-rays and pulmonary function tests, may indicate that an employee has been overexposed to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite, increasing his or her risk of developing exposure-related chronic diseases. It is important for the physician to become familiar with the operating conditions in which occupational exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite is likely to occur. This is particularly important in evaluating medical and work histories and in conducting physical examinations. When an active employee has been identified as having been overexposed to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite, measures taken by the employer to eliminate or mitigate further exposure should also lower the risk of serious long-term consequences.

“The employer is required to institute a medical surveillance program for all employees who are or will be exposed to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, actinolite or a combination of these minerals at or above the action level (0.1 fiber per cubic centimeter of air) for 30 or more days per year and for all employees who are assigned to wear a negative-pressure respirator. All examinations and procedures must be performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician, at a reasonable time and place, and at no cost to the employee.

Although broad latitude is given to the physician in prescribing specific tests to be included in the medical surveillance program, OSHA requires inclusion of the following elements in the routine examination:

(i) Medical and work histories with special emphasis directed to symptoms of the respiratory system, cardiovascular system, and digestive tract.

(ii) Completion of the respiratory disease questionnaire contained in Appendix D.

(iii) A physical examination including a chest roentgenogram and pulmonary function test that includes measurement of the employee's forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiratory volume at one second (FEV_1).

(iv) Any laboratory or other test that the examining physician deems by sound medical practice to be necessary.

The employer is required to make the prescribed tests available at least annually to those employees covered; more often than specified if recommended by the examining physician; and upon termination of employment.

The employer is required to provide the physician with the following information: A copy of this standard and appendices; a description of the employee's duties as they relate to asbestos exposure; the employee's representative level of exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite; a description of any personal protective and respiratory equipment used; and information from previous medical examinations of the affected employee that is not otherwise available to the physician. Making this information available to the physician will aid in the evaluation of the employee's health in relation to assigned duties and fitness to wear personal protective equipment, if required.

The employer is required to obtain a written opinion from the examining physician containing the results of the medical examination; the physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical conditions that would place the employee at an increased risk of exposure-related disease; any recommended limitations on the employee or on the use of personal protective equipment; and a statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and of any medical conditions related to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite exposure that require further explanation or treatment. This written opinion must not reveal specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite, and a copy of the opinion must be provided to the affected employee.

[51 F.R. 22733, June 20, 1986]

Note—Pursuant to an administrative stay effective July 21, 1986, published on October 17, 1986, (51 FR 37002) and extended to July 21, 1988 (at 52 FR 15722, Apr. 30, 1987) enforcement of this section is stayed as it applies to non-asbestiform tremolite, anthophyllite and actinolite. During the period and to the extent of this stay, the 1972 standard governing occupational exposure to asbestos (redesignated as 29 CFR 1910.1101) will remain in effect.

[52 F.R. 15723, April 30, 1987]

(Information collection requirements contained in paragraphs § 1910.1001(d)(2), (d)(3), (d)(5), (d)(7), (f)(2), (g)(3) (i), (j)(5), (l), and (m) were approved by the Office of Management and Budget under Control No. 1218–0133)

1910.1002—COAL TAR PITCH VOLATILES; INTERPRETATION OF TERM

As used in §1910.1000 (Table Z-1), coal tar pitch volatiles include the fused polycyclic hydrocarbons which volatilize from the distillation residues of coal, petroleum (excluding asphalt), wood, and other organic matter. Asphalt (CAS 8052-42-4, and CAS 64742-93-4) is not covered under the "coal tar pitch volatiles" standard.

[48 F.R. 2768, January 21, 1983]

1910.1003—4-NITROBIPHENYL

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which 4-Nitrobiphenyl, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 92933 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to transhipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 0.1 percent by weight or volume of 4-Nitrobiphenyl.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter aerosol" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of 4-Nitrobiphenyl. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving 4-Nitrobiphenyl where containment prevents the release of 4-Nitrobiphenyl into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of 4-Nitrobiphenyl or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of 4-Nitrobiphenyl from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of 4-Nitrobiphenyl which may result in exposre to or contact with 4-Nitrobiphenyl.

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of 4-Nitrobiphenyl, which is impervious to the passage of 4-Nitrobiphenyl, and which would prevent the entry of 4-Nitrobiphenyl into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving 4-Nitrobiphenyl within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving 4-Nitrobiphenyl in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of 4-Nitrobiphenyl into regulated

areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to 4-Nitrobiphenyl.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing 4-Nitrobiphenyl.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where 4-Nitrobiphenyl is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) Isolated systems. Employees working with 4-Nitrobiphenyl within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) Closed system operation. Within regulated areas where 4-Nitrobiphenyl is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while 4-Nitrobiphenyl is contained within:

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck upon each exit from the regulated areas, close to the point of exit and before engaging in other activities.

(3) Open vessel system operations. Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system. In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where 4-Nitrobipl [illegible] an otherwise "closed sy [illegible] ferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

1910.1003(b)(13)

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear, clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), shoe covers and gloves prior to entering the regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in 4-Nitrobiphenyl handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a half-face, filter-type respirator for dusts, mists, and fumes, in accordance with §1910.134. A respirator affording higher levels of protection may be substituted.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck on each exit from the regulated area, close to the point of exit, and before engaging in other activities.

(vii) Employees shall be required to shower after the last exit of the day.

(viii) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, or any operations involving work in an area where direct contact with 4-Nitrobiphenyl could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood.

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked oster of

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted with 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with 4-Nitrobiphenyl such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141 (d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(iii) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(iv) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(v) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, materials, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove 4-Nitrobiphenyl from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(iv) Dry sweeping and dry moppingprohibited.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of 4-Nitrobiphenyl and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of 4-Nitrobiphenyl and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have 4-Nitrobiphenyl contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance; provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, information or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of 4-Nitrobiphenyl, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving 4-Nitrobiphenyl which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures;

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of 4-Nitrobiphenyl;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices.

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of 4-Nitrobiphenyl in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which 4-Nitrobiphenyl is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of 4-Nitrobiphenyl into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report of any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific competion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physician shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) Records.

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35281, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1004—ALPHA-NAPHTHYLAMINE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which alpha-Naphthylamine, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 134327 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to transshipment in sealed containers, except for the

labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 1.0 percent by weight or volume of alpha-Naphthylamine.

(3) This section will not apply to operations involving the destructive distillation of carbonaceous materials, such as occurs in coke ovens.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an evironment free of alpha-Naphthylamine. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving alpha-Naphthylamine where containment prevents the release of alpha-Naphthylamine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of alpha-Naphthylamine or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of alpha-Naphthylamine from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of alpha-Naphthylamine which may result in exposure to or contact with alpha-Naphthylamine.

(9) "External evironment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of alpha-Naphthylamine, which is impervious to the passage of alpha-Naphthylamine, and which would prevent the entry of alpha-Naphthylamine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving alpha-Naphthylamine within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving alpha-Naphthylamine in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of alpha-Naphthylamine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to alpha-Naphthylamine.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing alpha-Naphthylamine.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where alpha-Naphthylamine is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) Isolated systems. Employees working with alpha-Naphthylamine within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) Closed system operation. Within regulated areas where alpha-Naphthylamine is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while alpha-Naphthylamine is contained within:

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck upon each exit from the regulated areas, close to the point of exit and before engaging in other activities.

(3) Open vessel system operations. Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system. In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where alpha-Naphthylamine is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear, clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), and shoe covers and gloves prior to entering a regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in alpha-Naphthylamine handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a half-face, filter-type respirator for dusts, mists, and fumes, in accordance with §1910.134. A respirator affording higher levels of protection may be substituted.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck on each exit from the regulated area, close to the point of exit, and before engaging in other activities.

(viii) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, or any operations involving work in an area where direct contact with alpha-Naphthylamine could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood.

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted within 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with alpha-Naphthylamine, such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141 (d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(iii) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(iv) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(v) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, material, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove alpha-Naphthylamine from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(iv) Dry sweeping and dry mopping are prohibited.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of alpha-Naphthylamine and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of alpha-Naphthylamine and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have alpha-Naphthylamine contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance; provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, informatio or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of alpha-Naphthylamine, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving alpha-Naphthylamine which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for the application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures;

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of alpha-Naphthylamine;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices;

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of alpha-Naphthylamine in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which alpha-Naphthylamine is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of alpha-Naphthylamine into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physician shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) Records.

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35281, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1005—4,4'-METHYLENE BIS(2-CHLOROANILINE)

1910.1005 (Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

1910.1006—METHYL CHLOROMETHYL ETHER

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which methyl chloromethyl ether, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 107302 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to trans-shipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 0.1 percent by weight or volume of methyl chloromethyl ether.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of methyl chloromethyl ether. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving methyl chloromethyl ether where containment prevents the release of methyl chloromethyl ether into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of methyl chloromethyl ether or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of methyl chloromethyl ether from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of methyl chloromethyl ether which may result in exposure to or contact with methyl chloromethyl ether.

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of methyl chloromethyl ether, which is impervious to the passage of methyl chloromethyl ether, and which would prevent the entry of methyl chloromethyl ether into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving methyl chloromethyl ether within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving methyl chloromethyl ether in an open

an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of methyl chloromethyl ether into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to methyl chloromethyl ether.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing methyl chloromethyl ether.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where methyl chloromethyl ether is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) Isolated systems. Employees working with methyl chloromethyl ether within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) Closed system operation. Within regulated areas where methyl chloromethyl ether is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while methyl chloromethyl ether is contained within. Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(3) Open vessel system operations. Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system. In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where methyl chloromethyl ether is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), and gloves prior to entering the regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in methyl chloromethyl ether handling operations shall be provided with the required to wear and use a full-face, supplied air respirator, of the continuous flow or pressure-demand type, in accordance with §1910.124.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, or any operations involving work in an area where direct contact with methyl chloromethyl ether could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood.

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked

(vii) Employees shall be required to shower after the last exit of the day.

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted within 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with methyl chloromethyl ether, such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(iii) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(iv) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(v) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, material, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove methyl chloromethyl ether from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of methyl chloromethyl ether and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of methyl chloromethyl ether and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have methyl chloromethyl ether contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance; provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, information or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of methyl chloromethyl ether, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving methyl chloromethyl ether which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures;

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of methyl chloromethyl ether;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices;

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) Al materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of methyl chloromethyl ether in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which methyl chloromethyl ether is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of methyl chloromethyl ether into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physician shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) Records.

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35281, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1007—3,3'-DICHLOROBENZIDINE (AND ITS SALTS)

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts), Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 91941 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to trans-shipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 1 percent by weight or volume of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts).

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter aerosol" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts). The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) where containment prevents the release of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) which may result in exposure to or contact with 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts).

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and non-regulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts), which is impervious to the passage of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts), and which would prevent the entry of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood' is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts).

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts).

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) Isolated systems. Employees working with 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) Closed system operation. Within regulated areas where 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) is contained within:

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck upon each exit from the regulated areas, close to the point of exit and before engaging in other activities.

(3) Open vessel system operations. Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system. In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear, clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), shoe covers and gloves prior to entering the regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a half-face, filter-type respirator for dusts, mists, and fumes, in accordance with §1910.134. A respirator affording higher levels of protection may be substituted.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck on each exit from the regulated area, close to the point of exit, and before engaging in other activities.

(vii) Employees shall be required to shower after the last exit of the day.

(viii) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, or any operations involving work in an area where direct contact with 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood.

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted with 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts), such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141 (d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(iii) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(iv) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(v) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, materials, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(iv) Dry sweeping and dry mopping are prohibited.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance; provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, information or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts), including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) which could result in exposure;

(**c**) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(**d**) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(**e**) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(**f**) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures;

(**g**) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts);

(**h**) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices.

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of 3,3'-Dichlorobenzidine (or its salts) into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(**a**) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(**b**) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(**c**) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(**d**) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physician shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) Records.

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35281, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1008—BIS-CHLOROMETHYL ETHER

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which bis-Chloromethyl ether, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 542881 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to transshipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 0.1 percent by weight or volume of bis-Chloromethyl ether.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee' means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated

area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of bis-Chloromethyl ether. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving bis-Chloromethyl ether where containment prevents the release of bis-Chloromethyl ether into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of bis-Cholormethyl ether or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of bis-Chloromethyl ether from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of bis-Chloromethyl ether which may result in exposre to or contact with bis-Chloromethyl ether.

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of bis-Chloromethyl ether, which is impervious to the passage of bis-Chloromethyl ether, and which would prevent the entry of bis-Chloromethyl ether into regulated areas, nonregalated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving bis-Chloromethyl ether within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving bis-Chloromethyl ether in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of bis-Chloromethyl ether into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to bis-Chloromethyl ether.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing bis-Chloromethyl ether.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where bis-Chloromethyl ether is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) **Isolated systems.** Employees working with bis-Chloromethyl ether within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) **Closed system operation.** Within regulated areas where bis-Chloromethyl ether is

stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while bis-Chloromethyl ether is contained within. Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(3) Open vessel system operations. Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system. In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where bis-Chloromethyl ether is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear, clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), and gloves prior to entering the regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in bis-Chloromethyl ether handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a full-face, supplied air respirator, of the continuous flow or pressure-demand type, in accordance with §1910.134.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, or any operations involving work in an area where direct contact with bis-Chloromethyl ether could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood.

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted within 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with bis-Chloromethyl ether, such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(iii) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(iv) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(1) and (2) (ii) through (vii).

(v) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, material, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove bis-Chloromethyl ether from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of bis-Chloromethyl ether and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of bis-Chloromethyl ether and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have bis-Chloromethyl ether contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance: provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, information or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of bis-Chloromethyl ether, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving bis-Chloromethyl ether which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures;

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of bis-Chloromethyl ether;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices.

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of bis-Chloromethyl ether in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which bis-Chloromethyl ether is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of bis-Chloromethyl ether into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physician shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) Records.

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1009—BETA-NAPHTHYLAMINE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which beta-Naphthylamine, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 91598 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to trans-shipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 0.1 percent by weight or volume of beta-Naphthylamine.

(3) This section will not apply to operations involving the destructive distillation of carbonaceous materials, such as occurs in coke ovens.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of beta-Naphthylamine. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving beta-Naphthylamine where containment prevents the release of beta-Naphthylamine into regulated areas, non-regulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of beta-Naphthylamine or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of beta-Naphthylamine from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of beta-Naphthylamine which may result in exposure to or contact with beta-Naphthylamine.

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of beta-Naphthylamine, which is impervious to the passage of beta-Naphthylamine, and which would prevent the entry of beta-Naphthylamine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving beta-Naphthylamine within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving beta-Naphthylamine in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of beta-Naphthylamine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to beta-Naphthylamine.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing beta-Naphthylamine.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where beta-Naphthylamine is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) **Isolated systems.** Employees working with beta-Naphthylamine within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) **Closed system operation.** Within regulated areas where beta-Naphthylamine is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while beta-Naphthylamine is contained within:

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck upon each exit from the regulated areas, close to the point of exit and before engaging in other activities.

(3) **Open vessel system operations.** Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) **Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system.** In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where beta-Naphthylamine is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear, clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), shoe covers and gloves prior to entering a regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in beta-Naphthylamine handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a half-face, filter-type respirator for dusts, mists, and fumes, in accordance with §1910.134. A respirator affording higher levels of protection may be substituted.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck on each exit from the regulated area, close to the point of exit, and before engaging in other activities.

(vii) Employees shall be required to shower after the last exit of the day.

(viii) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, or any operations involving work in an area where direct contact with beta-Naphthylamine could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood.

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted within 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with beta-Naphthylamine, such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141 (d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(iii) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(iv) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(v) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, material, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove beta-Naphthylamine from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(iv) Dry sweeping and dry mopping are prohibited.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of beta-Naphthylamine and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of beta-Naphthylamine and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have beta-Naphthylamine contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance; provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, information or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of beta-Naphthylamine, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving beta-Naphthylamine which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures;

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of beta-Naphthylamine;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices.

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of beta-Naphthylamine in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which beta-Naphthylamine is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of beta-Naphthylamine into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physician shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) Records.

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1010—BENZIDINE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which Benzidine, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 92875 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to trans-shipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 0.1 percent by weight or volume of Benzidine.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of Benzidine. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving Benzidine where containment prevents

the release of Benzidine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of Benzidine or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of Benzidine from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set or circumstances resulting in the release of Benzidine which may result in exposure to or contact with Benzidine.

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a full enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of Benzidine, which is impervious to the passage of Benzidine, and which would prevent the entry of Benzidine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving Benzidine within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving Benzidine in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of Benzidine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to Benzidine.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing Benzidine.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where Benzidine is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) **Isolated systems.** Employees working with Benzidine within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) **Closed system operation.** Within regulated areas where Benzidine is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while Benzidine is contained within:

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck upon each exit from the regulated areas, close to the point of exit and before engaging in other activities.

(3) **Open vessel system operations.** Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) **Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system.** In operations in-

volving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where Benzidine is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), and shoe covers and gloves prior to entering the regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in Benzidine handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a half-face, filter-type respirator for dusts, mists, and fumes, in accordance with §1910.134. A respirator affording higher levels of protection may be substituted.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck on each exit from the regulated area, close to the point of exit, and before engaging in other activities.

(vii) Employees shall be required to shower after the last exit of the day.

(viii) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment where direct contact with Benzidine could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood;

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted within 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with Benzidine, such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141 (d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(iii) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(iv) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(v) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, material, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove Benzidine from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(iv) Dry sweeping and dry mopping are prohibited.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of Benzidine and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of Benzidine and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by, employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have Benzidine contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance; provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, information or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of Benzidine, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving Benzidine which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures;

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of Benzidine;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices.

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of Benzidine in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which Benzidine is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of Benzidine into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physician shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) Records.

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1011—4-AMINODIPHENYL

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which 4-Aminodiphenyl, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 92671 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to transshipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 0.1 percent by weight or volume of 4-Aminodiphenyl.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of 4-Aminodiphenyl. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving 4-Aminodiphenyl where containment prevents the release of 4-Aminodiphenyl into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of 4-Aminodiphenyl or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of 4-Aminodiphenyl from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of 4-Aminodiphenyl which may result in exposure to or contact with 4-Aminodiphenyl.

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of 4-Aminodiphenyl, which is impervious to the passage of 4-Aminodiphenyl, and which would prevent the entry of 4-Aminodiphenyl into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving 4-Aminodiphenyl within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving 4-Aminodiphenyl in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of 4-Aminodiphenyl into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to 4-Aminodiphenyl.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing 4-Aminodiphenyl.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where 4-Aminodiphenyl is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) Isolated systems. Employees working with 4-Aminodiphenyl within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) Closed system operation. Within regulated areas where 4-Aminodiphenyl is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while 4-Aminodiphenyl is contained within:

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck upon each exit from the regulated areas, close to the point of exit and before engaging in other activities.

(3) Open vessel system operations. Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system. In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where 4-Aminodiphenyl is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), shoe covers and gloves prior to entering the regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in 4-Aminodiphenyl handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a half-face, filter-type respirator for dusts, mists, and fumes, in accordance with §1910.134. A respirator affording higher levels of protection may be substituted.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck on each exit from the regulated area, close to the point of exit, and before engaging in other activities.

(vii) Employees shall be required to shower after the last exit of the day.

(viii) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, where direct contact with 4-Aminodiphenyl could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood.

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted within 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with 4-Aminodiphenyl such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(iii) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(iv) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(v) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, materials, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove 4-Aminodiphenyl from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(iv) Dry sweeping and dry mopping are prohibited.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of 4-Aminodiphenyl and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of 4-Aminodiphenyl and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have 4-Aminodiphenyl contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) **Lettering.** Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance; provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) **Prohibited statements.** No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, information or instruction.

(5) **Training and indoctrination.**

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of 4-Aminodiphenyl, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving 4-Aminodiphenyl which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures;

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of 4-Aminodiphenyl;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices.

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) **Operations.** Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of 4-Aminodiphenyl in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which 4-Aminodiphenyl is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of 4-Aminodiphenyl into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physican shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) Records.

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1012—ETHYLENEIMINE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which Ethyleneimine, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 151564 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to transshipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 1.0 percent by weight or volume of Ethyleneimine.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of Ethyleneimine. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving Ethyleneimine where containment prevents the release of Ethyleneimine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of Ethyleneimine or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of Ethyleneimine from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of Ethyleneimine which may result in exposure to or contact with Ethyleneimine.

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of Ethyleneimine, which is impervious to the passage of Ethyleneimine, and which would prevent the entry of Ethyleneimine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving Ethyleneimine within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving Ethyleneimine in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of Ethyleneimine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to Ethyleneimine.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing Ethyleneimine.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where Ethyleneimine is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) Isolated systems. Employees working with Ethyleneimine within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) Closed system operation. Within regulated areas where Ethyleneimine is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while Ethyleneimine is contained within. Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(3) Open vessel system operations. Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system. In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where Ethyleneimine is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear, clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), and gloves prior to entering the regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in Ethyleneimine handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a full-face, supplied air respirator, of the continuous flow or pressure-demand type, in accordance with §1910.134.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, where direct contact with Ethyleneimine could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood.

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted with 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with Ethyleneimine such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(vi) Emergency deluge showers and eyewash fountains supplied with running potable water shall be located near, within sight of, and on the same level with locations where a direct exposure of Ethyleneimine would be most likely as a result of equipment failure, or improper work practices.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(iii) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(iv) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141 (d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(v) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, material, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove Ethyleneimine from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of Ethyleneimine and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of Ethyleneimine and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have Ethyleneimine contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance; provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, informatio or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of Ethyleneimine, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving Ethyleneimine which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures.

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of Ethyleneimine;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices;

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of Ethyleneimine in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which Ethyleneimine is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of Ethyleneimine into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physican shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) Records.

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1013—BETA-PROPIOLACTONE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which beta-Propiolactone, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 57578 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to trans-shipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 1.0 percent by weight or volume of beta-Propiolactone.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of beta-Propiolactone. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving beta-Propiolactone where containment prevents the release of beta-Propiolactone into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of beta-Propiolactone or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of beta-Propiolactone from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of beta-Propiolactone which may result in exposure to or contact with beta-Propiolactone.

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of beta-Propiolactone, which is impervious to the passage of beta-Propiolactone, and which would prevent the entry of beta-Propiolactone into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving beta-Propiolactone within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving beta-Propiolactone in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of beta-Propiolactone into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to beta-Propiolactone.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing beta-Propiolactone.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where beta-Propiolactone is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) Isolated systems. Employees working with beta-Propiolactone within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the asigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) Closed system operation. Within regulated areas where beta-Propiolactone is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while beta-Propiolactone is contained within. Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(3) Open vessel system operations. Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system. In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where beta-Propiolactone is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear, clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), shoe covers and gloves prior to entering the regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in beta-Propiolactone handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a full-face, supplied air respirator, of the continuous flow or pressure-demand type, in accordance with §1910.134.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, where direct contact with beta-Propiolactone could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood;

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivision (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted within 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with beta-Propiolactone, such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(vi) Emergency deluge showers and eyewash fountains supplied with running potable water shall be located near, within sight of, and on the same level with locations where a direct exposure to beta-Propiolactone would be most likely as a result of equipment failure, or improper work practice.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(iii) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(iv) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141 (d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(v) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, material, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove beta-Propiolactone from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of beta-Propiolactone and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of beta-Propiolactone and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have beta-Propiolactone contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance; provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, information or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of beta-Propiolactone, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving beta-Propiolactone which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures.

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of beta-Propiolactone;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices.

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of beta-Propiolactone in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which beta-Propiolactone is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of beta-Propiolactone into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physican shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) Records.

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1014—2-ACETYLAMINOFLUORENE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which 2-Acetylaminofluorene, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 53963 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to transshipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 1.0 percent by weight or volume of 2-Acetylaminofluorene.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of —Acetylaminofluorene. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving 2-Acetylaminofluorene where containment prevents the release of 2-Acetylaminofluorene into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of 2-Acetylaminofluorene or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of 2-Acetylaminofluorene from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of 2-Acetylaminofluorene which may result in exposure to or contact with 2-Acetylaminofluorene.

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of 2-Acetylaminofluorene, which is impervious to the passage of 2-Acetylaminofluorene, and which would prevent the entry of 2-Acetylaminofluorene into

regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving 2-Acetylaminofluorene within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving 2-Acetylaminofluorene in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of 2-Acetylaminofluorene intoareas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to 2-Acetylaminofluorene.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing 2-Acetylaminofluorene.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where 2-Acetylaminofluorene is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) Isolated systems. Employees working with 2-Acetylaminofluorene within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) Closed system operation. Within regulated areas where 2-Acetylaminofluorene is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while 2-Acetylaminofluorene is contained within:

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck upon each exit from the regulated areas, close to the point of exit and before engaging in other activities.

(3) Open vessel system operations. Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system. In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where 2-Acetylaminofluorene is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear, clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), shoe covers and gloves prior to entering the regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in 2-Acetylaminofluorene handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a half-face, filter-type respirator for dusts, mists, and fumes, in accordance with §1910.134. A respirator affording higher levels of protection may be substituted.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck on each exit from the regulated area, close to the point of exit, and before engaging in other activities.

(vii) Employees shall be required to shower after the last exit of the day.

(viii) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, where direct contact with 2-Acetylaminofluorene could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood.

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked'oster of

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted within 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with 2-Acetylaminofluorene, such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141 (d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(iii) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(iv) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(v) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, materials, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove 2-Acetylaminofluorene from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(iv) Dry sweeping and dry mopping are prohibited.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of 2-Acetylaminofluorene and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of 2-Acetylaminofluorene and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have 2-Acetylaminofluorene contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance; provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, information or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of 2-Acetylaminofluorene, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving 2-Acetylaminofluorene which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures;

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of 2-Acetylaminofluorene;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices.

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of 2-Acetylaminofluorene in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which 2-Acetylaminofluorene is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) **Incidents.** Incidents which result in the release of 2-Acetylaminofluorene into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) **Examinations.**

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physican shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) **Records.**

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1015—4-DIMETHYLAMINOAZOBENZENE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 60117 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to trans-shipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 1.0 percent by weight or volume of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene where containment prevents the release of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means an unforeseen circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene which may result in exposure to or contact with 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene.

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene, which is impervious to the passage of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene, and which would prevent the entry of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene

in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) Isolated systems. Employees working with 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) Closed system operation. Within regulated areas where 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene is contained within:

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck upon each exit from the regulated areas, close to the point of exit and before engaging in other activities.

(3) Open vessel system operations. Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system. In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear, clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), shoe covers and gloves prior to entering the regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a half-face, filter-type respirator for dusts, mists, and fumes, in accordance with §1910.134. A respirator affording higher levels of protection may be substituted.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(vi) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck on each exit from the regulated area, close to the point of exit, and before engaging in other activities.

(vii) Employees shall be required to shower after the last exit of the day.

(viii) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, where direct contact with 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with § 1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garmets and hood.

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked.

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted with 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene, such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing, or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with § 1910.141(d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(iii) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with § 1910.141(d)(3).

(iv) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with § 1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(v) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, material, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(iv) Dry sweeping and dry mopping are prohibited.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-
SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance; provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, information or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures;

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices.

(I) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(II) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(III) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of 4-Dimethylaminoazobenzene into any area where employees may be protentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physician shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physical examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) Records.

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of the employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1016—N-NITROSODIMETHYLAMINE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to any area in which N-Nitrosodimethylamine, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 62759 is manufactured, processed, repackaged, released, handled, or stored, but shall not apply to transshipment in sealed containers, except for the labeling requirements under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section.

(2) This section shall not apply to solid or liquid mixtures containing less than 1.0 percent by weight or volume of N-Nitrosodimethylamine.

(b) Definitions.

For the purposes of this section:

(1) "Absolute filter" is one capable of retaining 99.97 percent of a mono disperse aerosol of 0.3 um particles.

(2) "Authorized employee" means an employee whose duties require him to be in the

regulated area and who has been specifically assigned by the employer.

(3) "Clean change room" means a room where employees put on clean clothing and/or protective equipment in an environment free of N-Nitrosodimethylamine. The clean change room shall be contiguous to and have an entry from a shower room, when the shower room facilities are otherwise required in this section.

(4) "Closed system" means an operation involving N-Nitrosodimethylamine where containment prevents the release of N-Nitrosodimethylamine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(5) "Decontamination" means the inactivation of N-Nitrosodimethylamine or its safe disposal.

(6) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, or any person directed by him or the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to act for the Director.

(7) "Disposal" means the safe removal of N-Nitrosodimethylamine from the work environment.

(8) "Emergency" means circumstance or set of circumstances resulting in the release of N-Nitrosodimethylamine which may result in exposure to or contact with N-Nitrosodimethylamine.

(9) "External environment" means any environment external to regulated and nonregulated areas.

(10) "Isolated system" means a fully enclosed structure other than the vessel of containment of N-Nitrosodimethylamine, which is impervious to the passage of N-Nitrosodimethylamine, and which would prevent the entry of N-Nitrosodimethylamine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment, should leakage or spillage from the vessel of containment occur.

(11) "Laboratory type hood" is a device enclosed on three sides and the top and bottom, designed and maintained so as to draw air inward at an average linear face velocity of 150 feet per minute with a minimum of 125 feet per minute; designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way that an operation involving N-Nitrosodimethylamine within the hood does not require the insertion of any portion of any employee's body other than his hands and arms.

(12) "Nonregulated area" means any area under the control of the employer where entry and exit is neither restricted nor controlled.

(13) "Open-vessel system" means an operation involving N-Nitrosodimethylamine in an open vessel, which is not in an isolated system, a laboratory type hood, nor in any other system affording equivalent protection against the entry of N-Nitrosodimethylamine into regulated areas, nonregulated areas, or the external environment.

(14) "Protective clothing" means clothing designed to protect an employee against contact with or exposure to N-Nitrosodimethylamine.

(15) "Regulated area" means an area where entry and exit is restricted and controlled.

(c) Requirements for areas containing N-Nitrosodimethylamine.

A regulated area shall be established by an employer where N-Nitrosodimethylamine is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, handled or stored. All such areas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements for the following category or categories describing the operation involved:

(1) **Isolated systems.** Employees working with N-Nitrosodimethylamine within an isolated system, such as a "glove box" shall wash their hands and arms upon completion of the assigned task and before engaging in other activities not associated with the isolated system.

(2) **Closed system operation.** Within regulated areas where N-Nitrosodimethylamine

is stored in sealed containers, or contained in a closed system, including piping systems, with any sample ports or openings closed while N-Nitrosodimethylamine is contained within:

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only;

(ii) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck upon each exit from the regulated areas, close to the point of exit and before engaging in other activities.

(3) Open vessel system operations. Open vessel system operations as defined in paragraph (b)(13) of this section are prohibited.

(4) Transfer from a closed system, charging or discharging point operations, or otherwise opening a closed system. In operations involving "laboratory type hoods," or in locations where N-Nitrosodimethylamine is contained in an otherwise "closed system," but is transferred, charged, or discharged into other normally closed containers, the provisions of this subparagraph shall apply.

(i) Access shall be restricted to authorized employees only.

(ii) Each operation shall be provided with continuous local exhaust ventilation so that air movement is always from ordinary work areas to the operation. Exhaust air shall not be discharged to regulated areas, nonregulated areas or the external environment unless decontaminated. Clean makeup air shall be introduced in sufficient volume to maintain the correct operation of the local exhaust system.

(iii) Employees shall be provided with, and required to wear, clean, full body protective clothing (smocks, coveralls, or long-sleeved shirt and pants), shoe covers, and gloves prior to entering the regulated area.

(iv) Employees engaged in N-Nitrosodimethylamine handling operations shall be provided with and required to wear and use a half-face, filter-type respirator for dusts, mists, and fumes, in accordance with §1910.134. A respirator affording higher levels of protection may be substituted.

(v) Prior to each exit from a regulated area, employees shall be required to remove and leave protective clothing and equipment at the point of exit and at the last exit of the day, to place used clothing and equipment in impervious containers at the point of exit for purposes of decontamination or disposal. The contents of such impervious containers shall be identified, as required under paragraphs (e)(2), (3), and (4) of this section

(vi) Employees shall be required to wash hands, forearms, face and neck on each exit from the regulated area, close to the point of exit, and before engaging in other activities.

(vii) Employees shall be required to shower after the last exit of the day.

(viii) Drinking fountains are prohibited in the regulated area.

(5) Maintenance and decontamination activities. In cleanup of leaks or spills, maintenance or repair operations on contaminated systems or equipment, where direct contact with N-Nitrosodimethylamine could result, each authorized employee entering that area shall:

(i) Be provided with and required to wear clean, impervious garments, including gloves, boots and continuous-air supplied hood in accordance with §1910.134.

(ii) Be decontaminated before removing the protective garments and hood.

(iii) Be required to shower upon removing the protective garments and hood.

(6) Laboratory activities.

(Deleted)

[41 F.R. 35184, August 20, 1976.]

(d) General regulated area requirements.

(1) Employee identification. Revoked

(2) Emergencies. In an emergency, immediate measures including, but not limited to, the requirements of subdivisions (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v) of this paragraph shall be implemented.

(i) The potentially affected area shall be evacuated as soon as the emergency has been determined.

(ii) Hazardous conditions created by the emergency shall be eliminated and the potentially affected area shall be decontaminated prior to the resumption of normal operations.

(iii) Special medical surveillance by a physician shall be instituted within 24 hours for employees present in the potentially affected area at the time of the emergency. A report of the medical surveillance and any treatment shall be included in the incident report, in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(iv) Where an employee has a known contact with N-Nitrosodimethylamine, such employee shall be required to shower as soon as possible, unless contraindicated by physical injuries.

(v) An incident report on the emergency shall be reported as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(3) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(i) Storage or consumption of food, storage or use of containers of beverages, storage or application of cosmetics, smoking, storage of smoking materials, tobacco products or other products for chewing or the chewing of such products, are prohibited in regulated areas.

(ii) Where employees are required by this section to wash, washing facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141 (d)(1) and (2)(ii) through (vii).

(iii) Where employees are required by this section to shower, shower facilities shall be provided in accordance with §1910.141(d)(3).

(iv) Where employees wear protective clothing and equipment clean change rooms shall be provided, in accordance with §1910.141(e), for the number of such employees required to change clothes.

(v) Where toilets are in regulated areas, such toilets shall be in a separate room.

(4) Contamination control.

(i) Regulated areas, except for outdoor systems, shall be maintained under pressure negative with respect to nonregulated areas. Local exhaust ventilation may be used to satisfy this requirement. Clean makeup air in equal volume shall replace air removed.

(ii) Any equipment, material, or other item taken into or removed from a regulated area shall be done so in a manner that does not cause contamination in nonregulated areas or the external environment.

(iii) Decontamination procedures shall be established and implemented to remove N-Nitrosodimethylamine from the surfaces of materials, equipment and the decontamination facility.

(iv) Dry sweeping and dry mopping are prohibited.

(e) Signs, information and training.

(1) Signs.

(i) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) Entrances to regulated areas containing operations covered in paragraph (c)(5) of this section shall be posted with signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT
EXPOSED IN THIS AREA
IMPERVIOUS SUIT INCLUDING
GLOVES, BOOTS, AND AIR-SUPPLIED HOOD REQUIRED
AT ALL TIMES
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(iii) Appropriate signs and instructions shall be posted at the entrance to, and exit from, regulated areas, informing employees of the procedures that must be followed in entering and leaving a regulated area.

(2) Container contents identification.

(i) Containers of N-Nitrosodimethylamine and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v) and (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible only to, and handled only by, authorized employees, or by other employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph, may have contents identification limited to a generic or proprietary name, or other proprietary identification, of the carcinogen and percent.

(ii) Containers of N-Nitrosodimethylamine and containers required under paragraphs (c)(4)(v), (c)(6)(vii)(*b*), and (c)(6)(viii)(*b*) of this section which are accessible to, or handled by employees other than authorized employees or employees trained in accordance with subparagraph (5) of this paragraph shall have contents identification which includes the full chemical name and Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number as listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(iii) Containers shall have the warning words "CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT" displayed immediately under or adjacent to the contents identification.

(iv) Containers which have N-Nitrosodimethylamine contents with corrosive or irritating properties shall have label statements warning of such hazards, noting, if appropriate, particularly sensitive or affected portions of the body.

(3) Lettering. Lettering on signs and instructions required by subparagraph (1) shall be a minimum letter height of 2 inches. Labels on containers required under this section shall not be less than ½ the size of the largest lettering on the package, and not less than 8 point type in any instance: provided that no such required lettering need be more than 1 inch in height.

(4) Prohibited statements. No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label, or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of any required warning, information or instruction.

(5) Training and indoctrination.

(i) Each employee prior to being authorized to enter a regulated area, shall receive a training and indoctrination program including, but not necessarily limited to:

(a) The nature of the carcinogenic hazards of N-Nitrosodimethylamine, including local and systemic toxicity;

(b) The specific nature of the operation involving N-Nitrosodimethylamine which could result in exposure;

(c) The purpose for and application of the medical surveillance program, including, as appropriate, methods of self-examination;

(d) The purpose for and application of decontamination practices and purposes;

(e) The purpose for and significance of emergency practices and procedures;

(f) The employee's specific role in emergency procedures;

(g) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition and evaluation of conditions and situations which may result in the release of N-Nitrosodimethylamine;

(h) The purpose for and application of specific first aid procedures and practices.

(i) A review of this section at the employee's first training and indoctrination program and annually thereafter.

(ii) Specific emergency procedures shall be prescribed, and posted, and employees shall be familiarized with their terms, and rehearsed in their application.

(iii) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(f) Reports.

(1) Operations. Not later than March 1, 1974, the information required in subparagraphs (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this paragraph shall be reported in writing to the nearest OSHA Area Director. Any changes in such information shall be similarly reported in writing within 15 calendar days of such change.

(i) A brief description and in-plant location of the area(s) regulated and the address of each regulated area;

(ii) The name(s) and other identifying information as to the presence of N-Nitrosodimethylamine in each regulated area;

(iii) The number of employees in each regulated area, during normal operations including maintenance activities; and

(iv) The manner in which N-Nitrosodimethylamine is present in each regulated area; e.g. whether it is manufactured, processed, used, repackaged, released, stored, or otherwise handled.

(2) Incidents. Incidents which result in the release of N-Nitrosodimethylamine into any area where employees may be potentially exposed shall be reported in accordance with this subparagraph.

(i) A report of the occurrence of the incident and the facts obtainable at that time including a report on any medical treatment of affected employees shall be made within 24 hours to the nearest OSHA Area Director.

(ii) A written report shall be filed with the nearest OSHA Area Director within 15 calendar days thereafter and shall include:

(a) A specification of the amount of material released, the amount of time involved, and an explanation of the procedure used in determining this figure;

(b) A description of the area involved, and the extent of known and possible employee exposure and area contamination; and

(c) A report of any medical treatment of affected employees, and any medical surveillance program implemented; and

(d) An analysis of the circumstances of the incident, and measures taken or to be taken, with specific completion dates, to avoid further similar releases.

(g) Medical surveillance.

At no cost to the employee, a program of medical surveillance shall be established and implemented for employees considered for assignment to enter regulated areas, and for authorized employees.

(1) Examinations.

(i) Before an employee is assigned to enter a regulated area, a preassignment physical examination by a physician shall be provided. The examination shall include the personal history of the employee, family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

(ii) Authorized employees shall be provided periodic physical examinations, not less often than annually, following the preassignment examination.

(iii) In all physicial examinations, the examining physician shall consider whether there exist conditions of increased risk, including reduced immunological competence, those undergoing treatment with steroids or cytotoxic agents, pregnancy and cigarette smoking.

(2) **Records.**

(i) Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be maintained for the duration of the employee's employment. Upon termination of an employee's employment, including retirement or death, or in the event that the employer ceases business without a successor, records, or notarized true copies thereof, shall be forwarded by registered mail to the Director.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall also be provided upon request to the Director.

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(iii) Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer a statement of the employee's suitability for employment in the specific exposure.

1910.1017—VINYL CHLORIDE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section includes requirements for the control of employee exposure to vinyl chloride (chloroethene), Chemical Abstracts Service Registry No. 75014.

[39 F.R. 41848, December 3, 1974.]

(2) This section applies to the manufacture, reaction, packaging, repackaging, storage, handling or use of vinyl chloride or polyvinyl chloride, but does not apply to the handling or use of fabricated products made of polyvinyl chloride.

(3) This section applies to the transportation of vinyl chloride or polyvinyl chloride except to the extent that the Department of Transportation may regulate the hazards covered by this section.

(b) Definitions.

(1) "Action level" means a concentration of vinyl chloride of 0.5 ppm averaged over an 8-hour work day.

(2) "Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or his designee.

(3) "Authorized person" means any person specifically authorized by the employer whose duties require him to enter a regulated area or any person entering such an area as a designated representative of employees for the purpose of exercising an opportunity to observe monitoring and measuring procedures.

(4) "Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, or his designee.

(5) "Emergency" means any occurrence such as, but not limited to, equipment failure, or

operation of a relief device which is likely to, or does, result in massive release of vinyl chloride.

(6) "Fabricated product" means a product made wholly or partly from polyvinyl chloride, and which does not require further processing at temperatures, and for times, sufficient to cause mass melting of the polyvinyl chloride resulting in the release of vinyl chloride.

(7) "Hazardous operation" means any operation, procedure, or activity where a release of either vinyl chloride liquid or gas might be expected as a consequence of the operation or because of an accident in the operation, which would result in an employee in excess of the permissible exposure limit.

[39 F.R. 41848, December 3, 1974.]

(8) "OSHA Area Director" means the Director for the Occupational Safety and Health Administration Area Office having jurisdiction over the geographic area in which the employer's establishment is located.

(9) "Polyvinyl chloride" means polyvinyl chloride homopolymer or copolymer before such is converted to a fabricated product.

(10) "Vinyl chloride" means vinyl chloride monomer.

(c) Permissible exposure limit.

(1) No employee may be exposed to vinyl chloride at concentrations greater than 1 ppm averaged over any 8-hour period, and

(2) No employee may be exposed to vinyl chloride at concentrations greater than 5 ppm averaged over any period not exceeding 15 minutes.

(3) No employee may be exposed to vinyl chloride by direct contact with liquid vinyl chloride.

(d) Monitoring.

(1) A program of initial monitoring and measurement shall be undertaken in each establishment to determine if there is any employee exposed, without regard to the use of respirators, in excess of the action level.

(2) Where a determination conducted under paragraph (d) (1) of this section shows any employee exposures, without regard to the use of respirators, in excess of the action level, a program for determining exposures for each such employee shall be established. Such a program:

(i) Shall be repeated at least monthly where any employee is exposed, without regard to the use of respirators, in excess of the permissible exposure limit.

(ii) Shall be repeated not less than quarterly where any employee is exposed, without regard to the use of respirators, in excess of the action level.

(iii) May be discontinued for any employee only when at least two consecutive monitoring determinations, made not less than 5 working days apart, show exposures for that employee at or below the action level.

(3) Whenever there has been a production, process or control change which may result in an increase in the release of vinyl chloride, or the employer has any other reason to suspect that any employee may be exposed in excess of the action level, a determination of employee exposure under paragraph (d)(1) of this section shall be performed.

(4) The method of monitoring and measurement shall have an accuracy (with a confidence level of 95 percent) of not less than plus or minus 50 percent from 0.25 through 0.5 ppm, plus or minus 35 percent from over 0.5 ppm through 1.0 ppm, and plus or minus 25 percent over 1.0 ppm. (Methods meeting these accuracy requirements are available in the "NIOSH Manual of Analytical Methods").

(5) Employees or their designated representatives shall be afforded reasonable opportunity to observe the monitoring and measuring required by this paragraph.

(e) Regulated area.

(1) A regulated area shall be established where:

(i) Vinyl chloride or polyvinyl chloride is manufactured, reacted, repackaged, stored, handled or used; and

(ii) Vinyl chloride concentrations are in excess of the permissible exposure limit.

(2) Access to regulated areas shall be limited to authorized persons.

(f) Methods of compliance.

Employee exposures to vinyl chloride shall be controlled to at or below the permissible exposure limit provided in paragraph (c) of this section by engineering, work practice, and personal protective controls as follows:

(1) Feasible engineering and work practice controls shall immediately be used to reduce exposures to at or below the permissible exposure limit.

(2) Wherever feasible engineering and work practice controls which can be instituted immediately are not sufficient to reduce exposures to at or below the permissible exposure limit, they shall nonetheless be used to reduce exposures to the lowest practicable level, and shall be supplemented by respiratory protection in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section. A program shall be established and implemented to reduce exposures to at or below the permissible exposure limit, or to the greatest extent feasible, solely by means of engineering and work practice controls, as soon as feasible.

(3) Written plans for such a program shall be developed and furnished upon request for examination and copying to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director. Such plans shall be updated at least every six months.

(g) Respiratory protection.

Where respiratory protection is required under this section:

(1) The employer shall provide a respirator which meets the requirements of this paragraph and shall assure that the employee uses such respirator, except that until April 1, 1976, wearing of respirators shall be at the discretion of each employee for exposures not in excess of 25 ppm, measured over any 15-minute period. Until April 1, 1976, each employee who chooses not to wear an appropriate respirator shall be informed at least quarterly of the hazards of vinyl chloride and the purpose, proper use, and limitations of respiratory devices.

[40 F.R. 13211, March 25, 1975.]

(2) Respirators shall be selected from among those jointly approved by the Mining Enforcement and Safety Administration, Department of the Interior, and the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11.

(3) A respiratory protection program meeting the requirements of § 1910.134 shall be established and maintained.

(4) Selection of respirators for vinyl chloride shall be as follows:

Atmospheric concentration of vinyl chloride	*Required apparatus*
(i) Unknown, or above 3,600 ppm	Open-circuit, self-contained breathing apparatus, pressure demand type, with full facepiece.
(ii) Not over 3,600 ppm	**(a)** Combination type C supplied air respirator, pressure demand type, with full or half facepiece, and auxiliary self-contained air supply; or
	(b) Combination type C, supplied air respirator continuous flow type, with full or half facepiece and auxiliary self-contained air supply.
(iii) Not over 1,000 ppm	Type C, supplied air respirator continuous flow type, with full or half facepiece, helmet or hood.
(iv) Not over 100 ppm	**(a)** Combination type C supplied air respirator demand type, with full facepiece, and auxiliary self-contained air supply; or
	(b) Open-circuit self-contained breathing apparatus with full facepiece, in demand mode; or
	(c) Type C supplied air respirator, demand type, with full facepiece.
(v) Not over 25 ppm	**(a)** A powered air-purifying respirator with hood, helmet, full or half facepiece, and a canister which provides a service life of at least 4 hours for concentrations of vinyl chloride up to 25 ppm, or
	(b) Gas mask, front- or back-mounted canister which provides a service life of at least 4 hours for concentrations of vinyl chloride up to 25 ppm.
(vi) Not over 10 ppm	**(a)** Combination type C supplied-air respirator, demand type, with half facepiece, and auxiliary self-contained air supply; or
	(b) Type C supplied-air respirator, demand type, with half facepiece; or
	(c) Any chemical cartridge respirator with an organic vapor cartridge which provides a service life of at least 1 hour for concentrations of vinyl chloride up to 10 ppm.

[39 F.R. 4148, December 3, 1974.]

(5)

(i) Entry into unknown concentrations or concentrations greater than 36,000 ppm (lower explosive limit) may be made only for purposes of life rescue; and

(ii) Entry into concentrations of less than 36,000 ppm, but greater than 3,600 ppm may be made only for purposes of life rescue, firefighting, or securing equipment so as to prevent a greater hazard from release of vinyl chloride.

(6) Where air-purifying respirators are used:

(i) Air-purifying cannisters or cartridges shall be replaced prior to the expiration of their service life or the end of the shift in which they are first used, whichever occurs first, and

(ii) A continuous monitoring and alarm system shall be provided where concentrations of vinyl chloride could reasonably exceed the allowable concentrations for the devices in use. Such system shall be used to alert employees when vinyl chloride concentrations exceed the allowable concentrations for the devices in use.

(7) Apparatus prescribed for higher concentrations may be used for any lower concentration.

(h) Hazardous operations.

(1) Employees engaged in hazardous operations, including entry of vessels to clean polyvinyl chloride residue from vessel walls, shall be provided and required to wear and use:

(i) Respiratory protection in accordance with paragraphs (c) and (g) of this section; and

(ii) Protective garments to prevent skin contact with liquid vinyl chloride or with polyvinyl chloride residue from vessel walls. The protective garments shall be selected for the operation and its possible exposure conditions.

(2) Protective garments shall be provided clean and dry for each use.

(i) Emergency situations.

A written operational plan for emergency situations shall be developed for each facility storing, handling, or otherwise using vinyl chloride as a liquid or compressed gas. Appropriate portions of the plan shall be implemented in the event of an emergency. The plan shall specifically provide that:

(1) Employees engaged in hazardous operations or correcting situations of existing hazardous releases shall be equipped as required in paragraph (h) of this section;

(2) Other employees not so equipped shall evacuate the area and not return until conditions are controlled by the methods required in paragraph (f) of this section and the emergency is abated.

(j) Training.

Each employee engaged in vinyl chloride or polyvinyl chloride operations shall be provided training in a program relating to the hazards of vinyl chloride and precautions for its safe use.

(1) The program shall include:

(i) The nature of the health hazard from chronic exposure to vinyl chloride including specifically the carcinogenic hazard.

(ii) The specific nature of operations which could result in exposure to vinyl chloride in excess of the permissible limit and necessary protective steps;

(iii) The purpose for, proper use, and limitations of respiratory protective devices;

[39 F.R. 41848, December 3, 1974.]

(iv) The fire hazard and acute toxicity of vinyl chloride, and the necessary protective steps;

(v) The purpose for and a description of the monitoring program;

best copy available

(vi) The purpose for, and a description of, the medical surveillance program;

(vii) Emergency procedures;

(viii) Specific information to aid the employee in recognition of conditions which may result in the release of vinyl chloride; and

(ix) A review of this standard at the employee's first training and indoctrination program, and annually thereafter.

(2) All materials relating to the program shall be provided upon request to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(k) Medical surveillance.

A program of medical surveillance shall be instituted for each employee exposed, without regard to the use of respirators, to vinyl chloride in excess of the action level. The program shall provide each such employee with an opportunity for examinations and tests in accordance with this paragraph. All medical examinations and procedures shall be performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician, and shall be provided without cost to the employee.

(1) At the time of initial assignment, or upon institution of medical surveillance;

(i) A general physical examination shall be performed, with specific attention to detecting enlargement of liver, spleen or kidneys, or dysfunction in these organs, and for abnormalities in skin, connective tissues and the pulmonary system (See Appendix A)

(ii) A medical history shall be taken, including the following topics:

(a) Alcohol intake;

(b) Past history of hepatitis;

(c) Work history and past exposure to potential hepatotoxic agents, including drugs and chemicals;

(d) Past history of blood transfusions and

(e) Past history of hospitalizations.

(iii) A serum specimen shall be obtained and determinations made of:

(a) Total bilirubin;

(b) Alkaline phosphatase;

(c) Serum glutamic oxalacetic transaminase (SGOT);

(d) Serum glutamic pyruvic transaminase (SGPT); and

(e) Gamma glustamyl transpeptidase.

(2) Examinations provided in accordance with this paragraph shall be performed at least:

(i) Every 6 months for each employee who has been employed in vinyl chloride or polyvinyl chloride manufacturing for 10 years or longer; and

(ii) Annually for all other employees.

(3) Each employee exposed to an emergency shall be afforded appropriate medical surveillance.

(4) A statement of each employee's suitability for continued exposure to vinyl chloride including use of protective equipment and respirators, shall be obtained from the examining physician promptly after any examination. A copy of the physician's statement shall be provided each employee.

(5) If any employee's health would be materially impaired by continued exposure, such employee shall be withdrawn from possible contact with vinyl chloride.

(6) Laboratory analyses for all biological specimens included in medical examinations shall be performed in laboratories licensed under 42 CFR Part 74.

(7) If the examining physician determines that alternative medical examinations to those required by paragraph (k)(1) of this section will provide at least equal assurance of detecting medical conditions pertinent to the exposure to vinyl chloride, the employer may accept such alternative examinations as meeting the requirements of paragraph (k)(1) of this section, if the employer obtains a statement from the examining physician setting forth the alternative examinations and the rationale for substitution. This statement shall be available upon request for examination and copying to authorized representatives of the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(1) Signs and labels.

(1) Entrances to regulated areas shall be posted with legible signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT AREA
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

[39 F.R. 41848, December 3, 1974.]

(2) Areas containing hazardous operations or where an emergency currently exists shall be posted with legible signs bearing the legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT IN THIS AREA
PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT REQUIRED
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

[39 F.R. 41848, December 3, 1974.]

(3) Containers of polyvinyl chloride resin waste from reactors or other waste contaminated with vinyl chloride shall be legibly labeled:

CONTAMINATED WITH
VINYL CHLORIDE
CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT

[39 F.R. 41848, December 3, 1974.]

(4) Containers of polyviny chloride shall be legibly labeled:

POLYVINYL CHLORIDE (OR TRADE NAME)
Contains
VINYL CHLORIDE
VINYL CHLORIDE IS A CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT

(5) Containers of vinyl chloride shall be legibly labeled either:

(i)

VINYL CHLORIDE
EXTREMELY FLAMMABLE GAS
UNDER PRESSURE
CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT

or

(ii) In accordance with 49 CFR Parts 170-189, with the additional legend:

CANCER-SUSPECT AGENT

applied near the label or placard.

[39 F.R. 41848, December 3, 1974.]

(6) No statement shall appear on or near any required sign, label or instruction which contradicts or detracts from the effect of, any required warning, information or instruction.

(m) Records.

(1) All records maintained in accordance with this section shall include the name and social security number of each employee where relevant.

(2) Records of required monitoring and measuring and medical records shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). These records shall be provided upon request to the Director. Authorized personnel rosters shall also be provided upon request to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(i) Monitoring and measuring records shall:

(a) State the date of such monitoring and measuring and the concentrations determined and identify the instruments and methods used;

(b) Include any additional information necessary to determine individual employee exposures where such exposures are determined by means other than individual monitoring of employees; and

(c) Be maintained for not less than 30 years.

(ii) Revoked

(iii) Medical records shall be maintained for the duration of the employment of each employee plus 20 years, or 30 years, whichever is longer.

(3) In the event that the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor to receive and retain his records for the prescribed period, these records shall be transmitted by registered mail to the Director, and each employee individually notified in writing of this transfer. The employer shall also comply with any additional requirements set forth in 29 CFR 1910.20(h).

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(n) Reports.

(1) Not later than 1 month after the establishment of a regulated area, the following information shall be reported to the OSHA Area Director. Any changes to such information shall be reported within 15 days.

(i) The address and location of each establishment which has one or more regulated areas; and

(ii) The number of employees in each regulated area during normal operations, including maintenance.

(2) Emergencies, and the facts obtainable at that time, shall be reported within 24 hours to the OSHA Area Director. Upon request of the Area Director, the employer shall submit additional information in writing relevant to the nature and extent of employee exposures and measures taken to prevent future emergencies of similar nature.

(3) Within 10 working days following any monitoring and measuring which discloses that any employee has been exposed, without regard to the use of respirators, in excess of the permissible exposure limit, each such employee shall be notified in writing of the results of the exposure measurement and the steps being taken to reduce the exposure to within the permissible exposure limit.

[39 F.R. 41848, December 3, 1974.]

(o) Effective dates.

(1) Until April 1, 1975, the provisions currently set forth in § 1910.93q of this Part shall apply.

(2) Effective April 1, 1975, the provisions set forth in § 1910.93q of this Part shall apply.

[40 F.R. 13211, March 25, 1975.]

APPENDIX A—SUPPLEMENTARY MEDICAL INFORMATION

When required tests under paragraph (k)(1) of this section show abnormalities, the tests should be repeated as soon as practicable, preferably within 3 to 4 weeks. If tests remain abnormal, consideration should be given to withdrawal of the employee from contact with vinyl chloride, while a more comprehensive examination is made.

Additional tests which may be useful:

A. For kidney dysfunction: urine examination for albumin, red blood cells, and exfoliative abnormal cells.

B. Pulmonary system: Forced vital capacity, Forced expiratory volume at 1 second, and chest roentgenogram (posterior-anterior, 14 x 17 inches).

C. Additional serum tests: Lactic acid dehydrogenase, lactic acid dehydrogenase isoenzyme, protein determination, and protein electrophoresis.

D. For a more comprehensive examination on repeated abnormal serum tests: Hepatitis B antigen, and liver scanning.

[39 F.R. 35889, October 4, 1974.]

1910.1018—INORGANIC ARSENIC

(a) Scope and application. This section applies to all occupational exposures to inorganic arsenic except that this section does not apply to employee exposures in agriculture or resulting from pesticide application, the treatment of wood with preservatives or the utilization of arsenically preserved wood.

(b) Definitions.

"Action level" means a concentration of inorganic arsenic of 5 micrograms per cubic meter of air (5 $\mu g/m^3$) averaged over any eight (8) hour period.

"Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

"Authorized person" means any person specifically authorized by the employer whose duties require the person to enter a regulated area, or any person entering such an area, as a designated representative of employees for the purpose of exercising the right to observe monitoring and measuring procedures under paragraph (e) of this section.

"Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, or designee.

"Inorganic arsenic" means copper acetoarsenite and all inorganic compounds containing arsenic except arsine, measured as arsenic (As).

(c) Permissible exposure limit.

The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to inorganic arsenic at concentrations greater than 10 micrograms per cubic meter of air (10 $\mu g/m^3$), averaged over any 8-hour period.

(d) Notification of use.

(1) By October 1, 1978 or within 60 days after the introduction of inorganic arsenic into the workplace, every employer who is required to establish a regulated area in his workplaces shall report in writing to the OSHA area office for each such workplace:

(i) The address of each such workplace;

(ii) The approximate number of employees who will be working in regulated areas; and

(iii) A brief summary of the operations creating the exposure and the actions which the employer intends to take to reduce exposures.

(2) Whenever there has been a significant change in the information required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section the employer shall report the changes in writing within 60 days to the OSHA area office.

(e) Exposure monitoring.

(1) General.

(i) Determinations of airborne exposure levels shall be made from air samples that are representative of each employee's exposure to inorganic arsenic over an eight (8) hour period.

(ii) For the purposes of this section, employee exposure is that exposure which would occur if the employee were not using a respirator.

(iii) The employer shall collect full shift (for at least 7 continuous hours) personal samples including at least one sample for each shift for each job classification in each work area.

(2) Initial monitoring. Each employer who has a workplace or work operation covered by this standard shall monitor each such workplace and work operation to accurately determine the airborne concentration of inorganic arsenic to which employees may be exposed.

(3) Frequency.

(i) If the initial monitoring reveals employee exposure to be below the action level the measurements need not be repeated except as otherwise provided in paragraph (e)(4) of this section.

(ii) If the initial monitoring, required by this section, or subsequent monitoring reveals employer exposure to be above the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall repeat monitoring at least quarterly.

(iii) If the initial monitoring, required by this section, or subsequent monitoring reveals employee exposure to be above the action level and below the permissible exposure limit the employee shall repeat monitoring at least every six months.

(iv) The employer shall continue monitoring at the required frequency until at least two consecutive measurements, taken at least seven (7) days apart, are below the action level at which time the employer may discontinue monitoring for that employee until such time as any of the events in paragraph (e)(4) of this section occur.

(4) Additional monitoring. When ever there has been a production process, control or personal change which may result in new or additional exposure to inorganic arsenic, or whenever the employer has any other reason to suspect a change which may result in new or additional exposures to inorganic arsenic, additional monitoring which complies with paragraph (e) of this section shall be conducted.

(5) Employee notification.

(i) Within five (5) working days after the receipt of monitoring results, the employer shall notify each employee in writing of the results which represent that employee's exposures.

(ii) Whenever the results indicate that the representative employee exposure exceeds the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall include in the written notice a statement that the permissible exposure limit was exceeded and a description of the corrective action taken to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limit.

(6) Accuracy of measurement.

(i) The employer shall use a method of monitoring and measurement which has an accuracy (with a confidence level of 95 percent) of not less than plus or minus 25 percent for concentrations of inorganic arsenic greater than or equal to 10 $\mu g/m^3$.

(ii) The employer shall use a method of monitoring and measurement which has an accuracy (with confidence level of 95 percent) of not less than plus or minus 35 percent for concentrations of inorganic arsenic greater than 5 $\mu g/m^3$ but less than 10$\mu g/m^3$.

(f) Regulated area.

(1) Establishment. The employer shall establish regulated areas where worker exposures to inorganic arsenic, without regard to the use of respirators, are in excess of the permissible limit.

(2) Demarcation. Regulated areas shall be demarcated and segregated from the rest of the workplace in any manner that minimizes the number of persons who will be exposed to inorganic arsenic.

(2) Access. Access to regulated areas shall be limited to authorized persons or to persons otherwise authorized by the Act or regulations issued pursuant thereto to enter such areas.

(4) Provisions of respirators. All persons entering a regulated area shall be supplied with a respirator, selected in accordance with paragraph (h)(2) of this section.

(5) Prohibited activities. The employer shall assure that in regulated areas, food and beverages are not consumed, smoking products, chewing tobacco and gum are not used and cosmetics are not applied, except that these activities may be conducted in the lunchrooms, change rooms and showers required under paragraph (m) of this section. Drinking water may be consumed in the regulated area.

(g) Methods of compliance.

(1) Controls.

(i) The employer shall institute at the earliest possible time but not later than December 31, 1979, engineering and work practice controls to reduce exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit, except to the extent that the employer can establish that such controls are not feasible.

(ii) Where engineering and work practice controls are not sufficient to reduce exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit, they shall nonetheless be used to reduce exposures to the lowest levels achievable by these controls and shall be supplemented by the use of respirators in accordance with paragraph (h) of this section and other necessary personal protective equipment. Employee rotation is not required as a control strategy before respiratory protection is instituted.

(2) Compliance Program.

(i) The employer shall establish and implement a written program to reduce exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit by means of engineering and work practice controls.

(ii) Written plans for these compliance programs shall include at least the following:

(a) A description of each operation in which inorganic arsenic is emitted; e.g. machinery used, material processed, controls in place, crew size, operating procedures and maintenance practices;

(b) Engineering plans and studies used to determine methods selected for controlling exposure to inorganic arsenic;

(c) A report of the technology considered in meeting the permissible exposure limit;

(d) Monitoring data;

(e) A detailed schedule for implementation of the engineering controls and work practices that cannot be implemented immediately and for the adaption and implementation of any additional engineering and work practices necessary to meet the permissible exposure limit;

(f) Whenever the employer will not achieve the permissible exposure limit with engineering controls and work practices by December 31, 1979, the employer shall include in the compliance plan an analysis of the effectiveness of the various controls, shall install engineering controls and institute work practices on the quickest schedule feasible, and shall include in the compliance plan and implement a program to minimize the discomfort and maximize the effectiveness of respirator use; and

(g) Other relevant information.

(iii) Written plans for such a program shall be submitted upon request to the Assistant Secretary and the Director, and shall be available at the worksite for examination and copying by the Assistant Secretary, Director, any affected employee or authorized employee representatives.

(iv) The plans required by this paragraph shall be revised and updated at least every 6 months to reflect the current status of the program.

(h) Respiratory protection

(1) General. The employer shall assure that respirators are used where required under this section to reduce employee exposures to below the permissible exposure limit and in emergencies. Respirators shall be used in the following circumstances:

(i) During the time period necessary to install or implement feasible engineering or work practice controls;

(ii) In work operations such as maintenance and repair activities in which the employer establishes that engineering and work practice controls are not feasible;

(iii) In work situations in which engineering controls and supplemental work practice controls are not yet sufficient to reduce exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit; or

(iv) In emergencies.

(2) Respirator selection.

(i) Where respirators are required under this section the employer shall select, provide at no cost to the employee and assure the use of the appropriate respirator or combination of respirators from Table I below for inorganic arsenic compounds without significant vapor pressure, or Table II below for inorganic arsenic compounds which have significant vapor pressure.

TABLE I.—*Respiratory protection for inorganic arsenic particulate except for those with significant vapor pressure*

Concentration of inorganic arsenic (as As) or condition of use	Required respirator
(i) Unknown or greater or lesser than 20,000 $\mu g/m^3$ (20 mg/m^3) or firefighting.	(A) Any full facepiece self-contained breathing apparatus operated in positive pressure mode.
(ii) Not greater than 20,000 $\mu g/m^3$ (20 mg/m^3)....	(A) Supplied air respirator with full facepiece, hood, or helmet or suit and operated in positive pressure mode.
(iii) Not greater than 10,000 $\mu g/m^3$(10 mg/m^3)....	(A) Powered air-purifying respirators in all inlet face coverings with high efficiency filters.[1] (B) Half-mask supplied air respirators operated in positive pressure mode.
(iv) Not greater than 500 $\mu g/m^3$.................	(A) Full facepiece air-purifying respirator equipped with high-efficiency filter.[1] (B) Any full facepiece supplied air respirator. (C) Any full facepiece self-contained breathing apparatus.
(v) Not greater than 100$\mu g/m^3$..................	(A) Half-mask air purifying respirator equipped with high-efficiency filter.[1] (B) Any half-mask supplied air respirator.

---

[1] High-efficiency filter—99.97 pct efficiency against 0.3 micrometer monodisperse diethyl-hexyl phthalate (DOP) particles.

TABLE II.—*Respiratory protection for inorganic arsenicals (such as arsenic trichloride*[2] *and arsenic phosphide) with significant vapor pressure*

Concentration of inorganic arsenic (as As) or condition of use	Required respirator
(i) Unknown or greater or lesser than 20,000 $\mu g/m^3$ (20 mg/m^3) or firefighting.	(A) Any full facepiece self-contained breathing apparatus operated in positive pressure mode.
(ii) Not greater than 20,000 $\mu g/m^3$(20 mg/m^3)	(A) Supplied air respirator with full facepiece hood, or helmet or suit and operated in positive pressure mode.
(iii) Not greater than 10,000 $\mu g/m^3$ (10 mg/m^3)	(A) Half mask[2] supplied air respirator operated in positive pressure mode.
(iv) Not greater than 500 $\mu g/m^3$.................	(A) Front or back mounted gas mask equipped with high-efficiency filter[1] and acid gas canister. (B) Any full facepiece supplied air respirator. (C) Any full facepiece self-contained breathing apparatus.
(v) Not greater than 100 $\mu g/m^3$	(A) Half mask[2] air-purifying respirator equipped with high- efficiency filter[1] and acid gas cartridge. (B) Any half-mask supplied air respirator.

---

[1] High efficiency filter—99.97 pct efficiency against 0.3 micrometer monodisperse diethyl-hexyl phthalate (DOP) particles.

[2] Half mask respirators shall not be used for protection against arsenic trichloride, as it is rapidly absorbed through the skin.

(ii) Where employee exposures exceed the permissible exposure limit for inorganic arsenic and also exceed the relevant limit for particular gasses such as sulfur dioxide, any air purifying respirator supplied to the employee as permitted by this standard must have a combination high efficiency filter with an appropriate gas sorbent. (See footnote in Table 1)

(iii) The employer shall select respirators from among those approved for protection against dust, fume, and mist by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11.

(3) Respirator usage.

(i) The employer shall assure that the respirator issued to the employee exhibits minimum facepiece leakage and that the respirator is fitted properly.

(ii) The employer shall perform qualitative fit tests at the time of initial fitting and at least semi-annually thereafter for each employee wearing respirators, where quantitative fit tests are not required.

(iii) Employers with more than 20 employees wearing respirators shall perform a quantitative face fit test at the time of initial fitting and least semi-annually thereafter for each employee wearing negative pressure respirators. The test shall be used to select facepieces that provide the required protection as prescribed in Table I or II.

(iv) If an employee has demonstrated difficulty in breathing during the fitting test or during use, he or she shall be examined by a physician trained in pulmonary medicine to determine whether the employee can wear a respirator while performing the required duty.

(4) Respirator program.

(i) The employer shall institute a respiratory protection program in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.134 (b), (d), (e) and (f).

(ii) The employer shall permit each employee who uses a filter respirator to change the filter elements whenever an increase in breathing resistance is detected and shall maintain an adequate supply of filter elements for this purpose.

(iii) Employees who wear respirators shall be permitted to leave work areas to wash their face and respirator face-piece to prevent skin irritation associated with respirator use.

(5) Commencement of respirator use.

(i) The employer's obligation to provide respirators commences on August 1, 1978 for employees exposed over 500 $\mu g/m^3$ of inorganic arsenic, as soon as possible but not later than October 1, 1978 for employees exposed to over 50 $\mu g/m^3$ of inorganic arsenic, and as soon as possible but not later than December 1, 1978 for employees exposed between 10 and 50 $\mu g/m^3$ of inorganic arsenic.

(ii) Employees with exposures below 50 $\mu g/m^3$ of inorganic arsenic may choose not to wear respirators until December 31, 1979.

(iii) After December 1, 1978 any employee required to wear air purifying respirators may choose, and if so chosen the employer must provide, if it will give proper protection, a powered air purifying respirator and in addition if necessary a combination dust and acid gas respirator for times where exposures to gases are over the relevant exposure limits.

(i) [Reserved].

(j) Protective work clothing and equipment

(1) Provision and use. Where the possibility of skin or eye irritation from inorganic arsenic exists, and for all workers working in regulated areas, the employer shall provide at no cost to the employee and assure that employees use appropriate and clean protective work clothing and equipment such as, but not limited to:

(i) Coveralls or similar full-body work clothing;

(ii) Gloves, and shoes or coverlets;

(iii) Face shields or vented goggles when necessary to prevent eye irritation, which comply with the requirements of §1910.133(a)(2)—(a)(6); and

(iv) Impervious clothing for employees subject to exposure to arsenic trichloride.

(2) Cleaning and replacement.

(i) The employer shall provide the protective clothing required in paragraph (j)(1) of this section in a freshly laundered and dry condition at least weekly, and daily if employee works in areas where exposures are over 100 $\mu g/m^3$ of inorganic arsenic or in areas where more frequent washing is needed to prevent skin irritation.

(ii) The employer shall clean, launder, or dispose of protective clothing required by paragraph (j) (1) of this section.

(iii) The employer shall repair or replace the protective clothing and equipment as needed to maintain their effectiveness.

(iv) The employer shall assure that all protective clothing is removed at the completion of a work shift only in change rooms prescribed in paragraph (m) (1) of this section.

(v) The employer shall assure that contaminated protective clothing which is to be cleaned, laundered, or disposed of, is placed in a closed container in the change-room which prevents dispersion of inorganic arsenic outside the container.

(vi) The employer shall inform in writing any person who cleans or launders clothing required by this section, of the potentially harmful effects including the carcinogenic effects of exposure to inorganic arsenic.

(vii) The employer shall assure that the containers of contaminated protective clothing and equipment in the workplace or which are to be removed from the workplace are labelled as follows:

CAUTION: Clothing contaminated with inorganic arsenic; do not remove dust by blowing or shaking. Dispose of inorganic arsenic contaminated wash water in accordance with applicable local, state, or Federal regulations.

(viii) The employer shall prohibit the removal of inorganic arsenic from protective clothing or equipment by blowing or shaking.

(k) Housekeeping.

(1) Surfaces. All surfaces shall be maintained as free as practicable of accumulations of inorganic arsenic.

(2) Cleaning floors. Floors and other accessible surfaces contaminated with inorganic arsenic may not be cleaned by the use of compressed air, and shoveling and brushing may be used only where vacuuming or other relevant methods have been tried and found not to be effective.

(3) Vacuuming. Where vacuuming methods are selected, the vacuums shall be used and emptied in a manner to minimize the reentry of inorganic arsenic into the workplace.

(4) Housekeeping plan. A written housekeeping and maintenance plan shall be kept which shall list appropriate frequencies for carrying out housekeeping operations, and for cleaning and maintaining dust collection equipment. The plan shall be available for inspection by the Assistant Secretary.

(5) Maintenance of equipment. Periodic cleaning of dust collection and ventilation equipment and checks of their effectiveness shall be carried out to maintain the effectiveness of the system and a notation kept of the last check of effectiveness and cleaning or maintenance.

(l) [Reserved.]

(m) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(1) Change rooms. The employer shall provide for employees working in regulated areas or subject to the possibility of skin or eye irritation from inorganic arsenic, clean change rooms equipped with storage facilities for street clothes and separate storage facilities for protective clothing and equipment in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.141(e).

(2) Showers.

(i) The employer shall assure that employees working in regulated areas or subject to the possibility of skin or eye irritation from inorganic arsenic shower at the end of the work shift.

(ii) The employer shall provide shower facilities in accordance with § 1910.141(d)(3).

(3) Lunchrooms.

(i) The employer shall provide for employees working in regulated areas, lunchroom facilities which have a temperature controlled, positive pressure, filtered air supply, and which are readily accessible to employees working in regulated areas.

(ii) The employer shall assure that employees working in the regulated area or subject to the possibility of skin or eye irritation from exposure to inorganic arsenic wash their hands and face prior to eating.

(4) Lavatories. The employer shall provide lavatory facilities which comply with § 1910.141(d) (1) and (2).

(5) Vacuuming clothes. The employer shall provide facilities for employees working in areas where exposure, without regard to the use of respirators, exceeds 100 $\mu g/m^3$ to vacuum their protective clothing and clean or change shoes worn in such areas before entering change rooms, lunchrooms or shower rooms required by paragraph (j) of this section and shall assure that such employees use such facilities.

(6) Avoidance of skin irritation. The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to skin or eye contact with arsenic trichloride, or to skin or eye contact with liquid or particulate inorganic arsenic which is likely to cause skin or eye irritation.

(n) Medical surveillance.

(1) General.

(i) Employees covered. The employer shall institute a medical surveillance program for the following employees:

(a) All employees who are or will be exposed above the action level, without regard to the use of respirators, at least 30 days per year; and

(b) All employees who have been exposed above the action level, without regard to respirator use, for 30 days or more per year for a total of 10 years or more of combined employment with the employer or predecessor employers prior to or after the effective date of this standard. The determination of exposures prior to the effective date of this standard shall be based upon prior exposure records, comparison with the first measurements taken after the effective date of this standard, or comparison with records of exposures in areas with similar processes, extent of engineering controls utilized and materials used by that employer.

(ii) Examination by physician. The employer shall assure that all medical examinations and procedures are performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician, and shall be provided without cost to the employee, without loss of pay and at a reasonable time and place.

(2) Initial examinations. By December 1, 1978, for employees initially covered by the medical provisions of this section, or thereafter at the time of initial assignment to an area where the employee is likely to be exposed over the action level at least 30 days per year, the employer shall provide each affected employee an opportunity for a medical examination, including at least the following elements:

(i) A work history and a medical history which shall include a smoking history and the presence and degree of respiratory symptoms such as breathlessness, cough, sputum and production wheezing.

(ii) A medical examination which shall include at least the following:

(a) A 14″ by 17″ posterior-anterior chest X-ray and International Labor Office UICC/Cincinnati (ILO U/C) rating;

(b) A nasal and skin examination; and

(c) A sputum cytology examination, and

(d) Other examinations which the physician believes appropriate because of the employees exposure to inorganic arsenic or because of required respirator use.

(3) Periodic examinations.

(i) The employer shall provide the examinations specified in paragraphs (n)(2)(i) and (n)(2)(ii)(A), (B), and (D) at least annually for covered employees who are under 45 years of age with fewer than 10 years of exposure over the action level without regard to respirator use.

(ii) The employer shall provide the examinations specified in paragraphs (n)(2)(i) and (n)(2)(ii) of this section at least semiannually for other covered employees.

(iii) Whenever a covered employee has not taken the examinations specified in paragraphs (n)(2)(i) and (n)(2)(ii) of this section within six (6) months preceding the termination of employment, the employer shall provide such examinations to the employee upon termination of employment.

(4) Additional examinations. If the employee for any reason develops signs or symptoms commonly associated with exposure to inorganic arsenic the employer shall provide an appropriate examination and emergency medical treatment.

(5) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide the following information to the examining physician:

(i) A copy of this standard and its appendices:

(ii) A description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposure;

(iii) The employee's representative exposure level or anticipated exposure level;

(iv) A description of any personal protective equipment used or to be used; and

(v) Information from previous medical examinations of the affected employee which is not readily available to the examining physician.

(6) Physician's written opinion.

(i) The employer shall obtain a written opinion from the examining physician which shall include:

(a) The results of the medical examination and tests performed;

(b) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical conditions which would place the employee at increased risk of material impairment of the employee's health from exposure to inorganic arsenic;

(c) Any recommended limitations upon the employee's exposure to inorganic arsenic or upon the use of protective clothing or equipment such as respirators; and

(d) A statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and any medical conditions which require further explanation or treatment.

(ii) The employer shall instruct the physician not to reveal in the written opinion specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure.

(iii) The employer shall provide a copy of the written opinion to the affected employee.

(o) Employee information and training.

(1) Training program.

(i) The employer shall institute a training program for all employees who are subject to exposure to inorganic arsenic above the action level without regard to respirator use, or for whom there is the possibility of skin or eye irritation from inorganic arsenic. The employer shall assure that those employees participate in the training program.

(ii) The training program shall be provided by October 1, 1978, for employees covered by this provision, at the time of initial assignment for those subsequently covered by this provision, and shall be repeated at least quarterly for employees who have optional use of respirators and at least annually for other covered employees thereafter; and the employer shall assure that each employee is informed of the following:

(a) The information contained in Appendix A;

(b) The quantity, location, manner of use, storage, sources of exposure, and the specific nature of operations which could result in exposure to inorganic arsenic as well as any necessary protective steps;

(c) The purpose, proper use, and limitation of respirators;

(d) The purpose and a description of the medical surveillance program as required by paragraph (n) of this section;

(e) The engineering controls and work practices associated with the employee's job assignment; and

(f) A review of this standard.

(2) Access to training materials.

(i) The employer shall make readily available to all affected employees a copy of this standard and its appendices.

(ii) The employer shall provide; upon request, all materials relating to the employee information and training program to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(p) Signs and labels.

(1) General.

(i) The employer may use labels or signs required by other statutes, regulations, or ordinances in addition to, or in combination with, signs and labels required by this paragraph.

(ii) The employer shall assure that no statement appears on or near any sign or label required by this paragraph which contradicts or detracts from the meaning of the required sign or label.

(2) Signs.

(i) The employer shall post signs demarcating regulated are[illegible]aring the legend:

[illegible]GER

INORGANIC ARSENIC

CANCER HAZARD

AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

NO SMOKING OR EATING

RESPIRATOR REQUIRED

(ii) The employer shall assure that signs required by this paragraph are illuminated and cleaned as necessary so that the legend is readily visible.

(3) Labels. The employer shall apply precautionary labels to all shipping and storage containers of inorganic arsenic, and to all products containing inorganic arsenic except when the inorganic arsenic in the product is bound in such a manner so as to make unlikely the possibility of airborne exposure to inorganic arsenic. (Possible examples of products not requiring labels are semiconductors, light emitting diodes and glass). The label shall bear the following legend:

DANGER

CONTAINS INORGANIC ARSENIC

CANCER HAZARD

HARMFUL IF INHALED OR SWALLOWED

USE ONLY WITH ADEQUATE VENTILATION

OR RESPIRATORY PROTECTION

(q) Recordkeeping.

(1) Exposure monitoring

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of all monitoring required by paragraph (e) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) The date(s), number, duration location, and results of each of the samples taken, including a description of the sampling procedure used to determine representative employee exposure were applicable;

(b) A description of the sampling and analytical methods used and evidence of their accuracy;

(c) The type of respiratory protective devices worn, if any;

(d) Name, social security number, and job classification of the employees monitored and of all other employees whose exposure the measurement is intended to represent; and

(e) The environmental variables that could affect the measurement of the employee's exposure.

(ii) The employer shall maintain these monitoring records for at least 40 years or for the duration of employment plus 20 years, whichever, is longer.

(2) Medical surveillance.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee subject to medical surveillance as required by paragraph (n) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) The name, social security number, and description of duties of the employee;

(b) A copy of the physician's written opinions;

(c) Results of any exposure monitoring done for that employee and the representative exposure levels supplied to the physician; and

(d) Any employee medical complaints related to exposure to inorganic arsenic.

(iii) The employer shall in addition keep, or assure that the examining physician keeps, the following medical records;

(a) A copy of the medical examination results including medical and work history required under paragraph (n) of this section;

(b) A description of the laboratory procedures and a copy of any standards or guidelines used to interpret the test results or references to that information;

(c) The initial X-ray;

(d) The X-rays for the most recent 5 years;

(e) Any X-rays with a demonstrated abnormality and all subsequent X-rays;

(f) The initial cytologic examination slide and written description;

(g) The cytologic examination slide and written description for the most recent 5 years; and

(h) Any cytologic examination slides with demonstrated atypia, if such atypia persists for 3 years, and all subsequent slides and written descriptions.

(iv) The employer shall maintain or assure that the physician maintains those medical records for at least 40 years, or for the duration of employment plus 20 years whichever is longer.

(3) Availability.

(i) The employer shall make available upon request all records required to be maintained by paragraph (q) of this section to the Assistant Secretary and the Director for examination and copying.

(ii) Records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i).

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

(4) Transfer of records.

(i) Whenever the employer ceases to do business, the successor employer shall receive and retain all records required to be maintained by this section.

(ii) Whenever the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records required to be maintained by this section for the prescribed period, these records shall be transmitted to the Director.

(iii) At the expiration of the retention period for the records required to be maintained by this section, the employer shall notify the Director at least 3 months prior to the disposal of such records and shall transmit those records to the Director if he requests them within that period.

(iv) The employer shall also comply with any additional requirements involving the transfer of records set forth in 29 CFR 1910.20(h).

[45 F.R. 54333, August 15, 1980.]

(r) Observation of monitoring.

(1) Employee observation. The employer shall provide affected employees or their designated representatives an opportunity to observe any monitoring of employee exposure to inorganic arsenic conducted pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section.

(2) Observation procedures.

(i) Whenever observation of the monitoring of employee exposure to inorganic arsenic requires entry into an area where the use of respirators, protective clothing, or equipment is required, the employer shall provide the observer with and assure the use of such respirators, clothing, and such equipment, and shall require the observer to comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(ii) Without interfering with the monitoring, observers shall be entitled to:

(a) Receive an explanation of the measurement procedures;

(b) Observe all steps related to the monitoring of inorganic arsenic performed at the place of exposure; and

(c) Record the results obtained or receive copies of the results when returned by the laboratory.

(s) Effective date. This standard shall become effective August 1, 1978.

(t) Appendices. The information contained in the appendices to this section is not intended by itself, to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed by this standard nor detract from any existing obligation.

(u) Startup dates.

(1) General. The startup dates of requirements of this standard shall be the effective date of this standard unless another startup date is provided for either in other paragraphs of this section or in this paragraph.

(2) Monitoring. Initial monitoring shall be commenced on August 1, 1978, and shall be completed by September 15, 1978.

(3) Regulated areas. Regulated areas required to be established as a result of initial monitoring shall be set up as soon as possible after the results of that monitoring is known and no later than October 1, 1978.

(4) Compliance program. The written program required by paragraph (g)(2) as a result of initial monitoring shall be made available for inspection and copying as soon as possible and no later than December 1, 1978.

(5) Hygiene and lunchroom facilities. Construction plans for changerooms, showers, lavatories, and lunchroom facilities shall be completed no later than December 1, 1978, and these facilities shall be constructed and in use no later than July 1, 1979. However, if as part of the compliance plan it is predicted by an independent engineering firm that engineering controls and work practices will reduce exposures below the permissible exposure limit by December 31, 1979, for affected employees, then such facilities need not be completed until 1 year after the engineering controls are completed or December 31, 1978, whichever is earlier, if such controls have not in fact succeeded in reducing exposure to below the permissible exposure limit.

(6) Summary of startup dates set forth elsewhere in this standard.

STARTUP DATES

August 1, 1978—Respirator use over 500 $\mu g/m^3$.

AS SOON AS POSSIBLE BUT NO LATER THAN

September 15, 1978—Completion of initial monitoring.

October 1, 1978—Complete establishment of regulated areas. Respirator use for employees exposed above 50 $\mu g/m^3$. Completion of initial training. Notification of use.

December 1, 1978—Respirator use over 10 $\mu g/m^3$. Completion of initial medical. Completion of compliance plan. Optional use of powered air-purifying respirators.

July 1, 1979—Completion of lunch rooms and hygiene facilities.

December 31, 1979—Completion of engineering controls.

All other requirements of the standard have as their startup date August 1, 1978.

APPENDIX A—INORGANIC ARSENIC SUBSTANCE INFORMATION SHEET

I. SUBSTANCE IDENTIFICATION

A. *Substance.* Inorganic Arsenic.

B. *Definition.* Copper acetoarsenite, arsenic and all inorganic compounds containing arsenic except arsine, measured as arsenic (As).

C. *Permissible Exposure Limit.* 10 micrograms per cubic meter of air as determined as an average over an 8-hour period. No employee may be exposed to any skin or eye contact with arsenic trichloride or to skin or eye contact likely to cause skin or eye irritation.

D. *Regulated Areas.* Only employees authorized by your employer should enter a regulated area.

II. HEALTH HAZARD DATA

A. *Comments.* The health hazard of inorganic arsenic is high.

B. *Ways in which the chemical affects your body.* Exposure to airborne concentrations of inorganic arsenic may cause lung cancer, and can be a skin irritant. Inorganic arsenic may also affect your body if swallowed. One compound in particular, arsenic trichloride, is especially dangerous because it can be absorbed readily through the skin. Because inorganic arsenic is a poison, you should wash your hands thoroughly prior to eating or smoking.

III. PROTECTIVE CLOTHING AND EQUIPMENT

A. *Respirators.* Respirators will be provided by your employer at no cost to you for routine use if your employer is in the process of implementing engineering and work practice controls or where engineering and work practice controls are not feasible or insufficient. You must wear respirators for non-routine activities or in emergency situations where you are likely to be exposed to levels of inorganic arsenic in excess of the permissible exposure limit. Since how well your respirator fits your face is very important, your employer is required to conduct fit tests to make sure the respirator seals properly when you wear it. These tests are simple and rapid and will be explained to you during training sessions.

B. *Protective clothing.* If you work in a regulated area, your employer is required to provide at no cost to you, and you must wear, appropriate, clean, protective clothing and equipment. The purpose of this equipment is to prevent you from bringing to your home arsenic-contaminated dust and to protect your body from repeated skin contact with inorganic arsenic likely to cause skin irritation. This clothing should include such items as coveralls or similar full-body clothing, gloves, shoes or coverlets, and aprons. Protective equipment should include face shields or vented goggles, where eye irritation may occur.

IV. HYGIENE FACILITIES AND PRACTICES

You must not eat, drink, smoke, chew gum or tobbacco, or apply cosmetics in the regulated area, except that drinking water is permitted. If you work in a regulated area your employer is required to provide lunchrooms and other areas for these purposes.

If you work in a regulated area, your employer is required to provide showers, washing facilties, and change rooms. You must wash your face, and hands before eating and must shower at the end of the work shift. Do not take used protective clothing out of change rooms without your employer's permission. Your employer is required to provide for laundering or cleaning of your protective clothing.

V. SIGNS AND LABELS

Your employer is required to post warning signs and labels for your protection. Signs must be posted in regulated areas. The signs must warn that a cancer hazard is present, that only authorized employees may enter the area, and that no smoking or eating is allowed, and that respirators must be worn.

VI. MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS

If your exposure to arsenic is over the Action Level (5 $\mu g/m^3$)—(including all persons working in regulated areas) at least 30 days per year, or you have been exposed to arsenic for more than 10 years over the Action Level, your employer is required to provide you with a medical examination. The examination shall be every 6 months for employees over 45 years old or with more than 10 years exposure over the Action Level and annually for other covered employees. The medical examination must include a medical history; a chest x-ray; skin examination; nasal examination and sputum cytology exam for the early detection of lung cancer. The cytology exams are only included in the initial exam and examinations given after you are either 45 years or older or have 10 or more years employment over the Action Level. The examining physician will provide a written opinion to your employer containing the results of the medical exams. You should also receive a copy of this opinion. The physician must not tell your employer any conditions he detects unrelated to occupational exposure to arsenic but must tell you those conditions.

VII. OBSERVATION OF MONITORING

Your employer is required to monitor your exposure to arsenic and you or your representatives are entitled to observe the monitoring procedure. You are entitled to receive an explanation of the measurement procedure, and to record the results obtained. When the monitoring procedure is taking place in an area where respirators or personal protective clothing and equipment are required to be worn, you must also be provided with and must wear the protective clothing and equipment.

VIII. ACCESS TO RECORDS

You or your representative are entitled to records of your exposure to inorganic arsenic and your medical examination records if you request your employer to provide them.

[45 F.R. 35282, May 23, 1980.]

IX. TRAINING AND NOTIFICATION

Additional information on all of these items plus training as to hazards of exposure to inorganic arsenic and the engineering and work practice controls associated with your job will also be provided by your employer. If you are exposed over the permissible exposure limit, your employer must inform you of that fact and the actions he is taking to reduce your exposures.

APPENDIX B—SUBSTANCE TECHNICAL GUIDELINES

ARSENIC, ARSENIC TRIOXIDE, ARSENIC TRICHLORIDE (THREE EXAMPLES)

I. Physical and chemical properties

A. Arsenic (metal).

1. Formula: As.

2. Appearance: Gray metal.

3. Melting point: Sublimes without melting at 613C.

4. Specific Gravity: (H20=1):5.73.

5. Solubility in water: Insoluble.

B. Arsenic Trioxide.

1. Formula: As203, (As406).

2. Appearance: White powder.

3. Melting point: 315C.

4. Specific Gravity (H20=1):3.74.

5. Solubility in water: 3.7 grams in 100cc of water at 20c.

C. Arsenic Trichloride (liquid).

1. Formula: AsC13.

2. Appearance: Colorless or pale yellow liquid.

3. Melting point: −8.5C

4. Boiling point: 130.2C.

5. Specific Gravity (H_2O=1):2.16 at 20C.

6. Vapor Pressure: 10mm Hg at 23.5C.

7. Solubility in Water: Decomposes in water.

II. Fire, explosion and reactivity data

A. Fire: Arsenic, arsenic Trioxide and Arsenic Trichloride are nonflammable.

B. Reactivity:

1. Conditions Contributing to instability: Heat.

2. Incompatibility: Hydrogen gas can react with inorganic arsenic to form the highly toxic gas arsine.

III. Monitoring and Measurement Procedures.

Samples collected should be full shift (at least 7-hour) samples. Sampling should be done using a personal sampling pump at a flow rate of 2 liters per minute. Samples should be collected on 0.8 micrometer pore size membrane filter (37mm diameter). Volatile arsenicals such as arsenic trichloride can be most easily collected in a midget bubbler filled with 15 ml of 0.1 N NaOH.

The method of sampling and analysis should have an accuracy of not less than ±25 percent (with a confidence limit of 95 percent) for 10 micrograms per cubic meter of air (10 $\mu g/m^3$) and ±35 percent (with a confidence limit of 95 percent) for concentrations of inorganic arsenic between 5 and 10 $\mu g/m^3$.

APPENDIX C—MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE GUIDELINES

I. GENERAL

Medical examinations are to be provided for all employees exposed to levels of inorganic arsenic above the action level (5 $\mu g/m^3$) for at least 30 days per year (which would include among others, all employees, who work in regulated areas). Examinations are also to be provided to all employees who have had 10 years or more exposure above the action level for more than 30 days per year while working for the present or predecessor employer though they may no longer be exposed above the level.

An initial medical examination is to be provided to all such employees by December 1, 1978. In addition, an initial medical examination is to be provided to all employees who are first assigned to areas in which worker exposure will probably exceed 5 $\mu g/m^3$ (after the effective date of this standard) at the time of initial assignment. In addition to its immediate diagnostic usefulness, the initial examination will provide a baseline for comparing future test results. The initial examination must include as a minimum the following elements:

(1) A work and medical history, including a smoking history, and presence and degree of respiratory symptoms such as breathlessness, cough, sputum production, and wheezing:

(2) A 14" by 17" posterior-anterior chest X-ray and an International Labor Office UICC/Cincinnati (ILO U/C) rating;

(3) A nasal and skin examination;

(4) A Sputum Cytology examination; and

(5) Other examinations which the physician believes appropriate because of the employee's exposure to inorganic arsenic or because of required respirator use.

Periodic examinations are also to be provided to the employees listed above. The periodic examinations shall be given annually for those covered employees 45 years of age or less with fewer than 10 years employment in areas where employee exposure exceeds the action level (5 $\mu g/m^3$). Periodic examinations need not include sputum cytology and only an updated medical history is required.

Periodic examinations for other covered employees, shall be provided every six (6) months. These examinations shall include all tests required in the initial examination, except that the medical history need only be updated.

The examination and contents are minimum requirements. Additional tests such as lateral and oblique X-rays or pulmonary function tests may be useful. For workers exposed to three arsenicals which are associated with lymphatic cancer, copper acetoarsenite, potassium arsenite, or sodium arsenite the examination should also include palpation of superficial lymph nodes and complete blood count.

II. NONCARCINOGENIC EFFECTS

The OSHA standard is based on minimizing the risk of exposed workers dying of lung cancer from exposure to inorganic arsenic. It will also minimize skin cancer from such exposures.

The following three sections quoted from "Occupational Diseases: A Guide to Their Recognition", Revised Edition, June 1977, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health is included to provide information on the nonneoplastic effects of exposure to inorganic arsenic. Such effects should not occur if the OSHA standards are followed.

A. *Local*—Trivalent arsenic compounds are corrosive to the skin. Brief contact has no effect but prolonged contact results in a local hyperemia and later vesicular or pustular eruption. The moist mucous membranes are most sensitive to the irritant action. Conjunctiva, moist and macerated areas of skin, the eyelids, the angles of the ears, nose, mouth, and respiratory mucosa are also vulnerable to the irritant effects. The wrists are common sites of dermatitis, as are the genitalia if personal hygiene is poor. Perforations of the nasal septum may occur. Arsenic trioxide and pentoxide are capable of producing skin sensitization and contact dermatitis. Arsenic is also capable of producing keratoses, especially of the palms and soles.

B. *Systemic*—The acute toxic effects of arsenic are generally seen following ingestion of inorganic arsenical compounds. This rarely occurs in an industrial setting. Symptoms develop within ½ to 4 hours following ingestion and are usually characterized by constriction of the throat followed by dysphagia, epigastric pain, vomiting, and watery diarrhea. Blood may appear in vomitus and stools. If the amount ingested is sufficiently high, shock may develope due to severe fluid loss, and death may ensue in 24 hours. If the acute effects are survived, exfoliative dermatitis and peripheral neuritis may develop.

Cases of acute arsenical poisoning due to inhalation are exceedingly rare in industry. When it does occur, respiratory tract symptoms—cough, chest pain, dyspnea—giddiness, headache, and extreme general weakness precede gastrointestinal symptoms. The acute toxic symptoms of trivalent arsenical poisoning are due to severe inflammation of the mucous membranes and greatly increased permeability of the blood capillaries.

Chronic arsenical poisoning due to ingestion is rare and generally confined to patients taking prescribed medications. However, it can be a concomitant of inhaled inorganic arsenic from swallowed sputum and improper eating habits. Symptoms are weight loss, nausea and diarrhea alternating with constipation, pigmentation and eruption of the skin, loss of hair, and peripheral neuritis. Chronic hepatitis and cirrhosis have been described. Polyneuritis may be the salient feature, but more frequently there are numbness and parasthenias of "glove and stocking" distribution. The skin lesions are usually melanotic and keratotic and may occasionally take the form of an intradermal cancer of the squamous cell type, but without infiltrative properties. Horizontal white lines (striations) on the fingernails and toenails are commonly seen in chronic arsenical poisoning and are considered to be a diagnostic accompaniment of arsenical polyneuritis.

Inhalation of inorganic arsenic compounds is the most common cause of chronic poisoning in the industrial situation. This condition is divided into three phases based on signs and symptoms.

First Phase: the worker complains of weakness, loss of appetite, some nausea, occasional vomiting, a sense of heaviness in the stomach, and some diarrhea.

Second Phase: The worker complains of conjunctivitis, a catarrhal state of the mucuous membranes of the nose, larynx, and respiratory passage. Coryza, hoarseness, and mild tracheobronchitis may occur. Perforation of the nasal septum is common, and is probably the most typical lesion of the upper respiratory tract in occupational exposure to arsenical dust. Skin lesions, eczematoid and allergic in type, are common.

Third Phase: The worker complains of symptoms of peripheral neuritis, initially of hands and feet, which is essentially sensory. In more severe cases, motor paralyses occur; the first muscles affected are usually the toe extensors and the peronei. In only the most severe cases will paralysis of flexor muscles of the feet or of the extensor muscles of hands occur.

Liver damage from chronic arsenical poisoning is still debated, and as yet the question is unanswered. In cases of chronic and acute arsenical poisoning, toxic effects to the myocardium have been reported based on EKG changes. These findings, however, are now largely discounted and the EKG changes are ascribed to electrolyte disturbances concomitant with arsenicalism. Inhalation of arsenic trioxide and other inorganic arsenical dusts does not give rise to radiological evidence or pneumonconiosis. Arsenic does have a depressant effect upon the bone marrow, with disturbances of both erythropoiesis and myelopoiesis.

BIBILIOGRAPHY

Dinman, B. D. 1960. Arsenic; chronic human intoxication. J. Occup. Med. 2:137.

Elkins, H. B. 1959. The Chemistry of Industrial Toxicology, 2nd ed. John Wiley and Sons, New York.

Holmquist, L. 1951. Occupational arsenical dermatitis; a study among employees at a copper-ore smelting works including investigations of skin reactions to contact with arsenic compounds. Acta. Derm. Venereol. (Supp. 26) 31:1

Pinto, S.S., and C. M. McGill. 1953. Arsenic trioxide exposure in industry. Ind. Med. Surg. 22:281.

Pinto, S. S., and K. W. Nelson. 1976. Arsenic toxicology and industrial exposure. Annu. Rev. Pharmacol. Toxicol. 16:95.

Vallee, B. L., D. D. Ulmer, and W. E. C. Wacker. 1960. Arsenic toxicology and biochemistry. AMA Arch. Indust. Health 21:132.

III. SPUTUM CYTOLOGY

Sputum can be collected by aerosol inhalation during the medical exam or by spontaneous early morning cough at home. Sputum is induced by transoral inhalation of an aerosolized solution of eight per cent (8 percent) sodium chloride in water. After inhaling as few as three to five breaths the subject usually yields an adequate sputum. All sputum should be collected directly into sixty percent (60 percent) alcohol.

Scientific evidence suggests that chest X-rays and sputum cytology should be used together as screening tests for lung tests for lung cancer in high risk populations such as workers exposed to inorganic arsenic. The tests are to be performed every six months on workers who are 45 years of age or older or have worked in the regulated area for 10 or more years. Since the tests seem to be complementary, it may be advantageous to alternate the test procedures. For instance, chest X-rays could be obtained in June and December and sputum cytologies could be obtained in March and September. Facilities for providing necessary diagnostic investigation should be readily available as well as chest physicians, surgeons, radiologists, pathologists and immunotherapists to provide any necessary treatment services.

[43 F.R. 19624, May 5, 1978 and corrected at 43 F.R. 28472, June 30, 1978.]

1910.1025—LEAD

(a) Scope and application

(1) This section applies to all occupational exposure to lead, except as provided in paragraph (a)(2).

(2) This section does not apply to the construction industry or to agricultural operations covered by 29 CFR Part 1928.

[44 F.R. 50338, August 28, 1979.]

(b) Definitions.

"Action level" means employee exposure, without regard to the use of respirators, to an airborne concentration of lead of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air (30 $\mu g/m^3$) averaged over an 8-hour period.

"Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

"Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, or designee.

"Lead" means metallic lead, all inorganic lead compounds, and organic lead soaps. Excluded from this definition are all other organic lead compounds.

(c) Permissible exposure limit (PEL).

(1) The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to lead at concentrations greater than fifty micrograms per cubic meter of air (50 $\mu g/m^3$) averaged over an 8-hour period.

(2) If an employee is exposed to lead for more than 8 hours in any work day, the permissible exposure limit, as a time weighted average (TWA) for that day, shall be reduced according to the following formula:

Maximum permissible limit (in $\mu g/m^3$) = 400 ÷ hours worked in the day.

(3) When respirators are used to supplement engineering and work practice controls to comply with the PEL and all the requirements of paragraph (f) have been met, employee exposure, for the purpose of determining whether the employer has complied with the PEL, may be considered to be at the level provided by the protection factor of the respirator for those periods the respirator is worn. Those periods may be averaged with exposure levels during periods when respirators are not worn to determine the employee's daily TWA exposure.

(d) Exposure monitoring.

(1) General.

(i) For the purposes of paragraph (d), employee exposure is that exposure which would occur if the employee were not using a respirator.

(ii) With the exception of monitoring under paragraph (d)(3), the employer shall collect full shift (for at least 7 continuous hours) personal samples including at least one sample for each shift for each job classification in each work area.

(iii) Full shift personal samples shall be representative of the monitored employee's regular, daily exposure to lead.

(2) Initial determination. Each employer who has a workplace or work operation covered by this standard shall determine if any employee may be exposed to lead at or above the action level.

(3) Basis of initial determination.

(i) The employer shall monitor employee exposures and shall base initial determinations on the employee exposure monitoring results and any of the following, relevant considerations:

(a) Any information, observations, or calculations which would indicate employee exposure to lead;

(b) Any previous measurements of airborne lead and analytical methods used meet the accuracy and confidence level of paragraph (d)(9) of this section; and

(c) Any employee complaints of symptoms which may be attributable to exposure to lead.

(ii) Monitoring for the initial determination may be limited to a representative sample of the exposed employees who the employer reasonably believes are exposed to the greatest airborne concentration of lead in the workplace.

(iii) Measurements of airborne lead made in the preceeding 12 months may be used to satisfy the requirement to monitor under paragraph (d)(3)(i) if the sampling and analytical methods used meet the accuracy and confidence levels of paragraph (d)(9) of this section.

(4) Positive initial determination and initial monitoring.

(i) Where a determination conducted under paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section shows the possibility of any employee exposure at or above the action level, the employer shall conduct monitoring which is representative of the exposure for each employee in the workplace who is exposed to lead.

(ii) Measurements of airborne lead made in the preceeding 12 months may be used to satisfy this requirement if the sampling and analytical methods used meet the accuracy and confidence levels of paragraph (d)(9) of this section.

(5) Negative initial determination. Where a determination, conducted under paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section is made that no employee is exposed to airborne concentrations of lead at or above the action level, the employer shall make a written record of such determination. The record shall include at least the information specified in paragraph (d)(3) of this section and shall also include the date of determination, location within the worksite, and the name and social security number of each employee monitored.

(6) Frequency.

(i) If the initial monitoring reveals employee exposure to be below the action level the measurements need not be repeated except as otherwise provided in paragraph (d)(7) of this section.

(ii) If the initial determination or subsequent monitoring reveals employee exposure to be at or above the action level but below the permissible exposure limit the employer shall repeat monitoring in accordance with this paragraph at least every 6 months. The employer shall continue monitoring at the required frequency until at least two consecutive measurements, taken at least 7 days apart, are below the action level at which time the employer may discontinue monitoring for that employee except as otherwise provided in paragraph (d)(7) of this section.

(iii) If the initial monitoring reveals that employee exposure is above the permissible exposure limit the employer shall repeat monitoring quarterly. The employer shall continue monitoring at the required frequency until at least two consecutive measurements, taken at least 7 days apart, are below the PEL but at or above the action level at which time the employer shall repeat monitoring for that employee at the frequency specified in paragraph (d)(6)(ii), except as otherwise provided in paragraph (d)(7) of this section.

(7)Additional monitoring. Whenever there has been a production, process, control or personnel change which may result in new or additional exposure to lead, or whenever the employer has any other reason to suspect a change which may result in new or additional exposures to lead, additional monitoring in accordance with this paragraph shall be conducted.

(8) Employee notification.

(i) Within 5 working days after the receipt of monitoring results, the employer shall notify each employee in writing of the results which represent that employee's exposure.

(ii) Whenever the results indicate that the representative employee exposure, without regard to respirators, exceeds the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall include in the written notice a statement that the permissible exposure limit was exceeded and a description of the corrective action taken or to be taken to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limit.

(9)Accuracy of measurement. The employer shall use a method of monitoring and analysis which has an accuracy (to a confidence level of 95%) of not less than plus or minus 20 percent for airborne concentrations of lead equal to or greater than 30 $\mu g/m^3$.

(e) Methods of compliance

(1) Engineering and work practice controls.

(i) Where any employee is exposed to lead above the permissible exposure limit for more than 30 days per year, the employer shall implement engineering and work practice controls (including administrative controls) to reduce and maintain employee exposure to lead in accordance with the implementation schedule in Table I below, except to the extent that the employer can demonstrate that such controls are not feasible. Wherever the engineering and work practice controls which can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce employee exposure to or below the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall nonetheless use them to reduce exposures to the lowest feasible level and shall supplement them by the use of respiratory protection which complies with the requirements of paragraph (f) of this section.

(ii) Where any employee is exposed to lead above the permissible exposure limit, but for 30 days or less per year, the employer shall implement engineering controls to reduce exposures to 200 $\mu g/m^3$, but thereafter may implement any combination of engineering, work practice (including administrative controls), and respiratory controls to reduce and maintain employee exposure to lead to or below 50 $\mu g/m^3$.

Table I—Implementation Schedule

Industry[1]	Compliance dates[2]		
	200 mg/m^3	100 mg/m^3	50 mg/m^3
Primary lead production	(3)	3	10
Secondary lead production	(3)	3	5
Lead acid battery manufacture	(3)	2	5

Table I—Implementation Schedule—Continued

Industry[1]	Compliance dates[2]		
	200 mg/m^3	100 mg/m^3	50 mg/m^3
Automobile manufacture/solder grinding	(3)	N/A	7
Electronics, gray iron foundries, ink manufacture, paints and coatings manufacture, wall paper manufacture, can manufacture, and printing	(3)	N/A	1
Lead pigment manufacture, nonferrous foundries, leaded steel manufacture, lead chemical manufacture, shipbuilding and ship repair, battery breaking in the collection and processing of scrap (excluding collection and processing of scrap which is part of a secondary smelting operation), secondary lead smelting of copper, and lead casting	(3)	N/A	N/A
All other industries	(3)	N/A	2½

[1] Includes ancillary activities located on the same worksite.

[2] Expressed as the number of years from the effective date by which compliance with the given airborne exposure level, as an 8-hour TWA must be achieved.

[46 F.R. 60775, December 11, 1981]

(2) Respiratory protection. Where engineering and work practice controls do not reduce employee exposure to or below the 50 $\mu g/m^3$ permissible exposure limit, the employer shall supplement these controls with respirators in accordance with paragraph (f).

(3) Compliance program.

(i) Each employer shall establish and implement a written compliance program to reduce exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit, and interim levels if applicable solely by means of engineering and work practice controls in accordance with the implementation schedule in paragraph (e)(1).

(ii) Written plans for these compliance programs shall include at least the following:

(a) A description of each operation in which lead is emitted; e.g. machinery used, material processed, controls in place, crew size, employee job responsibilities, operating procedures and maintenance practices;

(b) A description of the specific means that will be employed to achieve compliance, including engineering plans and studies used to determine methods selected for controlling exposure to lead;

(c) A report of the technology considered in meeting the permissible exposure limit;

(d) Air monitoring data which documents the source of lead emissions;

(e) A detailed schedule for implementation of the program, including documentation such as copies of purchase orders for equipment, construction contracts, etc.;

(f) A work practice program which includes items required under paragraphs (g), (h) and (i) of this regulation;

(g) An administrative control schedule required by paragraph (e)(6), if applicable;

(h) Other relevant information.

(iii) Written programs shall be submitted upon request to the Assistant Secretary and the Director, and shall be available at the worksite for examination and copying by the Assistant Secretary, Director, any affected employee or authorized employee representatives.

(iv) Written programs shall be revised and

updated at least every 6 months to reflect the current status of the program.

(4) Bypass of interim level. Where an employer's compliance plan provides for a reduction of employee exposures to or below the PEL solely by means of engineering and work practice controls in accordance with the implementation schedule in table I, and the employer has determined that compliance with the 100 μg/m³ interim level would divert resources to the extent that it clearly precludes compliance, otherwise attainable, with the PEL by the required time, the employer may proceed with the plan to comply with the PEL in lieu of compliance with the interim level if:

(i) The compliance plan clearly documents the basis of the determination;

(ii) The employer takes all feasible steps to provide maximum protection for employees until the PEL is met; and

(iii) The employer notifies the OSHA Area Director nearest the affected workplace in writing within 10 working days of the completion or revision of the compliance plan reflecting the determination.

(5) Mechanical ventilation.

(i) When ventilation is used to control exposure, measurements which demonstrate the effectiveness of the system in controlling exposure, such as capture velocity, duct velocity, or static pressure shall be made at least every 3 months. Measurements of the system's effectiveness in controlling exposure shall be made within 5 days of any change in production, process, or control which might result in a change in employee exposure to lead.

(ii) **Recirculation of air.** If air from exhaust ventilation is recirculated into the workplace, the employer shall assure that (a) the system has a high efficiency filter with reliable back-up filter; and (b) controls to monitor the concentration of lead in the return air and to bypass the recirculation system automatically if it fails are installed, operating, and maintained.

(6) Administrative controls. If administrative controls are used as a means of reducing employees' TWA exposure to lead, the employer shall establish and implement a job rotation schedule which includes:

(i) Name or identification number of each affected employee;

(ii) Duration and exposure levels at each job or work station where each affected employee is located; and

(iii) Any other information which may be useful in assessing the reliability of administrative controls to reduce exposure to lead.

(f) Respiratory protection.

(1) General. Where the use of respirators is required under this section, the employer shall provide, at no cost to the employee, and assure the use of respirators which comply with the requirements of this paragraph. Respirators shall be used in the following circumstances:

(1) During the time period necessary to install or implement engineering or work practice controls, except that after the dates for compliance with the interim levels in table I, no employer shall require an employee to wear a negative pressure respirator longer than 4.4 hours per day;

(ii) In work situations in which engineering and work practice controls are not sufficient to reduce exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit; and

(iii) Whenever an employee requests a respirator.

(2) Respirator selection.

(i) Where respirators are required under this section the employer shall select the appropriate respirator or combination of respirators from table II below.

STANDARDS AND INTERPRETATIONS

TABLE II.—*Respiratory Protection for Lead Aerosols*

Airborne concentration of lead or condition of use	*Required respirator*[1]
Not in excess of 0.5 mg/m³ (10X PEL).	Half-mask, air-purifying respirator equipped with high efficiency filters.[2, 3]
Not in excess of 2.5 mg/m³ (50X PEL).	Full facepiece, air-purifying respirator with high efficiency filters.[3]
Not in excess of 50 mg/m³ (1000X PEL).	(1) Any powered, air-purifying respirator with high efficiency filters[3]; or (2) Half-mask supplied-air respirator operated in positive-pressure mode.[2]
Not in excess of 100 mg/m³(2000X).	Supplied-air respirators with full facepiece, hood, helmet, or suit, operated in positive pressure mode.
Greater than 100 mg/m³, unknown concentration or fire fighting.	Full facepiece, self-contained breathing apparatus operated in positive-pressure mode.

[1] Respirators specified for high concentrations can be used at lower concentrations of lead.

[2] Full facepiece is required if the lead aerosols cause eye or skin irritation at the use concentrations.

[3] A high efficiency particulate filter means 99.97 percent efficient against 0.3 micron size particles.

(ii) The employer shall provide a powered, air-purifying respirator in lieu of the respirator specified in Table II whenever:

(a) An employee chooses to use this type of respirator; and

(b) This respirator will provide adequate protection to the employee.

(iii) The employer shall select respirators from among those approved for protection against lead dust, fume, and mist by the Mine Safety and Health Administration and the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11.

(3) Respirator usage.

(i) The employer shall assure that the respirator issued to the employee exhibits minimum facepiece leakage and that the respirator is fitted properly.

(ii) Employers shall perform either quantitative or qualitative face fit tests at the time of initial fitting and at least every six months thereafter for each employee wearing negative pressure respirators. The qualitative fit tests may be used only for testing the fit of half-mask respirators where they are permitted to be worn, and shall be conducted in accordance with Appendix D. The tests shall be used to select facepieces that provide the required protection as prescribed in table II.

(iii) If an employee exhibits difficulty in breathing during the fitting test or during use, the employer shall make available to the employee an examination in accordance with paragraph (j)(3)(i)(c) of this section to determine whether the employee can wear a respirator while performing the required duty.

(4) Respirator program.

(i) The employer shall institute a respiratory protection program in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.134 (b), (d), (e) and (f).

(ii) The employer shall permit each employee who uses a filter respirator to change the filter elements whenever an increase in breathing resistance is detected and shall maintain an adequate supply of filter elements for this purpose.

(iii) Employees who wear respirators shall be permitted to leave work areas to wash their face and respirator facepiece whenever necessary to prevent skin irritation associated with respirator use.

(g) Protective work clothing and equipment.

(1) Provision and use. If an employee is exposed to lead above the PEL, without regard to the use of respirators or where the possibility of skin or eye irritation exists, the employer shall provide at no cost to the employee and assure that the employee uses appropriate protective work clothing and equipment such as, but not limited to:

(i) Coveralls or similar full-body work clothing;

(ii) Gloves, hats, and shoes or disposable shoe coverlets; and

(iii) Face shields, vented goggles, or other appropriate protective equipment which complies with § 1910.133 of this Part.

(2) Cleaning and replacement.

(i) The employer shall provide the protective clothing required in paragraph (g)(1) of this section in a clean and dry condition at least weekly, and daily to employees whose exposure levels without regard to a respirator are over 200 $\mu g/m^3$ of lead as an 8-hour TWA.

(ii) The employer shall provide for the cleaning, laundering, or disposal of protective clothing and equipment required by paragraph (g)(1) of this section.

(iii) The employer shall repair or replace required protective clothing and equipment as needed to maintain their effectiveness.

(iv) The employer shall assure that all protective clothing is removed at the completion of a work shift only in change rooms provided for that purpose as prescribed in paragraph (i)(2) of this section.

(v) The employer shall assure that contaminated protective clothing which is to be cleaned, laundered, or disposed of, is placed in a closed container in the change-room which prevents dispersion of lead outside the container.

(vi) The employer shall inform in writing any person who cleans or launders protective clothing or equipment of the potentially harmful effects of exposure to lead.

(vii) The employer shall assure that the containers of contaminated protective clothing and equipment required by paragraph (g)(2)(v) are labelled as follows: CAUTION: CLOTHING CONTAMINATED WITH LEAD. DO NOT REMOVE DUST BY BLOWING OR SHAKING. DISPOSE OF LEAD CONTAMINATED WASH WATER IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE LOCAL, STATE, OR FEDERAL REGULATIONS.

(vii) The employer shall prohibit the removal of lead from protective clothing or equipment by blowing, shaking, or any other means which disperses lead into the air.

(h) Housekeeping.

(1) **Surfaces.** All surfaces shall be maintained as free as practicable of accumulations of lead.

(2) Cleaning floors.

(i) Floors and other surfaces where lead accumulates may not be cleaned by the use of compressed air.

(ii) Shoveling, dry or wet sweeping, and brushing may be used only where vacuuming or other equally effective methods have been tried and found not to be effective.

(3) **Vacuuming.** Where vacuuming methods are selected, the vacuums shall be used and emptied in a manner which minimizes the reentry of lead into the workplace.

(i) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(1) The employer shall assure that in areas where employees are exposed to lead above the PEL, without regard to the use of respirators, food or beverage is not present or consumed, tobacco products are not present or used, and cosmetics are not applied, except in change rooms, lunchrooms, and showers required under paragraphs (i)(2)-(i)(4) of this section.

(2) Change rooms.

(i) The employer shall provide clean change rooms for employees who work in areas where their airborne exposure to lead is above the PEL, without regard to the use of respirators.

(ii) The employer shall assure that change rooms are equipped with separate storage facilities for protective work clothing and equipment and for street clothes which prevent cross-contamination.

(3) Showers.

(i) The employer shall assure that employees who work in areas where their airborne exposure to lead is above the PEL, without regard to the use of respirators, shower at the end of the work shift.

(ii) The employer shall provide shower facilities in accordance with § 1910.141 (d)(3) of this Part.

(ii) The employer shall assure that employees who are required to shower pursuant to paragraph (i)(3)(i) do not leave the workplace wearing any clothing or equipment worn during the work shift.

(4) Lunchrooms.

(i) The employer shall provide lunchroom facilities for employees who work in areas where their airborne exposure to lead is above the PEL without regard to the use of respirators.

(ii) The employer shall assure that lunchroom facilities have a temperature controlled, positive pressure, filtered air supply, and are readily accessible to employees.

(iii) The employer shall assure that employees who work in areas where their airborne exposure to lead is above the PEL without regard to the use of a respirator wash their hands and face prior to eating, drinking, smoking or applying cosmetics.

(iv) The employer shall assure that employees do not enter lunchroom facilities with protective work clothing or equipment unless surface lead dust has been removed by vacuuming, downdraft booth, or other cleaning method.

(5) Lavatories. The employer shall provide an adequate number of lavatory facilities which comply with § 1910.141(d)(1) and (2) of this Part.

(j) Medical surveillance.

(1) General.

(i) The employer shall institute a medical surveillance program for all employees who are or may be exposed above the action level for more than 30 days per year.

(ii) The employer shall assure that all medical examinations and procedures are performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician.

(iii) The employer shall provide the required medical surveillance including multiple physician review under paragraph (j)(3)(iii) without cost to employees and at a reasonable time and place.

(2) Biological monitoring.

(i) **Blood lead and ZPP level sampling and analysis**. The employer shall make available biological monitoring in the form of blood sampling and analysis for lead and zinc protoporphyrin levels to each employee covered under paragraph (j)(1)(i) of this section on the following schedule:

(a) At least every 6 months to each employee covered under paragraph (j)(1)(i) of this section:

(b) At least every two months for each employee whose last blood sampling and analysis indicated a blood lead level at or above 40 ug/100 g of whole blood. This frequency shall continue until two consecutive blood samples and analyses indicate a blood lead level below 40 ug/100 g of whole blood; and

(c) At least monthly during the removal period of each employee removed from exposure to lead due to an elevated blood lead level.

(ii) **Follow-up blood sampling tests.** Whenever the results of a blood lead level test indicate that an employee's blood lead level exceeds the numerical criterion for medical removal under paragraph (k)(1)(i), the employer shall provide a second (follow-up) blood sampling test within two weeks after the employer receives the results of the first blood sampling test.

(iii) **Accuracy of blood lead level sampling and analysis.** Blood lead level sampling and analysis provided pursuant to this section shall have an accuracy (to a confidence level of 95 percent) within plus or minus 15 percent or 6 μg/100ml, whichever is greater, and shall be conducted by a laboratory licensed by the Center for Disease Control (CDC), United States Department of Health, Education and Welfare or which has received a satisfactory grade in blood lead proficiency testing from CDC in the prior twelve months.

(iv) **Employee notification.** Within five working days after the receipt of biological monitoring results, the employer shall notify in writing each employee whose blood lead level exceeds 40 μg/100 g: (a) of that employee's blood lead level and (b) that the standard requires temporary medical removal with Medical Removal Protection benefits when an employee's blood lead level exceeds the numerical criterion for medical removal under paragraph (k)(1)(i) of this section.

(3) **Medical examinations and consultations.**

(i) **Frequency.** The employer shall make available medical examinations and consultations to each employee covered under paragraph (j)(1)(i) of this section on the following schedule:

(a) At least annually for each employee for whom a blood sampling test conducted at any time during the preceding 12 months indicated a blood lead level at or above 40 μg/100 g;

(b) Prior to assignment for each employee being assigned for the first time to an area in which airborne concentrations of lead are at or above the action level;

(c) As soon as possible, upon notification by an employee either that the employee has developed signs or symptoms commonly associated with lead intoxication, that the employee desires medical advice concerning the effects of current or past exposure to lead on the employee's ability to procreate a healthy child, or that the employee has demonstrated difficulty in breathing during a respirator fitting test or during use; and

(d) As medically appropriate for each employee either removed from exposure to lead due to a risk of sustaining material impairment to health, or otherwise limited pursuant to a final medical determination.

(ii) **Content.** Medical examinations made available pursuant to paragraph (j)(3)(i)(a)-(b) of this section shall include the following elements:

(a) A detailed work history and a medical history, with particular attention to past lead exposure (occupational and non-occupational), personal habits (smoking, hygiene), and past gastrointestinal, hematologic, renal, cardiovascular, reproductive and neurological problems;

(b) A thorough physical examination, with particular attention to teeth, gums, hematologic, gastrointesitinal, renal, cardiovascular, and neurological systems. Pulmonary status should be evaluated if respiratory protection will be used;

(c) A blood pressure measurement;

(d) A blood sample and analysis which determines:

(1) Blood lead level;

(2) Hemoglobin and hematocrit determinations, red cell indices, and examination of peripheral smear morphology;

(3) Zinc protoporphyrin;

(4) Blood urea nitrogen; and,

(5) Serum creatinine;

(e) A routine urinalysis with microscopic examination; and

(f) Any laboratory or other test which the examining physician deems necessary by sound medical practice.

The content of medical examinations made available pursuant to paragraph (j)(3)(i)(c)-(d) of this section shall be determined by an examining physician and, if requested by an employee, shall include pregnancy testing or laboratory evaluation of male fertility.

(ii) Multiple physician review mechanism.

(a) If the employer selects the initial physician who conducts any medical examination or consultation provided to an employee under this section, the employee may designate a second physician:

(1) To review any findings, determinations or recommendations of the initial physician; and

(2) To conduct such examinations, consultations, and laboratory tests as the second physician deems necessary to facilitate this review.

(b) The employer shall promptly notify an employee of the right to seek a second medical opinion after each occasion that an initial physician conducts a medical examination or consultation pursuant to this section. The employer may condition its participation in, and payment for, the multiple physician review mechanism upon the employee doing the following within fifteen (15) days after receipt of the foregoing notification, or receipt of the initial physician's written opinion, whichever is later:

(1) The employee informing the employer that he or she intends to seek a second medical opinion, and

(2) The employee initiating steps to make an appointment with a second physician.

(c) If the findings, determinations or recommendations of the second physician differ from those of the intial physician then the employer and the employee shall assure that efforts are made for the two physicians to resolve any disagreement.

(d) If the two physicians have been unable to quickly resolve their disagreement, then the employer and the employee through their respective physicians shall designate a third physician:

(1) To review any findings, determinations or recommendations of the prior physicians; and

(2) To conduct such examinaations, consultations, laboratory tests and discussions with the prior physicians as the third physician deems necessary to resolve the disagreement of the prior physicians.

(e) The employer shall act consistent with the findings, determinations and recommendations of the third physician, unless the employer and the employee reach an agreement which is otherwise consistent with the recommendations of at least one of the three physicians.

(iv) Information provided to examining and consulting physicians.

(a) The employer shall provide an initial physician conducting a medical examination or consultation under this section with the following information:

(1) A copy of this regulation for lead including all Appendices;

(2) A description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposure;

(3) The employee's exposure level or anticipated exposure level to lead and to any other toxic substance (if applicable);

(4) A description of any personal protective equipment used or to be used;

(5) Prior blood lead determinations and

(6) All prior written medical opinions concerning the employee in the employer's possession or control.

(b) The employer shall provide the foregoing information to a second or third physician conducting a medical examination or consultation under this section upon request either by the second or third physician, or by the employee.

(v) **Written medical opinions.**

(a) The employer shall obtain and furnish the employee with a copy of a written medical opinion from each examining or consulting physician which contains the following information:

(1) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical condition which would place the employee at increased risk of material impairment of the employee's health from exposure to lead;

(2) Any recommended special protective measures to be provided to the employee, or limitations to be placed upon the employee's exposure to lead;

(3) Any recommended limitation upon the employee's use of respirators, including a determination of whether the employee can wear a powered air purifying respirator if a physician determines that the employee cannot wear a negative pressure respirator; and

(4) The results of the blood lead determinations.

(b) The employer shall instruct each examining and consulting physician to:

(1) Not reveal either in the written opinion, or in any other means of communication with the employer, findings, including laboratory results, or diagnoses unrelated to an employee's occupational exposure to lead; and

(2) Advise the employee of any medical condition, occupational or nonoccupational, which dictates further medical examination or treatment.

(vi) **Alternate Physician Determination Mechanisms.** The employer and an employee or authorized employee representative may agree upon the use of any expeditious alternate physician determination mechanism in lieu of the multiple physician review mechanism provided by this paragraph so long as the alternate mechanism otherwise satisfies the requirements contained in this paragraph.

(4) **Chelation.**

(i) The employer shall assure that any person whom he retains, employs, supervises or controls does not engage in prophylactic chelation of any employee at any time.

(ii) If therapeutic or diagnostic chelation is to be performed by any person in paragraph (j)(4)(i), the employer shall assure that it be done under the supervision of a licensed physician in a clinical setting with thorough and appropriate medical monitoring and that the employee is notified in writing prior to its occurrence.

(k) Medical Removal Protection.

(1) **Temporary medical removal and return of an employee.**

(i) **Temporary removal due to elevated blood lead levels.**

(a) First year of the standard. During the first year following the effective date of the standard, the employer shall remove an employee from work having a daily eight hour TWA exposure to lead at or above 100 $\mu g/m^3$ on each occasion that a periodic and a follow-up blood sampling test conducted pursuant to this section indicate that the employee's blood lead level is at or above 80 $\mu g/100$ g of whole blood;

(b) **Second year of the standard.** During the second year following the effective date of the standard, the employer shall remove an employee from work having a daily 8-hour TWA exposure to lead at or above 50 $\mu g/m^3$ on each occasion that a periodic and a follow-up blood sampling test conducted pursuant to this section indicate that the employee's blood lead level is at or above 70 $\mu g/100$ g of whole blood;

(c) **Third year of the standard, and thereafter.** Beginning with the third year following the effective date of the standard, the employer shall remove an employee from work having an exposure to lead at or above the action level on each occasion that a periodic and a follow-up blood sampling test conducted pursuant to this section indicate that the employee's blood lead level is at or above 60 μg/100 g of whole blood; and,

(d) Fifth year of the standard, and thereafter. Beginning with the fifth year following the effective date of the standard, the employer shall remove an employee from work having an exposure to lead at or above the action level on each occasion that the average of the last three blood sampling tests conducted pursuant to this section (or the average of all blood sampling tests conducted over the previous six (6) months, whichever is longer) indicates that the employee's blood lead level is at or above 50 μg/100 g of whole blood; provided, however, that an employee need not be removed if the last blood sampling test indicates a blood lead level at or below 40 μg/100 g of whole blood.

(ii) Temporary removal due to a final medical determination.

(a) The employer shall remove an employee from work having an exposure to lead at or above the action level on each occasion that a final medical determination results in a medical finding, determination, or opinion that the employee has a detected medical condition which places the employee at increased risk of material impairment to health from exposure to lead.

(b) For the purposes of this section, the phrase "final medical determination" shall mean the outcome of the multiple physican review mechanism or alternate medical determination mechanism used pursuant to the medical surveillance provisions of this section.

(c) Where a final medical determination results in any recommended special protective measures for an employee, or limitations on an employee's exposure to lead, the employer shall implement and act consistent with the recommendation.

(iii) Return of the employee to former job status.

(a) The employer shall return an employee to his or her former job status:

(1) For an employee removed due to a blood lead level at or above 80 μg/100 g, when two consecutive blood sampling tests indicate that the employee's blood lead level is at or below 60 μg/100 g of whole blood;

(2) For an employee removed due to a blood lead level at or above 70 μg/100 g, when two consecutive blood sampling tests indicate that the employee's blood lead level is at or below 50 μg/100 g of whole blood.

(3) For an employee removed due to a blood lead level at or above 60 μg/100 g, or due to an average blood lead level at or above 50 μg/100 g when two consecutive blood sampling tests indicate that the employee's blood lead level is at or below 40 μg/100 g of whole blood;

(4) For an employee removed due to a final medical determination, where a subsequent final medical determination results in a medical finding, determination, or opinion that the employee no longer has a detected medical condition which places the employee at increased risk of material impairment to health from exposure to lead.

(b) For the purposes of this section, the requirement that an employer return an employee to his or her former job status is not intended to expand upon or restrict any rights an employee has or would have had, absent temporary medical removal, to a specific job classification or position under the terms of a collective bargaining agreement.

(iv) Removal of other employee special protective measures or limitations. The employer shall remove any limitations placed on an employee or end any special protective measures provided to an employee pursuant to a final medical determination when a subsequent final medical determination indicates that the limitations or special protective measures are no longer necessary.

(v) Employer options pending a final medical determination. Where the multiple physician review mechanism, or alternate medical determination mechanism used pursuant to the medical surveillance provisions of this section, has not yet resulted in a final medical determination with respect to an employee, the employer shall act as follows:

(a) Removal. The employer may remove the employee from exposure to lead, provide special protective measures to the employee, or place limitations upon the employee, consistent with the medical findings, determinations, or recommendations of any of the physicians who have reviewed the employee's health status.

(b) Return. The employer may return the employee to his or her former job status, end any special protective measures provided to the employee, and remove any limitations placed upon the employee, consistent with the medical findings, determinations, or recommendations of any of the physicians who have reviewed the employee's health status, with two exceptions. If—

(1) the initial removal, special protection, or limitation of the employee resulted from a final medical determination which differed from the findings, determinations, or recommendations of the initial physician or,

(2) the employee has been on removal status for the preceding eighteen months due to an elevated blood lead level, then the employer shall await a final medical determination.

(2) Medical removal protection benefits.

(i) Provision of medical removal protection benefits. The employer shall provide to an employee up to eighteen (18) months of medical removal protection benefits on each occasion that an employee is removed from exposure to lead or otherwise limited pursuant to this section.

(ii) Definition of medical removal protection benefits. For the purposes of this section, the requirement that an employer provide medical removal protection benefits means that the employer shall maintain the earnings, seniority and other employment rights and benefits of an employee as though the employee had not been removed from normal exposure to lead or otherwise limited.

(iii) Follow-up medical surveillance during the period of employee removal or limitation. During the period of time that an employee is removed from normal exposure to lead or otherwise limited, the employer may condition the provision of medical removal protection benefits upon the employee's participation in follow-up medical surveillance made available pursuant to this section.

(iv) Workers' compensation claims. If a removed employee files a claim for workers' compensation payments for a lead-related disability, then the employer shall continue to provide medical removal protection benefits pending disposition of the claim. To the extent that an award is made to the employee for earnings lost during the period of removal, the employer's medical removal protection obligation shall be reduced by such amount. The employer shall receive no credit for workers' compensation payments received by the employee for treatment related expenses.

(v) Other credits. The employer's obligation to provide medical removal protection benefits to a removed employee shall be reduced to the extent that the employee receives compensation for earnings lost during the period of removal either from a publicly or employer-funded compensation program, or receives income from employment with another employer made possible by virtue of the employee's removal.

(vi) Employees whose blood lead levels do not adequately decline within 18 months of removal. The employer shall take the following measures with respect to any employee removed from exposure to lead due to an elevated blood lead level whose blood lead level has not declined within the past eighteen (18) months of removal so that the employee has been returned to his or her former job status:

(a) The employer shall make available to the employee a medical examination pursuant to this section to obtain a final medical determination with respect to the employee;

(b) The employer shall assure that the final medical determination obtained indicates whether or not the employee may be returned to his or her former job status, and if not, what steps should be taken to protect the employee's health;

(c) Where the final medical determination has not yet been obtained, or once obtained indicates that the employee may not yet be returned to his or her former job status, the employer shall continue to provide medical removal protection benefits to the employee until either the employee is returned to former job status, or a final medical determination is made that the employee is incapable of ever safely returning to his or her former job status.

(d) Where the employer acts pursuant to a final medical determination which permits the return of the employee to his or her former job status despite what would otherwise be an unacceptable blood lead level, later questions concerning removing the employee again shall be decided by a final medical determination. The employer need not automatically remove such an employee pursuant to the blood lead level removal criteria provided by this section.

(vii) **Voluntary Removal or Restriction of An Employee.** Where an employer, although not required by this section to do so, removes an employee from exposure to lead or otherwise places limitations on an employee due to the effects of lead exposure on the employee's medical condition, the employer shall provide medical removal protection benefits to the employee equal to that required by paragraph (k)(2)(i) of this section

(l) Employee information and training.

(1) Training program.

(i) Each employer who has a workplace in which there is a potential exposure to airborne lead at any level shall inform employees of the content of Appendices A and B of this regulation.

(ii) The employer shall institute a training program for and assure the participation of all employees who are subject to exposure to lead at or above the action level or for whom the possibility of skin or eye irritation exists.

(iii) The employer shall provide initial training by 180 days from the effective date for those employees covered by paragraph (l)(1)(ii) on the standard's effective date and prior to the time of initial job assignment for those employees subsequently covered by this paragraph.

(iv) The training program shall be repeated at least annually for each employee.

(v) The employer shall assure that each employee is informed of the following:

(a) The content of this standard and its appendices;

(b) The specific nature of the operations which could result in exposure to lead above the action level;

(c) The purpose, proper selection, fitting, use, and limitation of respirators;

(d) The purpose and a description of the medical surveillance program, and the medical removal protection program including information concerning the adverse health effects associated with excessive exposure to lead (with particular attention to the adverse reproductive effects on both males and females);

(e) The engineering controls and work practices associated with the employee's job assignment;

(f) The contents of any compliance plan in effect; and

(g) Instructions to employees that chelating agents should not routinely be used to remove lead from their bodies and should not be used at all except under the direction of a licensed physician;

(2) Access to information and training materials.

(i) The employer shall make readily available to all affected employees a copy of this standard and its appendices.

(ii) The employer shall provide, upon request, all materials relating to the employee information and training program to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(iii) In addition to the information required by paragraph (l)(1)(v), the employer shall include as part of the training program, and shall distribute to employees, any materials pertaining to the Occupational Safety and Health Act, the regulations issued prusuant to that Act, and this lead standard, which are made available to the employer by the Assistant Secretary.

(m) Signs.

(1) General.

(i) The employer may use signs required by other statutes, regulations or ordinances in addition to, or in combination with, signs required by this paragraph.

(ii) The employer shall assure that no statement appears on or near any sign required by this paragraph which contradicts or detracts from the meaning of the required sign.

(2) Signs.

(i) The employer shall post the following warning signs in each work area where the PEL is exceeded:

WARNING

LEAD WORK AREA

POISON

NO SMOKING OR EATING

(ii) The employer shall assure that signs required by this paragraph are illuminated and cleaned as necessary so that the legend is readily visible.

(n) Recordkeeping

(1) Exposure monitoring.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of all monitoring required in paragraph (d) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) The date(s), number, duration, location and results of each of the samples taken, including a description of the sampling procedure used to determine representative employee exposure where applicable;

(b) A description of the sampling and analytical methods used and evidence of their accuracy;

(c) The type of respiratory protective devices worn, if any;

(d) Name, social security number, and job classification of the employee monitored and of all other employees whose exposure the measurement is intended to represent; and

(e) The environmental variables that could affect the measurement of employee exposure.

(iii) The employer shall maintain these monitoring records for at least 40 years or for the duration of employment plus 20 years, whichever is longer.

(2) Medical surveillance.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee subject to medical surveillance as required by paragraph (j) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) The name, social security number, and description of the duties of the employee;

(b) A copy of the physician's written opinions;

(c) Results of any airborne exposure monitoring done for that employee and the representative exposure levels supplied to the physician; and

(d) Any employee medical complaints related to exposure to lead.

(iii) The employer shall keep, or assure that the examining physician keeps, the following medical records:

(a) A copy of the medical examination results including medical and work history required under paragraph (j) of this section;

(b) A description of the laboratory procedures and a copy of any standards or guidelines used to interpret the test results or references to that information;

(c) A copy of the results of biological monitoring.

(iv) The employer shall maintain or assure that the physician maintains those medical records for at least 40 years, or for the duration of employment plus 20 years, whichever is longer.

(3) Medical removals.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee removed from current exposure to lead pursuant to paragraph (k) of this section.

(ii) Each record shall include:

(a) The name and social security number of the employee;

(b) The date on each occasion that the employee was removed from current exposure to lead as well as the corresponding date on which the employee was returned to his or her former job status;

(c) A brief explanation of how each removal was or is being accomplished; and

(d) A statement with respect to each removal indicating whether or not the reason for the removal was an elevated blood lead level.

(iii) The employer shall maintain each medical removal record for at least the duration of an employee's employment.

(4) Availability.

(i) The employer shall make available upon request all records required to be maintained by paragraph (n) of this section to the Assistant Secretary and the Director for examination and copying.

(ii) Environmental monitoring, medical removal, and medical records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CRF 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). Medical removal records shall be provided in the same manner as environmental monitoring records.

[45 F.R. 54333, August 15, 1980.]

(iii) Upon request, the employer shall make an employee's medical records required to be maintained by this section available to the affected employee or former employee or to a physician or other individual designated by such affected employee or former employees for examination and copying.

(5) Transfer of records.

(i) Whenever the employer ceases to do business, the successor employer shall receive and retain all records required to be maintained by paragraph (n) of this section.

(ii) Whenever the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records required to be maintained by this section for the prescribed period, these records shall be transmitted to the Director.

(iii) At the expiration of the retention period for the records required to be maintained by this section, the employer shall notify the Director at least 3 months prior to the disposal of such records and shall transmit those records to the Director if requested within the period.

(iv) The employer shall also comply with any additional requirements involving transfer of records set forth in 29 CFR 1910.20(h).

[45 F.R. 35283, May 23, 1980.]

(o) Observation of monitoring.

(1) **Employee observation.** The employer shall provide affected employees or their designated representatives an opportunity to observe any monitoring of employee exposure to lead conducted pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) **Observation procedures.**

(i) Whenever observation of the monitoring of employee exposure to lead requires entry into an area where the use of respirators, protective clothing or equipment is required, the employer shall provide the observer with and assure the use of such respirators, clothing and such equipment, and shall require the observer to comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(ii) Without interfering with the monitoring, observers shall be entitled to:

(a) Receive an explanation of the measurement procedures;

(b) Observe all steps related to the monitoring of lead performed at the place of exposure; and

(c) Record the results obtained or receive copies of the results when returned by the laboratory.

(p) **Effective date.** This standard shall become effective February 24, 1979.

(q) **Appendices.** The information contained in the appendices to this section is not intended by itself, to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed by this standard nor detract from any existing obligation.

(r) **Startup dates.** All obligations of this standard commence on the effective date except as follows:

(1) The initial determination under paragraph (d)(2) shall be made as soon as possible but no later than 30 days from the effective date.

(2) Initial monitoring under paragraph (d)(4) shall be completed as soon as possible but no later than 90 days from the effective date.

(3) Initial biological monitoring and medical examinations under paragraph (j) shall be completed as soon as possible but no later than 180 days from the effective date. Priority for biological monitoring and medical examinations shall be given to employees whom the employer believes to be at greatest risk from continued exposure.

(4) Initial training and education shall be completed as soon as possible but no later than 180 days from the effective date.

(5) Hygiene and lunchroom facilities under paragraph (i) shall be in operation as soon as possible but no later than 1 year from the effective year.

(6) Respiratory protection required by paragraph (f) shall be provided as soon as possible but no later than the following schedule:

(A) Employees whose 8-hour TWA exposure exceeds 200 $\mu g/m^3$—on the effective date.
(B) Employees whose 8-hour TWA exposure exceeds the PEL but is less than 200 $\mu g/m^3$—150 days from the effective date.
(C) Powered, air-purifying respirators provided under (f)(2)(ii)—210 days from the effective date.
(D) Quantitative fit testing required under (f)(3)(ii)—one year from effective date. Qualitative fit testing is required in the interim.

(7) Written compliance plans required by paragraph (e)(3) shall be completed and available for inspection and copying as soon as possible but no later than the following schedule:

(A) Employers for whom compliance with the PEL or interim level is required within 1 year from the effective date—6 months from the effective date.
(B) Employers in secondary smelting and refining, lead storage battery manufacturing lead pigment manufacturing and nonferrous foundry industries—1 year from the effective date.
(C) Employers in primary smelting and refining industry—1 year from the effective date for the interim level; 5 years from the effective date for PEL.
(D) Plans for construction of hygiene facilities, if required—6 months from the effective date.

(8) The permissible exposure limit in paragraph (c) shall become effective 150 days from the effective date.

[43 F.R. 53007, November 14, 1978.]

[corrected at 44 F.R. 5446, January 26, 1979.]

APPENDIX A—SUBSTANCE DATA SHEET FOR OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURE TO LEAD

I. SUBSTANCE IDENTIFICATION

A. *Substance*: Pure lead (PB) is a heavy metal at room temperature and pressure and is a basic chemical element. It can combine with various other substances to form numerous lead compounds.

B. *Compounds Covered by the Standard*: The word "lead" when used in this standard means elemental lead, all inorganic lead compounds and a class of organic lead compounds called lead soaps. This standard does not apply to other organic lead compounds.

C. *Uses*: Exposure to lead occurs in at least 120 different occupations, including primary and secondary lead smelting, lead storage battery manufacturing, lead pigment manufacturing and use, solder manufacturing and use, shipbuilding and ship repairing, auto manufacturing, and printing.

D. *Permissible Exposure*: The Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL) set by the standard is 50 micrograms of lead per cubic meter of air (50 $\mu g/m^3$), averaged over an 8-hour work-day.

E. *Action Level*: The standard establishes an action level of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air (30 $\mu g/m^3$), time weighted average, based on an 8-hour work-day. The action level initiates several requirements of the standard, such as exposure monitoring, medical surveillance, and training and education.

II. HEALTH HAZARD DATA

A. *Ways in which lead enters your body.* When absorbed into your body in certain doses lead is a toxic substance. The object of the lead standard is to prevent absorption of harmful quantites of lead. The standard is intended to protect you not only from the immediate toxic effects of lead, but also from the serious toxic effects that may not become apparent until years of exposure have passed.

Lead can be absorbed into your body by inhalation (breathing) and ingestion (eating). Lead (except for certain organic lead compounds not covered by the standard, such as tetraethyl lead) is not absorbed through your skin. When lead is scattered in the air as a dust, fume or mist it can be inhaled and absorbed through your lungs and upper respiratory tract. Inhalation of airborne lead is generally the most important source of occupational lead absorption. You can also absorb lead through your digestive system if lead gets into your mouth and is swallowed. If you handle food, cigarettes, chewing tobacco, or make-up which have lead on them or handle them with hands contaminated with lead, this will contribute to ingestion.

A significant portion of the lead that you inhale or ingest gets into your blood stream. Once in your blood stream, lead is circulated throughout your body and stored in various organs and body tissues. Some of this lead is quickly filtered out of your body and excreted, but some remains in the blood and other tissues. As exposure to lead continues, the amount stored in your body will increase if you are absorbing more lead than your body is excreting. Even though you may not be aware of any immediate symptoms of disease, this lead stored in your tissues can be slowly causing irreversible damage, first to individual cells, then to your organs and whole body systems.

B. *Effects of overexposure to lead.*

(1) *Short term (acute) overexposure.* Lead is a potent, systemic poison that serves no known useful function once absorbed by your body. Taken in large enough doses, lead can kill you in a matter of days. A condition affecting the brain called acute encephalopathy may arise which develops quickly to seizures, coma, and death from cardiorespiratory arrest. A short term dose of lead can lead to acute encephalopathy. Short term occupational exposures of this magnitude are highly unusual, but not impossible. Similar forms of encephalopathy may, however, arise from extended, chronic exposure to lower doses of lead. There is no sharp dividing line between rapidly developing acute effects of lead, and chronic effects which take longer to acquire. Lead adversely affects numerous body systems, and causes forms of health impairment and disease which arise after periods of exposure as short as days or as long as several years.

(2) *Long-term (chronic) overexposure.* Chronic overexposure to lead may result in severe damage to your blood-forming, nervous, urinary and

reproductive systems. Some common symtoms of chronic overexposure include loss of appetite, metallic taste in the mouth, anxiety, constipation, nausea, pallor, excessive tiredness, weakness, insomnia, headache, nervous irritability, muscle and joint pain or soreness, fine tremors, numbness, dizziness, hyperactivity and colic. In lead colic there may be severe abdominal pain.

Damage to the central nervous system in general and the brain (encephalopathy) in particular is one of the most severe forms of lead poisoning. The most severe, often fatal, form of encephalopathy may be preceded by vomiting, feeling of dullness progressing to drowsiness and stupor, poor memory, restlessness, irritability, tremor, and convulsions. It may arise suddenly with the onset of seizures, followed by coma, and death. There is a tendency for muscular weakness to develop at the same time. This weakness may progress to paralysis often observed as a characteristic "wrist drop" or "foot drop" and is a manifestation of a disease to the nervous system called peripheral neuropathy.

Chronic overexposure to lead also results in kidney disease with few, if any symptoms appearing until extensive and most likely permanent kidney damage has occurred. Routine laboratory tests reveal the presence of this kidney disease only after about two-thirds of kidney function is lost. When overt symptoms of urinary dysfunction arise, it is often too late to correct or prevent worsening conditions, and progression to kidney dialysis or death is possible.

Chronic overexposure to lead impairs the reproductive systems of both men and women. Overexposure to lead may result in decreased sex drive, impotence and sterility in men. Lead can alter the structure of sperm cells raising the risk of birth defects. There is evidence of miscarriage and stillbirth in women whose husbands were exposed to lead or who were exposed to lead themselves. Lead exposure also may result in decreased fertility, and abnormal menstrual cycles in women. The course of pregnancy may be adversely affected by exposure to lead since lead crosses the placental barrier and poses risks to developing fetuses. Children born of parents either one of whom were exposed to excess lead levels are more likely to have birth defects, mental retardation, behavioral disorders or die during the first year of childhood.

Overexposure to lead also disrupts the blood-forming system resulting in decreased hemoglobin (the substance in the blood that carries oxygen to the cells) and ultimately anemia. Anemia is characterized by weakness, pallor and fatigability as a result of decreased oxygen carrying capacity in the blood.

(3) *Health protection goals of the standard.* Prevention of adverse health effects for most workers from exposure to lead throughout a working lifetime requires that worker blood lead (PbB) levels be maintained at or below forty micrograms per one hundred grams of whole blood (40 μg/100g). The blood lead levels of workers (both male and female workers) who intend to have children should be maintained below 30 μg/100g to minimize adverse reproductive health effects to the parents and to the developing fetus.

The measurement of your blood lead level is the most useful indicator of the amount of lead being absorbed by your body. Blood lead levels (PbB) are most often reported in units of milligrams (mg) or micrograms (μg) of lead (1 mg = 1000 μg) per 100 grams (100g), 100 milliters (100 ml) or deciliter (dl) of blood. These three units are essentially the same. Sometime PbB's are expressed in the form of mg% or μg%. This is a shorthand notation for 100g, 100ml, or dl.

PbB measurements show the amount of lead circulating in your blood stream, but do not give any information about the amount of lead stored in your various tissues. PbB measurements merely show current absorption of lead, not the effect that lead is having on your body or the effects that past lead exposure may have already caused. Past research into lead-related diseases, however, has focused heavily on associations between PbBs and various diseases. As a result, your PbB is an important indicator of the likelihood that you will gradually acquire a lead-related health impairment or disease.

Once your blood lead level climbs above 40 μg/100g, your risk of disease increases. There is a wide variability of individual response to lead, thus it is difficult to say that a particular PbB in a given person will cause a particular effect. Studies have associated fatal encephalopathy with PbBs as low as 150 μg/100g. Other studies have shown other forms of diseases in some workers with PbBs well below 80 μg/100g. Your PbB is a crucial indicator of the risks to your health, but one other factor is also extremely important. This factor is the length of time you have had elevated PbBs. The longer you have an elevated PbB, the greater the risk that large quantites of lead are being gradually stored in your organs and tissues (body burden). The greater your overall body burden, the greater the chances of substantial permanent damage.

The best way to prevent all forms of lead-related impairments and diseases—both short term and long term—is to maintain your PbB below 40 $\mu g/100g$. The provisions of the standard are designed with this end in mind. Your employer has prime responsibility to assure that the provisions of the standard are complied with both by the company and by individual workers. You as a worker, however, also have a responsibility to assist your employer in complying with the standard. You can play a key role in protecting your own health by learning about the lead hazards and their control, learning what the standard requires, following the standard where it governs your own actions, and seeing that your employer complies with provisions governing his actions.

(4) *Reporting signs and symptoms of health problems*. You should immediately notify your employer if you develop signs or symptoms associated with lead poisoning or if you desire medical advice concerning the effects of current or past exposure to lead on your ability to have a healthy child. You should also notify your employer if you have difficulty breathing during a respirator fit test or while wearing a respirator. In each of these cases your employer must make available to you appropriate medical examinations or consultations. These must be provided at no cost to you and at a reasonable time and place.

The standard contains a procedure whereby you can obtain a second opinion by a physician of your choice if the employer selected the initial physician. This procedure, however, was delayed by the Court of Appeals in March of 1979, and will not go into effect until after the Court's decision on the overall validity of the standard.

APPENDIX B—EMPLOYEE STANDARD SUMMARY

This appendix summarizes key provisions of the standard that you as a worker should become familiar with.

The appendix discusses the entire standard, but some portions of the standard were temporarily postponed (stayed) by federal court on March 1, 1979. This litigation concerns the validity of the entire lead standard, and a final decision is expected in 1980. Most of the lead standard is currently legally in effect, however. The following discussion in the Appendix notes those few provisions of the standard which have been temporarily stayed.

I. PERMISSIBLE EXPOSURE LIMIT (PEL)—PARAGRAPH (C)

The standard sets a permissible exposure limit (PEL) of fifty micrograms of lead per cubic meter of air (50 $\mu g/m^3$), averaged over an 8-hour workday. This is the highest level of lead in air to which you may be permissibly exposed over an 8-hour workday. Since it is an 8-hour average it permits short exposures above the PEL so long as for each 8-hour workday your average exposure does not exceed the PEL.

This standard recognizes that your daily exposure to lead can extend beyond a typical 8-hour workday as the result of overtime or other alterations in your work schedule. To deal with this, the standard contains a formula which reduces your permissible exposure when you are exposed more than 8 hours. For example, if you are exposed to lead for 10 hours a day, the maximum permitted average exposure would be 40 $\mu g/m^3$.

II. EXPOSURE MONITORING - PARAGRAPH (D)

If lead is present in the workplace where you work in any quantity, your employer is required to make an initial determination of whether the action level is exceeded for any employee. This initial determination must include instrument monitoring of the air for the presence of lead and must cover the exposure of a representative number of employees who are reasonably believed to have the highest exposure levels. If your employer has conducted appropriate air sampling for lead in the past year he may use these results. If there have been any employee complaints of symptoms which may be attributable to exposure to lead or if there is any other information or observations which would indicate employee exposure to lead, this must also be considered as part of the initial determination. This initial determination must have been completed by March 31, 1979. If this initial determination shows that a reasonable possibility exists that *any* employee may be exposed, without regard to respirators, over the action level (30 μg/m³) your employer must set up an air monitoring program to determine the exposure level of every employee exposed to lead at your workplace.

In carrying out this air monitoring program, your employer is not required to monitor the exposure of every employee, but he must monitor a representative number of employees and job types. Enough sampling must be done to enable each employee's exposure level to be reasonably represented by at least one full shift (at least 7 hours) air sample. In addition, these air samples must be taken under conditions which represent each employee's *regular*, daily exposure to lead. All initial exposure monitoring must have been completed by May 30, 1979.

If you are exposed to lead and air sampling is performed, your employer is required to quickly notify you in writing of air monitoring results which represent your exposure. If the results indicate your exposure exceeds the PEL (without regard to your use of respirators), then your employer must also notify you of this in writing, and provide you with a description of the corrective action that will be taken to reduce your exposure.

Your exposure must be rechecked by monitoring every six months if your exposure is over the action level but below the PEL. Air monitoring must be repeated every three months if you are exposed over the PEL. Your employer may discontinue monitoring for you if 2 consecutive measurements, taken at least two weeks apart, are below the action level. However, whenever there is a production, process, control, or personnel change at your workplace which may result in new or additional exposure to lead, or whenever there is any other reason to suspect a change which may result in new or additional exposure to lead, your employer must perform additional monitoring.

III. METHODS OF COMPLIANCE - PARAGRAPH (E)

Your employer is required to assure that no employee is exposed to lead in excess of the PEL. The standard establishes a priority of methods to be used to meet the PEL. Due to the temporary ruling by United States Circuit Court of Appeals, your employeer will not be legally required to use the preferred engineering and work practice controls. Until the litigation is completed, your employer may meet the PEL by requiring you to wear respirators. Alternatively, the employer may choose to implement engineering and work practice controls even though they are not legally required. Also, OSHA's previous lead standard is still in effect. This does require your employer to use feasible engineering and administrative controls to reduce employee exposure levels, but only to a level of 200 micrograms of lead per cubic meter of air (200 μg/m³).

IV. RESPIRATORY PROTECTION - PARAGRAPH (F)

Your employer is required to provide and assure your use of respirators when your exposure to lead is not controlled below the PEL by other means. The employer must pay the cost of the respirator. Whenever you request one, your employer is also required to provide you a respirator even if your air exposure level does not exceed the PEL. You might desire a respirator when, for example, you have received medical advice that your lead absorption should be decreased. Or, your may intend to have children in the near future, and want to reduce the level of lead in your body to minimize adverse reproductive effects. While respirators are the least satisfactory means of controlling your expoure, they are capable of providing significant protection if properly chosen, fitted, worn, cleaned, maintained, and replaced when they stop providing adequate protection.

Your employer is required to select respirators from the seven types listed in Table II of the Respiratory Protection section of the standard. Any respirator chosen must be approved by the Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA). This respirator selection table will enable your employer to choose a type of respirator which will give you a proper amount of protection based on your airborne lead exposure. Your employer may select a type of respirator that provides greater protection than that required by the standard; that is, one recommended for a higher concentration of lead than is present in your workplace. For example, a powered air purifying respirator (PAPR) is much more protective than a typical negative pressure respirator, and may also be more comfortable to wear. A PAPR has a filter, cartridge or canister to clean the air, and a power source which continuously blows filtered air into your breathing zone. Your employer might make a PAPR available to you to ease the burden of having to wear a respirator for long periods of time. The standard provides that you can obtain a PAPR upon request, but this requirement has been stayed as a part of the pending litigation.

Your employer must also start a Respiratory Protection Program. This program must include written procedures for the proper selection, use, cleaning, storage, and maintenance of respirators.

Your employer must assure that your respirator facepiece fits properly. Proper fit of a respirator facepiece is critical. Obtaining a proper fit on each employee may require your employer to make available two or three different mask types. In order to assure that your respirator fits properly and that facepiece leakage is minimized, beginning on November 12, 1982, your employer must give you either a qualitative fit test in accordance with Appendix D of the standard or a quantitative fit test if you use a negative pressure respirator. Any respirator which has a filter, cartridge or canister which cleans the work room air before you breathe it and which requires the force of your inhalation to draw air thru the filtering element is a negative pressure respirator. A positive pressure respirator supplies air to you directly. A quantitative fit test uses a sophisticated machine to measure the amount, if any, of test material that leaks into the facepiece of your respirator.

You must also receive from your employer proper training in the use of respirators. Your employer is required to teach you how to wear a respirator, to know why it is needed, and to understand its limitations.

Until March 1, 1980, your employer must test the effectiveness of your negative pressure respirator initially and at least every six months thereafter with a "qualitative fit test." In this test, the fit of the facepiece is checked by seeing if you can smell a substance placed outside the respirator. If you can, there is appreciable leakage where the facepiece meets your face.

The standard provides that if your respirator uses filter elements, you must be given an opportunity to change the filter elements whenever an increase in breathing resistance is detected. You also must be permitted to periodically leave your work area to wash your face and respirator facepiece whenever necessary to prevent skin irritation. If you ever have difficulty in breathing during a fit test or while using a respirator, your employer must make a medical examination available to you to determine whether you can safely wear a respirator. The result of this examination may be to give you a positive pressure respirator (which reduces breathing resistance) or to provide alternative means of protection.

V. PROTECTIVE WORK CLOTHING AND EQUIPMENT - PARAGRAPH (G)

If you are exposed to lead above the PEL, or if you are exposed to lead compounds such as lead arsenate or lead azide which can cause skin and eye irritation, your employer must provide you with protective work clothing and equipment appropriate for the hazard. If work clothing is provided, it must be provided in a clean and dry condition at least weekly, and daily if your airborne exposure to lead is greater than 200 $\mu g/m^3$. Appropriate protective work clothing and equipment can include coveralls or similar full-body work clothing, gloves, hats, shoes or disposable shoes coverlets, and face shields or vented goggles. Your employer is required to provide all such equipment at no cost to you. He is responsible for providing repairs and replacement as necessary, and also is responsible for the cleaning, laundering or disposal of protective clothing and equipment. Contaminated work clothing or equipment must be removed in change rooms and not worn home or you will extend your exposure and expose your family since lead from your clothing can accumulate in your house, car, etc. Contaminated clothing which is to be cleaned, laundered or disposed of must be placed in closed containers in the change room. At no time may lead be removed from protective clothing or equipment by any means which disperses lead into the workroom air.

VI. HOUSEKEEPING—PARAGRAPH (H)

Your employer must establish a housekeeping program sufficient to maintain all surfaces as free as practicable of accumulations of lead dust. Vacuuming is the preferred method of meeting this requirement, and the use of compressed air to clean floors and other surfaces is absolutely prohibited. Dry or wet sweeping, shoveling, or brushing may not be used except where vaccuming or other equally effective methods have been tried and do not work. Vacuums must be used and emptied in a manner which minimizes the reentry of lead into the workplace.

VII. HYGIENE FACILITIES AND PRACTICES–PARAGRAPH (I)

The standard requires that change rooms, showers, and filtered air lunchrooms be constructed and made available to workers exposed to lead above the PEL. These requirements have temporarily been delayed by the court of appeals in situations where new facilities must be constructed, or where substantial renovations must be made to existing facilities. When the PEL is exceeded and these facilities are available, however, the employer must assure that food and beverage is not present or consumed, tobacco products are not present or used, and cosmetics are not applied, except in these facilities. Change rooms, showers, and lunchrooms, if available, must be used by workers exposed in excess of the PEL. After showering, *no* clothing or equipment worn during the shift may be worn home, and this includes shoes and underwear. Your own clothing worn during the shift should be carried home and cleaned carefully so that it does not contaminate your home. Lunchrooms may not be entered with protective clothing or equipment unless surface dust has been removed by vacuuming, downdraft booth, or other cleaning method. Finally, workers exposed above the PEL must wash both their hands and faces prior to eating, drinking, smoking or applying cosmetics.

All of the facilities and hygiene practices just discussed are essential to minimize additional sources of lead absorption from inhalation or ingestion of lead that may accumulate on you, your clothes, or your possessions. Strict compliance with these provisions can virtually eliminate several sources of lead exposure which significantly contribute to excessive lead absorption.

VIII. MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE–PARAGRAPH (J)

The medical surveillance program is part of the standard's comprehensive approach to the prevention of lead-related disease. Its purpose is to supplement the main thrust of the standard which is aimed at minimizing airborne concentrations of lead and sources of ingestion. Only medical surveillance can determine if the other provisions of the standard have affectively protected you as an individual. Compliance with the standard's provision will protect most workers from the adverse effects of lead exposure, but may not be satisfactory to protect individual workers (1) who have high body burdens of lead acquired over past years, (2) who have additional, uncontrolled sources of nonoccupational lead exposure, (3) who exhibit unusual variations in lead absorption rates or (4) who have specific non-work related medical conditions which could be aggravated by lead exposure (e.g., renal disease, anemia). In addition, control systems may fail, or hygiene and respirator programs may be inadequate. Periodic medical surveillance of individual workers will help detect those failures. Medical surveillance will also be important to protect your reproductive ability–regardless of whether you are a man or woman.

All medical surveillance required by the standard must be performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician. The employer must provide required medical surveillance without cost to employees and at a reasonable time and place. The standard's medical surveillance program has two parts – periodic biological monitoring and medical examinations.

Your employer's obligation to offer you medical surveillance is triggered by the results of the air monitoring program. Medical surveillance must be made available to all employees who are exposed in excess of the action level for more than 30 days a year. The initial phase of the medical surveillance program, which includes blood lead level tests and medical examinations, must be completed for all covered employees no later than August 28, 1979. Priority within this first round of medical surveillance must be given to employees whom the employer believes to be at greatest risk from continued exposure (for example, those with the longest prior exposure to lead, or those with the highest current exposure). Thereafter, the employer must periodically make medical surveillance – both biological monitoring and medical examinations – available to all covered employees.

Biological monitoring under the standard consists of blood lead level (PbB) and zinc protoporphyrin tests at least every 6 months after the initial PbB test. A zinc protoporphyrin (ZPP) test is a very useful blood test which measures an effect of lead on your body, but this test has been temporarily stayed by the Court. Thus biological monitoring under the standard is currently limited to PbB testing. If a worker's PbB exceeds 40 μg/100g the monitoring frequency must be increased from every 6 months to at least every 2 months and not reduced until two consecutive

PbBs indicate a blood lead level below 40 µg/100 g. Each time your PbB is determined to be over 40 µg/100g, your employer must notify you of this in writing within five working days of his receipt of the test results. The employer must also inform you that the standard requires temporary medical removal with economic protection when your PbB exceeds certain criteria (See Discussion of Medical Removal Protection – Paragraph (k)). During the first year of the standard, this removal criterion is 80 µg/100g. Anytime your PbB exceeds 80 µg/100g your employer must make available to you a prompt follow-up PbB test to ascertain your PbB. If the two tests both exceed 80 µg/100g and you are temporarily removed, then your employer must make successive PbB tests available to you on a monthly basis during the period of your removal.

Medical examinations beyond the initial one must be made available on an annual basis if your blood lead level exceeds 40 µg/100g at any time during the preceeding year. The initial examination will provide information to establish a baseline to which subsequent data can be compared. An initial medical examination must also be made available (prior to assignment) for each employee being assigned for the first time to an area where the airborne concentration of lead equals or exceeds the action level. In addition, a medical examination or consultation must be made available as soon as possible if you notify your employer that you are experiencing signs or symptoms commonly associated with lead poisoning or that you have difficulty breathing while wearing a respirator or during a respirator fit test. You must also be provided a medical examination or consultation if you notify your employer that you desire medical advice concerning the effects of current or past exposure to lead on your ability to procreate a healthy child.

Finally, appropriate follow-up medical examinations or consultations may also be provided for employees who have been temporarily removed from exposure under the medical removal protection provisions of the standard (See Part IX, below).

The standard specifies the minimum content of pre-assignment and annual medical examinations. The content of other types medical examinations and consultations is left up to the sound discretion of the examining physician. Pre-assignment and annual medical examinations must include (1) a detailed work history and medical history, (2) a thorough physical examination, and (3) a series of laboratory tests designed to check your blood chemistry and your kidney function. In addition, at any time upon your request, a laboratory evaluation of male fertility will be made (microscopic examination of a sperm sample), or a pregnancy test will be given.

The standard does not require that you participate in any of the medical procedures, tests, etc. which your employer is required to make available to you. Medical surveillance can, however, play a very important role in protecting your health. You are strongly encouraged, therefore, to participate in a meaningful fashion. The standard contains a multiple physician review mechanism which would give you a chance to have a physician of your choice directly participate in the medical surveillance program. If you were dissatisfied with an examination by a physician chosen by your employer you could select a second physician to conduct an independent analysis. The two doctors would attempt to resolve any differences of opinion, and select a third physician to resolve any firm dispute. This multiple physician review mechanism, however, has been temporarily delayed by the Court of Appeals. As a result, generally your employer will choose the physician who conducts medical surveillance under the lead standard – unless you and your employer can agree on the choice of a physician or physicians. Some companies and unions have agreed in advance, for example, to use certain independent medical laboratories or panels of physicians. Any of these arrangements are acceptable so long as required medical surveillance is made available to workers.

The standard requires your employer to provide certain information to a physician to aid in his or her examination of you. This information includes (1) the standard and its appendices, (2) a description of your duties as they relate to lead exposure, (3) your exposure level, (4) a description of personal protective equipment you wear, (5) prior blood lead level results, and (6) prior written medical opinions concerning you that the employer has. After a medical examination or consultation the physician must prepare a written report which must contain (1) the physician's opinions as to whether you have any medical condition which places you at increased risk of material impairment to health from exposure to lead, (2) any recommended special protective measures to be provided you, (3) any blood lead level determinations, and (4) any recommended limitation on your use of respirators. This last element must include a determination of whether you can wear a powered air purifying respirator (PAPR) if you are found unable to wear a negative pressure respirator.

The medical surveillance program of the lead standard may at some point in time serve to notify certain workers that they have acquired a disease or other adverse medical condition as a result of occupational lead exposure. If this is true, these workers might have legal rights to compensation from public agencies, their employers, firms that supply hazardous products to their employers, or other persons. Some states have laws, including worker compensation laws, that disallow a worker who learns of a job-related health impairment to sue, unless the worker sues within a short period of time after learning of the impairment. (This period of time may be a matter of months or years.) An attorney can be consulted about these possibilities. It should be stressed that OSHA is in no way trying to either encourage or discourage claims or lawsuits. However, since results of the standard's medical surveillance program can significantly affect the legal remedies of a worker who has acquired a job-related disease or impairment, it is proper for OSHA to make you aware of this.

The medical surveillance section of the standard also contains provisions dealing with chelation. Chelation is the use of certain drugs (administered in pill form or injected into the body) to reduce the amount of lead absorbed in body tissues. Experience accumulated by the medical and scientific communities has largely confirmed the effectiveness of this type of therapy for the treatment of very severe lead poisoning. On the other hand, it has also been established that there can be a long list of extremely harmful side effects associated with the use of chelating agents. The medical community has balanced the advantages and disadvantages resulting from the use of chelating agents in various circumstances and has established when the use of these agents is acceptable. The standard includes these accepted imitations due to a history of abuse of chelation therapy by some lead companies. The most widely used chelating agents are calcium disodium EDTA, (Ca Na_2 EDTA), Calcium Disodium Versenate (Versenate), and d-penicillamine (pencillamine or Cupramine).

The standard prohibits "prophylactic chelation" of any employee by any person the employer retains, supervises or controls. "Prophylactic chelation"is the routine use of chelating or similarly acting drugs to *prevent* elevated blood levels in workers who are occupationally exposed to lead, or the use of these drugs to *routinely* lower blood lead levels to predesignated concentrations believed to be 'safe'. It should be emphasized that where an employer takes a worker who has no symptoms of lead poisoning and has chelation carried out by a physician (either inside or outside of a hospital) solely to reduce the worker's blood lead level, that will generally be considered prophylactic chelation. The use of a hospital and a physician does not mean that prophylactic chelation is not being performed. Routine chelation to prevent increased or reduce current blood lead levels is unacceptable whatever the setting.

The standard allows the use of "therapeutic" or "diagnostic" chelation if administered under the supervision of a licensed physician in a clinical setting with thorough and appropriate medical monitoring. Therapeutic chelation responds to severe lead poisoning where there are marked symptoms. Diagnostic chelation involved giving a patient a dose of the drug then collecting all urine excreted for some period of time as an aid to the diagnosis of lead poisoning.

In cases where the examining physician determines that chelation is appropriate, you must be notified in writing of this fact before such treatment. This will inform you of a potentially harmful treatment, and allow you to obtain a second opinion.

IX. MEDICAL REMOVAL PROTECTION— PARAGRAPH (K)

Excessive lead absorption subjects you to increased risk of disease. Medical removal protection (MRP) is a means of protecting you when, for whatever reasons, other methods, such as engineering controls, work practices, and respirators, have failed to provide the protection you need. MRP involves the temporary removal of a worker from his or her regular job to a place of significantly lower exposure without any loss of earnings, seniority, or other employment rights or benefits. The purpose of this program is to cease further lead absorption and allow your body to naturally excrete lead which has previously been absorbed. Temporary medical removal can result from an elevated blood lead level, or a medical opinion. Up to eighteen months of protection is provided as a result of either form of removal. The vast majority of removed workers, however, will return to their former jobs long before this eighteen month period expires. The standard contains special provisions to deal with the extraordinary but possible case where a longterm worker's blood lead level does not adequately decline during eighteen months of removal.

During the first year of the standard, if your blood lead level is 80 μg/100g or above you must be removed from any exposure where your air lead level without a respirator would be 100 μg/m^3 or above. If you are removed from your normal job you may not be returned until your blood lead level declines to at least 60 μg/100g. These criteria for removal and return will change according to the following schedule:

	Removal blood lead (μg/100 g)	Air lead (μg/m^3)	Return blood lead (μg/100 g)
After Mar. 1, 1980	70 and above	50 and above	At or below 50.
After Mar. 1, 1981	60 and above	30 and above	At or below 40.
After Mar. 1, 1983	50 and above averaged over six months	30 and above	At or below 40.

You may also be removed from exposure even if your blood lead levels are below these criteria if a final medical determination indicates that you temporarily need reduced lead exposure for medical reasons. If the physician who is implementing your employers medical program makes a final written opinion recommending your removal or other special protective measures, your employer must implement the physician's recommendation. If you are removed in this manner, you may only be returned when the doctor indicates that it is safe for you to do so.

The standard does not give specific instructions dealing with what an employer must do with a removed worker. Your job assignment upon removal is a matter for you, your employer and your union (if any) to work out consistent with existing procedures for job assignments. Each removal must be accomplished in a manner consistent with existing collective bargaining relationships. Your employer is given broad discretion to implement temporary removals so long as no attempt is made to override existing agreements. Similarly, a removed worker is provided no right to veto an employer's choice which satisfies the standard.

In most cases, employers will likely transfer removed employees to other jobs with sufficiently low lead exposure. Alternatively, a worker's hours may be reduced so that the time weighted average exposure is reduced, or he or she may be temporarily laid off if no other alternative is feasible.

In all of these situations, MRP benefits must be provided during the period of removal—i.e., you continue to receive the same earnings, seniority, and other rights and benefits you would have had if you had not been removed. Earnings include more than just your base wage; it includes overtime, shift differentials, incentives, and other compensation you would have earned if you had not been removed. During the period of removal you must also be provided with appropriate follow-up medical surveillance. If you were removed because your blood lead level was too high, you must be provided with a monthly blood test. If a medical opinion caused your removal, you must be provided medical tests or examinations that the doctor believes to be appropriate. If you do not participate in this follow up medical surveillance, you may lose your eligibility for MRP benefits.

When you are medically eligible to return to your former job, your employer must return you to your "former job status." This means that you are entitled to the position, wages, benefits, etc., you would have had if you had not been removed. If you would still be in your old job if no removal had occurred that is where you go back. If not, you are returned consistent with whatever job assignment discretion your employer would have had if no removal had occurred. MRP only seeks to maintain your rights, not expand them or diminish them.

If you are removed under MRP and you are also eligible for worker compensation or other compensation for lost wages, your employer's MRP benefits obligation is reduced by the amount that you *actually* receive from these other sources. This is also true if you obtain other employment during the time you are laid off with MRP benefits.

The standard also covers situations where an employer *voluntarily* removes a worker from exposure to lead due to the effects of lead on the employee's medical condition, even though the standard does not require removal. In these situations MRP benefits must still be provided as though the standard required removal. Finally, it is important to note that in all cases where removal is required, respirators cannot be used as a substitute. Respirators may be used before removal becomes necessary, but not as an alternative to a transfer to a low exposure job, or to a lay-off with MRP benefits.

X. EMPLOYEE INFORMATION AND TRAINING—PARAGRAPH (L)

Your employer is required to provide an information and training program for all employees exposed to lead above the action level or who may suffer skin or eye irritation from lead. This program must inform these employees of the specific hazards associated with their work environment, protective measures which can be taken, the danger of lead to their bodies (including their reproductive systems), and their rights under the standard. In addition your employer must make readily available to all employees, including those exposed below the action level, a copy of the standard and its appendices and must distribute to all employees any materials provided to the employer by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

Your employer is required to complete this training program for all employees by August 28, 1979. After this date, all new employees must be trained prior to initial assignment to areas where there is a possibility of exposure over the action level.

This training program must also be provided at least annually thereafter.

XI. SIGNS—PARAGRAPH (M)

The standard requires that the following warning sign be posted in work areas where the exposure to lead exceeds the PEL:

WARNING

LEAD WORK AREA

NO SMOKING OR EATING

This requirement, however, has been stayed by the Court of Appeals.

XI. RECORDKEEPING—PARAGRAPH (N)

Your employer is required to keep all records of exposure monitoring for airborne lead. These records must include the name and job classification of employees measured, details of the sampling and analytic techniques, the results of this sampling, and the type of respiratory protection being worn by the person sampled. Your employer is also required to keep all records of biological monitoring and medical examination results. These must include the names of the employees, the physician's written opinion, and a copy of the results of the examination. All of the above kinds of records must be kept for 40 years, or for at least 20 years after your termination of employment, whichever is longer.

Recordkeeping is also required if you are temporarily removed from your job under the medical removal protection program. This record must include your name and social security number, the date of your removal and return, how the removal was or is being accomplished, and whether or not the reason for the removal was an elevated blood lead level. Your employer is required to keep each medical removal record only for as long as the duration of an employee's employment.

The standard requires that if you request to see or copy environmental monitoring, blood lead level monitoring, or medical removal records, they must be made available to you or to a representative that you authorize. Your union also has access to these records. Medical records other then PbB's must also be provided upon request to you, to your physician or to any other person whom you may specifically designate. Your union does not have access to your personnel medical records unless you authorize their access.

XIII. OBSERVATIONS OF MONITORING—PARAGRAPH (O)

When air monitoring for lead is performed at your workplace as required by this standard, your employer must allow you or someone you designate to act as an observer of the monitoring. Observers are entitled to an explanation of the measurement procedure, and to record the results obtained. Since results will not normally be available at the time of the monitoring, observers are entitled to record or receive the results of the monitoring when returned by the laboratory. Your employer is required to provide the observer with any personal protective devices required to be worn by employees working in the area that is being monitored. The employer must require the observer to wear all such equipment and to comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

XIV. EFFECTIVE DATE—PARAGRAPH (P)

The standard's effective data is March 1, 1979, and employer obligations under the standard begin to come into effect as of that date.

XV. FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

A. Copies of the Standard and explanatory materials can be obtained free of charge by calling or writing the OSHA Office of Publications, Room S—1212. United States Department of Labor, Washington, D.C. 20210:

Telephone (202) 523-6138. The following publications are available:

1. The standard and summary of the statement of reasons (preamble), Federal Register, Volume 43, pp. 52952-53014, November 14, 1978.
2. The full statement of reasons (preamble) Federal Register, vol. 43, pp. 54354-54509, November 21, 1978.
3. Partial Administrative Stay and Corrections to the standard, (44 FR 5446-5448) January 26, 1979.
4. Notice of the Partial Judicial Stay (44 FR 14554-14555) March 13, 1979.
5. Corrections to the preamble, Federal Register, vol. 44, pp. 20680-20681, April 6, 1979.
6. Additional correction to the preamble concerning the construction industry, Federal Register, vol. 44, p. 50338, August 28, 1979.
7. Appendices to the standard (Appendices A, B, C), **Federal Register,** Vol. 44, pp. 60980–60995, October 23, 1979.
8. Corrections to appendices, **Federal Register,** Vol. 44, 68828, November 30, 1979.
9. Revision to the standard and additional appendices (Appendices D and E), **Federal Register,** Vol. 47, pp. (pages for this notice), November 12, 1982.

B. Additional information about the standard, its enforcement, and your employer's compliance can be obtained from the nearest OSHA Area Office listed in your telephone directory under United States Government/Department of Labor.

APPENDIX C—MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE GUIDELINES

INTRODUCTION

The primary purpose of the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 is to assure, so far as possible, safe and healthful working conditions for every working man and woman. The occupational health standard for inorganic lead was promulgated to protect workers exposed to inorganic lead including metallic lead, all inorganic lead compounds and organic lead soaps.

Under this final standard in effect as of March 1, 1979, occupational exposure to inorganic lead is to be limited to 50 $\mu g/m^3$ (micrograms per cubic meter) based on an 8 hour time-weighted average (TWA). This level of exposure eventually must be achieved through a combination of engineering, work practice and other administrative controls. Periods of time ranging from 1 to 10 years are provided for different industries to implement these controls. The schedule which is based on individual industry considerations is given in Table 1. Until these controls are in place, respirators must be used to meet the 50 $\mu g/m^3$ exposure limit.

The standard also provides for a program of biological monitoring and medical surveillance for all employees exposed to levels of inorganic lead above the action level of 30 $\mu g/m^3$ (TWA) for more than 30 days per year.

The purpose of this document is to outline the medical surveillance provisions of the standard for inorganic lead, and to provide further information to the physician regarding the examination and evaluation of workers exposed to inorganic lead.

Section 1 provides a detailed description of the monitoring procedure including the required frequency of blood testing for exposed workers, provisions for medical removal protection (MRP), the recommended right of the employee to a second medical opinion, and notification and recordkeeping requirements of the employer. A discussion of the requirements for respirator use and respirator monitoring and OSHA's position on prophlactic chelation therapy are also included in this section.

Section 2 discusses the toxic effects and clinical manifestations of lead poisoning and effects of lead intoxication on enzymatic pathways in heme synethesis. The adverse effects on both male and female reproductive capacity and on the fetus are also discussed.

Section 3 outlines the recommended medical evaluation of the worker exposed to inorganic lead including details of the medical history, physical examination, and recommended laboratory tests, which are based on the toxic effects of lead as discussed in Section 2.

Section 4 provides detailed information concerning the laboratory tests available for the monitoring of exposed workers. Included also is a discussion of the relative value of each test and the limitations and precautions which are necessary in the interpretation of the laboratory results.

I. MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE AND MONITORING REQUIREMENTS FOR WORKERS EXPOSED TO INORGANIC LEAD

Under the occupational health standard for inorganic lead, a program of biological monitoring and medical surveillance is to be made available to all employees exposed to lead above the action level of 30 $\mu g/m^3$ TWA for more than 30 days each year. This program consists of periodic blood sampling and medical evaluation to be performed on a schedule which is defined by previous laboratory results, worker complaints or concerns, and the clinical assessment of the examining physician.

Under this program, the blood lead level of all employees who are exposed to lead above the action level of 30 $\mu g/m^3$ is to be determined at least every six months. The frequency is increased to every two months for employees whose last blood lead level was between 40 $\mu g/100$ g whole blood and the level requiring employee medical removal to be discussed below. For employees who are removed from exposure to lead due to an elevated blood lead level, a new blood lead level must be measured monthly. A zinc protoporphyrin (ZPP) measurement is strongly recommended on each occasion that a blood lead level measurement is made. ZPP monitoring is one of several requirements of the standard that has been temporarily stayed by pending litigation over the lead standard. Unless otherwise noted in this document, all provisions of the standard pertaining to medical surveillance and medical removal protection are currently in effect.

Table 1

Permissible airborne lead levels by industry ($\mu g/m^3$) *	Effective date					
	Mar. 1, 1979	Mar. 1, 1980	Mar. 1, 1981	Mar. 1, 1982	Mar. 1, 1984	Mar. 1, 1989 (final)
1. Primary lead production	200	200	200	100	100	50
2. Secondary lead production	200	200	200	100	50	50
3. Lead-acid battery manufacturing	200	200	100	100	50	50
4. Nonferrous foundries	200	100	100	100	50	50
5. Lead pigment manufacturing	200	200	200	100	50	50
6. All other industries	200	50	50	50	50	50

*Airborne levels to be achieved without reliance or respirator protection through a combination of engineering, work practice and other administrative controls. While these controls are being implemented respirators must be used to meet the 50 $\mu g/m^3$ exposure limit.

An annual medical examination and consultation performed under the guidelines discussed in Section 3 is to be made available to each employee for whom a blood test conducted at any time during the preceding 12 months indicated a blood lead level at or above 40 $\mu g/100$ g. Also, an examination is to be given to all employees prior to their assignment to an area in which airborne lead concentrations reach or exceed the action level. In addition, a medical examination must be provided as soon as possible after notification by an employee that the employee has developed signs or symptoms commonly associated with lead intoxication, that the employee desires medical advice regarding lead exposure and the ability to procreate a healthy child, or that the employee has demonstrated difficulty in breathing during a respirator fitting test or during respirator use. An examination is also to be made available to each employee removed from exposure to lead due to a risk of sustaining material impairment to health, or otherwise limited or specially protected pursuant to medical recommendations.

Results of biological monitoring or the recommendations of an examining physician may necessitate removal of an employee from further lead exposure pursuant to the standard's medical removal protection (MRP) program. The object of the MRP program is to provide temporary medical removal to workers either with substantially elevated blood lead levels or otherwise at risk of sustaining material health impairment from continued substantial exposure to lead. The following guidelines which are summarized in Table 2 were created under the standard for the temporary removal of an exposed employee and his or her subsequent return to work in an exposure area.

Under the standard's ultimate worker removal criteria, a worker is to be removed from any work having any eight hour TWA exposure to lead of 30 $\mu g/m^3$ or more whenever either of the follow-

Table 2

	Effective date				
	Mar. 1, 1979	Mar 1, 1980	Mar. 1, 1981	Mar. 1, 1982	Mar. 1, 1983 (final)
A. Blood lead level requiring employee medical removal. (Level must be confirmed with second follow-up blood lead level within two weeks of first report.)	≥80 μg/100 g	>70 μg/100 g	>60 μg/100 g	>60 μg/100 g	>60μg/100 g or average of last three blood samples or all blood samples over previous 6 months (whichever is over a longer time period) is 50 μg/100 g or greater unless last blood sample is 40 μg/100 g or less.
B. Frequency which employees exposed to action level of lead (30 $\mu g/m^3$ TWA) must have blood lead level checked (ZPP is also strongly recommended in each occasion that a blood lead level is obtained):					
1. Last blood lead level less than 40 μg/100 g	Every 6 months.	Every 6 months.	Every 6 months.	Every 6 months	Every 6 months.
2. Last blood lead level between 40 μg/100 g and level requiring medical removal (see A above).	Every 2 months.	Every 2 months.	Every 2 months.	Every 2 months.	Every 2 months.
3. Employees removed from exposure to lead because of an elevated blood lead level.	Every 1 month.	Every 1 month.	Every 1 month.	Every 1 month.	Every 1 month.
C. Permissible airborne exposure limit for workers removed from work due to an elevated blood lead level (without regard to respirator protection).	> 0 $\mu g/m^3$8 hr TWA.	>50 $\mu g/m^3$8 hr TWA	>30 $\mu g/m^3$8 hr TWA	>30 $\mu g/m^3$8 hr TWA	>30 $\mu g/m^3$8 hr TWA.
D. Blood lead level confirmed with a second blood analysis, at which employee may return to work. Permissible exposure without regard to respirator protection is listed by industry in Table 1.	>60 μg/100 g	>50 μg/100 g	>40 μg/100 g	>40 μg/100 g	>40 μg/100 g.

NOTE.—When medical opinion indicates that an employee is at risk of material impairment from exposure to lead, the physician can remove an employee from exposures exceeding the action level (or less) or recommend special protective measures as deemed appropriate and necessary. Medical monitoring during the medical removal period can be more stringent than noted in the table above if the physician so specifies. Return to work or removal of limitations and special protections is permitted when the physician indicates that the worker is no longer at risk of material impairment.

ing circumstances apply: (1) a blood lead level of 60 μg/100 g or greater is obtained and confirmed by a second follow-up blood lead level performed within two weeks after the employer receives the results of the first blood sampling test, or (2) the average of the previous three blood lead determinations or the average of all blood lead determinations conducted during the previous six months, whichever encompasses the longest time period, equals or exceeds 50 μg/100 g, unless the last blood sample indicates a blood lead level at or below 40 μg/100 g in which case the employee need not be removed. Medical removal is to continue until two consecutive blood lead levels are 40 μg/100 g or less.

During the first two years that the ultimate removal criteria are being phased in, the return criteria have been set to assure that a worker's blood lead level has substantially declined during the period of removal. From March 1, 1979 to March 1, 1980, the blood lead level requiring employee medical removal is 80 μg/100 g. Workers found to have a confirmed blood lead at this level or greater need only be removed from work having a daily 8 hour TWA exposure to lead at or above 100 $\mu g/m^3$. Workers so removed are to be returned to work when their blood lead levels are at or below 60 μg/100 g of whole blood. From March 1, 1980 to March 1, 1981, the blood lead level requiring medical removal is 70 μg/100 g. During this period workers need only be removed from jobs having a daily 8 hour TWA exposure to lead at or above 50 $\mu g/m^3$ and are to be returned to work when a level of 50 μg/100 g is achieved. Beginning March 1, 1981, return depends on a worker's blood lead level declining to 40 μg/100 g of whole blood.

As part of the standard, the employer is required to notify in writing each employee whose blood lead level exceeds 40 μg/100 g. In addition each such employee is to be informed that the standard requires medical removal with MRP benefits, discussed below, when an employee's blood lead level exceeds the above defined limits.

In addition to the above blood lead level criteria, temporary worker removal may also take place as a result of medical determinations and recommendations. Written medical opinions must be prepared after each examination pursuant to the standard. If the examining physician includes a medical finding, determination or opinion that the employee has a medical condition which places the employee at increased risk of material health impairment from exposure to lead, then the employee must be removed from exposure to lead at or above the action level. Alternatively, if the examining physician recommends special protective measures for an employee (e.g., use of a powered air purifying respirator) or recommends limitations on an employee's exposure to lead, then the employer must implement these recommendations. Recommendations may be more stringent than the specific provisions of the standard. The examining physician, therefore, is given broad flexibility to tailor special protective procedures to the needs of individual employees. This flexibility extends to the evaluation and management of pregnant workers and male and female workers who are planning to raise children. Based on the history, physical examination, and laboratory studies, the physician might recommend special protective measures or medical removal for an employee who is pregnant or who is planning to conceive a child when, in the physician's judgment, continued exposure to lead at the current job would pose a significant risk. The return of the employee to his or her former job status, or the removal of special protections or limitations, depends upon the examining physician determining that the employee is no longer at increased risk of material impairment or that special measures are no longer needed.

During the period of any form of special protection or removal, the employer must maintain the worker's earnings, seniority, and other employment rights and benefits (as though the worker had not been removed) for a period of up to 18 months. This economic protection will maximize meaningful worker participation in the medical surveillance program, and is appropriate as part of the employer's overall obligation to provide a safe and healthful workplace. The provisions of MRP benefits during the employee's removal period may, however, be conditioned upon participation in medical surveillance.

On rare occasions, an employee's blood lead level may not acceptably decline within 18 months of removal. This situation will arise only in unusual circumstances, thus the standard relies on an individual medical examination to determine how to protect such an employee. This medical determination is to be based on both laboratory values, including lead levels, zinc protoporphyrin levels, blood counts, and other tests felt to be warranted, as well as the physician's judgment that any symptoms or findings on physical examination are a result of lead toxicity. The medical determination may be that the employee is incapable of ever safely returning to his or her former job status. The medical determination may provide additional removal time past 18 months for some employees or specify special protective measures to be implemented.

The lead standard provides for a multiple physician review in cases where the employee wishes a second opinion concerning potential lead poisoning or toxicity. If an employee wishes a second opinion, he or she can make an appointment with a physician of his or her choice. This second physician will review the findings, recommendations or determinations of the first physician and conduct any examinations, consultations or tests deemed necessary in an attempt to make a final medical determination. If the first and second physicians do not agree in their assessment they must try to resolve their differences. If they cannot reach an agreement then they must designate a third physician to resolve the dispute. This multiple physician review mechanism has been temporarily stayed during the pending litigation, but OSHA recommends that it be used if disputes arise over medical determinations.

The employer must provide examining and consulting physicians with the following specific information: a copy of the lead regulations and all appendices, a description of the employee's duties as related to exposure, the exposure level to lead and any other toxic sibstances (if applicable), a description of personal protective equipment used, blood lead levels, and all prior written medical opinions regarding the employee in the employer's possession or control. The employer must also obtain from the physician and provide the employee with a written medical opinion containing blood lead levels, the physician's opinion as to whether the employee is at risk of material impairment to health, any recommended protective measures for the employee if further exposure is permitted, as well as any recommended limitations upon an employee's use of respirators.

Employers must instruct each physician not to reveal to the employee in writing or in any other way his or her findings, laboratory results, or diagnoses which are felt to be unrelated to occupational lead exposure. They must also instruct each physician to advise the employee of any occupationally or non-occupationally related medical condition requiring further treatment or evaluation.

The standard provides for the use of respirators where engineering and other primary controls have not been fully implemented. However, the use of respirator protection shall not be used in lieu of temporary medical removal due to elevated blood lead levels or findings that an employee is at risk of material health impairment. This is based on the numerous inadequacies of respirators including skin rash where the facepiece makes contact with the skin, unacceptable stress to breathing in some workers with underlying cardiopulmonary impairment, difficulty in providing adequate fit, the tendency for respirators to create additional hazards by interfering with vision, hearing, and mobility, and the difficulties of assuring the maximum effectiveness of a complicated work practice program involving respirators. Respirators do, however, serve a useful function where engineering and work practice controls are inadequate by providing supplementary, interim, or short-term protection, provided they are properly selected for the environment in which the employee will be working, properly fitted to the employee, maintained and cleaned periodically, and worn by the employee when required.

In its final standard on occupational exposure to inorganic lead, OSHA has prohibited prophylactic chelation. Diagnostic and therapeutic chelation are permitted only under the supervision of a licensed physician with appropriate medical monitoring in an acceptable clinical setting. The decision to initiate chelation therapy must be made on an individual basis and take into account the severity of symptoms felt to be a result of lead toxicity along with blood lead levels, ZPP levels, and other laboratory tests as appropriate. EDTA and penicillamine which are the primary chelating agents used in the therapy of occupational lead poisoning have significant potential side effects and their use must be justified on the basis of expected benefits to the worker. Unless frank and severe symptoms are present, therapeutic chelation is not recommended given the opportunity to remove a worker from exposure and allow the body to naturally excrete accumulated lead. As a diagnostic aid, the chelation mobilization test using CA-EDTA has limited applicability. According to some investigators, the test can differentiate between lead-induced and other nephropathies. The test may also provide an estimation of the mobile fraction of the total body lead burden.

Employers are required to assure that accurate records are maintained on exposure monitoring, medical surveillance, and medical removal for each employee. Exposure monitoring and medical surveillance records must be kept for 40 years or the duration of employment plus 20 years, whichever is longer, while medical removal records must be maintained for the duration of employment. All records required under the standard must be available upon request to the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health and the Director of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health. Employers must also make environmental and biological monitoring and medical removal records available to affected employees and to former employees or their authorized employee representatives. Employees or their specifically designated representatives have access to their entire medical surveillance records.

In addition, the standard requires that the employer inform all workers exposed to lead at or above the action level of the provisions of the standard and all its appendices, the purpose and description of medical surveillance and provisions for medical removal protection if temporary removal is required. An understanding of the potential health effects of lead exposure by all exposed employees along with full understanding of their rights under the lead standard is essential for an effective monitoring program.

II. ADVERSE HEALTH EFFECTS OF INORGANIC LEAD

Although the toxicity of lead has been known for 2,000 years, the knowledge of the complex relationship between lead exposure and human response is still being refined. Significant research into the toxic properties of lead continues throughout the world, and it should be anticipated that our understanding of thresholds of effects and margins of safety will be improved in future years. The provisions of the lead standard are founded on two prime medical judgments: first, the prevention of adverse health effects from exposure to lead throughout a working lifetime requires that worker blood lead levels be maintained at or below 40 υg/100 g and second, the blood lead levels of workers, male or female, who intend to parent in the near future should be maintained below 30 υg/100 g to minimize adverse reproductive health effects to the parents and developing fetus. The adverse effects of lead on reproduction are being actively researched and OSHA encourages the physician to remain abreast of recent developments in the area to best advise pregnant workers or workers planning to conceive children.

The spectrum of health effects caused by lead exposure can be subdivided into five developmental stages: normal, physiological changes of uncertain significance, pathophysiological changes, overt symptoms (morbidity), and mortality. Within this process there are no sharp distinctions, but rather a continuum of effects. Boundaries between categories overlap due to the wide variation of individual responses and exposures in the working population. OSHA's development of the lead standard focused on pathophysiological changes as well as later stages of disease.

1. *Heme Synthesis Inhibition.* The earliest demonstrated effect of lead involves its ability to inhibit at least two enzymes of the heme synthesis pathway at very low blood levels. Inhibition of delta aminolevulinic acid dehydrase (ALA-D) which catalyzes the conversion of delta-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) to protoporphyrin is observed at a blood lead level below 20 μg/100 g whole blood. At a blood lead level of 40 μg/100 g, more than 20% of the population would have 70% inhibition of ALA-D. There is an exponential increase in ALA excretion at blood lead levels greater than 40 μg/100 g.

Another enzyme, ferrochelatase, is also inhibited at low blood lead levels. Inhibition of ferrochelatase leads to increased free erythrocyte protoporphyrin (FEP) in the blood which can then bind to zinc to yield zinc protoporphyrin. At a blood lead level of 50 μg/100 g or greater, nearly 100% of the population will have an increase in FEP. There is also an exponential relationship between blood lead levels greater than 40 μg/100 g and the associated ZPP level, which has led to the development of the ZPP screening test for lead exposure.

While the significance of these effects is subject to debate, it is OSHA's position that these enzyme disturbances are early stages of a disease process which may eventually result in the clinical symptoms of lead poisoning. Whether or not the effects do progress to the later stages of clinical disease, disruption of these enzyme processes over a working lifetime is considered to be a material impairment of health.

One of the eventual results of lead-induced inhibition of enzymes in the heme synthesis pathway is anemia which can be asymptomatic if mild but associated with a wide array of symptoms including dizziness, fatigue, and tachycardia when more severe. Studies have indicated that lead levels as low as 50 μg/100 g can be associated with a definite decreased hemoglobin, although most cases of lead-induced anemia, as well as shortened red-cell survival times, occur at lead levels exceeding 80 μg/100 g. Inhibited hemoglobin synthesis is more common in chronic cases whereas shortened erythrocyte life span is more common in acute cases.

In lead-induced anemias, there is usually a reticulocytosis along with the presence of basophilic stippling, and ringed sideroblasts, although none of the above are pathognomonic for lead-induced anemia.

2. *Neurological Effects.* Inorganic lead has been found to have toxic effects on both the central and peripheral nervous systems. The earliest stages of lead-induced central nervous system effects first manifest themselves in form of behavioral disturbances and central nervous system symptoms including irritability, restlessness, insomnia and other sleep disturbances, fatigue, vertigo, headache, poor memory, tremor, depression, and apathy. With more severe exposure, symptoms can progress to drowsiness, stupor, hallucinations, delerium, convulsions and coma.

The most severe and acute form of lead poisoning which usually follows ingestion or inhalation of large amounts of lead is acute encephalopathy which may arise precipitously with the onset of intractable seizures, coma, cardiorespiratory arrest, and death within 48 hours.

While there is disagreement about what exposure levels are needed to produce the earliest symptoms, most experts agree that symptoms definitely can occur at blood lead levels of 60 μg/100 g whole blood and therefore recommend a 40 μg/100 g maximum. The central nervous system effects frequently are not reversible following discontinued exposure or chelation therapy and when improvement does occur, it is almost always only partial.

The peripheral neuropathy resulting from lead exposure characteristically involves only motor function with minimal sensory damage and has a marked predilection for the extensor muscles of the most active extremity. The peripheral neuropathy can occur with varying degrees of severity. The earliest and mildest form which can be detected in workers with blood lead levels as low as 50 μg/100 g is manifested by slowing of motor nerve conduction velocity often without clinical symptoms. With progression of the neuropathy there is development of painless extensor muscle weakness usually involving the extensor muscles of the fingers and hand in the most active upper extremity, followed in severe cases by wrist drop or, much less commonly, foot drop.

In addition to slowing of nerve conduction, electromyographical studies in patients with blood leads levels greater than 50 μg/100 g have demonstrated a decrease in the number of acting motor unit potentials, and increase in the duration of motor unit potentials, and spontaneous pathological activity including fibrillations and fasciculations. Whether these effects occur at levels of 40 μg/100 g is undetermined.

While the peripheral neuropathies can occasionally be reversed with therapy, again such recovery is not assured particularly in the more severe neuropathies and often improvement is only partial. The lack of reversibility is felt to be due in part to segmental demyelination.

3. *Gastrointestinal.* Lead may also affect the gastrointestinal system producing abdominal colic or diffuse abdominal pain, constipation, obstipation, diarrhea, anorexia, nausea and vomiting. Lead colic rarely develops at blood lead levels below 80 μg/100g.

4. *Renal.* Renal toxicity represents one of the most serious health effects of lead poisoning. In the early stages of disease nuclear inclusion bodies can frequently be identified in proximal renal tubular cells. Renal function remains normal and the changes in this stage are probably reversible. With more advanced disease there is progressive interstitial fibrosis and impaired

renal function. Eventually extensive interstitial fibrosis ensues with sclerotic glomeruli and dilated and atrophied proximal tubules; all represent end stage kidney disease. Azotemia can be progressive, eventually resulting in frank uremia necessitating dialysis. There is occasionally associated hypertension and hyperuricemia with or without gout.

Early kidney disease is difficult to detect. The urinalysis is normal in early lead nephropathy and the blood urea nitrogen and serum creatinine increase only when two-thirds of kidney function is lost. Measurement of creatinine clearance can often detect earlier disease as can other methods of measurement of glomerular filtration rate. An abnormal Ca-EDTA mobilization test has been used to differentiate between lead-induced and other nephropathies, but this procedure is not widely accepted. A form of Fanconi syndrome with aminoaciduria, glycosuria, and hyperphosphaturia indicating severe injury to the proximal renal tubules is occasionally seen in children.

5. *Reproductive effects.* Exposure to lead can have serious effects on reproductive function in both males and females. In male workers exposed to lead there can be a decrease in sexual drive, impotence, decreased ability to produce healthy sperm, and sterility. Malformed sperm (teratospermia), decreased number of sperm (hypospermia), and sperm with decreased motility (asthenospermia) can all occur. Teratospermia has been noted at mean blood lead levels of 53 μg/100 g and hypospermia and asthenospermia at 41 μg/100 g. Furthermore, there appears to be a dose-response relationship for teratospermia in lead exposed workers.

Women exposed to lead may experience menstrual disturbances including dysmenorrhea, menorrhagia and amenorrhea. Following exposure to lead, women have a higher frequency of sterility, premature births, spontaneous miscarriages, and stillbirths.

Germ cells can be affected by lead and cause genetic damage in the egg or sperm cells before conception and result in failure to implant, miscarriage, stillbirth, or birth defects.

Infants of mothers with lead poisoning have a higher mortality during the first year and suffer from lowered birth weights, slower growth, and nervous system disorders.

Lead can pass through the placental barrier and lead levels in the mother's blood are comparable to concentrations of lead in the umbilical cord at birth. Transplacental passage becomes detectable at 12-14 weeks of gestation and increases until birth.

There is little direct data on damage to the fetus from exposure to lead but it is generally assumed that the fetus and newborn would be at least as susceptible to neurological damage as young children. Blood lead levels of 50-60 μg/100 g in children can cause significant neurobehavioral impairments and there is evidence of hyperactivity at blood levels as low as 25 μg/100 g. Given the overall body of literature concerning the adverse health effects of lead in children, OSHA feels that the blood lead level in children should be maintained below 30 μg/100 g with a population mean of 15 μg/100 g. Blood lead levels in the fetus and newborn likewise should not exceed 30 μg/100 g.

Because of lead's ability to pass through the placental barrier and also because of the demonstrated adverse effects of lead on reproductive function in both the male and female as well as the risk of genetic damage of lead on both the ovum and sperm, OSHA recommends a 30 μg/100 g maximum permissible blood lead level in both males and females who wish to bear children.

6. *Other toxic effects.* Debate and research continue on the effects of lead on the human body. Hypertension has frequently been noted in occupationally exposed individuals although it is difficult to assess whether this is due to lead's adverse effects on the kidney or if some other mechanism is involved. Vascular and electrocardiographic changes have been detected but have not been well characterized. Lead is thought to impair thyroid function and interfere with the pituitary-adrenal axis, but again these effects have not been well defined.

III. MEDICAL EVALUATION

The most important principle in evaluating a worker for any occupational disease including lead poisoning is a high index of suspicion on the part of the examining physician. As discussed in Section 2, lead can affect numerous organ systems and produce a wide array of signs and symptoms, most of which are non-specific and subtle in nature at least in the early stages of disease. Unless serious concern for lead toxicity is present, many of the early clues to diagnosis may easily be overlooked.

The crucial initial step in the medical evaluation is recognizing that a worker's employment can result in exposure to lead. The worker will frequently be able to define exposures to lead and lead containing materials but often will not volunteer this information unless specifically asked. In other situations the worker may not know of any exposures to lead but the suspicion might be raised on the part of the physician because of the industry or occupation of the worker. Potential occupational exposure to lead and its compounds occur in at least 120 occupations, including lead smelting, the manufacture of lead storage batteries, the manufacture of lead pigments and products containing pigments, solder manufacture, shipbuilding and ship repair, auto manufacturing, construction, and painting.

Once the possibility for lead exposure is raised, the focus can then be directed toward eliciting information from the medical history, physical exam, and finally from laboratory data to evaluate the worker for potential lead toxicity.

A complete and detailed work history is important in the initial evaluation. A listing of all previous employment with information on work processes, exposure to fumes or dust, known exposures to lead or other toxic substances, respiratory protection used, and previous medical surveillance should all be included in the worker's record. Where exposure to lead is suspected, information concerning on-the-job personal hygiene, smoking or eating habits in work areas, laundry procedures, and use of any protective clothing or respiratory protection equipment should be noted. A complete work history is essential in the medical evaluation of a worker with suspected lead toxicity, especially when long term effects such as neurotoxicity and nephrotoxicity are considered.

The medical history is also of fundamental importance and should include a listing of all past and current medical conditions, current medications including proprietary drug intake, previous surgeries and hospitalizations, allergies, smoking history, alcohol consumption, and also non-occupational lead exposures such as hobbies (hunting, riflery). Also known childhood exposures should be elicited. Any previous history of hematological, neurological, gastrointestinal, renal, psychological, gynecological, genetic, or reproductive problems should be specifically noted.

A careful and complete review of systems must be performed to assess both recognized complaints and subtle or slowly acquired symptoms which the worker might not appreciate as being significant. The review of symptoms should include the following:

General—weight loss, fatigue, decreased appetite.

Head, Eyes, Ears, Nose, Throat (HEENT)—headaches, visual disturbances or decreased visual acuity, hearing deficits or tinnitus, pigmentation of the oral mucosa, or metallic taste in mouth.

Cardio-pulmonary—shortness of breath, cough, chest pains, palpitations, or orthopnea.

Gastrointestinal—nausea, vomiting, heartburn, abdominal pain, constipation or diarrhea.

Neurologic—irritability, insomnia, weakness (fatigue), dizziness, loss of memory, confusion, hallucinations, incoordination, ataxia, decreased strength in hands or feet, disturbances in gait, difficulty in climbing stairs, or seizures.

Hematologic—pallor, easy fatigability, abnormal blood loss, melena.

Reproductive (male and female and spouse where relevant)—history of infertility, impotence, loss of libido, abnormal menstrual periods, history of miscarriages, stillbirths, or children with birth defects.

Musculo-sketal—muscle and joint pains.

The physical examination should emphasize the neurological, gastrointestinal, and cardiovascular systems. The worker's weight and blood pressure should be recorded and the oral mucosa checked for pigmentation characteristic of a possible Burtonian or lead line on the gingiva. It should be noted, however, that the lead line may not be present even in severe lead poisoning if good oral hygiene is practiced.

The presence of pallor on skin examination may indicate an anemia, which if severe might also be associated with a tachycardia. If an anemia is suspected, an active search for blood loss should be undertaken including potential blood loss through the gastrointestinal tract.

A complete neurological examination should include an adequate mental status evaluation including a search for behavioral and psychological disturbances, memory testing, evaluation for irritability, insomnia, hallucinations, and mental clouding. Gait and coordination should be examined along with close observation for tremor. A detailed evaluation of peripheral nerve function including careful sensory and motor function testing is warranted. Strength testing particularly of extensor muscle groups of all extremities is of fundamental importance.

Cranial nerve evaluation should also be included in the routine examination.

The abdominal examination should include auscultation for bowel sounds and abdominal bruits and palpation for organomegaly, masses, and diffuse abdominal tenderness.

Cardiovascular examination should evaluate possible early signs of congestive heart failure. Pulmonary status should be addressed particularly if respirator protection is contemplated.

As part of the medical evaluation, the lead standard requires the following laboratory studies:

1. Blood lead level

2. Hemoglobin and hematocrit determinations, red cell indices, and examination of the peripheral blood smear to evaluate red blood cell morphology

3. Blood urea nitrogen

4. Serum creatinine

5. Routine urinalysis with microscopic examination

6. A zinc protoporphyrin level (This requirement is currently not in effect due to the pending litigation, but is recommended nonetheless.)

In addition to the above, the physician is authorized to order any further laboratory or other tests which he or she deems necessary in accordance with sound medical practice. The evaluation must also include pregnancy testing or laboratory evaluation of male fertility if requested by the employee.

Additional tests which are probably not warranted on a routine basis but may be appropriate when blood lead and ZPP are equivocal include delta aminolevulinic acid and coproporphyrin concentrations in the urine, and dark-field illumination for detection of basophilic stippling in red blood cells.

If an anemia is detected further studies including a careful examination of the peripheral smear, reticulocyte count, stool for occult blood, serum iron, total iron binding capacity, bilirubin, and, if appropriate, vitamin B12 and folate may be of value in attempting to identify the cause of the anemia.

If a peripheral neuropathy is suspected, nerve conduction studies are warranted both for diagnosis and as a basis to monitor any therapy.

If renal disease is questioned, a 24 hour urine collection for creatinine clearance, protein, and electrolytes may be indicated. Elevated uric acid levels may result from lead-induced renal disease and a serum uric acid level might be performed.

An electrocardiogram and chest x-ray may be obtained as deemed appropriate.

Sophisticated and highly specialized testing should not be done routinely and where indicated should be under the direction of a specialist.

IV. LABORATORY EVALUATION

The blood lead level at present remains the single most important test to monitor lead exposure and is the test used in the medical surveillance program under the lead standard to guide employee medical removal. The ZPP which has several advantages over the blood lead level is, due to the pending litigation, not required under the standard. Because of its relatively recent development and the lack of extensive data concerning its interpretation, the ZPP currently remains an ancillary test.

This section will discuss the blood lead level and ZPP in detail and will outline their relative advantages and disadvantages. Other blood tests currently available to evaluate lead exposure will also be reviewed.

The blood lead level is a good index of current or recent lead absorption when there is no anemia present and when the worker has not taken any chelating agents. However, blood lead levels along with urinary lead levels do not necessarily indicate the total body burden of lead and are not adequate measures of past exposure. One reason for this is that lead has a high affinity for bone and up to 90% of the body's total lead is deposited there. A very important component of the total lead body burden is lead in soft tissue (liver, kidney, and brain). This fraction of the lead body burden, the biologically active lead, is not entirely reflected by blood lead levels since it is a function of the dynamics of lead absorption, distribution, deposition in bone and excretion. Following discontinuation of exposure to lead, the excess body burden is only slowly mobilized from bone and other relatively stable body stores and excreted. Consequently, a high blood lead level may only represent recent heavy exposure to lead without a significant total body excess and likewise a low blood lead level does not exclude an elevated total body burden of lead.

Also due to its correlation with recent exposures, the blood lead level may vary considerably over short time intervals.

To minimize laboratory error and erroneous results due to contamination, blood specimens must be carefully collected after thorough cleaning of the skin with appropriate methods using lead-free blood containers and analyzed by a reliable laboratory. Under the standard, samples must be analyzed in laboratories which are approved by the Center for Disease Control (CDC) or which have received satisfactory grades in proficiency testing by the CDC in the previous year. Under CDC standards, 75% of blood lead determinations are not to vary from reference values by more than 15% or 6 μg/100 ml, whichever is greater. Analysis is to be made using atomic absorption spectrophotometry.

The determination of lead in urine is generally considered a less reliable monitoring technique than analysis of whole blood primarily due to individual variablilty in urinary excretion capacity as well as the technical difficulty of obtaining accurate 24 hour urine collections. In addition, workers with renal insufficiency, whether due to lead or some other cause, may have decreased lead clearance and consequently urine lead levels may underestimate the true lead burden. Therefore, urine lead levels should not be used as a routine test.

The zinc protoporphyrin test, unlike the blood lead determination, measures an adverse metabolic effect of lead and as such is a better indicator of lead toxicity than the level of blood lead itself. The level of ZPP reflects lead absorption over the preceding 3 to 4 months, and therefore is a better indicator of lead body burden. The ZPP requires more time than the blood lead to read significantly elevated levels; the return to normal after discontinuing lead exposure is also slower. Furthermore, the ZPP test is simpler, faster, and less expensive to perform and no contamination is possible. Many investigators believe it is the most reliable means of monitoring chronic lead absorption.

Zinc protoporphyrin results from the inhibition of the enzyme ferrochelatase which catalyzes the insertion of an iron molecule into the protoporphyrin molecule, which then becomes heme. If iron is not inserted into the molecule then zinc, having a greater affinity for protoporphyrin, takes the place of the iron, forming ZPP.

An elevation in the level of circulating ZPP may occur at blood lead levels as low as 20-30 μg/100 g in some workers. Once the blood lead level has reached 40 μg/100 g there is more marked rise in the ZPP value from its normal range of less than 100 μg/100 ml. Increases in blood lead levels beyond 40 μg/100 g are associated with exponential increases in ZPP.

Whereas blood lead levels fluctuate over short time spans, ZPP levels remain relatively stable. ZPP is measured directly in red blood cells and is present for the cell's entire 120 day life-span. Therefore, the ZPP level in blood reflects the average ZPP production over the previous 3-4 months and consequently the average lead exposure during that time interval.

It is recommended that a hematocrit be determined whenever a confirmed ZPP or 50 μg/100 ml whole blood is obtained to rule out a significant underlying anemia. If the ZPP is in excess of 100 μg/100 ml and not associated with abnormal elevations in blood lead levels, the laboratory should be checked to be sure that blood leads were determined using atomic absorption spectrophotometry by a CDC certified laboratory which is experienced in lead level determinations. Repeat periodic blood lead studies should be obtained in all individuals with elevated ZPP levels to be certain that an associated elevated blood lead level has not been missed due to transient fluctuations in blood leads.

ZPP has a characteristic fluorescence spectrum with a peak at 594 nm which is detectable with a hematofluorimeter. The hematofluorimeter is accurate and portable and can provide on-site, instantaneous results for workers who can be frequently tested via a finger prick.

However, careful attention must be given to calibration and quality control procedures. Limited data on blood lead-ZPP correlations and the ZPP levels which are associated with the adverse health effects discussed in Section 2 are the major limitations of the test. Also it is difficult to correlate ZPP levels with environmental exposure and there is some variation of response with age and sex. Nevertheless, the ZPP promises to be an important diagnostic test for the early detection of lead toxicity and its value will increase as more data is collected regarding its relationship to other manifestations of lead poisoning.

Levels of delta-aminolevulinic acid (ALA) in the urine are also used as a measure of lead exposure. Increasing concentrations of ALA are believed to result from the inhibition of the enzyme delta-aminolevulinic acid dehydrase (ALA-D). Although the test is relatively easy to perform, inexpensive, and rapid, the disadvantages include variability in results, the necessity to collect a complete 24 hour urine sample which has a specific gravity greater than 1.010, and also the fact that ALA decomposes in the presence of light.

The pattern of porphyrin excretion in the urine can also be helpful in identifying lead intoxication. With lead poisoning, the urine concentrations of coproporphyrins I and II, porphobilinogen and uroporphyrin I rise. The most important increase, however, is that of coproporphyrin III; levels may exceed 5,000 $\mu g/1$ in the urine in lead poisoned individuals, but its correlation with blood lead levels and ZPP are not as good as those of ALA. Increases in urinary porphyrins are not diagnostic of lead toxicity and may be seen in porphyria, some liver diseases, and in patients with high reticulocyte counts.

SUMMARY

The Occupational Safety and Health Administration's standard for inorganic lead places significant emphasis on the medical surveillance of all workers exposed to levels of inorganic lead above the action level of 30 $\mu g/m^3$ TWA. The physician has a fundamental role in this surveillance program, and in the operation of the medical removal protection program.

Even with adequate worker education on the adverse health effects of lead and appropriate training in work practices, personal hygiene and other control measures, the physician has a primary responsibility for evaluating potential lead toxicity in the worker. It is only through a careful and detailed medical and work history, a complete physical examination and appropriate laboratory testing that an accurate assessment can be made. Many of the adverse health effects of lead toxicity are either irreversible or only partially reversible and therfore early detection of disease is very important.

This document outlines the medical monitoring program as defined by the occupational safety and health standard for inorganic lead. It reviews the adverse health effects of lead poisoning and describes the important elements of the history and physical examinations as they relate to these adverse effects. Finally, the appropriate laboratory testing for evaluating lead exposure and toxicity is presented.

It is hoped that this review and discussion will give the physician a better understanding of the OSHA standard with the ultimate goal of protecting the health and well-being of the worker exposed to lead under his or her care.

[44 F.R. 60980, October 23, 1979.]

APPENDIX D TO SECTION 1910.1025—QUALITATIVE FIT TEST PROTOCOLS

This appendix specifies the only allowable qualitative fit test protocols permissible for compliance with paragraph (f)(3)(ii).

I. Isoamyl Acetate Protocol

A. Odor threshold screening.

1. Three 1-liter glass jars with metal lids (e.g. Mason or Bell jars) are required.

2. Odor-free water (e.g. distilled or spring water) at approximately 25°C shall be used for the solutions.

3. The isoamyl acetate (IAA) (also known as isopentyl acetate) stock solution is prepared by adding 1 cc of pure IAA to 800 cc of odor free water in a 1-liter jar and shaking for 30 seconds. The solution shall be prepared new at least weekly.

4. The screening test shall be conducted in a room separate from the room used for actual fit testing. The two rooms shall be well ventilated but may not be connected to the same recirculating ventilation system.

5. The odor test solution is prepared in a second jar by placing .4 cc of the stock solution into 500 cc of odor free water using a clean dropper or pipette. Shake for 30 seconds and allow to stand for two to three minutes so that the IAA concentration above the liquid may reach equilibrium. This solution may be used for only one day.

6. A test blank is prepared in a third jar by adding 500 cc of odor free water.

7. The odor test and test blank jars shall be labelled 1 and 2 for jar identification. If the labels are put on the lids they can be periodically *dried off* and switched to avoid people thinking the same jar always has the IAA.

8. The following instructions shall be typed on a card and placed on the table in front of the two test jars (i.e. 1 and 2);

"The purpose of this test is to determine if you can smell banana oil at a low concentration. The two bottles in front of you contain water. One of these bottles also contains a small amount of banana oil. Be sure the covers are on tight, then shake each bottle for two seconds. Unscrew the lid of each bottle, one at a time, and sniff at the mouth of the bottle. Indicate to the test conductor which bottle contains banana oil."

9. The mixtures used in the IAA odor detection test shall be prepared in an area separate from where the test is performed, in order to prevent olfactory fatique in the subject.

10. If the test subject is unable to correctly identify the jar containing the odor test solution, the IAA QLFT may not be used.

11. If the test subject correctly identifies the jar containing the odor test solution he may proceed to respirator selection and fit testing.

B. Respirator selection.

1. The test subject shall be allowed to select the most comfortable respirator from a large array of various sizes and manufacturers that includes at least three sizes of elastomeric half facepieces and units of at least two manufacturers.

2. The selection process shall be conducted in a room separate from the fit-test chamber to prevent odor fatigue. Prior to the selection process, the test subject shall be shown how to put on a respirator, how it should be positioned on the face, how to set strap tension and how to assess a "comfortable" respirator. A mirror shall be available to assist the subject in evaluating the fit and positioning of the respirator. This may not constitute his formal training on respirator use, only a review.

3. The test subject should understand that he is being asked to select the respirator which provides the most comfortable fit for him. Each respirator represents a different size and shape and, if fit properly, will provide adequate protection.

4. The test subject holds each facepiece up to his face and eliminates those which are obviously not giving a comfortable fit. Normally, selection will begin with a half-mask and if a fit cannot be found here, the subject will be asked to go to the full facepiece respirators. (A small percentage of users will not be able to wear any half-mask.)

5. The more comfortable facepieces are recorded; the most comfortable mask is donned and *worn at least five minutes* to assess comfort. Assistance in assessing comfort can be given by discussing the points in #6 below. If the test subject is not familiar with using a particular respirator, he shall be directed to don the mask several times and to adjust the straps each time, so that he becomes adept at setting proper tension on the straps.

6. Assessment of comfort shall include reviewing the following points with the test subject:

- Chin properly placed.
- Positioning of mask on nose.
- Strap tension.
- Fit across nose bridge.
- Room for safety glasses.
- Distance from nose to chin.
- Room to talk.
- Tendency to slip.
- Cheeks filled out.
- Self-observation in mirror.
- Adequate time for assessment.

7. The test subject shall conduct the conventional negative and positive-pressure fit checks (e.g. see ANSI Z88.2–1980). Before conducting the negative- or positive-pressure checks, the subject shall be told to "seat" his mask by rapidly moving the head side-to-side and up and down, taking a few deep breaths.

8. The test subject is now ready for fit testing.

9. After passing the fit test, the test subject shall be questioned again regarding the comfort of the respirator. If it has become uncomfortable, another model of respirator shall be tried.

10. The employee shall be given the opportunity to select a different facepiece and be retested if during the first two weeks of on-the-job wear the chosen facepiece becomes unacceptably uncomfortable.

C. Fit test.

1. The fit test chamber shall be substantially similar to a clear 55 gallon drum liner suspended inverted over a 2 foot diameter frame, so that the top of chamber is about 6 inches above the test subject's head. The inside top center of the chamber shall have a small hook attached.

2. Each respirator used for the fitting and fit testing shall be equipped with organic vapor cartridges or offer protection against organic vapors. The cartridges or masks shall be changed at least weekly.

3. After selecting, donning, and properly adjusting a respirator himself, the test subject shall wear it to the fit testing room. This room shall be separate from the room used for odor threshold screening and respirator selection, and shall be well ventilated, as by an exhaust fan or lab hook, to prevent general room contamination.

4. A copy of the following test exercises and rainbow (or equally effective) passage shall be taped to the inside of the test chamber:

Test Exercises

i. Normal breathing.

ii. Deep breathing. Be certain breaths are *deep* and *regular*.

iii. Turning head from side-to-side. Be certain movement is complete. Alert the test subject not to bump the respirator on the shoulders. Have the test subject inhale when his head is at either side.

iv. Nodding head up-and-down. Be certain motions are complete and made about every second. Alert the test subject not bump the respirator on the chest. Have the test subject inhale when his head is in the fully up position.

v. Talking. Talk aloud and slowly for several minutes. The following paragraph is called the Rainbow Passage. Reading it will result in a wide range of facial movements, and thus be useful to satisfy this requirement. Alternate passages which serve the same purpose may also be used.

Rainbow Passage

When the sunlight strikes raindrops in the air, they act like a prism and form a rainbow. The rainbow is a division of white light into many beautiful colors. These take the shape of a long round arch, with its path high above, and its two ends apparently beyond the horizon. There is, according to legend, a boiling pot of gold at one end. People look, but no one ever finds it. When a man looks for something beyond reach, his friends say he is looking for the pot of gold at the end of the rainbow.

vi. Normal breathing.

5. Each test subject shall wear his respirator for at least 10 minutes before starting the fit test.

6. Upon entering the test chamber, the test subject shall be given a 6 inch by 5 inch piece of paper towel or other porous absorbent single ply material, folded in half and wetted with three-quarters of one cc of pure IAA. The test subject shall hang the wet towel on the hook at the top of the chamber.

7. Allow two minutes for the IAA test concentration to be reached before starting the fit-test exercises. This would be an appropriate time to talk with the test subject, to explain the fit test, the importance of his cooperation, the purpose for the head exercises, or to demonstrate some of the exercises.

8. Each exercise described in No. 4 above shall be performed for at least one minute.

9. If at any time during the test, the subject detects the banana-like odor of IAA, he shall quickly exit from the test chamber and leave the test area to avoid olfactory fatigue.

10. Upon returning to the selection room, the subject shall remove the respirator, repeat the odor sensitivity test, select and put on another respirator, return to the test chamber, etc. The process continues until a respirator that fits well has been found. Should the odor sensitivity test be failed, the subject shall wait about 5 minutes before retesting. Odor sensitivity will usually have returned by this time.

11. If a person cannot be fitted with the selection of half-mask respirators, include full facepiece models in the selection process. When a respirator is found that passes the test, its efficiency shall be demonstrated for the subject by having him break the face seal and take a breath before exiting the chamber.

12. When the test subject leaves the chamber he shall remove the saturated towel, returning it to the test conductor. To keep the area from becoming contaminated, the used towels shall be kept in a self-sealing bag. There is no significant IAA concentration buildup in the test chamber from subsequent tests.

13. Persons who have successfully passed this fit test may be assigned the use of the tested respirator in atmospheres with up to 10 times the PEL of airborne lead. In other words this IAA protocol may be used to assign a protection factor no higher than 10..

II. Saccharin Solution Aerosol Protocol

A. Taste threshold screening.

1. Threshold screening as well as fit testing employees shall use an enclosure about the head and shoulders that is approximately 12 inches in diameter by 14 inches tall with at least the front portion clear and that allows free movement of the head when a respirator is worn. An enclosure substantially similar to the 3M hood assembly of part # FT 14 and FT 15 combined is adequate.

2. The test enclosure shall have a three-quarter inch hole in front of the test subject's nose and mouth area to accommodate the nebulizer nozzle.

3. The entire screening and testing procedure shall be explained to the test subject prior to the conduct of the screening test.

4. The test subject shall don the test enclosure. For the threshold screening test, he shall breathe through his open mouth with tongue extended.

5. Using a DeVilbiss Model 40 Inhalation Medication Nebulizer, the test conductor shall spray the threshold check solution into the enclosure. This nebulizer shall be clearly marked to distinguish it from the fit test solution nebulizer or equivalent.

6. The threshold check solution consists of 0.83 grams of sodium saccharin, USP in water. It can be prepared by putting 1 cc of the test solution (see C6 below) in 100 cc of water.

7. To produce the aerosol, the nebulizer bulb is firmly squeezed so that it collapses completely then released and allowed to fully expand.

8. Ten squeezes are repeated rapidly and then the test subject is asked whether the saccharin can be tasted.

9. If the first response is negative, ten more squeezes are repeated rapidly and the test subject is again asked whether the saccharin is tasted.

10. If the second response is negative ten more squeezes are repeated rapidly and the test subject is again asked whether the saccharin is tasted.

11. The test conductor will take note of the number of squeezes required to elicit a taste response.

12. If the saccharin is not tasted after 30 squeezes (Step 9), the test subject may not perform the saccharin fit test.

13. If a taste response is elicited, the test subject shall be asked to take note of the taste for reference in the fit test.

14. Correct use of the nebulizer means that approximately 1 cc of liquid is used at a time in the nebulizer body.

15. The nebulizer shall be thoroughly rinsed in water, shaken dry, and refilled at least each morning and afternoon or at least every four hours.

B. Respirator selection.

Respirators shall be selected as described in section IB above, except that each respirator shall be equipped with a particular filter cartridge.

C. Fit test.

1. The fit test uses the same enclosure described in B1 and B2 above.

2. Each test subject shall wear his respirator for at least 10 minutes before starting the fit test.

3. The test subject shall don the enclosure while wearing the respirator selected in section A above. This respirator shall be properly adjusted and equipped with a particular filter cartridge.

4. The test subject may not eat, drink (except plain water), or chew gum for 15 minutes before the test.

5. A second DeVilbiss Model 40 Inhalation Medication Nebulizer is used to spray the fit test solution into the enclosure. This nebulizer shall be clearly marked to distinguish it from the screening test solution nebulizer or equivalent.

6. The fit test solution is prepared by adding 83 grams of sodium saccharin to 100 cc of warm water.

7. As before, the test subject shall breathe through the open mouth with tongue extended.

8. The nebulizer is inserted into the hole in the front of the enclosure and the fit test solution is sprayed into the enclosure using the same technique as for the taste threshold screening and the same number of squeezes required to elicit a taste response in the screening. (See B 10 above).

9. After generation of the aerosol the test subject shall be instructed to perform the following exercises for one minute each.

i. Normal breathing.

ii. Deep breathing. Be certain breaths are *deep* and *regular.*

iii. Turning head from side-to-side. Be certain movement is complete. Alert the test subject not to bump the respirator on the shoulders. Have the test subject inhale when his head is at either side.

iv. Nodding head up-and-down. Be certain motions are complete. Alert the test subject not to bump the respirator on the chest. Have the test subject inhale when his head in the fully up position.

v. Talking. Talk aloud and slowly for several minutes. The following paragraph is called the Rainbow Passage. Reading it will result in a wide range of facial movements, and thus be useful to satisfy this requirement. Alternative passages which serve the same purpose may also be used.

Rainbow Passage

When the sunlight strikes raindrops in the air, they act like a prism and form a rainbow. The rainbow is a division of white light into many beautiful colors. These take the shape of a long round arch, with its path high above, and its two ends apparently beyond the horizon. There is, according to legend, a boiling pot of gold at one end. People look, but no one ever finds it. When a man looks for something beyond his reach, his friends say he is looking for the pot of gold at the end of the rainbow.

10. Every 30 seconds, the aerosol concentration shall be replenished using one-half the number of squeeze as initially (C8).

11. The test subject shall so indicate to the test conductor if at any time during the fit test the taste of saccharin is detected.

12. If the saccharin is detected the fit is deemed unsatisfactory and a different respirator shall be tried.

13. Successful completion of the test protocol shall allow the use of the tested respirator in contaminated atmospheres up to 10 times the PEL. In other words this protocol may be used assign protection factors no higher than ten.

III. Irritant Fume Protocol

A. Respirator selection.

Respirators shall be selected as described in section IB above, except that each respirator shall be equipped with high efficiency cartridges.

B. Fit test.

1. The test subject shall be allowed to smell a weak concentration of the irritant smoke to familiarize him with its characteristic odor.

2. The test subject shall properly don the respirator selected as above, and wear it for at least 10 minutes before starting the fit test.

3. The test conductor shall review this protocol with the test subject before testing.

4. The test subject shall perform the conventional positive pressure and negative pressure fit checks. Failure of either check shall be cause to select an alternate respirator.

5. Break both ends of a ventilation smoke tube containing stannic oxychloride, such as the MSA part No. 5645, or equivalent. Attach a short length of tubing to one end of the smoke tube. Attach the other end of the smoke tube to a low pressure air pump set to deliver 200 milliliters per minute.

6. Advise the test subject that the smoke can be irritating to the eyes and instruct him to keep his eyes closed while the test is performed.

7. The test conductor shall direct the stream of irritant smoke from the tube towards the faceseal area of the test subject. He shall begin at least 12 inches from the facepiece and gradually move to within one inch, moving around the whole perimeter of the mask.

8. The following exercises shall be performed while the respirator seal is being challenged by the smoke. Each shall be performed for one minute.

i. Normal breathing.

ii. Deep breathing. Be certain breaths are *deep* and *regular.*

iii. Turning head from side-to-side. Be certain movement is complete. Alert the test subject not to bump the respirator on the shoulders. Have test subject inhale when his head is at either side.

iv. Nodding head up-and-down. Be certain motions are complete. Alert the test subject not to bump the respirator on the chest. Have the test subject inhale when his head is in the fully up position.

v. Talking—slowly and distinctly, count backwards from 100.

vi. Normal breathing.

9. If the irritant smoke produces an involuntary reaction (cough) by the test subject, the test conductor shall stop the test. In this case the test respirator is rejected and another respirator shall be selected.

10. Each test subject passing the smoke test without evidence of a response shall be given a sensitivity check of the smoke from the same tube to determine whether he reacts to the smoke. Failure to evoke a response shall void the fit test.

11. Steps B4, B7, B8 of this protocol shall be performed in a location with exhaust ventilation sufficient to prevent general contamination of the testing area by the test agents (IAA, irritant smoke).

12. Respirators successfully tested by the protocol may be used in contaminated atmospheres up to ten times the PEL. In other words this protocol may be used to assign protection factors not exceeding ten. **[appendix D amended at 48 F.R. 9641, 3/8/83.]**

1910.1028—BENZENE.

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to all occupational exposures to benzene. Chemical Abstracts Service Registry No. 71–43–2, except as provided in paragraphs (a)(2) and (a)(3) of this section.

(2) This section does not apply to:

(i) The storage, transportation, distribution, dispensing, sale or use of gasoline, motor fuels, or other fuels containing benzene subsequent to its final discharge from bulk wholesale storage facilities, except that operations where gasoline or motor fuels are dispensed for more than 4 hours per day in an indoor location are covered by this section.

(ii) Loading and unloading operations at bulk wholesale storage facilities which use vapor control systems for all loading and unloading operations, except for the provisions of 29 CFR 1910.1200 as incorporated into this section and the emergency provisions of paragraphs (g) and (i)(4) of this section.

(iii) The storage, transportation, distribution or sale of benzene or liquid mixtures containing more than 0.1 percent benzene in intact containers or in transportation pipelines while sealed in such a manner as to contain benzene vapors or liquid, except for the provisions of 29 CFR 1910.1200 as incorporated into this section and the emergency provisions of paragraphs (g) and (i)(4) of this section.

(iv) Containers and pipelines carrying mixtures with less than 0.1 percent benzene and natural gas processing plants processing gas with less than 0.1 percent benzene.

(v) Work operations where the only exposure to benzene is from liquid mixtures containing 0.5 percent or less of benzene by volume, or the vapors released from such liquids until September 12, 1988; work operations where the only exposure to benzene is from liquid mixtures containing 0.3 percent or less of benzene by volume or the vapors released from such liquids from September 12, 1988, to September 12, 1989; and work operations where the only exposure to benzene is from liquid mixtures containing 0.1 percent or less of benzene by volume or the vapors released from such liquids after September 12, 1989; except that tire building machine operators using solvents with more than 0.1 percent benzene are covered by paragraph (i) of this section.

(vi) Oil and gas drilling, production and servicing operations.

(vii) Coke oven batteries.

(3) The cleaning and repair of barges and tankers which have contained benzene are excluded from paragraph (f) methods of compliance, paragraph (e)(1) exposure monitoring-general, and paragraph (e)(6) accuracy of monitoring. Engineering and work practice controls shall be used to keep exposures below 10 ppm unless it is proven to be not feasible.

(b) Definitions.

"Action level" means an airborne concentration of benzene of 0.5 ppm calculated as an 8-hour time-weighted average.

"Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

"Authorized person" means any person specifically authorized by the employer whose duties require the person to enter a regulated area, or any person entering such an area as a designated representative of employees for the purpose of exercising the right to observe monitoring and measuring procedures under paragraph (l) of this section, or any other person authorized by the Act or regulations issued under the Act.

"Benzene" (C_6H_6) (CAS Registry No. 71–43–2) means liquefied or gaseous benzene. It includes benzene contained in liquid mixtures and the benzene vapors released by these liquids. It does not include trace amounts of unreacted benzene contained in solid materials.

"Bulk wholesale storage facility" means a bulk terminal or bulk plant where fuel is stored prior to its delivery to wholesale customers.

"Container" means any barrel, bottle, can, cylinder, drum, reaction vessel, storage tank, or the like, but does not include piping systems.

"Day" means any part of the calendar day.

"Director" means the Director of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or designee.

"Emergency" means any occurrence such as, but not limited to, equipment failure, rupture of containers, or failure of control equipment which may or does result in an unexpected significant release of benzene.

"Employee exposure" means exposure to airborne benzene which would occur if the employee were not using respiratory protective equipment.

"Regulated area" means any area where airborne concentrations of benzene exceed or can reasonably be expected to exceed, the permissible exposure limits, either the 8-hour time weighted average exposure of 1 ppm or the short-term exposure limit of 5 ppm for 15 minutes.

"Vapor control system" means any equipment used for containing the total vapors displaced during the loading of gasoline, motor fuel or other fuel tank trucks and the displacing of these vapors through a vapor processing system or balancing the vapor with the storage tank. This equipment also includes systems containing the vapors displaced from the storage tank during the unloading of the tank truck which balance the vapors back to the tank truck.

(c) Permissible exposure limits (PELs)—

(1) Time-weighted average limit (TWA). The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of benzene in excess of one part of benzene per million parts of air (1 ppm) as an 8-hour time-weighted average.

(2) Short-term exposure limit (STEL). The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of benzene in excess of five (5) ppm as averaged over any 15 minute period.

(d) Regulated areas.

(1) The employer shall establish a regulated area wherever the airborne concentration of benzene exceeds or can reasonably be expected to exceed the permissible exposure limits, either the 8-hour time weighted average exposure of 1 ppm or the short-term exposure limit of 5 ppm for 15 minutes.

(2) Access to regulated areas shall be limited to authorized persons.

(3) Regulated areas shall be determined from the rest of the workplace in any manner that minimizes the number of employees exposed to benzene within the regulated area.

(e) Exposure monitoring—

(1) General.

(i) Determinations of employee exposure shall be made from breathing zone air samples that are representative of each employee's average exposure to airborne benzene.

(ii) Representative 8-hour TWA employee exposures shall be determined on the basis of one sample or samples representing the full shift exposure for each job classification in each work area.

(iii) Determinations of compliance with the STEL shall be made from 15 minute employee breathing zone samples measured at operations where there is reason to believe exposures are high, such as where tanks are opened, filled, unloaded or gauged; where containers or process equipment are opened and where benzene is used for cleaning or as a solvent in an uncontrolled situation. The employer may use objective data, such as measurements from brief period measuring devices, to determine where STEL monitoring is needed.

(iv) Except for initial monitoring as required under paragraph (e)(2) of this section, where the employer can document that one shift will consistently have higher employee exposures for an operation, the employer shall only be required to determine representative employee exposure for that operation during the shift on which the highest exposure is expected.

(2) Initial monitoring.

(i) Each employer who has a place of employment covered under paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall monitor each of these workplaces and work operations to determine accurately the airborne concentrations of benzene to which employees may be exposed.

(ii) The initial monitoring required under paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section shall be completed by 60 days after the effective date of this standard or within 30 days of the introduction of benzene into the workplace. Where the employer has monitored within one year prior to the effective date of this standard and the monitoring satisfies all other requirements of this section, the employer may rely on such earlier monitoring results to satisfy the requirements of paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section.

(3) Periodic monitoring and monitoring frequency.

(i) If the monitoring required by paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section reveals employee exposure at or above the action level but at or below the TWA, the employer shall repeat such monitoring for each such employee at least every year.

(ii) If the monitoring required by paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section reveals employee exposure above the TWA, the employer shall repeat such monitoring for each such employee at least every six (6) months.

(iii) The employer may alter the monitoring schedule from every six months to annually for any employee for whom two consecutive measurements taken at least 7 days apart indicate that the employee exposure has decreased to the TWA or below, but is at or above the action level.

(iv) Monitoring for the STEL shall be repeated as necessary to evaluate exposures of employees subject to short term exposures.

(4) Termination of monitoring.

(i) If the initial monitoring required by paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section reveals employee exposure to be below the action level the employer may discontinue the monitoring for that employee, except as otherwise required by paragraph (e)(5) of this section.

(ii) If the periodic monitoring required by paragraph (e)(3) of this section reveals that employee exposures, as indicated by at least two consecutive measurements taken at least 7 days apart, are below the action level the employer may discontinue the monitoring for that employee, except as otherwise required by paragraph (e)(5).

(5) Additional monitoring.

(i) The employer shall institute the exposure monitoring required under paragraphs (e)(2) and (e)(3) of this section when there has been a change in the production, process, control equipment, personnel or work practices which may result in new or additional exposures to benzene, or when the employer has any reason to suspect a change which may result in new or additional exposures.

(ii) Whenever spills, leaks, ruptures or other breakdowns occur that may lead to employee exposure, the employer shall monitor (using area or personal sampling) after the cleanup of the spill or repair of the leak, rupture or other breakdown to ensure that exposures have returned to the level that existed prior to the accident.

(6) Accuracy of monitoring. Monitoring shall be accurate, to a confidence level of 95 percent, to within plus or minus 25 percent for airborne concentrations of benzene.

(7) Employee notification of monitoring results.

(i) The employer shall, within 15 working days after the receipt of the results of any monitoring performed under this standard, notify each employee of these results in writing either individually or by posting of results in an appropriate location that is accessible to affected employees.

(ii) Whenever the PELs are exceeded, the written notification required by paragraph (e)(7)(i) of this section shall contain the corrective action being taken by the employer to reduce the employee exposure to or below the PEL, or shall refer to a document available to the employee which states the corrective actions to be taken.

(f) Methods of compliance—

(1) Engineering controls and work practices.

(i) The employer shall institute engineering controls and work practices to reduce and maintain employee exposure to benzene at or below the permissible exposure limits, except to the extent that the employer can establish that these controls are not feasible or where the provisions of paragraph (f)(1)(iii) or (g)(1) of this section apply.

(ii) Wherever the feasible engineering controls and work practices which can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce employee exposure to or below the PELs, the employer shall use them to reduce employee exposure to the lowest levels achievable by these controls and shall supplement them by the use of respiratory protection which complies with the requirements of paragraph (g) of this section.

(iii) Where the employer can document that benzene is used in a workplace less than a total of 30 days per year, the employer shall use engineering controls, work practice controls or respiratory protection or any combination of these controls to reduce employee exposure to benzene to or below the PELs, except that employers shall use engineering and work practice controls, if feasible, to reduce exposure to or below 10 ppm as an 8-hour TWA.

(2) Compliance program.

(i) When any exposures are over the PEL, the employer shall establish and implement a written program to reduce employee exposure to or below the PEL primarily by means of engineering and work practice controls, as required by paragraph (f)(1) of this section.

(ii) The written program shall include a schedule for development and implementation of the engineering and work practice controls. These plans shall be reviewed and revised as appropriate based on the most recent exposure monitoring data, to reflect the current status of the program.

(iii) Written compliance programs shall be furnished upon request for examination and copying to the Assistant Secretary, the Director, affected employees and designated employee representatives.

(g) Respiratory protection.

(1) General. The employer shall provide respirators, and assure that they are used, where required by this section. Respirators shall be used in the following circumstances:

(i) During the time period necessary to install or implement feasible engineering and work practice controls;

(ii) In work operations for which the employer establishes that compliance with either the TWA or STEL through the use of engineering and work practice controls is not feasible, such as some maintenance and repair activities, vessel cleaning, or other operations where engineering and work practice controls are infeasible because exposures are intermittent in nature and limited in duration;

(iii) In work situations where feasible engineering and work practice controls are not yet sufficient or are not required under paragraph (f)(1)(iii) of this section to reduce exposure to or below the PELs; and

(iv) In emergencies.

(2) Respirator selection.

(i) Where respirators are required or allowed under this section, the employer shall select and provide, at no cost to the employee, the appropriate respirator as specified in Table 1, and shall assure that the employee uses the respirator provided.

(ii) The employer shall select respirators from among those jointly approved by the Mine Safety and Health Administration and the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11. Negative pressure respirators shall have filter elements approved by MSHA/NIOSH for organic vapors or benzene.

(iii) Any employee who cannot wear a negative pressure respirator shall be given the option of wearing a respirator with less breathing resistance such as a powered air-purifying respirator or supplied air respirator.

(3) Respirator program. The employer shall institute a respiratory protection program in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.134 (b), (d), (e) and (f).

(4) Respirator use.

(i) Where air-purifying respirators are used, the employer shall replace the air purifying element at the expiration of service life or at the beginning of each shift in which they will be used, whichever comes first.

(ii) If an air purifying element becomes available with an end of useful life indicator for benzene approved by MSHA/NIOSH, the element may be used until such time as the indicator shows no further useful life.

(iii) The employer shall permit employees who wear respirators to leave the regulated area to wash their faces and respirator facepieces as necessary in order to prevent skin irritation associated with respirator use or to change the filter elements of air-purifying respirators whenever they detect a change in breathing resistance or chemical vapor breakthrough.

(5) Respirator fit testing.

(i) The employer shall perform, and certify the results of, either quantitative or qualitative fit tests at the time of initial fitting and at least annually thereafter for each employee wearing a negative pressure respirator. The test shall be used to select a respirator facepiece which exhibits minimum leakage and provides the required protection as prescribed in Table 1. The employer shall provide and assure that the employee wears a respirator demonstrated by the fit test to provide the required protection.

(ii) The employer shall follow the test protocols outlined in Appendix E of this standard for whichever type of fit testing the employer chooses.

TABLE 1.—RESPIRATORY PROTECTION FOR BENZENE

Airborne concentration of benzene or condition of use	Respirator type
(a) Less than or equal to 10 ppm.	(1) Half-mask air-purifying respirator with organic vapor cartridge.
(b) Less than or equal to 50 ppm.	(1) Full facepiece respirator with organic vapor cartridges. (1) Full facepiece gas mask with chin style canister.[1]
(c) Less than or equal to 100 ppm.	(1) Full facepiece powered air-purifying respirator with organic vapor canister.[1]
(d) Less than or equal to 1,000 ppm.	(1) Supplied air respirator with full facepiece in positive-pressure mode.
(e) Greater than 1,000 ppm or unknown concentration.	(1) Self-contained breathing apparatus with full facepiece in positive pressure mode. (2) Full facepiece positive-pressure supplied-air respirator with auxiliary self-contained air supply.
(f) Escape	(1) Any organic vapor gas mask; or (2) Any self-contained breathing apparatus with full facepiece.
(g) Firefighting	(1) Full facepiece self-contained breathing apparatus in positive pressure mode.

[1] Canisters must have a minimum service life of four (4) hours when tested at 150 ppm benzene, at a flow rate of 64 LPM, 25 °C, and 85% relative humidity for non-powered air-purifying respirators. The flow rate shall be 115 LPM and 170 LPM respectively for tight fitting and loose fitting powered air-purifying respirators.

(h) Protective clothing and equipment. Personal protective clothing and equipment shall be worn where appropriate to prevent eye contact and limit dermal exposure to liquid benzene. Protective clothing and equipment shall be provided by the employer at no cost to the employee and the employer shall assure its use where appropriate. Eye and face protection shall meet the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.133.

(i) Medical surveillance—

(1) General.

(i) The employer shall make available a medical surveillance program for employees who are or may be exposed to benzene at or above the action level 30 or more days per year; for employees who are or may be exposed to benzene at or above the PELs 10 or more days per year; for employees who have been exposed to more than 10 ppm of benzene for 30 or more days in a year prior to the effective date of the standard when employed by their current employer; and for employees involved in the tire building operations called tire building machine operators, who use solvents containing greater than 0.1 percent benzene.

(ii) The employer shall assure that all medical examinations and procedures are performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician and that all laboratory tests are conducted by an accredited laboratory.

(iii) The employer shall assure that persons other than licensed physicians who administer the pulmonary function testing required by this section shall complete a training course in spirometry sponsored by an appropriate governmental, academic or professional institution.

(iv) The employer shall assure that all examinations and procedures are provided without cost to the employee and at a reasonable time and place.

(2) Initial examination.

(i) Within 60 days of the effective date of this standard, or before the time of initial assignment, the employer shall provide each employee covered by paragraph (i)(1)(i) of this section with a medical examination including the following elements:

(a) A detailed occupational history which includes:

(1) Past work exposure to benzene or any other hematological toxins;

(2) A family history of blood dyscrasias including hematological neoplasms;

(3) A history of blood dyscrasias including genetic hemoglobin abnormalities, bleeding abnormalities, abnormal function of formed blood elements;

(4) A history of renal or liver dysfunction;

(5) A history of medicinal drugs routinely taken;

(6) A history of previous exposure to ionizing radiation and

(7) Exposure to marrow toxins outside of the current work situation.

(b) A complete physical examination.

(c) Laboratory tests. A complete blood count including a leukocyte count with differential, a quantitative thrombocyte count, hematocrit, hemoglobin, erythrocyte count and erythrocyte indices (MCV, MCH, MCHC). The results of these tests shall be reviewed by the examining physician.

(d) Additional tests as necessary in the opinion of the examining physician, based on alterations to the components of the blood or other signs which may be related to benzene exposure; and

(e) For all workers required to wear respirators for at least 30 days a year, the physical examination shall pay special attention to the cardiopulmonary system and shall include a pulmonary function test.

(ii) No initial medical examination is required to satisfy the requirements of paragraph (i)(2)(i) of this section if adequate records show that the employee has been examined in accordance with the procedures of paragraph (i)(2)(i) of this section within the twelve months prior to the effective date of this standard.

(3) Periodic examinations.

(i) The employer shall provide each employee covered under paragraph (i)(1)(i) of this section with a medical examination annually following the previous examination. These periodic examinations shall include at least the following elements:

(a) A brief history regarding any new exposure to potential marrow toxins, changes in medicinal drug use, and the appearance of physical signs relating to blood disorders;

(b) A complete blood count including a leukocyte count with differential, quantitative thrombocyte count, hemoglobin, hematocrit, erythrocyte count and erythrocyte indices (MCV, MCH, MCHC); and

(c) Appropriate additional tests as necessary, in the opinion of the examining physician, in consequence of alterations in the components of the blood or other signs which may be related to benzene exposure.

(ii) Where the employee develops signs and symptoms commonly associated with toxic exposure to benzene, the employer shall provide the employee with an additional medical examination which shall include those elements considered appropriate by the examining physician.

(iii) For persons required to use respirators for at least 30 days a year, a pulmonary function test shall be performed every three (3) years. A specific evaluation of the cardiopulmonary system shall be made at the time of the pulmonary function test.

(4) Emergency examinations.

(i) In addition to the surveillance required by (i)(1)(i), if an employee is exposed to benzene in an emergency situation, the employer shall have the employee provide a urine sample at the end of the employee's shift and have a urinary phenol test performed on the sample within 72 hours. The urine specific gravity shall be corrected to 1.024.

(ii) If the result of the urinary phenol test is below 75 mg phenol/L of urine, no further testing is required.

(iii) If the result of the urinary phenol test is equal to or greater than 75 mg phenol/L of urine, the employer shall provide the employee with a complete blood count including an erythrocyte count, leukocyte count with differential and thrombocyte count at monthly intervals for a duration of three (3) months following the emergency exposure.

(iv) If any of the conditions specified in paragraph (i)(5)(i) of this section exists, then the further requirements of paragraph (i)(5) of this section shall be met and the employer shall, in addition, provide the employees with periodic examinations if directed by the physician.

(5) Additional examinations and referrals.

(i) Where the results of the complete blood count required for the initial and periodic examinations indicate any of the following abnormal conditions exist, then the blood count shall be repeated within 2 weeks.

(a) The hemoglobin level or the hematocrit falls below the normal limit [outside the 95% confidence interval (C.I.)] as determined by the laboratory for the particular geographic area and/or these indices show a persistent downward trend from the individual's pre-exposure norms; provided these findings cannot be explained by other medical reasons.

(b) The thrombocyte (platelet) count varies more than 20 percent below the employee's most recent values or falls outside the normal limit (95% C.I.) as determined by the laboratory.

(c) The leukocyte count is below 4,000 per mm^3 or there is an abnormal differential count.

(ii) If the abnormality persists, the examining physician shall refer the employee to a hematologist or an internist for further evaluation unless the physician has good reason to believe such referral is unnecessary. (See Appendix C for examples of conditions where a referral may be unnecessary.)

(iii) The employer shall provide the hematologist or internist with the information required to be provided to the physician under paragraph (i)(6) of this section and the medical record required to be maintained by paragraph (k)(2)(ii) of this section.

(iv) The hematologist's or internist's evaluation shall include a determination as to the need for additional tests, and the employer shall assure that these tests are provided.

(6) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide the following information to the examining physician:

(i) A copy of this regulation and its appendices;

(ii) A description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposure;

(iii) The employee's actual or representative exposure level;

(iv) A description of any personal protective equipment used or to be used; and

(v) Information from previous employment-related medical examinations of the affected employee which is not otherwise available to the examining physician.

employee which is not otherwise available to the examining physician.

(7) Physician's written opinions.

(i) For each examination under this section, the employer shall obtain and provide the employee with a copy of the examining physician's written opinion within 15 days of the examination. The written opinion shall be limited to the following information:

(a) The occupationally pertinent results of the medical examination and tests;

(b) The physician's opinion concerning whether the employee has any detected medical conditions which would place the employee's health at greater than normal risk of material impairment from exposure to benzene;

(c) The physician's recommended limitations upon the employee's exposure to benzene or upon the employee's use of protective clothing or equipment and respirators.

(d) A statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and any medical conditions resulting from benzene exposure which require further explanation or treatment.

(ii) The written opinion obtained by the employer shall not reveal specific records, findings and diagnoses that have no bearing on the employee's ability to work in a benzene-exposed workplace.

(8) Medical removal plan.

(i) When a physician makes a referral to a hematologist/internist as required under paragraph (i)(5)(ii) of this section, the employee shall be removed from areas where exposures may exceed the action level until such time as the physician makes a determination under paragraph (i)(8)(ii) of this section.

(ii) Following the examination and evaluation by the hematologist/internist, a decision to remove an employee from areas where benzene exposure is above the action level or to allow the employee to return to areas where benzene exposure is above the action level shall be made by the physician in consultation with the hematologist/internist. This decision shall be communicated in writing to the employer and employee. In the case of removal, the physician shall state the required probable duration of removal from occupational exposure to benzene above the action level and the requirements for future medical examinations to review the decision.

(iii) For any employee who is removed pursuant to paragraph (i)(8)(ii) of this section, the employer shall provide a follow-up examination. The physician, in consultation with the hematologist/internist, shall make a decision within 6 months of the date the employee was removed as to whether the employee shall be returned to the usual job or whether the employee should be removed permanently.

(iv) Whenever an employee is temporarily removed from benzene exposure pursuant to paragraph (i)(8)(i) or (i)(8)(ii) of this section, the employer shall transfer the employee to a comparable job for which the employee is qualified (or can be trained for in a short period) and where benzene exposures are as low as possible, but in no event higher than the action level. The employer shall maintain the employee's current wage rate, seniority and other benefits. If there is no such job available, the employer shall provide medical removal protection benefits until such a job becomes available or for 6 months, whichever comes first.

(v) Whenever an employee is removed permanently from benzene exposure based on a physician's recommendation pursuant to paragraph (i)(8)(iii) of this section, the employee shall be given the opportunity to transfer to another position which is available or later becomes available for which the employee is qualified (or can be trained for in a short period) and where benzene exposures are as low as possible but in no event higher than the action level. The employer shall assure that such employee suffers no reduction in current wage rate, seniority or other benefits as a result of the transfer.

(9) Medical removal protection benefits.

(i) The employer shall provide to an employee 6 months of medical removal protection benefits immediately following each occasion an employee is removed from exposure to benzene because of hematological findings pursuant to paragraphs (i)(8)(i) and (ii) of this section, unless the employee has been transferred to a comparable job where benzene exposures are below the action level.

(ii) For the purposes of this section, the requirement that an employer provide medical removal protection benefits means that the employer shall maintain the current wage rate, seniority and other benefits of an employee as though the employee had not been removed.

(iii) The employer's obligation to provide medical removal protection benefits to a removed employee shall be reduced to the extent that the employee receives compensation for earnings lost during the period of removal either from a publicly or employer-funded compensation program, or from employment with another employer made possible by virtue of the employee's removal.

(j) Communication of benzene hazards to employees—

(1) Signs and labels.

(i) The employer shall post signs at entrances to regulated areas. The signs shall bear the following legend:

DANGER
BENZENE
CANCER HAZARD
FLAMMABLE—NO SMOKING
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY
RESPIRATOR REQUIRED

(ii) The employer shall ensure that labels or other appropriate forms of warning are provided for containers of benzene within the workplace. There is no requirement to label pipes. The labels shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.1200(f) and in addition shall include the following legend:

DANGER
CONTAINS BENZENE
CANCER HAZARD

(2) Material safety data sheets.

(i) Employers shall obtain or develop, and shall provide access to their employees, to a material safety data sheet (MSDS) which addresses benzene and complies with 29 CFR 1910.1200.

(ii) Employers who are manufacturers or importers shall:

(a) Comply with paragraph (a) of this section, and

(b) Comply with the requirement in OSHA's Hazard Communication Standard, 29 CFR 1910.1200, that they deliver to downstream employers an MSDS which addresses benzene.

(3) Information and training.

(i) The employer shall provide employees with information and training at the time of their initial assignment to a work area where benzene is present. If exposures are above the action level employees shall be provided with information and training at least annually thereafter.

(ii) The training program shall be in accordance with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.1200(h)(1) and (2), and shall include specific information on benzene for each category of information included in that section.

(iii) In addition to the information required under 29 CFR 1910.1200, the employer shall:

(a) Provide employees with an explanation of the contents of this section, including Appendices A and B, and indicate to them where the standard is available; and

(b) Describe the medical surveillance program required under paragraph (i) of this section, and explain the information contained in Appendix C.

(k) Recordkeeping—

(1) Exposure measurements.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of all measurements required by paragraph (e) of this section, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) The dates, number, duration, and results of each of the samples taken, including a description of the procedure used to determine representative employee exposures;

(b) A description of the sampling and analytical methods used;

(c) A description of the type of respiratory protective devices worn, if any; and

(d) The name, social security number, job classification and exposure levels of the employee monitored and all other employees whose exposure the measurement is intended to represent.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for at least 30 years, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(2) Medical surveillance.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee subject to medical surveillance required by paragraph (i) of this section, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) The name and social security number of the employee;

(b) The employer's copy of the physician's written opinion on the initial, periodic and special examinations, including results of medical examinations and all tests, opinions and recommendations;

(c) Any employee medical complaints related to exposure to benzene;

(d) A copy of the information provided to the physician as required by paragraphs (i)(6)(ii) through (v) of this section; and

(e) A copy of the employee's medical and work history related to exposure to benzene or any other hematologic toxins.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for at least the duration of employment plus 30 years, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(3) Availability.

(i) The employer shall assure that all records required to be maintained by this section shall be made available upon request to the Assistant Secretary and the Director for examination and copying.

(ii) Employee exposure monitoring records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request for examination and copying to employees, employee representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a) through (e) and (g) through (i).

(iii) Employee medical records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request for examination and copying, to the subject employee, to anyone having the specific written consent of the subject employee, and to the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(4) Transfer of records.

(i) The employer shall comply with the requirements involving transfer of records set forth in 29 CFR 1019.20(h).

(ii) If the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records for the prescribed period, the employer shall notify the Director, at least three (3) months prior to disposal, and transmit them to the Director if required by the Director within that period.

(l) Observation of monitoring—

(1) Employee observation. The employer shall provide affected employees, or their designated representatives, an opportunity to observe the measuring or monitoring of employee exposure to benzene conducted pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section.

(2) Observation procedures. When observation of the measuring or monitoring of employee exposure to benzene requires entry into areas where the use of protective clothing and equipment or respirators is required, the employer shall provide the observer with personal protective clothing and equipment or respirators required to be worn by employees working in the area, assure the use of such clothing and equipment or respirators, and require the observer to comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(m) Dates—

(1) Effective date. The standard shall become effective December 10, 1987.

(2) Start-up dates.

(i) The requirements of paragraph (a) through (m) of this section, except the engineering control requirements of paragraph (f)(1) of this section shall be completed within sixty (60) days after the effective date of the standard.

(ii) Engineering and work practice controls required by paragraph (f)(1) of this section shall be implemented no later than 2 years after the effective date of the standard.

(iii) Coke and coal chemical operations may comply with paragraph (m)(2)(ii) of this section or alternately include within the compliance program required by paragraph (f)(2) of this section, a requirement to phase in engineering controls as equipment is repaired and replaced. For coke and coal chemical operations choosing the latter alternative, compliance with the engineering controls requirements of paragraph (f)(1) of this section shall be achieved no later than 5 years after the effective date of this standard and substantial compliance with the engineering control requirements shall be achieved within 3 years of the effective date of this standard.

(n) Appendices.

The information contained in Appendices A, B, C, and D is not intended, by itself, to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed or to detract from any existing obligations. The protocols on respiratory fit testing in Appendix E are mandatory.

APPENDIX A—SUBSTANCE SAFETY DATA SHEET, BENZENE

I. Substance Identification

A. Substance: Benzene.

B. Permissible Exposure: Except as to the use of gasoline, motor fuels and other fuels subsequent to discharge from bulk terminals and other exemptions specified in § 1910.1028(a)(2):

1. Airborne: The maximum time-weighted average (TWA) exposure limit is 1 part of benzene vapor per million parts of air (1 ppm) for an 8-hour workday and the maximum short-term exposure limit (STEL) is 5 ppm for any 15-minute period.

2. Dermal: Eye contact shall be prevented and skin contact with liquid benzene shall be limited.

C. Appearance and odor: Benzene is a clear, colorless liquid with a pleasant, sweet odor. The odor of benzene does not provide adequate warning of its hazard.

II. Health Hazard Data

A. Ways in which benzene affects your health. Benzene can affect your health if you inhale it, or if it comes in contact with your skin or eyes. Benzene is also harmful if you happen to swallow it.

B. Effects of overexposure.

1. Short-term (acute) overexposure: If you are overexposed to high concentrations of benzene, well above the levels where its odor is first recognizable, you may feel breathless, irritable, euphoric, or giddy; you may experience irritation in eyes, nose, and respiratory tract. You may develop a headache, feel dizzy, nauseated, or intoxicated. Severe exposures may lead to convulsions and loss of consciousness.

2. Long-term (chronic) exposure. Repeated or prolonged exposure to benzene, even at relatively low concentrations, may result in various blood disorders, ranging from anemia to leukemia, an irreversible, fatal disease. Many blood disorders associated with benzene exposure may occur without symptoms.

III. Protective Clothing and Equipment

A. Respirators. Respirators are required for those operations in which engineering controls or work practice controls are not feasible to reduce exposure to the permissible level. However, where employers can document that benzene is present in the workplace less than 30 days a year, respirators may be used in lieu of engineering controls. If respirators are worn, they must have joint Mine Safety and Health Administration and the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) seal of approval, and cartridge or canisters must be replaced before the end of their service life, or the end of the shift, whichever occurs first. If you experience difficulty breathing while wearing a respirator, you may request a positive pressure respirator from your employer. You must be thoroughly trained to use the assigned respirator, and the training will be provided by your employer.

B. Protective Clothing. You must wear appropriate protective clothing (such as boots, gloves, sleeves, aprons, etc.) over any parts of your body that could be exposed to liquid benzene.

C. Eye and Face Protection. You must wear splash-proof safety goggles if it is possible that benzene may get into your eyes. In addition, you must wear a face shield if your face could be splashed with benzene liquid.

IV. Emergency and First Aid Procedures

A. Eye and face exposure. If benzene is splashed in your eyes, wash it out immediately with large amounts of water. If irritation persists or vision appears to be affected see a doctor as soon as possible.

B. Skin exposure. If benzene is spilled on your clothing or skin, remove the contaminated clothing and wash the exposed skin with large amounts of water and soap immediately. Wash contaminated clothing before you wear it again.

C. Breathing. If you or any other person breathes in large amounts of benzene, get the exposed person to fresh air at once. Apply artificial respiration if breathing has stopped. Call for medical assistance or a doctor as soon as possible. Never enter any vessel or confined space where the benzene concentration might be high without proper safety equipment and at least one other person present who will stay outside. A life line should be used.

D. Swallowing. If benzene has been swallowed and the patient is conscious, do not induce vomiting. Call for medical assistance or a doctor immediately.

V. Medical Requirements

If you are exposed to benzene at a concentration at or above 0.5 ppm as an 8-hour time-weighted average, or have been exposed at or above 10 ppm in the past while employed by your current employer, your employer is required to provide a medical examination and history and laboratory tests within 60 days of the effective date of this standard and annually thereafter. These tests shall be provided without cost to you. In addition, if you are accidentally exposed to benzene (either by ingestion, inhalation, or skin/eye contact) under emergency conditions known or suspected to constitute toxic exposure to benzene, your employer is required to make special laboratory tests available to you.

VI. Observation of Monitoring

Your employer is required to perform measurements that are representative of your exposure to benzene and you or your designated representative are entitled to observe the monitoring procedure. You are entitled to observe the steps taken in the measurement procedure, and to record the results obtained. When the monitoring procedure is taking place in an area where respirators or personal protective clothing and equipment are required to be worn, you or your representative must also be provided with, and must wear the protective clothing and equipment.

VII. Access to Records

You or your representative are entitled to see the records of measurements of your exposure to benzene upon written request to your employer. Your medical examination records can be furnished to yourself, your physician or designated representative upon request by you to your employer.

VIII. Precautions for Safe Use, Handling and Storage

Benzene liquid is highly flammable. It should be stored in tightly closed containers in a cool, well ventilated area. Benzene vapor may form explosive mixtures in air. All sources of ignition must be controlled. Use nonsparking tools when opening or closing benzene containers. Fire extinguishers, where provided, must be readily available. Know where they are located and how to operate them. Smoking is prohibited in areas where benzene is used or stored. Ask your supervisor where benzene is used in your area and for additional plant safety rules.

APPENDIX B—SUBSTANCE TECHNICAL GUIDELINES, BENZENE

I. Physical and Chemical Data

A. Substance identification.

1. **Synonyms:** Benzol, benzole, coal naphtha, cyclohexatriene, phene, phenyl hydride, pyrobenzol. (Benzin, petroleum benzin and Benzine do not contain benzene).

2. **Formula:** C_6H_6 (CAS Registry Number: 71–43–2)

B. Physical data.

1. Boiling Point (760 mm Hg); 80.1 °C (176 °F)

2. Specific Gravity (water = 1): 0.879

3. Vapor Density (air = 1): 2.7

4. Melting Point: 5.5 °C (42 °F)

5. Vapor Pressure at 20 °C (68 °F): 75 mm Hg

6. Solubility in Water: .06%

7. Evaporation Rate (ether = 1): 2.8

8. Appearance and Odor: Clear, colorless liquid with a distinctive sweet odor.

II. Fire, Explosion, and Reactivity Hazard Data

A. Fire.

1. Flash Point (closed cup): − 11 °C (12 °F)

2. Autoignition Temperature: 580 °C (1076 °F)

3. Flammable limits in Air. % by Volume: Lower: 1.3%, Upper: 7.5%

4. Extinguishing Media: Carbon dioxide, dry chemical, or foam.

5. Special Fire-Fighting procedures: Do not use solid stream of water, since stream will scatter and spread fire. Fine water spray can be used to keep fire-exposed containers cool.

6. Unusual fire and explosion hazards: Benzene is a flammable liquid. Its vapors can form explosive mixtures. All ignition sources must be controlled when benzene is used, handled, or stored. Where liquid or vapor may be released, such areas shall be considered as hazardous locations. Benzene vapors are heavier than air; thus the vapors may travel along the ground and be ignited by open flames or sparks at locations remote from the site at which benzene is handled.

7. Benzene is classified as a 1 B flammable liquid for the purpose of conforming to the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.106. A concentration exceeding 3,250 ppm is considered a potential fire explosion hazard. Locations where benzene may be present in quantities sufficient to produce explosive or ignitable mixtures are considered Class I Group D for the purposes of conforming to the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.309.

B. Reactivity.

1. Conditions contributing to instability: Heat.

2. Incompatibility: Heat and oxidizing materials.

3. Hazardous decomposition products: Toxic gases and vapors (such as carbon monoxide).

III. Spill and Leak Procedures

A. Steps to be taken if the material is released or spilled. As much benzene as possible should be absorbed with suitable materials, such as dry sand or earth. That remaining must be flushed with large amounts of water. Do not flush benzene into a confined space, such as a sewer, because of explosion danger. Remove all ignition sources. Ventilate enclosed places.

B. Waste disposal method. Disposal methods must conform to other jurisdictional regulations. If allowed, benzene may be disposed of: (a) By absorbing it in dry sand or earth and disposing in a sanitary landfill; (b) if small quantities, by removing it to a safe location from buildings or other combustible sources, pouring it in dry sand or earth and cautiously igniting it; and (c) if large quantities, by atomizing it in a suitable combustion chamber.

IV. Miscellaneous Precautions

A. High exposure to benzene can occur when transferring the liquid from one container to another. Such operations should be well ventilated and good work practices must be established to avoid spills.

B. Use non-sparking tools to open benzene containers which are effectively grounded and bonded prior to opening and pouring.

C. Employers must advise employees of all plant areas and operations where exposure to benzene could occur. Common operations in which high exposures to benzene may be encountered are: the primary production and utilization of benzene, and transfer of benzene.

APPENDIX C—MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE GUIDELINES FOR BENZENE

I. Route of Entry

Inhalation; skin absorption.

II. Toxicology

Benzene is primarily an inhalation hazard. Systemic absorption may cause depression of the hematopoietic system, pancytopenia, aplastic anemia, and leukemia. Inhalation of high concentrations can affect central nervous system function. Aspiration of small amounts of liquid benzene immediately causes pulmonary edema and hemorrhage of pulmonary tissue. There is some absorption through the skin. Absorption may be more rapid in the case of abraded skin, and benzene may be more readily absorbed if it is present in a mixture or as a contaminant in solvents which are readily absorbed. The defatting action of benzene may produce primary irritation due to repeated or prolonged contact with the skin. High concentrations are irritating to the eyes and the mucous membranes of the nose, and respiratory tract.

III. Signs and Symptoms

Direct skin contact with benzene may cause erythema. Repeated or prolonged contact may result in drying, scaling dermatitis, or development of secondary skin infections. In addition, there is benzene absorption through the skin. Local effects of benzene vapor or liquid on the eye are slight. Only at very high concentrations is there any smarting sensation in the eye. Inhalation of high concentrations of benzene may have an initial stimulatory effect on the central nervous system characterized by exhilaration, nervous excitation, and/or giddiness, followed by a period of depression, drowsiness, or fatigue. A sensation of tightness in the chest accompanied by breathlessness may occur and ultimately the victim may lose consciousness. Tremors, convulsions and death may follow from respiratory paralysis or circulatory collapse in a few minutes to several hours following severe exposures.

The detrimental effect on the blood-forming system of prolonged exposure to small quantities of benzene vapor is of extreme importance. The hematopoietic system is the chief target for benzene's toxic effects which are manifested by alterations in the levels of formed elements in the peripheral blood. These effects have occurred at concentrations of benzene which may not cause irritation of mucous membranes, or any unpleasant sensory effects. Early signs and symptoms of benzene morbidity are varied, often not readily noticed and non-specific. Subjective complaints of headache, dizziness, and loss of appetite may precede or follow clinical signs. Rapid pulse and low blood pressure, in addition to a physical appearance of anemia, may accompany a subjective complaint of shortness of breath and excessive tiredness. Bleeding from the nose, gums, or mucous membranes, and the development of purpuric spots (small bruises) may occur as the condition progresses. Clinical evidence of leukopenia, anemia, and thrombocytopenia, singly or in combination, has been frequently reported among the first signs.

Bone marrow may appear normal, aplastic, or hyperplastic, and may not, in all situations, correlate with peripheral blood forming tissues. Because of variations in the susceptibility to benzene morbidity, there is no "typical" blood picture. The onset of effects of prolonged benzene exposure may be delayed for many months or years after the actual exposure has ceased and identification or correlation with benzene exposure may be sought out in the occupational history.

IV. Treatment of Acute Toxic Effects

Remove from exposure immediately. Make sure you are adequately protected and do not risk being overcome by fumes. Give oxygen or artificial resuscitation if indicated. Flush eyes, wash skin if contaminated and remove all contaminated clothing. Symptoms of intoxication may persist following severe exposures. Recovery from mild exposures is usually rapid and complete.

V. Surveillance and Preventive Considerations

A. General

The principal effects of benzene exposure which form the basis for this regulation are pathological changes in the hematopoietic system, reflected by changes in the peripheral blood and manifesting clinically as pancytopenia, aplastic anemia, and leukemia. Consequently, the medical surveillance program is designed to observe, on a regular basis, blood indices for early signs of these effects, although early signs of leukemia are not usually available, emerging diagnostic technology and innovative regimes make consistent surveillance for leukemia, as well as other hematopoietic effects, essential.

Initial examinations are to be provided within 60 days of the effective date of this standard, or at the time of initial assignment, and periodic examinations annually thereafter. There are special provisions for medical tests in the event of hematologic abnormalities or for emergency situations.

The blood values which require referral to a hematologist or internist are noted in the standard in paragraph (i)(5). The standard specifies that blood abnormalities that persist must be referred "unless the physician has good reason to believe such referral is unnecessary" (paragraph (i)(5)). Examples of conditions that could make a referral unnecessary despite abnormal blood limits are iron or folate deficiency, menorrhagia, or blood loss due to some unrelated medical abnormality.

Symptoms and signs of benzene toxicity can be non-specific. Only a detailed history and appropriate investigative procedures will enable a physician to rule out or confirm conditions that place the employee at increased risk. To assist the examining physician with regard to which laboratory tests are necessary and when to refer an employee to the specialist, OSHA has established the following guidelines.

B. Hematology Guidelines

A minimum battery of tests is to be performed by strictly standardized methods.

1. Red cell, white cell, platelet counts, white blood cell differential, hematocrit and red cell indices must be performed by an accredited laboratory. The normal ranges for the red cell and white cell counts are influenced by altitude, race, and sex, and therefore should be determined by the accredited laboratory in the specific area where the tests are performed.

Either a decline from an absolute normal or an individual's base line to a subnormal value or a rise to a supranormal value, are indicative of potential toxicity, particularly if all blood parameters decline. The normal total white blood count is approximately 7,200/mm^3 plus or minus 3,000. For cigarette smokers the white count may be higher and the upper range may be 2,000 cells higher than normal for the laboratory. In addition, infection, allergies and some drugs may raise the white cell count. The normal platelet count is approximately 250,000 with a range of 140,000 to 400,000. Counts outside this range should be regarded as possible evidence of benzene toxicity.

Certain abnormalities found through routine screening are of greater significance in the benzene-exposed worker and require prompt consultation with a specialist, namely:

a. Thrombocytopenia.

b. A trend of decreasing white cell, red cell, or platelet indices in an individual over time is more worrisome than an isolated abnormal finding at one test time. The importance of trend highlights the need to compare an individual's test results to baseline and/or previous periodic tests.

c. A constellation or pattern of abnormalities in the different blood indices is of more significance than a single abnormality. A low white count not associated with any abnormalities in other cell indices may be a normal statistical variation, whereas if the low white count is accompanied by decreases in the platelet and/or red cell indices, such a pattern is more likely to be associated with benzene toxicity and merits thorough investigation.

Anemia, leukopenia, macrocytosis or an abnormal differential white blood cell count should alert the physician to further investigate and/or refer the patient if repeat tests confirm the abnormalities. If routine screening detects an abnormality, follow-up tests which may be helpful in establishing the etiology of the abnormality are the peripheral blood smear and the reticulocyte count.

The extreme range of normal for reticulocytes is 0.4 to 2.5 percent of the red cells, the usual range being 0.5 to 1.2 percent of the red cells, but the typical value is in the range of 0.8 to 1.0 percent. A decline in reticulocytes to levels of less than 0.4 percent is to be regarded as possible evidence (unless another specific cause is found) of benzene toxicity requiring accelerated surveillance. An increase in reticulocyte levels to about 2.5 percent may also be consistent with (but is not as characteristic of) benzene toxicity.

2. An important diagnostic test is a careful examination of the peripheral blood smear. As with reticulocyte count the smear should be with fresh uncoagulated blood obtained from a needle tip following venipuncture or from a drop of earlobe blood (capillary blood). If necessary, the smear may, under certain limited conditions, be made from a blood sample anticoagulated with EDTA (but never with oxalate or heparin). When the smear is to be prepared from a specimen of venous blood which has been collected by a commercial Vacutainer® type tube containing neutral EDTA, the smear should be made as soon as possible after the venesection. A delay of up to 12 hours is permissible between the drawing of the blood specimen into EDTA and the preparation of the smear if the blood is stored at refrigerator (not freezing) temperature.

3. The minimum mandatory observations to be made from the smear are:

a. The differential white blood cell count.

b. Description of abnormalities in the appearance of red cells.

c. Description of any abnormalities in the platelets.

d. A careful search must be made throughout of every blood smear for immature white cells such as band forms (in more than normal proportion, i.e., over 10 percent of the total differential count), any number of metamyelocytes, myelocytes or myeloblasts. Any nucleate or multinucleated red blood cells should be reported. Large "giant" platelets or fragments of megakaryocytes must be recognized.

An increase in the proportion of band forms among the neutrophilic granulocytes is an abnormality deserving special mention, for it may represent a change which should be considered as an early warning of benzene toxicity in the absence of other causative factors (most commonly infection). Likewise, the appearance of metamyelocytes, in the absence of another probable cause, is to be considered a possible indication of benzene-induced toxicity.

An upward trend in the number of basophils, which normally do not exceed about 2.0 percent of the total white cells, is to be regarded as possible evidence of benzene toxicity. A rise in the eosinophil count is less specific but also may be suspicious of toxicity if the rises above 6.0 percent of the total white count.

The normal range of monocytes is from 2.0 to 8.0 percent of the total white count with an average of about 5.0 percent. About 20 percent of individuals reported to have mild but persisting abnormalities caused by exposure to benzene show a persistent monocytosis. The findings of a monocyte count which persists at more than 10 to 12 percent of the normal white cell count (when the total count is normal) or persistence of an absolute monocyte count in excess of 800/mm^3 should be regarded as a possible sign of benzene-induced toxicity.

A less frequent but more serious indication of benzene toxicity is the finding in the peripheral blood of the so-called "pseudo" (or acquired) Pelger-Huet anomaly. In this anomaly many, or sometimes the majority, of the neutrophilic granulocytes possess two round nuclear segments—less often one or three round segments—rather than three normally elongated segments. When this anomaly is not hereditary, it is often but not invariably predictive of subsequent leukemia. However, only about two percent of patients who ultimately develop acute myelogenous leukemia show the acquired Pelger-Huet anomaly. Other tests that can be administered to investigate blood abnormalities are discussed below; however, such procedures should be undertaken by the hematologist.

An uncommon sign, which cannot be detected from the smear, but can be elicited by a "sucrose water test" of peripheral blood, is transient paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (PNH), which may first occur insidiously during a period of established aplastic anemia, and may be followed within one to a few years by the appearance of rapidly fatal acute myelogenous leukemia. Clinical detection of PNH, which occurs in only one or two percent of those destined to have acute myelogenous leukemia, may be difficult; if the "sucrose water test" is positive, the somewhat more definitive Ham test, also known as the acid-serum hemolysis test, may provide confirmation.

e. Individuals documented to have developed acute myelogenous leukemia years after initial exposure to benzene may have progressed through a preliminary phase of hematologic abnormality. In some instances pancytopenia (i.e., a lowering in the counts of all circulating blood cells of bone marrow origin, but not to the extent implied by the term "aplastic anemia") preceded leukemia for many years. Depression of a single blood cell type or platelets may represent a harbinger of aplasia or leukemia. The finding of two or more cytopenias, or pancytopenia in a benzene-exposed individual, must be regarded as highly suspicious of more advanced although still reversible, toxicity. "Pancytopenia" coupled with the appearance of immature cells (myelocytes, myeloblasts, erythroblasts, etc.), with abnormal cells (pseudo Pelger-Huet anomaly, atypical nuclear heterochromatin, etc.), or unexplained elevations of white blood cells must be regarded as evidence of benzene overexposure unless proved otherwise. Many severely aplastic patients manifested the ominous finding of 5–10 percent myeloblasts in the marrow, occasional myeloblasts and myelocytes in the blood and 20–30% monocytes. It is evident that isolated cytopenias, pancytopenias, and even aplastic anemias induced by benzene may be reversible and complete recovery has been reported on cessation of exposure. However, since any of these abnormalities is serious, the employee must immediately be removed from any possible exposure to benzene vapor. Certain tests may substantiate the employee's prospects for progression or regression. One such test would be an examination of the bone marrow, but the decision to perform a bone marrow aspiration or needle biopsy is made by the hematologist.

The findings of basophilic stippling in circulating red blood cells (usually found in 1 to 5% of red cells following marrow injury), and detection in the bone marrow of what are termed "ringed sideroblasts" must be taken seriously, as they have been noted in recent years to be premonitory signs of subsequent leukemia.

Recently peroxidase-staining of circulating or marrow neutrophil granulocytes, employing benzidine dihydrochloride, have revealed the disappearance of, or diminution in, peroxidase in a sizable proportion of the granulocytes, and this has been reported as an early sign of leukemia. However, relatively few patients have been studied to date. Granulocyte granules are normally strongly peroxidase positive. A steady decline in leukocyte alkaline phosphatase has also been reported as suggestive of early acute leukemia. Exposure to benzene may cause an early rise in serum iron, often but not always associated with a fall in reticulocyte count. Thus, serial measurements of serum iron levels may provide a means of determining whether or not there is a trend representing sustained suppression of erythropoiesis.

Measurement of serum iron, determination of peroxidase and of alkaline phosphatase activity in peripheral granulocytes can be performed in most pathology laboratories. Peroxidase and alkaline phosphatase staining are usually undertaken when the index of suspicion for leukemia is high.

APPENDIX D—SAMPLING AND ANALYTICAL METHODS FOR BENZENE MONITORING AND MEASUREMENT PROCEDURES

Measurements taken for the purpose of determining employee exposure to benzene are best taken so that the representative average 8-hour exposure may be determined from a single 8-hour sample or two (2) 4-hour samples. Short-time interval samples (or grab samples) may also be used to determine average exposure level if a minimum of five measurements are taken in a random manner over the 8-hour work shift. Random sampling means that any portion of the work shift has the same chance of being sampled as any other. The arithmetic average of all such random samples taken on one work shift is an estimate of an employee's average level of exposure for that work shift. Air samples should be taken in the employee's breathing zone (air that would most nearly represent that inhaled by the employee). Sampling and analysis must be performed with procedures meeting the requirements of the standard.

There are a number of methods available for monitoring employee exposures to benzene. The sampling and analysis may be performed by collection of the benzene vapor or charcoal absorption tubes, with subsequent chemical analysis by gas chromatography. Sampling and analysis may also be performed by portable direct reading instruments, real-time continuous monitoring systems, passive dosimeters or other suitable methods. The employer has the obligation of selecting a monitoring method which meets the accuracy and precision requirements of the standard under his unique field conditions. The standard requires that the method of monitoring must have an accuracy, to a 95 percent confidence level, of not less than plus or minus 25 percent for concentrations of benzene greater than or equal to 0.5 ppm.

The OSHA Laboratory modified NIOSH Method S311 and evaluated it at a benzene air concentration of 1 ppm. A procedure for determining the benzene concentration in bulk material samples was also evaluated. This work, reported in OSHA Laboratory Method No. 12, includes the following two analytical procedures:

I. OSHA Method 12 for Air Samples

Analyte: Benzene

Matrix: Air

Procedure: Absorption on charcoal, desorption with carbon disulfide, analysis by GC.

Detection Limit: 0.04 ppm

Recommended air volume and sampling rate: 10L to 0.2 L/min.

1. Principle of the Method.

1.1. A known volume of air is drawn through a charcoal tube to trap the organic vapors present.

1.2. The charcoal in the tube is transferred to a small, stoppered vial, and the analyte is desorbed with carbon disulfide.

1.3. An aliquot of the desorbed sample is injected into a gas chromatograph.

1.4. The area of the resulting peak is determined and compared with areas obtained from standards.

2. Advantages and disadvantages of the method.

2.1. The sampling device is small, portable, and involved no liquids. Interferences are minimal, and most of those which do occur can be eliminated by altering chromatographic conditions. The samples are analyzed by means of a quick, instrumental method.

2.2. The amount of sample which can be taken is limited by the number of milligrams that the tube will hold before overloading. When the sample value obtained for the backup section of the charcoal tube exceeds 25 percent of that found on the front section, the possibility of sample loss exists.

3. Apparatus.

3.1. A calibrated personal sampling pump whose flow can be determined within ±5 percent at the recommended flow rate.

3.2. Charcoal tubes: Glass with both ends flame sealed, 7 cm long with a 6-mm O.D. and a 4-mm I.D., containing 2 sections of 20/40 mesh activated charcoal separated by a 2-mm portion of urethane foam. The activated charcoal is prepared from coconut shells and is fired at 600 °C prior to packing. The adsorbing section contains 100 mg of charcoal, the back-up section 50 mg. A 3-mm portion of urethane foam is placed between the outlet end of the tube and the back-up section. A plug of silanized glass wool is placed in front of the adsorbing section. The pressure drop across the tube must be less than one inch of mercury at a flow rate of 1 liter per minute.

3.3. Gas chromatograph equipped with a flame ionization detector.

3.4. Column (10-ft × ⅛-in stainless steel) packed with 80/100 Supelcoport coated with 20 percent SP 2100, 0.1 percent CW 1500.

3.5. An electronic integrator or some other suitable method for measuring peak area.

3.6. Two-milliliter sample vials with Teflon-lined caps.

3.7. Microliter syringes: 10-microliter (10-μL syringe, and other convenient sizes for making standards, 1-μL syringe for sample injections).

3.8. Pipets: 1.0 mL delivery pipets.

3.9. Volumetric flasks: convenient sizes for making standard solutions.

4. Reagents.

4.1. Chromatographic quality carbon disulfide (CS_2). Most commercially available carbon disulfide contains a trace of benzene which must be removed. It can be removed with the following procedure:

Heat under reflux for 2 to 3 hours, 500 mL of carbon disulfide, 10 mL concentrated sulfuric acid, and 5 drops of concentrated nitric acid. The benzene is converted to nitrobenzene. The carbon disulfide layer is removed, dried with anhydrous sodium sulfate, and distilled. The recovered carbon disulfide should be benzene free. (It has recently been determined that benzene can also be removed by passing the carbon disulfide through 13x molecular sieve.)

4.2. Benzene, reagent grade.

4.3. p-Cymene, reagent grade, (internal standard).

4.4. Desorbing reagent. The desorbing reagent is prepared by adding 0.05 mL of p-cymene per milliliter of carbon disulfide. (The internal standard offers a convenient means correcting analytical response for slight inconsistencies in the size of sample injections. If the external standard technique is preferred, the internal standard can be eliminated).

4.5. Purified GC grade helium, hydrogen and air.

5. Procedure.

5.1. Cleaning of equipment. All glassware used for the laboratory analysis should be properly cleaned and free of organics which could interfere in the analysis.

5.2. Calibration of personal pumps. Each pump must be calibrated with a representative charcoal tube in the line.

5.3. Collection and shipping of samples.

5.3.1. Immediately before sampling, break the ends of the tube to provide an opening at least one-half the internal diameter of the tube (2 mm).

5.3.2. The smaller section of the charcoal is used as the backup and should be placed nearest the sampling pump.

5.3.3. The charcoal tube should be placed in a vertical position during sampling to minimize channeling through the charcoal.

5.3.4. Air being sampled should not be passed through any hose or tubing before entering the charcoal tube.

5.3.5. A sample size of 10 liters is recommended. Sample at a flow rate of approximately 0.2 liters per minute. The flow rate should be known with an accuracy of at least ±5 percent.

5.3.6. The charcoal tubes should be capped with the supplied plastic caps immediately after sampling.

5.3.7. Submit at least one blank tube (a charcoal tube subjected to the same handling procedures, without having any air drawn through it) with each set of samples.

5.3.8. Take necessary shipping and packing precautions to minimize breakage of samples.

5.4. Analysis of samples.

5.4.1. Preparation of samples. In preparation for analysis, each charcoal tube is scored with a file in front of the first section of charcoal and broken open. The glass wool is removed and discarded. The charcoal in the first (larger) section is transferred to a 2-ml vial. The separating section of foam is removed and discarded; the second section is transferred to another capped vial. These two sections are analyzed separately.

5.4.2. Desorption of samples. Prior to analysis, 1.0 mL of desorbing solution is pipetted into each sample container. The desorbing solution consists of 0.05 μL internal standard per mL of carbon disulfide. The sample vials are capped as soon as the solvent is added. Desorption should be done for 30 minutes with occasional shaking.

5.4.3. GC conditions. Typical operating conditions for the gas chromatograph are:

1.30 mL/min (60 psig) helium carrier gas flow.

2.30 mL/min (40 psig) hydrogen gas flow to detector.

3.240 mL/min (40 psig) air flow to detector.

4.150 °C injector temperature.

5.250 °C detector temperature.

6.100 °C column temperature.

5.4.4. Injection size. 1 μL.

5.4.5. Measurement of area. The peak areas are measured by an electronic integrator or some other suitable form of area measurement.

5.4.6. An internal standard procedure is used. The integrator is calibrated to report results in ppm for a 10 liter air sample after correction for desorption efficiency.

5.5. Determination of desorption efficiency.

5.5.1. Importance of determination. The desorption efficiency of a particular compound can vary from one laboratory to another and from one lot of chemical to another. Thus, it is necessary to determine, at least once, the percentage of the specific compound that is removed in the desorption process, provided the same batch of charcoal is used.

5.5.2. Procedure for determining desorption efficiency. The reference portion of the charcoal tube is removed. To the remaining portion, amounts representing 0.5X, 1X, and 2x and (X represents target concentration) based on a 10 L air sample are injected into several tubes at each level. Dilutions of benzene with carbon disulfide are made to allow injection of measurable quantities. These tubes are then allowed to equilibrate at least overnight. Following equilibration they are analyzed following the same procedure as the samples. Desorption efficiency is determined by dividing the amount of benzene found by amount spiked on the tube.

6. Calibration and standards. A series of standards varying in concentration over the range of interest is prepared and analyzed under the same GC conditions that will be used on the samples. A calibration curve is prepared by plotting concentration (µg/mL) versus peak area.

7. Calculations. Benzene air concentration can be calculated from the following equation:

$mg/m^3 = (A)(B)/(C)(D)$
Where: A = µg/mL benzene, obtained from the calibration curve
B = desorption volume (1 mL)
C = Liters of air sampled
D = desorption efficiency

The concentration in mg/m^3 can be converted to ppm (at 25° and 760 mm) with following equation:

$ppm = (mg/m^3)(24.46)/(78.11)$
Where: 24.46 = molar volume of an ideal gas 25 °C and 760 mm
78.11 = molecular weight of benzene

8. Backup Data.

8.1. Detection limit—Air Samples.

The detection limit for the analytical procedure is 1.28 ng with a coefficient of variation of 0.023 at this level. This would be equivalent to an air concentration of 0.04 ppm for a 10 L air sample. This amount provided a chromatographic peak that could be identifiable in the presence of possible interferences. The detection limit data were obtained by making 1 µL injections of a 1.283 µg/mL standard.

Injection	Area Count	
1	655.4	
2	617.5	
3	662.0	$\bar{X}$ = 640.2
4	641.1	SD = 14.9
5	636.4	CV = 0.023
6	629.2	

8.2. Pooled coefficient of variation—Air Samples. The pooled coefficient of variation for the analytical procedure was determined by 1 µL replicate injections of analytical standards. The standards were 16.04, 32.08, and 64.16 µg/mL, which are equivalent to 0.5, 1.0, and 2.0 ppm for a 10 L air sample respectively.

Injection	Area Counts		
	0.5 ppm	1.0 ppm	2.0 ppm
1	3996.5	8130.2	16481
2	4059.4	8235.6	16493
3	4052.0	8307.9	16535
4	4027.2	8263.2	16609
5	4046.8	8291.1	16552
6	4137.9	8288.8	16618
$\bar{X}$ =	4053.3	8254.0	16548.3
SD =	47.2	62.5	57.1
CV =	0.0116	0.0076	0.0034
CV = 0.008...........	....	....	....

8.3. Storage data—Air Samples

Samples were generated at 1.03 ppm benzene at 80% relative humidity, 22 °C, and 643 mm. All samples were taken for 50 minutes at 0.2 L/min. Six samples were analyzed immediately and the rest of the samples were divided into two groups by fifteen samples each. One group was stored at refrigerated temperature of −25 °C, and the other group was stored at ambient temperature (approximately 23 °C). These samples were analyzed over a period of fifteen days. The results are tabulated below.

PERCENT RECOVERY

Day analyzed	Refrigerated			Ambient		
0	97.4	98.7	98.9	97.4	98.7	98.9
0	97.1	100.6	100.9	97.1	100.6	100.9
2	95.8	96.4	95.4	95.4	96.6	96.9
5	93.9	93.7	92.4	92.4	94.3	94.1
9	93.6	95.5	94.6	95.2	95.6	96.6
13	94.3	95.3	93.7	91.0	95.0	94.6
15	96.8	95.8	94.2	92.9	96.3	95.9

8.4. Desorption data.

Samples were prepared by injecting liquid benzene onto the A section of charcoal tubes. Samples were prepared that would be equivalent to 0.5, 1.0, and 2.0 ppm for a 10 L air sample.

PERCENT RECOVERY

Sample	0.5 ppm	1.0 ppm	2.0 ppm
1.	99.4	98.8	99.5
2.	99.5	98.7	99.7
3.	99.2	98.6	99.8
4.	99.4	99.1	100.0
5.	99.2	99.0	99.7
6.	99.8	99.1	99.9
$\bar{X}$ =	99.4	98.9	99.8
SD =	0.22	0.21	0.18
CV =	0.0022	0.0021	0.0018
$\bar{X}$ = 99.4			

8.5. Carbon disulfide

Carbon disulfide from a number of sources was analyzed for benzene contamination. The results are given in the following table. The benzene contaminant can be removed with the procedures given in section 4.1.

Sample	μg Benzene/mL	ppm equivalent (for 10 L air sample)
Aldrich Lot 83017	4/20	0.13
Baker Lot 720364	1/01	0.03
Baker Lot 822351	1/01	0.03
Malinkrodt Lot WEMP	1/74	0.05
Malinkrodt Lot WDSJ	5/65	0.18
Malinkrodt Lot WHGA	2/90	0.09
Treated CS_2	...	...

II. OSHA Laboratory Method No. 12 for Bulk Samples

Analyte: Benzene.

Matrix: Bulk Samples.

Procedure: Bulk Samples are analyzed directly by high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC).

Detection limits: 0.01% by volume.

1. Principle of the method.

1.1. An aliquot of the bulk sample to be analyzed is injected into a liquid chromatograph.

1.2. The peak area for benzene is determined and compared to areas obtained from standards.

2. Advantages and disadvantages of the method.

2.1. The analytical procedure is quick, sensitive, and reproducible.

2.2. Reanalysis of samples is possible.

2.3. Interferences can be circumvented by proper selection of HPLC parameters.

2.4. Samples must be free of any particulates that may clog the capillary tubing in the liquid chromatograph. This may require distilling the sample or clarifying with a clarification kit.

3. Apparatus.

3.1. Liquid chromatograph equipped with a UV detector.

3.2. HPLC Column that will separate benzene from other components in the bulk sample being analyzed. The column used for validation studies was a Waters uBondapack C18, 30 cm × 3.9 mm.

3.3. A clarification kit to remove any particulates in the bulk if necessary.

3.4. A micro-distillation apparatus to distill any samples if necessary.

3.5. An electronic integrator or some other suitable method of measuring peak areas.

3.6. Microliter syringes—10 μL syringe and other convenient sizes for making standards. 10 μL syringe for sample injections.

3.7. Volumetric flasks, 5 mL and other convenient sizes for preparing standards and making dilutions.

4. Reagents.

4.1. Benzene, reagent grade.

4.2. HPLC grade water, methyl alcohol, and isopropyl alcohol.

5. Collection and shipment of samples.

5.1. Samples should be transported in glass containers with Teflon-lined caps.

5.2. Samples should not be put in the same container used for air samples.

6. Analysis of samples.

6.1. Sample preparation.

If necessary, the samples are distilled or clarified. Samples are analyzed undiluted. If the benzene concentration is out of the working range, suitable dilutions are made with isopropyl alcohol.

6.2. HPLC conditions.

The typical operating conditions for the high performance liquid chromatograph are:

1. Mobile phase—Methyl alcohol/water, 50/50

1. Analytical wavelength—254 nm

3. Injection size—10 μL

6.3. Measurement of peak area and calibration.

Peak areas are measured by an integrator or other suitable means. The integrator is calibrated to report results % in benzene by volume.

7. Calculations.

Since the integrator is programmed to report results in % benzene by volume in an undiluted sample, the following equation is used:

% Benzene by Volume = A × B
Where: A = % by volume on report
B = Dilution Factor
(B = 1 for undiluted sample)

8. Backup Data.

8.1. Detection limit—Bulk Samples.

The detection limit for the analytical procedure for bulk samples is 0.88 μg, with a coefficient of variation of 0.019 at this level. This amount provided a chromatographic peak that could be identifiable in the presence of possible interferences. The detection limit dates were obtained by making 10 μL injections of a 0.10% by volume standard.

1	45386	
2	44214	
3	43822	$\hat{X}$ = 44040.1
4	44062	SD = 852.5
6	42724	CV = 0.019

8.2 Pooled coefficient of variation—Bulk Samples.

The pooled coefficient of variation for analytical procedure was determined by 50 μL replicate injections of analytical standards. The standards were 0.01, 0.02, 0.04, 0.10, 1.0, and 2.0% benzene by volume.

AREA COUNT (PERCENT)

Injection No.	0.01	0.02	0.04	0.10	1.0	2.0
1	45386	84737	166097	448497	4395380	9339150
2	44241	84300	170832	441299	4590800	9484900
3	43822	83835	164160	443719	4593200	9557580
4	44062	84381	164445	444842	4642350	9677060
5	44006	83012	168398	442564	4646430	9766240
6	42724	81957	173002	443975	4646260	....
$\hat{X}$ =	44040.1	83703.6	167872	444149	4585767	9564986
SD =	852.5	1042.2	3589.8	2459.1	96839.3	166233
CV =	0.0194	0.0125	0.0213	0.0055	0.0211	0.0174
$\hat{C}\hat{V}$ =	0.017					

APPENDIX E—QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE FIT TESTING PROCEDURES

I. Fit Test Protocols

A. The employer shall include the following provisions in the fit test procedures. These provisions apply to both qualitative fit testing (QLFT) and quantitative fit testing (QNFT).

1. The test subject shall be allowed to pick the most comfortable respirator from a selection including respirators of various sizes from different manufacturers. The selection shall include at least three sizes of elastomeric facepieces of the type of respirator that is to be tested, i.e., three sizes of half mask; or three sizes of full facepiece; and units from at least two manufacturers.

2. Prior to the selection process, the test subject shall be shown how to put on a respirator, how it should be positioned on the face, how to set strap tension and how to determine a comfortable fit. A mirror shall be available to assist the subject in evaluating the fit and positioning the respirator. This instruction may not constitute the subject's formal training on respirator use, as it is only a review.

3. The test subject shall be informed that he/she is being asked to select the respirator which provides the most comfortable fit. Each respirator represents a different size and shape, and if fitted and used properly, will provide adequate protection.

4. The test subject shall be instructed to hold each facepiece up to the face and eliminate those which obviously do not give a comfortable fit.

5. The more comfortable facepieces are noted; the most comfortable mask is donned and worn at least five minutes to assess comfort. Assistance in assessing comfort can be given by discussing the points in item 6 below. If the test subject is not familiar with using a particular respirator, the test subject shall be directed to don the mask several times and to adjust the straps each time to become adept at setting proper tension on the straps.

6. Assessment of comfort shall include reviewing the following points with the test subject and allowing the test subject adequate time to determine the comfort of the respirator:

(a) Position of the mask on the nose.

(b) Room for eye protection.

(c) Room to talk.

(d) Position of mask on face and cheeks.

7. The following criteria shall be used to help determine the adequacy of the respirator fit:

(a) Chin properly placed;

(b) Adequate strap tension, not overly tightened;

(c) Fit across nose bridge;

(d) Respirator of proper size to span distance from nose to chin;

(e) Tendency of respirator to slip;

(f) Self-observation in mirror to evaluate fit and respirator position.

8. The test subject shall conduct the negative and positive pressure fit checks as described below or ANSI Z88.2–1980. Before conducting the negative or positive pressure test, the subject shall be told to seat the mask on the face by moving the head from side-to-side and up and down slowly while taking in a few slow deep breaths. Another facepiece shall be selected and retested if the test subject fails the fit check tests.

(a) **Positive pressure test.** Close off the exhalation value and exhale gently onto the facepiece. The face fit is considered satisfactory if a slight positive pressure can be built up inside the facepiece without any evidence of outward leakage of air at the seal. For most respirators this method of leak testing requires the wearer to first remove the exhalation value cover before closing off the exhalation value and then carefully replacing it after the test.

(b) **Negative pressure test.** Close off the inlet opening of the canister or cartridge(s) by covering with the palm of the hand(s) or by replacing the filter seal(s), inhale gently so that the facepiece collapses slightly, and hold the breath for ten seconds. If the facepiece remains in its slightly collapsed condition and no inward leakage of air is detected, the tightness of the respirator is considered satisfactory.

9. The test shall not be conducted if there is any hair growth between the skin and the facepiece sealing surface, such as stubble beard growth, beard, or long sideburns which cross the respirator sealing surface. Any type of apparel which interferes with a satisfactory fit shall be altered or removed.

10. If a test subject exhibits difficulty in breathing during the tests, she or he shall be referred to a physician trained in respiratory disease or pulmonary medicine to determine whether the test subject can wear a respirator while performing her or his duties.

11. The test subject shall be given the opportunity to wear the successfully fitted respirator for a period of two weeks. If at any time during this period the respirator becomes uncomfortable, the test subject shall be given the opportunity to select a different facepiece and to be retested.

12. The employer shall certify that a successful fit test has been administered to the employee. The certification shall include the following information:

(a) Name of employee;

(b) Type, brand and size of respirator; and

(c) Date of test.

Where QNFT is used, the fit factor, strip chart, or other recording of the results of the test, shall be retained with the certification. The certification shall be maintained until the next fit test is administered.

13. Exercise regimen. Prior to the commencement of the fit test, the test subject shall be given a description of the fit test and the test subject's responsibilities during the test procedure. The description of the process shall include a description of the test exercises that the subject will be performing. The respirator to be tested shall be worn for at least 5 minutes before the start of the fit test.

14. Test Exercises. The test subject shall perform exercises, in the test environment, in the manner described below:

(a) Normal breathing. In a normal standing position, without talking, the subject shall breathe normally.

(b) Deep breathing. In a normal standing position, the subject shall breathe slowly and deeply, taking caution so as to not hyperventilate.

(c) Turning head side to side. Standing in place, the subject shall slowly turn his/her head from side to side between the extreme positions on each side. The head shall be held at each extreme momentarily so the subject can inhale at each side.

(d) Moving head up and down. Standing in place, the subject shall slowly move his/her head up and down. The subject shall be instructed to inhale in the up position (i.e., when looking toward the ceiling).

(e) Talking. The subject shall talk out loud slowly and loud enough so as to be heard clearly by the test conductor. The subject can read from a prepared text such as the Rainbow

Passage, count backward from 100, or recite a memorized poem or song.

(f) Grimace. The test subject shall grimace by smiling or frowning.

(g) Bending over. The test subject shall bend at the waist as if he/she were to touch his/her toes. Jogging in place shall be substituted for this exercise in those test environments such as shroud type QNFT units which prohibit bending at the waist.

(h) Normal breathing. Same as exercise 1.

Each test exercise shall be performed for one minute except for the grimace exercise which shall be performed for 15 seconds.

The test subject shall be questioned by the test conductor regarding the comfort of the respirator upon completion of the protocol. If it has become uncomfortable, another model of respirator shall be tried.

B. Qualitative Fit Test (QLFT) Protocols.

1. **General.**

(a) The employer shall assign specific individuals who shall assume full responsibility for implementing the respirator qualitative fit test program.

(b) The employer shall ensure that persons administering QLFT are able to prepare test solutions, calibrate equipment and perform tests properly, recognize invalid tests, and assure that test equipment is in proper working order.

(c) The employer shall assure that QLFT equipment is kept clean and well maintained so as to operate at the parameters for which it was designed.

2. **Isoamyl Acetate Protocol.**

(a) Odor threshold screening.

The odor threshold screening test, performed without wearing a respirator, is intended to determine if the individual tested can detect the odor of isoamyl acetate.

(1) Three 1-liter glass jars with metal lids are required.

(2) Odor free water (e.g. distilled or spring water) at approximately 25 degrees C shall be used for the solutions.

(3) The isoamyl acetate (IAA) (also known as isopentyl acetate) stock solution is prepared by adding 1 cc of pure IAA to 800 cc of odor free water in a 1 liter jar and shaking for 30 seconds. A new solution shall be prepared at least weekly.

(4) The screening test shall be conducted in a room separate from the room used for actual fit testing. The two rooms shall be well ventilated but shall not be connected to the same recirculating ventilation system.

(5) The odor test solution is prepared in a second jar by placing 0.4 cc of the stock solution into 500 cc of odor free water using a clean dropper or pipette. The solution shall be shaken for 30 seconds and allowed to stand for two to three minutes so that the IAA concentration above the liquid may reach equilibrium. This solution shall be used for only one day.

(6) A test blank shall be prepared in a third jar by adding 500 cc of odor free water.

(7) The odor test and test blank jars shall be labeled 1 and 2 for jar identification. Labels shall be placed on the lids so they can be periodically peeled, dried off and switched to maintain the integrity of the test.

(8) The following instruction shall be typed on a card and placed on the table in front of the two test jars (i.e., 1 and 2): "The purpose of this test is to determine if you can smell banana oil at a low concentration. The two bottles in front of you contain water. One of these bottles also contains a small amount of banana oil. Be sure the covers are on tight, then shake each bottle for two seconds. Unscrew the lid of each bottle, one at a time, and sniff at the mouth of the bottle. Indicate to the test conductor which bottle contains banana oil."

(9) The mixtures used in the IAA odor detection test shall be prepared in an area separate from where the test is performed, in order to prevent olfactory fatigue in the subject.

(10) If the test subject is unable to correctly identify the jar containing the odor test solution, the IAA qualitative fit test shall not be performed.

(11) If the test subject correctly identifies the jar containing the odor test solution, the test subject may proceed to respirator selection and fit testing.

(b) Isoamyl acetate fit test.

(1) The fit test chamber shall be similar to a clear 55-gallon drum liner suspended inverted over a 2-foot diameter frame so that the top of the chamber is about 6 inches above the test subject's head. The inside top center of the chamber shall have a small hook attached.

(2) Each respirator used for the fitting and fit testing shall be equipped with organic vapor cartridges or offer protection against organic vapors. The cartridges or masks shall be changed at least weekly.

(3) After selecting, donning, and properly adjusting a respirator, the test subject shall wear it to the fit testing room. This room shall be separate from the room used for odor threshold screening and respirator selection, and shall be well ventilated, as by an exhaust fan or lab hood, to prevent general room contamination.

(4) A copy of the test exercises and any prepared text from which the subject is to read shall be taped to the inside of the test chamber.

(5) Upon entering the test chamber, the test subject shall be given a 6-inch by 5-inch piece of paper towel, or other porous, absorbent, single-ply material, folded in half and wetted with 0.75 cc of pure IAA. The test subject shall hand the wet towel on the hook at the top of the chamber.

(6) Allow two minutes for the IAA test concentration to stabilize before starting the fit test exercises. This would be an appropriate time to talk with the test subject; to explain the fit

test, the importance of his/her cooperation, and the purpose for the head exercises; or to demonstrate some of the exercises.

(7) If at any time during the test, the subject detects the banana like odor of IAA, the test has failed. The subject shall quickly exit from the test chamber and leave the test area to avoid olfactory fatigue.

(8) If the test has failed, the subject shall return to the selection room and remove the respirator, repeat the odor sensitivity test, select and put on another respirator, return to the test chamber and again begin the procedure described in (1) through (7) above. The process continues until a respirator that fits well has been found. Should the odor sensitivity test be failed, the subject shall wait about 5 minutes before retesting. Odor sensitivity will usually have returned by this time.

(9) When a respirator is found that passes the test, its efficiency shall be demonstrated for the subject by having the subject break the face seal and take a breath before exiting the chamber.

(10) When the test subject leaves the chamber, the subject shall remove the saturated towel and return it to the person conducting the test. To keep the test area from becoming contaminated, the used towels shall be kept in a self sealing bag so there is no significant IAA concentration build-up in the test chamber during subsequent tests.

3. Saccharin Solution Aerosol Protocol.

The saccharin solution aerosol QLFT protocol is the only currently available, validated test protocol for use with particulate disposable dust respirators not equipped with high-efficiency filters. The entire screening and testing procedure shall be explained to the test subject prior to the conduct of the screening test.

(a) Taste threshold screening.

The saccharin taste threshold screening, performed without wearing a respirator, is intended to determine whether the individual being tested can detect the taste of saccharin.

(1) Threshold screening as well as fit testing subjects shall wear an enclosure about the head and shoulders that is approximately 12 inches in diameter by 14 inches tall with at least the front portion clear and that allows free movements of the head when a respirator is worn. An enclosure substantially similar to the 3M hood assembly, parts # FT 14 and # FT 15 combined, is adequate.

(2) The test enclosure shall have a ¾-inch hole in front of the test subject's nose and mouth area to accommodate the nebulizer nozzle.

(3) The test subject shall don the test enclosure. Throughout the threshold screening test, the test subject shall breathe through his/her wide open mouth with tongue extended.

(4) Using a DeVilbiss Model 40 Inhalation Medication Nebulizer the test conductor shall spray the *threshold check solution* into the enclosure. This nebulizer shall be clearly marked to distinguish it from the fit test solution nebulizer.

(5) The *threshold check solution* consists of 0.83 grams of sodium saccharin USP in 1 cc of warm water. It can be prepared by putting 1 cc of the fit test solution (see (b)(5) below) in 100 cc of distilled water.

(6) To produce the aerosol, the nebulizer bulb is firmly squeezed so that it collapses completely, then released and allowed to fully expand.

(7) Ten squeezes are repeated rapidly and then the test subject is asked whether the saccharin can be tasted.

(8) If the first response is negative, ten more squeezes are repeated rapidly and the test subject is again asked whether the saccharin is tasted.

(9) If the second response is negative, ten more squeezes are repeated rapidly and the test subject is again asked whether the saccharin is tasted.

(10) The test conductor will take note of the number of squeezes required to solicit a taste response.

(11) If the saccharin is not tasted after 30 squeezes (step 10), the test subject may not perform the saccharin fit test.

(12) If a taste response is elicited, the test subject shall be asked to take note of the taste for reference in the fit test.

(13) Correct use of the nebulizer means that approximately 1 cc of liquid is used at a time in the nebulizer body.

(14) The nebulizer shall be thoroughly rinsed in water, shaken dry, and refilled at least each morning and afternoon or at least every four hours.

(b) Saccharin solution aerosol fit test procedure.

(1) The test subject may not eat, drink (except plain water), or chew gum for 15 minutes before the test.

(2) The fit test uses the same enclosure described in (a) above.

(3) The test subject shall don the enclosure while wearing the respirator selected in section (a) above. The respirator shall be properly adjusted and equipped with a particulate filter(s).

(4) A second DeVilbiss Model 40 Inhalation Medication Nebulizer is used to spray the fit test solution into the enclosure. This nebulizer shall be clearly marked to distinguish it from the screening test solution nebulizer.

(5) The fit test solution is prepared by adding 83 grams of sodium saccharin to 100 cc of warm water.

(6) As before, the test subject shall breathe through the open mouth with tongue extended.

(7) The nebulizer is inserted into the hole in the front of the enclosure and the fit test solution is sprayed into the enclosure using the same number of squeezes required to elicit a taste response in the screening test.

(8) After generating the aerosol the test subject shall be instructed to perform the exercises in section I. A. 14 above.

(9) Every 30 seconds the aerosol concentration shall be replenished using one half the number of squeezes as initially.

(10) The test subject shall indicate to the test conductor if at any time during the fit test the taste of saccharin is detected.

(11) If the taste of saccharin is detected, the fit is deemed unsatisfactory and a different respirator shall be tried.

4. Irritant Fume Protocol.

(a) The respirator to be tested shall be equipped with high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters.

(b) The test subject shall be allowed to smell a weak concentration of the irritant smoke before the respirator is donned to become familiar with its characteristic odor.

(c) Break both ends of a ventilation smoke tube containing stannic oxychloride, such as the MSA part No. 5645, or equivalent. Attach one end of the smoke tube to a low flow air pump set to deliver 200 milliliters per minute.

(d) Advise the test subject that the smoke can be irritating to the eyes and instruct the subject to keep his/her eyes closed while the test is performed.

(e) The test conductor shall direct the stream of irritant smoke from the smoke tube towards the face seal area of the test subject. He/She shall begin at least 12 inches from the facepiece and gradually move to within one inch, moving around the whole perimeter of the mask.

(f) The exercises identified in section I. A. 14 above shall be performed by the test subject while the respirator seal is being challenged by the smoke.

(g) Each test subject passing the smoke test without evidence of a response shall be given a sensitivity check of the smoke from the same tube once the respirator has been removed to determine whether he/she reacts to the smoke. Failure to evoke a response shall void the fit test.

(h) The fit test shall be performed in a location with exhaust ventilation sufficient to prevent general contamination of the testing area by the test agent.

C. Quantitative Fit Test (QNFT) Protocol.

1. General.

(a) The employer shall assign specific individuals who shall assume full responsibility for implementing the respirator quantitative fit test program.

(b) The employer shall ensure that persons administering QNFT are able to calibrate equipment and perform tests properly, recognize invalid tests, calculate fit factors properly and assure that test equipment is in proper working order.

(c) The employer shall assure that QNFT equipment is kept clean and well maintained so as to operate at the parameters for which it was designed.

2. Definitions.

(a) Quantitative fit test. The test is performed in a test chamber. The normal air-purifying element of the respirator is replaced by a high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter in the case of particulate QNFT aerosols or a sorbent offering contaminant penetration protection equivalent to high-efficiency filters where the QNFT test agent is a gas or vapor.

(b) Challenge agent means the aerosol, gas or vapor introduced into a test chamber so that its concentration inside and outside the respirator may be measured.

(c) Test subject means the person wearing the respirator for quantitative fit testing.

(d) Normal standing position means standing erect and straight with arms down along the sides and looking straight ahead.

(e) Maximum peak penetration method means the method of determining test agent penetration in the respirator as determined by strip chart recordings of the test. The highest peak penetration for a given exercise is taken to be representative of average penetration into the respirator for that exercise.

(f) Average peak penetration method means the method of determining test agent penetration into the respirator utilizing a strip chart recorder, integrator, or computer. The agent penetration is determined by an average of the peak heights on the graph or by computer integration, for each exercise except the grimace exercise. Integrators or computers which calculate the actual test agent penetration into the respirator for each exercise will also be considered to meet the requirements of the average peak penetration method.

(g) "Fit Factor" means the ration of challenge agent concentration outside with respect to the inside of a respirator inlet covering (facepiece or enclosure).

3. Apparatus.

(a) Instrumentation. Aerosol generation, dilution, and measurement systems using corn oil or sodium chloride as test aerosols shall be used for quantitative fit testing.

(b) Test chamber. The test chamber shall be large enough to permit all test subjects to perform freely all required exercises without disturbing the challenge agent concentration or the measurement apparatus. The test chamber shall be equipped and constructed so that the challenge agent is effectively isolated from the ambient air, yet uniform in concentration throughout the chamber.

(c) When testing air-purifying respirators, the normal filter or cartridge element shall be replaced with a high-efficiency particulate filter supplied by the same manufacturer.

(d) The sampling instrument shall be selected so that a strip chart record may be made of the test showing the rise and fall of the challenge agent concentration with each inspiration and expiration at fit factors of at least 2,000. Integrators or computers which integrate the amount of test agent penetration leakage into the respirator for each exercise may be used provided a record of the readings is made.

(e) The combination of substitute air-purifying elements, challenge agent and challenge agent concentration in the test chamber shall be such that the test subject is not exposed in excess of an established exposure limit for the challenge agent at any time during the testing process.

(f) The sampling port on the test specimen respirator shall be placed and constructed so that no leakage occurs around the port (e.g. where the respirator is probed), a free air flow is allowed into the sampling line at all times and so that there is no interference with the fit or performance of the respirator.

(g) The test chamber and test set up shall permit the person administering the test to observe the test subject inside the chamber during the test.

(h) The equipment generating the challenge atmosphere shall maintain the concentration of challenge agent inside the test chamber constant to within a 10 percent variation for the duration of the test.

(i) The time lag (interval between an event and the recording of the event on the strip chart or computer or integrator) shall be kept to a minimum. There shall be a clear association between the occurrence of an event inside the test chamber and its being recorded.

(j) The sampling line tubing for the test chamber atmosphere and for the respirator sampling port shall be of equal diameter and of the same material. The length of the two lines shall be equal.

(k) The exhaust flow from the test chamber shall pass through a high-efficiency filter before release.

(l) When sodium chloride aerosol is used, the relative humidity inside the test chamber shall not exceed 50 percent.

(m) The limitations of instrument detection shall be taken into account when determining the fit factor.

(n) Test respirators shall be maintained in proper working order and inspected for deficiencies such as cracks, missing valves and gaskets, etc.

4. Procedural Requirements.

(a) When performing the initial positive or negative pressure test the sampling line shall be crimped closed in order to avoid air pressure leakage during either of these tests.

(b) An abbreviated screening isoamyl acetate test or irritant fume test may be utilized in order to quickly identify poor fitting respirators which passed the positive and/or negative pressure test and thus reduce the amount of QNFT time. When performing a screening isoamyl acetate test, combination high-efficiency organic vapor cartridges/canisters shall be used.

(c) A reasonably stable challenge agent concentration shall be measured in the test chamber prior to testing. For canopy or shower curtain type of test units the determination of the challenge agent stability may be established after the test subject has entered the test environment.

(d) Immediately after the subject enters the test chamber, the challenge agent concentration inside the respirator shall be measured to ensure that the peak penetration does not exceed 5 percent for a half mask or 1 percent for a full facepiece respirator.

(e) A stable challenge concentration shall be obtained prior to the actual start of testing.

(f) Respirator restraining straps shall not be overtightened for testing. The straps shall be adjusted by the wearer without assistance from other persons to give a reasonable comfortable fit typical of normal use.

(g) The test shall be terminated whenever any single peak penetration exceeds 5 percent for half masks and 1 percent for full facepiece respirators. The test subject shall be refitted and retested. If two of the three required tests are terminated, the fit shall be deemed inadequate.

(h) In order to successfully complete a QNFT, three successful fit tests are required. The results of each of the three independent fit tests must exceed the minimum fit factor needed for the class of respirator (e.g. half mask respirator, full facepiece respirator).

(i) Calculation of fit factors.

(1) The fit factor shall be determined for the quantitative fit test by taking the ratio of the average chamber concentration to the concentration inside the respirator.

(2) The average test chamber concentration is the arithmetic average of the test chamber concentration at the beginning and of the end of the test.

(3) The concentration of the challenge agent inside the respirator shall be determined by one of the following methods:

(i) Average peak concentration.

(ii) Maximum peak concentration.

(iii) Integration by calculation of the area under the individual peak for each exercise. This includes computerized integration.

(j) Interpretation of test results. The fit factor established by the quantitative fit testing shall be the lowest of the three fit factor values calculated from the three required fit tests.

(k) The test subject shall not be permitted to wear a half mask, or full facepiece respirator unless a minimum fit factor equivalent to at least 10 times the hazardous exposure level is obtained.

(l) Filters used for quantitative fit testing shall be replaced at least weekly, or whenever increased breathing resistance is encountered, or when the test agent has altered the integrity of the filter media. Organic vapor cartridges/canisters shall be replaced daily (when used) or sooner if there is any indication of breakthrough by a test agent.

1910.1029—COKE OVEN EMISSIONS

(a) Scope and application.

This section applies to the control of employee exposure to coke oven emissions, except that this section shall not apply to working conditions with regard to which other Federal agencies exercise statutory authority to prescribe or enforce standards affecting occupational safety and health.

(b) Definitions

For the purpose of this section: "Authorized person" means any person specifically authorized by the employer whose duties require the person to enter a regulated area, or any person entering such an area as a designated representative of employees for the purpose of exercising the opportunity to observe monitoring and measuring procedures under paragraph (n) of this section.

"Beehive oven" means a coke oven in which the products of carbonization other than coke are not recovered, but are released into the ambient air.

"Coke oven" means a retort in which coke is produced by the destructive distillation or carbonization of coal.

"Coke oven battery" means a structure containing a number of slot-type coke ovens.

"Coke oven emissions" means the benzene-soluble fraction of total particulate matter present during the destructive distillation or carbonization of coal for the production of coke.

"Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, or his or her designee.

"Emergency" means any occurrence such as, but not limited to, equipment failure which is likely to, or does, result in any massive release of coke oven emissions.

"Existing coke oven battery" means a battery in operation or under construction on January 20, 1977, and which is not a rehabilitated coke oven battery.

"Rehabilitated coke oven battery" means a battery which is rebuilt, overhauled, renovated, or restored such as from the pad up, after January 20, 1977.

"Secretary" means the Secretary of Labor, U.S. Department of Labor, or his or her designee.

"Stage charging" means a procedure by which a predetermined volume of coal in each larry car hopper is introduced into an oven such that no more than two hoppers are discharging simultaneously.

"Sequential charging" means a procedure, usually automatically timed, by which a predetermined volume of coal in each larry car hopper is introduced into an oven such that no more than two hoppers commence or finish discharging simultaneously although, at some point, all hoppers are discharging simultaneously.

"Pipeline charging" means any apparatus used to introduce coal into an oven which uses a pipe or duct permanently mounted onto an oven and through which coal is charged.

"Green push" means coke which when removed from the oven results in emissions due to the presence of unvolatilized coal.

(c) Permissible exposure limit.

The employer shall assure that no employee in the regulated area is exposed to coke oven emissions at concentrations greater than 150 micrograms per cubic meter of air (150 $\mu g/m^3$), averaged over any 8-hour period.

(d) Regulated areas.

(1) The employer shall establish regulated areas and shall limit access to them to authorized persons.

(2) The employer shall establish the following as regulated areas:

(i) The coke oven battery including topside and its machinery, pushside and its machinery, coke side and its machinery, and the battery ends; the wharf; and the screening station;

(ii) The beehive oven and its machinery.

(e) Exposure monitoring and measurement.

(1) Monitoring program.

(i) Each employer who has a place of employment where coke oven emissions are present shall monitor employees employed in the regulated area to measure their exposure to coke oven emissions.

(ii) The employer shall obtain measurements which are representative of each employee's exposure to coke oven emissions over an eight-hour period. All measurements shall determine exposure without regard to the use of respiratory protection.

(iii) The employer shall collect full-shift (for at least seven continuous hours) personal samples, including at least one sample during each shift for each battery and each job classification within the regulated areas including at least the following job classifications:

(a) Lidman;

(b) Tar chaser;

(c) Larry car operator;

(d) Luterman;

(e) Machine operator, coke side;

(f) Benchman, coke side;

(g) Benchman, pusher side;

(h) Heater;

(i) Quenching car operator;

(j) Pusher machine operator;

(k) Screening station operator;

(l) Wharfman;

(m) Oven patcher;

(n) Oven repairman;

(o) Spellman; and

(p) Maintenance personnel.

(iv) The employer shall repeat the monitoring and measurements required by this paragraph (e)(1) at least every three months.

(2) Redetermination. Whenever there has been a production, process, or control change which may result in new or additional exposure to coke oven emissions, or whenever the employer has any other reason to suspect an increase in employee exposure, the employer shall repeat the monitoring and measurements required by paragraph (e)(1) of this section for those employees affected by such change or increase.

(3) Employee notification.

(i) The employer shall notify each employee in writing of the exposure measurements which represent that employee's exposure within five working days after the receipt of the results of measurements required by paragraphs (e)(1) and (e)(2) of this section.

(ii) Whenever such results indicate that the representative employee exposure exceeds the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall, in such notification, inform each employee of that fact and of the corrective action being taken to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limit.

(4) Accuracy of measurement. The employer shall use a method of monitoring and measurement which has an accuracy (with a confidence level of 95%) of not less than plus or minus 35% for concentrations of coke oven emissions greater than or equal to 150 $\mu g/m^3$.

(f) Methods of compliance.

The employer shall control employee exposure to coke oven emissions by the use of engineering controls, work practices and respiratory protection as follows:

(1) Priority of compliance methods.

(i) Existing coke oven batteries.

(a) The employer shall institute the engineering and work practice controls listed in paragraphs (f)(2), (f)(3) and (f)(4) of this section in existing coke oven batteries at the earliest possible time, but not later than January 20, 1980, except to the extent that the employer can establish that such controls are not feasible. In determining the earliest possible time for institution of engineering and work practice controls, the requirement, effective August 27, 1971, to implement feasible administrative or engineering controls to reduce exposures to coal tar pitch volatiles, shall be considered. Wherever the engineering and work practice controls which can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce employee exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall nonetheless use them to reduce exposures to the lowest level achievable by these controls and shall supplement them by the use of respiratory protection which complies with the requirements of paragraph (g) of this section.

(b) The engineering and work practice controls required under paragraphs (f)(2), (f)(3) and (f)(4) of this section are minimum requirements generally applicable to all existing coke oven batteries. If, after implementing all controls required by paragraphs (f)(2), (f)(3) and (f)(4) of this section, or after January 20, 1980, whichever is sooner, employee exposures still exceed the permissible exposure limit, employers shall implement any other engineering and work practice controls necessary to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limit except to the extent that the employer can establish that such controls are not feasible. Whenever the engineering and work practice controls which can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce employee exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall nonetheless use them to reduce exposures to the lowest level achievable by these controls and shall supplement them by the use of respiratory protection which complies with the requirements of paragraph (g) of this section.

(ii) New or rehabilitated coke oven batteries.

(a) The employer shall institute the best available engineering and work practice controls on all new or rehabilitated coke oven batteries to reduce and maintain employee exposures at or below the permissible exposure limit, except to the extent that the employer can establish that such controls are not feasible. Wherever the engineering and work practice controls which can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce employee exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall nonetheless use them to reduce exposures to the lowest level achievable by these controls and shall supplement them by the use of respiratory protection which complies with the requirements of paragraph (g) of this section.

(b) If, after implementing all the engineering and work practice controls required by paragraph (f)(1)(ii) *(a)* of this section, employee exposures still exceed the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall implement any other engineering and work practice controls necessary to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limit except to the extent that the employer can establish that such controls are not feasible. Wherever the engineering and work practice controls which can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce employee exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall nonetheless use them to reduce exposures to the lowest level achievable by these controls and shall supplement them by the use of respiratory protection which complies with the requirements of paragraph (g) of this section.

(iii) Beehive ovens.

(a) The employer shall institute engineering and work practice controls on all beehive ovens at the earliest possible time to reduce and maintain employee exposures at or below the permissible exposure limit, except to the extent that the employer can establish that such controls are not feasible. In determining the earliest possible time for institution of engineering and work practice controls, the requirement, effective August 27, 1971, to implement feasible administrative or engineering controls to reduce exposures to coal tar pitch volatiles, shall be considered. Wherever the engineering and work practice controls which can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce employee exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall nonetheless use them to reduce exposures to the lowest level achievable by these controls and shall supplement them by the use of respiratory protection which complies with the requirements of paragraph (g) of this section.

(b) If, after implementing all engineering and work practice controls required by paragraph (f)(1)(iii)*(a)* of this section, employee exposures still exceed the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall implement any other engineering and work practice controls necessary to reduce exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit except to the extent that the employer can establish that such controls are not feasible. Whenever the engineering and work practice controls which can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce employee exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall nonetheless use them to reduce exposures to the lowest level achievable by these controls and shall supplement them by the use of respiratory protection which complies with the requirements of paragraph (g) of this section.

(2) Engineering controls.

(i) Charging. The employer shall equip and operate existing coke oven batteries with all of the following engineering controls to control coke oven emissions during charging operations:

(a) One of the following methods of charging:

(1) Stage charging as described in paragraph (f)(3)(i)(b) of this section; or,

(2) Sequential charging as described in paragraph (f)(3)(i)(b) of this section except that paragraph (f)(3)(i)(b)(3)(iv) of this section does not apply to sequential charging; or

(3) Pipeline charging or other forms of enclosed charging in accordance with paragraph (f)(2)(i) of this section, except that paragraphs (f)(2)(i)(b), (d), (e), (f) and (h) of this section do not apply.

(b) Drafting from two or more points in the oven being charged, through the use of double collector mains, or a fixed or moveable jumper pipe system to another oven, to effectively remove the gases from the oven to the collector mains;

(c) Aspiration systems designed and operated to provide sufficient negative pressure and flow volume to effectively move the gases evolved during charging into the collector mains, including sufficient steam pressure, and steam jets of sufficient diameter;

(d) Mechanical volumetric controls on each larry car hopper to provide the proper amount of coal to be charged through each charging hole so that the tunnel head will be sufficient to permit the gases to move from the oven into the collector mains;

(e) Devices to facilitate the rapid and continuous flow of coal into the oven being charged, such as stainless steel liners, coal vibrators or pneumatic shells;

(f) Individually operated larry car drop sleeves and slide gates designed and maintained so that the gases are effectively removed from the oven into the collector mains;

(g) Mechanized gooseneck and standpipe cleaners;

(h) Air seals on the pusher machine leveler bars to control air infiltration during charging; and

(i) Roof carbon cutters or a compressed air system or both on the pusher machine rams to remove roof carbon.

(ii) Coking. The employer shall equip and operate existing coke oven batteries with all of the following engineering controls to control coke oven emissions during coking operations:

(a) A pressure control system on each battery to obtain uniform collector main pressure;

(b) Ready access to door repair facilities capable of prompt and efficient repair of doors, door sealing edges and all door parts;

(c) An adequate number of spare doors available for replacement purposes;

(d) Chuck door gaskets to control chuck door emissions until such door is repaired, or replaced; and

(e) Heat shields on door machines.

(3) Work practice controls.

(i) Charging. The employer shall operate existing coke oven batteries with all of the following work practices to control coke oven emissions during the charging operation:

(a) Establishment and implementation of a detailed, written inspection and cleaning procedure for each battery consisting of at least the following elements:

(1) Prompt and effective repair or replacement of all engineering controls;

(2) Inspection and cleaning of goosenecks and standpipes prior to each charge to a specified minimum diameter sufficient to effectively move the evolved gases from the oven to the collector mains;

(3) Inspection for roof carbon build-up prior to each charge and removal of roof carbon as necessary to provide an adequate gas channel so that the gases are effectively moved from the oven into the collector mains;

(4) Inspection of the steam aspiration system prior to each charge so that sufficient pressure and volume is maintained to effectively move the gases from the oven to the collector mains;

(5) Inspection of steam nozzles and liquor sprays prior to each charge and cleaning as necessary so that the steam nozzles and liquor sprays are clean;

(6) Inspection of standpipe caps prior to each charge and cleaning and luting or both as necessary so that the gases are effectively moved from the oven to the collector mains; and

(7) Inspection of charging holes and lids for cracks, warpage and other defects prior to each charge and removal of carbon to prevent emissions, and application of luting material to standpipe and charging hole lids where necessary to obtain a proper seal.

(b) Establishment and implementation of a detailed written charging procedure, designed and operated to eliminate emissions during charging for each battery, consisting of at least the following elements:

(1) Larry car hoppers filled with coal to a predetermined level in accordance with the mechanical volumetric controls required under paragraph (f)(2)(i)(d) of this section so as to maintain a sufficient gas passage in the oven to be charged;

(2) The larry car aligned over the oven to be charged, so that the drop sleeves fit tightly over the charging holes; and

(3) The oven charged in accordance with the following sequence of requirements:

(i) The aspiration system turned on;

(ii) Coal charged through the outermost hoppers, either individually or together, depending on the capacity of the aspiration system to collect the gases involved.

(iii) The charging holes used under paragraph (f)(3)(i)(b)(3)(ii) of this section relidded or otherwise sealed off to prevent leakage of coke oven emissions;

(iv) If four hoppers are used, the third hopper discharged and relidded or otherwise sealed off to prevent leakage of coke oven emissions;

(v) The final hopper discharged until the gas channel at the top of the oven is blocked and then the chuck door opened and the coal leveled;

(vi) When the coal from the final hopper is discharged and the leveling operation complete, the charging hole relidded or otherwise sealed off to prevent leakage of coke oven emissions; and

(vii) The aspiration system turned off only after the charging holes have been closed.

(c) Establishment and implementation of a detailed written charging procedure, designed and operated to eliminate emissions during charging of each pipeline or enclosed charged battery.

(ii) Coking. The employer shall operate existing coke oven batteries pursuant to a detailed written procedure established and implemented for the control of coke oven emissions during coking, consisting of at least the following elements:

(a) Checking oven back pressure controls to maintain uniform pressure conditions in the collecting main;

(b) Repair, replacement and adjustment of oven doors and chuck doors and replacement of door jambs so as to provide a continuous metal-to-metal fit;

(c) Cleaning of oven doors, chuck doors and door jambs each coking cycle so as to provide an effective seal;

(d) An inspection system and corrective action program to control door emissions to the maximum extent possible; and

(e) Luting of doors that are sealed by luting each coking cycle and reluting, replacing or adjusting as necessary to control leakage.

(iii) Pushing. The employer shall operate existing coke oven batteries with the following work practices to control coke oven emissions during pushing operations:

(a) Coke and coal spillage quenched as soon as practicable and not shoveled into a heated oven; and

(b) A detailed written procedure for each battery established and implemented for the control of emissions during pushing consisting of the following elements:

(1) Dampering off the ovens and removal of charging hole lids to effectively control coke oven emissions during the push;

(2) Heating of the coal charge uniformly for a sufficient period so as to obtain proper coking including preventing green pushes;

(3) Prevention of green pushes to the maximum extent possible;

(4) Inspection, adjustment and correction of heating flue temperatures and defective flues at least weekly and after any green push, so as to prevent green pushes;

(5) Cleaning of heating flues and related equipment to prevent green pushes, at least weekly and after any green push.

(iv) Maintenance and repair. The employer shall operate existing coke oven batteries pursuant to a detailed written procedure of maintenance and repair established and implemented for the effective control of coke oven emissions consisting of the following elements:

(a) Regular inspection of all controls, including goosenecks, standpipes, standpipe caps, charging hole lids and castings, jumper pipes and air seals for cracks, misalignment or other defects and prompt implementation of the necessary repairs as soon as possible;

(b) Maintaining the regulated area in a neat, orderly condition free of coal and coke spillage and debris;

(c) Regular inspection of the damper system, aspiration system and collector main for cracks or leakage, and prompt implementation of the necessary repairs;

(d) Regular inspection of the heating system and prompt implementation of the necessary repairs;

(e) Prevention of miscellaneous fugitive topside emissions;

(f) Regular inspection and patching of oven brickwork;

(g) Maintenance of battery equipment and controls in good working order;

(h) Maintenance and repair of coke oven doors, chuck doors, door jambs and seals; and

(i) Repairs instituted and completed as soon as possible, including temporary repair measures instituted and completed where necessary, including but not limited to:

(1) Prevention of miscellaneous fugitive topside emissions; and

(2) Chuck door gaskets, which shall be installed prior to the start of the next coking cycle.

(4) Filtered air.

(i) The employer shall provide positive-pressure, temperature controlled filtered air for larry car, pusher machine, door machine, and quench car cabs.

(ii) The employer shall provide standby pulpits on the battery topside, at the wharf, and at the screening station, equipped with positive-pressure, temperature controlled filtered air.

(5) Emergencies. Whenever an emergency occurs, the next coking cycle may not begin until the cause of the emergency is determined and corrected, unless the employer can establish that it is necessary to initiate the next coking cycle in order to determine the cause of the emergency.

(6) Compliance program.

(i) Each employer shall establish and implement a written program to reduce exposures solely by means of the engineering and work practice controls required in paragraph (f) of this section.

(ii) The written program shall include at least the following:

(a) A description of each coke oven operation by battery, including work force and operating crew, coking time, operating procedures and maintenance practices;

(b) Engineering plans and other studies used to determine the controls for the coke battery;

(c) A report of the technology considered in meeting the permissible exposure limit;

(d) Monitoring data obtained in accordance with paragraph (e) of this section;

(e) A detailed schedule for the implementation of the engineering and work practice

best copy available

controls specified in paragraph (f) of this section; and

(f) Other relevant information.

(iii) If, after implementing all controls required by paragraph (f)(2)–(f)(4) of this section, or after January 20, 1980, whichever is sooner, or after completion of a new or rehabilitated battery the permissible exposure limit is still exceeded, the employer shall develop a detailed written program and schedule for the implementation of any additional engineering controls and work practice necessary to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limit.

(iv) Written plans for such programs shall be submitted, upon request, to the Secretary and the Director, and shall be available at the worksite for examination and copying by the Secretary, the Director, and the authorized employee representative. The plans required under paragraph (f)(6) of this section shall be revised and updated at least every six months to reflect the current status of the program.

(7) Training in compliance procedures. The employer shall incorporate all written procedures and schedules required under this paragraph (f) in the information and training program required under paragraph (k) of this section and, where appropriate, post in the regulated area.

(g) Respiratory protection.

(1) General.

(i) Where respiratory protection is required under this section, the employer shall provide and assure the use of respirators which comply with the requirements of this paragraph (g). Compliance with the permissible exposure limit may not be achieved by the use of respirators except:

(a) During the time period necessary to install or implement feasible engineering and work practice controls; or

(b) In work operations such as maintenance and repair activity in which engineering and work practice controls are technologically not feasible; or

(c) In work situations where feasible engineering and work practice controls are not yet sufficient to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limit; or

(d) In emergencies.

(ii) Notwithstanding any other requirement of this section, until January 20, 1978, the wearing of respirators shall be at the discretion of each employee where the employee is not in the vicinity of visible emissions.

(2) Selection.

(i) Where respirators are required under this section, the employer shall select, provide and assure the use of the appropriate respirator or combination of respirators from Table I below.

TABLE I
RESPIRATORY PROTECTION FOR COKE OVEN EMISSIONS

Airborne concentration of coke oven emissions	*Required respirator*
(a) Any concentration.	(1) A Type C supplied air respirator operated in pressure demand or other positive pressure or continuous flow mode; or (2) A powered air-purifying particulate filter respirator for dust, and mist; (3) A powered air-purifying particulate filter respirator or combination chemical cartridge and particulate filter respirator for coke oven emissions.
(b) Concentrations not greater than 1500 $\mu g/m^3$.	(1) Any particulate filter respirator for dust and mist, except single-use respirator; or (2) Any particulate filter respirator or combination chemical cartridge and particulate filter respirator for coke oven emissions; or (3) Any respirator listed in paragraph (g)(2)(i)(a) of this section.

(ii) Not later than January 20, 1978, whenever respirators are required by this section for concentrations not greater than 1500 $\mu g/m^3$, the employer shall provide, at the option of each affected employee, either a particulate filter respirator as provided in paragraph (g)(2)(i)(b) of this section, or a powered air purifying respirator as provided in paragraph (g)(2)(i)(a) of this section.

(iii) The employer shall select respirators from among those approved for protection against dust and mist by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) under the provisions of 30 CFR Part II, except that not later than January 20, 1979, the employer shall select respirators from among those approved by NIOSH for protection against coke oven emissions.

(3) Respirator program. The employer shall institute a respiratory protection program in accordance with §1910.134 of this part.

(4) Respirator usage.

(i) The employer shall assure that the respirator issued to the employee exhibits minimum facepiece leakage and that the respirator is fitted properly.

(ii) The employer shall allow each employee who uses a filter respirator to change the filter elements whenever an increase in breathing resistance is detected and shall maintain an adequate supply of filter elements for this purpose.

(iii) The employer shall allow employees who wear respirators to wash their face and respirator facepiece to prevent skin irritation associated with respirator use.

(h) Protective clothing and equipment.

(1) Provision and use. The employer shall provide and assure the use of appropriate protective clothing and equipment, such as but not limited to:

(i) Flame resistant jacket and pants;

(ii) Flame resistant gloves;

(iii) Face shields or vented goggles which comply with §1910.133(a)(2) of this part;

(iv) Insulation from hot surfaces for footwear;

(v) Safety shoes which comply with §1910.136 of this part; and

(vi) Protective helmets which comply with §1910.135 of this part.

(2) Cleaning and replacement.

(i) The employer shall provide the protective clothing required by paragraphs (h)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section in a clean and dry condition at least weekly.

(ii) The employer shall clean, launder, or dispose of protective clothing required by paragraphs (h)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section.

(iii) The employer shall repair or replace the protective clothing and equipment as needed to maintain their effectiveness.

(iv) The employer shall assure that all protective clothing is removed at the completion of a work shift only in change rooms prescribed in paragraph (i)(1) of this section.

(v) The employer shall assure that contaminated protective clothing which is to be cleaned, laundered, or disposed of, is placed in a closable container in the change room.

(vi) The employer shall inform any person who cleans or launders protective clothing required by this section, of the potentially harmful effects of exposure to coke oven emissions.

(i) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(1) Change rooms. The employer shall provide clean change rooms equipped with storage facilities for street clothes and separate storage facilities for protective clothing and equipment whenever employees are required to wear protective clothing and equipment in accordance with paragraph (h)(1) of this section.

(2) Showers.

(i) The employer shall assure that employees working in the regulated area shower at the end of the work shift.

(ii) The employer shall provide shower facilities in accordance with §1910.141 (d)(3) of this Part.

(3) Lunchrooms. The employer shall provide lunchroom facilities which have a temperature controlled, positive pressure, filtered air supply, and which are readily accessible to employees working in the regulated area.

(4) Lavatories.

(i) The employer shall assure that employees working in the regulated area wash their hands and face prior to eating.

(ii) The employer shall provide lavatory facilities in accordance with §1910.141(d)(1) and (2) of this Part.

(5) Prohibition of activities in the regulated area.

(i) The employer shall assure that in the regulated area, food or beverages are not present or consumed, smoking products are not present or used, and cosmetics are not applied, except, that these activities may be conducted in the lunchrooms, change rooms and showers required under paragraphs (i)(1)—(i)(3) of this section.

(ii) Drinking water may be consumed in the regulated area.

(j) Medical surveillance.

(1) General requirements.

(i) Each employer shall institute a medical surveillance program for all employees who are employed in a regulated area at least 30 days per year.

(ii) This program shall provide each employee covered under paragraph (j)(1)(i) of this section with an opportunity for medical examinations in accordance with this paragraph (j).

(iii) The employer shall inform any employee who refuses any required medical examination of the possible health consequences of such refusal and shall obtain a signed statement from the employee indicating that the employee understands the risk involved in the refusal to be examined.

(iv) The employer shall assure that all medical examinations and procedures are performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician, and are provided without cost to the employee.

(2) Initial examinations. At the time of initial assignment to a regulated area or upon the institution of the medical surveillance program, the employer shall provide a medical examination for employees covered under paragraph (j)(1)(i) of this section including at least the following elements:

(i) A work history and medical history which shall include smoking history and the presence and degree of respiratory symptoms, such as breathlessness, cough, sputum production, and wheezing;

(ii) A 14" × 17" posterior-anterior chest x-ray and International Labour Office UICC/Cincinnati (ILO U/C) rating;

(iii) Pulmonary function tests including forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiratory volume at one second (FEV 1.0) with recording of type of equipment used;

(iv) Weight;

(v) A skin examination;

(vi) Urinalysis for sugar, albumin, and hematuria;

(vii) A sputum cytology examination; and

(viii) A urinary cytology examination.

(3) Periodic examinations.

(i) The employer shall provide the examinations specified in paragraphs (j)(2)(i)—(vi) of this section at least annually for employees covered under paragraph (j)(1)(i) of this section.

(ii) The employer shall provide the examinations specified in paragraphs (j)(2)(i)—(viii) of this section at least semi-annually for employees 45 years of age or older or with five (5) or more years employment in the regulated area.

(iii) Whenever an employee who is 45 years of age or older or with five (5) or more years employment in the regulated area transfers or is transferred from employment in a regulated area, the employer shall continue to provide the examinations specified in paragraphs (j)(2)(i)—(viii) of this section semiannually, as long as that employee is employed by the same employer or a successor employer.

(iv) Whenever an employee has not taken the examinations specified in paragraphs (j)(3)(i)—(iii) of this section within the six (6) months preceding the termination of employment, the employer shall provide such examinations to the employee upon termination of employment.

(4) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide the following information to the examining physician:

(i) A copy of this regulation and its Appendixes;

(ii) A description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposure;

(iii) The employee's exposure level or estimated exposure level;

(iv) A description of any personal protective equipment used or to be used; and

(v) Information from previous medical examinations of the affected employee which is not readily available to the examining physician.

(5) Physician's written opinion.

(i) The employer shall obtain a written opinion from the examining physician which shall include:

(a) The results of the medical examinations;

(b) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical conditions which would place the employee at increased risk of material impairment of the employee's health from exposure to coke oven emissions;

(c) Any recommended limitations upon the employee's exposure to coke oven emissions or upon the use of protective clothing or equipment such as respirators; and

(d) A statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and any medical conditions which require further explanation or treatment.

(ii) The employer shall instruct the physician not to reveal in the written opinion specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure.

(iii) The employer shall provide a copy of the written opinion to the affected employee.

(k) Employee information and training.

(1) Training program.

(i) The employer shall institute a training program for employees who are employed in the regulated area and shall assure their participation.

(ii) The training program shall be provided as of January 27, 1977 for employees who are employed in the regulated area at that time or at the time of initial assignment to a regulated area.

(iii) The training program shall be provided at least annually for all employees who are employed in the regulated area, except that training regarding the occupational safety and health hazards associated with exposure to coke oven emissions and the purpose, proper use, and limitations of respiratory protective devices shall be provided at least quarterly until January 20, 1978.

(iv) The training program shall include informing each employee of:

(a) The information contained in the substance information sheet for coke oven emissions (Appendix A);

(b) The purpose, proper use, and limitations of respiratory protective devices required in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section;

(c) The purpose for and a description of the medical surveillance program required by paragraph (j) of this section including information on the occupational safety and health hazards associated with exposure to coke oven emissions;

(d) A review of all written procedures and schedules required under paragraph (f) of this section; and

(e) A review of this standard.

(2) Access to training materials.

(i) The employer shall make a copy of this standard and its appendixes readily available to all employees who are employed in the regulated area.

(ii) The employer shall provide upon request all materials relating to the employee information and training program to the Secretary and the Director.

(l) Precautionary signs and labels.

(1) General.

(i) The employer may use labels or signs required by other statutes, regulations or ordinances in addition to, or in combination with signs and labels required by this paragraph.

(ii) The employer shall assure that no statement appears on or near any sign required by this paragraph which contradicts or detracts from the effects of the required sign.

(iii) The employer shall assure that signs required by this paragraph are illuminated and cleaned as necessary so that the legend is readily visible.

(2) Signs.

(i) The employer shall post signs in the regulated area bearing the legends:

DANGER

CANCER HAZARD

AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

NO SMOKING OR EATING

(ii) In addition, not later than January 20, 1978, the employer shall post signs in the areas where the permissible exposure limit is exceeded bearing the legend:

DANGER

RESPIRATOR REQUIRED

(3) Labels. The employer shall apply precautionary labels to all containers of protective clothing contaminated with coke oven emissions bearing the legend:

CAUTION

CLOTHING CONTAMINATED WITH COKE EMISSIONS

DO NOT REMOVE DUST BY BLOWING OR SHAKING

(m) Recordkeeping.

(1) Exposure measurements. The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of all measurements taken to monitor employee exposure to coke oven emissions required in paragraph (e) of this section.

(i) This record shall include:

(a) Name, social security number, and job classification of the employees monitored;

(b) The date(s), number, duration and results of each of the samples taken, including a description of the sampling procedure used to determine representative employee exposure where applicable;

(c) The type of respiratory protective devices worn, if any;

(d) A description of the sampling and analytical methods used and evidence of their accuracy; and

(e) The environmental variables that could affect the measurement of employee exposure.

(ii) The employer shall maintain this record for at least 40 years or for the duration of employment plus 20 years, whichever is longer.

(2) Medical surveillance. The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee subject to medical surveillance as required by paragraph (j) of this section.

(i) The record shall include:

(a) The name, social security number, and description of duties of the employee;

(b) A copy of the physician's written opinion;

(c) The signed statement of any refusal to take a medical examination under paragraph (j)(1)(ii) of this section; and

(d) Any employee medical complaints related to exposure to coke oven emissions.

(ii) The employer shall keep, or assure that the examining physician keeps, the following medical records:

(a) A copy of the medical examination results including medical and work history required under paragraph (j)(2) of this section;

(b) A description of the laboratory procedures used and a copy of any standards or guidelines used to interpret the test results;

(c) The initial x-ray;

(d) The x-rays for the most recent 5 years;

(e) Any x-ray with a demonstrated abnormality and all subsequent x-rays;

(f) The initial cytologic examination slide and written description;

(g) The cytologic examination slide and written description for the most recent 10 years; and

(h) Any cytologic examination slides with demonstrated atypia, if such atypia persists for 3 years, and all subsequent slides and written descriptions.

(iii) The employer shall maintain medical records required under paragraph (m)(2) of this section for at least 40 years, or for the duration of employment plus 20 years, whichever is longer.

(3) Availability.

(i) The employer shall make available upon request all records required to be maintained by paragraph (m) of this section to the Secretary and the Director for examination and copying.

(ii) Employee exposure measurement records and employee medical records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in

accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i).

[45 F.R. 35283, May 23, 1980.]

(4) Transfer of records.

(i) Whenever the employer ceases to do business, the successor employer shall receive and retain all records required to be maintained by paragraph (m) of this section.

(ii) Whenever the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records for the prescribed period, these records shall be transmitted by registered mail to the Director.

(iii) At the expiration of the retention period for the records required to be maintained under paragraphs (m)(1) and (m)(2) of this section, the employer shall transmit these records by registered mail to the Director or shall continue to retain such records.

(iv) The employer shall also comply with any additional requirements involving transfer of records set forth in 29 CFR 1910.20(h).

[45 F.R. 35283, May 23, 1980.]

(n) Observation of monitoring.

(1) Employee observation. The employer shall provide affected employees or their representatives an opportunity to observe any measuring or monitoring of employee exposure to coke oven emissions conducted pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section.

(2) Observation procedures.

(i) Whenever observation of the measuring or monitoring of employee exposure to coke oven emissions requires entry into an area where the use of protective clothing or equipment is required, the employer shall provide the observer with and assure the use of such equipment and shall require the observer to comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(ii) Without interfering with the measurement, observers shall be entitled to:

(a) An explanation of the measurement procedures;

(b) Observe all steps related to the measurement of coke oven emissions performed at the place of exposure; and

(c) Record the results obtained.

(o) Effective date.

This standard shall become effective January 20, 1977.

(p) Appendixes.

The information contained in the appendixes to this section is not intended, by itself, to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed or to detract from any existing obligation.

APPENDIX A—COKE OVEN EMISSIONS SUBSTANCE INFORMATION SHEET

I. SUBSTANCE IDENTIFICATION

A. *Substance:* Coke Oven Emissions

B. *Definition:* The Benzene-soluble fraction of total particulate matter present during the destructive distillation or carbonization of coal for the production of coke.

C. *Permissible Exposure Limit:* 150 micrograms per cubic meter of air determined as an average over 8-hour period.

D. *Regulated areas:* Only employees authorized by your employer should enter a regulated area. The employer is required to designate the following areas as regulated areas: the coke oven battery, including topside and its machinery, pushside and its machinery, cokeside and its machinery, and the battery ends; the screening station; the wharf; and the beehive ovens and their machinery.

II. HEALTH HAZARD DATA

Exposure to coke oven emissions is a cause of lung cancer, and kidney cancer, in humans. Although there have not been an excess number of skin cancer cases in humans, repeated skin contact with coke oven emissions should be avoided.

III. PROTECTIVE CLOTHING AND EQUIPMENT

A. *Respirators:* Respirators will be provided by your employer for routine use if your employer is in the process of implementing engineering and work practice controls or where engineering and work practice controls are not feasible or insufficient to reduce exposure to or below the PEL. You must wear respirators for non-routine activities or in emergency situations where you are likely to be exposed to levels of coke oven emissions in excess of the permissible exposure limit. Until January 20, 1978, the routine wearing of respirators is voluntary. Until that date, if you choose not to wear a respirator you do not have to do so. You must still have your respirator with you and you must still wear it if you are near visible emissions. Since how well your respirator fits your face is very important, your employer is required to conduct fit tests to make sure the respirator seals properly when you wear it. These tests are simple and rapid and will be explained to you during your training sessions.

B. *Protective clothing:* Your employer is required to provide, and you must wear, appropriate, clean, protective clothing and equipment to protect your body from repeated skin contact with coke oven emissions and from the heat generated during the coking process. This clothing should include such items as jacket and pants and flame resistant gloves. Protective equipment should include face shield or vented goggles, protective helmets and safety shoes, insulated from hot surfaces where appropriate.

IV. HYGIENE FACILITIES AND PRACTICES

You must not eat, drink, smoke, chew gum or tobacco, or apply cosmetics in the regulated area, except that drinking water is permitted. Your employer is required to provide lunchrooms and other areas for these purposes.

Your employer is required to provide showers, washing facilities, and change rooms. If you work in a regulated area, you must wash your face, and hands before eating. You must shower at the end of the work shift. Do not take used protective clothing out of the change rooms without your employer's permission. Your employer is required to provide for laundering or cleaning of your protective clothing.

V. SIGNS AND LABELS

Your employer is required to post warning signs and labels for your protection. Signs must be posted in regulated areas. The signs must warn that a cancer hazard is present, that only authorized employees may enter the area, and that no smoking or eating is allowed. In regulated areas where coke oven emissions are above the permissible exposure limit, the signs should also warn that respirators must be worn.

VI. MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS

If you work in a regulated area at least 30 days per year, your employer is required to provide you with a medical examination every year. The medical examination must include a medical history, a chest x-ray; pulmonary function test; weight comparison; skin examination; a urinalysis and a urine and sputum cytology exam for the early detection of urinary or lung cancer. The cytology exams are only included in the initial exam until you are either 45 years or older or have 5 or more years employment in the regulated areas when the medical exams including these tests are to be given every 6 months. The examining physician will provide a written opinion to your employer containing the results of the medical exams. You should also receive a copy of this opinion.

VII. OBSERVATION OF MONITORING

Your employer is required to monitor your exposure to coke oven emissions and you are entitled to observe the monitoring procedure. You are entitled to receive an explanation of the measurement procedure, observe the steps taken in the measurement procedure, and to record the results obtained. When the monitoring procedure is taking place in an area where respirators or personal protective clothing and equipment are required to be worn, you must also be provided with and must wear the protective clothing and equipment.

VIII. ACCESS TO RECORDS

You or your representative are entitled to records of your exposure to coke oven emissions upon request to your employer. Your medical examination records can be furnished to your physician upon request to your employer.

IX. TRAINING AND EDUCATION

Additional information on all of these items plus training as to hazards of coke oven emissions and the engineering and work practice controls associated with your job will also be provided by your employer.

APPENDIX B—INDUSTRIAL HYGIENE AND MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE GUIDELINES

I. INDUSTRIAL HYGIENE GUIDELINES

A. *Sampling.* (Benzene-Soluble Fraction Total Particulate Matter).

Samples collected should be full shift (at least 7-hour) samples. Sampling should be done using a personal sampling pump with pulsation damper at a flow rate of 2 liters per minute. Samples should be collected on 0.8 micrometer pore size silver membrane filters (37 mm diameter) preceded by Gelman glass fiber type A-E filters encased in three-piece plastic (polystyrene) field monitor cassettes. The cassette face cap should be on and the plug removed. The rotameter should be checked every hour to ensure that proper flow rates are maintained.

A minimum of three full-shift samples should be collected for each job classification on each battery, at least one from each shift. If disparate results are obtained for particular job classification, sampling should be repeated. It is advisable to sample each shift on more than one day to account for environmental variables (wind, precipitation, etc.) which may affect sampling. Differences in exposures among different work shifts may indicate a need to improve work practices on a particular shift. Sampling results from different shifts for each job classification should not be averaged. Multiple samples from the same shift on each battery may be used to calculate an average exposure for a particular job classification.

B. *Analysis.*

1. All extraction glassware is cleaned with dichromic acid cleaning solution, rinsed with tap water, then dionized water, acetone, and allowed to dry completely. The glassware is rinsed with nanograde benzene before use. The Teflon cups are cleaned with benzene then with acetone.

2. Pre-weigh the 2 ml Teflon cups to one hundredth of a milligram (0.01 mg) on a autobalance AD 2 Tare weight of the cups is about 50 mg.

3. Place the silver membrane filter and glass fiber filter into a 15 ml test tube.

4. Extract with 5 ml of benzene for five mintues in an ultrasonic cleaner.

5. Filter the extract in 15 ml medium glass fritted funnels.

6. Rinse test tube and filters with two 1.5 ml aliquots of benzine and filter through the fritted glass funnel.

7. Collect the extract and two rinses in a 10 ml Kontes graduated evaporative concentrator.

8. Evaporate down to 1 ml while rinsing the sides with benzene.

9. Pipet 0.5 ml into the Teflon cup and evaporate to dryness in a vacuum oven at 40° C for 3 hours.

10. Weigh the Teflon cup and the weight gain is due to the benzene soluable residue in half the Sample.

II. MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE GUIDELINES

A. *General.*

The minimum requirements for the medical examination for coke oven workers are given in paragraph (j) of the standard.

The initial examination is to be provided to all coke oven workers who work at least 30 days in the regulated area. The examination includes at 14" × 17" posterior-anterior chest x-ray and a ILO/UC rating to assure some standardization of x-ray reading, pulmonary function tests (FVC and FEV 1.0), weight, urinalysis, skin examination and a sputum and urinary cytologic examination. These tests are to serve as the baseline for comparing the employee's future test results. Periodic exams include all the elements of the initial exams except that the cytologic tests need be performed only on those employees who are 45 years of age or older or who have worked for 5 or more years in the related area; periodic exams are to be performed semiannually for this group instead of annually. The examination contents are minimum requirements, additional tests such as lateral and oblique x-rays or additional pulmonary function tests may be performed if deemed necessary.

B. *Pulmonary function tests.*

Pulmonary function tests should be performed in a manner which minimizes subject and operator bias. There has been shown to be learning effects with regard to the results obtained from certain tests, such as FEV 1.0. Best results can be obtained by multiple trials for each subject. The best of three trials or the average of the last three of five trials may be used in obtaining reliable results. The type of equipment used (manufacturer, model, etc.) should be recorded with the results as reliability and accuracy varies and such information may be important in the evaluation of test results. Care should be exercised to obtain the best possible testing equipment.

C. *Sputum cytology.*

Sputum can be collected by aerosol inhalation during the medical exam or by spontaneous early morning cough at home. Sputum is induced by transoral inhalation of an aerosolized solution of eight per cent (8%) sodium chloride in water. After inhaling as few as three to five breaths the subject usually yields an adequate sputum specimen. A minimum of three samples should be collected by the subject at home. All sputum should be collected directly into sixty per cent (60%) alcohol.

Scientific evidence suggests that chest x-rays and sputum cytology should be used together as screening tests for lung cancer in high risk populations, such as coke oven workers. The tests are to be performed every six months on workers who are 45 years of age or older or have worked in the regulated area for 5 or more years. Since the tests seem to be complementary, it may be advantageous to alternate the test procedures. For instance, chest x-rays could be obtained in June and December and sputum cytologys should be obtained in March and September. Facilities for providing necessary diagnostic investigation should be readily available as well as chest physicians, surgeons, radiologists, pathologists, and immunotherapists to provide any necessary treatment services.

1910.1043—COTTON DUST

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section, in its entirety, applies to the control of employee exposure to cotton dust in all workplaces where employees engage in yarn manufacturing, engage in slashing and weaving operations, or work in waste houses for textile operations.

(2) This section does not apply to the handling or processing of woven or knitted materials; to maritime operations covered by 29 CFR Parts 1915 and 1918; to harvesting or ginning of cotton; or to the construction industry.

(3) Only paragraphs (h) Medical surveillance, (k)(2)-(4) Recordkeeping—Medical Records, and Appendices B, C and D of this section apply in all work places where employees exposed to cotton dust engage in cottonseed processing or waste processing operations.

(4) This section applies to yarn manufacturing and slashing and weaving operations exclusively using washed cotton (as defined by paragraph (n) of this section) only to the extent specified by paragraph (n) of this section.

(5) This section, in its entirety, applies to the control of all employees exposure to the cotton dust generated in the preparation of washed cotton from opening until the cotton is thoroughly wetted.

(6) This section does not apply to knitting, classing or warehousing operations except that employers with these operations, if requested by NIOSH, shall grant NIOSH access to their employees and workplaces for exposure monitoring and medical examinations for purposes of a health study to be performed by NIOSH on a sampling basis.

(b) Definitions. For the purpose of this section:

"Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

"Blow down" means the general cleaning of a room or a part of a room by the use of compressed air.

"Blow off" means the use of compressed air for cleaning of short duration and usually for a specific machine or any portion of a machine.

"Cotton dust" means dust present in the air during the handling or processing of cotton, which may contain a mixture of many substances including ground up plant matter, fiber, bacteria, fungi, soil, pesticides, non-cotton plant matter and other contaminants which may have accumulated with the cotton during the growing, harvesting and subsequent processing or storage periods. Any dust present during the handling and processing of cotton through the weaving or knitting of fabrics, and dust present in other operations or manufacturing processes using raw or waste cotton fibers or cotton fiber byproducts from textile mills are considered cotton dust within this definition. Lubricating oil mist associated with weaving operations is not considered cotton dust.

"Director" means the Director of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or designee.

"Equivalent Instrument" means a cotton dust sampling device that meets the vertical elutriator equivalency requirements as described in paragraph (d)(1)(iii) of this section.

"Lint-free respirable cotton dust" means particles of cotton dust of approximately 15 micrometers or less aerodynamic equivalent diameter.

"Vertical elutriator cotton dust sampler" or "vertical elutriator" means a dust sampler which has a particle size cut-off at approximately 15 micrometers aerodynamic equivalent diameter when operating at the flow rate of 7.4 ± 0.2 liters of air per minute.

"Waste processing" means waste recycling (sorting, blending, cleaning and willowing) and garnetting.

"Yarn manufacturing" means all textile mill operations from opening to, but not including, slashing and weaving.

(c) Permissible exposure limits and action levels.

(1) Permissible exposure limits.

(i) The employer shall assure that no employee who is exposed to cotton dust in yarn manufacturing and cotton washing operations is exposed to airborne concentrations of lint-free respirable cotton dust greater than 200 $\mu g/m^3$ mean concentration, averaged over an eight-hour period, as measured be a vertical elutriator or an equivalent instrument.

(ii) The employer shall assure that no employee who is exposed to cotton dust in textile mill waste house operations or is exposed in yarn manufacturing to dust from "lower grade washed cotton" as defined in paragraph (n)(5) of this section is exposed to airborne concentrations of lint-free respirable cotton dust greater than 500 $\mu g/m^3$ mean concentration, averaged over an eight-hour period, as measured by a vertical elutriator or an equivalent instrument.

(iii) The employer shall assure that no employee who is exposed to cotton dust in the textile processes known as slashing and weaving is exposed to airborne concentrations of lint-free respirable cotton dust greater than 750 $\mu g/m^3$ mean concentration, averaged over an eight hour period, as measured by a vertical elutriator or an equivalent instrument.

(2) Action levels.

(i) The action level for yarn manufacturing and cotton washing operations is an airborne concentration of lint-free respirable cotton dust of 100 $\mu g/m^3$ mean concentration, averaged over an eight-hour period, as measured by a vertical elutriator or an equivalent instrument.

(ii) The action level for waste houses for textile operations is an airborne concentration of lint-free respirable cotton dust of 250 $\mu g/m^3$ mean concentration, averaged over an eight-hour period, as measured by a vertical elutriator or an equivalent instrument.

(iii) The action level for the textile processes known as slashing and weaving is an airborne concentration of lint-free respirable cotton dust of 375 $\mu g/m^3$ mean concentration, averaged over an eight-hour period, as measured by a vertical elutriator or an equivalent instrument.

(d) Exposure monitoring and measurement.

(1) General.

(i) For the purposes of this section, employee exposure is that exposure which would occur if the employee were not using a respirator.

(ii) The sampling device to be used shall be either the vertical elutriator cotton dust sampler or an equivalent instrument.

(iii) If an alternative to the vertical elutriator cotton dust sampler is used, the employer shall establish equivalency by reference to an OSHA opinion or by documenting, based on data developed by the employer or supplied by the manufacturer, that the alternative sampling devices meets the following criteria:

(a) It collects respirable particulates in the same range as the vertical elutriator (approximately 15 microns);

(b) Replicate exposure data used to establish equivalency are collected in side-by-side field and laboratory comparisons; and

(c) A minimum of 100 samples over the range of 0.5 to 2 times the permissible exposure limit are collected, and 90% of these samples have an accuracy range of plus or minus 25 percent of the vertical elutriator reading with a 95% confidence level as demonstrated by a statistically valid protocol. (An acceptable protocol for demonstrating equivalency is described in Appendix E of this section.)

(iv) OSHA will issue a written opinion stating that an instrument is equivalent to a vertical elutriator cotton dust sampler if:

(a) A manufacturer or employer requests an opinion in writing and supplies the following information:

(1) Sufficient test data to demonstrate that the instrument meets the requirements specified in this paragraph and the protocol specified in Appendix E of this section;

(2) Any other relevant information about the instrument and its testing requested by OSHA; and

(3) A certification by the manufacturer or employer that the information supplied is accurate; and

(b) If OSHA finds, based on information submitted about the instrument, that the instrument meets the requirements for equivalency specified by paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Initial monitoring. Each employer who has a place of employment within the scope of paragraph (a)(1), (a)(4), or (a)(5) of this section shall conduct monitoring by obtaining measurements which are representative of the exposure of all employees to airborne concentrations of lint-free respirable cotton dust over an eight-hour period. The sampling program shall include at least one determination during each shift for each work area.

(3) Periodic monitoring.

(i) If the initial monitoring required by paragraph (d)(2) of this section or any subsequent monitoring reveals employee exposure to be at or below the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall repeat the monitoring for those employees at least annually.

(ii) If the initial monitoring required by paragraph (d)(2) of this section or any subsequent monitoring reveals employee exposure to be above the PEL, the employer shall repeat the monitoring for those employees at least every six months.

(iii) Whenever there has been a production, process, or control change which may result in new or additional exposure to cotton dust, or whenever the employer has any other reason to suspect an increase in employee exposure, the employer shall repeat the monitoring and measurements for those employees affected by the change or increase.

(4) Employee notification.

(i) Within twenty working days after the receipt of monitoring results, the employer shall notify each employee in writing of the exposure measurements which represent that employee's exposure.

(ii) Whenever the results indicate that the employee's exposure exceeds the applicable permissible exposure limit specified in paragraph (c) of this section, the employer shall include in the written notice a statement that the permissible exposure limit was exceeded and a description of the corrective action taken to reduce exposure below the permissible exposure limit.

(e) Methods of compliance.

(1) Engineering and work practice controls. The employer shall institute engineering and work practice controls to reduce and maintain employee exposure to cotton dust at or below the permissible exposure limit specified in paragraph (c) of this section, except to the extent that the employer can establish that such controls are not feasible.

(2) Whenever feasible engineering and work practice controls are not sufficient to reduce employee exposure to or below the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall nonetheless institute these controls to reduce exposure to the lowest feasible level, and shall supplement these controls with the use of respirators which shall comply with the provisions of paragraph (f) of this section.

(3) Compliance program.

(i) Where the most recent exposure monitoring data indicates that any employee is exposed to cotton dust levels greater than the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall establish and implement a written program sufficient to reduce exposures to or below the permissible exposure limit solely by means of engineering controls and work practices as required by paragraph (e)(1) of this section.

(ii) The written program shall include at least the following:

(a) A description of each operation or process resulting in employee exposure to cotton dust at levels greater than the PEL;

(b) Engineering plans and other studies used to determine the controls for each process;

(c) A report of the technology considered in meeting the permissible exposure limit;

(d) Monitoring data obtained in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section;

(e) A detailed schedule for development and implementation of engineering and work practice controls, including exposure levels projected to be achieved by such controls;

(f) Work practice program; and

(g) Other relevant information.

(iii) The employer's schedule as set forth in the compliance program, shall project completion of the implementation of the compliance program no later than March 27, 1984 or as soon as possible if monitoring after March 27, 1984 reveals exposures over the PEL, except as provided in paragraph (m)(2)(ii)(B) of this section.

(iv) The employer shall complete the steps set forth in his program by the dates in the schedule.

(v) Written programs shall be submitted, upon request, to the Assistant Secretary and the Director, and shall be available at the worksite for examination and copying by the Assistant Secretary, the Director, and any affected employee or their designated representatives.

(vi) The written program required under paragraph (e)(3) of this section shall be revised and updated when necessary to reflect the current status of the program and current exposure levels.

(4) Mechanical ventilation. When mechanical ventilation is used to control exposure, measurements which demonstrate the effectiveness of the system to control exposure, such as capture velocity, duct velocity, or static pressure shall be made at reasonable intervals.

(f) Use of respirators.

(1) General. Where the use of respirators is required under this section, the employer shall provide, at no cost to the employee, and assure the use of respirators which comply with the requirements of this paragraph (f). Respirators shall be used in the following circumstances:

(i) During the time periods necessary to install or implement feasible engineering controls and work practice controls;

(ii) During maintenance and repair activities in which engineering and work practice controls are not feasible;

(iii) In work situations where feasible engineering and work practice controls are not yet sufficient to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limits;

(iv) In operations specified under paragraph (g)(1) of this section; and

(v) Whenever an employee requests a respirator.

(2) Respirator selection.

(i) Where respirators are required under this section, the employer shall select the appropriate respirator from Table I below and shall assure that the employee uses the respirator provided.

TABLE I

Cotton dust concentration	Required respirator
Not greater than:	
(a) 5 × the applicable permissible exposure limit (PEL).	A disposable respirator with a particulate filter.
(b) 10 × the applicable PEL.	A quarter or half-mask respirator, other than a disposable respirator, equipped with particulate filters.
(c) 100 × the applicable PEL.	A full facepiece respirator equipped with high-efficiency particulate filters.
(d) Greater than 100 × the applicable PEL.	A powered air-purifying respirator equipped with high-efficiency particulate filters.

NOTES

1. A disposable respirator means the filter element is an inseparable part of the respirator.

2. Any respirators permitted at higher environmental concentrations can be used at lower concentrations.

3. Self-contained breathing apparatus are not required respirators but are permitted respirators.

4. Supplied air respirators are not required but are permitted under the following conditions: Cotton dust concentration not greater than 10x the PEL—Any supplied air respirator; not greater than 100x the PEL—Any supplied air respirator; with full facepiece, helmet or hood; greater than 100x the PEL—A supplied air respirator operated in positive pressure mode.

(ii) The employer shall select respirators from those tested and approved for protection against dust by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11.

(iii) Whenever respirators are required by this section for concentrations not greater than 100 × the applicable permissible exposure limit, the employer shall, upon the request of the employee, provide a powered air purifying respirator with a high efficiency particulate filter in lieu of the respirator specified in paragraphs (a), (b), or (c) of Table I.

(iv) Whenever a physician determines that an employee who works in an area in which the dust level exceeds the PEL is unable to wear any form of respirator, including a powered air purifying respirator, the employee shall be given the opportunity to transfer to another position which is available or which later becomes available having a dust level at or below the PEL. The employer shall assure that an employee who is transferred from an area in which the dust level exceeds the PEL due to an inability to wear a respirator suffers no reduction in current wage rate or other benefits as a result of the transfer.

(3) Respirator program. The employer shall institute a respirator program in accordance with § 1910.134 of this part.

(4) Respirator usage.

(i) The employer shall assure that the respirator used by each employee exhibits minimum facepiece leakage and that the respirator is fitted properly.

(ii) The employer shall allow each employee who uses a filter respirator, to change the filter elements whenever an increase in breathing resistance is detected by the employee. The employer shall maintain an adequate supply of filter elements for this purpose.

(iii) The employer shall allow employees who wear respirators to wash their faces and respirator face pieces to prevent skin irritation associated with respirator use.

(g) Work practices. Each employer shall, regardless of the level of employee exposure, immediately establish and implement a written program of work practices which shall minimize cotton dust exposure. The following shall be included were applicable:

(1) Compressed air "blow down" cleaning shall be prohibited where alternative means are feasible. Where compressed air is used for cleaning, the employees performing the "blow down" or "blow off" shall wear suitable respirators. Employees whose presence is not required to perform "blow down" or "blow off" shall be required to leave the area affected by the "blow down" or "blow off" during this cleaning operation.

(2) Cleaning of clothing or floors with compressed air shall be prohibited.

(3) Floor sweeping shall be performed with a vacuum or with methods designed to minimize dispersal of dust.

(4) In areas where employees are exposed to concentrations of cotton dust greater than the permissible exposure limit, cotton and cotton waste shall be stacked, sorted, baled, dumped, removed or otherwise handled by mechanical means, except where the employer can show that it is infeasible to do so. Where infeasible, the method used for handling cotton and cotton waste shall be the method which reduces exposure to the lowest level feasible.

(h) Medical surveillance.

(1) General.

(i) Each employer covered by the standard shall institute a program of medical surveillance for all employees exposed to cotton dust.

(ii) The employer shall assure that all medical examinations and procedures are performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician and are provided without cost to the employee.

(iii) Persons other than licensed physicians, who administer the pulmonary function testing required by this section shall have completed a NIOSH-approved training course in spirometry.

(2) Initial examinations. The employer shall provide medical surveillance to each employee who is or may be exposed to cotton dust. For new employees, this examination shall be provided prior to initial assignment. The medical surveillance shall include at least the following:

(i) A medical history;

(ii) The standardized questionnaire contained in Appendix B; and

(iii) A pulmonary function measurement, including a determination of forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV_1), the FEV_1/FVC ratio, and the percentage that the measured values of FEV_1 and FVC differ from the predicted values, using the standard tables in Appendix C. These determinations shall be made for each employee before the employee enters the workplace on the first day of the work week, preceded by at least 35 hours of no exposure to cotton dust. The tests shall be repeated during the shift, no less than 4 and no more than 10 hours after the beginning of the work shift; and, in any event, no more than one hour after cessation of exposure. Such exposure shall be typical of the employee's usual workplace exposure. The predicted FVE_1, FEV, and FVC for blacks shall be multiplied by 0.85 to adjust for ethnic differences.

(iv) Based upon the questionnaire results, each employee shall be graded according to Schilling's byssinosis classification system.

(3) Periodic examinations.

(i) The employer shall provide at least annual medical surveillance for all employees exposed to cotton dust above the action level in yarn manufacturing, slashing and weaving, cotton washing and waste house operations. The employer shall provide medical surveillance at least every two years for all employees exposed to cotton dust at or below the action level, for all employees exposed to cotton dust from washed cotton (except from washed cotton defined in paragraph (n)(3) of this section), and for all employees exposed to cotton dust in cottonseed processing and waste processing operations. Periodic medical surveillance shall include at least an update of the medical history, standardized questionnaire (App. B-111), Schilling byssinosis grade, and the pulmonary function measurements in paragraph (h)(2)(iii) of this section.

(ii) Medical surveillance as required in paragraph (h)(3)(i) of this section shall be provided every six months for all employees in the following categories:

(a) An FEV_1 of greater than 80 percent of the predicted value, but with an FEV_1 decrement of 5 percent or 200 ml. on a first working day;

(b) An FEV_1 of less than 80 percent of the predicted value; or

(c) Where, in the opinion of the physician, any significant change in questionnaire findings, pulmonary function results, or other diagnostic tests have occurred.

(iii) An employee whose FEV_1 is less than 60 percent of the predicted value shall be referred to a physician for a detailed pulmonary examination.

(iv) A comparison shall be made between the current examination results and those of previous examinations and a determination made by the physician as to whether there has been a significant change.

(4) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide the following information to the examination physician:

(i) A copy of this regulation and its Appendices;

(ii) A description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposure;

(iii) The employee's exposure level or anticipated exposure level;

(iv) A description of any personal protective equipment used or to be used; and

(v) Information from previous medical examinations of the affected employee which is not readily available to the examining physician.

(5) Physician's written opinion.

(i) The employer shall obtain and furnish the employee with a copy of a written opinion from the examining physician containing the following:

(a) The results of the medical examination and tests including the FEV_1, FVC, AND FEV_1/FVC ratio;

(b) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical conditions which would place the employee at increased risk of material impairment of the employee's health from exposure to cotton dust;

(c) The physician's recommended limitations upon the employee's exposure to cotton dust or upon the employee's use of respirators including a determination of whether an employee can wear a negative pressure respirator, and where the employee cannot, a determination of the employee's ability to wear a powered air purifying respirator; and,

(d) A statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and any medical conditions which require further examination or treatment.

(ii) The written opinion obtained by the employer shall not reveal specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure.

(i) Employee education and training.

(1) Training program.

(i) The employer shall provide a training program for all employees exposed to cotton dust and shall assure that each employee is informed of the following:

(a) The acute and long term health hazards associated with exposure to cotton dust;

(b) The names and descriptions of jobs and processes which could result in exposure to cotton dust at or above the PEL.

(c) The measures, including work practices required by paragraph (g) of this section, necessary to protect the employee from exposures in excess of the permissible exposure limit;

(d) The purpose, proper use and limitations of respirators required by paragraph (f) of this section;

(e) The purpose for and a description of the medical surveillance program required by paragraph (h) of this section and other information which will aid exposed employees in understanding the hazards of cotton dust exposure; and

(f) The contents of this standard and its appendices.

(ii) The training program shall be provided prior to initial assignment and shall be repeated annually for each employee exposed to cotton dust, when job assignments or work processes change and when employee performance indicates a need for retraining.

(2) Access to training materials.

(i) Each employer shall post a copy of this section with its appendices in a public location at the workplace, and shall, upon request, make copies available to employees.

(ii) The employer shall provide all materials relating to the employee training and information program to the Assistant Secretary and the Director upon request.

(j) Signs. The employer shall post the following warning sign in each work area where the permissible exposure limit for cotton dust is exceeded:

WARNING

COTTON DUST WORK AREA

MAY CAUSE ACUTE OR DELAYED

LUNG INJURY

(BYSSINOSIS)

RESPIRATORS

REQUIRED IN THIS AREA

(k) Recordkeeping.

(1) Exposure measurements.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of all measurements required by paragraph (d) of this section.

(ii) The record shall include:

(a) A log containing the items listed in paragraph IV (a) of Appendix A, and the dates, number, duration, and results of each of the samples taken, including a description of the procedure used to determine representative employee exposure;

(b) The type of protective devices worn, if any, and length of time worn; and

(c) The names, social security numbers, job classifications, and exposure levels of employees whose exposure the measurement is intended to represent.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for at least 20 years.

(2) Medical surveillance.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate medical record for each employee subject to medical surveillance required by paragraph (h) of this section.

(ii) The record shall include:

(a) The name and social security number and description of the duties of the employee;

(b) A copy of the medical examination results including the medical history, questionnaire response, results of all tests, and the physician's recommendation;

(c) A copy of the physician's written opinion;

(d) Any employee medical complaints related to exposure to cotton dust;

(e) A copy of this standard and its appendices, except that the employer may keep one copy of the standard and the appendices for all employees, provided that he references the standard and appendices in the medical surveillance record of each employee; and

(f) A copy of the information provided to the physician as required by paragraph (h)(4) of this section.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for at least 20 years.

(3) Availability.

(i) The employer shall make all records required to be maintained by paragraph (k) of this section available to the Assistant Secretary and the Director for examination and copying.

(ii) Employee exposure measurement records and employee medical records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20(a)-(e) and (g)-(i).

(4) Transfer of records.

(i) Whenever the employer ceases to do business, the successor employer shall receive and retain all records required to be maintained by paragraph (k) of this section.

(ii) Whenever the employer ceases to do business, and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records for the prescribed period, these records shall be transmitted to the Director.

(iii) At the expiration of the retention period for the records required to be maintained by this section, the employer shall notify the Director at least 3 months prior to the disposal of such records and shall transmit those records to the Director if the Director requests them within that period.

(iv) The employer shall also comply with any additional requirements involving transfer of records set forth in 29 CFR 1910.20(h).

(l) Observation of monitoring.

(1) The employer shall provide affected employees or their designated representatives an opportunity to observe any measuring or monitoring of employee exposure to cotton dust conducted pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Whenever observation of the measuring or monitoring of employee exposure to cotton dust requires entry into an area where the use of personal protective equipment is required, the employer shall provide the observer with and assure the use of such equipment and shall require the observer to comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(3) Without interfering with the measurement, observers shall be entitled to:

(i) An explanation of the measurement procedures;

(ii) An opportunity to observe all steps related to the measurement of airborne concentrations of cotton dust performed at the place of exposure; and

(iii) An opportunity to record the results obtained.

(m) Effective date.

(1) General. This section is effective March 27, 1980, except as otherwise provided below.

(2) Startup dates.

(i) Initial monitoring. The initial monitoring required by paragraph (d)(2) of this section shall be completed as soon as possible but no later than March 27, 1980.

(ii) Methods of compliance: engineering and work practice controls.

(a) The engineering and work practice controls required by paragraph (e) of this section shall be implemented no later than March 27, 1984 except as set forth in paragraph (m)(2)(ii)(b) of this section.

(b) The engineering and work practice controls required by paragraph (e) of this section shall be implemented no later than March 27, 1986, for ring spinning operations (including only ring spinning and winding, twisting, spooling, beaming and warping following ring spinning), where the operations meet the following criteria:

(1) The weight of the yarn being run is 100 percent cotton and the average yarn count by weight is 18 or below;

(2) The average weight of the yarn run is 80 percent or more cotton and the average yarn count by weight is 16 or below; or

(3) The average weight of the yarn being run is 50 percent or more cotton and the average yarn count by weight is 14 or below.

(c) When the provisions of paragraph (m)(2)(ii)(B) of this section are being relied upon, the following definitions shall apply:

(1) The average cotton content shall be determined by dividing the total weight of cotton in the yarns being run by the total weight of all the yarns being run in the relevant work area.

(2) The average yarn count shall be determined by multiplying the yarn count times the pounds of each particular yarn being run to get the "total hank" for each of the yarns being run in the relevant area. The "total hank" values for all of the yarns being run should then be summed and divided by the total pounds of yarn being run, to produce the average yarn count number for all the yarns being run in the relevant work area.

(d) Where the provisions of paragraph (m)(2)(ii)(b) of this section are being relied upon, the employer shall update the employer's compliance plan no later than February 13, 1986 to indicate the steps being taken to reduce cotton dust levels to 200 $\mu g/m^3$ through the use of engineering and work practice controls by March 27, 1986.

(e) Where the provisions of paragraph (m)(2)(ii)(b) of the section are being relied upon, the employer shall maintain airborne concentrations of cotton dust below 1000 $\mu g/$MG53 mean concentration averaged over an eight-hour period measured by a vertical elutriator or a method of equivalent accuracy and precision with engineering and work practice controls and shall maintain the permissible exposure limit specified by paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section with any combination of engineering controls, work practice controls and respirators.

(iii) Compliance program. The compliance program required by paragraph (e)(3) of this section shall be established no later than March 27, 1981.

(iv) Respirators. The respirators required by paragraph (f) of this section shall be provided no later than April 27, 1980.

(v) Work practices. The work practices required by paragraph (g) of this section shall be implemented no later than June 27, 1980.

(vi) Medical surveillance. The medical surveillance required by paragraph (h) of this section shall be completed no later than March 27, 1981 for the textile industry and no later than June 13, 1986 for the cotton seed processing and waste processing industry.

(vii) Employee education and training. The initial education and training required by paragraph (i) of this section shall be completed as soon as possible but no later than June 27, 1980.

(3) Amendments. The amendments to this section published on December 13, 1985 become effective on February 11, 1986. If the amendments are not in effect because of stays of enforcement or judicial decisions, the provisions published in 29 CFR Parts 1900 to 1910, received as of July 1, 1985 are effective.

(n) Washed Cotton.

(1) Exemptions. Cotton, after it has been washed by the processes described in this paragraph, is exempt from all or parts of this section as specified if the requirements of this paragraph are met.

(2) Initial requirements.

(i) In order for an employer to qualify as exempt or partially exempt from this standard for operations using washed cotton, the employer must demonstrate that the cotton was washed in a facility which is open to inspection by the Assistant Secretary and the employer must provide sufficient accurate documentary evidence to demonstrate that the washing methods utilized meet the requirements of this paragraph.

(ii) An employer who handles or processes cotton which has been washed in a facility not under the employer's control and claims an exemption or partial exemption under this paragraph, must obtain from the cotton washer and make available at the worksite, to the Assistant Secretary, to any affected employee, or to their designated representative the following:

(a) A certification by the washer of the cotton of the grade of cotton, the type of washing process, and that the batch meets the requirements of this paragraph:

(b) Sufficient accurate documentation by the washer of the cotton grades and washing process; and

(c) An authorization by the washer that the Assistant Secretary or the Director may inspect the washer's washing facilities and documentation of the process.

(3) Medical and dyed cotton. Medical grade (USP) cotton, cotton that has been scoured, bleached and dyed, and mercerized yarn shall be exempt from all provisions of this standard.

(4) Higher grade washed cotton. The handling or processing of cotton classes as "low middling light spotted or better" which has been washed:

(i) On a continuous batt system or a rayon rinse system;

(ii) With water;

(iii) At a temperature of no less than 60° C;

(iv) With a water-to-fiber ratio of no less than 40:1; and

(v) With bacterial levels in the wash water controlled to limit bacterial contamination of the cotton shall be exempt from all provisions of the standard except the requirements of paragraphs (h) Medical Surveillance, (k)(2)-(4) Recordkeeping-Medical Records, and Appendices B, C, and D of this section.

(5) Lower grade washed cotton. The handling and processing of cotton of grades lower than "low middling light spotted," that has been washed as specified in paragraph (n)(4) of this section and has also been bleached, shall be exempt from all provisions of the standard except the requirements of paragraphs (c)(1)(ii) Permissible Exposure Limit, (d) Exposure Monitoring, (h) Medical Surveillance, (k) Recordkeeping, and Appendices B, C and D of this section.

(6) Mixed grades of washed cotton. If more than one grade of washed cotton is being handled or processed together, the requirements of the grade with the most stringent exposure limit, medical and monitoring requirements shall be followed.

(o) Appendices.

(1) Appendices B, C, and D of this section are incorporated as part of this section and the contents of these appendices are mandatory.

(2) Appendix A of this section contains information which is not intended to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed or to detract from any existing obligations.

(3) Appendix E of this section is a protocol which may be followed in the validation of alternative measuring devices as equivalent to the vertical elutriator cotton dust sampler. Other protocols may be used if it is demonstrated that they are statistically valid, meet the requirements in paragraph (d)(1)(iii) of this section, and are appropriate for demonstrating equivalency.

APPENDIX A—AIR SAMPLING AND ANALYTICAL PROCEDURES FOR DETERMINING CONCENTRATIONS OF COTTON DUST

I. SAMPLING LOCATIONS

The sampling procedures must be designed so that samples of the actual dust concentrations are collected accurately and consistently and reflect the concentrations of dust at the place and time of sampling. Sufficient number of 6-hour area samples in each distinct work area of the plant should be collected at locations which provide representative samples of air to which the worker is exposed. In order to avoid filter overloading, sampling time may be shortened when sampling in dusty areas. Samples in each work area should be gathered simultaneously or sequentially during a normal operating period. The daily time-weighted average (TWA) exposure of each worker can then be determined by using the following formula:

$$\frac{\text{Summation of hours spent in each location and the dust concentration in that location.}}{\text{Total hours exposed}}$$

A time-weighted average concentration should be computed for each worker and properly logged and maintained on file for review.

II. SAMPLING EQUIPMENT

(a) Sampler. The instrument selected for monitoring is the Lumsden-Lynch vertical elutriator. It should operate at a flow rate of 7.4±0.2 liters/minute.

The samplers should be cleaned prior to sampling. The pumps should be monitored during sampling.

(b) Filter Holder. A three-piece cassette constructed of polystyrene designed to hold a 37-mm diameter filter should be used. Care must be exercised to insure that an adequate seal exists between elements of the cassette.

(c) Filers and Support Pads. The membrane filters used should be polyvinyl chloride with a 5-um pore size and 37-mm diameter. A support pad, commonly called a backup pad, should be used under the filter membrane in the field monitor cassette.

(d) Balance. A balance sensitive to 10 micrograms should be used.

(e) Monitoring equipment for use in Class III hazardous locations must be approved for use in such locations, in accordance with the requirements of the OSHA electrical standards in Subpart S of Part 1910.

[45 F.R. 67340, October 10, 1980.]

III. INSTRUMENT CALIBRATION PROCEDURE

Samplers shall be calibrated when first received from the factory, after repair, and after receiving any abuse. The samplers should be calibrated in the laboratory both before they are used in the field and after they have been used to collect a large number of field samples. The primary standard, such as a spirometer or other standard calibrating instruments such as a wet test meter or a large bubble meter or dry gas meter, should be used. Instructions for calibration with the wet test meter follow. If another calibration device is selected, equivalent procedures should be used:

(a) Level wet test meter. Check the water level which should just touch the calibration point at the left side of the meter. If water level is low, add water 1–2° F. warmer than room temperature of till point. Run the meter for 30 minutes before calibration;

(b) Place the polyvinyl chloride membrane filter in the filter cassette;

(c) Assemble the calibration sampling train;

(d) Connect the wet test meter to the train.

The pointer on the meter should run clockwise and a pressure drop of not more than 1.0 inch of water indicated. If the pressure drop is greater than 1.0, disconnect and check the system;

(e) Operate the system for ten minutes before starting the calibration;

(f) Check the vacuum gauge on the pump to insure that the pressure drop across the orifice exceeds 17 inches of mercury;

(g) Record the following on calibration data sheets:

(1) Wet test meter reading, start and finish;

(2) Elapsed time, start and finish (at least two minutes);

(3) Pressure drop at manometer;

(4) Air temperature;

(5) Barometric pressure; and

(6) Limiting orifice number;

(h) Calculate the flow rate and compare against the flow of 7.4±0.2 liters/minute. If flow is between these limits, perform calibration again, average results, and record orifice number and flow rate. If flow is not within these limits, discard or modify orifice and repeat procedure;

(i) Record the name of the person performing the calibration, the date, serial number of the wet test meter, and the number of the critical orifices being calibrated.

IV. SAMPLING PROCEDURE

(a) Sampling data sheets should include a log of:

(1) The date of the sample collection;

(2) The time of sampling;

(3) The location of the sampler;

(4) The sampler serial number;

(5) The cassette number;

(6) The time of starting and stopping the sampling and the duration of sampling;

(7) The weight of the filter before and after sampling;

(8) The weight of dust collected (corrected for controls);

(9) The dust concentration measured;

(10) Other pertinent information; and

(11) Name of person taking sample

(b) Assembly of filter cassette should be as follows:

(1) Loosely assemble 3-piece cassette;

(2) Number cassette;

(3) Place absorbant pad in cassette;

(4) Weigh filter to an accuracy of 10 µg;

(5) Place filter in cassette;

(6) Record weight of filter in log, using cassette number for identification;

(7) Fully assemble cassette, using pressure to force parts tightly together;

(8) Install plugs top and bottom;

(9) Put shrink band on cassette, covering joint between center and bottom parts of cassette; and

(10) Set cassette aside until shrink band dries thoroughly.

(c) Sampling collection should be performed as follows:

(1) Clean lint out of the motor and elutriator;

(2) Install vertical elutriator in sampling locations specified above with inlet 4½ to 5½ feet from floor (breathing zone height);

(3) Remove top section of cassette;

(4) Install cassette to ferrule of elutriator.

(5) Tape cassette to ferrule with masking tape or similar material for air tight seal.

(6) Remove bottom plug of cassette and attach hose containing critical orifice;

(7) Start elutriator pump and check to see if gauge reads above 17 in. of Hg vacuum;

(8) Record starting time, cassette number, and sampler number;

(9) At end of sampling period stop pump and record time; and

(10) Controls with each batch of samples collected, two additional filter cassettes should be subjected to exactly the

same handling as the samples, except that they are not opened. These control filters should be weighed in the same manner as the sample filters.

Any difference in weight in the control filters would indicate that the procedure for handling sample filters may not be adequate and should be evaluated to ascertain the cause of the difference, whether and what necessary corrections must be made, and whether additional samples must be collected.

(d) Shipping. The cassette with samples should be collected, along with the appropriate number of blanks, and shipped to the analytical laboratory in a suitable container to prevent damage in transit.

(e) Weighing of the sample should be achieved as follows:

(1) Remove shrink band;

(2) Remove top and middle sections of cassette and botton plug;

(3) Remove filter from cassette and weigh to an accuracy of 10 μg; and

(4) Record weight in log against original weight

(f) Calculation of volume of air sampled should be determined as follows:

(1) From starting and stopping times of sampling period, determine length of time in minutes of sampling period; and

(2) Multiply sampling time in minutes by flow rate of critical orifice in liters per minute and divide by 1000 to find air quantity in cubic meters.

(g) Calculation of Dust Concentrations should be made as follows:

(1) Substract weight of clean filter from dirty filter and apply control correction to find actual weight of sample. Record this weight (in μg) in log; and

(2) Divide mass of sample in μg by air volume in cubic meters to find dust concentration in μg/m. Record in log.

APPENDIX B-I

RESPIRATORY QUESTIONNAIRE

A. IDENTIFICATION DATA

PLANT____________________ SOCIAL SECURITY NO.____________________

DAY MONTH (figures) YEAR (last 2 digits)

NAME____________________ (Surname) DATE OF INTERVIEW____________________

__________ __________ (First Names) DATE OF BIRTH____________________

ADDRESS____________________ AGE______(8,9) SEX___M______F___(10)

____________________ RACE ☐ W ☐ N ☐ IND. ☐ OTHER (11)

INTERVIEWER: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 (12)

WORK SHIFT: 1st__________ 2nd__________ 3rd__________(13) STANDING HEIGHT__________(14,15)

PRESENT WORK AREA WEIGHT__________(16,18)

If working in more than one specified work area, X area where most of the work shift is spent. If "other," but spending 25% of the work shift in one of the specified work areas, classify in that work area. If carding department employee, check area within that department where most of the work shift is spent (if in doubt, check "throughout"). For work areas such as spinning and weaving where many work rooms may be involved, be sure to check the specific work room to which employee is assigned — if he works in more than one work room within a department classify as 7 (all) for that department.

	Workroom Number	(19) Open	(20) Pick	Area	(21) Card #1	(22) #2	(23) Spin	(24) Wind	(25) Twist	(26) Spool	(27) Warp	(28) Slash	(29) Weave	(30) Other
AT RISK (cotton & cotton blend)	1			Cards										
	2			Draw										
	3			Comb										
	4			Rove										
	5			Thru Out										
	6													
	7 (all)													
Control (synthetic & wool)	8													
Ex-Worker (cotton)	9													

Use actual wording of each question. Put X in appropriate square after each question. When in doubt record 'No'.
When no square, circle appropriate answer.

B. COUGH

(on getting up)†
Do you usually cough first thing in the morning? ________ Yes ___ No ___ (31)
(Count a cough with first smoke or on "first going out of doors." Exclude clearing throat or a single cough.)

Do you usually cough during the day or at night? ________ Yes ___ No ___ (32)
(Ignore an occasional cough.)

If 'Yes' to either question (31-32):

Do you cough like this on most days for as much as three months a year? ________ Yes ___ No ___ (33)

Do you cough on any particular day of the week? Yes ___ No ___ (34)

(1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7)

If 'Yes': Which day? Mon. Tues. Wed. Thur. Fri. Sat Sun. (35)

C. PHLEGM or alternative word to suit local custom.

(on getting up)†
Do you usually bring up any phlegm from your chest first thing in the morning? (Count phlegm with the first smoke or on "first going out of doors." Exclude phlegm from the nose. Count swallowed phlegm.) ________ Yes ___ No ___ (36)

Do you usually bring up any phlegm from your chest during the day or at night? (Accept twice or more.) ________ Yes ___ No ___ (37)

If 'Yes' to either question (36) or (37):

Do you bring up phlegm like this on most days for as much as three months each year? ________ Yes ___ No ___ (38)

If 'Yes' to question (33) or (38):

(cough)
How long have you had this phlegm?
(Write in number of years

(1) ☐ 2 years or less
(2) ☐ More than 2 years-9 years
(3) ☐ 10-19 years
(4) ☐ 20+ years

†These words are for subjects who work at night

D. CHEST ILLNESSES

In the past three years, have you had a period of (increased) †cough and phlegm lasting for 3 weeks or more? ________ (40)

(1) ☐ No
(2) ☐ Yes, only one period
(3) ☐ Yes, two or more periods

†For subjects who usually have phlegm

During the past 3 years have you had any chest illness which has kept you off work, indoors at home or in bed? (For as long as one week, flu?) Yes ___ No ___ (41)

If 'Yes' to (41): Did you bring up (more) phlegm than usual in any of these illnesses? Yes ___ No ___ (42)

If 'Yes' to (42): During the past three years have you had:
Only one such illness with increased phlegm? (1) ☐ (43)
More than one such illness: (2) ☐ (44)

Br. Grade ________

E. TIGHTNESS

Does your chest ever feel tight or your breathing become difficult?__________Yes______No______(45)

Is your chest tight or your breathing difficult on any particular day of the week? (after a week or 10 days away from the mill)__________Yes______No______(46)

If 'Yes': Which day? Mon. (1) Sometimes (2) Always (3) Tues. (4) Wed. (5) Thur. (6) Fri. (7) Sat. (8) Sun. (47)

If 'Yes' Monday: At what time on Monday does your chest feel tight or your breathing difficult?
1 ☐ Before entering the mill (48)
2 ☐ After entering the mill

(Ask only if NO to Question (45)

In the past, has your chest ever been tight or your breathing difficult on any particular day of the week?__________Yes______No______(49)

If 'Yes': Which day? Mon. (1) Sometimes (2) Always (3) Tues. (4) Wed. (5) Thur. (6) Fri. (7) Sat. (8) Sun. (50)

F. BREATHLESSNESS

If disabled from walking by any condition other than heart or lung disease put "X" here and leave questions (52-60) unasked. ☐ (51)

Are you ever troubled by shortness of breath, when hurrying on the level or walking up a slight hill?__________Yes______No______(52)

If 'No', grade is 1. If 'Yes' proceed to next question

Do you get short of breath walking with other people at an ordinary pace on the level?__________Yes______No______(53)

If 'No', grade is 2. If 'Yes', proceed to next question

Do you have to stop for breath when walking at your own pace on the level?__________Yes______No______(54)

If 'No', grade is 3. If 'Yes', proceed to next question

Are you short of breath on washing or dressing?__________Yes______No______(55)

If 'No', grade is 4. If 'Yes', grade is 5.

Dyspnea Grd.__________(56)

ON MONDAYS:

Are you ever troubled by shortness of breath, when hurrying on the level or walking up a slight hill?__________Yes______No______(57)

If 'No', grade is 1. If 'Yes', proceed to next question

Do you get short of breath walking with other people at an ordinary pace on the level?__________Yes______No______(58)

If 'No', grade is 2. If 'Yes', proceed to next question

Do you have to stop for breath when walking at your own pace on the level?__________Yes______No______(59)

If 'No', grade is 3. If 'Yes', proceed to next question

Are you short of breath on washing or dressing?__________Yes______No______(60)

If 'No', grade is 4. If 'Yes', grade is 5

B. Grd.__________(61)

G. OTHER ILLNESSES AND ALLERGY HISTORY

Do you have a heart condition for which you are under a doctor's care? ______Yes ______ No ______ (62)

Have you ever had asthma? Yes No (63)

If 'Yes', did it begin: (1) ☐ Before age 30
(2) ☐ After age 30

If 'Yes' before 30: did you have asthma before ever going to work in a textile mill? ______Yes ______ No ______ (64)

Have you ever had hay fever or other allergies (other than above)? ______Yes ______ No ______ (65)

H. TOBACCO SMOKING*

Do you smoke?

Record 'Yes' if regular smoker up to one month ago. (Cigarettes, cigar or pipe) ______Yes ______ No ______ (66)

If 'No' to (63).

Have you ever smoked? (Cigarettes, cigars, pipe. Record 'No' if subject has never smoked as much as one cigarette a day, or 1 oz. of tobacco a month, for as long as one year.) ______Yes ______ No ______ (67)

If 'Yes' to (63) or (64); what have you smoked and for how many years? (Write in specific number of years in the appropriate square)

	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	
Years	(<5)	(5-9)	(10-14)	(15-19)	(20-24)	(25-29)	(30-34)	(35-39)	(>40)	
Cigarettes										(68)
Pipe										(69)
Cigars										(70)

If cigarettes, how many packs per day? (Write in number of cigarettes)
(1) ☐ less than 1/2 pack (71)
(2) ☐ 1/2 pack, but less than 1 pack
(3) ☐ 1 pack, but less than 1-1/2 packs
(4) ☐ 1-1/2 packs or more

Number of pack years: ______________________ (72,73)

If an ex-smoker (cigarettes, cigar or pipe), how long since you stopped? (Write in number of years) ______________________ (74)

(1) ☐ 0-1 year
(2) ☐ 1-4 years
(3) ☐ 5-9 years
(4) ☐ 10+ years

*Have you changed your smoking habits since last interview? If yes, specify what changes.

I. OCCUPATIONAL HISTORY**

Have you ever worked in: A foundry? (As long as one year) ______Yes ______ No ______ (75)

Stone or mineral mining, quarrying or processing? (As long as one year) ______Yes ______ No ______ (76)

Asbestos milling or processing? (Ever) ______Yes ______ No ______ (77)

Other dusts, fumes or smoke? If yes, specify: ______Yef ______ No ______ (78)

Type of exposure ______________________

Length of exposure ______________________

**Ask only on first interview.

At what age did you first go to work in a textile mill? (Write in specific age in appropriate square).

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	
<20	20-24	25-29	30-34	35-39	40+	(79)

When you first worked in a textile mill, did you work with (1) ☐ Cotton or cotton blend (80)
(2) ☐ Synthetic or wool

APPENDIX B-II

Respiratory Questionnaire
for
Non-Textile Workers for the
Cotton Industry

Identification No.

Interviewer Code

Location

Date of Interview

A. IDENTIFICATION

1. NAME (Last) (First) (Middle Initial)	3. PHONE NUMBER AREA CODE ( ) NO.	4. SOCIAL SECURITY # (optional see below) ☐
2. CURRENT ADDRESS (Number, Street, or Rural Route, City or Town, County, State, Zip Code)	5. BIRTHDATE (Mo., Day, Yr.)	6. AGE LAST BIRTHDAY
	7. SEX 1 ☐ Male 2 ☐ Female	
	8. ETHNIC GROUP OR ANCESTRY 1. ☐ White, not of Hispanic Origin 2. ☐ Black, not of Hispanic Origin 3. ☐ Hispanic 4. ☐ American Indian or Alaskan Native 5. ☐ Asian or Pacific Islander 6. ☐ Other: ____________	
9. STANDING HEIGHT ____________ (cm)	10. WEIGHT ____________	11. WORK SHIFT 1st ☐ 2nd ☐ 3rd ☐

12. PRESENT WORK AREA

Please indicate primary assigned work area and percent of time spent at that site. If at other locations, please indicate and note percent of time for each.

PRIMARY WORK AREA	____________ ____________
SPECIFIC JOB	____________ ____________

13. APPROPRIATE INDUSTRY

1 ☐ Garnetting
2 ☐ Cottonseed Oil Mill
3 ☐ Cotton Warehouse
4 ☐ Utilization
5 ☐ Cotton Classification
6 ☐ Cotton Ginning

(Furnishing your Social Security number is voluntary. Your refusal to provide this number will not affect any right, benefit, or privilege to which you would be entitled if you did provide your Social Security number. Your Social Security number is being requested since it will permit use in future determinations in statistical research studies.)

B. OCCUPATIONAL HISTORY TABLE

Complete the following table showing the entire work history of the individual from present to initial employment. Sporadic, part-time periods of employment, each of no significant duration, should be grouped if possible.

INDUSTRY AND LOCATION	TENURE OF EMPLOYMENT		SPECIFIC OCCUPATION	AVERAGE NO. DAYS WORKED PER WEEK	HAZARDOUS HEALTH EXPOSURE ASSOCIATED WITH WORK		
	FROM 19__	TO 19__			YES	NO	IF YES, DESCRIBE

C. SYMPTOMS

Use actual wording of each question. Put X in appropriate square after each question. When in doubt record "No".

COUGH

1. Do you usually cough first thing in the morning? (on getting up)* (Count a cough with first smoke or on "first going out of doors". Exclude clearing throat or a single cough.) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

2. Do you usually cough during the day or at night? (Ignore an occasional cough.) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If YES to either question 1 or 2:

3. Do you cough like this on most days for as much as three months a year? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No 9 ☐ NA

4. Do you cough on any particular day of the week? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If YES:

5. Which day? Mon. Tue. Wed. Thur. Fri. Sat. Sun. ____________

PHLEGM

6. Do you usually bring up any phlegm from your chest first thing in the morning? (on getting up)* (Count phlegm with the first smoke or on "first going out of doors." Exclude phlegm from the nose. Count swallowed phlegm.) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

7. Do you usually bring up any phlegm from your chest during the day or at night? (Accept twice or more.) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If YES to either question 6 or 7:

8. Do you bring up phlegm like this on most days for as much as three months each year? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If YES to question 3 or 8:

9. How long have you had this phlegm? (cough) (Write in number of years)
   - (1) ☐ 2 years or less
   - (2) ☐ More than 2 years - 9 years
   - (3) ☐ 10-19 years
   - (4) ☐ 20+ years

*These words are for subjects who work at night

CHEST ILLNESS

10. In the past three years, have you had a period of (increased) cough and phlegm lasting for 3 weeks or more?
(1) ☐ No
(2) ☐ Yes, only one period
(3) ☐ Yes, two or more periods

For subjects who usually have phlegm:

11. During the past 3 years have you had any chest illness which has kept you off work, indoors at home or in bed? (For as long as one week, flu?) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If YES to 11:

12. Did you bring up (more) phelgm than usual in any of these illnesses? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If YES to 12: During the past three years have you had:

13. Only one such illness with increased phelgm? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

14. More than one such illness: 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

Br. Brade ________

TIGHTNESS

15. Does your chest ever feel tight or your breathing become difficult? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

16. Is your chest tight or your breathing difficult on any particular day of the week? (after a week or 10 days away from the mill) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

17. If YES, Which day? Mon. (3) Tues. (4) Wed. (5) Thur. (6) Fri. (7) Sat. (8) Sun.
(1) Sometimes (2) Always

18. If YES Monday: At what time on Monday does your chest feel tight or your breathing difficult?
☐ Before entering mill
☐ After entering mill

(ASK ONLY IF NO TO QUESTION 15)

19. In the past, has your chest ever been tight or your breathing difficult on any particular day of the week? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

20. If YES, Which day? Mon. (3) Tues. (4) Wed. (5) Thur. (6) Fri. (7) Sat. (8) Sun.
(1) Sometimes (2) Always

BREATHLESSNESS

21. If disabled from walking by any condition other than heart or lung disease put "X" in the space and leave questions (22-30) unasked. ☐

22. Are you ever troubled by shortness of breath, when hurrying on the level or walking up a slight hill? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If NO, grade is 1. If YES, proceed to next question

23. Do you get short of breath walking with other people at an ordinary pace on the level? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If NO, grade is 2. If YES, proceed to next question

24. Do you have to stop for breath when walking at your own pace on the level? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If NO, grade is 3. If YES, proceed to next question

25. Are you short of breath on washing or dressing? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If NO, grade is 4. If YES, grade is 5.

26. Dyspnea Grd. ______________

ON MONDAYS:

27 Are you ever troubled by shortness of breath, when hurrying on the level or walking up a slight hill? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If NO, grade is 1. If YES, proceed to next question

28. Do you get short of breath walking with other people at an ordinary pace on the level? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If NO, grade is 2, If YES, proceed to next question

29. Do you have to stop for breath when walking at your own pace on the level? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If NO, grade is 3. If YES, proceed to next question

30. Are you short of breath on washing or dressing? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If NO, grade is 4. If YES, grade is 5

31. B. Grd. ______________

OTHER ILLNESSES AND ALLERGY HISTORY

32. Do you have a heart condition for which you are under a doctor's care? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

OTHER ILLNESSES AND ALLERGY HISTORY CONTINUED:

33. Have you ever had asthma? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If yes, did it begin: (1) Before age 30 ☐

(2) After age 30 ☐

34. If yes before 30: did you have asthma before ever going to work in a textile mill? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

35. Have you ever had hay fever or other allergies (other than above)? 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

TOBACCO SMOKING

36. Do you smoke? Record Yes if regular smoker up to one month ago. (Cigarettes, cigar or pipe) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If NO to (33).

37. Have you ever smoked? (Cigarettes, cigars, pipe. Record NO if subject has never smoked as much as one cigarette a day, or 1 oz. of tobacco a month, for as long as one year.) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

If Yes to (33) or (34); what have you smoked for how many years? (Write in specific number of years in the appropriate square)

	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)
Years	(<5)	(5-9)	(10-14)	(15-19)	(20-24)	(25-29)	(30-34)	(35-39)	(>40)
38. Cigarettes									
39. Pipe									
40. Cigars									

41. If cigarettes, how many packs per day? Write in number of cigarettes __________

☐ Less than 1/2 pack
☐ 1/2 pack, but less than 1 pack
☐ 1 pack, but less than 1 1/2 packs
☐ 1-1/2 packs or more

42. Number of pack years: __________

43. If an ex-smoker (cigarettes, cigar or pipe), how long since you stopped? (Write in number of years.) __________

☐ 0-1 year
☐ 1-4 years
☐ 5-9 years
☐ 10+ years

OCCUPATIONAL HISTORY

Have you ever worked in:

44. A foundry? (As long as one year) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

45. Stone or mineral mining, quarrying or processing? (As long as one year) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

46. Asbestos milling or processing? (Ever) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

47. Cotton or cotton blend mill? (For controls only) 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

48. Other dusts, fumes or smoke? If yes, specify. 1 ☐ Yes 2 ☐ No

Type of exposure ______________________

Length of exposure ______________________

APPENDIX B-III

ABBREVIATED RESPIRATORY QUESTIONNAIRE

A. IDENTIFICATION DATA

PLANT__________ SOCIAL SECURITY NO.__________

DAY MONTH (figures) YEAR (last 2 digits)

NAME__________ (Surname) DATE OF INTERVIEW__________

__________ __________ (First Names) DATE OF BIRTH__________

M F

ADDRESS__________ AGE______(8,9) SEX__________(10)

__________ RACE ☐ W ☐ N ☐ IND. ☐ OTHER (11)

INTERVIEWER: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 (12)

WORK SHIFT: 1st______ 2nd______ 3rd______(13) STANDING HEIGHT________(14,15)

PRESENT WORK AREA WEIGHT________(16,18)

If working in more than one specified work area, X area where most of the work shift is spent. If "other," but spending 25% of the work shift in one of the specified work areas, classify in that work area. If carding department employee, check area within that department where most of the work shift is spent (if in doubt, check "throughout"). For work areas such as spinning and weaving where many work rooms may be involved, be sure to check the specific work room to which employee is assigned — if he works in more than one work room within a department classify as 7 (all) for that department.

	Workroom Number	(19) Open	(20) Pick	Area	(21) Card #1	(22) #2	(23) Spin	(24) Wind	(25) Twist	(26) Spool	(27) Warp	(28) Slash	(29) Weave	(30) Other
AT RISK (cotton & cotton blend)	1			Cards										
	2			Draw										
	3			Comb										
	4			Rove										
	5			Thru Out										
	6													
	7 (all)													
Control (synthetic & wool)	8													
Ex-Worker (cotton)	9													

Use actual wording of each question. Put X in appropriate square after each question. When in doubt record 'No'. When no square, circle appropriate answer.

B. COUGH

Do you usually cough first thing in the morning? (on getting up)† ______ Yes___ No______ (31)
(Count a cough with first smoke or on "first going out of doors." Exclude clearing throat or a single cough.)

Do you usually cough during the day or at night? ______ Yes___ No______ (32)
(Ignore an occasional cough.)

If 'Yes' to either question (31-32):

Do you cough like this on most days for as much as three months each year? ______ Yes___ No______ (33)

Do you cough on any particular day of the week? ______ Yes___ No______ (34)

	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	
If 'Yes': Which day?	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.	Sat	Sun.	(35)

C. PHLEGM or alternative word to suit local custom.

Do you usually bring up any phlegm from your chest first thing in the morning? (on getting up)† (Count phlegm with the first smoke or on "first going out of doors." Exclude phlegm from the nose. Count swallowed phlegm.) ______ Yes___ No______ (36)

Do you usually bring up any phlegm from your chest during the day or at night? (Accept twice or more.) ______ Yes___ No______ (37)

If 'Yes' to either question (36) or (37):

Do you bring up phlegm like this on most days for as much as three months each year? ______ Yes___ No______ (38)

If 'Yes' to question (33) or (38):

How long have you had this phlegm? (cough)
(Write in number of years

(1) ☐ 2 years or less
(2) ☐ More than 2 years-9 years
(3) ☐ 10-19 years
(4) ☐ 20+ years

†These words are for subjects who work at night

D. TIGHTNESS

Does your chest ever feel tight or your breathing become difficult? ______ Yes______ No_____ (39)

Is your chest tight or your breathing difficult on any particular day of the week? (after a week or 10 days away from the mill) ______ Yes______ No_____ (40)

If 'Yes': Which day?	Mon. (1) Sometimes (2) Always	(3) Tues.	(4) Wed.	(5) Thur.	(6) Fri.	(7) Sat.	(8) Sun.		(41)

If 'Yes' Monday: At what time on Monday does your chest feel tight or your breathing difficult?
1 ☐ Before entering the mill
2 ☐ After entering the mill
(42)

(Ask only if NO to Question (45)*

In the past, has your chest ever been tight or your breathing difficult on any particular day of the week? ______ Yes ______ No_____ (43)

If 'Yes': Which day?	Mon. (1) Sometimes (2) Always	(3) Tues.	(4) Wed.	(5) Thur.	(6) Fri.	(7) Sat.	(8) Sun.		(44)

E. TOBACCO SMOKING*

*Have you changed your smoking habits since last interview? If yes specify what changes.

APPENDIX C—SPIROMETRY PREDICTION TABLES FOR NORMAL MALES AND FEMALES

TABLE 1. PREDICTED FVC FOR MALES (KNUDSON, ET AL: AM REV RESPIR DIS, 1976, 113, 587.)

	AGE																								
HT	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	33	35	37	39	41	43	45	47	49	51	53	55	57	59	61	63	65
60.0	3.44	3.59	3.75	3.91	3.72	3.66	3.61	3.55	3.49	3.43	3.37	3.32	3.26	3.20	3.14	3.08	3.03	2.97	2.91	2.85	2.79	2.74	2.68	2.62	2.56
60.5	3.50	3.66	3.81	3.97	3.80	3.75	3.69	3.63	3.57	3.51	3.46	3.40	3.34	3.28	3.22	3.17	3.11	3.05	2.99	2.93	2.88	2.82	2.76	2.70	2.64
61.0	3.56	3.72	3.88	4.03	3.89	3.83	3.77	3.71	3.66	3.60	3.54	3.48	3.42	3.37	3.31	3.25	3.19	3.13	3.08	3.02	2.96	2.90	2.84	2.79	2.73
61.5	3.63	3.78	3.94	4.10	3.97	3.91	3.85	3.80	3.74	3.68	3.62	3.56	3.51	3.45	3.39	3.33	3.27	3.22	3.16	3.10	3.04	2.98	2.93	2.87	2.81
62.0	3.69	3.85	4.00	4.16	4.05	3.99	3.94	3.88	3.82	3.76	3.70	3.65	3.59	3.53	3.47	3.41	3.36	3.30	3.24	3.18	3.12	3.07	3.01	2.95	2.89
62.5	3.76	3.91	4.07	4.22	4.13	4.08	4.02	3.96	3.90	3.84	3.79	3.73	3.67	3.61	3.55	3.50	3.44	3.38	3.32	3.26	3.21	3.15	3.09	3.03	2.97
63.0	3.82	3.97	4.13	4.29	4.22	4.16	4.10	4.04	3.99	3.93	3.87	3.81	3.75	3.70	3.64	3.58	3.52	3.46	3.41	3.35	3.29	3.23	3.17	3.12	3.06
63.5	3.88	4.04	4.19	4.35	4.30	4.24	4.18	4.13	4.07	4.01	3.95	3.89	3.84	3.78	3.72	3.66	3.60	3.55	3.49	3.43	3.37	3.31	3.26	3.20	3.14
64.0	3.95	4.10	4.26	4.41	4.38	4.32	4.27	4.21	4.15	4.09	4.03	3.98	3.92	3.86	3.80	3.74	3.69	3.63	3.57	3.51	3.45	3.40	3.34	3.28	3.22
64.5	4.01	4.17	4.32	4.48	4.46	4.41	4.35	4.29	4.23	4.17	4.12	4.06	4.00	3.94	3.88	3.83	3.77	3.71	3.65	3.59	3.54	3.48	3.42	3.36	3.30
65.0	4.07	4.23	4.39	4.54	4.55	4.49	4.43	4.37	4.32	4.26	4.20	4.14	4.08	4.03	3.97	3.91	3.85	3.79	3.74	3.68	3.62	3.56	3.50	3.45	3.39
65.5	4.14	4.29	4.45	4.60	4.63	4.57	4.51	4.46	4.40	4.34	4.28	4.22	4.17	4.11	4.05	3.99	3.93	3.88	3.82	3.76	3.70	3.64	3.59	3.53	3.47
66.0	4.20	4.36	4.51	4.67	4.71	4.65	4.60	4.54	4.48	4.42	4.36	4.31	4.25	4.19	4.13	4.07	4.02	3.96	3.90	3.84	3.78	3.73	3.67	3.61	3.55
66.5	4.26	4.42	4.58	4.73	4.80	4.74	4.68	4.62	4.56	4.51	4.45	4.39	4.33	4.27	4.22	4.16	4.10	4.04	3.98	3.93	3.87	3.81	3.75	3.69	3.64
67.0	4.33	4.48	4.64	4.80	4.88	4.82	4.76	4.70	4.65	4.59	4.53	4.47	4.41	4.36	4.30	4.24	4.18	4.12	4.07	4.01	3.95	3.89	3.83	3.78	3.72
67.5	4.39	4.55	4.70	4.86	4.96	4.90	4.84	4.79	4.73	4.67	4.61	4.55	4.50	4.44	4.38	4.32	4.26	4.21	4.15	4.09	4.03	3.97	3.92	3.86	3.80
68.0	4.45	4.61	4.77	4.92	5.04	4.98	4.93	4.87	4.81	4.75	4.69	4.64	4.58	4.52	4.46	4.40	4.35	4.29	4.23	4.17	4.11	4.06	4.00	3.94	3.88
68.5	4.52	4.67	4.83	4.99	5.13	5.07	5.01	4.95	4.89	4.84	4.78	4.72	4.66	4.60	4.55	4.49	4.43	4.37	4.31	4.26	4.20	4.14	4.08	4.02	3.97
69.0	4.58	4.74	4.89	5.05	5.21	5.15	5.09	5.03	4.98	4.92	4.86	4.80	4.74	4.69	4.63	4.57	4.51	4.45	4.40	4.34	4.28	4.22	4.16	4.11	4.05
69.5	4.64	4.80	4.96	5.11	5.29	5.23	5.17	5.12	5.06	5.00	4.94	4.88	4.83	4.77	4.71	4.65	4.59	4.54	4.48	4.42	4.36	4.30	4.25	4.19	4.13
70.0	4.71	4.86	5.02	5.18	5.37	5.32	5.26	5.20	5.14	5.08	5.02	4.97	4.91	4.85	4.79	4.74	4.68	4.62	4.56	4.50	4.44	4.39	4.33	4.27	4.21
70.5	4.77	4.93	5.08	5.24	5.46	5.40	5.34	5.28	5.22	5.17	5.11	5.05	4.99	4.93	4.88	4.82	4.76	4.70	4.64	4.59	4.53	4.47	4.41	4.35	4.30
71.0	4.83	4.99	5.15	5.30	5.54	5.48	5.42	5.36	5.31	5.25	5.19	5.13	5.07	5.02	4.96	4.90	4.84	4.78	4.73	4.67	4.61	4.55	4.49	4.44	4.38
71.5	4.90	5.05	5.21	5.37	5.62	5.56	5.50	5.45	5.39	5.33	5.27	5.21	5.16	5.10	5.04	4.98	4.92	4.87	4.81	4.75	4.69	4.63	4.58	4.52	4.46
72.0	4.96	5.12	5.27	5.43	5.70	5.65	5.59	5.53	5.47	5.41	5.36	5.30	5.24	5.18	5.12	5.07	5.01	4.95	4.89	4.83	4.78	4.72	4.66	4.60	4.54
72.5	5.03	5.18	5.34	5.49	5.79	5.73	5.67	5.61	5.55	5.50	5.44	5.38	5.32	5.26	5.21	5.15	5.09	5.03	4.97	4.92	4.86	4.80	4.74	4.68	4.63
73.0	5.09	5.24	5.40	5.56	5.87	5.81	5.75	5.69	5.64	5.58	5.52	5.46	5.40	5.35	5.29	5.23	5.17	5.11	5.06	5.00	4.94	4.88	4.82	4.77	4.71
73.5	5.15	5.31	5.46	5.62	5.95	5.89	5.83	5.78	5.72	5.66	5.60	5.54	5.49	5.43	5.37	5.31	5.25	5.20	5.14	5.08	5.02	4.96	4.91	4.85	4.79
74.0	5.22	5.37	5.53	5.68	6.03	5.98	5.92	5.86	5.80	5.74	5.69	5.63	5.57	5.51	5.45	5.40	5.34	5.28	5.22	5.16	5.11	5.05	4.99	4.93	4.87
74.5	5.28	5.44	5.59	5.75	6.12	6.06	6.00	5.94	5.88	5.83	5.77	5.71	5.65	5.59	5.54	5.48	5.42	5.36	5.30	5.25	5.19	5.13	5.07	5.01	4.96
75.0	5.34	5.50	5.65	5.81	6.20	6.14	6.08	6.02	5.97	5.91	5.85	5.79	5.73	5.68	5.62	5.56	5.50	5.44	5.39	5.33	5.27	5.21	5.15	5.10	5.04
75.5	5.41	5.56	5.72	5.87	6.28	6.22	6.17	6.11	6.05	5.99	5.93	5.88	5.82	5.76	5.70	5.64	5.59	5.53	5.47	5.41	5.35	5.30	5.24	5.18	5.12
76.0	5.47	5.63	5.78	5.94	6.36	6.31	6.25	6.19	6.13	6.07	6.02	5.96	5.90	5.84	5.78	5.73	5.67	5.61	5.55	5.49	5.44	5.38	5.32	5.26	5.20
76.5	5.53	5.69	5.85	6.00	6.45	6.39	6.33	6.27	6.21	6.16	6.10	6.04	5.98	5.92	5.87	5.81	5.75	5.69	5.63	5.58	5.52	5.46	5.40	5.34	5.29
77.0	5.60	5.75	5.91	6.06	6.53	6.47	6.41	6.35	6.30	6.24	6.18	6.12	6.06	6.01	5.95	5.89	5.83	5.77	5.72	5.66	5.60	5.54	5.48	5.43	5.37
77.5	5.66	5.82	5.97	6.13	6.61	6.55	6.50	6.44	6.38	6.32	6.26	6.21	6.15	6.09	6.03	5.97	5.92	5.86	5.80	5.74	5.68	5.63	5.57	5.51	5.45
78.0	5.72	5.88	6.04	6.19	6.69	6.64	6.58	6.52	6.46	6.40	6.35	6.29	6.23	6.17	6.11	6.06	6.00	5.94	5.88	5.82	5.77	5.71	5.65	5.59	5.53
78.5	5.79	5.94	6.10	6.26	6.78	6.72	6.66	6.60	6.54	6.49	6.43	6.37	6.31	6.25	6.20	6.14	6.08	6.02	5.96	5.91	5.85	5.79	5.73	5.67	5.62
79.0	5.85	6.01	6.16	6.32	6.86	6.80	6.74	6.68	6.63	6.57	6.51	6.45	6.39	6.34	6.28	6.22	6.16	6.10	6.05	5.99	5.93	5.87	5.81	5.76	5.70
79.5	5.91	6.07	6.23	6.38	6.94	6.88	6.83	6.77	6.71	6.65	6.59	6.54	6.48	6.42	6.36	6.30	6.25	6.19	6.13	6.07	6.01	5.96	5.90	5.84	5.78
80.0	5.98	6.13	6.29	6.45	7.02	6.97	6.91	6.85	6.79	6.73	6.68	6.62	6.56	6.50	6.44	6.39	6.33	6.27	6.21	6.15	6.10	6.04	5.98	5.92	5.86
80.5	6.04	6.20	6.35	6.51	7.11	7.05	6.99	6.93	6.87	6.82	6.76	6.70	6.64	6.58	6.53	6.47	6.41	6.35	6.29	6.24	6.18	6.12	6.06	6.00	5.95
81.0	6.10	6.26	6.42	6.57	7.19	7.13	7.07	7.02	6.96	6.90	6.84	6.78	6.73	6.67	6.61	6.55	6.49	6.44	6.38	6.32	6.26	6.20	6.15	6.09	6.03
81.5	6.17	6.32	6.48	6.64	7.27	7.21	7.16	7.10	7.04	6.98	6.92	6.87	6.81	6.75	6.69	6.63	6.58	6.52	6.46	6.40	6.34	6.29	6.23	6.17	6.11
82.0	6.23	6.39	6.54	6.70	7.35	7.30	7.24	7.18	7.12	7.06	7.01	6.95	6.89	6.83	6.77	6.72	6.66	6.60	6.54	6.48	6.43	6.37	6.31	6.25	6.19
82.5	6.30	6.45	6.61	6.76	7.44	7.38	7.32	7.26	7.20	7.15	7.09	7.03	6.97	6.91	6.86	6.80	6.74	6.68	6.62	6.57	6.51	6.45	6.39	6.33	6.28
83.0	6.36	6.51	6.67	6.83	7.52	7.46	7.40	7.35	7.29	7.23	7.17	7.11	7.06	7.00	6.94	6.88	6.82	6.77	6.71	6.65	6.59	6.53	6.48	6.42	6.36
83.5	6.42	6.58	6.73	6.89	7.60	7.54	7.49	7.43	7.37	7.31	7.25	7.20	7.14	7.08	7.02	6.96	6.91	6.85	6.79	6.73	6.67	6.62	6.56	6.50	6.44
84.0	6.49	6.64	6.80	6.95	7.68	7.63	7.57	7.51	7.45	7.39	7.34	7.28	7.22	7.16	7.10	7.05	6.99	6.93	6.87	6.81	6.76	6.70	6.64	6.58	6.52
84.5	6.55	6.71	6.86	7.02	7.77	7.71	7.65	7.59	7.53	7.48	7.42	7.36	7.30	7.24	7.19	7.13	7.07	7.01	6.95	6.90	6.84	6.78	6.72	6.66	6.61
85.0	6.61	6.77	6.92	7.08	7.85	7.79	7.73	7.68	7.62	7.56	7.50	7.44	7.39	7.33	7.27	7.21	7.15	7.10	7.04	6.98	6.92	6.86	6.81	6.75	6.69

TABLE 2. PREDICTED FEV1 FOR MALES (KNUDSON, ET AL: AM REV RESPIR DIS. 1976, 113, 587.)

AGE

HT	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	33	35	37	39	41	43	45	47	49	51	53	55	57	59	61	63	65
60.0	2.97	3.06	3.15	3.24	3.05	2.99	2.94	2.88	2.83	2.78	2.72	2.67	2.61	2.56	2.51	2.45	2.40	2.34	2.29	2.24	2.18	2.13	2.07	2.02	1.97
60.5	3.03	3.12	3.21	3.30	3.11	3.06	3.00	2.95	2.90	2.84	2.79	2.73	2.68	2.63	2.57	2.52	2.46	2.41	2.36	2.30	2.25	2.19	2.14	2.09	2.03
61.0	3.08	3.17	3.26	3.35	3.18	3.12	3.07	3.02	2.96	2.91	2.85	2.80	2.75	2.69	2.64	2.58	2.53	2.48	2.42	2.37	2.31	2.26	2.21	2.15	2.10
61.5	3.14	3.23	3.32	3.41	3.24	3.19	3.14	3.08	3.03	2.97	2.92	2.87	2.81	2.76	2.70	2.65	2.60	2.54	2.49	2.43	2.38	2.33	2.27	2.22	2.16
62.0	3.20	3.29	3.38	3.47	3.31	3.26	3.20	3.15	3.09	3.04	2.99	2.93	2.88	2.82	2.77	2.72	2.66	2.61	2.55	2.50	2.45	2.39	2.34	2.28	2.23
62.5	3.26	3.35	3.44	3.53	3.38	3.32	3.27	3.22	3.16	3.11	3.05	3.00	2.95	2.89	2.84	2.78	2.73	2.68	2.62	2.57	2.51	2.46	2.41	2.35	2.30
63.0	3.32	3.41	3.50	3.59	3.44	3.39	3.34	3.28	3.23	3.17	3.12	3.07	3.01	2.96	2.90	2.85	2.80	2.74	2.69	2.63	2.58	2.53	2.47	2.42	2.36
63.5	3.38	3.47	3.56	3.65	3.51	3.46	3.40	3.35	3.29	3.24	3.19	3.13	3.08	3.02	2.97	2.92	2.86	2.81	2.75	2.70	2.65	2.59	2.54	2.48	2.43
64.0	3.43	3.52	3.61	3.70	3.58	3.52	3.47	3.41	3.36	3.31	3.25	3.20	3.14	3.09	3.04	2.98	2.93	2.87	2.82	2.77	2.71	2.66	2.60	2.55	2.50
64.5	3.49	3.58	3.67	3.76	3.64	3.59	3.53	3.48	3.43	3.37	3.32	3.26	3.21	3.16	3.10	3.05	2.99	2.94	2.89	2.83	2.78	2.72	2.67	2.62	2.56
65.0	3.55	3.64	3.73	3.82	3.71	3.65	3.60	3.55	3.49	3.44	3.38	3.33	3.28	3.22	3.17	3.11	3.06	3.01	2.95	2.90	2.84	2.79	2.74	2.68	2.63
65.5	3.61	3.70	3.79	3.88	3.77	3.72	3.67	3.61	3.56	3.50	3.45	3.40	3.34	3.29	3.23	3.18	3.13	3.07	3.02	2.96	2.91	2.86	2.80	2.75	2.69
66.0	3.67	3.76	3.85	3.94	3.84	3.79	3.73	3.68	3.62	3.57	3.52	3.46	3.41	3.35	3.30	3.25	3.19	3.14	3.08	3.03	2.98	2.92	2.87	2.81	2.76
66.5	3.73	3.82	3.91	4.00	3.91	3.85	3.80	3.74	3.69	3.64	3.58	3.53	3.47	3.42	3.37	3.31	3.26	3.20	3.15	3.10	3.04	2.99	2.93	2.88	2.83
67.0	3.79	3.88	3.97	4.06	3.97	3.92	3.86	3.81	3.76	3.70	3.65	3.59	3.54	3.49	3.43	3.38	3.32	3.27	3.22	3.16	3.11	3.05	3.00	2.95	2.89
67.5	3.84	3.93	4.02	4.11	4.04	3.98	3.93	3.88	3.82	3.77	3.71	3.66	3.61	3.55	3.50	3.44	3.39	3.34	3.28	3.23	3.17	3.12	3.07	3.01	2.96
68.0	3.90	3.99	4.08	4.17	4.10	4.05	4.00	3.94	3.89	3.84	3.78	3.73	3.67	3.62	3.56	3.51	3.46	3.40	3.35	3.29	3.24	3.19	3.13	3.08	3.02
68.5	3.96	4.05	4.14	4.23	4.17	4.12	4.06	4.01	3.95	3.90	3.85	3.79	3.74	3.68	3.63	3.58	3.52	3.47	3.41	3.36	3.31	3.25	3.20	3.14	3.09
69.0	4.02	4.11	4.20	4.29	4.24	4.18	4.13	4.07	4.02	3.97	3.91	3.86	3.80	3.75	3.70	3.64	3.59	3.53	3.48	3.43	3.37	3.32	3.26	3.21	3.16
69.5	4.08	4.17	4.26	4.35	4.30	4.25	4.19	4.14	4.09	4.03	3.98	3.92	3.87	3.82	3.76	3.71	3.65	3.60	3.55	3.49	3.44	3.38	3.33	3.28	3.22
70.0	4.14	4.23	4.32	4.41	4.37	4.31	4.26	4.21	4.15	4.10	4.04	3.99	3.94	3.88	3.83	3.77	3.72	3.67	3.61	3.56	3.50	3.45	3.40	3.34	3.29
70.5	4.19	4.28	4.37	4.46	4.43	4.38	4.33	4.27	4.22	4.16	4.11	4.06	4.00	3.95	3.89	3.84	3.79	3.73	3.68	3.62	3.57	3.52	3.46	3.41	3.35
71.0	4.25	4.34	4.43	4.52	4.50	4.45	4.39	4.34	4.28	4.23	4.18	4.12	4.07	4.01	3.96	3.91	3.85	3.80	3.74	3.69	3.64	3.58	3.53	3.47	3.42
71.5	4.31	4.40	4.49	4.58	4.57	4.51	4.46	4.40	4.35	4.30	4.24	4.19	4.13	4.08	4.03	3.97	3.92	3.86	3.81	3.76	3.70	3.65	3.59	3.54	3.49
72.0	4.37	4.46	4.55	4.64	4.63	4.58	4.52	4.47	4.42	4.36	4.31	4.25	4.20	4.15	4.09	4.04	3.98	3.93	3.88	3.82	3.77	3.71	3.66	3.61	3.55
72.5	4.43	4.52	4.61	4.70	4.70	4.64	4.59	4.54	4.48	4.43	4.37	4.32	4.27	4.21	4.16	4.10	4.05	4.00	3.94	3.89	3.83	3.78	3.73	3.67	3.62
73.0	4.49	4.58	4.67	4.76	4.76	4.71	4.66	4.60	4.55	4.49	4.44	4.39	4.33	4.28	4.22	4.17	4.12	4.06	4.01	3.95	3.90	3.85	3.79	3.74	3.68
73.5	4.54	4.63	4.72	4.81	4.83	4.78	4.72	4.67	4.61	4.56	4.51	4.45	4.40	4.34	4.29	4.24	4.18	4.13	4.07	4.02	3.97	3.91	3.86	3.80	3.75
74.0	4.60	4.69	4.78	4.87	4.90	4.84	4.79	4.73	4.68	4.63	4.57	4.52	4.46	4.41	4.36	4.30	4.25	4.19	4.14	4.09	4.03	3.98	3.92	3.87	3.82
74.5	4.66	4.75	4.84	4.93	4.96	4.91	4.35	4.80	4.75	4.69	4.64	4.58	4.53	4.48	4.42	4.37	4.31	4.26	4.21	4.15	4.10	4.04	3.99	3.94	3.88
75.0	4.72	4.81	4.90	4.99	5.03	4.97	4.92	4.87	4.81	4.76	4.70	4.65	4.60	4.54	4.49	4.43	4.38	4.33	4.27	4.22	4.16	4.11	4.06	4.00	3.95
75.5	4.78	4.87	4.96	5.05	5.09	5.04	4.99	4.93	4.88	4.82	4.77	4.72	4.66	4.61	4.55	4.50	4.45	4.39	4.34	4.28	4.23	4.18	4.12	4.07	4.01
76.0	4.84	4.93	5.02	5.11	5.16	5.11	5.05	5.00	4.94	4.89	4.84	4.78	4.73	4.67	4.62	4.57	4.51	4.46	4.40	4.35	4.30	4.24	4.19	4.13	4.08
76.5	4.90	4.99	5.08	5.17	5.23	5.17	5.12	5.06	5.01	4.96	4.90	4.85	4.79	4.74	4.69	4.63	4.58	4.52	4.47	4.42	4.36	4.31	4.25	4.20	4.15
77.0	4.95	5.04	5.13	5.22	5.29	5.24	5.18	5.13	5.08	5.02	4.97	4.91	4.86	4.81	4.75	4.70	4.64	4.59	4.54	4.48	4.43	4.37	4.32	4.27	4.21
77.5	5.01	5.10	5.19	5.28	5.36	5.30	5.25	5.20	5.14	5.09	5.03	4.98	4.93	4.87	4.82	4.76	4.71	4.66	4.60	4.55	4.49	4.44	4.39	4.33	4.28
78.0	5.07	5.16	5.25	5.34	5.42	5.37	5.32	5.26	5.21	5.15	5.10	5.05	4.99	4.94	4.88	4.83	4.78	4.72	4.67	4.61	4.56	4.51	4.45	4.40	4.34
78.5	5.13	5.22	5.31	5.40	5.49	5.44	5.38	5.33	5.27	5.22	5.17	5.11	5.06	5.00	4.95	4.90	4.84	4.79	4.73	4.68	4.63	4.57	4.52	4.46	4.41
79.0	5.19	5.28	5.37	5.46	5.56	5.50	5.45	5.39	5.34	5.29	5.23	5.18	5.12	5.07	5.02	4.96	4.91	4.85	4.80	4.75	4.69	4.64	4.58	4.53	4.48
79.5	5.25	5.34	5.43	5.52	5.62	5.57	5.51	5.46	5.41	5.35	5.30	5.24	5.19	5.14	5.08	5.03	4.97	4.92	4.87	4.81	4.76	4.70	4.65	4.60	4.54
80.0	5.30	5.39	5.48	5.57	5.69	5.63	5.58	5.53	5.47	5.42	5.36	5.31	5.26	5.20	5.15	5.09	5.04	4.99	4.93	4.88	4.82	4.77	4.72	4.66	4.61
80.5	5.36	5.45	5.54	5.63	5.75	5.70	5.65	5.59	5.54	5.48	5.43	5.38	5.32	5.27	5.21	5.16	5.11	5.05	5.00	4.94	4.89	4.84	4.78	4.73	4.67
81.0	5.42	5.51	5.60	5.69	5.82	5.77	5.71	5.66	5.60	5.55	5.50	5.44	5.39	5.33	5.28	5.23	5.17	5.12	5.06	5.01	4.96	4.90	4.85	4.79	4.74
81.5	5.48	5.57	5.66	5.75	5.89	5.83	5.78	5.72	5.67	5.62	5.56	5.51	5.45	5.40	5.35	5.29	5.24	5.18	5.13	5.08	5.02	4.97	4.91	4.86	4.81
82.0	5.54	5.63	5.72	5.81	5.95	5.90	5.84	5.79	5.74	5.68	5.63	5.57	5.52	5.47	5.41	5.36	5.30	5.25	5.20	5.14	5.09	5.03	4.98	4.93	4.87
82.5	5.60	5.69	5.78	5.87	6.02	5.96	5.91	5.86	5.80	5.75	5.69	5.64	5.59	5.53	5.48	5.42	5.37	5.32	5.26	5.21	5.15	5.10	5.05	4.99	4.94
83.0	5.65	5.74	5.83	5.92	6.08	6.03	5.98	5.92	5.87	5.81	5.76	5.71	5.65	5.60	5.54	5.49	5.44	5.38	5.33	5.27	5.22	5.17	5.11	5.06	5.00
83.5	5.71	5.80	5.89	5.98	6.15	6.10	6.04	5.99	5.93	5.88	5.83	5.77	5.72	5.66	5.61	5.56	5.50	5.45	5.39	5.34	5.29	5.23	5.18	5.12	5.07
84.0	5.77	5.86	5.95	6.04	6.22	6.16	6.11	6.05	6.00	5.95	5.89	5.84	5.78	5.73	5.68	5.62	5.57	5.51	5.46	5.41	5.35	5.30	5.24	5.19	5.14
84.5	5.83	5.92	6.01	6.10	6.28	6.23	6.17	6.12	6.07	6.01	5.96	5.90	5.85	5.80	5.74	5.69	5.63	5.58	5.53	5.47	5.42	5.36	5.31	5.26	5.20
85.0	5.89	5.98	6.07	6.16	6.35	6.29	6.24	6.19	6.13	6.08	6.02	5.97	5.92	5.86	5.81	5.75	5.70	5.65	5.59	5.54	5.48	5.43	5.38	5.32	5.27

TABLE 3. PREDICTED FVC FOR FEMALES (KNUDSON, ET AL, AM REV RESPIR DIS, 1976, 113, 587.)

	AGE																								
HT	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	33	35	37	39	41	43	45	47	49	51	53	55	57	59	61	63	65
52.0	2.45	2.64	2.65	2.61	2.56	2.52	2.47	2.43	2.39	2.34	2.30	2.25	2.21	2.17	2.12	2.08	2.03	1.99	1.95	1.90	1.86	1.81	1.77	1.73	1.68
52.5	2.50	2.68	2.70	2.65	2.61	2.57	2.52	2.48	2.43	2.39	2.35	2.30	2.26	2.21	2.17	2.13	2.08	2.04	1.99	1.95	1.91	1.86	1.82	1.77	1.73
53.0	2.54	2.72	2.74	2.70	2.66	2.61	2.57	2.52	2.48	2.44	2.39	2.35	2.30	2.26	2.22	2.17	2.13	2.08	2.04	2.00	1.95	1.91	1.86	1.82	1.78
53.5	2.58	2.76	2.79	2.75	2.70	2.66	2.62	2.57	2.53	2.48	2.44	2.40	2.35	2.31	2.26	2.22	2.18	2.13	2.09	2.04	2.00	1.96	1.91	1.87	1.82
54.0	2.62	2.81	2.84	2.79	2.75	2.71	2.66	2.62	2.57	2.53	2.49	2.44	2.40	2.35	2.31	2.27	2.22	2.18	2.13	2.09	2.05	2.00	1.96	1.91	1.87
54.5	2.66	2.85	2.89	2.84	2.80	2.75	2.71	2.67	2.62	2.58	2.53	2.49	2.45	2.40	2.36	2.31	2.27	2.23	2.18	2.14	2.09	2.05	2.01	1.96	1.92
55.0	2.71	2.89	2.93	2.89	2.84	2.80	2.76	2.71	2.67	2.62	2.58	2.54	2.49	2.45	2.40	2.36	2.32	2.27	2.23	2.18	2.14	2.10	2.05	2.01	1.96
55.5	2.75	2.93	2.98	2.94	2.89	2.85	2.80	2.76	2.72	2.67	2.63	2.58	2.54	2.50	2.45	2.41	2.36	2.32	2.28	2.23	2.19	2.14	2.10	2.06	2.01
56.0	2.79	2.97	3.03	2.98	2.94	2.89	2.85	2.81	2.76	2.72	2.67	2.63	2.59	2.54	2.50	2.45	2.41	2.37	2.32	2.28	2.23	2.19	2.15	2.10	2.06
56.5	2.83	3.01	3.07	3.03	2.99	2.94	2.90	2.85	2.81	2.77	2.72	2.68	2.63	2.59	2.55	2.50	2.46	2.41	2.37	2.33	2.28	2.24	2.19	2.15	2.11
57.0	2.87	3.06	3.12	3.08	3.03	2.99	2.94	2.90	2.86	2.81	2.77	2.72	2.68	2.64	2.59	2.55	2.50	2.46	2.42	2.37	2.33	2.28	2.24	2.20	2.15
57.5	2.91	3.10	3.17	3.12	3.08	3.04	2.99	2.95	2.90	2.86	2.82	2.77	2.73	2.68	2.64	2.60	2.55	2.51	2.46	2.42	2.38	2.33	2.29	2.24	2.20
58.0	2.96	3.14	3.21	3.17	3.13	3.08	3.04	2.99	2.95	2.91	2.86	2.82	2.77	2.73	2.69	2.64	2.60	2.55	2.51	2.47	2.42	2.38	2.33	2.29	2.25
58.5	3.00	3.18	3.26	3.22	3.17	3.13	3.09	3.04	3.00	2.95	2.91	2.87	2.82	2.78	2.73	2.69	2.65	2.60	2.56	2.51	2.47	2.43	2.38	2.34	2.29
59.0	3.04	3.22	3.31	3.26	3.22	3.18	3.13	3.09	3.04	3.00	2.96	2.91	2.87	2.82	2.78	2.74	2.69	2.65	2.60	2.56	2.52	2.47	2.43	2.38	2.34
59.5	3.08	3.27	3.36	3.31	3.27	3.22	3.18	3.14	3.09	3.05	3.00	2.96	2.92	2.87	2.83	2.78	2.74	2.70	2.65	2.61	2.56	2.52	2.48	2.43	2.39
60.0	3.12	3.31	3.40	3.36	3.31	3.27	3.23	3.18	3.14	3.09	3.05	3.01	2.96	2.92	2.87	2.83	2.79	2.74	2.70	2.65	2.61	2.57	2.52	2.48	2.43
60.5	3.17	3.35	3.45	3.41	3.36	3.32	3.27	3.23	3.19	3.14	3.10	3.05	3.01	2.97	2.92	2.88	2.83	2.79	2.75	2.70	2.66	2.61	2.57	2.53	2.48
61.0	3.21	3.39	3.50	3.45	3.41	3.36	3.32	3.28	3.23	3.19	3.14	3.10	3.06	3.01	2.97	2.92	2.88	2.84	2.79	2.75	2.70	2.66	2.62	2.57	2.53
61.5	3.25	3.43	3.54	3.50	3.46	3.41	3.37	3.32	3.28	3.24	3.19	3.15	3.10	3.06	3.02	2.97	2.93	2.88	2.84	2.80	2.75	2.71	2.66	2.62	2.58
62.0	3.29	3.48	3.59	3.55	3.50	3.46	3.41	3.37	3.33	3.28	3.24	3.19	3.15	3.11	3.06	3.02	2.97	2.93	2.89	2.84	2.80	2.75	2.71	2.67	2.62
62.5	3.33	3.52	3.64	3.59	3.55	3.51	3.46	3.42	3.37	3.33	3.29	3.24	3.20	3.15	3.11	3.07	3.02	2.98	2.93	2.89	2.85	2.80	2.76	2.71	2.67
63.0	3.38	3.56	3.68	3.64	3.60	3.55	3.51	3.46	3.42	3.38	3.33	3.29	3.24	3.20	3.16	3.11	3.07	3.02	2.98	2.94	2.89	2.85	2.80	2.76	2.72
63.5	3.42	3.60	3.73	3.69	3.64	3.60	3.56	3.51	3.47	3.42	3.38	3.34	3.29	3.25	3.20	3.16	3.12	3.07	3.03	2.98	2.94	2.90	2.85	2.81	2.76
64.0	3.46	3.64	3.78	3.73	3.69	3.65	3.60	3.56	3.51	3.47	3.43	3.38	3.34	3.29	3.25	3.21	3.16	3.12	3.07	3.03	2.99	2.94	2.90	2.85	2.81
64.5	3.50	3.69	3.83	3.78	3.74	3.69	3.65	3.61	3.56	3.52	3.47	3.43	3.39	3.34	3.30	3.25	3.21	3.17	3.12	3.08	3.03	2.99	2.95	2.90	2.86
65.0	3.54	3.73	3.87	3.83	3.78	3.74	3.70	3.65	3.61	3.56	3.52	3.48	3.43	3.39	3.34	3.30	3.26	3.21	3.17	3.12	3.08	3.04	2.99	2.95	2.90
65.5	3.59	3.77	3.92	3.88	3.83	3.79	3.74	3.70	3.66	3.61	3.57	3.52	3.48	3.44	3.39	3.35	3.30	3.26	3.22	3.17	3.13	3.08	3.04	3.00	2.95
66.0	3.63	3.81	3.97	3.92	3.88	3.83	3.79	3.75	3.70	3.66	3.61	3.57	3.53	3.48	3.44	3.39	3.35	3.31	3.26	3.22	3.17	3.13	3.09	3.04	3.00
66.5	3.67	3.85	4.01	3.97	3.93	3.88	3.84	3.79	3.75	3.71	3.66	3.62	3.57	3.53	3.49	3.44	3.40	3.35	3.31	3.27	3.22	3.18	3.13	3.09	3.05
67.0	3.71	3.89	4.06	4.02	3.97	3.93	3.88	3.84	3.80	3.75	3.71	3.66	3.62	3.58	3.53	3.49	3.44	3.40	3.36	3.31	3.27	3.22	3.18	3.14	3.09
67.5	3.75	3.94	4.11	4.06	4.02	3.98	3.93	3.89	3.84	3.80	3.76	3.71	3.67	3.62	3.58	3.54	3.49	3.45	3.40	3.36	3.32	3.27	3.23	3.18	3.14
68.0	3.79	3.98	4.15	4.11	4.07	4.02	3.98	3.93	3.89	3.85	3.80	3.76	3.71	3.67	3.63	3.58	3.54	3.49	3.45	3.41	3.36	3.32	3.27	3.23	3.19
68.5	3.84	4.02	4.20	4.16	4.11	4.07	4.03	3.98	3.94	3.89	3.85	3.81	3.76	3.72	3.67	3.63	3.59	3.54	3.50	3.45	3.41	3.37	3.32	3.28	3.23
69.0	3.88	4.06	4.25	4.20	4.16	4.12	4.07	4.03	3.98	3.94	3.90	3.85	3.81	3.76	3.72	3.68	3.63	3.59	3.54	3.50	3.46	3.41	3.37	3.32	3.28
69.5	3.92	4.10	4.30	4.25	4.21	4.16	4.12	4.08	4.03	3.99	3.94	3.90	3.86	3.81	3.77	3.72	3.68	3.64	3.59	3.55	3.50	3.46	3.42	3.37	3.33
70.0	3.96	4.15	4.34	4.30	4.25	4.21	4.17	4.12	4.08	4.03	3.99	3.95	3.90	3.86	3.81	3.77	3.73	3.68	3.64	3.59	3.55	3.51	3.46	3.42	3.37
70.5	4.00	4.19	4.39	4.35	4.30	4.26	4.21	4.17	4.13	4.08	4.04	3.99	3.95	3.91	3.86	3.82	3.77	3.73	3.69	3.64	3.60	3.55	3.51	3.47	3.42
71.0	4.05	4.23	4.44	4.39	4.35	4.30	4.26	4.22	4.17	4.13	4.08	4.04	4.00	3.95	3.91	3.86	3.82	3.78	3.73	3.69	3.64	3.60	3.56	3.51	3.47
71.5	4.09	4.27	4.48	4.44	4.40	4.35	4.31	4.26	4.22	4.18	4.13	4.09	4.04	4.00	3.96	3.91	3.87	3.82	3.78	3.74	3.69	3.65	3.60	3.56	3.52
72.0	4.13	4.31	4.53	4.49	4.44	4.40	4.35	4.31	4.27	4.22	4.18	4.13	4.09	4.05	4.00	3.96	3.91	3.87	3.83	3.78	3.74	3.69	3.65	3.61	3.56
72.5	4.17	4.36	4.58	4.53	4.49	4.45	4.40	4.36	4.31	4.27	4.23	4.18	4.14	4.09	4.05	4.01	3.96	3.92	3.87	3.83	3.79	3.74	3.70	3.65	3.61
73.0	4.21	4.40	4.62	4.58	4.54	4.49	4.45	4.40	4.36	4.32	4.27	4.23	4.18	4.14	4.10	4.05	4.01	3.96	3.92	3.88	3.83	3.79	3.74	3.70	3.66
73.5	4.26	4.44	4.67	4.63	4.58	4.54	4.50	4.45	4.41	4.36	4.32	4.28	4.23	4.19	4.14	4.10	4.06	4.01	3.97	3.92	3.88	3.84	3.79	3.75	3.70
74.0	4.30	4.48	4.72	4.67	4.63	4.59	4.54	4.50	4.45	4.41	4.37	4.32	4.28	4.23	4.19	4.15	4.10	4.06	4.01	3.97	3.93	3.88	3.84	3.79	3.75
74.5	4.34	4.52	4.77	4.72	4.68	4.63	4.59	4.55	4.50	4.46	4.41	4.37	4.33	4.28	4.24	4.19	4.15	4.11	4.06	4.02	3.97	3.93	3.89	3.84	3.80
75.0	4.38	4.57	4.81	4.77	4.72	4.68	4.64	4.59	4.55	4.50	4.46	4.42	4.37	4.33	4.28	4.24	4.20	4.15	4.11	4.06	4.02	3.98	3.93	3.89	3.84
75.5	4.42	4.61	4.86	4.82	4.77	4.73	4.68	4.64	4.60	4.55	4.51	4.46	4.42	4.38	4.33	4.29	4.24	4.20	4.16	4.11	4.07	4.02	3.98	3.94	3.89
76.0	4.47	4.65	4.91	4.86	4.82	4.77	4.73	4.69	4.64	4.60	4.55	4.51	4.47	4.42	4.38	4.33	4.29	4.25	4.20	4.16	4.11	4.07	4.03	3.98	3.94
76.5	4.51	4.69	4.95	4.91	4.87	4.82	4.78	4.73	4.69	4.65	4.60	4.56	4.51	4.47	4.43	4.38	4.34	4.29	4.25	4.21	4.16	4.12	4.07	4.03	3.99
77.0	4.55	4.73	5.00	4.96	4.91	4.87	4.82	4.78	4.74	4.69	4.65	4.60	4.56	4.52	4.47	4.43	4.38	4.34	4.30	4.25	4.21	4.16	4.12	4.08	4.03

TABLE 4. PREDICTED FEV1 FOR FEMALES (KNUDSON, ET AL: AM REV RESPIR DIS. 1976, 113, 587.)

	AGE																							
HT	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	33	35	37	39	41	43	45	47	49	51	53	55	57	59	61	63	65
52.0	2.31	2.48	2.33	2.29	2.25	2.21	2.16	2.12	2.08	2.04	2.00	1.95	1.91	1.87	1.83	1.79	1.74	1.70	1.66	1.62	1.58	1.53	1.49	1.45	1.41
52.5	2.34	2.51	2.37	2.32	2.28	2.24	2.20	2.16	2.11	2.07	2.03	1.99	1.95	1.90	1.86	1.82	1.78	1.74	1.69	1.65	1.61	1.57	1.53	1.48	1.44
53.0	2.38	2.55	2.40	2.36	2.32	2.27	2.23	2.19	2.15	2.11	2.06	2.02	1.98	1.94	1.90	1.85	1.81	1.77	1.73	1.69	1.64	1.60	1.56	1.52	1.48
53.5	2.41	2.58	2.43	2.39	2.35	2.31	2.27	2.22	2.18	2.14	2.10	2.06	2.01	1.97	1.93	1.89	1.85	1.80	1.76	1.72	1.68	1.64	1.59	1.55	1.51
54.0	2.45	2.62	2.47	2.43	2.38	2.34	2.30	2.26	2.22	2.17	2.13	2.09	2.05	2.01	1.96	1.92	1.88	1.84	1.80	1.75	1.71	1.67	1.63	1.59	1.54
54.5	2.48	2.65	2.50	2.46	2.42	2.38	2.33	2.29	2.25	2.21	2.17	2.12	2.08	2.04	2.00	1.96	1.91	1.87	1.83	1.79	1.75	1.70	1.66	1.62	1.58
55.0	2.51	2.68	2.54	2.49	2.45	2.41	2.37	2.33	2.28	2.24	2.20	2.16	2.12	2.07	2.03	1.99	1.95	1.91	1.86	1.82	1.78	1.74	1.70	1.65	1.61
55.5	2.55	2.72	2.57	2.53	2.49	2.45	2.40	2.36	2.32	2.28	2.24	2.19	2.15	2.11	2.07	2.03	1.98	1.94	1.90	1.86	1.82	1.77	1.73	1.69	1.65
56.0	2.58	2.75	2.61	2.56	2.52	2.48	2.44	2.40	2.35	2.31	2.27	2.23	2.19	2.14	2.10	2.06	2.02	1.98	1.93	1.89	1.85	1.81	1.77	1.72	1.68
56.5	2.62	2.79	2.64	2.60	2.56	2.51	2.47	2.43	2.39	2.35	2.30	2.26	2.22	2.18	2.14	2.09	2.05	2.01	1.97	1.93	1.88	1.84	1.80	1.76	1.72
57.0	2.65	2.82	2.67	2.63	2.59	2.55	2.51	2.46	2.42	2.38	2.34	2.30	2.25	2.21	2.17	2.13	2.09	2.04	2.00	1.96	1.92	1.88	1.83	1.79	1.75
57.5	2.69	2.86	2.71	2.67	2.62	2.58	2.54	2.50	2.46	2.41	2.37	2.33	2.29	2.25	2.20	2.16	2.12	2.08	2.04	1.99	1.95	1.91	1.87	1.83	1.78
58.0	2.72	2.89	2.74	2.70	2.66	2.62	2.57	2.53	2.49	2.45	2.41	2.36	2.32	2.28	2.24	2.20	2.15	2.11	2.07	2.03	1.99	1.94	1.90	1.86	1.82
58.5	2.75	2.92	2.78	2.73	2.69	2.65	2.61	2.57	2.52	2.48	2.44	2.40	2.36	2.31	2.27	2.23	2.19	2.15	2.10	2.06	2.02	1.98	1.94	1.89	1.85
59.0	2.79	2.96	2.81	2.77	2.73	2.69	2.64	2.60	2.56	2.52	2.48	2.43	2.39	2.35	2.31	2.27	2.22	2.18	2.14	2.10	2.06	2.01	1.97	1.93	1.89
59.5	2.82	2.99	2.85	2.80	2.76	2.72	2.68	2.64	2.59	2.55	2.51	2.47	2.43	2.38	2.34	2.30	2.26	2.22	2.17	2.13	2.09	2.05	2.01	1.96	1.92
60.0	2.86	3.03	2.88	2.84	2.80	2.75	2.71	2.67	2.63	2.59	2.54	2.50	2.46	2.42	2.38	2.33	2.29	2.25	2.21	2.17	2.12	2.08	2.04	2.00	1.96
60.5	2.89	3.06	2.91	2.87	2.83	2.79	2.75	2.70	2.66	2.62	2.58	2.54	2.49	2.45	2.41	2.37	2.33	2.28	2.24	2.20	2.16	2.12	2.07	2.03	1.99
61.0	2.93	3.10	2.95	2.91	2.86	2.82	2.78	2.74	2.70	2.65	2.61	2.57	2.53	2.49	2.44	2.40	2.36	2.32	2.28	2.23	2.19	2.15	2.11	2.07	2.02
61.5	2.96	3.13	2.98	2.94	2.90	2.86	2.81	2.77	2.73	2.69	2.65	2.60	2.56	2.52	2.48	2.44	2.39	2.35	2.31	2.27	2.23	2.18	2.14	2.10	2.06
62.0	2.99	3.16	3.02	2.97	2.93	2.89	2.85	2.81	2.76	2.72	2.68	2.64	2.60	2.55	2.51	2.47	2.43	2.39	2.34	2.30	2.26	2.22	2.18	2.13	2.09
62.5	3.03	3.20	3.05	3.01	2.97	2.93	2.88	2.84	2.80	2.76	2.72	2.67	2.63	2.59	2.55	2.51	2.46	2.42	2.38	2.34	2.30	2.25	2.21	2.17	2.13
63.0	3.06	3.23	3.09	3.04	3.00	2.96	2.92	2.88	2.83	2.79	2.75	2.71	2.67	2.62	2.58	2.54	2.50	2.46	2.41	2.37	2.33	2.29	2.25	2.20	2.16
63.5	3.10	3.27	3.12	3.08	3.04	2.99	2.95	2.91	2.87	2.83	2.78	2.74	2.70	2.66	2.62	2.57	2.53	2.49	2.45	2.41	2.36	2.32	2.28	2.24	2.20
64.0	3.13	3.30	3.15	3.11	3.07	3.03	2.99	2.94	2.90	2.86	2.82	2.78	2.73	2.69	2.65	2.61	2.57	2.52	2.48	2.44	2.40	2.36	2.31	2.27	2.23
64.5	3.17	3.34	3.19	3.15	3.10	3.06	3.02	2.98	2.94	2.89	2.85	2.81	2.77	2.73	2.68	2.64	2.60	2.56	2.52	2.47	2.43	2.39	2.35	2.31	2.26
65.0	3.20	3.37	3.22	3.18	3.14	3.10	3.05	3.01	2.97	2.93	2.89	2.84	2.80	2.76	2.72	2.68	2.63	2.59	2.55	2.51	2.47	2.42	2.38	2.34	2.30
65.5	3.23	3.40	3.26	3.21	3.17	3.13	3.09	3.05	3.00	2.96	2.92	2.88	2.84	2.79	2.75	2.71	2.67	2.63	2.58	2.54	2.50	2.46	2.42	2.37	2.33
66.0	3.27	3.44	3.29	3.25	3.21	3.17	3.12	3.08	3.04	3.00	2.96	2.91	2.87	2.83	2.79	2.75	2.70	2.66	2.62	2.58	2.54	2.49	2.45	2.41	2.37
66.5	3.30	3.47	3.33	3.28	3.24	3.20	3.16	3.12	3.07	3.03	2.99	2.95	2.91	2.86	2.82	2.78	2.74	2.70	2.65	2.61	2.57	2.53	2.49	2.44	2.40
67.0	3.34	3.51	3.36	3.32	3.28	3.23	3.19	3.15	3.11	3.07	3.02	2.98	2.94	2.90	2.86	2.81	2.77	2.73	2.69	2.65	2.60	2.56	2.52	2.48	2.44
67.5	3.37	3.54	3.39	3.35	3.31	3.27	3.23	3.18	3.14	3.10	3.06	3.02	2.97	2.[illegible]	2.89	2.85	2.81	2.76	2.72	2.68	2.64	2.60	2.55	2.51	2.47
68.0	3.41	3.58	3.43	3.39	3.34	3.30	3.26	3.22	3.18	3.13	3.09	3.05	3.01	2.9[illegible]	2.92	2.88	2.84	2.80	2.76	2.71	2.67	2.63	2.59	2.55	2.50
68.5	3.44	3.61	3.46	3.42	3.38	3.34	3.29	3.25	3.21	3.17	3.13	3.08	3.04	3.00	2.96	2.92	2.87	2.83	2.79	2.75	2.71	2.66	2.62	2.58	2.54
69.0	3.47	3.64	3.50	3.46	3.41	3.37	3.33	3.29	3.25	3.20	3.16	3.12	3.08	3.04	2.99	2.95	2.91	2.87	2.83	2.78	2.74	2.70	2.66	2.62	2.57
69.5	3.51	3.68	3.53	3.49	3.45	3.41	3.36	3.32	3.28	3.24	3.20	3.15	3.11	3.07	3.03	2.9[illegible]	2.94	2.90	2.86	2.82	2.78	2.73	2.69	2.65	2.61
70.0	3.54	3.71	3.57	3.52	3.48	3.44	3.40	3.36	3.31	3.27	3.23	3.19	3.15	3.10	3.06	3.02	2.98	2.94	2.89	2.85	2.81	2.77	2.73	2.68	2.64
70.5	3.58	3.75	3.60	3.56	3.52	3.47	3.43	3.39	3.35	3.31	3.26	3.22	3.18	3.14	3.10	3.05	3.01	2.97	2.93	2.89	2.84	2.80	2.76	2.72	2.68
71.0	3.61	3.78	3.63	3.59	3.55	3.51	3.47	3.42	3.38	3.34	3.30	3.26	3.21	3.17	3.13	3.09	3.05	3.00	2.96	2.92	2.88	2.84	2.79	2.75	2.71
71.5	3.65	3.82	3.67	3.63	3.58	3.54	3.50	3.46	3.42	3.37	3.33	3.29	3.25	3.21	3.16	3.12	3.08	3.04	3.00	2.95	2.91	2.87	2.83	2.79	2.74
72.0	3.68	3.85	3.70	3.66	3.62	3.58	3.53	3.49	3.45	3.41	3.37	3.32	3.28	3.24	3.20	3.16	3.11	3.07	3.03	2.99	2.95	2.90	2.86	2.82	2.78
72.5	3.71	3.88	3.74	3.70	3.65	3.61	3.57	3.53	3.49	3.44	3.40	3.36	3.32	3.28	3.23	3.19	3.15	3.11	3.07	3.02	2.98	2.94	2.90	2.86	2.81
73.0	3.75	3.92	3.77	3.73	3.69	3.65	3.60	3.56	3.52	3.48	3.44	3.39	3.35	3.31	3.27	3.23	3.18	3.14	3.10	3.06	3.02	2.97	2.93	2.89	2.85
73.5	3.78	3.95	3.81	3.76	3.72	3.68	3.64	3.60	3.55	3.51	3.47	3.43	3.39	3.34	3.30	3.26	3.22	3.18	3.13	3.09	3.05	3.01	2.97	2.92	2.88
74.0	3.82	3.99	3.84	3.80	3.76	3.71	3.67	3.63	3.59	3.55	3.50	3.46	3.42	3.38	3.34	3.29	3.25	3.21	3.17	3.13	3.08	3.04	3.00	2.96	2.92
74.5	3.85	4.02	3.87	3.83	3.79	3.75	3.71	3.66	3.62	3.58	3.54	3.50	3.45	3.41	3.37	3.33	3.29	3.24	3.20	3.16	3.12	3.08	3.03	2.99	2.95
75.0	3.89	4.06	3.91	3.87	3.82	3.78	3.74	3.70	3.66	3.61	3.57	3.53	3.49	3.45	3.40	3.36	3.32	3.28	3.24	3.19	3.15	3.11	3.07	3.03	2.98
75.5	3.92	4.09	3.94	3.90	3.86	3.82	3.77	3.73	3.69	3.65	3.61	3.56	3.52	3.48	3.44	3.40	3.35	3.31	3.27	3.23	3.19	3.14	3.10	3.06	3.02
76.0	3.95	4.12	3.98	3.94	3.89	3.85	3.81	3.77	3.73	3.68	3.64	3.60	3.56	3.52	3.47	3.43	3.39	3.35	3.31	3.26	3.22	3.18	3.14	3.10	3.05
76.5	3.99	4.16	4.01	3.97	3.93	3.89	3.84	3.80	3.76	3.72	3.68	3.63	3.59	3.55	3.51	3.47	3.42	3.38	3.34	3.30	3.26	3.21	3.17	3.13	3.09
77.0	4.02	4.19	4.05	4.00	3.96	3.92	3.88	3.84	3.79	3.75	3.71	3.67	3.63	3.58	3.54	3.50	3.46	3.42	3.37	3.33	3.29	3.25	3.21	3.16	3.12

APPENDIX D—PULMONARY FUNCTION STANDARDS FOR COTTON DUST STANDARD

The spirometric measurements of pulmonary function shall conform to the following minimum standards, and these standards are not intended to preclude additional testing or alternate methods which can be determined to be superior.

I. APPARATUS

a. The instrument shall be accurate to within ±50 milliliters or within ±3 percent of reading, whichever is greater.

b. The instrument should be capable of measuring vital capacity from 0 to 7 liters BTPS.

c. The instrument shall have a low inertia and offer low resistance to airflow such that the resistance to airflow at 12 liters per second must be less than 1.5 cm H_2O/(liter/sec).

d. The zero time point for the purpose of timing the FEV_1 shall be determined by extrapolating the steepest portion of the volume time curve back to the maximal inspiration volume (1, 2, 3, 4) or by an equivalent method.

e. Instruments incorporating measurements of airflow to determine volume shall conform to the same volume accuracy stated in (a) of this section when presented with flow rates from at least 0 to 12 liters per second.

f. The instrument or user of the instrument must have a means of correcting volumes to body temperature saturated with water vapor (BTPS) under conditions of varying ambient spirometer temperatures and barometric pressures.

g. The instrument used shall provide a tracing or display of either flow versus volume or volume versus time during the entire forced expiration. A tracing or display is necessary to determine whether the patient has performed the test properly. The tracing must be stored and available for recall and must be of sufficient size that hand measurements may be made within requirement of paragraph (a) of this section. If a paper record is made it must have a paper speed of at least 2 cm/sec and a volume sensitivity of at least 10.0 mm of chart per liter of volume.

h. The instrument shall be capable of accumulating volume for a minimum of 10 seconds and shall not stop accumulating volume before (1) volume change for a 0.5 second interval is less than 25 milliliters or (2) the flow is less than 50 milliliters per second for a 0.5 second interval.

i. The forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiratory volume in 1 second ($FEV_{1.0}$) measurements shall comply with the accuracy requirements stated in paragraph (a) of this section. That is, they should be accurately measured to within ±50 ml or within ±3 percent of reading, whichever is greater.

j. The instrument must be capable of being calibrated in the field with respect to the FEV_1 and FVC. This calibration of the FEV_1 and FVC may be either directly or indirectly through volume and time base measurements. The volume calibration source should provide a volume displacement of at least 2 liters and should be accurate to within ±30 milliliters.

II. TECHNIQUE FOR MEASUREMENT OF FORCED VITAL CAPACITY MANEUVER

a. Use of a nose clip is recommended but not required. The procedures shall be explained in simple terms to the patient who shall be instructed to loosen any tight clothing and stand in front of the apparatus. The subject may sit, but care should be taken on repeat testing that the same position be used and, if possible, the same spirometer. Particular attention shall be given to insure that the chin is slightly elevated with the neck slightly extended. The patient shall be instructed to make a full inspiration from a normal breathing pattern and then blow into the apparatus, without interruption, as hard, fast, and completely as possible. At least three forced expirations shall be carried out. During the maneuvers, the patient shall be observed for compliance with instruction. The expirations shall be checked visually for reproducibility from flow-volume or volume-time tracings or displays. The following efforts shall be judged unacceptable when the patient:

1. has not reached full inspiration preceding the forced expiration,

2. has not used maximal effort during the entire forced expiration,

3. has not continued the expiration for at least 5 seconds or until an obvious plateau in the volume time curve has occurred,

4. has coughed or closed his glottis,

5. has an obstructed mouthpiece or a leak around the mouthpiece (obstruction due to tongue being placed in front of mouthpiece, false teeth falling in front of mouthpiece, etc.)

6. has an unsatisfactory start of expiration, one characterized by excessive hesitation (or false starts), and therefore not allowing back extrapolation of time 0 (extrapolated volume on the volume time tracing must be less than 10 percent of the FVC.)

7. has an excessive variability between the three acceptable curves. The variation between the two largest FVC's and FEV_1's of the three satisfactory tracings should not exceed 10 percent or ± 100 milliliters, whichever is greater.

b. Periodic and routine recalibration of the instrument or method for recording FVC and $FEV_{1.0}$ should be performed using a syringe or other volume source of at least 2 liters.

III. INTERPRETATION OF SPIROGRAM

a. The first step in evaluating a spirogram should be to determine whether or not the patient has performed the test properly or as described in II above. From the three satisfactory tracings, the forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiratory volume in 1 second ($FEV_{1.0}$) shall be measured and recorded. The largest observed FVC and largest observed FEV_1 shall be used in the analysis regardless of the curve(s) on which they occur.

b. The following guidelines are recommended by NIOSH for the evaluation and management of workers exposed to cotton dust. It is important to note that employees who show reductions in FEV_1/FVC ratio below .75 or drops in Monday FEV_1 of 5 percent or greater on their initial screening exam, should be re-evaluated within a month of the first exam. Those who show consistent decrease in lung function, as shown on the following table, should be managed as recommended.

IV. QUALIFICATIONS OF PERSONNEL ADMINISTERING THE TEST

Technicians who perform pulmonary function testing should have the basic knowledge required to produce meaningful results. Training consisting of approximately 16 hours of formal instruction should cover the following areas.

a. Basic physiology of the forced vital capacity maneuver and the determinants of airflow limitation with emphasis on the relation to reproducibility of results.

b. Instrumentation requirements including calibration procedures, sources of error and their correction.

c. Performance of the testing including subject coaching, recognition of improperly performed maneuvers and corrective actions.

d. Data quality with emphasis on reproducibility.

e. Actual use of the equipment under supervised conditions.

f. Measurement of tracings and calculations of results.

[43 F.R. 27394, June 23, 1978.]

[corrected at 43 F.R. 28473, June 30, 1978, and 43 F.R. 35032, August 8, 1978.]

APPENDIX E—VERTICAL ELUTRIATOR EQUIVALENCY PROTOCOL

a. Samples to be taken. In order to ascertain equivalency, it is necessary to collect a total of 100 samples from at least 10 sites in a mill. That is, there should be 10 replicate readings at each of 10 sites. The sites should represent dust levels which vary over the allowable range of 0.5 to 2 times the permissible exposure limit. Each sample requires the use of two vertical elutriators (VE's) and at least one but not more than two alternative devices (AD's). Thus, the end result is 200 VE readings and either 100 or 200 AD readings. The 2 VE readings and the 1 or 2 AD readings at each time and site must be made simultaneously. That is, the two VE's and one or two AD's must be arranged together in such a way that they are measuring essentially the same dual levels.

b. Data averaging. The two VE readings taken at each site are then averaged. These averages are to be used as the 100 VE readings. If two alternate devices were used, their test results are also averaged. Thus, after this step is accomplished, there will be 100 VE readings and 100 AD readings.

c. Differences For each of the 100 sets of measurements (VE and AD) the difference is obtained as the average VE reading minus the AD reading. Call these differences, D_i. Thus, we have.

$$D_i = VE_i - AD_i, \; i = 1,2, \ldots ,100 \qquad (1)$$

Next we compute the arithmetic mean and standard deviations of the differences, using equations (2) and (3), respectively.

$$\overline{X_D} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} D_i \qquad (2)$$

$$S_D = \sqrt{\frac{\sum D_i^2 - \frac{(\sum D_i)^2}{N}}{N-1}} \qquad (3)$$

where N equals the number of differences (100 in this case). $\bar{X}_D$ is the arithmetic mean and S_D is the standard deviation.

We next calculate the critical value as $T = KS_D + |\bar{X}_D|$ where $K = 1.87$, based on 100 samples.

d. Equivalency test. The next step is to obtain the average of the 100 VE readings. This is obtained by equation (4).

$$\bar{X}_{VE} = \frac{1}{N} \left(\sum_{i=1}^{N} VE_i \right) \qquad (4)$$

We next multiply 0.25 by $\bar{X}_{VE}$. If $T < 0.25\,\bar{X}_{VE}$, we can say that the alternate device has passed the equivalency test.

(The information collection requirements contained in the section are under consideration by the Office of Management and Budget. They will not take effect until approved.)

1910.1044 1,2-DIBROMO-3-CHLOROPROPANE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to occupational exposure to 1,2-dibromo-3-chloropropane (DBCP).

(2) This section does not apply to:

(i) Exposure to DBCP which results solely from the application and use of DBCP as a pesticide; or

(ii) The storage, transportation, distribution or sale of DBCP in intact containers sealed in such a manner as to prevent exposure to DBCP vapors or liquid, except for the requirements of paragraphs (i), (n) and (o) of this section.

(b) Definitions. "Authorized person" means any person required by his duties to be present in regulated areas and authorized to do so by his employer, by this section, or by the Act. "Authorized person" also includes any person entering such areas as a designated representative of employees exercising an opportunity to observe employee exposure monitoring.

"DBCP" means 1,2-dibromo-3-chloropropane, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 96-12-8, and includes all forms of DBCP.

"Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, or designee.

"Emergency" means any occurrence such as, but not limited to equipment failure, rupture of containers, or failure of control equipment which may, or does, result in an unexpected release of DBCP.

"OSHA Area Office" means the Area Office of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration having jurisdiction over the geographic area where the affected workplace is located.

"Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

(c) Permissible exposure limit.

(1) Inhalation. The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of DBCP in excess of 1 part DBCP per billion parts of air (ppb) as an 8-hour time-weighted average.

(2) Dermal and eye exposure. The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to eye or skin contact with DBCP.

(d) Notification of use. Within ten (10) days following the introduction of DBCP into the workplace, every employer who has a workplace where DBCP is present, shall report the following information to the nearest OSHA Area Office for each such workplace:

(1) The address and location of the workplace;

(2) A brief description of each process or operation which may result in employee exposure to DBCP;

(3) The number of employees engaged in each process or operation who may be exposed to DBCP and an estimate of the frequency and degree of exposure that occurs; and

(4) A brief description of the employer's safety and health program as it relates to limitation of employee exposure to DBCP.

(e) Regulated areas.

(1) The employer shall establish, within each place of employment, regulated areas whereever DBCP concentrations are in excess of the permissible exposure limit.

(2) The employer shall limit access to regulated areas to authorized persons.

(f) Exposure monitoring.

(1) General.

(i) Determinations of airborne exposure levels shall be made from air samples that are representative of each employee's exposure to DBCP over an 8-hour period.

(ii) For the purposes of this paragraph, employee exposure is that exposure which would occur if the employee were not using a respirator.

(2) Initial. Each employer who has a place of employment in which DBCP is present, shall monitor each workplace and work operation to accurately determine the airborne concentrations of DBCP to which employees may be exposed.

(3) Frequency.

(i) If the monitoring required by this section reveals employee exposures to be below the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall repeat these measurements at least quarterly.

(ii) If the monitoring required by this section reveals employee exposures to be in excess of the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall repeat these measurements for each such employee at least monthly. The employer shall continue monthly monitoring until at least two consecutive measurements, taken at least seven (7) days apart, are below the permissible exposure limit. Thereafter the employer shall monitor at least quarterly.

(4) Additional. Whenever there has been a production, process, control, or personnel change which may result in any new or additional exposure to DBCP, or whenever the employer has any reason to suspect new or additional exposures to DBCP, the employer shall monitor the employees potentially affected by such change for the purpose of redetermining their exposure.

(5) Employee notification.

(i) Within five (5) working days after the receipt of monitoring results, the employer shall notify each employee in writing of the measurements which represent the employee's exposure.

(ii) Whenever the results indicate that employee exposure exceeds the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall include in the written notice a statement that the permissible exposure limit was exceeded and a description of the corrective action being taken to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limit.

(6) Accuracy of measurement. The employer shall use a method of measurement which has an accuracy, to a confidence level of 95 percent, of not less than plus or minus 25 percent for concentrations of DBCP at or above the permissible exposure limit.

(g) Methods of compliance.

(1) Priority of compliance methods. The employer shall institute engineering and work practice controls to reduce and maintain employee exposures to DBCP at or below the permissible exposure limit, except to the extent that the employer establishes that such controls are not feasible. Where feasible engineering and work practice controls are not sufficient to reduce employee exposures to within the permissible exposure limit, the employer shall nonetheless use them to reduce exposures to the lowest level achievable by these controls, and shall supplement them by use of respiratory protection.

(2) Compliance program.

(i) The employer shall establish and implement a written program to reduce employee exposures to DBCP to or below the permissible exposure limit solely by means of engineering and work practice controls as required by paragraph (g)(1) of this section.

(ii) The written program shall include a detailed schedule for development and implementation of the engineering and work practice controls. These plans shall be revised at least every six months to reflect the current status of the program.

(iii) Written plans for these compliance programs shall be submitted upon request to the Assistant Secretary and the Director, and shall be available at the worksite for examination and copying by the Assistant Secretary, the Director, and any affected employee or designated representative of employees.

(iv) The employer shall institute and maintain at least the controls described in his most recent written compliance program.

(h) Respirators.

(1) General. Where respiratory protection is required under this section, the employer shall select, provide and assure the proper use of respirators. Respirators shall be used in the following circumstances:

(i) During the period necessary to install or implement feasible engineering and work practice controls; or

(ii) During maintenance and repair activities in which engineering and work practice controls are not feasible; or

(iii) In work situations where feasible engineering and work practice controls are not yet sufficient to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limit; or

(iv) In emergencies.

(2) Respirator selection.

(i) Where respirators are required under this section, the employer shall select and provide, at no cost to the employee, the appropriate respirator from Table 1 below and shall assure that the employee uses the respirator provided.

(ii) The employer shall select respirators from among those approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11.

Table 1.—Respiratory protection for DBCP

Airborne concentration of DBCP or condition of use	Respirator type
(a) Less than or equal to 10 ppb.	(1) Any supplied-air respirator or (2) any self-contained breathing apparatus.
(b) Less than or equal to 50 ppb.	(1) Any supplied-air respirator with full facepiece, helmet, or hood; or (2) any self-contained breathing apparatus wtih full facepiece.
(c) Less than or equal to 1,000 ppb.	(1) A Type C supplied-air respirator operated in pressure-demand or other positive pressure or continuous flow mode.
(d) Less than or equal to 2,000 ppb.	(1) A Type C supplied-air respirator with full facepiece operated in pressure-demand or other positive pressure mode, or with full facepiece, helmet, or hood operated in continuous flow mode.
(e) Greater than 2,000 ppb or entry and escape from unknown concentrations.	(1) A combination respirator which includes a Type C supplied-air respirator with full facepiece operated in pressure-demand or other positive pressure or continuous flow mode and an auxiliary self-contained breathing apparatus operated in pressure-demand or positive pressure mode; or (2) a self-contained breathing apparatus with full facepiece operated in pressure-demand or other positive pressure mode.
(f) Firefighting	(1) A self-contained breathing apparatus with full facepiece operated in pressure-demand or other positive pressure mode.

(3) Respirator program.

(i) The employer shall institute a respiratory protection program in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.134 (b), (d), (e), and (f).

(ii) Employees who wear respirators shall be allowed to wash their faces and respirator facepieces as needed to prevent potential skin irritation associated with respirator use.

(i) Emergency situations.

(1) Written plan.

(i) A written plan for emergency situations shall be developed for each workplace in which DBCP is present.

(ii) Appropriate portions of the plan shall be implemented in the event of an emergency.

(2) Employees engaged in correcting emergency conditions shall be equipped as required in paragraphs (h) and (j) of this section until the emergency is abated.

(3) Evacuation. Employees not engaged in correcting the emergency shall be removed and restricted from the area and normal operations in the affected area shall not be resumed until the emergency is abated.

(4) Alerting employees. Where there is a possibility of employee exposure to DBCP due to the occurrence of an emergency, a general alarm shall be installed and maintained to promptly alert employees of such occurrences.

(5) Medical surveillance. For any employee exposed to DBCP in an emergency situation, the employer shall provide medical surveillance in accordance with paragraph (m) (6) of this section.

(6) Exposure monitoring.

(i) Following an emergency, the employer shall conduct monitoring which complies with paragraph (f) of this section.

(ii) In workplaces not normally subject to periodic monitoring, the employer may terminate monitoring when two consecutive measurements indicate exposures below the permissible exposure limit.

(j) Protective clothing and equipments.

(1) Provision and use. Where there is any possibility of eye or dermal contact with liquid or solid DBCP, the employer shall provide, at no cost to the employee, and assure that the employee wears impermeable protective clothing and equipment to protect the area of the body which may come in contact with DBCP. Eye and face protection shall meet the requirements of § 1910.133 of this Part.

(2) Removal and storage.

(i) The employer shall assure that employees remove DBCP contaminated work clothing only in change rooms provided in accordance with paragraph (l) (1) of this section.

(ii) The employer shall assure that employees promptly remove any protective clothing and equipment which becomes contaminated with DBCP-containing liquids and solids. This clothing shall not be reworn until the DBCP has been removed from the clothing or equipment.

(iii) The employer shall assure that no employee takes DBCP contaminated protective devices and work clothing out of the change room, except those employees authorized to do so for the purpose of laundering, maintenance, of disposal.

(iv) DBCP-contaminated protective devices and work clothing shall be placed and stored in closed containers which prevent dispersion of the DBCP outside the container.

(v) Containers of DBCP contaminated protective devices or work clothing which are to be taken out of change rooms or the workplace for cleaning, maintenance or disposal, shall bear labels in accordance with paragraph (o)(3) of this section.

(3) Cleaning and replacement.

(i) The employer shall clean, launder, repair, or replace protective clohting and equipment required by this paragraph to maintain their effectiveness. The employer shall provide clean protective clothing and equipment at least daily to each affected employee.

(ii) The employer shall inform any person who launders or clean DBCP-contaminated protective clothing or equipment of the potentially harmful effects of exposure to DBCP.

(iii) The employer shall prohibit the removal of DBCP from protective clothing and equipment by blowing or shaking.

(k) Housekeeping.

(1) Surfaces

(i) All workplace surfaces shall be maintained free of visible accumulations of DBCP.

(ii) Dry sweeping and the use of compressed air for the cleaning of floors and other surfaces is prohibited where DBCP dusts or liquids are present.

(iii) Where vacuuming methods are selected to clean floors and other surfaces, either portable units or a permanent system may be used.

(a) If a portable unit is selected, the exhaust shall be attached to the general workplace exhaust ventilation system or collected within the vacuum unit, equipped with high efficiency filters or other appropriate means of contaminant removal, so that DBCP is not reintroduced into the workplace air; and

(b) Portable vacuum units used to collect DBCP may not be used for other cleaning purposes and shall be labeled as prescribed by paragraph (o)(3) of this section.

(iv) Cleaning of floors and other surfaces contaminated with DBCP-containing dusts shall not be performed by washing down with a hose, unless a fine spray has first been laid down.

(2) Liquids. Where DBCP is present in a liquid form, or as a resultant vapor, all containers or vessels containing DBCP shall be enclosed to the maximum extent feasible and tightly covered when not in use.

(3) Waste disposal. DBCP waste scrap, debris, containers or equipment, shall be disposed of in sealed bags or other closed containers which prevent dispersion of DBCP outside the container.

(1) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(1) Change rooms. The employer shall provide clean change rooms equipped with storage facilities for street clothes and separate storage facilities for protective clothing and equipment whenever employees are required to wear protective clothing and equipment in accordance with paragraphs (h) and (j) of this section.

(2) Showers.

(i) The employer shall assure that employees working in the regulated area shower at the end of the work shift.

(ii) The employer shall assure that employees whose skins becomes contaminated with DBCP-containing liquids or solids immediately wash or shower to remove any DBCP from the skin.

(iii) The employer shall provide shower facilities in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.141(d)(3).

(3) Lunchrooms. The employer shall provide lunchroom facilities which have a temperature controlled, positive pressure, filtered air supply, and which are readily accessible to employees working in regulated areas.

(4) Lavatories.

(i) The employer shall assure that employees working in the regulated area remove protective clothing and wash their hands and face prior to eating.

(ii) The employer shall provide a sufficient number of lavatory facilities which comply with 29 CFR 1910.141(d)(1) and (2).

(5) Prohibition of activities in regulated areas. The employer shall assure that, in regulated areas, food or beverages are not present or consumed, smoking products and implements are not present or used, and cosmetics are not present or applied.

(m) Medical surveillance.

(1) General.

(i) The employer shall make available a medical surveillance program for employees who work in regulated areas and employees who are subjected to DBCP exposures in an emergency situation.

(ii) All medical examinations and procedures shall be performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician, and shall be provided without cost to the employee.

(2) Frequency and content. At the time of initial assignment, and annually thereafter, the employer shall provide a medical examination for employees who work in regulated areas, which includes at least the following:

(i) A medical and occupational history including reproductive history.

(ii) A physical examination, including examination of the genito-urinary tract, testicle size and body habitus, including a determination of sperm count.

(iii) A serum specimen shall be obtained and the following determinations made by radioimmunoassay techniques utilizing National Institutes of Health (NIH) specific antigen or one of equivalent sensitivity:

(a) Serum follicle stimulating hormone (FSH);

(b) Serum luteinizing hormone (LH), and

(c) Serum total estrogen (females).

(iv) Any other tests deemed appropriate by the examining physician.

(3) Additional examinations. If the employee for any reason develops signs or symptoms commonly associated with exposure to DBCP, the employer shall provide the employee with a medical examination which shall include those elements considered appropriate by the examining physician.

(4) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide the following information to the examining physician:

(i) A copy of this regulation and its appendices;

(ii) A description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposure;

(iii) The level of DBCP to which the employee is exposed; and

(iv) A description of any personal protective equipment used or to be used.

(5) Physician's written opinion.

(i) For each examination under this section, the employer shall obtain and provide the employee with a written opinion from the examining physician which shall include:

(a) The results of the medical tests performed;

(b) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical condition which would place the employee at an increased risk of material impairment of health from exposure to DBCP; and

(c) Any recommended limitations upon the employee's exposure to DBCP or upon the use of protective clothing and equipment such as respirators.

(ii) The employer shall instruct the physician not to reveal in the written opinion specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure.

(6) Emergency situations. If the employee is exposed to DBCP in an emergency situation, the employer shall provide the employee with a sperm count test as soon as practicable, or, if the employee has been vasectionized or is unable to produce a semen specimen, the hormone tests contained in paragraph (m)(2)(iii) of this section. The employer shall provide these same tests three months later.

(n) Employee information and training.

(1) Training program.

(i) The employer shall institute a training program for all employees who may be exposed to DBCP and shall assure their participation in such training program.

(ii) The employer shall assure that each employee is informed of the following:

(a) The information contained in Appendix A.

(b) The quantity, location, manner of use, release or storage of DBCP and the specific nature of operations which could result in exposure to DBCP as well as any necessary protective steps;

(c) The purpose, proper use, and limitations of respirators;

(d) The purpose and description of the medical surveillance program required by paragraph (m) of this section; and

(e) A review of this standard, including appendices.

(2) Access to training materials.

(i) The employer shall make a copy of this standard and its appendices readily available to all affected employees.

(ii) The employer shall provide, upon request, all materials relating to the employee information and training program to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(o) Signs and labels.

(1) General.

(i) The employer may use labels or signs required by other statutes, regulations, or ordinances in addition to or in combination with, signs and labels required by this paragraph.

(ii) The employer shall assure that no statement appears on or near any sign or label required by this paragraph which contradicts or detracts from the required sign or label.

(2) Signs.

(i) The employer shall post signs to clearly indicate all regulated areas. These signs shall bear the legend:

DANGER

1,2-Dibromo-3-chloropropane

(Insert appropriate trade or common names)

CANCER HAZARD

AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

RESPIRATOR REQUIRED

(3) Labels.

(i) The employer shall assure that precautionary labels are affixed to all containers of DBCP and of products containing DBCP in the workplace, and that the labels remain affixed when the DBCP or products containing DBCP are sold, distributed, or otherwise leave the employer's workplace. Where DBCP or products containing DBCP are sold, distributed or otherwise leave the employer's workplace bearing appropriate labels required by EPA under the regulations in 40 CFR Part 162, the labels required by this paragraph need not be affixed.

(ii) The employer shall assure that the precautionary labels required by this paragraph are readily visible and legible. The labels shall bear the following legend:

DANGER

1,2-Dibromo-3-chloropropane

CANCER HAZARD

(p) Recordkeeping.

(1) Exposure monitoring.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of all monitoring required by paragraph (f) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) The dates, number, duration and results of each of the samples taken, including a description of the sampling procedure used to determine representative employee exposure;

(b) A description of the sampling and analytical methods used;

(c) Type of respiratory protective devices worn, if any; and

(d) Name, social security number, and job classification of the employee monitored and of all other employees whose exposure the measurement is intended to represent.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for at least 40 years or the duration of employment plus 20 years, whichever is longer.

(2) Medical surveillance.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee subject to medical surveillance required by paragraph (m) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) The name and social security number of the employee;

(b) A copy of the physician's written opinion;

(c) Any employee medical complaints related to exposure to DBCP;

(d) A copy of the information provided the physician as required by paragraphs (m)(4)(ii) through (m)(4)(iv) of this section; and

(e) A copy of the employee's medical and work history.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for at least 40 years or the duration of employment plus 20 years, whichever is longer.

(3) Availability.

(i) The employer shall assure that all records required to be maintained by this section be made available upon request to the Assistant Secretary and the Director for examination and copying.

(ii) Employee exposure monitoring records and employee medical records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i).

[45 F.R. 35283, May 23, 1980.]

(4) Transfer of records.

(i) If the employer ceases to do business, the successor employer shall receive and retain all records required to be maintained by paragraph (p) of this section for the prescribed period.

(ii) If the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records for the prescribed period, the employer shall transmit these records by mail to the Director.

(ii) At the expiration of the retention period for the records required to be maintained under paragraph (p) of this section, the employer shall transmit these records by mail to the Director.

(iv) The employer shall also comply with any additional requirements involving transfer of records set forth in 29 CFR 1910.20(h).

[45 F.R. 35283, May 23, 1980.]

(q) Observation of monitoring.

(1) Employee observation. The employer shall provide affected employees, or their designated representatives, with an opportunity to observe any monitoring of employee exposure to DBCP required by this section.

(2) Observation procedures.

(i) Whenever observation of the measuring or monitoring of employee exposure to DBCP requires entry into an area where the use of protective clothing or equipment is required, the employer shall provide the observer with personal protective clothing or equipment required to be worn by employees working in the area, assure the use of such clothing and equipment, and require the observer to comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(ii) Without interfering with the monitoring or measurement, observers shall be entitled to:

(a) Receive an explanation of the measurement procedures;

(b) Observe all steps related to the measurement of airborne concentrations of DBCP performed at the place of exposure; and

(c) Record the results obtained.

(r) Appendices. The information contained in the appendices is not intended, by itself, to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed or to detract from any existing obligation.

APPENDIX A—SUBSTANCE SAFETY DATA SHEET FOR DBCP

I. SUBSTANCE IDENTIFICATION

A. Synonyms and trades names: DBCP; Dibromochloropropane; Fumazone (Dow Chemical Company TM); Nenafume; Nemagon (Shell Chemical Co. TM); Nemaset; BBC 12; and OS 1879.

B. Permissible exposure:

1. *Airborne.* 1 part DBCP vapor per billion parts of air (1 ppb); time-weighted average (TWA) for an 8-hour workday.

2. *Dermal.* Eye contact and skin contact with DBCP are prohibited.

C. Appearance and odor: Technical grade DBCP is a dense yellow or amber liquid with a pungent odor. It may also appear in granular form, or blended in varying concentrations with other liquids.

D. Uses: DBCP is used to control nematodes, very small worm-like plant parasites, on crops including cotton, soybeans, fruits, nuts, vegetables and ornamentals.

II. HEALTH HAZARD DATA

A. Routes of entry: Employees may be exposed:

1. Through inhalation (breathing);

2. Through ingestion (swallowing);

3. Skin contact; and

4. Eye contact.

B. Effects of exposure:

1. *Acute exposure.* DBCP may cause drowsiness, irritation of the eyes, nose, throat and skin, nausea and vomiting. In addition, overexposure may cause damage to the lungs, liver or kidneys.

2. *Chronic exposure.* Prolonged or repeated exposure to DBCP has been shown to cause sterility in humans. It also has been shown to produce cancer and sterility in laboratory animals and has been determined to constitute an increased risk of cancer in man.

3. *Reporting Signs and Symptoms.* If you develop any of the above signs or symptoms that you think are caused by exposure to DBCP, you should inform your employer.

III. EMERGENCY FIRST AID PROCEDURES

A. *Eye exposure.* If DBCP liquid or dust containing DBCP gets into your eyes, wash your eyes immediately with large amounts of water, lifting the lower and upper lids occasionally. Get medical attention immediately. Contact lenses should not be worn when working with DBCP.

B. *Skin exposure.* If DBCP liquids or dusts containing DBCP get on your skin, immediately wash using soap or mild detergent and water. If DBCP liquids or dusts containing DBCP penetrate through your clothing, remove the clothing immediately and wash. If irritation is present after washing get medical attention.

C. *Breathing.* If you or any person breathe in large amounts of DBCP, move the exposed person to fresh air at once. If breathing has stopped, perform artificial respiration. Do not use mouth-to-mouth. Keep the affected person warm and at rest. Get medical attention as soon as possible.

D. *Swallowing.* When DBCP has been swallowed and the person is conscious, give the person large amounts of water immediately. After the water has been swallowed, try to get the person to vomit by having him touch the back of his throat with his finger. Do not make an unconscious person vomit. Get medical attention immediately.

E. *Rescue.* Notify someone. Put into effect the established emergency rescue procedures. Know the locations of the emergency rescue equipment before the need arises.

IV. RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

A. *Respirators.* You may be required to wear a respirator in emergencies and while your employer is in the process of reducing DBCP exposures through engineering controls. If respirators are worn, they must have a National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) approval label (Older respirators may have a Bureau of Mines Approval label). For effective protection, a respirator must fit your face and head snugly. The respirator should not be loosened or removed in work situations where its use is required. DBCP does not have a detectable odor except at 1,000 times or more above the permissible exposure limit. If you can smell DBCP while wearing a respirator, the respirator is not working correctly; go immediately to fresh air. If you experience difficulty breathing while wearing a respirator, tell your employer.

B. *Protective clothing.* When working with DBCP you must wear for your protection impermeable work clothing provided by your employer. (Standard rubber and neoprene protective clothing do not offer adequate protection).

DBCP must never be allowed to remain on the skin. Clothing and shoes must not be allowed to become contaminated with DBCP, and if they do, they must be promptly removed and not worn again until completely free of DBCP. Turn in impermeable clothing that has developed leaks for repair or replacement.

C. *Eye protection.* You must wear splash-proof safety goggles where there is any posibility of DBCP liquid or dust contacting your eyes.

V. PRECAUTIONS FOR SAFE USE, HANDLING, AND STORAGE

A. DBCP must be stored in tightly closed containers in a cool, well-ventilated area.

B. If your work clothing may have become contaminated with DBCP, or liquids or dusts containing DBCP, you must change into uncontaminated clothing before leaving the work premises.

C. You must promptly remove any protective clothing that becomes contaminated with DBCP. This clothing must not be reworn until the DBCP is removed from the clothing.

D. If your skin becomes contaminated with DBCP, you must immediately and thoroughly wash or shower with soap or mild detergent and water to remove any DBCP from your skin.

E. You must not keep food, beverages, cosmetics, or smoking materials, nor eat or smoke, in regulated areas.

F. If you work in a regulated area, you must wash your hands thoroughly with soap or mild detergent and water, before eating, smoking or using toilet facilities.

G. If you work in a regulated area, you must remove any protective equipment or clothing before leaving the regulated area.

H. Ask your supervisor where DBCP is used in your work area and for any additional safety and health rules.

VI. ACCESS TO INFORMATION

A. Each year, your employer is required to inform you of the information contained in this Substance Safety Data Sheet for DBCP. In addition, your employer must instruct you in the safe use of DBCP, emergency procedures, and the correct use of protective equipment.

B. Your employer is required to determine whether you are being exposed to DBCP. You or your representative have the right to observe employee exposure measurements and to record the result obtained. Your employer is required to inform you of your exposure. If your employer determines that you are being overexposed, he is required to inform you of the actions which are being taken to reduce your exposure.

C. Your employer is required to keep records of your exposure and medical examinations. Your employer is required to keep exposure and medical data for at least 40 years or the duration of your employment plus 20 years, whichever is longer.

D. Your employer is required to release exposure and medical records to you, your physician, or other individual designated by you upon your written request.

APPENDIX B—SUBSTANCE TECHNICAL GUIDELINES FOR DBCP

I. PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL DATA

A. Substance Identification.

1. Synonyms: 1,2-dibromo-3-chloropropane; DBCP, Fumazone; Nemafume; Nemagon; Nemaset; BBC 12; OS 1879. DBCP is also included in agricultural pesticides and fumigants which include the phrase "Nema———" in their name.

2. Formula: $C_3H_5Br_2Cl$.

3. Molecular Weight: 236.

B. Physical Data:

1. Boiling point (760 mm HG): 195C (383F)

2. Specific gravity (water=1): 2.093.

3. Vapor density (air=1 at boiling point of DBCP): Data not available.

4. Melting point: 6C (43F).

5. Vapor pressure at 20C (68F): 0.8 mm Hg

6. Solubility in water: 1000 ppm.

7. Evaporation rate (Butyl Acetate=1): very much less than 1.

8. Appearance and odor: Dense yellow or amber liquid with a pungent odor at high concentrations. Any detectable odor of DBCP indicates overexposure.

II. FIRE EXPLOSION AND REACTIVITY HAZARD DATA

A. Fire

1. Flash point: 170F (77C)

2. Autoignition temperature: Data not available.

3. Flammable limits in air, percent by volume: Data not available.

4. Extinguishing media: Carbon dioxide, dry chemical.

5. Special fire-fighting procedures: Do not use a solid stream of water since a stream will scatter and spread the fire. Use water spray to cool containers exposed to a fire.

6. Unusual fire and explosion hazards: None known.

7. For purposes of complying with the requirements of § 1910.106, liquid DBCP is classified as a Class III A combustible liquid.

8. For the purpose of complying with § 1910.309, the classification of hazardous locations as described in article 500 of the National Electrical Code for DBCP shall be Class I, Group D.

9. For the purpose of compliance with § 1910.157, DBCP is classified as a Class B fire hazard.

10. For the purpose of compliance with § 1910.178, locations classified as hazardous locations due to the presence of DBCP shall be Class I, Group D.

11. Sources of ignition are prohibited where DBCP presents a fire or explosion hazard.

B. Reactivity.

1. Conditions contributing to instability: None known.

2. Incompatibilities: Reacts wtih chemically active metals, such as aluminum, magnesium and tin alloys.

3. Hazardous decomposition products: Toxic gases and vapors (such as HBr, HC1 and carbon monoxide) may be released in a fire involving DBCP.

4. Special precautions: DBCP will attack some rubber materials and coatings.

III. SPILL, LEAK AND DISPOSAL PROCEDURES

A. If DBCP is spilled or leaked, the following steps should be taken:

1. The area should be evacuated at once and re-entered only after thorough ventilation.

2. Ventilate area of spill or leak.

3. If in liquid form, collect for reclamation or absorb in paper, vermiculite, dry sand, earth or similar material.

4. If in solid form, collect spilled material in the most convenient and safe manner for reclamation or for disposal.

B. Persons not wearing protective equst be restricted from areas of spills or leaks until cleanup has been completed.

C. Waste Disposal Methods:

1. For small quantities of liquid DBCP, absorb on paper towels, remove to a safe place (such as a fume hood) and burn the paper. Large quantities can be reclaimed or collected and atomized in a suitable combustion chamber equipped with an appropriate effluent gas cleaning device. If liquid DBCP is absorbed in vermiculite, dry sand, earth or similar material and placed in sealed containers it may be disposed of in a State-approved sanitary landfill.

2. If in solid form, for small quantities, place on paper towels, remove to a safe place (such as a fume hood) and burn. Large quantities may be reclaimed. However, if this is not practical, dissolve in a flammable solvent (such as alcohol) and atomize in a suitable combustion chamber equipped with an appropriate effluent gas cleaning device. DBCP in solid form may also be disposed in a state-approved sanitary landfill.

IV. MONITORING AND MEASUREMENT PROCEDURES

A. Exposure above the permissible exposure limit.

1. *Eight Hour Exposure Evaluation:* Measurements taken for the purpose of determining employee exposure under this section are best taken so that the average 8-hour exposure may be determined from a single 8-hour sample or two (2) 4-hour samples. Air samples should be taken in the employee's breathing zone (air that would most nearly represent that inhaled by the employee).

2. *Monitoring Techniques:* The sampling and analysis under this section may be performed by collecting the DBCP vapor on petroleum based charcoal absorption tubes with subsequent chemical analyses. The method of measurement chosen should determine the concentration of airborne DBCP at the permissible exposure limit to an accuracy of plus or minus 25 percent. If charcoal tubes are used, a total volume of 10 liters should be collected at a flow rate of 50 cc. per minute for each tube. Analyze the resultant samples as you would samples of halogenated solvent.

B. Since many of the duties relating to employee protection are dependent on the results of monitoring and measuring procedures, employers should assure that the evaluation of employee exposures is performed by a competent industrial hygienist or other technically qualified person.

V. PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

Employees should be required to wear appropriate protective clothing to prevent any possibility of skin contact with DBCP. Because DBCP is absorbed through the skin, it is important to prevent skin contact with both liquid and solid forms of DBCP. Protective clothing should include impermeable coveralls or similar fullbody work clothing, gloves, headcoverings, and workshoes or shoe coverings. Standard rubber and neoprene gloves do not offer adequate protection and should not be relied upon to keep DBCP off the skin. DBCP should never be allowed to remain on the skin. Clothing and shoes should not be allowed to become contaminated with the material, and if they do, they should be promptly removed and not worn again until completely free of the material. Any protective clothing which has developed leaks or otherwise found to be defective should be repaired or replaced. Employees should also be required to wear splash-proof safety goggles where there is any possiblity of DBCP contacting the eyes.

VI. HOUSEKEEPING AND HYGIENE FACILITIES

1. The workplace must be kept clean, orderly and in a sanitary condition:

2. Dry sweeping and the use of compressed air is unsafe for the cleaning of floors and other surfaces where DBCP dust or liquids are found. To minimize the contamination of air with dust, vacuuming with either portable or permanent systems must be used. If a portable unit is selected, the exhaust must be attached to the general workplace exhaust ventilation system, or collected wtihin the vacuum unit equipped with high efficiency filters or other appropriate means of contamination removal and not used for other purposes. Units used to collect DBCP must be labeled.

3. Adequate washing facilities with hot and cold water must be provided, and maintained in a sanitary condition. Suitable cleansing agents should also be provided to assure the effective removal of DBCP from the skin.

4. Change or dressing rooms with individual clothes storage facilities must be provided to prevent the contamination of street clothes with DBCP. Because of the hazardous nature of DBCP, contaminated protective clothing must be stored in closed containers for cleaning or disposal.

VII. MISCELLANEOUS PRECAUTIONS

A. Store DBCP in tightly closed containers in a cool, well ventilated area.

B. Use of supplied-air suits or other impervious clothing (such as acid suits) may be necessary to prevent skin contact with DBCP. Supplied-air suits should be selected, used, and maintained under the supervision of persons knowledgeable in the limitations and potential life-endangering characteristics of supplied-air suits.

C. The use of air conditioned suits may be necessary in warmer climates.

D. Advise employees of all areas and operations where exposure to DBCP could occur.

VIII. COMMON OPERATIONS

Common operations in which exposure to DBCP is likely to occur are: during its production; and during its formulation into pesticides and fumigants.

APPENDIX C.—MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE GUIDELINES FOR DBCP

I. ROUTE OF ENTRY

Inhalation; skin absorption

II. TOXICOLOGY

Recent data collected on workers involved in the manufacture and formulation of DBCP has shown that DBCP can cause sterility at very low levels of exposure. This finding is supported by studies showing that DBCP causes sterility in animals. Chronic exposure to DBCP resulted in pronounced necrotic action on the parenchymatous organs (i.e., liver, kidney, spleen) and on the testicles of rats at concentrations as low as 5 ppm. Rats that were chronically exposed to DBCP also showed changes in the composition of the blood, showing low RBC, hemoglobin, and WBC, and high reticulocyte levels as well as functional hepatic disturbance, manifesting itself in a long prothrombin time. Reznik et al. noted a single dose of 100 mg produced profound depression of the nervous system of rats. Their condition gradually improved. Acute exposure also resulted in the destruction of the sex gland activity of male rats as well as causing changes in the estrous cycle in female rats. Animal studies have also associated DBCP with an increased incidence of carcinoma. Olson, et al. orally administered DBCP to rats and mice 5 times per week at experimentally predetermined maximally tolerated doses and at half those doses. As early as ten weeks after initiation of treatment, DBCP induced a high incidence of squamous cell carcinomas of the stomach with metastases in both species. DBCP also induced mammary adenocarcinomas in the female rats at both dose levels.

III. SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

A. Inhalation: Nausea, eye irritation, conjunctivitis, respiratory irritation, pulmonary congestion or edema, CNS depression with apathy, sluggishness, and ataxia.

B. Dermal: Erythema or inflammation and dermatitis on repeated exposure.

IV. SPECIAL TESTS

A. *Semen analysis:* The following information excerpted from the document "Evaluation of Testicular Function", submitted by the Corporate Medical Department of the Shell Oil Company (exhibit 39-3), may be useful to physicians conducting the medical surveillance program;

In performing semen analyses certain minimal but specific criteria should be met;

1. It is recommended that a minimum of three valid semen analyses be obtained in order to make a determination of an individual's average sperm count.

2. A period of sexual abstinence is necessary prior to the collection of each masturbatory sample. It is recommended that intercourse or masturbation be performed 48 hours before the actual specimen collection. A period of 48 hours of abstinence would follow; then the masturbatory sample would be collected.

3. Each semen specimen should be collected in a clean, widemouthed, glass jar (not necessarily pre-sterilized) in a manner designated by the examining physician. Any part of the seminal fluid exam should be initialed *only after liquifaction* is complete, i.e., 30 to 45 minutes after collection.

4. Semen volume should be measured to the nearest 1/10th of a cubic centimeter.

5. Sperm density should be determined using routine techniques involving the use of a white cell pipette and a hemocytometer chamber. The immobilizng fluid most effective and most easily obtained for this process is distilled water.

6. Thin, dry smears of the semen should be made for a morphologic classification of the sperm forms and should be stained with either hematoxalin or the more difficult, yet more precise, Papanicolaou technique. Also of importance to record is obvious sperm agglutination, pyospermia, delayed liquifaction (greater than 30 minutes), and hyperviscosity. In addition, pH, using nitrazine paper, should be determined.

7. A total morphology evaluation should include percentages of the following:

a. Normal (oval) forms.

b. Tapered forms,

c. Amorphorous forms (include large and small sperm shapes),

d. Duplicated (either heads or tails) forms, and

e. Immature forms.

8. Each sample should be evaluated for sperm *viability* (percent viable sperm moving at the time of examination) as well as sperm *motility* (subjective characterization of "purposeful forward sperm progression" of the majority of those viable sperm analyzed) within two hours after collection, ideally by the same or equally qualified examiner.

B. *Serum determinations:* The following serum determinations should be performed by radioimmuno-assay techniques using National Institutes of Health (NIH) specific anigen or antigen preparations of equivalent sensitivity;

1. Serum follicle stimulating hormone (FSH);

2. Serum luteinizing hormone (LH); and

3. Serum total estrogen (females only).

V. TREATMENT

Remove from exposure immediately, give oxygen or artifical resuscitation if indicated. Contaminated clothing and shoes should be removed immediately. Flush eyes and wash contaminated skin. If swallowed and the person is conscious, induce vomiting. Recovery from mild exposures is usually rapid and complete.

VI. SURVEILLANCE AND PREVENTIVE CONSIDERATIONS

A. *Other considerations.* DBCP can cause both acute and chronic effects. It is important that the physician become familiar with the operating conditions in which exposure to DBCP occurs. Those with respiratory disorders may not tolerate the wearing of negative pressure respirators.

B. *Surveillance and screening.* Medical histories and laboratory examinations are required for each employee subject to exposure to DBCP. The employer should screen employees for history of certain medical conditions (listed below) which might place the employee at increased risk from exposure.

1. *Liver disease.* The primary site of bio-transformation and detoxification of DBCP is the liver. Liver dysfunctions likely to inhibit the conjugation reactions will tend to promote the toxic actions of DBCP. These precautions should be considered before exposing persons with impaired liver function to DBCP.

2. *Renal disease.* Because DBCP has been associated with injury to the kidney it is important that special consideration be given to those with possible impairment of renal function.

3. *Skin disease.* DBCP can penetrate the skin and can cause erythema on prolonged exposure. Persons with pre-existing skin disorders may be more susceptible to the effects of DBCP.

4. *Blood dyscrasias.* DBCP has been shown to decrease the content of erythrocytes, hemoglobin, and leukocytes in the blood, as well as increase the prothrombin time. Persons with existing blood disorders may be more susceptible to the effects of DBCP.

5. *Reproductive disorders.* Animal studies have associated DBCP with various effects on the reproductive organs. Among these effects are atrophy of the testicles and changes in the estrous cycle. Persons with pre-existing reproductive disorders may be at increased risk to these effects of DBCP.

REFERENCES

1. Reznik, Ya. B. and Sprinchan, G.K.: Experimental Data on the Gonadotoxic effect of Nemagon, *Gig. Sanit.*, (6), 1975, pp. 101–102, (translated from Russian).

2. Faydysh, E. V., Rakhmatullaev, N N. and Varshavskii, V. A.: The Cytotoxic Action of Memagon in a Sub-

acute Experiment, *Med. Zh. Uzbekistana*, (No. 1), 1970, pp. 64–65, (translated from Russian).

3. Rakhmatullaev, N. N.; Hygienic Characteristics of the Nematocide Nemagon in Relation to Water Pollution Control, *Hyg. Sanit.* 36(3), 1971, pp. 344–348, (translated from Russian).

4. Olson, W. A. *et al.:* Induction of Stomach Cancer in Rats and Mice by Halogenated Aliphatic Fumigants, *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, (51), 1973, pp. 1993–1995.

5. Torkelson, T. R. *et al.:* Toxicologic Investigations of 1,2-Dibromo-3-chloropropane, *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology, 3, 1961 pp. 545–559.*

[43 F.R. 11527, March 17, 1978.]

1910.1045—ACRYLONITRILE

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to all occupational exposures to acrylonitrile (AN), Chemical Abstracts Service Registry No. 000107131, except as provided in paragraphs (a)(2) and (a)(3) of this section.

(2) This section does not apply to exposures which result solely from the processing, use, and handling of the following materials:

(i) ABS resins, SAN resins, nitrile barrier resins, solid nitrile elastomers, and acrylic and modacrylic fibers, when these listed materials are in the form of finished polymers, and products fabricated from such finished polymers;

(ii) Materials made from and/or containing AN for which objective data is reasonably relied upon to demonstrate that the material is not capable of releasing AN in airborne concentrations in excess of 1 ppm as an eight (8)-hour time-weighted average, under the expected conditions of processing, use, and handling which will cause the greatest possible release; and

(iii) Solid materials made from and/or containing AN which will not be heated above 170° F during handling, use, or processing.

(3) An employer relying upon exemption under paragraph (a)(2)(ii) shall maintain records of the objective data supporting that exemption, and of the basis of the employer's reliance on the data as provided in paragraph (q) of this section.

(b) Definitions.

"Acrylonitrile" or "AN" means acrylonitrile monomer, chemical formula $CH_2 = CHCN$.

"Action level" means a concentration of AN of 1 ppm as an eight (8)-hour time-weighted average.

"Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

"Authorized person" means any person specifically authorized by the employer whose duties require the person to enter a regulated area, or any person entering such an area as a designated representative of employees for the purpose of exercising the opportunity to observe monitoring procedures under paragraph (r) of this section.

"Decontamination" means treatment of materials and surfaces by water washdown, ventilation, or other means, to assure that the materials will not expose employees to airborne concentrations of AN above 1 means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, or designee.

"Emergency" means any occurrence such as, but not limited to, equipment failure, rupture of containers, or failure of control equipment, which results in an unexpected massive release of AN.

"Liquid AN" means AN monomer in liquid form, and liquid or semiliquid polymer intermediates, including slurries, suspensions, emulsions, and solutions, produced during the polymerization of AN.

"OSHA Area Office" means the Area Office of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration having jurisdiction over the geographic area where the affected workplace is located.

(c) Permissible exposure limits.

(1) Inhalation.

(i) Time weighted average limit (TWA). The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of acrylonitrile in excess of two (2) parts acrylonitrile per million parts of air (2 ppm) as an eight (8)-hour time-weighted average.

(ii) Ceiling limit. The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of acrylonitrile in excess of ten (10) ppm as averaged over any fifteen (15)-minute period during the working day.

(2) Dermal and eye exposure. The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to skin contact or eye contact with liquid AN.

(d) Notification of regulated areas and emergencies.

(1) Regulated areas. Within thirty (30) days following the establishment of a regulated area pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section, the employer shall report the following information to the OSHA Area Office:

(i) The address and location of each establishment which has one or more regulated areas:

(ii) The locations, within the establishment, of each regulated area;

(iii) A brief description of each process or operation which results in employee exposure to AN in regulated areas; and

(iv) The number of employees engaged in each process or operation within each regulated area which results in exposure to AN, and an estimate of the frequency and degree of exposure that occurs.

Whenever there has been a significant change in the information required to be reported by this paragraph, the employer shall promptly provide the new information to the OSHA Area Office.

(2) Emergencies. Emergencies, and the facts obtainable at that time, shall be reported within seventy-two (72) hours of the initial occurrence to the OSHA Area Office. Upon request of the OSHA Area Office, the employer shall submit additional information in writing relevant to the nature and extent of employee exposures and measures taken to prevent future emergencies of a similar nature.

(e) Exposure monitoring

(1) General.

(i) Determinations of airborne exposure levels shall be made from air samples that are representative of each employee's exposure to AN over an eight (8)-hour period.

(ii) For the purposes of this section, employee exposure is that exposure which would occur if the employee were not using a respirator.

(2) Initial monitoring. Each employer who has a place of employment in which AN is present shall monitor each such workplace and work operation to accurately determine the airborne concentrations of AN to which employees may be exposed.

(3) Frequency.

(i) If the monitoring required by this section reveals employee exposure to be below the action level, the employer may discontinue monitoring for that employee.

(ii) If the monitoring required by this section reveals employee exposure to be at or above the action level but below the permissible exposure limits, the employer shall repeat such monitoring for each such employee at least quarterly. The employer shall continue these quarterly measurements until at least two consecutive measurements taken at least seven (7) days apart, are below the action level, and thereafter the employer may discontinue monitoring for that employee.

(iii) If the monitoring required by this section reveals employee exposure to be in excess of the permissible exposure limits, the employer shall repeat these determinations for each such employee at least monthly. The employer shall continue these monthly measurements until at least two consecutive measurements, taken at least seven (7) days apart, are below the permissible exposure limits, and thereafter the employer shall monitor at least quarterly.

(4) Additional monitoring. When ever there has been a production, process, control, or personnel change which may result in new or additional exposures to AN, or whenever the employer has any other reason to suspect a change which may result in new or additional exposures to AN, additional monitoring which complies with this paragraph shall be conducted.

(5) Employee notification.

(i) Within five (5) working days after the receipt of the results of monitoring required by this paragraph, the employer shall notify each employee in writing of the results which represent that employee's exposure.

(ii) Whenever the results indicate that the representative employee exposure exceeds the permissible exposure limits, the employer shall include in the written notice a statement that the permissible exposure limits were exceeded and a description of the corrective action being taken to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limits.

(6) Accuracy of measurement. The method of measurement of employee exposures shall be accurate, to a confidence level of 95 percent, to within plus or minus 35 percent for concentrations of AN at or above the permissible exposure limits, and plus or minus 50 percent for concentrations of AN below the permissible exposure limits.

(f) Regulated areas.

(1) The employer shall establish regulated areas where AN concentrations are in excess of the permissible exposure limits.

(2) Regulated areas shall be demarcated and segregated from the rest of the workplace, in any manner that minimizes the number of persons who will be exposed to AN.

(3) Access to regulated areas shall be limited to authorized persons or to persons otherwise authorized by the act or regulations issued pursuant thereto.

(4) The employer shall assure that food or beverages are not present or consumed, tobacco products are not present or used, and cosmetics are not applied in the regulated area.

(g) Methods of compliance.

(1) Engineering and work practice controls.

(i) By November 2, 1978, the employer shall insitute engineering and work practice controls to reduce and maintain employee exposures to AN, to or below the permissible exposure limits, except to the extent that the employer establishes that such controls are not feasible.

(ii) Wherever the engineering and work practice controls which can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce employee exposures to or below the permissible exposure limits, the employer shall nonetheless use them to reduce exposures to the lowest levels achievable by these controls, and shall supplement them by the use of respiratory protection which complies with the requirements of paragraph (h) of this section.

(2) Compliance program.

(i) The employer shall establish and implement a written program to reduce employee exposures to or below the permissible exposure limits solely by means of engineering and work practice controls, as required by paragraph (g)(1) of this section.

(ii) Written plans for these compliance programs shall include at least the following:

(a) A description of each operation or process resulting in employee exposure to AN above the permissible exposure limits;

(b) An outline of the nature of the engineering controls and work practices to be applied to the operation or process in question;

(c) A report of the technology considered in meeting the permissible exposure limits;

(d) A schedule for implementation of engineering and work practice controls for the operation or process, which shall project completion no later than November 2, 1980; and

(e) Other relevant information.

(iii) The employer shall complete the steps set forth in the compliance program by the dates in the schedule.

(iv) Written plans shall be submitted upon request to the Assistant Secretary and the Director, and shall be available at the worksite for examination and copying by the Assistant Secretary, the Director, or any affected employee or representative.

(v) The plans required by this paragraph shall be revised and updated at least every six (6) months to reflect the current status of the program.

(h) Respiratory protection.

(1) General. The employer shall assure that respirators are used where required by this section to reduce employee exposure within the permissible exposure limits. Respirators shall be used in the following circumstances:

(i) During the time period necessary to install or implement feasible engineering and work practice controls;

(ii) In work operations, such as maintenance and repair activities or reactor cleaning, in which the employer establishes that engineering and work practice controls are not feasible;

(iii) In work situations where feasible engineering and work practice controls are not yet sufficient to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limits; and

(iv) In emergencies.

(2) Respirator selection.

(i) Where respiratory protection is required under this section, the employer shall select and provide, at no cost to the employee, the appropriate type of respirator from table I below, and shall assure that the employee wears the respirator provided.

(ii) The employer shall select respirators from among those approved for use with organic vapors by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health under the provisions of 30 CFR part 11.

(3) Respirator program.

(i) The employer shall institute a respiratory protection program in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.134 (b), (d), (e), and (f).

(ii) Where air/purifying respirators (chemical cartridge- or canister-type) are used, the air-purifying canister or cartridge(s) shall be replaced prior to the expiration of their service life or at the completion of each shift, whichever occurs first. A label shall be attached to the cartridge or canister to indicate the date and time at which it is first installed on the respirator.

(iii) Testing. Fit testing of respirators shall be performed to assure that the respirator selected provides the protection required by table I.

(a) Qualitative fit. The employer shall perform qualitative fit tests at the time of initial fitting and at least semiannually therafter for each employee wearing respirators.

TABLE I.—*Respiratory Protection for Acrylonitrile (AN)*

Concentration of AN or condition of use	Respirator type
(a) Less than or equal to 20 ppm	(1) Chemical cartridge respirator with organic vapor cartridge(s) and half-mask facepiece; or (2) Supplied air respirator with half-mask facepiece.
(b) Less than or equal to 100 ppm or maximum use concentration (MUC) of cartridges or canisters, whichever is lower.	(1) Full facepiece respirator with (A) organic vapor cartridges, (B) organic vapor gas mask chin-style, or (C) organic vapor gas mask canister, front- or back-mounted; (2) Supplied air respirator with full facepiece; or (3) Self-contained breathing apparatus with full facepiece.
(c) Less than or equal to 4,000 ppm	(1) Supplied air respirator operated in the positive pressure mode with full facepiece, helmet, suit, or hood.
(d) Greater than 4,000 ppm or unknown concentration	(1) Supplied air and auxiliary self-contained breathing apparatus with full facepiece in positive pressure mode; or (2) Self-contained breathing apparatus with full facepiece in positive pressure mode.
(e) Firefighting	Self-contained breathing apparatus with full facepiece in positive pressure mode.
(f) Escape	(1) Any organic vapor respirator, or (2) Any self-contained breathing apparatus.

(b) Qualitative fit. Each employer with more than 10 employees wearing negative pressure respirators shall perform quantitative fit testing at the time of initial fitting and at least semiannually thereafter for each such employee.

(iv) Employees who wear respirators shall be allowed to wash their faces and wipe clean the face-to-facepiece seals on their respirators to minimize potential skin irritation associated with respirator use.

(i) Emergency situations.

(1) Written plans.

(i) A written plan for emergency situations shall be developed for each workplace where liquid AN is present. Appropriate portions of the plan shall be implemented in the event of an emergency.

(ii) The plan shall specifically provide that employees engaged in correcting emergency conditions shall be equipped as required in paragraph (h) of this section until the emergency is abated.

(iii) Employees not engaged in correcting the emergency shall be evacuated from the area and shall not be permitted to return until the emergency is abated.

(2) Alerting employees. Where there is the possibility of employee exposure to AN in excess of the ceiling limit, a general alarm shall be installed and used to promptly alert employees of such occurrences.

(j) Protective clothing and equipment.

(1) Provision and use. Where eye or skin contact with liquid AN may occur, the employer shall provide at no cost to the employee, and assure that employees wear, impermeable protective clothing or other equipment to protect any area of the body which may come in contact with liquid AN. The provision of §§ 1910.132 and 1910.133 shall be complied with.

(2) Cleaning and replacement.

(i) The employer shall clean, launder, maintain, or replace protective clothing and equipment required by this section as needed to maintain their effectiveness.

(ii) The employer shall assure that impermeable protective clothing which contacts or is likely to have contacted liquid AN shall be decontaminated before being removed by the employee.

(iii) The employer shall assure that an employee whose nonimpermeable clothing becomes wetted with liquid AN shall immediately remove that clothing and proceed to shower. The clothing shall be decontamianted before it is removed from the regulated area.

(iv) The employer shall assure that no employee removes protective clothing or equipment from the change room, except for those employees authorized to do so for the purpose of laundering, maintenance, or disposal.

(v) The employer shall inform any person who launders or cleans protective clothing or equipment of the potentially harmful effects of exposure to AN.

(k) Housekeeping.

(1) All surfaces shall be maintained free of visible accumulations of liquid AN.

(2) For operations involving liquid AN, the employer shall institute a program for detecting leaks and spills of liquid AN, including regular visual inspections.

(3) Where spills of liquid AN are detected, the employer shall assure that surfaces contacted by the liquid AN are decontamianted. Employees not engaged in decontamination activities shall leave the area of the spill, and shall not be permitted in the area until decomtamination is completed.

(l) Waste disposal. AN waste, scrap, debris, bags, containers, or equipment shall be decontamianted before being incorporated in the general waste disposal system.

(m) Hygiene facilities and practices.

(1) Where employees are exposed to airborne concentrations of AN above the permissible exposure limits, or where employees are required to wear protective clothing or equipment pursuant to paragraph (j) of this section, the facilities required by 29 CFR 1910.141, including clean change rooms and shower facilities, shall be provided by the employer for the use of those employees, and the employer shall assure that the employees use the facilities provided.

(2) The employer shall assure that employees wearing protective clothing or equipment for protection from skin contact with liquid AN shall shower at the end of the work shift.

(3) The employer shall assure that, in the event of skin or eye exposure to liquid AN, the affected employee shall shower immediately to minimize the danger of skin absorption.

(4) The employer shall assure that employees working in the regulated area wash their hands and faces prior to eating.

(n) Medical surveillance.

(1) General.

(i) The employer shall institute a program of medical surveillance for each employee who is or will be exposed to AN at or above the action level, without regard to the use of respirators. The employer shall provide each such employee with an opportunity for medical examinations and tests in accordance with this paragraph.

(ii) The employer shall assure that all medical examinations and procedures are performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician, and that they shall be provided without cost to the employee.

(2) Initial examinations. At the time of initial assignment, or upon institution of the medical surveillance program, the employer shall provide each affected employee an opportunity for a medical examination, including at least the following elements:

(i) A work history and medical history with special attention to skin, respiratory, and gastrointestinal systems, and those nonspecific symptoms, such as headache, nausea, vomiting, dizziness, weakness, or other central nervous system dysfunctions that may be associated with acute or with chronic exposure to AN;

(ii) A complete physical examination giving particular attention to the peripheral and central nervous system, gastrointestinal system, respiratory system, skin, and thyroid;

(iii) A 14- by 17-inch posteroanterior chest X-ray; and

(iv) Further tests of the intestinal tract, including fecal occult blood screening, for all workers 40 year of age or older, and for any other affected employees for whom, in the opinion of the physician, such testing is appropriate.

(3) Periodic examinations.

(i) The employer shall provide the examinations specified in paragrah (n)(2) of this section at least annually for all employees specified in paragraph (n)(1) of this section.

(ii) If an employee has not had the examination specified in paragraph (n)(2) of this section within 6 months preceding termination of employment, the employer shall make such examination available to the employee prior to such termination.

(4) Additional examinations. If the employee for any reason develops signs or symptoms which may be assocated with exposure to AN, the employer shall provide an appropriate examination and emergency medical treatment.

(5) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide the following information to the examining physician:

(i) A copy of this standard and its appendixes;

(ii) A description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposure;

(iii) The employee's representative exposure level;

(iv) The employee's anticipated or estimated exposure level (for preplacement examinations or in cases of exposure due to an emergency);

(v) A description of any personal protective equipment used or to be used; and

(vi) Information from previous medical examinations of the affected employee, which is not otherwise available to the examining physician.

(6) Physician's written opinion.

(i) The employer shall obtain a written opinion from the examining physician which shall include:

(a) The results of the medical examination and tests performed;

(b) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical condition(s) which would place the employee at an increased risk of material impairment of the employee's health from exposure to AN;

(c) Any recommended limitations upon the employee's exposure to AN or upon the use of protective clothing and equipment such as respirators; and

(d) A statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and any medical conditions which require further examination or treatment.

(ii) The employer shall instruct the physician not to reveal in the written opinion specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure to AN.

(iii) The employer shall provide a copy of the written opinion to the affected employee.

(o) Employee information and training.

(1) Training program.

(i) By January 2, 1979, the employer shall institute a training program for and assure the participation of all employees exposed to AN above the action level, all employees whose exposures are maintained below the action level by engineering and work practice controls, and all employees subject to potential skin or eye contact with liquid AN.

(ii) Training shall be provided at the time of initial assignment, or upon institution of the training program, and at least annually thereafter, and the employer shall assure that each employee is informed of the following:

(a) The information contained in appendixes A and B;

(b) The quantity, location, manner of use, release, or storage of AN, and the specific nature of operations which could result in exposure of AN, as well as any necessary protective steps;

(c) The purpose, proper use, and limitations of respirators and protective clothing;

(d) The purpose and a description of the medical surveillance program required by paragraph (n) of this section;

(e) The emergency procedures developed, as required by paragraph (i) of this section;

(f) Engineering and work practice controls, their function, and the employee's relationship to these controls; and

(g) A review of this standard.

(2) Access to training materials.

(i) The employer shall make a copy of this standard and its appendixes readily available to all affected employees.

(ii) The employer shall provide, upon request, all materials relating to the employee information and training program to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(p) Signs and labels.

(1) General.

(i) The employer may use labels or signs required by other statutes, regulations, or ordinances in addition to, or in combination with, signs and labels required by this paragraph.

(ii) The employer shall assure that no statement appears on or near any sign or label required by this paragraph which contradicts or detracts from the required sign or label.

(2) Signs.

(i) The employer shall post signs to clearly indicate all workplaces where AN concentrations exceed the permissible exposure limits. The signs shall bear the following legend:

DANGER

ACRYLONITRILE (AN)

CANCER HAZARD

AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

RESPIRATORS MAY BE REQUIRED

(ii) The employer shall assure that signs required by this paragraph are illuminated and cleaned as necessary so that the legend is readily visible.

(3) Labels.

(i) The employer shall assure that precautionary labels are affixed to all containers of liquid AN and AN-based materials not exempted under paragraph (a)(2) of this standard. The employer shall assure that the labels remain affixed when the materials are sold, distributed, or otherwise leave the employer's workplace.

(ii) The employer shall assure that the precautionary labels required by this paragraph are readily visible and legible. The labels shall bear the following legend:

DANGER

CONTAINS ACRYLONITRILE (AN)

CANCER HAZARD

(q) Recordkeeping.

(1) Objective data for exempted operations.

(i) Where the processing, use, and handling of materials made from or containing AN are exempted pursuant to paragraph (a)(2) (ii) of this section, the employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of objective data reasonably relied upon in support of the exemption.

(ii) This record shall include at least the following information:

(a) The material qualifying for exemption;

(b) The source of the objective data;

(c) The testing protocol, results of testing, and/or analysis of the material for the release of AN;

(d) A description of the operation exempted and how the data supports the exemption; and

(e) Other data relevant to the operations, materials, and processing covered by the exemption.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for the duration of the employer's reliance upon such objective data.

(2) Exposure monitoring.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of all monitoring required by paragraph (e) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) The dates, number, duration, and results of each of the samples taken, including a description of the sampling procedure used to determine representative employee exposure;

(b) A description of the sampling and analytical methods used and the data relied upon to establish that the methods used meet the accuracy and precision requirements of paragraph (e)(6) of this section;

(c) Type of respiratory protective devices worn, if any; and

(d) Name, social security number, and job classification of the employee monitored and of all other employees whose exposure the measurement is intended to represent.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for at least forty (40) years, or for the duration of employment plus twenty (20) years, whichever is longer.

(3) Medical surveillance.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee subject to medical surveillance as required by paragraph (n) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) A copy of the physician's written opinions;

(b) Any employee medical complaints related to exposure of AN;

(c) A copy of the information provided to the physician as required by paragraph (n)(5) of this section; and

(d) A copy of the employee's medical and work history.

(iii) The employer shall assure that this record be maintained for at lest forty (40) years, or for the duration of employment plus twenty (20) years, whichever is longer.

(4) Availability.

(i) The employer shall make all records required to be maintained by this section available, upon request, to the Assistant Secretary and the Director for examination and copying.

(ii) Records required by paragraphs (q)(1)-(q)(3) of this section shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)-(e) and (g)-(i). Records required by paragraph (q)(1) shall be provided in the same manner as exposure monitoring records.

[45 F.R. 54333, August 15, 1980.]

(5) Transfer of records.

(i) Whenever the employer ceases to do business, the successor employer shall receive and retain all records required to be maintained by this section for the prescribed period.

(ii) Whenever the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records for the prescribed period, these records shall be transmitted to the Director.

(iii) At the expiration of the retention period for the records required to be maintained pursuant to this section, the employer shall notify the Director at least 3 months prior to the disposal of the records, and shall transmit them to the Director upon request.

(iv) The employer shall also comply with any additional requirements involving transfer of records set forth in 29 CFR 1910.20(h).

[45 F.R. 35283, May 23, 1980.]

(r) Observation of monitoring.

(1) Employee observation. The employer shall provide affected employees, or their designated representatives, an opportunity to observe any monitoring of employee exposure to AN conducted pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section.

(2) Observation procedures.

(i) Whenever observation of the monitoring of employee exposure to AN requires entry into an area where the use of protective clothing or equipment is required, the employer shall provide the observer with personal protective clothing and equipment required to be worn by employees working in the area, assure the use of such clothing and equipment, and require the observer to comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(ii) Without interfering with the monitoring, observers shall be entitled:

(a) To receive an explanation of the measurement procedures;

(b) To observe all steps related to the measurement of airborne concentrations of AN performed at the place of exposure; and

(c) To record the results obtained.

(s) Effective date.

(1) This section shall become effective November 2, 1978.

(2) Monitoring and medical surveillance conducted since January 17, 1978, under the provisions of the emergency temporary standard may be relied upon by the employer to meet the initial monitoring and initial medical surveillance requirements of this section.

(3) Training programs must be implemented by January 2, 1979.

(4) Engineering and work practice controls required by paragraph (g) of this section shall be implemented no later than November 2, 1980.

(t) Appendixes. The information contained in the appendixes is not intended, by itself, to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed, or to detract from any obligation.

APPENDIX A—SUBSTANCE SAFETY DATA SHEET FOR ACRYLONITRILE

I. SUBSTANCE IDENTIFICATION

A. Substance: Acrylonitrile ($CH_2=CHCN$).

B. Synonyms: Propenenitrile; vinyl cyanide; cyanoethylene; AN; VCN; acrylon; carbacryl; fumigrain; ventox.

C. Acrylonitrile can be found as a liquid or vapor, and can also be found in polymer resins, rubbers, plastics, polyols, and other polymers having acrylonitrile as a raw or intermediate material.

D. AN is used in the manufacture of acrylic and modiacrylic fibers, acrylic plastics and resins, speciality polymers, nitrile rubbers, and other organic chemicals. It has also been used as a fumigant.

E. Appearance and odor: Colorless to pale yellow liquid with a pungent order which can only be detected at concentrations above the permissible exposure level, in a range of 13–19 parts AN per million parts of air (13–19 ppm).

F. Permissible exposure: Exposure may not exceed either;

1. Two parts AN per million parts of air (2 ppm) averaged over the 8-hour workday; or

2. Ten parts AN per million parts of air (10 ppm) averaged over any 15-minute period in the workday.

3. In addition, skin and eye contact with liquid AN is prohibited.

II. HEALTH HAZARD DATA

A. Acrylonitrile can affect your body if you inhale the vapor (breathing), if it comes in contact with your eyes or skin, or if you swallow it. It may enter your body through your skin.

B. Effects of overexposure: 1. Short-term exposure: acrylonitrile can cause eye irritation, nausea, vomiting, headache, sneezing, weakness, and light-headedness. At high concentrations, the effects of exposure may go on to loss of consciousness and death. When acrylonitrile is held in contact with the skin after being absorbed into shoe leather or clothing, it may produce blisters following several hours of no apparent effect. Unless the shoes or clothing are removed immediately and the area washed, blistering will occur. Usually there is no pain or inflammation associated with blister formation.

2. Long-term exposure: Acrylonitrile has been shown to cause cancer in laboratory animals and has been associated with higher incidences of cancer in humans. Repeated or prolonged exposure of the skin to acrylonitrile may produce irritation and dermatitis.

3. Reporting signs and symptoms: You should inform your employer if you develop any signs or symptoms and suspect they are caused by exposure to acrylonitrile.

III. EMERGENCY FIRST AID PROCEDURES

A. Eye exposure: If acrylonitrile gets into your eyes, wash your eyes immediately with large amounts of water, lifting the lower and upper lids occasionally. Get medical attention immediately. Contact lenses should not be worn when working with this chemical.

B. Skin exposure: If acrylonitrile gets on your skin, immediately wash the contaminated skin with water. If acrylonitrile soaks through your clothing, especially your shoes, remove the clothing immediately and wash the skin with water. If symptoms occur after washing, get medical attention immediately. Thoroughly wash the clothing before reusing. Contaminated leather shoes or other leather articles should be discarded.

C. Inhalation: If you or any other person breathes in large amounts of acrylonitrile, move the exposed person to fresh air at once. If breathing has stopped, perform artificial respiration. Keep the affected person warm and at rest. Get medical attention as soon as possible.

D. Swallowing: When acrylonitrile has been swallowed, give the person large quantities of water immediately. After the water has been swallowed, try to get the person to vomit by having him touch the back of his throat with his finger. Do not make an unconscious person vomit. Get medical attention immediately.

E. Rescue: Move the affected person from the hazardous exposure. If the exposed person has been overcome, notify someone else and put into effect the established emergency procedures. Do not become a casualty yourself. Understand your emergency rescue procedures and know the location of the emergency equipment before the need arises.

F. Special first aid procedures: First aid kits containing an adequate supply (at least two dozen) of amyl nitrite pearls, each containing 0.2 ml, should be maintained at each site where acrylonitrile is used. When a person is suspected of receiving an overexposure to acrylonitrile, immediately remove that person from the contaminated area using established rescue procedures. Contaminated clothing must be removed and the acrylonitrile washed from the skin immediately. Artificial respiration should be started at once if breathing has stopped. If the person is unconscious, amyl nitrite may be used as an antidote by a properly trained individual in accordance with established emergency procedures. Medical aid should be obtained immediately.

IV. RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

a. Respirators: You may be required to wear a respirator for nonroutine activities, in emergencies, while your employer is in the process of reducing acrylonitrile exposures through engineering controls, and in areas where engineering controls are not feasible. If respirators are worn, they must have a Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA or MESA) or National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) label of approval for use with organic vapors. (Older respirators may have a Bureau of Mines approved label.) For effective protection, respirators must fit your face and head snugly. Respirators should not be loosened or removed in work situations where their use is required.

Acrylonitrile does not have a detectable odor except at levels above the permissible exposure limits. Do not depend on odor to warn you when a respirator cartridge or canister is exhausted. Cartridges or canisters must be changed daily or before the end-of-service life, whichever comes first. Reuse of these may allow acrylonitrile to gradually filter through the cartridge and cause exposures which you cannot detect by odor. If you can smell acrylonitrile while wearing a respirator, proceed immediately to fresh air. If you experience difficulty breathing while wearing a respirator, tell your employer.

B. Supplied-air suits: In some work situations, the wearing of supplied-air suits may be necessary. Your employer must instruct you in their proper use and operation.

C. Protective clothing: You must wear impervious clothing, gloves, face shield, or other appropriate protective clothing to prevent skin contact with liquid acrylonitrile. Where protective clothing is required, your employer is required to provide clean garments to you as necessary to assume that the clothing protects you adequately.

Replace or repair impervious clothing that has developed leaks.

Acrylonitrile should never be allowed to remain on the skin. Clothing and shoes which are not impervious to acrylonitrile should not be allowed to become contaminated with acrylonitrile, and if they do the clothing and shoes should be promptly removed and decontaminated. The clothing should be laundered or discarded after the AN is removed. Once acrylonitrile penetrates shoes or other leather articles, they should not be worn again.

D. Eye protection: You must wear splashproof safety goggles in areas where liquid acrylonitrile may contact your eyes. In addition, contact lenses should not be worn in areas were eye contact with acrylonitrile can occur.

V. PRECAUTIONS FOR SAFE USE, HANDLING, AND STORAGE

A. Acrylonitrile is a flammable liquid, and its vapors can easily form explosive mixtures in air.

B. Acrylonitrile must be stored in tightly closed containers in a cool, well-ventilated area, away from heat, sparks, flames, strong oxidizers (especially bromine), strong bases, copper, copper alloys, ammonia, and amines.

C. Sources of ignition such as smoking and open flames are prohibited whereever acrylonitrile is handled, used, or stored in a manner that could create a potential fire or explosion hazard.

D. You should use non-sparking tools when opening or closing metal containers of acrylonitrile, and containers must be bonded and grounded when pouring or transferring liquid acrylonitrile.

E. You must immediately remove any nonimpervious clothing that becomes wetted with acrylonitrile, and this clothing must not be reworn until the acrylonitrile is removed from the clothing.

F. Impervious clothing wet with liquid acrylonitrile can be easily ignited. This clothing must be washed down with water before you remove it.

G. If your skin becomes wet with liquid acrylonitrile, you must promptly and thoroughly wash or shower with soap or mild detergent to remove any acrylonitrile from your skin.

H. You must not keep food, beverages, or smoking materials, nor are you permitted to eat or smoke in regulated areas where acrylonitrile concentrations are above the permissible exposure limits.

I. If you contact liquid acrylonitrile, you must wash your hands thoroughly with soap or mild detergent and water before eating, smoking, or using toilet facilities.

J. Fire extinguishers and quick drenching facilities must be readily available, and you should know where they are and how to operate them.

K. Ask your supervisor where acrylonitrile is used in your work area and for any additional plant safety and health rules.

VI. ACCESS TO INFORMATION

A. Each year, your employer is required to inform you of the information contained in this Substance Safety Data Sheet for acrylonitrile. In addition, your employer must instruct you in the proper work practices for using acrylonitrile, emergency procedures, and the correct use of protective equipment

B. Your employer is required to determine whether you are being exposed to acrylonitrile. You or your representative has the right to observe employee measurements and to record the results obtained. Your employer is required to inform you of your exposure. If your employer determines that you are being overexposed, he or she is required to inform you of the actions which are being taken to reduce your exposure to within permissible exposure limits.

C. Your employer is required to keep records of your exposures and medical examinations. These records must be kept by the employer for at least forty (40) years or for the period of your employment plus twenty (20) years, whichever is longer.

D. Your employer is required to release your exposure and medical records to you or your representative upon your request.

[45 F.R. 35283, May 23, 1980.]

APPENDIX B—SUBSTANCE TECHNICAL GUIDELINES FOR ACRYLONITRILE

I. PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL DATA

Substance identification: 1. Synonyms: AN; VCN; vinyl cyanide; propenenitrile; cyanoethylene; Acrylon; Carbacryl; Fumigrain; Ventox.

2. Formula: CH2=CHCN.

3. Molecular weight: 53.1

B. Physical data: 1. Boiling point (760 mm Hg): 77.3°C (171°F);

2. Specific gravity (water=1): 0.81 (at 20°C or 68°F);

3. Vapor density (air=1 at boiling point of acrylonitrile): 1.83;

4. Melting point: −83°C (−117°F);

5. Vapor pressure (@20° F): 83 mmm HG;

6. Solubility in water, percent by weight @20° C (68° F): 7.35;

7. Evaporation rate (Butyl Acetate=1): 4.54; and

8. Appearance and odor: Colorless to pale yellow liquid with a pungent ordor at concentrations above the permissible exposure level. Any detectable odor of acrylonitrile may indicate overexposure.

II. FIRE, EXPLOSION, AND REACTIVITY HAZARD

A. Fire: 1. Flash point: −1° C (30° F) (closed cup).

2. Autoignition temperature: 481° C 898° F).

3. Flammable limits air, percent by volume: Lower: 3, Upper: 17.

4. Extinguishing media: Alcohol foam, carbon dioxide, and dry chemical.

5. Special fire-fighting procedures: Do not use a solid stream of water, since the stream will scatter and spread the fire. Use water to cool containers exposed to a fire.

6. Unusual fire and explosion hazards: Acrylonitrile is a flammable liquid. Its vapors can easily form explosive mixtures with air. All ignition sources must be controlled where acrylonitrile is handled, used, or stored in a manner that could create a potential fire or explosion hazard. Acrylonitrile vapors are heavier than air and may travel along the ground and be ignited by open flames or sparks at locations remote from the site at which acrylonitrile is being handled.

7. For purposes of compliance with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.106, acrylonitrile is classified as a class IB flammable liquid. For example, 7,500 ppm, approximately one-fourth of the lower flammable limit, would be considered to pose a potential fire and explosion hazard.

8. For purposes of compliance with 29 CFR 1910.157, acrylonitrile is classified as a Class B fire hazard.

9. For purpose of compliance with 29 CFR 1919.309, locations classified as hazardous due to the presence of acrylonitrile shall be Class I, Group D.

B. Reactivity:

1. Conditions contributing to instability: Acrylonitrile will polymerize when hot, and the additional heat liberated by the polymerization may cause containers to explode. Pure AN may self-polymerize, with a rapid build-up pressure, resulting in an explosion hazard. Inhibitors are added to the commercial product to prevent self-polymerization.

2. Incompatibilities: Contact with strong oxidizers (especially bromine) and strong bases may cause fires and explosions. Contact with cooper, cooper alloys, ammonia, and amines may start serious decomposition.

3. Hazardous decomposition products: Toxic gases and vapors (such as hydrogen cyanide, oxides of nitrogen, and carbon monoxide) may be released in a fire involving acrylonitrile and certain polymers made from acrylonitrile.

4. Special precautions: Liquid acrylonitrile will attack some forms of plastics, rubbers, and coatings.

III. SPILL, LEAK, AND DISPOSAL PROCEDURES

A. If acrylonitrile is spilled or leaked, the following steps should be taken:

1. Remove all ignition sources.

2. The area should be evacuated at once and re-entered only after the area has been thoroughly ventilated and washed down with water.

3. If liquid acrylonitrile or polymer intermediate, collect for reclamation or absorb in paper, vermiculite, dry sand, earth, or similar material, or wash down with water into process sewer system.

B. Persons not wearing protective equipment should be restricted from areas of spills or leaks until clean-up has been completed.

C. Waste disposal methods: Waste material shall be disposed of in a manner that is not hazardous to employees or to the general population. Spills of acrylonitrile and flushing of such spills shall be channeled for appropriate treatment or collection for disposal. They shall not be channeled directly into the sanitary sewer system. In selecting the method of waste disposal, applicable local, State, and Federal regulations should be consulted.

IV. MONOTORING AND MEASUREMENT PROCEDURES

A. Exposure above the Permissible Exposure Limit:

1. Eight-hour exposure evaluation: Measurements taken for the purpose of determining employee exposure under this section are best taken so that average 8-hour exposure may be determined from a single 8-hour sample or two (2) 4-hour samples. Air samples should be taken in the employee's breathing zone (air that would most nearly represent that inhaled by the employee.)

2. Ceiling evaluation: Measurements taken for the purpose of determining employee exposure under this section must be taken during periods of maximum expected airborne concentrations of acrylonitrile in the employee's breathing zone. A minimum of three (3) measurements should be taken on one work shift. The average of all measurements taken is an estimate of the employee's ceiling exposure.

3. Monitoring techniques: The sampling and analysis under this section may be performed by collecting the acrylonitrile vapor on charcoal adsorption tubes or other composition adsorption tubes, with subsequent chemical analysis. Sampling and analysis may also be performed by instruments such as real-time continuous monotoring systems, portable direct-reading instruments, or passive dosimeters. Analysis of resultant samples should be by gas chromatograph.

Appendix D lists methods of sampling and analysis which have been tested by NIOSH and OSHA for use with acrylonitrile. NIOSH and OSHA have validated modifications of NIOSH Method S-156 (See Appendix D) under laboratory conditions for concentrations below 1 ppm. The employer has the obligation of selecting a monitoring method which meets the accuracy and precision requirements of the standard under his unique field conditions. The standard requires that methods of monitoring must be accurate, to a 95-percent confidence level, to ±35-percent for concentrations of AN at or above 2 ppm, and to ±50-percent for concentrations below 2 ppm. In addition to the methods described in Appendix D., there are numerous other methods available for monitoring for AN in the workplace. Details on these other methods have been submitted by various companies to the rulemaking record, and are available at the OSHA Docket Office.

B. Since many of the duties relating to employee exposure are dependent on the results of monitoring and measuring procedures, employers shall assure that the evaluation of employee exposures is performed by a competent industrial hygienist or other technically qualified person.

V. PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

Employees shall be provided with and required to wear appropriate protective clothing to prevent any possibility of skin contact with liquid AN. Because acrylonitrile is absorbed through the skin, it is important to prevent skin contact with liquid AN. Protective clothing shall include impermeable coveralls or similar full-body work clothing, gloves, head-coverings, as appropriate to protect areas of the body which may come in contact with liquid AN.

Employers should ascertain that the protective garments are impermeable to acrylonitrile. Non-impermeable clothing and shoes should not be allowed to become contaminated with liquid AN. If permeable clothing does become contaminated, it should be promptly removed, placed in a regulated area for removal of the AN, and not worn again until the AN is removed. If leather footwear or other leather garments become wet from acrylonitrile, they should be replaced and not worn again, due to the ability of leather to absorb acrylonitrile and hold it against the skin. Since there is no pain associated with the blistering which may result from skin contact with liquid AN, it is essential that the employee be informed of this hazard so that he or she can be protected.

Any protective clothing which has developed leaks or is otherwise found to be defective shall be repaired or replaced. Clean protective clothing shall be provided to the employee as necessary to assure its protectiveness. Whenever impervious clothing becomes wet with liquid AN, it shall be washed down with water before being removed by the employee. Employees are also required to wear splash-proof safety goggles where there is any possibility of acrylonitrile contacting the eyes.

VI. HOUSEKEEPING AND HYGIENE FACILITIES

For purposes of complying with 29 CFR 1910.141, the following items should be emphasized:

A. The workplace should be kept clean, orderly, and in a sanitary condition. The employer is required to institute a leak and spill detection program for operations involving liquid AN in order to detect sources of fugitive AN emissions.

B. Dry sweeping and the use of compressed air is unsafe for the cleaning of floors and other surfaces where liquid AN may be found.

C. Adequate washing facilities with hot and cold water are to be provided, and maintained in a sanitary condition. Suitable cleansing agents are also to be provided to assure the effective removal of acrylonitrile from the skin.

D. Change or dressing rooms with individual clothes storage facilities must be provided to prevent the contamination of street clothes with acrylonitrile. Because of the hazardous nature of acrylonitrile, contaminated protective clothing should be placed in a regulated area designated by the employer for removal of the AN before the clothing is laundered or disposed of.

VII. MISCELLANEOUS PRECAUTIONS

A. Store acrylonitrile in tightly-closed containers in a cool, well-ventilated area and take necessary precautions to avoid any explosion hazard.

B. High exposures to acrylonitrile can occur when transferring the liquid from one container to another.

C. Non-sparking tools must be used to open and close metal acrylonitrile containers. These containers must be effectively grounded and bonded prior to pouring.

D. Never store uninhibited acrylonitrile.

E. Acrylonitrile vapors are not inhibited. They may form polymers and clog vents of storage tanks.

F. Use of supplied-air suits or other impervious coverings may be necessary to prevent skin contact with and provide respiratory protection from acrylonitrile where the concentration of acrylonitrile is unknown or is above the ceiling limit. Supplied-air suits should be selected, used, and maintained under the immediate supervision of persons knowledgeable in the limitations and potential life-endangering characteristics of supplied-air suits.

G. Employers shall advise employees of all areas and operations where exposure to acrylonitrile could occur.

VIII. COMMON OPERATIONS

Common operations in which exposure to acrylonitrile is likely to occur include the following: Manufacture of the acrylonitrile monomer; synthesis of acrylic fibers, ABS, SAN, and nitrile barrier plastics and resins, nitrile rubber, surface coatings, specialty chemicals, use as a chemical intermediate, use as a fumigant and in the cyanoethylation of cotton.

APPENDIX C—MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE GUIDELINES FOR ACRYLONITRILE

I. ROUTE OF ENTRY

Inhalation: skin absorption; ingestion.

II. TOXICOLOGY

Acrylonitrile vapor is an asphyxiant due to inhibitory action on metabolic enzyme systems. Animals exposed to 75 or 100 ppm for 7 hours have shown signs of anoxia; in some animals which died at the higher level, cyanomethemoglobin was found in the blood. Two human fatalities from accidental poisoning have been reported; one was caused by inhalation of an unknown concentration of the vapor, and the other was thought to be caused by skin absorption or inhalation. Most cases of intoxication from industrial exposure have been mild, with rapid onset of eye irritation, headache, sneezing, and nausea. Weakness, lightheadedness, and vomiting may also occur. Exposure to high concentrations may produce profound weakness, asphyxia, and death. The vapor is a severe eye irritant. Prolonged skin contract with the liquid may result in absorption with systemic effects, and in the formation of large blisters after a latent period of several hours. Although there is usually little or no pain or inflammation, the affected skin ressembles a second-degree thermal burn. Solutions spilled on exposed skin, or on areas covered only by a light layer of clothing, evaporate rapidly, leaving no irritation, or at the most, mild transient redness. Repeated spills on exposed skin may result in dermatitis due to solvent effects.

Results after 1 year of a planned 2-year animal study on the effects of exposure to acrylonitrile have indicated that rats ingesting as little as 35 ppm in their drinking water develop tumors of the central nervous system. The interim results of this study have been supported by a similar study being conducted by the same laboratory, involving exposure of rats by inhalation of acrylonitrile vapor, which has shown similar types of tumors in animals exposed to 80 ppm.

In addition, the preliminary results of an epidemiological study being performed by duPont on a cohort of workers in their Camden, S.C. acrylic fiber plant indicate a statistically significant increase in the incidence of colon and lung cancers among employees exposed to acrylonitrile.

III. SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF ACUTE OVEREXPOSURE

Asphyxia and death can occur from exposure to high concentrations of acrylonitrile. Symptoms of overexposure include eye irritation, headache, sneezing, nausea and vomiting, weakness, and light-headedness. Prolonged skin contact can cause blisters on the skin with appearance of a second-degree burn, but with little or no pain. Repeated skin contact may produce scaling dermatitis.

IV. TREATMENT OF ACUTE OVEREXPOSURE

Remove employee from exposure. Immediately flush eyes with water and wash skin with soap or mild detergent and water. If AN has been swallowed, and person is conscious, induce vomiting. Give artificial resuscitation if indicated. More severe cases, such as those associated with loss of consciousness, may be treated by the intravenous administration of sodium nitrite, followed by sodium thiosulfate, although this is not as effective for acrylonitrile poisoning as for inorganic cyanide poisoning.

V. SURVEILLANCE AND PREVENTIVE CONSIDERATIONS

A. As noted above, exposure to acrylonitrile has been linked to increased incidence of cancers of the colon and lung in employees of the duPont acrylic fiber plant in Camden, S.C. In addition, the animal testing of acrylonitrile has resulted in the development of cancers of the central nervous system in rats exposed by either inhalation or ingestion. The physician should be aware of the findings of these studies in evaluating the health of employees exposed to acrylonitrile.

Most reported acute effects of occupational exposure to acrylonitrile are due to its ability to cause tissue anoxia and asphyxia. The effects are similar to those caused by hydrogen cyanide. Liquid acrylonitrile can be absorbed through the skin upon prolonged contact. The liquid readily penetrates leather, and will produce burns of the feet if footwear contaminated with acrylonitrile is not removed.

It is important for the physician to become familiar with the operating conditions in which exposure to acrylonitrile may occur. Those employees with skin diseases may not tolerate the wearing of whatever protective clothing may be necessary to protect them from exposure. In addition, those with chronic respiratory disease may not tolerate the wearing of negative-pressure respirators.

B. Surveillance and screening. Medical histories and laboratory examinations are required for each employee subject to exposure to acrylonitrile above the action level. The employer must screen employees for history of certain medical conditions which might place the employee at increased risk from exposure.

1. *Central nervous system dysfunction.* Acute effects of exposure to acrylonitrile generally involve the central nervous system. Symptoms of acrylonitrile exposure include headache, nausea, dizziness, and general weakness. The animal studies cited above suggest possible carcinogenic effects of acrylonitrile on the central nervous system, since rats exposed by either inhalation or ingestion have developed similar CNS tumors.

2. *Respiratory disease.* The du Pont data indicate an increased risk of lung cancer among employees exposed to acrylonitrile.

3. *Gastrointestinal disease.* The du Ponit data incidate an increased risk of cancer of the colon among employees exposed to acrylonitrile. In addition, the animal studies show possible tumor production in the stomachs of the rats in the ingestion study.

4. *Skin disease.* Acrylonitrile can cause skin burns when prolonged skin contact with the liquid occurs. In addition, repeated skin contact with the liquid can cause dermatitis.

5. *General.* The purpose of the medical procedures outlined in the standard is to establish a baseline for future health monitoring. Persons unusually susceptible to the effects of anoxia or those with anemia would be expected to be at increased risk. In addition to emphasis on the CNS, respiratory and gastro-intestinal systems, the cardivascular system, liver, and kidney function should also be stressed.

APPENDIX D.—SAMPLING AND ANALYTICAL METHODS FOR ACRYLONITRILE

There are many methods available for monitoring employee exposures to acrylonitrile. Most of these involve the use of charcoal tubes and sampling pumps, with analysis by gas chromatograph. The essential differences between the charcoal tube methods include, among others, the use of different desorbing solvents, the use of different lots of charcoal, and the use of different equipment for anaylsis of the samples.

Besides charcoal, considerable work has been performed on methods using porous polymer sampling tubes and passive dosimeters. In addition, there are several portable gas analyzers and monitoring units available on the open market.

This appendix contains details for the methods which have been tested at OSHA Analytical Laboratory in Salt Lake City, and NIOSH in Cincinnati. Each is a variation on NIOSH Method S-156, which is also included for reference. This does not indicate that these methods are the only ones which will be satisfactory. There also may be workplace situations in which these methods are not adequate, due to such factors as high humidity. Copies of the other methods available to OSHA are available in the rulemaking record, and may be obtained from the OSHA Docket Office. These include the Union Carbide, Monsanto, Dow Chemical and Dow Badische methods, as well as NIOSH Method P & CAM 127.

Employers who note problems with sample breakthrough should try larger charcoal tubes. Tubes of larger capacity are available, and are often used for sampling vinyl chloride. In addition, lower flow rates and shorter sampling times should be beneficial in minimizing breakthrough problems.

Whatever method the employer chooses, he must assure himself of the method's accuracy and precision under the unique conditions present in his workplace.

NIOSH METHOD S-156 (UNMODIFIED)

Analyte: Acrylonitrile.
Matrix: Air.
Procedure: Absorption on charcoal, desorption with methanol, GC.

1. *Principle of the method* (Reference 11.1).

1.1 A known volume of air is drawn through a charcoal tube to trap the organic vapors present.

1.2 The charcoal in the tube is transferred to a small, stoppered sample container, and the analyte is desorbed with methanol.

1.3 An aliquot of the desorbed sample is injected into a gas chromatograph.

1.4 The area of the resulting peak is determined and compared with areas obtained for standards.

2. *Range and sensitivity.*

2.1 This method was validated over the range of 17.5–70.0 mg/cu m at an atmospheric temperature and pressure of 22° C and 760 mm Hg., using a 20-liter sample. Under the conditions of sample size (20 liters) the probable useful range of this method is 4.5–135 mg-cu m. The method is capable of measuring much smaller amounts if the desorption efficiency is adequate. Desorption efficiency must be determined over the range used.

2.2 The upper limit of the range of the method is dependent on the adsorptive capacity of the charcoal tube. This capacity varies with the concentrations of acrylonitrile and other substances in the air. The first section of the charcoal tube was found to hold at least 3.97 mg of acrylonitrile when a test atmosphere containing 92.0 mg/cu m of acrylonitrile in air was sampled 0.18 liter per minute for 240 minutes; at that time the concentration of acrylonitrile in the effluent was less than 5 percent of that in the influent. (The charcoal tube consists of two sections of activated charcoal separated by a section of urethane foam. See section 6.2) If a particular atmosphere is suspected of containing a large amount of contaminant, a smaller sampling volume should be taken.

3. *Interference.*

3.1 When the amount of water in the air is so great that condensation actually occurs in the tube, organic vapors will not be trapped efficiently. Preliminary experiments using toluene indicate that high humidity severely decreases the breakthrough volume.

3.2 When interfering compounds are known or suspected to be present in the air, such information, including their suspected identities, should be transmitted with the sample.

3.3 It must be emphasized that any compound which has the same retention time as the analyte at the operating conditions described in this method is an interference. Retention time data on a single column cannot be considered proof of chemical identity.

3.4 If the possibility of interference exists, separation conditions (column packing, temperature, etc.) must be changed to circumvent the problem.

4. *Precision and accuracy.*

4.1 The Coefficient of Variation (CV_T) for the total analytical and sampling method in the range of 17.5–70.0 mg/cu m was 0.073. This value corresponds to a 3.3 mg/cu m standard deviation at the (previous) OSHA standard level (20 ppm). Statistical information and details of the validation and experimental test procedures can be found in Reference 11.2

4.2 On the average the concentrations obtained at the 20 ppm level using the overall sampling and analytical method were 6.0 percent lower than the "true" concentrations for a limited number of laboratory experiments. Any difference between the "found" and "true" concentrations may not represent a bias on the sampling and analytical method but rather a random variation from the experimentally determined "true" concentration. Therefore, no recovery correction should be applied to the final result in section 10.5

5. *Advantages and disadvantages of the method.*

5.1 The sampling device is small, portable, and involves no liquids. Interferences are minimal, and most of those which do occur can be eliminated by altering chromatographic conditions. The tubes are analyzed by means of a quick, instrumental method.

The method can also be used for the simultaneous analysis of two or more substances suspected to be present in the same sample by simply changing gas chromatographic conditions.

5.2 One disadvantage of the method is that the amount of sample which can be taken is limited by the number of milligrams that the tube will hold before overloading. When the sample value obtained for the backup section of the charcoal tube exceeds 25 percent of that found on the front section, the possibility of sample loss exists.

5.3 Furthermore, the precision of the method is limited by the reproducibility of the pressure drop across the tubes. This drop will affect the flow rate and cause the volume to be imprecise, because the pump is usually calibrated for one tube only.

6. *Apparatus.*

6.1 A calibrated personal sampling pump whose flow can be determined within ±5 percent at the recommended flow rate. (Reference 11.3).

6.2 Charcoal tubes: Glass tubes with both ends flame sealed, 7 cm long with a 6-mm O.D. and a 4-mm I.D., containing 2 sections of 20/40 mesh activated charcoal separated by a 2-mm portion of urethane foam. The activated charcoals prepared from coconut shells and is fired at 600° C prior to packing. The adsorbing section contains 100 mg of charcoal, the backup section 50 mg. A 3-mm portion of urethane foam is placed between the outlet end of the tube and the backup section. A plug of silicated glass wool is placed in front of the adsorbing section. The pressure drop across the tube must be less than 1 inch of mercury at a flow rate of 1 liter per minute.

6.3 Gas chromatograph equipped with a flame ionization detector.

64. Column (4-ft × ¼-in stainless steel) packed with 50/80 mesh Poropak, type Q.

6.5 An electronic integrator or some other suitable method for measuring peak areas.

6.6 Two-milliliter sample containers with glass stopers or Teflon-lined caps. If an automatic sample injector is used, the associated vials may be used.

6.7 Microliter syringes: 10-microliter, and other convenient sizes for making standards.

6.8 Pipets: 1.0-ml delivery pipets.

6.9 Volumetric flask: 10-ml or convenient sizes for making standard solutions.

7. *Reagents.*

7.1 Chromatographic quality methanol.

7.2 Acrylonitrile, reagent grade.

7.3 Hexane, reagent grade.

7.4 Purified nitrogen.

7.5 Prepurified hydrogen.

7.6 Filtered compressed air.

8. *Procedure.*

8.1 Cleaning of equipment. All glassware used for the laboratory analysis should be detergent washed and thoroughly rinsed with tap water and distilled water.

8.2 Calibration of personal pumps. Each personal pump must be calibrated with a representative charcoal tube in the line. This will minimize errors associated with uncertainties in the sample volume collected.

8.3 Collection and shipping of samples.

8.3.1 Immediately before sampling, break the ends of the tube to provide an opening at least one-half the internal diameter of the tube (2 mm).

8.3.2 The smaller section of charcoal is used as a backup and should be positioned nearest the sampling pump.

8.3.3 The charcoal tube should be placed in a vertical direction during sampling to minimize channeling through the charcoal.

8.3.4 Air being sampled should not be passed through any hose or tubing before entering the charcoal tube.

8.3.5 A maximum sample size of 20 liters is recommended. Sample at a flow of 0.20 liter per minute or less. The flow rate should be known with an accuracy of at least ±5 percent.

8.3.6 The temperature and pressure of the atmosphere being sampled should be recorded. If pressure reading is not available, record the elevation.

8.3.7 The charcoal tubes should be capped with the supplied plastic caps immediately after sampling. Under no circumstances should rubber caps be used.

8.3.8 With each batch of 10 samples submit one tube from the same lot of tubes which was used for sample collection and which is subjected to exactly the same handling as the samples except that no air is drawn through it. Label this as a blank.

8.3.9 Capped tubes should be packed tightly and padded before they are shipped to minimize tube breakage during shipping.

8.3.10 A sample of the bulk material should be submitted to the laboratory in a glass container with a Teflon-lined cap. This sample should not be transported in the same container as the charcoal tubes.

8.4 *Analysis of samples.*

8.4.1 Preparation of samples. In preparation for analysis, each charcoal tube is scored with a file in front of the first section of charcoal and broken open. The glass wool is removed and discarded. The charcoal in the first (larger) section is transferred to a 2-ml stoppered sample container. The separating section of foam is removed and discarded; the second section is transferred to another stoppered container. These two sections are analyzed separately.

8.4.2 Desorption of samples. Prior to analysis, 1.0 ml of methanol is pipetted into each sample container. Desorption should be done for 30 minutes. Tests indicate that this is adequate if the sample is agitated occasionally during this period. If an automatic sample injector is used, the sample vials should be capped as soon as the solvent is added to minimize volatilization.

8.4.3 GC conditions. The typical operating conditions for the gas chromatograph are:

1. 50 ml/min (60 psig) nitrogen carrier gas flow.

2. 65 ml/min (24 psig) hydrogen gas flow to detector.

3. 500 ml/min (50 psig) air flow to detector.

4. 235° C injector temperature.

5. 255° C manifold temperature (detector).

6. 155° C column temperature.

8.4.4 Injection. The first step in the analysis is the injection of the sample into the gas chromatograph. To eliminate difficulties arising from blowback or distillation within the syringe needle, one should employ the solvent flush injection technique. The 10-microliter syringe is first flushed with solvent several times to wet the barrel and plunger. Three microliters of solvent are drawn into the syringe to increase the accuracy and reporducibility of the injected sample volume. The needle is removed from the solvent, and the plunger is pulled back about 0.2 microliter to separate the solvent flush from the sample with a pocket of air to be used as a marker. The needle is then immersed in the sample, and a 5-microliter aliquot is withdrawn, taking into consideration the volume of the needle, since the sample in the needle will be completely injected. After the needle is removed from the sample and prior to injection, the plunger is pulled back 1.2 microliters to minimize evaporation of the sample from the tip of the needle. Observe that the sample occupies 4.9–5.0 microliters in the barrel of the syringe. Duplicate injections of each sample and standard should be made. No more than a 3 percent difference in area is to be expected. An automatic sample injector can be used if it is shown to give reproducibility at least as good as the solvent flush method.

8.4.5 Measurement of area. The area of the sample peak is measured by an electronic integrator or some other suitable form of area measurement, and preliminary results are read from a standard curve prepared as discussed below.

8.5 *Determination of desorption efficiency.*

8.5.1 Importance of determination. The desportion efficiency of a particular compound can vary from one laboratory to another and also from one batch of charcoal to another. Thus, it is necessary to determine at least once the percentage of the specific compound that is removed in the desorption process, provided the same batch of charcoal is used.

8.5.2 Procedure for determining desorption efficiency. Activated charcoal equivalent to the amount in the first section of the sampling tube (100 mg) is measured into a

2.5 in, 4-mm I.D. glass tube, flame sealed at one end. This charcoal must be from the same batch as that used in obtaining the samples and can be obtained from unused charcoal tubes. The open end is capped with Parafilm. A known amount of hexane solution of acrylonitrile containing 0.239 g/ml is injected directly into the activated charcoal with a microliter syringe, and tube is capped with more Parafilm. When using an automatic sample injector, the sample injector vials, capped with Teflon-faced septa, may be used in place of the glass tubes.

The amount injected is equivalent to that present in a 20-liter air sample at the selected level.

Six tubes at each of three levels (0.5X, 1X, and 2X of the standard) are prepared in this manner and allowed to stand for at least overnight to assure complete adsorption of the analyte onto the charcoal. These tubes are referred to as the sample. A parallel blank tube should be treated in the same manner except that no sample is added to it. The sample and blank tubes are desorbed and analyzed in exactly the same manner as the sampling tube described in section 8.4.

Two or three standards are prepared by injecting the same volume of compound into 1.0 ml of methanol with the same syringe used in the preparation of the samples. These are analyzed with the samples.

The desorption efficiency (D.E.) equals the average weight in mg recovered from the tube divided by the weight in mg added to the tube, or

D.E. = Average weight recovered (mg)/
weight added (mg)

The desorption efficiency is dependent on the amount of analyte collected on the charcoal. Plot the desorption efficiency versus weight of analyte found. This curve is used in section 10.4 to correct for adsorption losses.

9. *Calibration and standards.*

It is convenient to express concentration of standards in terms of mg/1.0 ml methanol, because samples are desorbed in this amount of methanol. The density of the analyte is used to convert mg into microliters for easy measurement with a microliter syringe. A series of standards, varying in concentration over the range of interest, is prepared and analyzed under the same GC conditions and during the same time period as the unknown samples. Curves are established by plotting concentration in mg/1.0 ml versus peak area.

NOTE.—Since no internal standard is used in the method, standard solutions must be analyzed at the same time that the sample analysis is done. This will minimize the effect of known day-to-day variations and variations during the same day of the FID response.

10. *Calculations.*

10.1 Read the weight, in mg, corresponding to each peak area from the standard curve. No volume corrections are needed, because the standard curve is based on mg/1.0 ml methanol and the volume of sample injected is identical to the volume of the standards injected.

10.2 Corrections for the blank must be made for each sample.

mg = mg sample − mg blank

Where:
mg sample = mg found in front section of sample tube.
mg sample = mg found in front section of blank tube.

A similar procedure is followed for the backup sections.

10.3 Add the weights found in the front and backup sections to get the total weight in the sample.

10.4 Read the desorption efficiency from the curve (see sec. 8.5.2) for the amount found in the front section. Divide the total weight by this desorption efficiency to obtain the corrected mg/sample.

Corrected mg/sample = Total weight/D.E.

10.5 The concentration of the analyte in the air sampled can be expressed in mg/cu m.

mg/cu m = Corrected mg (section 10.4) ×
1,000 (liter/cu m) air volume sampled (liter)

10.6 Another method of expressing concentration is ppm.

ppm = mg/cu × 24.45/M.W. × 760/P × T
+ 273/298

Where: P = Pressure (mm Hg) of air sampled.
T = Temperature (°C) of air sampled.
24.45 = Molar volume (liter/mole) at 25° C and 760 mm Hg.
M.W. = Molecular weight (g/mole) of analyte.
760 = Standard pressure (mm Hg).
298 = Standard temperature (°K).

11. *References.*

11.1 White L. D. et al., "A Convenient Optimized Method for the Analysis of Selected Solvent Vapors in the Industrial Atmosphere," *Amer. Ind. Hyg. Assoc. J., 31:225* (1970).
11.2 Documentation of NIOSH Validation Tests, NIOSH Validation Tests, NIOSH Contract No. CDC-99-74-45.
11.3 Final Report, NIOSH Contract HSM-99-71-31, "Personal Sampler Pump for Charcoal Tubes," September 15, 1972.

NIOSH MODIFICATION OF NIOSH METHOD S-156

The NIOSH recommended method for low levels for acrylonitrile is a modification of method S-156. It differs in the following respects:
(1) Samples are desorbed using 1 ml of 1 percent acetone in CS_2 rather than methanol.

Column: 20 percent SP-1000 on 80/100 Supelcoport 10 feet × ⅛ inch S.S.

Conditions:
Injector temperature: 200°C.
Detector temperature: 100°C.

Column temperature: 85°C.
Helium flow: 25 ml/min.
Air flow: 450 ml/min.
Hydrogen flow: 55 ml/min.

(3) A 2 μl injection of the desorbed analyte is used.

(4) A sampling rate of 100 ml/min is recommended.

OSHA LABORATORY MODIFICATION OF NIOSH METHOD S—156

Analyte: Acrylonitrile.
Matrix: Air.
Procedure: Adsorption on charcoal, desorption with methanol, GC.

1. *Principle of the Method* (Reference 1).

1.1 A known volume of air is drawn through a charcoal tube to trap the organic vapors present.

1.2 The charcoal in the tube is transferred to a small, stoppered sample vial, and the analyte is desorbed with methanol.

1.3 An aliquot of the desorbed sample is injected into a gas chromatograph.

1.4 The area of the resulting peak is determined and compared with areas obtained for standards.

2. *Advantages and disadvantages of the method.*

2.1 The sampling device is small, portable, and involves no liquids, Interferences are minimal, and most of those which do occur can be eliminated by altering chromatographic conditions. The tubes are analyzed by means of a quick, instrumental method.

2.2 This method may not be adequate for the simultaneous analysis of two or more substances.

2.3 The amount of sample which can be taken is limited by the number of milligrams that the tube will hold before overloading. When the sample value obtained for the backup section of the charcoal tube exceeds 25 percent of that found on the front section, the possibility of sample loss exists.

2.4 The precision of the method is limited by the reproducibility of the pressure drop across the tubes. This drop will affect the flow rate and cause the volume to be imprecise, because the pump is usually calibrated for one tube only.

3. *Apparatus.*

3.1 A calibrated personal sampling pump whose flow can be determined within ±5 percent at the recommended flow rate.

3.2 Charcoal tubes: Glass tube with both ends flame sealed, 7 cm long with a 6-mm O.D. and a 4-mm I.D., containing 2 sections of 20/40 mesh activated charcoal separated by a 2-mm portion of urethane foam. The activated charcoal is prepared from coconut shells and is fired at 600°C prior to packing. The absorbing section contains 100 mg of charcoal, the back-up section 50 mg. A 3-mm portion of urethane foam is placed between the outlet end of the tube and the back-up section. A plug of sililated glass wool is is placed in front of the adsorbing section. The pressure drop across the tube must be less than one inch of mercury at a flow rate of 1 liter per minute.

3.3 Gas chromatograph equipped with a nitrogen phosphorus detector.

3.4 Column (10-ft × ⅛"-in stainless steel) packed with 100/120 Supelcoport coated with 10 percent SP 1000.

3.5 An electronic integrator or some other suitable method for measuring peak areas.

3.6 Two-milliliter sample vials with Teflon-lined caps.

3.7. Microliter syringes: 10-microliter, and other convenient sizes for making standards.

3.8 Pipets: 1.0-ml delivery pipets.

3.9 Volumetric flasks: convenient sizes for making standard solutions.

4. *Reagents.*

4.1 Chromatographic quality methanol.

4.2 Acrylonitrile, reagent grade.

4.3 Filtered compressed air.

4.4 Purified hydrogen.

4.5 Purified helium.

5. *Procedure.*

5.1 Cleaning of equipment. All glassware used for the laboratory analysis should be properly cleaned and free of organics which could interfere in the analysis.

5.2 Calibration of personal pumps. Each pump must be calibrated with a representative charcoal tube in the line.

5.3 Collection and shipping of samples.

5.3.1 Immediately before sampling, break the ends of the tube to provide an opening at least one-half the internal diameter of the tube (2mm).

5.3.2 The smaller section of the charcoal is used as the backup and should be placed nearest the sampling pump.

5.3.3 The charcoal should be placed in a vertical position during sampling to minimize channeling through the charcoal.

5.3.4 Air being sampled should not be passed through any hose or tubing before entering the charcoal tube.

5.3.5 A sample size of 20 liters is recommended. Sample at a flow rate of approximately 0.2 liters per minute. The flow rate should be known with an accuracy of at least ±5 percent.

5.3.6 The temperature and pressure of the atmosphere being sampled should be recorded.

5.3.7 The charcoal tubes should be capped with the supplied plastic caps immediately after sampling. Rubber caps should not be used.

5.3.8 Submit at least one blank tube (a charcoal tube subjected to the same handling procedures, without having any air drawn through it) with each set of samples.

5.3.9 Take necessary shipping and packing precautions to minimize breakage of samples.

5.4 Analysis of samples.

5.4.1 Preparation of samples. In preparation for analysis, each charcoal tube is scored with a file in front of the first section of charcoal and broken open. The glass wool is removed and discarded. The charcoal in the first (larger) section is transferred to a 2-ml vial. The separating section of foam is removed and discarded; the section is transferred to another capped vial. These two sections are analyzed separately.

5.4.2 Desorption of samples. Prior to analysis, 1.0 ml of methanol is pipetted into each sample container. Desorption should be done for 30 minutes in an ultrasonic bath. The sample vials are recapped as soon as the solvent is added.

5.4.2 GC conditions. The typical operating conditions for the gas chromatograph are:

1. 30 ml/min (60 psig) helium carrier gas flow.

2 .3.0 ml/min (30 psig) hydrogen gas flow to detector.

3 .50 ml/min (60 psig) air flow to detector.

4. 200° C injector temperature.

5. 200° C dejector temperature.

6. 100° C column temperature.

5.4.4 Injection. Solvent flush technique or equivalent.

5.4.5 Measurement of area. The area of the sample peak is measured by an electronic integrator or some other suitable form of area measurement, and preliminary results are read from a standard curve prepared as discussed below.

5.5 Determination of desorption efficiency.

5.5.1 Importance of determination. The desorption efficiency of a particular compound can vary from one laboratory to another and also from one batch of charcoal to another. Thus, it is necessary to determine, at least once, the percentage of the specific compound that is removed in the desorption process, provided the same batch of charcoal is used.

5.5.2 Procedure for determining desorption efficiency. The reference portion of the charcoal tube is removed. To the remaining portion, amounts representing 0.5X, 1X, and 2X (X represents TLV) based on a 20 l air sample are injected onto several tubes at each level. Dilutions of acrylonitrile with methanol are made to allow injection of measurable quantities. These tubes are then allowed to equilibrate at least overnight. Following equilibration they are analyzed following the same procedure as the samples. A curve of the desorption efficiency

amt recovered amt added

is plotted versus amount of analyte found. This curve is used to correct for adsorption losses.

6. *Calibration and standards.*

A series of standards, varying in concentration over the range of interest, is prepared and analyzed under the same GC conditions and during the same time period as the unknown samples. Curves are prepared by plotting concentration versus peak area.

NOTE—Since no internal standard is used in the method, standard solutions must be analyzed at the same time that the sample analysis is done. This will minimize the effect of known day-to-day variations and variations during the same day of the NPD response. Multiple injections are necessary.

7. *Calculations.*

Read the weight, corresponding to each peak area from the standard curve, correct for the blank, correct for the desorption efficiency, and make necessary air volume corrections.

8. *Reference.* NIOSH Method S-156.

[43 F.R. 45809, October 3, 1978.]

1910.1047—Ethylene Oxide

(a) Scope and application.

(1) This section applies to all occupational exposures to ethylene oxide (EtO), Chemical Abstracts Service Registry No. 75–21–8, except as provided in paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(2) This section does not apply to the processing, use, or handling of products containing EtO where objective data are reasonably relied upon that demonstrate that the product is not capable of releasing EtO in airborne concentrations at or above the action level, and may not reasonably be foreseen to release EtO in excess of the excursion limit, under the expected conditions of processing, use, or handling that will cause the greatest possible release.

[53 F.R. 11437 April 6, 1988]

(3) Where products containing EtO are exempted under paragraph (a)(2) of this section, the employer shall maintain records of the objective data supporting that exemption and the basis for the employer's reliance on the data, as provided in paragraph (k)(1) of this section.

(b) Definitions: For the purpose of this section, the following definitions shall apply:

"*Action level*" means a concentration of airborne EtO of 0.5 ppm calculated as an eight (8)-hour time-weighted average.

"*Assistant Secretary*" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

"*Authorized person*" means any person specifically authorized by the employer whose duties require the person to enter a regulated area, or any person entering such an area as a designated representative of employees for the purpose of exercising the right to observe monitoring and measuring procedures under paragraph (1) of this section, or any other person authorized by the Act or regulations issued under the Act.

"*Director*" means the Director of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or designee.

"*Emergency*" means any occurrence such as, but not limited to, equipment failure, rupture of containers, or failure of control equipment that is likely to or does result in an unexpected significant release of EtO.

"*Employee exposure*" means exposure to airborne EtO which would occur if the employee were not using respiratory protective equipment.

"*Ethylene oxide*" or "*EtO*" means the three-membered ring organic compound with chemical formula C_2H_4O.

(c) Permissible exposure limits

(1) 8-hour time weighted average (TWA). The employer shall ensure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of EtO in excess of one (1) part EtO per million parts of air (1 ppm) as an 8-hour time-weighted average (8-hour TWA).

(2) Excursion limit. The employer shall ensure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of EtO in excess of 5 parts of EtO per million parts of air (5 ppm) as averaged over a sampling period of fifteen (15) minutes.

(d) Exposure monitoring

(1) General.

(i) Determinations of employee exposure shall be made from breathing zone air samples that are representative of the 8-hour TWA and 15-minute short-term exposures of each employee.

(ii) Representative 8-hour TWA employee exposure shall be determined on the basis of one or more samples representing full-shift exposure for each shift for each job classification in each work area. Representative 15-minute short-term employee exposures shall be determined on the basis of one or more samples representing 15-minute exposures associated with operations that are most likely to produce exposures above the excursion limit for each shift for each job classification in each work area.

(iii) Where the employer has previously monitored for the excursion limit and the monitoring satisfies all other requirements of this section, the employer may rely on such earlier monitoring results to satisfy the requirements of paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section.

(2) Initial monitoring

(i) Each employer who has a workplace or work operation covered by this standard, except as provided for in paragraph (a)(2) or (d)(2)(ii) of this section, shall perform initial monitoring to determine accurately the airborne concentrations of EtO to which employees may be exposed.

(ii) Where the employer has monitored after June 15, 1983 and the monitoring satisfies all other requirements of this section, the employer may rely on such earlier monitoring results to satisfy the requirements of paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section.

(iii) Where the employer has previously monitored for the excursion limit and the monitoring satisfies all other requirements of this sections, the employer may rely on such earlier monitoring results to satisfy the requirements of paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section.

(3) Monitoring frequency (periodic monitoring).

(i) If the monitoring required by paragraph (d)(2) of this section reveals employee exposure at or above the action level but at or below the 8-hour TWA, the employer shall repeat such monitoring for each such employee at least every 6 months.

(ii) If the monitoring required by paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section reveals employee exposure above the 8-hour TWA, the employer shall repeat such monitoring for each such employee at least every 3 months.

(iii) The employer may alter the monitoring schedule from quarterly to semiannually for any employee for whom two consecutive measurements taken at least 7 days apart indicate that the employee's exposure has decreased to or below the 8-hour TWA.

(iv) If the monitoring required by paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section reveals employee exposure above the 15 minute excursion limit, the employer shall repeat such monitoring for each such employee at least every 3 months, and more often as necessary to evaluate exposure the employee's short-term exposures.

(4) Termination of monitoring.

(i) If the initial monitoring required by paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section reveals employee exposure to be below the action level, the employer may discontinue TWA monitoring for those employees whose exposures are represented by the initial monitoring.

(ii) If the periodic monitoring required by paragraph (d)(3) of this section reveals that employee exposures, as indicated by at least two consecutive measurements take at least 7 days apart, are below the action level, the employer may discontinue TWA monitoring for those employees whose exposures are represented by such monitoring.

(iii) If the initial monitoring required by paragraph (d)(2)(1) of this section reveals employee exposure to be at or below the excursion limit, the employer may discontinue excursion limit monitoring for those employees whose exposures are represented by the initial monitoring.

(iv) If the periodic monitoring required by paragraph (d)(3) of this section reveals that employee exposures, as indicated by at least two consecutive measurements taken at least 7 days apart, are at or below the excursion limit, the employer may discontinue excursion limit monitoring for those employees whose exposures are represented by such monitoring.

(5) Additional monitoring. Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (d)(4) of this section, the employer shall institute the exposure monitoring required under paragraphs (d)(2)(i) and (d)(3) of this section whenever there has been a change in the production, process, control equipment, personnel or work practices that may result in new or additional exposures to EtO or when the employer has any reason to suspect that a change may result in new or additional exposures.

(6) Accuracy of monitoring. Monitoring shall be accurate, to a confidence level of 95 percent, to within plus or minus 25 percent for airborne concentrations of EtO at the 1 ppm TWA and to within plus or minus 35 percent for airborne concentrations of EtO at the action level of 0.5 ppm.

(i) ***

(ii) Monitoring shall be accurate, to a confidence level of 95 percent, to within plus or minus 35 percent for airborne concentrations of EtO at the excursion limit.

(7) Employee notification of monitoring results.

(i) The employer shall, within 15 working days after the receipt of the results of any monitoring performed under this standard, notify the affected employee of these results in writing either individually or by posting of results in an appropriate location that is accessible to affected employees.

(ii) The written notification required by paragraph (d)(7)(i) of this section shall contain the corrective action being taken by the employer to reduce employee exposure to or below the TWA and/or excursion limit, wherever monitoring results indicated that the TWA and/or excursion limit has been exceeded.

(e) Regulated Areas.

(1) The employer shall establish a regulated area wherever occupational exposure to airborne concentrations of EtO may exceed the TWA or wherever the EtO concentration exceeds or can reasonably be expected to exceed the excursion limit.

(2) Access to regulated areas shall be limited to authorized persons.

(3) Regulated areas shall be demarcated in any manner that minimizes the number of employees within the regulated area.

(f) Methods of compliance.

(1) Engineering controls and work practices.

(i) The employer shall institute engineering controls and work practices to reduce and maintain employee exposure to or below the TWA and to or below the excursion limit, except to the extent that such controls are not feasible.

(ii) Wherever the feasible engineering controls and work practices that can be instituted are not sufficient to reduce employee exposure to or below the TWA and to or below the excursion limit, the employer shall use them to reduce employee exposure to the lowest levels achievable by these controls and shall supplement them by the use of respiratory protection that complies with the requirements of paragraph (g) of this section.

(iii) Engineering controls are generally infeasible for the following operations: collection of quality assurance sampling from sterilized materials removal of biological indicators from sterilized materials; loading and unloading of tank cars; changing of ethylene oxide tanks on sterilizers; and vessel cleaning. For these operations, engineering controls are required only where the Assistant Secretary demonstrates that such controls are feasible.

(2) Compliance program.

(i) Where the TWA or excursion limit is exceeded, the employer shall establish and implement a written program to reduce exposure to or below the TWA and to or below the excursion limit by means of engineering and work practice controls, as required by paragraph (f)(1) of this section, and by the use of respiratory protection where required or permitted under this section.

(ii) The compliance program shall include a schedule for periodic leak detection surveys and a written plan for emergency situations, as specified in paragraph (h)(i) of this section.

(iii) Written plans for a program required in paragraph (f)(2) shall be developed and furnished upon request for examination and copying to the Assistant Secretary, the Director, affected employees and designated employee representatives. Such plans shall be reviewed at least every 12 months, and shall be updated as necessary to reflect significant changes in the status of the employer's compliance program.

(iv) The employer shall not implement a schedule of employee rotation as a means of compliance with the TWA or excursion limit.

(g) Respiratory protection and personal protective equipment.

(1) General. The employer shall provide respirators, and ensure that they are used, where required by this section. Respirators shall be used in the following circumstances.

(i) During the interval necessary to install or implement feasible engineering and work practice controls;

(ii) In work operations, such as maintenance and repair activities, vessel cleaning, or other activities for which engineering and work practice controls are not feasible;

(iii) In work situations where feasible engineering and work practice controls are not yet sufficient to reduce exposure to or below the TWA or excursion limit; and

(iv) In emergencies.

(2) Respirator selection.

(i) Where respirators are required under this section, the employer shall select and provide, at no cost to the employee, the appropriate respirator as specified in Table 1, and shall ensure that the employee uses the respirator provided.

(ii) The employer shall select respirators from among those jointly approved as being acceptable for protection against EtO by the Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA) and by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11.

(3) Respirator program. Where respiratory protection is required by this section, the employer shall institute a respirator program in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.134(b), (d), (e), and (f).

(4) Protective clothing and equipment. Where eye or skin contact with liquid EtO or EtO solutions may occur, the employer shall select and provide, at no cost to the employee, appropriate protective clothing or other equipment in accordance with 29 CFR 1901.132 and 1910.133 to protect any area of the body that may come in contact with liquid EtO or EtO in solution, and shall ensure that the employee wears the protective clothing and equipment provided.

(h) Emergency situations.

(1) Written plan

(i) A written plan for emergency situations shall be developed for each workplace where there is a possibility of an emergency. Appropriate portions of the plan shall be implemented in the event of an emergency.

(ii) The plan shall specifically provide that employees engaged in correcting emergency conditions shall be equipped with respiratory protection as required by paragraph (g) of this section until the emergency is abated.

(iii) The plan shall include the elements prescribed in 29 CFR 1910.38, "Employee emergency plans and fire prevention plans."

(2) Alerting employees. Where there is the possibility of employee exposure to EtO due to an emergency, means shall be developed to alert potentially affected employees of such occurrences promptly. Affected employees shall be immediately evacuated from the area in the event that an emergency occurs.

TABLE 1.—MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR RESPIRATORY PROTECTION FOR AIRBORNE ETO

Condition of use or concentration of airborne EtO (ppm)	Minumum required respirator
Equal to or less than 50.	(a) Full facepiece respirator with EtO approved canister, front- or back-mounted.
Equal to or less than 2,000.	(a) Positive-pressure supplied air respirator, equipped with full facepiece, hood, or helmet, or (b) Continuous-flow supplied air respirator (positive pressure) equipped with hood, helmet or suit.
Concentration above 2,000 or unknown concentration (such as in emergencies).	(a) Positive-pressure self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA), equipped with full facepiece, or (b) Positive-pressure full facepiece supplied air respirator equipped with an auxiliary positive-pressure self-contained breathing apparatus.
Firefighting	(a) Positive pressure self-contained breathing apparatus equipped with full facepiece.
Escape	(a) Any respirator described above.

Note.—Respirators approved for use in higher concentrations are permitted to be used in lower concentrations.

(i) Medical Surveillance

(1) General.

(i) Employees covered.

(a) The employer shall institute a medical surveillance program for all employees who are or may be exposed to EtO at or above the action level, without regard to the use of respirators, for at least 30 days a year.

(b) The employer shall make available medical examinations and consultations to all employees who have been exposed to EtO in an emergency situation.

(ii) Examination by a physician. The employer shall ensure that all medical examinations and procedures are performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician, and are provided without cost to the employee, without loss of pay, and at a reasonable time and place.

(2) Medical examinations and consultations.

(i) Frequency. The employer shall make available medical examinations and consultations to each employee covered under paragraph (i)(1)(i) of this section on the following schedules:

(a) Prior to assignment of the employee to an area where exposure may be at or above the action level for at least 30 days a year.

(b) At least annually each employee exposed at or above the action level for at least 30 days in the past year.

(c) At termination of employment or reassignment to an area where exposure to EtO is not at or above the action level for at least 30 days a year.

(d) As medically appropriate for any employee exposed during an emergency.

(e) As soon as possible, upon notification by an employee either (1) that the employee has developed signs or symptoms indicating possible overexposure to EtO, or (2) that the employee desires medical advice concerning the effects of current or past exposure to EtO on the employee's ability to produce a healthy child.

(f) If the examining physician determines that any of the examinations should be provided more frequently than specified, the employer shall provide such examinations to affected employees at the frequencies recommended by the physician.

(ii) Content.

(a) Medical examinations made available pursuant to paragraphs (i)(2)(i)(a)–(d) of this section shall include:

(1) A medical and work history with special emphasis directed to symptoms related to the pulmonary, hematologic, neurologic, and reproductive systems and to the eyes and skin.

(2) A physical examination with particular emphasis given to the pulmonary, hematologic, neurologic, and reproductive systems and to the eyes and skin.

(3) A complete blood count to include at least a white cell count (including differential cell count), red cell count, hematocrit, and hemoglobin.

(4) Any laboratory or other test which the examining physician deems necessary by sound medical practice.

(b) The content of medical examinations or consultation made available pursuant to paragraph (i)(2)(i)(E) of this section shall be determined by the examining physician, and shall include pregnancy testing or laboratory evaluation of fertility, if requested by the employee and deemed appropriate by the physician.

(3) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide the following information to the examining physician:

(i) A copy of this standard and Appendices A, B, and C.

(ii) A description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposure.

(iii) The employee's representative exposure level or anticipated exposure level.

(iv) A description of any personal protective and respiratory equipment used or to be used.

(v) Information from previous medical examinations of the affected employee that is not otherwise available to the examining physician.

(4) Physician's written opinion.

(i) The employer shall obtain a written opinion from the examining physician. This written opinion shall contain the results of the medical examination and shall include:

(a) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical conditions that would place the employee at an increased risk of material health impairment from exposure to EtO;

(b) Any recommended limitations on the employee or upon the use of personal protective equipment such as clothing or respirators; and

(c) A statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and of any medical conditions resulting from EtO exposure that require further explanation or treatment.

(ii) The employer shall instruct the physician not to reveal in the written opinion given to the employer specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure to EtO.

(iii) The employer shall provide a copy of the physician's written opinion to the affected employee within 15 days from its receipt.

(j) Communication of EtO hazards to employees.

(1) Signs and labels.

(i) The employer shall post and maintain legible signs demarcating regulated areas and entrances or accessways to regulated areas that bear the following legend:

DANGER
ETHYLENE OXIDE
CANCER HAZARD AND REPRODUCTIVE HAZARD
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY
RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING MAY BE REQUIRED TO BE WORN IN THIS AREA.

(ii) The employer shall ensure that precautionary labels are affixed to all containers of EtO whose contents are capable of causing employee exposure at or above the action level or whose contents may reasonably be foreseen to cause employee exposure above the excursion limit, and that the labels remain affixed when the containers of EtO leave the workplace. For the purpose of this paragraph, reaction vessels, storage tanks, and pipes or piping systems are not considered to be containers. The labels shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.1200(f) of OSHA's Hazard Communication standard, and shall include the following legend:

(a) DANGER
CONTAINS ETHYLENE OXIDE
CANCER HAZARD AND REPRODUCTIVE HAZARD; AND

and

(b) A warning statement against breathing airborne concentrations of EtO.

(iii) The labeling requirements under this section do not apply where EtO is used as a pesticide, as such term is defined in the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (7 U.S.C. 136 et seq.), when it is labeled pursuant to that Act and regulations issued under that Act by the Environmental Protection Agency.

(2) Material safety data sheets. Employers who are manufacturers or importers of EtO shall comply with the requirements regarding development of material safety data sheets as specified in 29 CFR 1910.1200(g) of OSHA's Hazard Communication standard.

(3) Information and training.

(i) The employer shall provide employees who are potentially exposed to EtO at or above the action level or above the excursion limit with information and training on EtO at the time of initial assignment and at least annually thereafter.

(ii) Employees shall be informed of the following:

(a) The requirements of this section with an explanation of its contents, including Appendices A and B;

(b) Any operations in their work area where EtO is present;

(c) The location and availability of the written EtO final rule; and

(d) The medical surveillance program required by paragraph (i) of this section with an explanation of the information in Appendix C.

(iii) Employee training shall include at least:

(a) Methods and observations that may be used to detect the presence or release of

EtO in the work area (such as monitoring conducted by the employer, continuous monitoring devices, etc.);

(b) The physical and health hazards of EtO;

(c) The measures employees can take to protect themselves from hazards associated with EtO exposure, including specific procedures the employer has implemented to protect employees from exposure to EtO, such as work practices, emergency procedures, and personal protective equipment to be used; and

(d) The details of the hazard communication program developed by the employer, including an explanation of the labeling system and how employees can obtain and use the appropriate hazard information.

(k) Recordkeeping.

(1) Objective data for exempted operations.

(i) Where the processing, use, or handling of products made from or containing EtO are exempted from other requirements of this section under paragraph (a)(2) of this section, or where objective data have been relied on in lieu of initial monitoring under paragraph (d)(2)(ii) of this section, the employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of objective data reasonably relied upon in support of the exemption.

(ii) The record shall include at least the following information:

(a) The product qualifying for exemption;

(b) The source of the objective data;

(c) The testing protocol, results of testing, and/or analysis of the material for the release of EtO;

(d) A description of the operation exempted and how the data support the exemption; and

(e) Other data relevant to the operations, materials, processing, or employee exposures covered by the exemption.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for the duration of the employer's reliance upon such objective data.

(2) Exposure measurements.

(i) The employer shall keep an accurate record of all measurements taken to monitor employee exposure to EtO as prescribed in paragraph (d) of this section.

(ii) The record shall include at least the following information:

(a) The date of measurement;

(b) The operation involving exposure to EtO which is being monitored;

(c) Sampling and analytical methods used and evidence of their accuracy;

(d) Number, duration, and results of samples taken;

(e) Type of protective devices worn, if any; and

(f) Name, social security number and exposure of the employees whose exposures are represented.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for at least thirty (30) years, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(3) Medical surveillance.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee subject to medical surveillance by paragraph (i)(1)(i) of this section, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(ii) The record shall include at least the following information:

(a) The name and social security number of the employee;

(b) Physicians' written opinions;

(c) Any employee medical complaints related to exposure to EtO; and

(d) A copy of the information provided to the physician as required by paragraph (i)(3) of this section.

(iii) The employer shall ensure that this record is maintained for the duration of employment plus thirty (30) years, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(4) Availability.

(i) The employer, upon written request, shall make all records required to be maintained by this section available to the Assistant Secretary and the Director for examination and copying.

(ii) The employer, upon request, shall make any exemption and exposure records required by paragraphs (k)(1) and (k)(2) of this section available for examination and copying to affected employees, former employees, designated representatives and the Assistant Secretary, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20 (a)–(e) and (g)–(i).

(iii) The employer, upon request, shall make employee medical records required by paragraph (k)(3) of this section available for examination and copying to the subject employee, anyone having the specific written consent of the subject employee, and the Assistant Secretary, in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20.

(5) Transfer of records.

(i) The employer shall comply with the requirements concerning transfer of records set forth in 29 CFR 1910.20(h).

(ii) Whenever the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records for the prescribed period, the employer shall notify the Director at least 90 days prior to disposal and transmit them to the Director.

(l) Observation of monitoring.

(1) Employee observation.

The employer shall provide affected employees or their designated representatives an opportunity to observe any monitoring of employee exposure to EtO conducted in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Observation procedures. When observation of the monitoring of employee exposure to EtO requires entry into an area where the use of protective clothing or equipment is required, the observer shall be provided with and be required to use such clothing and equipment and shall comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(m) Dates.

(1) Effective date. The paragraphs contained in this section shall become effective August 21, 1984, except for paragraphs (a)(2), (d), (e), (f)(2), (g)(3), (h), (i), and (j) which shall become effective on March 12, 1985.

(ii) The requirements in this section which pertain only to or are triggered by the excursion limit shall become effective June 6, 1988, except for the excursion limit provisions in paragraphs (a)(2), (d), (f)(2), (g)(3) and (j) of this section which shall become effective August 25, 1988.

[53 F.R. 27960, July 26, 1988]

(2) Start-up dates.

(i) The start-up date for the requirements in those paragraphs that were effective on August 21, 1984, including institution of work practice controls specified in paragraph (f)(1), shall be February 19, 1985, except as provided for in paragraph (m)(2)(ii), and the start-up date for paragraphs (a)(2), (d), (e), (f)(2), (g0(3), (h), (i), and (j) shall be September 9, 1985.

(ii) Engineering controls specified by paragraph (f)(1) of this section shall be implemented by August 21, 1985.

(iii) Compliance with the requirements in this section which pertain only to or are triggered by the excursion limit shali be by September 6, 1988, except for compliance with the excursion limit provisions of paragraphs (a)(2), (d), (f)(2), (g)(3), and (j) of this section, which shall be by October 6, 1988, and implementation of engineering controls specified for compliance with the excursion limit, which shall be by December 6, 1988.

[53 F.R. 27960, July 26, 1988]

(3) Labeling.

(i) Paragraph (j)(1)(ii)(a) of this section as amended is effective January 9, 1986.

(ii) Paragraph (j)(1)(iii) of this is effective October 11, 1985.

(n) Appendices. The information contained in the appendices is not intended by itself to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed or to detract from any existing obligation.

APPENDIX A—SUBSTANCE SAFETY DATA SHEET FOR ETHYLENE OXIDE (NON-MANDATORY)

I. Substance Identification

A. Substance: Ethylene oxide (C_2H_4O).

B. Synonyms: dihydrooxirene, dimethylene oxide, EO, 1,2-epoxyethane, EtO, ETO, oxacyclopropane, oxane, oxidoethane, alpha/beta-oxidoethane, oxiran, oxirane.

C. Ethylene oxide can be found as a liquid or vapor.

D. EtO is used in the manufacture of ethylene glycol, surfactants, ethanolamines, glycol ethers, and other organic chemicals. EtO is also used as a sterilant and fumigant.

E. Appearance and odor: Colorless liquid below 10.7°C (51.3°F) or colorless gas with ether-like odor detected at approximately 700 parts EtO per million parts of air (700 ppm).

F. Permissible exposure: Exposure may not exceed 1 part EtO per million parts of air averaged over the 8-hour work day.

II. Health Hazard Data

A. Ethylene oxide can cause bodily harm if you inhale the vapor, if it comes into contact with your eyes or skin, or if you swallow it.

B. Effects of overexposure:

1. Ethylene oxide in liquid form can cause eye irritation and injury to the cornea, frostbite, and severe irritation and blistering of the skin upon prolonged or confined contact. Ingestion of EtO can cause gastric irritation and liver injury. Acute effects from inhalation of EtO vapors include respiratory irritation and lung injury, headache, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, shortness of breath, and cyanosis (blue or purple coloring of skin). Exposure has also been associated with the occurrence of cancer, reproductive effects, mutagenic changes, neurotoxicity, and sensitization.

1. EtO has been shown to cause cancer in laboratory animals and has been associated with higher incidences of cancer in humans. Adverse reproductive effects and chromosome damage may also occur from EtO exposure.

a. Reporting signs and symptoms: You should inform your employer if you develop any signs or symptoms and suspect that they are caused by exposure to EtO.

III. Emergency First Aid Procedures

A. Eye exposure: If EtO gets into your eyes, wash your eyes immediately with large amounts of water, lifting the lower and upper eyelids. Get medical attention immediately. Contact lenses should not be worn when working with this chemical.

B. Skin exposure: If EtO gets on your skin, immediately wash the contaminated skin with water. If EtO soaks through your clothing, especially your shoes, remove the clothing immediately and wash the skin with water using an emergency deluge shower. Get medical attention immediately. Thoroughly wash contaminated clothing before reusing. Contaminated leather shoes or other leather articles should not be reused and should be discarded.

C. Inhalation: If large amounts of EtO are inhaled, the exposed person must be moved to fresh air at once. If breathing has stopped, perform cardiopulmonary resuscitation. Keep the affected person warm and at rest. Get medical attention immediately.

D. Swallowing: When EtO has been swallowed, give the person large quantities of water immediately. After the water has been swallowed, try to get the person to vomit by having him or her touch the back of the throat with his or her finger. Do not make an unconscious person vomit. Get medical atention immediately.

E. Rescue: Move the affected person from the hazardous exposure. If the exposed person has been overcome, attempt rescue only after notifying at least one other person of the emergency and putting into effect established emergency procedures. Do not become a casualty yourself. Understand your emergency rescue procedures and know the location of the emergency equipment before the need arises.

IV. Respirators and Protective Clothing

A. Respirators: You may be required to wear a respirator for nonroutine activities, in emergencies, while your employer is in the process of reducing EtO exposure through engineering controls, and where engineering controls are not feasible. As of the effective date of the standard, only air supplied positive-pressure, full-facepiece respirators are approved for protection against EtO. If air-purifying respirators are worn in the future, they must have a joint Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA) and National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) label of approval for use with ethylene oxide. For effective protection, respirators must fit your face and head snugly. Respirators should not be loosened or removed in work situations where their use is required.

EtO does not have a detectable odor except at levels well above the permissible exposure limits. If you can smell EtO while wearing a respirator, proceed immediately to fresh air. If you experience difficulty breathing while wearing a respirator, tell your employer.

B. Protective clothing: You may be required to wear impermeable clothing, gloves, a face shield, or other appropriate protective clothing to prevent skin contact with liquid EtO or EtO-containing solutions. Where protective clothing is required, your employer must provide clean garments to you as necessary to assure that the clothing protects you adequately.

Replace or repair protective clothing that has become torn or otherwise damaged.

EtO must never be allowed to remain on the skin. Clothing and shoes which are not impermeable to EtO should not be allowed to become contaminated with EtO, and if they do, the clothing should be promptly removed and decontaminated. Contaminated leather shoes should be discarded. Once EtO penetrates shoes or other leather articles, they should not be worn again.

C. Eye protection: You must wear splashproof safety goggles in areas where liquid EtO or EtO-containing solutions may contact your eyes. In addition, contact lenses should not be worn in areas where eye contact with EtO can occur.

V. Precautions for Safe Use, Handling, and Storage

A. EtO is a flammable liquid, and its vapors can easily form explosive mixtures in air.

B. EtO must be stored in tightly closed containers in a cool, well-ventilated area, away from heat, sparks, flames, strong oxidizers, alkalines, and acids, strong bases, acetylide-forming metals such as copper, silver, mercury and their alloys.

C. Sources of ignition such as smoking material, open flames and some electrical devices are prohibited wherever EtO is handled, used, or stored in a manner that could create a potential fire or explosion hazard.

D. You should use non-sparking tools when opening or closing metal containers of EtO, and containers must be bonded and grounded in the rare instances in which liquid EtO is poured or transferred.

E. Impermeable clothing wet with liquid EtO or EtO-containing solutions may be easily ignited. If you are wearing impermeable clothing and are splashed with liquid EtO or EtO-containing solution, you should immediately remove the clothing while under an emergency deluge shower.

F. If your skin comes into contact with liquid EtO or EtO-containing solutions, you should immediately remove the EtO using an emergency deluge shower.

G. You should not keep food, beverages, or smoking materials in regulated areas where employee exposures are above the permissible exposure limits.

H. Fire extinguishers and emergency deluge showers for quick drenching should be readily available, and you should know where they are and how to operate them.

I. Ask your supervisor where EtO is used in your work area and for any additional plant safety and health rules.

VI. Acccess to Information

A. Each year, your employer is required to inform you of the information contained in this standard and appendices for EtO. In addition, your employer must instruct you in the proper work practices for using EtO emergency procedures, and the correct use of protective equipment.

B. Your employer is required to determine whether you are being exposed to EtO. You or your representative has the right to observe employee measurements and to record the results obtained. Your employer is required to inform you of your exposure. If your employer determines that you are being overexposed, he or she is required to inform you of the actions which are being taken to reduce your exposure to within permissible exposure limits.

C. Your employer is required to keep records of your exposures and medical examinations. These exposure records must be kept by the employer for at least thirty (30) years. Medical records must be kept for the period of your employment plus thirty (30) years.

D. Your employer is required to release your exposure and medical records to your physician or designated representative upon your written request.

VII. Sterilant Use of EtO in Hospitals and Health Care Facilities.

This section of Appendix A, for informational purposes, sets forth EPA's recommendations for modifications in workplace design and practice in hospitals and health care facilities for which the Environmental Protection Agency has registered EtO for uses as a sterilant or fumigant under the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act, 7 U.S.C. 136 *et seq.* These new recommendations, published in the **Federal Register** by EPA at 49 FR 15268, as modified in today's **Register**, are intended to help reduce the exposure of hospital and health care workers to EtO to 1 ppm. EPA's recommended workplace design and workplace practice are as follows:

1. Workplace Design

a. Installation of gas line hand valves. Hand valves must be installed on the gas supply line at the connection to the supply cylinders to minimize leakage during cylinder change.

b. Installation of capture boxes. Sterilizer operations result in a gas/water discharge at the completion of the process. This discharge is routinely piped to a floor drain which is generally located in an equipment or an adjacent room. When the floor drain is not in the same room as the sterilizer and workers are not normally present, all that is necessary is that the room be well ventilated.

The installation of a "capture box" will be required for those work place layouts where the floor drain is located in the same room as the sterilizer or in a room where workers are normally present. A "capture box" is a piece of equipment that totally encloses the floor drain where the discharge from the sterilizer is pumped. The "capture box" is to be vented directly to a non-recirculating or dedicated ventilation system. Sufficient air intake should be allowed at the bottom of the box to handle the volume of air that is ventilated from the top of the box. The "capture box" can be made of metal, plastic, wood or other equivalent material. The box is intended to reduce levels of EtO discharged into the work room atmosphere. The use of a "capture box" is not required if: (1) The vacuum pump discharge floor drain is located in a well ventilated equipment or other room where workers are not normally present or (2) the water sealed vacuum pump discharges directly to a closed sealed sewer line (check local plumbing codes).

If it is impractical to install a vented "capture box" and a well ventilated equipment or other room is not feasible, a box that can be sealed over the floor drain may be used if: (1) The floor drain is located in a room where workers are not normally present and EtO cannot leak into an occupied area, and (2) the sterilizer in use is less than 12 cubic feet in capacity (check local plumbing codes.)

c. Ventilation of aeration units.

i. Existing aeration units. Existing units must be vented to a non-recirculating or dedicated system or vented to an equipment or other room where workers are not normally present and which is well ventilated. Aerator units must be positioned as close as possible to the sterilizer to minimize the exposure from the off-gassing of sterilized items.

ii. Installation of new aerator units (where none exist). New aerator units must be vented as described above for existing aerators. Aerators must be in place by July 1, 1986.

d. Ventilation during cylinder change. Workers may be exposed to short but relatively high levels of EtO during the change of gas cylinders. To reduce exposure from this route, users must select one of three alternatives designed to draw off gas that may be released when the line from the sterilizer to the cylinder is disconnected:

i. Location of cylinders in a well ventilated equipment room or other room where workers are not normally present.

ii. Installation of a flexible hose (at least 4" in diameter) to a non-recirculating or dedicated ventilation system and located in the area of cylinder change in such a way that the hose can be positioned at the point where the sterilizer gas line is disconnected from the cylinder.

iii. Installation of a hood that is part of a non-recirculating or dedicated system and positioned no more than one foot above the point where the change of cylinders takes place.

e. Ventilation of sterilizer door area. One of the major sources of exposure to EtO occurs when the sterilizer door is opened following the completion of the sterilization process. In order to reduce this avenue of exposure, a hood or metal canopy closed on each end must be installed over the sterilizer door. The hood or metal canopy must be connected to a non-recirculating or dedicated ventilation system or one that exhausts gases to a well ventilated equipment or other room where workers are not normally present. A hood or canopy over the sterilizer door is required for use even with those sterilizers that have a purge cycle and must be in place by July 1, 1986.

f. Ventilation of sterilizer relief valve. Sterilizers are typically equipped with a safety relief device to release gas in case of increased pressure in the sterilizer. Generally, such relief devices are used on pressure vessels. Although these pressure relief devices are rarely opened for hospital and health care sterilizers, it is suggested that they be designed to exhaust vapor from the sterilizer by one of the following methods:

i. Through a pipe connected to the outlet of the relief valve ventilated directly outdoors at a point high enough to be away from passers by, and not near any windows that open, or near any air conditioning or ventilation air intakes.

ii. Through a connection to an existing or new non-recirculating or dedicated ventilation system.

iii. Through a connection to a well ventilated equipment or other room where workers are not normally present.

g. Ventilation systems. Each hospital and health care facility affected by this notice that uses EtO for the sterilization of equipment and supplies must have a ventilation system which enables compliance with the requirements of section (b) through (f) in the manner described in these sections and within the timeframes allowed. Thus, each affected hospital and health care facility must have or install a non-recirculating or dedicated ventilation equipment or other room where workers are not normally present in which to vent EtO.

h. Installation of alarm systems. An audible and visual indicator alarm system must be installed to alert personnel of ventilation system failures, i.e., when the ventilation fan motor is not working.

2. Workplace Practices

All the workplace practices discussed in this unit must be permanently posted near the door of each sterilizer prior to use by any operator.

a. Changing of supply line filters.

Filters in the sterilizer liquid line must be changed when necessary, by the following procedure:

i. Close the cylinder valve and the hose valve.

ii. Disconnect the cylinder hose (piping) from the cylinder.

iii. Open the hose valve and bleed slowly into a proper ventilating system at or near the in-use supply cylinders.

iv. Vacate the area until the line is empty.

v. Change the filter.

vi. Reconnect the lines and reverse the value position.

vii. Check hoses, filters, and valves for leaks with a fluorocarbon leak detector (for those sterilizers using the 88 percent chlorofluorocarbon, 12 percent ethylene oxide mixture (12/88)).

b. Restricted access area.

i. Areas involving use of EtO must be designated as restricted access areas. They must be identified with signs or floor marks near the sterilizer door, aerator, vacuum pump floor drain discharge, and in-use cylinder storage.

ii. All personnel must be excluded from the restricted area when certain operations are in progress, such as discharging a vacuum pump, emptying a sterilizer liquid line, or venting a non-purge sterilizer with the door ajar or other operations where EtO might be released directly into the face of workers.

c. Door opening procedures.

i. **Sterilizers with purge cycles.** A load treated in a sterilizer equipped with a purge cycle should be removed immediately upon completion of the cycle (provided no time is lost opening the door after cycle is completed). If this is not done, the purge cycle should be repeated before opening door.

ii. **Sterilizers without purge cycles.** For a load treated in a sterilizer not equipped with a purge cycle, the sterilizer door must be ajar 6" for 15 minutes, and then fully opened for at least another 15 minutes before removing the treated load. The length of time of the second period should be established by peak monitoring for one hour after the two 15-minute periods suggested. If the level is above 10 ppm time-weighted average for 8 hours, more time should be added to the second waiting period (door wide open). However, in no case may the second period be shortened to less than 15 minutes.

d. Chamber unloading procedures.

i. Procedures for unloading the chamber must include the use of baskets or rolling carts, or baskets and rolling tables to transfer treated loads quickly, thus avoiding excessive contact with treated articles, and reducing the duration of exposures.

ii. If rolling carts are used, they should be pulled not pushed by the sterilizer operators to avoid offgassing exposure.

e. Maintenance. A written log should be instituted and maintained documenting the date of each leak detection and any maintenance procedures undertaken. This is a suggested use practice and is not required.

i. Leak detection. Sterilizer door gaskets, cylinder and vacuum piping, hoses, filters, and valves must be checked for leaks under full pressure with a Fluorocarbon leak detector (for 12/88 systems only) every two weeks by maintenance personnel. Also, the cyclinder piping connections must be checked after changing cylinders. Particular attention in leak detection should be given to the automatic solenoid valves that control the flow of EtO to the sterilizer. Specifically, a check should be made at the EtO gasline entrance port to the sterilizer, while the sterilizer door is open and the solenoid valves are in a closed position.

ii. Maintenance procedures. Sterilizer/aerator door gaskets, valves, and fittings must be replaced when necessary as determined by maintenance personnel in their biweekly checks; in addition, visual inspection of the door gaskets for cracks, debris, and other foreign substances should be conducted daily by the operator.

APPENDIX B—SUBSTANCE TECHNICAL GUIDELINES FOR ETHYLENE OXIDE (NON-MANDATORY)

I. Physical and Chemical Data

A. Substance identification:

1. Synonyms: dihydrooxirene, dimethylene oxide, EO, 1,2-epoxyethane, EtO, ETO, oxacyclopropane, oxane, oxidoethane, alpha/beta-oxidoethane, oxiran, oxirane.

2. Formula: (C_2H_4O).

3. Molecular weight: 44.06

B. Physical data:

1. Boiling point (760 mm Hg): 10.70°C (51.3°F);

2. Specific gravity (water = 1): 0.87 (at 20°C or 68°F);

3. Vapor density (air = 1): 1.49;

4. Vapor pressure (at 20°C): 1,095 mm Hg;

5. Solubility in water: complete;

6. Appearance and odor: colorless liquid; gas at temperature above 10.7°F or 51.3°C with ether-like odor above 700 ppm.

II. Fire, Explosion, and Reactivity Hazard Data

A. Fire;

1. Flash point; less than 0°F (open cup);

2. Stability: decomposes violently at temperatures above 800°F;

3. Flammable limits in air, percent by volume: Lower: 3, Upper: 100;

e. Extinguishing media: Carbon dioxide for small fires, polymer or alcohol foams for large fires;

5. Special fire fighting procedures: Dilution of ethylene oxide with 23 volumes of water renders it non-flammable;

6. Unusual fire and explosion hazards: Vapors of EtO will burn without the presence of air or other oxidizers. EtO vapors are heavier than air and may travel along the ground and be ignited by open flames or sparks at locations remote from the site at which EtO is being used.

7. For purposes of compliance with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.106, EtO is classified as a flammable gas. For example, 7,500 ppm, approximately one-fourth of the lower flammable limit, would be considered to pose a potential fire and explosion hazard.

8. For purposes of compliance with 29 CFR 1910.155, EtO is classified as a Class B fire hazard.

9. For purpose of compliance with 29 CFR 1919.307, locations classified as hazardous due to the presence of EtO shall be Class I.

B. Reactivity:

1. Conditions contributing to instability: EtO will polymerize violently if contaminated with aqueous alkalies, amines, mineral acids, metal chlorides, or metal oxides. Violent decomposition will also occur at temperatures above 800 °F;

2. Incompatibilities: Alkalines and acids;

3. Hazardous decomposition products: Carbon monoxide and carbon dioxide.

III. Spill, Leak, and Disposal Procedures

A. If EtO is spilled or leaked, the following steps should be taken:

1. Remove all ignition sources.

2. The area should be evacuated at once and re-entered only after the area has been thoroughly ventilated and washed down with water.

B. Persons not wearing appropriate protective equipment should be restricted from areas of spills or leaks until cleanup has been completed.

C. Waste disposal methods: Waste material should be disposed of in a manner that is not hazardous to employees or to the general population. In selecting the method of waste disposal, applicable local, State, and Federal regulations should be consulted.

IV. Monitoring and Measurement Procedures

A. Exposure above the Permissible Exposure limit:

1. Eight-hour exposure evaluation: Measurements taken for the purpose of determining employee exposure under this section are best taken with consecutive samples covering the full shift. Air samples should be taken in the employee's breathing zone (air that would most nearly represent that inhaled by the employee.)

2. Monitoring techniques: The sampling and analysis under this section may be performed by collection of the EtO vapor on charcoal adsorption tubes or other composition adsorption tubes, with subsequent chemical analysis. Sampling and analysis may also be performed by instruments such as realtime continuous monitoring systems, portable direct reading instruments, or passive dosimeters as long as measurements taken using these methods accurately evaluate the concentration of EtO in employees' breathing zones.

Appendix D describes the validated method of sampling and analysis which has been tested by OSHA for use with EtO. Other available methods are also described in Appendix D. The employer has the obligation of selecting a monitoring method which meets the accuracy and precision requirements of the standard under his unique field conditions. The standard requires that the method of monitoring should be accurate, to a 95 percent confidence level, to plus or minus 25 percent for concentrations of EtO at 1 ppm, and to plus or minus 35 percent for concentrations at 0.5 ppm. In addition to the method described in Appendix D, there are numerous other methods available for monitoring for EtO in the workplace. Details on these other methods have been submitted by various companies to the rulemaking record, and are available at the OSHA Docket Office.

B. Since many of the duties relating to employee exposure are dependent on the results of measurement procedures, employers should assure that the evaluation of employee exposures is performed by a technically qualified person.

V. Protective Clothing and Equipment

Employees should be provided with and be required to wear appropriate protective clothing wherever there is significant potential for skin contact with liquid EtO or EtO-containing solutions. Protective clothing shall include impermeable coveralls or similar full-body work clothing, gloves, and head coverings, as appropriate to protect areas of the body which may come in contact with liquid EtO or EtO-containing solutions.

Employers should ascertain that the protective garments are impermeable to EtO. Permeable clothing, including items made of rubber, and leather shoes should not be allowed to become contaminated with liquid EtO. If permeable clothing does become contaminated, it should be immediately removed, while the employer is under an emergency deluge shower. If leather footwear or other leather garments become wet from EtO they should be discarded and not be worn again, because leather absorbs EtO and holds it against the skin.

Any protective clothing that has been damaged or is otherwise found to be defective should be repaired or replaced. Clean protective clothing should be provided to the employee as necessary to assure employee protection. Whenever impermeable clothing becomes wet with liquid EtO, it should be washed down with water before being removed by the employee. Employees are also required to wear splash-proof safety goggles where there is any possibility of EtO contacting the eyes.

VI. Miscellaneous Precautions

A. Store EtO in tightly closed containers in a cool, well-ventilated area and take all necessary precautions to avoid any explosion hazard.

B. Non-sparking tools must be used to open and close metal containers. These containers must be effectively grounded and bonded.

C. Do not incinerate EtO cartridges, tanks or other containers.

D. Employers should advise employees of all areas and operations where exposure to EtO occurs.

VII. Common Operations

Common operations in which exposure to EtO is likely to occur include the following: Manufacture of EtO, surfactants, ethanolamines, glycol ethers, and specialty chemicals, and use as a sterilant in the hospital, health product and spice industries.

APPENDIX C—MEDICAL SURVEILLANCE GUIDELINES FOR ETHYLENE OXIDE (NON-MANDATORY)

I. Route of Entry

Inhalation.

II. Toxicology

Clinical evidence of adverse effects associated with the exposure to EtO is present in the form of increased incidence of cancer in laboratory animals (leukemia, stomach, brain), mutation in offspring in animals, and resorptions and spontaneous abortions in animals and human populations respectively. Findings in humans and experimental animals exposed to airborne concentrations of EtO also indicate damage to the genetic material (DNA). These include hemoglobin alkylation, unscheduled DNA synthesis, sister chromatid exchange chromosomal aberration, and functional sperm abnormalities.

Ethylene oxide in liquid form can cause eye irritation and injury to the cornea, frostbite, severe irritation, and blistering of the skin upon prolonged or confined contact. Ingestion of EtO can cause gastric irritation and liver injury. Other effects from inhalation of EtO vapors include respiratory irritation and lung injury, headache, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, dyspnea and cyanosis.

III. Signs and Symptoms of Acute Overexposure

The early effects of acute overexposure to EtO are nausea and vomiting, headache, and irritation of the eyes and respiratory passages. The patient may notice a "peculiar taste" in the mouth. Delayed effects can include pulmonary edema, drowsiness, weakness, and incoordination. Studies suggest that blood cell changes, an increase in chromosomal aberrations, and spontaneous abortion may also be causally related to acute overexposure to EtO.

Skin contact with liquid or gaseous EtO causes characteristic burns and possibly even an allergic-type sensitization. The edema and erythema occurring from skin contact with EtO progress to vesiculation with a tendency to coalesce into blebs with desquamation. Healing occurs within three weeks, but there may be a residual brown pigmentation. A 40-80% solution is extremely dangerous, causing extensive blistering after only brief contact. Pure liquid EtO causes frostbite because of rapid evaporation. In contrast, the eye is relatively insensitive to EtO, but there may be some irritation of the cornea.

Most reported acute effects of occupational exposure to EtO are due to contact with EtO in liquid phase. The liquid readily penetrates rubber and leather, and will produce blistering if clothing or footwear contaminated with EtO are not removed.

IV. Surveillance and Preventive Considerations

As noted above, exposure to EtO has been linked to an increased risk of cancer and reproductive effects including descreased male fertility, fetotoxicity, and spontaneous abortion. EtO workers are more likely to have chromosomal damage than similar groups not exposed to EtO. At the present, limited studies of chronic effects in humans resulting from exposure to EtO suggest a causal association with leukemia. Animal studies indicate leukemia and cancers at other sites (brain, stomach) as well. The physician should be aware of the findings of these studies in evaluating the health of employees exposed to EtO.

Adequate screening tests to determine an employee's potential for developing serious chronic diseases, such as cancer, from exposure to EtO do not presently exist. Laboratory tests may, however, give evidence to suggest that an employee is potentially overexposed to EtO. It is important for the physician to become familiar with the operating conditions in which exposure to EtO is likely to occur. The physician also must become familiar with the signs and symptoms that indicate a worker is receiving otherwise unrecognized and unacceptable exposure to EtO. These elements are especially important in evaluating the medical and work histories and in conducting the physical exam. When an unacceptable exposure in an active employee is identified by the physician, measures taken by the employer to lower exposure should also lower the risk of serious long-term consequences.

The employer is required to institute a medical surveillance program for all employees who are or will be exposed to EtO at or above the action level (0.5 ppm) for at least 30 days per year, without regard to respirator use. All examinations and procedures must be performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician at a reasonable time and place for the employee and at no cost to the employee.

Although broad latitude in prescribing specific tests to be included in the medical surveillance program is extended to the examining physician, OSHA requires inclusion of the following elements in the routine examination:

(i) Medical and work histories with special emphasis directed to symptoms related to the pulmonary, hematologic, neurologic, and reproductive systems and to the eyes and skin.

(ii) Physical examination with particular emphasis given to the pulmonary, hematologic, neurologic, and reproductive systems and to the eyes and skin.

(iii) Complete blood count to include at least a white cell count (including differential cell count), red cell count, hematocrit, and hemoglobin.

(iv) Any laboratory or other test which the examining physician deems necessary by sound medical practice.

If requested by the employee, the medical examinations shall include pregnancy testing or laboratory evaluation of fertility as deemed appropriate by the physician.

In certain cases, to provide sound medical advice to the employer and the employee, the physician must evaluate situations not directly related to EtO. For example, employees with skin diseases may be unable to tolerate wearing protective clothing. In addition those with chronic respiratory diseases may not tolerate the wearing of negative pressure (air purifying) respirators. Additional tests and procedures that will help the physician determine which employees are medically unable to wear such respirators should include: An evaluation of cardiovascular function, a baseline chest x-ray to be repeated at five year intervals, and a pulmonary function test to be repeated every three years. The pulmonary function test should include measurement of the employee's forced vital capacity (FVC), forced expiratory volume at one second (FEV1), as well as calculation of the ratios of FEV1 to FVC, and measured FVC and measured FEV1 to expected values corrected for variation due to age, sex, race, and height.

best copy available

The employer is required to make the prescribed tests available at least annually to employees who are or will be exposed at or above the action level, for 30 or more days per year; more often than specified if recommended by the examining physician; and upon the employee's termination of employment or reassignment to another work area. While little is known about the long-term consequences of high short-term exposures, it appears prudent to monitor such affected employees closely in light of existing health data. The employer shall provide physician recommended examinations to any employee exposed to EtO in emergency conditions. Likewise, the employer shall make available medical consultations including physician recommended exams to employees who believe they are suffering signs or symptoms of exposure to EtO.

The employer is required to provide the physician with the following information: a copy of this standard and its appendices; a description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee exposure level; and information from the employee's previous medical examinations which is not readily available to the examining physician. Making this information available to the physician will aid in the evaluation of the employee's health in relation to assigned duties and fitness to wear personal protective equipment, when required.

The employer is required to obtain a written opinion from the examining physician containing the results of the medical examinations; the physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical conditions which would place the employee at increased risk of material impairment of his or her health from exposure to EtO; any recommended restrictions upon the employee's exposure to EtO, or upon the use of protective clothing or equipment such as respirators; and a statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and of any medical conditions which require further explanation or treatment. This written opinion must not reveal specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure to EtO, and a copy of the opinion must be provided to the affected employee.

The purpose in requiring the examining physician to supply the employer with a written opinion is to provide the employer with a medical basis to aid in the determination of initial placement of employees and to assess the employee's ability to use protective clothing and equipment.

APPENDIX D—SAMPLING AND ANALYTICAL METHODS FOR ETHYLENE OXIDE (NON-MANDATORY)

A number of methods are available for monitoring employee exposures to EtO. Most of these involve the use of charcoal tubes and sampling pumps, followed by analysis of the samples by gas chromatograph. The essential differences between the charcoal tube methods include, among others, the use of different desorbing solvents, the use of different lots of charcoal, and the use of different equipment for analysis of the samples.

Besides charcoal, methods using passive dosimeters, gas sampling bags, impingers, and detector tubes have been utilized for determination of EtO exposure. In addition, there are several commercially available portable gas analyzers and monitoring units.

This appendix contains details for the method which has been tested at the OSHA Analytical Laboratory in Salt Lake City. Inclusion of this method in the appendix does not mean that this method is the only one which will be satisfactory. Copies of descriptions of other methods available are available in the rulemaking record, and may be obtained from the OSHA Docket Office. These include the Union Carbide, Dow Chemical, 3M, and DuPont methods, as well as NIOSH Method S-286. These methods are briefly described at the end of this appendix.

Employers who note problems with sample breakthrough using the OSHA or other charcoal methods should try larger charcoal tubes. Tubes of larger capacity are available. In addition, lower flow rates and shorter sampling times should be beneficial in minimizing breakthrough problems. Whatever method the employer chooses, he must assure himself of the method's accuracy and precision under the unique conditions present in his workplace.

Ethylene Oxide

Method No.: 30.
Matrix: Air.

Target Concentration: 1.0 ppm (1.8 mg/m^3)

Procedure: Samples are collected on two charcoal tubes in series and desorbed with 1% CS_2 in benzene. The samples are derivatized with HBr and treated with sodium carbonate. Analysis is done by gas chromatography with an electron capture detector.

Recommended Air Volume and Sampling Rate: 1 liter and 0.05 Lpm.

Detection Limit of the Overall Procedure: 13.3 ppb (0.024 mg/m^3) (Based on 1.0 liter air sample).

Reliable Quantitation Limit: 52.2 ppb (0.094 mg/m^3) (Based on 1.0 liter air sample).

Standard Error of Estimate: 6.59% (See Backup Section 4.6).

Special Requirements: Samples must be analyzed within 15 days of sampling date.

Status of Method: The sampling and analytical method has been subject to the established evaluation procedures of the Organic Method Evaluations Branch.

Date: August 1981.
Chemist: Wayne D. Potter

Organic Solvents Branch, OSHA Analytical Laboratory, Salt Lake City, Utah

1. General Discussion.

1.1 Background.

1.1.1 History of Procedure.

Ethylene oxide samples analyzed at the OSHA Laboratory have normally been collected on activated charcoal and desorbed with carbon disulfide. The analysis is performed with a gas chromatograph equipped with a FID (Flame ionization detector) as described in NIOSH Method S286 (Ref. 5.1). This method is based on a PEL of 50 ppm and has a detection limit of about 1 ppm.

Recent studies have prompted the need for a method to analyze and detect ethylene oxide at very low concentrations.

Several attempts were made to form an ultraviolet (UV) sensitive derivative with ethylene oxide for analysis with HPLC. Among those tested that gave no detectable product were: p-anisidine, methylimidazole, aniline, and 2,3,6-trichlorobenzoic acid. Each was tested with catalysts such as triethylamine, aluminum chloride, methylene chloride and sulfuric acid but no detectable derivative was produced.

The next derivatization attempt was to react ethylene oxide with HBr to form 2-bromoethanol. This reaction was successful. An ECD (electron capture detector) gave a very good response for 2-bromoethanol due to the presence of bromine. The use of carbon disulfide as the desorbing solvent gave too large a response and masked the 2-bromoethanol. Several other solvents were tested for both their response on the ECD and their ability to desorb ethylene oxide from the charcoal. Among those tested were toluene, xylene, ethyl benzene, hexane, cyclohexane and benzene. Benzene was the only solvent tested that gave a suitable response on the ECD and a high desorption. It was found that the desorption efficiency was improved by using 1% CS_2 with the benzene. The carbon disulfide did not significantly improve the recovery with the other solvents. SKC Lot 120 was used in all tests done with activated charcoal.

1.1.2 Physical Properties (Ref. 5.2-5.4).

Synonyms: Oxirane; dimethylene oxide; 1,2-epoxy-ethane; oxane; C_2H_4O; ETO;

Molecular Weight: 44.06
Boiling Point: 10.7°C (51.3°)
Melting Point: —111°C
Description: Colorless, flammable gas
Vapor Pressure: 1095 mm. at 20 °C
Odor: Ether-like odor
Lower Explosive Limits: 3.0% (by volume)
Flash Point (TOC): Below 0°F
Molecular Structure: $CH_2—CH_2$

1.2 Limit Defining Parameters.

1.2.1 Detection Limit of the Analytical Procedure.

The detection limit of the analytical procedure is 12.0 picograms of ethylene oxide per injection. This is the amount of analyte which will give a peak whose height is five times the height of the baseline noise. (See Backup Data Section 4.1).

1.2.2 Detection Limit of the Overall Procedure.

The detection limit of the overall procedure is 24.0 ng of ethylene oxide per sample.

This is the amount of analyte spiked on the sampling device which allows recovery of an amount of analyte equivalent to the detection limit of the analytical procedure. (See Backup Data Section 4.2).

1.2.3 Reliable Quantitation Limit.

The reliable quantitation limit is 94.0 nanograms of ethylene oxide per sample. This is the smallest amount of analyte which can be quantitated within the requirements of 75% recovery and 95% confidence limits. (See Backup Data Section 4.2).

It must be recognized that the reliable quantitation limit and detection limits reported in the method are based upon optimization of the instrument for the smallest possible amount of analyte. When the target concentration of an analyte is exceptionally higher than these limits, they may not be attainable at the routine operating parameters. In this case, the limits reported on analysis reports will be based on the operating parameters used during the analysis of the samples.

1.2.4 Sensitivity.

The sensitivity of the analytical procedure over a concentration range representing 0.5 to 2 times the target concentration based on the recommended air volume is 34105 area units per ug/mL. The sensitivity is determined by the slope of the calibration curve (See Backup Data Section 4.3).

The sensitivity will vary somewhat with the particular instrument used in the analysis.

1.2.5 Recovery.

The recovery of analyte from the collection medium must be 75% or greater. The average recovery from spiked samples over the range of 0.5 to 2 times the target concentration is 88.0% (See Backup Section 4.4). At lower concentrations the recovery appears to be non-linear.

1.2.6 Precision (Analytical Method Only).

The pooled coefficient of variation obtained from replicate determination of analytical standards at 0.5X, 1X and 2X the target concentration is 0.036 (See Backup Data Section 4.5).

1.2.7 Precision (Overall Procedure).

The overall procedure must provide results at the target concentration that are 25% or better at the 95% confidence level. The precision at the 95% confidence level for the 15 day storage test is plus or minus 12.9% (See Backup Data Section 4.6).

This includes an additional plus or minus 5% for sampling error.

1.3 Advantages.

1.3.1 The sampling procedure is convenient.

1.3.2 The analytical procedure is very sensitive and reproducible.

1.3.3 Reanalysis of samples is possible.

1.3.4 Samples are stable for at least 15 days at room temperature.

1.3.5 Interferences are reduced by the longer GC retention time of the new derivative.

1.4 Disadvantages.

1.4.1 Two tubes in series must be used because of possible breakthrough and migration.

1.4.2 The precision of the sampling rate may be limited by the reproducibility of the pressure drop across the tubes. The pumps are usually calibrated for one tube only.

1.4.3 The use of benzene as the desorption solvent increases the hazards of analysis because of the potential carcinogenic effects of benzene.

1.4.4 After repeated injections there can be a buildup of residue formed on the electron capture detector which decreases sensitivity.

1.4.5 Recovery from the charcoal tubes appears to be nonlinear at low concentrations.

2. Sampling Procedure.

2.1 Apparatus.

2.1.1 A calibrated personal sampling pump whose flow can be determined within plus or minus 5% of the recommended flow.

2.1.2 SKC Lot 120 Charcoal tubes: glass tube with both ends flame sealed, 7 cm long with a 6 mm O.D. and a 4-mm I.D., containing 2 sections of coconut shell charcoal separated by a 2-mm portion of urethane foam. The adsorbing section contains 100 mg of charcoal, the backup section 50 mg. A 3-mm portion of urethane foam is placed between the outlet end of the tube and the backup section. A plug of silylated glass wool is placed in front of the adsorbing section.

2.2 Reagents.

2.2.1 None required.

2.3 Sampling Technique.

2.3.1 Immediately before sampling, break the ends of the charcoal tubes. All tubes must be from the same lot.

2.3.2 Connect two tubes in series to the sampling pump with a short section of flexible tubing. A minimum amount of tubing is used to connect the two sampling tubes together. The tube closer to the pump is used as a backup. This tube should be identified as the backup tube.

2.3.3 The tubes should be placed in a vertical position during sampling to minimize channeling.

2.3.4 Air being sampled should not pass through any hose or tubing before entering the charcoal tubes.

2.3.5 Seal the charcoal tubes with plastic caps immediately after sampling. Also, seal each sample with OSHA seals lengthwise.

2.3.6 With each batch of samples, submit at least one blank tube from the same lot used for samples. This tube should be subjected to exactly the same handling as the samples (break, seal, transport) except that no air is drawn through it.

2.3.7 Transport the samples (and corresponding paperwork) to the lab for analysis.

2.3.8 If bulk samples are submitted for analysis, they should be transported in glass containers with Teflon-lined caps. These samples must be mailed separately from the container used for the charcoal tubes.

2.4 Breakthrough.

2.4.1 The breakthrough (5% breakthrough) volume for a 3.0 mg/m ethylene oxide sample stream at approximately 85% relative humidity, 22°C and 633 mm is 2.6 liters sampled at 0.05 liters per minute. This is equivalent to 7.8 μg of ethylene oxide. Upon saturation of the tube it appeared that the water may be displacing ethylene oxide during sampling.

2.5 Desorption Efficiency.

2.5.1 The desorption efficiency, from liquid injection onto charcoal tubes, averaged 88.0% from 0.5 to 2.0 × the target concentration for a 1.0 liter air sample. At lower ranges it appears that the desorption efficiency is non-linear (See Backup Data Section 4.2).

2.5.2 The desorption efficiency may vary from one laboratory to another and also from one lot of charcoal to another. Thus, it is necessary to determine the desorption efficiency for a particular lot of charcoal.

2.6 Recommended Air Volume and Sampling Rate.

2.6.1 The recommended air volume is 1.0 liter.

2.6.2 The recommended maximum sampling rate is 0.05 Lpm.

2.7 Interferences.

2.7.1 Ethylene glycol and Freon 12 at target concentration levels did not interfere with the collection of ethylene oxide.

2.7.2 Suspected interferences should be listed on the sample data sheets.

2.7.3 The relative humidity may affect the sampling procedure.

2.8 Safety Precautions.

2.8.1 Attach the sampling equipment to the employee so that it does not interfere with work performance.

2.8.2 Wear safety glasses when breaking the ends of the sampling tubes.

2.8.3 If possible, place the sampling tubes in a holder so the sharp end is not exposed while sampling.

3. Analytical Method.

3.1 Apparatus.

3.1.1 Gas chromatograph equipped with a linearized electron capture detector.

3.1.2 GC column capable of separating the derivative of ethylene oxide (2-bromoethanol) from any interferences and the 1% CS_2 in benzene solvent. The column used for validation studies was: 10 ft × ⅛ inch stainless steel 20% SP-2100, .1% Carbowax 1500 on 100/120 Supelcoport.

3.1.3 An electronic integrator or some other suitable method of measuring peak areas.

3.1.4 Two milliliter vials with Teflon-lined caps.

3.1.5 Gas tight syringe—500 μL or other convenient sizes for preparing standards.

3.1.6 Microliter syringes—10 μL or other convenient sizes for diluting standards and 1 μL for sample injections.

3.1.7 Pipets for dispensing the 1% CS_2 in benzine solvent. The Glenco 1 mL dispenser is adequate and convenient.

3.1.8 Volumetric flasks—5 mL and other convenient sizes for preparing standards.

3.1.9 Disposable Pasteur pipets.

3.2 Reagents.

3.2.1 Benzene, reagent grade.

3.2.2 Carbon Disulfide, reagent grade.

3.2.3 Ethylene oxide, 99.7% pure.

3.2.4 Hydrobromic Acid, 48% reagent grade.

3.2.5 Sodium Carbonate, anhydrous, reagent grade.

3.2.6 Desorbing reagent, 99% Benzine/1% CS_2.

3.3 Sample Preparation.

3.3.1 The front and back sections of each sample are transferred to separate 2-mL vials.

3.3.2 Each sample is desorbed with 1.0 mL of desorbing reagent.

3.3.3 The vials are sealed immediately and allowed to desorb for one hour with occasional shaking.

3.3.4 Desorbing reagent is drawn off the charcoal with a disposable pipet and put into clean 2-mL vials.

3.3.5 One drop of HBr is added to each vial. Vials are resealed and HBr is mixed well with the desorbing reagent.

3.3.6 About 0.15 gram of sodium carbonate is carefully added to each vial. Vials are again resealed and mixed well.

3.4 Standard Preparation.

3.4.1 Standards are prepared by injecting the pure ethylene oxide gas into the desorbing reagent.

3.4.2 A range of standards are prepared to make a calibration curve. A concentration of 1.0 μL of ethylene oxide gas per 1 mL desorbing reagent is equivalent to 1.0 ppm air concentration (all gas volumes at 25°C and 760 mm) for the recommended 1 liter air sample. This amount is uncorrected for desorption efficiency (See Backup Data Section 4.2. for desorption efficiency corrections).

3.4.3 One drop of HBr per mL of standard is added and mixed well.

3.4.4 About 0.15 grams of sodium carbonate is carefully added for each drop of HBr (A small reaction will occur).

3.5 Analysis.

3.5.1 GC conditions.
Nitrogen flow rate—10mL/min.
Injector Temperature—250°C
Detector Temperature—300°C
Column Temperature—100°C
Injection size—0.8 μL
Elution time—3.9 minutes

3.5.2 Peak areas are measured by an integrator or other suitable means.

3.5.3 The integrator results are in area units and a calibration curve is set up with concentration vs. area units.

3.6 Interferences.

3.6.1 Any compound having the same retention time of 2-bromoethanol is a potential interference. Possible interferences should be listed on the sample data sheets.

3.6.2 GC parameters may be changed to circumvent interferences.

3.6.3 There are usually trace contaminants in benzene.

These contaminants, however, posed no problem of interference.

3.6.4 Retention time data on a single column is not considered proof of chemical identity. Samples over the 1.0 ppm target level should be confirmed by GC/Mass Spec or other suitable means.

3.7 Calculations.

3.7.1 The concentration in μg/mL for a sample is determined by comparing the area of a particular sample to the calibration curve, which has been prepared from analytical standards.

3.7.2 The amount of analyte in each sample is corrected for desorption efficiency by use of a desorption curve.

3.7.3 Analytical results (A) from the two tubes that compose a particular air sample are added together.

3.7.4 The concentration for a sample is calculated by the following equation:

$$\text{ETO, mg/m}^3 = \frac{\text{AXB}}{\text{C}}$$

where:
A = μg/mL
B = desorption volume in milliliters
C = air volume in liters.

3.75 To convert mg/m³ to parts per million (ppm) the following relationship is used:

$$\text{ETO, ppm} = \frac{\text{mg/m}^3 \times 24.45}{44.05}$$

where:
mg/m³ = results from 3.7.4
24.45 = molar volume at 25°C and 760mm Hg
44.05 = molecular weight of ETO.

3.8 Safety Precautions

3.8.1 Ethylene oxide and benzene are potential carcinogens and care must be exercised when working with these compounds.

3.8.2 All work done with the solvents (preparation of standards, desorption of samples, etc.) should be done in a hood.

3.8.3 Avoid any skin contact with all of the solvents.

3.8.4 Wear safety glasses at all times.

3.8.5 Avoid skin contact with HBr because it is highly toxic and a strong irritant to eyes and skin.

4. Backup Data.

4.1 Detection Limit Data.

The detection limit was determined by injecting 0.8 μL of a 0.015 μg/mL standard of ethylene oxide into 1% CS_2 in benzene. The detection limit of the analytical procedure is taken to be 1.20×10^{-5} μg per injection. This is equivalent to 8.3 ppb (0.015 mg/m³) for the recommended air volume.

4.2 Desorption Efficiency.

Ethylene oxide was spiked into charcoal tubes and the following recovery data was obtained.

Amount spiked (μg)	Amount recovered (μg)	Percent recovery
4.5	4.32	96.0
3.0	2.61	87.0
2.25	2.025	90.0
1.5	1.365	91.0
1.5	1.38	92.0
.75	6525	87.0
.375	.315	84.0
.375	.312	83.2
.1875	.151	80.5
.094	.070	74.5

At lower amounts the recovery appears to be non-linear.

4.3 Sensitivity Data.

The following data was used to determine the calibration curve.

Injection	0.5 × .75 μg/mL	1 × 1.5μg/mL	2 × 3.0 μg/mL
1	30904	59567	111778
2	30987	62914	106016
3	32555	58578	106122
4	32242	57173	109716
X	31672	59558	108408

Slope = 34.105.

4.4 Recovery.

The recovery was determined by spiking ethylene oxide onto lot 120 charcoal tubes and desorbing with 1% CS_2 in Benzene. Recoveries were done at 0.5, 1.0, and 2.0 X the target concentration (1 ppm) for the recommended air volume.

Percent Recovery

Sample	0.5x	1.0x	2.0x
1	88.7	95.0	91.7
2	83.8	95.0	87.3
3	84.2	91.0	86.0
4	88.0	91.0	83.0
5	88.0	86.0	85.0
X	86.5	90.5	87.0

Weighted Average = 88.2

4.5 Precision of the Analytical Procedure.

The following data was used to determine the precision of the analytical method:

Concentration	0.5×.75 µg/mL	1×1.5 µg/mL	2×3.0 µg/mL
Injection	.7421	1.4899	3.1184
	.7441	1.5826	3.0447
	.7831	1.4628	2.9149
	.7753	1.4244	2.9185
Average	.7612	1.4899	2.9991
Standard Deviation	.0211	.0674	.0998
CV	.0277	.0452	.0333

$$CV = \frac{3(.0277)^2+3(.0452)^2+3(.0333)^2}{3+3+3}$$

CV+0.036

4.6 Storage Data.

Samples were generated at 1.5 mg/m^3 ethylene oxide at 85% relative humidity, 22°C and 633 mm. All samples were taken for 20 minutes at 0.05 Lpm. Six samples were analyzed as soon as possible and fifteen samples were stored at refrigerated tempeature (5°C) and fifteen samples were stored at ambient temperature (23°C). These stored samples were analyzed over a period of nineteen days.

Percent Recovery

Day analyzed	Refrigerated	Ambient
1	87.0	87.0
1	93.0	93.0
1	94.0	94.0
1	92.0	92.0
4	92.0	91.0
4	93.0	88.0
4	91.0	89.0
6	92.0	
6	92.0	
8		92.0
8		86.0
10	91.7	
10	95.5	
10	95.7	
11		90.0
11		82.0
13	78.0	
13	81.4	
13	82.4	
14		78.5
14		72.1
18	66.0	
18	68.0	
19		64.0
19		77.0

4.7 Breakthrough Data.

Breakthrough studies were done at 2 ppm (3.6 mg/m^3) at approximately 85% relative humidity at 22°C (ambient temperature). Two charcoal tubes were used in series. The backup tube was changed every 10 minutes and analyzed for breakthrough. The flow rate was 0.050 Lpm.

Tube No.	Time (minutes)	Percent break-through
1	10	(1)
2	20	(1)
3	30	(1)
4	40	1.23
5	50	3.46
6	60	18.71
7	70	39.2
8	80	53.3
9	90	72.0
10	100	96.0
11	110	113.0
12	120	133.9

[1] None.

The 5% breakthrough volume was reached when 2.6 liters of test atmosphere were drawn through the charcoal tubes.

5. References.

5.1 "NIOSH Manual of Analytical Methods," 2nd ed. NIOSH: Cincinnati, 1977; Method S286.

5.2 "IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Man," International Agency for Research on Cancer: Lyon, 1976; Vol. II, p. 157.

5.3 Sax., N.I. "Dangerous Properties of Industrial Materials," 4th ed.; Van Nostrand Reinhold Company, New York, 1975; p. 741.

5.4 "The Condensed Chemical Dictionary", 9th ed.; Hawley, G.G., ed.; Van Nostrand Reinhold Company, New York, 1977; p. 361.

Summary of Other Sampling Procedures

OSHA believes that several other types of monitoring equipment and techniques exist for monitoring time-weighted averages. Considerable research and method development is currently being performed, which will lead to improvements and a wider variety of monitoring techniques. A combination of monitoring procedures can be used. There probably is no one best method for monitoring personal exposure to ethylene oxide in all cases. There are advantages, disadvantages, and limitations to each method. The method of choice will depend on the need and requirements. Some commonly used methods include the use of charcoal tubes, passive dosimeters, Tedler gas sampling bags, detector tubes, photoionization detection units, infrared detection units and gas chromatographs. A number of these methods are described below.

A. Charcoal Tube Sampling Procedures

Qazi-Ketcham method (Ex-11-133)—This method consists of collecting EtO on Columbia JXC activated carbon, desorbing the EtO with carbon disulfide and analyzing by gas chromatography with flame ionization detection. Union

Carbide has recently updated and revalidated this monitoring procedure. This method is capable of determining both eight-hour time-weighted average exposures and short-term exposures. The method was validated to 0.5 ppm. Like other charcoal collecting procedures, the method requires considerable analytical expertise.

ASTM-proposed method—The Ethylene Oxide Industry Council (EOIC) has contracted with Clayton Environmental Consultants, Inc. to conduct a collaborative study for the proposed method. The ASTM-Proposed method is similar to the method published by Qazi and Ketcham in the November 1977 American Industrial Hygiene Association Journal, and to the method of Pilney and coyne, presented at the 1979 American Industrial Hygiene Conference. After the air to be sampled is drawn through an activated charcoal tube, the ethylene oxide is desorbed from the tube using carbon disulfide and is quantitated by gas chromatography utilizing a flame ionization detector. The ASTM-proposed method specifies a large two-section charcoal tube, shipment in dry ice, storage at less than −5°C and analysis within three weeks to prevent migration and sample loss. Two types of charcoal tubes are being tested—Pittsburgh Coconut-Based (PCB) and columbia JXC charcoal. This collaborative study will give an indication of the inter- and intralaboratory precision and accuracy of the ASTM/proposed method. Several laboratories have considerable expertise using the Qazi-Ketcham and Dow methods.

B. Passive Monitors—Ethylene oxide diffuses into the monitor and is collected in the sampling media. The DuPont Pro-Tek badge collects EtO in an absorbing solution, which is analyzed colorimetrically to determine the amount of EtO present. The 3M 350 badge collects the EtO on chemically treated charcoal. Other passive monitors are currently being developed and tested. Both 3M and DuPont have submitted data indicating their dosimeters meet the precision and accuracy requirements of the proposed ethylene oxide standard. Both presented laboratory validation data to 0.2 ppm (Exs. 11-65, 4-20, 108, 109, 130).

C. Tedlar Gas Sampling Bags-Samples are collected by drawing a known volume of air into a Tedlar gas sampling bag. The ethylene oxide concentration is often determined on-site using a portable gas chromatograph or portable infrared spectrometer.

D. Detector tubes—A known volume of air is drawn through a detector tube using a small hand pump. The concentration of EtO is related to the length of stain developed in the tube. Detector tubes are economical, easy to use, and give an immediate readout. Unfortunately, partly because they are nonspecific, their accuracy is often questionable. Since the sample is taken over a short period of time, they may be useful for determining the source of leaks.

E. Direct Reading Instruments—There are numerous types of direct reading instruments, each having its own strengths and weaknesses (Exs. 135B, 135C, 107, 11-78, 11-153). Many are relatively new, offering greater sensitivity and specificity. Popular ethylene oxide direct reading instruments include infrared detection units, photoionization detection units, and gas chromatographs.

Portable infrared analyzers provide an immediate, continuous indication of a concentration value; making them particularly useful for locating high concentration pockets, in leak detection and in ambient air monitoring. In infrared detection units, the amount of infrared light absorbed by the gas being analyzed at selected infrared wavelengths is related to the concentration of a particular component. Various models have either fixed or variable infrared filters, differing cell pathlengths, and microcomputer controls for greater sensitivity, automation, and interference elimination.

A fairly recent detection system is photoionization detection. The molecules are ionized by high energy ultraviolet light. The resulting current is measured. Since different substances have different ionization potentials, other organic compounds may be ionized. The lower the lamp energy, the better the selectivity. As a continuous monitor, photoionization detection can be useful for locating high concentraton pockets, in leak detection, and continuous ambient air monitoring. Both portable and stationary gas chromatographs are available with various types of detectors, including photoionization detectors. A gas chromatograph with a photoionization detector retains the photionization sensitivity, but minimizes or eliminates interferences. For several GC/PID units, the sensitivity is in the 0.1–0.2 ppm EtO range. The GC/PID with microprocessors can sample up to 20 sample points sequentially, calculate and record data, and activate alarms or ventilation systems. Many are quite flexible and can be configured to meet the specific analysis needs for the workplace.

DuPont presented their laboratory validation data of the accuracy of the Qazi-Ketcham charcoal tube, the PCB charcoal tube, Miran 103 IR analyzer, 3M #3550 monitor and the Du Pont C–70 badge. Quoting Elbert V. Kring:

> We also believe that OSHA's proposed accuracy in this standard is appropriate. At plus or minus 25 percent at one part per million, and plus or minus 35 percent below that. And, our data indicates their's only one monitoring method, right now, that we've tested thoroughly, that meets that accuracy requirements. That is the Du Pont Pro-Tek badge* * *. We also believe that this kind of data should be confirmed by another independent laboratory, using the same type dynamic chamber testing (Tr. 1470).

Additional data by an independent laboratory following their exact protocol was not submitted. However, information was submitted on comparisons and precision and accuracy of those monitoring procedures which indicate far better precision and accuracy of those monitoring procedures than that obtained by Du Pont (Ex. 4-20, 130, 11-68, 11-133, 130, 135A)

The accuracy of any method depends to a large degree upon the skills and experience of those who not only collect the samples but also those who analyze the samples. Even for methods that are collaboratively tested, some laboratories are closer to the true values than others. Some laboratories may meet the precision and accuracy requirements of the method; others may consistently far exceed them for the same method.

1910.1048 FORMALDEHYDE

(a) Scope and application. This standard applies to all occupational exposures to formaldehyde, i.e. from formaldehyde gas, its solutions, and materials that release formaldehyde.

(b) Definitions. For purposes of this standard, the following definitions shall apply:

"Action level" means a concentration of 0.5 part formaldehyde per million parts of air (0.5 ppm) calculated as an eight (8)-hour time-weighted average (TWA) concentration.

"Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for the Occupational Safety and Health Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

"Authorized Person" means any person required by work duties to be present in regulated areas, or authorized to do so by the employer, by this section, or by the OSH Act of 1970.

"Director" means the Director of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or designee.

"Emergency" is any occurrence, such as but not limited to equipment failure, rupture of containers, or failure of control equipment that results in an uncontrolled release of a significant amount of formaldehyde.

"Employee exposure" means the exposure to airborne formaldehyde which would occur without corrections for protection provided by any respirator that is in use.

"Formaldehyde" means the chemical substance, HCHO, Chemical Abstracts Service Registry No. 50–00–0.

(c) Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL).

(1) TWA: The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of formaldehyde which exceeds one part formaldehyde per million parts of air (1 ppm) as an 8-hour TWA.

(2) Short Term Exposure Limit (STEL): The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of formaldehyde which exceeds two parts formaldehyde per million parts of air (2 ppm) as a 15-minute STEL.

(d) Exposure monitoring.

(1) General.

(i) Each employer who has a workplace covered by this standard shall monitor employees to determine their exposure to formaldehyde.

(ii) Exceptions.

(a) The employer need not initiate exposure monitoring unless there is a formaldehyde hazard as defined in paragraph m of this standard or there are employee health complaints possibly associated with formaldehyde exposure.

(b) Where the employer documents, using objective data, that the presence of formaldehyde or formaldehyde-releasing products in the workplace cannot result in airborne concentrations of formaldehyde that would cause any employee to be exposed at or above the action level or the STEL under foreseeable conditions of use, the employer will not be required to measure employee exposure to formaldehyde.

(iii) When an employee's exposure is determined from representative sampling, the measurements used shall be representative of the employee's full shift or short-term exposure to formaldehyde, as appropriate.

(iv) Representative samples for each job classification in each work area shall be taken for each shift unless the employer can document with objective data that exposure levels for a given job classification are equivalent for different work shifts.

(2) Initial monitoring. The employer shall identify all employees who may be exposed at or above the action level or at or above the STEL and accurately determine the exposure of each employee so identified.

(i) Unless the employer chooses to measure the exposure of each employee potentially exposed to formaldehyde, the employer shall develop a representative sampling strategy and measure sufficient exposures within each job classification for each workshift to correctly characterize and not underestimate the exposure of any employee within each exposure group.

(ii) The initial monitoring process shall be repeated each time there is a change in production, equipment, process, personnel, or control measures which may result in new or additional exposure to formaldehyde.

(3) Periodic monitoring.

(i) The employer shall periodically measure and accurately determine exposure to formaldehyde for employees shown by the initial monitoring to be exposed at or above the action level or at or above the STEL.

(ii) If the last monitoring results reveal employee exposure at or above the action level, the employer shall repeat monitoring of the employees at least every 6 months.

(iii) If the last monitoring results reveal employee exposure at or above the STEL, the employer shall repeat monitoring of the employees at least once a year under worst conditions.

(4) Termination of monitoring. The employer may discontinue periodic monitoring for employees if results from two consecutive sampling periods taken at least 7 days apart show that employee exposure is below the action level and the STEL. The results must be statistically representative and consistent with the employer's knowledge of the job and work operation.

(5) Accuracy of monitoring. Monitoring shall be accurate, at the 95 percent confidence level, to within plus or minus 25 percent for airborne concentrations of formaldehyde at the TWA and the STEL and to within plus or minus 35 percent for airborne concentrations of formaldehyde at the action level.

(6) Employee notification of monitoring results. Within 15 days of receiving the results of exposure monitoring conducted under this standard, the employer shall notify the affected employees of these results. Notification shall be in writing, either by distributing copies of the results to the employees or by posting the results. If the employee exposure is over either PEL, the employer shall develop and implement a written plan to reduce employee exposure to or below both PELs, and given written notice to employees. The written notice shall contain a description of the corrective action being taken by the employer to decrease exposure.

(7) Observation of monitoring.

(i) The employer shall provide affected employees or their designated representatives an opportunity to observe any monitoring of employee exposure to formaldehyde required by this standard.

(ii) When observation of the monitoring of employee exposure to formaldehyde requires entry into an area where the use of protective clothing or equipment is required, the employer shall provide the clothing and equipment to the observer, require the observer to use such clothing and equipment, and assure that the observer complies with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(e) Regulated areas.

(1) The employer shall establish regulated areas where the concentration of airborne formaldehyde exceeds either the TWA or the STEL and post all entrances and accessways with signs bearing the following information:

DANGER
FORMALDEHYDE
IRRITANT AND POTENTIAL CANCER
HAZARD
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(2) The employer shall limit access to regulated areas to authorized persons who have been trained to recognize the hazards of formaldehyde.

(3) An employer at a multiemployer worksite who establishes a regulated area shall communicate the access restrictions and locations of these areas to other employers with work operations at that worksite.

(f) Methods of compliance.

(1) Engineering controls and work practices. The employer shall institute engineering and work practice controls to reduce and maintain employee exposures to formaldehyde at or below the TWA and the STEL.

(2) Exception. Whenever the employer has established that feasible engineering and work practice controls cannot reduce employee exposure to or below either of the PELs, the employer shall apply these controls to reduce employee exposures to the extent feasible and shall supplement them with respirators which satisfy this standard.

(g) Respiratory protection.

(1) General. Where respiratory protection is required, the employer shall provide the respirators at no cost to the employee and shall assure that they are properly used. The respirators shall comply with the requirements of this standard and shall reduce the concentration of formaldehyde inhaled by the employee to at or below both the TWA and the STEL. Respirators shall be used in the following circumstances:

(i) During the interval necessary to install or implement feasible engineering and work practice controls;

(ii) In work operations, such as maintenance and repair activities or vessel cleaning, for which the employer establishes that engineering and work practice controls are not feasible;

(iii) In work situations where feasible engineering and work practice controls are not yet sufficient to reduce exposure to or below the PELs; and

(iv) In emergencies.

(2) Respirator selection.

(i) The appropriate respirators as specified in Table 1 shall be selected from those approved by the Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA) and by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11.

(ii) The employer shall make available a powered air purifying respirator, meeting the specifications in Table 1, to any employee who experiences difficulty wearing a negative pressure respirator to reduce exposure to formaldehyde.

TABLE 1.—MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR RESPIRATORY PROTECTION AGAINST FORMALDEHYDE

Condition of use or formaldehyde concentration (ppm)	Minimum respirator required[1]
Up to 10 ppm	Full facepiece with cartridges or canisters specifically approved for protection against formaldehyde.[2]
Up to 100 ppm	Full-face mask, chest or back mounted type, with industrial size canister specifically approved for protection against formaldehyde. Type C supplied air respirator, demand type, with full facepiece, hood, or helmet.
Above 100 ppm or unknown (emergencies).	Self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA) with positive pressure full facepiece. Combination supplied-air, full facepiece positive pressure respirator with auxiliary self-contained air supply.
Firefighting	SCBA with positive pressure in full face-piece.
Escape	SCBA in demand or pressure demand mode. Full-face mask, front or back mounted type with industrial size canister specifically approved for protection against formaldehyde.

[1] Respirators specified for use at higher concentrations may be used at lower concentrations.

[2] A half-mask respirator with cartridges specifically approved for protection against formaldehyde can be substituted for the full facepiece respirator providing that effective gas-proof goggles are provided and used in combination with the half-mask respirator.

(3) Respirator usage.

(i) Whenever respirator use is required by this standard, the employer shall institute a respiratory protection program in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.134(b), (d), (e), and (f).

(ii) The employer shall perform either quantitative or qualitative face fit tests in accordance with the procedures outlined in Appendix E at the time of initial fitting and at least annually thereafter for all employees required by this standard to wear negative pressure respirators.

(a) Respirators selected shall be from those exhibiting the best facepiece fit.

(b) No respirator shall be chosen that would potentially permit the employee to inhale formaldehyde at concentrations in excess of either the TWA or the STEL.

(iii) Where air purifying chemical cartridge respirators are used, the cartridges shall be replaced after three hours of use or at the end of the workshift, whichever is sooner unless the cartridge contains a NIOSH-approved end-of-service indicator to show when breakthrough occurs.

(iv) Unless the canister contains a NIOSH-approved end-of-service-life indicator to show when breakthrough occurs, canisters used in atmospheres up to 10 ppm shall be replaced every 4 hours and industrial sized canisters used in atmospheres up to 100 ppm shall be replaced every two hours or at the end of the workshift, whichever is sooner.

(v) Employers shall permit employees to leave the work area to wash their faces and respirator facepieces as needed to prevent skin irritation from respirator use.

(h) Protective equipment and clothing. Employers shall comply with the provisions of 29 CFR 1910.132 and 29 CFR 1910.133. When protective equipment or clothing is provided under these provisions,the employer shall provide these protective devices at no cost to the employee and assure that the employee wears them.

(1) Selection. The employer shall select protective clothing and equipment based upon the form of formaldehyde to be encountered, the conditions of use, and the hazard to be prevented.

(i) All contact of the eyes and skin with liquids containing 1 percent or more formaldehyde shall be prevented by the use of chemical protective clothing made of material impervious to formaldehyde and the use of other personal protective equipment, such as goggles and face shields, as appropriate to the operation.

(ii) Contact with irritating or sensitizing materials shall be prevented to the extent necessary to eliminate the hazard.

(iii) Where a face shield is worn, chemical safety goggles are also required if there is a danger of formaldehyde reaching the area of the eye.

(iv) Full body protection shall be worn for entry into areas where concentrations exceed 100 ppm and for emergency reentry into areas of unknown concentration.

(2) Maintenance of protective equipment and clothing.

(i) The employer shall assure that protective equipment and clothing that has become contaminated with formaldehyde is cleaned or laundered before its reuse.

(ii) When ventilating formaldehyde-contaminated clothing and equipment, the employer shall establish a storage area so that employee exposure is minimized. Containers for contaminated clothing and equipment and storage areas shall have labels and signs containing the following information:

DANGER
FORMALDEHYDE-CONTAMINATED
[CLOTHING] EQUIPMENT
AVOID INHALATION AND SKIN
CONTACT

(iii) The employer shall assure that only persons trained to recognize the hazards of formaldehyde remove the contaminated material from the storage area for purposes of cleaning, laundering, or disposal.

(iv) The employer shall assure that no employee takes home equipment or clothing that is contaminated with formaldehyde.

(v) The employer shall repair or replace all required protective clothing and equipment for each affected employee as necessary to assure its effectiveness.

(vi) The employer shall inform any person who launders, cleans, or repairs such clothing or equipment of formaldehyde's potentially harmful effects and of procedures to safely handle the clothing and equipment.

(i) Hygiene protection.

(1) The employer shall provide change rooms, as described in 29 CFR 1910.141 for employees who are required to change from work clothing into protective clothing to prevent skin contact with formaldehyde.

(2) If employees' skin may become splashed with solutions containing 1 percent or greater formaldehyde, for example because of equipment failure or improper work practices, the employer shall provide conveniently located quick drench showers and assure that affected employees use these facilities immediately.

(3) If there is any possibility that an employee's eyes may be splashed with solutions containing 0.1 percent or greater formaldehyde, the employer shall provide acceptable eyewash facilities within the immediate work area for emergency use.

(j) Housekeeping. For operations involving formaldehyde liquids or gas, the employer shall conduct a program to detect leaks and spills, including regular visual inspections.

(1) Preventative maintenance of equipment, including surveys for leaks, shall be undertaken at regular intervals.

(2) In work areas where spillage may occur, the employer shall make provisions to contain the spill, to decontaminate the work area, and to dispose of the waste.

(3) The employer shall assure that all leaks are repaired and spills are cleaned promptly by employees wearing suitable protective equipment and trained in proper methods for cleanup and decontamination.

(4) Formaldehyde-contaminated waste and debris resulting from leaks or spills shall be placed for disposal in sealed containers bearing a label warning of formaldehyde's presence and of the hazards associated with formaldehyde.

(k) Emergencies. For each workplace where there is the possibility of an emergency involving formaldehyde, the employer shall assure appropriate procedures are adopted to minimize injury and loss of life. Appropriate procedures shall be implemented in the event of an emergency.

(l) Medical surveillance.

(1) Employees covered.

(i) The employer shall institute medical surveillance programs for all employees exposed to formaldehyde at concentrations at or exceeding the action level or exceeding the STEL.

(ii) The employer shall make medical surveillance available for employees who develop signs and symptoms of overexposure to formaldehyde and for all employees exposed to formaldehyde in emergencies. When determining whether an employee may be experiencing signs and symptoms of possible overexposure to formaldehyde, the employer may rely on the evidence that signs and symptoms associated with formaldehyde exposure will occur only in exceptional circumstances when airborne exposure is less than 0.1 ppm and when formaldehyde is present in materials in concentrations less than 0.1 percent.

(2) Examination by a physician. All medical procedures, including administration of medical disease questionnaires, shall be performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician and shall be provided without cost to the employee, without loss of pay, and at a reasonable time and place.

(3) Medical disease questionnaire. The employer shall make the following medical surveillance available to employees prior to assignment to a job where formaldehyde exposure is at or above the action level or above the STEL and annually thereafter. The employer shall also make the following medical surveillance available promptly upon determining that an employee is experiencing signs and symptoms indicative of possible overexposure to formaldehyde.

(i) Administration of a medical disease questionnaire, such as in Appendix D, which is designed to elicit information on work history, smoking history, any evidence of eye, nose, or throat irritation; chronic airway problems or hyperreactive airway disease: allergic skin conditions or dermatitis; and upper or lower respiratory problems.

(ii) A determination by the physician, based on evaluation of the medical disease questionnaire, of whether a medical examination is necessary for employees not required to wear respirators to reduce exposure to formaldehyde.

(4) Medical examinations. Medical examinations shall be given to any employee who the physician feels, based on information in the medical disease questionnaire, may be at increased risk from exposure to formaldehyde and at the time of initial assignment and at least annually thereafter to all employees required to wear a respirator to reduce exposure to formaldehyde. The medical examination shall include:

(i) A physical examination with emphasis on evidence of irritation or sensitization of the skin and respiratory system, shortness of breath, or irritation of the eyes.

(ii) Laboratory examinations for respirator wearers consisting of baseline and annual pulmonary function tests. As a minimum, these tests shall consist of forced vital capacity (FVC), forced expiratory volume in one second (FEVI), and forced expiratory flow (FEF).

(iii) Any other test which the examining physician deems necessary to complete the written opinion.

(iv) Counseling of employees having medical conditions that would be directly or indirectly aggravated by exposure to formaldehyde on the increased risk of impairment of their health.

(5) Examinations for employees exposed in an emergency. The employer shall make medical examinations available as soon as possible to all employees who have been exposed to formaldehyde in an emergency.

(i) The examination shall include a medical and work history with emphasis on any evidence of upper or lower respiratory problems, allergic conditions, skin reaction or hypersensitivity, and any evidence of eye, nose, or throat irritation.

(ii) Other examinations shall consist of those elements considered appropriate by the examining physician.

(6) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide the following information to the examining physician:

(i) A copy of this standard and Appendices A, C, D, and E;

(ii) A description of the affected employee's job duties as they relate to the employee's exposure to formaldehyde;

(iii) The representative exposure level for the employee's job assignment;

(iv) Information concerning any personal protective equipment and respiratory protection used or to be used by the employee; and

(v) Information from previous medical examinations of the affected employee within the control of the employer.

(vi) In the event of a nonroutine examination because of an emergency, the employer shall provide to the physician as soon as possible: a description of how the emergency occurred and the exposure the victim may have received.

(7) Physician's written opinion.

(i) For each examination required under this standard, the employer shall obtain a written opinion from the examining physician. This written opinion shall contain the results of the medical examination except that it shall not reveal specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure to formaldehyde. The written opinion shall include:

(a) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any medical condition that would place the employee at an increased risk of material impairment of health from exposure to formaldehyde;

(b) Any recommended limitations on the employee's exposure or changes in the use of personal protective equipment, including respirators;

(c) A statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of any medical conditions which would be aggravated by exposure to formaldehyde, whether these conditions may have resulted from past formaldehyde exposure or from exposure in an emergency, and whether there is a need for further examination or treatment.

(ii) The employer shall provide for retention of the results of the medical examination and tests conducted by the physician.

(iii) The employer shall provide a copy of the physician's written opinion to the affected employee within 15 days of its receipt.

(m) Hazard communication.

(1) General. Notwithstanding any exemption granted in 29 CFR 1910.1200(b)(6)(iii) for wood products, each employer who has a workplace covered by this standard shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.1200(e)–(j).

(i) For purposes of hazard communication, formaldehyde gas, all mixtures or solutions composed of greater than 0.1 percent formaldehyde, and materials capable of releasing formaldehyde into the air under any normal condition of use at concentrations reaching or exceeding 0.1 ppm shall be considered a health hazard.

(ii) As a minimum, specific health hazards that the employer shall address are: cancer, irritation and sensitization of the skin and respiratory system, eye and throat irritation, and acute toxicity.

(2) Manufacturers and importers who produce or import formaldehyde or formaldehyde containing products shall provide downstream employers using or handling these products with an objective determination through the required labels and MSDSs if these items may constitute a health hazard within the meaning of 29 CFR 1910.1200(d) under normal conditions of use.

(3) Labels.

(i) The employer shall assure that hazard warning labels complying with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.1200(f) are affixed to all containers where the presence of formaldehyde constitutes a health hazard.

(ii) Information on labels. As a minimum, labels shall identify the hazardous chemical; list the name and address of the responsible party; contain the information "Potential Cancer Hazard"; and appropriately warn of all other hazards as defined in 29 CFR 1910.1200, Appendices A and B,.

(iii) Substitute warning labels. The employer may use warning labels required by other statutes, regulations, or ordinances which impart the same information as the warning statements required by this paragraph.

(4) Material safety data sheets.

(i) Any employer who uses formaldehyde-containing materials that constitute a health hazard as defined in this standard shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.1200(g) with regard to the development and updating of Material Safety Data Sheets.

(ii) Manufacturers, importers, and distributors of formaldehyde containing materials that constitute a health hazard as defined in this standard shall assure that Material Safety Data Sheets and updated information are provided to all employers purchasing such materials at the time of the initial shipment and at the time of the first shipment after a Material Safety Data Sheet is updated.

(n) Employee information and training.

(1) Participation. The employer shall assure that all employees who are assigned to workplaces where there is a health hazard from formaldehyde participate in a training program.

(2) Frequency.

(i) Employers shall provide employees with information and training on formaldehyde at the time of their initial assignment and whenever a new hazard from formaldehyde is introduced into their work area.

(ii) Employers shall provide such information and training at least annually for all employees exposed to formaldehyde concentrations at or above the action level or the STEL.

(3) Training program. The training program shall be conducted in a manner which the employee is able to understand and shall include:

(i) A discussion of the contents of this regulation and the contents of the Material Safety Data Sheet.

(ii) The purpose for and a description of the medical surveillance program required by this standard, including:

(a) A description of the potential health hazards associated with exposure to formaldehyde and a description of the signs and symptoms of exposure to formaldehyde.

(b) Instructions to immediately report to the employer the development of any adverse signs or symptoms that the employee suspects is attributable to formaldehyde exposure.

(iii) Description of operations in the work area where formaldehyde is present and an explanation of the safe work practices appropriate for limiting exposure to formaldehyde in each job;

(iv) The purpose for, proper use of, and limitations of personal protective clothing and equipment;

(v) Instructions for the handling of spills, emergencies, and clean-up procedures;

(vi) An explanation of the importance of engineering and work practice controls for employee protection and any necessary instruction in the use of these controls; and

(vii) A review of emergency procedures including the specific duties or assignments of each employee in the event of an emergency.

(4) Access to training materials.

(i) The employer shall inform all affected employees of the location of written training materials and shall make these materials readily available, without cost, to the affected employees.

(ii) The employer shall provide, upon request, all training materials relating to the employee training program to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(o) Recordkeeping.

(1) Exposure measurements. The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of all measurements taken to monitor employee exposure to formaldehyde. This record shall include:

(i) The date of measurement;

(ii) The operation being monitored;

(iii) The methods of sampling and analysis and evidence of their accuracy and precision;

(iv) The number, durations, time, and results of samples taken;

(v) The types of protective devices worn; and

(vi) The names, job classifications, social security numbers, and exposure estimates of the employees whose exposures are represented by the actual monitoring results.

(2) Exposure determinations. Where the employer has determined that no monitoring is required under this standard, the employer shall maintain a record of the objective data relied upon to support the determination that no employee is exposed to formaldehyde at or above the action level.

(3) Medical surveillance. The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee subject to medical surveillance under this standard. This record shall include:

(i) The name and social security number of the employee;

(ii) The physician's written opinion;

(iii) A list of any employee health complaints that may be related to exposure to formaldehyde.

(iv) A copy of the medical examination results, including medical disease questionnaires and results of any medical tests required by the standard or mandated by the examining physician.

(4) Respirator fit testing.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain accurate records for employees subject to negative pressure respirator fit testing required by this standard.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) A copy of the protocol selected for respirator fit testing.

(b) A copy of the results of any fit testing performed.

(c) The size and manufacturer of the types of respirators available for selection.

(d) The date of the most recent fit testing, the name and social security number of each tested employee, and the respirator type and facepiece selected.

(5) Record retention. The employer shall retain records required by this standard for at least the following periods:

(i) Exposure records and determinations shall be kept for at least 30 years.

(ii) Medical records shall be kept for the duration of employment plus 30 years.

(iii) Respirator fit testing records shall be kept until replaced by a more recent record.

(6) Availability of records.

(i) Upon request, the employer shall make all records maintained as a requirement of this standard available for examination and copying to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(ii) The employer shall make employee exposure records, including estimates made from representative monitoring and available upon request for examination, and copying to the subject employee, or former employee, and employee representatives in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20(a)–(e) and (g)–(i).

(iii) Employee medical records required by this standard shall be provided upon request for examination and copying, to the subject employee or former employee or to anyone having the specific written consent of the subject employee or former employee.

(p) Dates.

(1) Effective dates.

(i) General. This section shall become effective February 2, 1988, except as noted below.

(ii) Laboratories. This standard shall become effective for anatomy, histology, and pathology laboratories February 2, 1988, except as noted in the start-up date section. For all other laboratories, paragraphs (a) and (c) of this standard shall become effective February 2, 1988, and paragraphs (b) and (d)–(o) of this standard shall become effective on September 1, 1988 except as noted in the start-up date section.

(2) Start-up dates.

(i) Exposure determinations. Initial monitoring or objective determinations that no monitoring is required by the standard shall be completed by 6 months after the effective date of the standard.

(ii) Medical surveillance. The initial medical surveillance or all eligible employees shall be completed by 6 months after the effective date of the standard.

(iii) Emergencies. The emergency procedures required by this standard shall be implemented by 6 months after the effective date of the standard.

(iv) Respiratory protection. Respiratory protection as required in this standard shall be provided as soon as possible and no later than 9 months after the effective date of the standard.

(v) Engineering and work practice controls. Engineering and work practice controls required by this standard shall be implemented as soon as possible, but no later than one year after the effective date of this standard.

Appendix A to 1910.1048—Substance Technical Guidelines for Formalin

The following Substance Technical Guideline for Formalin provides information on uninhibited formalin solution (37% formaldehyde, no methanol stabilizer). It is designed to inform employees at the production level of their rights and duties under the formaldehyde standard whether their job title defines them as workers or supervisors. Much of the information provided is general; however, some information is specific for formalin. When employee exposure to formaldehyde is from resins capable of releasing formaldehyde, the resin itself and other impurities or decomposition products may also be toxic, and employers should include this information as well when informing employees of the hazards associated with the materials they handle. The precise hazards associated with exposure to formaldehyde depend both on the form (solid, liquid, or gas) of the material and the concentration of formaldehyde present. For example, 37–50 percent solutions of formaldehyde present a much greater hazard to the skin and eyes from spills or splashes than solutions containing less than 1 percent formaldehyde. Individual Substance Technical Guidelines used by the employer for training employees should be modified to properly give information on the material actually being used.

Substance Identification

Chemical Name: Formaldehyde
Chemical Family: Aldehyde
Chemical Formula: HCHO
Molecular Weight: 30.03
Chemical Abstracts Service Number (CAS Number): 50–00–0

Synonyms: Formalin; Formic Aldehyde; Paraform; Formol; Formalin (Methanol-free); Fyde; Formalith; Methanal; Methyl Aldehyde; Methylene Glycol; Methylene Oxide; Tetraoxymethalene; Oxomethane; Oxymethylene

Components and Contaminants

Percent: 37.0 Formaldehyde
Percent: 63.0 Water

(**Note.**—Inhibited solutions contain methanol.)

Other Contaminants: Formic acid (alcohol free)
Exposure limits:
OSHA TWA—1 ppm
OSHA STEL—2 ppm

Physical Data

Description: Colorless liquid, pungent odor
Boiling point: 214 °F (101 °C)
Specific Gravity: 1.08(H_2O = 1 @ 20 °C)
pH: 2.8–4.0
Solubility in Water: Miscible
Solvent Solubility: Soluble in alcohol and acetone
Vapor Density: 1.04 (Air = 1 @ 20° C)
Odor Threshold: 0.8–1 ppm

Fire and Explosion Hazard

Moderate fire and explosion hazard when exposed to heat or flame.

The flash point of 37% formaldehyde solutions is above normal room temperature, but the explosion range is very wide, from 7 to 73% by volume in air.

Reaction of formaldehyde with nitrogen dioxide, nitromethane, perchloric acid and aniline, or peroxyformic acid yields explosive compounds.

Flash Point: 185 °F (85 °C) closed cup
Lower Explosion Limit:7%
Upper Explosion Limit: 73%
Autoignition Temperature: 806 °F (430 °C)

Flammability Class (OSHA): III A

Extinguishing Media: Use dry chemical, "alcohol foam", carbon dioxide, or water in flooding amounts as fog. Solid streams may not be effective. Cool fire-exposed containers with water from side until well after fire is out.

Use of water spray to flush spills can also dilute the spill to produce nonflammable mixtures. Water runoff, however, should be contained for treatment.

National Fire Protection Association Section 325M Designation:

Health: 2—Materials hazardous to health, but areas may be entered with full-faced mask self-contained breathing apparatus which provides eye protection.

Flammability: 2—Materials which must be moderately heated before ignition will occur. Water spray may be used to extinguish the fire because the material can be cooled below its flash point.

Reactivity: D—Materials which (in themselves) are normally stable even under fire exposure conditions and which are not reactive with water. Normal fire fighting procedures may be used.

Reactivity

Stability: Formaldehyde solutions may self-polymerize to form paraformaldehyde which precipitates.

Incompatibility (Materials to Avoid): Strong oxidizing agents, caustics, strong alkalies, isocyanates, anhydrides, oxides, and inorganic acids. Formaldehyde reacts with hydrochloric acid to form the potent carcinogen, bischloromethyl ether. Formaldehyde reacts with nitrogen dioxide, nitromethane, perchloric acid and aniline, or peroxyformic acid to yield explosive compounds. A violent reaction occurs when formaldehyde is mixed with strong oxidizers.

Hazardous Combustion or Decomposition Products: Oxygen from the air can oxidize formaldehyde to formic acid, especially when heated. Formic acid is corrosive.

Health Hazard Data

Acute Effects of Exposure

Ingestion (Swallowing): Liquids containing 10 to 40% formaldehyde cause severe irritation and inflammation of the mouth, throat, and stomach. Severe stomach pains will follow ingestion with possible loss of consciousness and death. Ingestion of dilute formaldehyde solutions (0.03–0.04%) may cause discomfort in the stomach and pharynx.

Inhalation (Breathing): Formaldehyde is highly irritating to the upper respiratory tract and eyes. Concentrations of 0.5 to 2.0 ppm may irritate the eyes, nose, and throat of some individuals. Concentrations of 3 to 5 ppm also cause tearing of the eyes and are intolerable to some persons. Concentrations of 10 to 20 ppm cause difficulty in breathing, burning of the nose and throat, cough, and heavy tearing of the eyes, and 25 to 30 ppm causes severe respiratory tract injury leading to pulmonary edema and pneumonitis. A concentration of 100 ppm is immediately dangerous to life and health. Deaths from accidental exposure to high concentrations of formaldehyde have been reported.

Skin (Dermal): Formalin is a severe skin irritant and a sensitizer. Contact with formalin causes white discoloration, smarting, drying, cracking, and scaling. Prolonged and repeated contact can cause numbness and a hardening or tanning of the skin. Previously exposed persons may react to future exposure with an allergic eczematous dermatitis or hives.

Eye Contact: Formaldehyde solutions splashed in the eye can cause injuries ranging from transient discomfort to severe, permanent corneal clouding and loss of vision. The severity of the effect depends on the concentration of formaldehyde in the solution and whether or not the eyes are flushed with water immediately after the accident.

Note.—The perception of formaldehyde by odor and eye irritation becomes less sensitive with time as one adapts to formaldehyde. This can lead to overexposure if a worker is relying on formaldehyde's warning properties to alert him or her to the potential for exposure.

Acute Animal Toxicity:
Oral, rats: LD50 = 800 mg/kg
Oral, mouse: LD50 = 42 mg/kg
Inhalation, rats: LCLo = 250 mg/kg
Inhalation, mouse: LCLo = 900 mg/kg
Inhalation, rats: LC50 = 590 mg/kg

Chronic Effects of Exposure

Carcinogenicity: Formaldehyde has the potential to cause cancer in humans. Repeated and prolonged exposure increases the risk. Various animal experiments have conclusively shown formaldehyde to be a carcinogen in rats. In humans, formaldehyde exposure has been associated with cancers of the lung, nasopharynx and oropharynx, and nasal passages.

Mutagenicity: Formaldehyde is genotoxic in several *in vitro* test systems showing properties of both an initiator and a promoter.

Toxicity: Prolonged or repeated exposure to formaldehyde may result in respiratory impairment. Rats exposed to formaldehyde at 2 ppm developed benign nasal tumors and changes of the cell structure in the nose as well as inflamed mucous membranes of the nose. Structural changes in the epithelial cells in the human nose have also been observed. Some persons have developed asthma or brochitis following exposure to formaldehyde, most often as the result of an accidental spill involving a single exposure to a high concentration of formaldehyde.

Emergency and First Aid Procedures

Ingestion (Swallowing): If the victim is conscious, dilute, inactivate or absorb the ingested formaldehyde by giving milk, activated charcoal, or water. Any organic material will inactivate formaldehyde. Keep affected person warm and at rest. Get medical attention immediately. If vomiting occurs, keep head lower than hips.

Inhalation (Breathing): Remove the victim from the exposure area to fresh air immediately. Where the formaldehyde concentration may be very high, each rescuer must put on a self-contained breathing apparatus before attempting to remove the victim, and medical personnel should be informed of the formaldehyde exposure immediately. If breathing has stopped, give artificial respiration. Keep the affected person warm and at rest. Qualified first-aid or medical personnel should administer oxygen, if available, and maintain the patient's airways and blood pressure until the victim can be transported to a medical facility. If exposure results in a highly irritated upper respiratory tract and coughing continues for more than 10 minutes, the worker should be hospitalized for observation and treatment.

Skin Contact: Remove contaminated clothing (including shoes) immediately. Wash the affected area of your body with soap or mild detergent and large amounts of water until no evidence of the chemical remains (at least 15 to 20 minutes). If there are chemical burns, get first aid to cover the area with sterile, dry dressing, and bandages. Get medical attention if you experience appreciable eye or respiratory irritation.

Eye Contact: Wash the eyes immediately with large amounts of water occasionally lifting lower and upper lids, until no evidence of chemical remains (at least 15 to 20 minutes). In case of burns, apply sterile bandages loosely without medication. Get medical attention immediately. If you have experienced appreciable eye irritation from a splash or excessive exposure, you should be referred promptly to an ophthalmologist for evaluation.

Emergency Procedures

Emergencies: If you work in an area where a large amount of formaldehyde could be released in an accident or from equipment failure, your employer must develop procedures to be followed in event of an emergency. You should be trained in your specific duties in the event of an emergency, and it is important that you clearly understand these duties. Emergency equipment must be accessible and you should be trained to use any equipment that you might need. Formaldehyde contaminated equipment must be cleaned before reuse.

If a spill of appreciable quantity occurs, leave the area quickly unless you have specific emergency duties. Do not touch spilled material. Designated persons may stop the leak and shut off ignition sources if these procedures can be done without risk. Designated persons should isolate the hazard area and deny entry except for necessary people protected by suitable protective clothing and respirators adequate for the exposure. Use water spray to reduce vapors. Do not smoke, and prohibit all flames or flares in the hazard area.

Special Firefighting Procedures: Learn procedures and responsibilities in the event of a fire in your workplace. Become familiar with the appropriate equipment and supplies and their location. In firefighting, withdraw immediately in case of rising sound from venting safety device or any discoloration of storage tank due to fire.

Spill, Leak, and Disposal Procedures

Occupational Spill: For small containers, place the leaking container in a well ventilated area. Take up small spills with absorbent material and place the waste into properly labeled containers for later disposal. For larger spills, dike the spill to minimize contamination and facilitate salvage or disposal. You may be able to neutralize the spill with sodium hydroxide or sodium sulfite. Your employer must comply with EPA rules regarding the clean-up of toxic waste and notify state and local authorities, if required. If the spill is greater than 1,000 lb/day, it is reportable under EPA's Superfund legislation.

Waste Disposal: Your employer must dispose of waste containing formaldehyde in accordance with applicable local, state, and Federal law and in a manner that minimizes exposure of employees at the site and of the clean-up crew.

Monitoring and Measurement Procedures

Monitoring Requirements: If your exposure to formaldehyde exceeds the 0.5 ppm action level or the 2 ppm STEL, your employer must monitor your exposure. Your employer need not measure every exposure if a "high exposure" employee can be identified. This person usually spends the greatest amount of time nearest the process equipment. If you are a "representative employee", you will be asked to wear a sampling device to collect formaldehyde. This device may be a passive badge, a sorbent tube attached to a pump, or an impinger containing liquid. You should perform your work as usual, but inform the person who is conducting the monitoring of any difficulties you are having wearing the device.

Evaluation of 8-hour Exposure: Measurements taken for the purpose of determining time-weighted average (TWA) exposures are best taken with samples covering the full shift. Samples collected must be taken from the employee's breathing zone air.

Short-term Exposure Evaluation: If there are tasks that involve brief but intense exposure to formaldehyde, employee exposure must be measured to assure compliance with the STEL. Sample collections are for brief periods, only 15 minutes, but several samples may be needed to identify the peak exposure.

Monitoring Techniques: OSHA's only requirement for selecting a method for sampling and analysis is that the methods used accurately evaluate the concentration of formaldehyde in employees' breathing zones. Sampling and analysis may be performed by collection of formaldehyde on liquid or solid sorbents with subsequent chemical analysis. Sampling and analysis may also be performed by passive diffusion monitors and short-term exposure may be measured by instruments such as real-time continuous monitoring systems and portable direct reading instruments.

Notification of Results: Your employer must inform you of the results of exposure monitoring representative of your job. You may be informed in writing, but posting the results where you have ready access to them constitutes compliance with the standard.

Protective Equipment and Clothing

[Material impervious to formaldehyde is needed if the employee handles formaldehyde solution of 1% or more. Other employees may also require protective clothing or equipment to prevent dermatitis.]

Respiratory Protection: Use NIOSH-approved full facepiece negative pressure respirators equipped with approved cartridges or canisters within the use limitations of these devices. (Present restrictions on cartridges and canisters do not permit them to be used for a full workshift.) In all other situations, use positive pressure respirators such as the positive-pressure air purifying respirator or the self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA). If you use a negative pressure respirator, your employer must provide you with fit testing of the respirator at least once a year in accordance with the procedures outlined in Appendix E.

Protective Gloves: Wear protective (impervious) gloves provided by your employer, at no cost, to prevent contact with formalin. Your employer should select these gloves based on the results of permeation testing and in accordance with the ACGIH Guidelines for Selection of Chemical Protective Clothing.

Eye Protection: If you might be splashed in the eyes with formalin, it is essential that you wear goggles or some other type of complete protection for the eye. You may also need a face shield if your face is likely to be splashed with formalin, but you must not substitute face shields for eye protection. (This section pertains to formaldehyde solutions of 1% or more.)

Other Protective Equipment: You must wear protective (impervious) clothing and equipment provided by your employer at no cost to prevent repeated or prolonged contact with formaldehyde liquids. If you are required to change into whole-body chemical protective clothing, your employer must provide a change room for your privacy and for storage of your normal clothing.

If you are splashed with formaldehyde, use the emergency showers and eyewash fountains provided by your employer immediately to prevent serious injury. Report the incident to your supervisor and obtain necessary medical support.

Entry Into an IDLH Atmosphere

Enter areas where the formaldehyde concentration might be 100 ppm or more only with complete body protection including a self-contained breathing apparatus with a full facepiece operated in a positive pressure mode or a supplied air respirator with full facepiece and operated in a positive pressure mode. This equipment is essential to protect your life and health under such extreme conditions.

Engineering Controls

Ventilation is the most widely applied engineering control method for reducing the concentration of airborne substances in the breathing zones of workers. There are two distinct types of ventilation.

Local Exhaust: Local exhaust ventilation is designed to capture airborne contaminants as near to the point of generation as possible. To protect you, the direction of contaminant flow must always be toward the local exhaust system inlet and away from you.

General (Mechanical): General dilution ventilation involves continuous introduction of fresh air into the workroom to mix with the contaminated air and lower your breathing zone concentration of formaldehyde. Effectiveness depends on the number of air changes per hour. Where devices emitting formaldehyde are spread out over a large area, general dilution ventilation may be the only practical method of control.

Work Practices: Work practices and administrative procedures are an important part of a control system. If you are asked to perform a task in a certain manner to limit your exposure to formaldehyde, it is extremely important that you follow these procedures.

Medical Surveillance

Medical surveillance helps to protect employees' health. You are encouraged strongly to participate in the medical surveillance program.

Your employer must make a medical surveillance program available at no expense to you and at a reasonable time and place if you are exposed to formaldehyde at concentrations above 0.5 ppm as an 8-hour average or 2 ppm over any 15-minute period. You will be offered medical surveillance at the time of your initial assignment and once a year afterward as long as your exposure is at least 0.5 ppm (TWA) or 2 ppm (STEL). Even if your exposure is below these levels, you should inform your employer if you have signs and symptoms that you suspect, through your training, are related to your formaldehyde exposure because you may need medical surveillance to determine if your health is being impaired by your exposure.

The surveillance plan includes:

(a) A medical disease questionnaire.

(b) A physical examination if the physician determines this is necessary.

If you are required to wear a respirator, your employer must offer you a physical examination and a pulmonary function test every year.

The physician must collect all information needed to determine if you are at increased risk from your exposure to formaldehyde. At the physician's discretion, the medical examination may include other tests, such as a chest x-ray, to make this determination.

After a medical examination the physician will provide your employer with a written opinion which includes any special protective measures recommended and any restrictions on your exposure. The physician must inform you of any medical conditions you have which would be aggravated by exposure to formaldehyde.

All records from your medical examinations, including disease surveys, must be retained at your employer's expense.

Emergencies

If you are exposed to formaldehyde in an emergency and develop signs or symptoms associated with acute toxicity from formaldehyde exposure, your employer must provide you with a medical examination as soon as possible. This medical examination will include all steps necessary to stabilize your health. You may be kept in the hospital for observation if your symptoms are severe to ensure that any delayed effects are recognized and treated.

Appendix B to 1910.1048—Sampling Strategy and Analytical Methods for Formaldehyde

To protect the health of employees, exposure measurements must be unbiased and representative of employee exposure. The proper measurement of employee exposure requires more than a token commitment on the part of the employer. OSHA's mandatory requirements establish a baseline; under the best of circumstances all questions regarding employee exposure will be answered. Many employers, however, will wish to conduct more extensive monitoring before undertaking expensive commitments, such as engineering controls, to assure that the modifications are truly necessary. The following sampling strategy, which was developed at NIOSH by Nelson A. Leidel, Kenneth A. Busch, and Jeremiah R. Lynch and described in NIOSH publication No. 77-173 (Occupational Exposure Sampling Strategy Manual) will assist the employer in developing a strategy for determining the exposure of his or her employees.

There is no one correct way to determine employee exposure. Obviously, measuring the exposure of every employee exposed to formaldehyde will provide the most information on any given day. Where few employees are exposed, this may be a practical solution. For most employers, however, use of the following strategy will give just as much information at less cost.

Exposure data collected on a single day will not automatically guarantee the employer that his or her workplace is always in compliance with the formaldehyde standard. This does not imply, however, that it is impossible for an employer to be sure that his or her worksite is in compliance with the standard. Indeed, a properly designed sampling strategy showing that all employees are exposed below the PELs, at least with a 95 percent certainty, is compelling evidence that the exposure limits are being achieved provided that measurements are conducted using valid sampling strategy and approved analytical methods.

There are two PELs, the TWA concentration and the STEL. Most employers will find that one of these two limits is more critical in the control of their operations, and OSHA expects that the employer will concentrate monitoring efforts on the critical component. If the more difficult exposure is controlled, this information, along with calculations to support the assumptions, should be adequate to show that the other exposure limit is also being achieved.

Sampling Strategy

Determination of the Need for Exposure Measurements

The employer must determine whether employees may be exposed to concentrations in excess of the action level. This determination becomes the first step in an employee exposure monitoring program that minimizes employer sampling burdens while providing adequate employee protection. If employees may be exposed above the action level, the employer must measure exposure. Otherwise, an objective determination that employee exposure is low provides adequate evidence that exposure potential has been examined.

The employer should examine all available relevant information, *e.g.* insurance company and trade association data and information from suppliers or exposure data collected from similar operations. The employer may also use previously-conducted sampling including area monitoring. The employer must make a determination relevant to each operation although this need not be on a separate piece of paper. If the employer can demonstrate conclusively that no employee is exposed above the action level or the STEL through the use of objective data, the employer need proceed no further on employee exposure monitoring until such time that conditions have changed and the determination is no longer valid.

If the employer cannot determine that employee exposure is less than the action level and the STEL, employee exposure monitoring will have to be conducted.

Workplace Material Survey

The primary purpose of a survey of raw material is to determine if formaldehyde is being used in the work environment and if so, the conditions under which formaldehyde is being used.

This first step is to tabulate all situations where formaldehyde is used in a manner such that it may be released into the workplace atmosphere or contaminate the skin. This information should be available through analysis of company records and information on the MSDSs available through provisions of this standard and the Hazard Communication standard.

If there is an indication from materials handling records and accompanying MSDSs that formaldehyde is being used in the following types of processes or work operations, there may be a potential for releasing formaldehyde into the workplace atmosphere:

(1) Any operation that involves grinding, sanding, sawing, cutting, crushing, screening, sieving, or any other manipulation of material that generates formaldehyde-bearing dust

(2) Any processes where there have been employee complaints or symptoms indicative of exposure to formaldehyde

(3) Any liquid or spray process involving formaldehyde

(4) Any process that uses formaldehyde in preserved tissue

(5) Any process that involves the heating of a formaldehyde-bearing resin. Processes and work operations that use formaldehyde in these manners will probably require further investigation at the worksite to determine the extent of employee monitoring that should be conducted.

Workplace Observations

To this point, the only intention has been to provide an indication as to the existence of potentially exposed employees. With this information, a visit to the workplace is needed to observe work operations, to identify potential health hazards, and to determine whether any employees may be exposed to hazardous concentrations of formaldehyde.

In many circumstances, sources of formaldehyde can be identified through the sense of smell. However, this method of detection should be used with caution because of olfactory fatigue.

Employee location in relation to source of formaldehyde is important in determining if an employee may be significantly exposed to formaldehyde. In most instances, the closer a worker is to the source, the higher the probability that a significant exposure will occur.

Other characteristics should be considered. Certain high temperature operations give rise to higher evaporation rates. Locations of open doors and windows provide natural ventilation that tend to dilute formaldehyde emissions. General room ventilation also provides a measure of control.

Calculation of Potential Exposure Concentrations

By knowing the ventilation rate in a workplace and the quantity of formaldehyde generated, the employer may be able to determine by calculation if the PELs might be exceeded. To account for poor mixing of formaldehyde into the entire room, locations of fans and proximity of employees to the work operation, the employer must include a safety factor. If an employee is relatively close to a source, particularly if he or she is located downwind, a safety factor of 100 may be necessary. For other situations, a factor of 10 may be acceptable. If the employer can demonstrate through such calculations that employee exposure does not exceed the action level or the STEL, the employer may use this information as objective data to demonstrate compliance with the standard.

Sampling Strategy

Once the employer determines that there is a possibility of substantial employee exposure to formaldehyde, the employer is obligated to measure employee exposure.

The next step is selection of a maximum risk employee. When there are different processes where employees may be exposed to formaldehyde, a maximum risk employee should be selected for each work operation.

Selection of the maximum risk employee requires professional judgment. The best procedure for selecting the maximum risk employee is to observe employees and select the person closest to the source of formaldehyde. Employee mobility may affect this selection; *e.g.* if the closest employee is mobile in his tasks, he may not be the maximum risk employee. Air movement patterns and differences in work habits will also affect selection of the maximum risk employee.

When many employees perform essentially the same task, a maximum risk employee cannot be selected. In this circumstance, it is necessary to resort to random sampling of the group of workers. The objective is to select a subgroup of adequate size so that there is a high probability that the random sample will contain at least one worker with high exposure if one exists. The number of persons in the group influences the number that need to be sampled to ensure that at least one individual from the highest 10 percent exposure group is contained in the sample. For example, to have 90 percent confidence in the results, if the group size is 10, nine should be sampled; for 50, only 18 need to be sampled.

If measurement shows exposure to formaldehyde at or above the action level or the STEL, the employer needs to identify all other employees who may be exposed at or above the action level or STEL and measure or otherwise accurately characterize the exposure of these employees.

Whether representative monitoring or random sampling are conducted, the purpose remains the same—to determine if the exposure of any employee is above the action level. If the exposure of the most exposed employee is less than the action level and the STEL, regardless of how the employee is identified, then it is reasonable to assume that measurements of exposure of the other employees in that operation would be below the action level and the STEL.

Exposure Measurements

There is no "best" measurement strategy for all situations. Some elements to consider in developing a strategy are:

(1) Availability and cost of sampling equipment

(2) Availability and cost of analytic facilities

(3) Availability and cost of personnel to take samples

(4) Location of employees and work operations

(5) Intraday and interday variations in the process

(6) Precision and accuracy of sampling and analytic methods, and

(7) Number of samples needed.

Samples taken for determining compliance with the STEL differ from those that measure the TWA concentration in important ways. STEL samples are best taken in a nonrandom fashion using all available knowledge relating to the area, the individual, and the process to obtain samples during periods of maximum expected concentrations. At least three measurements on a shift are generally needed to spot gross errors or mistakes; however, only the highest value represents the STEL.

If an operation remains constant throughout the workshift, a much greater number of samples would need to be taken over the 32 discrete nonoverlapping periods in an 8-hour workshift to verify compliance with a STEL. If employee exposure is truly uniform throughout the workshift, however, an employer in compliance with the 1 ppm TWA would be in compliance with the 2 ppm STEL, and this determination can probably be made using objective data.

Need to Repeat the Monitoring Strategy

Interday and intraday fluctuations in employee exposure are mostly influenced by the physical processes that generate formaldehyde and the work habits of the employee. Hence, in-plant process variations influence the employer's determination of whether or not additional controls need to be imposed. Measurements that employee exposure is low on a day that is not representative of worst conditions may not provide sufficient information to determine whether or not additional engineering controls should be installed to achieve the PELs.

The person responsible for conducting sampling must be aware of systematic changes which will negate the validity of the sampling results. Systematic changes in formaldehyde exposure concentration for an employee can occur due to:

(1) The employee changing patterns of movement in the workplace

(2) Closing of plant doors and windows

(3) Changes in ventilation from season to season

(4) Decreases in ventilation efficiency or abrupt failure of engineering control equipment

(5) Changes in the production process or work habits of the employee. Any of these changes, if they may result in additional exposure that reaches the next level of action (*i.e.* 0.5 or 1.0 ppm as an 8-hr average or 2 ppm over 15 minutes) require the employer to perform additional monitoring to reassess employee exposure.

A number of methods are suitable for measuring employee exposure to formaldehyde or for characterizing emissions within the worksite. The preamble to this standard describes some methods that have been widely used or subjected to validation testing. A detailed analytical procedure derived from the OSHA Method 52 for acrolein and formaldehyde is presented below for informational purposes.

Inclusion of OSHA's method in this appendix in no way implies that it is the only acceptable way to measure employee exposure to formaldehyde. Other methods that are free from significant interferences and that can determine formaldehyde at the permissible exposure limits with ±25 percent of the "true" value at the 95 percent confidence level are also acceptable. Where applicable, the method should also be capable of measuring formaldehyde at the action level to ±35 percent of the "true" value with a 95 percent confidence level. OSHA encourages employers to choose methods that will be best for their individual needs. The employer must exercise caution, however, in choosing an appropriate method since some techniques suffer from interferences that are likely to be present in workplaces of certain industry sectors where formaldehyde is used.

OSHA's Analytical Laboratory Method

Method No: 52
Matrix: Air
Target Concentration: 1 ppm (1.2 mg/m^3)

Procedures: Air samples are collected by drawing known volumes of air through sampling tubes containing XAD–2 adsorbent which have been coated with 2-(hydroxymethyl) piperidine. The samples are desorbed with toluene and then analyzed by a gas chromathography using a nitrogen selective detector.

Recommended Sampling Rate and Air Volumes: 0.1 L/min and 24 L

Reliable Quantitation Limit: 16 ppb (20 μg/m^3)

Standard Error of Estimate at the Target Concentration: 7.3%

Status of the Method: A sampling and analytical method that has been subjected to the established evaluation procedures of the Organic Methods Evaluation Branch.

Date: March 1985

1. General Discussion

1.1 Background: The current OSHA method for collecting acrolein vapor recommends the use of activated 13X molecular sieves. The samples must be stored in an ice bath during and after sampling and also they must be analyzed within 48 hours of collection. The current OSHA method for collecting formaldehyde vapor recommends the use of bubblers containing 10% methanol in water as the trapping solution.

This work was undertaken to resolve the sample stability problems associated with acrolein and also to eliminate the need to use bubblers to sample formaldehyde. A goal of this work was to develop and/or to evacuate a common sampling and analytical procedure for acrolein and formaldehyde.

NIOSH has developed independent methodologies for acrolein and formaldehyde which recommend the use of reagent-coated adsorbent tubes to collect the aldehydes as stable derivatives. The formaldehyde sampling tubes contain Chromosorb 102 adsorbent coated with N-benzylethanolamine (BEA) which reacts with formaldehyde vapor to form a stable oxazolidine compound. The acrolein sampling tubes contain XAD–2 adsorbent coated with 2-(hydroxymethyl) piperidine (2– HMP) which reacts with acrolein vapor to form a different, stable oxazolidine derivative. Acrolein does not appear to react with BEA to give a suitable reaction product. Therefore, the formaldehyde procedure cannot provide a common method for both aldehydes. However, formaldehyde does react with 2–HMP to form a very suitable reaction product. It is the quantitative reaction of acrolein and formaldehyde with 2–HMP that provides the basis for this evaluation.

This sampling and analytical procedure is very similar to the method recommended by NIOSH for acrolein. Some changes in the NIOSH methodology were necessary to permit the simultaneous determination of both aldehydes and also to accommodate OSHA laboratory equipment and analytical techniques.

1.2 Limit-defining parameters: The analyte air concentrations reported in this method are based on the recommended air volume for each analyte collected separately and a desorption volume of 1 mL. The amounts are presented as acrolein and/or formaldehyde, even though the derivatives are the actual species analyzed.

1.2.1 Detection limits of the analytical procedure: The detection limit of the analytical procedure was 386 log per injection for formaldehyde. This was the amount of analyte which gave a peak whose height was about five times the height of the peak given by the residual formaldehyde derivative in a typical blank front section of the recommended sampling tube.

1.2.2 Detection limits of the overall procedure: The detection limits of the overall procedure were 482 ng per sample (16 ppb or 20 $\mu g/m^3$ for formaldehyde). This was the amount of analyte spiked on the sampling device which allowed recoveries approximately equal to the detection limit of the analytical procedure.

1.2.3 Reliable quantitation limits: The reliable quantitation limit was 482 ng per sample (16 ppb or 20 $\mu g/m^3$) for formaldehyde. These were the smallest amounts of analyte which could be quantitated within the limits of a recovery of at least 75% and a precision (±1.96 SD) of ±25% or better.

The reliable quantitation limit and detection limits reported in the method are based upon optimization of the instrument for the smallest possible amount of analyte. When the target concentration of an analyte is exceptionally higher than these limits, they may not be attainable at the routine operating parameters.

1.2.4 Sensitivity: The sensitivity of the analytical procedure over concentration ranges representing 0.4 to 2 times the target concentration, based on the recommended air volumes, was 7,589 area units per μg/mL for formaldehyde. This value was determined from the slope of the calibration curve. The sensitivity may vary with the particular instrument used in the analysis.

1.2.5 Recovery: The recovery of formaldehyde from samples used in an 18-day storage test remained above 92% when the samples were stored at ambient temperature. These values were determined from regression lines which were calculated from the storage data. The recovery of the analyte from the collection device must be at least 75% following storage.

1.2.6 Precision (analytical method only): The pooled coefficient of variation obtained from replicate determinations of analytical standards over the range of 0.4 to 2 times the target concentration was 0.0052 for formaldehyde (Section 4.3).

1.2.7 Precision (overall procedure): The precision at the 95% confidence level for the ambient temperature storage tests was ± 14.3% for formaldehyde. These values each include an additional ± 5% for sampling error. The overall procedure must provide results at the target concentrations that are ± 25% at the 95% confidence level.

1.2.8 Reproducibility: Samples collected from controlled test atmospheres and a draft copy of this procedure were given to a chemist unassociated with this evaluation. The formaldehyde samples were analyzed following 15 days storage. The average recovery was 96.3% and the standard deviation was 1.7%.

1.3 Advantages:

1.3.1 The sampling and analytical procedures permit the simultaneous determination of acrolein and formaldehyde.

1.3.2. Samples are stable following storage at ambient temperature for at least 18 days.

1.4 Disadvantages: None.

2. Sampling Procedure

2.1 Apparatus:

2.1.1 Samples are collected by use of a personal sampling pump that can be calibrated to within ± 5% of the recommended 0.1 L/min sampling rate with the sampling tube in line.

2.1.2 Samples are collected with laboratory prepared sampling tubes. The sampling tube is constructed of silane treated glass and is about 8-cm long. The ID is 4 mm and the OD is 6 mm. One end of the tube is tapered so that a glass wool end plug will hold the contents of the tube in place during sampling. The other end of the sampling tube is open to its full 4-mm ID to facilitate packing of the tube. Both ends of the tube are fire-polished for safety. The tube is packed with a 75-mg backup section, located nearest the tapered end and a 150-mg sampling section of pretreated XAD–2 adsorbent which has been coated with 2–HMP. The two sections of coated adsorbent are separated and retained with small plugs of silanized glass wool. Following packing, the sampling tubes are sealed with two 7/32 inch OD plastic end caps. Instructions for the pretreatment and the coating of XAD–adsorbent are presented in Section 4 of this method.

2.1.3 Sampling tubes, similar to those recommended in this method, are marketed by Supelco, Inc. These tubes were not available when this work was initiated; therefore, they were not evaluated.

2.2 Reagents: None required.

2.3 Technique.

2.3.1 Properly label the sampling tube before sampling and then remove the plastic end caps.

2.3.2 Attach the sampling tube to the pump using a section of flexible plastic tubing such that the large, front section of the sampling tube is exposed directly to the atmosphere. Do not place any tubing ahead of the sampling tube. The sampling tube should be attached in the worker's breathing zone in a vertical manner such that it does not impede work performance.

2.3.3 After sampling for the appropriate time, remove the sampling tube from the pump and then seal the tube with plastic end caps.

2.3.4 Include at least one blank for each sampling set. The blank should be handled in the same manner as the samples with the exception that air is not drawn through it.

2.3.5 List any potential interferences on the sample data sheet.

2.4 Breakthrough:

2.4.1 Breakthrough was defined as the relative amount of analyte found on a backup sample in relation to the total amount of analyte collected on the sampling train.

2.4.2 For formaldehyde collected from test atmospheres containing 6 times the PEL, the average 5% breakthrough air volume was 41 L. The sampling rate was 0.1 L/min and the average mass of formaldehyde collected was 250 μg.

2.5 Desorption Efficiency: No desorption efficiency corrections are necessary to compute air sample results because analytical standards are prepared using coated adsorbent. Desorption efficiencies were determined, however, to investigate the recoveries of the analytes from the sampling device. The average recovery over the range of 0.4 to 2 times the target concentration, based on the recommended air volumes, was 96.2% for formaldehyde. Desorption efficiencies were essentially constant over the ranges studied.

2.6 Recommended Air Volume and Sampling Rate:

2.6.1 The recommended air volume for formaldehyde is 24 L.

2.6.2 The recommended sampling rate is 01. L/min.

2.7 Interferences:

2.7.1 Any collected substance that is capable of reacting 2-HMP and thereby depleting the derivatizing agent is a potential interference. Chemicals which contain a carbonyl group, such as acetone, may be capable or reacting with 2-HMP.

2.7.2 There are no other known interferences to the sampling method.

2.8 Safety Precautions:

2.8.1 Attach the sampling equipment to the worker in such a manner that it well not interfere with work performance or safety.

2.8.2 Follow all safety practices that apply to the work area being sampled.

3. Analytical Procedure

3.1 Apparatus:

3.1.1 A gas chromatograph (GC), equipped with a nitrogen selective detector. A Hewlett-Packard Model 5840A GC fitted with a nitrogen-phosphorus flame ionization detector (NPD) was used for this evaluation. Injections were performed using a Hewlett-Packard Model 7671A automatic sampler.

3.1.2 A GC column capable of resolving the analytes from any interference. A 6 ft x ¼ in OD (2mm ID) glass GC column containing 10% UCON 50-HB-5100 + 2% KOH on 80/100 mesh Chromosorb W-AW was used for the evaluation. Injections were performed on-column.

3.1.3 Vials, glass 2-mL, with Teflon-lined caps.

3.1.4 Volumetric flasks, pipets, and syringes for preparing standards, making dilutions, and performing injections.

3.2 Reagents:

3.2.1 Toluene and dimethylformamide. Burdick and Jackson solvents were used in this evaluation.

3.2.2 Helium, hydrogen, and air, GC grade.

3.2.3 Formaldehyde, 37%, by weight, in water. Aldrich Chemical, ACS Reagent Grade formaldehyde was used in this evaluation.

3.2.4 Amberlite XAD-2 adsorbent coated with 2-(hydroxymethyl—piperidine (2-HMP), 10% by weight (Section 4).

3.2.5 Desorbing solution with internal standard. This solution was prepared by adding 20 μL of dimethylformamide to 100 mL of toluene.

3.3 Standard preparation:

3.3.1 Formaldehyde: Prepare stock standards by diluting known volumes of 37% formaldehyde solution with methanol. A procedure to determine the formaldehyde content of these standards is presented in Section 4. A standard containing 7.7 mg/mL formaldehyde was prepared by diluting 1 mL of the 37% reagent to 50 mL with methanol.

3.3.2 It is recommended that analytical standards be prepared about 16 hours before the air samples are to be analyzed in order to ensure the complete reaction of the analytes with 2-HMP. However, rate studies have shown the reaction to be greater than 95% complete after 4 hours. Therefore, one or two standards can be analyzed after this reduced time if sample results are outside the concentration range of the prepared standards.

3.3.3 Place 150-mg portions of coated XAD-2 adsorbent, from the same lot number as used to collect the air samples, into each of several glass 2-mL vials. Seal each vial with a Teflon-lined cap.

3.3.4 Prepare fresh analytical standards each day by injecting appropriate amounts of the diluted analyte directly onto 150-mg portions of coated adsorbent. It is permissible to inject both acrolein and formaldehyde on the same adsorbent portion. Allow the standards to stand at room temperature. A standard, approximately the target levels, was prepared by injecting 11 μL of the acrolein and 12 μL of the formaldehyde stock standards onto a single coated XAD-2 adsorbent portion.

3.3.5 Prepare a sufficient number of standards to generate the calibration curves. Analytical standard concentrations should bracket sample concentrations. Thus, if samples are not in the concentration range of the prepared standards, additional standards must be prepared to determine detector response.

3.3.7 Desorb the standards in the same manner as the samples following the 16-hour reaction time.

3.4 Sample preparation:

3.4.1 Transfer the 150-mg section of the sampling tube to a 2-mL vial. Place the 75-mg section in a separate vial. If the glass wool plugs contain a significant number of adsorbent beads, place them with the appropriate sampling tube section. Discard the glass wool plugs if they do not contain a significant number of adsorbent beads.

3.4.2 Add 1 mL of desorbing solution to each vial.

3.4.3 Seal the vials with Teflon-lined caps and then allow them to desorb for one hour. Shake the vials by hand with vigorous force several times during the desorption time.

3.4.4 Save the used sampling tubes to be cleaned and recycled.

3.5 Analysis:

3.5.1 GC Conditions

Column Temperature:
Bi-level temperature program—First level: 100 to 140 °C at 4

°C/min following completion of the first level.

Second level: 140 to 180 °C at 20 °C/min following completion of the first level.

Isothermal period: Hold column at 180 °C until the recorder pen returns to baseline (usually about 25 min after injection).

Injector temperature: 180 °C

Helium flow rate: 30 mL/min (detector response will be reduced if nitrogen is substituted for helium carrier gas).

Injection volume: 0.8 µL

GC column: Six-ft x ¼-in OD (2 min ID) glass GC column containing 10% UCON 50-HB-5100 + 2% KOH on 80/100 Chromosorb W-AW.

NPD conditions:

Hydrogen flow rate: 3 mL/min
Air flow rate: 50 mL/min
Detector temperature: 275 °C

3.5.2 **Chromatogram:** For an example of a typical chromatogram, see Figure 4.11 in OSHA Method 52.

3.5.3 Use a suitable method, such as electronic integration, to measure detector response.

3.5.4 Use an internal standard method to prepare the calibration curve with several standard solutions of different concentrations. Prepare the calibration curve daily. Program the integrator to report results in µg/mL.

3.5.5 Bracket sample concentrations with standards.

3.6 Interferences (Analytical)

3.6.1 Any compound with the same general retention time as the analytes and which also gives a detector response is a potential interference. Possible interferences should be reported to the laboratory with submitted samples by the industrial hygienist.

3.6.2 GC parameters (temperature, column, etc.) may be changed to circumvent interferences.

3.6.3 A useful means of structure designation is GC/MS. It is recommended this procedure be used to confirm samples whenever possible.

3.6.4 The coated adsorbent usually contains a very small amount of residual formaldehyde derivative (Section 4.8).

3.7 Calculations:

3.7.1 Results are obtained by use of calibration curves. Calibration curves are prepared by plotting detector response against concentration for each standard. The best line through the data points is determined by curve fitting.

3.7.2 The concentration, in µg/mL, for a particular sample is determined by comparing its detector response to the calibration curve. If either of the analytes is found on the backup section, it is added to the amount found on the front section. Blank corrections should be performed before adding the results together.

3.7.3 The acrolein and/or formaldehyde air concentration can be expressed using the following equation:

$\mathrm{mg/m^3} = (A)(B)/C$
where A = µg/mL from 3.7.2, B = desorption volume, and C = L of air sampled.

No desorption efficiency corrections are required.

3.7.4 The following equation can be used to convert results in $\mathrm{mg/m^3}$ to ppm.

$\mathrm{ppm} = (\mathrm{mg/m^3})(24.45)/\mathrm{MW}$
where $\mathrm{mg/m^3}$ = result from 3.7.3, 24.25 = molar volume of an ideal gas at 760 mm Hg and 25 °C, MW = molecular weight (30.0).

4. Backup Data

4.1 Backup data on detection limits, reliable quantitation limits, sensitivity and precision of the analytical method, breakthrough, desorption efficiency, storage, reproducibility, and generation of test atmospheres are available in OSHA Method 52, developed by the Organics Methods Evaluation Branch, OSHA Analytical Laboratory, Salt Lake City, Utah.

4.2 Procedure to Coat XAD-2 Adsorbent with 2-HMP:

4.2.1 **Apparatus:** Soxhlet extraction apparatus, rotary evaporation apparatus, vacuum dessicator, 1-L vacuum flask, 1-L round-bottomed evaporative flask, 1-L Erlenmeyer flask, 250-mL Buchner funnel with a coarse fritted disc, etc.

4.2.2 Reagents:

4.2.2.1 Methanol, isooctane, and toluene.

4.2.2.2 2-(Hydroxymethyl) piperidine.

4.2.2.3 Amberlite XAD-2 non-ionic polymeric adsorbent, 20 to 60 mesh, Aldrich Chemical XAD-2 was used in this evaluation.

4.2.3 **Procedure:** Weigh 125 g of crude XAD-2 adsorbent into a 1-L Erlenmeyer flask. Add about 200 mL of water to the flask and then swirl the mixture to wash the adsorbent. Discard any adsorbent that floats to the top of the water and then filter the mixture using a fritted Buchner funnel. Air dry the adsorbent for 2 minutes. Transfer the adsorbent back to the Erlenmeyer flask and then add about 200 mL of methanol to the flask. Swirl and then filter the mixture as before. Transfer the washed adsorbent back to the Erlenmeyer flask and then add about 200 mL of methanol to the flask. Swirl and then filter the mixture as before. Transfer the washed adsorbent to a 1-L round-bottomed evaporative flask, add 13 g of 2-HMP and then 200 mL of methanol, swirl the mixture and then allow it to stand for one hour. Remove the methanol at about 40 °C and reduced pressure using a rotary evaporation apparatus. Transfer the coated adsorbent to a suitable container and store it in a vacuum desiccator at room temperature overnight. Transfer the coated adsorbent to a Soxhlet extractor and then extract the material with toluene for about 24 hours. Discard the contaminated toluene, add methanol in its place and then continue the Soxhlet extraction for an additional 4 hours. Transfer the adsorbent to a weighted 1-L round-bottom evaporative flask and remove the methanol using the rotary evaporation apparatus. Determine the weight of the adsorbent and then add an amount of 2-HMP, which is 10% by weight of the adsorbent. Add 200 mL of methanol and then swirl the mixture. Allow the mixture to stand for one hour. Remove the methanol by rotary evaporation. Transfer the coated adsorbent to a suitable container and store it in a vacuum desiccator until all traces of solvents are gone. Typically, this will take 2–3 days. The coated adsorbent should be protected from contamination. XAD–2 adsorbent treated in this manner will probably not contain residual acrolein derivative. However, this adsorbent will often contain residual formaldehyde derivative levels of about 0.1 μg per 150 mg of adsorbent. If the blank values for a batch of coated adsorbent are too high, then the batch should be returned to the Soxhlet extractor, extracted with toluene again and then recoated. This process can be repeated until the desired blank levels are attained.

The coated adsorbent is now ready to be packed into sampling tubes. The sampling tubes should be stored in a sealed container to prevent contamination. Sampling tubes should be stored in the dark at room temperature. The sampling tubes should be segregated by coated adsorbent lot number. A sufficient amount of each lot number of coated adsorbent should be retained to prepare analytical standards for use with air samples from that lot number.

4.3 A Procedure to Determine Formaldehyde by Acid Titration: Standardize the 0.1 N HCl solution using sodium carbonate and methyl orange indicator.

Place 50 mL of 0.1 M sodium sulfite and three drops of thymophthalein indicator into a 250-mL Erlenmeyer flask. Titrate the contents of the flask to a colorless endpoint with 0.1 N HCl (usually one or two drops is sufficient). Transfer 10 mL of the formaldehyde/methanol solution (prepared in 3.3.1) into the same flask and titrate the mixture with 0.1 N HCl, again, to a colorless endpoint. The formaldehyde concentration of the standard may be calculated by the following equation:

$$\text{Formaldehyde, mg/mL} = \frac{\text{acid titer} \times \text{acid normality} \times 30.0}{\text{mL of sample}}$$

This method is based on the quantitative liberation of sodium hydroxide when formaldehyde reacts with sodium sulfite to form the formaldehyde-bisulfite addition product. The volume of sample may be varied depending on the formaldehyde content but the solution to be titrated must contain excess sodium sulfite. Formaldehyde solutions containing substantial amounts of acid or base must be neutralized before analysis.

Appendix C to 1910.1048—Medical Surveillance—Formaldehyde

I. Health Hazards

The occupational health hazards of formaldehyde are primarily due to its toxic effects after inhalation, after direct contact with the skin or eyes by formaldehyde in liquid or vapor form, and after ingestion.

II. Toxicology

A. Acute Effects of Exposure

1. Inhalation (breathing): Formaldehyde is highly irritating to the upper airways. The concentration of formaldehyde that is immediately dangerous to life and health is 100 ppm. Concentrations above 50 ppm can cause severe pulmonary reactions within minutes. These include pulmonary edema, pneumonia, and bronchial irritation which can result in death. Concentrations above 5 ppm readily cause lower airway irritation characterized by cough, chest tightness and wheezing. There is some controversy regarding whether formaldehyde gas is a pulmonary sensitizer which can cause occupational asthma in a previously normal individual. Formaldehyde can produce symptoms of bronchial asthma in humans. The mechanism may be either sensitization of the individual by exposure to formaldehyde or direct irritation by formaldehyde in persons with pre-existing asthma. Upper airway irritation is the most common respiratory effect reported by workers and can occur over a wide range of concentrations, most frequently above 1 ppm. However, airway irritation has occurred in some workers with exposures to formaldehyde as low as 0.1 ppm. Symptoms of upper airway irritation include dry or sore throat, itching and burning sensations of the nose, and nasal congestion. Tolerance to this level of exposure may develop within 1–2 hours. This tolerance can permit workers remaining in an environment of gradually increasing formaldehyde concentrations to be unaware of their increasingly hazardous exposure.

2. Eye contact: Concentrations of formaldehyde between 0.05 ppm and 0.5 ppm produce a sensation of irritation in the eyes with burning, itching, redness, and tearing. Increased rate of blinking and eye closure generally protects the eye from damage at these low levels, but these protective mechanisms may interfere with some workers' work abilities. Tolerance can occur in workers continuously exposed to concentrations of formaldehyde in this range. Accidental splash injuries of human eyes to aqueous solutions of formaldehyde (formalin) have resulted in a wide range of ocular injuries including corneal opacities and blindness. The severity of the reactions have been directly dependent on the concentration of formaldehyde in solution and the amount of time lapsed before emergency and medical intervention.

3. Skin contact: Exposure to formaldehyde solutions can cause irritation of the skin and allergic contact dermatitis. These skin diseases and disorders can occur at levels well below those encountered by many formaldehyde workers. Symptoms include erythema, edema, and vesiculation or hives. Exposure to liquid formalin or formaldehyde vapor can provoke skin reactions in sensitized individuals even when airborne concentrations of formaldehyde are well below 1 ppm.

4. Ingestion: Ingestion of as little as 30 ml of a 37 percent solution of formaldehyde (formalin) can result in death. Gastrointestinal toxicity after ingestion is most severe in the stomach and results in symptoms which can include nausea, vomiting, and severe abdominal pain. Diverse damage to other organ systems including the liver, kidney, spleen, pancreas, brain, and central nervous systems can occur from the acute response to ingestion of formaldehyde.

B. Chronic Effects of Exposure

Long term exposure to formaldehyde has been shown to be associated with an increased risk of cancer of the nose and accessory sinuses, nasopharyngeal and oropharyngeal cancer, and lung cancer in humans. Animal experiments provide conclusive evidence of a causal relationship between nasal cancer in rats and formaldehyde exposure. Concordant evidence of carcinogenicity includes DNA binding, genotoxicity in short-term tests, and cytotoxic changes in the cells of the target organ suggesting both preneoplastic changes and a dose-rate effect. Formaldehyde is a complete carcinogen and appears to exert an effect on at least two stages of the carcinogenic process.

III. Surveillance considerations

A. History

1. **Medical and occupational history:** Along with its acute irritative effects, formaldehyde can cause allergic sensitization and cancer. One of the goals of the work history should be to elicit information on any prior or additional exposure to formaldehyde in either the occupational or the nonoccupational setting.

2. **Respiratory history:** As noted above, formaldehyde has recognized properties as an airway irritant and has been reported by some authors as a cause of occupational asthma. In addition, formaldehyde has been associated with cancer of the entire respiratory system of humans. For these reasons, it is appropriate to include a comprehensive review of the respiratory system in the medical history. Components of this history might include questions regarding dyspnea on exertion, shortness of breath, chronic airway complaints, hyperreactive airway disease, rhinitis, bronchitis, bronchiolitis, asthma, emphysema, respiratory allergic reaction, or other preexisting pulmonary disease.

In addition, generalized airway hypersensitivity can result from exposures to a single sensitizing agent. The examiner should, therefore, elicit any prior history of exposure to pulmonary irritants, and any short- or long-term effects of that exposure.

Smoking is known to decrease mucociliary clearance of materials deposited during respiration in the nose and upper airways. This may increase a worker's exposure to inhaled materials such as formaldehyde vapor. In addition, smoking is a potential confounding factor in the investigation of any chronic respiratory disease, including cancer. For these reasons, a complete smoking history should be obtained.

3. **Skin Disorders:** Because of the dermal irritant and sensitizing effects of formaldehyde, a history of skin disorders should be obtained. Such a history might include the existence of skin irritation, previously documented skin sensitivity, and other dermatologic disorders. Previous exposure to formaldehyde and other dermal sensitizers should be recorded.

4. **History of atopic or allergic diseases:** Since formaldehyde can cause allergic sensitization of the skin and airways, it might be useful to identify individuals with prior allergen sensitization. A history of atopic disease and allergies to formaldehyde or any other substances should also be obtained. It is not definitely known at this time whether atopic diseases and allergies to formaldehyde or any other substances should also be obtained. Also it is not definitely known at this time whether atopic individuals have a greater propensity to develop formaldehyde sensitivity than the general population, but identification of these individuals may be useful for ongoing surveillance.

5. **Use of disease questionnaires:** Comparison of the results from previous years with present results provides the best method for detecting a general deterioration in health when toxic signs and symptoms are measured subjectively. In this way recall bias does not affect the results of the analysis. Consequently, OSHA has determined that the findings of the medical and work histories should be kept in a standardized form for comparison of the year-to-year results.

B. Physical Examination

1. **Mucosa of eyes and airways:** Because of the irritant effects of formaldehyde, the examining physician should be alert to evidence of this irritation. A speculum examination of the nasal mucosa may be helpful in assessing possible irritation and cytotoxic changes, as may be indirect inspection of the posterior pharynx by mirror.

2. **Pulmonary system:** A conventional respiratory examination, including inspection of the thorax and auscultation and percussion of the lung fields should be performed as part of the periodic medical examination. Although routine pulmonary function testing is only required by the standard once every year for persons who are exposed over the TWA concentration limit, these tests have an obvious value in investigating possible respiratory dysfunction and should be used wherever deemed appropriate by the physician. In cases of alleged formaldehyde-induced airway disease, other possible causes of pulmonary disfunction (including exposures to other substances) should be ruled out. A chest radiograph may be useful in these circumstances. In cases of suspected airway hypersensitivity or allergy, it may be appropriate to use bronchial challenge testing with formaldehyde or methacholine to determine the nature of the disorder. Such testing should be performed by or under the supervision of a physician experienced in the procedures involved.

3. **Skin:** The physician should be alert to evidence of dermal irritation of sensitization, including reddening and inflammation, urticaria, blistering, scaling, formation of skin fissures, or other symptoms. Since the integrity of the skin barrier is compromised by other dermal diseases, the presence of such disease should be noted. Skin sensitivity testing carries with it some risk of inducing sensitivity, and therefore, skin testing for formaldehyde sensitivity should not be used as a routine screening test. Sensitivity testing may be indicated in the investigation of a suspected existing sensitivity. Guidelines for such testing have been prepared by the North American Contact Dermatitis Group.

C. Additional Examinations or Tests

The physician may deem it necessary to perform other medical examinations or tests as indicated. The standard provides a mechanism whereby these additional investigations are covered under the standard for occupational exposure to formaldehyde.

D. Emergencies

The examination of workers exposed in an emergency should be directed at the organ systems most likely to be affected. Much of the content of the examination will be similar to the periodic examination unless the patient has received a severe acute exposure requiring immediate attention to prevent serious consequences. If a severe overexposure requiring medical intervention or hospitalization has occurred, the physician must be alert to the possibility of delayed symptoms. Followup nonroutine examinations may be necessary to assure the patient's well-being.

E. Employer Obligations

The employer is required to provide the physician with the following information: A copy of this standard and appendices A, C, D, and E; a description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to his or her exposure concentration; an estimate of the employee's exposure including duration (*e.g.* 15 hr/wk, three 8-hour shifts, full-time); a description of any personal protective equipment, including respirators, used by the employee; and the results of any previous medical determinations for the affected employee related to formaldehyde exposure to the extent that this information is within the employer's control.

F. Physician's Obligations

The standard requires the employer to obtain a written statement from the physician. This statement must contain the physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any medical condition which would place him or her at increased risk of impaired health from exposure to formaldehyde or use of respirators, as appropriate. The physician must also state his opinion regarding any restrictions that should be placed on the employee's exposure to formaldehyde or upon the use of protective clothing or equipment such as respirators. If the employee wears a respirator as a result of his or her exposure to formaldehyde, the physician's opinion must also contain a statement regarding the suitability of the employee to wear the type of respirator assigned. Finally, the physician must inform the employer that the employee has been told the results of the medical examination and of any medical conditions which require further explanation or treatment. This written opinion is not to contain any information on specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure to formaldehyde.

The purpose in requiring the examining physician to supply the employer with a written opinion is to provide the employer with a medical basis to assist the employer in placing employees initially, in assuring that their health is not being impaired by formaldehyde, and to assess the employee's ability to use any required protective equipment.

Appendix D to 1910.1048—Nonmandatory Medical Disease Questionnaire

A. Identification

Plant Name ________
Date ________
Employee Name ________
S.S. # ________
Job Title ________
Birthdate: ________
Age: ________
Sex: ________
Height: ________
Weight: ________

B. Medical History

1. Have you ever been in the hospital as a patient?
Yes ☐ No ☐
If yes, what kind of problem were you having?
____

2. Have you ever had any kind of operation?
Yes ☐ No ☐
If yes, what kind? ________

3. Do you take any kind of medicine regularly?
Yes ☐ No ☐
If yes, what kind? ________
____

4. Are you allergic to any drugs, foods, or chemicals?
Yes ☐ No ☐
If yes, what kind of allergy is it? ________
____
What causes the allergy? ________

5. Have you ever been told that you have asthma, hayfever, or sinusitis?
Yes ☐ No ☐

6. Have you ever been told that you have emphysema, bronchitis, or any other respiratory problems?
Yes ☐ No ☐

7. Have you ever been told you had hepatitis?
Yes ☐ No ☐

8. Have you ever been told that you had cirrhosis?
Yes ☐ No ☐

9. Have you ever been told that you had cancer?
Yes ☐ No ☐

10. Have you ever had arthritis or joint pain?
Yes ☐ No ☐

11. Have you ever been told that you had high blood pressure?
Yes ☐ No ☐

12. Have you ever had a heart attack or heart trouble?
Yes ☐ No ☐

B-1. Medical History Update

1. Have you been in the hospital as a patient any time within the past year?
Yes ☐ No ☐
If so, for what condition?
____

2. Have you been under the care of a physician during the past year?
Yes ☐ No ☐
If so, for what condition? ________
____

3. Is there any change in your breathing since last year?
Yes ☐ No ☐
Better? ________
Worse? ________
No change? ________
If change, do you know why? ________
____

4. Is your general health different this year from last year?

Yes ☐ No ☐

If different, in what way?____________________

5. Have you in the past year or are you now taking any medication on a regular basis?
Yes ☐ No ☐

Name Rx ____________________

Condition being treated____________________

C. Occupational History

1. How long have you worked for your present employer?

2. What jobs have you held with this employer? Include job title and length of time in each job.

3. In each of these jobs, how many hours a day were you exposed to chemicals?

4. What chemicals have you worked with most of the time?

5. Have you ever noticed any type of skin rash you feel was related to your work?
Yes ☐ No ☐

6. Have you ever noticed that any kind of chemical makes you cough?
Yes ☐ No ☐
Wheeze?
Yes ☐ No ☐
Become short of breath or cause your chest to become tight?
Yes ☐ No ☐

7. Are you exposed to any dust or chemicals at home?
Yes ☐ No ☐

If yes, explain:____________________

8. In other jobs, have you ever had exposure to:
Wood dust?
Yes ☐ No ☐
Nickel of chromium?
Yes ☐ No ☐
Silica (foundry, sand blasting)?
Yes ☐ No ☐
Arsenic or asbestos?
Yes ☐ No ☐
Organic solvents?
Yes ☐ No ☐
Urethane foams?
Yes ☐ No ☐

C-1. Occupational History Update

1. Are you working on the same job this year as you were last year?
Yes ☐ No ☐

If not, how has your job changed?____________________

2. What chemicals are you exposed to on your job?

3. How many hours a day are you exposed to chemicals?

4. Have you noticed any skin rash within the past year you feel was related to your work?
Yes ☐ No ☐

If so, explain circumstances:____________________

5. Have you noticed that any chemical makes you cough, be short of breath, or wheeze?
Yes ☐ No ☐

If so, can you identify it?____________________

D. Miscellaneous

1. Do you smoke?
Yes ☐ No ☐

If so, how much and for how long?____________________

Pipe____________________

Cigars____________________

Cigarettes____________________

2. Do you drink alcohol in any form?
Yes ☐ No ☐

If so, how much, how long, and how often?

3. Do you wear glasses or contact lenses?
Yes ☐ No ☐

4. Do you get any physical exercise other than that required to do your job?
Yes ☐ No ☐

If so, explain:____________________

5. Do you have any hobbies or "side jobs" that require you to use chemicals, such as furniture stripping, sand blasting, insulation or manufacture of urethane foam, furniture, etc?
Yes ☐ No ☐

If so, please describe, giving type of business or hobby, chemicals used and length of exposures.

E. Symptoms Questionnaire

1. Do you ever have any shortness of breath?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, do you have to rest after climbing several flights of stairs?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, if you walk on the level with people your own age, do you walk slower than they do?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, if you walk slower than a normal pace, do you have to limit the distance that you walk?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, do you have to stop and rest while bathing or dressing?
   Yes ☐ No ☐

2. Do you cough as much as three months out of the year?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, have you had this cough for more than two years?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, do you ever cough anything up from chest?
   Yes ☐ No ☐

3. Do you ever have a feeling of smothering, unable to take a deep breath, or tightness in your chest?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, do you notice that this on any particular day of the week?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, what day or the week?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, do you notice that this occurs at any particular place?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, do you notice that this is worse after you have returned to work after being off for several days?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
4. Have you ever noticed any wheezing in your chest?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, is this only with colds or other infections?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   Is this caused by exposure to any kind of dust or other material?
   Yes ☐ No ☐

If yes, what kind?____________________

5. Have you noticed any burning, tearing, or redness of your eyes when you are at work?
   Yes ☐ No ☐

If so, explain circumstances:____________________

____

6. Have you noticed any sore or burning throat or itchy or burning nose when you are at work?
   Yes ☐ No ☐

If so, explain circumstances:____________________

____

7. Have you noticed any stuffiness or dryness of your nose?
   Yes ☐ No ☐

8. Do you ever have swelling of the eyelids or face?
   Yes ☐ No ☐

9. Have you ever been jaundiced?
   Yes ☐ No ☐
   If yes, was this accompanied by any pain?
   Yes ☐ No ☐

10. Have you ever had a tendency to bruise easily or bleed excessively?
    Yes ☐ No ☐

11. Do you have frequent headaches that are not relieved by aspirin or tylenol?
    Yes ☐ No ☐
    If yes, do they occur at any particular time of the day or week?
    Yes ☐ No ☐

If yes, when do they occur?____________________

____

12. Do you have frequent episodes of nervousness or irritability?
    Yes ☐ No ☐

13. Do you tend to have trouble concentrating or remembering?
    Yes ☐ No ☐

14. Do you ever feel dizzy, light-headed, excessively drowsy or like you have been drugged?
    Yes ☐ No ☐
15. Does your vision ever become blurred?
    Yes ☐ No ☐

16. Do you have numbness or tingling of the hands or feet or other parts of your body?
    Yes ☐ No ☐

17. Have you ever had chronic weakness or fatigue?
    Yes ☐ No ☐

18. Have you ever had any swelling of your feet or ankles to the point where you could not wear your shoes?
    Yes ☐ No ☐

19. Are you bothered by heartburn or indigestion?
    Yes ☐ No ☐

20. Do you ever have itching, dryness, or peeling and scaling of the hands?
    Yes ☐ No ☐

21. Do you ever have a burning sensation in the hands, or

reddening of the skin?
Yes ☐ No ☐

22. Do you ever have cracking or bleeding of the skin on your hands?
Yes ☐ No ☐

23. Are you under a physician's care?
Yes ☐ No ☐
If yes, for what are you being treated?________________

24. Do you have any physical complaints today?
Yes ☐ No ☐
If yes, explain?________________

25. Do you have other health conditions not covered by these questions?
Yes ☐ No ☐
If yes, explain:________________

Appendix E to 1910.1048—Qualitative and Quantitative Fit Testing Procedures

I. FIT Test Protocols

Because exposure to formaldehyde can affect the employee's ability to detect common odorants, fit test results from the isoamyl acetate test must be augmented by results from either the saccharin or irritant smoke test.

A. The employer shall include the following provisions in the fit test procedures. These provisions apply to both qualitative fit testing (QLFT) and quantitative fit testing (QNFT).

1. The test subject shall be allowed to pick the most comfortable respirator from a selection including respirators of various sizes from different manufacturers. The selection shall include at least three sizes of elastomeric facepieces of the type of respirator that is to be tested, i.e., three sizes of half mask; or three sizes of full facepiece; and units from at least two manufacturers.

2. Prior to the selection process, the test subject shall be shown how to put on a respirator, how it should be positioned on the face, how to set strap tension and how to determine a comfortable fit. A mirror shall be available to assist the subject in evaluating the fit and positioning the respirator. This instruction may not constitute the subject's formal training on respirator use, as it is only a review.

3. The test subject shall be informed that he/she is being asked to select the respirator which provides the most comfortable fit. Each respirator represents a different size and shape, and if fitted and used properly, will provide adequate protection.

4. The test subject shall be instructed to hold each facepiece up to the face and eliminate those which obviously do not give a comfortable fit.

5. The more comfortable facepieces are noted; the most comfortable mask is donned and worn at least five minutes to assess comfort. Assistance in assessing comfort can be given by discussing the points in item 6 below. If the test subject is not familiar with using a particular respirator, the test subject shall be directed to don the mask several times and to adjust the straps each time to become adept at setting proper tension on the straps.

6. Assessment of comfort shall include reviewing the following points with the test subject and allowing the test subject adequate time to determine the comfort of the respirator:

(a) position of the mask on the nose.

(b) room for eye protection.

(c) room to talk.

(d) position of mask on face and cheeks.

7. The following criteria shall be used to help determine the adequacy of the respirator fit:

(a) chin properly placed;

(b) adequate strap tension, not overly tightened;

(c) fit across nose bridge;

(d) respirator of proper size to span distance from nose to chin;

(e) tendency of respirator to slip;

(f) self-observation in mirror to evaluate fit and respirator position.

8. The test subject shall conduct the negative and positive pressure fit checks as described below or ANSI Z88.2–1980. Before conducting the negative or positive pressure test, the subject shall be told to seat the mask on the face by moving the head from side-to-side and up and down slowly while taking in a few slow deep breaths. Another facepiece shall be selected and retested if the test subject fails the fit check tests.

(a) **Positive pressure test.** Close off the exhalation valve and exhale gently onto the facepiece. The face fit is considered satisfactory if a slight positive pressure can be built up inside the facepiece without any evidence of outward leakage of air at the seal. For most respirators this method of leak testing requires the wearer to first remove the exhalation valve cover before closing off the exhalation valve and then carefully replacing it after the test.

(b) **Negative pressure test.** Close off the inlet opening of the canister or cartridge(s) by covering with the palm of the hand(s) or by replacing the filter seal(s), inhale gently so that the facepiece collapses slightly, and hold the breath for ten seconds. If the facepiece remains in its slightly collapsed condition and no inward leakage of air is detected, the tightness of the respirator is considered satisfactory.

9. The test shall not be conducted if there is any hair growth between the skin and the facepiece sealing surface, such as stubble beard growth, beard, or long sideburns which cross the respirator sealing surface. Any type of apparel which interferes with a satisfactory fit shall be altered or removed.

10. If a test subject exhibits difficulty in breathing during the tests, she or he shall be referred to a physician trained in respiratory disease or pulmonary medicine to determine whether

the test subject can wear a respirator while performing her or his duties.

11. The test subject shall be given the opportunity to wear the successfully fitted respirator for a period of two weeks. If at any time during this period the respirator becomes uncomfortable, the test subject shall be given the opportunity to select a different facepiece and to be retested.

12. The employer shall certify that a successful fit test has been administered to the employee. The certification shall include the following information:

(a) Name of employee;

(b) Type, brand and size of respirator; and

(c) Date of test;

Where QNFT is used, the fit factor, trip chart, or other recording of the results of the test, shall be retained with the certification. The certification shall be maintained until the next fit test is administered.

13. Exercise regimen. Prior to the commencement of the fit test, the test subject shall be given a description of the fit test and the test subject's responsibilities during the test procedure.

The description of the process shall include a description of the test exercises that the subject will be performing. The respirator to be tested shall be worn for at least 5 minutes before the start of the fit test.

14. Test Exercises. The test subject shall perform exercises, in the test environment, in the manner described below:

(a) Normal breathing. In a normal standing position, without talking, the subject shall breathe normally.

(b) Deep breathing. In a normal standing position, the subject shall breathe slowly and deeply, taking caution so as to not hyperventilate.

(c) Turning head side to side. Standing in place, the subject shall slowly turn his/her head from side to side between the extreme postions on each side. The head shall be held at each extreme momentarily so the subject can inhale at each side.

(d) Moving head up and down. Standing in place, the subject shall slowly move his/her head up and down. The subject shall be instructed to inhale in the up position (i.e., when looking toward the ceiling).

(e) Talking. The subject shall talk out loud slowly and loud enough so as to be heard clearly by the test conductor. The subject can read from a prepared text such as the Rainbow Passage, count backward from 100, or recite a memorized poem or song.

(f) Grimace. The test subject shall grimace by smiling or frowning.

(g) Bending over. The test subject shall bend at the waist as if he/she were to touch his/her toes. Jogging in place shall be substituted for this exercise in those test environments such as shroud type QNFT units which prohibit bending at the waist.

(h) Normal breathing. Same as exercise 1.

Each test exercise shall be performed for one minute except for the grimace exercise which shall be performed for 15 seconds.

The test subject shall be questioned by the test conductor regarding the comfort of the respirator upon completion of the protocol. If it has become uncomfortable, another model of respirator shall be tried.

B. Qualitative Fit Test (QLFT) Protocols

1. General. **(a)** The employer shall assign specific individuals who shall assume full responsibility for implementing the respirator qualitative fit test program.

(b) The employer shall ensure that persons administering QLFT are able to prepare test solutions, calibrate equipment and perform tests properly, recognize invalid tests, and assure that test equipment is in proper working order.

(c) The employer shall assure the QLFT equipment is kept clean and well maintained so as to operate at the parameters for which it was designed.

2. Isoamyl Acetate Protocol—(a) Odor threshold screening. The odor threshold screening test, performed without wearing a respirator, is intended to determine if the individual tested can detect the odor of isoamyl acetate.

(1) Three 1-liter glass jars with metal lids are required.

(2) Odor free water (e.g., distilled or spring water) at approximately 25 degrees C shall be used for the solutions.

(3) The isoamyl acetate (IAA) (also known as isopentyl acetate) stock solution is prepared by adding 1 cc of pure IAA to 800 cc of odor free water in a 1 liter jar and shaking for 30 seconds. A new solution shall be prepared at least weekly.

(4) The screening test shall be conducted in a room separate from the room used for actual fit testing. The two rooms shall be well ventilated but shall not be connected to the same recirculating ventilation system.

(5) The odor test solution is prepared in a second jar by placing 0.4 cc of the stock solution into 500 cc of odor free water using a clear dropper or pipette. The solution shall be shaken for 30 seconds and allowed to stand for two to three minutes so that the IAA concentration above the liquid may reach equilibrium. This solution shall be used for only one day.

(6) A test blank shall be prepared in a third jar by adding 500 cc of odor free water.

(7) The odor test and test blank jars shall be labeled 1 and 2 for jar identification. Labels shall be placed on the lids so they can be periodically peeled, dried off and switched to maintain the integrity of the test.

(8) The following instruction shall be typed on a card and placed on the table in front of the two jars (i.e., 1 and 2): "The purpose of this test is to determine if you can smell banana oil at a low concentration. The two bottles in front of you contain water. One of these bottles also contain a small amount of banana oil. Be sure the covered are on tight, then shake each bottle for two seconds. Unscrew the lid of each bottle, one at a time, and sniff at the mouth of the bottle. Indicate to the test conductor which bottle contains banana oil."

(9) The mixtures used in the IAA odor detection test shall be prepared in an area separate from where the test is performed, in order to prevent olfactory fatigue in the subject.

(10) If the test subject is unable to correctly identify the jar containing the odor test solution, the IAA qualitative fit test shall not be performed.

(11) If the test subject correctly identifies the jar containing the odor test solution, the test subject may proceed to respirator selection and fit testing.

(b) **Isoamyl acetate fit test.** (1) The fit test chamber shall be similar to a clear 55-gallon drum liner suspended inverted over a 2-foot diameter frame so that the top of the chamber is about 6 inches above the test subject's head. The inside top center of the chamber shall have a small hook attached.

(2) Each respirator used for the fitting and fit testing shall be equipped with organic vapor cartridges or offer protection against organic vapors. The cartridges or masks shall be changed at least weekly.

(3) After selecting, donning, and properly adjusting a respirator, the test subject shall ware it to the fit testing room. This room shall be separate from the room used for odor threshold screening and respirator selection, and shall be well ventilated, as by an exhaust fan or lab hood, to prevent general room contamination.

(4) A copy of the test exercises and any prepared text from which the subject is to read shall be taped to the inside of the test chamber.

(5) Upon entering the test chamber, the test subject shall be given a 6-inch by 5-inch piece of paper towel, or other porous, absorbent, single-ply material, folded in half and wetted with 0.75 cc of pure IAA. The test subject shall hang the wet towel on the hook at the top of the chamber.

(6) Allow two minutes for the IAA test concentration to stabilize before starting the fit test exercises. This would be an appropriate time to talk with the test subject; to explain the fit test, the importance of his/her cooperation, and the purpose for the head exercises; or to demonstrate some of the exercises.

(7) If at any time during the test, the subject detects the banana like odor of IAA, the test has failed. The subject shall quickly exit from the test chamber and leave the test area to avoid olfactory fatigue.

(8) If the test has failed, the subject shall return to the selection room and remove the respirator, repeat the odor sensitivity test, select and put on another respirator, return to the test chamber and again begin the procedure described in (1) through (7) above. The process continues until a respirator that fits well has been found. Should the odor sensitivity test be failed, the subject shall wait about 5 minutes before retesting. Odor sensitivity will usually have returned by this time.

(9) When a respirator is found that passes the test, its efficiency shall be demonstrated for the subject by having the subject break the face seal and take a breath before exiting the chamber.

(10) When the test subject leaves the chamber, the subject shall remove the saturated towel and return it to the person conducting the test. To keep the test area from becoming contaminated, the used towels shall be kept in a self sealing bag so there is no significant IAA concentration build-up in the test chamber during subsequent tests.

3. **Saccharin Solution Aerosol Protocol.** The saccharin solution aerosol QLFT protocol is the only currently available, validated test protocol for use with particulate disposable dust respirators not equipped with high-efficiency filters. The entire screening and testing procedure shall be explained to the test subject prior to the conduct of the screening test.

(a) **Taste threshold screening.** The saccharin taste threshold screening, performed without wearing a respirator, is intended to determine whether the individual being tested can detect the taste of saccharin.

(1) Threshold screening as well as fit testing subjects shall wear an enclosure about the head and shoulders that is approximately 12 inches in diameter by 14 inches tall with at least the front portion clear and that allows free movements of the head when a respirator is worn. An enclosure substantially similar to the 3M hood assembly, parts # FT 14 and # FT 15 combined, is adequate.

(2) The test enclosure shall have a ¾-inch hole in front of the test subject's nose and mouth area to accommodate the nebulizer nozzle.

(3) The test subject shall don the test enclosure. Throughout the threshold screening test, the test subject shall breathe through his/her wide open mouth with tongue extended.

(4) Using a DeVilbiss Model 40 Inhalation Medication Nebulizer the test conductor shall spray the **threshold check solution** into the enclosure. This nebulizer shall be clearly marked to distinguish it from the fit test solution nebulizer.

(5) **The threshold check solution** consists of 0.83 grams of sodium saccharin USP in 1 cc of warm water. It can be prepared by putting 1 cc of the fit test solution (see (b)(5) below) in 100 cc of distilled water.

(6) To produce the aerosol, the nebulizer bulb is firmly squeezed so that it collapses completely, then released and allowed to fully expand.

(7) Ten sequeezes are repeated rapidly and then the test subject is asked whether the saccharin can be tasted.

(8) If the first response is negative, ten more squeezes are repeated rapidly and the test subject is again asked whether the saccharin is tasted.

(9) If the second response is negative, ten more sequeezes are repeated rapidly and the test subject is again asked whether the saccharin is tasted.

(10) The test conductor will take note of the number of squeezes required to solicit a taste response.

(11) If the saccharin is not tasted after 30 squeezes (step 10), the test subject may not perform the saccharin fit test.

(12) If a taste response is elicited, the test subject shall be asked to take note of the taste for reference in the fit test.

(13) Correct use of the nebulizer means that approximately 1 cc of liquid is used at a time in the nebulizer body.

(14) The nebulizer shall be thoroughly rinsed in water,

shaken dry, and refilled at least each morning and afternoon or at least every four hours.

(b) Saccharin solution aerosol fit test procedure. (1) The test subject may not eat, drink (except plain water), or chew gum for 15 minutes before the test.

(2) The fit test uses the same enclosure described in (a) above.

(3) The test subject shall don the enclosure while wearing the respirator selected in section (a) above. The respirator shall be properly adjusted and equipped with a particular filter(s).

(4) A second DeVilbiss Model 40 Inhalation Medication Nebulizer is used to spray the fit test solution into the enclosure. This nebulizer shall be clearly marked to distinguish it from the screening test solution nebulizer.

(5) The fit test solution is prepared by adding 83 grams of sodium saccharin to 100 cc of warm water.

(6) As before, the test subject shall breathe through the open mouth with tongue extended.

(7) The nebulizer is inserted into the hole in the front of the enclosure and the fit test solution is sprayed into the enclosure using the same number of squeezes required to elicit a taste response in the screening test.

(8) After generating the aerosol the test subject shall be instructed to perform the exercises in section I. A. 14 above.

(9) Every 30 seconds the aerosol concentration shall be replenished using one half the number of squeezes as initially.

(10) The test subject shall indicate to the test conductor if any time during the fit test the taste of saccharin is detected.

(11) If the taste of saccharin is detected, the fit is deemed unsatisfactory and a different respirator shall be tried.

4. Irritant Fume Protocol. (a) The respirator to be tested shall be equipped with high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters.

(b) The test subject shall be allowed to smell a weak concentration of the irritant smoke before the respirator is donned to become familiar with its characteristic odor.

(c) Break both ends of a ventilation smoke tube containing stannic oxychloride, such as the MSA part No. 5645, or equivalent. Attach one end of the smoke tube to a low flow air pump set to deliver 200 milliliters per minute.

(d) If a half-mask is being fitted, advise the test subject that the smoke can be irritating to the eyes and instruct the subject to keep his/her eyes closed while the test is performed.

(e) The test conductor shall direct the stream of irritant smoke from the smoke tube towards the face seal area of the test subject. He/She shall begin at least 12 inches from the facepiece and gradually move to within one inch, moving around the whole perimeter of the mask.

(f) The exercises identified in section I.A. 14 above shall be performed by the test subject while the respirator seal is being challenged by the smoke.

(g) Each test subject passing the smoke test without evidence of a response shall be given a sensitivity check of the smoke from the same tube once the respirator has been removed to determine whether he/she reacts to the smoke. Failure to evoke a response shall void the fit test.

(h) The fit test shall be performed in a location with exhaust ventilation sufficient to prevent general contamination of the testing area by the test agent.

C. Quantitative Fit Test (QNFT) Protocol

1. General. (a) The employer shall assign specific individuals who shall assume full responsibility for implementing the respirator quantitative fit test program.

(b) The employer shall ensure that persons administering QNFT are able to calibrate equipment and perform tests properly, recognize invalid tests, calculate fit factors properly and assure that test equipment is in proper working order.

(c) The employer shall assure that QNFT equipment is kept clean and well maintained so as to operate at the parameters for which it was designed.

2. Definitions. (a) Quantitative fit test. The test is performed in a test chamber. The normal air-purifying element of the respirator is replaced by a high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter in the case of particulate QNFT aerosols or a sorbent offering contaminant penetration protection equivalent to high-efficiency filters where the QNFT test agency is a gas or vapor.

(b) Challenge agent means the aerosol, gas or vapor introduced into a test chamber so that its concentration inside and outside the respirator may be measured.

(c) Test subject means the person wearing the respirator for quantitative fit testing.

(d) Normal standing position means standing erect and straight with arms down along the sides and looking straight ahead.

(e) Maximum peak penetration method means the method of determining test agent penetration in the respirator as determined by strip chart recordings of the test. The highest peak penetration for a given exercise is taken to be representative of average penetration into the respirator for that exercise.

(f) Average peak penetration method means the method of determining test agent penetration into the respirator utilizing a strip chart recorder,integrator, or computer. The agent penetration is determined by an average of the peak heights on the graph or by computer integration, for each exercise except the grimace exercise. Integrators or computers which calculate the actual test agent penetration into the respirator for each exercise will also be considered to meet the requirements of the average peak penetration method.

(g) "Fit Factor" means the ratio of challenge agent concentration outside with respect to the inside of a respirator inlet covering (facepiece or enclosure).

3. Apparatus. (a) Instrumentation. Aerosol generation, dilution, and measurement systems using corn oil or sodium chloride as test aerosols shall be used for quantitative fit testing.

(b) Test chamber. The test chamber shall be large enough to permit all test subjects to perform freely all required exercises without disturbing the challenge agent concentration or the measurement apparatus. The test chamber shall be equipped and constructed so that the challenge agent is effectively isolated from the ambient air, yet uniform in concentration throughout the chamber.

(c) When testing air-purifying respirators, the normal filter or cartridge element shall be replaced with a high-efficiency particulate filter supplied by the same manufacturer.

(d) The sampling instrument shall be selected so that a strip chart record may be made of the test showing the rise and fall of the challenge agent concentration with each inspiration and expiration at fit factors of at least 2,000. Integrators or computers which integrate the amount of test agent penetration leakage into the respirator for each exercise may be used provided a record of the readings is made.

(e) The combination of substitute air purifying elements, challenge agent and challenge agent concentration in the test chamber shall be such that the test subject is not exposed in excess of an established exposure limit for the challenge agent at any time during the testing process.

(f) The sampling port on the test specimen respirator shall be placed and constructed so that no leakage occurs around the port (e.g., where the respirator is probed), a free air flow is allowed into the sampling line at all times and so that there is no interference with the fit or performance of the respirator.

(g) The test chamber and test set up shall permit the person administering the test to observe the test subject inside the chamber during the test.

(h) The equipment generating the challenge atmosphere shall maintain the concentration of challenge agent inside the test chamber constant to within a 10 percent variation for the duration of the test.

(i) The time lag (interval between an event and the recording of the event on the strip chart or computer or integrator) shall be kept to a minimum. There shall be a clear association between the occurrence of an event inside the test chamber and its being recorded.

(j) The sampling line tubing for the test chamber atmosphere and for the respirator sampling port shall be of equal diameter and of the same material. The length of the two lines shall be equal.

(k) The exhaust flow from the test chamber shall pass through a high-efficiency filter before release.

(l) When sodium chloride aerosol is used, the relative humidity inside the test chamber shall not exceed 50 percent.

(m) The limitations of instrument detection shall be taken into account when determining the fit factor.

(n) Test respirators shall be maintained in proper working order and inspected for deficiencies such as cracks, missing valves and gaskets, etc.

4. Procedural Requirements. **(a)** When performing the initial positive or negative pressure test the sampling line shall be crimped closed in order to avoid air pressure leakage during either of these tests.

(b) An abbreviated screening isoamyl acetate test or irritant fume test may be utilized in order to quickly identify poor fitting respirators which passed the positive and/or negative pressure test and thus reduce the amount of QNFT time. When performing a screening isoamyl acetate test, combination high-efficiency organic vapor cartridges/canisters shall be used.

(c) A reasonably stable challenge agent concentration shall be measured in the test chamber prior to testing. For canopy or shower curtain type of test units the determination of the challenge agent stability may be established after the test subject has entered the test environment.

(d) Immediately after the subject enters the test chamber, the challenge agent concentration inside the respirator shall be measured to ensure that the peak penetration does not exceed 5 percent for a half mask or 1 percent for a full facepiece respirator.

(e) A stable challenge concentration shall be obtained prior to the actual start of testing.

(f) Respirator restraining straps shall not be overtightened for testing. The straps shall be adjusted by the wearer without assistance from other persons to give a reasonable comfortable fit typical of normal use.

(g) The test shall be terminated whenever any single peak penetration exceeds 5 percent for half masks and 1 percent for full facepiece respirators. The test subject shall be refitted and retested. If two of the three required tests are terminated, the fit shall be deemed inadequate.

(h) In order to successfully complete a QNFT, three successful fit tests are required. The results of each of the three independent fit tests must exceed the minimum fit factor needed for the class of respirator (e.g., half mask respirator, full facepiece respirator).

(i) Calculation of fit factors.

(1) The fit factor shall be determined for the quantitative fit test by taking the ratio of the average chamber concentration to the concentration inside the respirator.

(2) The average test chamber concentration is the arithmetic average of the test chamber concentration at the beginning and of the end of the test.

(3) The concentration of the challenge agent inside the respirator shall be determined by one of the following methods:

(i) Average peak concentration

(ii) Maximum peak concentration

(iii) Integration by calculation of the area under the individual peak for each exercise. This includes computerized integration.

(j) Interpretation of test results. The fit factor established by the quantitative fit testing shall be the lowest of the three fit factor values calculated from the three required fit tests.

(k) The test subject shall not be permitted to wear a half mask, or full facepiece respirator unless a minimum fit factor equivalent to at least 10 times the hazardous exposure level is obtained.

(l) Filters used for quantitative fit testing shall be replaced at least weekly, or whenever increased breathing resistance is encountered, or when the test agent has altered the integrity of the filter media. Organic vapor cartridges/canisters shall be replaced daily (when used) or sooner if there is any indication of breakthrough by a test agent.

1910.1101—ASBESTOS

NOTE—This section applies in lieu of the revised standards governing occupational exposure to asbestos, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite (29 CFR 1910.1001; 29 CFR 1926.58), during the period and to the extent that the revised standards have been partially stayed. (See 51 FR 37002, Oct. 17, 1986 and 52 FR 15722, Apr. 30, 1987, for a description of the stay).

This section also applies whenever all or part of the revised standards are rendered unenforceable because of a stay or judicial action. In such a case, to preclude a gap in coverage, parallel provisions of this section will take effect. OSHA will publish an appropriate notice in the **Federal Register** announcing each such application of this section. This section also applies pursuant to the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.1001(o) and 29 CFR 1926.58(o).

(a) Definitions. For the purpose of this section

(1) "Asbestos" includes chrysotile, amosite, crocidolite, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite.

(2) "Asbestos fibers" means asbestos fibers longer than 5 micrometers.

(b) Permissible exposure to airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers.

(1) The 8-hour time-weighted average airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers to which any employment may be exposed shall not exceed two fibers, longer than 5 micrometers, per cubic centimeter of air, as determined by the method prescribed in paragraph (e) of this section.

(2) Ceiling concentration. No employee shall be exposed at any time to airborne concentration of asbestos fibers in excess of 10 fibers, longer than 5 micrometers, per cubic centimeter of air, as determined by the method prescribed in paragraph (e) of this section.

(c) Methods of compliance.

(1) Engineering methods.

(i) Engineerings controls. Engineering controls, such as but not limited to, isolation, enclosure, exhaust ventilation, and dust collection, shall be used to meet exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section.

(ii) Local exhaust ventilation.

(a) local exhaust ventilation and dust collection systems shall be designed, constructed, installed, and maintained in accordance with the American National Standards Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems, ANSI Z9.2-1971, which is incorporated by reference herein.

(b) See § 1910.6 concerning the availability of ANSI Z90.2-1971, and the maintenance of a historic file in connection therewith. The address of the American National Standards Instituted is given in § 1910.100.

(iii) Particular tools. All hand-operated and power-operated tools which may produce or release asbestos fibers in excess of the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section, such as, but not limited to, saws, scorers, abrasive wheels, and drills, shall be provided with local exhaust ventilation systems in accordance with paragraph (c)(1)(ii) of this section.

(2) Work practices.

(i) Wet methods. Insofar as practicable, asbestos shall be handled, mixed, applied, removed, cut, scored, or otherwise worked in a wet state sufficient to prevent the emission of airborn fibers in excess of the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section, unless the usefulness of the product would be diminished thereby.

(ii) Particular products and operations. No asbestos cement, mortor, coating, grout, plaster, or similar material containing asbestos shall be removed from bags, cartons, or other containers in which they are shipped without being either wetted, or enclosed, or ventilated so as to prevent effectively the release of airborne asbestos fibers in excess of the limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section.

(iii) Spraying, demolition, or removal. Employees engaged in the spraying of asbestos, the removal, or demolition of pipes structures, or equipment covered or insulated with asbestos, and in the removal of demolition of asbestos insulation or coverings shall be provided with respiratory equipment in accordance with paragraph (d)(2)(iii) of this section and with special clothing in accordance with paragraph (d)(3) of this section.

(d) Personal protective equipment.

(1) Compliance with the exposure limits prescribed by paragraph (b) of this section may not be achieved by the use of respirators of shift rotation of employees, except:

(i) During the time period necessary to install the engineering controls and to institute the work practices required by paragraph (c) of this section;

(ii) In work situations in which the methods prescribed in paragraph (c) of this section are either technically not feasible or feasible to an extent insufficient to reduce the airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers below the limits prescribed by paragraph (b) of this section; or

(iii) In emergencies.

(iv) Where both respirators and personnel rotation are allowed by paragraphs (d)(1)(i), (ii) or (iii) of this section, and both are practicable, personnel rotation shall be preferred and used.

(2) Where a respirator is permitted by paragraph (d)(1) of this section, it shall be selected from among those approved by the Bureau of Mines, Department of the Interior, or the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11 (37 FR 6244, Mar. 25, 1972), and shall be used in accordance with paragraph (d)(1)(i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this section.

(i) Air purifying respirators. A reusable or single use air purifying respirator, or a respirator described in paragraph (d)(2)(ii) or (iii) of this section, shall be used to reduce the concentrations of airborne asbestos fibers in the respirator below the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section, when the ceiling or the 8-hour time-weighted average concentrations of asbestos fibers are reasonably expected to exceed no more than 10 times those limits.

(ii) Powered air purifying respirators. A full facepiece powered air purifying respirator, or a powered air purifying respirator, or a respirator described in paragraph (d)(2)(iii) of this section, shall be used to reduce the concentrations of airborne asbestos fibers in the respirator below the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section, when the ceiling or the 8-hour time-weighted average concentrations of asbestos fibers are reasonably expected to exceed 10 times, but not 100 times, those limits.

(iii) Type "C" supplied-air respirators, continuous flow or pressure-demand class. A type "C" continuous flow or pressure-demand, supplied-air respirator shall be used to reduce the concentrations of airborne asbestos fibers in the respirator below the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section, when the ceiling or the 8-hour time-weighted average airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers are reasonably expected to exceed 100 times those limits.

(iv) Establishment of a respirator program.

(a) The employer shall establish a respirator program in accordance with the requirements of the American National Standards Practices for Respiratory Protection, ANSI Z88.2-1969, which is incorporated by reference herein.

(b) See § 1910.6 concerning the availability of ANSI Z88.2-1969 and the maintenance of a historic file in connection therewith. The address of the American National Standards Institute is given in § 1910.100.

(c) No employee shall be assigned to tasks requiring the use of respirators if, based upon his most recent examination, an examining physician determines that the employee will be unable to function normally wearing a respirator, or that the safety or health of the employee or other employee will be impaired by his use of a respirator. Such employee shall be rotated to another job or given the opportunity to transfer to a different position whose duties he is able to perform with the same employer, in the same geographical area and with the same seniority, status, and rate of pay he had just prior to such transfer, if such different position is available.

(3) Special clothing: The employer shall provide, and require the use of, special clothing, such as coveralls or similar whole body clothing, head coverings, gloves, and foot coverings for any employee exposed to airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers, which exceed the ceiling level prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section.

(4) Change rooms:

(i) At any fixed place of employment exposed to airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers in excess of the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section, the employer shall provide change rooms for employees working regularly at the place.

(ii) Clothes lockers: The employer shall provide two separate lockers or containers for each employee, so separated or isolated as to prevent contamination of the employee's street clothes from his work clothes.

(iii) Laundering:

(a) Laundering of asbestos contaminated clothing shall be done so as to prevent the release of airborne asbestos fibers in excess of the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) Any employer who gives asbestos-contaminated clothing to another person for laundering shall inform such person of the requirement in paragraph (d)(4)(iii)(A) of this section to effectively prevent the release of airborne asbestos fibers in excess of the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section.

(c) Contaminated clothing shall be transported in sealed impermeable bags, or other closed, impermeable containers, and labeled in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.

(e) Method of measurement. All determinations of airborne concentration of asbestos fibers shall be made by the membrane filter method at 400-450X (magnification) (4 millimeter objective) with phase contrast illumination.

(f) Monitoring.

(1) Initial determinations. Within 6 months of the publication of this section, every employer shall cause every place of employment where asbestos fibers are released to be monitored in such a way as to determine whether every employee's exposure to asbestos fibers is below the limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section. If the limits are exceeded, the employer shall immediately undertake a compliance program in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section.

(2) Personal monitoring.

(i) Samples shall be collected from within the breathing zone of the employees, on membrane filters of 0.8 micrometer porosity mounted in an open-face filter holder. Samples shall be taken for the determination of the 8-hour time-weighted average airborne concentrations and of the ceiling concentrations of asbestos fibers.

(ii) Sampling frequency and patterns. After the initial determinations required by paragraph (f)(1) of this section, samples shall be of such frequency and pattern as to represent with reasonable accuracy the levels of exposure of employees. In no case shall the sampling be done at intervals greater than 6 months for employees whose exposure to asbestos may reasonably be foreseen to exceed the limits prescribed by paragraph (b) of this section.

(3) Environmental monitoring.

(i) Samples shall be collected from areas of a work environment which are representative of the airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers which may reach the breathing zone of employees. Samples shall be collected on a membrane filter of 0.8 micrometer porosity mounted in an open-face filter holder. Samples shall be taken for the determination of the 8-hour time-weighted average airborne concentrations and of the ceiling concentrations of asbestos fibers.

(ii) Sampling frequency and patterns. After the initial determinations required by paragraph (f)(1) of this section, samples shall be of such frequency and pattern as to represent with reasonable accuracy the levels of exposure of the employees. In no case shall sampling be at intervals greater than 6 months for employees whose exposures to asbestos may reasonably be foreseen to exceed the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section.

(4) Employee observation of monitoring. Affected employees, or their representatives, shall be given a reasonable opportunity to observe any monitoring required by this paragraph and shall have access to the records thereof.

(g) Caution signs and labels.

(1) Caution signs.

(i) Posting. Caution signs shall be provided and displayed at each location where airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers may be in excess of the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section. Signs shall be posted at such a distance from such a location so that an employee may read the signs and take necessary protective steps before entering the area marked by the signs. Signs shall be posted at all approaches to areas containing excessive concentrations of airborne asbestos fibers.

(ii) Sign specifications. The warning signs required by paragraph (g)(1)(i) of this section shall conform to the requirements of 20"x14" vertical format signs specified in § 1910 145(d)(4), and to this subdivision. The signs shall display the following legend in the lower panel, with letter sizes and styles of a visibility at least equal to that specified in this subdivision.

Legend	Notation
Asbestos	1" Sans Serif, Gothic or Block.
Dust Hazard	¾" Sans Serif, Gothic or Block.
Avoid Breathing Dust	¼" Gothic.
Wear Assigned Protective Equipment	¼" Gothic.
Do Not Remain in Area Unless Your Work Requires It.	¼" Gothic.
Breathing Asbestos Dust May Be Hazardous To Your Health.	14 point Gothic.

Spacing between lines shall be at least equal to the height of the upper of any two lines.

(2) Caution labels.

(i) Labeling. Caution labels shall be affixed to all raw materials, mixtures, scrap, waste, debris, and other products containing asbestos fibers, or to their containers, except that no label is required where asbestos fibers have modified by a bonding agent, coating, binder, or other material so that during any reasonably foreseeable use, handling, storage disposal, processing, or transportation, no airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers in excess of the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section will be released.

(ii) Label specifications. The caution labels required by paragraph (g)(2)(i) of this section shall be printed in letters of sufficient size and contrast as to be readily visible and legible. The label shall state:

Caution—Contains Asbestos Fibers, Avoid Creating Dust, Breathing Asbestos Dust May Cause Serious Bodily Harm

(h) Housekeeping.

(1) Cleaning. All external surfaces in any place of employment shall be maintained free of accumulations of asbestos fibers if, with their dispersion, there would be an excessive concentration.

(2) Waste disposal. Asbestos waste, scrap, debris, bags, containers, equipment, and asbestos-contaminated clothing, consigned for disposal, which may produce in any reasonably foreseeable use, handling, storage, processing, disposal, or transportation airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers in excess of the exposure limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section shall be collected and disposed of in sealed impermeable bags, or other closed, impermeable containers.

(i) Recordkeeping.

(1) Exposure records. Every employer shall maintain records of any personal or environmental monitoring required by this section. Records shall be maintained for a period of at least 20 years and shall be made available upon request to the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, the Director of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, and to authorized representatives of either.

(2) Access. Employee exposure records required by this paragraph shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20(a)-(e) and (g)-(l).

(3) Employee notification. Any employee found to have been exposed at any time to airborne concentration of asbestos fibers in excess of the limits prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section shall be notified in writing of the exposure as soon as practicable but not later than 5 days of the finding. The employee shall also be timely notified of the corrective action being taken.

(j) Medical examinations.

(1) General. The employer shall provide or make available at his cost, medical examinations relative to exposure to asbestos required by this paragraph.

(2) Preplacement. The employer shall provide or make available to each of his employees, within 30 calendar days following his first employment in an occupation exposed to airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers, a comprehensive medical examination, which shall include, as a minimum a chest roentgenogram (posterior-anterior 14x17 inches), a history to elicit symptomatology of respiratory disease, and pulmonary function tests to include forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiratory volume at 1 second ($FEV_{1.0}$).

(3) Annual examinations. On or before January 31, 1973, and at least annually thereafter, every employer shall provide, or make available, comprehensive medical examinations to each of his employees engaged in occupations exposed to airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers. Such annual examination shall include, as minimum, a chest roentgenogram (posterior-anterior 14x17 inches), a history to elicit symptomatology of respiratory disease, and pulmonary function tests to include forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiratory volume at 1 second ($FEV_{1.0}$).

(4) Termination of employment. The employer shall provide or make available, within 30 calendar days before or after the termination of employment of any employee engaged in an occupation exposed to airborne concentration of asbestos fibers, a comprehensive medical examination which shall include, as a minimum, a chest roentgenogram (posterior-anterior 14x17 inches), a history to elicit symptomatology of respiratory disease, and pulmonary function tests to include forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiratory volume at 1 second ($FEV_{1.0}$).

(5) Recent examinations. No medical examination is required of any employee, if adequate records show that the employee has been examined in accordance with this paragraph within the past 1-year period.

(6) Medical records.

(i) Maintenance. Employers of employees examined pursuant to this paragraph shall cause to be maintained complete and accurate records of all such medical examinations. Records shall be retained by employers for at least 20 years.

(ii) Access. Records of the medical examinations required by this paragraph shall provide upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20(a)-(e) and (g)-(l). These records shall also be provided upon the request to the Director of NIOSH. Any physician who conducts a medical examination required by this paragraph shall furnish to the employer of the examined employee all the information specifically required by this paragraph, and any other medical information related to occupational exposure to asbestos fibers.

TABLE 1.—RESPIRATOR PROTECTION FOR AIRBORNE CONCENTRATIONS OF ASBESTOS

Airborne concentration of asbestos (TWA)	Required respirator [1]
Not in excess of 5 f/cc (10 x PEL).	Reusable or single use air purifying respirator.
Not in excess of 50 f/cc (100 x PEL).	Full facepiece air purifying respirator, or a powered air purifying respirator.
Greater than 50 f/cc	A type "C" continuous flow or pressure demand, supplied air respirator.

[1] Respirators specified for high concentrations may be used at lower concentrations of asbestos.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 12180010)

1910.1200—HAZARD COMMUNICATION

Note: The Office of Management and Budget has disapproved, under the Paperwork Reduction Act, three applications of the Hazard Communication Standard:

(1) The requirement that material safety data sheets be provided on multi-employer worksites;

(2) Coverage of any consumer product excluded from the definition of "hazardous chemical" under section 311(e)(3) of the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986; and

(3) Coverage of any drugs regulated by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration in the non-manufacturing sector.

(a) Purpose.

(1) The purpose of this section is to ensure that the hazards of all chemicals produced or imported are evaluated, and that information concerning their hazards is transmitted to employers and employees. This transmittal of information is to be accomplished by means of comprehensive hazard communication programs, which are to include container labeling and other forms of warning, material safety data sheets and employee training.

(2) This occupational safety and health standard is intended to address comprehensively the issue of evaluating the potential hazards of chemicals, and communicating information concerning hazards and appropriate protective measures to employees, and to preempt any legal requirements of a state, or political subdivision of a state, pertaining to the subject. Evaluating the potential hazards of chemicals, and communicating information concerning hazards and appropriate protective measures to employees, may include, for example, but is not limited to, provisions for: developing and maintaining a written hazard communication program for the workplace, including lists of hazardous chemicals present; labeling of containers of chemicals in the workplace, as well as of containers of chemicals being shipped to other workplaces; preparation and distribution of material safety data sheets to employees and downstream employers; and development and implementation of employee training programs regarding hazards of chemicals and protective measures. Under section 18 of the Act, no state or political subdivision of a state may adopt or enforce, through any court or agency, any requirement relating to the issue addressed by this Federal standard, except pursuant to a Federally-approved state plan.

(b) Scope and application.

(1) This section requires chemical manufacturers or importers to assess the hazards of chemicals which they produce or import, and all employers to provide information to their employees about the hazardous chemicals to which they are exposed, by means of a hazard communication program, labels and other forms of warning, material safety data sheets, and information and training. In addition, this section requires distributors to transmit the required information to employers.

(2) This section applies to any chemical which is known to be present in the workplace in such a manner that employees may be exposed under normal conditions of use or in a foreseeable emergency.

(3) This section applies to laboratories only as follows:

(i) Employers shall ensure that labels on incoming containers of hazardous chemicals are not removed or defaced;

(ii) Employers shall maintain any material safety data sheets that are received with incoming shipments of hazardous chemicals, and ensure that they are readily accessible to laboratory employees; and,

(iii) Employers shall ensure that laboratory employees are apprised of the hazards of the chemicals in their workplaces in accordance with paragraph (h) of this section.

(4) In work operations where employees only handle chemicals in sealed containers which are not opened under normal conditions of use (such as are found in marine cargo handling, warehousing, or retail sales), this section applies to these operations only as follows:

(i) Employers shall ensure that labels on incoming containers of hazardous chemicals are not removed or defaced;

(ii) Employers shall maintain copies of any material safety data sheets that are received with incoming shipments of the sealed containers of hazardous chemicals, shall obtain a material safety data sheet for sealed containers of hazardous chemicals received without a material safety data sheet if an employee requests the material safety data sheet, and shall ensure that the material safety data sheets are readily accessible during each work shift to employees when they are in their work area(s); and,

(iii) Employers shall ensure that employees are provided with information and training in accordance with paragraph (h) of this section (except for the location and availability of the written hazard communication program under paragraph (h)(1)(iii)), to the extent necessary to protect them in the event of a spill or leak of a hazardous chemical from a sealed container.

(5) This section does not require labeling of the following chemicals:

(i) Any pesticide as such term is defined in the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (7 U.S.C. 136 et seq.), when subject to the labeling requirements of that Act and labeling regulations issued under that Act by the Environmental Protection Agency;

(ii) Any food, food additive, color additive, drug, cosmetic, or medical or veterinary device, including materials intended for use as ingredients in such products (e.g. flavors and fragrances), as such terms are defined in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 301 *et seq.*) and regulations issued under that Act, when they are subject to the labeling requirements under that Act by the Food and Drug Administration;

(iii) Any distilled spirits (beverage alcohols), wine, or malt beverage intended for nonindustrial use, as such terms are defined in the Federal Alcohol Administration Act (27 U.S.C. 201 *et seq.*) and regulations issued under that Act, when subject to the labeling requirements of that Act and labeling regulations issued under that Act by the Bureau of Alcohol Tobacco, and Firearms; and,

(iv) Any consumer product or hazardous substance as those terms are defined in the Consumer Product Safety Act (15 U.S.C. 2051 et seq.) and Federal Hazardous Substances Act (15 U.S.C. 1261 et seq.) respectively, when subject to a consumer product safety standard or labeling requirement of those Acts, or regulations issued under those Acts by the Consumer Product Safety Commission.

(6) This section does not apply to:

(i) Any hazardous waste as such term is defined by the Solid Waste Disposal Act, as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976, as amended (42 U.S.C. 6901 et seq.), when subject to regulations issued under that Act by the Environmental Protection Agency;

(ii) Tobacco or tobacco products;

(iii) Wood or wood products;

(iv) Articles;

(v) Food, drugs, cosmetics, or alcoholic beverages in a retail establishment which are packaged for sale to consumers;

(vi) Foods, drugs, or cosmetics intended for personal consumption by employees while in the workplace;

(vii) Any consumer product or hazardous substance, as those terms are defined in the Consumer Product Safety Act (15 U.S.C. 2051 *et seq.*) and Federal Hazardous Substances Act (15 U.S.C. 1261 *et seq.*) respectively, where the employer can demonstrate it is used in the workplace in the same manner as normal consumer use, and which use results in a duration and frequency of exposure which is not greater than exposures experienced by consumers; and,

(viii) Any drug, as that term is defined in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 301 *et seq.*), when it is in solid, final form for direct administration to the patient (i.e. tablets or pills).

(c) Definitions.

"Article" means a manufactured item:

(i) Which is formed to a specific shape or design during manufacture;

(ii) which has end use function(s) dependent in whole or in part upon its shape or design during end use; and

(iii) which does not release, or otherwise result in exposure to, a hazardous chemical, under normal conditions of use.

"Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Sec-

retary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

"Chemical" means any element, chemical compound or mixture of elements and/or compounds.

"Chemical manufacturer" means an employer with a workplace where chemical(s) are produced for use or distribution.

"Chemical name" means the scientific designation of a chemical in accordance with the nomenclature system developed by the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) or the Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) rules of nomenclature, or a name which will clearly identify the chemical for the purpose of conducting a hazard evaluation.

"Combustible liquid" means any liquid having a flashpoint at or above 100 °F (37.8 °C), but below 200 °F (93.3 °C), except any mixture having components with flashpoints of 200 °F (93.3 °C), or higher, the total volume of which make up 99 percent or more of the total volume of the mixture.

"Common name" means any designation or identification such as code name, code number, trade name, brand name or generic name used to identify a chemical other than by its chemical name.

"Compressed gas" means:

(i) A gas or mixture of gases having, in a container, an absolute pressure exceeding 40 psi at 70 °F (21.1 °C); or

(ii) a gas or mixture of gases having, in a container, an absolute pressure exceeding 104 psi at 130 °F (54.4 °C) regardless of the pressure of 70 °F (21.1 °C); or

(iii) A liquid having a vapor pressure exceeding 40 psi at 100 °F (37.8 °C) as determined by ASTM D–323–72.

"Container" means any bag, barrel, bottle, box, can, cylinder, drum, reaction vessel, storage tank, or the like that contains a hazardous chemical. For purposes of this section, pipes or piping systems, and engines, fuel tanks, or other operating systems in a vehicle, are not considered to be containers.

"Designated representative" means any individual or organization to whom an employee gives written authorization to exercise such employee's rights under this section. A recognized or certified collective bargaining agent shall be treated automatically as a designated representative without regard to written employee authorization.

"Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or designee.

"Distributor" means a business, other than a chemical manufacturer or importer, which supplies hazardous chemicals to other distributors or to employers.

"Employee" means a worker who may be exposed to hazardous chemicals under normal operating conditions or in foreseeable emergencies. Workers such as office workers or bank tellers who encounter hazardous chemicals only in non-routine, isolated instances are not covered.

"Employer" means a person engaged in a business where chemicals are either used, distributed, or are produced for use or distribution, including a contractor or subcontractor.

"Explosive" means a chemical that causes a sudden, almost instantaneous release of pressure, gas, and heat when subjected to sudden shock, pressure, or high temperature.

"Exposure" or "exposed" means that an employee is subjected to a hazardous chemical in the course of employment through any route of entry (inhalation, ingestion, skin contact or absorption, etc.), and includes potential (e.g. accidental or possible) exposure.

"Flammable" means a chemical that falls into one of the following categories:

(i) "Aerosol, flammable" means an aerosol that, when tested by the method described in 16 CFR 1500.45, yields a flame projection exceeding 18 inches at full valve opening, or a flashback (a flame extending back to the valve) at any degree of valve opening;

(ii) "Gas, flammable" means:

(a) A gas that, at ambient temperature and pressure, forms a flammable mixture with air at a concentration of thirteen (13) percent by volume or less; or

(b) A gas that, at ambient temperature and pressure, forms a range of flammable mixtures with air wider than twelve (12) percent by volume, regardless of the lower limit;

(iii) "Liquid, flammable" means any liquid having a flashpoint below 100 °F (37.8 °C), except any mixture having components with flashpoints of 100 °F (37.8 °C) or higher, the total of which make up 99 percent or more of the total volume of the mixture;

(iv) "Solid, flammable" means a solid, other than a blasting agent or explosive as defined in § 190.109(a), that is liable to cause fire through friction, absorption of moisture, spontaneous chemical change, or retained heat from manufacturing or processing, or which can be ignited readily and when ignited burns so vigorously and persistently as to create a serious hazard. A chemical shall be considered to be a flammable solid if, when tested by the method described in 16 CFR 1500.44, it ignites and burns with a self-sustained flame at a rate greater than one-tenth of an inch per second along its major axis.

"Flashpoint" means the minimum temperature at which a liquid gives off a vapor in sufficient concentration to ignite when tested as follows:

(i) Tagliabue Closed Tester (See American National Standard Method of Test for Flash Point by Tag Closed Tested, Z11.24–1979 (ASTM D 56–79)) for liquids with a viscosity of less than 45 Saybolt University Seconds (SUS) at 100 °F (37.8 °C), that do not contain suspended solids and do not have a tendency to form a surface film under test; or

(ii) Pensky-Martens Closed Tester (See American National Standard Method of Test for Flash Point by Pensky-Martens Closed Tester, Z11.7–1979 (ASTM D 93–79)) for liquids with a viscosity equal to or greater than 45 SUS at 100 °F (37.8 °C), or that contain suspended solids, or that have a tendency to form a surface film under test; or

(iii) Setaflash Closed Tester (see American National Standard Method of Test for Flash Point by Setaflash Closed Tester (ASTMD 3278–78))

Organic peroxides, which undergo autoaccelerating thermal decomposition, are excluded from any of the flashpoint determination methods specified above.

"Foreseeable emergency" means any potential occurrence such as, but not limited to, equipment failure, rupture of containers, or failure of control equipment which could result in an uncontrolled release of a hazardous chemical into the workplace.

"Hazardous chemical" means any chemical which is a physical hazard or a health hazard.

"Hazard warning" means any words, pictures, symbols, or combination thereof appearing on a label or other appropriate form of warning which convey the hazard(s) of the chemical(s) in the container(s).

"Health hazard" means a chemical for which there is statistically significant evidence based on at least one study conducted in accordance with established scientific principles that acute or chronic health effects may occur in exposed employees. The term "health hazard" includes chemicals which are carcinogens, toxic or highly toxic agents, reproductive toxins, irritants, corrosives, sensitizers, hepatotoxins, nephrotoxins, neurotoxins, agents which act on the hematopoietic system, and agents which damage the lungs, skin, eyes, or mucous membranes. Appendix A provides further definitions and explanations of the scope of health hazards covered by this section, and Appendix B describes the criteria to be used to determine whether or not a chemical is to be considered hazardous for purposes of this standard.

"Identity" means any chemical or common name which is indicated on the material safety data sheet (MSDS) for the chemical. The identity used shall permit cross-references to be made among the required list of hazardous chemicals, the label and the MSDS.

"Immediate use" means that the hazardous chemical will be under the control of and used only by the person who transfers it from a labeled container and only within the work shift in which it is transferred.

"Importer" means the first business with employees within the Customs Territory of the United States which receives hazardous chemicals produced in other countries for the purpose of supplying them to distributors or employers within the United States.

"Label" means any written, printed, or graphic material, displayed on or affixed to containers of hazardous chemicals.

"Material safety data sheet (MSDS)" means written or printed material concerning a hazardous chemical which is prepared in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.

"Mixture" means any combination of two or more chemicals if the combination is not, in whole or in part, the result of a chemical reaction.

"Organic peroxide" means an organic compound that contains the bivalent -O- O-structure and which may be considered to be a structural derivative of hydrogen peroxide where one or both of the hydrogen atoms has been replaced by an organic radical.

"Oxidizer" means a chemical other than a blasting agent or explosive as defined in § 1910.109(a), that initiates or promotes combustion in other materials, thereby causing fire either of itself or through the release of oxygen or other gases.

"Physical hazard" means a chemical for which there is scientifically valid evidence that it is a combustible liquid, a compressed gas, explosive, flammable, an organic peroxide, an oxidizer, pyrophoric, unstable (reactive) or water-reactive.

"Produce" means to manufacture, process, formulate, or repackage.

"Pyrophoric" means a chemical that will ignite spontaneously in air at a temperature of 130 °F (54.4 °C) or below.

"Responsible party" means someone who can provide additional information on the hazardous chemical and appropriate emergency procedures, if necessary.

"Specific chemical identity" means the chemical name, Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) Registry Number, or any other information that reveals the precise chemical designation of the substance.

"Trade secret" means any confidential formula, pattern, process, device, information or compilation of information that is used in an employer's business, and that gives the employer an opportunity to obtain an advantage over competitors who do not know or use it. Appendix D sets out the criteria to be used in evaluating trade secrets.

"Unstable (reactive)" means a chemical which in the pure state, or as produced or transported, will vigorously polymerize, decompose, condense, or will become self-reactive under conditions of shocks, pressure or temperature.

"Use" means to package, handle, react, or transfer.

"Water-reactive" means a chemical that reacts with water to release a gas that is either flammable or presents a health hazard.

"Work area" means a room or defined space in a workplace where hazardous chemicals are produced or used, and where employees are present.

"Workplace" means an establishment, job site, or project, at one geographical location containing one or more work areas.

(d) Hazard determination.

(1) Chemical manufacturers and importers shall evaluate chemicals produced in their workplaces or imported by them to determine if they are hazardous. Employers are not required to evaluate chemicals unless they choose not to rely on the evaluation performed by the chemical manufacturer or importer for the chemical to satisfy this requirement.

(2) Chemical manufacturers, importers or employers evaluating chemicals shall identify and consider the available scientific evidence concerning such hazards. For health hazards, evidence which is statistically significant and which is based on at least one positive study conducted in accordance with established scientific principles is considered to be sufficient to establish a hazardous effect if the results of the study meet the definitions of health hazards in this section. Appendix A shall be consulted for the scope of health hazards covered, and Appendix B shall be consulted for the criteria to be followed with respect to the completeness of the evaluation, and the data to be reported.

(3) The chemical manufacturer, importer or employer evaluating chemicals shall treat the following sources as establishing that the chemicals listed in them are hazardous:

(i) 29 CFR Part 1910, Subpart Z, Toxic and Hazardous Substances, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA); or,

(ii) *Threshold Limit Values for Chemical Substances and Physical Agents in the Work Environment*, American Conference of Government Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH) (latest edition).

The chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer is still responsible for evaluating the hazards associated with the chemicals in these source lists in accordance with the requirements of this standard.

(4) Chemical manufacturers, importers and employers evaluating chemicals shall treat the following sources as establishing that a chemical is a carcinogen or potential carcinogen for hazard communication purposes:

(i) National Toxicology Program (NTP), *Annual Report on Carcinogens* (latest edition);

(ii) International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) *Monographs* (latest editions); or

(iii) 29 CFR Part 1910, Subpart Z, Toxic and Hazardous Substances, Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

Note—The *Registry of Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances* published by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health indicates whether a chemical has been found by NTP or IARC to be a potential carcinogen.

(5) The chemical manufacturer, importer or employer shall determine the hazards of mixtures of chemicals as follows:

(i) If a mixture has been tested as a whole to determine its hazards, the results of such testing shall be used to determine whether the mixture is hazardous;

(ii) If a mixture has not been tested as a whole to determine whether the mixture is a health hazard, the mixture shall be assumed to present the same health hazards as do the components which comprise one percent (by weight or volume) or greater of the mixture, except that the mixture shall be assumed to present a carcinogenic hazard if it contains a component in concentrations of 0.1 percent or greater which is considered to be a carcinogen under paragraph (d)(4) of this section;

(iii) If a mixture has not been tested as a whole to determine whether the mixture is a physical hazard, the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer may use whatever scientifically valid data is available to evaluate the physical hazard potential of the mixture; and,

(iv) If the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer has evidence to indicate that a component present in the mixture in concentrations of less than one percent (or in the case of carcinogens, less than 0.1 percent) could be released in concentrations which would exceed an established OSHA permissible exposure limit or ACGIH Threshold Limit Value, or could present a health hazard to employees in those concentrations, the mixture shall be assumed to present the same hazard.

(6) Chemical manufacturers, importers, or employers evaluating chemicals shall describe in writing the procedures they use to determine the hazards of the chemical they evaluate. The written procedures are to be made available, upon request, to employees, their designated representatives, the Assistant Secretary and the Director. The written description may be incorporated into the written hazard communication program required under paragraph (e) of this section.

(e) Written hazard communication program.

(1) Employers shall develop, implement, and maintain at the workplace, a written hazard communication program for their workplaces which at least describes how the criteria specified in paragraphs (f), (g), and (h) of this section for labels and other forms of warning, material safety data sheets, and employee information and training will be met, and which also includes the following:

(i) A list of the hazardous chemicals known to be present using an identity that is referenced on the appropriate material safety data sheet (the list may be compiled for the workplace as a whole or for individual work areas); and,

(ii) The methods the employer will use to inform employees of the hazards of non-routine tasks (for example, the cleaning of reactor vessels), and the hazards associated with chemicals contained in unlabeled pipes in their work areas.

(2) Multi-employer workplaces. Employers who produce, use, or store hazardous chemicals at a workplace in such a way that the employees of other employer(s) may be exposed (for example, employees of a construction contractor working on-site) shall additionally ensure that the hazard communication programs developed and implemented under this paragraph (e) include the following:

(i) The methods the employer will use to provide the other employer(s) with a copy of the material safety data sheet, or to make it available at a central location in the workplace, for each hazardous chemical the other employer(s)' employees may be exposed to while working;

(ii) The methods the employer will use to inform the other employer(s) of any precautionary measures that need to be taken to protect employees during the workplace's normal operating conditions and in foreseeable emergencies; and,

(iii) The methods the employer will use to inform the other employer(s) of the labeling system used in the workplace.

(3) The employer may rely on an existing hazard communication program to comply with these requirements, provided that it meets the criteria established in this paragraph (e).

(4) The employer shall make the written hazard communication program available, upon request, to employees, their designated representatives, the Assistant Secretary and the Director, in accordance with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.20(e).

(f) Labels and other forms of warning.

(1) The chemical manufacturer, importer, or distributor shall ensure that each container of hazardous chemicals leaving the workplace is labeled, tagged or marked with the following information;

(i) Identity of the hazardous chemical(s);

(ii) Appropriate hazard warnings; and

(iii) Name and address of the chemical manufacturer, importer, or other responsible party.

(2) For solid metal (such as a steel beam or a metal casting) that is not exempted as an article due to its downstream use, the required label may be transmitted to the customer at the time of the initial shipment, and need not be included with subsequent shipments to the same employer unless the information on the label changes. The label may be transmitted with the initial shipment itself, or with the material safety data sheet that is to be provided prior to or at the time of the first shipment. This exception to requiring labels on every container of hazardous chemicals is only for the solid metal itself and does not apply to hazardous chemicals used in conjunction with, or known to be present with, the metal and to which employees handling the metal may be exposed (for example, cutting fluids or lubricants).

(3) Chemical manufacturers, importers, or distributors shall ensure that each container of hazardous chemicals leaving the workplace is labeled, tagged, or marked in accordance with this section in a manner which does not conflict with the requirements of the Hazardous Materials Transportation Act (49 U.S.C. 1801 *et seq.*) and regulations issued under that Act by the Department of Transportation.

(4) If the hazardous chemical is regulated by OSHA in a substance-specific health standard, the chemical manufacturer, importer, distributor or employer shall ensure that the labels or other forms of warning used are in accordance with the requirements of that standard.

(5) Except as provided in paragraphs (f)(6) and (f)(7) the employer shall ensure that each container of hazardous chemicals in the workplace is labeled, tagged or marked with the following information:

(i) Identity of the hazardous chemical(s) contained therein; and

(ii) Appropriate hazard warnings.

(6) The employer may use signs, placards, process sheets, batch tickets, operating procedures, or other such written materials in lieu of affixing labels to individual stationary process containers, as long as the alternative method identifies the containers to which it is applicable and conveys the information required by paragraph (f)(5) of this section to be on a label. The written materials shall be readily accessible to the employees in their work area throughout each work shift.

(7) The employer is not required to label portable containers into which hazardous chemicals are transferred from labeled containers, and which are intended only for the immediate use of the employee who performs the transfer.

(8) The employer shall not remove or deface existing labels or incoming containers of hazardous chemicals unless the container is immediately marked with the required information.

(9) The employer shall ensure that labels or other forms of warning are legible, in English, and prominently displayed on the container, or readily available in the work area throughout each work shift. Employers having employees who speak other languages may add the information in their language to the material presented, as long as the information is presented in English as well.

(10) The chemical manufacturer, importer, distributor or employer need not affix new labels to comply with this section if existing labels already convey the required information.

(g) Material safety data sheets.

(1) Chemical manufacturers and importers shall obtain or develop a material safety data sheet for each hazardous chemical they produce or import. Employers shall have a material safety data sheet for each hazardous chemical which they use.

(2) Each material safety data sheet shall be in English and shall contain at least the following information:

(i) The identity used on the label, and, except as provided for in paragraph (i) of this section on trade secrets:

(a) If the hazardous chemical is a single substance, its chemical and common name(s);

(b) If the hazardous chemical is a mixture which has been tested as a whole to determine its hazards, the chemical and common name(s) of the ingredients which contribute to these known hazards, and the common name(s) of the mixture itself; or,

(c) If the hazardous chemical is a mixture which has not been tested as a whole;

(1) The chemical and common name(s) of all ingredients which have been determined to be health hazards, and which comprise 1% or greater of the composition, except that chemicals identified as carcinogens under paragraph (d)(4) of this section shall be listed if the concentrations are 0.1% or greater; and,

(2) The chemical and common name(s) of all ingredients which have been determined to be health hazards, and which comprise less than 1% (0.1% for carcinogens) of the mixture, if there is evidence that the ingredient(s) could be released from the mixture in concentrations which would exceed an established OSHA permissible exposure limit or ACGIH Threshold Limit Value, or could present a health hazard to employees; and,

(3) The chemical and common name(s) of all ingredients which have been determined to present a physical hazard when present in the mixture;

(ii) Physical and chemical characteristics of the hazardous chemical (such as vapor pressure, flash point);

(iii) The physical hazards of the hazardous chemical, including the potential for fire, explosion, and reactivity;

(iv) The health hazards of the hazardous chemical, including signs and symptoms of exposure, and any medical conditions which are generally recognized as being aggravated by exposure to the chemical;

(v) The primary route(s) of entry;

(vi) The OSHA permissible exposure limit, ACGIH Threshold Limit Value, and any other exposure limit used or recommended by the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer preparing the material safety data sheet, where available;

(vii) Whether the hazardous chemical is listed in the National Toxicology Program (NTP) *Annual Report on Carcinogens* (latest edition) or has been found to be a potential carcinogen in the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) *Monographs* (latest editions), or by OSHA;

(viii) Any generally applicable precautions for safe handling and use which are known to the chemical manufacturer, importer or employer preparing the material safety data sheet, including appropriate hygienic practices, protective measures during repair and maintenance of contaminated equipment, and procedures for clean-up of spills and leaks;

(ix) Any generally applicable control measures which are known to the chemical manufacturer, importer or employer preparing the material safety data sheet, such as appropriate engineering controls, work practices, or personal protective equipment;

(x) Emergency and first aid procedures;

(xi) The date of preparation of the material safety data sheet or the last change to it; and,

(xii) The name, address and telephone number of the chemical manufacturer, importer, employer or other responsible party preparing or distributing the material safety data sheet, who can provide additional information on the hazardous chemical and appropriate emergency procedures, if necessary.

(3) If not relevant information is found for any given category on the material safety data sheet, the chemical manufacturer, importer or employer preparing the material safety data sheet shall mark it to indicate that no applicable information was found.

(4) Where complex mixtures have similar hazards and contents (i.e. the chemical ingredients are essentially the same, but the specific composition varies from mixture to mixture), the chemical manufacturer, importer or employer may prepare one material safety data sheet to apply to all of these similar mixtures.

(5) The chemical manufacturer, importer or employer preparing the material safety data sheet shall ensure that the information recorded accurately reflects the scientific evidence used in making the hazard determination. If the chemical manufacturer, importer or employer preparing the material safety data sheet becomes newly aware of any significant information regarding the hazards of a chemical, or ways to protect against the hazards, this new information shall be added to the material safety data sheet within three months. If the chemical is not currently being produced or imported the chemical manufacturer or importer shall add the information to the material safety data sheet before the chemical is introduced into the workplace again.

(6) Chemical manufacturers or importers shall ensure that distributors and employers are provided an appropriate material safety data sheet with their initial shipment, and with the first shipment after a material safety data sheet is updated. The chemical manufacturer or importer shall either provide material safety data sheets with the shipped containers or send them to the employer prior to or at the time of the shipment. If the material safety data sheet is not provided with a shipment that has been labeled as a hazardous chemical, the employer shall obtain one from the chemical manufacturer, importer, or distributor as soon as possible.

(7) Distributors shall ensure that material safety data sheets, and updated information, are provided to other distributors and employers. Retail distributors which sell hazardous chemical to commercial customers shall provide a material safety data sheet to such employers upon request, and shall post a sign or otherwise inform them that a material safety data sheet is available. Chemical manufacturers, importers, and distributors need not provide material safety data sheets to retail distributors which have informed them that the retail distributor does not sell the product to commercial customers or open the sealed container to use it in their own workplaces.

(8) The employer shall maintain copies of the required material safety data sheets for each hazardous chemical in the workplace, and shall ensure that they are readily accessible during each work shift to employees when they are in their work area(s).

(9) Where employees must travel between workplaces during a workshift, *i.e.*, their work is carried out at more than one geographical location, the material safety data sheets may be kept at a central location at the primary workplace facility. In this situation, the employer shall ensure that employees can immediately obtain the required information in an emergency.

(10) Material safety data sheets may be kept in any form, including operating procedures, and may be designed to cover groups of hazardous chemicals in a work area where it may be more appropriate to address the hazards of a process rather than individual hazardous chemicals. However, the employer shall ensure that in all cases the required information is provided for each hazardous chemical, and is readily accessible during each work shift to employees when they are in their work area(s).

(11) Material safety data sheets shall also be made readily available, upon request, to designated representatives and to the Assistant Secretary, in accordance with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.20(e). The Director shall also be given access to material safety data sheets in the same manner.

(h) Employee information and training.

Employers shall provide employees with information and training on hazardous chemicals in their work area at the time of their initial assignment, and whenever a new hazard is introduced into their work area.

(1) Information. Employees shall be informed of:

(i) The requirements of this section;

(ii) Any operations in their work area where hazardous chemicals are present; and,

(iii) The location and availability of the written hazard communication program, including the required list(s) of hazardous chemicals, and material safety data sheets required by this section.

(2) Training. Employee training shall include at least:

(i) Methods and observations that may be used to detect the presence or release of a hazardous chemical in the work area (such as monitoring conducted by the employer, continuous monitoring devices, visual appearance or odor of hazardous chemicals when being released, etc.);

(ii) The physical and health hazards of the chemicals in the work area;

(iii) The measures employees can take to protect themselves from these hazards, including specific procedures the employer has implemented to protect employees from exposure to hazardous chemicals, such as appropriate work practices, emergency procedures, and personal protective equipment to be used; and,

(iv) The details of the hazard communication program developed by the employer, including an explanation of the labeling system and the material safety data sheet, and how employees can obtain and use the appropriate hazard information.

(i) Trade secrets.

(1) The chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer may withhold the specific chemical identity, including the chemical name and other specific identification of a hazardous chemical, from the material safety data sheet, provided that:

(i) The claim that the information withheld is a trade secret can be supported;

(ii) Information contained in the material safety data sheet concerning the properties and effects of the hazardous chemical is disclosed;

(iii) The material safety data sheet indicates that the specific chemical identity is being withheld as a trade secret; and,

(iv) The specific chemical identity is made available to health professionals, employees, and designated representatives in accordance with the applicable provisions of this paragraph.

(2) Where a treating physician or nurse determines that a medical emergency exists and the specific chemical identity of a hazardous chemical is necessary for emergency or first-aid treatment, the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer shall immediately disclose the specific chemical identity of a trade secret chemical to that treating physician or nurse, regardless of the existence of a written statement of need of a confidentiality agreement. The chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer may require a written statement of need and confidentiality agreement, in accordance with the provisions of paragraphs (i)(3) and (4) of this section, as soon as circumstances permit.

(3) In non-emergency situations, a chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer shall, upon request, disclose a specific chemical identity, otherwise permitted to be withheld under paragraph (i)(1) of this section, to a health professional (i.e. physician, industrial hygienist, toxicologist, epidemiologist, or occupational health nurse) providing medical or other occupational health services to exposed employee(s), and to employees or designated representatives, if:

(i) The request is in writing;

(ii) The request describes with reasonable detail one or more of the following occupational health needs for the information:

(a) To assess the hazards of the chemicals to which employees will be exposed;

(b) To conduct or assess sampling of the workplace atmosphere to determine employee exposure levels;

(c) To conduct pre-assignment or periodic medical surveillance of exposed employees;

(d) To provide medical treatment to exposed employees;

(e) To select or assess appropriate personal protective equipment for exposed employees;

(f) To design or assess engineering controls or other protective measures for exposed employees; and,

(g) To conduct studies to determine the health effects of exposure.

(iii) The request explains in detail why the disclosure of the specific chemical identity is essential and that, in lieu thereof, the disclosure of the following information to the health professional, employee, or designated representative, would not satisfy the purposes described in paragraph (i)(3)(ii) of this section:

(a) The properties and effects of the chemical;

(b) Measures for controlling workers' exposure to the chemical;

(c) Methods of monitoring and analyzing worker exposure to the chemical; and,

(d) Methods of diagnosing and treating harmful exposures to the chemical;

(iv) The request includes a description of the procedures to be used to maintain the confidentiality of the disclosed information; and,

(v) The health professional, and the employer or contractor of the services of the health professional (i.e. downstream employer, labor organization, or individual employee), employee, or designated representative, agree in a written confidentiality agreement that the health professional, employee, or designated representative, will not use the trade secret information for any purpose other than the health need(s) asserted and agree not to release the information under any circumstances other than to OSHA, as provided in paragraph (i)(6) of this section, except as authorized by the terms of the agreement or by the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer.

(4) The confidentiality agreement authorized by paragraph (i)(3)(iv) of this section;

(i) May restrict the use of the information to the health purposes indicated in the written statement of need;

(ii) May provide for appropriate legal remedies in the event of a breach of the agreement, including stipulation of a reasonable pre-estimate of likely damages; and,

(iii) May not include requirements for the posting of a penalty bond.

(5) Nothing in this standard is meant to preclude the parties from pursuing non-contractual remedies to the extent permitted by law.

(6) If the health professional, employee, or designated representative receiving the trade secret information decides that there is a need to disclose it to OSHA, the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer who provided the information shall be informed by the health professional, employee, or designated representative prior to, or at the same time as, such disclosure.

(7) If the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer denies a written request for disclosure of a specific chemical identity, the denial must:

(i) Be provided to the health professional, employee, or designated representative, within thirty days of the request;

(ii) Be in writing;

(iii) Include evidence to support the claim that the specific chemical identity is a trade secret;

(iv) State the specific reasons why the request is being denied; and,

(v) Explain in detail how alternative information may satisfy the specific medical or occupational health need without revealing the specific chemical identity.

(8) The health professional, employee, or designated representative whose request for information is denied under paragraph (i)(3) of this section may refer the request and the written denial of the request to OSHA for consideration.

(9) When a health professional, employee, or designated representative refers the denial to OSHA under paragraph (i)(8) of this section, OSHA shall consider the evidence to determine if:

(i) The chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer has supported the claim that the specific chemical identity is a trade secret;

(ii) The health professional, employee, or designated representative has supported the claim that there is a medical or occupational health need for the information; and,

(iii) The health professional, employee, or designated representative has demonstrated adequate means to protect the confidentiality.

(10)

(i) If OSHA determines that the specific chemical identity requested under paragraph (i)(3) of this section is not a *bona fide* trade secret, or that it is a trade secret, but the requesting health professional, employee, or designated representative has a legitimate medical or occupational health need for the information, has executed a written confidentiality agreement, and has shown adequate means to protect the confidentiality of the information, the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer will be subject to citation by OSHA.

(ii) If a chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer demonstrates to OSHA that the execution of a confidentiality agreement would not provide sufficient protection against the potential harm from the unauthorized disclosure of a trade secret specific chemical identity, the Assistant Secretary may issue such orders or impose such additional limitations or conditions upon the disclosure of the requested chemical information as may be appropriate to assure that the occupational health services are provided without an undue risk of harm to the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer.

(11) If a citation for a failure to release specific chemical identity information is contested by the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer, the matter will be adjudicated before the Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission in accordance with the Act's enforcement scheme and the applicable Commission rules of procedure. In accordance with the Commission rules, when a chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer continues to withhold the information during the contest, the Administrative Law Judge may review the citation and supporting documentation *in camera* or issue appropriate orders to protect the confidentiality of such matters.

(12) Notwithstanding the existence of a trade secret claim, a chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer shall, upon request, disclose to the Assistant Secretary any information which this section requires the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer to make available. Where there is a trade secret claim, such claim shall be made no later than at the time the information is provided to the Assistant Secretary so that suitable determinations of trade secret status can be made and the necessary protections can be implemented.

(13) Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed as requiring the disclosure under any circumstances of process or percentage of mixture information which is a trade secret.

(j) Effective dates.

(1) Chemical manufacturers, importers, and distributors shall ensure that material safety data sheets are provided with the next shipment of hazardous chemicals to employers after September 23, 1987.

(2) Employers in the nonmanufacturing sector shall be in compliance with all provisions of this section by May 23, 1988. (Note: Employers in the manufacturing sector (SIS Codes 2 thru 39) are already required to be in compliance with this section.)

APPENDIX A TO 1910.1200
HEALTH HAZARD DEFINITIONS (MANDATORY)

Although safety hazards related to the physical characteristics of a chemical can be objectively defined in terms of testing requirements (e.g. flammability), health hazard definitions are less precise and more subjective. Health hazards may cause measurable changes in the body—such as decreased pulmonary function. These changes are generally indicated by the occurrence of signs and symptoms in the exposed employees—such as shortness of breath, a non-measurable, subjective feeling. Employees exposed to such hazards must be apprised of both the change in body function and the signs and symptoms that nay occur to signal that change.

The determination of occupational health hazards is complicated by the fact that many of the effects or signs and symptoms occur commonly in non-occupationally exposed populations, so that effects of exposure are difficult to separate from normally occurring illnesses. Occasionally, a substance causes an effect that is rarely seen in the population at large, such as angiosarcomas caused by vinyl chloride exposure, thus making it easier to ascertain that the occupational exposure was the primary causative factor. More often, however, the effects are common, such as lung cancer. The situation is further complicated by the fact that most chemicals have not been adequately tested to determine their health hazard potential, and data do not exist to substantiate these effects.

There have been many attempts to categorize effects and to define them in various ways. Generally, the terms "acute" and "chronic" are used to delineate between effects on the basis of severity or duration. "Actue" effects usually occur rapidly as a result of short-term exposures, and are of short duration. "Chronic" effects generally occur as a result of long-term exposure, and are of long duration.

The acute effects referred to most frequently are those defined by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standard for Precautionary Labeling of Hazardous Industrial Chemicals (Z129.1-1982)—irritation, corrosivity, sensitization and lethal dose. Although these are important health effects, they do not adequately cover the considerable range of acute effects which may occur as a result of occupational exposure, such as, for example, narcosis.

Similarly, the term chronic effect is often used to cover only carcinogenicity, teratogenicity, and mutagenicity. These effects are obviously a concern in the workplace, but again, do not adequately cover the area of chronic effects, excluding, for example, blood dyscrasias (such as enemia), chronic bronchitis and liver atrophy.

The goal of defining precisely, in measurable terms, every possible health effect that may occur in the workplace as a result of chemical exposures cannot realistically be accomplished. This does not negate the need for employees to be informed of such effects and protected from them. Appendix B, which is also mandatory, outlines the principles and procedures of hazardous assessment.

For purposes of this section, any chemicals which meet any of the following definitions, as determined by the criteria set forth in Appendix B are health hazards:

1. Carcinogen: A chemical is considered to be a carcinogen if:

(a) It has been evaluated by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC), and found to be a carcinogen or potential carcinogen; or

(b) It is listed as a carcinogen or potential carcinogen in the *Annual Report on Carcinogens* published by the National Toxicology Program (NTP) (latest edition); or,

(c) It is regulated by OSHA as a carcinogen.

2. Corrosive: A chemical that causes visible destruction of, or irreversible alterations in, living tissue by chemical action at the site of contact. For example, a chemical is considered to be corrosive if, when tested on the intact skin of albino rabbits by the method described by the U.S. Department of Transportation in Appendix A to 49 CFR Part 173, it destroys or changes irreversibly the structure of the tissue at the site of contact following an exposure period of four hours. This term shall not refer to action or inanimate surfaces.

3. **Highly toxic:** A chemical falling within any of the following categories:

(a) A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD_{50}) of 50 milligrams or less per kilogram of body weight when administered orally to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

(b) A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD_{50}) of 200 milligrams or less per kilogram of body weight when administered by continuous contact for 24 hours (or less if death occurs within 24 hours) with the bare skin of albino rabbits weighing between two and three kilograms each.

(c) A chemical that has a median lethal concentration (LC_{50}) in air of 200 parts per million by volume or less of gas or vapor, or 2 milligrams per liter or less of mist, fume, or dust, when administered by continuous inhalation for one hour (or less if death occurs within one hour) to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

4. **Irritant:** A chemical, which is not corrosive, but which causes a reversible inflammatory effect on living tissue by chemical action at the site of contact. A chemical is a skin irritant if, when tested on the intact skin of albino rabbits by the methods of 16 CFR 1500.41 for four hours exposure or by other appropriate techniques, it results in an empirical score of five or more. A chemical is an eye irritant if so determined under the procedure listed in 16 CFR 1500.42 or other appropriate techniques.

5. **Sensitizer:** A chemical that causes a substantial proportion of exposed people or animals to develop an allergic reaction in normal tissue after repeated exposure to the chemical.

6. **Toxic.** A chemical falling within any of the following categories:

(a) A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD_{50}) of more than 50 milligrams per kilogram but not more than 500 milligrams per kilogram of body weight when administered orally to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

(b) A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD_{50}) of more than 200 milligrams per kilogram but not more than 1,000 milligrams per kilogram of body weight when administered by continuous contact for 24 hours (or less if death occurs within 24 hours) with the bare skin of albino rabbits weighing between two and three kilograms each.

(c) A chemical that has a median lethal concentration (LC_{50}) in air of more than 200 parts per million but not more than 2,000 parts per million by volume of gas or vapor, or more than two milligrams per liter but not more than 20 milligrams per liter of mist, fume, or dust, when administered by continuous inhalation for one hour (or less if death occurs within one hour) to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

7. **Target organ effects.** The following is a target organ categorization of effects which may occur, including examples of signs and symptoms and chemicals which have been found to cause such effects. These examples are presented to illustrate the range and diversity of effects and hazards found in the workplace, and the broad scope employers must consider in this area, but are not intended to be all-inclusive.

a. Hepatotoxins: Chemicals which produce liver damage
Signs & Symptoms: Jaundice; liver enlargement
Chemicals: Carbon tetrachloride; nitrosamines

b. Nephrotoxins: Chemicals which produce kidney damage
Signs & Symptoms: Edema; proteinuria
Chemicals: Halogenated hydrocarbons; uranium

c. Neurotoxins: Chemicals which produce their primary toxic effects on the nervous system
Signs & Symptoms: Narcosis; behavioral changes; decrease in motor functions
Chemicals: Mercury; carbon disulfide

d. Agents which act on the blood or hematopoietic system: Decrease hemoglobin function; deprive the body tissue of oxygen
Signs & Symptoms: Cyanosis; loss of consciousness
Chemicals: Carbon monoxide; cyanides

e. Agents which damage the lung: Chemicals which irritate or damage the pulmonary tissue
Signs & Symptoms: Cough; tightness in chest; shortness of breath
Chemicals: Silica; asbestos

f. Reproductive toxins: Chemicals which affect the reproductive capabilities including chromosomal damage (mutations) and effects on fetuses (teratogenesis)
Signs & Symptoms: Birth defects; sterility
Chemicals: Lead; DBCP

g. Cutaneous hazards: Chemicals which affect the dermal layer of the boy
Signs & Symptoms: Defatting of the skin; rashes; irritation
Chemicals: Ketones; chlorinated compounds

h. Eye hazards: Chemicals which affect the eye or visual capacity
Signs & Symptoms: Conjunctivitis; corneal damage
Chemicals: Organic solvents; acids

APPENDIX B TO § 1910.1200
HAZARD DETERMINATION (MANDATORY)

The quality of a hazard communication program is largely dependent upon the adequacy and accuracy of the hazard determination. The hazard determination requirement of this standard is performance-oriented. Chemical manufacturers, importers, and employers evaluating chemicals are not required to follow any specific methods for determining hazards, but they must be able to demonstrate that they have adequately ascertained the hazards of the chemicals produced or imported in accordance with the criteria set forth in this Appendix.

Hazard evaluation is a process which relies heavily on the professional judgment of the evaluator, particularly in the area of chronic hazards. The performance-orientation of the hazard determination does not diminish the duty of the chemical manufacturer, importer or employer to conduct a thorough evaluation, examining all relevant data and producing a scientifically defensible evaluation. For purposes of this standard, the following criteria shall be used in making hazard determinations that meet the requirements of this standard.

1. **Carcinogenicity:** As described in paragraph (d)(4) and Appendix A of this section, a determination by the National Toxicology Program, the International Agency for Research on Cancer, or OSHA that a chemical is a carcinogen or potential carcinogen will be considered conclusive evidence for purposes of this section.

2. Human data: Where available, epidemiological studies and case reports of adverse health effects shall be considered in the evaluation.

3. Animal data: Human evidence of health effects in exposed populations is generally not available for the majority of chemicals produced or used in the workplace. Therefore, the available results of toxicological testing in animal populations shall be used to predict the health effects that may be experienced by exposed workers. In particular, the definitions of certain acute hazards refer to specific animal testing results (see Appendix A).

4. Adequacy and reporting of data. The results of any studies which are designed and conducted according to established scientific principles, and which report statistically significant conclusions regarding the health effects of a chemical, shall be a sufficient basis for a hazard determination and reported on any material safety data sheet. The chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer may also report the results of other scientifically valid studies which tend to refute the findings of hazard.

APPENDIX C TO 1910.1200
INFORMATION SOURCES (ADVISORY)

The following is a list of available data sources which the chemical manufacturer, importer, distributor, or employer may wish to consult to evaluate the hazards of chemicals they produce or import:

—Any information in their own company files, such as toxicity testing results or illness experience of company employees.

—Any information obtained from the supplier of the chemical, such as material safety data sheets or product safety bulletins.

—Any pertinent information obtained from the following source list (latest editions should be used):

Condensed Chemical Dictionary
Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., 135 West 50th Street, New York, NY 10020.

The Merck Index: An Encyclopedia of Chemicals and Drugs
Merck and Company, Inc., 126 E. Lincoln Ave., Rahway, NJ 07065.

IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Man
Geneva: World Health Organization, International Agency for Research on Cancer, 1972-Present. (Multivolume work). Summaries are available in supplement volumes. 49 Sheridan Street, Albany, NY 12210.

Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology, by F.A. Patty
John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, NY (Multivolume work).

Clinical Toxicology of Commercial Products
Gleason, Gosselin, and Hodge

Casarett and Doull's Toxicology; The Basic Science of Poisons
Doull, Klaassen, and Amdur, Macmillan Publishing Co., Inc., New York, NY.

Industrial Toxicology, by Alice Hamilton and Harriet L. Hardy
Publishing Sciences Group, Inc., Acton, MA.

Toxicology of the Eye, by W. Morton Grant
Charles C. Thomas, 301-327 East Lawrence Avenue, Springfield, IL.

Recognition of Health Hazards in Industry
William A. Burgess, John Wiley and Sons, 605 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10158.

Chemical Hazards of the Workplace
Nick H. Proctor and James P. Hughes, J.P. Lipincott Company, 6 Winchester Terrace, New York, NY 10022.

Handbook of Chemistry and Physics
Chemical Rubber Company, 18901 Cranwood Parkway, Cleveland, OH 44128.

Threshold Limit Values for Chemical Substances and Physical Agents in the Work Environment and Biological Exposure Indices with Intended Changes
American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH). 6500 Glenway Avenue, Bldg. D-5, Cincinnati, OH 45211.

Information on the physical hazards of chemicals may be found in publications of the National Fire Protection Association, Boston, MA.

Note.—The following documents may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402.

Occupational Health Guidelines
NIOSH/OSHA (NIOSH Pub. No. 81-123)

NIOSH Pocket Guide to Chemical Hazards
NIOSH Pub. No. 85-114

Registry of Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances
NIOSH Pub. No. 80-102

Miscellaneous Documents published by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health:
Criteria documents.
Special Hazard Reviews.
Occupational Hazard Assessments.
Current Intelligence Bulletins.

OSHA's General Industry Standards (29 CFR Part 1910)

NTP Annual Report on Carcinogens and Summary of the Annual Report on Carcinogens.
National Technical Information Service (NTIS), 5285 Port Royal Road, Springfield, VA 22161: (703) 487-4650.

BIBLIOGRAPHIC DATA BASES

Service Provider	File name
Bibliographic Retrieval Services (BRS), 1200 Route 7, Latham, NY 12110.	Biosis Previews
	CA Search
	Medlars
	NTIS
	Hazardline
	American Chemical Society Journal
	Excerpta Medica
	IRCS Medical Science Journal
	Pre-Med

	Intl. Pharmaceutical Abstracts Paper Chem
Lockheed—DIALOG Information Service, Inc., 3460 Hillview Avenue, Palo Alto, CA 94304.	Biosis Prev. Files CA Search Files CAB Abstracts Chemical Exposure Chemname Chemsis Files Chemzero Embase Files Environmental Bibliographies Enviroline Federal Research in Progress IRL Life Science Collection NTIS Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) Paper Chem
SDC—Orbit, SDC Information Service, 2500 Colorado Avenue, Santa Monica, CA 90406.	CAS Files Chemdex, 2, 3 NTIS
National Library of Medicine, Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institute of Health, Bethesda, MD 20209.	Hazardous Substances Data Bank (NSDB) Medline files Toxline Files Cancerlit RTECS Chemline
Pergamon International Information Corp., 1340 Old Chain Bridge Rd., McLean, VA 22101.	Laboratory Hazard Bulletin
Questel, Inc., 1625 Eye Street, NW, Suite 818, Washington, DC 20006.	CIS/ILO Cancernet
Chemical Information System ICI (ICIS), Bureau of National Affairs, 1133 15th Street, NW, Suite 300, Washington, DC 20005.	Structure and Nomenclature Search System (SANSS) Acute Toxicity (RTECS) Clinical Toxicology of Commercial Products Oil and Hazardous Materials Technical Assistance Data System CCRIS CESARS
Occupational Health Services, 400 Plaza Drive, Secaucus, NJ 07094.	MSDS Hazardline

APPENDIX D TO 1910.1200
DEFINITION OF "TRADE SECRET" (MANDATORY)

The following is a reprint of the *Restatement of Torts* section 757, comment *b* (1939):

b. Definition of trade secret. A trade secret may consist of any formula, pattern, device or compilation of information which is used in one's business, and which gives him an opportunity to obtain an advantage over competitors who do not know or use it. It may be a formula for a chemical compound, process of manufacturing, treating or preserving materials, a pattern for a machine or other device, or a list of customers. It differs from other secret information in a business (see § 759 of the *Restatement of Torts* which is not included in this Appendix in that it is not simply information as to single or ephemeral events in the conduct of the business, as, for example, the amount or other terms of a secret bid for a contract or the salary of certain employees, or the security investments made or contemplated, or the date fixed for the announcement of a new policy or for bringing out a new model or the like. A trade secret is a process or device for continuous use in the operations of the business. Generally it relates to the production of goods, as, for example, a machine or formula for the production of an article. It may, however, relate to the sale of goods or to other operations in the business, such as a code for determining discounts, rebates or other concessions in a price list or catalogue, or a list of specialized customers, or a method of bookkeeping or other office management.

Secrecy. The subject matter of a trade secret must be secret. Matters of public knowledge or of general knowledge in an industry cannot be appropriated by one as his secret. Matters which are completely disclosed by the goods which one markets cannot be his secret. Substantially, a trade secret is known only in the particular business in which it is used. It is not requisite that only the proprietor of the business know it. He may, without losing his protection, communicate it to employees involved in its use. He may likewise communicate it to others pledged to secrecy. Others may also know of it independently, as, for example, when they have discovered the process or formula by independent invention and are keeping it secret. Nevertheless, a substantial element of secrecy must exist, so that, except by the use of improper means, there would be difficulty in acquiring the information. An exact definition of a trade secret is not possible. Some factors to be considered in determining whether given information is one's trade secret are: (1) The extent to which the information is known outside of his business; (2) the extent to which it is known by employees and others involved in his business; (3) the extent of measures taken by him to guard the secrecy of the information; (4) the value of the information to him and his competitors; (5) the amount of effort or money expended by him in developing the information; (6) the ease or difficulty with which the information could be properly acquired or duplicated by others.

Novelty and prior art. A trade secret may be a device or process which is patentable; but it need not be that. It may be a device or process which is clearly anticipated in the prior art or one which is merely a mechanical improvement that a good mechanic can make. Novelty and invention are not requisite for a trade secret as they are for patentability. These requirements are essential to patentability because a patent protects against unlicensed use of the patented device or process even by one who discovers it properly through independent research.

The patent monopoly is a reward to the inventor. But such is not the case with a trade secret. Its protection is not based on a policy of rewarding or otherwise encouraging the development of secret processes or devices. The protection is merely against breach of faith and reprehensible means of learning another's secret. For this limited protection it is not appropriate to require also the kind of novelty and invention which is a requisite of patentability. The nature of the secret is, however, an important factor in determining the kind of relief that is appropriate against one who is subject to liability under the rule stated in this section. Thus, if the secret consists of a device or process which is a novel invention, one who acquires the secret wrongfully is ordinarily enjoined from further use of it and is required to account for the profits derived from his past use. If, on the other hand, the secret consists of mechanical improvements that a good mechanic can make without resort to the secret, the wrongdoer's liability may be limited to damages, and an injunction against future use of the improvements made with the aid of the secret may be inappropriate.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under Control No. 1218–0072, except for: (1) The requirement that material safety data sheets be provided on multi-employer worksites; (2) coverage of any consumer product excluded from the definition of "hazardous chemical" under Section 311(e)(3) of the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986; and (3) coverage of any drugs regulated by the Food and Drug Administration in the non-manufacturing sector.)

[53 F.R. 15035, April 27, 1988]

1910.1499—SOURCE OF STANDARDS

Section 1910.1000	41CFR 50-204.50, except for Table Z-2, the source of which is American National Standards Institute. Z37 series.

1910.1500—STANDARDS ORGANIZATIONS

Specific standards of the following organizations have been referred to in this subpart. Copies of the standards may be obtained from the issuing organization.

American Conference of Governmental
Industrial Hygienists
1014 Broadway
Cincinnati, Ohio 45202

American National Standards Institute
1430 Broadway
New York, New York 10018

PART 1927 [RESERVED]

PART 1928—OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS FOR AGRICULTURE

SUBPART A—GENERAL

1928.1 Purpose and Scope.

SUBPART B—APPLICABILITY OF STANDARDS

1928.21 Applicable standards in 29 CFR Part 1910.

SUBPART C—ROLL-OVER PROTECTIVE STRUCTURES

1928.51 Roll-over protective structures (ROPS) for tractors, used in agricultural operations.
1928.52 Protective frames for wheel type agricultural tractors-test procedures and performance requirements.
1928.53 Protective enclosures for wheel type agricultural tractors—test procedures and performance requirements.

APPENDICES TO SUBPART C

APPENDIX A—EMPLOYEE OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

APPENDIX B—FIGURES C-1—C-16

SUBPART D—SAFETY FOR AGRICULTURAL EQUIPMENT

1928.57 Guarding of farm field equipment, farmstead equipment, and cotton gins.

SUBPARTS E–H—[RESERVED]

SUBPART I—GENERAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

1928.110 Field sanitation.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 6 and 8, Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 U.S.C. 655, 657); Secretary of Labor's Orders No. 12–71 (36 FR 8754) 8–76 (41 FR 25059), or 9–83 (48 FR 35736), as applicable; 29 CFR Part 1911.

SOURCE: 40 FR 18257, Apr. 25, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

SUBPART A—GENERAL

1928.1—PURPOSE AND SCOPE

This part contains occupational safety and health standards applicable to agricultural operations.

SUBPART B—APPLICABILITY OF STANDARDS

1928.21—APPLICABLE STANDARDS IN 29 CFR PART 1910

(a) The following standards in Part 1910 of this Chapter shall apply to agricultural operations:

(1) Temporary labor camps—§ 1910.142;

(2) Storage and handling of anhydrous ammonia—§ 1910.111(a) and (b);

(3) Pulpwood logging—§ 1910.266;

(4) Slow-moving vehicles—§ 1910.145.

(5) Hazard communication— § 1910.1200.

[52 F.R. 31886, August 24, 1987]

(b) Except to the extent specified in paragraph-(a) of this section, the standards contained in Subparts B through T and Subpart Z of Part 1910 of this title do not apply to agricultural operations.

[42 F.R. 38569, July 29, 1977.]

SUBPART C—ROLL-OVER PROTECTIVE STRUCTURE

1928.51—ROLL-OVER PROTECTIVE STRUCTURES (ROPS) FOR TRACTORS USED IN AGRICULTURAL OPERATIONS

(a) Definitions. As used in this subpart—

"Agricultural tractor" means a two- or four-wheel drive type vehicle, or track vehicle, of more than 20 engine horsepower, designed to furnish the power to pull, carry, propel, or drive implements that are designed for agriculture. All self-propelled implements are excluded.

"Low profile tractor" means a wheeled tractor possessing the following characteristics:

(1) The front wheel spacing is equal to the rear wheel spacing, as measured from the centerline of each right wheel to the centerline of the corresponding left wheel.

(2) The clearance from the bottom of the tractor chassis to the ground does not exceed 18 inches.

(3) The highest point of the hood does not exceed 60 inches, and

(4) The tractor is designed so that the operator straddles the transmission when seated.

"Tractor weight" includes the protective frame or enclosure, all fuels, and other components required for normal use of the tractor. Ballast shall be added as necessary to achieve a minimum total weight of 110 lb. (50.0 kg.) per maximum power take-off horsepower at the rated engine speed or the maximum gross vehicle weight specified by the manufacturer, whichever is the greatest. Front end weight shall be at least 25 percent of the tractor test weight. In case power take-off horsepower is not available, 95 percent of net engine flywheel horsepower shall be used.

(b) General requirements. Agricultural tractors manufactured after October 25, 1976, shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Roll-over protective structure. A roll-over protective structure (ROPS) shall be provided by the employer for each tractor operated by an employee. Except as provided in paragraph (b)(5) of this section, ROPS used on wheel type tractors shall meet the test and performance requirements of § 1928.52 or § 1928.53 of this part or § 1926.1002 of Part 1926, and ROPS used on track type tractors shall meet the test and performance requirements of § 1926.1001 of Part 1926.

(2) Seatbelts.

(i) Where ROPS are required by this section, the employer shall:

(a) Provide each tractor with a seatbelt which meets the requirements of this paragraph;

(b) Ensure that each employee uses such seatbelt while the tractor is moving; and

(c) Ensure that each employee tightens the seatbelt sufficiently to confine the employee to the protected area provided by the ROPS.

(ii) Each seatbelt shall meet the requirements set forth in Society of Automotive Engineers Standard SAE J4C, 1965 Motor Vehicle Seat Belt Assemblies,[1] except as noted hereafter:

(a) Where a suspended seat is used, the seatbelt shall be fastened to the movable portion of the seat to accommodate a ride motion of the operator.

(b) The seatbelt anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a static tensile load of 1,000 pounds (453.6 kg) at 45 degrees to the horizontal equally divided between the anchorages. The seat mounting shall be capable of withstanding this load plus a load equal to four times the weight of all applicable seat components applied at 45 degrees to the horizontal in a forward and upward direction. In addition, the seat mounting shall be capable of withstanding a 500 pound (226.8 kg) belt load plus two times the weight of all applicable seat components both applied at 45 degrees to the horizontal in an upward and rearward direction. Floor and seat deformation is acceptable provided there is not structural failure or release of the seat adjusted mechanism or other locking device.

(c) The seatbelt webbing material shall have a resistance to acids, alkalis, mildew, aging, moisture, and sunlight equal to or better than that of untreated polyester fiber.

(3) Protection from spillage. Batteries, fuel tanks, oil reservoirs, and coolant systems shall be constructed and located or sealed to assure that spillage will not occur which may come in contact with the operator in the event of an upset.

(4) Protection from sharp surfaces. All sharp edges and corners at the operator's station shall be designed to minimize operator injury in the event of an upset.

(5) Exempted uses. Paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section do not apply to the following uses:

---

[1] Copies may be obtained from the Society of Automotive Engineers, 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, Pa. 15096.

(i) "Low profile" tractors while they are used in orchards, vineyards or hop yards where the vertical clearance requirements would substantially interfere with normal operations, and while their use is incidental to the work performed therein.

(ii) "Low profile" tractors while used inside a farm building or greenhouse in which the vertical clearance is insufficient to allow a ROPS equipped tractor to operate, and while their use is incidental to the work performed therein.

(iii) Tractors while used with mounted equipment which is incompatible with ROPS (e.g. cornpickers, cotton strippers, vegetable pickers and fruit harvesters.)

(6) Remounting. Where ROPS are removed for any reason, they shall be remounted so as to meet the requirements of this paragraph.

(c) Labeling. Each ROPS shall have a lable, permanently affixed to the structure, which states

(1) Manufacturer's or fabricator's name and address;

(2) ROPS model number, if any;

(3) Tractor makes, models, or series numbers that the structure is designed to fit; and

(4) That the ROPS model was tested in accordance with the requirements of this Subpart.

(d) Operating Instructions. Every employee who operates an agricultural tractor shall be informed of the operating practices contained in Exhibit A of this part and of any other practices dictated by the work environment. Such information shall be provided at the time of initial assignment and at least annually thereafter.

1928.52—PROTECTIVE FRAMES FOR WHEEL TYPE AGRICULTURAL TRACTORS—TEST PROCEDURES AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

(a) Purpose. The purpose of this section is to establish the test and performance requirements for a protective frame designed for wheel-type agricultural tractors to minimize the frequency and severity of operator injury resulting from accidental upsets. General requirements for the protection of operators are specified in § 1928.51.

(b) Types of tests. All protective frames for wheel type agricultural tractors shall be of a model which has been tested as follows:

(1) Laboratory test. A laboratory energy absorption test, either static or dynamic, under repeatable and controlled loading, to permit analysis of the protective frame for compliance with the performance requirements of this standard.

(2) Field upset test. A field upset test under controlled conditions, both to the side and rear, to verify effectiveness of the protective system under actual dynamic conditions. Such test may be omitted where:

(i) the analysis of the protective frame static energy absorption test results indicates that both FER_{is} and FER_{ir} (as defined in paragraph (d)(2)(ii) of this section), exceed 1.15; or

(ii) the analysis of the protective frame dynamic energy absorption test results indicates that the frame can withstand an impact of 15 percent greater than the impact it is required to withstand for the tractor weight as shown in Figure C-7.

(c) Description—

(1) Protective frame. A protective frame is a structure comprised of uprights mounted to the tractor, extending above the operator's seat. A typical 2-post frame is shown in Figure C-1.

(Figures C-1 through C-16 are contained in Exhibit B.)

(2) Overhead weather shield. If an overhead weather shield is available for attachment to the protective frame, it may be in place during tests provided it does not contribute to the strength of the protective frame.

(3) Overhead falling object protection. If an overhead falling object protection device is available for attachment to the protective frame, it may be in place during tests provided it does not contribute to the strength of the protective frame.

(d) Test procedures.

(1) General.

(i) The tractor weight used shall be that of the heaviest tractor model on which the protective frame is to be used.

(ii) Each test required under this section shall be performed on a new protective frame. Mounting connections of the same design shall be used during each such test.

(iii) Instantaneous deflection shall be measured and recorded for each segment of the test. See paragraph (e)(1)(i) of this section for permissible deflection.

(iv) Seat reference point *(SRP)* in Fig. C-3) is that point where the vertical line that is tangent to the most forward point at the longitudinal seat centerline of the seat back, and the horizontal line that is tangent to the highest point of the seat cushion intersect in the longitudinal seat section. The seat reference point shall be determined with the seat unloaded and adjusted to the highest and most rearward position provided for seated operation of the tractor.

(v) Where the centerline of the seat is off the longitudinal center, the frame loading shall be on the side with the least space between the centerline of seat and the protective frame.

(vi) Low temperature characteristics of the protective frame or its material shall be demonstrated as specified in paragraph (e)(1)(ii) of this section.

(vii) Rear input energy tests (static, dynamic, or field upset) need not be performed on frames mounted to tractors having 4 driven wheels and more than one-half their unballasted weight on the front wheels.

(viii) Accuracy table:

Measurements	*Accuracy*
Deflection of frame, inches (millimeters)	±5 percent of deflection measured.
Vehicle weight, pounds (kilograms)	±5 percent of the weight measured.
Force applied to frame, pounds force (newtons).	±5 percent of force measured.
Dimensions of critical zone, inches (millimeters)	±0.5 inch (12.5 millimeters).

(2) Static test procedure.

(i) The following test conditions shall be met:

(a) The laboratory mounting base shall be the tractor chassis for which the protective frame is designed, or its equivalent.

(b) The protective frame shall be instrumented with the necessary equipment to obtain the required load deflection data at the locations and directions specified in Fig. C-2 and C-3.

(c) If the protective frame is of a one or two upright design, mounting connections shall be instrumented with the necessary equipment to record the required force to be used in paragraph (d)(2)(iii)(E) and (J) of this section. Instrumentation shall be placed on mounting connections before installation load is applied.

(ii) The following definitions shall apply:

W = Tractor weight (see § 1928.51 (a) in lb. (W' in kg.).

E_{is} = Energy input to be absorbed during side loading in ft-lb (E'_{is} in m-kg.).

E_{is} = 723 + 0.4 W (E'_{is} = 100 + 0.12 W').

E_{ir} = Energy input to be absorbed during rear loading in ft-lb (E'_{ir} in m-kg.).

E_{ir} = 0.47 W (E'_{ir} = 0.14 W').

L = Static load, lbf [pounds force], (N) [newtons].

D = Deflection under L, in. (mm).

$L-D$ = Static load-deflection diagram.

L_{max} = Maximum observed static load.

Load Limit = Point on a continuous $L-D$ curve where observed static load is 0.8 L_{max} on down slope of curve (refer to Fig. C-5).

E_u = Strain energy absorbed by the frame, ft-lb (m-kg). Area under $L-D$ curve

FER = Factor of energy ratio.

$FER_{is} = \frac{E_u}{E_{is}}$

$FER_{ir} = \frac{E_u}{E_{ir}}$

P_m = Maximum observed force in mounting connection under static load, L, lbf (N).

P_u = Ultimate force capacity of mounting connection, lbf (N).

FSB = Design margin for mounting connection.

$FSB = \frac{P_u}{P_m}$

(iii) The test procedures shall be as follows:

(a) Apply the rear load in accordance with Fig. C-3 and record L and D simultaneously. Rear load application shall be uniformly distributed on the frame over an area perpendicular to the direction of load application, no greater than 160 sq. in. (1032 sq. cm.) in size, with the largest dimension no greater than 27 inches (686 mm). The load shall be applied to the upper extremity of the frame at the point which is midway between the center of the frame and the inside of the frame upright. If no structural cross member exists at the rear of the frame, a substitute test beam which does not add strength to the frame may be utilized to complete this test procedure. The test shall be stopped when:

(1) The strain energy absorbed by the frame is equal to or greater than the required input energy E_{ir} or;

(2) Deflection of the frame exceeds the allowable deflection (see paragraph (e)(1)(i) of this section) or;

(3) Frame load limit (see Figure C-5) occurs before the allowable deflection is reached in rear load.

(b) Using data obtained in paragraph (d)(2)(iii)(A) of this section, construct the $L-D$ diagram as shown typically in Fig. C-5.

(c) Calculate E_{ir}.

(d) Calculate FER_{ir}.

(e) Calculate FSB where required by paragraph (d)(2)(i)(C) of this section.

(f) Apply the side load tests on the same frame and record L and D simultaneously. Side load application shall be at the upper extremity of the frame at a 90 degree angle to the center line of the vehicle. The side load shall be applied to the longitudinal side farthest from the point of rear load application. Apply side load L as shown in Fig. C-2. The test shall be stopped when:

(1) The strain energy absorbed by the frame is equal to or greater than the required input energy E_{is} or;

(2) Deflection of the frame exceeds the allowable deflection (see paragraph (e)(1)(i) of this section) or;

(3) Frame load limit (see Figure C-5) occurs before the allowable deflection is reached in side load.

(g) Using data obtained in paragraph (d)(2)(iii)(F) of this section, construct the L-D diagram as shown typically in Fig. C-5.

(h) Calculate E_{is}.

(i) Calculate FER_{is}.

(j) Calculate FSB where required by paragraph (d)(2)(i)(C) of this section.

(3) Dynamic test procedure.

(i) The following test conditions shall be met:

(a) The protective frame and tractor shall be tested at the weight as defined in § 1928.51(a).

(b) The dynamic loading shall be accomplished by use of a 4410 lb. (2000 kg) weight acting as a pendulum. The impact face of the weight shall be 27±1 in. by 27±1 in. (686±25 mm by 686±25 mm) and shall be constructed so that its center of gravity is within 1 in. (25.4 mm) of its geometric center. The weight shall be suspended from a pivot point 18 to 22 ft. (5.5-6.7 m) above the point of impact on the frame and shall be conveniently and safely adjustable for height (see Fig. C-6).

(c) For each phase of testing, the tractor shall be restrained from moving when the dynamic load is applied. The restraining members shall have strength no less than, and elasticity no greater than, that of 0.50 in. (12.7 mm) steel cable. Points of attachment of restraining members shall be located an appropriate distance behind the rear axle and in front of the front axle to provide a 15 to 30 degree angle between a restraining cable and the horizontal. For the impact from the rear, the restraining cables shall be located in the plane in which the center of gravity of the pendulum will swing, or alternatively, two sets of symmetrically located cables may be used at lateral locations on the tractor. For impact from the side, restraining cables shall be used as shown in Figures C-8 and C-9.

(d) The front and rear wheel tread settings, where adjustable, shall be at the position nearest to halfway between the minimum and maximum settings obtainable on the vehicle. Where only two settings are obtainable, the minimum setting shall be used. The tires shall have no liquid ballast and shall be inflated to the maximum operating pressure recommended by the manufacturer. With specified tire inflation, the restraining cable shall be tightened to provide tire deflection of 6 to 8 percent of nominal tire section width. After the vehicle is properly restrained, a wooden beam no less than 6 × 6 in. (150 × 150 mm) cross section shall be driven tightly against the appropriate wheels and clamped. For the test to the side, an additional wooden beam shall be placed as a prop against the wheel nearest the operator's station and shall be secured to the base so that it is held tightly against the wheel rim during impact. The length of this beam shall be chosen so that it is at an angle of 25 to 40 degrees to the horizontal when it is positioned against the wheel rim. It shall have a length 20 to 25 times its depth and a width 2 to 3 times its depth. (See Figs. C-8 and C-9).

(e) Means shall be provided for indicating the maximum instantaneous deflection along the line of impact. A simple friction device is illustrated in Fig. C-4.

(f) No repairs or adjustments shall be made during the test.

(g) If any cables, props, or blocking shift or break during the test, the test shall be repeated.

(ii) H = Vertical height of center of gravity of 4410 lb. (2000 kg) weight in inches (H' in mm). The weight shall be pulled back so that the height of its center of gravity above the point of impact is:

$H = 4.92 + 0.00190\ W$ or $H' = 125 + 0.170\ W'$) (Fig. C-7).

(iii) The test procedures shall be as follows.

(a) The frame shall be evaluated by imposing dynamic loading from the rear followed by a load to the side on the same frame. The pendulum swinging from the height determined by paragraph (d)(3)(ii) of this section shall be used to impose the dynamic load. The position of the pendulum shall be so selected that the initial point of impact on the frame is in line with the arc of travel of the center of gravity of the pendulum. Where a quick release mechanism is used, it shall not influence the attitude of the block.

(b) Impact at rear: The tractor shall be properly restrained in accordance with paragraphs (d)(3)(i)(C) and (d)(3)(i)(D) of this section. The tractor shall be positioned with respect to the pivot point of the pendulum so that the pendulum is 20 degrees from the vertical prior to impact as shown in Fig. C-8. The impact shall be applied to the upper extremity of the frame at the point which is midway between the center line of the frame and the inside of the frame upright. If no structural cross member exists at the rear of the frame, a substitute test beam which does not add to the strength of the frame may be utilized to complete the test procedure.

(c) Impact at side: The blocking and restraining shall conform to paragraph (d)(3)(i)(C) and (d)(3)(i)(D) of this section. The point of impact shall be at the upper extremity of the frame at a point most likely to hit the ground first and at a 90 degree angle to the center line of the vehicle as shown in Fig. C-9. The side impact shall be applied to the longitudinal side farthest from the point of rear impact.

(4) Field upset test procedure.

(i) The following test conditions shall be met:

(a) The tractor shall be tested at the weight as defined in § 1928.51(a).

(b) The test shall be conducted on a dry, firm soil bank. The soil in the impact area shall have an average cone index in the 0 to 6 inch (0 to 152 mm) layer of not less than 150. Cone index shall be determined in accordance with American Society of Agricultural Engineers Recommendation ASAE R313.1, Soil Cone Penetrometer (1971).[1] The path of vehicle travel shall be 12±2 degrees to the top edge of the bank.

(c) An 18 in. (457 mm) high ramp as described in Fig. C-10 shall be used to assist in upsetting the vehicle to the side.

(d) The front and rear wheel tread settings, where adjustable, shall be at the position nearest to halfway between the minimum and maximum settings obtainable on the vehicle. Where only two settings are obtainable, the minimum setting shall be used.

(ii) Field upsets shall be induced to the rear and side.

(a) Rear upset shall be induced by engine power with the tractor operating in a gear to obtain 3 to 5 MPH (4.8 to 8.0 km per hour) at maximum governed engine rpm by driving forward directly up a minimum slope of 60°±5° as shown in Fig. C-11 or by an alternative equivalent means. The engine clutch may be used to aid in inducing the upset.

(b) To induce side upset, the tractor shall be driven under its own power along the specified path of travel at a minimum speed of 10 MPH (16 km per hour), or at maximum vehicle speed if under 10 MPH (16 km per hour), and over the ramp as described in paragraph (d)(4)(i)(C) of this section.

(e) Performance requirements.

(1) General requirements.

(i) The frame, overhead weather shield, fenders, or other parts in the operator area may be deformed in these tests but shall not shatter or leave sharp edges exposed to the operator, or encroach on the dimensions shown in Figs. C-2 and C-3 as follows:

d =2 in. (51 mm) inside of frame upright to vertical center line of seat.
e =30 in (762 mm) at the longitudinal centerline.
f =Not greater than 4 in. (102 mm) to rear edge of crossbar, measured forward of the seat reference point (*SRP*).
g =24 in. (610 mm) minimum.
m =Not greater than 12 in. (305 mm) measured from *SRP* to forward edge of crossbar.

(ii) The protective structure and connecting fasteners must pass the static or dynamic tests described in paragraphs (d)(2), (d)(3), or (d)(4) of this section at a metal temperature of 0 degrees fahrenheit or below, or exhibit Charpy V-notch impact strengths as follows:

---

[1] Copies may be obtained from American Society of Agricultural Engineers, 2950 Nils Road, St. Joseph, Michigan 49085.

10 mm × 10 mm specimen: 8 ft.-lb at -20° F.
10 mm × 7.5 mm specimen: 7 ft.-lb at -20° F.
10 mm × 5 mm specimen: 5.5 ft.-lb at -20° F.
10 mm × 2.5 mm specimen: 4 ft.-lb at -20° F.

Specimens shall be longitudinal and taken from flat stock, tubular, or structural sections before forming or welding for use in the frame. Specimens from tubular or structural sections shall be taken from the middle of the side of greatest dimension, not to include welds.

(2) Static test performance requirements. In addition to meeting the requirements of paragraph (e)(1) of this section in both side and rear loads, FER_{is} and FER_{ir} shall be greater than 1, and where the ROPS contains 1 or 2 upright frames only, FSB shall be greater than 1.3.

(3) Dynamic test performance requirements. The structural requirements will be met where the dimensions in paragraph (e)(1) of this section are adhered to in both side and rear loads.

(4) Field upset test performance requirements. The requirements of paragraph (e)(1) of this section shall be met in both side and rear upsets.

1928.53—PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURES FOR WHEEL TYPE AGRICULTURAL TRACTORS—TEST PROCEDURES AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

(a) Purpose. The purpose of this section is to establish the test and performance requirements for a protective enclosure designed for wheel type agricultural tractors to minimize the frequency and severity of operator injury resulting from accidental upset. General requirements for the protection of operators are specified in § 1928.51.

(b) Types of tests. All protective enclosures for wheel type agricultural tractors shall be of a model which has been tested as follows:

(1) Laboratory test. A laboratory energy absorption test, either static or dynamic, under repeatable and controlled loading, to permit analysis of the protective enclosure for compliance with the performance requirements of this standard.

(2) Field upset test. A field upset test under controlled conditions, both to the side and rear, to verify effectiveness of the protective system under actual dynamic conditions. This test may be omitted where:

(i) The analysis of the protective frame static energy absorption test results indicates that both FER_{is} and FER_{ir} (as defined in paragraph (d)(2)(ii) of this section) exceed 1.15 or

(ii) The analysis of the protective frame dynamic energy absorption test results indicates that the frame can withstand an impact 15 percent greater than the impact it is required to withstand for the tractor weight as shown in Fig. C-7.

(c) Description. A protective enclosure is a structure comprising a frame and/or enclosure mounted to the tractor. A typical enclosure is shown in Figure C-12.

(d) Test procedures.

(1) General.

(i) The tractor weight used shall be that of the heaviest tractor model on which the protective enclosure is to be used.

(ii) Each test required under this section shall be performed on a protective enclosure with new structural members. Mounting connections of the same design shall be used during each test.

(iii) Instantaneous deflection shall be measured and recorded for each segment of the test. See paragraph (e)(1)(i) of this section for permissible deflection.

(iv) Seat reference point *(SRP)* in Fig. C-14) is that point where the vertical line that is tangent to the most forward point at the longitudinal seat centerline of the seat back, and the horizontal line that is tangent to the highest point of the seat cushion intersect in the longitudinal seat section. The seat reference point shall be determined with the seat unloaded and adjusted to the highest and most rearward position provided for seated operations of the tractor.

(v) Where the centerline of the seat is off the longitudinal center, the protective enclosure loading shall be on the side with least space between the centerline of the seat and the protective enclosure.

(vi) Low temperature characteristics of the protective enclosure or its material shall be demonstrated as specified in paragraph (e)(1)(ii) of this section.

(vii) Rear input energy tests (static, dynamic, or field upset) need not be performed on enclosures mounted to tractors having 4 driven wheels and more than one-half their unballasted weight on the front wheels:

(viii) Accuracy table:

Measurements	*Accuracy*
Deflection of enclosure, inches (millimeters)	±5 percent of deflection measured.
Vehicle weight, pounds (kilograms)	±5 percent of the weight measured.
Force applied to frame, pounds force (newtons).	±5 percent of force measured.
Dimensions of critical zone, inches (millimeters)	±0.5 inch (12.5 millimeters).

(ix) Where movable or normally removable portions of the enclosure add to structural strength, they shall be placed in configurations that contribute least to the structural strength during the test.

(2) Static test procedure.

(i) The following test conditions shall be met:

(a) The laboratory mounting base shall be the tractor chassis for which the protective enclosure is designed or its equivalent.

(b) The protective enclosure shall be instrumented with the necessary equipment to obtain the required load deflection data at the locations and directions as specified in Figs. C-13 and C-14.

(ii) The following definitions shall apply:

W =Tractor weight (see § 1928.51 (a) in lb. (W' in kg.).

E_{is} =Energy input to be absorbed during side loading in ft-lb (E'_{is} in m-kg.).

E_{is} =723+0.4 W (E'_{is}=100+0.12 W').

E_{ir} =Energy input to be absorbed during rear loading in ft-lb (E'_{ir} in m-kg.).

E_{ir} =0.47 W (E'_{ir} =0.14 W').

L =Static load, lbf (N)

D =Deflection under L, in. (mm).

$L-D$ =Static load-deflection diagram.

L_{max} =Maximum observed static load.

Load Limit =Point on a continuous $L-D$ curve where observed static load is 0.8 L_{max} on down slope of curve (refer to Fig. C-5).

E_u =Strain energy absorbed by the frame, ft-lb (m-kg). Area under $L-D$ curve

FER =Factor of energy ratio.

$$FER_{is}=\frac{E_u}{E_{is}}$$

$$FER_{ir}=\frac{E_u}{E_{ir}}$$

(iii) The test procedures shall be as follows:

(a) When the protective frame structures are not an integral part of the enclosure, the direction and point of load application for both side and rear shall be the same as specified in § 1928.52 (d)(2).

(b) When the protective frame structures are an integral part of the enclosure, apply the rear load in accordance with Fig. C-14 and record $L$and D simultaneously. Rear load application shall be uniformly distributed on the frame structure over an area perpendicular to the load application, no greater than 160 sq. in. (1032 sq. cm.) in size with a largest dimension no greater than 27 in. (686 mm). The load shall be applied to the upper extremity of the structure at the point which is midway between the centerline of the protective enclosure and the inside of the protective structure. If no structural cross member exists at the rear of the enclosure, a substitute test beam which does not add strength to the structure may be utilized to complete this test procedure. The test shall be stopped when:

(1) The strain energy absorbed by the structure is equal to or greater than the required input Energy E_{ir} or;

(2) Deflection of the structure exceeds the allowable deflection, (see paragraph (e)(1)(i) of this section) or;

(3) The structure load limit (see Fig. C-5) occurs before the allowable deflection is reached in rear load.

(c) Using data obtained in paragraph (d)(2)(iii)(B) of this section, construct the $L-D$ diagram for rear loads as shown typically in Fig. C-5.

(d) Calculate E_{ir}.

(e) Calculate FER_{ir}.

(f) When the protective frame structures are an integral part of the enclosure, apply the side load in accordance with Fig. C-13 and record L and D simultaneously. Static side load application shall be uniformly distributed on the frame over an area perpendicular to the direction of load application, and no greater than 160 sq. in. (1032 sq. cm.) in size, with a largest dimension no greater than 27 in. (686 mm). Side load application shall be at a 90 degree angle to the center line of the vehicle. The center of side load application shall be located between a point "*k*", 24 in. (610 mm) forward; and point "*l*", 12 in. (305 mm) rearward of the seat reference point to best utilize the structural strength (see Fig. C-13). This side load shall be applied to the longitudinal side farthest from the point of rear load application. The test shall be stopped when:

(1 The strain energy absorbed by the structure is equal to or greater than the required input energy E_{is}; or

(2) Deflection of the structure exceeds the allowable deflection (see paragraph (e)(1)(i) of this section); or

(3) The structure load limit (see Figure C-5) occurs before the allowable deflection is reached in side load.

(g) Using data obtained in paragraph (d)(2)(iii)(F) of this section construct the $L-D$ diagram for side load as shown typically in Fig. C-5.

(h) Calculate FER_{is}.

(i) Calculate FER_{is}.

(3) Dynamic test procedure.

(i) The following test conditions shall be met:

(a) The protective enclosure and tractor shall be tested at the weight defined in § 1928.51(a).

(b) The dynamic loading shall be accomplished by use of a 4410 lb. (2000 kg) weight acting as a pendulum. The impact face of the weight shall be 27±1 in. by 27±1 in. (686±25 mm by 686±25 mm) and shall be constructed so that its center of gravity is within 1 in. (25.4 mm) of its geometric center. The weight shall be suspended from a pivot point 18 to 22 ft. (5.5-6.7 m) above the point of impact on the enclosure and shall be conveniently and safely adjustable for height. (See Fig. C-6).

(c) For each phase of testing, the tractor shall be restrained from moving when the dynamic load is applied. The restraining members shall have strength no less than, and elasticity no greater than that of 0.50

in. (12.7 mm) steel cable. Points of attachment of restraining members shall be located an appropriate distance behind the rear axle and in front of the front axle to provide a 15 to 30 degree angle between the restraining cable and the horizontal. For the impact from the rear, the restraining cables shall be located in the plane in which the center of gravity of the pendulum will swing, or alternatively, two sets of symmetrically located cables may be used at lateral locations on the tractor. For the impact from the side, restraining cables shall be used as shown in Figures C-15 and C-16.

(d) The front and rear wheel tread settings, where adjustable, shall be at the position nearest to halfway between the minimum and maximum settings obtainable on the vehicle. Where only two settings are obtainable, the minimum setting shall be used. The tires shall have no liquid ballast and shall be inflated to the maximum operating pressure recommended by the manufacturer. With specified tire inflation, the restraining cable shall be tightened to provide tire deflection of 6 to 8 percent of nominal tire section width. After the vehicle is properly restrained, a wooden beam no smaller than 6 × 6 in. (150 × 150 mm) cross-section shall be driven tightly against the appropriate wheels and clamped. For the test to the side, an additional wooden beam shall be placed as a prop against the wheel nearest the operator's station and shall be secured to the base so that it is held tightly against the wheel rim during impact. The length of this beam shall be chosen so that it is at an angle of 25 to 40 degrees to the horizontal when it is positioned against the wheel rim. It shall have a length of 20 to 25 times its depth and width 2 to 3 times its depth. (See Fig. C-15 and C-16.)

(e) Means shall be provided for indicating the maximum instantaneous deflection along the line of impact. A simple friction device is illustrated in Fig. C-4.

(f) No repair or adjustments shall be made during the test.

(g) If any cables, props, or blocking shift or break during the test, the test shall be repeated.

(ii) H = Vertical height of center of gravity of 4410 lb. (2000 kg) weight in inches (H' in mm). The weight shall be pulled back so that the height of its center of gravity above the point of impact is: $H = 4.92 + 0.00190\ W$ or ($H' = 125 + 0.107\ W'$). (Fig. C-7.)

(iii) The test procedures shall be as follows:

(a) The enclosure structure shall be evaluated by imposing dynamic loading from the rear followed by a load to the side on the same enclosure structure. The pendulum swinging from the height determined by paragraph (d)(3)(ii) of this section shall be used to impose the dynamic load. The position of the pendulum shall be so selected that the initial point of impact on the protective structure is in line with the arc of travel of the center of gravity of the pendulum. Where a quick release mechanism is used, it shall not influence the attitude of the block.

(b) Impact at rear: The tractor shall be properly restrained in accordance with paragraphs (d)(3)(i)(C) and (d)(3)(i)(D) of this section. The tractor shall be positioned with respect to the pivot point of the pendulum so that the pendulum is 20 degrees from the vertical prior to impact as shown in Fig. C-15. The impact shall be applied to the upper extremity of the enclosure structure at the point which is midway between the center line of the enclosure structure and the inside of the protective structure. If no structural cross member exists at the rear of the enclosure structure, a substitute test beam which does not add to the strength of the structure may be utilized to complete the test procedure.

(c) Impact at side: The blocking and restraining shall conform to paragraph (d)(3)(i)(C) and (d)(3)(i)(D) of this section. The center point of impact shall be at the upper extremity of the enclosure at a 90 angle to the centerline of the vehicle and located between a point "*k*", 24 in. (610 mm) forward, and a point "l", 12 in. (305 mm) rearward of the seat reference point, to best utilize the structural strength. (See Fig. C-13.) The side impact shall be applied to the longitudinal side farthest from the point of rear impact.

(4) Field upset test procedure.

(i) The following test conditions shall be met:

(a) The tractor shall be tested at the weight as defined in § 1928.51(a).

(b) The test shall be conducted on a dry, firm soil bank. The soil in the impact area shall have an average cone index in the 0 to 6 inch (0 to 152 mm) layer of not less than 150. Cone index shall be determined in accordance with American Society of Agricultural Engineers Recommendation ASAE R313.1, Soil Cone Penetrometer (1971).[1] The path of vehicle travel shall be 12±2 degrees to the top edge of bank.

(c) An 18 in. (457 mm) high ramp as described in Fig. C-10 shall be used to assist in upsetting the vehicle to the side.

(d) The front and rear wheel tread settings, where adjustable, shall be at the position nearest to halfway between the minimum and maximum settings obtainable on the vehicle. Where only two settings are obtainable, the minimum setting shall be used.

(ii) Field upsets shall be induced to the rear and side.

(a) Rear upset shall be induced by engine power with the tractor operating in a gear to obtain 3 to 5 MPH (4.8 to 8.0 km per hour) at maximum governed engine rpm by driving forward directly up a minimum slope of 60°±5° as shown in Fig. C-11 or by an alternate equivalent means. The engine clutch may be used to aid in inducing the upset.

(b) To induce side upset, the tractor shall be driven under its own power along the specified path of travel at a minimum speed of 10 MPH (16 km per hour), or at maximum vehicle speed if under 10 MPH (16 km per hour), and over the ramp as described in paragraph (d)(4)(i)(C) of this section.

(e) Performance requirements.

(1) General requirements.

(i) The protective enclosure structural members or other parts in the operator area may be deformed in these tests but shall not shatter or leave sharp edges exposed to the operator. They shall not encroach on a transverse plane passing through points *d* and *f* within the projected area defined by dimensions *d*, *e*, and *g* or on the dimensions shown in Figs. C-13, and C-14 as follows:

d—2 in. (51 mm) inside of protective structure to vertical centerline of seat.
e—30 in (762 mm) at the longitudinal centerline.
f—Not greater than 4 in. (102 mm) measured forward of the seat reference point (*SRP*) at the longitudinal centerline as shown in Fig. C-14.
g—24 in. (610 mm) minimum.
h—17.5 in. (445 mm) minimum.
i—2.0 in. (51 mm) measured from outer periphery of steering wheel.

(ii) The protective structure and connecting fasteners must pass the static or dynamic tests described in paragraphs (d)(2), (d)(3), or (d)(4) of this section at a metal temperature of 0 degrees fahrenheit or below, or exhibit Charpy V-notch impact strengths as follows:

10 mm × 10 mm specimen: 8 ft.-lb at −20° F.
10 mm × 7.5 mm specimen: 7 ft.-lb at −20° F.
10 mm × 5 mm specimen: 5.5 ft.-lb at −20° F.
10 mm × 2.5 mm specimen: 4 ft.-lb at −20° F.

Specimens shall be longitudinal and taken from flat stock, tubular, or structural sections before forming or welding for use in the protective enclosure. Specimens from tubular or structural sections shall be taken from the middle of the side of greatest dimension, not to include welds.

(iii) Glazing shall conform to the requirements contained in Society of Automotive

---

[1] Copies may be obtained from American Society of Agricultural Engineers, 2950 Nils Road, St. Joseph, Michigan 49085.

Engineers Standard SAE J674, Safety Glazing Materials (1963).[2]

(iv) Two or more operator exits shall be provided and positioned to avoid the possibility of both being blocked by the same accident.

(2) Static test performance requirements. In addition to meeting the requirements of paragraph (e)(1) of this section in both side and rear loads, FER_{is} and FER_{ir} shall be greater than 1.

(3) Dynamic test performance requirements. The structural requirements will be met where the dimensions in paragraph (e)(1) of this section are adhered to in both side and rear loads.

(4) Field upset test performance requirements. The requirements of paragraph (e)(1) of this section shall be met in both side and rear upsets.

---

[2] Copies may be obtained from the Society of Automotive Engineers, 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, Pa. 15096.

APPENDICES TO SUBPART C

APPENDIX A—EMPLOYEE OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

1. Securely fasten your seat belt if the tractor has a ROPS.
2. Where possible, avoid operating the tractor near ditches, embankments, and holes.
3. Reduce speed when turning, crossing slopes, and on rough, slick, or muddy surfaces.
4. Stay off slopes too steep for safe operation.
5. Watch where you are going, especially at row ends, on roads, and around trees.
6. Do not permit others to ride.
7. Operate the tractor smoothly—no jerky turns, starts, or stops.
8. Hitch only to the drawbar and hitch points recommended by tractor manufacturers.
9. When tractor is stopped, set brakes securely and use park lock if available.

Appendix B—Figures C-1—C-16

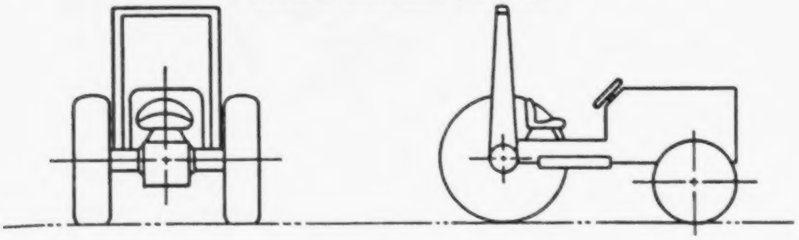


Fig. C-1 TRACTOR WITH TYPICAL PROTECTIVE FRAME

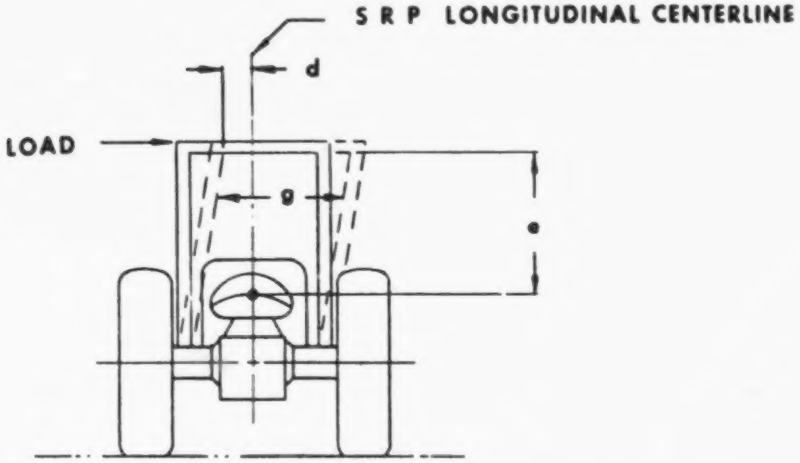

S R P LONGITUDINAL CENTERLINE
d
LOAD
g
e

Fig. C-2 SIDE LOAD APPLICATION

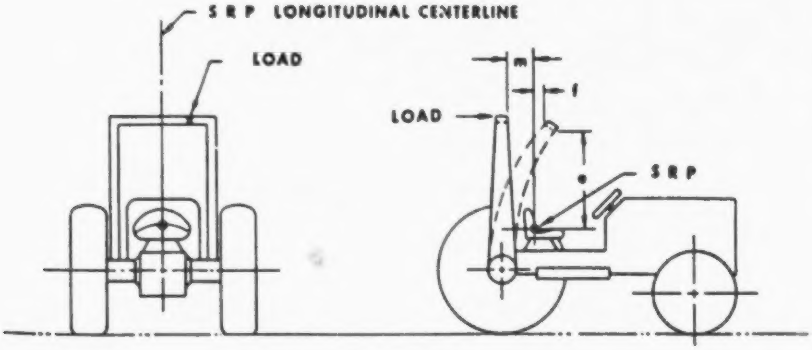

S R P LONGITUDINAL CENTERLINE
LOAD
m
f
LOAD
e
S R P

Fig. C-3 REAR LOAD APPLICATION

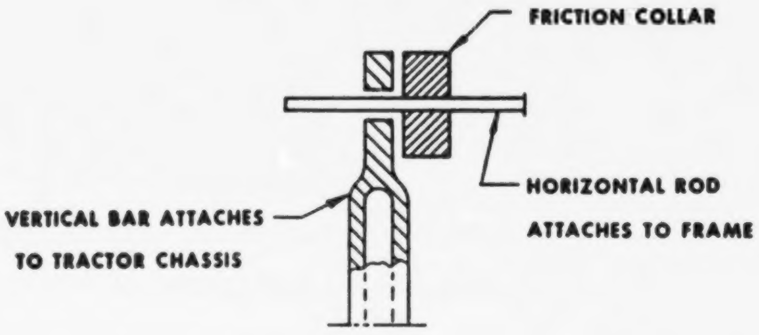

FRICTION COLLAR
HORIZONTAL ROD
ATTACHES TO FRAME
VERTICAL BAR ATTACHES
TO TRACTOR CHASSIS

Fig. C-4 TYPICAL METHOD OF MEASURING DEFLECTION

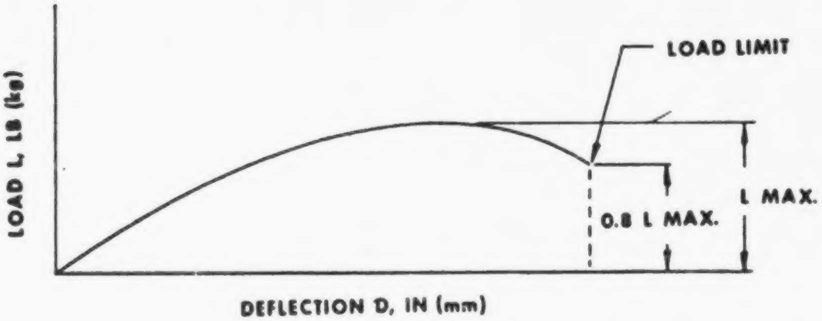


Fig. C-5 TYPICAL L-D DIAGRAM

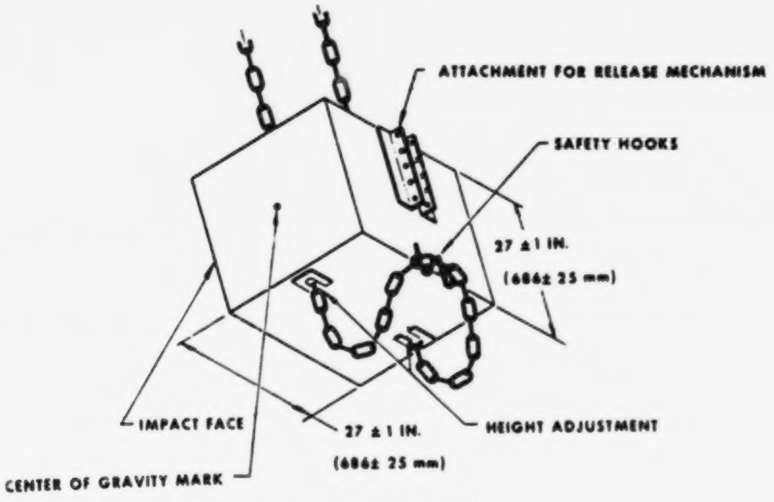

ATTACHMENT FOR RELEASE MECHANISM
SAFETY HOOKS
27 ± 1 IN.
(686± 25 mm)
IMPACT FACE
27 ± 1 IN.
(686± 25 mm)
HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT
CENTER OF GRAVITY MARK

Fig. C-6 **PENDULUM**

NOTATION OF FORMULAE

$H = 4.92 + 0.00190\ W$ OR $(H' = 125 + 0.107\ W')$

W = TRACTOR WEIGHT AS DEFINED IN PARAGRAPH 3.2 IN POUNDS (W' = kg)

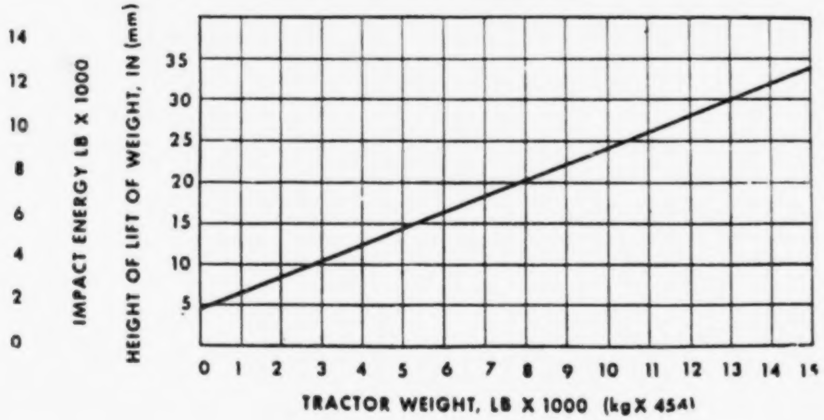


FIG. C-7 IMPACT ENERGY AND CORRESPONDING LIFT HEIGHT OF 4410 LB. (2000 kg) WEIGHT

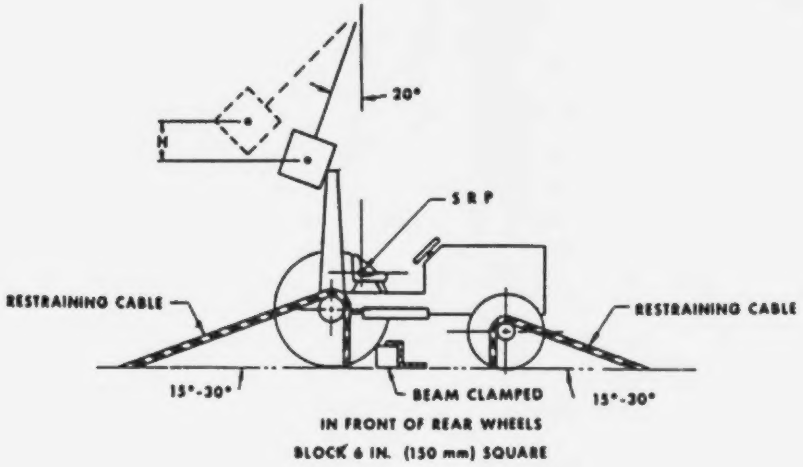

20°
H
S R P
RESTRAINING CABLE
RESTRAINING CABLE
15°-30°
15°-30°
BEAM CLAMPED
IN FRONT OF REAR WHEELS
BLOCK 6 IN. (150 mm) SQUARE

Fig. C-8 REAR IMPACT APPLICATION

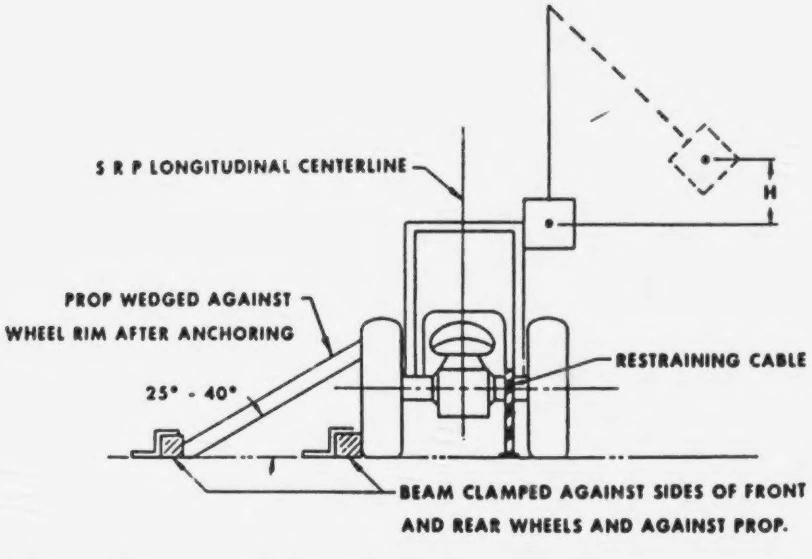

S R P LONGITUDINAL CENTERLINE
H
PROP WEDGED AGAINST
WHEEL RIM AFTER ANCHORING
RESTRAINING CABLE
25° - 40°
BEAM CLAMPED AGAINST SIDES OF FRONT
AND REAR WHEELS AND AGAINST PROP.

Fig. C-9 SIDE IMPACT APPLICATION

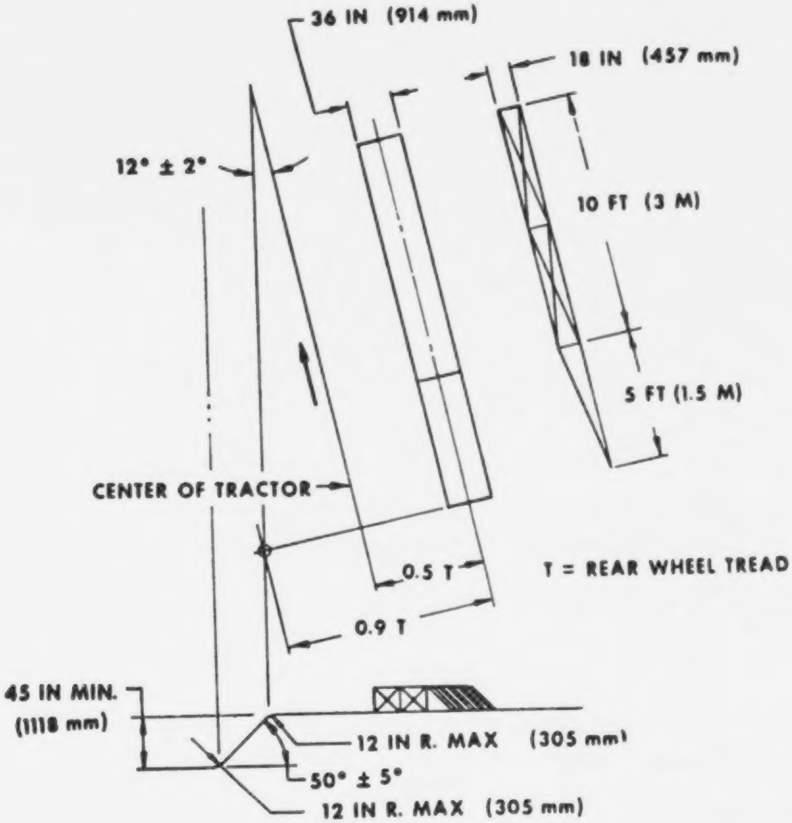

36 IN (914 mm)
18 IN (457 mm)
12° ± 2°
10 FT (3 M)
5 FT (1.5 M)
CENTER OF TRACTOR
0.5 T
T = REAR WHEEL TREAD
0.9 T
45 IN MIN.
(1118 mm)
12 IN R. MAX (305 mm)
50° ± 5°
12 IN R. MAX (305 mm)

Fig. C-10 SIDE OVERTURN BANK AND RAMP

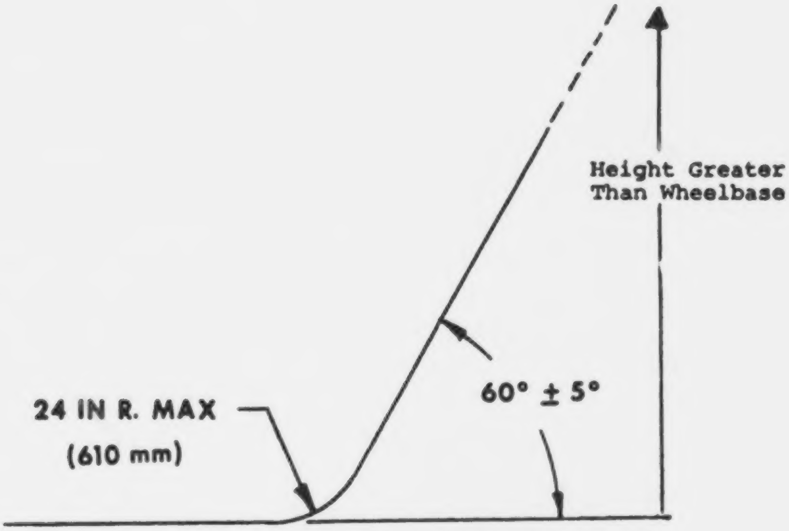

Height Greater
Than Wheelbase
60° ± 5°
24 IN R. MAX
(610 mm)

Fig. C-11 **TYPICAL REAR OVERTURN BANK**

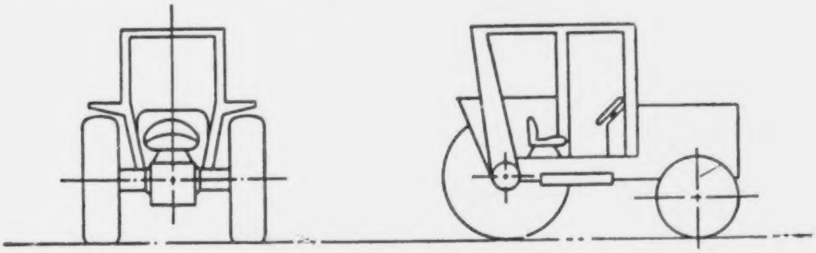


Fig. C-12 **TRACTOR WITH TYPICAL PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURE**

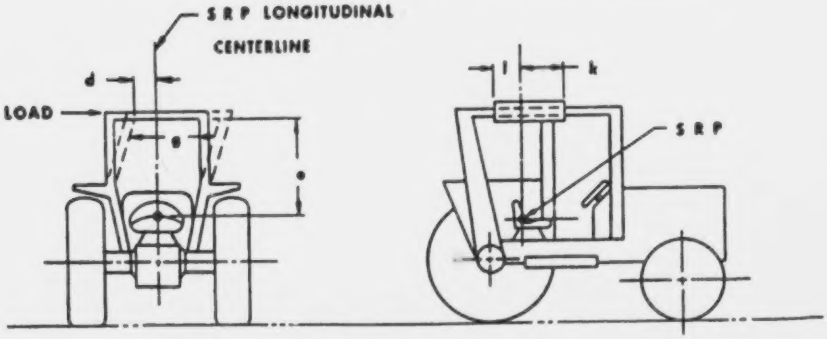

S R P LONGITUDINAL
CENTERLINE
d
LOAD
g
e
l
k
S R P

Fig. C-13 **SIDE LOAD APPLICATION**

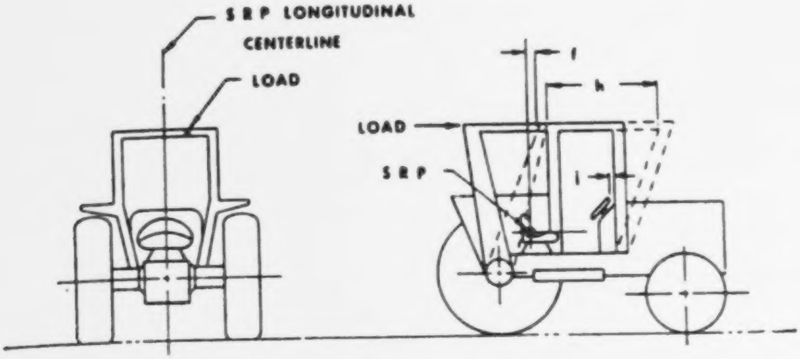

S R P LONGITUDINAL CENTERLINE
LOAD
f
h
LOAD
S R P
i

Fig. C-14 REAR LOAD APPLICATION

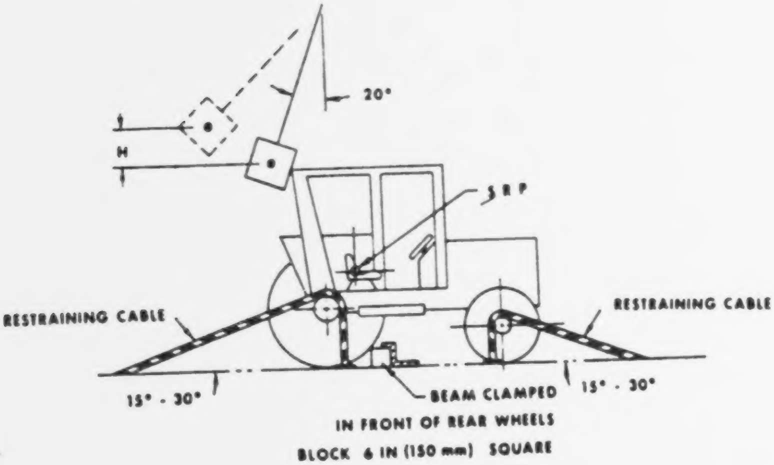

20°
H
S R P
RESTRAINING CABLE
RESTRAINING CABLE
15° - 30°
15° - 30°
BEAM CLAMPED
IN FRONT OF REAR WHEELS
BLOCK 6 IN (150 mm) SQUARE

Fig. C-15 REAR IMPACT APPLICATION

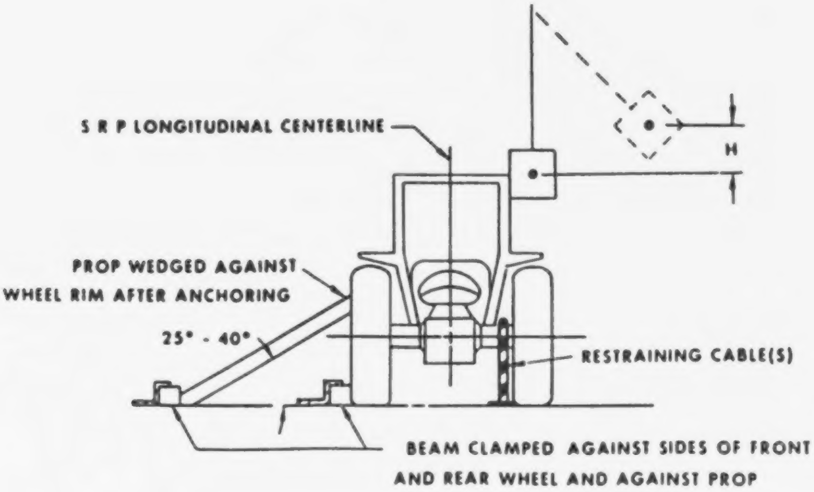

S R P LONGITUDINAL CENTERLINE
H
PROP WEDGED AGAINST WHEEL RIM AFTER ANCHORING
25° - 40°
RESTRAINING CABLE(S)
BEAM CLAMPED AGAINST SIDES OF FRONT AND REAR WHEEL AND AGAINST PROP

FIG. C-16 SIDE IMPACT APPLICATION

Subpart D—Safety for Agricultural Equipment

1928.57—Guarding of farm field equipment, farmstead equipment, and cotton gins

(a) General.

(1) Purpose. The purpose of this section is to provide for the protection of employees from the hazards associated with moving machinery parts of farm field equipment, farmstead equipment, and cotton gins used in any agricultural operation.

(2) Scope. Paragraph (a) of this section contains general requirements which apply to all covered equipment. In addition, paragraph (b) of this section applies to farm field equipment, paragraph (c) of this section applies to farmstead equipment, and paragraph (d) of this section applies to cotton gins.

(3) Application. This section applies to all farm field equipment, farmstead equipment, and cotton gins, except that paragraphs (b)(2), (b)(3), and (b)(4)(ii)(a), and (c)(2), (c)(3), and (c)(ii)(a) do not apply to equipment manufactured before October 25, 1976.

(4) Effective date. This section takes effect on October 25, 1976, except that paragraph (d) of this section is effective on June 30, 1977.

[41 F.R. 22267, June 2 1976.]

(5) Definitions. "*Cotton gins*" are systems of machines which condition seed cotton, separate lint from seed, convey materials, and package lint cotton.

"*Farm field equipment*" means tractors or implements, including self-propelled implements, or any combination thereof used in agricultural operations.

"*Farmstead equipment*" means agricultural equipment normally used in a stationary manner. This includes, but is not limited to, materials handling equipment and accessories for such equipment whether or not the equipment is an integral part of a building.

"*Ground driven components*" are components which are powered by the turning motion of a wheel as the equipment travels over the ground.

A "*guard*" or "*shield*" is a barrier designed to protect against employee contact with a hazard created by a moving machinery part.

[41 F.R. 46598, October 22, 1976.]

"*Power take-off shafts*" are the shafts and knuckles between the tractor, or other power source, and the first gear set, pulley, sprocket, or other components on power take-off shaft driven equipment.

(6) Operating instructions. At the time of initial assignment and at least annually thereafter, the employer shall instruct every employee in the safe operation and servicing of all covered equipment with which he is or will be involved, including at least the following safe operating practices:

(i) Keep all guards in place when the machine is in operation;

(ii) Permit no riders on farm field equipment other than persons required for instruction or assistance in machine operation;

(iii) Stop engine, disconnect the power source, and wait for all machine movement to stop before servicing, adjusting, cleaning, or unclogging the equipment, except where the machine must be running to be properly serviced or maintained, in which case the employer shall instruct employees as to all steps and procedures which are necessary to safely service or maintain the equipment;

(iv) Make sure everyone is clear of machinery before starting the engine, engaging power, or operating the machine;

(v) Lock out electrical power before performing maintenance or service on farmstead equipment.

(7) Methods of guarding. Except as otherwise provided in this subpart, each employer shall protect employees from coming into contact with hazards created by moving machinery parts as follows:

[41 F.R. 46598, October 22, 1976.]

(i) Through the installation and use of a guard or shield or guarding by location;

(ii) Whenever a guard or shield or guarding by location is infeasible, by using a guardrail or fence.

(8) Strength and design of guards.

(i) Where guards are used to provide the protection required by this section, they shall be designed and located to protect against inadvertent contact with the hazard being guarded.

[41 F.R. 46598, October 22, 1976.]

(ii) Unless otherwise specified, each guard and its supports shall be capable of withstanding the force that a 250 pound individual, leaning on or falling against the guard, would exert upon that guard.

(iii) Guards shall be free from burrs, sharp edges, and sharp corners, and shall be securely fastened to the equipment or building.

(9) Guarding by location. A component is guarded by location during operation, maintenance, or servicing when, because of its location, no employee can inadvertently come in contact with the hazard during such operation, maintenance, or servicing. Where the employer can show that any exposure to hazards results from employee conduct which constitutes an isolated and unforeseeable event, the component shall also be considered guarded by location.

(10) Guarding by railings. Guardrails or fences shall be capable of protecting against employees inadvertently entering the hazardous area.

[41 F.R. 46598, October 22, 1976.]

(11) Servicing and maintenance. Whenever a moving machinery part presents a hazard during servicing or maintenance, the engine shall be stopped, the power source disconnected, and all machine movement stopped before servicing or maintenance is performed, except where the employer can establish that:

(i) the equipment must be running to be properly serviced or maintained;

(ii) the equipment cannot be serviced or maintained while a guard or guards otherwise required by this standard are in place; and

(iii) the servicing or maintenance can be safely performed.

[41 F.R. 46598, October 22, 1976.]

(b) Farm field equipment.

(1) Power take-off guarding.

(i) All power take-off shafts, including rear, mid- or side-mounted shafts, shall be guarded either by a master shield, as provided in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section, or by other protective guarding.

(ii) All tractors shall be equipped with an agricultural tractor master shield on the rear power take-off except where removal of the tractor master shield is permitted by paragraph (b)(1)(iii) of this section. The master shield shall have sufficient strength to prevent permanent deformation of the shield when a 250 pound operator mounts or dismounts the tractor using the shield as a step.

(iii) Power take-off driven equipment shall be guarded to protect against employee contact with positively driven rotating members of the power drive system. Where power take-off driven equipment is of a design requiring removal of the tractor master shield, the equipment shall also include protection from that portion of the tractor power take-off shaft which protrudes from the tractor.

[41 F.R. 46598, October 22, 1976.]

(iv) Signs shall be placed at prominent locations on tractors and power take-off driven equipment specifying that power drive system safety shields must be kept in place.

(2) Other power transmission components.

(i) The mesh or nip-points of all power driven gears, belts, chains, sheaves, pulleys, sprockets, and idlers shall be guarded.

(ii) All revolving shafts, including projections such as bolts, keys, or set screws, shall be guarded, except smooth shaft ends protruding less than one-half the outside diameter of the shaft and its locking means.

(iii) Ground driven components shall be guarded in accordance with paragraphs (b)(2)(i) and (b)(2)(ii) of this section if any employee may be exposed to them while the drives are in motion.

(3) Functional components. Functional components, such as snapping or husking rolls, straw spreaders and choppers, cutterbars, flail rotors, rotary beaters, mixing augers, feed rolls, conveying augers, rotary tillers, and similar units, which must be exposed for proper function, shall be guarded to the fullest extent which will not substantially interfere with normal functioning of the component.

(4) Access to moving parts.

(i) Guards, shields, and access doors shall be in place when the equipment is in operation.

(ii) Where removal of a guard or access door will expose an employee to any component which continues to rotate after the power is disengaged, the employer shall provide, in the immediate area, the following:

(a) A readily visible or audible warning of rotation; and

(b) A safety sign warning the employee to:

(1) look and listen for evidence of rotation; and

(2) not remove the guard or access door until all components have stopped.

(c) Farmstead equipment.

(1) Power take-off guarding

(i) All power take-off shafts, including rear, mid-, or side-mounted shafts, shall be guarded either by a master shield as provided in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section or other protective guarding.

(ii) Power take-off driven equipment shall be guarded to protect against employee contact with positively driven rotating members of the power drive system. Where power take-off driven equipment is of a design requiring removal of the tractor master shield, the equipment shall also include protection from that portion of the tractor power take-off shaft which protrudes from the tractor.

[41 F.R. 46598, October 22, 1976.]

(iii) Signs shall be placed at prominent locations on power take-off driven equipment specifying that power drive system safety shields must be kept in place.

(2) Other power transmission components.

(i) The mesh or nip-points of all power driven gears, belts, chains, sheaves, pulleys, sprockets, and idlers shall be guarded.

(ii) All revolving shafts, including projections such as bolts, keys, or set screws, shall be guarded, with the exception of:

(a) smooth shafts and shaft ends (without any projecting bolts, keys, or set screws), revolving at less than 10 rpm, on feed handling equipment used on the top surface of materials in bulk storage facilities; and

(b) smooth shaft ends protruding less than one-half the outside diameter of the shaft and its locking means.

(3) Functional components.

(i) Functional components, such as choppers, rotary beaters, mixing augers, feed rolls, conveying augers, grain spreaders, stirring augers, sweep augers, and feed augers, which must be exposed for proper function, shall be guarded to the fullest extent which will not substantially interfere with the normal functioning of the component.

(ii) Sweep arm material gathering mechanisms used on the top surface of materials within silo structures shall be guarded. The lower or leading edge of the guard shall be located no more than 12 inches above the material surface and no less than 6 inches in front of the leading edge of the rotating member of the gathering mechanism. The guard shall be parallel to, and extend the fullest practical length of, the material gathering mechanism.

(iii) Exposed auger flighting on portable grain augers shall be guarded with either grating type guards or solid baffle style covers as follows:

(a) The largest dimensions or openings in grating type guards through which materials are required to flow shall be $4^3/_4$ inches. The area of each opening shall be no larger than 10 square inches. The opening shall be located no closer to the rotating flighting than $2^1/_2$ inches.

(b) Slotted openings in solid baffle style covers shall be no wider than $1^1/_2$ inches, or closer than $3^1/_2$ inches to the exposed flighting.

(4) Access to moving parts.

(i) Guards, shields, and access doors shall be in place when the equipment is in operation.

(ii) Where removal of a guard or access door will expose an employee to any component which continues to rotate after the power is disengaged, the employer shall provide, in the immediate area, the following:

(a) A readily visible or audible warning of rotation; and

(b) A safety sign warning the employee to:

(1) look and listen for evidence of rotation; and

(2) not remove the guard or access door until all components have stopped.

(5) Electrical disconnect means.

(i) Application of electrical power from a location not under the immediate and exclusive control of the employee or employees maintaining or servicing equipment shall be prevented by:

(a) providing an exclusive, positive locking means on the main switch which can be operated only by the employee or employees performing the maintenance or servicing; or

(b) in the case of material handling equipment located in a bulk storage structure, by physically locating on the equipment an electrical or mechanical means to disconnect the power.

(ii) All circuit protection devices, including those which are an integral part of a motor, shall be of the manual reset type, except where:

(a) the employer can establish that because of the nature of the operation, distances involved, and the amount of time normally spent by employees in the area of the affected equipment, use of the manual reset device would be infeasible;

(b) there is an electrical disconnect switch available to the employee within 15 feet of the equipment upon which maintenance or service is being performed; and

(c) a sign is prominently posted near each hazardous component which warns the employee that unless the electrical disconnect switch is utilized, the motor could automatically reset while the employee is working on the hazardous component.

(d) Cotton ginning equipment.

(1) Power transmission components.

(i) The main drive and miscellaneous drives of gin stands shall be completely enclosed, guarded by location, or guarded by railings (consistent with the requirements of paragraph (a)(7) of this section). Drives between gin stands shall be guarded so as to prevent access to the area between machines.

(ii) When guarded by railings, any hazardous component within 15 horizontal inches of the rail shall be completely enclosed. Railing height shall be approximately 42 inches off the floor, platform, or other working surface, with a midrail between the toprail and the working surface. Panels made of materials conforming to the requirements in Table D–1, or equivalent, may be substituted for midrails. Guardrails shall be strong enough to withstand at least 200 pounds force on the toprail.

(iii) Belts guarded by railings shall be inspected for defects at least daily. The machinery shall not be operated until all defective belts are replaced.

TABLE D–1.—*Examples of minimum requirements for guard panel materials*

Material	Clearance from moving part at all points	Largest mesh or opening allowable	Minimum gage (U.S. standard) or thickness
	Inches	*Inches*	
Woven wire	Under 2	3/8	16
	2 to 4	1/2	16
	4 to 15	2	12
Expanded metal.	Under 4	1/2	18
	4 to 15	2	13
Perforated metal.	Under 4	1/2	20
	4 to 15	2	14
Sheet metal	Under 4		22
	4 to 15		22
Plastic	Under 4		(1)
	4 to 15		(1)

[1] Tensile strength of 10,000 lb/in ^{2}.

(iv) Pulleys of V-belt drives shall be completely enclosed or guarded by location whether or not railings are present. The open end of the pulley guard shall be not less than 4 inches from the periphery of the pulleys.

(v) Chains and sprockets shall be completely enclosed, except that they may be guarded by location if the bearings are packed or if accessible extension lubrication fittings are used.

(vi) Where complete enclosure of a component is likely to cause a fire hazard due to excessive deposits of lint, only the face section of nip-point and pulley guards is required. The guard shall extend at least 6 inches beyond the rim of the pulley on the in-running and off-running sides of the belt, and at least 2 inches from the rim and face of the pulley in all other directions.

(vii) Projecting shaft ends not guarded by location shall present a smooth edge and end, shall be guarded by non-rotating caps or safety sleeves, and may not protrude more than one-half the outside diameter of the shaft.

(viii) In power plants and power development rooms where access is limited to authorized personnel, guard railings may be used in place of guards or guarding by location. Authorized employees having access to power plants and power development rooms shall be instructed in the safe operation and maintenance of the equipment in accordance with paragraph (a)(6) of this section.

(2) Functional components.

(i) Gin stands shall be provided with a permanently installed guard designed to preclude contact with the gin saws while in motion. The saw blades in the roll box shall be considered guarded by location if they do not extend through the ginning ribs into the roll box when the breast is in the out position.

(ii) Moving saws on lint cleaners which have doors giving access to the saws shall be guarded by fixed barrier guards or their equivalent which prevent direct finger or hand contact with the saws while the saws are in motion.

(iii) An interlock shall be installed on all balers so that the upper gates cannot be opened while the tramper is operating.

(iv) Top panels of burr extrators shall be hinged and equipped with a sturdy positive latch.

(v) All accessible screw conveyors shall be guarded by substantial covers or gratings, or with an inverted horizontally slotted guard of the trough type, which will prevent employees from coming into contact with the screw conveyor. Such guards may consist of horizontal bars spaced so as to allow material to be fed into the conveyor, and supported by arches which are not more than 8 feet apart. Screw conveyors under gin stands shall be considered guarded by location.

(3) **Warning device**. A warning device shall be installed in all gins to provide an audible signal which will indicate to employees that any or all of the machines comprising the gin are about to be started. The signal shall be of sufficient volume to be heard by employees, and shall be sounded each time before starting the gin.

[41 F.R. 10190, March 9, 1976.]

1928—SUBPARTS E–H—[RESERVED]

SUBPART I—GENERAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

1928.110—FIELD SANITATION

(a) Scope. This section shall apply to any agricultural establishment where eleven (11) or more employees are engaged on any given day in hand-labor operations in the field.

(b) Definitions. "Agricultural employer" means any person, corporation, association, or other legal entity that:

(i) Owns or operates an agricultural establishment;

(ii) Contracts with the owner or operator of an agricultural establishment in advance of production of the purchase of a crop and exercises substantial control over production; or

(iii) Recruits and supervises employees or is responsible for the management and condition of an agricultural establishment.

"Agricultural establishment" is a business operation that uses paid employees in the production of food, fiber, or other materials such as seed, seedlings, plants, or parts of plants.

"Hand-labor operations" means agricultural activities or agricultural operations performed by hand or with hand tools. Except for purposes of paragraph (c)(2)(iii) of this section, "hand-labor operations" also include other activities or operations performed in conjunction with hand labor in the field. Some examples of "hand-labor operations" are the hand-cultivation, hand-weeding, hand-planting and hand-harvesting of vegetables, nuts, fruits, seedlings or other crops, including mushrooms, and the hand packing of produce into containers, whether done on the ground, on a moving machine or in a temporary packing shed located in the field. "Hand-labor" does not include such activities as logging operations, the care or feeding of livestock, or hand-labor operations in permanent structures (e.g., canning facilities or packing houses).

"Handwashing facility" means a facility providing either a basin, container, or outlet with an adequate supply of potable water, soap and single-use towels.

"Potable water" means water that meets the standards of drinking purposes of the state or local authority having jurisdiction or water that meets the quality standards prescribed by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's National Interim Primary Drinking Water Regulations, published in 40 CFR Part 141.

"Toilet facility" means a fixed or portable facility designed for the purpose of adequate collection and containment of the products of both defecation and urination which is supplied with toilet paper adequate to employee needs. Toilet facility includes biological, chemical, flush and combustion toilets and sanitary privies.

(c) Requirements. Agricultural employers shall provide the following for employees engaged in hand-labor operations in the field, without cost to the employee:

(1) Potable drinking water.

(i) Potable water shall be provided and placed in locations readily accessible to all employees.

(ii) The water shall be suitably cool and in sufficient amounts, taking into account the air temperature, humidity and the nature of the work performed, to meet the needs of all employees.

(iii) The water shall be dispensed in single-use drinking cups or by fountains. The use of common drinking cups or dippers is prohibited.

(2) Toilet and handwashing facilities.

(i) One toilet facility and one handwashing facility shall be provided for each twenty (20) employees or fraction thereof, except as stated in paragraph (c)(2)(v) of this section.

(ii) Toilet facilities shall be adequately ventilated, appropriately screened, have self-closing doors that can be closed and latched from the inside and shall be constructed to insure privacy.

(iii) Toilet and handwashing facilities shall be accessibly located and in close proximity to each other. The facilities shall be located within a one-quarter-mile walk of each hand laborer's place of work in the field.

(iv) Where due to terrain it is not feasible to locate facilities as required above, the facilities shall be located at the point of closest vehicular access.

(v) Toilet and handwashing facilities are not required for employees who perform field work for a period of three (3) hours or less (including transportation time to and from the field) during the day.

(3) Maintenance. Potable drinking water and toilet and handwashing facilities shall be maintained in accordance with appropriate public health sanitation practices, including the following:

(i) Drinking water containers shall be constructed of materials that maintain water quality, shall be refilled daily or more often as necessary, shall be kept covered and shall be regularly cleaned.

(ii) Toilet facilities shall be operational and maintained in clean and sanitary condition.

(iii) Handwashing facilities shall be refilled with potable water as necessary to ensure an adequate supply and shall be maintained in a clean and sanitary condition; and

(iv) Disposal of wastes from facilities shall not cause unsanitary conditions.

(4) Reasonable Use. The employer shall notify each employee of the location of the sanitation facilities and water and shall allow each employee reasonable opportunities during the workday to use them. The employer also shall inform each employee of the importance of each of the following good hygiene practices to minimize exposure to the hazards in the field of heat, communicable diseases, retention of urine and agrichemical residues:

(i) Use the water and facilities provided for drinking, handwashing and elimination;

(ii) Drink water frequently and especially on hot days;

(iii) Urinate as frequently as necessary;

(iv) Wash hands both before and after using the toilet; and

(v) Wash hands before eating and smoking.

(d) Dates—

(1) Effective Date. This standard shall take effect on May 30, 1987.

(2) Startup Dates. Employers must comply with the requirements of paragraphs:

(i) Paragraph (c)(1), to provide potable drinking water, by May 30, 1987;

(ii) Paragraph (c)(2), to provide handwashing and toilet facilities, by July 30, 1987;

(iii) Paragraph (c)(3), to provide maintenance for toilet and handwashing facilities, by July 30, 1987; and

(iv) Paragraph (c)(4), to assure reasonable use, by July 30, 1987.

[52 F.R. 16095, May 1, 1987]

PART 1990

IDENTIFICATION, CLASSIFICATION, AND REGULATION OF POTENTIAL OCCUPATIONAL CARCINOGENS

GENERAL

1990.101 Scope.
1990.102 Purpose.
1990.103 Definitions.
1990.104 Scientific review panel.
1990.105 Advisory committees.
1990.106 Amendments to this policy.

THE OSHA CANCER POLICY

1990.111 General statement of regulatory policy.
1990.112. Classification of potential carcinogens.

PRIORITY SETTING

1990.121 Candidate list of potential occupational carcinogens.
1990.122 Response to petitions.
1990.131 Priority lists for regulating potential occupational carcinogens.
1990.132 Factors to be considered.
1990.133 Publication.

REGULATION OF POTENTIAL OCCUPATIONAL CARCINOGENS

1990.141 Advance notice of proposed rulemaking.
1990.142 Initiation of a rulemaking.
1990.143 General provisions for the use of human and animal data.
1990.144 Criteria for consideration of arguments on certain issues.
1990.145 Consideration of substantial new issues or substantial new evidence.
1990.146 Issues to be considered in the rulemaking.
1990.147 Final action.

MODEL STANDARDS

1990.151 Model standard pursuant to section 6(b) of the Act.
1990.152 Model emergency temporary standard pursuant to section 6(c) of the Act.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 4(b), 6(b), 8(c) and 8 (g) (84 Stat. 1592, 1593, 1599, 1599, 29 U.S.C. 653, 655, 657), The Secretary of Labor's Order 8-76 (41 FR 25059) and 29 CFR Part 1911, Chapter XVII of Title 29.

SOURCE: The proversions of thus part 1990 appear at 45 F.R. 5002, January 22, 1980 unless otherwise noted.

GENERAL

1990.101—SCOPE

This Part establishes criteria and procedures for the identification, classification, and regulation of potential occupational carcinogens found in each workplace in the United States regulated by the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (the Act). The procedures contained in this Part supplement the procedural regulations in other parts of this Chapter. In the event of a conflict, the procedures contained in this Part shall govern the identification, classification, and regulation of potential occupational carcinogens. This Part may be referred to as "The OSHA Cancer Policy."

1990.102—PURPOSE

The Act provides, among other things, that "the Secretary, in promulgating standards dealing with toxic materials or harmful physical agents under this subsection, shall set the standard which most adequately assures, to the extent feasible, on the basis of the best available evidence, that no employee will suffer material impairment of health of functional capacity even if such employee has regular exposure to the hazard dealt with by such standard for the period of his or her working life. Development of standards under this subsection shall be based upon research, demonstrations, experiments, and such other information as may be appropriate. In addition to the attainment of the highest degree of health and safety protection for the employee, other considerations shall be the latest available scientific data in the field, the feasibility of the standards, and experience gained under this and other health and safety laws. Whenever practicable, the standard promulgated shall be expressed in terms of objective criteria and of the performance desired" (section 6(b)(5)). It is the purpose of the regulations of this Part to carry out the intent of the Act with respect to the identification, classification, and regulation of potential occupational carcinogens.

1990.103—DEFINITIONS

Terms used in this Part shall have the meanings set forth in the Act. In addition, as used in this Part, the following terms shall have the meanings set forth below:

"Act" means the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (Pub. L. 91-596, 84 Stat. 1590 *et seq.*, 29 U.S.C. 551 *et seq.).*

"Administrator of EPA" means the Administrator of the United States Environmental Protection Agency, or designee.

"Chairperson of CPSC" means the Chairman of the United States Consumer Product Safety Commission, or designee.

"Commissioner of FDA" means the Commissioner of the Food and Drug Administration, United States Department of Health and Human Services, or designee.

"Director of NCI" means the Director of the National Cancer Institute, United States Department of Health and Human Services, or designee.

"Director of NIEHS" means the Director of the National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences, United States Department of Health and Human Services, or designee.

"Director of NIOSH" means the Director of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, United States Department of Health and Human Services, or designee.

"Secretary of HHS" means the Secretary of the United States Department of Health and Human Services, or designee.

"Mutagenesis" means the induction of heritable changes in the genetic material of either somatic or germinal cells.

"Positive results in short-term tests" means positive results in assays for two or more of the following types of effect: (1) the induction of DNA damage and/or repair; (2) mutagenesis in bacteria, yeast, *Neurospora or Drosophila melanogaster;* (3) mutagenesis in mammalian somatic cells; (4) mutagenesis in mammalian germinal cells; or (5) neoplastic transformation of mammalian cells in culture.

"Potential occupational carcinogen" means any substance, or combination or mixture of substances, which causes an increased incidence of benign and/or malignant neoplasms, or a substantial decrease in the latency period between exposure and onset of neoplasms in humans or in one or more experimental mammalian species as the result of any oral, respiratory or dermal exposure, or any other exposure which results in the induction of tumors at a site other than the site of administration. This definition also includes any substance which is metabolized into one or more potential occupational carcinogens by mammals.

1990.104—SCIENTIFIC REVIEW PANEL

(a) **General.** At any time, the Secretary may request the Director of NCI, the Director of NIEHS and/or the Director of NIOSH to convene a scientific review panel ("the panel") to provide recommendations to the Secretary in the identification, classification, or regulation of any potential occupational carcinogen.

(b) **Membership.** The panel will consist of individuals chosen by the respective Director(s). The panel will consist of individuals who are appropriately qualified in the disciplines relevant to the issues to be considered, and who are employed by the United States. The panel does not constitute an advisory committee within the meaning of sections 6(b) or 7(b) of the Act, or the Federal Advisory Committee Act (Pub. L. 92-463, 86 Stat. 770).

(c) **Report.** The Secretary shall request that the panel submit a report of its evaluation within ninety (90) days after the appointment of the members of the panel. The Secretary shall place a copy of the report in the record of any relevant rulemaking undertaken pursuant to this Part and allow an appropriate time for public review and comment. If a panel is not established or fails to file a timely report, or if the Secretary determines that it is necessary to proceed without waiting for the panel's report, the Secretary may proceed in making any determination without such report.

(d) **Other aid and assistance.** Nothing herein precludes the Secretary from obtaining advice or other aid from any person or organization including NCI, NIEHS, and NIOSH.

1990.105—ADVISORY COMMITTEES

The Secretary may appoint an Advisory Committee, pursuant to sections 6(b) and 7 of the Act, and 29 CFR Part 1912, concerning any potential occupational carcinogen. The Secretary shall require the Advisory Committee to submit its recommendations to assist the Secretary in standard setting no later than ninety (90) days from the date of the Advisory Committee's appointment, unless extended by the Secretary for exceptional circumstances. If an Advisory Committee fails to file a timely report, the Secretary may proceed in standard setting activities without such a report.

1990.106—AMENDMENTS TO THIS POLICY

(a) Initation of review of this policy.—

(1) **Secretary's request.** No later than every three (3) years from the effective date of this Part, or from the last general review, the Secretary shall request the Director of NCI, the Director of NIEHS and/or the Director of NIOSH, to review this Part and render their opinions on whether significant scientific or technical advances made since the effective date of this Part warrant any amendment to this Part. The request shall ask that the answer be provided to the Secretary within one hundred twenty (120) days.

(2) **Recommendations by the institutes.** At any time, the Director of NCI, the Director of NIEHS and/or the Director of NIOSH may submit recommendatiuons to the Secretary for amendments to this Part whenever any of them believes that scientific or technical advances justify such amendments.

(3) **Petitions from the public.**

(i) Any interested person may petition the Secretary concerning amendments to this Part based upon substantial new issues or substantial new evidence.

(ii) For the purposes of this Part, substantial new evidence is evidence which differs significantly from that presented in establishing this Part, including amendments.

(iii) For the purposes of this Part, substantial new issues are issues which differ significantly from those upon which the Secretary has reached a conclusion in the rulemaking establishing this Part (including the conclusions reached in the preamble.)

(iv) Each petition to amend this part shall contain at least the following information:

(a) Name and address of petitioner;

(b) The provisions which the petitioner believes are inappropriate;

(c) All data, views and arguments relied upon by the petitioner; and

(d) A detailed statement and analysis as to why the petitioner believes that the data, views and arguments presented by petitioner:

(i) Constitute substantial new issues or substantial new evidence; and

(ii) Are so significant as to warrant amendment of this Part.

(b) Response to recommendations and petitions.

(1) **By the institutes.** Whenever any Director recommends an amendment ot this part, the

Secretary shall, within one hundred twenty (120) days after receipt of the recommendation, publish in the **Federal Register**, a notice which

(i) states the reasons why the Secretary has determined not to commence a rulemaking proceeding to amend this Part, in whole or in part, at that time; or

(ii) commences a rulemaking proceeding to consider amending this Part accordingly; or

(iii) appoints an Advisory Committee as provided for by 1990.105 of this Part and sections 6(b) and 7 of the Act.

(2) **By the public.** Within ninety (90) days, or as soon thereafter as possible, after receipt of a petition pursuant to section 1990.106(a)(3), the Secretary shall:

(i) refer the petition to the Director of NCI, the Director of NIEHS and/or the Director of NIOSH, in which case the provisions of 1990.106(a)(1) and (b)(1) are applicable; or

(ii) appoint an advisory committee;

(iii) deny the petition, briefly giving the reasons therefor: or

(iv) commence a rulemaking proceeding to consider amending this Part accordingly.

(3) **On the Secretary's motion.** At any time, the Secretary may, on his own motion, commence a rulemaking proceeding to amend this Part.

THE OSHA CANCER POLICY

1990.111—GENERAL STATEMENT OF REGULATORY POLICY

(a) This Part establishes the criteria and procedures under which substances will be regulated by OSHA as potential occupational carcinogens. Although the conclusive identification of "carcinogens" is a complex matter "on the frontiers of science," (IUD v. Hodgson 499 F. 2d 467, 474 (D.C. Cir. 1974)), responsible health regulatory policy requires that criteria should be specified for the identification of substances which should be regulated as posing potential cancer risks to workers.

(b) The criteria established by this Part are based on an extensive review of scientific data and opinions. The Part provides for amending these criteria in light of new scientific developments. Decisions as to whether any particular substance meets the criteria or not will be consistent with the policies and procedures established by the Part and will be based upon scientific evaluation of the evidence on that substance.

(c) This Part applies to individual substances, groups of substances, or combinations or mixtures of substances which may be found in workplaces in the United States. In individual rulemaking proceedings under this Part, the identity and range of substances and mixtures to be covered by the standard will be specified and the appropriateness of applying the avaliable evidence to the range of substances and mixtures proposed for regulation will be subject to scientific and policy review.

(d) Potential occupational carcinogens will be identified and classified on the basis of human epidemiological studies and/or experimental carcinogenesis bioassays in mammals. Positive results in short term tests will also be used as concordant evidence.

(e) Potential occupational carcinogens will be classified and regulated in accordance with the policy. The scientific evidence as to whether individual substances meet these criteria will be considered in individual rulemakings. The issues which may be considered in these rulemakings will be limited as specified herein.

(f) This policy provides for the classification of potential occupational carcinogens into two categories depending on the nature and extent of the available scientific evidence. The two categories of potential occupational carcinogens may be regulated differently.

(g) The policy establishes a procedure for setting priorities and making them public.

(h) Worker exposure to Category I Potential Carcinogens will be reduced primarily through the use of engineering and work practice controls.

[46 F.R. 5881, January 21, 1981.]

(i) Worker exposure to Category II Potential Carcinogens will be reduced as appropriate and consistent with the statutory requirements on a case-by-case basis in the rulemaking proceedings on individual substances. Any permissible exposure level so established shall be met primarily through engineering and work practice controls.

(j) The assessment of cancer risk to workers resulting from exposure to a potential occupational carcinogen will be made on the basis of available data. Because of the uncertainties and serious consequences to workers if the estimated risk is understated, cautious and prudent assumptions will be utilized to perform risk assessments.

[46 F.R. 5881, January 21, 1981.]

(k) Where the Secretary determines that one or more suitable substitutes exist for certain uses of Category I Potential Carcinogens that are less hazardous to humans, a no occupational exposure level shall be set for those uses, to be achieved solely through the use of engineering and work practice controls to encourage substitution. In determining whether a substitute is suitable, the Secretary will consider the technological and economic feasibility of the introduction of the substitute, including its relative effectiveness and other relevant factors, such as regulatory requirements and the time needed for an orderly transition to the substitute.

1990.112—CLASSIFICATION OF POTENTIAL CARCINOGENS

The following criteria for identification, classification and regulation of potential occupational carcinogens will be applied, unless the Secretary considers evidence under the provisions of 1990.143, 1990.144 and 1990.145 and determines that such evidence warrants an exception to these criteria.

(a) **Category I Potential Carcinogens.** A substance shall be identified, classified, and regulated as a Category I Potential Carcinogen if, upon scientific evaluation, the Secretary determines that the substance meets the definition of a potential occupational carcinogen in (i) humans, or (ii) in a single mammalian species in a long-term bioassay where the results are in concordance with some other scientifically evaluated evidence of a potential carcinogenic hazard, or (iii) in a single mammalian species in an adequately conducted long-term bioassay, in appropriate circumstances where the Secretary determines the requirement for concordance is not necessary. Evidence of concordance is any of the following: positive results for independent testing in the same or other species, positive results in short-term tests, or induction of tumors at injection or implantation sites.

(b) **Category II Potential Carcinogens.** A substance shall be identified, classified, and regulated as a Category II Potential Carcinogen if, upon scientific evaluation, the Secretary determines that: (i) the substance meets the criteria set forth in 1990.112(a), but the evidence is found by the Secretary to be only "suggestive" or (ii) the substance meets the criteria set forth in 1990.112(a) in a single mammalian species without evidence of concordance.

PRIORITY SETTING

1990.121—CANDIDATE LIST OF POTENTIAL OCCUPATIONAL CARCINOGENS

(a) Contents. The Secretary shall prepare a list of substances (the "Candidate List") which are reported to be present in any American workplace and which, on the basis of a brief scientific review of available data, may be considered candidates for further scientific review and possible regulation as Category I Potential Carcinogens or Category II Potential Carcinogens. For the purposes of this paragraph, "available data" means:

(1) The data submitted by any person;

(2) Any data referred to by the Secretary of HHS or by the Director of NIOSH, either in the latest list entitled "Suspected Carcinogens" or any other communicaton;

(3) Literature referred to in U.S. Public Health Service, Publication No. 149;

(4) Data summarized and reviewed in Monographs of the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) of the World Health Organization;

(5) The Toxic Substances Control Act Inventory of Chemical Substances, published by the Community Mental Health Centers Extension Act of 1978, sec. 404(a)(9), 42 U.S.C. sec. 285.

(b) Tentative classification. The Secretary may tentatively designate substances on the Candidate List as candidates for classification as Category I Potential Carcinogens or as Category II Potential Carcinogens, or may list substances without a tentative designation, based on the brief scientific review of available data for the purpose of initiating a more extensive scientific review.

(c) No legal rights established. The inclusion or exclusion of any substance from the Candidate List shall not be subject to judicial review nor be the basis of any legal action, nor shall the exclusion of any substance from the list prevent the regulation of that substance as a potential occupational carcinogen. The inclusion of a substance on the Candidate List and its possible tentative designation as a Category I Potential Carcinogen or a Category II Potential Carcinogen therein do not reflect a final scientific determination that the substance is, in fact, a Category I Potential Carcinogen or a Category II Potential Carcinogen. It is a policy determination based on the brief scientific review that the Secretary should conduct a thorough review of all relevant scientific data concerning the substance.

1990.122—RESPONSE TO PETITIONS

Whenever the Secretary receives any information submitted in writing by any interested person concerning the inclusion or omission of any substance from the Candidate List, the Secretary shall briefly review the information and any other available data, as defined in 1990.121(a). The results of the Secretary's review shall be transmitted to the petitioner, together with a short statement of the Secretary's reasons therefor, and made public upon request.

1990.131—PRIORITY LISTS FOR REGULATING POTENTIAL OCCUPATIONAL CARCINOGENS

The Secretary shall establish two priority lists for regulating potential occupational carcinogens. One list should include approximately ten (10) candidates for rulemaking as Category I Potential Carcinogens; the other approximately ten (10) candidates for rulemaking as Category II Potential Carcinogens. The order of placement of substances on these lists will not reflect the Secretary's determination of the exact order in which these substances should be regulated in rulemaking proceedings but rather a policy determination that the Secretary plans to address some or all of these substances prior to proceeding with a thorough scientific review of data concerning other substances on the Candidate List. The inclusion or exclusion of any substance on these lists shall not be subject to judicial review or be the basis for any legal action. The Secretary may regulate a potential occupational carcinogen which has not been placed on these lists. The inclusion of a substance on either of these lists does not reflect a final scientific determination that the substance is, in fact, a Category I Potential Carcinogen or a Category II Potential Carcinogen.

1990.132—FACTORS TO BE CONSIDERED

(a) The setting of priorities is a complex matter which requires subjective and policy judgments. It is not appropriate to establish a rigid formula or to assign predetermined weight to each factor. The identification of some of the elements is to guide the OSHA staff and inform the public on the development of priorities. It is not intended to create any legal rights with respect to the setting of priorities.

(b) Some factors which may be taken into account in setting priorities for regulating potential occupational carcinogens, when such data are available, are:

(1) The estimated number of workers exposed;

(2) The estimated levels of human exposure;

(3) The levels of exposure to the substance which have been reported to cause an increased incidence of neoplasms in exposed humans, animals or both;

(4) The extent to which regulatory action could reduce not only risks of contracting cancer but also other occupational and environmental health hazards;

(5) Whether the molecular structure of the substance is similar to the molecular structure of another substance which meets the definition of a potential occupational carcinogen;

(6) Whether there are substitutes that pose a lower risk of cancer or other serious human health problems, or available evidence otherwise suggests that the social and economic costs of regulation would be small; and

(7) OSHA will also consider its responsibilities for dealing with other health and safety hazards and will consider the acions being taken or planned by other governmental agencies in dealing with the same or similar health and safety hazards.

1990.133—PUBLICATION

(a) The Secretary shall publish the Candidate List in the **Federal Register** at least annually.

(b) The Secretary shall publish the Priority Lists in the **Federal Register** at least every six months and may seek public comment thereon.

(c) The Secretary may periodically publish in the **Federal Register** a notice requesting information concerning the classification and establishment of priorities for substances on the Candidate List together with a brief statement describing the type of information being sought.

REGULATION OF POTENTIAL OCCUPATIONAL CARCINOGENS

1990.141—ADVANCE NOTICE OF PROPOSED RULEMAKING

(a) Within thirty (30) days after OSHA initiates a study concerning the economic and/or technological feasibility of specific standards that might be applied in the regulation of a potential occupational carcinogen, the Secretary will normally publish, in the **Federal Register**, a notice which includes at least the following:

(1) The name of the substance(s).

(2) The scope of the study, including where possible, (i) affected industries, (ii) levels of exposure being studied, (iii) the anticipated completion date of the study;

(3) A brief summary of the available data on health effects;

(4) An estimate of when the Secretary anticipates the issuance of a proposal;

(5) An invitation to interested parties to provide relevant information;

(6) A statement that persons wishing to provide OSHA with their own study should complete it within 30 days after the anticipated proposal date; and

(7) A statement of the procedural requirements that must be met before substantial new issues or substantial new evidence will be considered in the proceeding pursuant to § 1990.145.

(b) Where the Secretary determines to discontinue a feasibility study, the Secretary should publish, within 30 days, a notice in the **Federal Register** so indicating.

1990.142—INITIATION OF A RULEMAKING

Where the Secretary decides to regulate a potential occupational carcinogen, the Secretary shall initiate a rulemaking proceeding in accordance with one of the following procedures, as appropriate.

(a) Notice of proposed rulemakings (Section 6(b) of the Act)

(1) General. The Secretary may issue a notice of proposed rulemaking in the **Federal Regis-**

ter, pursuant to Section 6(b) of the Act and Part 1911 of this Chapter. The notice shall provide for no more than a sixty (60) day comment period, and may provide for a hearing, which shall be scheduled for no later than one hundred (100) days after publication of the Notice of Proposed Rulemaking. The commencement of the hearing may be postponed once, for no more than thirty (30) days, for good cause shown.

(2) Provisions of the proposed standard for Category I Potential Carcinogens. Whenever the Secretary issues a notice of proposed rulemaking to regulate a substance as a Category I Potential Carcinogen:

(i) The propsoed standard shall contain at least provisions for scope and application, definitions, notification of use, a permissable exposure limit, monitoring, regulated areas, methods of compliance including the development of a compliance plan, respiratory protection, protective clothing and equipment, housekeeping, waste disposal, hygiene facilities, medical surveillance, employee information and training, signs and labels, recordkeeping, and employee observation of monitoring as set forth in § 1990.151, unless the Secretary explains why any or all such provisions are not appropriate;

(ii) The model standard set forth in § 1990.151 shall be used as a guideline, and

(iii) The permissible exposure limit shall be achieved primarily through engineering and work practice controls except that if a suitable substitute is available for one or more uses no occupational exposure shall be permitted for those uses.

[46 F.R. 5881, January 21, 1981.]

(3) Provisions of the proposed standard for Category II Potential Carcinogens. Whenever the Secretary issues a Notice of Proposed Rulemaking to regulate a substance as a Category II Potential Carcinogen:

(i) The proposed standard shall contain at least provisions for scope and application, definitions, notification of use, monitoring, respiratory protection, protective clothing and equipment, housekeeping, waste disposal, medical surveillance, employee information and training, recordkeeping and employee observation of monitoring as set forth in § 1990.151, unless the Secretary explains why any or all such provisions are not appropriate; and

(ii) The model standard set forth in § 1990.151 shall be used as a guideline; and

(iii) Worker exposure to Category II Potential Carcinogens will be reduced as appropriate and consistant with the statutory requirements on a case-by-case basis in the individual rulemaking proceedings. Any permissible exposure level so established shall be met primarily through engineering and work practice controls.

(b) Emergency temporary standards. (Section 6(c) of the Act).

(1) General. The Secretary may issue an Emergency Temporary Standard (ETS) for a Category I Potential Carcinogen in accordance with section 6(c) of the Act.

(2) Provisions of the ETS.

(i) The ETS shall contain at least provisions for scope and application, definitions, notification of use, a permissible exposure limit, monitoring, methods of compliance including the development of a compliance plan, respiratory protection, protective clothing and equipment, housekeeping, waste disposal, medical surveillance, employee information and training, signs and labels, recordkeeping and employee observation of monitoring unless the Secretary explains why any or all such provisions are not appropriate.

(ii) The model standard set forth in – 1990.152 shall be used as a guideline.

(iii) The permissible exposure limit shall be achieved through any practicable combination of engineering controls, work practice controls and respiratory protection.

[46 F.R. 5881, January 21, 1981.]

1990.143—GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR THE USE OF HUMAN AND ANIMAL DATA

Human and animal data which are scientifically evaluated to be positive evidence for carcinogenicity including the following policies shall be uniformly relied upon for the identification of potential occupational carcinogens. Arguments challenging the following provisions or their application to specific substances will be considered in individual rulemaking proceedings only if the evidence presented in support of the arguments meets the criteria for consideration specified in § 1990.144 or § 1990.145.

(a) Positive human studies. Positive results obtained in one or more human epidemiologic studies will be used to establish the qualitative inference of carcinogenic hazards to workers.

(b) Positive animal studies. Positive results obtained in one or more experimental studies conducted in one or more mammalian species will be used to establish the qualitative inference of carcinogenic hazard to workers. Arguments that positive results obtained in mammalian species should not be relied upon will be considered only if evidence is presented which meets the criteria for consideration specified in § 1990.144(c) or 1990.144(f).

(c) Non-positive human studies. Positive results in human or mammalian studies generally will be used for the qualitative identification of potential occupational carcinogens, even where non-positive results from human studies exist. Such non-positive results will be considered by the Secretary only if the studies or results meet the criteria set forth in § 1990.144(a).

(d) Non-positive animal studies. Positive results in one or more mammalian studies will be used for the qualitative identification of potential occupational carcinogens, even where non-positive studies exist in other mammalian species. Where non-positive and positive results exist in studies in the same species, the non-positive results will be evaluated.

(e) Spontaneous tumors. Positive results in human or mammalian studies for the induction or acceleration of induction of tumors of a type which occurs "spontaneously" in unexposed individuals will be used for the qualitative identification of potential occupational carcinogens.

(f) Routes of exposure.

(1) Positive results in studies in which mammals are exposed via the oral, respiratory or dermal routes will be used for the qualitative identification of potential occupational carcinogens, whether tumors are induced at the site of application or distant sites.

(2) Positive results in studies in which mammals are exposed via any route of exposure and in which tumors are induced at sites distant from the site of administration will be used for the qualitative identification of potential occupational carcinogens.

(3)

(i) Positive results in mammalian studies in which tumors are induced only at the site of administration, in which a substance or mixture of substances is administered by routes other than oral, respiratory or dermal, will be used as "concordant" evidence that a substance is a potential occupational carcinogen.

(ii) Arguments that such studies should not be relied upon will be considered only if evidence which meets the criteria set forth in § 1990.144(b) is provided.

(g) Use of high doses in animal testing. Positive results for carcinogenicity obtained in mammals exposed to high doses of a substance will be used to establish the qualitative inference of carcinogenic hazard to workers. Arguments that such studies should not be relied upon will be considered only if evidence which meets the criteria set forth in § 1990.144(d) is provided.

(h) "Threshold" or "No-effect" Levels. No determination will be made that a "threshold" or "no-effect" level of exposure can be established for a human population exposed to carcinogens in general, or to any specific substance.

(i) Benign tumors. Results based on the induction of benign or malignant tumors, or both, will be used to establish a qualitative inference of carcinogenic hazard to workers. Arguments that substances that induce benign tumors do not present a carcinogenic risk to workers will be considered only if evidence that meets the criteria set forth in § 1990.144(e) is provided.

(j) Statistical evaluation. Statistical evaluation will be used in the determination of whether results in human, animal or short-term studies provide positive evidence for carcinogenicity, but will not be the exclusive means for such evaluation.

(k) Carcinogenicity of metabolites. A substance which is metabolized by mammals to yield one or more potential occupational carcinogens will itself be identified and classified as a potential occupational carcinogen, whether or not there is direct evidence that it induces tumors in humans or experimental animals. Evidence for such metabolism will normally be derived from *in vivo* studies in mammals. In appropriate circumstances, evidence may be derived from *in vitro* studies of mammalian tissues or fractions thereof. Arguments that evidence from *in vivo* metabolic studies in mammals is not relevant to the inference of carcinogenic hazard to humans will be considered only if such evidence meets the criteria set forth in § 1990.144(c).

1990.144—CRITERIA FOR CONSIDERATION OF ARGUMENTS ON CERTAIN ISSUES

Arguments on the following issues will be considered by the Secretary in identifying or classifying any substance pursuant to this Part, if evidence for the specific substance subject to the rulemaking conforms to the following criteria. Such arguments and evidence will be evaluated based upon scientific and policy judgments.

[46 F.R. 5881, January 21, 1981.]

(a) Non-positive results obtained in human epidemiologic studies. Non-positive results obtained in human epidemiologic studies regarding the substance subject to the rulemaking or to a similar or closely related substance will be considered by the Secretary only if they meet the following criteria:

Criteria. (i) The epidemiologic study involved at least 20 years' exposure of a group of subjects to the substance and at least 30 years' observation of the subjects after initial exposure;

(ii) Documented reasons are provided for predicting the site(s) at which the substance would induce cancer if it were carcinogenic in humans; and

(iii) The group of exposed subjects was large enough for an increase in cancer incidence of 50% above that in unexposed controls to have been detected at any of the predicted sites.

Arguments that non-positive results obtained in human epidemiologic studies should be used to establish numerical upper limits on potential risks to humans exposed to specific levels of a substance will be considered only if criteria (i) and (ii) are met and, in addition:

(iv) Specific data on the level of exposure of the group of workers are provided, based either on direct measurements made periodically throughout the period of exposure, or upon other data which provide reliable evidence of the magnitude of exposure.

(b) Tumors induced at site of administration. Arguments that tumors at the site of administration should not be considered will be considered only if:

(i) The route of administration is not oral, respiratory or dermal; and

(ii) Evidence is provided which establishes that induction of local tumors is related to the physical configuration or formulation of the material administered (e.g., crystalline form or dimensions of a solid material, or matrix of an impregnated implant) and that tumors are not induced when the same material is administered in a different configuration or formula.

(c) Metabolic differences. Arguments that differences in metabolic profiles can be used to demonstrate that a chemical found positive in an experimental study in a mammalian species would pose no potential carcinogenic risk to exposed workers will be considered by the Secretary only if the evidence presented for the specific substance subject to the rulemaking meets the following criteria:

Criteria. (i) A complete metabolic profile, including identities of trace metabolites, is presented for the experimental animal species;

(ii) A complete metabolic profile, including identities of trace metabolites, is available for a human population group representative of those who are occupationally exposed;

(iii) Documented evidence is provided for ascribing the carcinogenic activity of the substance in the test animal species to metabolite(s) produced only in that species and not in humans; and

(iv) Documented evidence is provided to show that other metabolites produced also in humans have been adequately tested and have not been shown to be carcinogenic.

(d) Use of high doses in animal testing. Arguments that positive results obtained in carcinogenesis bioassays with experimental animals subjected to high doses of a substance are not relevant to potential carcinogenic risks to exposed workers will be considered by the Secretary only if the evidence for the specific substance subject to the rulemaking meets the following criteria:

Criteria. (i) Documented evidence is presented to show that the substance in question is metabolized by the experimental animal species exposed at the dose levels used in the bioassay(s) to metabolic products which include one or more that are not produced in the same species at lower doses.

(ii) Documented evidence is presented to show that the metabolite(s) produced only at high doses in the experimental animal species are the ultimate carcinogen(s) and that the metabolites produced at low doses are not also carcinogenic; and

(iii) Documented evidence is presented to show that the metabolite(s) produced only at high doses in the experimental animal species are not produced in humans exposed to low doses.

(e) Benign tumors. The Secretary will consider evidence that the substance subject to the rulemaking proceeding is capable only of inducing benign tumors in humans or experimental animals provided that the evidence for the specific substance meets the following criteria:

Criteria. (i) Data are available from at least two well conducted bioassays in each of two species of mammals (or from equivalent evidence in more than two species);

(ii) Each of the bioassays to be considered has been conducted for the full lifetime of the experimental animals;

(iii) The relevant tissue slides are made available to OSHA or its designee and the diagnoses of the tumors as benign are made by at least one qualified pathologist who has personally examined each of the slides and who provides specific diagnostic criteria and descriptions; and

(iv) All of the induced tumors must be shown to belong to a type which is known not to progress to malignancy or to be at a benign stage when observed. In the latter case, data must be presented to show that multiple sections of the affected organ(s) were adequately examined to search for invasion of the tumor cells into adjacent tissue, and that multiple sections of other organs were adequately examined to search for tumor metastases.

(f) Indirect mechanisms. The Secretary will consider evidence that positive results obtained in a carcinogenesis bioassay with experimental animals are not relevant to a determination of a carcinogenic risk to exposed workers, if the evidence demonstrates that the mechanism by which the observed tumor incidence is effected is indirect and would not occur if humans were exposed. As examples, evidence will be considered that a substance causes a carcinogenic effect by augmenting caloric intake or that the carcinogenic effect from exposure to a substance is demonstrated to be the result of the presence of a carcinogenic virus and it is demonstrated that, in either case, the effect would not take place in the absence of the particular carcinogenic virus or the augmented caloric intake.

1990.145—Consideration of substantial new issues or substantial new evidence

(a) Substantial new issues. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Part, the Secretary will consider in a rulemaking proceeding on a specific substance any substantial new issues upon which the Secretary did not reach a conclusion in the rulemaking proceeding(s) underlying this Part including conclusions presented in the preamble.

(b) Substantial new evidence. Nothwithstanding any other provision of this Part, the Secretary will consider in a rulemaking proceeding on a specific substance any arguments, data or views which he determines are based upon substantial new evidence which may warrant the amendment of one or more provisions of this Part. For the purposes of this Part, "substantial new evidence" is evidence directly relevant to any provision of this Part and is based upon data, views or arguments which differ significantly from those presented in establishing this Part, including amendments thereto.

(c) Petitions for consideration of substantial new evidence.

(1) **Petition.** Any interested person may file a written petition with the Secretary to consider "substantial new issues" or one or more "substantial new issues" which contains the information specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section. The Secretary shall treat such a petition as a request to amend this Part, as well as a petition to consider "substantial new evidence".

(2) **Contents.** Each petition for consideration of "substantial new evidence" or one or more "substantial new issues" shall contain at least the following information:

(i) Name and address of the petitioner;

(ii) All of the data, views and arguments that the petitioner would like the Secretary to consider;

(iii) The provision or provisions that petitioner believes are inappropriate or should be added to this Part in light of the new data, views, and arguments;

(iv) A statement which demonstrates that the data, views, and arguments relied upon by petitioners are directly relevant to the substance or class of substances that is the subject of a rulemaking or an Advance Notice of Proposed Rulemaking;

(v) A detailed statement and anylysis as to why the petitioner believes that the data, views, and arguments presented by the petitioner:

(a) differ significantly from those presented in the proceeding(s) which establish this Part;

(b) are so substantial as to warrant amendment of this Part; and

(c) constitute a new issue or new evidence within the meaning of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section.

(3) **Deadline for petitions.**

(i) Petitions which comply with paragraph (c) above, shall be filed in accordance with the schedule set forth in the Advanced Notice of Proposed Rulemaking.

(ii) In extraordinary cases the Secretary may consider evidence submitted after the deadline if the petitioner establishes that the evidence relied upon was not available and could not have reasonably been available in whole or substantial part by the deadline and that it is being submitted at the earliest possible time.

(d) Secretary's response.

(1) The Secretary shall respond to petitions under this paragraph in accordance with § 1990.106.

(2) Whenever the Secretary determines that the "substantial new issue" or the "substantial new evidence" submitted under this paragraph is sufficient to initiate a proceeding to amend this Part, the Secretary shall:

(i) Issue a notice to consider amendment to this Part and not proceed on the rulemaking concerning the individual substance until completion of the amendment proceeding; or

(ii) Issue a notice to consider amendment to this Part and consolidate it with the proceeding on the individual substance.

1990.146—ISSUES TO BE CONSIDERED IN THE RULEMAKING

Except as provided in § 1990.145, after issuance of the advance notice of rulemaking, the proceedings for individual substances under this Part shall be limited to consideration of the following issues:

(a) Whether the substance, group of substances or combination of substances subject to the proposed rulemaking is appropriately considered in a single proceeding;

(b) Whether the substance or group of substances subject to the rulemaking meets the definition of a potential occupational carcinogen set forth in § 1990.103, including whether the scientific studies are reliable;

(c) Whether the available data can appropriately be applied to the substance, group of substances or combination of substances covered by the rulemaking;

(d) Whether information, data, and views that are submitted in accordance with § 1990.144 are sufficient to warrant an exception to this Part;

(e) Whether the data, views and arguments that are submitted in accordance with § 1990.145 are sufficient to warrant amendment of this Part;

(f) Whether the potential occupational carcinogen meets the criteria for a Category I Potential Carcinogen or a Category II Potential Carcinogen.

(g) The environmental impact arising from regulation of the substance;

(h) Any issues required by statute or executive order;

(i) The determination of the level to control exposures to Category I Potential Carcinogens primarily through the use of engineering and work practice controls including technological and economic considerations.

[46 F.R. 5881, January 21, 1981.]

(j) The determination of the appropriate employee exposure level, consistent with the Act's requirements for Category II Potential Carcinogens;

(k) Whether suitable substitutes are available for one or more us of Catgory I Potential Carcinogens and; if so, the no occupational exposure level to be achieved solely with engineering and work practice controls and other issues relevant to substitution; and

(l) Whether the provisions of the proposal and of § 1990.151 and § 1990.152 (model standards) are appropriate, except as limited by § 1990.142 and whether additional regulatory provisions may be appropriate.

1990.147—FINAL ACTION

(a) Within one hundred twenty (120) days from the last day of any hearing or ninety (90) days from the close of any post hearing comment period, whichever occurs first, the Secretary shall publish in the **Federal Register**:

(1) A final standard based upon the record in the proceeding; or

(2) A statement that no final standard will be issued, and the reasons therefor, or

(3) A statement that the Secretary intends to issue a final rule, but that he is unable to do so at the present time, including:

(i) The reasons therefor; and

(ii) The date by which the standard will be published, which may not exceed one hundred twenty (120) days thereafter.

(iii) The Secretary may issue no more than one such notice, unless the Secretary determines that *(a)* new evidence which was unavailable during the rulemaking proceedings has just become available; *(b)* the evidence is so important that a final rule could not reasonably be issued without this evidence, and; *(c)* the record is reopened for receipt of comments and/or a hearing on this evidence. This paragraph does not require the Secretary to consider any evidence which is submitted after the dates established for the submission of evidence.

(b) The failure of the Secretary to comply with the required timeframes shall not be a basis to set aside any standard or to require the issuance of a new proposal on any individual substance.

(c) The final standard shall state whether the substance or group of substances subject to the rulemaking is classified as a Category I Potential Carcinogen or as a Category II Potential Carcinogen. If the classification differs from that in the notice of proposed rulemaking, the Secretary shall explain the reasons for the change in classification in the preamble to the final standard.

(d) If the substance is classified as a Category I Potential Carcinogen, the final standard shall conform to the provisions of section 1990.142(a)(2)(iii). If the final standard contains other provisions that substantially differ from the proposed provisions, the Secretary shall explain the reasons for the changes in the preamble to the final standard.

(e) If the substance is classified as a Category II potential carcinogen, the final standard shall conform to the provisions of section 1990.142(a)(3)(iii). If the final standard contains other provisions that substantially differ from the proposed provisions, the Secretary shall explain the reasons for the changes in the preamble to the final standard.

(f) If the substance is classified as a Category II potential carcinogen, the Secretary shall notify the applicable federal and state agencies, including the Administrator of EPA, the Director of NCI, the Director of NIEHS, the Director of NIOSH, the Commissioner of FDA and the Chairperson of CPSC of such determination and request that the applicable agencies engage in, or stimulate, further research pursuant to their legislative authority, to develop new and additional scientific data.

(g) If, after a rulemaking, the Secretary determines that the substance under consideration should not be classified as a Category II potential carcinogen, the Secretary shall publish a notice of this determination in the **Federal Register**, together with the reasons therefor.

MODEL STANDARDS

1990.151—MODEL STANDARD PURSUANT TO SECTION 6(b) OF THE ACT

Occupational Exposure to ________; Permanent Standard **(Insert section number of standard)**

(a) Scope and application.

(1) **General.** This section applies to all occupational exposures to ________ or to (specify those uses or classes of uses of ________ [Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 0000] which are covered by the standard, including, where appropriate, the type of exposure to be regulated by the standard) except as provided in paragraph (a)(2).

(2) **Exemptions.** This section does not apply to (insert those uses or classes of uses ________ which are exempted from compliance with the standard, including, where appropriate,

(i) workplaces where exposure to ________ results from solid or liquid mixtures containing a specified percentage of ________ or less;

(ii) workplaces where another Federal agency is exercising statutory authority to prescribe or enforce standards or regulations affecting occupational exposure to _______;

(iii) workplaces which are appropriately addressed in a separate standard).

(b) Definitions.

"_______" means (definition of the substance, group of substances, or combination of substances, to be regulated).

"Authorized person" means any person specifically authorized by the employer whose duties require the person to enter regulated areas or any person entering such an area as a designated representative of employees for the purpose of exercising the opportunity to observe monitoring procedures under paragraph (r) of this section.

"Action level" means an airborne concentration of _______ of (insert appropriate level of exposure).

Note.—Where appropriate, consider an action level as a limitation on requirements for periodic monitoring (para. (e)(3)), medical surveillance (para. (n)), training (para. (o)), labels (para. (p)(3)), and other provisions.

"Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

"Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health, and Health Services, or designee.

"Emergency" means in any occurrence such as, but not limited to, equipment failure, rupture of containers, or failure of control equipment which may result in a release of _______ which is (insert appropriate quantitative or qualitative level of release which constitutes an emergency).

"OSHA Area Office" means the Area Office of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration having jurisdiction over the geographic area where the affected workplace is located.

(c) Permissible exposure limits provisions.

(1) Inhalation.

(i) Time weighted average limit (TWA). Within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this section, the employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of—in excess of; (insert apropriate exposure limit or when it is determined by the Secretary that there are available suitable substitutes for uses or classes of uses that are less hazardous to humans, the proposal shall permit no occupational exposure) as an eight (8)-hour-time-weighted average.

(Where the Secretary finds that suitable substitutes for—may exist, the determination of the—level shall include consideration of the availability, practicability, relative degree of hazard, and economic consequences of the substitutes.)

(ii) Ceiling limit. (If appropriate.) Within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this section, the employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of—in excess of: (insert exposure limit) as averaged over any: (insert appropriate time period) during the working day.

(2) Dermal and eye exposure. (As appropriate.)

(i) Within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this section, the employer shall (If eye exposure to ___ does not create a risk of cancer, insert exposure level or criteria which will prevent other adverse health affects of eye exposure to ___ if any. If eye exposure creates a risk of cancer, insert exposure level or criteria which represents the level of eye exposure to ___.

(ii) Within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this section, the employer shall (If skin exposure to—does not create a risk of cancer, insert exposure level of criteria which will prevent other adverse health effects of skin exposure to—if any. If skin exposure creates a risk of cancer, insert exposure level or criteria which represents the level of skin exposure to ___).

[46 F.R. 5882, January 21, 1981.]

(3) (If appropriate, specify limitations or prohibitions on consumption, storage or use of food, beverages, smoking materials, etc. in certain workplaces.)

(4) Other restrictions. The employer shall assure that there is no occupational exposure to ________ from the following uses or classes of uses: (Where the Secretary determines, in the proposal or upon the record of the public rulemaking, that there are available substitutes in certain applications where ________ might otherwise be used, the Secretary here shall specify that no occupational exposure to ________ shall be permitted in those circumstances and uses, listing those circumstances or uses and including appropriate transitional provisions. Where the Secretary finds that substitutes for ________ exist, the determination of their suitability shall include consideration of the availability, practicability, relative degree of hazard, and economic consequences of the substitutes.)

(The preceding paragraph 1990.151(c) on permissible exposure limit provisions is for Category 1 Potent Cnogens. Workerotre to Category II Potential Carcinogens will be reduced as appropriate and consistent with the statutory requirements on a case-by-case basis in the individual rulemaking proceedings. Any permissible exposure level so established shall be met primarily through engineering and work practic controls. See § 1990.142(a)(3).)

(d) Notification of use and emergencies.

(1) Use. Within (insert appropriate time period and additional information requirements if appropriate) of the effective date of this standard or within thirty days of the introduction of ________ into the workplace, every employer who has a place of employment in which ________ is present shall report the address and location of each place of employment to the OSHA Area Office and an estimate of the number of employees exposed.

(2) Emergencies. Emergencies, and the facts obtainable at that time, shall be reported within (insert appropriate number) hours of, or during the first federal working day after, the time the employer becomes aware of the emergency to the OSHA Area Office, whichever is longer. Upon request of the OSHA Area Office, the employer shall submit additional information in writing relevant to the nature and extent of employee exposures and measures taken to prevent future emergencies of a similar nature.

(e) Exposure monitoring.

(1) General.

(i) Determinations of airborne exposure levels shall be made from air samples that are representative of each employee's exposure to ________over an eight (8) hour period. (Modify the time period as appropriate to be practical in the relevant industries yet reasonably representative of full shift exposures.) Monitoring of exposure levels required under this paragraph shall be made as follows: (insert method or alternative methods to be used to meet the requirements of this paragraph.

(ii) For the purpose of this section, employee exposure is that exposure which would occur if the employee were not using a respirator.

(2) Initial monitoring. Each employer who has one or more workplaces where (specify the types of workplaces subject to the monitoring requirement) shall, within (insert appropriate period) of the effective date of this section (insert requirements for initial monitoring, as appropriate).

(3) Frequency. (Insert, if appropriate, provisions prescribing the minimum frequency at which monitoring must be repeated, the conditions under which such frequency must be increased or may be reduced, and conditions under which such routine monitoring may be discontinued (for example, where the action level is not exceeded). Where appropriate, specify different frequency requirements for certain types of workplaces where, for example, exposure levels are subject to greater or less variability.)

(4) Additional monitoring. (Insert, if appropriate, provisions for monitoring, in addition to the requirements (if any) of paragraph (e)(3). This may include a production, process, control or personnel change which might result in new or additional exposure to ________, or whenever the employer has any other reason to suspect a change which might result in new or additional exposures to ________.)

(5) Employee notification.

(i) Within (insert appropriate period) after the receipt of monitoring results, the employer shall notify each employee in writing of the results which represent that employee's exposure.

(ii) Whenever the results indicate that the representative employee exposure exceeds the permissible exposure limits, the employer shall include in the written notice a statement that the permissible exposure limits were exceeded and a description of the corrective action being taken to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limits.

(6) Accuracy of measurement. (Insert requirements for accuracy of methods of measurement or detection used to comply with the paragraph).

(f) Regulated areas.

(1) Within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this section, the employer shall, where practicable, establish regulated areas where ________ concentrations are in excess of the permissible exposure limits.

(2) Regulated areas shall be demarcated and segregated from the rest of the workplace, in any manner that minimizes the number of persons who will be exposed to ________.

(3) Access to regulated areas shall be limited to authorized persons or to persons otherwise authorized by the Act or regulations issued pursuant thereto.

(4) The employer shall assure that in the regulated area, food or beverages are not present or consumed, smoking products are not present or used, and cosmetics are not applied (except that these activities may be conducted in the lunchroom, change rooms and showers required under paragraph (m)(1)-(m)(3) of this section).

(g) Methods of compliance.

(1) Engineering and work practice controls.

(i) The employer shall institute engineering or work practice controls to reduce and maintain employee exposures to ________ to or below the permissible exposure limits, except to the extent that the employer establishes that such controls are not feasible.

(ii) Engineering and work practice controls shall be implemented to reduce exposures even if they will not be sufficient to reduce exposures to or below the permissible exposure limits.

(2) Compliance program.

(i) Within (insert appropriate period) of the effective date of this section the employer shall establish and implement a written program to reduce exposures to or below the permissible exposure limits by means of engineering and work practice controls, as required by paragraph (g)(1) of this section.

(ii) Written plans for these compliance programs shall include at least the following:

(a) A description of each operation or process resulting in employee exposure to ________;

(b) Engineering plans and other studies contemplated or used to determine the controls for each process;

(c) A report of the technology considered or to be considered in meeting the permissible exposure limits;

(d) A detailed schedule for the implementation of engineering or work practice controls; and

(e) Other relevant information reasonably requested by OSHA.

(iii) Written plans for such a program shall be submitted, upon request, to the Assistant Secretary and the Director, and shall be available at the worksite for examination and copying by the Assistant Secretary, the Director, or any affected employee or designated representative.

(iv) The plans required by this paragraph shall be revised and updated periodically to reflect the current status of the program.

(h) Respiratory protection.

(1) **General.** The employer shall assure that respirators are used where required pursuant to this section to reduce employee exposures to or below the permissible exposure limits and in emergencies. Compliance with the permissible exposure limits may not be achieved by the use of respirators except:

(i) During the time period necessary to install or implement feasible engineering and work practice controls; or

(ii) In work operations in which the employer establishes that engineering and work practice controls are not feasible; or

(iii) In work situations where feasible engineering and work practice controls are not yet sufficient to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limits; or

(iv) In emergencies.

(2) Respirator selection.

(i) Where respiratory protection is required under this section, the employer shall select and provide at no cost to the employee, the appropriate type of respirator from Table 1 below and shall assure that the employee wears the respirator provided.

Table 1.—Respiratory Protection for ________

(The table will contain a listing of the appropriate type of respirator for various conditions of exposure to ________).

(ii) The employer shall select respirators from those approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11.

(3) Respirator program.

(i) The employer shall institute a respiratory protection program in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.134(b), (d), (e), and (f).

(ii) Employees who wear respirators shall be allowed to wash their face and respirator facepeice to prevent potential skin irritation associated with respirator use.

(iii) The employer shall assure that the respirator issued to each employee is properly fitted (as appropriate, indicate the requirement for a qualitative or quantitative respirator fit testing program).

(i) Emergency situations.

(1) Written plans.

(i) A written plan for emergency situations shall be developed for each workplace where ________ is present. Appropriate portions of the plan shall be implemented in the event of an emergency.

(ii) The plan shall specifically provide that employees engaged in correcting emergency conditions shall be equipped with respirators as required in paragraph (h) of this section and other necessary personal protective equipment as required in paragraph (j) until the emergency is abated.

(2) Alerting employees.

(i) **Alarms.** Where there is the possibility of employee exposure to ________ due to the occurance of an emergency, a general alarm shall be installed and maintained to promptly alert employees of such occurrences.

(ii) **Evacuation.** Employees not engaged in correcting the emergency shall be restricted from the area and shall not be permitted to return until the emergency is abated.

(j) Protective clothing and equipment.

(1) **Provision and use.** Where employees are exposed to eye or skin contact with ________ (insert criteria which trigger this requirement as appropriate), the employer shall, within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this section provide at no cost to such employees, and assure that such employees wear, appropriate protective clothing or other equipment in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.132 and .133 to protect the area of the body which may come in contact with ________.

(2) Cleaning and replacement.

(i) The employer shall clean, launder, maintain, or replace protective clothing and equipment required to maintain their effectiveness.

(k) Housekeeping

(1) General. The employer shall, within appropriate time period of the effective date of this section, implement a housekeeping program to minimize accumulation of ________.

(2) Specific provisions. The program shall include (insert appropriate elements):

(i) Periodic scheduling of routine housekeeping;

(ii) Provision for periodic cleaning of dust collection system;

(iii) Provision for maintaining clean surfaces;

(iv) Provision for assigning personnel to housekeeping procedures; and

(v) Provision for informing employees about the housekeeping program.

(l) Waste disposal.

(1) General. The employer shall assure that no waste material containing ________ is dispersed into the workplace, to the extent practicable.

(2) The employer shall lable, or otherwise inform employees who may contact waste material containing ________, the contents of such waste material.

(3) (Insert specific disposal methods, as appropriate.)

(m) Hygiene facilities and practices.

Where employees are exposed to airborne concentrations of ________ in excess of the permissible exposure limits specified in paragraph (c)(1), or where employees are required to wear protective clothing or equipment pursuant to paragraph (j) of this section, or where otherwise found to be appropriate, the following facilities shall be provided by the employer for the use of those employees and the employer shall assure that the employees use the facilities provided.

[Specify appropriate hygiene facilities and practices such as]:

(1) Change rooms. The employer shall provide clean change rooms in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.141(e).

(2) Showers.

(i) The employer shall provide shower facilities in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.141(d)(3).

(ii) The employer shall assure that employees exposed to ________ shower at the end of the work shift.

(3) Lunchrooms. (if appropriate or other suitable requirements depending on the circumstances). Whenever food or beverages are consumed in the workplace, the employer shall provide lunchroom facilities which have a temperature controlled, positive pressure, filtered air supply, and which are readily accessible to employees exposed to ________

(n) Medical surveillance.

(1) General.

(i) The employer shall institute a program of medical surveillance for (specify the types of employees subject to the medical surveillance requirement, for example, by specifying the level, duration, and frequency of exposure to ________ which make medical surveillance appropriate for individual employees). The employer shall provide each such employee with an opportunity for medical examinations and tests in accordance with this paragraph.

(ii) The employer shall assure that all medical examinations and procedures are performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician, and shall be provided without cost to the employee.

(2) Initial examinations. Within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this section or thereafter at the time of initial assignment, the employer shall provide each employee specified in paragraph (n)(1) of this section an opportunity for a medical examination, including at least the following elements:

(i) A work history and a medical history which shall include: (insert specific areas to be covered pertinent to the health hazard posed by ________.)

(ii) A physicial examination which shall include: (insert specific tests, procedures, etc., pertinent to the health hazards posed by ________.) Where appropriate, provide that the examining physician shall conduct such additional examinations and tests as are needed according to his professional judgement).

Note.—Where appropriate, require or permit different medical protocols, or different frequencies of medical examinations, for separate sub-populations of employees covered under paragraph (n)(1).

(3) Periodic examinations.

(i) The employer shall provide the examinations specified below in this subparagraph at least (insert appropriate time) for all employees specified in paragraph (n)(1) of this section: (insert appropriate medical protocol for periodic examinations).

(ii) If an employee has not had the examinations prescribed in paragraph (n)(3)(i) of this section within (insert appropriate time period) prior to termination of employment, the employer shall make such examination available to the employee upon such termination.

(4) Additional examinations. If the employee for any reason develops signs or symptoms commonly associated with exposure to ________, the employer shall provide appropriate examination and emergency medical treatment.

(5) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide the following information to the examining physician:

(i) A copy of this standard and its appendices;

(ii) A description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposure;

(iii) The employee's actual or representative exposure level;

(iv) The employee's anticipated or estimated exposure level (for preplacement examinations or in cases of exposure due to an emergency);

(v) A description of any personal protective equipment used or to be used; and

(vi) The names and addresses of physicians who, under the sponsorship of the employer, provided previous medical examinations of the affected employee, if such records are not otherwise available to the examining physician.

(6) Physician's written opinion.

(i) The employer shall obtain a written opinion from the examining physician which shall include:

(a) The physician's certification that he has received the information from the employer required under the paragraph (n)(5) and has performed all medical examinations and tests which are in his opinion appropriate under this standard;

(b) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical condition which would place the employee at an increased risk of material impairment of the employee's health from exposure to ________;

(c) Any recommended limitations upon the employee's exposure to ________ or upon the use of protective clothing and equipment such as respirators; and

(d) A statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and any medical conditions which require further examination or treatment.

(ii) The employer shall instruct the physician not to reveal in the written opinion specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure to ________;

(iii) The employer shall provide a copy of the written opinion to the affected employee.

(o) Employee Information and Training.

(1) Training Program.

(i) Within (insert appropriate time period) from the effective date of this section, the employer shall institute a training program for all employees who (specify the employees subject to the training requirement), and shall assure their participation in the training program.

(ii) The training program shall be provided at the time of initial assignment, or upon institution of the training program, and at least (insert appropriate time period) thereafter, and the employer shall assure that each employee is informed of the following:

Note.—Specify, as appropriate, some or all of the following information, or any other appropriate information. Where appropriate, require training programs with different contents, or different frequencies, for separate subpopulations of the employees specified in paragraph (o)(1).

(a) The information contained in the Appendices;

(b) The quantity, location, manner of use, release or storage of ________ and the specific nature of operations which could result in exposure to ________, as well as any necessary protective steps;

(c) The purpose, proper use, and limitations of respirators;

(d) The prupose and description of the medical surveillance program required by paragraph (n) of this section;

(e) The emergency procedures developed, as required by paragraph (i) of this section:

(f) The engineering and work practice controls, their function and the employee's relationship thereto; and

(g) A review of this standard.

(2) Access to training materials.

(i) The employer shall make a copy of this standard and its appendices readily available to all affected employees.

(ii) The employer shall provide, upon request, all materials relating to the employee information and training program to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(p) Signs and labels.

(1) General.

(i) The employer may use labels or signs required by other statutes, regulations, or ordinances in addition to, or in combination with, signs and labels required by this paragraph.

(ii) The employer shall assure that no statement appears on or near any sign or label, required by this paragraph, which contradicts or detracts from the meaning of the required sign or label.

(2) Signs.

(i) The employer shall post signs to clearly indicate all workplaces. (Specify as appropriate the description of the area to be sign-posted such as "where employees are exposed to ________," or "where exposures exceed the action level," or "where exposures exceed the PEL," or "which are regulated areas"). Signs shall bear the following legend:

DANGER

(insert appropriate trade or common names)

CANCER HAZARD

AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) The employer shall assure that signs required by this paragraph are illuminated and cleaned as necessary so that the legend is readily visible.

(iii) Where airborne concentrations of ________ exceed the permissible exposure limits, the signs shall bear the additional legend: ("Respirator Required" or "Respirator may be Required" as appropriate).

(3) Labels.

(i) The employer shall assure that precautionary lables are affixed to all containers of ________ and of products containing ______, (specify if appropriate suitable modifications) and that the labels remain affixed when the ________ or products containing ________ are sold, distributed or otherwise leave the employer's workplace.

(ii) The employer shall assure that the precautionary lables required by this paragraph are readily visible and legible. The labels shall bear the following legend:

DANGER
CONTAINS ________
CANCER HAZARD

Note.—Utilize the clause "POTENTIAL CANCER HAZARD" if it is appropriate to include a signs and labels provision for a Category II potential carcinogen.

(q) Recordkeeping

(1) Exposure monitoring.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of all monitoring required by paragraph (e) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) The dates, number, duration, and results of each of the samples taken, including a description of the sampling procedure used to determine representative employees exposure;

(b) A description of the sampling and analytical methods used;

(c) Type of respiratory protective devices worn, if any; and

(d) Name, social security number and job classification of the employee monitored and of all other employees whose exposure the measurement is intended to represent.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for (insert appropriate period) or for the duration of employment plus (insert appropriate period) whichever is longer.

(2) Medical surveillance.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of each employee subject to medical surveillance as required by paragraph (n) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) A copy of the physicians' written opinions or a written explanation of the absence of any such opinion or employee refusal to take the medical examination;

(b) Any employees medical complaints related to exposure to ________;

(c) A copy of the information provided to the physician as required by paragraph (n)(5)(ii)-(v) of this section unless it is systematically retained elsewhere by the employer for the period of time specified in (q)(2)(ii); and

(d) A copy of the employee's work history.

(iii) The employer shall assure that this record be maintained for (insert appropriate period) or for the duration of employment plus (insert appropriate period) whichever is longer.

(3) Availability.

(i) The employer shall assure that all records required to be maintained by this section be made available upon request to the Assistant Secretary and the Director for examination and copying.

(ii) Employee exposure measurement records and employee medical records required by this section shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.20(a)-(e) and (g)-(l).

(4) Transfer of records.

(i) Whenever the employer ceases to do business, the successor employer shall receive and retain all records required to be maintained by this section.

(ii) Whenever the employer ceases to do business and there is no successor employer to receive and retain the records for the prescribed period, these records shall be transmitted to the Director.

(iii) At the expiration of the retention period for the records required to be maintained pursuant to this section, the employer shall transmit these records to the Director.

(iv) The employer shall also comply with any additional requirements involving transfer of records set forth in 19 CFR 1910.20(h).

Note.—Include other recordkeeping requirements if appropriate.

(r) Observation of monitoring.

(1) **Employee observation.** The employer shall provide affected employees, or their designated representatives, an opportunity to observe any monitoring of employee exposure to _______ conducted pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section.

(2) **Observation procedures.**

(i) Whenever observation of the monitoring of employee exposure to _______ requires entry into an area where the use of protective clothing or equipment is required, the employer shall provide the observer with personal protective clothing or equipment required to be worn by employees working in the area, assure the use of such clothing and equipment, and require the observer to comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(ii) Without interfering with the monitoring, observers shall be entitled to:

(a) Receive an explanation of the measurement procedures;

(b) Observe all steps related to the measurement of airborne concentrations of _______ performed at the place of exposure; and

(c) Record the results obtained and receive results supplied by the laboratory.

(s) **Effective date.** This section shall become effective (insert effective date).

(t) **Appendices.** The information contained in the appendices is not intended, by itself, to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed or to detract from any existing obligation.

(In normal circumstances three appendices will be included in each standard, an "Appendix A—Substance Safety Data Sheet," an "Appendix B—Substance Technical Guidelines," and an "Appendix C—Medical Surveillance Guidelines." Insert additional appendices or delete any of the suggested appendices as appropriate).

1990.152—MODEL EMERGENCY TEMPORARY STANDARD PURSUANT TO SECTION 6(c)

Occupational Exposure to _________; Emergency Temporary Standard

(Insert section number of standard)

1990.1000

(a) Scope and Application.

(1) **General.** This section applies to all occupational exposures to _______, or to (specify the uses or clases of uses of _______ [Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number 00000], which are covered by the standard, including, where appropriate, the type of exposure to be regulated by the standard) except as provided in paragraph (a)(2).

(2) **Exemption.** This section does not apply to (insert those uses or classes of uses of _______ which are exempted from compliance with the standard, including, where appropriate,

(i) workplaces where exposure to _______ results from solid or liquid mixtures containing a specified percentage of _______ or less;

(ii) workplaces where another Federal agency is exercising statuory authority to prescribe or enforce standards or regulations affecting occupational exposure to _______ or

(iii) workplaces which are appropriately addressed in a separate standard.)

(b) Definitions.

"_______" means (definition of the substance, group of substances, or combination of substances, to be regulated).

"Authorized person" means any person specifically authorized by the employer whose duties require the person to enter a regulated area or any person entering such an area as a designated representative of employees exercising the opportunity to observe monitoring procedures under paragraph (r) of this section.

"Action level" means an airborne concentration of ________ of (insert appropriate level of exposure).

[Note: where appropriate, consider an action level as a limitation on requirements for periodic monitoring (para. (e)(3)), medical surveillance (para. (n)), training (para. (o)), and other provisions.]

"Assistant Secretary" means the Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Labor, or designee.

"Director" means the Director, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, or designee.

"Emergency" means any occurrence such as, but not limited to, equipment failure, rupture of containers, or failure of control equipment which may result in a release of ________ which is (insert appropriate quantitative or qualitative level of releases which constitutes an emergency).

"OSHA Area Office" means the Area Office of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration having jurisdiction over the geographic area where the affected workplace is located.

(c) Permissible exposure limits.

(1) Inhalation.

(i) Time-weighted average limit (TWA). Within (insert appropriate time) from the effective date of this emergency temporary standard, the employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of—in excess of: (insert appropriate exposure limit representing a level that can be complied with immediately) as an eight (8)-hour-time-weighted average.

(ii) Ceiling limit. (If appropriate.) The employer shall assure that no employee is exposed to an airborne concentration of—in excess of: (insert appropriate exposure limit representing a level that can be complied with immediately) as averaged over any: (insert appropriate time period) during the working day.

(2) Dermal and eye exposure. (As appropriate.)

(i) Within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this section, the employer shall (If eye exposure to—does not create a risk of cancer, insert exposure level or criteria which will prevent other adverse effects of eye exposure to—, if any. If eye exposure creates a risk of cancer, insert exposure level or criteria which represent the level of eye exposure to—.)

(ii) Within (insert appropriate time period of the effective date of this section, the employer shall (If skin exposure to—does not create a risk of cancer, insert exposure level or criteria which will prevent other adverse health affects of skin exposure to—if any. If skin exposure creates a risk of cancer, insert exposure level or criteria which represents the level of skin exposure to—).

[46 F.R. 5882, January 21, 1981]

(d) **Notification of Use.** Within (insert appropriate time and omit specific categories of information if appropriate) of the effective date of this section, or within fifteen (15) days following the introduction of ________ into the workplace, every employer shall report the following information to the nearest OSHA Area Office for each such workplace:

(1) The address and location of each workplace in which ________ is present;

(2) A brief description of each process or operation which may result in employee exposure to ________;

(3) The number of employees engaged in each

process or operation who may be exposed ________ and an estimate of the frequency and degree of exposure that occurs; and

(4) A brief description of the employer's safety and health program as it relates to limitation of employee exposure to ________;

(e) Exposure monitoring.

(1) General.

(i) Determinations of airborne exposure levels shall be made from air samples that are representative of each employee's exposure to ________ over an eight (8) hour period. (Modify the time period as appropriate to be practical in the relevent industries yet reasonably representative of full shift exposures.) Monitoring of exposure levels required under this paragraph shall be made as follows: [insert method or alternative methods to be used to meet the requirements of this paragraph].

(ii) For the purposes of this section, employee exposure is that exposure which would occur if the employee were not using a respirator.

(2) Initial monitoring. Each employer who has one or more workplaces where (specify the types of workplaces subject to the monitoring requirement), shall within (insert appropriate period) of the effective date of this section (insert requirements for initial monitoring, as appropriate).

(3) Frequency. (Insert, if appropriate, provisions prescribing the minimum frequency at which monitoring must be repeated, the conditions under which such frequency must be increased, or may be reduced, and conditions under which such routine monitoring may be discontinued (for example where the action level is not exceeded). Where appropriate, specify different frequency requirements for certain types of workplaces where, for example, exposure levels are subject to greater or less variability.)

(4) Additional monitoring. (Insert, if appropriate, provisions for monitoring, in addition to the requirements (if any) of paragraph (e)(3). This may include a production, process, control or personnel change which might result in new or additional exposure to ________ or whenever the employer has any other reason to suspect a change which might result in new or additional exposures to ________.)

(5) Employee notification.

(i) Within (insert appropriate period) after the receipt of monitoring results, the employer shall notify each employee in writing of the results which represent that employee's exposure.

(ii) Whenever the results indicate that the representative employee exposure exceeds the permissible exposure limits, the employer shall include in the written notice a statement that permissible exposure limits were exceeded and a description of the corrective action being taken to reduce exposure to or below the permissible exposure limits.

(6) Accuracy of measurement. (Insert requirements for accuracy of methods of measurement or detection used to comply with the paragraph.)

(f) (Reserved.)

(g) Methods of compliance.

(1) General. Employee exposures to ________ shall be controlled to or below the permissible exposure limits by any practicable combination of engineering controls, work practices and personal protective devices and equipment, during the effective period of this emergency temporary standard.

Note.—Where engineering controls or work practices can reduce employee exposures to ________ it is recommended that they be implemented where practicable, even where they do not themselves reduce exposures to, or below the permissible exposure limits. Work practices which can be implemented by the employer to help reduce employee exposures to ________ include limiting access to work areas to authorized personnel, prohibiting smoking and consumption of food and beverages in work areas, and establishing good maintenance and housekeeping practices, including the prompt clean-up of spills and repair of leaks.

(2) Engineering and work practice control plan.

(i) Within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this emergency temporary standard, the employer shall develop a written plan describing proposed means to reduce employee exposures to the lowest feasible level by means of engineering and work practice controls (which will be eventually required by a permanent standard for occupational exposure to ________, as provided for by section 1990.151(g) of this subpart).

(ii) Written plans required by this paragraph shall be submitted, upon request, to the Assistant Secretary and Director and shall be available at the worksite for examination and copying by the Assistant Secretary, the Director, and any affected employee or designated representative.

(h) Respiratory protection

(1) **Required use.** The employer shall assure that respirators are used where required pursuant to this section to reduce employee exposures to within the permissible exposure limits and in emergencies.

(2) **Respirator selection.**

(i) Where respiratory protection is required under this section, the employer shall select and provide at no cost to the employee, the appropriate respirator from Table 1 below and shall assure that the employee wears the respirator provided.

Table 1.—Respiratory Protection for

____

(The table will contain a listing of the appropriate type of respirator for various conditions of exposure to ________.)

(ii) The employer shall select respirators from those approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health under the provisions of 30 CFR Part 11.

(3) **Respirator program.**

(i) The employer shall institute a respirator protection program in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.134(b), (d), (e) and (f).

(ii) Employees who wear respirators shall be allowed to wash their face and respirator face piece to prevent potential skin irritation associated with respirator use.

(iii) The employer shall assure that the respirator issued to each employee is properly fitted (as appropriate, indicate the requirement for a qualitative or quantitative respirator fit testing program.)

(i) (Reserved).

(j) Protective clothing and equipment.

(1) **Provision and use.** Where employees are exposed to eye or skin contact with ________ (insert criteria which trigger this requirement as appropriate), the employer shall within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this standard provide, at no cost to the employees, and assure that employees wear, appropriate protective clothing or other equipment in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.132 and .133 to protect the area of the body which may come in contact with ________.

(2) **Cleaning and replacement.**

(i) The employer shall clean, launder, maintain, or replace protective clothing and equipment required by this paragraph, as needed to maintain their effectiveness.

(k) Housekeeping.

(1) **General.** The employer shall, within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this section, implement a housekeeping program to minimize accumulations of ________.

(2) **Specific provisions.** The program shall include (insert appropriate elements):

(i) Periodic scheduling of routine housekeeping procedures;

(ii) Provision for periodic cleaning of dust collection systems;

(iii) Provision for maintaining clean surfaces;

(iv) Provision for assigning personnel to housekeeping procedures; and

(v) Provision for informing employees about housekeeping program.

(l) Waste disposal.

(1) General. The employer shall assure that no waste material containing ________ is dispersed into the workplace, to the extent practicable.

(2) The employer shall label, or otherwise inform employees who may contact waste material containing ________ of the contents of such waste material.

(3) (Insert specific disposal methods, as appropriate.)

(m) (Reserved).

(n) Medical surveillance.

(1) General.

(i) The employer shall institute a program of medical surveillance for (specify the types of employees subject to the medical surveillance requirement, for example, by specifying the level, duration, and frequency of exposures to ________ which make medical surveillance appropriate for individual employees). The employer shall provide each such employee with an opportunity for medical examinations and tests in accordance with this paragraph.

(ii) The employer shall assure that all medical examinations and procedures are performed by or under the supervision of a licensed physician, and shall be provided without cost to the employee.

(2) Initial examinations. Within (insert appropriate time period) of the effective date of this section, or thereafter at the time of initial assignment, the employer shall provide each employee specified in paragraph (n)(l) of this section an opportunity for a medical examination, including at least the following elements:

(i) A work history and a medical history which shall include (insert specific areas to be covered pertinent to the health hazards posed by ________.)

(ii) A physical examination which shall include: (insert specific tests, procedures, etc., pertinent to the health hazards posed by ________. Where appropriate, provide that the examining physician shall conduct additional examinations and tests as are needed according to his professional judgement).

[Note: Where appropriate, require or permit different medical protocols, or different frequencies of medical examinations, for separate sub-populations of employees covered under paragraph (n)(1)].

(3) Periodic examinations. (If appropriate, insert appropriate medical protocol and time.)

(4) Additional examinations. If the employee for any reason develops signs or symptoms commonly associated with exposure to ______, the employer shall provide an appropriate examination and emergency medical treatment.

(5) Information provided to the physician. The employer shall provide the following information to the examining physician:

(i) A copy of this emergency temporary standard and its appendices;

(ii) A description of the affected employee's duties as they relate to the employee's exposure;

(iii) The employee's actual or representative exposure level;

(iv) The employee's anticipated or estimated exposure level (for preplacement examinations or in cases of exposures due to an emergency).

(v) A description of any personal protective equipment used or to be used; and

(vi) The names and addresses of physicians who, under the sponsorship of the employer, provided previous medical examinations of the affected employee, if such records are not otherwise available to the examining physician.

(6) Physician's written opinion.

(i) The employer shall obtain a written opinion from the examining physician which shall include:

(a) The results of the medical tests performed;

(b) The physician's opinion as to whether the employee has any detected medical condition which would place the employee at an increased risk of material impairment of the employee's health from exposure to ________,

(c) Any recommended limitations upon the employee's exposure to ________ or upon the use of protective clothing and equipment such as respirators; and

(d) A statement that the employee has been informed by the physician of the results of the medical examination and any medical conditions which require further examination or treatment.

(ii) The employer shall instruct the physician not to reveal in the written opinion specific findings or diagnoses unrelated to occupational exposure to ________;

(iii) The employer shall provide a copy of the written opinion to the affected employee.

(o) Employee information and training.

(1) Training program

(i) Within (insert appropriate time period) from the effective date of this standard, the employer shall institute a training program for all employees who (specify the employees subject to the training requirement), and shall assure their participation in the training program.

(ii) The employer shall assure that each employee is informed of the following:

(a) The information contained in the Appendices;

(b) The quantity, location, manner of use, release, or storage of ________ and the specific nature of operations which could result in exposure to ________, as well as any necessary protective steps;

(c) The purpose, proper use, and limitations of respirators;

(d) The purpose and description of the medical surveillance program required by paragraph (n) of this section; and

(e) A review of this standard.

(2) Access to training materials.

(i) The employer shall make a copy of this standard and its appendices readily available to all affected employees.

(ii) The employer shall provide, upon request, all materials relating to the employee information and training program to the Assistant Secretary and the Director.

(p) Signs and labels. (Include a Signs or a Signs and Labels provision if it is appropriate for the duration of the ETS)

(1) General.

(i) The employer may use labels or signs required by other statutes, regulations, or ordinances in addition to, or in combination with, signs and labels required by this paragraph.

(ii) The employer shall assure that no statement appears on or near any sign or label, required by this paragraph, which contradicts or detracts from the meaning of the required sign or label.

(2) Signs

(i) The employer shall post signs to clearly indicate all workplaces (Specify as appropriate the description of the area to be sign-posted such as 'where employees are exposed to ________,' or 'where exposures exceed the action level,' or 'where exposures exceed the PEL,' or 'which are regulated areas'). The signs shall bear the following legend:

DANGER

____

(insert appropriate trade or common names)

CANCER HAZARD

AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY

(ii) The employer shall assure that signs required by this paragraph are illuminated and cleaned as necessarty so that the legend is readily visible.

(iii) Where airborne concentrations of ________ exceed the permissible exposure limits, the signs shall bear the additional legend: ("Respirator Required" or "Respirator may be Required" as appropriate).

(3) Labels.

(i) The employer shall assure that precautionary labels are affixed to all containers of ________ and of products containing ________ (specify if appropriate suitable modifications), and that the labels remain affixed when ________ or products containing ______ are sold, distributed or otherwise leave the employer's workplace.

(ii) The employer shall assure that the precautionary labels required by this paragraph are readily visible and legible. The labels shall bear the following legend:

DANGER

CONTAINS ________

CANCER HAZARD

(q) Recordkeeping

(1) Exposure monitoring.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record of all monitoring required by paragraph (e) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) The dates, number, duration, and results of each of the samples taken, including a description of the sampling procedures used to determine representative employee exposure;

(b) A description of the sampling and analytical methods used;

(c) Type of respiratory protective devices worn, if any; and

(d) Name, social security number, and job classification of the employee monitored and of all other employees whose exposure the measurement is intended to represent.

(iii) The employer shall maintain this record for the effective period of this emergency temporary standard and for any additional period required by the permanent standard.

(2) Medical surveillance.

(i) The employer shall establish and maintain an accurate record for each employee subject to medical surveillance as required by paragraph (n) of this section.

(ii) This record shall include:

(a) A copy of the physician's written opinions or a written explanation of the absence of any such opinion or employee refusal to take the medical examination;

(b) Any employee complaints related to exposure to ________;

(c) A copy of the information provided to the physician as required by paragraphs (n)(5)(ii)-(iv) of this section unless it is systematically retained elsewhere by the employer for the period of time specified in (q)(2)(iii); and

(d) A copy of the employee's work history.

(iii) The employer shall assure that this record be maintained for the effective period of this emergency temporary standard, and for any additional period required by the permanent standard.

(3) Availability.

(i) The employer shall assure that all records required to be maintained by this section be made available upon request to the Assistant Secretary and the Director for examination and copying.

(ii) Employee exposure measurement records and employee medical records required by this section shall be provided upon request to employees, designated representatives, and the Assistant Secretary in accordance with 29 CFR 1970.20(a)-(e) and (g)-(i).

(r) Observation of monitoring.

(1) **Employee observation.** The employer shall provide affected employees, or their designated representatives, an opportunity to observe any monitoring of employee exposure to _______ conducted pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section.

(2) **Observation procedures.**

(i) Whenever observation of the monitoring of employee exposure to _______ requires entry into an area where the use of protective clothing or equipment is required, the employer shall provide the observer with personal protective clothing or equipment required to be worn by employees working in the area, assure the use of such clothing and equipment, and require the observer to comply with all other applicable safety and health procedures.

(ii) Without interfering with the monitoring, observers shall be entitled to:

(a) Receive an explanation of measurement procedures;

(b) Observe all steps related to the measurement of airborne concentrations of _____ performed at the place of exposure; and

(c) Record the results obtained and receive results supplied by the laboratory.

(s) **Effective date.** This section shall become effective (insert effective date).

(t) **Appendices.** The information contained in the appendices is not intended, itself, to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed or to detract from any existing obligation.

(In normal circumstances three appendices will be included in each standard, an "Appendix A—Substance Safety Data Sheet," an "Appendix B—Substance Technical Guidelines," and an "Appendix C—Medical Surveillance Guidelines." Insert additional appendices or delete any of the suggested appendices as appropriate.)

Appendix A

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

A-Frame Derricks: (see also Derricks) .181
Abrasive Blasting: (see also Ventilation) .94
  Air Compressors, Breathing Air .94(a)(6)
  Air Supply, Breathing .94(a)(6)
  Blast Cleaning Enclosures .94(a)(3)
  Cleaning Nozzles .244(b)
  Dust Hazards .94(a)(2)
  Personal Protective Equipment .94(a)(5)
Abrasive Wheel Machinery:
  Blotters .215(c)(6)
  Definitions .211(b)
  Effective Dates .220
  Excluded Machinery .215(a)(5)
  Flanges .215(a)(3), (c)
  Guard Design .215(a)(2)
    Specifications .215(b)(12)
  Guard Exposure Angles .215(b)(2)
    Band Type .215(b)(11)
    Bench and Floor Stands .215(b)(3)
    Cup Wheels .215(b)(1)
    Cutting-off Machines .215(b)(5)
    Cylindrical Grinders .215(b)(4)
    Dimensions .215(b)(10)
    Exposure Adjustment .215(b)(9)
    Material Requirements .215(b)(10)
    Snagging Machines .215(b)(7)
    Surface Grinding .215(b)(5)
    Swing Frame .215(b)(6)
    Top Grinding .215(b)(8)
  Guarding .215(a)(1), (b)
  Mounting .215(d)
    Arbor Size .215(d)(2)
    Blotters .215(d)(5)
    Bushings .215(d)(4)
    Inspections .215(d)(1)
    Multiple Wheel .215(d)(6)
    Ring Test .215(d)(1)
    Surface Conditions .215(d)(3)
  Standards Sources .221
  Work Rests .215(a)(4)
Abrasive Wheel Machinery, Portable:
  Definitions .241(b)
  Guarding .243(c)
    Cup Wheels .243(c)(2)
    General Requirements .243(c)(1)
    Other Type Grinders .243(c)(4)
    Vertical Grinders .243(c)(3)
  Inspection .243(c)(5)
  Mounting .243(c)(5)
Abrasive Wheels: (see Abrasive Wheel Machinery)
Access:
  Bulk Oxygen Systems .104(b)(2)(ii)
  Cranes .179(c)(2)
  Industrial Plants .106(e)(9)(ii)
  Processing Plants .106(h)(8)(ii)
  Roof Cars .66(c)(4)
  Spraying Operations, Vents .107(d)(10)
  Sprinklers .107(f)(2)
  Type F Powered Platforms .66(c)(13)
Accident Prevention Signs and Tags: (see also Signs and Tags) .145
  Effective Dates .149(a)
  Standards Sources .147
2-Acetylaminofluorene .1014
  Area requirements .1014(c)
    Closed system operation .1014(c)(2)
    Isolated systems .1014(c)(1)
    Maintenance and decontamination activities .1014(c)(5)
    Open-vessel system operations .1014(c)(3)
    Transfer from a closed operation .1014(c)(4)
  Definitions .1014(b)
  Medical surveillance .1014(g)
    Examinations .1014(g)(1)
    Records .1014(g)(2)
  Regulated area requirements .1014(d)
    Contamination control .1014(d)(4)
    Emergencies .1014(d)(2)
    Hygiene facilities and practices .1014(d)(3)
  Reports .1014(f)
    Incidents .1014(f)(2)
    Operations .1014(f)(1)
  Scope and application .1014(a)
  Signs, information, and training .1014(e)
    Container contents identification .1014(e)(2)
    Lettering .1014(e)(3)
    Prohibited statements .1014(e)(4)
    Signs .1014(e)(1)
    Training and indoctrination .1014(e)(5)
Acetylene .102
  Cylinders .102(a), (c)
  Effective Dates .114(b)
  Generators .102(c)
  Pipe Systems .102(b)
  Standards Sources .115
Acetylene Generators .252(a)(6)
  Approval .252(a)(6)(i)
  Location .252(a)(6)(iii)
  Maintenance .252(a)(6)(vii)
  Marking .252(a)(6)(i)
  Operation .252(a)(6)(vii)
  Portable .252(a)(6)(v)
  Pressure Limits .252(a)(6)(ii)
  Rating .252(a)(6)(ii)
  Stationary .252(a)(6)(iv)
    Houses and Rooms .252(a)(6)(vi)
Acid Carboys 262(nn)
Acrylonitrile .1045
  Appendices .1045(t)
  Compliance, Methods of .1045(g)
  Definitions .1045(b)
  Effective Dates .1045(s)
  Emergency Situations .1045(i)
  Employee Information and Training .1045(o)
  Exposure Limits, Permissible .1045(c)
  Exposure Monitoring .1045(e)
  Housekeeping .1045(k)
  Hygiene Facilities and Practices .1045(m)
  Labels .1045(p)(3)
  Medical Surveillance .1045(n)
  Monitoring, Observation of .1045(r)
  Notification of:
    Emergencies .1045(d)(2)
    Regulated Areas .1045(d)(1)
  Protective Clothing and Equipment .1045(j)
  Recordkeeping .1045(q)
  Regulated Areas .1045(f)
  Respiratory Protection .1045(h)
  Scope and Application .1045(a)
  Signs .1045(p)
  Waste Disposal .1045(l)
Adjustments:
  Cranes .179(i)(3)
  Derricks .181(f)(2), (3)
AEC Licensees .96(p)
Agricultural Operations .1928.21
Air Compressors, Abrasive Blasting .94(a)(6), .134(d)(2)(ii)
Air Contaminants .1000, .1001, .1101
  Effective Dates .98
  Exposure Limits .1000, .1001(c) and .1101(b)
  Mineral Dusts .1000(c)
  Standard Organizations .1500
  Standards Sources .1499
Air Controlling Equipment, Power Presses .217(b)(10)
Air Lift Hammers, Forging .218(e)(1)
Air Quality .134(d)
Air Receivers:
  Application .169(a)(1)
  Compressed Air .169
  Equipment:
    Drains .169(b)(2)
    Installation .169(b)(1)
    Pressure Gages .169(b)(3)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

- Traps .169(b)(2)
- Valves .169(b)(3)
- Standards Sources .169(a)(2), .170
- Air Supply .94(a)(6), .134(d)
- Airborne Radioactive Materials Exposure Limits .96(c)
- Airhoses .243(b)(2)
- Aisles:
  - Working Surfaces .22(b)
- 4-Aminodiphenyl .1011
  - Area requirements .1011(c)
    - Closed system operation .1011(c)(2)
    - Isolated systems .1011(c)(1)
    - Maintenance and decontamination activities .1011(c)(5)
    - Open-vessel system operations .1011(c)(3)
    - Transfer from a closed operation .1011(c)(4)
  - Definitions .1011(b)
  - Medical surveillance .1011(g)
    - Examinations .1011(g)(1)
    - Records .1011(g)(2)
  - Regulated area requirements .1011(d)
    - Contamination control .1011(d)(4)
    - Emergencies .1011(d)(2)
    - Hygiene facilities and practices .1011(d)(3)
  - Reports .1011(f)
    - Incidents .1011(f)(2)
    - Operations .1011(f)(1)
  - Scope and application .1011(a)
  - Signs, information, and training .1011(e)
    - Container contents identification .1011(e)(2)
    - Lettering .1011(e)(3)
    - Prohibited statements .1011(e)(4)
    - Signs .1011(e)(1)
    - Training and indoctrination .1011(e)(5)
- Ammonia, Anhydrous: (see also Anhydrous Ammonia) .111
- Ammonium Nitrate .109(i)
  - Bulk Storage .109(i)(4)
  - Containers .109(i)(3)
  - Contaminants .109(i)(5)
  - Electrical Installations .109(i)(6)
  - Fire Protection .109(i)(7)
  - Separation Walls .109(i)(5)
  - Warehouses .109(i)(4)
- Anchoring Fixed Machinery .212(b)
- Anhydrous Ammonia:
  - Containers:
    - Appurtenances .111(b)(6)
    - Charging .111(b)(11)
    - DOT .111(e)
    - Farm Vehicles .111(g), (h)
    - Location .111(b)(5)
    - Motor Vehicle .111(f)
    - Markings .111(b)(3)
    - Non-Refrigerated .111(b)(2), (c)
    - Refrigerated .111(d)
      - Markings .111(b)(4)
    - Safety Relief Devices .111(b)(9), (c)(3), (d)(4), (f)(5)
  - Definitions .111(a)(2)
  - Effective Dates .114
  - Electrical Systems .111(b)(16)
  - Fittings .111(b)(7)
  - Handling .111
  - Hoses .111(b)(8)
  - Liquid Level Gaging Devices .111(b)(14)
  - Liquid Transfer .111(b)(12), (f)(6)
  - Piping .111(b)(7)
  - Standards Sources .115
  - Storage .111
  - Tank Car Unloading .111(b)(13)
  - Tubing .111(b)(7)
- Appliances:
  - Electric Welders .306(d)(1)
  - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(b)(20), (g)(11)
- Arbor Grinding Wheels .215(d)(2)
- Arc Welding .252(b)
  - Environmental Conditions .252(b)(2)(ii)
  - Equipment:
    - Confined Spaces .252(d)(4)
    - Design .252(b)(2)(iv)
    - Disconnecting Means .305(j)(3)(ii)
    - Grounding .252(b)(3)(ii)
    - Installation .252(b)(3)
    - Maintenance .252(b)(4)(ix)
    - Operation .252(b)(4)
    - Personnel Protection .252(e)
    - Protection from Rays .252(e)(2)(iii)
    - Supply Connections .252(b)(3)(iii), (b)(4)(iii)
  - Health Protection .252(f)
  - Ventilation .252(e)(4)(ii), (f)(1)(ii)
  - Voltage .252(b)(2)(iii)
- Arsenic, Inorganic .1018
  - Appendices .1018(t)
  - Compliance, Methods of .1018(g)
  - Definitions .1018(b)
  - Effective Dates .1018(s), (u)
  - Employee Information and Training .1018(o)
  - Exposure:
    - Limit, Permissible .1018(c)
    - Monitoring .1018(e)
  - Housekeeping .1018(k)
  - Hygiene Facilities and Practices .1018(m)
  - Labels .1018(p)(3)
  - Medical Surveillance .1018(n), (q)(2)
  - Monitoring, Observation of .1018(r)
  - Protective Clothing and Equipment .1018(j)
  - Recordkeeping .1018(q)
  - Regulated Area .1018(f)
  - Respiratory Protection .1018(h)
  - Scope and Application .1018(a)
  - Signs .1018(p)(i)(2)
  - Startup Dates .1018(u)
  - Use, Notification of .1018(d)
- Asbestos, Tremolite, Anthophyllite, and Actinolite .1001, .1101
  - Appendices .1001(p)
  - Definition .1001(b), .1101(a)
  - Compliance, Methods of .1001(f), .1101(c)
  - Effective Dates .1001(o)
  - Exposure Limit, Permissible .1001(c), .1101(b)
  - Exposure Monitoring .1001(d)
  - Hazard Communication .(j)
  - Housekeeping .1001(k), .1101(h)
  - Hygiene Facilities and Practices .1001(i)
  - Medical Surveillance .1001(l)
  - Monitoring Observation of .1001(n), .1101(f)
  - Protective Work Clothing and Equipment .1001(h), .1101(d)
  - Recordkeeping .1001(m), .1101(i)
  - Regulated Areas .1001(e)
  - Respiratory Protection .1001(g)
  - Scope and Application .1001(a)
- Asbestos .1101, .1001
  - Caution Signs and Labels .1101(g)
  - Compliance, Methods of .1101(c), 1001(f)
  - Definitions .1101(a), .1001(b)
  - Housekeeping .1101(h), .1001(k)
  - Measurements, Methods of .1101(e)
  - Medical Examination .1101(j)
  - Monitoring .1101(f), .1001(n)
  - Permissible Exposure to Airborne Concentrations of Asbestos Fibers .1101(b), .1001(c)
  - Personal Protective Equipment .1101(d), .1001(h)
  - Recordkeeping .1101(i), .1001(m)
- Atmospheric Contaminants: (see Air Contaminants)
- Atmospheric Tanks .106(b)(1)(iii)
- Attendants:
  - Liquefied Hydrogen Systems .103(c)(4)(ii)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

- Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(b)(14)(i)
- Automatic Sprinkler Systems: (see also Sprinkler Systems, Automatic) .159
- Automobile Undercoatings .107(k)
- Baffle Plates:
  - Spray Booths .107(b)
- Bakery Equipment .263
  - Air Conditioning .263(i)(14)
  - Bag Chutes and Lifts .263(d)(2)
  - Biscuit Equipment .263(k)
  - Blenders .263(d)(3)
  - Conveyors .263(d)(7), (i)(7)
  - Cracker Equipment .263(k)
  - Dividers .263(f)
  - Dough Brakes .263(h)
  - Dumpbins .263(d)(3)
  - Flour Handing Equipment .263(d)
  - Machine Guarding .263(c)
  - Miscellaneous Equipment .263(i)
  - Mixers .263(e)
  - Moulders .263(g)
  - Ovens .263(l)
  - Pulverizers .263(k)(2)
  - Scales, Flour .263(d)(9)
  - Sifters .263(d)(8)
  - Slicers .263(j)
  - Storage Bins .263(d)(6)
  - Wrappers .263(j)
- Ballast, Cranes .180(i)(2)
- Band Saws and Resaws .213(i)
- Barking Devices:
  - Hydraulic .261(e)(14)
  - Pulp Wood and Chips .261(c), (e)(8)
  - Sawmills .265(d)(4)
- Barrels:
  - Guarding .212(a)(4)
- Basket Derricks: (see Derricks) .181
- Bathing Facilities:
  - Labor Camps .142(f)
- Battery Changing and Charging .178(g), 305(j)(7)
- Bearings .219(j), (p)(3)
- Belts:
  - Definitions .211(f)(1)–(3)
  - Manlifts .68(c)(1)
  - Power Transmission Apparatus .219(e)(1), (o)(3), (p)(6)
- Bench and Floor Stands Guarding .215(b)(3)
- Benzidine .1010
  - Area requirements .1010(c)
    - Closed system operation .1010(c)(2)
    - Isolated systems .1010(c)(1)
    - Maintenance and decontamination activities .1010(c)(5)
    - Open-vessel system operations .1010(c)(3)
    - Transfer from a closed operation .1010(c)(4)
  - Definitions .1010(b)
  - Medical surveillance .1010(g)
    - Examinations .1010(g)(1)
    - Records .1010(g)(2)
  - Regulated area requirements .1010(d)
    - Contamination control .1010(d)(4)
    - Emergencies .1010(d)(2)
    - Hygiene facilities and practices .1010(d)(3)
  - Reports .1010(f)
    - Incidents .1010(f)(2)
    - Operations .1010(f)(1)
  - Scope and application .1010(a)
  - Signs, information, and training .1010(e)
    - Container contents identification .1010(e)(2)
    - Lettering .1010(e)(3)
    - Prohibited statements .1010(e)(4)
    - Signs .1010(e)(1)
    - Training and indoctrination .1010(e)(5)
- Beryllium .252(f)(8)
- Bins, Bulk Storage of Explosives .109(g)(4)
- Biological Hazards Signs .145(e)(4), (f)(8)
- Blades Explosure .212(a)(5)
- Blankets, Rubber Insulating .137
- Blast Holes .109(e)(3)
- Blasting Agents .109(g)
  - Bulk Delivery .109(g)(3), (h)(4)
  - Bulk Storage Bins .109(g)(4)
  - Definitions .109(a)
  - Effective Dates .115
  - Mixing, Fixed Location .109(g)(2), (h)(3)
  - Mixing Vehicles .109(g)(3), (h)(4)
  - Slurries .109(h)
  - Standards Sources .115
  - Storage .109(g)(5)
  - Transportation .109(g)(6)
  - Use .109(g)(7)
  - Water Gels .109(h)
- Bleaching:
  - Pulp and Paper Mills .261(h)
  - Textiles .262(p)
- Blotters .215(c)(1)(v), (c)(6), (d)(5)
- Board Drop Hammers .218(e)(2)
- Boatswain's Chair Scaffolds .28(j)
  - Employee Protection .28(j)(4)
  - Fiber Ropes .28(j)(2)
  - Life Belts .28(j)(4)
  - Roof Irons, Hooks .28(j)(6)
  - Seat Slings .28(j)(3)
  - Size .28(j)(1)
  - Tackle .28(j)(5)
- Boom Guards:
  - Cranes .180(j)(2)
  - Derricks .181(j)(5)(ii)
- Booms, Derricks .181(i)(6)
- Boring Machines .213(l)
- Brakes:
  - Bridges .179(f)(4), (6)
  - Control .179(f)(3)
  - Cranes .179(f)
  - Friction, Power Press .217(b)(2)
  - Hoists .179(f)(1)
  - Holding .179(f)(2)
  - Industrial Trucks .178(g), (h), (m)(5)
  - Manlifts 68(c)(2)(i)
  - Power Control .179(f)(3)
  - Trolleys .179(f)(4), (5)
- Brazing: (see also Welding) .252
  - Definitions .251
  - Standards Sources .253
- Breast Derricks: (see also Derricks) .181(a)(4)
- Bricklayers' Square Scaffolds .28(l)
  - Height .28(l)(6)
  - Level .28(l)(7)
  - Platform Planks .28(l)(5)
  - Reinforcement .28(l)(3)
  - Size .28(l)(1)
  - Square Bracing .28(l)(4)
- Bridge Bumpers, Cranes .179(e)(2)
- Bridge Plates: (see also Dockboards) .30(a)
- Buffing: (see Grinding, Polishing and Buffing)
  - Building Maintenance Powered Platforms .66
- Buildings, Sawmills .265(c)
- Bulk Delivery:
  - Blasting Agents .109(g)(3), (h)(4)
  - Explosives .109(h)(4)
- Bulk Oxygen Systems .104
  - Accessibility .104(b)(2)(ii)
  - Cleaning .104(b)(8)(i)
  - Containers .104(b)(4), (6)
    - Gaseous .104(b)(4)(iii)
    - Liquid .104(b)(4)(ii)
  - Definitions .104(b)(1)
  - Dikes .104(b)(2)(v)
  - Distances from Hazards .104(b)(3)
    - Combustible Liquids .104(b)(3)(vii), (viii)
    - Combustible Materials .104(b)(3)(x)
    - Combustible Structures .104(b)(3)(ii)
    - Congested Areas .104(b)(3)(xiii)
    - Fire Resistant Structures .104(b)(3)(iii)
    - Flammable Gases .104(b)(3)(ix)
    - Flammable Liquids .104(b)(3)(v), (vi)
    - Openings .104(b)(3)(iv)
    - Slow-Burning Materials .104(b)(3)(xi)
  - Electrical Wiring .104(b)(8)(ix)
  - Firewalls .104(b)(3)(iii)
  - Fittings .104(b)(5)
  - Installation .104(b)(8)(iv)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

- Joints .104(b)(8)(ii)
- Leakage .104(b)(2)(iii)
- Liquid Oxygen Vaporizers .104(b)(7)
  - Grounding .104(b)(7)(iv)
  - Heating .104(b)(7)(iii)
  - Mounts and Couplings .104(b)(7)(i)
  - Relief Devices .104(b)(7)(ii)
- Location .104(b)(2)
- Maintenance .104(b)(10)
- Marking .104(b)(8)(viii)
- Operating Instructions .104(b)(9)
- Piping .104(b)(5)
- Placarding .104(b)(8)(viii)
- Safety Relief Devices .104(b)(6), (7)(ii)
  - All Containers .104(b)(6)(i)
  - ASME Containers .104(b)(6)(iii)
  - DOT Containers .104(b)(6)(ii)
- Security .104(b)(8)(vi)
- Storage Containers .104(b)(4), (6)
- Testing .104(b)(8)(v)
- Tubing .104(b)(5)
- Vaporizers .104(b)(7)
- Ventilation .104(b)(3)(xii)
- Venting .104(b)(8)(vii)

Bulk Plants, Flammable and Combustible Liquids .106(f)
- Buildings .106(f)(2)
- Drainage .106(f)(7)
- Electrical Equipment .106(f)(5)
- Fire Control Devices .106(f)(8)
- Ignition Sources .106(f)(6)
- Liquid Storage .106(f)(1)
- Loading .106(f)(3)
- Waste Disposal .106(f)(7)
- Wharves .106(f)(4)

Bumpers:
- Bridge .179(e)(2)
- Trolley .179(e)(3)

Cabs:
- Cranes .179(c), (o)(2); 180(i)(3)
- Derricks .181(j)(8)

Cadmium .252(f)(9)
- Confined Spaces .252(f)(9)(ii)
- Indoors .252(f)(9)(i)
- Warning Labels .252(f)(1)(v)

Calcium Carbide:
- Indoors .252(a)(7)(ii)
- Packaging .252(a)(7)(i)
- Storage .252(a)(7)

Calenders .262(ee)
- Rubber and Plastics Inuustry:
  - Definitions .211(c)
  - Location Protection .216(d)(2)
  - Safety Controls .216(c)
  - Stopping Limits .216(f)(1), (3)
  - Switches, Trip and Emergency .216(e)
- Textiles .262(ee)

Canisters, Gas Mask: (see Gas Mask Canisters, Respirators)

Cantilever Gantry Cranes: (see Gantry Cranes)

Carbon Dioxide Extinguishers
- Dip Tanks .108(g)(4)

Carpenters' Bracket Scaffolds .28(k)
- Bracket Attachment .28(k)(2)
- Bracket Dimensions .28(k)(1)
- Employee Protection .28(k)(3)
- Guardrails .28(k)(5)
- Platform Size .28(k)(4)

Caustics .262(oo)
- Emergency Showers .261(g)(18)(i)
- Pipeline Identification .261(h)(3)(vi)

Caution Signs and Labels .145(c)(2), (d)(4)
- Asbestos .1001(j)(1), 1101(g)(1)(i), (g)(2)(i)-(ii)
- Fluorides .252(f)(1)(v)(c)
- Ionizing Radiation .96(e), (g), (h)
- Welding .252(f)(1)(v)(a)

Ceiling Workers' Scaffolds: (see also Plasterers' Scaffolds) .28(o)

Chain Guarding .219(f)(3)

Change Rooms:
- Asbestos .1101(d)(4)
- Drying Facilities .141(f)
- Separate Facilities .141(e)

Charge Initiation .109(e)(4)

Chemical Plants: (see also Refineries, Chemical Plants and Distilleries .106(i)

Chicago Boom Derricks: (see also Derricks) .181(a)(5)

Chicken Ladders: (see also Crawling Boards) .28(t)

bis-ChloroMethyl Ether .1008
- Area Requirements .1008(c)
  - Closed System Operation .1008(c)(2)
  - Isolated Systems .1008(c)(1)
  - Maintenance and Decontamination Activities .1008(c)(5)
  - Open-Vessel System Operations .1008(c)(3)
  - Transfer from a Closed Operation .1008(c)(4)
- Definitions .1008(b)
- Medical Surveillance .1008(g)
  - Examinations .1008(g)(1)
  - Records .1008(g)(2)
- Regulated Area Requirements .1008(d)
  - Contamination Control .1008(d)(4)
  - Emergencies .1008(d)(2)
  - Hygiene Facilities and Practices .1008(d)(3)
- Reports .1008(f)
  - Incidents .1008(f)(2)
  - Operations .1008(f)(1)
- Scope and Application .1008(a)
- Signs, Information, and Training .1008(e)
  - Container Contents Identification .1008(e)(2)
  - Lettering .1008(e)(3)
  - Prohibited Statements .1008(e)(4)
  - Signs .1008(e)(1)
  - Training and Indoctrination .1008(e)(5)

Chute Openings .23(a)(3)

Circular Resaws .213(e)

Circular Saws .213(f)
- Arbors .213(s)(4)
- Portable .243(a)(1)

Clean Air, Spray Finishing .94(c)(7)

Cleaning:
- Air Receivers .169
- Bulk Oxygen Systems .104(b)(8)(i)
- Compressed Air .242(b)
- Powder Coatings .107(l)(4)(i), (ii)
- Powered Platforms .66(e)(7)
- Respirators .134(f)(3)
- Solvents .107(g)(5)
- Spray .94(d)(5)
- Spray Booths .107(b)(9)
- Spraying Operations .107(g)(2)

Cleaning Compounds .242(f)(11)
- Degreasing .252(f)(11)(ii)
- Manufacturer's Instructions .252(f)(11)(i)

Cleaning Solvents:
- Spraying Nozzles .107(g)(5)

Clear Zones:
- Industrial Plants .106(e)(9)(iv)
- Processing Plants .106(h)(8)(iv)

Clearances:
- Cranes .179(b)(6), .180(j)(1)
- Derricks .181(j)(5)
- Fixed Ladders .27(c)
  - Back .27(c)(4)
  - Climbing Side .27(c)(1)
  - Grab Bars .27(c)(5)
  - Hatch Covers .27(c)(7)
  - Step-Across Distance .27(c)(6)
  - With Cages or Baskets .27(c)(3)
  - Without Cages or Wells .27(c)(2)
- Manlifts .68(b)(11)
- Spraying Discharges .107(d)(8)
- Stairs .24(i)

Clothing, Protective: (see also Personal Protective Equipment) .252(e)(3)
- Asbestos .1001(h)(1), 1101(d)
- Body .156(e)(3)
- Electrical .137
- Eye .133, .156(e)(5)
- Face .133, .156(e)(5)
- Fire Brigade .156
- Footwear .136, .156(e)(2)
- Goggles .133
- Hand .156(e)(4)
- Head .135, .156(e)(5)
- Helmets .135

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term | Section No.

  - Leg .156(e)(3)
  - Rubber .137
  - Storage .107(g)(4)
  - Welders .252(e)(3)
- Clutches .217(b)(3), (7)
  - Definition .180(a)(19)
  - Power Transmission Apparatus .219(k)
- Coal Tar Pitch Volatiles .1002
- Coatings, Spray:
  - Dual Component .107(m)
  - Organic Peroxide .107(m)
  - Powder .107(l)
  - Undercoatings .107(k)
- Collars .219(i)
- Coke Oven Emissions .1029
  - Appendices .1029(p)
  - Compliance, Methods of .1029(f)
  - Definitions .1029(b)
  - Effective Date .1029(o)
  - Employee Information .1029(k)
  - Employee Training .1029(k)
  - Exposure Measurement .1029(e)
  - Exposure Monitoring .1029(e)
  - Hygiene Facilities .1029(i)
  - Hygiene Practices .1029(i)
  - Medical Surveillance .1029(j)
  - Observation of Monitoring .1029(n)
  - Permissible Exposure Limit .1029(c)
  - Precautionary Signs and Labels .1029(l)
  - Protective Clothing .1029(h)
  - Protective Equipment .1029(h)
  - Recordkeeping .1029(m)
  - Regulated Areas .1029(d)
  - Respiratory Protection .1029(g)
  - Scope and Application .1029(a)
- Color Codes:
  - Air Contaminants .134(g)(6)
  - Danger .144(a)(1)(ii)
  - Effective Dates .149
  - Fire Protection .144(a)(1)(i)
  - Gas Mask Canisters .134(g)(6)
  - Physical Hazards, Colors .144(a)
    - Red .144(a)(1)
    - Yellow .144(a)(3)
  - Respirators .134(g)(6)
  - Standards Sources .147
  - Stop .144(a)(1)(iii)
- Combustible Dusts, Trucks Used .178(c)(2)(vi)
- Combustible Liquids: (see Flammable and Combustible Liquids) .106
  - Effective Dates .114
  - Standards Sources .115
- Combustible Materials:
  - Welding .252(d)(2)(i)
- Communicable Diseases Reporting:
  - Labor Camps .142(l)
- Communications, Emergency:
  - Type F Powered Platforms .66(c)(23)
  - Type T Powered Platforms .66(d)(7)
- Compressed Air, Cleaning .242(b)
- Compressed Air Equipment: (see also Compressed Gas Equipment)
  - Air Receivers .169
- Compressed Gas Cylinders: (see also Compressed Gases) .252(a)(2)
  - Approval .252(a)(2)(i)
  - Inspection .101(a)
  - Manifolding .252(a)(3)
  - Markings .252(a)(2)(i)
  - Operating Procedures .252(a)(2)(v)
  - Oxygen Manifolds .252(a)(3)(ii), (iii)
  - Public Protection .101(c)
  - Safety Relief Valves .101(c)
  - Standard Sources .170
  - Storage .252(a)(2)(ii)-(iv)
- Compressed Gas Equipment: (see Compressed Gas Cylinders)
- Compressed Gases: (see also Compressed Gas Cylinders) .101
  - Effective Dates .114
  - Handling .101(b)
  - Safety Relief Devices .101(c)
  - Standards Sources .115
  - Storage .101(b)
- Conductors: (see also Electric Wiring)
  - Cranes .179(g)(1)(iv), (6)

Subject term | Section No.

  - General Wiring .305(f)
- Confined Spaces, Welding .252(d)(4), (e)(4)
  - Beryllium .252(f)(8)
  - Cadmium .252(f)(9)(ii)
  - Electrode Removal .252(e)(4)(v)
  - Fluorine Compounds .252(f)(5)
  - Gas Cylinder Shutoff .252(e)(4)(vi)
  - Lead .252(f)(7)(i), (iii)
  - Lifelines .252(e)(4)(iv)
  - Mercury .252(f)(10)
  - Ventilation .252(e)(4)(ii), (f)(4)
  - Warning Signs .252(e)(4)(vii)
  - Zinc .252(f)(6)(i)
- Containers: (see also Tank Storage, Portable)
  - Ammonium Nitrate .109(i)(3)
  - Bulk Oxygen Systems .104(b)(4), (6)
    - Gaseous .104(b)(4)(iii)
    - Liquid .104(b)(4)(ii)
  - Bulk Plants .106(f)
  - Flammable Liquids, Filling .106(f)(2)(iii)(c)
  - Gaseous Hydrogen Systems .103(b)(1)
  - Guarding .212(a)(4)
  - Incidental Storage .106(e)(2)(ii)
  - Indoor .106(d)(5)(ii)
  - Industrial Plants .106(e)(2)(ii)
  - Liquified Hydrogen Systems .103(c)(1)(i)
  - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110
  - Spraying .107(e)(3), (5)
  - Welding, Gas .252(a)(2)
- Containers, Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110
  - Accessories .110(b)(7); (c)(6); (d)(3), (8); (e)(5)
  - Awaiting Use or Resale .110(f)
  - Capacity .110(d)(6), (e)(10), (h)(5)
  - Charging Plants .110(d)(13)
  - Construction .110(b)(3)
  - Cylinder Systems .110(c)
    - Accessories .110(c)(6)
    - Indoor .110(c)(5)
    - Markings .110(c)(2)
    - Outdoor .110(c)(4)
    - Valves .110(c)(6)
  - Filling Densities .110(b)(12)
  - Fire Protection .110(d)(14)
  - Fittings .110(b)(8); (e)(6); (g)(10); (h)(7), (9)
  - Hoses .110(b)(9)
  - Industrial Plants .110(d)(12)
  - Installation .110(e)(4), (h)(6)
  - Lighting .110(d)(16)
  - Location .110(b)(6), (f)(5)
  - Markings .110(b)(5), (c)(2)
  - Non-DOT Containers .110(d)
    - Accessories .110(d)(3)
    - Capacity .110(d)(6)
    - Installation .110(d)(7)
    - Pipes .110(d)(3)
    - Pressure, Design .110(d)(2)
    - Reinstallation .110(d)(5)
    - Safety Relief Devices .110(d)(4)
    - Valves .110(d)(3)
  - Original Testing .110(b)(3)
  - Piping .110(b)(8), (d)(3), (e)(6), (h)(9)
  - Pressure Design .110(d)(2), (e)(3)
  - Safety Relief Devices .110(b)(10), (c)(7), (d)(4), (e)(7), (g)(7), (h)(4)
  - Tubing .110(b)(8), (e)(6), (g)(10)
  - Valves .110(b)(7), (c)(6), (d)(3), (e)(5), (g)(6), (h)(9)
  - Vaporizers .110(b)(11), (d)(17), (e)(6)
  - Welding .110(b)(4)
- Controllers:

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

- Cranes .179(g)(3)
- Conveyors:
  - Bakeries .263(d)(7), (i)(7)
  - Dip Tanks .108(c)(6)
  - Electrostatic Spraying .107(h)(7)
  - Forging Machines .218(j)(3)
  - Sawmills .265(c)(18)
  - Spray Booths .107(b)(7)
- Corrosion Protection:
  - Piping, Valves and Fittings .106(c)(5)
  - Storage Tanks .106(b)(1)(vi)
  - Underground Tanks .106(b)(3)(iii)
- Cotton Dust .1043
  - Appendices .1043(n)
  - Definitions .1043(b)
  - Effective Date .1043(m)
  - Employee Education and Training .1043(i)
  - Exposure Limits, Permissible .1043(c)
  - Exposure Monitoring and Measurement .1043(d)
  - Medical Surveillance .1043(h)
  - Methods of Compliance .1043(e)
  - Monitoring, Observation of .1043(l)
  - Recordkeeping .1043(k)
  - Respirators, Use of .1043(f)
  - Scope and Application .1043(a)
  - Signs .1043(j)
  - Work Practices .1043(g)
- Counterbalances .217(b)(9)
- Counterweights:
  - Cranes .180(i)(2)
- Coupler Scaffolds: (see also Tube and Coupler Scaffolds) .28(c)
- Coupler Scaffolds, Mobile: (see also Tube and Coupler Scaffolds, Mobile) .29(d)
- Covers, Openings:
  - Working Surfaces .23(e), 23(a)(1), (3)(i), (5), (6), (8)(ii), (9)
- Cranes:
  - Crawler .180
  - Definitions .179(a)
  - Effective Dates .179(b)(2), .180(b)(2), .182
  - Electric .306(b)
  - Gantry .179
  - Locomotive .180
  - Overhead .179
  - Pulp and Paper Mills .261(c)(8)
  - Standards Sources .189
  - Truck .180
- Crawler Cranes: (see also Crawler, Locomotive and Truck Cranes) .180
- Crawler, Locomotive and Truck Cranes .180
  - Cabs .180(i)(3)
  - Definitions .180(a)
  - Effective Dates .180(b)(2), .182
  - Electric Power Lines .180(j)
  - Fire Extinguishers .180(i)(5)
  - Inspections .180(d)
    - Frequent .180(d)(3)
    - Idle (Irregular) .180(d)(5)
    - Initial .180(d)(1)
    - Periodic .180(d)(4)
    - Records .180(d)(6)
    - Ropes .180(g)
  - Load Handling .180(h)
  - Load Ratings .180(c)
  - Maintenance .180(f)
  - Refueling .180(i)(4)
  - Rope Inspection .180(g)
  - Standards Sources .189
  - Swinging Locomotives .180(i)(6)
  - Testing .180(e)
- Crawling Boards .28(t)
  - Construction .28(t)(1)
  - Lifelines .28(t)(2)
- Crosscut Table Saws .213(d)
- Cup Wheels .243(c)(2)
  - Flaring-Cup, Type 11 .241(b)(8)
  - Straight-Cup, Type 6 .241(b)(9)
  - Straight, Type 1 .241(b)(10)
- Curing Apparatus: (see Drying, Curing and Fusion Apparatus)
- Cutting: (see also Welding) .252
  - Containers .252(d)(3)
  - Definitions .251
  - Standards Sources .253
  - Ventilation .252(f)(2), (3)
- Cutting-Off Machines .215(b)(5)
- Cutoff Couplings .219(k)(1)
- Cutoff Saws, Swing .213(g)
- Cylinders, Welding Gas .252(a)(2)
  - Manifolding .252(a)(3)
  - Operating Procedures .252(a)(2)(v)
  - Storage .252(a)(2) (ii)–(iv)
- Cylindrical Grinders .215(b)(4)
- Danger:
  - Color Codes .144(a)(1)(ii)
  - Signs .145(c)(1), (d)(2)
- Dates, Effective: (see Effective Dates)
- DBCP (1, 2-Dibromo-3-Chloropropane) .1044
- Dead-Man Controls .243(a)(2)
- Decorations:
  - Egress .37(l)(1)
  - Explosives .37(l)(2)
- Decorator's Scaffolds: (see also Plasterers' Scaffolds) .28(o)
- Degreasing:
  - Cleaning Compounds .252(f)(11)(ii)
  - Open Surface Tanks .94(d)(5), (12)
- Derricks:
  - Adjustments .181(f)(3)
  - Cabs .181(j)(6)
  - Definitions .181(a)
  - Effective Dates .181(b)(2), .182
  - Electric Power Lines .181(j)(5)
  - Fire Extinguishers .181(j)(3)
  - Guards .181(j)(1)
  - Hooks .181(j)(2)
  - Inspections .181(d)
    - Frequent .181(d)(2)
    - Idle .181(d)(4)
    - Periodic .181(d)(3)
    - Ropes .181(g)
  - Load Handling .181(i)
  - Load Ratings .181(c)
  - Maintenance .181(f)
  - Operations .181(h)
  - Refueling .181(j)(4)
  - Repairs .181(f)(3)
  - Rope Inspections .181(g)
  - Standards Sources .189
  - Testing .181(e)
- 1,2-Dibromo-3-Chloropropane .1044
  - Appendices .1044(r)
  - Compliance, Methods of .1044(g)
  - Definitions .1044(b)
  - Emergency Situations .1044(i)
  - Employee Information and Training .1044(n)
  - Exposure Limit, Permissible .1044(c)
  - Exposure Monitoring .1044(f)
  - Housekeeping .1044(k)
  - Hygiene Facilities and Practices .1044(l)
  - Labels .1044(o)(3)
  - Medical Surveillance .1044(m)
  - Monitoring, Observation of .1044(q)
  - Protective Clothing and Equipment .1044(j)
  - Recordkeeping .1044(p)
  - Regulated Areas .1044(e)
  - Respirators .1044(h)
  - Scope and Application .1044(a)
  - Signs .1044(o)
  - Use, Notification of .1044(d)
- 3,3′-Dichlorobenzidine (and its salts) .1007
  - Area requirements .1007(c)
    - Closed system operation .1007(c)(2)
    - Isolated systems .1007(c)(1)
    - Maintenance and decontamination activities .1007(c)(5)
    - Open-vessel system operations .1007(c)(3)
    - Transfers from a closed operation .1007(c)(4)
  - Definitions .1007(b)
  - Medical Surveillance .1007(g)
    - Examinations .1007(g)(1)
    - Records .1007(g)(2)
  - Regulated area requirements .1007(d)
    - Contamination control .1007(d)(4)
    - Emergencies .1007(d)(2)
    - Hygiene facilities and practices .1007(d)(3)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

- Reports .1007(f)
  - Incidents .1007(f)(2)
  - Operations .1007(f)(1)
- Scope and application .1007(a)
- Signs, information, and training .1007(e)
  - Container contents identification .1007(e)(2)
  - Lettering .1007(e)(3)
  - Prohibited statements .1007(e)(4)
  - Signs .1007(e)(1)
  - Training and indoctrination .1007(e)(5)

- Dies .217(d)
  - Changing .218(h)(5)
  - Effective Dates .217(d)(1)
  - Fastening .217(d)(7)
  - Guide Post Hazards .217(d)(4)
  - Handling .217(d)(3), (8)
  - Requirements .217(d)(1)
  - Scrap:
    - Handling .217(d)(3)
  - Setting .217(d)(9)
  - Stroke .217(d)(6)
  - Tonnage .217(d)(6)
  - Unitized Tooling .217(d)(5)
  - Weight .217(d)(8)
- Diesel Powered Trucks .178(b)(1)-(3)
- Dikes:
  - Bulk Oxygen Systems .104(b)(2)(v)
  - Storage Tanks .106(b)(2)(vii), (c)
- Dimethylaminoazobenzene .1015
  - Area requirements .1015(c)
    - Closed system operation .1015(c)(2)
    - Isolated systems .1015(c)(1)
    - Maintenance and decontamination activities .1015(c)(5)
    - Open-vessel system operations .1015(c)(3)
    - Transfer from a closed operation .1015(c)(4)
  - Definitions .1015(b)
  - Medical surveillance .1015(g)
    - Examinations .1015(g)(1)
    - Records .1015(g)(2)
  - Regulated area requirements .1015(d)
    - Contamination control .1015(d)(4)
    - Emergencies .1015(d)(2)
    - Hygiene facilities and practices .1015(d)(3)
  - Reports .1015(f)
    - Incidents .1015(f)(2)
    - Operations .1015(f)(1)
  - Scope and application .1015(a)
  - Signs, information, and training .1015(e)
    - Container contents identification .1015(e)(2)
    - Lettering .1015(e)(3)
    - Prohibited statements .1015(e)(4)
    - Signs .1015(e)(1)
    - Training and indoctrination .1015(e)(5)
- Dining Facilities: (see also Lunchrooms)
  - Labor Camps .142(i)
- Dip Tanks .108
  - Applications .108(h)
  - Bottom Drains .108(c)(3)
  - Construction .108(c)
  - Conveyors .108(c)(6)
  - Covers .108(g)(6)
  - Definitions .108(a)
  - Effective Dates .114
  - Electrical Ignition Sources .108(e)
  - Electrostatic Apparatus .108(h)(3)
  - Fire Extinguishers .108(g)
  - Fire Protection .108(c)(5), (g), (h)(1)(v)
  - Flow Coating .108(h)(2)
  - Hardening .108(h)(1)
  - Heating .108(c)(7)
  - Ignition Sources .108(e)
  - Inspections .108(f)(3)
  - Liquid Storage .108(d)
  - Maintenance .108(f)
  - Overflow Pipes .108(c)(2)
  - Salvage Tanks .108(c)(4)
  - Sprinklers .108(c)(5)
  - Standards Sources .115
  - Tempering .108(h)(1)
  - Ventilation .108(b)
  - Warning Signs .108(f)(4)
  - Waste Cans .108(f)(2)

Subject term — Section No.

- Disposal Systems: (see Waste Disposal Systems)
- Distances From Hazards:
  - Ammonium Nitrate .109(i)(5)
  - Bulk Oxygen Systems .104(b)(3)
  - Dip Tanks .108(e)(1)(ii)
  - Electrostatic Spraying .107(h)(6)
  - Explosives Storage .109(c)
  - Ignition Sources, Separation .107(c)(2)
  - Spray Booths, Separations .107(b)(8)
- Distilleries: (see also Refineries, Chemical Plants and Distilleries) .106(i)
- Distribution Plates:
  - Spray Booths .107(b)(4)
- Dividers, Bakery Equipment .263(f)
- Diving Commercial .420, .427, .430, .440, .441
  - Effective Date .441
  - Equipment .430
  - Live boating .427
  - Mixed-Gas Diving .426
  - Post-Dive Procedures .423
  - Pre-Dive Procedures .422
  - Procedures During Dive .421
  - Recordkeeping Requirements .440
  - Safe Practices Manual .420
  - Scuba Diving .424
  - Surface-Supplied Air Diving .425
- Dockboards .30(a)
- Dough Brakes, Manually Fed .263(h)
- Drag Saws .213(r)
- Drainage:
  - Bulk Plants .106(f)(7)
  - Industrial Plants .106(e)(3)(iv)
  - Labor Camps .142(a)(1)
  - Processing Plants .106(h)(3)(i)
  - Service Stations .106(g)(7)
  - Sprinkler Systems .159(7)
- Drains:
  - Air Receivers .169(b)(2)
  - Dip Tanks .108(c)(3)
  - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(d)(11)
- Dressing Rooms, Personnel .141(e)
- Drips, Condensed Gas .110(d)(9)
- Drives—Belt, Rope and Chain .219(e), (g), (o)(3)
  - Belt Tighteners .219(e)(6)
  - Cone-Pulley Belts .219(e)(5)
  - Horizontal Belts and Ropes .219(e)(1)(i)
  - Inclined Belts .219(e)(3)
  - Overhead Horizontal Belts .219(e)(2)
  - Vertical Belts .219(e)(3), (4)
- Drums .212(a)(4)
- Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems, Fixed .161
  - Dip Tanks .108(j)(5)
  - Scope and Application .161(1)
- Drying:
  - Spraying Operations .107(d)(12)
- Drying, Curring, and Fusion Apparatus .107(j)
  - Adjacent System .107(j)(3)
  - Alternate Use:
    - Permitted .107(j)(4)
    - Prohibited .107(j)(2)
  - Conformance .107(j)(1)
  - Heating System .107(j)(3)
  - Powder Coatings .107(l)(3)
  - Spraying Rooms .107(j)(2)
- Dual Component Coatings .107(m)
  - Conformance .107(m)(1)
  - Scope .107(n)
  - Smoking .107(m)(2)
- Dust Hazards:
  - Abrasive Blasting .94(a)(2)
  - Asbestos .19(a), .1000
  - Employee Exposure .1000
- Effective Dates:
  - Abrasive Wheels .220
  - Accident Prevention Signs and Tags .149
  - Acetylene .114
  - Air Contaminants .98
  - Anhydrous Ammonia .114
  - Asbestos .1001(o)(1); .98
  - Blasting Agents .115
  - Clothing, Protective .138
  - Color Codes .149

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

  - Combustible Liquids .114
  - Compressed Gases .114
  - Crawler, Locomotive, and Truck Cranes .180(b)(2), .182
  - Derricks .181(b)(2), .182
  - Dies .217(d)(1)
  - Dip Tanks .114
  - Environmental Controls .98, .149
  - Explosives .114
  - Federal Standards .17
  - Flammable Liquids .114
  - Forging .220
  - Guarding Machinery .220
  - Hand-Held Equipment .245
  - Hazardous Materials .114
  - Hydrogen .114
  - Indoor Storage .114, .182
  - Ionizing Radiation .98
  - Labor Camps .142(d)(7), .149(b)
  - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(b)(19)(i), .114
  - Machinery .220
  - Machinery Guarding .220
  - Materials Handling .182
  - Mechanical Power Presses .220
  - Mechanical Power Transmission Apparatus .220
  - Mills and Calenders .216(a)(1), (2); .220
  - Nitrous Oxide .114
  - Noise Exposure .98
  - Nonionizing Radiation .98
  - Nonwater Disposal Systems .149
  - Occupational Health .98
  - Overhead and Gantry Cranes .179(b)(2), .182
  - Oxygen .114
  - Personal Protective Equipment .138
  - Physical Hazards Markings .149
  - Powered Industrial Trucks .182
  - Powered Tools, Hand and Portable .245
  - Pulp and Paper Mills .261(n)
  - Pulpwood Logging .266(f)
  - Safety Color Codes .149
  - Sanitation .149
  - Sawmills .265(j)
  - Signs and Tags .149
  - Spray Fishing .98, .114
  - Standpipe and Hose Systems .158(3)
  - Ventilation .98
  - Woodworking .220
- Egress Means: (see also Exits)
  - Access to Exits .37(f), (g), (j), (l)
  - Alarms, Fire .37(n)
  - Application .36(a)
  - Automatic Sprinkler Systems .37(m)
  - Definitions .35
  - Discharge From Exits .37(h)
  - Elevation Changes .37(j)
  - Employee Capacity .36(c)
  - Exit Arrangements .37(e)
  - Exit Capacity .37(c), (d)
  - Exit Components .37(a)
  - Exit Markings .37(q)
  - Exit Width .37(c)
  - Exterior Exit Access .37(g)
  - Furnishings and Decorations .37(l)
  - General Requirements .36
  - Headroom .37(i)
  - Lighting .36(b)(6)
  - Maintenance .37(k)
  - Occupant Load .37(d)
  - Paints .37(o)
  - Protective Enclosures .37(b)
  - Sprinklers .37(m)
  - Standards Sources .39
  - Workmanship .37(k)
- Electric Controls, Mechanical Power Presses .217(b)(8)
- Electric Equipment: (see Electric Wiring)
- Electric Ignition Sources: (see Ignition Sources) .107(c), (d)(5)
- Electric Motor Ignition Sources .107(d)(5)
- Electric Power Lines:
  - Crane Operations .180(j)
    - Boom Guards .180(j)(2)
    - Clearances .180(j)(1)
    - Notifying Owners .180(j)(3)
    - Overhead Wires .180(j)(4)
  - Derrick Operations .181(j)(5)
    - Boom Guards .181(j)(5)(ii)
    - Clearances .181(j)(5)(i)
    - Notifying Owners .181(j)(5)(iii)
    - Overhead Wires .181(j)(5)(iv)
- Electric Powered Trucks .178(b)(4)-(7)
- Electric Utilization Systems .302
  - Extent of Application .302(b)
  - Scope .302(a)
- Electric Wiring
  - Ammonium Nitrate .109(i)(6)(iii)
  - Appliances .305(j)(3)
  - Approval .303(a)
  - Boxes .305(b)
  - Branch Circuits .304(b)
  - Bulk Oxygen Systems .104(b)(8)(ix)
  - Bulk Plants .106(f)(5)
  - Cabinets .305(b)
  - Capacitors .305(i)(6)
  - Communications Systems .308(e)
  - Conductors .305(f)
  - Cranes .179(g), .306(b)
  - Data Processing Systems .306(e)
  - Electrolytic Cells .306(e)
  - Elevators .306(c)
  - Emergency Systems .308(b)
  - Enclosures for Damp or Wet Locations .305(e)
  - Escalators .306(c)
  - Examination of Equipment .303(b)(1)
  - Fire Protective Signaling Circuits .308(d)
  - Fittings .305(b)
  - Fixture Wires .305(i)
  - Flexible Cords and Cables .305(g)
  - General Requirements .303
  - Grounded and Grounding Conductors, Installation and Use .304(a)
  - Grounding .304(f)
  - Guarding Live Parts .303(g)(2), (g)(2)
  - Hand Spraying .107(i)(5)
  - Hazardous (Classified) Locations .307
  - Heating Equipment .306(g)
  - High Voltage (Over 600 Volts):
    - General .308(a)
    - Grounding .304(f)(7)
    - Guarding (Enclosure) .303(h)(2)
    - Workspace .303(h)(3), (h)(4)
  - Hoists .306(b)
  - Identification of Disconnecting Means and Circuits .303(f)
  - Ignition Sources .107(c)(4), (6)
  - Industrial Plants .106(e)(7)
  - Installation and Use of Equipment .303(b)(2)
  - Irrigation Machines .306(i)
  - Lamps .305(j)(1)
  - Liquefied Hydrogen Systems .103(c)(1)(ix)
  - Liquefied Petroleum Systems .110(b)(17), (18), (h)(13)
  - Marking .303(e)
  - Motors .305(j)(4)
  - Moving Walks .306(c)
  - Outline Lighting .306(a)
  - Outside Conductors .304(c)
  - Overcurrent Protection .304(e)
  - Panelboards .305(d)
  - Portable Cables .305(h)
  - Powder Coatings .107(l)(1)
  - Power-Limited Circuits .308(c)
  - Processing Plants .106(h)(7)(iii)
  - Receptacles .305(j)(2)
  - Remote Control Circuits .308(c)
  - Sawmills .265(c)(12)
  - Services .304(d)
  - Service Stations .106(g)(5)
  - Signaling Circuits .308(c)
  - Signs .306(a)
  - Splices .303(c)
  - Spraying Operations .107(c)(4), (6), .(i)(1)-(5)
  - Storage Batteries .305(j)(7)
  - Storage Rooms .106(d)(4)(iii)
  - Swimming Pools .306(j)
  - Switchboards .305(d)
  - Switches .305(c)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

  - Transformers .305(j)(5)
  - Type F Powered Platforms .66(c)(22)
  - Type T Powered Platforms .66(d)(6)
  - Welders .306(d)
  - Wiring Design and Protection .304
  - Wiring Methods .305(a)
  - X-Ray Equipment .306(f)
- Electrical General .301
  - Definitions .301
  - Design Safety .301(a)
  - Safety Related:
    - Maintenance Requirements .301(c)
    - Special Equipment .301(d)
    - Work Practices .301(b)
- Electrical Protective Devices .137
- Electromagnetic Radiation:
  - Definitions .97(a)(1)
  - Nonionizing Radiation .97(a)
  - Protection Guide .97(a)(2)
  - Warning Symbol .97(a)(3)
- Electrostatic Apparatus: (see Electrostatic Apparatus, Fixed; Electrostatic Hand Spraying Equipment)
  - Dip Tanks .108(h)(3)
  - Powder Coatings .107(l)(5)-(7)
- Electrostatic Apparatus, Fixed .107(h)
  - Powder Coatings .107(l)(5)
  - Spraying:
    - Conformance .107(h)(1)
    - Conveyors .107(h)(7)
    - Fail-Safe Controls .107(h)(9)
    - Fire Protection .107(h)(12)
    - Grounding .107(h)(5)
    - Guarding .107(h)(10)
    - Hand Spraying .107(h)(8), (i)
    - Insulators .107(h)(5)
    - Location .107(h)(3)
    - Safe Distances .107(h)(6)
    - Supports .107(h)(4)
    - Ventilation .107(h)(11)
- Electrostatic Hand Spraying Equioment .107(i)
  - Application .107(i)(1)
  - Approval .107(i)(3)
  - Conformance .107(i)(2)
  - Electrical Support Equipment .107(i)(4)
  - Grounding .107(i)(5)-(7)
  - Interlocks .107(i)(8)
  - Powder Coatings .107(i)(6)
  - Specifications .107(i)(3), (4)
  - Spray Gun Grounding .107(i)(5)
  - Ventilation .107(i)(9)
- Elevating Work Platforms: (see Vehicle-Mounted Work Platforms) .67
- Employee Alarm Systems .165
  - Scope and Application .165(a)
  - General Requirements .165(b)
  - Installation and Restoration .165(c)
  - Maintenance and Testing .165(d)
  - Manual Operation .165(e)
- Employee-Owned Protective Equipment .132(b)
- Employee Protection: (see Personal Protective Equipment)
  - Egress .36(c)
- Engine Room Guardrails .219(k)(2)
- Environmental Controls:
  - Accident Prevention Signs and Tags .145
  - Air Contaminants .1000, .1001
  - Asbestos .1001
  - Effective Dates .98, .149
  - Labor Camps .142
  - Marking Physical Hazards .144
  - Noise Exposure .95
  - Physical Hazards Markings .144
  - Radiation
    - Ionizing .96
    - Nonionizing .97
  - Safety Color Codes .144
  - Sanitation .141
  - Signs and Tags .145
  - Standards Sources .99, .147
  - Ventilation .94
- Equalizers:
  - Crane Hoists .179(h)(3)
- Ethyleneimine .1012
  - Area requirements .1012(c)
    - Closed system operation .1012(c)(2)
    - Isolated systems .1012(c)(1)
    - Maintenance and decontamination activities .1012(c)(5)
    - Open-vessel system operations .1012(c)(3)
    - Transfer from a closed operation .1012(c)(4)
  - Definitions .1012(b)
  - Medical surveillance .1012(g)
    - Examinations .1012(g)(1)
    - Records .1012(g)(2)
  - Regulated area requirements .1012(d)
    - Contamination control .1012(d)(4)
    - Emergencies .1012(d)(2)
    - Hygiene facilities and practices .1012(d)(3)
  - Reports .1012(f)
    - Incidents .1012(f)(2)
    - Operations .1012(f)(1)
  - Scope and application .1012(a)
  - Signs, information, and training .1012(e)
    - Container contents identification .1012(e)(2)
    - Lettering .1012(e)(3)
    - Prohibited statements .1012(e)(4)
    - Signs .1012(e)(1)
    - Training and indoctrination .1012(e)(5)
- Ethylene Oxide .1047
  - Appendices .1047(n)
  - Compliance, Methods of .1047(f)
  - Definitions .1047(b)
  - Effective Dates .1047(m)
  - Emergency Situations .1047(h)
  - Exposure Limits, Permissible .1047(c)
  - Exposure Monitoring .1047(d)
  - Hazard Communication .1047(j)
  - Medical Surveillance .1047(i)
  - Monitoring, Observation of .1047(l)
  - Protective Clothing and Equipment .1047(g)(4)
  - Recordkeeping .1047(k)
  - Regulated Areas .1047(e)
  - Respiratory Protection .1047(g)(1)-(3)
  - Scope and Application .1047(a)
- Evacuation, Ionizing Radiation .96(f)
- Exhaust Air Filters, Spray Booths .107(b)(5)
- Exhaust Systems (see also Ventilation) Abrasive Blasting .94(a)(4)
  - Grinding, Polishing, Buffing .94(b)(4)
  - Open Surface Tanks .94(d)(7)(v)
  - Sawmills .265(c)(20)
- Exhausts, Spraying Operations .107(d)(3), (7), (9)
- Exits: (see also Access, Egress)
  - Access .37(f)
  - Arrangement .37(e)
  - Capacity .37(c), (d)
  - Components .37(a)
  - Discharge From .37(h)
  - Elevation Change .37(j)
  - Headroom .37(i)
  - Illumination .37(q)(3)(6)(7)
  - Maintenance .37(k)
  - Manlifts .68(b)(8)(i)
  - Markings .37(q)
  - Protective Enclosures .37(b)
- Explosive Actuated Fastening Tools .243(d)
  - Definitions .241(a)
  - Fasteners .243(d)(3)
  - General Requirements .243(d)(1)
  - High-Velocity Tools .243(d)(2)(i)
  - Inspection .243(d)(2)
  - Loads .243(d)(3)
  - Low-Velocity Tools .243(d)(2)(ii)
  - Maintenance .243(d)(2)
- Explosives: (see also Explosives and Blasting Agents)
  - Decorations .37(l)(2)
  - Effective Dates .114
  - Furnishings .37(l)(2)
  - Pulpwood Logging .266(c)(7)
  - Standards Sources .115
- Explosives and Blasting Agents .109
  - Application .109(k)
  - Blast Holes .109(e)(3)
  - Bulk Delivery .109(h)(4)
  - Charge Initiation .109(e)(4)
    - Warning .109(e)(5)
  - Definitions .109(a)
  - Hazards .109(b)(1)
  - Hours of Transfer .109(f)(5)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

  - Loading .109(e)(3)
  - Magazines .109(c)(2)
  - Mixing Vehicles .109(h)(4)
  - Piers .109(f)
  - Railroad Cars .109(f)
  - Railroad Stations .109(f)
  - Slurries .109(h)
  - Small Arms Ammunition .109(j)
  - Smoking .109(e)(1)
  - Storage .109(c), (f)(4)
  - Transportation .109(d)
  - Use .109(e)
  - Vessels .109(f)
  - Water Gels .109(h)
- Exposure:
  - Air Contaminants .1000, .1001
  - Airborne Radioactive Material .96(c)
  - Asbestos .1001, .1101
  - Asbestos Fibers .1001(b)
  - Limits (Tables Z-1 to Z-3) .1000
  - Mineral Dusts .1000
  - Minors .96(b)(3), (c)(2), (d)(2)(ii)
  - Noise .95
  - Radiation Exposure .96(b)
- Extension Ladders, Portable:
  - Metal .26(a)(2)
  - Metal, Trestle .26(a)(4)
  - Wood .25
  - Wood, Trestle .25(c)(3)(v)
- Extension Lamps, Cranes .179(g)(7)
- Extractors .262(y)
- Eye and Face Protection .113
  - Effective Dates .138
  - Markings .133(a)(4)
  - Optical Corrections .113(a)(3)
  - Protector Requirements .133(a)(2)
  - Standards Sources .139
- Eye Protection: (see also Eye and Face Protection; Personal Protective Equipment) .151(c)
  - Welding .252(e)(2)
- Face Protection: (see also Eye and Face Protection; Personal Protective Equipment) .133
- Facilities, Labor Camps: (see Labor Camps, Temporary)
- Fail-Safe Controls, Spraying .107(h)(9)
  - Overhead and Gantry Cranes .179(a)(40), (g)(3)(viii)
- Fan-Rotating Element .107(d)(4)
- Farm Vehicles, Anhydrous Ammonia .111(g), (h)
- Fasteners .243(d)(3)
- Fastening Tools .243(d)
- Fibers, Asbestos .1101(b)
- Filling Densities, Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(b)(12)
- Filters, Spraying .107(b)(5)
- Fire Alarms: (see also Fire Protection)
  - Egress .37(n)
- Fire Brigades .156
  - Fire Fighting Equipment .156(d)
  - Organization .156(b)
  - Protective Clothing .156(e)
    - Body Protection .156(e)(3)
    - Foot and Leg Protection .156(e)(2)
    - Protection, General .156(e)(1)
    - Hand Protection .156(e)(4)
    - Head, Eye, Face Protection .156(e)(5)
  - Respiratory Protection .156(f)
    - General Requirements .156(f)(1)
    - Positive-Pressure Breathing Apparatus .156(f)(2)
  - Scope and Application .156(a)
  - Training and Education .156(c)
- Fire Detection Systems .164
  - Installation and Restoration .164(b)
  - Maintenance and Testing .164(c)
  - Number, Location, Spacing .164(f)
  - Protection of Detectors .164(d)
  - Response Time .164(e)
  - Scope and Application .164(a)
- Fire Extinguishers
  - Cranes .179(c)(3), (o)(3)
  - Derricks .181(j)(3)
  - Dip Tanks .108(g)
  - Explosives Transportation .109(d)(2)(iii)
  - Liquid Petroleum Gases .110(g)(14)
  - Welding .252(d)(2)(ii)
- Fire Extinguishers, Portable .157
  - Exemptions .157(b)
  - General Requirements .157(c)
  - Hydrostatic Testing .157(f)
  - Inspection, Maintenance Testing .157(e)
  - Scope and Application .157(a)
  - Training and Education .157(g)
- Fire Protection:
  - Ammonium Nitrate .109(i)(7)
  - Blasting Agents .109(i)(7)
  - Bulk Plants .106(f)(4)(ix), (8)
  - Chemical Plants .106(i)(5)
  - Definitions .155
  - Distilleries .106(i)(5)
  - Electrostatic Apparatus .107(h)(12)
  - Explosives .109(i)(7)
  - Flammable Liquids .106(d)(7)
  - Industrial Plants .106(e)(5)
  - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(d)(14), (f)(7), (h)(14)
  - Processing Plants .106(h)(6)
  - Refineries .106(i)(5)
  - Sawmills .265(i)
  - Service Stations .106(g)(9)
  - Spray Booths .107(f)
    - Cleaning .107(f)(3)
    - Conformance .107(f)(1)
    - Extinguishers, Portable .107(f)(4)
    - Valve Access .107(f)(2)
    - Storage Tanks .106(d)(7)
    - Trucks .178
- Fire Protection Equipment
  - Color Identification .144(a)(1)
  - Fire Brigades .156(d)
- Fire Resistance (Rating):
  - Storage Cabinets .106(d)(3)(ii)
  - Tank Supports .106(b)(5)(ii)
- Fire Retardant Paints .37(o)
- Fire Watch:
  - Welding .252(d)(2)(iii)
- First Aid .262(pp)
  - Acids and Caustics .252(d)(2)(ii)
  - Eye Flushing .151(c)
  - Labor Camps .142(k)
  - Pulpwood Logging .266(c)(1)(vii)
  - Standards Sources .153
  - Welding .252(f)(13)
- Fittings: (see Piping, Fittings and Tubing; Piping, Valves and Fittings)
- Fixed Extinguishing Systems .160, .161, .162, .163
  - Dry Chemical Agent Systems .161
  - Gaseous Agent Systems .162
  - General Requirements .160(b)
  - Total Flooding Systems .160(c)
  - Water Spray and Foam Systems .163
- Fixed Industrial Stairs: (see Stairs, Fixed Industrial) .24
- Fixed Ladders: (see Ladders, Fixed) .27
- Flammable and Combustible Liquids:
  - Application (Scope) .106(j)
  - Bulk Plants .106(f)
  - Chemical Plants .106(i)
  - Containers .106(d)
  - Definitions .106(a)
  - Dip Tanks .108
  - Distilleries .106(i)
  - Ignition Sources .106(b)(6)
  - Industrial Plants .106(e)
  - Piping, Valves and Fittings .106(c)
  - Pressure Vessels .106(b)(1)(v)
  - Processing Plants .106(h)
  - Refineries .106(i)
  - Service Stations .106(g)
  - Spray Finishing .107
    - Storage and Handling .107(e)
      - Conformance .107(e)(1)
      - Containers .107(e)(3), (5)
      - Hoses .107(e)(6)
      - Grounding .107(c)(9), (e)(9)
      - Liquid Heaters .107(e)(7)
      - Liquid Transfer .107(e)(4)
      - Pipes .107(e)(6)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

- Pump Relief .107(e)(8)
- Quantity .107(e)(2)
- Safety Relief Devices .107(e)(8)
- Spraying Containers .107(e)(5)
- Storage Containers .106(d)
- Storage Tanks .106(b), (d)
- Tanks .106(b), (d)
- Flammable Liquid Container Marking .144(a)(1)(ii)
- Flammable Liquids:
  - Effective Dates .114
  - Sawmills .265(c)(16)
  - Standards Sources .115
- Flammable Materials:
  - Trucks Used .178(c)(2)
- Flanges, Abrasive Wheel Machinery .215(a)(3), (c)
  - Balance .215(c)(3)
  - Blotters .215(c)(1)(v), (c)(6), (d)(5)
  - Diameter Uniformity .215(c)(4)
  - Dimensions .215(c)(8)
  - Driving .215(c)(7)
  - Finish .215(c)(3)
  - General Requirements .215(c)(1)
  - Maintenance .215(c)(9)
  - Recess .215(c)(5)
  - Repairs .215(c)(9)
  - Types .215(c)(1)(iv)
  - Undercut .215(c)(5)
- Flash Welding Equipment .252(c)(4)
  - Fire Curtains .252(c)(4)(ii)
  - Ventilation .252(c)(4)(i)
- Float Scaffolds .28(u)
  - Bearers Under Platforms .28(u)(3)
  - Construction .28(u)(1)
  - Employee Occupancy .28(u)(1)
  - Platforms .28(u)(2)
  - Wood Edgings .28(u)(4)
- Flooding, Tank Areas .106(b)(5)(vi)
- Floor Loading .22(d)
- Floor Openings (Holes) .23(a)
  - Manlifts .68(b)(5), (7)
- Flooring: (see also Floor Openings; Floors)
  - Type F Powered Platforms .66(c)(12)
  - Type T Powered Platforms .66(b)(5)(iii), (d)
- Floors:
  - Covers, Hinged .23(a)(3)(i)
  - Open-Sided .23(c)
  - Spray Booths .107(b)(3)
- Flow Coatings .108(h)(2)
- Fluidized Beds .107(l)(7)
- Fluorine Compounds, Welding: (see also Air Contaminants) .252(f)(1)(v)(c),
- Foam Extinguishers, Dip Tanks .108(g)(3)
- Foam Extinguishing Systems, Fixed .163
- Folding Ladder Scaffolds .29(c)(5)
- Folding Stairway Scaffolds .29(c)(4)
- Food Handling .141(h)
- Foot Pedals, Power Presses .217(b)(4)
- Foot Protection .136
- Footwalks:
  - Cranes .179(d)
- Forging Hammers .218(a)(3)
  - Foot-Operated Devices .218(b)(2)
  - Gravity .218(e)
    - Air Lifts .218(e)(1)
    - Board Drop Hammers .218(e)(2)
  - Keys .218(b)(1)
  - Power-Driven .218(d)
    - Cylinder Draining .218(d)(3)
    - Pressure Pipes .218(d)(4)
    - Safety Cylinder Heads .218(d)(1)
    - Shutoff Valves .218(d)(2)
- Forging Machine Area .30(b)
- Forging Machines:
  - Billet Shears .218(j)(1)
  - Boltheading .218(i)(1)
  - Conveyors .218(j)(3)
  - Definitions .211(e)
  - Effective Dates .220
  - Grinding .218(j)(5)
  - Hammers .218(a)(3), (b), (d), (e)
  - Inspections .218(a)(2)
  - Lead Use .218(a)(1)
  - Maintenance .218(a)(2)
  - Presses .218(a)(3), (c), (f), (g)
  - Rivet Making .218(i)(2)
  - Saws .218(j)(2)
  - Shot Blast .218(j)(4)
  - Standards Sources .221
  - Upsetters .218(h)
- Forging Presses .218(f)
- Fork Trucks: (see also Powered Industria Trucks) .178
- Fuel-Gas Systems. (see also Oxygen-Fuel Gas Systems) .252(a)
- Fuels: (see also Refueling)
  - Handling and Storage .178(f)
- Furnishings:
  - Egress .37(l)(1)
  - Explosives .37(l)(2)
- Fusion Apparatus: (see Drying, Curing and Fusion Apparatus)
- Gantry Cranes: (see also Overhead and Gantry Cranes) .179
- Garages, Undercoating Operations .107(k)
- Garnett Machines .262(f)
- Gas Cylinder Inspection .101(a)
- Gaging Devices .110(b)(19)
- Gas Mask Canisters .134(g)
  - Color Codes .134(g)(6)
  - Labeling .134(g)
- Gaseous Agent Extinguishing Systems, Fixed .162
  - Scope and Application .162(a)
  - Specific Requirements .162(b)
- Gaseous Hydrogen Systems: (see Hydrogen)
- Gasoline Powered Trucks .178(b)(8), (9)
- Gears .219(f)
  - Gill Boxes .262(k)
- Gin Pole Derricks: (see also Derricks) .181(a)(6)
- Gloves, Rubber Insulating .137
- Glue Spreaders .213(r)(1)
- Goggles: (see also Eye Protection; Eye and Face Protection) .133
- Grain Handling:
  - Trucks Used .178(c)(2)(vi)
- Gravity Hammers .218(e)
- Grinders: (see also Abrasive Wheel)
  - Machinery; Cutoff Wheels .243(c)(3), (4)
- Grinding, Forging Equipment .218(j)(5)
- Grinding Machines:
  - Cylindrical .215(b)(4)
  - Flanges .215(a)(3)
  - Surface Grinders .215(b)(5)
  - Swing Frame Grinders .215(b)(6)
  - Top Grinding .215(b)(8)
  - Work Rest .215(a)(4)
- Grinding, Polishing, and Buffing:
  - Branch Pipes .94(b)(3)
  - Definitions .94(b)(1)
  - Enclosure Design .94(b)(5)
  - Exhaust Systems .94(b)(4)
  - Hoods .94(b)(3), (5)
- Grinding, Top .215(b)(8)
- Grounding:
  - Bulk Oxygen Systems .104(b)(7)(iv)
  - Electrostatic Spraying .107(h)(5), (i)(5)-(7)
  - General .304(f)
  - Hand Spraying .107(i)(5)-(7)
  - Ignition Sources .107(c)(9)
  - Liquefied Hydrogen Systems .103(c)(4)(iv)
  - Liquid Transfer .107(e)(9)
  - Spray Booths .107(h)(10)
  - Spraying Operations .107(c)(9), (e)(9), (i)(5)-(7)
  - Welding .252(b)(3)(ii), (4)(iii); (c)(2)(ix), (3)(vi)
  - Woodworking Tools .243(a)(5)
- Guarding: (see also Term To Which It Applies) .211-.222
  - Abrasive Wheels, Portable .243(c)
  - Chute Floor Openings .23(a)(3)
  - Floor Openings (Holes) .23(a)
  - Hatchways .23(a)(3)
  - Ladderways .23(a)(2)
  - Live Parts .303(g)(2), (h)(2)
  - Machinery .211-.222
  - Mechanical Power Transmission Apparatus .219(m)
    - Clutches .219(k)
    - Friction Drives .219(g)
    - Prime Movers .219(b)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

    Pulleys .219(d)
  Open-Sided Floors .23(c)
  Platforms .23(c)
  Powered Tools, Portable .243
  Railings .23(e)
  Runways .23(c)
  Skylight .23(a)(4)
  Spraying Equipment .107(h)(10)
  Stairways .23(a)(1), (d)
  Wall Openings (Holes) .23(b)
Guardrails:
  Definitions .21(f)(10)
  Manlifts .68(b)(8)(i), (10)(iv)
  Power Transmission Apparatus .219(o)(5)
  Removable .23(a)(3)(ii)
  Type F Powered Platforms .66(c)(9), (11)
  Working Platforms .66(c)(9)
  Working Surfaces .22(c)
Guardrails, Scaffolds: (see Listing Under Specific Type Scaffold)
Guards: (see also Guardrails)
  Derricks .181(j)(1)
  Hoisting Ropes .179(e)(5)
  Manlifts .68(b)(7)-(9)
  Moving Parts .179(e)(6)
  Trucks .178(e)
Guide Posts .217(d)(4)
Gudgeon Pin .181(a)(20)
Guy Derricks .181(a)(7)
Hammers, Forging: (see Forging Hammers)
Hand Spraying Equipment: (see Electrostatic Hand Spraying Equipment)
Hand Tools .242
  Dead-Man Controls .243(a)(2)
  Pulp and Paper Mills .261(c)(13)
Handholds:
  Manlifts .68(c)(4)
Handling: (see also Materials Handling and Storage)
  Anhydrous Ammonia .111
  Compressed Gases .101(b)
  Liquefied Hydrogen Systems .103(c)(2)(iii)
  Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110
  Liquids .106(h)(4)
  Service Stations .106(g)(1)
Handrails .24(h)
  Cranes .179(d)(3), (4)(ii)
  Mobile Ladder Stands .29(f)(4)
Hangers .219(p)(4)
Hardening Tanks .108(h)(1)
Hatchways Guarding .23(a)(13)
Hazard Communication:
  Definitions .1200(c)
  Effective Dates .1200(j)
  Employee Information and Training .1200(h)
  Hazard Determination .1200(d)
  Labels .1200(f)
  Material Safety Data Sheets .1200(g)
  Purpose .1200(a)
  Scope and Application .1200(b)
  Standards Organizations .1500
  Standard Sources .1499
  Trade Secrets .1200(i)
  Warnings, Forms of .1200(f)
  Written (Hazard Communication) Program .1200(e)
Hazardous Materials:
  Acetylene .102
  Anhydrous Ammonia .111
  Blasting Agents .109
  Bulk Oxygen Systems .104
  Combustible Liquids .106-.108
  Compressed Gases .101
  Dip Tanks .108
  Effective Dates .114
  Explosives .109
  Flammable Liquids .106-.108
  Hydrogen .103
  Identification .1200(f)
  Labeling .1200(f)
  Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110
  Nitrous Oxide .105
  Oxygen .104
  Spray Finishing .107
  Spraying Operations .107(g)(6)
  Standards Sources .115
  Trucks Used .178(c)(2)
Hazardous Waste Operations and Emergency Response:
  Decontamination .120(k)
  Drums and Containers, Handling of .120(j)
  Emergency Response .120(l)
  Engineering Controls, Work Practices .120(g)
  General Requirements .120(b)
  Illumination .120(m)
  Informational Programs .120(i)
  Medical Surveillance .120(f)
  Monitoring .120(h)
  Resource Conservation and Recovery Act of 1976 (RCRA), Certain Operations Conducted Under, .120(o)
  Sanitation of Temporary Workplaces .120(n)
  Scope and Application .120(a)
  Site Characterization and Analysis .120(c)
  Site Control .120(d)
  Start Up Dates .120(p)
  Training .120(e)
Hazards:
  Guide Posts .217(d)(4)
  Personnel .217(b)(1)
Head Protection .135
Headroom:
  Egress .37(i)
Hearing Conservation Program .95(c)
Heating:
  Dip Tanks .108(c)(7)
  Bulk Plants .106(f)(2)(ii)
  Service Stations .106(g)(6)
Helicopters .183
Helmets .135, .252(e)(2), .266(c)(iii)
Hinged Floor Covers .23(a)(3)(i)
Hoist Limit Switches .179(n)(4)
Hoisting Equipment:
  Cranes .179(e)(5), (h)
  Powered Platforms .66(e)(8)
  Rope Guards .179(e)(5)
  Type F Powered Platforms .66(c)(17)-(20)
  Type T Powered Platforms .66(d)(3), (5)
Holding Brakes .179(f)(2)
Holes: (see also Floor Openings (Holes); Wall Openings (Holes)) .23
Hooks:
  Cranes .179(h)(4)
  Derricks .181(j)(2)
Horse Scaffolds .28(m)
  Cross Bracing .28(m)(5)
  Guardrails .28(m)(7)
  Height .28(m)(1)
  Member Dimensions .28(m)(2)
  Spacing .28(m)(3), (4)
Hoses
  Flammable Liquids .107(e)(6)
  Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(b)(9)
  Semiconductors .109(a)(12)
  Sprinkler Systems .159(c)(5)
  Standpipe and Hose Systems .158(c)(3)
  Welding and Cutting .252(a)(5)
Hot Sources .107(c)(3)
Hours of Transfer, Explosives .109(f)(5)
Housekeeping .141(a)(3)
  Asbestos .1001(k), .1101(h)
  Flammable Liquids .106(e)(9)
  Walking-Working Surfaces .22(a)
Hydraulic Barkers .261(e)(14)
Hydraulic Equipment .217(b)(11)
Hydraulically Designed Sprinkler Systems .159(c)(11)
Hydrogen .103
  Definitions .103(a)(1)
  Effective Dates .114
  Gaseous Hydrogen Systems .103(a)(2)(i), (b)
    Containers .103(b)(1)(i)
    Design .103(b)(1)
    Equipment Assembly .103(b)(1)(iv)
    Fittings .103(b)(1)(iii)
    Location .103(b)(2)
      Outdoor 103(b)(3)(i)
      Separate Buildings .103(b)(3)(ii)
      Special Rooms .103(b)(3)(iii)
    Maintenance .103(b)(5)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

    - Markings .103(b)(1)(v)
    - Operating Instructions .103(b)(4)
    - Piping .103(b)(1)(iii)
    - Safety Relief Devices .103(b)(1)(ii)
    - Testing .103(b)(1)(vi)
    - Tubing .103(b)(1)(iii)
  - Liquefied Hydrogen Systems .103(a)(2)(ii), .103(c)
    - Containers .103(c)(1)(i)
    - Design .103(c)(1)
    - Electrical Systems .103(c)(1)(ix)
    - Equipment Assembly .103(c)(1)(vi)
    - Fittings .103(c)(1)(v)
    - Grounding .103(c)(4)(iv)
    - Location .103(c)(2)
      - Outdoor .103(c)(3)(i)
      - Separate Buildings .103(c)(3)(ii)
    - Operating Instructions .103(c)(4)
      - Attendants .103(c)(4)(ii)
      - Security .103(c)(4)(iii)
    - Piping .103(c)(1)(v)
    - Safety Relief Devices .103(c)(1)(iv)
    - Supports .103(c)(1)(ii)
    - Testing .103(c)(1)(vii)
    - Tubing .103(c)(1)(v)
    - Vaporizers .103(c)(1)(viii)
  - Standards Sources .115
- Hydrostatic Tests: (see also Testing)
  - Fire Extinguishers .157(f)
  - Piping .106(c)(7)
- Ignition Sources:
  - Bulk Plants .106(f)(6)
  - Dip Tanks .108(e)
  - Industrial Plants .106(e)(6)
  - Powder Coatings .107(l)(1)
  - Processing Plants .106(h)(7)
  - Service Stations .106(g)(8)
  - Spraying Operations .107(c)
    - Combustible Residues .107(c)(5)
    - Conformance .107(c)(1)
    - Electric Wiring .107(c)(4), (6)
    - Grounding .107(c)(9)
    - Hot Surfaces .107(c)(3)
    - Lamps .107(c)(7), (8)
    - Separation Minimum .107(c)(2)
  - Storage Tanks .106(b)(6)
- Illumination: (see Lighting)
- Indoor Storage
  - Effective Dates .114, .182
  - Rooms .106(d)(4)
  - Standards Sources .189, .115
- Industrial Plants:
  - Flammable and Combustible Liquids .106(e)
    - Application .106(e)(1)(i)
    - Electrical Systems .106(e)(7)
    - Fire Protection .106(e)(5)
    - Housekeeping .106(e)(9)
    - Incidental Storage .106(e)(2)
    - Ignition Sources .106(e)(6)
    - Loading .106(e)(4)
    - Maintenance .106(e)(9)
    - Repairs, Equipment .106(e)(8)
    - Use in Physical Operations .106(e)(3)
  - Liquefied Petroleum .110(d)(12), (f)(4)
- Insect Control .141(a)(5)
  - Labor Camps .142(j)
- Inspection: (see also Term To Which It Applies)
  - Compressed Gas Cylinders .101(a)
  - Cranes .179(j), .180(d)
    - Crawler .180(d)
    - Gantry .179(j)
      - Ropes .179(m)
    - Locomotive .180(d)
    - Overhead .179(j)
      - Ropes .179(m)
    - Truck .180(d)
  - Cylinders .101(a)
  - Derricks .181(d)
  - Dip Tanks .108(f)(3)
  - Fire Extinguishers .157(e)
  - Flooding, Tank Areas .106(b)(5)(vi)
  - Gas Cylinders .101(a)
  - Manlifts .68(e)
  - Open Surface Tanks .94(d)(11)
  - Power Presses .217(e)
  - Powered Platforms .66(e)
  - Respirators .134(f)
  - Ropes, Cranes .179(m)
  - Woodworking Machines .213(s)
- Instruction Signs, Manlifts .68(c)(7)
- Insulators .107(h)(5)
- Interior Hung Scaffolds .28(p)
  - Guardrails .28(p)(7)
  - Hang Wood .28(p)(3)
  - Overhead Supports .28(p)(6)
  - Planking .28(p)(3)(ii)
  - Steel Tube and Coupler Members .28(p)(4)
  - Steel Wire Rope .28(p)(2), (5)
  - Supporting Beams .28(p)(6)
- Ionizing Radiation .96
  - AEC Licensees .96(p)
  - Airborne Radioactive Materials .96(c)
  - Caution Signs and Labels .96(e)
  - Definitions .96(a)
  - Employees:
    - Disclosure .96(o)
    - Exposure Records .96(m), (n)
    - Incident Reporting .96(i)
    - Instruction Posting .96(i)
  - Evacuation .96(f)
  - Exemptions .96(g), (h)
  - Exposure .96(b)
    - Airborne Radioactive Materials .96(c)
    - Minors .96(b)(3), (c)(2), (d)(2)(ii)
  - Exposure Records .96(m)-(o)
  - Incident Reporting .96(l)
  - Monitoring .96(d)
  - Overexposure Reports .96(m)
  - Personnel Instructions, Posting .96(i)
  - Radioactive Materials:
    - Packaged .96(h)
    - Storage .96(j)
  - Warning Signals .96(f)
  - Waste Disposal .96(k)
- Jacks:
  - Definitions .241(d)
  - Fixed Truck .178(k)(3)
  - Loading .244(a)(1)
  - Marking .244(a)(1)
  - Maintenance .244(a)(2)
  - Truck .178(k)(3)
- Jointers .213(j)
  - Blades .213(s)(12)
- Keys, Projecting .219(h)
- Kiers .262(q)
- Kilns .265(f)
- Kitchens, Labor Camps .142(i)
- Labeling: (see Color Codes, Markings, Signs and Tage)
- Labor Camps, Temporary .142
  - Bathing Facilities .142(f)
  - Bedding .142(b)(3)
  - Closed .142(a)(4)
  - Communicable Diseases Reportings .142(l)
  - Dining Facilities .142(i)
  - Effective Dates .149
  - Facilities (Shelter) .142(b)
  - First Aid .142(k)
  - Furnishings .142(b)(3)
  - Floors 142(b)(4), (5)
  - Grounds .142(a)(3)
  - Heating Equipment .142(b)(11)
  - Insect Control .142(j)
  - Kitchens .142(i)
  - Laundry Facilities .142(f)
  - Lighting .142(g)
  - Refuse Collection .142(a)(4)
  - Refuse Disposal .142(h)
  - Rodent Control .142(j)
  - Screening .142(b)(8)
  - Sewage Disposal .142(e)
  - Shelters .142(b)
  - Site .142(a)
  - Size .142(a)(2)
  - Sleeping .142(b)(2), (3)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term	Section No.
Space	.142(b)(2), (9)
Standards Sources	.147
Stoves	.142(b)(10)
Toilet Facilities	.142(d)
Washing	.142(f)
Waste Disposal	.142(h)
Water Supply	.142(c)
Windows	.142(b)(7), (8)
Ladder-Jack Scaffolds	.28(q)
Construction	.28(q)(3)
Employees, Maximum Number	.28(q)(6)
Heavy Duty	.28(q)(2)
Limited Duty	.28(q)(1)
Platform Planks	.28(q)(5)
Ladder Stands, Manual Mobile:	
Base Width	.29(f)(2)
Design	.29(f)(1)
Handrails	.29(f)(4)
Loading	.29(f)(5)
Steps	.29(f)(3)
Ladders:	
Cranes	.179(d)(4), (o)(1)
Fixed	.27
Manlifts	.68(b)(12)
Portable Metal	.26
Portable Wood	.25
Sawmills	.265(c)(10)
Ladders, Fixed	.27
Cages	.27(c)(3), (d)(1)
Clearances	.27(c)
Cleats	.27(b)(1)
Design	.27(a)
Stresses	.27(a)(2)
Deterioration	.27(b)(7)
Electrolytic Action	.27(b)(5)
Extensions	.27(d)(3)
Fastenings	.27(b)(3)
Grab Bars	.27(c)(5), (d)(4)
Ladder Extensions	.27(d)(3)
Landing Platforms	.27(d)(2)
Maintenance	.27(f)
Pitch	.27(e)
Rungs	.27(b)(1)
Safety Devices	.27(d)(5)
Side Rails	.27(b)(2)
Splices	.27(b)(4)
Standards Sources	.31
Welding	.27(b)(6)
Wells	.27(d)(1)
Ladders, Portable Metal	.26
Care	.26(c)(2)
Extension Ladders	.26(a)(2), (4)
General Requirements	.26(a)(1)
Platform Ladders	.26(a)(5)
Standards Sources	.31
Stepladders	.26(a)(3)
Straight Ladders	.26(a)(2), (4)
Use	.26(c)(3)
Ladders, Portable Wood	.25
Care	.25(d)(1)
Rung Ladders	.25(c)(3)
Sectional	.25(c)(3)(iv)
Single	.25(c)(3)(ii)
Trestle	.25(c)(3)(v)
Two-Section	.25(c)(3)(iii)
Side-Rolling Ladders	.25(c)(5)
Special Purpose Ladders	.25(c)(4)
Masons'	.25(c)(4)(iii)
Painters'	.25(c)(4)(ii)
Standards Sources	.31
Stepladders	.25(c)(2)
Trolley Ladders	.25(c)(5)
Materials	.25(b)
Use	.25(d)(2)
Ladderway Guarding	.23(a)(2)
Lamps: (see also Lighting)	.107(c)(7), (8); .305(j)(1)
Landings, Manlifts	.68(b)(6), (10)(i)
Lathers' Scaffolds (see also Plasterers' Scaffolds)	.28(o)
Lathes	.213(o)
Laundry Facilities, Labor Camps	.142(f)
Laundry Operations	.264
General Requirements	.264(b)
Miscellaneous Equipment	.264(c)(4)
Operating Rules	.264(d)
Markers	.264(d)(1)(iii)
Mechanical Safeguards	.264(d)(2)
Point-of-Operation Guards	.264(c)
Washroom Machines	.264(c)(1)
Lavatories	.141(d)(2)
Lawn Mowers, Power	.243(e)
General Requirements	.243(e)(1)
Riding Rotary	.243(e)(2), (4)
Walk-Behind	.243(e)(2), (3)
Lead:	
Appendices	.1025(q)
Application and Scope	.1025(a)
Compliance	.1025(e)
Concentration	.261(g)(15)(iv)
Definitions	.1025(b)
Effective Dates	.1025(p), (r)
Employee Information and Training	.1025(l)
Exposure:	
Limit, Permissible	.1025(c)
Monitoring	.1025(d)
Forging Machines	.218(a)(1)
Housekeeping	.1025(h)
Hygiene	.1025(i)
Medical:	
Removal Protection	.1025(k)
Surveillance	.1025(j)
Monitoring, Observation of	.1025(o)
Protective Clothing and Equipment	.1025(g)
Recordkeeping	.1025(n)
Respiratory Protection	.1025(f)
Leakage, Bulk Oxygen System	.104(b)(2)(iii)
Levers, Hand-Operated	.217(b)(5)
Lifelines: (see also Safety Belts)	
Confined Spaces	.252(e)(4)(iv)
Crawling Boards	.28(t)(2)
Powered Platforms	.66(d)(8)
Welding	.252(e)(4)(iv)
Chicken Ladders	.28(t)(2)
Lighting: (see also Lamps)	
Container Areas	.110(d)(16)
Cranes	.179(c)(4), (g)(7)
Exits and Exit Signs	.37(q)
Labor Camps	.142(g)
Machinery, Basement Areas	.219(c)(5)
Manlifts	.68(b)(6)(iii), (14)
Operating Areas, Industrial Trucks	.178(h)
Pulp and Paper Mills	.261(b)(7), (c)(10), (k)(21)
Pulpwood Harvesting	.266(e)(15)(iv)
Sawmills	.265(c)(5)(iii), (9), (23)(iii)
Spray Booths	.107(b)(10)
Workspace About Electric Equipment	.303(g)(1)(v), (h)(3)(ii)
Lighting Receptacles:	
Cranes	.179(g)(7)
Liquefied Hydrogen Systems: (see Hydrogen)	
Liquefied, Petroleum Gases: (see also Containers, Liquefied Petroleum Gases)	.110
Appliances	.110(b)(20)
Attendant	.110(b)(14)(i)
Buildings:	
Engines Use	.110(e)(11), (12)
Industrial Trucks	.110(e)(13)
Inside Storage	.110(f)
Piping Into	.110(b)(13)
Commercial Vehicles	.110(g)
Condensed Gas Drips	.110(d)(9)
Definitions	.110(a)
Effective Dates	.110(b)(19)(i), .114
Electrical Equipment	.110(b)(17), (18); (h)(13)
Engines in Buildings	.110(e)(11), (12)
Equipment Approval	.110(b)(2)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term	Section No.
Fire Extinguishers	.110(g)(14)
Fire Protection	.110(d)(14), (f)(7), (h)(14)
Fuel Handling and Storage	.178(f)
Gaging Devices	.110(b)(19)
Garaging Vehicles	.110(e)(14)
Handling	.110
Liquid Level Gaging Device	.110(b)(19)
Liquid Transfer	.110(b)(14)
Loading	.110(b)(15)
Motor Fuel	.110(e)
Odorizing Gases	.110(b)(1)
Drains	.110(d)(11)
Regulating Equipment	.110(b)(6); (c)(5)(c); (d)(9); (e)(9)
Indoor	.110(c)(5)
Location	.110(b)(6)
Outdoor	.110(c)(4)
Sawmills	.265(c)(14)
Service Stations	.110(h)
Standards Sources	.115
Storage	.110
Tank Car Loading	.110(b)(15)
Transport Trucks	.110(b)(15)
Trucks	.178(b)(10), (11)
Trucks Conversion	.178(d),(q)(12)
Liquid Fuels:	
Handling and Storage	.178(f)
Liquid Heaters, Spray	.107(e)(7)
Liquid Transfer:	
Anhydrous Ammonia	.111(b)(12), (f)(6)
Flammable Liquids	.107(e)(4), (9)
Liquefied Petroleum Gases	.110(b)(14)
Load Handling:	
Crawler, Locomotive and Truck Cranes	.180(h)
Attaching	.180(h)(2)
Holding	.180(h)(4)
Moving	.180(h)(3)
Size	.180(h)(1)
Derricks	.181
Attaching	.181(i)(2)
Boom Securing	.181(i)(6)
Holding	.181(i)(4)
Moving	.181(i)(3)
Size	.181(i)(1)
Winch Heads	.181(i)(5)
Overhead and Gantry Cranes	.179(n)
Attaching	.179(n)(2)
Hoist Limit Switches	.179(n)(4)
Moving	.179(n)(3)
Size	.179(n)(1)
Load Ratings:	
Cranes	.180(c)
Derricks	.181(c)
Overhead and Gantry Cranes	.179(b)(5)
Powered Platforms	.66(c)(7)
Loading:	
Bulk Plants	.106(f)(3)
Explosives	.109(e)(3)
Industrial Plants	.106(e)(4)
Liquefied Petroleum Gases	.110(b)(15)
Processing Plants	.106(h)(5)
Scaffolds	.29(a)(2)
Locomotive Cranes: (see also Crawler, Locomotive and Truck Cranes)	.180
Log Handling: (see also Sawmills)	.265(d)
Looms	.262(n)
Low Pressure Tanks	.106(b)(1)(iv)
LP-Gases: (see Liquefied Petroleum Gases)	
Lumber Handling	.265(c)(27), (28)
Lunchrooms	.141(g)
Location	.141(g)(1), (2)
Waste Disposal Containers	.141(g)(3)
Machine Guarding: (see Machine(ry) Guarding)	
Machine(ry) Guarding	.211-.222
Abrasive Wheel Machinery	.215
Anchoring Fixed Machinery	.212(b)
Bakeries	.263(c)
Barrels	.212(a)(4)
Blades Exposure	.212(a)(5)
Calenders	.216
Containers	.212(a)(4)
Definitions	.211
Drums	.212(a)(4)
Effective Dates	.220
Forging Machines	.218
General Requirements	.212(a)(2)
Mills	.216
Point of Operation	.212(a)(3)
Power Presses	.217
Power Transmission Equipment	.219
Standards Sources	.221
Types	.212(a)(1)
Woodworking Machinery	.213
Machines:	
Abrasive Wheels	.215
Definitions	.211
Forging	.218
Laundry	.264
Mills and Calenders	.216
Power Transmission, Mechanical	.219
Presses, Mechanical	.217
Textiles	.262
Woodworking	.213
Magazines, Explosives	.109(c)(2)
Class I	.109(c)(3)
Class II	.109(c)(4)
Maintenance: (see also Term To Which It Applies)	
Bulk Oxygen Systems	.104(b)(10)
Cranes	.179(l), .180(f)
Derricks	.181(f)
Egress	.36(d), .37(k)
Fire Alarm Systems	.37(n)
Fire Extinguishers	.157(e)
Gaseous Hydrogen Systems	.103(b)(5)
Industrial Plants	.106(e)(9)
Liquefied Hydrogen Systems	.103(c)(5)
Powder Coatings	.107(l)(4)
Powered Industrial Trucks	.178(q)
Powered Platforms	.66(e)(6)
Processing Plants	.106(h)(8)
Respirators	.134(f)
Standpipe and Hose System	.158(e)
Sprinkler Systems	.159(c)(2)
Type F Powered Platforms	.66(c)(5)
Manifolding Gas Cylinders	.252(a)(3)
Fuel-Gas	.252(a)(3)(i)
Operating Procedures	.252(a)(3)(v)
Oxygen	.252(a)(3)(ii), (iii)
Portable Outlet Headers	.252(a)(3)(iv)
Manholes	.23(a)(6), .268(o)
Manlifts	.68
Application	.68(b)(1)
Belts	.68(c)(1)(ii)
Brakes	.68(c)(1)(i)
Clearances	.68(b)(11)
Definitions	.68(a)
Design	.68(b)(3)
Exit Protection	.68(b)(8)
Floor Openings	.68(b)(5), (7)
General Requirements	.68(b)
Guardrails	.68(b)(8)(i), (10)(iv)
Guards	.68(b)(7), (9)
Handholds	.68(c)(4)
Inspections	.68(e)
Instruction Signs	.68(c)(7)
Ladders	.68(b)(12)
Landings	.68(b)(6)
Lighting	.68(b)(6)(iii), (14)
Machinery	.68(c)
Mechanical Requirements	.68(c)
Operating Rules	.68(d)
Platforms	.68(c)(3)
Speed	.68(c)(2)
Standards Sources	.68(b)(4), .69
Steps	.68(c)(3)
Stops	.68(c)(5), (6)
Warning Signs	.68(c)(7)
Weather Protection	.68(b)(15)

STANDARDS AND INTERPRETATIONS

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

Marking Physical Hazards .144
  Sawmills .265(c)(11)
Markings: (see also Signs and Tags)
  Bulk Oxygen Systems .104(b)(8)(viii)
  Compressed Gas Cylinders .252(a)(2)(b)
  Electric Equipment:
    General .303(e)
    Hazardous Locations .307(b)(2)(ii)
  Explosive Actuated Tools .243(d)(3)
  Explosives .109(d)(2)(ii)
  Eye and Face Protection .133(a)(4)
  Gaseous Hydrogen Systems .103(b)(1)(v)
  Liquefied Hydrogen Systems .103(c)(1)(iii)
  Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(b)(5), (c)(2)
  Load Ratings:
    Cranes .180(c)(2)
    Derricks .181(c)
    Powered Industrial Trucks .178(a)(3)
    Powered Platforms .66(c)(7), (21)
  Physical Hazards .144
  Respirators (Gas Masks) .134(g)
  Sawmills .265(c)(11)
Mason's Adjustable Multiple Point Suspension Scaffolds .28(f)
  Beam Structure and Strength .28(f)(4), (5)
  Bolts, Fittings and Clamps .28(f)(11)
  Channel Iron Outrigger Beams .28(f)(7)
  Guardrails .28(f)(15)
  Hoist-Machines .28(f)(2)
  Installation .28(f)(17)
  Load Requirements .28(f)(1)
  Overhang .28(f)(6)
  Overhead Protection .28(f)(16)
  Platform Strength .28(f)(14)
  Platform Supports .28(f)(3)
  Single Outrigger Beams .28(f)(13)
  Stop Bolts .28(f)(9)
  Suspension Wire Ropes .28(f)(12)
  Webs .28(f)(8)
Masons' Ladders .25(c)(4)(iii)
Matching Machines .213(n)
Materials Handling and Storage:
  Aisles and Passageways .176(a)
  Clearance Signs .176(e)
  Cranes—Crawler, Locomotive and Truck .180
  Cranes, Overhead and Gantry .179
  Derricks .181
  Effective Dates .182
  Guarding Openings .176(g)
  Housekeeping .176(c)
  Mechanical Equipment .176(a)
  Powered Industrial Trucks .178
  Pulp and Paper Mills .261(c), (d), (m)
  Railroad Car Blocks .176(f)
  Securing .176(b)
  Standards Sources .189
Maximum Allowable Concentration:
  Fluorine .252(f)(5)(ii)
  Welding Contamination .252(f)(1)(iv)
Means of Egress: (see Egress Means)
Mechanical Handling Equipment:
  Clearances .176(a)
  Powered Industrial Trucks .177(e), .178
Mechanical Power Presses:
  Air Controlling Equipment .217(b)(10)
  Brakes, Friction .217(b)(2)
  Clearances, Work Area .217(f)(3)
  Clutches:
    Full Revolution .217(b)(3)
    Part Revolution .217(b)(7)
  Definitions .211(d)
  Dies .217(d)
  Effective Dates .220
  Electrical Controls .217(b)(8)
  Excluded Machines .217(a)(5)
  Foot Pedals .217(b)(4)
  Guarding .217(b)
  Guide Posts .217(d)(4)
  Hand Feeding Tools .217(c)(4)
  Hazards:
    Guide Posts .217(d)(4)
    Personnel .217(b)(1)
  Hydraulic Equipment .217(b)(11)

Subject term — Section No.

  Inspection:
    Records .217(e)(1)
  Instructions .217(f)(2)
  Levers, Hand-Operated .217(b)(5)
  Maintenance:
    Records .217(e)(1)
    Training Personnel .217(e)(3)
  Modifications .217(a)(4), (e)(2)
  Operating Instructions .217(f)(2)
    Overloading .217(f)(4)
    Point of Operation .217(c)
  Pressure Vessels .217(b)(12)
  Slide Counterbalances .217(b)(9)
    Air .217(b)(9)(iii)-(v)
    Spring .217(b)(9)(i), (ii)
  Standards Sources .221
  Training Maintenance Personnel .217(e)(3)
  Treadles .217(b)(4)
  Trips, Two-Hand .217(b)(6)
  Unitized Tooling .217(d)(5)
Mechanical Power Transmission Apparatus .219
  Bearings .219(j), (p)(3)
  Belts:
    Care .219(p)(6)
    Fasteners .219(i)(4)
    Perches .219(i)(3)
    Shifters .219(i)(1)
    Shippers .219(i)(2)
  Chains .219(f)
  Clutches .219(k), (l)
  Collars .219(i)
  Couplings .219(i), (k)(1)
  Cutoff Couplings .219(k)(1)
  Definitions .211(f)
  Drives:
    Belt, Rope, and Chain .219(e)
    Friction .219(g)
  Effective Dates .220
  Engine Rooms .219(k)(2)
  Equipment Care .219(p)
  Excluded Apparatus .219(a)(1)
  Gears .219(f)
  Guarding .219
  Guards:
    Horizontal Overhead:
      Belts .219(o)(3)
      Rope and Chain Drives .219(o)(4)
    Materials .219(m)(1), (o)
    Prime Mover .219(b)
    Standard .219(m)
      Manufacturing Methods .219(m)(2)
      Materials .219(m)(1)
    Toeboards .219(o)(5)
    Wooden .219(o)(2)
  Hangers .219(p)(4)
  Keys .219(h)
  Located in Basements, Towers, and Rooms .219(c)(5)
  Personnel Protection (Lubrication) .219(p)(7)
  Prime Mover Guards:
    Connecting Rods .219(b)(2)
    Cranks .219(b)(2)
    Extension Piston Rods .219(b)(3)
    Flywheels .219(b)(1)
    Tail Rods .219(b)(3)
  Projections .219(h)
  Pulleys .219(d), (k), (p)(5)
  Setscrews .219(h)
  Shafting .219(c)
    Care .219(p)(2)
    Guarding .219(c)(2), (3)
    Installation .219(c)(1)
    Projecting Shafts .219(c)(4)
  Sprockets .219(f)
  Standards Sources .221
  Textile Industry .219(a)(3)
Medical Services: (see also First Aid Personnel Protective Equipment) .151
  Asbestos .1001(l) and .1101(j)
  First Aid .151
    Labor Camps .142(k)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term Section No.

    - Open Surface Tanks .94(d)(9)(xi)
    - Pulpwood Logging .266(c)(1)
    - Textiles .262(pp)
    - Welding .252(f)(13)
  - General Requirements .151
  - Labor Camps .142(k)
  - Radiation Exposure Records .96(n)
  - Standards Sources .153
- Mercury .252(f)(10)
- Metal Cutting: (see Cutting and Welding)
- Metal Ladders, Portable: (see also Ladders, Portable Metal) .26
- Methyl Chloromethyl Ether .1006
  - Area Requirements .1006(c)
    - Closes System Operation .1006(c)(2)
    - Isolated Systems .1006(c)(1)
    - Maintenance and Decontamination Activities .1006(c)(5)
    - Open-Vessel System Operations .1006(c)(3)
    - Transfer from a Closed Operation .1006(c)(4)
  - Definitions .1006(b)
  - Medical Surveillance .1006(g)
    - Examinations .1006(g)(1)
    - Records .1006(g)(2)
  - Regulated Area Requirements .1006(d)
    - Contamination Control .1006(d)(4)
    - Emergencies .1006(d)(2)
    - Hygiene Facilities and Practices .1006(d)(3)
  - Reports .1006(f)
    - Incidents .1006(f)(2)
    - Operations .1006(f)(1)
  - Scope and Application .1006(a)
  - Signs, Information, and Training .1006(e)
    - Container Contents Identification .1006(e)(2)
    - Lettering .1006(e)(3)
    - Prohibited Statements .1006(e)(4)
    - Signs .1006(e)(1)
    - Training and Indoctrination .1006(e)(5)
- Mill Roll Heights .216(a)(4)
- Mills, Pulp, Paper and Paperboard (see also Pulp, Paper and Paperboard Mills) .261
- Mills, Rubber and Plastics Industry:
  - Definitions .211(c)
  - Location Protection .216(d)(1)
  - Roll Heights .216(a)(4)
  - Safety Controls .216(b)
    - Auxiliary Equipment .216(b)(3)
    - Safety Tip Control .216(b)(1)
  - Stopping Limits .216(f)(1), (2)
  - Switches, Trip and Emergency .216(e)
- Minors:
  - Ionizing Radiation Exposure .96(b)(3), (c)(2), (d)(2)(ii)
- Mixing:
  - Blasting Agents .109(g)(2), (3); (h)(3), (4)
  - Explosives .109(h)(3), (4)
- Molding Machines .213(n)
- Monitoring:
  - Asbestos .1001(d)(n), .1101(f)
  - Ionizing Radiation .96(d)
- Mortising Machines .213(l)
- Motor Fuels .110(e)
- Motor Vehicles:
  - Anhydrous Ammonia .111(f)
- Motorized Hand Trucks: (see Powered Industrial Trucks) .178
- alpha-Napthylamine .1004
  - Area requirements .1004(c)
    - Closed system operation .1004(c)(2)
    - Isolated systems .1004(c)(1)
    - Maintenance and decontamination activities .1004(c)(5)
    - Open-vessel system operations .1004(c)(3)
    - Transfer from a closed operation .1004(c)(4)
  - Definitions .1004(b)
  - Medical surveillance .1004(g)
    - Examinations .1004(g)(1)
    - Records .1004(g)(2)
  - Regulated area requirements .1004(d)
    - Contamination control .1004(d)(4)
    - Emergencies .1004(d)(2)
    - Hygiene facilities and practices .1004(d)(3)
  - Reports .1004(f)
    - Incidents .1004(f)(2)
    - Operations .1004(f)(1)

Subject term Section No.

  - Scope and application .1004(a)
  - Signs, information, and training .1004(e)
    - Container contents identification .1004(e)(2)
    - Lettering .1004(e)(3)
    - Prohibited statements .1004(e)(4)
    - Signs .1004(e)(1)
    - Training and indoctrination .1004(e)(5)
- beta-Napthylamine .1009
  - Area requirements .1009(c)
    - Closed system operation .1009(c)(2)
    - Isolated systems .1009(c)(1)
    - Maintenance and decontamination activities .1009(c)(5)
    - Open-vessel system operations .1009(c)(3)
    - Transfer from a closed operation .1009(c)(4)
  - Definitions .1009(b)
  - Medical surveillance .1009(g)
    - Examinations .1009(g)(1)
    - Records .1009(g)(2)
  - Regulated area requirements .1009(d)
    - Contamination control .1009(d)(4)
    - Emergencies .1009(d)(2)
    - Hygiene facilities and practices .1009(d)(3)
  - Reports .1009(f)
    - Incidents .1009(f)(2)
    - Operations .1009(f)(1)
  - Scope and application .1009(a)
  - Signs, information, and training .1009(e)
    - Container contents identification .1009(e)(2)
    - Lettering .1009(e)(3)
    - Prohibited statements .1009(e)(4)
    - Signs .1009(e)(1)
    - Training and indoctrination .1009(e)(5)
- Multi-Piece Rim Wheels .177
- Needle Beam Scaffolds .28(n)
  - Beams .28(n)(1)
  - Platform Spans .28(n)(4)
  - Rope Attachments .28(n)(3)
  - Ropes and Hangers .28(n)(2)
  - Supports .28(n)(7)
  - Tools .28(n)(6)
  - Work Surfaces .28(n)(8)
- 4-Nitrobiphenyl .1003
  - Area requirements .1003(c)
    - Closed system operation .1003(c)(2)
    - Isolated systems .1003(c)(2)
    - Maintenance and decontamination activities .1003(c)(5)
    - Open-vessel system operations .1003(c)(3)
    - Transfer from a closed operation .1003(c)(4)
  - Definitions .1003(b)
  - Medical surveillance .1003(g)
    - Examinations .1003(g)(1)
    - Records .1003(g)(2)
  - Regulated area requirements .1003(d)
    - Contamination control .1003(d)(4)
    - Emergencies .1003(d)(2)
    - Hygiene facilities and practices .1003(d)(3)
  - Reports .1003(f)
    - Incidents .1003(f)(2)
    - Operations .1003(f)(1)
  - Scope and application .1003(a)
  - Signs, information, and training .1003(e)
    - Container contents identification .1003(e)(2)
    - Lettering .1003(e)(3)
    - Prohibited statements .1003(e)(4)
    - Signs .1003(e)(1)
    - Training and indoctrination .1003(e)(5)
- N-Nitrosodimethylamine .1016
  - Area Requirements .1016(c)
    - Closed System Operation .1016(c)(2)
    - Isolated Systems .1006(c)(1)
    - Maintenance and Decontamination Activities .1016(c)(5)
    - Open-Vessel System Operations .1016(c)(3)
    - Transfer from a Closed Operation .1016(c)(4)
  - Definitions .1016(b)
  - Medical Surveillance .1016(g)
    - Examinations .1016(g)(1)
    - Records .1016(g)(2)
  - Regulated Area Requirements .1016(d)
    - Contamination Control .1016(d)(4)
    - Emergencies .1016(d)(2)
    - Hygiene Facilities and Practices .1016(d)(3)
  - Reports .1016(f)
    - Incidents .1016(f)(2)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.
        - Operations .1016(f)(1)
    - Scope and Application .1016(a)
    - Signs, Information, and Training .1016(e)
        - Container Contents Identification .1016(e)(2)
        - Lettering .1016(e)(3)
        - Prohibited Statements .1016(e)(4)
        - Signs .1016(e)(1)
        - Training and Indoctrination .1016(e)(5)
- Nitrous Oxide .105
    - Effective Dates .114
    - Standards Sources .115
- Noise Exposure .95
    - Effective Dates .98
    - Personal Protective Equipment .95(b)(1)
    - Pulpwood Logging .266(c)(1)(vi)
    - Standards Sources .99
- Nonionizing Radiation .97
    - Effective Dates .98
    - Electromagnetic Radiation .97(a)
    - Standards Sources .99
- Noxious Gases, Control of .178(i)
- Nozzles:
    - Abrasive Blasting .94(a)(2)(iii), .244(b)
    - Gasoline .106(g)(3)(vi)
    - Standpipe .158(c)(4)
- Occupant Load .37(d)
- Occupational Noise Exposure: (see Noise Exposure)
- Odorizing Gases .110(b)(1)
- Office Occupancies .106(d)(5)(iii)
- Open-Sided Floors .23(c)
- Open Surface Tanks: (see Tanks: Open Surface)
- Openings: (see also Floor Openings (Holes), Wall Openings (Holes)) .23
    - Tanks:
        - Inside .106(b)(4)(iv)
- Organic Peroxide Coatings: (see also Dual Component Coatings) .107(m)
- Outdoor Storage:
    - Flammable Liquids .106(d)(6)
- Outlet Headers .252(a)(3)(iv)
    - Protective Equipment .252(a)(5)(iv)
- Outrigger Scaffolds .28(e)
    - Additional Working Levels .28(e)(6)
    - Beams .28(e)(1)
    - Erection .28(e)(3)
    - Falling Materials .28(e)(5)
    - Inboard Ends .28(e)(2)
    - Planking .28(e)(4)
- Outside Storage Trucks .178(c)(2)(ix), (xi)
- Ovens .263(l)
    - Direct-Fire .263(l)(13)
    - Direct Recirculating .263(l)(11)
    - Electric Heating Equipment .263(l)(8)
    - General Requirements .263(l)(9)
    - Indirect Recirculating .263(l)(15)
    - Location .263(l)(1)
    - Mechanical Parts .263(l)(3)
- Overflow Pipes, Dip Tanks .108(c)(2)
- Overhead Cranes: (see also Overhead and Gantry Cranes) .179
- Overhead and Gantry Cranes:
    - Access .179(c)(2)
    - Adjustments .179(l)(3)
    - Brakes .179(f)
    - Bridge Bumpers .179(e)(2)
    - Cabs .179(c)
    - Clearances .179(b)(6)
    - Effective Dates .179(b)(2), .182
    - Electric Equipment .179(g)
    - Fire Extinguishers .179(c)(3), (o)(3)
    - Footwalks .179(d)
    - Guards .179(e)(5), (6)
    - Handrails .179(d)(3), (4)(ii)
    - Hoisting Equipment .179(h)
    - Hoisting Rope Guards .179(e)(5)
    - Inspections .179(j), (m)
        - Frequent .179(j)(2)
        - Idle (Irregular) .179(j)(4)
        - Initial .179(j)(1)(i)
        - Periodic .179(j)(3)
        - Ropes .179(m)
    - Ladders .179(d)(4)
    - Lighting .179(c)(4)
    - Load Handling .179(n)
    - Maintenance .179(l)
    - Modifications .179(b)(3)
    - Moving Part Guards .179(e)(6)
    - Rail Clamps .179(b)(4)
    - Rail Sweeps .179(e)(4)
    - Rated Load:
        - Markings .179(b)(5)
        - Tests .179(k)(2)
    - Repairs .179(l)(3)
    - Rope Inspection .179(m)
    - Stairways .179(d)(4)
    - Standards Sources .189
    - Testing .179(k)
    - Toeboards .179(d)(3)
    - Trolley Bumpers .179(e)(3)
    - Trolley Stops .179(e)(1)
    - Warning Devices .179(i)
    - Wind Indicators .179(b)(4)
- Overhead Wires:
    - Cranes .180(j)(4)
    - Derricks .181(j)(5)(iv)
- Overspray Collectors .107(b)(5)
- Oxygen: (see also Bulk Oxygen Systems) .104
    - Deficiency .94(d)(9)(vi), (11)(iii)
    - Effective Dates .114
    - Standards Sources .115
    - Storage .252(a)(2)(iv)
- Oxygen-Fuel Gas Systems .252(a)
    - Outlet Headers .252(a)(3)(iv)
    - Piping Systems .252(a)(4)
    - Protective Equipment .252(a)(5)
- Oxygen Manifolds:
    - High Pressure .252(a)(3)(ii)
    - Low Pressure .252(a)(3)(iii)
- Painters' Stepladders .25(c)(4)(ii)
- Paints:
    - Color Code .144
    - Fire Retardant .37(o)
- Paper and Paperboard Mills: (see Pulp, Paper and Paperboard Mills) .261
- Passageways, Working Surfaces .22(b)
- Personal Protection: (see also Personal Protective Equipment) .94(d)(9), .219(p)(7)
- Personal Protective Equipment: (see also Lifelines, Safety Belts, and Other Terms Listed Below)
    - Abrasive Blasting .94(a)(5)
    - Asbestos Exposure .1001(h), 1101(b)
        - Clothing .1001(h)
    - Effective Dates .138
    - Electrical Protective Devices .137, .265(c)(12)(iv)
    - Emergency Showers and Fountains:
        - Open Surface Tanks .94(d)(9)(vii)
        - Pulp, Paper and Paperboard Mills .261(g)(5), (18)
    - Eye Protection .133
    - Face Protection .133
    - Fire Brigades .156
    - Foot Protection .136
    - General Requirements .132
    - Head Protection .135
    - Noise Exposure .95(b)(1)
    - Open Surface Tanks .94(d)(9)
    - Pulp and Paper Mills .261(b)(2), (g)(2), (i)(4), (k)(3)
    - Pulpwood Logging .266(c)(1)(i)–(v)
    - Respirators .94(a)(5), .134
    - Respiratory Protection .134
    - Rubber Protective Equipment .137
    - Sawmills .265(c)(17)(ii), (g)
        - Electrical .265(c)(12)(iv)
    - Standards Sources .139
    - Textiles .262(qq)
    - Welding .252
        - Booths .252(e)(2)(iii)
        - Cable .252(e)(1)(ii)
        - Clothing .252(e)(3)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term · Section No.

- Eye Protection .252(e)(2)
  - Helmets .252(e)(2)(ii)
  - Railing .252(e)(1)(i)
  - Shade Numbers, Lenses .252(e)(2)(g–j)
- Physical Hazards Markings: (see also Color Codes, Physical Hazards: Markings) .144
  - Effective Dates .149
  - Standards Sources .147
- Piers and Wharves: (see also Wharves)
  - Trucks Used .178(c)(2)(x)
- Pipes.
  - Dip Tanks .108(c)(2)
  - Flammable Liquids .107(e)(6)
  - Overflow .108(c)(2)
- Piping: (see Piping, Fittings and Tubing; Piping, Valves and Tubing)
- Piping, Fittings and Tubing:
  - Anhydrous Ammonia .111(b)(7)
  - Bulk Oxygen Systems .104(b)(5)
  - Gaseous Hydrogen Systems .103(b)(1)(ii), (iii)
  - Liquefied Hydrogen Systems .103(c)(1)(iv), (v)
  - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(b)(8)
  - Safety Relief Devices .103(b)(1)(ii), (c)(1)(iv)
- Piping Systems, Oxygen-Fuel .252(a)(4), (g)(2)
  - Fittings .252(a)(4)(i)
  - Installation .252(a)(4)(iii)
  - Painting .252(a)(4)(iv)
  - Piping .252(a)(4)(i)
  - Piping Joints .252(a)(4)(ii)
  - Pressure Relief Devices .252(a)(5)(ii)
  - Protective Equipment .252(a)(5)(iii), (iv)
  - Signs .252(a)(4)(iv)
  - Station Outlets .252(a)(5)(iv)
  - Testing .252(a)(4)(v)
  - X-ray Inspections .252(g)(1)(vii)
- Piping, Valves, and Fittings:
  - Flammable and Combustible Liquids .106(c)
    - Corrosion .106(c)(5)
    - Design .106(c)(1)(i)
    - Joints .106(c)(3)
    - Materials .106(c)(2)
    - Supports .106(c)(4)
    - Testing .106(c)(7)
    - Valves .106(c)(6)
  - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(h)(7)
  - Processing Plants .106(h)(4)(ii),
- Pits .23(a)(5)
  - Drains .110(d)(11)
- Planing Machines .213(n)
- Plasterer's Scaffolds .28(o)
  - Construction Requirements .28(o)(1)
  - Guardrails .28(o)(2), (4)
  - Platform Planks .28(o)(3)
  - Runways .28(o)(4)
- Plastics Industry: (see also Mills, Rubber and Plastics Industry)
  - Auxiliary Equipment .216(a)(3)
  - Effective Dates .216(a)(1), (2), .220
  - Installations:
    - Existing .216(a)(2)
    - New .216(a)(1)
  - Mills and Calenders .216
  - Standards Sources .221
- Platform Lift Trucks: (see Powered Industrial Trucks) .178
- Platforms, Scaffolds: (see also Listings Under Specific Type Scaffold)
  - Guarding .23(c)
  - Manlifts .68(c)(3)
- Pneumatic Powered Tools .243(b)
  - Airhoses .243(b)(2)
  - Portable .243(b)(1)
- Point of Operation Guarding .212(a)(3), .217(c)
- Polishing: (see Grinding, Polishing and Buffing)
- Portable Fire Extinguishers: (see Fire Extinguishers, Portable) .157
- Portable Metal Ladders: (see Ladders, Portable Metal) .26
- Portable Stepladders: (see Stepladders, Portable)
- Portable Tank Storage: (see Tank Storage, Portable)
- Portable Tanks: (see Tanks, Portable)

Subject term · Section No.

- Portable Tools: (see also Powered Tools, Hand and Portable) .244
- Portable Welding Machines: (see Welding Machines, Portable)
- Portable Wood Ladders: (see Ladders, Portable Wood) .25
- Powder Coatings .107(l)
  - Cleaning .107(l)(4)(i), (ii)
  - Drying, Curing, or Fusion Equipment .107(l)(3)
  - Electric Equipment .107(l)(1)
  - Electrostatic Spraying Equipment:
    - Fixed .107(l)(5)
    - Fluidized Beds .107(l)(7)
    - Hand .107(l)(6)
  - Ignition Sources .107(l)(1)
  - Maintenance .107(l)(4)
  - Smoking .107(l)(4)(iii)
  - Ventilation .107(1)(2)
- Power Presses, Mechanical: (see Mechanical Power Presses)
- Powered Industrial Trucks:
  - Approval Labels .178(a)(3), (7)
  - Batteries .178(g)
  - Combustible Dusts .178(c)(2)(vi)
  - Conversion .178(d), (q)(12)
  - Design and Construction .178(a)(2)
  - Designated Locations .178(c)
  - Designations, Trucks:
    - D .178(b)(1)
    - DS .178(b)(2)
    - DY .178(b)(3)
    - E .178(b)(4)
    - ES .178(b)(5)
    - EE .178(b)(6)
    - EX .178(b)(7)
    - G .178(b)(8)
    - GS .178(b)(9)
    - LP .178(b)(10)
    - LPS .178(b)(11)
  - Effective Dates .182
  - Fire Protection .178(a)(1)
  - Front End Attachments .178(a)(5)
  - Fuel Handling .178(f)
  - Gases and Fumes .178(i)
  - Grain Handling .178(c)(2)(vi), (b)
  - Hazardous Materials .178(c)(2)
  - Lighting .178(h)
  - Loading .178(o)
  - Maintenance .178(q)
  - Markings .178(a)(6)
  - Modifications .178(a)(4)
  - Operations .178(p)
  - Pulp and Paper Mills .261(b)(6)
  - Repairs .178(q)
  - Safety Guards .178(e)
  - Standards Sources .189
  - Training Operators .178(l)
  - Traveling .178(n)
  - Truck Operations .178(m)
- Powered Platforms .66-.70
  - Application .66(b)(1)
  - Cleaning .66(e)(7)
  - Definitions .66(a)
  - Design Requirements .66(b)(3)
  - Equipment .66(b)(2)
  - General Requirements .66(b)
  - Hoisting Equipment .66(e)(8)
  - Inspections .66(e)
  - Limitations .66(b)(4)
  - Maintenance .66(e)(6)
  - Manlifts .68
  - Reshackling Hoists .66(e)(8)
  - Safety Devices .66(e)(9)
  - Standards Sources .69
  - Tests .66(e)
  - Types .66(b)(5)
    - Type F .66(b)(5)(ii), (c)
    - Type T .66(b)(5)(iii), (d)
  - Vehicle-Mounted .67
- Powered Tools, Hand and Portable:
  - Abrasive Wheels .243(c)
  - Compressed Air Cleaning .242(b)
  - Definitions .241
  - Effective Dates .245
  - Employees .242(a)
  - Explosive Actuated Fastening .243(d)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

- Guarding .243
- Lawn Mowers, Power .243(e)
- Pneumatic Powered .243(b)
- Standards Sources .246
- Woodworking .243(a)

Presses: (see also Mechanical Power Presses)
- Cold Trimming .218(g)(2)
- Forging .218(f)
- Hot Trimming .218(g)(1)
- Hydraulic Forging .218(f)(2)
- Trimming .218(g)

Pressure Gages, Air Receivers .169(b)(3)
Pressure Vessels .106(b)(1)(v), .217(b)(12)
- Chemical Plants .106(i)(3)
- Distilleries .106(i)(3)
- Refineries .106(i)(3)
- Tank Storage .106(b)(v)

Pressures: (see Safety Relief Devices)
Prime Mover Guards .219(b)
Primers, Ammunition .109(j)(4)
Processing Plants, Flammable and Combustible Liquids .106(h)
- Application and Scope .106(h)(1)
- Buildings .106(h)(3)
- Clear Zone .106(h)(8)(iv)
- Drainage .106(h)(3)(ii)
- Fire Protection .106(h)(6)
- Housekeeping .106(h)(8)
- Ignition Sources .106(h)(7)
- Liquid Handling .106(h)(4)
- Loading .106(h)(5)
- Location .106(h)(2)
- Maintenance .106(h)(8)
- Waste Disposal .106(h)(8)(iii)

Profile Lathes .213(c)
Projections .219(h)
beta-Propiolactone .1013
- Area requirements .1013(c)
  - Closed system operation .1013(c)(2)
  - Isolated systems .1013(c)(1)
  - Maintenance and decontamination activities .1013(c)(5)
  - Open-vessel system operations .1013(c)(3)
  - Transfer from a closed operation .1013(c)(4)
- Definitions .1013(b)
- Medical surveillance .1013(g)
  - Examinations .1013(g)(1)
  - Records .1013(g)(2)
- Regulated area requirements .1013(d)
  - Contamination control .1013(d)(4)
  - Emergencies .1013(d)(2)
  - Hygiene facilities and practices .1013(d)(3)
- Reports .1013(f)
  - Incidents .1013(f)(2)
  - Operations .1013(f)(1)
- Scope and application .1013(a)
- Signs, information, and training .1013(e)
  - Container contents identification .1013(e)(2)
  - Lettering .1013(e)(3)
  - Prohibited statements .1013(e)(4)
  - Signs .1013(e)(1)
  - Training and indoctrination .1013(e)(5)

Protective Clothing: (see Clothing, Protective and Personal Protective Equipment)
Protective Equipment, Piping: (see also Personal Protective Equipment) .252(a)(5)
- Hoses and Connections .252(a)(5)(v)
- Pressure-Reducing Regulations .252(a)(5)(vi)
- Stations Outlet .252(a)(5)(iv)

Protective Structures in Agriculture:
Pulleys .219(d), (k), (p)(5)

Pulp, Paper and Paperboard Mills:
- Barking Devices .261(c)(12)
- Belt Conveyors .261(c)(15)
- Bleaching .261(h)
- Bridge or Dock Plates .261(c)(11)
- Chemical Processes .261(g)
- Cranes .261(c)(8)
- Effective Dates .261(n)
- Finishing Rooms .261(l)
- Floors .261(b)(3)
- Guards .261(b)(1)
- Hand Tools .261(c)(13)
- Handling .261(c), (d)
- Lighting .261(b)(7), (c)(10), (k)(21)
- Lockouts .261(b)(4)
- Machine Rooms .261(k)
- Materials Handling .261(m)
- Mechanical Pulp Processes .261(i)
- Personal Protective Clothing .261(b)(2)
- Personal Protective Equipment .261(b)(2), (d)(1)
- Platforms .261(b)(3)
- Pulpwood:
  - Preparation .261(e)
  - Removal .261(c)(14)
- Rags and Old Paper .261(f)
- Safe Practices .261(b)
- Signs:
  - Conveyors .261(c)(16)
  - Traffic .261(c)(9)
- Standards Sources .261(a)(3), (4); .274
- Stock Preparation .261(j)
- Storage .261(c), (d)
  - Chocking Rolls .261(d)(4)
  - Clearances .261(d)(2)
  - Piling .261(d)(3)
- Tanks .261(b)(5), (g)(4), (13), (16), and (21)
- Traffic Warning Signs .261(c)(9)
- Trucks, Industrial Powered .261(b)(6)

Pulpwood Logging .266
- Bundles .266(e)(13
- Chain Saw Operations .266(c)(5)
- Chipping .266(e)(14)
- Definitions .266(b)
- Effective Dates .266(f)
- Environmental Conditions .266(c)(3)
- Equipment Operations .266(c)(6)
- Equipment Protective Devices .266(d)
- Explosives .266(c)(7)
- First Aid .266(c)(1)(vii)
- Hand Tools .266(c)(2)
- Harvesting .266(e)
  - Bucking .266(e)(3)
  - Debarking .266(e)(5)
  - Felling .266(e)(1), (2)
  - Limbing .266(e)(4)
  - Prehauling .266(e)(6), (7)
  - Skidding .266(e)(6), (7)
- Loading:
  - Machine .266(e)(11)
  - Manual .266(e)(10)
- Noise Exposure .266(c)(1)(vi)
- Personal Protective Equipment .266(c)(1)(i)-(v)
- Roads .266(e)(15)-(18)
- Standards Sources .274
- Storage .266(e)(12)
- Trails .266(e)(15)-(18)
- Transport:
  - Personnel .266(e)(6)
- Work Areas .266(c)(4)

Pumps, Gasoline: (see also Service Stations) .106(g)(3), (4)
- Radial Saws .213(h)

Radiation:
- Ionizing .96
- Nonionizing .97

Radioactive Materials:
- Packaged .96(h)
- Storage .96(j)
- Rail Clamps .179(b)(4), .180(i)(1)
- Rail Sweeps .179(e)(4)

Railroad Cars .176(f) .178(k)(2) and (4)
- Explosives .109(f)

Ramps:
- Egress .37(j)

Rated Load Markings:
- Cranes, Overhead and Gantry .179(b)(5)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term	Section No.
Derricks	.181(c)(1)
Rated Load Test:	
Crawler, Locomotive, and Truck Cranes	.180(e)(2)
Overhead and Gantry Cranes	.179(k)(2)
Recordkeeping:	
Asbestos	.1001(m) .1101(i)
Building Inspection	.66(e)(3)
Communicable Diseases	.142(l)(1) and (2)
Cranes:	
Crawler, Locomotive and Truck	.180(d)(6), (e)(2)(i), and (g)(1) and (g)(2)(ii)
Overhead and Gantry	.179(k)(2), (m)(1) and (2)
Derricks	.181(g)(1) and (3)
Forging Equipment Inspection	.218(a)(2)(i), (ii)
Injury Reporting, Welding	.252(f)(13)
Ionizing Radiation Exposure	.96(m)-(o)
Labor Camps	.142(l)(1) and (2)
Liquid Storage Tanks, Class I	.106(g)(1)(g)
Manlifts	.68(e)(3)
Mechanical Power Presses	.217(e)(1)
Personal Monitoring:	
Asbestos	.1001(d), .1101(f)(2)
Ionizing Radiation	.96(n)
Power Platforms Inspection	.66(e)(3)
Power Presses Inspection	.217(e)(1)
Radiation Exposure	.96(b)(2)(iii), (m)(1) and (2), (n) and (o)(1)
Records, Disclosure, Ionizing Radiation	.96(0)(1)
Respirators	.134(e)(3), (f)(2)(iv)
Welding Operations	.252(c)(6), (f)(13)
Records:	
Asbestos	.1001(m), 1101(i)(1), (j)(6)(i)(ii)
Ionizing Radiation	.96(m)(n)(o)
Mechanical Power Presses	.217(e)(1)
Refineries, Chemical Plants and Distilleries	.106(i)
Application	.106(j)
Fire Control	.106(i)(5)
Pressure Vessels	.106(i)(3)
Process Unit Location	.106(i)(4)
Storage Tanks	.106(i)(1)
Wharves	.106(i)(2)
Refrigerated Containers:	
Anhydrous Ammonia	.111(d)
Refueling:	
Cranes, Crawler, Locomotive, and Truck	.180(i)(4)
Derricks	.181(j)(4)
Trucks	.178(p)(2)
Refuse:	
Collection	.142(a)(4)
Disposal	.142(h)
Receptacles	.141(a)(4)
Relief Devises: (see Safety Relief Devices)	
Remote Gas Pumping Systems	.106(g)(3)(v)
Residue Disposal: (see Waste Disposal)	
Resistance Welding Equipment	.252(c)
Capacitor Discharge Welding	.252(c)(2)(ii)
Disconnecting Means	.306(d)(2)
Foot Switches	.252(c)(2)(vi)
Grounding	.252(c)(2)(ix)
Guarding	.252(c)(1)(iv), .252(c)(2)(iv)
Installation	.252(c)(1)(i)
Interlocks	.252(c)(2)(iii)
Safety Pins	.252(c)(2)(viii)
Shields	.252(c)(2)(v)
Spot and Seam Welding	.252(c)(2)
Stop Buttons	.252(c)(2)(vii)
Thermal Protection	.252(c)(1)(ii)
Resistors:	
Cranes (Overhead and Gantry)	.179(g)(4)
Respirators: (see also Gas Mask Canisters)	.134
Abrasive Blasting	.94(a)(1)(ii), (a)(5)(ii)
Air Supply	.94(a)(6), .134(d)
Asbestos	.1001(g)(1-4) .1101(d)(2)(i)(ii)(iii)
Cleaning	.134(b)(5), (f)(3)
Color Codes	.134(g)(6)
Employer Provided	.134(a)(2)
Fire Brigades	.156(f)
Gas Mask Canisters	.134(g)
Identification	.134(g)
Inspection	.134(b)(7), (f)
Labeling	.134(g)
Maintenance	.134(f)
Minimum Acceptable Program	.134(b)
Open Surface Tanks	.94(d)(9)(vi)
Positive-Pressure	.156(f)(2)
Pulp and Paper Mills	.261(b)(2), (g)(2), (6), (10), (15)(ii)
Repairs	.134(f)(4)
Selection	.134(c)
Storage	.134(b)(6) (f)(5)
Textiles	.262(qq)(2)
Training	.134(b)(3)
Use	.134(e)
Welding	.252(f)(4)(ii)(iii); (5)(ii); (7)(iii); (9); (10)
Respiratory Protection: (see also Respirators)	.134
Air Quality	.94(a)(6), 134(d)
Air Supply	.94(a)(6), 134(d)
Fire Brigades	.156(f)
Gas Mask Canister Identification	.134(g)
Minimum Acceptable Program	.134(b)
Permissible Practices	.134(a)(1)
Respirators	.134(a)(2), (b), (c), (e)
Use	.134(e)
Rim Wheels, Multi-Piece	.177
Ring Test	.215(d)(1)
Ripsaws	.213(c)
Rodent Control	.141(a)(5)
Labor Camps	.142(j)
Roll Coatings	.108(h)(4)
Rolling Scaffolds: (see Work Platforms, Mobile)	
Roof Cars:	
Type F Powered Platforms	.66(c)
Type T Powered Platforms	.66(d)(1)
Roofing Brackets	.28(s)
Catch Platforms	.28(s)(3)
Construction	.28(s)(1)
Supports	.28(s)(2)
Rope Inspections:	
Cranes	.179(m), .180(g)
Derricks	.181(g)
Ropes:	
Cranes	.179(m), .180(g)
Hoists	.179(h)(2)
Inspections	.179(m), .180(g)
Running	.179(m)(1)
Derricks	.181(g)
Idle Ropes	.181(g)(3)
Limited Travel	.181(g)(2)
Nonrotating Ropes	.181(g)(4)
Running	.181(g)(1)
Type F Powered Platforms	.66(c)(20)
Type F Powered Platforms	.66(d)(5)
Rotary Lawn Mowers	.243(e)(1), (4)
Rotating Work Platforms: (see Vehicle-Mounted Work Platforms)	.67
Rubber Industry: (see Mills, Rubber and Plastics Industry)	
Auxiliary Equipment	.216(a)(3), (b)(3)
Effective Dates	.216(a)(1), (2); .220

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.
  Installations:
    Existing .216(a)(2)
    New .216(a)(1)
  Mills and Calenders .216
  Standards Sources .221
Rubber Protective Equipment .137
Rung Ladders, Portable .25(c)(3)
  Extension Trestle .25(c)(3)(v)
  Sectional .25(c)(3)(iv)
  Single .25(c)(3)(ii)
  Trestle .25(c)(3)(v)
  Two-Section .25(c)(3)(iii)
Running Ropes:
  Cranes .179(m)(1), .180(g)(1)
  Derricks .181(g)(1)
Runway Conductors:
  Cranes .179(g)(6)
Runway Protection .23(c)
Safety Belts: (see also Lifelines)
  Powered Platforms .66(d)(8)
  Pulp, Paper, and Paperboard Mills .261(b)(5), (g)(4)(i), (15)(iii)
  Scaffolding .28(j)(4), (n)(8), (s)(3), (t)(2), (u)(6)
  Tanks .94(d)(11)(v)
  Welding .252(e)(4)(iv)
Safety Color Codes:
  Effective Dates .149
  Standards Sources .147
Safety Devices:
  Ladders .27(d)(5)
Safety Guard Design, Abrasive Wheel Machinery .215(a)(2), (b)(10)-(12)
Safety Instruction Signs .145(c)(3), (d)(6)
Safety Relief Devices:
  Bulk Oxygen Systems .104(b)(6), (7)(ii)
  Compressed Gases .107(e)(8)
  Flammable Liquids .107(e)(8)
  Gaseous Hydrogen Systems .103(b)(1)(ii)
  Liquefied Hydrogen Systems .103(c)(1)(iv)
  Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(b)(10), (c)(7), (d)(4), (e)(7), (g)(7), (h)(4)
  Non-DOT Containers .110(d)(4)
  Spraying (Pump Relief) .107(e)(8)
Safety-Toe Footwear: (see Foot Protection)
Sanding Machines .213(p), .243(a)(3)
Sanitation .141
  Application .141(a)(1)
  Change Rooms .141(e)
  Effective Dates .149
  Food Handling .141(h)
  Housekeeping .141(a)(3)
  Insect Control .141(a)(5)
  Lunchrooms .141(g)
  Rodent Control .141(a)(5)
  Sawmills .265(h)
  Standards Sources .147
  Toilet Facilities .141(c)
  Vermin Control .141(a)(5)
  Washing Facilities .141(d)
  Waste Disposal .141(a)(4)
  Water Supply .141(b)
Sawmills:
  Bins, Bunkers, Hoppers, and Fuel Houses .265(c)(23)
    Exits, Lighting and Safety Devices .265(c)(23)(iii)
    Loading Bins .265(c)(23)(ii)
  Blower Systems .265(c)(20)
  Building Facilities .265(c)
    Emergency Exits .265(c)(6)
    Fire Escapes .265(c)(6)
    Floors .265(c)(3)
    Lighting .265(c)(9)
    Platforms .265(c)(4)
    Stairways .265(c)(5)
      Handrails .265(c)(5)(ii)
      Lighting .265(c)(8)
    Tanks .265(c)(8)

Subject term — Section No.
    Vats .265(c)(8)
    Walkways .265(c)(4)
    Walkways, Docks, and Platforms .265(c)(4)
    Work Areas .265(c)(2)
  Burners .265(c)(29)
  Chemicals .265(c)(17)
  Chippers .265(c)(21)
  Conveyors .265(c)(18)
  Definitions .265(b)
  Effective Dates .265(j)
  Electric Wiring .265(c)(12)
  Exhaust Systems .265(c)(20)
  Fire Protection .265(i)
  Flammable Liquids .265(c)(16)
  Gas Piping and Appliances .265(c)(15)
  General Requirements .265(a)
  Hydraulic Systems .265(c)(13)
  Kilns, Dry .265(f)
  Ladders .265(c)(10)
  Liquefied Petroleum Gases .265(c)(14)
  Log Breakdown .265(e)
  Log Handling, Sorting, and Storage .265(d)
    Barking Devices .265(d)(4)
    Log Decks .265(d)(3)
    Storage Areas .265(d)(2)
    Unloading .265(d)(1)
    Unloading Areas .265(d)(2)
  Lumber:
    Loading .265(c)(28)
    Piling .265(c)(27)
    Storage .265(c)(27)
  Marking Physical Hazards .265(c)(11)
  Open Surface Tanks .265(c)(17)(iii)
  Personal Protective Equipment .265(c)(17)(ii), (g)
  Power Transmission Apparatus .265(c)(22)
  Refuse Removal .265(c)(20)(vi)
  Ropes, Cables, Slings, and Chains .265(c)(24)
  Sanitation .265(h)
  Stackers and Unstackers .265(c)(26)
  Standards Sources .265(a)(2), .274
  Threshold Limits .265(c)(17)(i)
  Traffic Control .265(c)(31)
  Tramways .265(c)(19)
  Trestles .265(c)(19)
  Vehicles .265(c)(30)
Saws:
  Band .213(i)
  Band Resaws .213(i)
  Circular .213(f); .243(a)(1)
  Circular Resaws .213(e)
  Cracked .243(a)(4)
  Drag .213(r)(2)
  Forging Machines .218(j)(2)
  Inspection .213(s)
  Radial .213(h)
  Ripsaws .213(c)
  Swing Cutoff .213(g)
  Table .213(d)
Scaffolding: (see also Scaffolds)
  Safety Requirements .28
Scaffolds: (see also Ladder Stands Listings by Names of Scaffolds)
  Boatswain's Chair .28(j)
  Bricklayers' Square .28(l)
  Carpenters' Bracket .28(k)
  Casters .29(a)(4)
  Chicken Ladders .28(t)
  Coupler .28(c)
  Coupler, Mobile .28(d)
  Crawling Boards .28(t)
  Decorators' .28(0)
  Design Loads .29(a)(2)
  Float .28(u)
  Folding Ladder .29(c)(5)
  Folding Stairway .29(c)(4)
  Horse .28(m)
  Interior Hung .28(p)
  Ladder-Jack .28(q)
  Masons' Adjustable Multiple-Point Suspension .28(f)
  Needle Beam .28(n)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term	Section No.
Outrigger	.28(e)
Plasterers'	.28(o)
Roofing Brackets	.28(s)
Ship	.28(u)
Single-Point Adjustable Suspension	.28(i)
Standards Sources	.31
Stone Setters' Adjustable Multiple Point Suspension	.28(h)
Suspension	.28(f), (g), (h), (i)
Swinging	.28(g)
Tube and Coupler	.28(c)
Tube and Coupler, Mobile	.29(d)
Tubular Welded Frame	.28(d), .29(b)
Tubular Welded Sectional Folding	.29(c)
Two-Point Suspension	.28(g)
Wheels	.29(a)(4)
Window-Jack	.28(r)
Wood Pole	.28(b)
Work Levels	.29(a)(3)
Work Platforms	.29(a)
Working Loads	.29(a)(2)
Scaffolds, Manual Mobile: (see also Work Platforms, Mobile Scaffolds)	.29
Sectional Rung Ladders	.25(c)(iv)
Semigantry Cranes: (see Gantry Cranes)	
Separation Walls: (see also Distances From Hazards	
Ammonium Nitrate	.109(i)(5)
Service Stations:	
Flammable and Combustible Liquids	.106(g)
Dispensing Systems	.106(g)(3)
Drainage	.106(g)(7)
Electrical Equipment	.106(g)(5)
Fire Protection	.106(g)(9)
Handling	.106(g)(1)
Heating Equipment	.106(g)(6)
Ignition Sources	.106(g)(8)
Marine Stations	.106(g)(4)
Storage	.106(g)(1)
Waste Disposal	.106(g)(7)
Liquefied Petroleum Gases	.110(h)
Containers	.110(h)(2)
Accessories	.110(h)(3)
Capacity	.110(h)(5)
Installation	.110(h)(6)
Protecting Fittings	.110(h)(7), (9)
Valves	.110(h)(3)
Dispensing Devices	.110(h)(11)
Electrical Systems	.110(g)(13)
Fire Protection	.110(g)(14)
Fittings	.110(h)(9)
Piping	.110(h)(9)
Pumps	.110(h)(10)
Safety Relief Valves	.110(h)(4)
Truck Unloading	.110(h)(8)
Valves	.110(h)(9)
Setscrews	.219h
Sewage Disposal	.142(e)
Shafting Guarding:	
Horizontal	.219(c)(2)
Inclined	.219(c)(3)
Vertical	.219(c)(3)
Sheaves:	
Crane Hoists	.179(h)(1)
Shelters, Labor Camps	.142(b)
Ship Scaffolds: (see Float Scaffolds)	.28(u)
Side-Rolling Ladders	.25(c)(5)
Signs and Tags: (see also Markings)	
Accident Prevention	.145
Classification	.145(c)
Definitions	.145(b)
Use Classification	.145(c)
Biological Hazards	.145(e)(4)
Caution	.1001(g)(i), .145(c)(2), (d)(4)
Colors	.145(d)(2)(i), (4), (6), (10)
Danger	.145(c)(1), (d)(2)(i)
Design	.145(d)
Effective Dates	.149
Exit Markings	.37(q)
Exits	.37(q)
Gas Mask Canisters	.134(g)
Pulp and Paper Mills	.261(c)(9), (16)
Radiation Warning	.97(a)(3)
Respirators	.134(g)
Rope Tag Data	.66(c)(21)
Safety Instruction	.145(c)(3), (d)(6)
Slow-Moving Vehicles	.145(d)(10)
Specifications	.145
Standards Sources	.147
Single Piece Rim Wheels	.177
Single-Point Adjustable Suspension Scaffolds	.28(i)
Emergency Brakes	.28(i)(4)
Equipment	.28(i)(9)
Gears and Brakes	.28(i)(3)
Guards, Mid-Rails	.28(i)(5)
Hoisting Machines	.28(i)(6)
Power Units	.28(i)(1)
Supporting Cables	.28(i)(8)
Suspension Methods	.28(i)(10)
Toeboards	.28(i)(5)
Single-Rung Ladders	.25(c)(3)(ii)
Mason's	.25(c)(4)(iii)
Skylight Floor Openings	.23(a)(4)
Sleeves, Rubber Insulating	.137
Slings	.184
Slow-Moving Vehicle Signs	.145(d)(10)
Slurries	.109(h)
Small Arms Ammunition	.109(j)
Primers	.109(j)(4)
Smokeless Propellants	.109(j)(3)
Storage	.109(j)
Smokeless Propellants	.109(j)(3)
Smoking:	
Dip Tanks	.108(f)(4)
Dual Component Coatings	.107(m)(2)
Explosives	.109(e)(1)
Flammable Liquids	.106(d)(7)(iii)
Powder Coatings	.107(l)(4)(iii)
Spraying	.107(g)(7), .(l)(4)(iii), (m)(2)
Snagging Machines	.215(b)(7)
Sources of Standards: (see Standards Sources)	
Special Industries:	
Agricultural Operations	.267
Bakeries	.263
Forging	.218
Laundries	.264
Paper and Paperboard Mills	.261
Plastics Industry	.216
Pulp Mills	.261
Pulpwood Logging	.266
Rubber Industry	.216
Sawmills	.265
Standards Sources	.221, .274
Textiles	.219(a)(3), .262
Woodworking	.213
Spill Containment	.106(d)(6)(iii)
Spot and Seam Welding Machines	.252(c)(2)
Spray Booths	.107(b)
Baffle Plates	.107(b)(4)
Cleaning	.107(b)(9)
Construction	.107(b)(1)
Conveyors	.107(b)(7)
Distribution Plates	.107(b)(4)
Exhaust Air Filters	.107(b)(5)
Floors	.107(b)(3)
Frontal Area Size	.107(b)(6)
Illumination	.107(b)(10)
Interiors	.107(b)(2)
Lighting	.107(b)(10)
Overspray Collectors	.107(b)(5)
Separations	.107(b)(8)
Spray Finishing	.107
Air Flow Requirements	.94(c)(6)
Application	.107(n)
Automobile Undercoatings	.107(k)
Clean Air	.94(c)(7)
Combustible Liquids Storage	.107(e)
Curing Apparatus	.107(j)
Definitions	.107(a)
Drying Apparatus	.107(j)
Dual Component Coatings	.107(m)
Effective Dates	.98, .114

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

  - Electrical Systems .107(c)
  - Electrostatic Apparatus .107(h)
  - Fire Protection .107(f)
  - Flammable Liquids Storage .107(e)
  - Fusion Apparatus .107(j)
  - Ignition Sources .107(c)
  - Location .94(c)(2)
  - Maintenance .107(g)
  - Make-Up Air .94(c)(7)
  - Organic Peroxide Coatings .107(m)
  - Powder Coatings .107(l)
  - Spray Booths .94(c)(3), .107(b)
  - Spray Rooms .94(c)(4)
  - Standards Sources .99, .115
  - Undercoatings .107(k)
  - Velocity .94(c)(6)
  - Ventilation .94(c)(5), .107(d)
- Spray Liquid Heaters .94(c)(5), .107(e)(7)
- Spraying Operations:
  - Cleaning .107(g)(2)
  - Cleaning Solvents .107(g)(5)
  - Clothing Storage .107(g)(4)
  - Hazardous Materials .107(g)(6)
  - Residue Disposal .107(g)(3)
  - Smoking .107(g)(7)
  - Spraying .107(g)(1)
  - Waste Disposal .107(g)(3)
- Sprinkler Systems:
  - Egress .37(m)
- Sprinkler Systems, Automatic .159
  - Exemptions .159(b)
  - General Requirements .159(c)
    - Acceptance Tests .159(c)(3)
    - Design .159(c)(1)
    - Drainage .159(c)(7)
    - Hose Connections .159(c)(5)
    - Hydraulically Designed .159(c)(11)
    - Maintenance .159(c)(2)
    - Protection of Piping .159(c)(6)
    - Sprinkler Alarms .159(c)(9)
    - Sprinkler Spacing .159(c)(10)
    - Sprinklers .159(c)(7)
    - Water Supply .159(c)(4)
  - Scope and Application .159(a)
- Sprinklers
  - Dip Tanks .108(c)(5)
  - Egress Means .37(m)
- Sprockets .219(f)(3)
- Stability Margin:
  - Crane Loads .180(c)(1)(i)-(iv)
- Stainless Steel Cutting .252(f)(12)
- Stairs, Fixed Industrial .24
  - Handrails .24(h)
  - Length of Stairways .24(g)
  - Railings .24(h)
  - Requirements .24(a)
  - Rise Angle .24(e)
  - Strength .24(c)
  - Treads .24(f)
  - Vertical Clearance .24(i)
  - Width .24(d)
- Standards Sources:
  - Abrasive Blasting .99
  - Accident Prevention Signs and Tags .147
  - Acetylene .115
  - Air Contaminants .1499
  - Air Receivers .169(a)(2), .170
  - Anhydrous Ammonia .115
  - Asbestos .1499
  - Blasting Agents .115
  - Brazing .253
  - Clothing, Protective .139
  - Color Codes .147
  - Combustible Gases .115
  - Combustible Liquids .115
  - Compressed Gas Equipment .170
  - Compressed Gases .115
  - Cranes .189
  - Cutting .253
  - Derricks .189
  - Dip Tanks .115
  - Egress Means .39
  - Environmental Controls .99, .147
  - Explosives .115
  - Eye and Face Protection .139
  - First Aid .153
  - Flammable Liquids .115
  - Foot Protection .139
  - Gas Mask Protection .139
  - Guarding Machinery .221
  - Hand-Held Equipment .246
  - Hazardous Materials .115
  - Head Protection .139
  - Hydrogen .115
  - Indoor Storage .189
  - Ionizing Radiation .99
  - Labor Camps .147
  - Ladders .31
  - Life Safety Code .39
  - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .115
  - Machinery Guarding .221
  - Manlifts .69
  - Materials Handling .189
  - Medical .153
  - Medical Services .153
  - Nitrous Oxide .115
  - Noise Exposure .99
  - Nonionizing Radiation .99
  - Nonwater Disposal Systems .147
  - Occupational Health .99
  - Oxygen .115
  - Personal Protective Equipment .139
  - Physical Hazards Markings .147
  - Platforms, Powered .69
  - Powered Industrial Trucks .189
  - Powered Platforms .69
  - Powered Tools, Hand and Portable .246
  - Railings .31
  - Respiratory Protection .139
  - Safety Color Codes .147
  - Sanitation .147
  - Signs and Tags .147
  - Special Industries .221, .274
  - Spray Finishing .99, .115
  - Tanks, Cargo and Portable .115
  - Toeboards .31
  - Toxic Substances .1499
  - Vehicle Mounted Work Platforms .69
  - Ventilation .99, .115
  - Walking-Working Surfaces .31
  - Wall Openings .31
  - Welding .253
- Standpipe and Hose Systems .158
- Equipment .158(c)
  - Hose .158(c)(3)
  - House Outlets and Connections .158(c)(2)
  - Nozzles .158(c)(4)
  - Reels and Equipment .158(c)(1)
- Exceptions .158(a)(2)
- Protection .158(b)
- Scope and Application .158(a)(1)
- Tests and Maintenance .158(e)
  - Acceptance Tests .158(e)(1)
  - Maintenance .158(e)(2)
- Water Supply .158(d)
- Stands, Ladder: (see Scaffolds; Work Platforms, Mobile)
- Stationary Derricks: (see Derricks) .181
- Static Sparks .219(p)(2)(ii)
- Steps: (see Stairs) .24
- Stepladders:
  - Portable Metal .26(a)(3)
- Stepladders, Portable .25(c)(2)
  - General Requirements .25(c)(2)(i)
  - Painters' .25(c)(4)(ii)
- Sticking Machines .213(n)
- Stiffleg Derricks: (see Derricks) .181
- Stone Setters' Adjustable Multiple-Point:
  - Suspension Scaffolds .28(h)
    - Bridging Scaffolds .28(h)(9)
    - Guardrails .28(h)(8)
    - Hoisting Machines .28(h)(2)
    - Installation .28(h)(10)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

        - Outriggers .28(h)(5)
        - Platforms .28(h)(3)
        - Supports .28(h)(6)
        - Suspension Materials .28(h)(4)
        - Suspension Wire Ropes .28(h)(7)
        - Working Loads .28(h)(1)
- Stopping Limits, Mills and Calenders .216(f)(1)-(3)
- Stops: (see also Safety Devices)
    - Manlifts .68(c)(5), (6)
- Storage: (see also Materials Storage; Storage Areas; Tank Storage; Tank Storage, Portable)
    - Ammonium Nitrate .109(i)
    - Anhydrous Ammonia .111
    - Blasting Agents .109(g)(5)
    - Buildings .106(d)(5)
        - Mercantile Occupancies .106(d)(5)(iv)
        - Office Occupancies .106(d)(5)(iii)
        - Warehouses .106(d)(5)(v)
    - Clothing .107(g)(4)
    - Compressed Gases .101(b)
    - Containers, Bulk Oxygen .104(b)(4), (6)
    - Dip Tank Liquids .108(d)
    - Explosives .109(c), (e)(2), (b)(1)
    - Flammable and Combustible Materials .106(b), (d)
    - Indoor Rooms .106(d)(5)
    - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110
    - Logs .265(d)
    - Lumber .265(c)(27)
    - Maximum for Flammables .106(d)(6)(ii)
    - Outdoor .106(d)(6)
    - Pulp and Paper Mills .261(c), (d)
    - Pulpwood Logging .266(e)(12)
    - Refineries, Chemical Plants, and Distilleries .106(i)(1)
    - Respirators .134(f)(5)
    - Service Stations .106(g)(1)
- Storage Areas:
    - Aisles and Passageways .176(a)
    - Bridge Plates .178(j), (k)(4)
    - Clearance Signs .176(e)
    - Clearances .176(a)
    - Dockboards .178(j), (k)(4)
    - Housekeeping .176(c)
    - Lighting .178(h)
    - Noxious Gases .178(i)
    - Railroad Cars .178(k)(2)-(4)
    - Securing .176(b)
    - Trucks, Highway .178(k)(1), (3); (m)
- Storage Batteries: (see Battery Changing and Charging)
- Storage Bridge Cranes: (see Gantry Cranes)
- Storage, Tanks: (see Tank Storage; Tank Storage, Portable)
- Straight Ladders, Portable Metal .26(a)(2)
- Surface Grinders .215(b)(5)
- Swing Frame Grinders .215(b)(6)
- Swing Head Lathes .213(o)
- Swinging Locomotive Cranes .180(i)(6)
- Swinging Scaffolds: (see Two-Point Suspension Scaffolds)
- Switches:
    - Electric .305(c)
    - Cranes .179(g)(5)
    - Trip and Emergency .216(e)
- Table Saws .213(d)
- Tags: (see Signs and Tags)
- Tanks: (see also Cargo Tanks—Portable Tanks)
    - Gasoline .106(g)(1)
    - Hardening .108(h)(1)
    - Tempering .108(h)(1)
    - Vapor Degreasing .94(d)(12
- Tanks, Dip: (see Dip Tanks)
- Tanks, Storage:
    - Flammable and Combustible Liquids .106(b)
        - Atmospheric Tanks .106(b)(1)(iii)
        - Construction .106(b)(1)
        - Corrosion .106(b)(1)(vi)
        - Ignition Sources .106(b)(6)
        - Installation:
            - Above Ground, Outside .106(b)(2)
            - Inside Buildings .106(b)(4)
            - Underground .106(b)(3)
        - Low Pressure Tanks .106(b)(1)(iv)
        - Materials .106(b)(1)(i)
        - Pressure Vessels .106(b)(1)(v)
        - Supports .106(b)(5)
        - Testing .106(b)(7)
- Tanks, Storage, Portable:
    - Flammable and Combustible Liquids .106(d)
        - Application .106(d)(1)(i)
        - Capacity .106(d)(2)
        - Design .106(d)(2)
        - Exceptions .106(d)(1)(ii)
        - Fire Control .106(d)(7)
        - Indoor Storage .106(d)(4), (5)
        - Outdoor Storage .106(d)(6)
        - Storage Cabinets .106(d)(3)
- Tanks, Open Surface:
    - Cleaning .94(d)(5)
    - Control Means .94(d)(6)
    - Control Requirements .94(d)(4)
    - Degreasing .94(d)(5)
    - Hazards Classification .94(d)(2)
    - Inspection .94(d)(11)
    - Installation .94(d)(11)
    - Maintenance .94(d)(11)
    - Personal Protective Equipment .94(d)(9)
    - Special Precautions .94(d)(10)
    - Spray Cleaning .94(d)(5)
    - Systems Design .94(d)(7)
    - Vapor Degreasing .94(d)(12)
    - Ventilation .94(d)(3), (7)
- Temporary Floor Openings .23(a)(7)
- Temporary Labor Camps: (see Labor Camps, Temporary)
- Tenoning Machines .213(k)
- Temporing Tanks .108(h)(1)
- Telecommunications:
    - Application .268(a)
    - Cable Fault:
        - Locating .268(l)
        - Testing .268(l)(1)
    - Definitions .268(s)
    - Employee Protection .268(d)(m)
    - General:
        - Approach Distances .268(o)(7)
        - Battery Handling .268(b)(2)
        - Buildings Containing Centers .268(b)(1)
        - Compressed Gas .268(b)(5)
        - Hazardous Materials .268(b)(4)
        - Medical and First Aid .268(b)(3)
        - Support Structures .268(b)(6)
    - Grounding Pole Lines:
        - Antenna Work-Radio Transmitting Stations .268(m)(7)
        - Attaching Temporary Bonds .268(m)(5)
        - Nonworking Open Wire .268(m)(2)
        - Power Conductors .268(m)(1)
        - Removing Temporary Bonds .268(m)(5)
        - Suitable Protective Grounding .268(m)(4)
        - Suspension Strand, Temporary .268(m)(6)
        - Verticle Power Conduit .268(m)(3)
    - Materials Handling and Storage:
        - Cable Reels .268(k)(2)
        - Poles .268(k)(1)
    - Microwave Transmission:
        - Eye Protection .268(p)(1)
        - Hazardous Area .268(p)(2)
        - Protective Measures .268(p)(3)
    - Other Mechanical Equipment .268(j)(2)
    - Other Tools .268(i)(3-9)
    - Overhead Lines:
        - Avoiding Contact with Energized Power .268(10)
        - Cable Suspension Strand, Test Requirements .268(n)(5)
        - Elevated Locations, Other .268(n)(8)
        - Handling Suspension Strand .268(n)(1)
        - Inspection of Strand .268(n)(6)
        - Installing Wire and Cable .268(n)(9)
        - Metal Ropes .268(n)(13)
        - Metal Tapes .268(n)(13)
        - Outside Work Platforms .268(n)(7)
        - Poles, Working Position .268(n)(12)
        - Removing Wire and Cable .268(n)(9)
        - Unsafe Poles or Structures .268(n)(4)
        - Wood Poles:
            - Methods of Testing .268(n)(3)
            - Need for Testing .268(n)(2)
- Personal Climbing Equipment:
    - General .268(g)(1)
    - Pole Climbers .268(g)(3)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

  Telecommunication Lineman's .268(g)(2)
Personal Protective Equipment:
  Eye Protection .268(i)(2)
  Head Protection .268(i)(1)
Rubber Insulating Equipment .268(f)
Training .268(c)
Tree Trimming, Electrical Hazards:
  Emergency Conditions .268(q)(3)
  General .268(q)(1)
  Proximity to .268(q)(2)
  Storm Work .268(q)(3)
Underground Lines:
  Entering Manholes .268(o)(2)
  Entering Unvented Vaults .268(o)(2)
  Flames .268(o)(5)
  Guarding Manholes .268(o)(1)
  Guarding Street Openings .268(o)(1)
  Joint Power Manholes .268(o)(3)
  Ladders .268(o)(4)
  Telecommunication Manholes .268(o)(3)
Vehicle Mounted Material Handling Devices:
  Elevating Work Platforms .268(j)(3)
  General Work Platforms .268(j)(1)
Testing:
  Bulk Oxygen .104(b)(8)(v)
  Cranes .179(k), .180(e)
  Derricks .181(e)
  Fire Extinguishers .157(e)
  Gaseous Hydrogen Systems .103(b)(1)(vi)
  Liquefied Hydrogen Systems .103(c)(1)(vii)
  Piping .106(c)(7)
  Powered Platforms .66(e)
  Radiation Alarm .96(f)(3)
  Sprinkler Systems .159(c)(3)
  Standpipe and Hose Systems .158(e)
  Storage Tanks .106(b)(7)
Textiles:
  Acid Carboys .262(nn)
  Bleaching .262(p)
  Calenders .262(ee)
  Caustics .262(oo)
  Clothing Folding Machines .262(gg)
  Color-Mixing Room .262(kk)
  Cotton Cards .262(e)
  Cotton Combers .262(j)
  Definitions .262(b)
  Drawing Frames .262(j)
  Drying Cans .262(w)
  Drying Tumblers .262(cc)
  Dyeing Jigs .262(u)
  Dye Vats .262(mm)
  Extractors .262(y)
  First Aid .262(pp)
  Flat Work Ironers .262(x)
  Folders, Overhead .262(jj)
  Folding Machines .262(gg)
  Garnet Machines .262(f)
  Gill Boxes .262(k)
  Hand Boiling Machines .262(hh)
  Kiers .262(q)
  Lappers .262(m)
  Looms .262(n)
  Mercerizing Ranges .262(s)
  Nip Guards .262(dd)(1), (v), (z)
  Openers .262(d)
  Padders .262(v)
  Personal Protective Equipment .262(qq)
  Pickers .262(d)
  Power Transmission .219(a)(3)
  Printing Machines .262(dd)
  Rings Frames .262(j)
  Roll Bench .262(ii)
  Rope Washers .262(bb)
  Safety Requirements .262(c)
  Sanforizing and Palmer Machines .262(aa)
  Shearing Machines .262(o)
  Slashers .262(h)
  Slubbers .262(j)
  Spinning Mules .262(g)
  Standards Sources .262(a)(2), .274
  Staple Cullers .262(ff)
  Tanks, Open .262(ll)
  Tenter Frames .262(t)
  Tumblers .262(cc)
  Ventilation .262(rr)
  Warpers .262(l)
  Workroom Ventilation .262(rr)
  Worsted Drawing .262(l)
Toe Protection: (see Foot Protection)
Toeboards:
  Cranes .179(d)(3)
  Definition .21(a)(9)
  Power Transmission Apparatus .219(o)(5)
  Powered Platforms .66(c)(10), (11)
  Walking-Working Surfaces .23(a)(2), (3)(ii), (e)
Toilet Facilities: .141(c)
  Construction .141(c)(2)
  Labor Camps .142(d)
  Lavatories .141(d)(2)
  Minimum Numbers .141(c)(1)
  Towels .141(d)(2)(iv), (d)(3)(v)
  Washing Facilities .141(d)
Tongs, Upsetters .218(h)(4)
Tooling .217(d)(5)
Torch Valves, Welding .252(d)(4)(ii)
Towels .141(d)(2)(iv), (d)(3)(v)
Towers, Scaffolds: (see Ladder Stands and Scaffolds; Scaffolds; Work Platforms, Mobile) .29
Toxic Substance Labeling .1200(f)
Tractors: (see Powered Industrial Trucks)
Trailers .111(f)(7)
Training Personnel .96(i), .217(e)(3)
  Fire Brigades .156(c)
  Fire Extinguishers .157(g)
  Respirators .134(b)(3), (e)(5)
  Telecommunications .268(c)
  Truck Operators .178(l)
Transmission Pipeline Welding .252(g)(1)
  Construction Standards .252(g)(1)(v)
  Electric Shock .252(g)(1)(iii)
  Field Shop Operations .252(g)(1)(ii)
  Flammable Substances .252(g)(1)(vi)
  Pressure Testing .252(g)(1)(iv)
  X-ray Inspection .252(g)(1)(vii)
Transportation:
  Blasting Agents .109(g)(6)
  Explosives .109(d)
    Fire Extinguishers .109(d)(2)(iii)
    Markings .109(d)(2)(ii)
    Vehicles .109(d)(2), (3)
Trapdoors .23(a)(5)
Traps, Air Receivers .169(b)(2)
Treads, Stairs .24(f)
Treadles .217(b)(4)
Trestle Ladders, Portable:
  Metal .26(a)(4)
  Wood .25(c)(3)(v)
Trimming Presses .218(g)
Trips, Two-Hand .217(b)(6)
Trolley Bumpers, Cranes .179(e)(3)
Trolley Ladders, Portable .25(c)(5)
Trolley Stops, Cranes .179(e)(1)
Truck Cranes: (see Crawler, Locomotive and Truck Cranes) .180
Trucks .178(k), (m)
  Forklift .261(c)(1)
  Hand .261(m)(1)
  Highway .178(k), (m)
  Power .261(m)(2)
  Powered Industrial .178
Trucks, Powered Industrial: (see Powered Industrial Trucks)
Tube and Coupler Scaffolds .28(c)
  Bearers .28(c)(9)
  Construction .28(c)(5)
  Heavy-Duty .28(c)(3)
  Light-Duty .28(c)(1)
  Medium-Duty .28(c)(2)
  Runners .28(c)(8)
Tube and Coupler Scaffolds, Mobile .29(d)
  Design .29(d)(1)
  Erection .29(d)(3)
  Materials .29(d)(2)
Tubing: (see Piping, Fittings, and Tubing)

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

- Tubular Welded Frame Scaffolds .28(d)
  - Accessories .28(d)(13)
  - Bracing .28(d)(3)
  - Drawing and Specification Requirements .28(d)(11)
  - Erection Requirements .28(d)(12)
  - Frames .28(d)(5), (13)
  - Guardrails .28(d)(7)
  - Inspections .28(d)(14)
  - Legs .28(d)(4)
  - Loads .28(d)(1), (8)
  - Planking Spans .28(d)(10)
  - Securing .28(d)(9)
  - Spacing .28(d)(2)
  - Uplifts .28(d)(6)
- Tubular Welded Frame Scaffolds, Mobile .29(b)
  - Bracing .29(b)(2)
  - Erection .29(b)(5)
  - Panels Locking .29(b)(4)
  - Panels Spacing .29(b)(3)
- Tubular Welded Sectional Folding Scaffolds:
  - Bracing .29(c)(3)
  - End Frames .29(c)(6)
  - Erection .29(c)(7)
  - Sectional Folding Ladder Scaffolds .29(c)(5)
  - Sectional Folding Stairway Scaffolds .29(c)(4)
  - Stairways .29(c)(2)
- Turning Machines .213(o)
- Two-Point Suspension Scaffolds .28(g)
  - Acid Solutions .28(g)(10)
  - Blocks .28(g)(7)
  - Employees, Maximum .28(g)(9)
  - Guardrails .28(g)(5)
  - Hangers .28(g)(2)
  - Hoisting Machines .28(g)(3)
  - Platform .28(g)(12)
  - Roof Irons or Hooks .28(g)(4)
  - Ropes .28(g)(8)
  - Securing .28(g)(11)
  - Size .28(g)(1)
  - Supports .28(g)(8)
  - Suspension .28(g)(6)
- Two-Section Rung Ladders .25(c)(3)(iii)
- Type F Powered Platforms .66(b)(5)(ii), (c)
  - Access .66(c)(13)
  - Communications .66(c)(23)
  - Electrical Wiring .66(c)(22)
  - Emergency Communications .66(c)(23)
  - Emergency Operations:
    - Electrical .66(c)(15)
    - Manual .66(c)(16)
  - Flooring .66(c)(12)
  - Guardrails .66(c)(9), (11)
  - Hoisting Equipment .66(c)(17), (20)
    - Brakes .66(c)(19)
    - Motors .66(c)(18)
  - Load Rating Plate .66(c)(7)
  - Roof Cars: .66(c)
    - Access .66(c)(4)
    - General .66(c)(1)
    - Maintenance .66(c)(5)
    - Movement .66(c)(2)
    - Stability .66(c)(3)
  - Ropes .66(c)(20)
  - Tags .66(c)(21)
  - Toeboards .66(c)(10), (11)
  - Vertical Movement .66(c)(14)
  - Working Platforms .66(c)(6)-(16)
- Type T Powered Platforms .66(b)(5)(iii), (d)
  - Communications .66(d)(7)
  - Electrical Wiring .66(d)(6)
  - Emergency Communications .66(d)(7)
  - Hoisting Equipment .66(d)(3), (5)
  - Lifelines .66(d)(8)
  - Roof Cars .66(d)(1)
  - Ropes .66(d)(5)
  - Safety Belts .66(d)(8)
  - Working Platforms .66(d)(2)
- Upsetters .218(h)
  - Dies Changing .218(h)(5)
  - Lockouts .218(h)(2)
  - Manual Controls .218(h)(3)
  - Supporting Foundations .218(h)(1)
  - Tongs .218(h)(4)
- Valves: (see also Piping, Valves, and Fittings)
  - Air Receivers .169
  - Cylinders .110(c)(6)
  - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(b)(7)
  - Non-DOT Containers .110(d)(3)
- Vapor Degreasing Tanks .94(d)(12)
- Vaporizers:
  - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(b)(11)
  - Liquid Hydrogen .103(c)(1)(viii)
  - Liquid Oxygen .104(b)(7)
- Veneer Machinery .30(c)
  - Cutters .213(q), (s)(13)
- Ventilation .94, 107(d)
  - Abrasive Blasting .94(a)
  - Asbestos .1101(c)(1)(ii)
  - Bulk Oxygen Systems .104(b)(3)(xii)
  - Bulk Plants .106(f)(2)(iii)
  - Dip Tanks .108(b)
    - Drying .108(b)(2)
    - Vapor Area .108(b)(1)
  - Effective Dates .98
  - Electrostatic Spraying .107(i), 107(l)(6)
  - Grinding, Polishing, and Buffing .94(b)
  - Open Surface Tanks .94(d)(3)
  - Powder Coatings .107(l)(2)
  - Processing Buildings .106(h)(3)(iii)
  - Sawmills .265(c)(7)
  - Spray Finishing .94(c)(5)
  - Spraying Operations .94(c)(5), .107(d)
    - Access Doors .107(d)(10)
    - Air Exhausts .107(d)(9)
    - Belts .107(d)(6)
    - Clearances .107(d)(8)
    - Conformance .107(d)(1)
    - Discharge Clearances .107(d)(8)
    - Drying Spaces .107(d)(12)
    - Electric Motors .107(d)(5)
  - Exhaust Duct System .107(d)(3), (7)
    - Fan-Rotating Element .107(d)(4)
    - Independent Exhaust .107(d)(3)
    - Room Intakes .107(d)(11)
  - Standards Sources .99, .115
  - Storage Rooms .106(d)(4)(iv)
  - Tanks, Open Surface .94(d)(3)
  - Textiles .262(rr)
- Venting, Tanks:
  - Aboveground .106(b)(2)(iv)-(vi)
  - Inside .106(b)(4)(ii)
  - Portable .106(d)(2)(ii)
  - Underground .106(b)(3)(iv)
- Vents: (see Venting)
- Vermin Control .141(a)(5)
- Vinyl Chloride:
  - Compliance, Methods of .1017(f)
  - Definitions .1017(b)
  - Effective Dates .1017(o)
  - Emergency Situations .1017(i)
  - Exposure Limit, Permissible .1017(c)
  - Hazardous Operations .1017(h)
  - Labels .1017(l)
  - Medical Surveillance .1017(k)
  - Monitoring .1017(d)
  - Records .1017(m)
  - Regulated Area .1017(e)
  - Reports .1017(n)
  - Respiratory Protection .1017(g)
  - Scope and Application .1017(a)
  - Signs .1017(l)
  - Training .1017(j)
- Walking-Working Surfaces:
  - Aisles .22(b)
  - Covers .22(c)
  - Definitions .21
  - Fixed Industrial Stairs .24
  - Floor Loading .22(d)
  - Floor Openings Guard .23
  - General Requirements .22
  - Guardrails .22(c)
  - Housekeeping .22(a)
  - Ladders:
    - Fixed .27
    - Portable:
      - Metal .26

SUBJECT INDEX FOR VOLUME I

Subject term — Section No.

        - Wood .25
    - Stands .29
  - Passageways .22(b)
  - Scaffolding Safety .28
  - Scaffolds (Towers) .29
  - Stairs, Fixed Industrial .24
  - Standards Sources .31
  - Wall Openings Guarding .23
  - Working Surfaces .30
- Wall Cranes: (see Gantry Cranes)
- Wall Openings (Holes) .23(b)
- Warehouses:
  - Ammonium Nitrate .109(i)(4)
  - Flammable Liquids .106(d)(5)(v), (vi)
- Warning Devices and Signs: (see also Signs and Tags)
  - Cranes .179(i)
  - Ionizing Radiation .96(f)
  - Manlifts .68(c)(7)
  - Nonionizing Radiation .97(a)(3)
- Washing Facilities .141(d), .142(f)
- Waste Disposal .141(a)(4)
  - Asbestos .1101(h)(2)
  - Bulk Plants .106(f)(7)
  - Containers .141(g)(3)
  - Dip Tanks .108(f)(2)
  - Ionizing Radiation .96(k)
  - Labor Camps .142(e), (h)
  - Processing Plants .106(h)(8)(iii)
  - Radiation .96(k)
  - Service Stations, Marine .106(g)(7)
  - Spraying .107(g)(3)
- Water Gells .109(h)
- Water Spray Extinguishing Systems, Fixed .163
- Water Supply:
  - Labor Camps .142(c)
  - Nonpotable Water .141(b)(2)
  - Potable Water .141(b)(1)
  - Sprinkler Systems .159(c)(4)
  - Standpipe and Hose Systems .158(d)
- Weather Protection Manlifts .68(b)(15)
- Welding: (see also Acetylene Generators; Arc Welding; Flash Welding Equipment; Resistance Welding Equipment; Welding Containers; Welding Machines, Portable) .252
  - Beryllium .252(f)(8)
  - Cadmium .252(f)(1)(v), (9)
  - Cleaning Compounds .252(f)(11)
  - Concentrations, Maximum Allowable .252(f)(1)(iv)
  - Containers .252(d)(3)
  - Contamination .252(f)(1)(i)
  - Definitions .251
  - Exhaust Hoods .252(f)(3)
  - Fire Protection .252(d)(1), (d)(2)
  - First Aid Equipment .252(f)(13)
  - Fluorine Compounds .252(f)(1)(v)(c), (5)
  - Labels .252(f)(1)(v)
  - Lead .252(f)(7)
  - Liquefied Petroleum Gases .110(b)(4)
  - Mercury .252(f)(10)
  - Piping Systems, Mechanical .252(g)(2)
  - Personal Protection .252(e)
  - Precautions .252(d)(1), (d)(2)
  - Prohibited Areas .252(d)(2)(vi)
  - Screens .252(f)(1)(iii)
  - Spot and Seam .252(c)(2)
  - Stainless Steels .252(f)(12)
  - Standards Sources .253
  - Supervisory Responsibility .252(d)(2)(xiv)
  - Transmission Pipelines .252(g)(1)
  - Ventilation .252(f)(2)-(4)
  - Zinc .252(f)(6)
- Welding Machines, Portable .252(c)(3)
  - Clevis .252(c)(3)(iii)
  - Counterbalance .252(c)(3)(i)
  - Grounding .252(c)(3)(vi)
  - Holder, Movable .252(c)(3)(v)
  - Safety Chains .252(c)(3)(ii)
  - Switch Guards .252(c)(3)(iv)
- Wharves:
  - Bulk Plants .106(f)(4)
  - Chemical Plants .106(i)(2)
  - Distilleries .106(i)(2)
  - Explosives .109(f)
  - Refineries .106(i)(2)
- Wheels, Servicing .177
- Winch Heads:
  - Derricks .181(i)(5)
- Wind Indicators .179(b)(4)
  - Window-Jack Scaffolds .28(r)
  - Guardrails .28(r)(3)
  - Use .28(r)(1), (2)
- Wood Heel Turning Machines .213(o)
- Wood Ladders, Portable: (see Ladders, Portable Wood)
- Wood Pole Scaffolds .28(b)
  - Bracing .28(b)(8)-(10)
  - Erection .28(b)(16)
  - Guardrails .28(b)(15)
  - Ledgers .28(b)(7)
  - Planking .28(b)(11)-(14)
  - Platforms .28(b)(11)-(14)
  - Reinforcement .28(b)(6)
  - Securing .28(b)(4)
  - Splicing .28(b)(2)
  - Toeboards .28(b)(15)
- Wood Shapers .213(m)
- Wooden Guards .219(o)(2)
- Woodworking Machinery .213
  - Band Saws and Resaws .213(i)
  - Boring Machines .213(l)
  - Circular Resaws .213(e)
  - Construction .213(a)
  - Controls .213(b)
  - Crosscut Table Saws .213(d)
  - Definitions .211
  - Drag Saws .213(r)(2)
  - Effective Dates .220
  - Glue Spreaders, Roll-Type .213(r)(1)
  - Hand-Fed Crosscut Table Saws .213(d)
  - Hand-Fed Ripsaws .213(c)
  - Inspection .213(s)
  - Jointers .213(j)
  - Maintenance .213(s)
  - Matching Machines .213(n)
  - Molding Machines .213(n)
  - Mortising Machines .213(l)
  - Planing Machines .213(n)
  - Profile Lathes .213(o)
  - Radial Saws .213(h)
  - Ripsaws .213(c)
  - Sanding Machines .213(p)
  - Self-Feed Circular Saws .213(f)
  - Standards Sources .221
  - Sticking .213(n)
  - Swing Cutoff Saws .213(g)
  - Swing Head Lathes .213(o)
  - Table Saws .213(d)
  - Tenoning Machines .213(k)
  - Turning Machines .213(o)
  - Veneer Cutters .213(q)
  - Wood Heel Turning Machines .213(o)
  - Wood Shapers .213(m)
- Woodworking Tools, Portable Powered .243(a)
  - Belt Sanding Machines .243(a)(3)
  - Circular Saws .243(a)(1)
  - Cracked Saws .243(a)(4)
  - Dead-Man Controls .243(a)(2)
  - Grounding .243(a)(5)
  - Sanding Machines .243(a)(3)
- Work Platforms .66, .67
  - Elevating and Rotating .67
  - Powered Platforms .66(c)(6)-(16)
  - Vehicle-Mounted .67
    - Application .67(b)(1)
    - Definitions .67(a)
    - Design Requirements .67(b)(2)
    - General Requirements .67(b)
- Work Platforms, Mobile: (see also Scaffolds) .29(e)
  - Casters .29(a)(4)
  - Design Loads .29(a)(2)
  - Standards Sources .31
  - Wheels .29(a)(4)
  - Work Levels .29(a)(3)
  - Working Loads .29(a)(2)
- Working Surfaces: (see also Walking-Working Surfaces) .30
- X-ray Inspections, Mechanical Piping Systems .252(g)(2)(ii)
- Zinc .252(f)(6)
  - Confined Spaces .252(f)(6)(i)
  - Indoors .252(f)(6)(ii)

Appendix B

OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH STANDARDS, REGULATIONS, AND PROCEDURES

CONTENTS OF ALL VOLUMES

Occupational Safety and Health Standards, Regulations, and Procedures are contained in six volumes. Volumes I, II, and III include standards for general industry, the maritime industry, and the construction industry, respectively. Volume IV includes all other regulations, rules, and procedures for implementing the Act. Volume V, Volume VI include procedures and guidelines for the conduct of compliance operations. The major parts and subparts of each volume are as follows:

VOLUME I—GENERAL INDUSTRY STANDARDS

Part 1910—General Industry Standards

Subpart:

A General
B Adoption and Extension of Establish Federal Standards
C General Safety and Health Provisions
D Walking-Working Surfaces
E Means of Egress
F Powered Platform, Manlifts, and Vehicle-Mounted Work Platforms
G Occupational Health and Environmental Control
H Hazardous Materials
I Personal Protective Equipment
J General Environmental Controls
K Medical and First Aid
L Fire Protection
M Compressed Gas and Compressed Air Equipment
N Materials Handling and Storage
O Machinery and Machine Guarding
P Hand and Portable Powered Tools and Other Hand-Held Equipment
Q Welding, Cutting, and Brazing
R Special Industries
S Electrical
T Commercial Diving Operations
Z Toxic and Hazardous Substances
Part 1928 Agriculture

Appendices

A Subject Index
B Contents of All Volumes
C Interpretations

VOLUME II—MARITIME STANDARDS

Part 1915—Shipyard Employment

Subpart

A General Provision
B Explosive and Other Dangerous Atmospheres
C Surface Preparation and Preservation
D Welding, Cutting and Heating
E Scaffolds, Ladders and Other Working Surfaces
F General Working Conditions
G Gear and Equipment for Rigging and Materials Handling
H Tools and Related Equipment
I Personal Protective Equipment
J Ship's Machinery and Piping Systems
K Portable, Unfired Pressure Vessels, Drums and Containers, Other than Ship's Equipment
L Electrical Machinery

Part 1917—Marine Terminals

Subpart

A Scope and Definitions
B Marine Terminal Operations
C Cargo Handling Gear and Equipment
D Specialized Terminals
E Personnel Protection
F Terminal Facilities
G Related Terminal Operations and Equipment

Part 1918—Longshoring:

Subpart

A General Provisions
B Gangways and Gear Certification
C Means of Access
D Working Surfaces
E Opening and Closing Hatches
F Ship's Cargo Handling Gear
G Cargo Handling Gear and Equipment Other than Ship's Gear
H Handling Cargo
I General Working Conditions
J Personal Protective Equipment

Appendices

A Subject Index
B Contents of All Volumes
C Interpretations

VOLUME III—CONSTRUCTION STANDARDS

Part 1926—Construction Standards

Subpart

A General
B General Interpretations
C General Safety and Health Provisions
D Occupational Health and Environmental Controls
E Personal Protective and Life Saving Equipment
F Fire Protection and Prevention
G Signs, Signals, and Barricades
H Materials Handling, Storage, Use, and Disposal
I Tools—Hand and Power
J Welding and Cutting
K Electrical
L Ladders and Scaffolding
M Floor and Wall Openings, and Stairways
N Cranes, Derricks, Hoists, Elevators, and Conveyors
O Motor Vehicles, Mechanized Equipment, and Marine Operations
P Excavations, Trenching, and Shoring
Q Concrete, Concrete Forms, and Shoring
R Steel Erection
S Tunnels and Shafts, Caissons, Cofferdams, and Compressed Air
T Demolition
U Blasting and the Use of Explosives
V Power Transmission and Distribution
W Rollover Protective Structures; Overhead Protection
X Effective Dates

Appendices

A Subject Index
B Contents of All Volumes
C Interpretations

VOLUME IV—OTHER REGULATIONS AND PROCEDURES

PART
(29 CFR)

1901 Procedures for State Agreements.
1902 State Plans for the Development and Enforcement of State Standards.
1903 Inspections, Citations and Proposed Penalties.
1904 Recording and Reporting Occupational Injuries and Illnesses.
1905 Rules of Practice for Variances, Limitations, Variations, Tolerances, and Exemptions under the Williams-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970.
1906 Administration Witnesses and Documents in Private Litigation. (Reserved)
1907 Accreditation of Testing Laboratories.
1908 Consultation Agreements.

1911	Rules of Procedure for Promulgating, Modifying, and Revoking Occupational Safety or Health Standards.
1912	Advisory Committees on Standards.
1912a	National Advisory Committee on Occupational Safety and Health.
1913	Rules of Agency Practice and Procedure Concerning OSHA Access to Employee Medical Records
1919	Gear Cetification.
1920	Procedure for Variations from Safety and Health Regulations under Longshoremen's and Harbor Workers' Compensation Act.
1921	Rules of Practice in Enforcement Proceedings under Section 41 of the Longshoremen's and Harbor Workers' Compensation Act.
1922	Investigational Hearings under Section 41 of the Longshoremen's and Harbor Workers' Compensation Act.
1924	Safety Standards Applicable to Workshops and Rehabilitation Facilities Assisted by Grants.
1925	Safety and Health Provision for Federal Service Contracts.
1950	Development and Planning Grants for Occupational Safety and Health.
1951	Grants for Implementing Approved State Plans.
1952	Approved State Plans for Enforcement of State Standards.
1953	Changes to State Plans for the Development and Enforcement of State Plans.
1954	Procedures for the Evaluation and Monitoring of approved State Plans.
1955	Procedures for Withdrawal of Approval of State Plans.
1956	State Plans for the Development and Enforcement of State Standards Applicable to State and Local Government Employees in States Without Approved Private Employee Plans.
1960	Safety and Health Provisions for Federal Employees.
1975	Coverage of Employers under the Williams-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970.
1977	Discrimination Against Employees Exercising Rights Under the Williams-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970.
1990	Identification, Classification, and Regulation of Potential Occupational Carcenogens.
2200	Rules of procedure.
2201	Regulations implementing the Freedom of Information Act.
2202	Rules of ethics and conduct of Review Commission employees.
2203	Regulations implementing the Government in the Sunshine Act.
2204	Implementation of the Equal Access to Justice Act in proceedings before the Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission.
2400	Regulations implementing the Privacy Act.

(42 CFR) Chapter 1, Subchapter G, National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)—Occupational Safety and Health Research and Related Activities.

80 Administrative Functions, Practices, and Procedures.
84 Certification of Gas Detector Tubes.
85 Requests for Health Hazards Evaluation.
86 Grants for Education Programs in Occupational Safety and Health.
87 Grants for Research and Demonstrations Relating to Occupational Safety and Health.

PL 91-596 Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970.

APPENDICES

A Subject Index
B Contents of All Volumes

VOLUME V—FIELD OPERATIONS MANUAL

CHAPTER

I. General Responsibilities and Administrative Procedures

A. Director, Directorate of Field Operations.
B. Regional Administrator.
C. Area Director.
D. Supervisor.
E. Compliance Safety and Health Officer.
F. Area Office as Full Service Resource Center.

II. Compliance Programming

A. Program Planning.
B. Inspection/Investigation Types.
C. Inspection Selection Criteria.
D. Inspection Priorities.
E. Inspection Scheduling.
F. Exemptions and Limitations.

III. General Inspection Procedures

A. CSHO Responsibilities.
B. Preparation.
C. Advance Notice of Inspection.
D. Conduct of the Inspection.
E. Abatement
F. Employer Abatement Assistance.
G. Informal Conferences.
H. Followup Inspections.
I. Conduct of Monitoring Inspection (PMAs and Long-Term Abatement).

APPENDIX.
- Narrative, OSHA-1A Form.
  - Industrial Hygiene Inspection Outline.
- Notice of Alleged Imminent Danger, OSHA-8 Form.
- Photo Mounting Worksheet, OSHA-89 Form.
- Note Taking Sheet, OSHA-94 Form.

IV. Violations

A. Basis of Violations.
B. Types of Violations.
C. Health Standard Violations.

V. Citations

A. Pre-Citation Consultation.
B. Writing Citations.
C. Grouping and Combining of Violations.
D. Employer/Employee Responsibilities.
E. Affirmative Defenses.
F. Multi-Employer worksites.
G. Amending or Withdrawing Citation and Notification of Penalty in Part or In Its Entirety.
H. Settlement of Cases By Area Directors.

VI. Penalties

A. Civil Penalties.
B. Criminal Penalties.
C. Handling Monies Received from Employers.
D. Delinquent and Contested Penalties.

VII. Imminent Danger

A. General.
B. Preinspection Procedures for Handling Imminent Danger Situations.
C. Inspection.
D. Citations and Proposed Penalties.
E. Followup Inspection.
F. Removal of Imminent Danger Notice.

VIII. Fatality/Catastrophe Investigations

A. General.
B. Action.
C. Reports.
D. Special Situations.

IX. Complaints and Referrals

A. Complaints.
B. Referrals.

X. Discrimination Complaints

A. General.
B. Responsibilities.
C. Procedures.

XI. Temporary Labor Camp Inspections

A. General.
B. Enforcement of Temporary Labor Camp Standards.
C. Migrant Camp Inspection Procedures.
D. Documentation for Migrant Housing Inspections.

XII. Construction

A. General CSHO Responsibilities.
B. Standards.
C. Employer Workplace.
D. Advance Notice.
E. Entry of the Workplace
F. Closing Conference.
G. Citations and Penalties.

XIII. Federal Agency Safety and Health Programs

A. Scope.
B. Targeting.
C. Fatality/Catastrophe Reports and Investigations.
D. Reports of Unsafe or Unhealthful Working Conditions (Complaints):
E. Evaluation of Federal Agency Occupational Safety and Health Programs.

XIV. Disclosure

A. Policy and Procedures.
B. Specific Guidelines.

XV. Review Commission

A. General.
B. Transmittal of Notice of Contest and Other Documents to Commission.
C. Transmittal of File to Regional Solicitor.
D. Communications with Commission Employees.
E. Dealings With Parties While Proceedings Are Pending Before the Commission.

XVI. State Jurisdiction and State Plans

A. Monitoring and Evaluation of Approved 18(b) State Plans
B. Monitoring Activities.
C. Evaluation Activities.
D. Post 18(e) Procedures (Reserved).

Appendix A—Contents of all Volumes

VOLUME VI—INDUSTRIAL HYGIENE TECHNICAL MANUAL

CHAPTER

I. Field Calibration Procedures

A. General
B. Batteries
C. Flow Calibration of Personal Sampling Pumps
D. Noise Instrument Calibration
E. Flow Calibration of Direct Reading Instruments
F. Chemical Calibration of Direct Reading Instruments
G. Air Velocity Meters

II. Standard Methods for Sampling Air Contaminants

A. General Sampling Procedures
B. Filter Weighing Procedures
C. Sampling Method for Total Dust and Metal Fume
D. Sampling Method for Respirable Dust
E. Sampling Method for Organic Vapor and Gases
F. Special Sampling Procedures
G. Sampling Method Using Midget Impinger/Bubblers
H. Sampling Methods Using Direct Reading Instruments

III. Analytical Laboratory Procedures

A. Introduction
B. Sampling Collection Devices
C. Blank Samples
D. Interferences
E. Bulk Samples
F. Mailing Instructions
G. Federal Mailing Regulations
H. Silica Samples Analyzed by X-Ray Diffraction (XRD)
I. Samples Analyzed by Inductively Coupled Plasma (ICP)
J. Samples Analyzed by Neutron Activation (NAA) or X-Ray Fluorescence (XRF)

IV. Evaluation of Exposure Levels For Air Contaminants

A. General
B. Personal Exposure Sampling
C. Full-shift Sampling
D. Unsampled Work Periods
E. Grab Sampling for 8-hour TWA Determinations
F. Lunchbreaks
G. Collection and Analytical Methods
H. Interpretation of 29 CFR 1910.1000, Tables Z-1, Z-2 and Z-3
I. Sampling and Analytical Errors (SAE's)

V. Respiratory Protection

A. General
B. Written Operating Procedures

C. Respirator Selection
D. Training
E. Fit Testing
F. Cleaning
G. Storage
H. Inspection and Maintenance
I. Work Area Surveillance
J. Employee Acceptance
K. Medical Examination
L. Approved Respirators
M. Special Procedures for Supplied-Air Respirators
N. References

VI. Noise Survey Data

A. Introduction
B. Definitions
C. Effects of the Environment on Instrument Performance
D. Effects of Sound on Instrument Reading
E. Noise Measurements
F. Determination of Compliance
G. General Noise Inspection Data
H. Evaluation of the Hearing Conservation Program

VII. Ventilation Survey Data

A. General
B. Ventilation Surveys
C. Categories of Ventilation Standards
D. Trouble Shooting an Exhaust System—Some Helpful Hints

VIII. Sampling For Surface Contamination

A. Introduction
B. General Information
C. General Techniques for Wipe Sampling
D. Special Techniques for Wipe Sampling
E. Notes to Appendix A, Chemical Information Table

IX. OCL Calibration And Repair Service

A. Introduction
B. Shipping Instructions
Table IX-1—General Procedures for Returning for Calibration and Repair
Figure IX-1—Maintenance and Calibration Intervals

X. Specialized Technical Equipment

A. General
B. J.W. TLV Sniffer
C. HNU Photoionization Analyzer
D. MIRAN 103 Infra-red Portable Gas Analyzer
E. MIRAN 1A Infra-red Portable Gas Analyzer
F. Century Organic Vapor Analyzer
G. Chronotox Personal Monitoring System Compur 4102

H. Respirable Dust Mass Monitor
I. GCA Fibrous Aerosol Monitor Model FAM-1

Appendix A, Chemical Information Table

A. Introduction
B. Health Effects
C. Explanation of Terms
D. References

Appendix B, Field Service Memorandums

No. 7—Battery Characteristics
No. 8—Vertical Elutriator Cotton Dust Samplers
No. 9—Sampling Pumps Notes
No. 10—Charging MSA Model-G Pumps
No. 11—Concepts of Sound Dosimetry
No. 12—Consistency of Noise Measurement Data

Appendix C, Contents of all Volumes

Appendix C

INTERPRETATIONS

INDEX TO INTERPRETATIONS

Section/Paragraph	*STD No.*	*Page No.*
Hard Hats; Exemption	1-6.3	900
Hazard Alert; Aerial Lift.	1-3.2	888.1
1910.22(b)(2)	1-1.4	883
1910.23(c)	1-1.8	885
1910.23(c)(1)	1-1.5	884
1910.23(c)(1)	1-1.7	885
1910.23(c)(1)	1-1.13	888
1910.23(e)(1)	1-1.10	886
1910.23(e)(2)	1-1.7	885
1910.23(e)(3)(ii)	1-1.1	883
1910.23(e)(5)(iii)	1-1.6	884
1910.24	1-1.11	887
1910.27	1-1.9	885
1910.27	1-1.12	887
1910.27(d)(5)	1-1.3	883
1910.36(b)(8)	1-2.1	888.1
1910.66	1-3.3	888.2
1910.68	1-3.1	888.1
1910.96	1-4.1	888.4
1910.104(b)(3)(iii)	1-5.8	893
1910.106(a)(14)	1-5.9	894
1910.106(b)(2)(vii)	1-5.2	890
1910.106(b)(2)(vii)(c)(4)	1-5.4	891
1910.106(d)(2)(i)	1-5.14A	897
1910.106(e)(2)	1-5.7	893
1910.106(e)(2)(ii)(b)	1-5.15	898
1910.106(g)(1)(i)(a)	1-5.17	899
1910.106(g)(1)(i)(e)(5)	1-5.3	891
1910.106(g)(3)(vi)(b)	1-5.3	891
1910.106(g)(3)(vi)(c)	1-5.3	891
1910.106(h)(8)(iii)	1-5.13	896
1910.107(b)(5)(i)	1-5.10	895
1910.107(b)(5)(iv)	1-5.11	895
1910.107(f)(1)	1-5.11	895
1910.107(g)(3)	1-5.13	896
1910.107(h)(12)	1-5.1	890
1910.108(a)(1)	1-5.5	892
1910.108(c)(3)	1-5.6A	892
1910.108(f)(2)	1-5.13	896
1910.109	1-5.12	895
1910.110(b)(14)(iv)	1-5.16	898
1910.132(a)	1-6.1	899
1910.132(a)	1-1.13	888
1910.141(d)(2)(i)	1-7.1	901
1910.145(d)(10)	1-7.2	901
1910.151	1-8.1	902
1910.151(c)	1-8.2	902
1910.156(e)(3)(ii)	1-9.3	904.1
1910.157	1-9.1	904
1910.157(f)(2)	1-9.2	904
1910.157(f)(2)(i)	1-9.2	904
1910.157(f)(4)	1-9.2	904
1910.166(c)(3)(i)(a)	1-10.1	904.2
1910.169(a)(2)(i)	1-10.2	904.2
1910.169(b)(2)	1-10.2	904.2
1910.178(a)(3)	1-11.1	905
1910.178(a)(7)	1-11.1	905
1910.178(c)(2)(vii)	1-11.6A	908
1910.178(g)(2)	1-11.4	907
1910.178(k)(1)	1-11.5	907
1910.178(k)(1)	1-11.7	908.1
1910.178(m)(6)	1-11.3	906
1910.178(m)(7)	1-11.5	907
1910.178(m)(7)	1-11.7	908.1
1910.180(h)(3)(v)	1-11.2A	905
1910, Subpart 0	1-12.11	912
1910.212	1-12.7	911
1910.212	1-12.9	912
1910.212	1-12.12	913
1910.212	1-12.27	924
1910.212(a)(1)	1-12.10	912
1910.212(a)(1)	1-12.19	915
1910.212(a)(1)	1-12.23	921
1910.212(a)(1)	1-12.28	925
1910.212(a)(2)	1-12.28	925
1910.212(a)(3)(ii)	1-12.5	910
1910.212(a)(3)(ii)	1-12.22	920
1910.212(a)(3)(ii)	1-12.25	923
1910.212(a)(5)	1-12.1	909
1910.213(a)(4)	1-12.15	914
1910.213(c)(1)	1-12.18	915
1910.213(h)(1)	1-12.17	915
1910.213(h)(1)	1-12.18	915
1910.213(h)(5)	1-12.4	910
1910.215	1-12.13	913
1910.215	1-12.26	923
1910.215(a)(4)	1-12.8	911
1910.217	1-12.7	911
1910.217	1-12.21	916
1910.217	1-12.24	922
1910.217	1-12.27	924
1910.217(b)(3)(i)	1-12.20	916
1910.218	1-12.6	911
1910.219	1-12.14	914
1910.219(a)(1)	1-12.19	915
1910.219(e)(3)	1-12.19	915
1910.242(b)	1-13.1	924
1910.243(a)(3)	1-13.4	927
1910.243(b)(1)	1-13.3	926
1910.243(d)(4)(iv)	1-13.2	926
1910.252(a)(1)(iii)	1-14.1	927
1910.262(cc)(1)	1-15.3	928
1910.264(c)(1)(ii)	1-15.3	928

1910.264(c)(2)(iii)(a) & (iv)(b)	1–15.3	928
1910.265(d)(1)(ii)(b)	1–15.2	928
1910.266(d)(2)(v) & (vi)	1–15.5	929
1910.268(a)(2)(i)	1–15.1	927
1910.268(a)(3)	1–15.1	927
1910.268(h)(8)	1–15.4	929
1910.307(b)(3)	1–16.6a	929
1910.401 thru 441	1–23.2	930
1910.1000	1–4.2	888.4
1910.1003 thru 1016	1–23.4	946
1910.1029	1–4.3	889
1910.1029(h)(2)(i) thru (iii)	1–6.4	901

Pages 877 through 882 are blank

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-1.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.23(e)(3)(ii).

Purpose. To clarify the use of the term "nominal diameter" in Section 1910.23(e)(3)(ii).

Background. This requirement establishes the size of pipe acceptable for use in the construction of guard rails. Numerous requests for clarification have been received, principally from employers and field staff.

Interpretation. The term "nominal diameter" when used to describe the size (diameter) of pipe used in construction of standard railings and posts means the outside diameter. The requirements that pipe railings and posts shall be at least one and one-half inches nominal diameter means that the outside diameter of such shall be not less than one and one-half inches.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-1.3
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.27(d)(5) and 1926.450(a)(5)

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to give guidelines on citing 29 CFR 1910.27(d)(5) or 29 CFR 1926.450(a)(5) Ladders, General Requirements, which adopts ANSI A14.3-1956, Safety Code for Fixed Ladders, Section 6.5 Ladder Safety Devices.

Background. A recent Review Commission Judge's decision vacating the Secretary's citation for violation of 29 CFR 1910.27(d)(5) raised questions about OSHA's interpretation of the standard.

1910.27(d)(5) and ANSI A14.3-1956, Section 6.5 provides:

> *Ladder safety devices.* Ladder safety devices may be used on tower, water tank and chimney ladders over 20 feet in unbroken length in lieu of cage protection. No landing platform is required in these cases. All ladder safety devices such as those that incorporate lifebelts, friction brakes, and sliding attachments shall meet the design requirements of the ladders which they serve.

Action.

a. OSHA's past position to cite employers for violation of 29 CFR 1910.27(d)(5) or 29 CFR 1926.450(a)(5) whenever an employer was utilizing a counterweight device without a friction brake is hereby rescinded. 1910.27(d)(5) or 1926.450(a)(5) does not require an employer to utilize any ladder safety device and therefore employers should not be cited under this standard for failure to have such devices or for failure to have a device which satisfies the definition of ladder safety device as set forth at 29 CFR 1910.21(e)(13), or ANSI A14.3-1956, Section 2.13. Employers shall, however, be cited under 1910.27(d)(5) or 1926.450(a)(5) where they are utilizing a ladder safety device which does not meet the design requirements of the ladders which they serve.

b. Under conditions where the ladder safety device does not meet the requirements for a ladder safety device as defined by 29 CFR 1910.21(e) (13) or ANSI A14.3-1956, Section 2.13 or where no ladder safety device is provided, appropriate standards in 29 CFR 1910.27(d)(1), Cages or Wells, and (d)(2) Landing platforms, or 29 CFR 1926.450(a)(5) shall be cited.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-1.4
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.22(b) (2)

Purpose. To provide an interpretation of "appropriately marked" as applies to permanent aisles and passageways where there are dirt floors or floors having continuous concentrations of sand or fine dusts.

Background.

a. In some instances, 29 CFR 1910.22(b) (2) has been narrowly interpreted to mean that aisles and passageways must be marked by painted floors lines.

b. The intent of "appropriately marked" is not to restrict the markings to one method only. It would be impractical to paint lines on dirt floors or floors that have continuous concentrations of sand or other dusts. These conditions may exist in such industries as foundries, scrap salvage operations or motor winding facilities.

Action. Painted lines remain the most feasible method of marking, where practical, since they may last several years without maintenance or repainting. Other appropriate methods such as marking pillars, powder stripping, flags, traffic cones or barrels are acceptable, when the training program for vehicle operators and employees include the recognition of such markings.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-1.5
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.23(c) (1).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to clarify 29 CFR 1910.23(c) (1) as it relates to guardrails on loading rack platforms.

Background.

a. Strict interpretation of 29 CFR 1910.23(c) (1) would result in having all petroleum loading racks (and similar installations) protected with guardrails on the outside edge of the loading platform above the top of the tank truck. Several citations have been issued for failure to have such guardrails and the Review Commission has ruled against OSHA in contested cases.

b. The standard does not provide that there may be a surface other than "adjacent floor or ground level" which might be within 4 feet of the platform floor. When loading petroleum product tank trucks, the top of the tank is adjacent to and within 4 feet from the floor of the platform.

c. The principal reason why guardrails are impractical is that truck tanks are of different configurations and the several loading hatches make it necessary for employees to be able to step from the platform (or use a runway from the platform onto the tank) at any place in order to go onto the tank. It is necessary to go onto the tank to open and close hatches and to place and remove filler spouts. Safety belts and lanyards should not be used when loading flammable liquids because the employee should be able to move freely in case of a fire.

d. Some clarification of the referenced standard was included in the proposed standards changes on Walking-Working Surfaces published in the Federal Register on April 23, 1976. It is intended that the final changes to the section will provide clarification that such platforms will not have guardrails on platform sides adjacent to the top of tank trucks.

Action. If it is necessary to cite an employer for an alleged violation of 29 CFR 1910.23(c) (1) involving loading platforms where there is an adjacent truck surface which could be considered as an "adjacent floor", the violation is to be considered de minimis.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-1.6
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.23(e) (5) (iii).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to provide guidelines on citing 29 CFR 1910.23(e) (5) (iii), Clearance of Handrails and Railings— General Industry.

Background.

a. The present standard, 29 CFR 1910.23(e) (5) (iii), states in part: "The length of brackets shall be such as will give a clearance between handrail and wall or any projection thereon of at least 3 inches." 29 CFR 1910.23(e) (6) states: "All handrails and railings shall be provided with a clearance of not less than 3 inches between the handrail or railing and any other object."

b. The proposed changes to Walking-Working Surfaces, will allow all handrails and railings to have a clearance of at least one and one-half inches between the handrail or railing and any other object.

Action. Pending final approval of the proposed changes in the standards, any violation of the clearance requirement of handrails and railings required in 29 CFR 1910.23 shall be considered de minimis, if the clearance is at least 1½ inches.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-1.7
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 29 CFR 1910.23(c) (1) and (e) (3), Guarding Floor and Wall Opening and Holes—General Industry

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to provide guidance to field personnel when encountering situations where the rules of another Federal agency may be met.

Background. The present standard, 29 CFR 1910.23(c) (1), requires platforms and runways four (4) feet or more above adjacent floor or ground level be guarded by a standard railing or the equivalent as specified in 29 CFR 1910.23(e) (3). The proposed changes to Walking-Working Surfaces, 29 CFR 1910.23, states in part that when standard railings are not feasible because it would result in an impairment of the work being performed or because some accommodation is needed so that the rules of another Federal agency may be met, alternative protection may be provided for employees which is as safe as that which would be afforded by 29 CFR 1910.23(c) (1).

Action. Pending final approval of the proposed changes in the standards, any violation of the requirement for a standard railing or equivalent in 29 CFR 1910.23(c) (1) shall be considered de minimis provided that the use of guard rails are not feasible and that alternate protection is provided. In some instances alternate protection may include, but is not limited to a tie off system using safety belts and lanyard.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-1.8
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.23(c).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to advise field personnel that 29 CFR 1910.23(c) should not be applied to metal pouring platforms in hot metal pouring operations, except upon consultation with the Office of Compliance Programming.

Background.

a. The provisions of 29 CFR 1910.23(c) requiring railings and toeboards on the open sides of platforms or runways shall not apply to open sides of hot metal pouring platforms (teeming platforms) or runways in areas where work is performed in preparation for, during, or in the completion of hot metal pouring operations.

b. We are presently revising the standard to exclude this operation from 29 CFR 1910.23, and to provide a standard for feasible protection. The nonenforcement policy shall continue during the pendency for rulemaking proceeding.

c. An extension of time was granted the rulemaking process on standards relating to Walking-Working Surfaces by a Notice appearing in the Federal Register on June 22, 1976.

Action. 29 CFR 1910.23(c) shall be considered de minimis relative to metal pouring platforms in hot metal pouring operations except upon consultation with the Office of Compliance Programming.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-1.9
12/29/78

SUBJECT: 1910.27.

Purpose. Clarification of Fixed Ladders, Relative to Manhole (Rungs) Steps

Action.

1. The CSHO shall continue to enforce the standard as written for fixed ladders in all instances except for manhole steps in walls or risers or conical top sections of manholes.

2. The CSHO shall assure that individual rungs or steps used for access or egress, embedded in the walls of risers or the conical top sections of manholes shall be safe, well constructed and installed in accordance with good engineering practices. Specifically, individual rungs or steps shall be uniformly spaced from 12 inches to 16½ inches.

a. The CSHO will cite the use of manhole steps and manholes not designed to prevent the foot from sliding off the end as a violation of both the present and proposed standards.

b. The CSHO will cite the use of steps found to be unsafe due to corrosion as a violation of the General Duty Clause, if the conditions warrant it.

Background. Some OSHA personnel have been enforcing the suggested design, Figure D–1, depicted in 29 CFR 1910.27, as the overall design criteria for fixed rungs installed in the walls or risers or conical top sections of manholes. This is in error, since:

1. On December 13, 1971, the Office of Standards Development advised the American Concrete Pipe Association that the language used in 29 CFR 1910.27 does not indicate specifications for manhole steps in conical-shaped sanitary sewer manholes.

2. The American Society for Testing Material (ASTM) specifications for "Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections," C–478, specifies wall thicknesses according to design requirements, thereby approving walls as thin as 4 inches and precluding the 6-inch embedments as suggested in Figure D–1. Appurtenances penetrating the manhole walls are forbidden, thus the requirements for at least 3-inch embedments for individual steps as specified in the proposed standard are reasonable.

3. The proposed revision of Subpart D, "Walking and Working Surfaces," Federal Register, September 6, 1973, addresses itself to the design specifications for fixed embedded steps in walls or risers or in the conical top sections of manholes. The dimensions are entirely different from those depicted in Figure D–1.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–1.10
6/30/81

SUBJECT: 1910.23 (e) (1).

Purpose. This instruction provides guidance for the equitable enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.23(e) (1) as it pertains to the acceptable height of guardrails.

Action. OSHA Regional Administrators/Area Directors shall classify technical violations of 29 CFR 1910.23 (e) (1) as de minimis violations, where the employer has provided guardrails which meet the following specifications:

1. Existing guardrailing shall consist of a top rail, intermediate rail, and posts, or equivalent, and shall have a minimum vertical height of 36 inches to 44 inches from the upper surface of the top rail to the floor, platform, runway or ramp level.

2. Guardrailings with heights greater than 44 inches are permissible provided the extra height does not create a dangerous situation for employees. Openings beneath the top rail that would permit the passage of a 19 inch or larger spherical object would create an unsafe condition, therefore, additional mid-rails may be necessary.

3. Deviations from the standard which are deemed to be de minimis violations, as herein described, apply only to the General Industry standards, 29 CFR 1910, and do not affect the specified requirements for guardrailings set forth in the Martime or Construction standards.

Background. A Field Information Memorandum #74–87 (FIM) was previously issued regarding the height of guardrails. At the time FIM's were reissued and converted to OSHA #100 Series Program Directives, FIM #74–87 was not converted pending the issuance of a major revision to Subpart D of 29 CFR 1910. The intended revision is not yet available; therefore, to provide equitable enforcement which does not place unnecessary cost burdens upon employers, or have a direct or immediate effect upon the safety or health of employees, this instruction reissues the previous policy of FIM #74–87 and presents compatible criteria to the anticipated revision of Subpart D.

1. The stipulations set forth herein provide for compatible specifications between ANSI, the

NFPA, and OSHA, regarding the acceptable height of guardrails in workplaces.

2. In consideration of the findings by the National Bureau of Standards research study, Report Number NBSIR 76–1139, Investigation of Guardrails for the Protection of Employees from Occupational Hazards, dated July 1976, this instruction permits the application of some applicable determinations in advance of the eventual promulgation of a revision to Subpart D of 29 CFR 1910.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–1.11
4/26/82

Subject: 1910.24

Purpose. This instruction recognizes a newly developed alternating tread type stair not presently covered by existing OSHA standards.

Guidelines. Currently OSHA has no standards relating to the alternating tread type stair. In order to provide safety for employees who might use such stairs, it must be designed, installed, used and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and in accordance with the following requirements:

1. The stair will be installed at a 70-degree angle or less.

2. The stair shall be capable of withstanding a minimum uniform load of 100 pounds per square foot with a design factor of 1.7 and the treads shall be capable of carrying a minimum concentrated load of 300 pounds at the center of any treadspan or exterior arc with a design factor of 1.7. If intended for greater loading, construction shall allow for that loading.

3. The stair shall be equipped with a handrail on each side to assist the user in climbing or descending the stair.

Background. The Directorate of Safety Standards Programs will propose standards for the alternating tread type stair when the Subpart D Proposal is published in the Federal Register. Based on a National Office review, it appears that if the stair meets the design requirements in the guidelines of this instruction and is properly installed, used and maintained, it meets the intent of the Act.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–1.12
6/20/83

Subject: 1910.27

Purpose. This instruction clarifies the meaning of 29 CFR 1910.27 as it applies to the protection of employees exposed to falling from fixed ladders used only as a means of escape from fire and other emergency situations.

Reference. OSHA Instruction STD 1–1.3, October 30, 1978, originally dated January 18, 1977.

Background. OSHA has historically established that the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.27 for cages, platforms, or similar fall prevention protection devices are not appropriate for fixed ladders on structures where the fixed ladders are used only as a means of access by fire fighters, other emergency personnel, or escape for employees in fire and other emergency situations. Sometimes these ladders are not provided with employee protection as presently required in 29 CFR 1910.27, when they are intended to be used only in an emergency. In these circumstances, it is sometimes more hazardous to install a cage, well, landing platform or ladder safety device pursuant to the standard than it is not to comply. A cage or well, etc., may interfere with fire fighting or other rescue equipment, or employee escape from fire or other emergency situations.

Guidelines. The instruction provides performance criteria for fixed ladders used only as a means of access for fire fighters and other emergency personnel, or escape for employees in fire and other emergency situations.

1. Employers must establish and implement adequate administrative controls such as barricades and signs to prevent nonemergency use of fixed ladders which are meant for fire fighter use and emergency escape only.

2. In the event the employer does not provide adequate administrative controls such as barricades or signs and employees use an emergency ladder for other than its intended purpose, the employer may be appropriately cited under 29 CFR 1910.27.

3. Fixed ladders not equipped with cages, landing platforms, ladder safety devices, or other forms of employee protection, in some situations may be allowed as a means of access for fire fighters and other emergency personnel, or escape for employees in fire and other emergency situations. These guidelines are provided because it may be more hazardous to comply with 29 CFR 1910.27 than not to comply.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-1.13
4/16/84

SUBJECT: 1910.23(c)(1), (c)(3), AND 1910.132(a)

Purpose. This instruction clarifies the applicability of 29 CFR 1910.23(c)(1), (c)(3) and 1910.132(a) where employees are exposed to falling hazards while performing various tasks including maintenance from elevated surfaces.

Action. Regional Administrators and Area Directors shall ensure that the interpretations and the guidelines of this instruction are adhered to when inspecting general industry facilities where employees are exposed to the hazard of falling from elevated surfaces.

Background. Adjudicated decisions concerning employee exposures to falls from elevated surfaces have been inconsistent. As a result, OHSA has cited employers for violations of 29 CFR 1910.23(c)(1) or of Section 5(a)(1) of the OSH Act when employees have been engaged in various tasks which include inspections, service, repairs and maintenance on elevated surfaces such as, but not limited to, conveyors, tops of machinery and other structures not normally considered "walking and working" surfaces.

1. Although 29 CFR 1910.23(c)(1) requires the safeguarding of "platforms" used by employees, there has been disagreement as to when an "elevated surface" constitutes a platform within the meaning of the standard.

2. In at least one instance (General Electric Company v. OSHRC, 583 F. 2d 61 (2d Cir. 1978)) the court noted the need for increased clarity of definition by OSHA regarding its intended meaning of the term "platform". Therefore, this instruction clarifies and defines the conditions and circumstances under which a "platform" is deemed to exist, and where the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.23(c) apply.

Interpretation. The following interpretations are established for uniform enforcement and application of this instruction.

1. Platforms are interpreted to be any elevated surface designed or used primarily as a walking or working surface, and any other elevated surfaces upon which employees are required or allowed to walk or work while performing assigned tasks on a predictable and regular basis. (See 29 CFR 1910.21(a)(4) for definition of "platform".)

2. Predictable and regular basis means employee functions such as, but not limited to, inspections, service, repair and maintenance which are performed:

a. At least once every 2 weeks, or

b. For a total of 4 man-hours or more during any sequential 4-week period (e.g., 2 employees once every 4 weeks for 2 hours = 4 man-hours per 4-week period).

G. Guidelines. The following guidelines are established for the uniform enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.23(c)(1), 1910.23(c)(3) and 1910.132(a) regarding employee exposures to falls from elevated surfaces.

1. Employee exposures to falls from platforms (see interpretation #1) are regulated by the following OSHA standards:

a. 29 CFR 1910.23(c)(1), or
b. 29 CFR 1910.23(c)(3).

2. In situations where employees are exposed to falls from an elevated surface on *other than* a predictable and regular basis, personal protective equipment as required by 29 CFR 1910.132(a) or other effective fall protection shall be provided.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-2.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.36 (b) (8).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to provide guidance to the field on the applicability of 29 CFR 1910.36 (b) (8) to workover rigs used to service oil wells.

Background.

a. The term "workover rigs" as used in this directive means telescoping derricks permanently attached to trucks which are used to service oil wells. Serveral recent legal decisions have vacated citations issued for violations of 29 CFR 1910.36 (b) (8) on workover rigs. Basically, the standard provides for at least two means of egress remote from each other.

b. The citations were vacated on the basis of the exemption in 29 CFR 1910.36(a), which provides:

> Exits from vehicles, vessels, or other mobile structures are not covered by this subpart (on means of egress).

Action.

a. The standards in Subpart E—Means of Egress, Part 1910, shall not be applied to workover rigs because they are mobile structures and parts of vehicles within the exemption set forth in 29 CFR 1910.36(a).

b. Section 5 (a) (1) of the Act shall be cited when workover rigs have no means of egress or the means of egress is inadequate, when such conditions present recognized hazards causing or likely to cause death or serious physical harm. The determination whether such conditions pose such hazards must be made on a case-by-case basis.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-3.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.68.

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to insure judicious enforcement and clarify the confusion concerning using 5 (a) (1) where 29 CFR 1910.68 is inapplicable because the manlift in question was installed prior to August 27, 1971.

Background. It has been determined that a citation for 5 (a) (1) is appropriate where the condition is a recognized imminent danger or serious hazard.

Action.

a. Citations would be issued where the hazardous condition is easily identifiable. If the manlift is merely an inch narrower than the width specified in the standard, a citation for 5 (a) (1) should not be issued. On the other hand, if 14 out of 20 steps on which the employees are to stand are missing, a citation for 5 (a) (1) should be issued because the danger to employees is obvious.

b. The CSHO shall consult with the appropriate Regional Solicitor where there is any doubt regarding the issuance of a 5 (a) (1) citation for manlift hazards. This is important because the ANSI standard, which usually can be used to demonstrate that the hazard is a recognized one, is also grandfathered.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-3.2
3/21/79

HAZARD ALERT

SUBJECT: Hunt-Pierce Servi-Lift #9-271 Aerial Lift

Purpose. This instruction requires that the six torque plate bolts which hold the torque plate that joins the upper and lower booms of the Servi-Lift must be in place and properly secured.

Action. CSHO's during inspections shall ensure that any missing or loose torque plate bolts is a recognized hazard and shall be corrected immediately.

Background. It has been brought to OSHA's attention that a problem could exist for employees working in and around the Hunt-Pierce Servi-Lift #9–271 aerial lift. Serious accidents may occur because of inadequate and/or improper preventive maintenance routines coupled with insufficient daily inspections of the equipment by its operators and its maintenance team to insure safe operation.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–3.3
11/1/82

Subject: 1910.66

Purpose. This instruction provides guidance to ensure appropriate enforcement of certain requirements pertaining to powered platforms for exterior straight face building maintenance. This instruction does not apply to construction. Requirements for scaffolds used in construction are contained in 29 CFR 1926.451.

NOTE: On certain structures it is not practical to install building face guiding members as specified in 29 CFR 1910.66(b)(3). However, it is possible to install a building anchor system as described in the guidelines of this instruction. The 29 CFR 1910.66 standards are applicable unless they are superseded by equivalent requirements in this instruction. Employers complying with the guidelines of this instruction and applicable sections of 29 CFR 1910.66 shall not be cited, in accordance with OSHA Instruction CPL 2.11A which implements guidelines on de minimis violations that have no direct or immediate relationship to safety and health.

Guidelines.

1. *Intermittent Tie-in Stabilization System.* The building anchor system will be installed as described herein.

a. The building anchors will be located in vertical rows, with an attachment of maximum elevation at every third floor (approximately 45 feet) and spaced horizontally to allow a stabilization attachment for each of the two platform suspension wire ropes. The minimum tensile strength of the anchor bolt shall be 600 pounds.

b. As the suspended platform descends past the elevation of each anchorage, each of the two platform occupants will secure a "quick connect—quick disconnect stabilizer-tie" between a suspension wire rope and a building anchor. Each stabilizer-tie will contain an adjustable lanyard to allow positioning each suspension wire rope vertically at a predetermined angulation that will provide at least 10 pounds of pressure against the building at the lowest point of the tie-in span. The process will be repeated as each elevation of tie-in anchorage is reached during the descent of the platform.

c. This process will be reversed, that is, the stabilizers will be removed as each elevation of the stabilization tie-ins is reached as the platform ascends. Said removal is ensured in that the platform will be provided with electrical interlocks to interrupt power to its hoists in the event either interlock contacts a stabilizer during the ascent of the platform.

d. The intermittent stabilization system including its building anchor shall have a safety factor of 4 and the suspension wire ropes shall have a safety factor of 10 against failure.

e. The engineering analysis documented by a professional engineer will substantiate the method of intermittent stabilization for a suspended powered platform system. Further, such design and method shall provide a condition for employment that will be as safe and healthful as required by the referenced standard.

(1) *Platform.* The platform will be provided with a taut 5/16-inch diameter horizontal galvanized wire rope static line secured to a structural member at both ends of the platform and at the mid-point of the rear guardrail system so that each section of the wire rope static line acts as an independent wire rope lifeline to support either operator in case of a suspension rope failure. The configuration of the attachment must be such that the combined loads of two persons will not be exerted on any attachment at the same time in an emergency. The structural member for the attachment must sustain at least a static load of 4,000 pounds.

(a) This powered platform (scaffold) must not be used during any period of wind velocity above twenty-five (25) miles per hour. An instrument which will accurately measure wind velocity shall be located on the roof of the building.

(b) The suspension rope angulation shall be designed into the suspension system and the tie-in lanyard so that the platform shall exert a minimum force of approximately 10 pounds against the face of the building.

(c) The platform floor shall have openings or gaps to facilitate upward air flow.

(d) The platform shall be no greater than 32 feet in length nor 3 feet in width.

(e) The platform shall also be equipped with building face rollers.

(f) The platform shall be provided with a sensing device that will interrupt its power supply in the event that the platform contacts the tie-in lanyard assembly, to prevent further ascent and ensure that the lanyard assembly can be disengaged from the building anchor.

(2) *Safety Monitor.* The employer shall designate a safety monitor capable of identifying and correcting hazards associated with the intermittent tie-in system for powered platforms.

(a) The individual designated to be a monitor may be a supervisor or a coworker engaged in the performance of work on the powered platform. The monitor must be trained and capable of identifying existing and predictable conditions and actions, which are hazardous to employees utilizing the intermittent tie-in system. These hazardous conditions may involve platform and auxiliary equipment, building anchors, anemometer, personal protective equipment, electrical systems and communications. Employee actions that must be monitored are adherence to established procedures, use of personal protective equipment and radio communications with building management personnel.

(b) The monitor will warn employees of hazardous conditions and unsafe actions on a roof or a powered platform, when it appears to the monitor that they are unaware of a hazard or are acting in an unsafe manner.

(c) The monitor must be authorized to take prompt corrective action in eliminating hazardous conditions. The monitor must then report to the employer any hazardous conditions which were observed and corrected; and submit recommendations to the employer for any condition which needs future correction.

(d) The monitor must be able to observe employees and be close enough to verbally communicate with them.

(3) *Personal Protective Equipment.* Each employee on the working platform of powered platforms shall be provided with personal protective equipment as follows:

(a) A body harness with a short lanyard and an automatic locking grab attached to a horizontal static line on the working platform. The locking grab must have a minimum breaking strength of 4,000 pounds.

1. The body harness, the lanyard and other components, including fastening means and anchorages to the working platform, shall have a minimum breaking strength of 4,000 pounds.

2. The attachment to the static line on the platform must have a breaking strength of 4,000 pounds suitable for one person.

(b) Fastening devices on the lanyard shall be of the self-closing type, equipped with a double locking device to prevent accidental opening of the fastening device.

2. *Employee Training.* Operators of powered platforms shall have the knowledge and training to operate equipment in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and to perform all operations of the intermittent stabilization system.

3. *Additional Employer Responsibilities.* The employer shall comply with all provisions contained in this instruction and with all other applicable provisions of 29 CFR 1910.66, such as

requirements for emergency communications, maintenance inspections and tests, etc.

4. *Procedures.* The employer shall ensure that all procedures required for the proper and safe functioning of the intermittent stabilization system are carried out.

Background. In many high-rise buildings constructed prior to passage of the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, building face guiding members were not installed for powered platforms intended to be used for exterior building maintenance, which included window washing. In addition, some newly constructed buildings, because of the design, types of materials used for exterior walls and the aesthetics, are not constructed with building face guiding members. In situations where it is not practical to install the building face guides as required in 29 CFR 1910.66(b)(3), powered platforms installed and used in a safe manner as described in this instruction will provide an alternative safe system.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1—4.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.96

Explanation.

A. The U.S. Atomic Energy Commission (AEC) has the authority to regulate source, byproduct, and certain special nuclear materials. OSHA's authority to regulate radiation sources does not include those regulated by the A.E.C.

B. OSHA covers all radiation sources not regulated by A.E.C. Examples of non-A.E.C. regulated radiation sources include X-ray equipment, accelerators, accelerator-produced materials, electron microscopes, betatrons, and some naturally occurring radioactive materials.

C. Where a State has an approved 18 (b) plan the following will apply (any State that covers occupational health issues in their plan, will be required to cover radiation):

(1) States that have radiation coverage in their plan:

—Concurrent Federal and State coverage until Secretary of Labor relinquishes this enforcement authority under section 18 (e) of the Act.

(2) States that do not have an approved plan or do not have radiation coverage in their plan:

—Only OSHA will apply to occupational radiation hazards, except that States with radiation standards directed primarily to public protection may also apply them to workplace hazards.

Action.

All Regional Administrators and their Area Directors will consider the above explanation as guidelines in determining OSHA coverage of radiation sources. Where OSHA coverage applies (Item B above), inspections will be scheduled according to the general OSHA priorities. Any radiation hazards, covered by OSHA, discovered in the course of any inspection will be handled in the same manner as other hazards.

In States which have an agreement in effect with the Atomic Energy Commission (States listed in 29 CFR 1910.96 (p) (3) (ii), plus Delaware and Nevada), employers may claim they are not subject to OSHA citation because of the provisions of 29 CFR 1910.96 (p) (3) (ii). However, it is our understanding that State provisions under their A.E.C. agreements are at least as stringent as OSHA's. Hence, any violation of the OSHA standard will be presumptively considered a violation of a relevant State standard. Where the presumptions may be questionable in particular cases, consultation should be held with the State. Paragraph (p) (3) (ii) will not generally protect the employer from OSHA citation. A proposal to revise the radiation standard in 29 CFR 1910.96 is expected in 1973 and will include a proposal to delete paragraph (p) (3) (ii) from the standard to eliminate any confusion which it may now cause.

For example, a complaint to OSHA on excessive radiation exposure from an industry X-ray machine will be investigated by OSHA, even in A.E.C. Agreement States. The OSHA radiation standard, 29 CFR 1910.96, will apply in the Agreement States because any violation of this standard will be a violation of the States' laws, regulations or standards as well. Violation of the OSHA radiation standard discovered in the course of this or any other inspection will be cited just as any other hazard is cited.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1—4.2
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.1000 Classification of Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) Standards

Background. OSHA does have specific standards for airborne levels for two isomers of PCBs and they are listed in 29 CFR 1910.1000 table Z-1. These forms are chlorodiphenyl (42% and 54% chlorine). These above compounds are the more common compounds found as insulating liquids used in electrical capacitors, transformers, and nuclear reactors. Other chemicals forms of PCBs exist, such as chlorodiphenyl (16%, 21%, 71% chlorine), and are used in heat transfer enclosures and in investment casting waxes in foundries. Repeated skin contact hazards with all PCB's could be addressed by the standards 1910.132 and 1910.133.

Action. The "General Duty Clause" section 5 (a) (1) of the OSH Act would apply when serious hazards could be documented on a case by case basis and specific health standards do not apply. This may include the following:

A. Poor personal hygiene practices
B. Inadequate employee training programs
C. Compounds other than those covered by specific standards

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-4.3
4/19/79

SUBJECT: 1910.1029. Respirators and the Coke Oven Emissions Standard.

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to clarify the compliance procedures for determining an effective respirator program for the coke oven emissions standard.

Action. When assessing the respirator program for the coke oven emissions regulation, the OSHA compliance officer should consider the following:

1. At this time any employee in the regulated area must wear a respirator except in the lunch rooms or in filtered air locations and except as provided below.

a. Employees in the regulated area need not wear a respirator in clearly delineated areas that have been shown by air sampling to be consistently below the permissible exposure level (PEL) of 150 ug/m^3 (8 hour TWA). Such locations may include large areas, such as the push side bench or small areas, such as the bench level between batteries.

b. If area measurements in a filtered air enclosure or location exceed the PEL and employees are not wearing respirators in the enclosure, then the appropriate violation would be for inadequate filtered air and/or related work practices and not for an inadequate respirator program.

c. Where employers have not yet installed filtered air enclosures regular work breaks may be taken in the lunch room or in areas of the plant below 150 ug/m^3, as determined by air measurements. The appropriate violation for not wearing the respirator during breaks in areas exceeding the PEL in the regulated area would be failure to provide filtered air and not for an inadequate respirator program. In such cases exposures above the PEL must also be cited.

d. Where there are inadequate filtered air locations or no areas below the PEL, an employee can remove the respirator during brief rest periods and for essential work conversation without violation provided that respirators are worn for a sufficient period to reduce the exposure below the PEL. Three assurances must be met in this instance. First, the employer must know the exposure level in such locations; second, the respirator in use must reduce the exposure to levels specified by the respirator protection factor table; and third, the employer must implement a program for respirator use to achieve the PEL. Appropriate violations would be for failure to provide filtered air and for exceeding the PEL.

e. A small number of jobs, especially maintenance, may have limited clearance for head movement and respirators cannot be easily worn. Where wearing respirators are impossible, an employee can remove the respirators in the regulated area provided that respirators are worn for a sufficient period to reduce the exposure below the PEL. (See item d. for additional requirements). Portable exhaust units may be used to remove the harmful contaminants away from the worker's breathing zone.

2. Battery ends include, but are not limited to, the coal loading area between batteries on topside and bench level (and not just pinion wall to pinion wall). In general, all parts of the battery above ground level are within the regulated area.

3. When assessing the adequacy of the respirator program, consider the fact that an employ-

ee cannot be expected to wear the respirator for prolonged time periods. The employee must be scheduled for breaks from respirator wear.

Background.

1. The coke oven emissions standard recognizes that respirators are to be considered secondary to the objective of preventing employee exposure to harmful agents through the implementation of engineering and work practice controls. The reason for this policy is that even a good respirator protection program contains many deficiencies. Proper facial fit is essential, but due to variations in individual facial dimensions, such fit is difficult to acquire and maintain. Coke oven work is strenuous and the increased breathing resistance of the respirator reduces their acceptability. Also heat stress limits their prolonged acceptability. Safety problems from wearing of respirators may result from impaired vision. This can be significant on a coke battery where numerous mechanical hazards exist and the employee's ability to see is important. Speech is also limited. Voice communication through a respirator can be difficult, annoying and fatiguing. Movements of the jaw in speaking may cause leakage. Communication may make the difference between a safe, efficient operation and confusion especially on difficult and dangerous jobs. Skin irritation can result from wearing a respirator in hot weather, causing additional stress. Therefore, employees who work on coke ovens will need to remove the respirator during the work shift.

2. The coke oven emissions standard requires several positive pressure, temperature controlled, filtered air enclosures. These installations are intended to reduce employee exposure to carcinogenic emissions by isolating the employee from the hazardous environment. In addition, the enclosures also provide a location where employees may remove respirators. Unfortunately, many employers have not yet installed filtered air enclosures, despite the time that has passed since the promulgation of the standard and hence are subject to citation.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–5.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.107(h) (12). Fire Protection System for Electrostatic Spraying.

Purpose. To clarify applicability of 29 CFR 1910.107(h) (12) and to direct answers to inquiries.

Background. This paragraph permits other types of fixed fire protection systems to be used in lieu of sprinkler systems for the protection of electrostatic spraying areas. A number of requests for clarifications of this paragraph have been received.

Interpretation. The subject paragraph contains the clause "where this protection is available." This clause means that where a sufficient water supply is readily available within 50 feet or so of the spraying area in the form of an automatic sprinkler system, then the spraying area must be sprinkled. An automatic sprinkler system is the preferred protection for electrostatic spraying areas. If such facilities are not available then other automatic extinguishing systems shall be provided such as a fixed CO_2 system or a dry chemical system.

Action. Inquiries about this paragraph should be handled in accordance with this instruction.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–5.2
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.106(b) (2) (vii). Drainage, Dikes, and Walls for Aboveground Tanks.

Purpose. To clarify the applicability of 1910.106(b) (2) (vii) and to direct answers to inquiries.

Background. This paragraph establishes the requirements for drainage facilities or dikes for the area surrounding aboveground flammable liquid storage tanks. Numerous request for clarification, objections to, and informal petitions for deletion of the subject requirement have been received on the basis that it is concerned primarily with public safety and property damage and not employee safety.

Interpretation. The primary and expressed purpose of the standard, is to avoid harm to adjoining property and to waterways. Any resulting benefit to the safety and health of employees appears to be secondary. Therefore, paragraph 1910.106(b) (2) (vii) is not intended to apply where its requirements do not have a substantial relationship to the safety and health of employees. Each case will have to be considered on its own merits.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-5.3
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.106(g) (1) (i) (e) (5), (g) (3) (vi) (b) and (c).

Purpose. To provide guidance on the acceptability of rebuilt hose nozzle valves for Class I flammable liquids.

Background. The reference standards require approved hose nozzle valves. It is common practice for motor vehicle service station operators to use rebuilt hose nozzle valves in lieu of new units. At the present time only one manufacturer can supply approved rebuilt nozzle valves. Competitors in the business of rebuilding nozzle valves have initiated action to obtain approval of their products. It will require at least nine months before these competitors obtain approvals.

In order to avoid undue hardship to rebuilders during the time required to obtain approval of their rebuilt nozzle valves, without any significant compensating safety benefit to employees using them, the following policy shall be followed in enforcing the referenced standards.

Interpretation. A rebuilt nozzle valve shall be deemed in substantial compliance with 29 CFR Sections 1910.106(g) (1) (i) (e) (5); 1910.106(g) (3) (vi) (b) and (c); and 1926.152(g) (4); 1926.152(e) (5), whichever may be applicable if:

a. The nozzle valve has been approved, within the meaning of 1910.106(a) (35) or 1926.155(a), whichever is applicable; or

b. The user of the nozzle valve shows a certificate prepared by the rebuilder which certifies that:

1. The nozzle valve:

(i) has a spout that will break off at 150 pounds or less;

(ii) will shut off automatically when dropped from a height of 22 inches to a concrete floor;

(iii) has been pressure tested to 10 psi;

(iv) has a poppet seat that has been pressure tested to 50 psi;

(v) will shut off automatically at a minimum flow rate of 5 gallons per minute; and

(vi) can be reasonably expected to operate without malfunctioning due to mechanical failure in excess of 100,000 cycles under laboratory conditions; and

2. The rebuilder of the nozzle valve has made application to a nationally recognized testing laboratory to obtain a listing in accordance with the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970.

3. No citation shall be issued when an employer meets the requirement of this directive.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-5.4
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.106(b) (2) (vii) (c) (4). Diking Requirements for Flammable and Combustible Liquids

Purpose. To reiterate exception provided by 1910.106(j) (2).

Background. A number of variances have been requested by power companies relating to diking storage tanks for their power generating stations.

Interpretation. Section 1910.106(j) (2) exempts oil burning equipment, including tanks, from the application of 1910.106. This includes oil tanks at power generating plants. NFPA 30, the parent document to Section 1910.106, in making this exception, directed attention to NFPA 31, Standard for the Installation of Oil Burning Equipment. Inquiries about the application of OSHA standards to oil burning equipment installations should be advised that 1910.106 does not apply, but that adoption of NFPA 31 is being considered. As presently constituted, NFPA 31 does not have a "grandfather clause." We have not decided how to adopt, at this time. It should be noted that NFPA 31 contains similar provisions on diking above ground storage tanks.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-5.5
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.108(a) (1). Sinks Used for Cleaning Operations.

Purpose. To clarify the applicability of 29 CFR 1910.108.

Background. There has been confusion as to whether sinks containing flammable or combustible liquids used for cleaning of parts are "dip tanks" under Section 1910.108(a) (1).

Interpretation. Dip tanks are described in great detail in Section 1910.108. These specifications indicate that dip tanks are not of the same nature as sinks containing flammale and combustible liquids used for parts cleaning, which are therefore not subject to section 1910.108. The handling and storage of flammable and combustible liquids are covered by Section 1910.106.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-5.6A
11/26/79

SUBJECT: 1910.108(c) (3).

Purpose. This instruction provides guidance for the enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.108(c) (3) and specific requirements for omitting bottom drains from dip tanks. The word "automatic" is inserted in the following guidelines, 1.a.-c. of this instruction, because it was omitted from the previous instruction.

Action. OSHA Regional Administrators/Area Director shall enforce 29 CFR 1910.108(c) (3) in accordance with the following guidelines.

Guidelines. In all cases, an evacuation plan shall be implemented for employees working in the dip tank area. A copy of the evacuation plan shall be available at the establishment for inspection at all times. Every employee shall be made aware of the evacuation plan and know what to do in the event of an emergency and be evacuated in accordance with the plan.

1. The combinations of extinguishment systems, paragraphs a.-c below, when used in conjunction with the evacuation plan as stated above will generally be acceptable in place of bottom drains. Thus, establishments equipped with a combination of these types of extinguishment systems in conjunction with the evacuation plan will be considered a de minimis violation of 29 CFR 1910.108(c) (3). No citation shall be issued unless the compliance officer determines that due to conditions existing in a particular establishment the absence of a bottom drain as required in 1910.108(c) (3) poses a hazard to employees. Extinguishment systems which are acceptable in lieu of bottom drains are as follows:

a. A dip tank cover with an automatic foam extinguishing system under the cover, or an automatic carbon dioxide system, or an automatic dry chemical extinguishing system, or an automatic water spray extinguishing system.

b. An automatic dry chemical extinguishing system with an automatic carbon dioxide system, or a second automatic dry chemical extinguishing system, or an automatic foam extinguishing system.

c. An automatic carbon dioxide system with a second automatic carbon dioxide system, or an automatic foam extinguishing system.

2. The automatic water spray extinguishing systems, automatic foam extinguishing systems and dip tank covers shall conform with the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.108.

3. The automatic carbon dioxide systems and dry chemical extinguishing system shall conform with the requirement found in 29 CFR Part 1910, Subpart L.

Background. There have been several variance requests for dip tanks containing over 500 gallons of flammable or combustible liquids to be exempted from bottom drains as required by OSHA standard 29 CFR 1910.108(c) (3).

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1-5.7
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.106(e) (2). Individual Plants—Incidental Storage or Use of Flammable and Combustible Liquids.

Purpose. To provide additional information on the application of 29 CFR 1910.106(e) (2).

Background.

a. A review of various OSHA documents concerning the application of the requirements of CFR 1910.106(e) (2) has shown evidence of inconsistency in the use of interpretations.

b. This information is in accordance with the intent of the consensus standards committee of the source standard, National Fire Protection Association, Sectional Committee on General Storage of Flammable Liquids, as indicated in the Flammable and Combustible Liquid Code NFPA #30, 1973.

Action. Pending a revision of 29 CFR 1910.106 and these requirements, CSHO should be guided by the following:

a. When the only operation involved is the storage of flammables in containers or tanks that are closed and remain closed thoughout the storage, the storage area shall be considered to refer to a warehouse as shown in paragraph (d) (5). In this instance, Tables H-14 and H-15 shall be used.

b. When the procedure involved is mixing, transferring or other exposure of liquid to vaporization through operational procedures in which the containers do not remain closed in the storage area, 29 CFR 1910.106(e) (2) (ii) (a) shall be considered to refer to a storage area as shown in paragraph (d) (4). In this instance, Table H-13 shall be used to determine permissible quantities.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1-5.8
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.104(b) (3) (iii). Oxygen; Bulk Oxygen Systems; Distance Between Systems and Exposures; Fire Resistive Structures.

Purpose. To establish guidelines on citing a violation of 29 CFR 1910.104 (b) (3) (iii).

Background.

a. Inquiries from various sources have been received regarding OSHA enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.104(b) (3) (iii) which prescribes the following minimum distance between any bulk oxygen storage container and fire resistive structure;

> Fire resistive structures twenty-five feet from any structure with fire resistive exterior walls or sprinklered buildings of other constructon, but not less than one-half the height of adjacent side wall of the structure.

b. These inquiries have noted that the source standard for 29 CFR 1910.104(b) (3) (iii) was National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) No. 566-1965, Standard for the Installation of Bulk Oxygen Systems. This was redesignated at NFPA No. 50, paragraph 5-1-2, with the 1971 edition, which states:

> Not less than one foot (or other distance to permit system maintenance) from buildings or other than wood frame construction, including fire resistive, heavy timber, noncombustible, and ordinary construction.

c. 29 CFR 1910.104(b) (3) (xviii) states the twenty-five foot distance requirement between structures with fire-resistive exterior walls or sprinklered buildings of other construction and bulk oxygen storage containers:

> (does) not apply where protective structures such as firewalls of adequate height to safe-guard the oxygen storage systems are located between the bulk oxygen storage installation and the exposure. In such cases, the bulk oxygen storage installations may be a minimum distance of 1 foot from the firewall.

d. A "firewall" has been defined by various sources. The National Building Code, 1967 Edition, Section 23.2.A states:

> Firewalls shall be of a noncombustible material having a

> fire resistance rating of not less that 4 hours, and have sufficient standard stability under fire conditions to allow collapse of construction on either side without collapse of the wall.

e. The Fire Protection Handbook, 13th Edition, 1969, NFPA, at page 8–45–50 republished in 1976 defines a firewall as follows:

> A firewall may be broadly defined as a wall erected to prevent the spread of fire. To be effective, firewalls must have sufficient fire resistance to withstand the effects of the most severe fire that might be expected to occur in the building and must provide a complete barrier to the spread of fire. Any openings in a firewall must be suitably protected.

f. 29 CFR 1910.106(e) (3) (iii), Flammable and Combustible Liquids; Industrial Plants; Unit Physical Operations; Chemical Processes; establishes that a firewall may have a 2-hour fire resistance rating.

Action.

a. There appears to be a distinction between structures or walls that are *fire resistive* (in which case 29 CFR 1910.104(b) (3) (iii) requires a distance of 25 feet between the structure or wall and bulk oxygen storage containers) and those that are *firewalls* (in which case the exception in 29 CFR 1910.104(b) (xviii) allows a minimum distance of one foot from the container). For the purposes of determining whether a citation is appropriate a *fire resistive* wall shall be deemed to be one made of fire resistive materials. On the other hand a *firewall within the exception provided must be:*

(1) *at least* a wall made of noncombustible material, self-supporting and with a fire resistance rating of not less than 2 hours, and generally constructed in accordance with the definitions provided by local Building Codes and The Fire Protection Handbook provisions cited herein; the wall may be the exterior wall of the structure exposed to the bulk oxygen storage installation;

(2) Any openings in the wall are properly protected;

(3) The wall is of adequate height to safeguard the oxygen storage systems.

b. Before citations are issued under 29 CFR 1910.104(b) (3) (iii) for violation of the 25 foot requirement, the compliance officer should assure himself that the wall or structure does not come within the exception provided for in 29 CFR 1910.104(b) (xviii), in which case only the 1 foot distance requirement is applicable.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–5.9
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.106(a) (14). "Flashpoint."

Purpose. To provide additional guidelines in the application of the subject standard as it relates to the various methods for determination of "flashpoint" acceptable to the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

Background.

a. An OSHA staff member has been active on the American Society for Testing of Materials (ASTM) Ad-Hoc Committee on Flash Point Methodology and Government Response. This committee has been actively engaged in a program that would lead to the standardization of methods for determining flashpoints that would be acceptable throughout the world. The committee chairman has petitioned OSHA to amend 29 CFR 1910.106 (a) (14) to permit the Setaflash tester methods to be used as alternates to the Tag and Pensky-Martens closed testers methods contained in the definition of flammable and combustible liquids.

b. The Setaflash method, ASTM D3278–73 (Flashpoint of Liquids by Setaflash Closed Tester), has been accepted by the U.S. Department of Transportation and the National Fire Protection association as an acceptable method for determining the flashpoint of liquids.

c. The adoption of OSHA of the Setaflash method as an acceptable method of determining the flashpoint of liquids would result in this agency being in conformity with other regulatory agencies. In addition, the Setaflash method for determining the flashpoint of liquids, ASTM D3278–73, will not have a lessening effect on the safety and health of employees conducting the tests or the eventual users of the liquids classified by this method.

Action. Until such time as the referenced standard is revised to incorporate the use of Setaflash Testing Methods, the use of such methods will be cited as de minimis under the standard.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1-5.10
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.107(b) (5) (i). Average Air Velocity of Spray Booths.

The average air velocity requirements over the open face of the booth stated in this paragraph for spray finishing operations using flammable and combustible liquids were taken from NFPA-33-1969 and pertain to those hazards associated with fire protection or the removal of flammable vapor accumulation from the interior of the booth during spraying operations. This paragraph applies to maintaining the concentration of flammable vapors below the lower explosive limit (LEL) in a spray booth but does not apply to maintaining operator exposure to within the permissible exposure limits (PEL).

The paragraph does not apply to the determination of feasible engineering controls of potential health hazards found from the use of toxic materials (i.e. zinc chromate, toluene, etc.). In areas where a health hazard has been established, the CSHO/IH shall determine on a case by case what is to be adequate engineering controls and effective work practices that would reduce employee exposure to within the health standards. This may include modification or new booth design, modification in application, or increasing the air velocity beyond that stated in 107(b) (5) (i).

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1-5.11
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.107(b) (5) (iv) and (f) (1)

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to assure uniformity within all Regions in the interpretation of 29 CFR 1910.107(b) (5) (iv) and 1910.107(f) (1) as relates to automatic fire extinguishing systems.

Background. The proposed revision of 29 CFR 1910.107 will incorporate the following by cross-reference:

a. An automatic sprinkler system (29 CFR 1910.159).

b. A dry chemical extinguishing system (29 CFR 1910.160).

c. A carbon dioxide system (29 CFR 1910.161).

Action.

a. Those spray areas requiring protection by an automatic sprinkler system, whether the building is sprinklered or not, shall be considered as meeting the sprinkler requirements provided a system as indicated in paragraphs 3.a., or b., or c. is installed.

b. Until the standard has been revised, any violation of the subject referenced standards shall be considered de minimis, if the preceding requirements are met.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1-5.12
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.109. Explosives and Blasting Agents, Proposed Standards Modifications

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to provide additional advisory information and guidance on proposed future changes to 29 CFR 1910.109.

Background.

a. Questions have arisen concerning standards promulgated in 29 CFR 1910.109, Explosives and blasting agents. Conflicts with other Federal agencies' explosives regulations have been noted. OSHA is attempting to resolve these differences. In addition, clarification has been sought on the requirement specified in 29 CFR 1910.109(e) (1) (v) that *all* blasting operations shall be conducted during daylight hours. The latest edition of NFPA No. 495, the source for 29 CFR 1910.109, eases this requirement to reflect the unusual conditions which necessitate blasting at other times.

b. In view of these problem areas in 29 CFR 1910.109, we will propose to revise the entire section. We plan to incorporate the relevant revisions of the NFPA code; resolve, where possible, major conflicts with other Federal agencies and modify the "use of explosives" paragraph. Changes such as the following will be proposed:

(1) The simultaneous transportation of blasting caps with other explosives on the same vehicle will be permitted under certain conditions. This is presently allowed by the Department of Transportation in 49 CFR 177.835(g).

(2) Major differences between explosives storage regulations in 29 CFR 1910.109(c) and those of the Alcohol, Tobacco, and Firearms Division, Internal Revenue Service, specified in 27 CFR Part 181, are being studied. It is planned to use Alcohol, Tobacco, and Firearms' format (five types of storage facilities for explosives) with equivalent construction requirements. Present omissions in 29 CFR 1910.109(c), such as unbarricaded distances in Table H-21, will be remedied.

(3) The scope of 29 CFR 1910.109 will be clarified to apply only to commercial explosives. It will not apply to the manufacture and storage of bombs, projectiles, or other encased explosives used in ordnance.

(4) Seismographic geophysical surveys for gas and oil exploration involving explosives and blasting will be covered under 29 CFR 1926, Construction standards.

(5) Blasting will be permitted at times other than during daylight hours, for unusual operations. Operations for blasting slag pockets and dustcatchers will fall within this category and will be permitted at night where proper illumination is provided and other appropriate requirements are met.

(6) All surface blasting operations shall be performed during daylight hours.

(7) Unusual blasting operations associated with industrial processes that are performed inside buildings shall be permitted regardless of time of day if both of the following conditions are met:

(a) All requirements concerning the use of explosives during normal blasting operations are implemented.

(b) A minimum illumination density of 20 foot candles is provided within a 5-foot radius of where explosive charges are being assembled, where explosive charges are being placed and where explosive materials are being attached to initiating devices.

Action. Pending final approval of the proposed changes in the standards, any violation of a requirement of 29 CFR 1910.109 which is inconsistent with regulations promulgated by the Department of Transportation Standard or Alcohol, Tobacco, and Firearms Division, Internal Revenue Service, as discussed in paragraph 3.b, shall be considered de minimis, provided that the employer is in compliance with the relevant regulations of these agencies.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD1-5.13
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 29 CFR 1910.106(h) (8) (iii); or, 29 CFR 1910.107(g) (3); or, 29 CFR 1910.108(f) (2)

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to give guidance on citing for the use of approved nonmetallic waste cans, where the OSHA standard requires a metal waste can.

Background.

a. There are several OSHA standards that require approved metal waste cans or metal waste cans. Presently, there are approved nonmetallic waste cans on the market.

b. It is not the intent of OSHA to discriminate or restrict employers from using new materials or products providing the products are approved or listed by nationally recognized testing laboratories for the particular use or exposure at the worksite.

Action. Where the employer is found using an approved nonmetallic waste can that is approved for its particular use or exposure at the worksite by a nationally recognized testing laboratory;

and, the nonmetallic waste can is in violation of an OSHA standard requiring a metal waste can, the violation shall be considered "de minimis."

NOTE: A nonmetallic container may be approved for the temporary storage indoors of Class A combustible waste free of grease, oil, solvents, or other flammable liquids, and not be approved for the temporary storage of oil or solvent soaked waste.

OSHA ISNTRUCTION
STD 1–5.14A
10/24/80

SUBJECT: 1910.106(d) (2) (i)

Purpose. This instruction permits the use of DOT specification, nonspecification polyethylene and nonregulated containers for storing COMBUSTIBLE and/or FLAMMABLE liquids at inside storage areas under certain conditions.

Action. OSHA Regional Administrators/Area Directors shall take action permitting the use of polyethylene containers for combustible and flammable liquids in accordance with referenced DOT exemptions and guidelines, as set forth in the following guidelines.

Guidelines. This instruction is based upon the need to resolve the inconsistencies presently found involving the DOT exemptions which permit the shipping of certain liquids in plastic containers. Under 29 CFR 1910.106 OSHA prohibits the use of DOT nonmetal containers. However, OSHA has determined that it is a de minimis violation of 1910.106(d) (2) (i) to store COMBUSTIBLE and FLAMMABLE liquids in polyethylene containers under certain conditions. It is thus permissible to use the DOT specification, nonspecification polyethylene and nonregulated containers for storing FLAMMABLE and COMBUSTIBLE liquids at inside storage areas under the following conditions:

1. The liquid within the container has a DOT exemption in effect for shipment in polyethylene containers and is identified as meeting the requirements of the DOT exemption.

2. The container storage area is provided with a fire detection system designed and installed to detect incipient stage fires and interconnected with an employee emergency alarm system, which will effectively alert employees when fire is detected.

3. In locations where employees are expected to perform fire fighting, the container storage area is provided with a fixed automatic fire suppression system designed and installed to control, if not extinguish, a fire involving the stored polyethylene containers.

4. Employees, except members on fire brigades, will be totally evacuated from the container storage area at the time of initial fire detection. Where fire brigades are provided, member employees will be trained in the specific methods for fighting fires involving polyethylene drums or containers, and in the recognition of hazards associated with fire fighting in such storage areas.

5. In general purpose warehouses, the container storage area is provided with diking, or curbing and drainage, which will contain the volume of stored liquids and the anticipated flow of fire extinguishing agent, and drain it to a remote impounding area having no employee exposure. Employee emergency exit routes may not intersect or pass over or under open drainage paths.

Background.

1. U.S. Department of Transportation exemptions permit the use of DOT specification and nonspecification polyethylene containers and nonregulated containers for transporting specifically identified Class B poisonous liquid and combustible and/or flammable liquids in motor vehicles, rail freight and cargo vessels. OSHA does not permit the storage of these liquids in DOT or non-DOT specification plastic containers. Therefore, a conflict exists and OSHA is trying to resolve it by accepting plastic containers under certain conditions.

2. OSHA has determined that it is a de minimis departure from 29 CFR 1910.106 to store All COMBUSTIBLE and FLAMMABLE liquids in plastic containers if the conditions set forth in the guidelines of this instruction are met. The terms combustible and flammable liquids are defined in the National Fire Protection Association Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code, NFPA No. 30, Chapter 1.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–5.15
11/9/79

SUBJECT: 1910.106(e) (2) (ii) (b).

Purpose. This instruction provides guidelines for citing alleged violations resulting from the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.106(e) (2) (ii) (b).

Action. OSHA Regional Administrators/Area Directors shall assure that the enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.106 (e) (2) (ii) (b) is consistent with the interpretation in the following requirements.

Requirements.

1. 29 CFR 1910.106(e) (2) (ii) (b) requires that the quantity of liquid that may be located outside of an inside storage room or storage cabinet in a building, or in any one fire area of a building shall not exceed:

a. 25 gallons of Class IA liquids in containers.

b. 120 gallons of Class IB, IC, or II or III liquids in containers.

c. 660 gallons of Class IB, IC, II or III liquids in a single portable tank.

2. Some Area Directors have interpreted these requirements to permit employers the choice of one of the three options. In other words, under this interpretation, if 25 gallons of Class IA liquids was stored in containers outside of an inside storage room or storage cabinet in a building no additional quantity of Class IB, IC, II, or III liquids would be allowed. This is contrary to the intended meaning of this standard.

3. The source document, NFPA No. 30–1969 Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code, requires the following:

> The quantity of liquid that may be located outside of an inside storage room or storage cabinet in a building shall not exceed that given in (a), (b) and (c). This means that any combination of the permitted quantities of various classes of flammable liquids is allowed so long as the maximum permitted quantity for any one of the three categories is not exceeded.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–5.16
10/16/80

SUBJECT: 1910.110(b) (14) (iv).

Purpose. This instruction provides guidance to insure appropriate enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.110(b) (14) (iv) in transferring LP-Gas from storage containers to fuel containers of industrial trucks (including lift trucks).

Action. OSHA Regional Administrators/Area Directors shall assure that the enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.110(b) (14) (iv) is consistent with the following guidelines:

Guidelines. Fixed liquid level gages shall not be vented to the atmosphere to assist in transferring LP-Gas from the storage container to the fuel container of industrial trucks (including lift trucks) except under the following conditions:

1. The vented gas from the fixed liquid level gage does not exceed the maximum flow provided from a No. 54 drill (referenced in latest NFPA 58).

2. The filling operation is performed outdoors, not less than 10 feet from the nearest masonry-walled building, or not less than 25 feet from the nearest building or other construction and, in any event, not less than 25 feet from any building opening.

3. The engine of the industrial truck is shut off, and the operator is off the truck during refueling. Industrial trucks which have portable LP-Gas containers may have their fuel containers removed prior to refueling. The conditions set forth in number 1, 2, and 4 of these guidelines shall also be followed.

4. Only trained and designated personnel shall refill or exchange LP-Gas containers.

Background. 29 CFR 1910.110(b) (14) (iv) requires that the venting of fuel to the atmosphere not be permitted except under certain conditions. These conditions are not clearly stated in the 29 CFR 1910 standards, but the intent of the standards supports the position of this instruction and provides equivalent protection for exposed employees.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1–5.17
12/26/80

SUBJECT: 1910.106(g) (1) (i) (a).

Purpose. This instruction emphasizes through compliance guidelines that 29 CFR 1910.106(g) (1) (i) (a) does not apply to, and, therefore, CANNOT BE USED TO PROHIBIT, outside aboveground tank storage of motor fuels not located at service station sites.

Action. OSHA Regional Administrators and Area Directors shall assure that CSHO's, when seeing an outside aboveground tank used for storing a motor fuel such as gasoline or diesel fuel, and dispensing it into automotive or marine fuel tanks, check as a minimum the following items to determine the appropriate standards:

1. Whether the motor fuel station is really an automotive or marine service station; i.e., a plant or facility in the ordinary, well established, popular connotation, as intended by the standard, of a "gasoline service station" which is usually located in populated centers and at highways or shores for public use. For private use, 29 CFR 1910.106(g) (2) permits it to be located in an industrial plant.

2. Whether the employer is complying with applicable OSHA requirements, particularly those in 29 CFR 1910.106(b) (referenced by 29 CFR 1910.106(e) (2) (ii) (c)), when the outside aboveground storage tank is not located at an automotive or marine service station and the use of the motor fuels is only incidental to the principal business.

Background. There appears to be confusion on the application intent of 29 CFR 1910.106(g) (1) (i) (a) in regards to what a service station is and whether outside aboveground tanks are prohibited for storing flammable and combustible liquids such as motor fuels.

1. 29 CFR 1910.106(g) applies to automotive and marine service stations. Such a service station is a plant or facility in the oridinary, well established, popular connotation, as intended by the standard, of a "gasoline service station" which is usually located in populated centers and at highways or shores for public use.

2. 29 CFR 1910.106(g) (2) permits an industry to have its own PRIVATE automotive or marine service station.

3. 29 CFR 1910.106(e) (2) (ii) (c) permits industrial users to store necessary large quantities of flammable and combustible liquids (where its use and handling is only incidental to the principal business) in outside aboveground tanks by complying with the applicable requirements of 29 CFR 1910.106(b).

4. 29 CFR 1910.106(g)(4)(ii)(c) contains an exemption which allows outside aboveground tanks at marine service stations where rock ledges or high water tables make underground tanks impractical.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1–6.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.132(a)

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to clarify the application of the personal protective equipment standard, 29 CFR 1910.132(a), to the cutting hazard found in the meat departments of retail food stores.

Background. A question has arisen as to the application of 29 CFR 1910.132(a) to the cutting hazard found in meat department operations in retail food markets. Retail meatcutters performing boning and breakdown work with knives are exposed to the hazard of cuts to their hands. The danger of cutting accidents associated with boning and breakdown is a result of the procedures used in this type of work and of the possibliity that a knife may slip, e.g., a knife may slip from a bone and into a meatcutters hand. In addition, retail meatcutters performing breakdown work on hanging meat are exposed to the hazard of cuts to the torso and legs. After conducting on-site visits and after consulting employer and employee representatives of the retail food industry, we have concluded that personal protective equipment, such as wire mesh gloves and wire mesh or leather aprons, are required to protect retail meatcutters from cutting hazards in the circumstances described below.

Action. The following instructions shall apply with respect to the issuance of citation for violations of 29 CFR 1910.132(a) in the retail meatcutting industry. Personal protective equipment such as wire mesh gloves or equivalent protection shall be provided, used, and properly maintained in retail food markets. Such personal protective equipment shall be worn by meatcutters performing boning or breakdown work with a knife. Retail meatcutters need not wear protective gloves where, while performing boning and breakdown work, they are exposed to job demands which would require frequent removal and replacement of the glove, such as job demands arising out of customer service requests. Mesh gloves may not be worn by meatcutters operating power equipment. Personal protective equipment such as wire mesh aprons or equivalent protection shall be provided, used, and properly maintained in retail food markets in order to protect retail meatcutters engaged in breaking down hanging meat with a knife. The employer is required to assure that the appropriate personal protective equipment is used by employees engaged in the above activities. Appropriate citations and penalties shall be issued by Compliance Safety and Health Officers when personal protective equipment is not used in accord with this directive. Regional Administrators are requested to advise the National Office of Compliance Programming of any enforcement issues which arise out of the implementation of this directive.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-6.2
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.132(a)

CANCELED

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-6.3
10/30/78

SUBJECT: Exemption From Wearing Hard Hats, Old Order Amish and Sikh Dharma Brotherhood

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to establish administrative policy with respect to the wearing of head protection by members of Old Order Amish and the Sikh Dharma Brotherhood

Background.

a. The Old Order Amish requested a determination of the applicability of OSHA requirements to the wearing of "hard hats" while working in carpentry trades and construction. The Old Order Amish dress is part of their religious practice. For example, the wide-brimmed black felt hat is worn by members of the Old Order Amish even when working, and it is considered a breach of Amish religious principles to wear a "hard hat."

b. Similarly, the Sikh Dharma Brotherhood, Western Hemisphere headquarters at 1620 Preuss Road, Los Angeles, California, petitioned for an exemption from the "hard hat" requirement on the basis of free exercise of religion. The Sikh Dharma Brotherhood has the following as a part of its creed:

> The man shall tie his hair in a Rishi knot on the crown of his head to be covered by a cotton cloth known as a turban whenever in public. He will be obliged to keep a dastar (small turban) when he is without his turban.

Action.

a. The Old Order Amish and the Sikh Dharma Brotherhood are both granted an exemption from wearing hard hats. The granting of the exemption is based on the provisions in the United States Constitution relating to the free exercise of religion and the policy expressed in Section 20(a) (5) of the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 respecting religious freedom.

b. Citations shall not be issued for failure of members of the Old Order Amish or the Sikh Dharma Brotherhood to wear hard hats. Employers of members of these groups shall not be required to provide protective head equipment for the use of such employees as long as they have informed the employers of their religious objection to the wearing of hard hats.

c. All other requirements of the Act and its standards shall be adhered to by affected employers and members of the Old Order Amish and the Sikh Dharma Brotherhood.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1–6.4
3/12/79

SUBJECT: 1910.1029 (h) (2) (i)-(iii).

Purpose. This instruction clarifies the OSHA inspection procedure for the protective clothing requirement in the Coke Oven Emissions Standard, 29 CFR 1910.1029 (h)(2)(i)-(iii).

Action. OSHA will interpret and enforce the standard as follows:

1. The clothing provision and cleaning service are obligations of the employer at no cost to the employee.

2. It is highly probable that clothing will need to be provided more often than weekly to maintain their effectiveness in a clean and dry condition on some job classifications (and perhaps on all job classifications on some batteries). Tar chasers, lidmen and benchworkers frequently contaminate their clothing in only one day.

3. As part of the inspection procedure for coke oven emissions, the Industrial Hygienist shall investigate closely the adequacy of the protective clothing and the laundry systems established by the companies. If professional judgement indicates that a health hazard exists based on visual observation of coal tar material on the clothing, violations shall be cited accordingly.

Background. Recently, we have received questions concerning the OSHA's inspection procedure for the protective clothing requirement in the Coke Oven Emissions Standard, 29 CFR 1910.1029 (h)(2)(i)-(iii). Paragraph (h)(2)(i) states "The employer shall provide the protective clothing required by paragraphs (h)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section in a clean and dry condition at least weekly." Additionally, paragraph (h)(2)(iii) states "The employer shall repair or replace the protective clothing and equipment as needed to maintain their effectiveness."

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1–7.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.141(d) (2) (i)

Purpose. To provide specific clarification on the applicability of 29 CFR 1910.141(d) (2) (i).

Background. On April 28, 1975, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) deleted the Standard Concerning Number of Lavatories for Industrial Employment specifically Table J–2 which sets forth a minimum number of lavoratories for industrial usage.

Clarification. 29 CFR 1910.141(c) (1) (vii) establishes the following requirement for laboratories:

> "For each three required toilet facilities at least one lavatory shall be located either in the toilet room or adjacent thereto. Where only one or two toilet facilities are provided, at least one lavatory so located shall be provided."

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1–7.2
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.145(d) (10).

Reference: American Society of Agricultural En-

best copy available

gineers Emblem for Identifying Slow-moving Vehicles, ASAE S276.3, June, 1976

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to delete the last sentence of paragraph 3.a., "There is a difference of 2 inches in the width of the emblem."

Background.

a. In June 1976, ASAE S276.2 (approved as ANSI B114.1-1971) was revised to ASAE S276.3. The performance and test requirement of the revised standard do improve the durability and fluorescence of the emblem. The major difference in the revised standard is that the addition of the manufacturer's name and address must be permanently marked on the face of the emblem, either lower center, or lower righthand corner. Markings may state that the embiem meets the requirements of ASAE S276.3. Total area used for markings will not exceed a 2-inch square. Trademarks, symbols, or other types of promotional communications are prohibited. Markings on portable emblems may be located on the reverse side of the backing material.

b. OSHA has received and forwarded to the Director of Safety Standards Programs multiple requests for the adoption of the revised standard.

Action. All new emblems will be manufactured to the revised standard. Therefore, emblems meeting the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.145(d) (10) will not be available. Until such time as the referenced standard is revised, emblems meeting the requirements of the revised standard, ASAE S276.3, will be considered de minimis and no citation shall be issued to employers utilizing them.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–8.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.151, 1915.58, 1916.58, 1917.58, 1918.96, 1926.50.

Purpose. To clarify requirements for the types of first aid kits which comply with subject sections.

Background.

a. All the above sections which specify first aid kits, except Section 1910.15, state "The first aid kit shall consist of a weatherproof container with individual sealed packages for each type of item." Requests for clarification have been received as to whether the "commercial or cabinet-type" kit is as acceptable as the "unit-type" kit.

b. "Unit-type kits" have all items in the first aid kit individually wrapped, sealed and packaged in comparable size packages. The "commercial or cabinet-type kit" does not require all items be individually wrapped and sealed, but only those which must be kept sterile. The item in the commercial or cabinet-type kit are not necessarily of uniform size.

Clarification. Items such as scissors, tweezers, tubes of ointment, or adhesive tape, need not be individually wrapped, sealed or disposed of after a single application. Individual packaging and sealing should be required only for those items which must be kept sterile in the first aid kit recommended by a consulting physician.

Action. Commercial or cabinet-type first aid kits, as well as unit-type first aid kits meet the requirements of compliance with regulations of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–8.2
3/8/82

Subject: 1910.151(c)

Purpose. This instruction provides guidelines regarding eye wash and body flushing facilities required for immediate emergency use in electric storage battery charging and maintenance areas.

Guidelines. OSHA field staff will evaluate the potential circumstances for employee exposure to electrolyte(s) in electric storage battery handling, charging and maintenance areas.

1. The safety or health compliance officer shall document the following observations in the case file:

a. Employee use of personal protective equipment.

b. Type and chemical concentration of electrolyte(s).

c. Special guards and/or precautions intended to provide for employee protection from electrolyte exposure.

d. Based upon employee job functions, record the extent and type of probable employee exposure to electrolyte(s).

e. Note the availability and location of eye wash and body flushing equipment/facilities. (An arrangement, which includes a hose equipped with a proper face and body wash nozzle, shall also be noted.)

2. The compliance officer and Area Director shall evaluate the data documented in paragraph 1 of the guidelines. When potential employee exposure to hazardous storage battery electrolyte(s) exists, the circumstances and extent of exposure shall determine the application of the following alternatives:

a. The use of effective personal protective equipment in combination with an eye wash and body flushing station in near proximity to the *work area(s)*, shall be deemed to provide adequate minimum protection for employees.

b. In areas where the extent of possible exposure to electrolyte is small, (i.e., such as auto garages, service stations and in certain industrial and construction situations), a specially designated pressure controlled and identified water hose equipped with a proper face and body wash nozzle which will provide copious amounts of low velocity potable water, or an appropriate portable eye wash device containing not less than one gallon of potable water which is readily available and mounted for use, is considered to provide minimum employee protection when proper personal protective equipment is used.

c. In addition to emergency eye and/or face wash procedures, the employer shall ensure that adequate provisions have been established for the emergency care of employees exposed to eye or face contact with electrolytes.

d. At construction sites and in commercial and manufacturing facilities at locations where powered industrial trucks are parked for overnight storage and routine battery recharging *only*, no need for emergency facilities exists unless potential exposure to electrolyte is substantiated. Where exposure is possible (i.e., servicing batteries) the provisions of paragraphs 2.b. and 2.e. of the paragraph should be evaluated for applicability.

e. At construction sites and in commercial manufacturing facilities where batteries (such as industrial truck batteries) are *serviced* and *handled*, proper plumbed eye wash and body drenching equipment shall be available immediately adjacent to the work station(s) and within the work area regardless of the personal protective equipment required and used.

3. Where employee exposure to hazardous electric storage battery electrolyte(s) exists and minimum protection measures are not provided, citations shall be issued as appropriate for violations of:

a. 29 CFR 1910.151(b) or 29 CFR 1926.50(c), a person or persons adequately trained to render first aid shall be readily available in the absence of an infirmary, clinic, or hospital in near proximity to the workplace which is used for the treatment of all injured employees.

b. 29 CFR 1910.151(c) and as adopted by 29 CFR 1926.51, where the eyes or body of any person may be exposed to injurious corrosive materials, suitable facilities for quick drenching or flushing of the eyes and body shall be provided within the work area for immediate emergency use.

c. 29 CFR 1910.132(a) or 29 CFR 1926.28(a), personal protective equipment for eyes, face, head, and extremities, protective clothing and protective shields and barriers, shall be provided, used and maintained in a sanitary and reliable condition wherever it is necessary by reason of chemical hazards encountered in a manner capable of causing injury or impairment in the function of any part of the body through absorption, inhalation or physical contact.

Background. 29 CFR 1910.151(c), Medical Services and First Aid, needs clarification regarding its applicability to the hazards of electric storage battery charging areas and the potential exposure of employees to electrolyte(s). There is a clear need to identify the extent and suitability of minimum acceptable eye wash and body quick drenching facilities which are available to potentially exposed employees.

1. The extent of potential employee exposure varies with workplace situations such as:

a. Employee functions.

b. Type of electrolyte(s) and concentration.

c. Type and size of batteries.

d. Facility layout.

e. Personal protective equipment used.

2. The need for eye wash and body quick drenching equipment varies with the factors noted in paragraph 1 of this paragraph. Therefore, judicious enforcement of the standard should provide for an evaluation of the contributing factors relative to the potential hazardous exposure, and should permit appropriate minimum assurances for adequate first aid and subsequent treatment.

3. Various forms of eye wash equipment are available today. Many are of the portable or self contained wall mounted type which are limited in the quantity of water available for eye wash purposes, and usually do not provide for body drenching. This equipment may be used for compliance with 29 CFR 1910.151(c) only when it is not economically feasible to provide plumbed equipment and/or where the potential employee exposure to electrolyte(s) is determined to be slight.

4. Eye wash equipment should provide copious low velocity flow of potable water at a suitable temperature, generally between 60°F and 105°F.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–9.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.157. Hydrostatic Testing of Compressed Gas Cylinders

Concerning the above subject, the Standards Office is proposing a change to 29 CFR 1910.157.

The proposed revision including 1910.157(d) (4) (x) does not reference Department of Transportation regulations 49 CFR parts 171–190. Wording instead will reflect the current NFPA-10 code, specifically NFPA 10–75 par 5.1 which permits testing by "persons having a practical knowledge of pressure testing procedures and safeguards and having available testing equipment facilities".

In view of the proposed update of 29 CFR 1910.157 to current practice this paragraph should be considered as "De Minimis", as employee safety does not appear to be impaired.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–9.2
8/5/81

SUBJECT: 1910.157(f) (2), (f) (2) (i) and (f) (4).

Purpose. This instruction provides specified exceptions for fire extinguisher repair and/or subsequent hydrostatic test which do not meet the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.157(f) (2), (f) (2) (i) and (f) (4) and are performed under conditions imposed by the manufacturer.

Action. Regional Administrators/Area Directors shall take action to ensure that 29 CFR 1910.157(f) (2), (f) (2) (i) and (f) (4) are enforced in accordance with the following guidelines.

Guidelines. Repairs will be permitted on dry chemical, cartridge type extinguisher shells constructed of mild steel when such repairs are by silver brazing and are performed in conformance with the pertinent requirements of the extinguishers' manufacturer.

1. Repairs shall only be performed by trained persons deemed competent and approved by the employer.

2. The employer shall have available and provide the Compliance Officer the employer's written designation of the approved competent person and the current manufacturer's instructions which provide for repairs, tests and/or mainte-

nance of any fire extinguishers covered by this instruction.

3. After completion of allowable repairs, the unit shall be hydrostatically tested in accordance with the manufacturers written test instructions.

4. **Allowable Repairs and Hydrostatic Test Requirements.** The following applicable repairs and test requirements are considered within the scope of 29 CFR 1910.157 (f) (2), (f) (2) (i) and (f) (4):

a. Hand Portable Mild Steel, Dry Chemical Cartridge Operated Extinguishers.

1. Repairs shall be by means of silver brazing only.

2. Silver brazing is restricted to extinguisher components such as the carrying handle lug, nozzle holster nuts, hanger attachment, visual seal attachment, etc., which are specifically within the manufacturer's limitations.

3. Silver brazing shall not be allowed where the mild steel shell is damaged as by tearing, etc., of the parent metal from the shell.

b. Wheeled Extinguishers.

1. Welding is restricted to such elements of the wheeled conveyance as the handle, axle shroud, nitrogen cylinder stand, etc., which are specifically within the manufacturer's limitations and do not affect the safety factor.

2. Welding shall not be allowed where the mild steel shell is damaged, as by the tearing, etc., of the parent metal from the shell.

3. Hydrostatic testing as required in 29 CFR 1910.157 (f) (1), (f) (2) and (f) (4) shall be conducted after allowable repairs are made directly to the pressure vessel.

NOTE: The manufacturer's instructions for allowable repairs and hydrostatic testing are not exempted from other applicable OSHA standards unless by a particular directive, variance or other official notification.

Background. Presently, Subpart L, 29 CFR 1910.157 (f) (2) (i), does not provide for exceptions when fire extinguishers have been repaired by soldering, welding, brazing or use of patching components.

1. The source for the development of the Subpart L standards included NFPA 10–1970 and coordination with the NFPA during the recent changes to NFPA 10. The provisions of NFPA 10–1978, 5–1.3 (examination of cylinder condition) includes a note which states "For welding or brazing on mild steel shells, consult the manufacturer of the extinguisher". These recent changes reflect the intent of Appendix B to Subpart L which contains a cross reference listing of current national consensus standards. These standards contain information and guidelines which are considered acceptable in complying with requirements in the specific sections of Subpart L.

2. As indicated by the manufacturers instructions, specified repairs can be made and subsequent hazards reduced by following the procedures, limitations, standards and quality assurance which ensure safety.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–9.3
12/12/81

Subject: 1910.156(e)(3)(ii)

Purpose. This instruction recognizes a variation to the washing cycle requirements referenced in 29 CFR 1910.156(e)(3)(ii).

Guidelines. Variations from the NFPA 1971 criteria pertaining to color fastness, shrinkage, and water absorption shall be noted as a de minimis violation only when fire-resistive coats are washed according to manufacturers' instructions. This technical violation does not reduce the wearer's safety.

Background. A provision of the OSHA fire brigade standard (1910.156(e)(3)(ii)) requires that the performance, construction, and testing of fire-resistive coats be at least equivalent to the requirements of the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) standard NFPA 1971–1975, "Protective Clothing for Structural Fire Fighting" with certain permissible variations from those requirements.

1. Table 3–4.1.1 of NFPA 1971 specifies criteria for tearing-strength, color fastness, shrinkage, water absorption, and flame resistance. Paragraph 3–4.1.1 of NFPA 1971 specifies that these criteria are also applicable after five cycles of laundering and drying in accordance with American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists (AATCC) Method 96–Test–IV–E.

2. The commercial laundering and drying cycle specified in AATCC Method 96–Test–IV–E involves mechanical agitation of the materials in a water environment exposure of 203°–212°F. This is a severe test method which does not reflect actual washing of fire-resistive coats by fire fighters following manufacturers' instructions. The washing of fire-resistive coats by fire fighters when following manufacturers' instructions consists of spreading the garment out on the engine room floor (or other flat surface) and scrubbing the garment using warm water, mild detergent, and soft brush. This method of washing fire-resistive coats is preferred since it could enhance the longevity of the coats as compared to commercial laundering and drying.

3. When fire retardant (FR) cotton coats are washed according to AATCC Method 96–IV–E and the attributes of color fastness, shrinkage, and water absorption are evaluated, either no change would be expected, or the values vary by a small degree from those specified in NFPA 1971. These minor variations from the criteria specified in NFPA 1971 would not jeopardize the wearer's safety. However, if FR cotton coats are washed using manufacturers' instructions (which is the actual method of washing used by fire fighters), the protective integrity of the garments is maintained in accordance with the criteria specified in NFPA 1971.

OSHA INSTRUCTIONS

STD 1–10.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.166(c) (3) (i) (a)

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to define the word "rejected" as used in the subject standard.

Background. Several requests have been made regarding the meaning of the word "rejected" as used in 29 CFR 1910.166(c) (3) (i) (a), which states:

> A cylinder shall be rejected when the tare weight is less than 95 percent of the original tare weight marked on the cylinder. When determining tare weight be sure that the cylinder is empty.

Action.

a. The word "rejected" as used in 29 CFR 1910.166(c) (3) (i) (a) means that a cylinder has to be removed from service. However, the cylinder can be requalified by passing the hydrostatic retest and by passing all of the other requirements for exterior inspection under 29 CFR 1910.166 (c) (3).

b. This interpretation is not intended to be an interpretation of any other Federal agency's regulations.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1–10.2
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.169(a) (2) (i) and (b) (2)

Purpose. To provide guidelines for issuance of citations for violation of drain requirements for air receivers.

Background.

a. An inquiry has been received regarding Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.169(b) (2) which requires a bottom drain at the lowest point of every air receiver. It states, relevantly, that:

> A drain pipe and valve shall be installed at the lowest point of every air receiver to provide for the removal of accumulated oil and water.

b. This inquiry notes the problem of an apparent inconsistency with 29 CFR 1910.169(a) (2) (i) which requires either a bottom drain or, alternatively, a side drain; that is, a pipe extending inward from any location to within ¼ inch of the lowest point, in accordance with the

1968 edition of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers (A.S.M.E.) Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII. Specifically, it requires that:

> All new air receivers installed after the effective date of these regulations shall be constructed in accordance with the 1968 edition of the A.S.M.E. Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII.

c. This problem arises only with regard to air receivers covered by Paragraph U-1 Scope, A.S.M.E. Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, 1968, which excludes vessels having an internal or external operating pressure not exceeding 15 psi and vessels having an inside diameter not exceeding 6 inches, and 29 CFR 1910.169(a) (1), which specifies the applicability of the standard.

d. This problem also arises only with regard to air receivers subject to corrosion since, apparently, 29 CFR 1910.169(b) (2)originally was intended to apply only to an air receiver subject to

corrosion. See Rule 7.3 of the source standard for 29 CFR 1910.169(b) (2), ANSI B-19, 1938, Safety Code for Compressed Air Machinery. Note that the 1968 edition of the A.S.M.E. Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, paragraph UG-25(e) limits the drain construction requirements to pressure vessels subject to corrosion.

Action.

a. It is apparent that, despite the limited requirement of 29 CFR 1910.169(b) (2) regarding a "lowest point" drain, 29 CFR 1910.169(a) (2) (i) provides for an alternative to this; namely, a side drain. Thus, where side drains are present on air receivers, citations for violation of the (b) (2) requirement are not appropriate, even if the air receiver was constructed prior to April 28, 1971, since this is allowed for in 29 CFR 1910.169(a) (2) (i). (Note, however, that (b) (2) may be appropriately cited where there are violations of the other requirement that:

> The drain valve on the air receiver shall be opened and the receiver completely drained frequently and at such intervals as to prevent the accumulation of excessive amounts of liquid in the receiver.)

b. A citation for violation of 29 CFR 1910.169(a) (2) (i) is appropriate where the air receiver has no bottom or side drain and is subject to corrosion and is covered by Paragraphs U-1 Scope and 29 CFR 1910.169(a) (1) Application.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-11.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.178(a) (3) and 1910.178(a) (7).

Purpose. This instruction clarifies and explains the intent of the subject standards.

Background. The question as to what industrial trucks require approval has caused some confusion in various areas.

Action. As indicated in 1910.178(c) (2), an industrial truck is required to be approved for use within a hazardous location or atmosphere. 1910.178(a) (7) defines approved to mean listed as approved by at least one of the following nationally recognized testing laboratories: Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., Factory Mutual Engineering Corp., for either one or all eleven designations indicated in 1910.178(b).

a. Industrial trucks specified under Table N-1, are the minimum type required but industrial trucks having greater safeguards may be used if desired.

b. Industrial trucks when used in other than hazardous locations are not required to be approved nor bear a label of approval under 1910.178(a) (3).

Examples.

a. When an industrial truck is engaged in moving bales of shreded paper, a highly combustible material, minimum safeguards against fire hazard would be necessary.

b. When an industrial truck is engaged in moving steel or other metal products in an open or indoor storage area, the fire hazard would be nonexistent, the minimal safeguards against fire hazard can be desirable but not mandatory.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-11.2B
8/8/83

SUBJECT: WORK PLATFORMS SUSPENDED FROM LATTICE OR HYDRAULIC CRANE BOOMS

Purpose. This instruction clarifies 29 CFR 1926.550(b)(2) and the ANSI referenced requirement that the operator shall not hoist, lower, swing or travel the crane while anyone is on the load, or hook, as related to the use of working platforms suspended from cranes. Historically, OSHA has not not cited in situations where there is no less hazardous means of transporting employees in unique work situations.

Action. OSHA Regional Administrators and Area Directors shall ensure that cranes are used to hoist and suspend employees on a working platform only as permitted in the guidelines of this instruction.

Guidelines. Cranes may be used to hoist and suspend employees on a work platform or to provide access and egress in unique work situations when such action results in the least hazardous exposure to employees. Employers using cranes to hoist or suspend employees on a work platform in situations where the use of other equipment designed for the purpose is feasible or is specified by the standards will be cited when appropriate.

1. **Confirmation.** CSHO's encountering a situation in which they believe there is no alternative to employees working from a platform suspended from a crane shall contact their Area Director or Supervisor for confirmation of the operation.

2. **Less Hazardous Alternative.** In unique work situations where there is no less hazardous alternative, and under controlled conditions, it is permissable to use cranes to provide access and egress for employees. However, the employer must develop and produce evidence that other, less hazardous methods of access and egress are not available or practical.

a. **Documentation.** The employer shall retain at the jobsite and produce, when requested, documentation such as lift capacity information verifying that the requirements in this instruction have been met.

b. **Crane Requirements.** For the proper design, inspection, construction, testing, maintenance, and operation of crawler, locomotive and truck cranes, CSHO's shall refer to the applicable standards, 29 CFR 1926.550, and ANSI B30.5–1968. Additional controlled conditions to meet these requirements include the following:

(1) The rated capacity of the crane at the radius at which the lift will be made shall be divided by four (4) and this limit shall not be exceeded.

(2) A full-cycle operational test lift shall be made prior to lifting of employees. The platform shall carry twice the intended load during the test lift.

(3) Prelift plans which show boom angle and maximum intended load shall be prepared for each group of lifts.

(4) All lifts shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's lifting recommendations.

(5) A firm footing, uniformly level within 1 percent, (1 foot in 100 feet) shall be provided for cranes. Crane outriggers shall be appropriately utilized when hoisting employees.

(6) The stability of the footing shall be verified during the full-cycle operational test.

(7) The load line on which the platform is suspended will have control load lowering. The free fall option shall not be used with suspended work platforms.

c. **Lifting Bridle Requirements.** Lifting bridles on working platforms suspended from cranes shall consist of four legs so attached that the stability of the platform is ensured. The lifting bridle on working platforms suspended from cranes shall be secured by a shackle or attached by a closed hook which cannot open due to load position in the hook.

d. **Platform Requirements.** The platform and its components must be capable of supporting, without failure, at least four times the maximum intended load. The platform shall be enclosed with a guardrail system including a top guardrail of approximately 42 inches, a midrail and a toeboard. The guardrail system shall withstand a load of at least 200 pounds applied in any direction.

(1) The number of employees to be hoisted shall be kept to a minimum and in no case shall the number exceed 4.

(2) Employees using the platform shall be considered as weighing 250 pounds each.

(3) The platform shall not be used during high winds, electrical storms snow or other adverse weather conditions which could endanger employees on the platform.

e. **Communication Requirements.** The standard hand signals to the operator shall be in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.550(a)(4), unless voice communication equipment (telephone, radio, or equivalent) is utilized. Signals shall be visible or audible to the operator at all times.

3. **Citations.** OSHA Compliance officers will cite 29 CFR 1926.550(b)(2) if the employer fails to comply with the guidelines of this instruction.

Background. OSHA has issued three program directives which provided guidelines for the use of working platforms suspended from cranes. Those guidelines were incorporated into the instruction dated October 1, 1981. Since the issuance of that instruction, OSHA has determined that additional safety requirements are necessary for the further protection of employees working on platforms suspended from cranes. This instruction includes these additional requirements.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-11.3
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.178(m) (6).

Purpose. The purpose of this instruction is to give guidelines on citing 29 CFR 1910.178(m) (6) Powered Industrial Trucks; Truck Operations, when trucks use a door opening device for opening or closing railroad freight car doors.

Background

a. A proposed amendment to 29 CFR 1910.178(m) (6) allowing powered industrial trucks to open and close freight car doors by certain practices was published in the Federal Register, April 23, 1974. Current national concensus

standards allow certain powered industrial trucks equipped with a specifically designed device to open and close railroad freight car doors.

b. The proposal and national concensus standards are in limited conflict with the subject standard, which states in part, that trucks shall not be used for opening or closing freight doors.

Action. When the movement of a powered industrial truck is used to open or close railroad freight car doors, and the truck is using an attached device specifically designed to open and close car doors, the violation of that part of 29 CFR 1910.178 (m) (6) shall be considered "de minimis," when the following requirements have been met:

a. The design of the door opening device shall require the force applied by the device to the door to be in a direction parallel with the door travel.

b. The operator is trained in the use of the door opening device and keeps the operation in full view.

c. Employees, other than the operator, stand clear while the door is being moved.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1-11.4
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.178(g)(2).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to clarify the subject standard as it applies to "battery charging" areas where power industrial truck batteries are charged only.

Background.

a. A representative from industry wrote and personally visited the National Office to obtain clarification of 29 CFR 1910.178(g) (2) as it applies to industrial truck "battery charging" stations not related to changing and charging as described in the standard.

b. The visit was initiated because a Compliance Safety and Health Officer (CSHO), while conducting an inspection of a large warehouse under construction, advised the employer that when he (the CSHO) returns to inspect the facility at a future date, all industrial truck charging stations throughout the facility would have to be equipped in the manner described in 29 CFR 1910. 178(g) (2).

Action. "Battery charging" areas where power industrial truck batteries are charged only—no maintenance is performed, batteries are not removed from the trucks and no electrolyte is present in the area—are not subject to the requirement of 29 CFR 1910.178(g) (2). The charging areas shall be in compliance with 29 CFR 1910.178(g) (1), (8), (9), (10), (11), and (12). Personal protective equipment shall be used when and where required.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1-11.5
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.178(k) (1) and 1910.178(m)(7)

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to insure judicious enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.178 (k) (1) and 1910.178 (m) (7).

Background.

a. The Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission rendered a decision that the Department of Labor is preempted in the enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.178(k) (1) by the Department of Transportation (DOT) regulation 49 CFR 392.20, because the latter covers essentially the same working conditions. The Commission held that the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) was preempted because 49 CFR 392.20 represented a sufficient "exercise" of DOT regulatory powers under Section 4 (b) (1) of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

b. This decision also affects the enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.178 (m) (7). The first part of that standard, "Brake shall be set and wheel blocks shall be in place to prevent movement of trucks, trailers or railroad cars while loading or unloading. Fixed jacks may be necessary to support a semitrailer during loading or unloading when the trailer is not coupled to a tractor." is similar in scope to 29 CFR 1910.178(k) (1).

Accordingly, enforcement of that portion of the standard as it applies to trucks and trailers is preempted by 49 CFR 392.20. Moreover the latter part of the standard requiring employers to check the flooring of trucks and trailers for breaks and weaknesses applies to the same working conditions as those covered by 49 CFR 393.94. Therefore, that part of the standard should not be enforced as it applies to trucks and trailers.

c. DOT safety authority under the Motor Carrier Act extends only to regulation of motor carriers engaged in interstate commerce. Under DOT regulation 49 CFR 392.20 and 49 CFR 393.84, DOT jurisdiction does not extend to vehicles "used wholly within a municipality or the commercial zone thereof," as defined by the Interstate Commerce Commission (ICC), unless they are transporting a single hazardous item weighing over 2,500 pounds or bulk hazardous items weighing over 5,000 pounds." (See 49 CFR 309.16, and 392.1(c).)

d. See also 39 CFR 1048 for ICC definition of commercial zones. In short, DOT jurisdiction extends to all vehicles which are not used exclusively in intracity operations or which are used in intracity operations to carry a single hazardous item weighing over 5,000 pounds.

Action. Accordingly, in light of DOT exercise of authority, we will cite or enforce only under 1910.178(m) (7) and 1910.178(k) (1) in consonance with the preceding guidelines.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-11.6A
2/19/79

SUBJECT: 1910.178 (c) (2) (vii) and Table N-1, 29 CFR 1910.178 (c) (2)

Purpose. This instruction resolves a disparity between the context of 29 CFR 1910.178(c) (2) (vii) and Table N-1, Summary Table on Use of Industrial Trucks In Various Locations, 29 CFR 1910.178(c) (2)

Action. For compliance purposes, OSHA permits the use of truck types referenced in 29 CFR 1910.178 (c) (1), with certain limitations, as specified in the following paragraphs:

1. Truck types indicated in 29 CFR 1910.178(c) (2) (vii) as DY, EE and EX are allowed in all Class II, Division 2, locations.

2. Truck types designated as DS, ES, GS or LPS may be used in the following Class II, Division 2 locations, rooms and areas containing only closed spouting and conveyors, closed bins or hoppers, or machines and equipment from which appreciable quantities of dust would escape only under abnormal operating conditions; rooms or areas into which explosive or ignitable concentrations of suspended dust might be communicated only under abnormal operation conditions; rooms or areas where the formation of explosive or ignitable concentrations of suspended dust is prevented by the operation of effective dust control equipment; warehouses and shipping rooms where dust producing materials are stored or handled only in bags or containers and other similar locations.

Background. In NFPA No. 505-1969, the source standard for 29 CFR 1910.178(b), (c) and (d), paragraphs 206b and 209a state that approved power-operated trucks designated as DS, ES, GS or LPS may be used in Class II, Division 2, hazardous locations, if permitted by the authority having jurisdiction. These acronyms are earmarked by asterisks in NFPA Table 1 to indicate "Permitted with approval of the authority having jurisdiction." Although OSHA, by 29 CFR 1910.178(c) (2) (vii), chose not to permit these designated industrial trucks for use in all Class II, Division 2, locations, their acronyms, nevertheless, were inadvertently left in the Table when the NFPA Table 1 became OSHA Table N-1. Moreover, the first sentence of 29 CFR 1910.178(c) (2) states: "For specific areas of use see Table N-1 which tabulates the information contained in this section." This statement is obviously inconsistent with the provisions of 29 CFR 1910.178(c) (2) (vii).

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-11.7
8/5/81

Subject: 1910.178(k)(1) and (m)(7)

Purpose. This instruction allows the use of a mechanical means which secures trucks or trailers to a loading dock in situations in which they provide the equivalent protection of wheel chocks.

Reference. OSHA Instruction STD 1-11.5, January 31, 1978, Powered Industrial Trucks, Chocks, and Blocks.

Guidelines. Under the following conditions, failure to use wheel chocks in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.178(k)(1) and (m)(7) will be deemed to be de minimis violations and will not be cited:

1. A positive mechanical means to secure trucks or trailers to a loading dock is allowed provided the system is installed and used in a manner that effectively prevents movement of trucks and trailers during loading, unloading and boarding by handtrucks and powered industrial trucks.

2. All of the mechanical equipment shall be installed, maintained and used as recommended by the manufacturer.

3. Any damaged mechanical equipment will be removed from service immediately.

Background.

1. The current OSHA standards in 29 CFR 1910.178(k)(1) and (m)(7) only allow the use of wheel chocks under the rear wheels to prevent the trucks from moving while loading and unloading.

2. The U.S. Department of Transportation has a mandatory regulation (49 CFR 393.86) that all truck trailers be equipped with a rear end protection device mounted at the rear to prevent cars from being wedged underneath the back of a trailer during a collision. A mechanical fastening device may be bolted to the loading dock to secure the truck or trailer rear end protection device and prevent any separation from the dock.

3. OSHA Instruction CPL 2.11A implements guidelines on de minimis violations which have no direct or immediate relationship to safety and health. CSHO's shall recognize minor technical deviations which have no direct or immediate relationship to safety and health as de minimis violations.

4. OSHA authority to regulate motor carriers in this regard is delineated in OSHA Instruction STD 1-11.5, Powered Industrial Trucks, Chocks, and Blocks.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.212(a)(5).

Purpose. To clarify the applicability of 1910.212(a)(5) and to direct answers to inquiries.

Background. This paragraph establishes the guarding requirements for fans within 7 feet of floor or working level. Numerous requests for clarification have been received, principally from employers using floor fans.

Interpretation. The subject paragraph means that all fans within 7 feet of the floor or working level must be guarded. The guard must not have openings greater than one-half inch in width. The use of concentric rings with spacing between them not exceeding a one-half inch are acceptable provided that sufficient radial spokes and firm mountings are used to make the guard rigid enough to prevent it from being pushed into the fan blade during normal use. The use of nylon mesh or similar materials with holes not exceeding one-half inch, to modify a substandard guard on an existing fan is acceptable, provided the combination of the two provides adequate protection so that the mesh cannot be pushed into the fan blade during normal use.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.2
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.217(a)(1).

CANCELED

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.3
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.217(a)

CANCELED

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.4
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.213(h)(5)

Purpose. To provide guidance in the enforcement of the subject provision. (Caution Labeling of Radial Saws.)

Background. The intent of the standard is to insure that ripping and ploughing performed on radial saws is done against the direction of saw blade rotation. The provision further states that "a permanent label ... shall be affixed to the rear of the guard ..., reading as follows:

"Danger: Do Not Rip or Plough From This End."

It has been pointed out to us by employers and manufacturers that, in many cases, to meet the intent of the standard, the caution label should be located on the front of the guard. Further, strict adherence to the provision could result in a danger to employees. The National Office is taking steps to clarify the standard. In order to avoid confusion in the meantime, the following interpretation should be made known as widely as possible.

Interpretation. The intent of 29 CFR 1910.213(h)(5) must at all times prevail. The caution label must be located at the end of the guard at which the blade teeth exit the upper guard during the operation of the saw. Thus, the requirement concerning the location of the label, in Section 1910.213(h)(5), shall be deemed violated when (1) the label is omitted; or (2) it is placed anywhere but the end of the guard at which the blade teeth exit the upper guard during the operation of the saw.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.5
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.212(a)(3)(ii).

Purpose. To provide guidance on the acceptable methods for guarding meat cutting saws.

Background.

a. The reference standard requires point of operation guarding on machines which expose an employee to injury. Because there is no standard available which gives the specific details for guard requirements for meat saws, there has resulted much confusion as to what is acceptable guarding.

b. It is understood that the appropriate organizations in the meat industry are presently developing standards. Until these are available, the following policy shall be followed.

Interpretation. A circular meat cutting saw shall be guarded in one of the following ways:

a. A suspended counter balanced circular meat cutting saw that requires two-handed operation shall be deemed adequately guarded, if provided with a guard that covers at least 25 degrees of the circumference of the blade and it conforms to the requirements in d below.

b. A suspended counter balanced circular meat cutting saw that requires only one-handed operation shall be deemed adequately guarded, if provided with a guard that covers at least 90 degrees of the circumference of the blade and it conforms to the requirements in d below.

c. A nonsuspended circular meat saw, either one hand or two-handed operation, shall be deemed adequately guarded if provided with a guard that covers at least 120 degrees of the circumference of the blade and it conforms with the requirements in d below.

d. All circular meat cutting saws shall conform to the following:

(1) A "dead man" control(s) shall be required.

(2) The guard protecting the operator from contact with the blade shall be located between the operator and the blade.

(3) The maximum number of degrees of circumferential guarding of the blade shall be provided based on specific applications in meat cutting operations.

(4) A brake that automatically activates upon release of the operating control(s) is recommended.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1-12.6
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.218

Purpose. To clarify appropriate enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.218, Forging Machines.

Background. Several situations have arisen where alleged violations of hot forging operations have been cited under 29 CFR 1910.212 and Section 5(a)(1) of the Act. The citations were inappropriate in that there were specific standards to cover the operations in 29 CFR 1910.218.

Clarification. Employees working with machines used in the forming of hot metal including hot trimming presses, forging hammers, hot forging presses, upsetters, hot bending and hot metal presses, etc., use tongs of a sufficient length to avoid heat as well as the ram. Therefore, the standards contained in 29 CFR 1910.218 shall be applicable.

Action. All citations which have been issued for a violation of 29 CFR 1910.212, Point of Operation Guarding, or 5(a)(1) of the Act involving the above situations shall be withdrawn. It is further advised that all penalties which have been collected as a result of such citations be returned to the employer involved.

A citation for violations of 29 CFR 1910.212 or 5(a)(1) would be appropriate only when a condition exists that could be recognized as a hazard and conditions are other than normal forging machine operations covered by 29 CFR 1910.218.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1-12.7
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.217 and 1910.212.

Purpose. To provide specific clarifications on the applicability of 29 CFR 1910.217 and 29 CFR 1910.212 to platen presses.

Background. In the 1.1 Scope section of ANSI-B11.1-1971, Safety Requirements for Construction, Care and Use of Mechanical Power Presses the standard applies only to those mechancially powered machines that shear, punch, form or assemble metal or other material by means of tools or dies *attached to slides*.

Clarification. The Office of Standards Development is currently promulgating a change to 29 CFR 1910.217(a)(5) that will add platen presses to the list of excluded machines. Therefore, Section 29 CFR 1910.212 shall apply to point of operation guarding for platen presses.

OSHA INSTRUCTION

STD 1-12.8
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.215(a)(4).

Purpose. To provide clarification on the acceptable methods for the use of work rests on abrasive wheel machinery.

Background.

a. There have been several variance requests and inquiries received concerning the use of work rests on offhand grinding machines. A problem exists when, due to the size, shape, weight and finishing areas of workpieces, interferences with the work rest or contacts with the wheel below the horizontal plane of the spindle are unavoidable.

b. The stated purpose of a work rest, properly adjusted to within one-eighth inch of the wheel, is to prevent the workpiece from being jammed thereby causing wheel breakage which could result in injury to the operator. In those instances, where due to the size of the workpiece, jamming is precluded, the enclosure (side guard) itself may provide protection.

c. The need for stabilizing the workpieces when grinding tools such as bits, chisels, drill bits, etc., is clear.

Action. In those instances where jamming or contact with a grinding wheel is precluded by the size of the workpiece, a side guard offers sufficient protection to the operator. Accordingly, in such situations, the failure to have a work rest shall be cited as de minimis. It is not the intent of this clarification to minimize the use of work rests when required to protect the operator of a wheel grinder from injury.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.9
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.212.

Purpose. To clarify the intent of 29 CFR 1910.212 as applied to chain saws, particularly blade guards for chain saws.

Background. Inquiries have been made as to the application of 29 CFR 1910.212 to chain saws. The source standard for 1910.212 is Federal standard 41 CFR 50-204.5. The intent is that Part 50-204.5, machine guarding, shall apply to all machines. This is specifically brought out in 50-204.5(c)(4) which lists some of the machines, including portable power tools, that usually require point of operation guarding. Since no OSHA standard other than 1910.212 applies to the guarding of chain saws, the general industry standard 29 CFR 1910.212 shall apply according to 29 CFR 1910.5.

Action.

a. When the use of a chain saw blade guard would prevent an employee from performing the particular work function assigned or would offer a more serious hazard than that associated with an unguarded chain saw blade, a chain saw blade guard would not be required. The omission of a chain saw blade guard under these conditions would not be a violation of 29 CFR 1910.212(a)(3)(ii).

b. In intended uses when it would be feasible to have the chain saw blade guarded (a one direction movement of the saw with no other obstructions to the guard), a chain saw blade guard would be required.

c. This interpretation does not exempt the use of personal protective equipment or the application of other relevant standards.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.10
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.212(a)(1).

Purpose. To assure uniformity in the application of the subject standard to point of operation guarding on food waste disposal equipment.

Background. Several inquiries have been made regarding the acceptability of a trimboard as a guard on food waste disposal equipment such as the "Garb-el" or equipment of similar configuration and operational characteristics. The guard in question was inspected and tested. It was determined that the worm screw conveyor operates at approximately 2.4 RPM to 3.5 RPM, depending upon the horse power. It was also determined the hopper is open and free with no narrow throat.

Clarification. Based on actual operation, it was determined that a trimboard properly designed and mounted, provides the nip point protection and meets the intent of the standard.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.11
10/30/78

SUBJECT: Subpart O, 29 CFR 1910—Interim Instructions Concerning Specifications of Materials Used for Machine Guarding and Anchoring of Equipment

Purpose. This program directive provides guidance to field personnel when encountering situations where materials used for machine guarding and methods of anchoring fixed machinery are not in accord with but are at least as effective as or better than those required in the existing standards.

Background.

a. Generally, the sections of Subpart O, as they are presently constituted, tend to be *specification oriented.*

b. OSHA Standards Notice 1910.211-.222 dated March 30, 1973, canceled for record purposes on December 31, 1973, was intended to provide temporary guidance pending the rewriting of Subpart O. Subpart O is presently being reviewed and it is anticipated that the revision will be forthcoming in the near future.

Action. Pending the revision of Subpart O, the following guidelines shall apply. These guidelines provide protection equivalent to or better than that provided by existing standards.

a. The generic terms: cellulose acetate butyrate and acrylic are included with polycarbonate as acceptable terminology for materials used in machine guarding. Guards made of polycarbonate, cellulose acetate butyrate, acrylic or other materials which provide equivalent or better protection than those presently specified in OSHA standards are acceptable.

b. Fan guards of any material which is sufficiently strong to provide adequate protection to workers and which meets the requirements of Table 0-12, for opening size and clearance from moving parts, will be acceptable.

c. Machines using rubber feet or other nonskid (high coefficient of friction) foot pads or similar vibration dampening materials (in lieu of anchoring fixed machinery to prevent walking) will be acceptable. However, such machines shall not present a tipping or falling-over hazard.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.12
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.212.

Purpose. To provide guidance in the application of the subject standard to point of operation safeguarding of Power Press Brakes.

Background. A number of comments and requests for variances have been received concerning 29 CFR 1910.212 as it applies to point of operation safeguarding of Power Press Brakes. 29 CFR 1910.212(a)(1) requires that a method of guarding be provided to prevent an operator or other employees from having any part of the body in the danger zone during the operating cycle. It gives examples of *guarding methods* such as barrier guards, two-hand tripping devices and electronic safety devices. 29 CFR 1910.212(a)(3)(ii) states: "The point of operation of machines *whose operation exposes an employee to injury*, shall be guarded."

Action.

a. Exposure or potential exposure must be established prior to a citation being issued.

b. Protection of employees from point of operation hazards must be accomplished by the use of guarding devices which are in conformity with any appropriate standards for the specific machine involved. In the absence of applicable specific standards, guarding devices shall be so designed and constructed as to prevent the operator from having any part of the body in the danger zone during the operating cycle.

c. Where guards or guarding devices, as described in the preceding paragraph b., cannot be installed to protect operators and other employees from point of operation hazards, then other methods are acceptable. Other methods of safeguarding can include a safe distance between the employee(s) and the point of operation, which may be accomplished by the location of the operator's controls; the dimensions of the material being held; or the use of hand tools to feed the part. In addition, a safe distance must be maintained between the point of operation and employees who are either working or passing in proximity to the unguarded machine. Where such alternative effective precautions described in this paragraph are taken, the unguarded point of operation will be considered a de minimis violation.

d. Where machine guarding may be installed to protect employees from point of operation hazards, hand tools shall not be used in lieu of machine guarding but can only be used to supplement the protection provided. 29 CFR 1910.212(a)(3).

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.13
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.215 and 1926.700.

Purpose. To clarify the standards relative to masonry saws.

Background.

a. It has been noted that compliance personnel have been citing masonry saws under 29 CFR 1910.212, point of operation guarding, when making inspections in general industry.

b. The masonry saw is an abrasive wheel and should be cited under 29 CFR 1910.215, abrasive wheel machinery. The referenced standard, ANSI B7.1-1970, addresses cut-off wheels which are basically the same as masonry saws. In addition, the ANSI supplement, B7.1a-1973, specifically addresses masonry cutting and masonry saws. This supplement states that the maximum angular exposure of the cutting-off wheel periphery for the safety guard shall not exceed 180 degrees.

c. State conflict–29 CFR 1926.700 references ANSI A10.9–1970 which has specific guidelines in Section 12.2 for masonry saws.

Action. The applicable subsections of 29 CFR 1910.215 and 29 CFR 1926.700(a) shall be used for the issuance of citations when masonry saws are found to be in violation of the standards in their respective industry. However, because of the conflict between the requirements in the present subsection 29 CFR 1910.215(b)(5) and 29 CFR 1926.700(a), any citation issued for a masonry saw whose guard fails to comply with the 150 degree maximum angular exposure for the cutting-off wheel periphery as required in 29 CFR 1910.215(b)(5), but it is in compliance with the 180 degrees maximum angular exposure, shall be cited as de minimis.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–12.14
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.219.

Purpose. To provide clarification of the application of "enclosed" and "fully enclosed" as applying to power transmission belts, and guarding by location.

Background. In some instances the application of "enclosed" and "fully enclosed" has been interpreted to mean that all four sides of a power transmission belt must be covered by an enclosure. This application has been enforced even when guarding by location has been accomplished by the belts running close enough to walls and other objects to present no exposure to employees.

Action.

a. When there is no employee exposure to power transmission belts because they are naturally guarded by location, then no enclosure or guarding is required.

b. "Enclosure", as used in 29 CFR 1910.219(e)(3)(ii), for vertical and inclined belts is intended to mean that only the portion of a belt seven (7) feet or less from the floor is required to be enclosed by a guard.

c. "Fully enclosed" applies to the sides of a power transmission system not guarded by location as described in 29 CFR 1910.219(e)(1)(i) which includes both runs of a horizontal belt, pulley and flywheel (small units with slightly inclined belts are included in this category).

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–12.15
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.213(a)(4).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to provide guidance to the field on the applicability of 29 CFR 1910.213(a)(4) in protecting employees from automatic cut-off saws that stroke continuously without the operator being able to control each stroke.

Background.

a. The word "automatic" used to describe cut-off machine in the original ANSI Standard (1954, revised 1961) was a misnomer. The machine was commonly identified in industry as being power stroked. For a machine of this type, each foot pedal or push button activation resulted in a complete cycle or stroke consisting of a forward cut-off motion and a motion returning the head to its starting position. It was a machine intended for use where the operator's manual handling and/or positioning of the workpiece was required with each combination forward and return motion of the head (e.g., load, clamp, cut-off, unload, etc.).

b. 29 CFR 1910.213(a)(4) was not intended to restrict automation when the hazardous elements of operator involvement are eliminated and effective methods of guarding the point of operation are used.

Action.

a. In work situations where employees are not exposed to any hazards involving automatic cut-off saws, such saws that stroke continuously without the operator being able to control each stroke may be used without violation of 29 CFR 1910.213(a)(4).

b. In work situations where employees are exposed to any hazards involving automatic cut-off saws, (e.g., load, clamp, cut-off, unload, etc.) such saws that stroke continuously without the operator being able to control each stroke are in violation of 29 CFR 1910.213(a)(4) and shall be cited.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.16
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.213(h)(3) 1926.304(f).

CANCELED

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.18
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.213(c)(1) and (h)(1).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to provide guidance in the application of 29 CFR 1910.213 by specifying the application of paragraph (c)(1) to hand-fed ripsaws and paragraphs (g)(1) and (h)(1) to swing cutoff saws and radial saws.

Background. This directive was developed to inform field personnel of the alternate methods of meeting the intent of 29 CFR 1910.213(c)(1), (g)(1) and (h) (1) to eliminate employee exposure to point of operation hazards.

Action.

a. In those instances where fixed enclosures, fixed barrier guards, or manually adjusted guards are used that provide protection equivalent to the protection of automatically adjusted guards, thereby preventing employee exposure to the saw blade, no citation shall be issued.

b. Accordingly, when a fixed enclosure, fixed barrier, or manually adjusted guard is used instead of an automatic guard, it shall be considered de minimis. That is, provided the guards are used in accord with manufacturer's instructions and under sufficient supervision to insure consistent compliance with these instructions.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.19
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.212(a)(1), 1910.219(a)(1), 1910.219(e)(3).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to provide a uniform means of evaluating the nip point and moving belt hazard on light and medium duty sewing machines such as those used in apparel manufacturing and sewing of light weight materials.

Background.

a. OSHA has received letters and requests for variance from the subject standards for guarding belts and hand wheels above the sewing machine table tops. Most owners and users agree that drive wheels and belts beneath the tables should be fully enclosed, but enclosure of the belt and hand wheels above the tables is unnecessary and would interfere with sewing operations. Since the operator usually uses both hands to feed and guide the material while the belt and hand wheel are in motion, a safe distance is maintained from the nip point. The operator's hands should be near the wheel nip point to raise or lower the needle, only when the motor is disengaged. Reports indicate that accidents and injuries resulting from exposure to belts and hand wheels are very low.

b. 29 CFR 1910.219(a) excludes the following belts, except when they are operating at more than two hundred and fifty (250) feet per minute:

(1) Flat belts one (1) inch wide or less;

(2) Flat belts two (2) inches wide or less, which are free from metal lacing or fasteners;

(3) Round belts one-half (½) inch or less in diameter; and

(4) Single strand V-belts, thirteen thirty-second (13/32) inch wide or less;

c. This directive applies only to flat and round belts without metal fasteners or lacing since the consensus is that V-belts or belts with metal lacings or fasteners are hazardous.

d. Sewing machines used to sew material such as heavy canvas, denim, leather, vinyl or other heavy material are not covered by this directive.

Action.

a. When sewing machines with unguarded hand wheels and belts located above the table tops are encountered, the following guide is provided to determine if a hazard exists:

(1) When the belt and wheel are in motion,

hands are not placed in the wheel, nip point or belt area.

(2) Distance between the point where the operator is holding material with both hands and the belt area is sufficient to prevent any part of the operator's body from being exposed to danger.

(3) The table top is arranged or of such size to prevent any other employee, passing by or working adjacent to the wheel or belt, from being exposed.

(4) There is no past history of injuries.

b. If the preceding conditions are met, the exposure is minimal and it shall be considered de minimis.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.20
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.217(b)(3)(i).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to provide an interpretation of 29 CFR 1910.217(b)(3)(i) and guidance for field personnel for the requirement of single stroke mechanisms on full revolution type mechanical power presses.

Background. Complaints and variance applications have been received concerning the requirement for single-stroke mechanisms. This requirement was questioned when full revolution type mechanical power presses were used for production type work, automatically fed on continuous operation and the points of operation were protected by a fixed barrier guard. The requirement for the single stroke mechanism was not intended to apply to the preceding type of operation since there is no operator exposure to point of operation hazards when the danger zone is fully enclosed. This exception will be included in a change to the standard, which is presently under review.

Action. When encountering full revolution type mechanical power presses that are being operated on continuous mode only, feeding and ejection are accomplished by an automatic system, the points of operation are fully enclosed by a fixed barrier guard, and no single stroke mechanism is required, it shall be considered de miminis.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.21
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.217.

Purpose. This directive provides a guide to aid in the recognition of mechanical power presses' point of operation hazards and uniform clarifications of definitions, guards, devices and methods of safeguarding.

Background.

a. On December 3, 1974, the final amendments to 29 CFR 1910.217 were published in the Federal Register, Volume 39, Number 233. The detailed statement of reasons preceding the amendments noted that while the previous "no hands in die" ruling had as its goal the elimination of any need for an operator to ever have his hands in the point of operation, that requirement alone did not result in hazard-free operation. The installation of redundant guards and devices as backup safeties were not judged to significantly improve safety. Moreover, questions of technological and economic infeasibility were raised. While it is believed that "no hands in die" should continue to be an industry goal, the determination was made to revise the absolute "no hands in die" requirement in favor of improving the utilization of a single means of press safeguarding. For most operations, adequate protection can be afforded by a single guard or guarding device as long as that means of protection is *properly designed, installed, maintained, and, most importantly, used under supervision*. From an enforcement standpoint, employer adherence to each of these elements of a press guarding program in the workplace takes on increased importance.

b. 29 CFR 1910.217 covers the protection of press operators, die setters and maintenance personnel engaged in mechanical power press operations such as stroking, die tryout, die setting and maintenance. Press machines which are not mechanical power presses such as forging presses, press brakes, shears, iron workers, powder metal presses, die presses, brick presses, dinkers and clickers, engraving and others are covered by other sections of Subpart O. Most mechanical power presses work on metal, however, some mechanical power presses are used on materials such as plastic, paper and fiberboard.

c. This directive is not intended as a training guide but is a tool to provide uniformity in interpretation and application of the existing standards.

Clarifications.

a. Mechanical Power Press Recognition

(1) A mechanical power press is defined as a mechanically powered machine that shears, punches, forms or assembles metal or other material by means of cutting, shaping, or combination by dies attached to slides (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(46)). However, there are many machines, such as platen presses in the printing industry, clickers and die presses in the shoe industry, ironworkers and many others that perform these functions but are not power presses. The question commonly arises as to whether a particular machine is in fact a mechnical power press under the standard. The two most important recognition points are that the tools or dies are mounted on a slide (also called a ram, plunger or platen) and the slide operates in a controlled reciprocating motion toward and away from the stationary bed or anvil, the slide being guided in a definite path by the frame of the press.

(2) The power presses to which 29 CFR 1910.217 applies can be divided into two categories depending on the type of clutches they are equipped with (the clutch being the means of transmitting energy from the flywheel to the crankshaft which in turn is connected to the slide). The two types are *full* revolution type clutches and *part* revolution type clutches. The full revolution type, once activated, makes one complete revolution of the crankshaft and a full cycle of the slide before the clutch can be disengaged (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(5)). The part revolution type can be disengaged at any point before the crankshaft has completed a full revolution and a full stroke of the slide (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(6)).

NOTE: Direct drive presses have no clutches but some do have brakes. Direct drive presses can be stopped at any point by deenergizing the drive motor, therefore, they are considered as a part revolution type press (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(7)).

(a) Recognition of full revolution type.

(i) The clutch mechanism is generally visible between the flywheel and the crankshaft (sometimes is on the countershaft on larger presses).

(ii) Will not normally have a brake monitor system.

(iii) Will not have a dual air control valve or clutch brake.

(iv) Will not have an inch mode of operation.

(v) Will complete a full cycle after activated.

(vi) Will be equipped with a brake which is usually continuously applied (band-type brake).

(vii) The clutch engaging mechanical linkage will usually be visible.

(b) Recognition of the part revolution type.

(i) May have an inch-control.

(ii) Will usually have a chain or direct drive from the crankshaft to a limit switch assembly.

(iii) The clutch/brake mechanism is one unit mounted on the crankshaft or countershaft and is generally enclosed.

(iv) Will usually have a control panel with a press stroke selector switch.

(v) May have a clutch/brake dual air control valve.

(vi) The ram will stop on the down stroke when the two-hand controls are released.

(vii) Will be equipped with a friction brake that is applied when the clutch is deactivated.

b. Guards, Devices, Other Methods and Hand Feeding Tools

(1) *Guards* or fixed barriers are attached to the frame, die, or base of a press and prevent the operator from putting his hands or fingers into the point of operation even when the press is not cycling (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(32)).

(2) *Devices* are press controls or attachments which either stop normal press operation before the operator can reach into the point of operation or automatically withdraw his hands before the die closes, if the operator's hands are inadvertently within the point of operation. Examples of such devices are two-hand controls and two-hand trips, Type A and B gates, pull-outs and presence sensing devices (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(11)–(17)).

(3) *Other Methods.* Occasionally a machine without guards or devices may be adequately safeguarded by reason of its location, the location of other equipment, or the location of the operator's station. To be guarded by location, the hazardous area must be inaccessible to all employees during the operating cycle. For example, the feeding equipment of an automatically fed press may function as a barrier in preventing entry into the point of operation. Such circumstances must be carefully analyzed to determine if additional guards or devices are needed.

(4) *Hand Feeding Tools.* The use of hand feeding tools (regardless of their length or size) does not replace guards or devices (29 CFR 1910.217(c)(4)). When used, close supervision is essential because of the tendency to put such tools aside to expedite feeding. The use of hand tools also involves other hazards. For example, should the die close while a hand tool is in the point of operation, the operator could have the tool wrenched from his grasp and be struck by it or he could be forcibly jerked against the machine and injured.

c. Types of Guards

(1) The following information is intended to clarify, with reference to the standards, the various means of protecting operators from the point of operation hazard. An employer is required to provide and insure the usage of "point of operation guards" or properly installed devices in every operation performed on a press where the opening of the die is more than one-fourth inch (29CFR 1910.217(c)(1)(i) and (ii)). 29 CFR 1910.217(c)(2) and (3) describe the guards and devices as they shall be used to protect the operator.

(2) A guard is the most positive form of protection if designed and constructed to prevent entry of hand or fingers into the point of operation by reaching through, over, under or around the guard (29 CFR 1910.217(c)(2) (i)(a)).

(3) An inadequate enclosure is not a guard and may be used only in conjunction with point of operation devices (29 CFR 1910.217(c)(2)(vii)). If guards are installed and function correctly, no other guard or device is required.

(a) *A die enclosure guard* is a barrier attached to the die shoe or stripper (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(33); 29 CFR 1910.217(c)(2)(ii)).

(b) *A fixed barrier guard* is a guard attached to the press frame or bolster plate (base) (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(34); 29 CFR 1910.217(c)(2)(iii)).

(c) *An interlocked barrier guard* is attached to the press frame and bolster plate and is equipped with hinged, or movable sections. The guard itself or the hinged or movable sections are locked in the closed position. The interlock also prevents opening the guard or the movable sections as long as the slide is in motion (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(35); 29 CFR 1910.217(c)(2)(iv) and (v)). The hinged or movable sections of the guard are intended for infrequent use such as setup or adjustment and *not for manual feeding* (29 CFR 1910.217(c)(2)(v)).

(d) *An adjustable barrier guard* is attached to the press bed, bolster plate, or die shoe and requires adjustment (by authorized personnel only) for each job or die setup (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(36) and 29 CFR 1910.217(c)(2)(vi)).

d. Types of Devices. Since fixed guarding is not always possible due to the nature of an operation, devices are acceptable as a means of protection against point of operation hazards. When the following devices are properly installed and function properly, no other point of operation guarding is required unless the operation is such that a combination of guards or devices is necessary:

(1) *A movable barrier or gate device* resembles an interlocked barrier guard in appearance since it is interlocked into the press' clutch so that slide motion cannot be initiated unless the gate is closed (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(13)). A Type "A" gate must enclose the point of operation before a stroke can be initiated and remain closed as long as the slide is moving (29 CFR 1910.217(c)(3)(ii)(a) and (c)(3)(i)(f)). A Type "B" gate when used on a press prevents entry only during the downstroke and must prevent access prior to cessation of motion or die closure (29 CFR 1910.217(c)(3)(ii)(b) and (c)(3)(i)(g)).

(2) *Pull-out devices* consist of operator wristbands connected by cords and linkage to the slide or upper die so that when the die descends the operator's hands will be automatically withdrawn from the point of operation if he had not already withdrawn them (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(15); 1910.217(c)(3)(iv) and (c)(3)(i)(b)). Close supervision is required to assure their use and proper adjustment. Records must be kept of safety checks (29 CFR 1910.217(c)(3)(iv)(d)).

(3) *Holdout or restraint devices* consist of attachments, for each of the operator's hands, which are securely anchored and adjusted to prevent the operator from reaching into the point of operation at any time (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(14); 1910.217(c)(3)(vi) and (c)(3)(i)(c)).

(4) *Presence sensing devices* are restricted to use only on part revolution clutch presses. A presence sensing device is a light curtain or other type sensing field between the operator and the point of operation interlocked into the control system so that slide motion is prevented or stopped prior to die closure if the operator's hands or any part of his body is within the sensing field (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(6) and (12); 1910.217(c)(3)(i)(a) and (c)(3)(iii)). Areas not protected by the pressure sensing devices must be guarded.

NOTE: *Sweep type devices* consist of single or double arm or rod attached to the slide of the presss so that it will push the operator's hands away from the point of operation as the slide descends. This device cannot be used as a single safeguard for point of operation guarding after December 31, 1976 (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(16); 1910.217(c)(3)(v) and (c)(3)(i)(b)).

e. Types of Controls

(1) *Two-hand control devices* are used only on presses with a part revolution clutch, and the operator must depress two buttons concurrently to initiate slide motion. The buttons must be depressed continuously (holding time) on the downstroke or else the clutch disengages, the brake is applied and the slide stops (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(17); 1910.217(c)(3)(vii) and (c)(3)(i)(e)).

(2) *Two-hand trip devices* once pressed do not have to be held during the downstroke, and the slide will stop only after it has completed a full cycle. The device is generally applicable to full revolution clutch presses (29 CFR 1910.211(d)(57); 1910.217(c)(3)(viii) and (c)(3)(i)(e)).

> NOTE: In addition to proper design, installation and correct operation, it is required that two-hand controls, two-hand trips and presence sensing devices be located far enough away from the point of operation (depending on the stopping time of the press) that when the operator releases the control buttons or disturbs the presence sensing field, he does not have time to reach into the point of operation before the die closes or slide stops (29 CFR 1910.217(c) (3)(iii)(e), (c)(3)(vii)(c), and (c)(3)(viii)(c)). Safety distance formulas for two-hand buttons and presence sensing devices are included in the standard. Since time factors will actually be in milliseconds rather than seconds, the National Office is presently evaluating several units that will measure brake stopping time and distance for field use.

f. Control Reliability and Brake Monitor Systems. A control reliability system detects a failure within the controls and prevents initiation of a successive stroke until the failure is corrected. (29 CFR 1910.217(b)(13)).

A brake monitor system monitors the performance of the brake on each stroke and automatically prevents the activation of a successive stroke if the stopping time or braking distance has deteriorated beyond the predetermined safe stopping distance. (29 CFR 1910.217(b)(14)).

Safeguarding devices such as two-hand controls, presence sensing device, Type "B" gate, or movable barriers allow the operator to feed or remove parts by placing one or both hands in the point of operation. Therefore, when these devices are used on part revolution clutch presses, the control reliability system and brake monitor system are required to assure operator's safety from the point of operation hazard. (29 CFR 1910.217(c)(5) and 29 CFR 1910.217(c)(5)(i)).

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.22
1/2/79

SUBJECT: 1910.212(a)(3)(ii).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to provide guidance in applying point of operation guarding requirements relative to hand-fed engraving presses in the engraved stationery industry, when using the face down method of printing.

Background

a. Engraving or die stamping presses are not mechanical power presses. The design, control and operation of these presses are not the same as mechanical power presses. Although constructed, in part, of closing dies, the engraving press is a special purpose, continuous operation printing press with an integrally driven sliding lower die which is automatically inked.

b. Guarding the point of operation on hand-fed engraving presses, where the ink is applied to the underside of the paper, poses a difficult compliance problem. Barrier guards may cause ink to smear when the paper is extracted from the press. An awareness barrier is only a partial guard and does not constitute full compliance with 29 CFR 1910.212(a)(3)(ii). Further technological difficulties in completely guarding the point of operation have been uncovered in investigations by insurance companies, New York State Division of Industrial Services, the Die Stampers and Engravers Union, Local #30, safety specialist in the National Office, and an independent Safety Consultant retained to study the problem in 1976. All these studies have concluded that a point of operation guard which complies with OSHA standards is not technically feasible, within the current state of the art, for engraving presses which use the face-down method of printing. Furthermore, the seriousness of the hazard relative to the point of operation is minimal. The few recorded accidents that have occurred were primarily during setup, cleaning, or maintenance.

Action.

a. In order to provide adequate safety for operators of hand-fed engraving presses from point of operation hazards, the intent of 29 CFR 1910.212 is satisfied when the following guidelines are followed:

(1) Automatic or semiautomatic feeders shall be used where feasible.

(2) Where automatic feeders are not feasible citations under 29 CFR 1910.212 will not be issued where precautions (a) through (e) are strictly followed.

(a) Stock material of sufficient size so that 2 inches or more of the material being printed projects in front of the closed die is used.

(b) A finger slot in the counterboard which is 2 inches or more from the die is used.

(c) A safety training program for press operators and maintenance personnel to assure safe operating practice and hazard awareness is instituted.

(d) A sign readily visible to the operator affixed to the press and warning of the point of operation hazard is in place.

(e) A positive locking device on each manual control to protect the press operators from unexpected stroking of the ram is installed. The device shall protect against unintentional engagement of the clutch and shall be engaged in all circumstances when the employees are required to place their hands in the point of operation area such as setup, repairs, changing dies and clearing jams.

b. The engraving industry and the engraving press manufacturer will continue further research to develop an automatic or semiautomatic feeder which is capable of processing the small short-run orders, or develop a positive point of operation safeguarding device. Progress on this research will be reported annually to the Office of Compliance Programming, Room N3106.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.23
1/2/79

SUBJECT: 1910.212(a)(1).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to clarify the guarding requirements of the subject standard relative to the ingoing nip point on three-roller printing ink mills and to assure uniformity in the enforcement of the standard nationally.

Background

a. It has been brought to the attention of the National Office that citations have been issued for lack of nip point guards on three-roller printing ink mills. The National Association of Printing Ink Manufacturers, Inc. contends that it is not feasible to operate the three-roller printing ink mills with a nip point guard due to the required operating procedures to obtain a homogenous ink.

b. There is an American National Consensus Standard, ANSI B177.1-1975, Safety Requirements for Three-Roller Printing Ink Mills and a proposed supplement which clarifies that a nip point guard is required on the mill only during the wash-up operation. During the wash-up operation the pressure on the rollers is released just enough for loose contact. With the mill running at its lowest speed the operator holds the cleaning and drying cloth against the roller. A nip point guard prevents the cloth from getting in between the rollers and possibly drawing in the operator's fingers or hand.

Action

a. The following requirements meet the intent of 29 CFR 1910.212(a)(1) for protecting the operators of three-roller printing ink mills:

(1) All three-roller printing ink mills shall be equipped with a sufficient number of safety controls and emergency stops such as pressure-sensitive body bar, safety triprod, safety trip cable or wire cord at each work station. The number of safety controls and emergency stops and the location will depend on the mill size (length of the rollers) and the operator's exposure to the ingoing nip point at each work station.

(2) All mills that require the operator to use knives or spatulas to hand-feed the ink onto the feed roller or to throw-back mill ends (spread the ink on the feed roller) shall have knives or spatulas at least 18 inches long.

(3) All mills that are fed from the apron side with tub tilters and require a platform shall be provided with a bar in front of the feed roller or an expanded metal guard in front of the work platform.

(4) Each mill shall be provided with one of the following nip point guards or equivalent which shall be used during the mill wash-up operation:

(1) A trapezoid shaped guard of hardwood, nylon, or teflon which is one inch longer than the roller surface length.

(2) A V-shaped metal guard equipped with vertical hangers that allows suspension from overhead or from the side of the mill and is one inch longer than the roller surface length.

(3) A metal folding flat-plate guard that extends across the entire nip point area of the rollers. The guard shall ride on the rollers in such a manner that it prevents access to the nip point area.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.24
7/30/79

SUBJECT: 1910.217

Purpose. This instruction provides guidance in applying point-of-operation guarding requirements on mechanical power presses during diesetting operations. Also, it provides for the application of consensus standards and identifies typographical errors in 29 CFR 1910.

Action. OSHA Regional Administrators/Area Directors shall use the following guidelines for enforcement of the referenced standard.

Background. 29 CFR 1910.217(c)(1)(i) requires protection of employees through the use of point-of-operation guards or devices (as defined in 29 CFR 1910.211(d)(11) and (32)) on every operation performed on a mechanical power press. Diesetters working on mechanical power presses are covered by the provisions of 29 CFR 1910.217(c).

1. 29 CFR 1910.217(d) provides specifically for the protection of diesetters. 29 CFR 1910.217 (d)(9)(i) was intended to clarify that the provisions of 29 CFR 1910.217(c) apply to diesetters concerning point-of-operation guarding. When 29 CFR 1910.217(d)(9)(i) was adopted, it erroneously referred to paragraph (b) of 1910.217 rather than to paragraph (c). The typographical error occurred during a reorganization of the provisions of the ANSI B11.1-1971 standard when it was incorporated into 29 CFR 1910 as Section .217. Additional typographical errors included:

a. Erroneous references to paragraph (b) rather than to paragraph (c) by 29 CFR 1910.217 (d)(3) and (d)(5).

b. 29 CFR 1910.217(b)(8)(iv) erroneously refers to a "nominal 240-volt d.c. supply obtained from a transformer" where it should have read "120-volt a.c."

2. Mechanical power presses equipped with part revolution clutches comply with point-of-operation safeguarding for diesetters when an inch mode is installed as specified in 29 CFR 1910.217(b)(7)(iv). Use of the inch mode in accordance with 1910.217(b)(7)(iv) constitutes use of a "device" within the meaning of 1910.217 (d)(11).

3. Full revolution mechanical power presses cannot normally be safeguarded with guards during diesetting operations. However, in instances when guards are not applicable and for presses provided with barring holes in the flywheel, the diesetter is protected if:

a. The power press is de-energized and the flywheel is brought to rest; and

b. The prime mover power to the power press is locked-out; and

c. The slide is moved by manually turning the crankshaft with the aid of a turnover bar (a lever) inserted through the barring hole in the flywheel.

4. On some full revolution mechanical power presses, primarily those over 60 tons in size, the slide cannot be moved manually during diesetting. Safeguarding is provided if they are equipped with a jog mode of operation, and

a. The flywheel is brought to rest and the clutch is engaged before the drive motor is jogged, and

b. The jog control requires two-hand operation, or

c. The jog control is a single control protected against accidental actuation and so located that the worker cannot reach into the point-of-operation while operating the single control.

5. For full revolution mechanical power presses, safeguarding of the diesetter, as set forth in 3., and 4. constitutes a "device" as defined in 29 CFR 1910.211(d)(11).

6. ANSI B11.1-1971, Section 2.51 regarding turnover bars states: Two methods of insuring the removal of the turnover bar from the barring hole have been found acceptable. They are (1) use of spring action on the end of the bar, and (2) use of storage pockets for the bar, incorporating an interlock switch.

Guidelines. For compliance purposes, OSHA field staff will assure that the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.217 and applicable sections are interpreted in the following manner:

1. As the result of the errors noted in the background discussion paragraph, when diesetters are operating a mechanical power press, such as running test and production parts, diesetting or trouble shooting, they shall be protected by point-of-operation guards or devices. Failure to provide such safeguards shall constitute a violation of 29 CFR 1910.217(c)(1)(i).

2. When diesetters operate a mechanical power press, equipped with a part revolution clutch, in the inch mode where such device is not installed per 29 CFR 1910.217(b)(7)(iv), a violation exists and a citation shall be issued if no alternative safeguard is provided.

3. As the result of the errors noted in paragraph 1. of the background discussion, when a diesetter operates a full cycle mechanical power press without point-of-operation guards or devices such as those described in paragraphs 3. and 4. of the background discussion, the employer shall be cited for a violation of 29 CFR 1910.217(c)(1)(i).

4. On mechanical power presses equipped with part revolution clutches, turnover bar operations shall comply with 29 CFR 1910.217(b)(7)(xv). (See also paragraph 6. of the background discussion.)

5. Regarding 29 CFR 1910.217(b)(8)(iv), where employee exposure is established, 5(a)(1) citations shall be issued with reference to ANSI B11.1-1971, section 3.6.4., when mechanical power press control circuits and solenoid valve coils are not powered by a nominal 120-volt a.c. or less as stipulated by ANSI B11.1-1971.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.25
2/23/81

Subject: 1910.212(a)(3)(ii)

Purpose. This instruction provides guidance for applying awareness barrier safeguards as installed on metal cutting shears.

Background. Point of operation awareness barriers conforming to ANSI B11.4-1973, Sections 5.1.4 through 5.1.4.3, may be used in guarding the point of entry of material, where it is not possible to conform with the guidelines of Table 1, Column B of ANSI B11.4-1973, or to employ a point of operation device due to the diversity of operations performed on the shear. Under these circumstances, the awareness barrier is an acceptable form of guarding the point of operation.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.26
6/30/81

SUBJECT: 1910.215

Purpose. This instruction clarifies the appropriate citing for cutoff wheels.

Action. The applicable subsections of 29 CFR 1910.215 shall be used for the issuance of citations when cutoff wheels are found to be technically in violation of the guarding standards. Any citation issued for cutoff wheels, where the guard fails to comply with the 150-degree maximum angular exposure for the cutoff wheel periphery as required in 29 CFR 1910.215(b)(5), but does not exceed a 180-degree maximum angular exposure, shall be deemed to be a de minimis violation.

Background.

1. Cutoff machines are abrasive wheels and should be cited under 29 CFR 1910.215, abrasive wheel machinery. The referenced standard, ANSI B7.1-1970, addresses cutoff wheels. The American National Standards Institute modified the ANSI B7.1-1970 with supplemental standards during 1973 and 1975. The standard included a modification of the acceptable angular exposure on cutoff machines. The current ANSI standard, ANSI B7.1-1978, presently permits a maximum angular exposure of 180 degrees.

2. The existing OSHA regulation was adopted from the ANSI B7.1-1970, and therefore requires 150-degree maximum angular exposure on cutoff machines. However, OSHA has no information to support a choice between 150° and 180° maximum angular exposure or to substantiate any direct and immediate relationship to safety and health. Therefore, cutoff machines with more than 150 degrees of angular exposure, and not exceeding 180 degrees, shall be noted as de minimis violations.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-12.27
6/30/81

SUBJECT: 1910.212 & 1910.217

Purpose. This instruction provides guidelines to aid in the recognition of the difference between iron workers and similarly configured mechanical power presses as they are used in industry. Proper identification will permit the correct application of standards.

Reference. OSHA Instruction STD 1-12.21, February 2, 1978.

Action. OSHA Regional Administrators/Area Directors shall use the following guidelines for the enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.212 and 29 CFR 1910.217, as applicable.

Guidelines. For compliance purposes, OSHA field staff will assure that the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.212 and 217, with applicable sections, are applied as interpreted by this instruction.

1. This instruction applies to those combination, multipurpose powered machines that punch, shear, notch, cope, and form metals or other materials, commonly referred to as iron workers, and also applies to certain single-purpose powered machines, noted below.

a. Specific machines to which 29 CFR 1910.212 shall apply include, but are not limited to, the following:

(1) Single-end punches
(2) Double-end punches
(3) Structural shearing machines
(4) Notching machines
(5) Coping machines
(6) Beam punches
(7) Detail punches
(8) Spacing punches
(9) Combinations of (1) through (8)

b. Machines similar in construction and function to mechanical power presses, but which are identified by the respective machine manufacturers as iron workers, are regulated under 29 CFR 1910.212.

c. Machines whose most distinguishing feature is the multiple work stations at which various operations may be performed singly or simultaneously, including, but not limited to, punching, shearing, notching, coping, and forming, shall be evaluated as an iron worker, and are regulated under 29 CFR 1910.212.

2. Mechanically powered machines that shear, punch, form, or assemble metal or other material by means of tools or dies attached to slides, and identified by their respective manufacturers as mechanical power presses, are regulated under 29 CFR 1910.217.

Background. Compliance officers have frequently confused the applicability of standards as they pertain to iron workers and certain configurations of mechanical power presses. In addition, field personnel have incorrectly attempted to enforce provisions of 29 CFR 1910.217 with regard to iron workers. 29 CFR 1910.212 is the appropriate standard to apply to ironworker machines.

1. ANSI B11.5-1975, Safety Requirements for the Construction, Care, and Use of Iron Workers, deals specifically with ironworkers. Although this standard has not been adopted by OSHA under section 6(b), it provides useful guidance in evaluating and correcting ironworker hazards.

2. ANSI B11.5–1975 should be consulted when considering a citation under 1910.212 or when attempting to enforce a citation issued under that standard for exposure to a hazard on an ironworker machine.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–12.28 Ch 1
2/14/83

Subject: 1910.212(a)(1) and (a)(2)

Purpose. This instruction provides guidelines for the use of certain monitoring techniques to comply with 29 CFR 1910.212(a)(1) and (a)(2) in the oil and gas drilling industry.

Guidelines. The following alternative techniques shall be considered as meeting the intent of 29 CFR 1910.212(a)(1) and (a)(2) for preventing worker contact with rotating kelly bushings or kellys and exposed portions of rotary tables on oil and gas well drilling rigs in lieu of the physical guarding requirements:

1. The alternative procedures are limited to those rigs utilizing kelly bushings that are classed as "smooth"; i.e., having no projections of the J-bolt type. Thus, drilling rigs using kelly bushings other than the "smooth" type shall have a substantially constructed kelly bushing/rotary table guard. Rigs using the "smooth" type kelly bushing have the option of using a substantially constructed guard for the rotary equipment or of following the guidelines given in (2) through (9).

2. All employees shall be trained in safe operating procedures when around the rotary table and kelly bushing.

3. The employer shall designate the equipment operator and shall ensure that the designated person is trained and competent in the operation of the rotary drilling equipment.

4. The designated equipment operator shall control the access and activity of all personnel on the drilling floor while equipment is rotating and shall stop such equipment from rotating whenever there is danger to personnel from that equipment.

5. The equipment operator shall never engage the rotary clutch without first ensuring that no employees are on or in proximity to the rotary table in such a manner that they could be endangered.

6. At any time an employee's work activities require the handling of materials which can become entangled in the rotary table, the kelly bushing or the kelly while such equipment is in motion, the designated equipment operator, who is capable of stopping the rotating equipment, shall be at the controls.

7. No materials which may become entangled in the rotary table, kelly bushing and/or kelly shall be allowed within 6 inches of this equipment when it is to be operated.

8. Wash down hoses shall be of such length or located in such manner that no part of such hoses can be brought to within 6 inches of the kelly bushing.

9. Spinning chain shall not be wrapped around the joint of the pipe in the mousehole nor handled on the drilling floor so that any part of the chain is within 2 feet of the exposed rotating portions of the rotary table, kelly bushing or kelly.

Background. Due to the difficulty experienced and the hazards created in complying strictly with the physical guarding requirements 29 CFR 1910.212(a)(1) and (a)(2), employers in the oil and gas well drilling industry requested OSHA to review the requirements of the standard as they are applied to guarding the exposed portions of the rotary table and kelly bushing on oil and gas well drilling rigs.

1. As a result of this request, the Secretary authorized an experimental variance to demonstrate or validate new and improved techniques of safeguarding employees working around the rotary table and kelly bushing. The successful completion of the experimental program confirmed that the alternative abatement procedures evaluated meet the intent of the standard.

2. Therefore, if the procedures set forth in the guidelines of this instruction are complied with, the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.212(a)(1) or (a)(2) shall be considered as met.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-13.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.242(b)

Purpose. To provide guidance and examples of what alternate systems will meet the requirements of this section, and to clarify its intent.

Background. A number of inquiries have been received requesting a clarification of the meaning of 1910.242(b) also known as 41 CFR 50- 204.8 under the Walsh-Healey Act.

Interpretation. The phrase "reduce to less than 30 psi" means that the downstream pressure of the air at the nozzle (nozzle pressure) or opening of a gun, pipe, cleaning lance, etc., used for cleaning purposes will remain at a pressure level below 30 psi for all static conditions. The requirements for dynamic flow are such that in the case when dead ending occurs a static pressure at the main orifice shall not exceed 30 psi. This requirement is necessary in order to prevent a back pressure buildup in case the nozzle is obstructed or dead ended. There is no intent to restrict the diameter of the nozzle orifice or the volume (CFM) flowing from it.

"Effective chip guarding" means any method or equipment which will prevent a chip or particle (of whatever size) from being blown into the eyes or unbroken skin of the operator or other workers. Effective chip guarding may be separate from the air nozzle as in the case where screens or barriers are used. The use of protective cone air nozzles are acceptable in general for protection of the operator but barriers, baffles or screens may be required to protect other workers if they are exposed to flying chips or particles.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-13.2
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.243(d)(4)(iv)

Purpose. To provide specific interpretation as to when magazine-fed, explosive power operated hand tools are loaded.

Background. In developing and promulgating the above mentioned standards the magazine or clip-fed explosive power load was not considered. This is a magazine which contains several explosive power loads and which is inserted into the tool. Single loads are fed into the ram (firing chamber) as needed.

Until such time as single loads are fed into the ram, explosive power loads are not a part of the firing cycle. A separate operation on the part of the operator has to be made to place the load into the firing position.

Action. When magazine fed tools covered by these standards are inspected, the tool is not considered loaded until the magazine feeds the tool, even though the magazine is in the tool.

Operator's instructions shall provide for removing the magazine when tool is left unattended.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-13.3
10/30/78

Subject: 1910.243(b)(1)

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to establish procedures to follow when violations of 29 CFR 1910.243(b)(1) occur, regarding the installation of a tool retainer on pneumatic powered tools.

Background. 29 CFR 1910.243(b)(1) requires the installation of a tool retainer on each piece of utilization equipment which, without such a retainer, may eject the tool. The Division of Standards Development is proposing to modify the standard to read as follows:

> 29 CFR 1910.243—Guarding of *portable powered tools.*
>
> * * * * *
>
> (b) *Pneumatic powered tools and hose.*—(1) *Tool retainer.*—A tool retainer shall be installed on each piece of utilization equipment which, without such a retainer, may eject the tool with sufficient force to injure an employee(s).
>
> (2) *Exception.*—A tool retainer shall not be required under either of the following conditions provided that *work practices are posted*

and enforced which insure that employees are not exposed to the danger of an ejected tool:

> The workpiece provides the necessary protection for both the tool operator and other employees.
>
> Partitions or shields which protect employees (including the operator) not protected by the workpiece are used.

Action. Pending final approval of the proposed changes in the standard, a violation of the requirement for the use of tool retainers on pneumatic powered tools shall be considered de minimis, provided that one or more of the exception conditions are in force. This action is based on a determination that under these conditions, employees would be provided with protection equivalent to that provided by the existing standards.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–13.4
8/5/81

Subject: 1910.243(a)(3) and 1926.304(f)

Purpose. This instruction provides guidance to allow equitable enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.243(a)(3) and 29 CFR 1926.304(f) as they pertain to the guarding of portable belt sanders.

Action. OSHA Regional Administrators/Area Directors shall classify violations of 29 CFR 1910.243(a)(3) and 29 CFR 1926.304(f) as de minimis violations where the employer has complied with appropriate safeguarding precautions as follows:

1. Portable belt sanding machines shall be provided with guarding on one side at the nip point where the sanding belt runs into a pulley,

2. Handles shall be so located that a barrier interrupts any straight line path between the gripping surface of a handle and the nip point of a pulley, and

3. The unused run of the sanding belt shall be guarded on one side and at the rear.

Background. Revision of 29 CFR 1910.243(a)(3) and 29 CFR 1926.304(f) are under consideration by the Mechanical Engineering and Construction Standards Divisions. The standards presently in effect prescribe guarding requirements which essentially prevent flush sanding at corners, an important feature and an application of portable belt sanders. The modified form of guarding, as presented by this instruction, permits flush sanding at corners and provides for operator safety.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–14.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.252(a)(1)(iii).

Purpose. To clarify 29 CFR 1910.252(a)(1)(iii).

Background. Numerous requests for clarification have been received from employers and manufacturers concerned with the application of the term "approved apparatus" to replacement welding tips and convertor/adaptors (used for mounting tips). These inquiries were prompted by the fact that nationally recognized testing laboratories will not accept tips or convertor/adaptors for testing except as part of a completely assembled torch.

Interpretation. Use of replacement tips will not nullify the "approved apparatus" status of a torch, if such replacement tips are made to the same specifications as the original tip of the torch at the time of approval by the nationally recognized testing laboratory, or if the use of such tips in conjunction with convertor/adaptors results in the same specifications as the original tip at the time of approval by the nationally recognized testing laboratory.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–15.1
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.268(a)(2)(i) and 1910.268(a)(3)

Purpose. To clarify the intent of paragraphs 1910.268(a)(2)(i) and (a)(3).

Background. Paragraph 1910.268(a)(2)(i) states, "These standards do not apply to construction work as defined in § 1910.12." Paragraph 1910.268(a)(3) states, "Operations or conditions not specifically covered by this section are subject to all the applicable standards contained in this Part 1910. See § 1910.5(c). Operations which involve construction work, as defined in § 1910.12 are subject to all the applicable standards contained in Part 1926 of this chapter." Requests for clarification have been received as to the intent of these statements on construction work as they relate to telecommunication work.

Clarification. The intent of these two paragraphs is to indicate that all construction activity performed by the telecommunication industry (and for that matter, any industry) would be governed by the rules and regulations of 29 CFR 1926.

This means that operations presently subject to Part 1926 will continue to be subject to those standards and that 1910.268 (Telecommunications) standards do not alter this present system.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-15.2
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.265(d)(1)(ii)(b).

Purpose. To clarify the requirement that all lifting cylinders of hydraulically operated log handling machines be equipped with a positive device to prevent the uncontrolled lowering of the load or forks in case of a failure in the hydraulic system.

Background.

a. 29 CFR 1910.265(d)(1)(ii)(b) requires that lifting cylinders of all hydraulically operated log handling machines shall be equipped with a positive device. A number of comments have been received pointing out the difficulties encountered applying this requirement to the mobile lift-type log handling equipment. An investigation by the Seattle Regional Office revealed that an additional hazard may be created in the operation of mobile lift-type log handling equipment when equipped with this device.

The Office of Standards Development plans to modify 29 CFR 1910.265(d)(1)(ii)(b) to render it applicable only to the boom lifting cylinders of all hydraulically operated crane type log handling machines in which the load is lifted by wire rope. When the new rule is promulgated mobile-type log handling machines will no longer fall within the scope of this standard.

Action. "Any citation issued concerning the lack of positive device for the controlled lowering of the load on a *mobile lift-type log handling machine* shall be de minimis, when there is no recognized employee exposure to load hazards."

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-15.3
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.262(cc)(1), 1910.264(c)(2)(iii)(a), 1910.264(c)(1)(ii), 1910.264(c)(2)(iv)(b)

Purpose. To provide specific interpretation of 29 CFR 1910.262 and 29 CFR 1910.264.

Clarification.

(a) 29 CFR 1910.262(cc)(1) states:

Each drying tumbler, each double cylinder shaker or clothes tumbler, and each washing machine shall be equipped with an interlock device which will prevent the power operation of the inside cylinder when the outer door on the case or shell is open, and which will also prevent the outer door on the case or shell from being opened without shutting off the power. This should not prevent the movement of the inner cylinder by means of a hand operated mechanism or an "inching device.;

(b) 29 CFR 1910.264(c)(1)(ii) states:

Each washing machine shall be equipped with an interlocking device that will prevent the inside cylinder from moving when the outer door on the case or shell is open, and will also prevent the door from being opened while the inside cylinder is in motion. This device should not prevent the movement of the inner cylinder under the action of a hand-operated mechanism or under the operation of an "inching device."

(c) 29 CFR 1910.264(c)(2)(iv)(b) states:

Each shaker or clothes tumbler of the double-cylinder type shall be equipped with an interlocking device that will prevent the inside cylinder from moving when the outer door on the case or shell is open, and will also prevent the door from being opened while the inside cylinder is in motion. This device should not prevent the movement of the inner cylinder under the action of a hand-operated mechanism or under the operation of an inching device.

(d) 29 CFR 1910.264(c)(2)(iii)(a) states:

> Each drying tumbler shall be equipped with interlocking device that will prevent the inside cylinder from moving when the outer door on the case or shell is open, and also prevent the door from being opened while the inside cylinder is in motion. This device should not prevent the movement of the inner cylinder under the action of a hand-operated mechanism or under the operation of an inching device.

Interpretation. A microswitch installed on a door of any one of the machines mentioned in the above standards can be used to shut off the power when the door is open. Therefore, the inner cylinder cannot be operated under power when the micro switch is in the off position. The use of such a micro switch satisfies the intent of the above stated standards provided that the inner cylinder of the machine does not continue to rotate after the door is open in such a manner as to present any injury to employees. In those situations in which the cylinder does continue to rotate and present a hazard after the power is shut off, an interlock device, braking switch, or a time delay switch would still be required to prevent employees from possible injury.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–15.4
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.268(h)(8)

Purpose. To provide specific interpretation as to the intent of the application of 29 CFR 1910.268 (h)(8)(i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi).

Background.

a. The intent of the proposed and final standard of 29 CFR 1910.268(h)(8), Metal Manhole Ladders, published in the Federal Register on August 28, 1973, and March 26, 1975, respectively, was to limit its scope to "portable" metal manhole ladders.

b. This intent is evident when Section 1910.268(h)(8) is compared to 29 CFR 1910.26—the General Industry standard which applies to portable metal ladders. The language of section 1910.26 is virtually identical to that contained in Section 1910.268(h)(8). Moreover, the language of Section 1910.268(h)(8) is inconsistent with 29 CFR 1910.27—the General Industry standard which applies to fixed ladders.

Action. The enforcement of 29 CFR 1910.268(h)(8)(i) through (vi) as written shall be limited to "portable" metal manhole ladders used in the telecommunication industry. Fixed manhole ladders are not covered by 29 CFR 1910.268(h)(8).

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–15.5
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.266(d)(2)(v) and (vi).

Purpose. The purpose of this directive is to provide specific clarification on the applicability of ½-inch plastic sheets as a substitute for open mesh material.

Background. As a result of several petitions for modifications or interpretations of 29 CFR 1910.266(d)(2)(v) and (vi) and 29 CFR 1910.604(a)(2), (i) and (ii), a review of specific test data provided to OSHA has been completed. This information is under consideration for the standards revisions.

Clarification. The use of ½-inch plastic sheets or other thicknesses of plastic sheets (that have the same physical properties) in lieu of 1 or 1¾-inch open mesh material is acceptable providing equivalent protection to the employee is assured. All panels shall be installed in a manner which can withstand the initial impact and maintain the protective barrier integrity. All panels must be labeled or marked to distinguish between acceptable materials and inferior panels.

Action. The foregoing will appear in a proposed revision. Until the standards have been revised, a violation of either referenced standard shall be considered de minimis, providing the preceding requirements are met.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–16.6A
12/12/81

Subject: 1910.307(b)(3)

Purpose. This instruction provides guidance to insure appropriate enforcement of certain requirements pertaining to electrical equipment used in sewage wetwells.

Cancellation. OSHA Instruction STD 1–16.6, April 22, 1980, is canceled.

Guidelines. Whether a sewage wetwell location is or is not a Class I, Division 1 location under OSHA's standards depends on the conditions in the particular wetwell. Even if the wetwell is a Class I, Division 1 location, this does not mean that an explosion-proof motor is the only acceptable type for this location. NEC paragraph 501–8(a), which can be followed as a means of complying with 29 CFR 1910.307(b)(3), states:

501–8. Motors and Generators. Motors and generators shall conform to the following:

> (a) Class I, Division 1. In Class I, Division 1 locations, motors, generators and other rotating electric machinery shall be: (1) approved for Class I, Division 1 locations (explosion-proof), or (2) of the totally enclosed type supplied with positive-pressure ventilation from a source of clean air with discharge to a safe area, so arranged to prevent energizing of the machine until ventilation has been established and the enclosure has been purged with at least 10 volumes of air, and also arranged to automatically de-energize the equipment when the air supply fails; or (3) of the totally enclosed inert-gas-filled type supplied with a suitable reliable source of inert gas for pressuring the enclsoure, with devices provided to insure a positive pressure in the enclosure and arranged to automatically de-energize the equipment when the gas supply fails; or (4) of a type designed to be submerged in a liquid which is flammable only when vaporized and mixed with air, or in a gas or vapor at a pressure greater than atmospheric and which is flammable only when mixed with air; and the machine is so arranged to prevent energizing it until it has been purged with the liquid or gas to exclude air, and also arranged to automatically de-energize the equipment when the supply of liquid, or gas or vapor fails or the pressure is reduced to atmospheric. Totally enclosed motors of types (2) and (3) shall have no external surface with an operating temperature in degrees Celsius in excess of 80 percent of the ignition temperature of the gas or vapor involved, as determined by ASTM test procedure (Designation: D–2155–69). Appropriate devices shall be provided to detect any increase in temperature of the motor beyond design limits and automatically de-energize the equipment or provide an adequate alarm. Auxiliary equipment shall be of a type approved for the location in which it is installed.

An installation or equipment is acceptable to the Assistant Secretary of Labor, and approved within the meaning of Subpart S under the following conditions as stated in 29 CFR 1910.399(a)(1):

1. If it is accepted, or certified, or listed, or labeled, or otherwise determined to be safe by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, such as, but not limited to, Underwriters' Laboraties, Inc., and Factory Mutual Engineering Corporation, or

2. With respect to an installation or equipment of a kind which no nationally reocgnized testing laboratory accepts, certifies, lists, labels, or determines to be safe, if it is inspected or tested by another Federal agency, or by a State, municipal, or local authority responsible for enforcing occupational safety provisions of the National Electrical Code, and found in compliance with the provisions of the National Electrical Code as applied in this Subpart, or

3. With respect to custom-made equipment or related installations which are designed, fabricated for, and intended for use by, a particular customer, if it is determined to be safe for its intended use by its manufacturer on the basis of test data which the employer keeps and makes available for inspection to the Assistant Secretary and his authorized representatives.

Background. Recently, an advertisement in a trade magazine was interpreted as inferring that OSHA requires all motors in a sewer wetwell to be explosion proof. To the contrary, whether a sewer wetwell is a Class I, Division 1 location must be established by investigation of the conditions in a specific wetwell. Moreover, as indicted in the guidelines of this instruction, an explosion-proof motor is not the only means of complying with OSHA standards in a sewer wetwell which is determined to be a Class I, Division 1 location.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–23.2
10/30/78

SUBJECT: 1910.401–1910.441.

Purpose. This directive provides guidelines for the permanent occupational safety and health standard for commercial diving operations, 29 CFR 1910.401–1910.441.

Background. The permanent standard for commercial diving operations was printed in the Federal Register, July 22, 1977. The preamble, between pages 37650 and 37668, contains information and background on the purposes and intent of the standard. A study of this appended document should be made in conjunction with the review of this directive, Appendix A. Supplemental information and guidance will be provided to the field as required.

Action.

a. CSHO Diving. CSHO's shall not perform any type of diving during the course of any investigation or inspection.

b. CSHO inspecting. Only those CHSO's who have received the diver familiarization training, or are otherwise qualified by similar training or experience, shall make diving inspections. In emergencies, when these CSHO's are not available, a regular CSHO may be utilized until a diver-trained CSHO is available.

c. Oil and gas development maps. Area Offices that have offshore activities shall obtain Oil and Gas Development Maps for each State having such operations. These maps are available from the United States Department of Interior, Geological Survey.

d. Variance. Normal variance procedures are in effect with respect to the diving standard. If an employer indicates that he has a variance request pending which has not yet been acted upon, a citation shall still be issued for any violation, although the employer should be informed that the variance will be taken into account in considering the proper abatement period or proposed penalty. Questions regarding variances shall be referred through channels to the OSHA National Office, Office of Variance Determination.

e. 29 CFR 1910.401 Scope and application.

(1) This standard applies (except as noted in the following paragraph (2)) to all commercial diving and related support operations under the jurisdiction of OSHA.

(2) Maritime jurisdiction. In general, OSHA maritime jurisdiction is the same as OSHA jurisdiction over any other industry as expressed under Section 4(a) of the Act. Since OSHA covers all employment and places of employment within a State, the Act's requirements apply to both inland maritime operations and

any other type of maritime employment within the 3-mile limit extending seaward from the coastal States and from other land masses listed in Section 4(a) of the Act, and in the case of the Great Lakes, to the international boundaries. Section 4(a) also covers maritime workplaces beyond the 3-mile limit that are engaged in employment operations in connection with the outer continental shelf lands and work related to these operations.

(3) Commercial diving operations performed in connection with the following standards:

29 CFR 1910.401-.441—General Industry
29 CFR 1915.59—Ship Repairing
29 CFR 1916.59—Shipbuilding
29 CFR 1917.59—Shipbreaking
29 CFR 1918.99—Longshoring
29 CFR 1926.605—Construction

shall be subject to Subpart T of 29 CFR 1910, Section 401-.441 of this chapter.

NOTE: The amending of 29 CFR 1928.21(b) by substituting T for S in line 4 changes that paragraph to read "Except to the extent specified in paragraph (a) of this section, the standards contained in Subparts B through T and Subpart Z of Part 1910 of this title do not apply to agricultural operations." Agricultural operations include those industries listed in the Standard Industrial Classification Manual, 1972 edition, under Division A (except 091). This dividion includes establishments primarily engaged in agricultural production as follows:

SIC 01—Crops
SIC 02—Livestock
SIC 07—Agricultural Services
SIC 08—Forestry

Therefore, any diving operations conducted by agricultural employees engaged in employments under these SIC codes are exempt from this diving standard. Contractors of agricultural employers who do not fall within these SIC codes are covered by 29 CFR 1910.401 -.441.

(4) When a part of 29 CFR 1910.401-.441 differs or conflicts with any other OSHA standard, the requirements of this standard shall take precedence when applied to diving operations. The CSHO should review 29 CFR 1910.5 for guidance before issuing a citation for a violation of a general industry standard to a diving employer. Questions regarding this procedure shall be referred to the OSHA National Office of Compliance Programming.

(5) Citing standards.

(a) The proper standards to cite for violations shall be determined by the type of work for which the diving operation is required. For example:

- Repairs on vessels requiring a diver to examine damage to the hull. Violations would be cited under 29 CFR 1915.59, with specific reference to the section of 29 CFR 1910.401-.441 which was violated.

- Maintenance work requiring a diver to enter a sewer line to free debris from a strainer. Violations would be cited as appropriate, under 29 CFR 1910.401-441.

- A company is erecting an offshore oil rig that requires a diver to perform construction work (construction work includes the actual erection, alteration and maintenance of the rig). Violations would be cited under 29 CFR 1926.605(e), with specific reference to the section of 29 CFR 1910.401-441 which was violated.

- If the CSHO is not sure which standard applies to the operation, the CSHO shall cite both standards.

(6) This standard *does not* apply to diving operations under the following conditions:

(a) Diving for instructional purposes by persons using only open-circuit compressed air SCUBA within the no-decompression limits. In addition, it should be noted that individuals engaged in recreational or sport diving (generally SCUBA) for their own personal enjoyment, and not otherwise related to their respective employments are not within the jurisdiction of this standard.

(b) Search, rescue and related public safety diving by or under the control of a governmental agency. Diving contractors who perform such emergency services not under the control of the governmental agency but as an independent contractor for private purposes do not come under this exclusion; however, they may be covered by the provisions concerning application of the standard in any emergency (29 CFR 1910.401(b)).

(c) This diving standard does not apply to those specific working conditions of diving operations over which other Federal agencies exercise statutory authority to prescribe or enforce standards or regulations affecting occupational safety and health. (See section 4(b)(1) of the Act.) Questions of jurisdiction shall be referred to the OSHA National Office of Compliance Programming.

(d) This standard does not apply to diving operations when performed for research, development and related activities in which human subjects are involved which are covered by the standards contained in 45 CFR Part 46, Protection of Human Subjects, administered by the U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, or equivalent Federal standards. Questions of equivalence or applicability shall be referred to the OSHA National Office of Compliance Programming.

(7) Federal programs. In addition, pursuant to Section 3(5) of the Act, employees of Federal agencies of the United States Government are excluded from the jurisdiction of the standard. Instead, such employees shall be protected in accordance with Section 19 of the Act under which it is the responsibility of each agency which engages in diving operations to establish and maintain an effective and comprehensive safety and health program which is consistent with this standard.

(8) Inspection priorities. Diving operations which do not fall within one of the exemption categories and which involve an employer-employee relationship are covered by 29 CFR 1910.401–.441. Inspection priorities shall be followed as stated in the Field Operations Manual, Chapter IV, with respect to different kinds of diving operations.

(9) 29 CFR 1910.401(b) Application in emergencies.

(a) This exclusion has been included to permit the designated person-in-charge discretion to deviate from the requirements of the standard in situations where death, serious harm or major environmental damage is likely to occur, but only to the extent that such action is immediately necessary to prevent or minimize the harm. This applies only for the duration of the emergency. The employer is required to notify the OSHA Area Office within 48 hours of the onset of the situation requiring such deviation. The Area Director may request that the employer submit a written record of the notification explaining what deviations from the standard were made and what additional precautions were instituted to provide for the safety and health of the employees during the emergency. Failure of the employer to notify the OSHA Area Office of the emergency situation within the specified time shall be considered a violation of this provision of the standard. These incidents shall be closely monitored to insure that this provision is not abused. A pattern of repeated deviations shall be cause for an inspection.

(b) This emergency provision does not apply to situations involving only economic or property damage.

(10) Federal/State jurisdiction.

(a) All States that have an approved plan have 6 months from the effective date of this standard (October 20, 1977) to either adopt the OSHA diving standard, promulgate a diving standard as effective as the OSHA standard or modify their present State diving standard to be as effective as the OSHA standard. In the interim, OSHA shall enforce the diving standard wherever diving operations are being conducted under OSHA jurisdiction.

(b) As soon as a State with an approved plan has an approved diving standard, the State will enforce the standard under its jurisdiction.

(c) States with approved plans that have included the maritime issue and have adopted the OSHA diving standard, or have a State diving standard as effective as the OSHA diving standard, will have jurisdiction over diving operations conducted in conjunction with the maritime operations from an onshore site such as a pier, wharf, jetty, etc. The dive location (see the following paragraph f.(4) determines the jurisdiction; however, the Federal OSHA retains jurisdiction for diving operations conducted on the navigable waters of the United States in these States, as well as the States that do not have an approved plan.

f. 29 CFR 1910.402 Definitions.

(1) "ASME Code or equivalent": "equivalent" refers to equipment that is designed, built and maintained to standards which will provide the employees the same protection as if the equipment met the American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Unfired Pressure Vessel, Section VIII. The employer shall be responsible for demonstrating equivalency. Questions of equivalency should be referred to the OSHA National Office of Compliance Programming.

(2) "Bursting pressure": The pressure at which a pressure containment device such as a pipe, hose, cylinder, tank, etc. would fail structurally. 29 CFR 1910.430(c)(1)(ii) requires that breathing gas supply hoses shall have a bursting pressure at least 4 times the working pressure.

(3) "Decompression chamber": As used in this standard, this term refers to any pressure vessel for human occupancy used to decompress divers and to treat decompression sickness. A closed bell, if used as a decompression chamber, shall meet the design criteria as stated in 29 CFR 1910.430(f).

(4) "Dive location": This term refers to the location from which operations are conducted such as vessel, barge, wharf, pier, river bank or offshore rig and does not mean the diver's work location under the water.

(5) "Dive location reserve breathing gas": This refers to a secondary breathing gas supply at the dive location connected and ready for use for each dive.

(6) "Dive team": This term includes all divers and support employees involved at the dive location in the diving operations, including the designated person-in-charge.

(7) "Inwater stage": This term means a platform sufficient to carry the weight of the diver and gear in and out of the water.

(8) "No-decompression limits": This term applies to those depth/time combinations where no staged decompression of the diver is required. Dives to 35 fsw do not require decompression, regardless of bottom time. Dives deeper than 35 fsw may require decompression. The nodecompression tables from the U.S. Navy Manual are attached as Appendix B. The standard provides for use of either the U.S. Navy Tables or equivalent limits which the employer can demonstrate to be equally effective.

(9) "Standby diver": The requirement that the standby diver be at the dive location, which by definition is a location at the surface or on a vessel, eliminates the possibility that another diver in the water or at another dive location would be considered a standby diver. The standby diver does not necessarily have to be fully dressed but must be in that degree of readiness which will allow him to render the necessary assistance in a timely manner. A degree of readiness means to be clothed and equipped ready to enter the water at a moment's notice. The temperature at some dive locations makes it extremely uncomfortable to a standby diver fully clothed in a wet or dry suit, so it may be necessary to wear more comfortable dress, yet adequate enough to provide protection when the standby diver enters the water. Such articles of gear as face masks, air cylinders and harness can be quickly donned and need not be worn on standby.

(10) "Working pressure": The term maximum working pressure is equivalent to rated working pressure or that pressure level up to which it is safe to operate as determined by construction and tests. By definition it must not exceed ¼ of the bursting pressure.

g. 29 CFR 1910.410 Qualifications of dive team.

(1) The level of experience or training required by the standard depends upon the job the employees are required to do. Employee qualifications achieved through field experience or classroom training or both may be used to meet the requirements of the standard. For example:

(a) Most divers begin as tenders and advance to diving status after a period of field experience and/or classroom training. A diving tender trainee performing on-the-job training shall be utilized only under the supervision of a qualified diver.

(b) Tenders are those members of the dive team who provide surface support to divers at the site. A tender employed in shallow water air diving would be required to have a basic understanding of the breathing air system, the operating and emergency procedures and knowledge of the care and use of equipment.

(c) A mixed-gas (system) diver is a diver who conducts underwater work using mixed-gas techniques. A mixed-gas diver would be required to have an advanced understanding of diving, including a working knowledge of mixed-gas equipment such as a decompression chamber, bell and mixed-gas breathing supply system, the operations and emergency procedures associated with mixed-gas diving and the equipment used. In addition, he must have an understanding of the physics and physiology of mixed-gas diving.

(d) A chamber operator would be required to have experience or training in the carrying out of decompression procedures, knowledge of the physics and physiology of decompression, and the operation of the decompression equipment to which he is assigned.

(e) Each dive team member must be trained in cardiopulmonary resuscitation and standard first aid. The American Red Cross standard course (14 hours) or equivalent training is specified. Employees completing this training are issued a card attesting they have successfully completed the course. Any first aid course acceptable to OSHA as meeting the requirement of 29 CFR 1910.151(b) and 1926.50(a) is deemed to meet the requirements of this standard. Some other first aid courses which have been accepted by OSHA are: American Petroelum Institute, U.S. Bureau of Mines and American College of Orthopedic Surgeons.

(2) The following methods may be used to check individual qualifications:

(a) Field experience—

- Employment records.
- Written statements from previous employers.
- Written statements from diving officers or commanding officers (military).
- Field Operations Records.

(b) Diving proficiency—

- Company field operations records.
- Federal service operations records (military).

(c) Technical training—

- Federal service qualification certificates.
- Diving school certificates of completion.
- Company training program completion statements or equivalent proof of competency.

(3) The phrase "known to the employer" in 29 CFR 1910.410 (b)(3) of this part relates to the requirement that the designated person-in-charge inquire into the employee's health prior to the task assignment, a required aspect of pre-dive planning (29 CFR 1910.421 (f)(2)).

(4) The designated person-in-charge can be the employer or an employee chosen by the employer. The designated person-in-charge shall have experience in and knowledge of all phases of the particular diving operation for which he is responsible. The designated person-in-charge shall be at the dive location; therefore, this team member shall not be a diver in the water or a person at another dive location. In two-person operations, where the diver may be more qualified than the tender, the diver can be in charge of pre-dive and post-dive procedures and maintain overall responsibility for the operation, but during the dive the tender must be the person-in-charge. For instance, he must be the one authorized to terminate the dive in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.422(i) of the standard although, if the diver himself requested termination, there would be no discretion involved. The qualifications of the designated person-in-charge canb e checked by the same methods suggested in the preceding paragraph (2).

h. 29 CFR 1910.411 Medical requirements.

(1) 29 CFR 1910.411(a)(1)—The employer is ultimately responsible for determining whether affected dive team members are medically fit to perform assigned tasks in a safe and healthful manner. However, the decision is to be based on the best available medical opinion. The standard does not set qualifications for physicians, although employers should be encouraged to engage examining physicians who are familiar with the experienced in the physical requirements and medical aspects of diving. In the absence of physicians with knowledge of hyperbaric medicine, examinations should be done by a physician qualified to understand the need and purpose for the examination and who has prior experience in examining individuals who will be exposed to strenuous work conditions and hazardous environments.

(2) 29 CFR 1910.411(a)(2) and (3)—The standard requires that any dive team member who is, or is likely to be, exposed to hyperbaric conditions shall be provided the medical examinations by the employer at no cost to the employee. Therefore, it applies to any dive team member who is expected to dive, enter a decompression chamber, or be otherwise exposed to increase pressure. In addition to divers, this requirement shall apply for example, to dive team members such as tenders or designated persons-in-charge who might reasonably be expected to enter a decompression chamber to treat, or aid in the treatment of, a diver suffering from decompression sickness.

(3) 29 CFR 1910.411(b)(3)—The standard requires the employer to provide a medical examination after an employee has been hospitalized for 24 hours or more. The employer has the responsibility to inquire as to his employee's current state of physical fitness including any recent hospitalizations. If an employee conceals the fact of a hospitalization from the employer, the employer has no knowledge or reason to know of the hospitalization, no citation shall be issued under this section.

(4) 29 CFR 1910.411(d)(1)—Information concerning an employee's diving-related work history and medical history is to be gathered primarily during the examining physician's interview with the employee. Verification of such information, as necessary, is to be obtained by the physician through established medical channels.

(5) The tests indicated in Table I are intended to be mandatory minimum requirements. The standard does not preclude an employer from subjecting this employee to a more comprehensive examination but allows additional tests to be given at the discretion of the physician based in part on likely job duties, likely hyperbaric exposure and employee work and medical histories (29 CFR 1910.411(a)(1)(v)). For example, Table I requires that a standard 12-lead EKG be given once at age 35 or over. This is a minimum requirement and intended to provide a baseline tracing at a relatively early age. The standard does not preclude the physician from making the EKG a routine part of the diver's annual medical examination. Similarly, an examining physician who felt that an X-ray survey would assist in detection or evaluation of bone necrosis could have that test performed, and the findings could be used as part of the basis for a determination of medical fitness.

(6) 29 CFR 1910.411(e)—The written reports prepared by the examining physician are generally kept in the company office. The CSHO should make his onsite inspection before reviewing the medical records to avoid giving advance notice to the employer. The CSHO shall examine those records to determine that:

(a) Medical examinations have been given as required (.411(a) and (b)).

(b) A copy of the standard and a summary of the nature and extent of the hyperbaric conditions to which the dive team members will be exposed were provided to the physician (.411(c)).

(c) The employer has a physician's written report on each employee required to be examined (.411(e)).

(d) The employer has determined the extent and nature of the employee's fitness for the designated job (.411(f)(1)).

(e) The employee has been given the opportunity for second and third opinion, if appropriate (.411(f)(2) and (3)).

(7) 29 CFR 1910.411(f) is intended to apply to all employees who will be exposed. At this time there is a case pending in which the extent of the employer's obligations to pay for examinations (including new hires and free-lance divers) and to follow the procedures for a second and third opinion under 29 CFR 1910.411 Medical requirements, is being challenged. *Until further notice is provided by OSHA, do not issue citations under this particular standard without first consulting with the National Office.*

(8) Appendix A of the standard contains a list of examples of medical conditions which *may* restrict or limit employee exposure to hyperbaric conditions. This appendix is advisory, not mandatory to the physician. (Note: typographical error in Federal Register where Appendix "B" was printed instead of "A".)

(9) In addition to Appendix A of the standard, the following conditions may be reasons for *temporary* disqualification from explsure to hyperbaric exposure (29 CFR 1910.410(b)(3)):

(a) Acute alcoholism and/or drug intoxication.

(b) Acute gastrointestinal syndrome.

(c) Acute infections, skin, respiratory, ear, etc.

(d) Recent incident of serious decompression sickness.

i. 29 CFR 1910.240 Safe practices manual.

(1) The employer may refer to the safe practices manual as the diving manual, employer's operational log or diving guide. The manual shall be at the dive location and available to all team members.

(2) The safe practices manual must provide a written operational procedure for each diving mode engaged in by the employer which contains the employer's implementation of the standard. The CSHO shall review the manual to ascertain if it contains safety procedures and checklists for diving operations, assignment and responsibilities of the dive team members, equipment procedures and checklists and emergency procedures.

j. 29 CFR 1910.421 Pre-dive procedures.

(1) The provisions of this section must be followed by the employer for all diving modes with the designated person-in-charge responsible for overall compliance and briefings.

(2) 29 CFR 1910.421(a)—The CSHO shall check to see that the emergency aid list is complete and available to all dive team members.

(3) 29 CFR 1910.421(b)—The CSHO shall check to see that there is a first aid kit at the dive location. If used in a decompression chamber or bell, the first aid supplies shall be suitable for use under hyperbaric conditions; e.g., they should not include bottles of liquids, mercury thermometers or ammonia ampules.

(4) 29 CFR 1910.421(d)—Planning and assessment is essentially a "dive plan" requirement for which the designated person-in-charge is responsible. Most of the information required by this subsection should be found in the safe practices manual (29 CFR 1910.420). Some information may not be found in written form because it cannot be ascertained until the team reaches the dive location. The CSHO shall question the team members to determine that the employer has complied with the requirements of this subsection.

(5) 29 CFR 1910.421(d) and (e)—Certain hazards encountered such as weather, water temperature, current and bottom conditions can be recognized and taken into account in the planning and execution of the operation. When other operations being conducted in the vicinity (dredging, marine traffic, etc.) are likely to interfere with the diving operation, the designated person-in-charge shall plan the operation after appropriate coordination with persons responsible for the other activities, so that any hazard to the dive team will be eliminated or minimized. Failure to plan for such recognizable conditions or to coordinate activities shall be a basis for a citation.

(6) 29 CFR 1910.421(f)—The employee briefing is usually conducted by the designated person-in-charge just prior to the divers' entering the water. It is particularly important that the designated person-in-charge shall inquire into each dive team member's current state of physical fitness before making individual assignments. To determine compliance the CSHO can question dive team members and observe the operation, if one is ongoing.

(7) 29 CFR 1910.421(g)—As in the preceding subsections, compliance with the pre-dive inspection requirement can only be determined by observations and questioning employees. The standard makes no distinction between employer-provided equipment and employee-provided equipment with regard to the requirement of pre-dive inspection. While an employee can individually make such inspections, it is the employer who is responsible for assuring compliance with all equipment requirements of the standard.

(8) 29 CFR 1910.421(h) Warning signal.

(a) There are two distinctions in the requirements for displaying the warning signal:

(i) 29 CFR 1910.421(h) only requires the warning signal to be displayed when diving from surfaces *other than vessels* such as wharves, piers, pilings, jetties, fixed caissons, levees, dikes, dams, breakwater, artificial islands (secured to the continental shelf) etc., and then only when the dive location is capable of supporting marine traffic. Violations of this requirement shall be cited under this section.

(ii) The requirements for displaying the warning signal when the dive location is located on the vessel is covered by the U.S. Coast Guard Navigation Rules, International-Inland, contained in Department of Transportation, U.S. Coast Guard pamphlet CG-169, May 1, 1977, Rule 27, and is not enforceable by OSHA. (See Appendix C.) If the CSHO observes violations of the warning signal when the dive location is a vessel, no citation shall be issued. The CSHO shall nevertheless inform the employer of the violation and recommend abatement. The CSHO shall also note the incident for the OSHA-1 Form and notify the nearest U.S. Coast Guard, Office of Maritime Inspection, of all particulars of the violations.

(b) The warning signal is a rigid replica of the international code Flag "A", at least one meter in height (depicted below).

As long as the flag is displayed to achieve virtual all around visibility, the requirement for rigidity shall have been met.

k. 29 CFR 1910.422 Procedures during dive.

(1) This requirement covers the time the diver enters the water until the diver leaves the water.

(2) 29 CFR 1910.422(c)—The requirement for two-way voice communication shall be checked. Pull signals do not meet the requirements except in the SCUBA mode.

(3) 29 CFR 1910.422(d)—The CSHO shall check that the proper decompression and treatment tables are at the dive location.

(4) 29 CFR 1910.422(e)—The dive profile information may be recorded by whatever means and whatever form the employer wishes provided the information is maintained accurately and completely.

(5) 29 CFR 1910.422(f)—Hand-held power tools and equipment.

(a) The standard does not require a hand-held power tool to have a pressure sensitive manual control switch. However, when electrically powered hand-held tools are used under water and the source of power is supplied from the dive location, bell or habitat, the hand-held power tool shall not be supplied with power from the dive location until requested by the diver.

(b) In addition to the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.422(f)(1) and (2), all hand-held electrical power tools and equipment must be acceptable within the meaning of the National Electrical Code Section 110–2 (adopted by 29 CFR 1910.309(b)).

NEC Section 110–2 states: the conductors and equipment required or permitted by this code shall be acceptable only when approved. (Approved means acceptable to the authority enforcing this code, NEC Section 100). Clarification of "approved" is given in 29 CFR 1910.308(d)(1) which states in part: "The authority enforcing the code under subpart S is the Assistant Secretary for Occupational Safety and Health." Further, "acceptable" is defined under 29 CFR 1910.308(d)(2) which states: An installation or equipment is acceptable to the Assistant Secretary of Labor, and approved within the meaning of this subpart S:

- If it is accepted, or certified, or listed, or labeled, or otherwise determined to be a safe by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, such as, but not limited to, Underwriters Laboratory, Inc. and Factory Mutual Engineering Corp.; or

- With respect to an installation or equipment of a kind which no nationally recognized testing laboratory accepts, certifies, lists, labels, or determines to be safe, if it is inspected or tested by another Federal agency, or by a State, municipal, or other local authority responsible for enforcing occupational safety provisions of the National Electrical Code, and found in compliance with the provisions of the National Electrical Code as applied in 29 CFR 1910.309; or

- With respect to custom-made equipment or related installations which are designed, fabricated for, and intended for use by a particular customer, if it is determined to be safe for its intended use by its manufacturer on the basis of test data which the employer keeps and makes available for inspection to the Assistant Secretary and her authorized representatives.

(6) 29 CFR 1910.422(g)—Personnel designated to operate electric cutting and welding equipment used in diving operations shall have experience or training in the safe use of underwater cutting and welding equipment (29 CFR 1910.410(a)(2)(i)). There shall be a positive acting disconnect switch in the electrical circuit, located so that the tender on the intercommunication system can oversee and operate the switch at all times that the diver is in the water (29 CFR 1910.422(g)(1)(i)). The disconnect switch must be in the open position except when the diver is actually cutting or welding (29 CFR 1910.422(g)(1)(ii)). The employer must provide insulated globes for the diver's protection (29 CFR 1910.422(g)(4)). The CSHO shall check to see that the welding machine's frame is properly grounded and that cables, electrode holders and connections are insulated (29 CFR 1910.422 (g)(2) and (3)).

(7) This standard does not place any restriction on the use of AC current or rectified AC current arc welding.

(8) 29 CFR 1910.422(g)(5)—"Closed compartments" means any space which is enclosed by bulkheads and overheads (walls and ceilings) such as inside large diameter pipes, or any other space which by its size and closed nature can hold or contain a flammable gas or vapor. The compartments, structures and pipes shall be freed of all flammable gases and vapors prior to hot work by ventilating, flooding or purging with an inert gas. Venting alone is not sufficient unless its results in freeing the compartments, structures or pipes from flammable gases. Closed compartments, structures and pipes already under flow, as in hot tapping operations, by necessity meet the requirement for being flooded.

(9) 29 CFR 1910.422(h)—Explosive charges are used to perform some types of work underwater, including demolition, sheet cutting, cable cutting and the making of holes. Explosives suitable for underwater work include primacord, various gelatins, plastic blocks and some liquids. The requirements of this subsection are addressed to the need for proper handling, storage and use of explosives as covered by 29 CFR 1910.109 and 1926.912 and to the hazard of premature detonation while the diver is still in the water. The standard requires the diver to be out of the water when detonating the explosives or testing the electrical continuity of the explosive circuits. Only personnel who are properly trained or experienced shall handle explosives (29 CFR 1910.410(a)(1) and (2)(i)).

(10) 29 CFR 1910.422(i)—Termination of dive. This subsection applies to all diving modes. The designated person-in-charge is responsible for determining when a dive shall be terminated. Termination means the ending of the working interval of a dive; it may still be necessary to complete the decompression procedures.

I. 29 CFR 1910.423 Post-dive procedures.

(1) 29 CFR 1910.423(c) Recompression capability.

(a) The 6-month delayed effective date as stated in 29 CFR 1910.441 has now expired. Therefore, whenever the standard requires the use of decompression chambers or bells, all employers shall be subject to meeting these requirements.

(b) Whenever the standard requires a decompression chamber, there must be a member of the dive team available at the dive site trained in its use (1910.423(c)(5)).

(c) 29 CFR 1910.423(c)(3)(i)—The expression "dual-lock" is meant to include multilock components, each of which is large enough to transfer personnel and supplies into and out of the main compartment while it is pressurized. A medical lock is a relatively small dual-lock compartment that permits equipment and medical supplies, but not personnel, to be passed into and out of the decompression chamber while the chamber is under pressure and therefore would not meet the intent of 1910.423(c)(3)(i).

(d) To be used as a recompression facility (i.e., in lieu of a chamber), a diving bell must meet all the criteria listed in 29 CFR 1910.423(c)(3) and 1910.423(c)(1). Chambers used for dives in the depth range of 0–300 fsw shall have a pressure capability of at least 165 fsw (6 ATA). Chambers used for dives in the depth range of 300 fsw and deeper shall have a pressure capability equal to the maximum depth of the dive. (The CSHO shall check the dive plan and tables for maximum depth of the dive).

(2) 29 CFR 1910.423(d)—The standard does not require a standard form or that the dive records for each individual diver be kept on a separate sheet. Where there is more than one diver working, the information required may be kept for all divers on one record, although there should be separate entries for each different diver exposure or decompression table used.

(3) The information required *shall* also be recorded on the OSHA-200 Form (Log of Occupational Injuries and Illnesses). Each employer shall maintain in each establishment a log of recordable occupational injuries and illnesses. The key word is "recordable." The intent of this section is to request documentation of a *recordable* illness, including an incident of decompression sickness, when the initial symptoms were such manifestations as skin itch, slight joint cramps, and slight numbness of the extremities. Although seemingly innocuous, such symptoms or indications are recognized and suspect as mild forms of decompression chamber. Such occurrences and treatments *shall* be recorded similarly to any other case of injury or illness.

(4) 29 CFR 1910.423(e)—This section requires the employer to investigate and evaluate each incident of decompression sickness, to take appropriate corrective action, and to prepare a written evaluation assessing the incident within 45 days. The corrective action may include an adjustment of the dive procedures, reassessment of the decompression tables or a reexamination of the particular dive involved. A check of the dive records should reveal whether an incident took place requiring an investigation, corrective action and a written evaluation.

m. 29 CFR 1910.424–427 Specific diving operations.

(1) The requirements of sections 29 CFR 1910.424 through 1910.427 are in addition to any other applicable requirements in Subpart T.

(2) 29 CFR 1910.424(c)(3), 1910.425(c)(2) and 1910.426(c)(3)—There shall be a diver at the point of entry of an enclosed or physically confining space when there is a significant entanglement hazard. Depending on the situation, a point of entry may be under water or on the surface (e.g., a marine railway). An enclosed or physically confining space in this context includes any diving situation where there is a significant possibility of entrapment or line entanglement, or the diver is required to make one or more sharp turns around wrecks, pilings, or has to enter closed compartments, caves or pipes, etc.

n. 29 CFR 1910.424 SCUBA diving.

(1) The limits for SCUBA diving are more restrictive than for surface-supplied air diving or mixed-gas diving. (See chart)

(2) 29 CFR 1910.424(b)(3)—Three basic types of currents affect diving operations: river or major ocean currents; currents produced by the ebb and flow of the tides (which may add or subtract from any existing current); and underwater, or rip-current, caused by the rush of water returning from waves breaking along a shoreline. The CSHO shall determine that the employer has ascertained the strength of the local currents at the dive site from Tide and Current Tables, Coast and Geodetic Survey Charts, Coast Pilot Publications or other sources. A SCUBA diver is handicapped when swimming against a current greater than one knot and the standard prohibits such activity unless line-tended. A SCUBA diver may, however, swim downstream with a current if means are provided to pick him up.

(3) 29 CFR 1910.424(c)(1)—The standard requires a standby diver for all operations. He shall be available at the dive location equipped and ready to go to the assistance of the diver in the water. A buddy-diver in the water does not satisfy the requirement of a standby diver. A tender can be the standby diver if the diver is line-tended and visible from the surface.

COMPARISON OF REQUIREMENTS ACCORDING TO THE THREE PRIMARY DIVING MODES

Symbols:< = less than.
> = greater than.
knot = 1 nautical mile.
no-D = no decompression limits.
fsw = feet of sea water.
NA means not applicable.

Requirements	SCUBA	Surface-supplied Air	Mixed Gas
Limits	<130 fsw 1 knot/no line. Enclosed space no line.	<190 fsw 1F >30 minutes <220 fsw 1F <30 minutes	NA
Tender	Either line tended from surface or another diver in continual visual contact.	Continually tended all depths. 1—tender/diver when >100 fsw or >no-D.	1 tender diver. 1 diver in bell as tender.
Standby	Yes	>100 fsw>no-D.	Yes
Diver Carried Reserve	Yes (manual reserve or independent reserve cylinder).	>100 fsw>no-D. No direct ascent (except heavy gear and no space).	>100 fsw>no-D. No direct ascent (except heavy gear and no space).
Diver Location Reserve	NA	>100 fsw>no-D.	Yes
In Water Stage	NA	Heavy gear.	Heavy gear. >100 fsw>no-D (if no bell).
Chamber	>100 fsw>no-D.	100 fsw>no-D.	Yes
Bell	NA	>120 minutes (except heavy gear and confined space).	Open or closed >220 fsw >120 minutes (except heavy gear and confined space). Closed: >300 fsw (except confined space).
Communications	Emergency assistance.	Emergency assistance, between diver and location, diver and bell, bell and location.	Emergency assistance, between diver and location, diver and bell, bell and location.
Miscellaneous	Diver at point of entry. Require person in charge.	Diver at point of entry. Heavy gear, extra hose. Require person in charge.	Diver at point of entry. Heavy gear, extra hose. Require person in charge.

(4) In addition to any conditions listed in 29 CFR 1910.422(i) for termination of the working interval of the dive, the standard requires termination of the dive in instances where the designated person-in-charge is also the standby diver and he is required to enter the water to assist the diver, thereby creating a situation where there would not be a designated person-in-charge remaining at the dive location (29 CFR 1910.410(c)(1)).

o. 29 CFR 1910.425 Surface-supplied air diving.

(1) When required (see chart), decompression chambers and bells when used as a recompression facility shall meet the criteria as stated in 29 CFR 1910.423(c) and 29 CFR 1910.430(f) (decompression chamber only).

(2) In addition to any condition listed in 29 CFR 1910.422(i) for termination of the working interval of the dive, the standard requires termination of the dive whenever the required standby diver, entering the water to assist a diver, creates a situation where there would not be a designated person-in-charge (29 CFR 1910.410 (c)(1)), or a tender remaining at the dive location (29 CFR 1910.425(c)(1)). The standby diver can be either the person-in-charge or the tender or both for dives less than 100 fsw.

(3) Below 100 fsw or outside the no-decompression limits, each diver must have his own tender. In addition, a standby diver must be available at the dive location. The standard does not require a standby tender for the standby diver.

(4) 29 CFR 1910.425(c)(4)(iv)—The reserve breathing gas supply required at the dive location for dives deeper than 100 fsw or outside the no-decompression limits shall be "on line" ready for use and its source shall be independent of the primary breathing gas supply. The dive location breathing gas supply shall be of sufficient quantity, pressure and quality to allow each diver to complete the planned decompression interval.

p. 29 CFR 1910.426 Mixed-gas diving.

(1) When required (see chart), decompression chambers and bells when used as a recompression facility must meet the criteria as stated in 29 CFR 1910.423(c) and 29 CFR 1910.430(f) (decompression chambers only).

(2) In addition to any condition listed in 29 CFR 1910.422(i) for termination of the working interval of the dive, the standard requires termination of the dive whenever the required standby diver, entering the water to assist a diver, creates a situation where there would not be a designated person-in-charge (29 CFR 1910.410 (c)(1)) or a tender remaining at the dive location (29 CFR 1910.426(c)(1)).

(3) 29 CFR 1910.426(c)(1) and (2)—Because a mixed-gas diver must have its own tender at all times, as well as a standby diver available to assist him in the water, the tender cannot be used as a standby diver unless there is someone qualified and available to take his place as the tender. The standard does not require a separate standby diver for each diver in the water.

(4) 29 CFR 1910.426(c)(5)—The reserve gas supply required at the dive location shall be "on line" ready for use and its source shall be independent of the primary breathing gas supply. The dive location reserve breathing gas supply shall be in sufficient quantity, pressure and quality (mix) to allow each diver to complete the planned decompression interval.

q. 29 CFR 1910.427 Liveboating.

(1) Liveboating is conducted in either the surface-supplied air or mixed-gas mode, and is subject to the requirement of the particular mode used and to the applicable general requirements. In addition, it is also subject to those requirements which are specific to liveboating.

(2) 29 CFR 1910.427(d)(2)*—When inspecting a liveboating operation, the CSHO shall check to see that there is a device designed to minimize the possibility of the diver's hose becoming entangled in the vessel's propeller. Such a device may be a propeller shroud, or a weighted fairlead hose system or an air tugger with a heavy weight. The use of a tender to prevent hose entanglement without some mechanical support is not sufficient to satisfy their requirement. If a floating hose is used, the hose should be checked carefully to make sure that the requirements for breathing gas supply hoses are met (29 CFR 1910.430(c)).

(3) In addition to any condition listed under 29 CFR 1910.422(i) for termination of the working interval of a dive, the standard requires termination of the dive whenever the standby diver, entering the water to assist a diver, creates a situation where there would not be a designated person-in-charge (29 CFR 1910.410(c)(1)) or a tender remaining at the dive location (29 CFR 1910.425(c)(1) or 1910.426(c)(1)).

(4) 29 CFR 1910.427(d)(4) *—A standby diver is required for all liveboating operations.

*NOTE: Typographical error in Federal Register—29 CFR 1910.427(c) was mistakenly printed as .427(d). The CSHO should nevertheless cite to 1910.427(d) until a correction is made in the Federal Register.

r. 29 CFR 1910.430 Equipment.

(1) 29 CFR 1910.430(a)(2)—The CSHO shall check to see that the employer has recorded the information required by this section. The information may reveal whether or not the equipment is in need of maintenance, testing or replacement, in that it does not currently meet the substantive requirements of 29 CFR 1910.430. These records (logs or tags) must be kept by the employer until replaced by a subsequent up-to-date record or until the equipment is withdrawn from service.

(2) 29 CFR 1910.430(b)—Air compressor systems shall be inspected to see that they have a volume tank, check valve, pressure gauge, releif valve, drain valve and an air intake which is located away from the exhaust or other contaminants.

(3) 29 CFR 1910.430(b)(4)—The employer is responsible for checking the output of the air compressor every 6 months to ensure that the respirable air of the diver does not contain contaminants in excess of the concentrations listed in 29 CFR 1910.430(b)(3) or a noxious or pronounced odor. The CSHO shall interview appropriate employees and examine the records indicating results of such tests. The CSHO shall also check to see that the air sample was taken as near as possible to where the air enters the distribution system to the diver. If required, the CSHO or Industrial Hygienist should obtain a sample or later checking ashore or, when possible, test for contaminants onsite.

(4) 29 CFR 1910.430(c)—Breathing gas supply hoses.

(a) It is the intent of 29 CFR 1910.430(c)(1)(i) to require the hoses to meet the pressure level requirement of the part of the system to which it is connected. Therefore, a hose connected in the part of the system on the low pressure or downstream side of a regulating valve must meet only the pressure level of that part of the system. For instance, the hose does not need to have a working pressure equal to the pressure of the bottles of gas in bank but only equal to that of the system downstream of the regulator. The working pressure rating will usually be found on each length on a decal with the manufacturer's name.

(b) 29 CFR 1910.430(c)(1)(ii)—See definition of bursting pressure, paragraph 4.f.(2) of this directive.

(c) 29 CFR 1910.430(c)(2)(i)—Installation of cadmium-plated or other corrosion resistant plated fittings are acceptable and meets the requirements of "corrosion resistant" to the extent that the plating is intact during the diving operations. However, when the plating becomes badly worn and the parent metal becomes pitted, the fitting shall be replaced.

(5) 29 CFR 1910.430(c)(3)(ii)—This requirement for kink resistant hoses in umbilicals is applicable to the breathing gas hose, hot water hose or other control hoses that carry air or liquids. The breathing gas hose in the umbilical must also meet the applicable requirements of 29 CFR 1910.430(c).

(6) 29 CFR 1910.430(c)(3)(iii)—The maximum allowable working pressure of the breathing gas hose can be calculated by subtracting the maximum depth of the supply source (surface or bell in p.s.i.) from the maximum depth of the dive for which it will be used (in p.s.i.) and adding 100 p.s.i.. The determining factor is the pressure differential between the supply source and the diver.

(7) 29 CFR 1910.430(f)(1)—The meaning of ASME or equivalent code is covered under 4.f. of this directive.

(8) 29 CFR 1910.430(f)(3)(i)—Appropriate means to maintain the oxygen level below 25 percent may include a ventilation system or an overboard dump system. An overboard dump system is a system designed to exhaust the expired gases from the O_2 inside the Decompression Chamber above 25 percent by volume of the ambient atmosphere.

(9) 29 CFR 1910.430(g)(4)—The requirement for a time-keeping device applies to all diving modes including SCUBA.

(10) 29 CFR 1910.430(h)(2)—The intent of this "helmet and mask" provision is to assure that air is supplied to the diver at a rate sufficient to meet the breathing requirements of the diver and to dilute or flush from the masks and helmets the diver's expelled air. The specifications are based on recommendations of the National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) and the U.S. Coast Guard. This section is intended to guide the design and selection of masks and helmets, not to serve as a basis for routine operational tests or field verification. Although this section does not require the employer to perform any particular test on helmets and masks, it does require that the appropriate ventilation rate be maintained throughout operational use. Citations shall be issued under this section only after a check with the OSHA National Office of Compliance Programming.

(11) 29 CFR 1910.430(i)(2)—The intent of this section on "oxygen cleaning" is to make sure that certain equipment must be cleaned internally of flammable materials before initially being placed into oxygen service. Similarly, whenever new or replacement components are added, they shall also be cleaned before being connected into the system.

s. 29 CFR 1910.440 Recordkeeping requirements.

(1) 29 CFR 1910.440(a)(1)—The 48-hour time period for reporting fatality and hospitalization (five or more) cases is the maximum time allowed by 29 CFR 1904.8. Employers should be encouraged to report such cases as soon as possible after the occurrence.

(2) 29 CFR 1910.440(a)(2)—The CSHO shall examine the employer's record of diving-related injuries and illnesses which result in the hospitalization for 24 hours or more of any dive team member. These incidents do not have to be *reported* (unless five or more hospitalizations are involved) but the record must be made available to OSHA on request. Frequency of injuries and illnesses may be an indication of improper planning or dive procedures.

(3) 29 CFR 1910.440(b)(1)—This section gives the CSHO the authority to inspect and copy any record required by this standard.

(4) 29 CFR 1910.440(b)(2)—In order to protect employee privacy, it is intended that authorized representatives of employees obtain the specific consent of employees involved prior to receiving individual medical records. OSHA's policy in regards to the medical records is to prevent any misuse of such information that may be available through any requirement of this recordkeeping standard.

(5) 29 CFR 1910.440(b)(4)—This requirement is to provide a mechanism for extended retention of certain records that are important for long-range epidemiological studies. The transfer of these records to NIOSH after the 5-year retention period is intended to relieve the employer of the burden of keeping the records beyond the 5-year period. However, if the employer has an adequate storage and retains the records beyond the 5-year period, no citation shall be issued, provided the records are available for inspection and copying by either OSHA or NIOSH. Such action by the employer shall be considered de minimis.

t. Relationship with the other Federal agencies transportation to site.

(1) In general, OSHA Area Directors should coordinate inspection activities with local U.S. Coast Guard counterparts in a manner which seeks both to minimize the duplication of agency resources and maximize the protection of affected workers.

(2) Consistent with considerations of operational efficiency and the safety of agency personnel, transportation necessary to the conduct of offshore inspections shall be secured in accordance with the following priority:

(a) Appropriate Federal agency, on an "as available" basis.

(b) Private contractor.

(c) Employer supplied.

(3) Consistent with existing rules and regulations, accident investigation reports, statistical data, and other pertinent enforcement related information should be freely exchanged between other agencies at the local level.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1–23.3
4/19/79

SUBJECT: 1910.1046
Cancelled

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-23.4
8/22/80

SUBJECT: OSHA Medical Surveillance Regulations—Genetic Testing

Purpose. This instruction provides an interpretation of OSHA health standards that require medical surveillance programs specifying a medical history with family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors.

Standards Affected. This interpretation applies to all OSHA standards that require a medical surveillance program in which the medical examination shall include a personal history of the employee and/or his family and occupational background, including genetic and environmental factors. These standards are:

1. The 13 carcinogen standards; specifically, paragraph (g)(1)(i) in each of the standards in the series 29 CFR 1910.1003 through 1910.1016.

2. The OSHA Cancer Policy, 29 CFR 1990.151, "model standard."

Background. In February 1980, the New York *Times* published a series of articles on genetic testing. The fourth and final installment of the series did not accurately describe OSHA policies on this issue. An OSHA press release, USDL 80-107 dated February 20, 1980, clarified OSHA's policy. This instruction provides official guidance to OSHA Field Offices on this policy.

Interpretation. The provisions of the standards named in this instruction shall be interpreted as follows:

1. These provisions do not require genetic testing of any employee.

2. The taking of an employee's medical history, including past medical history, a family history, (e.g., inheritable disorders) and an occupational history, shall be considered as a routine part of standard medical practice, and is designed to identify factors important to the employee's general health status.

3. These provisions do not require the exclusion of otherwise qualified employees from jobs on the basis of genetic testing.

OSHA INSTRUCTION
STD 1-24.1
2/2/79

SUBJECT: 1910.20

CANCELED

☆ U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1989—6 2 3 -7 7 8 / 1 0 2 7 5